



# A GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE

DESIGNED FOR A  
THORO AND PRACTICAL STUDY OF THE  
LANGUAGE AS SPOKEN AND  
WRITTEN TO-DAY

BY

GEORGE O. CURME

PROFESSOR OF GERMANIC PHILOLOGY IN NORTHWESTERN UNIVERSITY

Die Sprache, in ihrem wirklichen Wesen aufgefacht, ist etwas beständig und in jedem Augenblicke Vorübergehendes . . . Sie selbst ist kein Werk, sondern eine Tätigkeit . . . Sie ist nämlich die sich ewig wiederholende Arbeit des Geistes, den artikulierten Laut zum Ausdruck des Gedankens fähig zu machen. (W. von Humboldt)

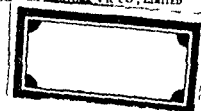
„Dieser Mensch redet wie ein Buch.“ Ist ein trantes Lob. Umgekehrt sei die Lösung: „Dies Buch redet wie ein Mensch.“ (Otto Schroeber)

*Revised and Enlarged*

New York

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

LONDON: MACMILLAN & CO., LIMITED





COPYRIGHT, 1922, BY  
GEORGE O. CURME

---

*First Edition, 1905*  
*Reprinted 1911, 1913, 1915, 1917*  
*Revised Edition, 1922*

*DEDICATED TO*  
HERMANN COLLITZ AND GEORG EDWARD  
WITH GRATITUDE AND REGARD



# PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION

of  
bu  
Switzerland An earnest attempt has been made to make the work a valuable book of reference  
so that the general student might find in it an impartial and rather full presentation of the facts  
of the language founded upon the works of scholars and also an independent study of the polite  
and colloquial literature in the  
given space if was the work  
on the subject bu by a few

from the standpoint of the needs of English speaking  
often devoted to points scarcely mentioned by German

c  
tion as it actually is  
grammar who is fami  
general student these groups are not entirely clear unless the list of words composing each group  
is complete as there is often no formal sign by which one may be guided in assigning a word  
to its proper group Here indeed the German himself constantly blunders how then can a  
foreigner without the fullest light expect to see clearly? The confusion is often increased and

and importance of the existing classes of German nouns

Altho the book is deemed as a study of the German language to day it was found necessary in  
order to give a more complete and varied styles to include to a cer  
tain extent the language often pre  
sented in earlier parts of the  
language and higher diction in  
language of certain classes of people and styles of speech Beautiful gems of thought in the form  
of proverbs have been handed down from earlier times like precious heir looms unchanged  
Literature now abounds in description of the language and customs of people in the out of the  
way provinces who speak quaint dialects which often faithfully preserve grammatical forms

so as a translation is fairly available to all many references to interesting con-  
structions in it have been made by merely quoting chapter and verse after a short remark ex-  
plaining the construction The edition here used is that of 1545 the last published by Luther  
himself The available editions which will probably be used by students are all largely modernized  
but even from these imperfect texts general impressions can be obtained The  
N H G period has been uniformly conformed in spelling to  
far as it could faithfully reproduce the original form of the wor  
taken from Luther's translation of the Bible These are given

tions, and punctuation in the hope that they might prove interesting and instructive. Of course only the most general points in this important part of the period are touched upon. A word from a period earlier than N. H. G. is never introduced for its own sake, or to give a picture of an older state of things, but always solely for the purpose of throwing light upon some dark construction in present usage or the literature that is still generally studied. Thus there is not the slightest attempt to give a connected outline of earlier periods. However, in thus introducing glimpses of earlier forms of speech, a good deal is gained toward teaching the student to look at language in the true light, and he may thus in an easy and forcible way learn that grammar is not made up of the infallible decrees of book-makers, but that it is a growth, and has reached its present form by various evolutions, here piously preserving fossilized remnants of by-gone ages, there struggling toward uniformity out of a tangle of prehistoric conditions no longer understood, now enriched by the genius of the individual, and now by the rich quota of the different dialects, now working constructively along plain and simple lines not hitherto known.

Altho attention has thus been carefully directed to early N. H. G. and also to the language of the classical period and the conspicuous authors of the first half of the 19th century, the main stress lies in the direction of present usage. Seven hundred works of varied styles published since 1850 by authors from various parts of the German Empire, Austria, and Switzerland, have been carefully read. Representative newspapers from different parts of these same countries have been studied. In this work, however, the political lines that have been drawn across the map of Germany, dividing it up into Austria, Switzerland, etc., have in all points of a general nature been disregarded, and terms *North*, *South*, etc., have been used as designations of the different parts of *one* country—one at least in language. In little points, usage differs considerably, not only in different parts of this territory, but also in the same section, and the author has not been able to share the assurance of certain grammarians who are so positive that they have prescribed the correct forms. The plain fact is that there is considerable fluctuation in present usage, tho not so much as earlier in the period, and this fluctuation is found even in the highest forms of current literature. Everywhere thruout these pages will be found double and triple forms for the same thing, that is a picture of the language as it is. A table of many fluctuating forms has been kept by the author constantly before him, and data inserted from time to time. In some cases the prevailing form has become apparent, and has been recorded. In other cases the situation will not become clear until many minute investigations have been made by many scholars. In still other cases nothing can be fixed, as the language itself has not assumed final form. To prescribe forms at this point, as many German grammarians do, is quite pernicious, for the capricious decisions of different scholars, differing widely as they often do, add to the general confusion and arrest natural linguistic tendencies. However, between forms that fluctuated in Lessing's day a final decision has often been made, or both forms have been retained with different shades of meaning.

The usage of the best authors of our time has been taken in all cases as the highest authority. By this, however, poets and philosophers are not alone meant. The best authors in the different fields of literature, even the much maligned newspapers, have been taken as guides. The pessimistic views of certain scholars with regard to the language of the daily press are not supported by the facts. The German newspaper man fills his place worthily and furnishes additional evidence of the power and flexibility of the German language. Indeed, his influence is especially needed in these days of intense realism, when polite literature often abandons the literary language entirely, or intersperses into it copious samples of dialect from every part of two empires and the Swiss republic. It is, however, far from our intention to criticize these naturalistic tendencies in literature which are so truly characteristic of our time, for we are not indifferent to a movement which in such a marked manner has widened human sympathies and increased the interest in polite literature in general. This broadening of the sphere of literature has increased the burdens of the grammarian, and made it seem to the author of the present work quite necessary that at least the salient features of popular language should be treated. Still greater attention has been paid to colloquial speech, and this study has been made more easy by the extensive literature of the naturalistic school, which has consciously striven to reproduce the language of actual life. Indeed, an earnest attempt has been made to treat the different styles of speech and to define as carefully as possible their proper boundaries. Altho, in general, matters pertaining to style belong to rhetoric, a large number of the points in question belong strictly to grammar. Just as each locality has its particular dialect, so has each style its own individual grammatical forms. One style requires a genitive, another the accusative, one style a strong verb, another a weak one, &c. The conservative literary language clings to old grammatical forms, while colloquial speech prefers newer, more regular ones. Foreigners are particularly liable to stumble here and the native German grammarian in his quite uniform recommendation of the older more dignified inflection may lead English-speaking students astray. The conservative German grammarian may be pardoned for his zeal in defending the decaying forms of the language. To the foreigner, however, who is not able, as is a native, to discover the misguided enthusiasm of the grammarian, many of these lauded forms are very misleading, as they represent the language of the past, or of poetry, or elevated discourse. Even the great learned works of the best German scholars give the student only too often erroneous ideas of the present state of the language, so great is their zeal in unfolding the usage of earlier periods and so strong their apathy towards the questions of to-day. These decaying forms are thruout this work always treated as such and not recommended as models of present usage. To every people and every generation language is bequeathed, not as an article of antiquarian interest that must remain untouched and be carefully kept unchanged, but as the most useful and plastic of things, that which is connected with all that is interesting in life and which can be readily adapted to the

new and changing needs of the generation. Also with regard to new forms and constructions,

marian, in every instance there is a note after such new forms indicating that they are not approved by certain grammarians.

unduly work in this direction.

The illustrative sentences used in this book are in most part taken directly from the literature of the language. In a number of cases where the cited sentence is long or intricate, parts not necessary to the thought of the sentence have been omitted. Thus sentences sometimes appear as complete which in the original are only parts of sentences. It is hoped, however, that this liberty will be pardoned on pedagogical grounds and for economic reasons, especially as otherwise not the slightest liberties have been taken with the authors' language, and great care has been employed to follow closely the text of the authorized prints, and wherever possible the latest

spoken language. It was not thought necessary to cite always the author in case of common usage, tho in many interesting sentences this is done. The authors' names are however given

convincing, but seemed to offer the proposed solution. In a number of instances where general misconceptions prevail a fuller presentation of the facts was made, contrary to the general plan of the work. In a number of instances also three representative authors are cited, one from the

particular style, section of the country, or a part of the period, a short statement of the facts is always made and a representative author cited. In certain parts of the book, however, as in the treatment of the noun, the strong verb, and portions of the syntax, no authors could be cited, altho these portions rest upon a collection of facts as extensive as the others. These materials can only be used in a dictionary.

The great majority of quotations have been taken from common prose. The usual practice in a book of this kind, especially in the hands of an inexperienced student, is to take from the German friends of years ago. Their Goethe and Schiller grammar should not only be to show the power of the language, but also to show its life in its varied aspects. At the close of his first youthful conception of the work—that of giving a faithful picture of the language as it is written and spoken to day—has not been completely realized. The linguistic phenomena presented by the language are so numerous and so varied that it is impossible to give a full title to stand upon

who could not restrain the irresistible impulse to twitch the muscles of the face at the unfamiliar sound of his. Their Goethe and Schiller seemed inexpressibly c. Their Goethe and Schiller be to show the power of the language, but also to show its life in its varied aspects. At the close of his first youthful conception of the work—that of giving a faithful picture of the language as it is written and spoken to day—has not been completely realized. The linguistic phenomena presented by the language are so numerous and so varied that it is impossible to give a full title to stand upon his work, s of the language as gathered i crature, nevertheless much of that which is good in it is due directly to the labors of many scholars who have thrown light upon the different phases of the study, such as Grimm, Vernaleken, Andresen, Heyne, Sanders, Paul, Wilmanns, Matthias, Wunderlich, Behaghel, Sütterlin, Minor, Vietor, Engelen, Blatz, Heintze, Hempl, Valentine, and others. The school grammars of Lyon, Weiße, Brandt, Thomas, Bierwirth, Eve Aue, Beresford-Webb, Fasnacht, also the notes of Mr Wolstenholme in his annotated school texts, have furnished valuable assistance. The author feels himself especially indebted to the author of the manuscript or parts of it, and by encouragement what it is. Professor I ch toward making the book. H C G von Jagemann, of

Harvard; Professor Gustav F. Gruener, of Yale; Professor George Hempl, of the University of Michigan; Professor C. H. Grandgent, of Harvard; Professor Camillo von Klenze, of the University of Chicago; Professor James T. Hatfield, of Northwestern University; Professors Ernst Voss and Edwin Roedder, of the University of Wisconsin; and Dr. Francis Wood, of the University of Chicago. The author finds it very difficult to define the full amount of his indebtedness to his colleague Mr. Georg Edward. For years Mr. Edward has by his accurate knowledge of his native language and literature assisted the author at critical points and kept him away from gross blundering. The author feels the same deep gratitude toward Professor Collitz, who gave encouragement and support at a time of great discouragement, when it appeared that the work could never be carried to a successful close.

In conclusion, the author recalls the helpful services of Mr. William Klingebiehl, of Clutier, Iowa, in the earlier draft of the grammar, also the kindness of the authorities of the Public Library of Chicago and the Public Library of Cincinnati, and last but not least the valuable aid rendered by the following scholars in the reading of the proofs: his colleagues Professor James T. Hatfield, Dr. Marcus Simpson, and Mr. Georg Edward; Professor Starr Willard Cutting and Dr. Francis Wood, of the University of Chicago; Professor William Wirtz, of Parsons College (Fairfield, Iowa); Dr. Fred. C. Hicks, of Monmouth College; Professor Charles R. Keyes, of Cornell College (Mt. Vernon, Iowa); Professor Elfrieda Hochbaum, of Wells College; the following students in Northwestern University: Mr. Walter E. Roloff, Mr. Friedrich Ruff, and Miss Hedwig H. Hochbaum. A number of their remarks upon the proofs have been embodied in the Grammar. The careful work of the Oxford University Press has rendered comparatively easy the efforts to present a faithful text.

EVANSTON, ILLINOIS,  
April, 1904.

## REVISED EDITION

This edition has been thoroly revised and considerably enlarged. It is especially gratifying to report that upon the basis of a careful reading of a large number of periodicals and books from recent German literature it has been possible in many cases to define more accurately present usage. In some instances it has been necessary to reverse the decisions of the first edition. The author has had but one aim before him, namely to present the facts of the language and not to collect facts for the purpose of trying to establish favorite grammatical theories. Hence he has not hesitated to change his position when the facts seemed to demand it. Wherever it was not possible to attain to certainty he has frankly indicated it, as he believes this attitude of doubt is better than the misleading confidence displayed by many grammarians. In a very large number of cases the language has not yet assumed final form and time alone will bring rhythm and harmony.

The book has been enlarged by the addition of new material, not by multiplying the examples of the first edition. Indeed, on the other hand, much of the original illustrative material has been removed. Moreover, just before the manuscript of the new edition was put into the hands of the printer much of the new illustrative matter was cut away. This procedure has the great disadvantage that it deprives the scholar of the evidence which has led to the conclusions reached, but it has brought nearer realization the original aim to present a comprehensive view of the forms of German expression. On the other hand, the views presented in the original edition have been greatly modified, for seventeen years of further intensive study under the beneficent influence of maturer years and a wider range of observation have changed the author and his work considerably, at least he feels the new issue as quite a different book. It is a record of striking inner change and development. May it be as stimulating and helpful to the reader as the experiences involved in its making have been to the author!

This edition, as also the first, rests upon a study of books and periodicals representing the different styles of literature. It might seem at the first glance that the novelists and dramatists are more fully represented than the writers on history, science, philology, theology, law, etc. A more careful inspection, however, will show that these works have not been slighted. They appear less in these pages for the simple reason that they best represent the higher unity of speech and present few irregularities. In the novel and drama we find the irregular beat of common life varying widely in different provinces and social strata and moreover often disturbed by the exciting influences of passionate feeling. It would be folly to attempt to give an absolutely complete picture of these linguistic phenomena along with the countless forces involved. Hence it should not be surprising if the author's hand has often failed him, but the study has been to him a pleasing one and he has never tired in the struggle to draw the outlines so that they might give at least a faint idea of this complex life.

Differing from his attitude in the first edition, the author in the present edition after another tour of investigation in Germany itself is inclined to recommend the stage pronunciation rather than choice North German or the choice pronunciation of any one section, as the feeling is slowly but surely gaining ground that the standard of the stage represents the best German of our time.

In the preparation of this edition the recent philological literature has been carefully studied. The author desires to add to the list of scholars mentioned in the preface of the first edition as the sources of much valuable material the following names which will suggest at least in part his increased indebtedness. Jespersen, Bremer, Wundt, Marty, Schuchardt, Brugmann, Wegener,

Joseph Schatz, Sommer, Luck, Edmund Mensing, Jellinek, Gustav Krüger, Sweet, Sattler, Poutsma, J. Franck, Aug. Fritsch, Franz Saran, Blümel, Deutschbein, Pollak, Molz, John Rius, Aug. Vogel, Kluge, Aron, and a very large number of others, materials to the book. Much assistance has been rendered by scholars mentioned in the preface of the first edition.

For personal assistance thanks are principally due to Mr. Georg Edward, the author's old friend and former colleague. The traces of his influence are abundantly manifest everywhere throughout the book. It is difficult for the author to state his exact indebtedness here to a man who for twenty-three years was almost daily and at periods almost hourly a source of valuable information. The records of scholarship offer few such cases of sacrificing friendship and disinterested learning. Mr. Edward tho' not a philologist possesses as a native German that which is lacking to the author—an *inborn* feeling for the meaning of German words and constructions which has been rendered extraordinarily keen by a long and intimate acquaintance with the literature of the language in its varied phases. A large number of fine observations have been contributed by Professor Edwin C. Roedder of the University of Wisconsin which have greatly enriched the book. The work also owes much to Professor Gustav L. Karsten, the late editor of the *Journal of English and German Philology*, who has rendered valuable assistance at many places.

G. von Jagemann, Professor of German at the University of Indiana, has rendered valuable assistance at many places. Professors Julius Bernstorff and Hans Kurath of Northwestern University, Dr. Kurath has contributed a large number of valuable observations and suggestions which have been embodied in the *Phonology*. The author wishes to express his thanks here in general for the many suggestions that have come to him by mail or in the form of book reviews. Dr. Kurath without desiring to hold him responsible for the errors of the work, he does not indorse. The author, of course, has the greatest credit in his studies. The author also desires to express his thanks here in general for the many suggestions that have come to him by mail or in the form of book reviews.

The following persons have rendered valuable assistance in the reading of the various proofs: Bernstorff and Hans Kurath of Northwestern University, C. Roedder of the University of Wisconsin, Vernon Iowa, Mr. Georg Edward, Professor William Michaelis, proof reader of the *Phonology*. Much credit is due for the accurate text.

LAANSTON, ILLINOIS,  
March, 1922.



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	I
THE ALPHABET . . . . .	5

## PART I

### PHONOLOGY AND ORTHOGRAPHY

BEST PRONUNCIATION . . . . .	7
SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS AND THEIR CLASSIFICATION . . . . .	7
FORMATION OF SOUNDS . . . . .	12
QUANTITY OF VOWELS . . . . .	13
PRONUNCIATION OF VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS . . . . .	17
MUTATION OF VOWELS . . . . .	24
PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANTS . . . . .	25
BRIEF HISTORY OF GERMAN CONSONANTS, THEIR RELATION TO THOSE OF OTHER LANGUAGES . . . . .	36
SYLLABLES IN INDIVIDUAL WORDS . . . . .	41
SYLLABLES IN CONNECTED DISCOURSE . . . . .	43
SEPARATION OF SYLLABLES AT THE END OF A LINE . . . . .	43
ACCENT . . . . .	43
PITCH OR TONE . . . . .	55
USE OF CAPITAL LETTERS . . . . .	56
APOSTROPHE . . . . .	57

## PART II

### THE PARTS OF SPEECH THEIR GRAMMATICAL FORMS, USE, NATURE

INFLECTION OF THE ARTICLES . . . . .	58
USE OF THE ARTICLES . . . . .	60
INFLECTION OF COMMON NOUNS . . . . .	70
DIFFERENTIATION OF SUBSTANTIVE FORMS . . . . .	94
INFLECTION OF PROPER NOUNS . . . . .	97
INFLECTION OF TITLES . . . . .	102
PLURAL OF NAMES OF PERSONS AND PLACES . . . . .	105
PECULIARITIES IN THE INFLECTION OF NOUNS . . . . .	107
DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVE-SUBSTANTIVE . . . . .	112
PECULIARITIES OF NUMBER IN NOUNS . . . . .	112
GENDER OF NOUNS . . . . .	120
INFLECTION OF ADJECTIVES . . . . .	126
INFLECTION OF DESCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVES . . . . .	126
COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS . . . . .	138
INFLECTION OF LIMITING ADJECTIVES . . . . .	147
NUMERALS . . . . .	147
PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES . . . . .	153
INFLECTION OF PRONOUNS . . . . .	177
PERSONAL PRONOUNS . . . . .	177
REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	186
RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS . . . . .	188
INDEFINITE PRONOUNS . . . . .	189
INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	191
RELATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	193
CONDITIONAL RELATIVE . . . . .	206
CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	207
STEREOTYPED PRONOMINAL FORMS . . . . .	208
THE VERB . . . . .	209
CLASSIFICATION . . . . .	209
ASPECT . . . . .	210
TENSE . . . . .	211
MOOD . . . . .	215
SUBJUNCTIVE . . . . .	216
SUBJUNCTIVE OF PRESENT TENSE FORMS . . . . .	217
SUBJUNCTIVE OF PAST TENSE FORMS . . . . .	227

	PAGE
INDIRECT DISCOURSE	237
INDIRECT FORM	237
INDEPENDENT FORM	245
	247
VERB	249
VERB	252
SIMPLE FORMS OF <i>haben</i> , <i>sein</i> , <i>werden</i>	254
GENERAL REMARKS RESPECTING THE SIMPLE FORMS	255
VERBALS	259
THE MODAL VERBALS	259
PARTICIPLES	261
INFINITIVE	268
FORMATION OF COMPOUND TENSES	282
USE OF <i>haben</i> AND <i>sein</i>	287
PASSIVE VOICE	295
GRADATION CLASSES	300
IRREGULAR CONJUGATION	315
SPECIAL USES OF THE MODAL AUXILIARIES	316
CONJUGATION OF COMPOUND VERBS	323
SEPARABLE COMPOUNDS	323
INSEPARABLE COMPOUNDS	327
COMPOUNDS SEPARABLE OR INSEPARABLE	327
VERBS INDIRECTLY COMPOUNDED	329
REFLEXIVE VERBS	329
IMPERSONAL VERBS	337
PRONOUNS	338
ADVERBS	338
PREPOSITIONS	355
CONJUNCTIONS	387
INTERJECTIONS	400

## PART III

## WORD FORMATION

PRIMITIVES	402
DERIVATIVE SUBSTANTIVES FORMED BY SUFFIX	403
DERIVATIVE ADJECTIVES FORMED BY SUFFIX	417
DERIVATIVE VERBS FORMED BY SUFFIX	426
DERIVATIVE ADVERBS	429
FORMATION OF PREPOSITIONS	430
FORMATION OF NOUNS, ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS BY MEANS OF PREFIX	431
FORMATION OF VERBS BY MEANS OF PREFIX	434
FORMATION OF COMPOUNDS AND GROUP WORDS	441

## PART IV

## SYNTAX

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE ITS PARTS AND KINDS	455
SUBJECT	456
PREDICATE	462
AGREEMENT BETWEEN SUBJECT AND PREDICATE	468
SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS OF A SENTENCE	474
ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE MODIFIERS	474
ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE AND PARTICIPLE	474
ATTRIBUTIVE GENITIVE	476
APPOSITION	485
PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE AS MODIFIER OF A NOUN	487
	488
	489
	489
	489
	493
	503
PREPOSITIONAL OBJECT	507
	517

	PAGE
DOUBLE OBJECT . . . . .	523
DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE . . . . .	523
ACCUSATIVE AND GENITIVE . . . . .	526
DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE . . . . .	535
ACCUSATIVE OF THE PERSON OR THING AND A PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE . . . . .	542
DATIVE OF THE PERSON AND A PREPOSITIONAL PHRASE . . . . .	546
DOUBLE PREPOSITIONAL OBJECT . . . . .	546
SYNOPSIS . . . . .	546
ADVERBIAL MODIFIERS . . . . .	551
INDEPENDENT ELEMENTS . . . . .	551
CLASSES OF SENTENCES . . . . .	553
COMPOUND SENTENCE . . . . .	555
COMPLEX SENTENCE, SUBORDINATE CLAUSES . . . . .	557
SUBJECT CLAUSE . . . . .	559
PREDICATE CLAUSE . . . . .	563
ADJECTIVE CLAUSE . . . . .	562
OBJECT CLAUSE . . . . .	566
ADVERBIAL CLAUSE . . . . .	570
CLAUSE OF PLACE . . . . .	571
CLAUSE OF TIME . . . . .	571
CLAUSE OF MANNER . . . . .	573
CLAUSE OF DEGREE . . . . .	575
CLAUSE OF CAUSE . . . . .	577
CLAUSE OF CONDITION OR EXCEPTION . . . . .	579
CLAUSE OF CONCESSION . . . . .	581
CLAUSE OF PURPOSE . . . . .	583
CLAUSE OF MEANS . . . . .	584
WORD-ORDER . . . . .	584
NORMAL ORDER . . . . .	587
INVERTED ORDER . . . . .	591
QUESTION ORDER . . . . .	595
TRANSPOSED ORDER . . . . .	597
INDEX OF GERMAN WORDS, SUFFIXES, ETC. . . . .	599
INDEX OF SUBJECTS . . . . .	618

# INTRODUCTION

## THE GERMAN LANGUAGE

The Germanic group of languages belongs to the Indo-European family. It descended from the same original language with the Indo-Iranic (Lithuanian, Latvian, Slavic (Russian, Polish, Bohemian or Czech), Celtic, Greek, and Latin, from the list of which have come most of the languages of the Germanic people before its final breaking up into different tribes speaking languages all closely related but more or less differentiated is usually called pre-Germanic. No

land, and sections of other countries  
West. The divided by political  
treated as such as that the term  
South, etc., etc.  
languages by  
still richer  
following three periods:  
1. Old (Old) High German begins with the eighth century and extends to 1100. In this period Latin was the language usually

of military life is still in the South, but the middle part of the empire also begins to play an important rôle.

M.H.G. is distinguished by the decay of the full, rich vowels *a, o, u* in the inflectional endings to the monotonous *e* (pl. of tag *dag*) *N* tagē (O.H.G. tagr), *G* tagē (O.H.G. tago), *D* tagen (O.H.G. tagum), *A* tagē (O.H.G. taga). This reduction of the vowels in the inflectional endings was due to the tendency already discernible in O.H.G. to pronounce the vowels of the root syllables more forcibly and give them relatively much greater length than the vowels of the other syllables.

In general the period of N.H.G. may, from the standpoint of language, be divided into three parts. The first part, from 1350-1750, which may be called *early N.H.G.*, is a period of considerable change and growth. The second part, from 1750-1810, may be called the *classical period*, by reason of the classical beauty and strength of the works of the great masters Lessing, Goethe, and Schiller, and in less measure of other writers of this time. Language questions had already in the latter part of the early N.H.G. period been earnestly discussed and literature had already been coming about. The great measure a firm standard of speech.

late N.H.G. inequalities in the language, however, still far from being

The center of literary life shifts within the course of the early N.H.G. period towards the middle of Germany, and one man, Martin Luther, plays a very important rôle in the development of the language. Latin is still much used, but the stirring questions of the Reformation brought the mother-tongue into prominent use, and gradually Latin retired to the rear. The year 1691 was the last one in which more Latin books appeared than German. Luther's bold stand for German has had far-reaching effects. His translation of the Bible into German, final edition in 1545, was his most valuable contribution in this direction. This great and successful task, however, was not an easy one. Latin had so long been the medium of communication in the higher forms of literature that the native language was left largely to the common people. Thus under this neglect it fell more and more into dialects. The books that were published in German before Luther's time bore strong dialectic traces. The only common language in Germany was the official language as found in laws, legal documents, decrees, etc. The oldest law-book, *der Sachsenspiegel*, appeared in Low German in 1230, *der Schwabenspiegel* in 1260, a High German work modeled upon the *Sachsenspiegel*. The High German official language gradually came into wide use in official life and in business. Thus the native language, tho neglected by the best thinkers, had now long been used by jurists, government officials, and tradesmen. This official language was now also quite generally used by those who wrote in German for a general public, but it was strongly modified everywhere under local influences. The confusion was increased by the fact that the people of North Germany spoke a form of Low German, a quite different language indeed. Luther desired to be generally understood, and wrote in the High German official language. He employed a somewhat modified form of the official language used in Saxony, which, tho High German and thus closely related to the speech of the South, has a distinctly Middle German character. In Luther's writings this official language shows traces of the influence of the neighboring Middle German chanceries, particularly those of the northeastern section of his homeland of Thuringia, but it also has a few distinctly South German features as found in the imperial chancery and a few signs of Low German influences received from the common people of Wittenberg. Thus the language in which Luther wrote was largely Middle German with a few South German features and a few Low German elements, and was accordingly without the extremes of either the South or the North, and had something in common with both, altho it was much nearer that of the South. Luther's translation was in general well received, and became with respect to its language the basis of modern German. As it was essentially the language of Protestantism it helped to extend the use of High German into the northern Low German countries, which were Protestant, and for the same reason was opposed in the Catholic South, which regarded the language of the imperial chancery as a better standard. It is easy, however, to exaggerate the influence of Luther and the Reformation. The growing cultural and trade relations of the North with the Midland were very important factors in spreading High German in the low lands. Luther's form of German, altho in large part a South German language, met in some sections of the South, especially in Switzerland, strong resistance on account of its great divergence from the native dialect. But on account of the evident necessity of a literary standard, and the leadership of Middle Germany in the mental and literary life of the nation, Luther's language, modified at many points by Middle, South, and even Low German influences, gradually spread over all parts of the country, slowly assuming a more uniform character until about two hundred years after Luther's time it attained in general its present form. The Low German (*Plattdeutsch*) of our own time is a mere dialect or a group of dialects, and tho used by several talented authors in their best works, it has in general relinquished to High German the pulpit, school, and press. Low German writers, however, who at present occupy a commanding place in literature, are fond of interspersing into the literary language words of Low German origin with High German inflection, or rather they allow their characters to do this in accordance with actual usage in everyday life. On the other hand, South German authors are contributing to the wealth of this same literary language by introducing words from the rich stores of the South German dialects.

In a part of the N.H.G. period, especially in the eighteenth century, High German was threatened by French, which was much used at the different princely courts and by the upper classes of people in general. The phenomenal achievements, however, of Goethe in literature, of German scholars in science, of German business men in large enterprises, the struggles upon the bloody battlefields of the last two centuries, have greatly increased and solidified the feeling of nationality and thoroly established German speech in all the strata of society and in all forms of literature. There is at present a lively interest manifested by Germans in the process of the purification of their native language from foreign words which remind them of their former dependence. This movement, which was begun in the sixteenth century, was carried on with great enthusiasm in the seventeenth century, and off and on ever since has experienced periods of revival of active interest, is not merely an expression of superficial pride, but is a general and deep joy in the development of the mother-tongue in its purity and strength. The naturalistic school of literature has also introduced into literary speech the fresh tones of life, of which it stood in such great need. The Germans of Austria and Switzerland are taking part in these movements, and are contributing their full share.

N.H.G. is in general distinguished from M.H.G. by the following changes. (1) The most far-reaching change was the lengthening of all short vowels in open syllables: M.H.G. *dīser*, N.H.G. *dieser*. This development first appeared in the North in the twelfth century and later spread southward, but has not even yet affected the native speech of the extreme Southwest: Grä'ber, Swiss dialect for the present literary form Grä'ber. For fuller discussion see 4. 1. *b. Note*; 4. 2. *B. 5. Note* (1); 198. *Historical Note*; 199. *Historical Note*. (2) The change of the long M.H.G.

vowels *i, u* (pro *y*) into the diphthongs *ei, au, eu*. M.H.G. *zît, hân, hân* have become N.H.G. *Zeit, Haus, heute*. This diphthongization began in the twelfth century in the Southwest and is intimately connected with the spread of Austrian and Bohemian law northward from the year 1336 on. The diphthongization has also taken place in English in case of *i* and *u*, of course quite independently, *wife* (wif) from O.E. *wif*, *house* from O.E. *hûs*. In Germany the old long vowels are still preserved in Low German, also in dialects of the Southwest except before a strongly articulated consonant, where they are shortened (L.G.) *Hûs, hûser, sâr* (= *sauer*), *Tid* (= *Zeit*); (Swab.) *Hûs, Hûser, sâr*, but *Zit, hûl, (-heue)*, etc., as the vowel stands before *t*. (3) The change of the M.H.G. diphthongs *ie, uo, ue* into the long vowels *ie (= i), ô, û*. M.H.G. *dief, huf, gruene* have become *Dieb, Huf, grün*. This monophthongization began in the thirteenth century in Middle German, but did not become established in the literary language until Middle German much later had become paramount. The old diphthongs *ie, uo, ue* are still preserved in S.G. dialect, usually in altered forms: *ie, uo, ue* (or *io*). Bavarian dialect occasionally has *o* as a final element in these diphthongs: *io, uo, uo* (or *io*). These dialect forms occur of course in popular songs: *Behütet* (for *behütet*) *dich Gottes war zu schen gewesen* (Schöfel & Trappeler, *Lieder jünger Weiber*, N.H.). (4) The development of the M.H.G. diphthongs *ei, ou* into the N.H.G. diphthongs *ai* or *ä* (the former), *au*, *ea* or *ä* (the latter). M.H.G. *bein, mere, troum, rinde, trawen* have become *Bein, Mal, Traum, Freude, träumen*. Although M.H.G. *ei* is still written as the first element of the diphthong has in fact developed into *a*. The new diphthongs first appeared in Bavarian toward the close of the thirteenth century and gradually became established in the literary language. In the dialects we find a different development here: (5) M.H.G. *e* and *i* have become *o* in *Hölle, wille, wille, wille*, etc., as the vowel stands in the neighborhood of *l, sch, w*. *Hölle* (M.H.G. *zwell*), etc. In a few cases also *o* becomes *u*, especially after *w*. *Wölfe* are still for *u*. In dialect the *o* feature is found in the unrounding of *o* and *û*. See 12. 1. a, 8. 1. a, and 126. 1. (6) M.H.G. *u* and *û* have under Middle German influence in most cases become *o*. *Sohn* (M.H.G. *lûne*), *Sommer* (M.H.G. *summe*), etc. *u* and *û* have become *sch* after *t*, has become *sch*. M.H.G. *schl, smetze, schl, swert, hîren*, have become N.H.G. *Schlaf, Schmerz, schnell, Schwert, herrschen*. Initial *s* has become *sch* also before *p* and *t*, as in *sprechen, sehen*, but this development has not yet found expression in the orthography. See also 40. 2. g (1). (8) There has been a change of vowel in the singular of the present tense in certain strong verbs: *ich nehme, du nimmst, er nimmt*. See 201. f.

Since Luther's day many more or less important changes have appeared in the literary language

one vowel is found throughout singular and plural. Thus *ich fand, wir fanden* of Luther's day have become *ich fand, wir fanden*. For other changes in the strong verb see 201. f. (3) Unmutation (see 208. 1. a) has under South German influence disappeared in a few verbs, the vowel of the infinitive now standing in all the forms of the verb. Thus Luther's *ich setze, past ich satzte*, have become *ich setze, ich setzte*. (4) Unaccented *e* has dropped out in a multitude of words. Luther's *hören, sorget*, have become *hören, sorgt*. On the other hand Luther drops final *e* very freely, where it must now stand: *der erste(e), dasselbig(e), Tag* (see. pl. instead of *Tage*), *Stimm* (instead of *Stimme*), etc. Luther here often fluctuates between the full form in *-e* and the shorter form without it, just as there was fluctuation here in the Middle Ages itself, the northern portion usually employing the fuller, the southern portion preferring the shorter forms. Later the fuller forms gained the ascendancy. (6) In Luther's language M.G. *Widwe, schnappen* occur instead of the regular High German *Witwe* and *pf*, but in the forms prevailed. *Widwe, schnappen*, now *Witwe, schnappen*, to mutate more than the South, hence in the days of M.G. influence this usage was followed in a number of cases where later S.G. forms gained the victory. See 28. A (3rd par.) for examples. (7) The East Middle German *qu* is occasionally found in Luther's language where *zw* is now employed. See 40. 2. e (3rd par.) for an example. (8) At points under S.G. influence, *haben* in compound tenses has been replaced by *sien*. See 101. II 3 A and Note A. *u*, not *v* as former

written  
often  
le now  
mutated

nouns with capitals. In the learned literature of our day, there is an attempt being made to restore the usage of a still older period, when capitals were used only in the case of proper nouns and at the beginning of stanzas. This learned literature usually, however, makes one exception, namely that sentences begin with capitals. There does not seem to be at present much outlook for a triumph of this usage.

The orthography, which has gradually developed since Luther's day, has had since 1880 a formidable rival. In that year Prussia, the largest German state, issued a little book containing rules for a reform of the orthography. Also other states had adopted a reformed spelling, but the Prussian orthography naturally found the widest support. School-books followed closely the proposed reforms; books, newspapers, and periodicals designed for the general public held more or less conservatively to the old order of things; scholars dissatisfied with the lack of thoroughness in the reforms went still further in the direction of conforming the orthography to the spoken language. In 1901 a few additional changes in the direction of simplicity were proposed by an orthographical conference, which were approved by the governments of the German Empire, Austria, and Switzerland, and appeared in the Prussian rules of 1902. Thus these movements for reform culminated in an official orthography for the German-speaking peoples. The newspapers and other periodicals responded to this united effort of the governments more readily than to the first independent movements. They now quite generally employ the official orthography and support cordially the minor further simplifications which have sprung up almost spontaneously out of the official rules of 1902 and have found a place in the editions of the official orthography published later by the different states and in the widely used handy manual *Duden, Rechtschreibung der deutschen Sprache und der Fremdwörter*.

The little confusion that still remains in the orthography will gradually disappear, but there still continues a difference of usage with respect to the style of the letters. The so-called German alphabet, which gradually arose in early times among the monks thruout Europe as a modified form of the Latin alphabet, was continued after printing was invented, but was later dropped by other nations, who returned to the Latin letters. In the German-speaking territory the German alphabet is still in general use in literature intended for a wide public, such as the daily press and popular books and periodicals. On the other hand, in scientific literature and advanced studies in general, where all mental work is felt as a contribution to the thought of the world, the Latin characters find growing favor as a symbolic tie which binds all men together and as an alphabet with eminent practical advantages by reason of its universality. Curiously enough the Latin alphabet is also widely used in advertisements and the market reports, stock quotations, and other commercial items in the newspapers and popular periodicals.

In our time, another interesting process is going on. The North has at last gained the political and literary ascendancy in Germany, and it in its turn, after South and Middle Germany have each in their turn had their day, is moulding and fashioning the language. Maritime terms from the Low German coasts and other North German speech-forms are finding their way into the literature and, what is much more important, the pronunciation of the North, which is in general characterized by a pronounced tendency to ignore more and more older phonetic conditions and conform as closely as possible to the *printed form*, is gradually making itself felt, indeed has become the most representative form of the spoken language, as the pronunciation of the stage, the only generally recognized standard, is in large measure based upon it. Thus the literary German of our day is the product of all three parts of Germany. South and Middle Germany created it, and North Germany is modifying its sounds, and is enriching its vocabulary.

# GERMAN ALPHABET

5

GERMAN TYPE	GERMAN SCRIPT.	GERMAN NAME	GERMAN TYPE	GERMAN SCRIPT.	GERMAN NAME
A a	<i>A</i>	a:	N n	<i>N</i>	en
B b	<i>B</i>	be:	D o	<i>O</i>	o:
C c	<i>C</i>	tse:	P p	<i>P</i>	pe:
D d	<i>D</i>	de:	Q q	<i>Q</i>	ku
E e	<i>E</i>	e:	R r	<i>R</i>	er
F f	<i>F</i>	ef	S s*	<i>S</i>	es
G g	<i>G</i>	ge:	T t	<i>T</i>	te:
H h	<i>H</i> or <i>G</i>	ha:	U u	<i>U</i>	u:
I i	<i>I</i>	i:	V v	<i>V</i>	fao
J j	<i>J</i> or <i>f</i>	jot	W w	<i>W</i>	ve:
K k	<i>K</i>	ka:	X x	<i>X</i>	iks
L l	<i>L</i>	el	Y y	<i>Y</i> or <i>y</i>	ypsi lon
M m	<i>M</i>	em	Z z	<i>Z</i>	tset

## MODIFIED VOWELS †

A a D o U u Au au

*A* *a* *O* *o* *U* *u* *Au* *au*

## COMPOUND CONSONANTS

ch tse-/ha c tse-/ka ph pe-/ha th te-/ha b te-/tset sch es-tse-/ha St es-/te ft es-/tei ff es-/es ft es-/tset

*ch* *c* *ph* *th* *b* *sch* *St* *ft* *ff* *ft*

\*s at the end, † at the beginning and middle, in Roman letters both represented by s.

† In naming the modified vowels say e, o, y, or say mutated a, &c.

‡ For use of ff and ft see 4. 2 D. a. In Roman letters ff is represented by B. Some use ss for both ff and ft



O Künstler fondergleichen, wie im Land  
 Auf des Gedulds selbst das Haub' gelaunt!  
 O zweites Künstler, wie im Lich' die Dicht'  
 Den Fall markmüthig, der das Ge'müth triff't:  
 Nicht Willkür schuf das Wort, noch wär's ob'soll,  
 So ist das Geiste's notwend'ges Symbol.  
 (Gnibel.)

So gibt eine formelle Forderung eine  
 innere Forderung. Auf der materiellen  
 Forderung in einer Künstlerhand ruht,  
 da ruht er auf der Forderung in  
 der menschlichen Form. Das Ringen  
 kommt dem Geiste's wiederum zu gute  
 und erfüllt den Willen der Zweckkraft  
 in der Form, wofür es ihn zu erschaffen pflegt.  
 (Bismarck.)

## PART I.

### PHONOLOGY AND ORTHOGRAPHY.

1. *Best Pronunciation* In Germany there is no standard of pronunciation that is acknowledged and absolutely followed by the mass of intelligent people. The German stage has established fixed rules for pronunciation which many scholars and enthusiasts regard as a standard that may some day be generally recognized as the ideal and thus become to the spoken language what the literary language is now to colloquial speech. There is no doubt that this standard has influenced the choice pronunciation of different sections and that it will continue to exert its influence, but it has not yet acquired such a commanding position as to indicate that it will soon supplant the living language. The section-ization of the living language are very marked, German and a South German pronunciation. The following short treatise takes into account the pronunciation of different sections, but deals principally with colloquial North German as spoken by the mass of intelligent people, as nearly as such a common standard can be ascertained under the existing circumstances. Many Germans may differ in particulars as to this standard. The stage pronunciation is also treated here for the benefit of those who prefer an ideal standard that rises above sectional usage. In most particulars it is quite near to choice North German.

### SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS AND THEIR CLASSIFICATION

2. *A Sounds of the Letters* The growth of letters has not kept pace with that of sounds, hence one letter may represent several sounds. Phonetic symbols are used in the following treatise to distinguish the different sounds of the letters. In the following table only an approximate equivalent is given for each German sound, the more accurate description being reserved for fuller treatment in the succeeding articles. The first number after the phonetic symbol refers to an article which gives a more accurate description of the sound. The second number refers to an article which gives the various spellings for the sound. Wherever comparisons are made with English without further qualification the pronunciation of the northern states is meant. S. E. indicates the Southern English of England.

SPELLINGS	PHONETIC SYMBOLS	ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS
ä	a (16 2 (a), 16 2 (b))	as a in father, but shorter
a, aa, ah	a (16 1 (a) 16 1 (b))	as a in father
ae = a (26 A), in Dutch names = a (16 1 b (7)), else where = a + e Michael (mīçə el), Hexaeder (hɛksə 'e dən), Aeronaut (a e rɔ 'naot), etc		
ai	ae (23. 1)	as i in wife
ai = a + i (23 1 Note) in French words = ä (13 1 (b) (4)) and ä (14 (b))		
ain in French words	ẽ nasalized ɛ on the stage, in the North pro- nounced as ej See 25	

am, an in French words . . .

au . . . . .  
au =  $\bar{o}$  (18. 1. (b). (8)); = a + u  
(23. 2. *Note*).

aw =  $\bar{a}$  in *Shawl*; 33. 4. (4).

ay =  $\bar{a}i$ ; see 23. 1. (4).

ä . . . . .

ā, äh . . . . .

äu . . . . .

äu =  $\bar{a} + u$  (23. 3. *Note* 3).

b or bb . . . . .

b final or next a voiceless con-  
sonant = p.

c before front vowels (see 6. 1.  
(a)) = z (ts).

c in some French words =  
s (s); see 33. 2. (8).

ç = s (s).

c in some Italian words = tʃ  
(33. 4. (5)).

c elsewhere = k.

ch after au or a back vowel  
(see 6. 1. (b)).

ch after other vowels or after  
consonants in German  
words. . . . .

ch in foreign words; 32. 3. a.  
*Note*.

chs (=  $\check{c}h$  and  $\check{c}h\bar{s}$ ) = ks; see 30.  
3. (2).

ck after short vowels = k.

d or dd . . . . .

d final or next a voiceless con-  
sonant = t.

ě =  $\bar{a}$ .

ē, ee, eh . . . . .

e unaccented . . . . .

ê in French words =  $\bar{e}$ .

eau in French words =  $\bar{o}$ .

ee in English words =  $\bar{i}$ ; see 7.  
1. (b). (7).

ei =  $\bar{a}i$ ; in a number of foreign  
words = e + i: *Athe'ist*,  
*De'ismus*, &c.; in *Jockey*  
= e or ae; see 35. 5. (4).

ein in French words =  $\bar{e}$ : or  $\epsilon\eta$ ;  
see 25.

em, en in French words =  $\bar{a}$ : or  
 $\epsilon\eta$ ; see 25.

eo = e + o: *Theorie* (te·o·'Ri:)  
*Theodor* (te:o·do:R).

eu =  $\bar{a}u$ ; final or before a single  
consonant in French

$\bar{a}$ : nasalized a: on the  
stage, in the North pro-  
nounced as  $\epsilon\eta$ . See 25.

ao (23. 2) . . . . .

as ou in loud.

e (14. a; 14. b) . . . . .

as e in let.

e: (13. 1. (a); 13. 1. (b))

a prolonged e.

œ (23. 3) . . . . .

as oy in boy.

b (29; 30. 4) . . . . .

as b in bat.

x (32. 3. b).

ç (32. 3. a).

d (29; 30. 5) . . . . .

as d in day.

e: (11. 1. (a); 11. 1. (b))

as American a in  
dictate ('dik-  
tet, but in  
S. E. 'dikteit).

ə (21) . . . . .

as a in sofa.

words =  $\delta$  (12. 1. (b). (5));  
elsewhere in French words  
=  $\delta$  (15. (b). (2)); in cer-  
tain foreign words = e + u  
(23. 3. Note 2).

ey in proper names = ai; see  
23. 1. (3).

f . . . . .

g initial . . . . .

g medial after front vowels =  
j; see 35. 3. (2). The stage  
requires g here.

g medial after back vowels .

The stage requires g here.

g after front vowels finally or  
before a consonant in a  
suffix or an inflectional  
ending = ch in ich; see 29.

The stage requires k here.

g after back vowels finally or  
before a consonant in a  
suffix or an inflectional  
ending = ch in ach; see 29.

The stage requires k here.

g after n is silent; see 36. b.

g in some French words  
before e or i

g in some English words  
= dz (see 39. 4).

ge before back vowels in  
French words =  $\gamma$ ; see  
35. 5. (3).

gg medial after short vowel  
= g-g; see 30. 6. (3).

gg final = k.

ggi in some Italian words =  
dz; see 35. 5. (4).

gh = g.

gn in foreign words =  $\eta$ n,  
gn, and nj; see 36. c. (5).

gu before front vowels in  
foreign words = g; see  
30. 6. (4).

gy = dj in Hungarian words;  
see 39. 8.

h initial . . . . .

h elsewhere silent.

i . . . . .

i, ih . . . . .

i unaccented before a vowel

ie, ieh = i.

ie and iè in foreign words;  
see 7. 1. (b). Note 1.

ier in French words = je; or  
iæ; see 7. 1. (b). Note 1.

ier unaccented = iæ as in  
Spanier ('spa:nɪər).

f (32. 1; 33. 1) . . . . . as f in fine.

g (29; 30. 6) . . . . . as g in good.

g (34. 4; 35. 4).

z (34. 5; 35. 5. (2)) . . . as g in rouge.

h (28) . . . . . as h in hat.

i (9. (a); 9. (b)) . . . . . as i in pin.

i: (7. 1. (a); 7. 1. (b)) . . . as e in react.

ɪ (7. 2. (2nd par.)) . . . as American i in  
familiar.

ieu=ïe: as in *adieu*; =eu

23. 3. (5).

il, ill in French words; see  
39. 5.

im, in in French words= ē:  
or en; see 25.

j . . . . .

j in French words=French  
g before e or i; see 34.  
5; 35. 5. (1).

j in English words=dz;  
see 39. 4.

k . . . . .

l . . . . .

m . . . . .

n except before c, g, k, q, x .

n before c, g, k, q; see 36. c. (3)

ng=ŋ; see 36. b.

ö . . . . .

l' (39. 5).

j (34. 3; 34. 3) . . . . . as y in yes.

k (29; 30. 3) . . . . .

l (37. 1) . . . . .

m (36. a) . . . . .

n (36. a) . . . . .

ŋ (36. b; 36. c. (2), (3)) .

o (17. a; 17. b) . . . . .

o: (18. 1. a; 18. 1. b) . .

as k in kind.

as l in let.

as m in man.

as n in no.

as ng in singer.

as American o in

obey, potato or

S. E. o in rob.

as American o in

poetic or S. E. o

in obey.

oa in *Toast*=ō; elsewhere=  
o+a: *Klo'āke*, &c.

oe=ö (26. A); in L.G. names  
=ō (18. 1. (b). (5)); in  
Dutch words=ū (20. 1.  
(b). (8)); elsewhere=  
o+e: *Po'ēt*, &c.

oey=ō in *Oeynhausen* (12.  
1. b. (4)).

oi in L.G. names=ō (18. 1.  
(b). (6)); in L.G. words  
=eu (23. 3. (3)); in  
French words=o·a· or  
o·a (16. 1. (b). (5) and  
2. (b)); elsewhere=o·i:  
as in *Trapezo'id*, &c.

om, on in French words=  
ō: or on; see 25.

ou in French words=ū (20.  
1. (b). (7)); =ü (19. (b).  
(3)).

ow in L.G. and Eng. words  
=ō (18. 1. (b). (7)); in  
Slavic words=ov medi-  
ally and of finally or  
before a consonant; see  
33. 1. (6).

oy in foreign words =o·a·j  
(35. 3. (4)); =eu (23.  
3. (4)).

ö . . . . .

ō, ōh . . . . .

p . . . . .

ō: nasalized o: (25).

ə rounded e; see 15.  
(a); 15. (b).

ē rounded e; see 12.  
1. a; 12. 1. (b).

p (29; 30. 1) . . . . .

as p in pen.

pf=p+f; 39. 1.

ph, pph=f; see 33. 1. (4), (5).

qu=kw and k; see 39. 7.

+r s (=s and f), ss (=ff), ß (=f); see 33. 2  
s initial and medial; 35. 2. (1), (2).

sch . . . . .

sh in English words=sch.

sp, st initial in stem syllable

=sp, st; 33. 4. (2);

=sp, st; see 33. 2 (4).

t, th, tt, dt. . . . .

ti=tsf; see 39. 3. (10).

tz=z; see 39. 3. (2), (3).

ü . . . . .

ū, uh . . . . .

u=v (35. 1. (5), (6), (7));  
in French words=ū.

ue=ü (26. A); in the name  
Kotzebue=ū; in French  
words=ū (8. 1. (b). (6));  
elsewhere=u+e:Du'ell.

ui=ū (8. 1. (b). (4)); =eu  
(23. 3. (6)); =vi: (35. 1.  
(7)); =the rising diph-  
thongs üi: üi; see 20. 2;  
elsewhere=u+i: Luise  
(lu:'iza), Luitpold (lu:  
rtpolt)

um, un in French words = ā;  
or ɔ̃; see 25.

uo=u: in Kuoni (name).

ū . . . . .

ū, ūh . . . . .

v=f; see 33. 1. (2), (3).

v medial in Low German  
words=w; see 35. 1. (4).

v initial and medial in fo-  
reign words=w; see  
35. 1. (3).

w . . . . .

x=ks; see 39. 2.

ȳ, ȳ = i, i or ū, ū (see 9. 1.  
(b). (6); 10. (b). (3); 7.  
1. (b). (5), (6); 8. 1. (b).  
(5). Note).

y in some foreign words=  
j; see 35. 3. (4).

+y in some Dutch words=  
ai; see 23. 1. (5).

z=ts; see 39. 3. (1).

z=s (z); see 35. 2. (3).

n (34. 6) or r (37. 2).

s (32. 2; 33. 2) . . . . .

z (34. 2; 35. 2) . . . . .

ʃ (32. 4; 33. 4) . . . . .

t (29; 30. 2) . . . . .

u (19. a; 19. b) . . . . .

u: (20. 1. (a); 30. 1. (b))

as s in sit.

as s in rose.

as sh in shave.

as t in ten.

as u in put.

as o in unstressed  
who, only longer.

ō nasalized ɔ: (25).

ɣ rounded ɣ; see 10. a;  
10. b.

ɣ: rounded i; see 8. 1.  
(a); 8. 1. (b).

v (34. 1; 35. 1) . . . . . as v in very.

## B. Classification of German Sounds.

## I. Vowels.

Vowels may be classified from different points of view. The vowels are here classified according to the horizontal movement (see 3. 1. *a* below) of the tongue in forming them. The various modifications of these sounds are treated later under each vowel.

## SIMPLE VOWELS

## Front Vowels

i:, y:, ɪ, ʏ, e:, ɐ, ɛ:, ə, ẽ:

## Back Vowels

a:, ɑ:, ɒ, ɔ:, ɔ:, ʊ, u:

## Mixed Vowel

ə (see 21)

## DIPHTHONGS

## Falling (22, 23)

ao, ɔə (eu or äu), ae (ei or ai), ui

## Rising (24)

ia:, iə, io:, etc.

## II. Consonants.

		Labials	Dentals	Palatals	Velars	Uvular	Glottals	
Front	Stops	p b	t d		k g		ʔ (38)	Back
	Nasals	m	n		ŋ			
	Spirants	f v	s z	ç (32. 2. a) j ʃ (32. 4) ʒ (34. 5)	x (32.3.b) g (34. 4)	ʀ (34. 6)	h	
	Liquids		l, r (37.2)					

Sounds marked by heavy type are voiced, others are voiceless.

*Note.* The sounds have here been divided into the two usual classes of vowels and consonants upon the basis of the function usually performed by the various sounds. A vowel can form of itself a syllable. A consonant does *not* of itself form a syllable, but is only used in conjunction with vowels to form syllables. Hence the above classification does not always hold good. The consonants l, m, n, ŋ, r, are sometimes in one sense used as vowels in that they become syllabic, forming of themselves syllables. See 41. 4. The vowels found as the less sonorous element of diphthongs are in fact consonants. The vowel i often becomes a consonant in certain positions, i. e. becomes unsyllabic, forming the less sonorous part of a rising diphthong. See 7. 2 (2nd par.). These points indicate clearly that the qualification of a syllable-forming sound is a prominent degree of sonority and not the manner of its formation. Sounds are now syllable-forming and now a mere subordinate element according as they are relatively prominent by means of their sonority or relatively inconspicuous. Sometimes a sound which has a low degree of sonority may become a syllable-forming element when it is surrounded by less sonorous sounds, as s in *psst!* The classification of sounds upon the basis of function does not always help us in gaining a correct conception of the nature or formation of the various sounds. Thus l, m, n, and lingual r (r) do not differ in any essential point from vowels in their formation, tho upon the basis of function they must in most cases be classified as consonants. Thus also h does not materially differ in formation from the simple vowels a, o, u, &c., except that the vocal chords do not vibrate, but it is here classified as a consonant, as it always produces the acoustic effect and performs the function of a spirant. See 28.

## FORMATION OF SOUNDS.

3. 1. In forming a vowel the mouth remains more or less open, and the vocal chords vibrate. Each new position of the tongue produces a new vowel, which may again be modified in various ways. The tongue movements and various modifications can only be briefly treated here.

*a. Tongue Movements.* The tongue moves horizontally and vertically—backwards and forwards, upwards and downwards. The horizontal movement results in three general classes of sounds, *back* vowels formed by the back part

of the tongue, *front* vowels formed by the front part of the tongue, *mixed* vowels formed by allowing the tongue to drop into a neutral position, in which neither articulation predominates. The vertical movement of the tongue results in three general classes, *high* vowels formed by raising the tongue close to the roof of the mouth, *mid* vowels by raising the tongue moderately, *low* vowels by lowering the tongue. These positions will be discussed later with each vowel.

*b. Rounding* Vowels are rounded by protruding the lips as in whistling. Thus by rounding, *i*, *ɪ*, *e*, *ɛ*, become *y*, *ɣ*, *ø*, *ɶ*. See 8, 10, 12, 15.

*c. Narrowness, Wideness* A sound is said to be 'narrow' when the muscles of the tongue become tense and bulge up, and thus narrow the resonance chamber. When a sound is formed without this tenseness it is said to be 'wide'. The difference between *e* and *ɛ* is that the former is narrow and the latter wide. In North German all long vowels except *ä* (*e*) are narrow and all short ones wide. This explains the strong tendency to pronounce *ä* as *e* instead of *ɛ*. These modifications will be given later in connection with each vowel.

*d. Nasality* In forming nasal vowels the breath passes thru the nose as well as the mouth. Nasality is the characteristic of vowels in many words from the French. See 25.

2. In forming consonants the mouth is either closed as in the case of stops and nasals, or narrowed as in the case of spirants. The distinguishing feature of a consonant is the friction, or stopping of the breath in some part of the mouth or throat. If voice enters into the formation of a consonant, that is, if the vocal chords vibrate in producing it, it is said to be voiced, otherwise it is voiceless. The formation of the different consonants is described later.

## QUANTITY OF VOWELS

### 4. 1 General rules

*a* Accented vowels are long when final, or before a vowel or one consonant *dā*, *Sē-en*, *Māl*, *mā-len*. Notice that, if a vowel follows the stem, the final consonant is always carried over, and the stem syllable becomes open, *i e* terminates with a vowel.

The quantity of the vowel must be ascertained from the simple stem of the word, the inflectional endings that may be added not counting *der Hüt*, *des Hüts*, *lōben*, *du lōbst*, *gelōbt*.

*Note* To the in general very reliable rule that the vowel *i e* forms there are exceptions *er hält* *er hätte*  
*er hat* *er hätte*

aus: the of the feeling of

standing before a double consonant (double *k* usually written *ck*) or two or more consonants is usually short and the syllable is closed, *i e* terminates in a consonant, but it is long in the special cases (see 2. A *d* (2) (3), below) where the syllable is open. *Bail*, *er'schrecken* (*er'sæk-kən*), *Halt*, *sin-ken*, *fas-ten*, but *Hj'drā*. Thus a vowel in an accented open syllable is always long, whether it stands before one consonant or more. *mā'len*, *Mē'trik*, &c. Compare 41. 1, 2.

A vowel is short in a few words before one consonant, and the syllable is closed. *Fr'äker* (also *'Fraker*), *Gra'mmätik*, *gra'mmätisch*, *Ho'tel*, *Ka'pitel*, *'Litera'tür*, *Me'täpher* (*ph=f*), *Re'hief* (*re'hief*), *'Saphir*. *'Zithon* 'u'

*Note on Historical Development* The great ones in M H G. At the hem the hr open.



## B. Classification of German Sounds.

## I. Vowels.

Vowels may be classified from different points of view. The vowels are here classified according to the horizontal movement (see 3. 1. *a* below) of the tongue in forming them. The various modifications of these sounds are treated later under each vowel.

## SIMPLE VOWELS

*Front Vowels*

i:, y:, I, Y, e:, ø:, ε, ē:, ø; ð:

*Back Vowels*

a:, ā:, a, ɔ, ð:, o:, u, u:

*Mixed Vowel*

ə (see 21)

## DIPHTHONGS

*Falling* (22, 23)

ao, ɔə (eu or äu), ae (ei or ai), ui

*Rising* (24)

ia:, iə, io:, etc.

## II. Consonants.

		Labials	Dentals	Palatals	Velars	Uvular	Glottals	Back
Front	Stops	p b	t d		k g		ʔ (38)	
	Nasals	m	n		ŋ			
	Spirants	f v	s z	ç (32. 2. a) j ʃ (32. 4) ʒ (34. 5)	x (32.3.b) g (34. 4)	ʀ (34. 6)	h	
	Liquids		l, r (37.2)					

Sounds marked by heavy type are voiced, others are voiceless.

*Note.* The sounds have here been divided into the two usual classes of vowels and consonants upon the basis of the function usually performed by the various sounds. A vowel can form of itself a syllable. A consonant does not of itself form a syllable, but is only used in conjunction with vowels to form syllables. Hence the above classification does not always hold good. The consonants **l, m, n, ŋ, r**, are sometimes in one sense used as vowels in that they become syllabic, forming of themselves syllables. See 41. 4. The vowels found as the less sonorous element of diphthongs are in fact consonants. The vowel *i* often becomes a consonant in certain positions, i. e. becomes unsyllabic, forming the less sonorous part of a rising diphthong. See 7. 2 (2nd par.). These points indicate clearly that the qualification of a syllable-forming sound is a prominent degree of sonority and not the manner of its formation. Sounds are now syllable-forming and now a mere subordinate element according as they are relatively prominent by means of their sonority or relatively inconspicuous. Sometimes a sound which has a low degree of sonority may become a syllable-forming element when it is surrounded by less sonorous sounds, as *s* in *pstl*. The classification of sounds upon the basis of function does not always help us in gaining a correct conception of the nature or formation of the various sounds. Thus **l, m, n**, and lingual *r* (*r*) do not differ in any essential point from vowels in their formation, tho upon the basis of function they must in most cases be classified as consonants. Thus also *h* does not materially differ in formation from the simple vowels *a, o, u*, &c., except that the vocal chords do not vibrate, but it is here classified as a consonant, as it always produces the acoustic effect and performs the function of a spirant. See 28.

*Note.*

## FORMATION OF SOUNDS.

3. 1. In forming a vowel the mouth remains more or less open, and the vocal chords vibrate. Each new position of the tongue produces a new vowel, which may again be modified in various ways. The tongue movements and various modifications can only be briefly treated here.

*a. Tongue Movements.* The tongue moves horizontally and vertically—backwards and forwards, upwards and downwards. The horizontal movement results in three general classes of sounds, *back* vowels formed by the back part

of the tongue, *front* vowels formed by the front part of the tongue, *mixed* vowels formed by allowing the tongue to drop into a neutral position, in which neither articulation predominates. The vertical movement of the tongue results in three general classes, *high* vowels formed by raising the tongue close to the roof of the mouth, *mid* vowels by raising the tongue moderately, *low* vowels by lowering the tongue. These positions will be discussed later with each vowel.

*b. Rounding.* Vowels are rounded by protruding the lips as in whistling. Thus by rounding, i:, ɪ, e:, ɛ, become y:, ʏ, ø:, ɘ. See 8, 10, 12, 15.

*c. Narrowness, Wideness.* A sound is said to be 'narrow' when the muscles of the tongue become tense and bulge up, and thus narrow the resonance chamber. When a sound is formed without this tenseness it is said to be 'wide.' The difference between e: and ɛ is that the former is narrow and the latter wide. In North German all long vowels except ā (ɛ:) are narrow and all short ones wide. The tendency to pronounce ā as e: instead of ɛ:. These modifications are in connection with each vowel.

*d. Nasality.* In forming nasal vowels the breath passes thru the nose as well as the mouth. Nasality is the characteristic of vowels in many words from the French. See 25.

2. In forming consonants the mouth is either closed as in the case of stops and nasals, or narrowed as in the case of spirants. The distinguishing feature of a consonant is the friction, or stopping of the breath in some part of the mouth or throat. If voice enters into the formation of a consonant, that is, if the vocal chords vibrate in producing it, it is said to be voiced, otherwise it is voiceless. The formation of the different consonants is described later.

## QUANTITY OF VOWELS.

### 4. 1. General rules.

*a.* Accented vowels are long when final, or before a vowel or one consonant: dā, Sē-en, Māl, mā-len. Notice that, if a vowel follows the stem, the final consonant is always carried over, and the stem syllable becomes open, i. e. terminates with a vowel.

The quantity of the vowel must be ascertained from the simple stem of the word, the inflectional endings that may be added not counting: der Hūt, des Hūts; lōben, du lōbst, gelōbt.

*Note*  
forms, they

the original connection of the words Heer, but Hērzog, Fāhrt, but fērtig, &c.

*b.* An accented vowel standing before a double consonant (double k usually written ck) or two or more consonants is usually short and the syllable is closed, i. e. terminates in a consonant, but it is long in the special cases (see 2. A. d. (2) (3), below) where the syllable is open: Ball, er'schrecken (er'ʃrek-kən), Halt, sin-ken, fas-ten, but Hȳ'drā. Thus a vowel in an accented open syllable is always long, whether it stands before one consonant or more: mā'len, Mē'trik, &c. Compare 41. 1, 2.

A vowel is short in a few words before *one* consonant, and the syllable is closed: Fl'āker (also 'Fiaker), Gra'mmätik, gra'mmätisch, Ho'tel, Ka'pitel, 'Litera'tür, Me'tāpher (ph=f), Re'liēf (re-'liēf), 'Sāphir, 'Zither (th=t), &c.

*Note on Historical Development* The great majority of the long vowels of the language have corresponding short ones in M.H.G. At the beginning of the present period all short vowels became long in open syllables, i. e. where the final consonant of the stem was carried over to the next syllable. Before one consonant the syllable was usually open and the vowel became long except often before t, m, and sometimes l, n. Thus M.H.G. bā-nen, gē-ben, hō-nec,

gǃ-bel became bāh'n'en, gē'ben, Hō'nig, Gie'bel, but in M.H.G. gerī-ten, gō-tes, gō-ter, vrō-men, as explained below, the syllable before t and m became closed, which resulted in the retention of the short vowel: gerit-ten, Got-tes, Göt-ter, from-men. Before a M.H.G. double consonant or a combination of consonants the syllable was already closed, so that in N.H.G. the short vowel here remained short: M.H.G. vǃllen, hǃlten, N.H.G. fǃllen, hǃlten. The ng and sch are now simple sounds, ɲ, ʃ, they each in M.H.G. represented two sounds, i. e. a combination of consonants, which after a short vowel closed the syllable, so that in N.H.G. the short vowel remained short, as in singen (zɪŋ-ŋən), waschen (vaʃ-ʃən). Compare 32. 4. Note (2). Where, however, the sound before sch was a long vowel or a diphthong it remained a long vowel or a diphthong: wǃsch, Fleisch. The long vowel here remained long as sch (sx, later ʃ) in the lengthened forms in accordance with the general tendency after long vowels was carried over to the next syllable, which thus left the root syllable open and kept the long root vowel long: wǃschen. As ng (ŋg), on the other hand, could not be thus easily carried over to the next syllable, the long vowel before it naturally became short in accordance with the general tendency of long vowels to become short in a closed syllable before a combination of consonants, as described in 2. A. d. Note below: fingen (fɪŋ-ŋən, now fin-ŋən) from older fiengen (fiŋ-ŋən). The syllable before ch (i. e. ch-ch, divided ch, from older kch, from older aspirated k as still preserved in Eng. speak) was originally closed as it stood before a combination of consonants, hence a short vowel before ch has remained short, but where the sound before ch was a long vowel or a diphthong it has remained a long vowel or a diphthong: sprǃchen (early O.H.G. sprǃhan, i. e. sprǃx-xan), sprǃchen (early O.H.G. sprǃh-hun, i. e. sprǃx-xun), rauchen (early O.H.G. rouh-han, i. e. roux-xan). As can be seen in the old forms in parentheses ch was in early O.H.G. a divided sound even after a long vowel or a diphthong. A little later the ch after a long vowel or a diphthong was carried over to the next syllable as a single sound in accordance with the general tendency here to carry over all consonants to the next syllable. This left the root syllable open and kept the long root vowel long. The sch, ng, ch are now simple sounds and are divided after a short vowel, from an aversion to heaping up too many unsightly letters they are never doubled in the written language.

The double consonants treated in the preceding paragraph all stand between vowels and are real divided sounds. After the analogy of doubling the consonant here it has become the custom after a short vowel to double the consonant when it stands in the final position or before a consonant, but this double consonant does not represent a divided sound. It is a mere orthographical device to indicate the shortness of the preceding vowel: komm and kommt after the analogy of kommen. As the characters ng, sch, ch from an aversion to heaping up too many unsightly letters are not doubled after a short vowel when they stand between vowels, they are of course not doubled after a short vowel when they stand in the final position or before a consonant: fǃngen, fǃng, fǃngt; wǃschen, wǃsch, wǃscht; sprǃchen, sprǃch, sprǃcht. In older periods the character representing a consonant was only doubled when the sound was divided: M.H.G. balles (N.H.G. des Balles), O.H.G. sprǃh-hun (N.H.G. sie sprǃchen), but in the final position M.H.G. bal (N.H.G. Ball), O.H.G. sprǃh (N.H.G. er sprǃch) as the sound is undivided. The older usage of only doubling the character when the sound is divided is still observed for voiceless s, but two characters are used here, ss for the divided sound and ʃ for undivided s: wissen, er weiß, er wuʃste. See also 2. D. a below. The old orthographical principle of only doubling a consonant when it is a divided sound is still in wide use in English: thinner but thin, runner but run, ran.

In a few words a long vowel stands in a closed syllable before two consonants: Kēbsweib, Krēbs, Mǃgd, Ōbst, Vǃgt. In older German an e stood after the consonant which follows the stem vowel, so that the stem vowel stood in an open syllable before one consonant: M.H.G. ke-beswip, kre-bez, ma-get, o-bez, vo-get. In this older form the stem vowel became long. The following vowel later disappeared, but the stem vowel remained long.

Wherever a vowel became long in an open syllable the same quantity was usually later extended for the sake of uniformity to the closed syllables of the same inflectional system. See 2. B. b. Note (1) below. On the other hand, the inflectional system was sometimes leveled by the short vowel of the closed syllables, i. e. before t, m, and sometimes l and n the open syllables were closed by doubling or dividing the consonant in order to make the vowel short and thus keep it in harmony with the short vowels in the same system. M.H.G. vǃ-ter, nǃ-me, &c., became N.H.G. Vǃter, Nǃme, &c., but leveling by the short vowel of the closed syllable is more common here: M.H.G. sǃ-tel, gerǃ-ten, gǃ-ter, vǃ-ter, hǃ-mer, dǃ-ner became Sattel, geritten, Gǃtter, Vetter, Hammer, Donner, as the e of the unaccented syllable often dropped out in colloquial speech before l, m, n, r, as in Sǃtl, gerǃtn, Gǃtr, Vǃtr, Hǃmr, Dǃnr, which resulted in bringing the root vowel before two consonants thus closing the syllable and keeping it short and usually also in the spreading of the short vowel to the fuller forms, which are now written with double consonants to indicate the closedness of the syllable and the shortness of the vowel, Sattel, etc. In a few monosyllables, as M.H.G. snit, trit, &c., the short vowel of the closed nominative and accusative spread to the fuller forms, Schnitt, Schnittes, &c., Tritt, Trites, &c.

The above described lengthening of short vowels in open syllables did not take place in the extreme part of the S. W., which still preserves here the old historic short sound. See 2. B. b. Note (1) below.

c. Unaccented simple vowels are short, except when final: glaubēn, Fǃrstin, Frǃhling, &c. Unaccented final vowels except e are long or half-long. See 2. B. c. and Note thereunder.

2. Rules for Quantity in Detail.

A. The following are long:—

a. A diphthong: Gaul, Gǃule.

b. Doubled vowels and ie: Paar, Heer, Boot, bieten. Only a, e, o can be doubled. They must, however, be written single when mutated: Paar, but Pǃrchen. Vowels are now written double only in the following words: Aal, Aar (Adler), Aas, Haar, Paar, paar, Saal, Saat, Staat; Beere, Beet, Geest, Heer, verheeren, Klee, Kra'keel, Lee, leer, leeren, Meer, Reede, scheel, Schnee; See, Seele, Speer, Teer; Boot, Moor, Moos.

c. Simple accented vowels when final, or before a vowel or one consonant: dǃ, Sēen, bǃden, Mikro'skǃp. Exceptions: A'pril, grǃb (but long in open syllables, as in grǃ-ber, &c.) or in choice language grǃb (long as in-grǃber), Ka'pitol, Lǃther, Zǃther, &c.

The length of the vowel may also be indicated by a silent h: Wahl, ihm, ihn, &c. For the use of h here see 28.

d. Simple accented vowels are sometimes long before more than one consonant:

(1) The vowels a, e, and less frequently other vowels, are long before r+ a dental (d, t, z, s, sch): wērden, Schwērt, Quǃrz, &c. Thus these vowels are long, altho they stand in closed syllables; see B. b. Note (2) below. This pronunciation is a new development, and is not yet universally recognized.

(2) Vowels are sometimes long before *st*, *bst*, *pst*, *tsch*, *chs* (= *ks*), *z* (= *ts*), and in still other cases. The words will be given later under the respective vowels. In all these cases the consonants should be carried over to the next syllable wherever it is possible, so that the accented syllable may be open: *Ö'stern*, *dū'ster*, &c.

In a few cases short vowels have become long before these combinations of consonants, usually under the influence of analogy. Thus as M.H.G. *dū* became *dū* as the vowel stood in an open syllable, M.H.G. *dūzen* naturally became *dū'zen* under the influence of *dū*.

Long vowels—both those originally long and those that have in N.H.G. become long—cannot usually be distinguished as long when they stand before these combinations of consonants, but within the present period a simple device has been found to distinguish the quantity of the vowel before *ts*. Before *z* the sound is uniformly a long or half-long vowel or a diphthong, while before *tz* it is always a short vowel: *siezen*: (*zi'tsən*), *dū'zen*, *Akazie* (*a-'ka'tsja*), *inspizieren* (*inspi-'tsinən*), *Kauz* (*kaots*), but *Katze* (*katsə*, the syllabic division being in the *t*). After a consonant, *z*—not *tz*—is used, as the two consonants mark the preceding vowel as short: *Herz*.

(3) In many words from the Latin or Greek, the consonants between vowels, especially a stop (*p*, *t*, *k*, *b*, *d*, *g*) + *r* or *l*, are carried over to the next syllable, as in the original. This leaves the preceding syllable open, which according to German usage (see 1. *b* above) becomes long: *Mi'tra*, *Mē'trüm*, &c., half-long in words with secondary stress, as in *'Mī-kro'skōp*, &c.

#### B. Short:—

*a.* Simple vowels before double consonants, or two or more different consonants: *Gatter*, *Hunde*.

*b.* Simple vowels before one consonant in some uninflected forms, and in a few inflected monosyllabics that do not form open syllables in the course of inflection: *an*, *in*, *ab*, *um*, *weg*, *mit*, *von*, *ob*, *bis*, *das*, *daß*, *was*, *bin*, *bist*, *ist*, the article *der*, *des*, &c. (in careful speaking and declaiming pronounced *dər*, *dəs*, &c., or sometimes even *dɛr*, *dɛm*, *dɛn*, not however *dɛs*, but ordinarily *dər*, *dəs*, &c., with weak stress). Such monosyllabics are, however, always long, if they contain a *h*, final *r* (except in the article), or accented *-em*, *-en*: *ihm*, *ihn*, *wer* (*veɪr*), *vor*, *für*, *em'por*, the demonstrative and relative *der* (*dɛr*), *dem* (*dɛm*), *den* (*dɛn*), &c. The personal pronoun *er* is pronounced *ɛr*, but it often, when weakly stressed, becomes *ər*, or even *ær*. On the stage *zum* and *zur* are pronounced *tsu-m* and *tsu-r*, but in colloquial speech they become *tsum* and *tSUR*.

Note (1) The open syllable is the syllable in which the vowel is the nucleus. At the t

became open in the course of their inflection, they remained short. In dialects of the extreme Southwest we find the opposite development—a lengthened vowel in a closed syllable before a weakly articulated consonant or certain combinations of consonants, while the original short vowel survives in open syllables: Gräb, Räd, Sär, wärm, Bärt, Lampe, wärden, gären, etc., but Grä-ber, Rā-der, &c. In dialects of the Southeast there is a development somewhat similar but much narrower in scope—a lengthened vowel in a closed final syllable before two consonants or before a simple sound that developed out of two consonants, while the old short vowel survives in all syllables which originally were not final as now: Köpf, but pl. Köpf(e); Fisch (sch originally = s + x), but pl. Fisch(e).

(2) Final *r* has in the literary language an effect upon a preceding accented vowel differing from that of other final consonants. It usually lengthens the vowel, altho it closes the syllable, as in vör, wër, &c. It also has the same effect medially in certain cases. See A. d. (1) above.

c. Unaccented simple vowels are short except when final: haltën, Gëfängnīs, Herrīn, &c. Unaccented final vowels except *e* are long or half-long. Long or half-long unaccented final vowels occur in a few isolated words, as Uhū, Schuhū, and in a number of names, as Ottō, Brunō, Fridā, Hertā, &c. Aside from these words, the prefix *miß-*, and suffixes, such as *-lich*, *-in*, *-ling*, &c., which have secondary accent, *e* is now the only German vowel found outside the accented root syllable, as the various fuller vowels of earlier periods have, under the effect of weak stress, been all reduced to this one form. This unaccented *e* is almost uniformly pronounced *ə* except in the prefixes *be-*, *emp-*, *ent-*, *er-*, *ge-*, *ver-*, *zer-*, where it is treated differently in the different forms. In *be-* and *ge-* it is almost always pronounced *ə*. In *emp-*, *ent-*, *er-*, *ver-*, and *zer-*, it is usually sounded *e* in careful speaking but often in colloquial speech in accordance with the general tendency in unaccented syllables becomes *ə* in *er-*, *ver-*, and *zer-*. Of course compounds deviate from the general rule, as the components retain the quantity which they have as independent words: Schlittschüh, Schiffahrt, &c. Also the heavy suffixes *āt*, *jān*, *bār*, *sāl*, *tūm*, *ūt*, usually also *sām*, which were in part once independent words, form exceptions to the rule: Heirāt, hörbār, &c.

*Note. Quality of Unaccented Vowels in Foreign Words.* Other vowels than *e* are, however, often found in unaccented syllables in foreign words, and it should be noted that they do not, except in final syllables, conform to the German rule for quantity. Foreign vowels except *e* are long or half-long when final: 'Annā, 'Salomō, 'Alibī, &c. Also final *e* is long in a few words: A'thenē, Fak'similē, 'Lethē, &c., unaccented final vowels in the first component of foreign compounds, however, are half-long before a stressed syllable: Telegraph (te-le-'gräf), Periskop (pe-ni-'sko:p). Elsewhere unaccented *a*, *ä*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *ö*, *u*, *ü*, which stand in an open syllable before a vowel, a single consonant, or the following combinations of consonants, *ti* (tsī), *z* (ts), *qu* (kv), or a stop (*p*, *t*, *k*, *b*, *d*, *g*) + *r* or *l*, vary from half long to short. They are, however, unlike the usual short vowels in *quality*, but in this respect are all, except *ä*, narrow (see 3. 1. c), *i*, *e* are exactly like the usual long narrow vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *ö*, *u*, *y*, only pronounced a little more quickly, and hence to distinguish them from the usual short wide (see 3. 1. c) sounds *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *ö*, *u*, *y* the usual character for the long narrow sounds will hereafter be employed except that the lower dot in the colon, the mark of length, is dropped: *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *ö*, *u*, *y*. Unaccented *ä* in these foreign words is a half-long wide *e* indicated by *e*. Examples: Patient (pa-'tsient), Akazie (a-'ka:tsiə), Frequenz (fre-'kvent), Mikrobe (mi-'kno:bə), Duplik (du-'plik), ('Jo-ko-'la:də), Bööten (bö-'o:tsiən), Mänade (me-'na:də), &c. There is in long words considerable difference in the length of these vowels. Those that have secondary accent are longer than those without stress. The length increases in proportion to the strength of the accent.

On the other hand, these unaccented vowels are pronounced wide, *i. e.* as short German vowels, where they stand before a combination of consonants other than *ti* (tsī), *z* (ts), *qu* (kv), or a stop (*p*, *t*, *k*, *b*, *d*, *g*) + *r* or *l*, for the syllable is closed as the consonants are not usually carried over to the next syllable: Kultivator (kult-i-'va:tər), Hektograph (hek-to-'gräf), Despot (des-'pot), historisch (his-'to:riʃ), Magistrat (magis-'tra:t), &c. In the languages from which such words were taken the first syllable is closed and this is the case in German as attested by the wide quality of the vowel, altho in native words some of these combinations, as *sp*, *st*, *gn*, are usually carried over to the next syllable. In many of these foreign words *sp*, *st*, *gn* are carried over as in German, especially before a stressed syllable, where in native words the tendency is strong, but in all these cases it seems probable that in careful speaking the first consonant of the combination is divided and pronounced also with the preceding syllable in order to keep it closed and short: Aspekt (as-'pekt), Estrade (es-'tra:də), Signal (zi-g-'na:l), &c. In the usual rapid flow of speech, however, the first unstressed part of the divided consonant disappears, so that the syllable becomes open, but the vowel keeps its original wide quality: Aspekt (a-'pekt), Estrade (e-'tra:də), Signal (zi-'na:l). Also a vowel in an unaccented final syllable ending in a consonant is pronounced wide, *i. e.* as a short German vowel, as preceding an accented syllable is pronounced wide, *i. e.* as a short German vowel, when it stands before a double consonant, but the syllable is usually open and the consonant is carried over to the next syllable as an undivided sound: Kollege (ko-'le:gə), Kommode (ko-'mo:də), korrekt (ko-'rekt), &c. Such words are compounds and the first quality of the vowel, but in the usual rapid flow of speech the syllable becomes open in accordance with the general German law of carrying over the consonant where the following syllable is accented.

In a large number of foreign words *e* becomes *ə* in unaccented syllables just as in native German words, especially in words from the French where in the original it is weakly articulated: Cholera (ko-lə'na:), Literatur (litə-ra-'tu:ra), Kamera ('ka:məra:), Kamerad (ka-mə'ra:t), etc.

d. Long vowels become short in words which by reason of their lack of logical importance in the sentence remain entirely without accent, but such vowels retain the *quality* they originally had as long vowels, and to distinguish them from the usual short vowels they are marked by dropping the lower dot in the colon, the sign of length: Mir ist, als öb ich die (di-) Hände | Aufs Häupt dir légen sollt'. Ich hāb dich geliebet so (zo-) mánches Jāhr.

C. Rules for Doubling to Show that the Vowel is Short. A single consonant must be doubled after a short vowel, but in the following cases variations occur:—

a. The final consonant in the suffixes *nis*, *in*, *as*, *es*, *is*, *os*, and *us* remains single when no inflectional ending follows, but when an additional syllable is added, the *s* and *n* are doubled: *das Gefängnis*, but *des Gefängnisses*, pl. *die Gefängnisse*; *die Königin*, pl. *die Königinnen*.

b. Instead of double *z* the combination *tz* is used: *die Kätze*.

c. Instead of double *k* the combination *ck* is used; *schrëcken*, but *erschräk* with only one *k* as the vowel is long.

d. The combinations *ng*, *sch*, *ch* are never doubled after a short vowel like the other characters representing simple consonantal sounds. Doubling does not take place here from an aversion to heaping up too many unsightly letters. Before *ng* and *sch* a simple vowel is usually short, as explained in 4. 1. *b. Note*. Before *ch* the vowel is sometimes short, sometimes long, as will be noted below under the different vowels. See also 4. 1. *b. Note*.

e. When from a verbal stem containing a double consonant a derivative word is formed by means of the suffixes *d*, *t*, or *st*, the double consonant becomes single: *Gespinst* from *spinnen*; *Gewinst* from *gewinnen*; *Geschäft* from *schaffen*; *kund* from *kennen*; *Gestalt* from *stellen*, &c.

f. When a vowel in the suffix is dropped, bringing doubled consonants and a following consonant together, one of the doubled consonants is dropped, as there will still be two consonants left to show that the preceding vowel is short: *Grumt*, *Kumt*, *Samt*, *Taft*, &c., for *Grummet*, *Kummet*, *Sammet*, *Taffet*, &c. Similarly in compounds: *Schiffahrt*, &c., for *Schifffahrt*, &c.

#### D. Quantity Unascertainable from Position:

a. Before *ss* the vowel is always short: *essen*, &c. The written form of the *s* sound here clearly indicates that it is divided, i. e. belongs to both syllables. Of course, this character can only be used when it stands between vowels. Before *ß* the vowel is long, if a vowel follows *ß*: *äßen*. The written form of the *s* sound here clearly indicates that it is an undivided sound. Double *s* is always written *ß* at the end of a word or before a consonant, as the sound here is undivided, so that in these positions the quantity of the vowel cannot be ascertained: *biß*, *aßt*, *Fluß*, *Fuß*. The quantity can be ascertained when a vowel follows in the inflectional ending: *des Flusses*, *des Fußes*; *ich biß*, *du bisset*; *ihr äßt*, *sie äßen*.

b. Before *ch* the vowel is sometimes short, sometimes long: *brëchen*, *bräch*, *gebröchen*. Compare 4. 1. *b. Note*.

#### PRONUNCIATION OF THE DIFFERENT VOWELS.

5. The following description of the vowels is only approximately correct. Even the most scientific analysis cannot take the place of *viva voce* pronunciation of sounds. T

Wherever co

pronunciatio

English of England.

##### 6. 1. Classification:

(a). The *front* vowels, so called because in their formation the tongue is advanced to the front part of the mouth, are *i*, *ü*, *ɪ*, *ʊ*, *ē*, *ö*, *ä*, *ā*, *ē*, *ö* in the order of the positions of the tongue, beginning in the front of the mouth and moving backward.

(b). The *back* vowels in the order of the positions of the tongue, beginning a little behind the middle of the mouth and moving backward, are *ā*, *ä*, *ō*, *ö*, *ū*, *ü*.

(c). There is a vowel in which neither front nor back articulation prevails. This is the unaccented *e* (ə), which from its manner of articulation is called mixed *e*. See 21.

2. *Relations to each other*. The following diagram will give a general idea of the relations of the German vowels to each other with regard to the point of articulation in the mouth.

	High		
Front	iy		u
	iv		uv
	ee	ə	o
	ε̃ε̃ø̃ø̃		ɔ̃ ɔ̃
		a â	
	Low		
			Back

The point of articulation is highest in i, y, u, of which i and y are front and u is back. The lowest point of articulation is in a, which is back but is near the forward articulations.

### FRONT VOWELS.

The sounds of the front vowels follow in their order:

7. 1. (a). i: (ī), the high-front-narrow vowel (see 3. 1. a and c), is pronounced like e in react, but the English sound is shorter as it is in an unaccented syllable. The corresponding long English sound is the diphthong ī, as ee in seed (siid). It is found in accented open syllables and in closed ones before h and r: Lie-be, ihm, mīr; also in other closed syllables which become open when an inflectional ending follows: Stiel, des Stie-les. See 4. 2. B. b. Note (1).

(b). i: is written: (1) ie (or ieh) in all German words except mīr, dīr, wīr, ihm, ihn, ihnen, ihr, ihrer, ihrig, Īgel, Īsegrim, Bīber, Līd, wīder, gīb, gībst, gībt (also gīb, gībst, gībt; see 201. f, 2nd par.), and in many names of persons ending in unaccented -īn: Balduin (baldu-īn), Edwin (etvīn), Alwin, Böcklin, etc.; (2) ie also in foreign words that have become thoroly naturalized, as in Brief, Para'dies, &c.; (3) i or ie in accented syllables before one consonant, or finally in many foreign words, written i or ie according as they were spelled in the language from which they were taken, as in Ma'schine, Nische (ni:ʃə), Ber'lin, Ste'ttin, Artille'rie, &c., but written ie uniformly in foreign verbs, as in stu'dieren; (4) y (representing ij = ī in an older orthography, and hence different in origin and sound from the y in 8. 1. b. (5)) before one consonant in proper names, as Schwyz, Sybel; (5) y before one consonant in words from the Greek as in Ana'lyse, &c., where, however, in choice pronunciation y: is usually heard, as explained in 8. 1. b. (5) and the Note thereunder, except in Ysop ('i:zɒp), Zylinder (tsi-'līndər); (6) y final in other foreign words, as in Jury, Willy, &c.; (7) ee in a few words from the English, as in Spleen, Yankee ('jɛŋki:); (8) ea in English words, as in Lear.

Note 1. Foreign words in ie present many difficulties: (1) Words in -ier fall into two groups, which have been introduced into the language at different periods and have developed a different pronunciation. The older group is pronounced īn, the younger group ien: Offizier (ōfi-'tsiā), Rentier (rent-'je:). No safe rule can be given to distinguish these groups except that the verbs uniformly have the pronunciation ien, as in stu'dieren. Elsewhere the dictionary must be consulted. (2) Final accented ie = i:, as in Ma'rie, So'phie, Kolo'nie, etc., but = i:ə in lengthened forms, as Ma'rie'na, Kolo'nie'na, etc. Also notice the difference between the French Marie (ma-'ni:), Sophie (zo-'fi:) and the Latin form: Marie (ma-'ni:ə), etc. Also under secondary stress final ie is pronounced i:, as in Sellerie ('zɛlə-'ni:). (3) French ie = i: as in Karriere (kari-'ri:ə), Piece (pi-'ɛ:ə). (4) Non-final accented ie elsewhere in nouns = i:ə: e.g. before one consonant and i: or i:ə before more than one: Hygiene (hy-'gi:'ɛ:ə or hy-'gi:'i:ə), but Serviette (sɛr-'vi:tə or sɛr-'vi:tə). (5) ie = i: in unstressed non-final syllables: Hiero'glyphen, Piedestal (pi-'ɛ:de-'stai:). Note 2. In German words ie was originally a diphthong, and hence both vowels were pronounced. Later ie became a long i, the e serving as a sign of the length of the preceding vowel, and words which originally had no e after i took it to show that the i was long. For example see 4. 2. B. b. Note (1). In the S.G. dialects ie is still pronounced as a diphthong in words that had it originally.

2. In unaccented open non-final syllables i (also y) before a consonant has the same sound, only pronounced a little more quickly and must not be confounded with i in closed syllables described in 9. (a): Militār (mi-li-'tɛ:r). See 4. 2. B. c. Note.

Unaccented i followed by a vowel usually becomes unsyllabic, i. e. does not form a syllable. This i, here indicated by ī, forms a diphthong with a following unaccented vowel, as also American ī in familiar (fə'miljər, but in S.E. fə'miljə): Akarie (a-'ka:'tsi:ə), Lillie ('li:lɪ:ə), Fuchsie ('fʊksɪ:ə), mordio (mɔrdi:ə), &c. It

also forms a diphthong with *y* following accented vowel as American *I* in refuse (*rɪ'fjuːz* but in S.E. *rɪ'fjuːz*) Relief (*re'liːf*), Promotion (*prɔ'mo'tsɪən*) Addition (*ɪdɪ'tsɪən*), Milieu (*mɪ'liu*). In consonantal combinations difficult to unite with *I*, namely a stop (*p, t, k, b, d, g*) + *r* or *l*, the *I* becomes syllabic *I* & forms an independent syllable Allotria (*ɪ'lɔ'trɪə*) Kabriolett, Kambrien, Anglia, &c. The stage prescribes syllabic *I* in all these cases *ɪ'krɪ'tsɪə* &c. but *I* for *g* in 'ge, as in ew ge ('*ɛ'vɔ*) freud ge ('*frɔ'dɪ*) &c.

8 1. (a) *y* (ü), the high front narrow round vowel does not exist in English speech. It is formed by placing the tongue into the position for *i* (or more accurately, by drawing in and lowering the front part slightly more than in the position for *i* at the same time hollowing it thus enlarging the resonance chamber back of the teeth) and then pronouncing with lips protruded and rounded as for *u*. The hollowing of the front part of the tongue seems to result from the natural inclination of the tongue to participate in the rounding. As the lip rounding is usually less energetic than for *u* there is a tendency here to unround. Hence instead of *y* we often hear *i* in Middle and South Germany and in parts of the North especially among the lower classes. See 26 A (1st par.)

(b) This *y* is written (1) *ü* before one consonant as in *huten* also in *Rusche*, the plurals *Bucher, Flüche, Tucher* (2) *ü* in certain words before more than one consonant especially *st*, as in *husteln, duster, wüst*, and usually in *Nüster, Ruster*, also in *Rubsen*, and the proper names *Ülsen, Üchtritz* (3) *uh*, as in *Pfuhl*, &c. (4) *u* in a few proper names as *Duisburg* (5) *y* in Greek words (see *Note*) before one consonant as in *Asyl* (6) *u* in open syllables sometimes followed by a silent *e*, in words from the French *Aperçu, Re'vue, Tuile-rien* (tily *ɪ* la'mɔ'rien).

*Note* In colloquial speech *y* is often pronounced *i* in words from the Greek but in choice language *y* is the usual pronunciation in most words. In a few words it is pronounced *i* or *ɪ*. See 7 1 b (3).

2 In unaccented open syllables *u* and *y* have this same sound, only pronounced a little quicker. *Bureau* (by 'no often written *Buro*) See 4 2 B c *Note*

9 (a) *i* (i) the high front wide vowel is pronounced much as *i* in *pin*. It is found only in closed syllables as in *mit, Irrtum*, &c.

(b) It is written (1) usually *i* before two or more consonants *bitter* (2) *i* in monosyllabic words which never form open syllables *bin, in*, &c. see 4 2 B b (3) *i* in suffixes as *ig, nis, in*, &c. (4) *i* also in *A'pril, Clique* (klyk) *Ka'pitel, Zither* (5) *ie* in *Vierteil, vierzehn, vierzig*, often in *kriegst, kriegt, kriegte, gekriegt* (but only in the meaning *to get*, where however in choice language *i* is preferred) (6) *y* before two or more consonants in native German names as in *Hyrtl, Kyffhauser*, and often also before two or more consonants in foreign words as in *lynchen* (lɪnʃən or lɪntʃən) of English origin and in some words from the Greek as *Myrte, A'gypten*, but in other Greek words the usual pronunciation is *y*. See 10 b (3).

10 (a) *u* (ü) the high front wide round vowel is not heard in English. It is formed by placing the tongue into the position for *i* (or, more accurately, by drawing in and lowering the front part slightly more than in the position for *i* at the same time hollowing it thus enlarging the resonance chamber back of the teeth) and then pronouncing with lips protruded and rounded as for *u*. The hollowing of the front part of the tongue seems to result from the natural inclination of the tongue to participate in the rounding. This sound is found only in closed syllables as in *Hütte*. As the lip rounding is less energetic than for *u* there is a tendency here to unround. Hence instead of *u* we often hear *i* in Middle and South Germany especially among the lower classes. We also hear *i* in the popular German of the North. See 26 A (1st par.)

(b) *y* is written (1) *u* before more than one consonant or a double consonant as in *Furst, Hütte*, &c. (2) *u* also before *ch* in *bruchig, Küche, Spruche* (pl. of *Spruch*), and the proper name *Blucher* (3) *y* before more than one consonant or before one consonant in a final unaccented syllable in Greek words as in



Ypsilon, Si'bylle, Mystik, Sympa'thie, Satyr, &c., but in several words the usual pronunciation is *i*. See 9. *b.* (6); (4) *u* in short, usually closed syllables in French words, as in Surtout (syr'tu:), etc.; Budget (by'dʒe:).

11. 1. (*a*). *e*: (ē), the mid-front-narrow vowel, is much like American *a* in dictate (dik'tet, but in S.E. dik'teit), but the American sound is shorter as it is in an unaccented syllable. The corresponding long American sound is the diphthong *ee* (S.E. *ei*), as *a* in late (læt, S.E. leit).

(*b*). *e*: is written: (1) *e* before a vowel or single consonant, also in some foreign words when final: Theodor, Rede, Fak'simile; (2) *e* also before more than one consonant in certain words: before *rd* in Be'schwerde, Erde, Herd, Herde, Pferd, werden, and in proper names, as in Verden, Werdau, Werden, but Hërder, Wërder, Wër'dohl; before *rt(h)* in Schwert, Wert, and in proper names, as in Kaiserswerth, but 'Hërta; also in beredt (bə'æ:t), Brezel (also Prezel), erst, Erz, Kebsweib, and Krebs (4. 1. *b.* Note), nebst, stets, and in the proper names Dresden (but Brëslau), Estland, Esten, estnisch, Mecklenburg, Quedlinburg (kved:lin:bʊrk), Schleswig, Schwedt, Schwetz (but Schwëtzin-gen), Teplitz (on the stage, but in the city itself Tëplitz), Trebnitz (tre:p'nits), Gerhard (but Gëbhard, Gërtrud), Hedwig; (3) *ee*, as in Beet, Beere, &c.; (4) *eh*, as in Reh, Fehde, &c.; (5) *ei* in Jockei; see 35. 5. (4); (6) *é* in French words, as in Café; (7) *hee* in Thee, now better written Tee; (8) *er* in some French words, as Bankier (ban'kîe:); (9) *ai* in English Plaid (ple:t).

2. In unaccented open non-final syllables, *e* has the same sound, only pronounced a little quicker: Sekretär (ze-kre-'tɛ:r).

12. 1. (*a*). *ø*: (ö), the mid-front-narrow-round vowel, is not found in English speech. It is formed by placing the tongue into the position for *e*: (or, more accurately, by drawing in and lowering the front part slightly more than in the position for *e*., at the same time hollowing it, thus enlarging the resonance-chamber back of the teeth), and then pronouncing with lips protruded and rounded as for *o*:. The hollowing of the front part of the tongue seems to result from the natural inclination of the tongue to participate in the rounding. The lip aperture is larger than in *y*:. It is usually found in accented open syllables: Høh-le, Tø-ne. In an unaccented syllable in Bischøfe, bischøflich, Herzøge. As the lip-rounding is less energetic than for *o*:. there is a tendency here to unround. Hence instead of *ø*: we often hear *e*: in Middle and South Germany and in parts of the North, especially among the lower classes. See 26. A (last par.).

(*b*). *ø*: is written: (1) *ö* when final, or before a vowel or a single consonant, as in Bö, Diarrhøe (di-a'æ:), Epo'pøe, tønē; Bøschung, Flöz, Høschen, Fløße (sing. Flöß); (2) *ö* also before more than one consonant in höchst, Gehøft, Vøgte (sing. Vøgt), Behørde, Børde, Børse, røsten, trøsten, tröstlich, and the proper names Mörs, Österreich, Wørth, Lötzen, and those in -førde, -vørde; (3) *öh*, as in Høhle, Høhe, &c.; (4) *oey* in the bathing resort Oeynhausen and *oi* in the city Loitz; (5) *eu* in words from the French when final or before one consonant, as in adieu (a'diø:), Queue (kø:), Messieurs (mɛ'siø:), Ingenieur (inʒe-'niø:r); (6) *oeu* in French words when final or before one consonant, as in Cœur, &c.

2. In unaccented open non-final syllables *ø* has the same sound, only pronounced a little quicker: Bøtien (bə-'oi:tsiən). See 4. 2. B. *c.* Note.

13. 1. (*a*). *ɛ*: (ä), a prolonged *ɛ* (see 14. *a*). It sounds very much like American *ea* in *pear* (pɛ:r, but in S.E. pɛə). Instead of *ɛ*: we often hear *e*:, as there is a tendency in North German to make long sounds narrow and short ones wide. See 3. 1. *c*. In choice language, however, North Germans endeavor to pronounce *ä* as *ɛ*: and *ē* as *e*: in order to conform the pronunciation to the printed characters. This is also the pronunciation required by the stage. South Germans pronounce *ä* and *ē* in accordance with their historical values, which are not indicated by the printed form. Thus in S.G. *ē* is often wide, as in *geben* (ge:bən), while *ä* is often narrow, as in *zählen* (tsɛ:lən). The intricate

SG pronunciation which often differs in different parts of the South, is not discussed here

(b) *ε* is written (1) *a* when final or before a vowel or a single consonant, as in *Pyla*, *saen*, *ware*, also before *ch* in *brache* (past subj.), *sprache* (past subj.), *Gemacher*, *Gesprach*, in *gemäß*, before *dt* in the plural *Städte* (also *Stätt*), (2) *a* also before more than one consonant in certain words before *tsch* in *gratschen*, *hatscheln*, *Kar'datsche*, *Kar'tatsche*, *tatscheln* before *rt* in *Barte*, *zartlich*, *verzarteln*, in *Gebarde*, *Gemalde*, *Ratsel*, *namlich* before *chst* in *nächst*, before *tz* (*ts*) in proper names as in *Königratz* frequently in Latin and Greek words as in *Äschylus*, *He'phastus*, &c (3) *ah*, as in *mahen* &c (4) *ai* in French words in open syllables as in *Palais* (pr'le), *Affaire* (a'fe'ne) or better *Affare* (5) *e* before *r* (not silent *r*, but only when pronounced) in French words as in *Dessert* (de'se'n), also elsewhere in certain French words as *Enquete* (a'ke'te), *Tete* (te'te)

2 *a* or *ai* in unaccented open syllables has the same sound but is pronounced a little quicker *pladiere* or *plaudieren* (ple'di:en), *Renaissance* (re'ne'sa:s), &c See 4 2 B c Note

14 (a) *ε* (ë or ä), the short mid-front-wide vowel is the same sound as American *e* in *let* (let), but is wider than SE *e* in *let* (let) This sound is found (1) In accented closed syllables *fett*, *Hande*, *Hermann*, *Herzog*, *Stephan* (stefan), *Chef* (Sef), *Billet* (bil'et), *Ho'tel* (4 1 b) (2) In unaccented closed syllables in a few groups of words *ver-* (4 2 B c) *der* (4 2 B b) in the final syllable of proper names as in *Robert*, *Hubert*, *Wilhelm*, &c, in the final syllable of foreign names, as in *Sokrates*, *Elisabeth* (e'li:zə bet) in *Elen*, *Elend*, *elend*, (3) In unaccented open syllables in *he'rab*, *he'runter*, *he'raus*, &c

(b) *ε* is written *e*, as in *Netz*, *a*, as in *hammern*, *gemächlich*; in the North as in some French words as in *Terrain* (te'ren), but in the South and on the stage *ain* is pronounced *ē* (te'reē)

15 (a) *o* (ö), the mid front wide round vowel, is the rounded form of *ε*, produced by placing the tongue in the position for *ε*, (or, more accurately, by drawing in and lowering the front part slightly more than in the position for *ε* at the same time hollowing it thus enlarging the resonance chamber back of the teeth), and then pronouncing with lips protruded and rounded as for *o* The hollowing of the front part of the tongue seems to result from the natural inclination of the tongue to participate in the rounding The lip aperture is larger than for *ε* As the lip rounding is usually less energetic than for *o* there is a tendency here to unround Hence instead of *o* we often hear *ε* in Middle and South Germany and in parts of the North especially among the lower classes See 26 A (last par)

(b) *o* is written (1) *o* in German words before a double consonant, or two or more consonants as in *Holle*, *Holzer* (2) *eu* in French words before the combination *ill* or *il* *Feuilleton* (foj'e'tɔ̃) *Fauteuil* (fo'toi)

## BACK VOWELS

16 1 (a) *a* (a), the long low back narrow vowel, is pronounced as *a* in *father* which however must not be rounded (see 3 1 b) as is often heard in different German dialects and in the pronunciation of sections of our own country

(b) *a* is written (1) *a* when final (except in *dä*, *jä*, *nä* in exclamations), or before a vowel or a single consonant as in *Ännä*, *Baal* (ba'al), *baden*, *Wal* before *ch* in *brach* (adj and past tense of *brechen*), *Brache*, *Ge'mach*, *ge'mach* (but *ge'mächlich*) *nach* (prep and adv) *Schmach*, *sprach*, *Sprache*, *stach* before *sch* in *drasch* (also *draß*) (2) or before more than one consonant in certain words before *r* + consonant in *Art*, *Arzt*, *Barsch*, *Bart*, *Harz*, *Quarz*, *Schwarte*, *Start*, *zart* also in *Ädler*, *Magd* (4 1 b Note), *Papst* (4 2 A d Note) *Bratsche*, *Kar'batsche*, *Kladdera'dätsch*, *latschen*, *watscheln*, and the proper names *Glatz*, *der Harz* (3) *aa*, as in *Aal* (4) *ah*, as in *Ahle*; (5) in French words accented *a* (except when final sound) after *o*, as in *Boudoir*

(bu:do-'a:R) and unaccented *i* or *y* after *o* in half-long syllables, as in *Toilette* (to-a-'letə), *oktroyieren* (ɔktro-a-'ji:Rən); notice that *j* is inserted between *a* and a following vowel; (6) *aw* in the English word *Shawl* (ʃa:l), better *Schal*; (7) *ae* in Dutch proper names, as in *Laeken*.

2. (a). *a* (ǣ), the short-low-back-wide vowel, is practically the same sound as long *a*, only shorter and a trifle wider. It is heard in accented closed syllables: *alt*, *Ball*, *barsch*, *Garten*, *hart*, *hast*, *Karte*, *Klatsch*, *Märschäll*, *Marter*, *platschen*, *schwarz*, *Tartsche*, *wahrlich* (but *währ*), *warten*, often in closed syllables before one consonantal sound: *ab*, *an*, *das*, *hat*, *man*, *was* (4. 2. B. *b*), *ach*, *Amsterdam*, *As*, *Bamberg*, *Claque* (klakə), *Damhirsch*, *Fi'aker* (4. 1. *b*), *Gala* (gala:), *Grammatik* (gra'matik), *Hamburg*, *Kap*, *Paletot* (paləto:), *Tram*, *Walfisch*, *Walnuß*, *Walroß*; in unaccented syllables: *Eidam*, *Ka'none*, *Pa'pä*, *Pa'pier*, *Wal'küre* (on the stage 'Wälküre), &c., but usually 'Balsām, 'Sultān.

(b). It is always written *a* except as the second element of the diphthong *oi* in some French words when it is the final sound: *Octroi* (ɔktro'a).

17. (a). *ɔ* (ö), the mid-back-wide-round vowel, is somewhat like final *o* in *potato* or *o* in *obey* as pronounced in the northern states, or the first element in the American diphthong *o* found in *note* (noot, but in S.E. pronounced *nout*). It sounds somewhat like S.E. *o* in *rob* but is not so wide and low. The short *o* heard in New England in such words as 'coat,' 'road,' &c., is also very near the German sound. The German *o* must not be pronounced as *o* in American *not*, which is a low and very wide vowel, and hence has a lower position of the tongue than the German vowel. Moreover, in American English the *o* in *not* is over a wide area spoken without rounding of the lips. Be careful to give short German *o* its full sound in final unaccented syllables, and not to slur it as in unaccented syllables in English in such words as *cannon*.

(b). It is written: (1) *o* before a double consonant, or two or more consonants, as in *Groll*, *Sorte*; (2) *o* before a single consonant in *Brombeere*, *Don*, *grob* (in uninfl. form; see 4. 2. A. *c*), *Grog*, *Hochzeit*, *Jot*, *Log*, *Lorbeer*, *Monsieur* (mɔ'sie:), *Mob*, *von*, *Vorteil*, in final unaccented syllables, as in 'Doktor (but in plural *Dok'tören*), *Bischof* (bɪʃɔf or bɪʃo:f, pl. always bɪʃe:fə), &c.; (3) *e* or *ä* in the diphthong *eu* or *äu*, as in *heute* (hœtə), *Bäume* (bœmə).

18. 1. (a). *o*: (ō), the mid-back-narrow-round vowel, is like the American *o* in poetic (po'etɪk, but in S.E. pronounced pou'etɪk), but the American sound is short as it is in an unaccented syllable. It is also like the second element in the American diphthong *o* or the first element in the S.E. diphthong *o* in *note* (noot, in S.E. *nout*). In German the tongue is somewhat further back and higher and the lips are much more rounded.

(b). It is written: (1) *o* when final or before a single consonant, as in *so*, *Noah*, *Rose*; *o* before *ch* in *hoch*, but short in *Hochzeit*; long in open syllables in *O'bacht*, *be'o'bachten*, but short in closed syllables in *Ob'dach*, *ob'siegen*, &c. (2) also *o* before more than one consonant in certain words: before *st* in *Klo'ster*, *O'stern*, *Trost*, and the name *Jost*, but short in closed syllables in *Osten*, *Posten*, &c.; before *bst*, *pst* in *Obst* (4. 1. *b. Note*), *Propst* (4. 2. A. *d. Note*), also in *Lotse*, *Mond*, *Vogt* (see 4. 1. *b. Note*), *O'brigkeit*, and the proper name *Thorn*; before *rt* (silent *t*) in words from the French, as in *Fort*, *Re'ssort*; in *Koks*; (3) *oo*, as in *Boot*, &c.; (4) *oh*, as in *roh*; (5) *oe*, in Low German names, as *Soest*; (6) also as *oi* in Low German names, as *Troisdorf*, &c., except *Boitzenburg*, where *oi* is pronounced as *œ*; (7) *ow* in many Low German (for the most part originally Slavic) proper names and some English nouns: *Bredōw* (name), *Treptow* (city), *Bowle*; (8) *au* in French words, as in *Sauce* (zo:'sə); (9) *eau* in French words, as in *Pla'teau*; (10) *oa* in English words, as in *Toast*.

2. In unaccented open non-final syllables it has the same sound, only pronounced a little quicker. See 4. 2. B. *c. Note*.

19. (a). *u* (u), the high-back-wide-round vowel, is like *u* in *put*, but in German *u* the lips are more rounded. It is only found in closed syllables: *bunt*, *Kunst*.

(b). It is written: (1) *u* before a double consonant, or two or more consonants, as in *Mutter*, *Gruft*; (2) also *u* before one consonant in *Luther* (but *u*

in *lu'thërisch*), *Ulrich* (name), *Huß* (name), *Rußland*, *bugsieren*, (*buk'si nan*), *um*, *zum*, *zur* (4 2 B b), *Urteil* (but *u* in other words with *Ur-*, as *Ursache*, &c.), *Jus*, *ka'put*, *Klub*, *plus*, *Rum*, and in Latin suffixes, as in *Metrum*, *Fiskus*; (3) *ou* in French words in closed syllables, as in *Ressource* (*re'sursə*)

20 1. (a) *u* (*u*), the high back narrow round vowel is much as *o* in *who* when unstressed. It is the second element in the American diphthong *oe* in *shoe* (*ʃu*). In S.E. *oe* in *shoe* is usually a long *u* as in German. In German the sound is made slightly further back.

(b) *u* is written (1) *u* when final, or before a single vowel or consonant, as in *du*, *Duo* (*du'o* but pronounced *u* in *huh* *huh* *pfui* *pfui*, see 23 4) *Bude*, *Ur-* (as in *Urlaub*, &c., but pronounced *ur* in *Urteil*), *Ludwig*, also in a final closed syllable in *Beelzebub* (*be'elzəbub* or more commonly *'belzəbub*, also written *Belzebub*), (2) *u* in the suffixes *tum* and *ut*, as in *Reichtum*, *Armut*; (3) *u* before *ch* in *Bruch* (*bog* but short in *Bruch* break fracture), *Buch*, *Buche*, *Fluch*, *Kuchen*, *suchen*, *Tuch*, *Wucher*, *juchzen*, *suchbar*, *suchlos*, *verrucht*; (4) *u* before a combination of consonants in *Wuchs*, *wuchs*, *husten*, *pusten*, *Schuster*, *Wust*, *Ge'burt* (but *ū* in *ge'burtig*), *flugs*, *duzen* (*du tsən*), *Uz* (*u ts*), *uzen* (*u tsən*), and the proper name *Gū'drun*; (5) *uh*, as in *Kuh*, &c., (6) *ue* in the name *Kotzebue*; (7) *ou* before a single consonant or when final in French words, as in *Tour*, *Rendezvous* (*rā de'vu*), (8) *oe* in Dutch words as in *Boer* (more commonly written *Bur*), &c.

2 In unaccented open non final syllables, *u* has the same sound, only pronounced a little more quickly. *Mulatte* (*mu'latə*). See 4 2 B c Note. When preceded by *g* and followed by a stressed vowel unaccented *u* forms with the vowel a rising (22) diphthong in a few foreign words, *Linguist* (*lɪŋ'gɪst*), *Pinguin* (*pɪŋ'gɪn*), *sanguinisch* (*zəŋ'gɪnɪʃ*)

### THE MIXED VOWEL *e* (ə)

21. *ə* (unaccented *e*), the mid mixed wide vowel, is a sound somewhat like the *a* in *sofa*, but it is a little higher. It is only found in unaccented syllables, as in *'leben*, *'gebe*, *'Spindel*, *ge'liebt*, *be'liebt*, in the proclitics (see 57. C) *der*, *des*, *dem*, *den*, &c. In the final unaccented syllables *el*, *em*, *en*, *er*, the *e* often naturally drops out in ordinary language *ritten* for *ritten*, &c. On the other hand, in dignified or solemn language it approaches the sound of *e* in open and *e* in closed syllables. *Liebe* (*li be*), *lieben* (*li ben*). In singing it resembles a conforming however more or less to the preceding vowel. In S.G. *e* is widely used instead of *ə* also in common speech, in some sections finally or before a consonant in other sections only finally. In the emphatic language of a contrast *ə* quite generally becomes *e* in open and *e* in closed syllables. *nicht verkauft* (*fənkaʊft*), *sondern gekauft* (*gɛ kaʊft*)

### DIPHTHONGS

22 Diphthongs are divided into falling and rising. In the former class there is a decline of sonority in the second element. In the latter class there is an increase of sonority in the second vowel.

23 The falling diphthongs are *ei*, *au*, *eu* or *au*, *ui*

1 *ei* is pronounced much as *i* in *wife* or more accurately *re* also *ri*. The German sound is nearer *i* in *wife* than the *i* in *mine*. It is written (1) *ei*, as in *Ei*, *Stein*, (2) *ai*, as in *Mai*, (3) *ey* in proper names as in *Meyer*, (4) *ay* in proper names as in *Bayern*, (5) *y* in Dutch names as in *Yssel*.

Note In a few foreign words *ai* represents two vowels each forming a syllable. *Mosaik* *mo sa isch* *Kain* (*ka'in*) &c.

2 *au* is pronounced much as *ou* in *loud* (*laud*), or more accurately *ao*, also *au*. It is always written *au*.

Note In some foreign words *au* represents two vowels each forming a syllable. *Kapernaum* *Mene'thus* &c.

3 *eu* is pronounced much as *oy* in *boy* or more accurately *œ*, also *oy* and *œ*. The diphthong *œ* is written (1) *eu*, as in *Heu*, *Zeus*, *Theseus*, but for excep

tions see *Note 2* below; (2) *äu*, as in *gläubig*, but see *Note 3* for exceptions; (3) *oi* in a few Low German words, as *Boi*, *a'hoi*, *Boitzenburg*, &c., and the foreign word *Lev'koie* (ləf'kœə or *Levkoje* (ləf'ko:jə); (4) *oy* in Low German names and a few foreign words, as *Hoyers'werda*, *Mis'droy*; *Troygewicht*, *Sa-voyen*; (5) *ieu* in *Lieutenant* (lət'nant), better *Leutnant*; (6) *ui* in Dutch words, as in *Zuidersee*.

*Note 1.* *Eu* and *äu* are pronounced *ae* in S.G. and M.G. dialects. See 26 A (last par.).

*Note 2.* In some words *eu* represents two vowels each forming a syllable: *Te'dēum*, *Bakka'laureus*, &c.

*Note 3.* In some foreign words *äu* represents two vowels each forming a syllable: *Jubi'läum*, *Mat'thäus*, &c.

4. *ui* is pronounced *ui*. The second element is almost as sonorous as the first. It only occurs in the exclamations *hui* and *pfui*.

24. The rising diphthongs are *iə*, *io*, *iʊ*, *ia*, *io*; *'ia*, *'ie*, *'ie*, *'io*, *iə*; *'üi*, *'ür*. For examples see 7. 2 (2nd par.) and 20. 2.

### NASAL VOWELS.

25. In many of the later loan-words from the French, nasal vowels, which are indicated by a following *m* or *n*, are pronounced as in the original with the modification that in German the sound is always long as it stands in an open syllable, i. e. *am*, *an*, *em*, *en* = *ā*: (nasal *a*); *ain*, *ein*, *im*, *in* = *ē*:; *om* and *on* = *ō*:; *um* and *un* = *ū*:, when the *m* or *n* is not doubled or followed by a vowel: *Chance* (ʃā:sə), *Entree* (ā'tre:), *Bassin* (ba'sē:), *Ballon* (ba'lō:), *Verdun* (vēr'dō:). This pronunciation prevails on the stage, in the South, and in parts of the Midland. In the North *ā*:, *ē*:, *ō*:, *ū*: are quite generally replaced by the nearest native sounds, *aŋ*, *eŋ*, *oŋ*, *uŋ*, i. e. *a*, *e*, *o*, *u*, followed by *ŋ* (see 36. b): *Chance*, *Entree*, *Bassin*, *Ballon*, *Verdun*, pronounce 'ʃaŋsə, aŋ'tre:, ba'seŋ, ba'lōŋ, vēr'dōŋ. The vowel is always short as it stands in a closed syllable. In a few thoroly naturalized words these endings are pronounced as in German: *Bataillon* (batal'jo:n), *Balkon* (bal'kō: or bal'ko:n), *Garnison* (garni'zo:n), *Ballon* (now often ba'lō:n instead of ba'lō:), &c.

### MUTATION (Umlaut) OF VOWELS.

26. A. *Mutation of the Back Vowels.* The vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and the diphthong *au*, are modified or mutated, as it may be called, when an *i* or *j* follows in the next syllable, or in the second succeeding syllable: *Stunde*, *stündlich*; *Mutter*, *mütterlich*; *Raum*, *räumlich*. The cause of mutation, which in German began to develop about the middle of the eighth century, cannot usually be seen in the present period of the language, as the *i* or *j* which formerly stood in the following syllable has disappeared or decayed to the form of *e*: *Gäste* (pl. of *Gast*), but O.H.G. *gesti*; *nähren*, but O.H.G. *nerian*. This is not specifically a German development but is found in all Germanic languages except those which like Gothic disappeared at an early period. The mutation of *a* was in earlier times written *e*, which is in part still preserved: *brennen*, *brannte*, &c. The mutated vowels have in different periods been designated in different ways. In earlier N.H.G. it was common to write an *e* over or alongside of the vowels, but at present the usual sign of mutation is two dots above the vowels, which are the remnants of the *e* of former times. Older usage survives in a few names: *Goethe*, &c. Also sometimes after capitals: *Ae*, *Oe*, *Ue*, usually *Ä*, *Ö*, *Ü*. In recent periodicals and books we sometimes find *e* written above the vowel as formerly, especially in poems and books of a poetic character and in reprints of older works where archaic tendencies are natural, sometimes however in advertisements merely to attract attention.

The pronunciation of these mutated sounds has been treated above. When the *i* or *j*, which are pronounced in the front part of the mouth, followed the back vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and the diphthong *au*, the result was that the back sounds were modified, i. e. in part assimilated to frontal *i* or *j*, the tongue shifting more to the front in unconscious anticipation of the following *i* or *j*.

Physiological (see *Note*) mutation is oldest and most wide-spread in the North. It is most recent and least used in the South. It is a conspicuous feature of the literary language, which was largely formed in the mutating territory of the Midland. In S.G. the mutation of *u* did not take place before *l*, *m*, *n*, *r* + another consonant, or before *ck*, *pf*, *tz*. Moreover, *au* was not mutated in S.G. before a labial and *a* was not uniformly mutated before *l* or *r* + another consonant. S.G. forms have become established in a number of cases in the literary language: *geduldig* and *schuldig* (in contrast to Luther's *gedültig* and *schüldig*), *Innsbruck* (the Austrian city, in contrast to the N.G. *Osnabrück*), *nutzen* or *nützen* (originally M.G.), *glauben* (in contrast to Luther's *gleuben*), *gewaltig* (in Luther's earlier writings also *geweltig*), &c. Other S.G. forms occur occasionally in the literary language, or were formerly used: *hupfen* (Goethe's *Faust*, l. 4337, now *hüpfen*), *Zahnluck* (Scheffel's *Trompeter*, *Drittes Stück*, here for the sake of the

meter, usually *Zahnücke*), &c. Sometimes both the mutated MG and the unmutated SG forms have survived as they have become differentiated in meaning: *drücken* to press and *drucken* to print, *zücken* (das Schwert) to draw (the sword) and *zucken* to twitch, &c.

For centuries there has been a tendency to unround here, i.e. not to round or protrude the lips. In some dialects *e* becomes *i*, *u* becomes *ü*, *verbrennen*, *müde*, even in the literary language. In the literary language *e*, *i*, *ei* in the unrounded sounds still prevail here in dialect.

**B. A-Mutation.** This is also a change of sound in the stem under the influence of the following vowel, resulting in a partial assimilation of the stem vowel to the vowel in the following syllable. In West Germanic, *i* or *e* in the German period before separation into High German and Low German *i* and *u* developed into *e* and *o* when an *a*, *e*, or *o* followed in the next syllable. This change of vowel is called *a* mutation from the frequency of the mutation under the influence of a following *a*. Illustrative examples are given in 198 1 Division, *d*, 2 Division, *d* 199 1 Division, *d*, 201. *e*. The change of *i* to *e* in both English and German took place in only comparatively few cases and quite irregularly, so that the languages *Leber* (OHG *lebari*, with *a* mutation), Eng. *mutated* to *o* here quite regularly except before a nasal + participle *geholffen* (OHG *giholfan*) has the mutated *o*, while in *gebunden*, perf. participle of *binden*, a word belonging to the same gradation class, the mutation did not take place, as it was hindered by the *nd* following the vowel of the stem. Thus also *Huld*, but *hold* (original stem *holda*), *Fülle* (OHG *fulhi*), *fullen* (Gothic *fullan*), but *voll* (original stem *folli*). Later unmutated *u* became *o* according to A, above, when an *i* or *j* followed, as in the examples *Fülle* and *fullen*.

**C. Mutation of *e*.** In West Germanic, *i* or *e* in the German period before separation into High German and Low German, the vowel *e* was changed to *i* before a nasal + a consonant or

is called *a* mutation. See also 197. C *b* for further examples of *i*, *nd*-, and *a* mutation. The different forces at work in these changes are no longer felt, but they have played an important part in shaping the present forms of the language.

**D. Vowel Gradation (Ablaut).** A difference of accent in different forms of the same word developed in early times vowel gradation, that is, a difference of vowel, compare *laipō*, but *laipōn*—In English vowel gradation often accompanied by a reduction of the vowel *e* effects, as the difference of accent has in *capio*, hence reduction of stem vowel). Vowel gradation is now most clearly to be observed in strong verbs, and for practical reasons this subject is discussed under that head. See 197. A.

## CONSONANTS.

### 27. General Rules

1. *Change of Sound.* Unlike vowels, which do not change their quantity and pronunciation from the addition of inflectional endings, consonants may change considerably their sound in certain positions, as noted below (in articles 29-37) under the different consonants: *lesen* (le zən) to read, *du hest* (li st), *liegen* (li gən) to lie, *du liegst* (li kst), here the *s* and *g* in the different words have different sounds.

2. *Quantity.* In general, consonants in German are always short, while in English they are short after a long vowel or a diphthong and long after a short vowel: short in *soll*, *Kamm*, *Mann*, *lang* (lan), *Kuß*, *Flasche*, *Rat*, *feet*, *need*, &c., but long in *bell*, *ham*, *man*, *tongue*, *kiss*, *smash*, *rat*, &c. Divided consonants are short in both German and English: *Manner*, *manner*, &c.

THE GLOTTAL SPIRANT *h*.

28. *H* is pronounced like *h* in *hand*, only more forcibly. Only the initial *h* of a stem syllable, be it a simple word, a compound, or a suffix, has this pronunciation: *Halt*, *Anhalt*, *Weisheit*. The *h* is pronounced medially in *Oheim* and *Ahorn*, as they are compounds, or are felt as compounds. The *h* is still sounded in *Wilhelm*, &c., but in some compound names, as *Walther* (now usually written *Walter*), *Mathilde* (also written *Matilde*), &c., it is silent, as the names are not vividly felt as compounds. The medial *h* is naturally pronounced in the onomatopœic forms *Uhu*, *Schuhu*, also the exclamations *aha*, *oho*. Medial *h* is also pronounced in foreign words: *Jehovah*, *Alkohol*, *Sahara*, *kontrahieren*, &c. Declaimers and singers, following the printed form, sometimes pronounce medial *h* in German words, as in *gehen*, but this practice is not based on actual usage in the usual literary language. In all simple German words medial and final *h* have become silent except in the Southwest (especially in Switzerland and Tyrol), where in certain dialects it can still be heard medially between vowels, as in *sehen*. It must, indeed, have thus been pronounced medially thruout a large part of Germany up to a comparatively recent date, or it would not have come down to us so well preserved here in the orthography. Even after medial *h* had become silent it was felt as having a meaning. As it was originally the initial sound of its syllable and hence usually stood after an open syllable it usually in N.H.G., as in *sēhen*, followed a long vowel, so that even after it had become silent it was felt as indicating the length of the preceding vowel. Since the fifteenth century, however, *h* often does not possess an etymological value, as many new unhistorical *h*'s have from time to time been inserted merely as a sign to show that the preceding vowel is long. This tendency became strong toward the end of the sixteenth century. As the *h* was often used where the preceding vowel would be clearly marked as long without its assistance, the new official rules require here its omission in many cases, as *Rat* instead of *Rath*, while in others they inconsistently allow it to stand. This inconsistency is easily justified in those cases where the *h* is not a mere sign to show the length of the preceding vowel, but is an etymological part of the stem which has in course of time become silent, altho in other words of the same origin the *h* appears in the older form of a pronounced *ch*: *sehen* (pro. ze:'ən) *to see*, but *Sicht* *sight*. The silent *h* has been especially allowed to stand before *l*, *m*, *n*, *r* when the final element of the stem and after a vowel before *e*, in all of which cases however there does not seem in most words to be any good reason for using it: *Ahle*, *rühmen*, *sühnen*, *führen*; *nähen*, *gehen*, &c.

An *h* is in N.G. often pronounced after *p*, *t*, *k* (as also in English), altho no printed character here represents it. See 29. *a*.

*Note.* According to its formation *h* is a vowel, differing, however, from other vowels in that it is voiceless. It always has the mouth position of the following vowel. Thus *hu* is a voiceless *u* followed by a voiced *u*, and *ha* is a voiceless *a* followed by a voiced *a*, &c. The one character *h* stands thus, not for one sound, but for a number of different voiceless vowels. *H* is classed here as a consonant because it is invariably used as a consonant and also has the acoustic effect of a consonant, namely, that of a voiceless spirant, except between voiced sounds, where it is voiced.

STOPS: voiceless *p*, *t*, *k*; voiced *b*, *d*, *g*.

29. The voiceless stops *p*, *t*, *k* are pronounced much as in English. The voiced stops *b*, *d*, *g* are, according to the standard of the stage, pronounced as in English, when they stand at the beginning of a word, or elsewhere before a vowel or voiced consonant, i. e. initially in word or syllable, but when final (end of word or syllable) or next to a voiceless consonant they become voiceless *p*, *t*, *k*: (voiced) *bieten*, *das*, *gut*, *Ne-bel*, *e-del*, *Ta-ge*; but final *b*, *d*, *g* in *ob*, *Hund*, *Tag*, and *Hedwig*, and final *b'*, *d'*, *g'* (see also *c* below) in *hab'*, *wurd'*, *sag'* are pronounced voiceless, as *ɔp*, *hunt*, *ta:k*, *he:tvɪç*, *ha:p*, *vurt*, *zɑ:k*; also *b*, *d*, *g* in *Abt*, (des) *Eids*, *liegt* are pronounced voiceless, as *apt*, *aets*, *li:kt*. Distinguish carefully between *b*, *d*, *g* that stand as the final sound of a syllable or before a consonant in a suffix or an inflectional ending and *b*, *d*, *g* that stand

as the initial sound of a medial syllable where it is immediately followed by the final l, n, r of the stem: Knablein (knɛ.p'laɛn), liebt (lɪpt), but neblig (ne.'blɪç, stem Nebel); redlich (re'tlɪç), but Redner (re.'dnɛr, stem reden); reglos (re.k'los or re.ç'los), but regnen (re.'gnɛn, stem Regen). The stage prescribes a slight difference of pronunciation between b, d, g and p, t, k when they follow a long vowel, either in the final position as in Gräb, läg, tät, &c, or before a consonant as in läbt, wägt, spükt, &c. Here p, t, k are pronounced forcibly, while in case of b, d, g the inception is pronounced as a weak p, t, k and the close is uttered forcibly. The vowel before the p, t, k is spoken steadily, while the vowel before b, d, g is spoken decrescendo gradually vanishing as the following weak p, t, k is begun. The stage also prescribes that b, d, g before the voiced suffixes -lich, -lein, -los, -nis, -bar, -sam, -sal, -sel be pronounced as unaspirated p, t, k lieblich 'lɪp'lɪç, i. e. with unaspirated p, &c.

The change of sound from b to p and d to t at the end of a syllable, or next to a voiceless consonant, is well established in the North, but that of g to k has, altho supported by the stage and many scholars, not yet become general usage. The g in these positions is in the North still usually a spirant and is pronounced as the voiceless spirants ch in ich and ach (see 32. 3. a and b). The general pronunciation of medial g is still j or g as described in 34. 3 and 4 and 35. 3 and 4. Good usage in the North has, however, decided for the stage pronunciation g initially and the tendency to medial g instead of j or g is at present so strong in choice language as to point to the ultimate victory of g here. In the final position and next to a voiceless consonant ç and x are still widely used, but in choice language the tendency is to pronounce k, the pronunciation of the stage. On the other hand, the stage itself recognizes the pronunciation of ç for g in the suffix -ig when final or before a consonant, except where a ch occurs in the next syllable: König kɔnɪç, Königs kɔnɪçs, but Königreich kɔnɪkraɛç, königlich kɔnɪklɪç, &c., g however medially: Könige kɔnɪgə, &c. For the stage pronunciation of 'ge (= ige) see 7. 2. (2nd par.).

In the South the g in all the positions described above is pronounced as an unaspirated k. See a.

For the pronunciation of g after n, as in singen, see 36. b.

a *Sectional and Dialectic Peculiarities.* In Middle and South Germany b, d, g lack voice element, and hence it is often difficult for us to distinguish in these sections between b and p, d and t, g and k. There is usually, however, a real difference between M.G. and S.G. voiceless

the initial position aspirated. When initial, b, d, g are pronounced p, t, k and hence aspirated. The stage even insists upon aspiration in the initial position in an unstressed syllable, as in Lum-pen. In general a p, t, or k is not aspirated before a consonant as aspiration here is often difficult ab ap', Pack p'ak', &c, but abbiegen ap-bɪgɛn, nackt nakt', gibt gɪpt', Apfel apfɛl, &c. Before certain suffixes, as described above, final b, d, g are not aspirated. On the other hand, in the final position, b, d, g are pronounced p, t, k and hence aspirated.

no  
tic  
ts,  
of  
kx  
nc  
sp  
labio (

1, in the North as the rbe farro, &c., (NG) that of a spirant, initially j, ç, g, or x, medially and finally according to the general usage described above, with the exception that it often becomes voiceless medially in the Midland b. In derivatives and compounds these stops are pronounced voiceless if they stand at the end of either component Abart (apa rt) In that case (see 41. 3 a), however, where the final stop is carried over to the next syllable, it is pronounced voiced be-'o-bachten.



c. The **b, d, g**, that become final by the elision of **e** are usually voiceless: **hab'** Dank ha:p dapk, **Leid und Freud'** laet unt fræot, sag' mir za:k mir. In case of a stressed word before an enclitic beginning with a vowel, however, these consonants are voiced: **hab'** ich ha:'bɪç, **Freud'** und Leid 'fræo'dunt laet.

### HOW THE STOPS ARE WRITTEN.

30. 1. The **p** sound is written **p** or **pp** (after a short vowel), as in **Paar**, **Rappe**; **b** finally and also medially before a consonant in the stem, suffix, or inflectional ending, or **bb** before an inflectional ending: **ab** (ap), **ob** (ɔp), **Subskription** ('zupskrɪp'tsɪo:n), **Abt** (apt), **lieblich** (laep'liç, but **neblich** ne:'bliç; see 29), **bebt** (be:pt), **ebbt** (ept).

2. The **t** sound is written **t** or **tt** (after a short vowel), as in **Tau**, **fett**; **th** in German names, as **Goethe**, but Christian names **Herta** rather than **Hertha**, &c.; **th** in many foreign words, as in **Thema**, **Themse**, &c.; **d** finally and also medially before a consonant in the suffix, as in **Mund** (munt), **Ludwig** (lu:tviç), **Adjektiv** (atjek'ti:f), **Kindlein** (kɪntlaen), but only **d** in **Handlung** (han-dlʊŋ, &c., where the **l** is a part of the stem **Handel**; see 29); **dt** in a few words, as in **Stadt**, **sandte**, **beredt**, &c.

3. The **k** sound is written: (1) **k** or **ck** (after a short vowel), as in **kahl**, **dick**; (2) **ch** in a number of words where it is followed by an **s** (=  $\text{ʒ}$  or  $\text{ʃ}$ ) which forms a part of the stem, as in **Ochs** (=  $\text{ʤ}$ ), **Ochsen** (=  $\text{ʤ}$ ), but not in (**des**) **Buchs**, **wach-sam**, &c.; (3) **ch** initially in some German names, **Chemnitz**, **Chlodwig**, &c., also in many foreign words, as in **Chor**, see 32. 3. a. Note. (2); (4) **q** before **u**, as in **Quelle** (kvelə); (5) **g** finally or before a consonant in a suffix or an inflectional ending = **k** upon the stage, as in **Tag**, **täglich**, **tagt**, but = **g** where the following consonant is a part of the stem, as in **re'gnen**; see 29; **g** also quite generally as well as upon the stage in a few isolated words, as **bugsieren** (bʊk'si:rən), **flugs** (flu:ks), **Gig** (gɪk), **Grog** (grɔk), **Log** (lɔk), and the proper names **Augsburg** (aoks'bʊrk) and **Jagst** (jakst); (6) in sections of the North **g** after **ŋ** when final or before a voiceless consonant, as in **ging** (gɪŋk), **bringst** (brɪŋkst), where on the stage and in choice language in the North the **g** is silent; (7) **gg** finally, or medially before a consonant, as in **Brigg**, **flaggt**; (8) **c** in many foreign words, as in **Cognac** (kɔnjak, now better in German spelling **Kognak**), also in some German names, **Campe**, &c.; (9) also **cc** in some foreign words, as in **A'ccord**, now better in German spelling **A'kkord**.

4. The **b** sound is written: (1) **b** as initial sound in word or syllable: **Bahn**, **Liebe**, **nē'blig** (see 29), **Abraham** (a:bra-ham), **sublim** (zu-'bli:m), but of course pronounced **p** when it is the final sound in the syllable, as in **Gelübde** (gə'lʏpdə), **Subordination** (zʊp'ɔrdi-na-'tsɪo:n); (2) **bb** after a short vowel when followed by a vowel, as in **Ebbe**; **b** as a final sound in the syllable in a number of foreign words, as **Bobsleigh** (bɔb'sle:), **Oblate** (ɔb-'la:tə, on the stage o-'bla:tə), **obli'gat**, &c., but pronounced **p** after German fashion in very common words, as **Subjekt** (zʊp'jekt), &c., of course, sometimes fluctuating between German and foreign pronunciation, as in **Ablativ** (ap-la'ti:f, ab-la'ti:f, on the stage a-bla'ti:f), &c.

5. The **d** sound is written: (1) **d** as initial sound in word or syllable: **du**, **'Rē'dner** (29), **'Ä'dler**, **or-dnen** (but pronounced **t** in **wid-men** as **d** is the final sound of the syllable), **Budget** (br'dʒe:); (2) **dd** or **ddh** after a short vowel when followed by a vowel: **Kladde**, **Buddha** (bʊda:), &c.

Note. The **d** is silent in a few words from the French: **Fonds** (fɔ:), **Plafond** (pla'fɔ:), &c.

6. The **g** (voiced stop as in English **g** in **go**) sound is written: (1) **g** initially as in **gut**; (2) **g** also medially when followed by a vowel and preceded by a vowel or consonant (for colloquial N.G. pronunciation here see 34. 4, 35. 3. (2)): **Sage**, **Ziege**, **Berge**; also written **g** as the initial sound of a medial syllable, where it is usually followed by the final **l, n, or r** of the stem, but if these consonants do not form a part of the stem the pronunciation of **g** here is  $\text{ç}$  or  $\text{x}$  in colloquial N.G. or according to the stage **k**, as the **g** is the final sound of the syllable: **Vöglein** fe:'glaen (stem **Vogel**), **regnen** re:'gnən (stem **Regen**), **Wagner** va:'gnər (stem **Wagen**, or sometimes in colloquial N.G. with a different syllabic division

va'a'nə), but möglich məç'lic, or better mək'lic, fraglich frax'lic, or better fra k'lic, for the colloquial N G pronunciation of *Vogeln, regnen* see 35. 3 (3) furthermore written g medially in foreign words before l, m, n, r, both when it is the initial sound of the medial syllable and contrary to usage in native German words also when it is the final sound *Reglement* (ne glə'ma), *Geographie* (ge o gra'fi), *Signal* (zi'gnal), (as final sound in syllable) *Dogma* (dɔg-ma), but often here in German fashion dɔk-ma or dɔx-ma, often with different pronunciation according to syllabic division *Signal* zi'gnal (4 2. B c Note), or zik'nal, ziç'nal, or ziŋ'nal (36. c) (3) gg medially after a short vowel when followed by a vowel, as in *Flagge*; (4) gu before a front vowel in foreign words as in *Gu'tarre*, or now better in German spelling *Gr'tarre*, *Guerilla* (ge 'nilja), *Guillotine* (giljo'tina), (5) gh in foreign words, as in *Ghibelline*, *Ghetto*, or better in German spelling *Gibelline*, *Getto*.

## SPIRANTS

31. Voiceless f, s (s, ss, ß), ch, g, sch; voiced w, s, j, g, r.

Spirants like stops vary in part in pronunciation according to their position, as will be noted in the following articles

32. Voiceless spirants—f, s (s, ss, ß), ch, g, sch.

1. f is pronounced as f in *fine* funf, &c Compare 33 1 Note

2. s sounds nearly like ss in *moss*, but is narrower in its tongue articulation, that is, has a somewhat smaller air channel between the tongue and the teeth-roots, which gives the hiss a higher pitch *Haus, Eis*, &c See also 34 2 a

3. The spirants ch and g are not found in English Their pronunciation depends upon their position

a Medially and finally after a front vowel (see 6 1 a above) or any consonant, initially in some foreign words (see Note below), and always in the diminutive suffix *chen*, ch is a voiceless j, thus closely resembles English or American y in *yes* spoken without voice or the American voiceless spirant that follows c in *cure* (kɜr), but it is much stronger *stechen, ich, Lerche, Chi'rug, Madchen*. The phonetic symbol for this sound is ç Also g final or before a consonant has in colloquial North German the same sound when it follows a front vowel or any consonant *Steg, legt, Berg*. The stage demands that g here be pronounced k

Note In older German words here f = t

b After back vowels (see 6. 1 b, above) ch becomes a velar spirant, as in *ach, A'chat, A'chill* It is heard from Scotchmen for ch in *loch* It is formed by raising the back part of the tongue towards the middle of the soft palate, a little higher than in the position for short u, and then forcing thru this space between the tongue and palate a broad current of air, which produces a rough rasping sound In a few foreign words cch has this same sound *Bacchus*, &c In colloquial North German g is also thus pronounced, when it stands after a back vowel and is not followed by a vowel *Tag tagt*. The phonetic symbol for this sound is x

Note In older German ch = t

4 sch something like sh in *shy*, but in German the lips are protruded more, and the point of the tongue is less raised *scharf, Schiff*, &c The usually represented by three letters (sch), this sound is a simple one, the phonetic symbol of which is ʃ

Note This sound has come from two quite different sources (1) In many words as described in 40 2 g (1) it developed out of s (2) In many other words it corresponds to O H G sk hence was originally a combination of

two sounds *s* and *k*. This older order of things survives medially and finally, as in *Disk* (= H.G. *Tisch*), &c., in certain dialects of the western half of the Low German territory. In the extreme western part of this territory *sk* developed in the final position into *sch*, i. e. *s*+*x* and at present is pronounced *s* as the *s* has assimilated to itself the *x*. The pronunciation *s*+*x* arose in late O.H.G. and survives in Westphalian dialect in the initial position. The present simple sound was general in the South about 1300. The older pronunciation with two distinct sounds has left traces behind in the literary language in that it has kept the preceding short vowel short. See 4. 1. *b. Note*.

### HOW VOICELESS SPIRANTS ARE WRITTEN.

33. 1. The *f* sound is written: (1) *f* or *ff* (after short vowel), as in *Fall*, *Schiff*, &c.; (2) *v* in a few German words, as in *Vater*, *Vetter*, *Gevatter*, *Vehme* (better *Feme*), *ver-*, *Vieh*, *viel*, *vier*, *Vlies* (*Vließ*), *Vogel*, *Volk*, *voll*, *vom*, *von*, *vor*, *vorder*, *zu'vörderst*, *vorn*, *Frevel*; initially in a number of German, Low German, and Dutch proper names, as *Vilmar*, *Virchow*, (*firço*), *Voß*, *Vischer*, *Veldeke*, *Vörden*, *Bremer'vörde*, medially only in *Havel*, *Bremer'haven*, *Kux'haven*, *Wilhelms'haven*; in a few L.G. words, finally and before a consonant, as in *Luv*, *luvwärts*, *luvt* (but *luven* *lu:vən*); (3) *v* finally in all foreign words, as in *passiv*, medially in *Pulver*, and regularly before a consonant, as in *Evchen* (but *Eva* *e:va*), *Lev'koje*, initially in *van* (before Dutch names), *Veit*, *Vers*, *Vogt*, *Veilchen*, *Vesper*; (4) *ph* in foreign words, as in *Philo'soph*, *Diph'thong*, &c.; (5) *pph* in the Greek name *Sappho*; (6) often *w* finally or before a consonant in many Slavic words, as *Boleslaw*, *Kiew* (*ki:ɛf*), *Asow* (*a:zɔf*), *Asowsches Meer*, &c., where however the stage requires *w* (i. e. *v*), *bo:ləslav*, &c.

*Note.* In oldest German we find the German *f*-sound sometimes expressed by *v*, as the monks of that time seem to have pronounced Latin *v* as *f*. Thus there arose two characters for the *f*-sound. In M.H.G., *v* was used to indicate the weakly articulated old Germanic *f*, as found in M.H.G. *visch* (N.H.G. *Fisch*), Eng. *fish*, and *f* was employed to indicate the strongly articulated sound developed in the second shifting out of Germanic *p* (see 40. 1. *c*), as in *helfen*, Eng. *help*. This old distinction between the weak and the strong *f* is still in large part preserved in Swiss dialects. This distinction had probably disappeared in the final position even in oldest literary German and in M.H.G. this change found a formal expression in the orthography by the uniform use of *f* at the end of a word, which clearly indicates that the weaker sound was here supplanted by the stronger one: M.H.G. *wolf*, but in the genitive *wolves*. Later the stronger articulation spread to all positions, and hence *f* replaced *v* in all positions except in the few words given above, where the older orthography survives as a fossil. The pronunciation of *v* as *f* in the words from the Latin *Vers*, *Vesper*, *Veilchen*, *Veit*, *Vogt*, &c., indicates the older German way of pronouncing Latin *v*. In *Brief* (Latin *breve*), *Käfig* (Latin *cavea*). &c., the character *f* is used. The *f* in *prüfen* (Old French *prover*) indicates that the Germans substituted the nearest sound in their language for the French *v*, which at that time was unknown in German. See 35. 1. *Note*.

2. The *s* sound is written: (1) *s* (=ʒ) at the end of a word, as in *Moos*, *Stuhls* (*ʃtu:ls*, not *ʃtu:lz* as English-speaking students usually pronounce), *Tals*, &c.; *ks* in the Latin form of *x* in a few foreign and native words, as *Marx*, *nix* (dialect for *nichts*), &c.; (2) *s* (=ʃ) medially before consonants, as in *Liste*, also before vowels if it is preceded by a consonant other than *l*, *m*, *n*, *ng* (*ŋ*), *r*: *Erbse* (*ˈɛrpsə*), but the *s* is voiced in *Linse* as it follows *n*; *ks* in the Latin form of *x* in a few foreign and native words, as in *Xaver* (*ksa:vər* or *ksa:'vɛ:r*), *exakt* (*eks-'ʔakt*), *Hexe*, &c.; (3) *S* or *s* (=ʃ) initially in foreign words before a consonant other than *p* or *t*, as in *Skizze*, *Smaragd*, *Szene* (*stse:nə*); (4) *s* (=ʃ) initially before *p* or *t* in many foreign words that are still vividly felt as foreign, as in *spon'tan*, *Spaa*, *Spleen* (*splɪn*), *ste'ril*, *Stenogra'phie*, *Stuart*, &c., also medially after a prefix, as in *ab'strakt*, *In'stinkt*, *konstru'ieren*, *'Konstanz* (city) &c.; (5) *ss* (=ʃʃ) between vowels when a short vowel, and *ß* (=ʃ) when a long vowel precedes, as in *Flüsse*, *Füße*; *ß* at the end, or medially before a consonant in all words which require *ss* or *ß* between vowels, as in *Fluß*, *G. Flusses*, *Fuß*, *G. Fußes*, *müssen*, *du mußt*, *stößen*, *du stößt*; (6) heard as the latter element in the double sound *ts* (written *z*, *tz*, *t* before *i*, *c* before front vowels; see 39. 3) even before vowels, as in *Katze*, *heizen*, *Patient*, *asketisch* (*as'tse:trɪʃ*, also written *ascetisch*, but more commonly *asketisch*, pronounced with a *k*); (7) *ç* in words from the French, as in *Façon* (*fa'sɔ:*); (8) *c* in some French words, especially before *ə*, as in *Annonce* (*a'nɔ:sə*); (9) *z* in *Bronze* (*brɔ:sə*, also pronounced with *z*), and in the Spanish words *Kadiz* (*ka:dis*), *Cortez* (*kɔrtɛs*), *Gomez* (*go:mes*), &c.

3. *ç* is written *ch* in some words and *g* in others, as described in 32. 3. *a*. It is written *x* in the name *Xi'mēnā*.

Also *x* is written *ch* in some words and *g* in others. See 32. 3. *b*.

4. *ʃ* is written: (1) *sch* as in *scharf*, &c., but *sch* in the Italian word *Scherzo* (*skertso:*) is pronounced *sk*, as *h* here has only been added to *c* before the front

vowel *e* to give the *e* the hard sound of *k*, (2) *s* initially before *p* or *t* in all stem syllables *sprechen*, *stehen*, *verstehen*, *Ziegelstein*; also in a large number of very common foreign words which are felt as native words as in *spazieren*, *Spion*, *Student*, &c. (3) *ch* in French and other foreign words see 32 3 *a Note* (4), (5), (4) *sh* in English words as in *Shakespeare*, *Shawl* (but *Schal*) (5) continued in *c* (before *e* and *i*) and *cc* = *tʃ* in Italian words as *Cello* (*tʃelo*) *Violoncell* (*violon'tʃel*) *Cicerone* (*tʃitʃerone*) *Boccaccio* (*bɔ'kʃtʃo*) (6) *x* in *Don Quixote* (according to the French *dɔ'ki'ɔt* more commonly in French spelling *Don Quichotte*, the former form the old Spanish spelling, sometimes with Spanish pronunciation *dɔn ki'ɔte*) (7) continued in *ch* in English words (see 32 3 *a Note* (5)) and *o* in *Guttapercha* (*gut'tʃep'tʃa* also *gut'tʃep'tʃa*) (8) continued in the Slavonic *tʃ* or *cz* (= *tʃ*) as in *Tscheche* or *Czeche* (*tʃɛʃa*)

*a* In Hanover Holstein Pomerania and Mecklenburg initial *s* before *p* and *t* is pronounced as voiceless instead of *ʃ* as in *Stein* (*stɛin*)

*b* In the Southwest *st*, *sp* are pronounced *ʃt*, *ʃp* also finally and medially not only so in dialect but often also by the educated classes *kunst* *hirst* *hirsal* instead of *kunst* *hirst* *hirsal*. In some M.G. dialects *ʃ* is heard for *z* after *r* *hørʃ* instead of *Börse*. In the dialect of Berlin *ʃ* is heard after *r* for *s* and *ʒ* for *z* *Durst* (*dʊrʃt*) *Hirse* (*hʊrʃ*)

### VOICED SPIRANTS—*w*, *s*, *j*, *g*, *j* or *g* (both = *g*), *r*.

34 1 *w* (*v*) is much like *v* in *very*. It was originally a bilabial sound pronounced with both lips just as English *w* but in the North and upon the stage it is now the labio-dental *v* sound *v* is formed with the lips and teeth, but is not quite as distinctly buzzed as English *v*. In South and Middle Germany it is a bilabial sound, *v*, pronounced with both lips which are nearly parallel so that there results a very narrow passage along almost their entire length while our bilabial English *w* is pronounced with lips closed at the sides but protruded in the center forming a round opening. S.G. bilabial *v* also differs from English *w* in that the tongue is not, as in English, raised to the position of *u*. The S.G. *w* is not accompanied by a buzz as in the North. N.G. *w* is sometimes still bilabial after a consonant, or when written *u* after *q* as in *Schwester*, *zwei*, *Quelle*. It is here more commonly the usual labio-dental sound

2 Voiced *s* (*z*) is pronounced like *s* in *rose* *senden*, *Rose*. This sound is not the original Germanic *s* but a North German development. See 40 2 *g* (2)

*a* In all the positions (see 35 2) where *g* in N.G. is voiced it is in S.G. voiceless. See also 35 2 1 In German *g* is pronounced as *g* or *ʒ* after *r* *hørʃ* instead of *Börse*.

(S.G. and N.G. *raeson*) and the *s* in *reisen* (S.G. *rieson* N.G. *riezan*)

3 *j* (*j*) has much the same sound as *y* in *yes* *ja*, *jagen*, &c. The articulation is closer in German than in English *y*, and hence in German there is a gentle buzz caused by the friction of the air in passing thru the narrowed space. This friction is more marked in the North than in the South.

*Note*—Originally *j* was only a consonantal *j* and

4 *g* is in colloquial North German a voiced spirant after back vowels when also followed by a vowel *wagen*, *nagen*, *Fugen*. The phonetic symbol is *g*. The English *g* is here a stop but this German sound is a spirant the breath continuing and not suddenly stopped as in English. Germans in the South pronounce this *g* as in English except that it is voiceless. On the stage and in choice North German it is spoken as in English.

5. *z*, the voiced sound corresponding to voiceless *sch*, not found in German words but in many foreign ones, is somewhat like *s* in *pleasure*: **Journalist**, &c. For spellings see 35. 5. This sound is replaced in S.G. and M.G. by *ʃ*.

6. German *r* has an entirely different sound and is formed differently from the English. It is produced by the uvula, the little fleshy conical body suspended from the middle of the lower border of the soft palate. The uvula is set in vibration by the current of escaping air pushing against it. To form this *r* the back of the tongue must be quite tightly closed in around the uvula, forming a little groove in which it hangs, so that the escaping air must of necessity push it out to pass beyond. The tongue is kept drawn back and remains *motionless*. This *r* is not usually trilled, but is pronounced quite softly, and often in colloquial speech passes over into a *o* or *ə* in final syllables, or before certain consonants: **mehr** (me:a), **Mutter** (muta), **starben** (ʃtaebən), **Wurm** (vuəm), &c. Sometimes it disappears altogether before consonants, in which case the preceding vowel is lengthened: **Warze** (va:tsə), &c. On the other hand it is in some sections pronounced as *x*: **warten** (vaxtən), **Pforte** (pfɔxtə), &c. There is also another *r*, the tongue *r*, which prevailed in earlier periods of the language and is still heard in certain localities and is required by the stage. See 37. 2.

#### HOW VOICED SPIRANTS ARE WRITTEN.

35. 1. The *v* sound is usually written: (1) *w*, as in **wohl**; (2) *f* dialectically in sections of the North when the *f* stands before a vowel of an inflectional ending, in case of nouns and adjectives whose simple stem ends in *f*, as in (**des**) **Briefes** (bri:vəs), **steifer** (ʃtaevər), &c., where however in choice language *f* is spoken; (3) *v* initially and medially in foreign words, as in **Vase**, **Pa'ssiva**, but never when final, as in **passiv** (pa'siv); (4) *v* medially in Low German words, as in **luven**, and a large number of proper names, as **Kleve** (city), **Ha'nnover**, **Trave** (river), **Dove** (family name), **Sievers** (zi:fərs or zi:vərs, family name), **Beethoven**; (5) *u* after *q*, as in **Qual** (kva:l); (6) *u* after *k* in **Bis'cuit**; (7) *u* after *s* (*s*), as in **Suade**, **Suite**, &c.

*Note.* In Middle and South Germany *v* in foreign words is pronounced thruout as *f* as there is no *v*-sound in the native speech of these sections, while North Germans can pronounce it initially and medially as they have the sound here in their native speech. Of course, foreign words that have come into the literary language thru S.G., as in case of **prüfen** (Old French prover) have the *f*-sound. Compare 33. 1. *Note*.

2. The *z* sound is represented in print by the following characters: (1) *s* initially before vowels, as in **sieben**, **Absicht**, **ratsam**, **Trübsal**, but not in case of *-sel* (as in **Rätsel** ræ:tsəl), which is no longer vividly felt as a suffix with a distinct meaning; (2) *s* also medially before vowels (expressed or understood), when it itself is preceded by a vowel or consonantal vowel (*l*, *m*, *n*, *ng* (*ŋ*), *r*), as in **leise**, **weis(e)re**, **Linse**, **Mengsel**, pronounced with voiced *s*, but the *s* is voiceless in **Erbse**, **schnapsen**, **Häcksel**, as it is preceded by a consonant other than *l*, *m*, *n*, *ng*, *r*; (3) *z* initially in Low German and Dutch proper names, as in **Zuidersee**, (zœdər'ze:), also in a few other foreign words, as **Gaze**, **Ha'zard**, **Ba'zar**, **Ve'zier**, &c., now better written **Hasard**, **Basar**, **Wesir**, but **Gaze**.

*a.* The *s* that becomes final by the elision of *e* is usually voiceless: (imperative) **blase** (bla:zə) or **blas** (bla:s); **leise** (laezə) or **leis** (laes), but in the first person of verbs usually written *s'* altho it is voiceless: **Ich les'** (le:s) **das off**. In case of a verb and a following enclitic beginning with a vowel the *s* is usually voiced: **Das les' ich** (le:'ziç) **off**. In a few cases of syncope the *s*, when the initial sound of the syllable, is voiced before a following consonant, only however where the full form with voiced *s* is also used: **eis'ge** (ae'ziə) or **eisige** (ae'ziɡə), **gewesner** (gə've:znər) or **gewesener** (gə've:'zənər), **Basler** (ba:'zlər) or **Baseler** (ba:'zələr), but **Klausner** (klaos'nər), &c. If in a contracted word voiced *s* comes to stand before a suffix, it is voiceless: *z* in **Hase**, but *s* in **Häschen**.

*b.* In all the above positions *s* is voiceless in the South, as can be seen in the rhymes of the poets from this section: **Und wie mit des fernen Donners Getöse | entstürzt es brüllend dem finstern Schoße** (Schiller). See also 34. 2. *a*.

3. *j* is written: (1) *j* initially, as in **ja**, **Jesus**, also medially in Low German and foreign words, as **Boje**, **Ma'jor**; (2) *g* medially in colloquial North German when followed by a vowel and preceded by a front vowel or by a consonant, as in **Siege**, **Berge**; (3) also written *g* in colloquial N.G. as the initial sound of a

medial syllable, where it is usually followed by the final *l*, *n*, or *r* of the stem, but if these consonants do not form a part of the stem the pronunciation of *g* here is *ç* or according to the stage *k*, as the *g* is the final sound of the syllable: *Vöglein* fo:'jlaen (stem *Vogel*), *regnen* ne:'jnən (stem *Regen*), but *möglich* mo:'ç'liç or better *mök'liç*; medial *g* in all the cases given in (2) and (3) is pronounced *ç* instead of *j* in choice N.G. and upon the stage; (4) *y* in some foreign words, as in *Yankee* (jen'ki:), in French words after *o*, where *y* is equal to *a:j* wherever a vowel follows, as in *loyal* (lo-a-'ja:l), *Royalist* (ro-a-'ja:'list); (5) also contained in the combinations *ll*, *ill*, and *gn* in French (and in the last case also Italian) words, also in Spanish *ñ*: *Bouteille* (bu-'telja), *Campagne* (kam'panja), *Mignon* (min'jõ:), *Bologna* (bo-'lonja:), *Coruña* (ko-'runja:). See also 39, 5 and 6.

4. There is but one way of writing *g*, namely, *g* after back vowels when followed by a vowel, as in *Wagen*. The pronunciation *ç* is used here on the stage.

5. *z* (voiced sch) is written: (1) *j* in French and some other foreign words, as in *Journal*, *Jury* (zy'mi:), *Don Juan* (dõ'zu-a: in the sense of *seducer*, but *dõn ju-'an* or according to the Spanish *dõn xu-'an* as a proper name); (2) *g* (before *e* or *i*) in French or Italian words, as in *ge'nieren*, *Logis* (lo:'zi:), *Agio* (a'zi:), *Genie* (ze-'ni: French), but *Genius* (gen'ius, from the Latin); (3) *ge* before back vowels in French words, as in *Sergeant* (zer'zant); (4) contained in *j* or *g* in some English words and in *g* (before *e* and *i*) and *ggi* in some Italian words, where *j*, *g*, *ggi* are pronounced *dʒ*, as in *Jockey* (dʒok'e: or dʒokae), *Gentleman* (dʒentəl'mən), *Michelangelo* (mi-kel'andʒe-lo:), *Arpeggio* (ar'pedʒo:), &c., where however in S.G. and M.G. *tʃ* is spoken instead of *dʒ*.

6. The *n* sound is written: *r*, as in *rot*; *rr* after a short vowel, as in *harren*; *rh* in German proper names and in Greek words, as in *Rhein*, *Rhap'sode*; *rrh* in Greek words, as in *Ka'tarrh*.

#### NASALS.

36. a. The labial and dental nasals *m* and *n* are pronounced as English *m* and *n* in *mad* and *nag*: *Magd*, *Hand*. They are always written *m*, *n*, or after a short vowel *mm*, *nn*.

b. The velar nasal *n* (*ŋ*) is pronounced as *ng* in English *singer*. The character *n* that represents this velar nasal is the same as the one that represents the dental *n*, but they can easily be distinguished from each other, as the velar *n* is always followed by *g*, *k*, *ck*, *c*, *x*: in *Hand* the dental nasal, but in *Gang* and *sinken* the velar. After the velar *n*, *g* has become *ŋ*, having become assimilated to the preceding velar: older *singen* *ziŋgən*, now *ziŋən* with a double or divided *ŋ*, a part being spoken with each syllable, graphically *ziŋ-ŋən*. When, however, this double *ŋ* is not followed by a vowel, but is final or stands before a consonant as in *sang zan*, *singt zıŋt*, it, like all other double sounds, becomes single, so that *ŋ* here differing from *ŋ* elsewhere is not followed by another velar. Thus in the final position and before a consonant all trace of *g* has in choice language disappeared, except the *ŋ* itself, which in a very early period had become velarized from dental *n* under the influence of the following velar *g*: O.H.G. *sıngan* from older *sıngan*. Thus, tho the *g* is here absolutely silent, it actually lives on in the preceding velar *ŋ*. Sectionally, however, the old *g* is still heard. When final or before *s*, *t*, *st*, it is pronounced in parts of the North as *k*: *gingen* (giŋən), but often in N.G. *ging* (giŋk), *längs* (lɛŋks), *bringt* (brıŋkt), *Angst* (aŋkst). Provincially the *g* that follows *ŋ* is pronounced *ç* in the North when followed by a vowel: *des Ganges* (gəŋçəs instead of gəŋəs). In M.G. and S.G., prevailing in N.G., and also upon the stage, the *g* after *ŋ* is always assimilated or silent. Be careful in speaking German not to follow the English practice of pronouncing the *g* after this palatal nasal when the *g* is followed by the vowel *e*: say *Fing-er* (fiŋər, not fiŋgər). In foreign words, however, the *g* is usually pronounced, except before *ə*: *Ganges* gəŋçəs (river), *lingual* (liŋ'güa:l), &c., but *Dschungel* (dʒuŋəl). The *n* at the end

of a prefix does not in a choice pronunciation become ŋ before k or g: *ankommen* ('ankəmən), *angreifen* ('angraefən).

c. ŋ is written: (1) usually *ng*, as in *singen*; (2) *n* in native words before *k* or *ck*, as in *winken*, *Vincke* (name); (3) *n* medially and finally before *c*, *g*, *k*, *x*, in foreign words, as in *Salamanca* (zala'maŋka:), *Ungarn* (ʊŋgarn), *Albalonga* (alba'lɔŋga:), *Sphinx* (sfɪŋks), &c. However, in the Latin and Greek prefixes *en*, *in*, *kon*, *syn* the *n* is also pronounced *n*, usually however with the distinction that ŋ is spoken in a stressed syllable and *n* in an unaccented syllable: *Synkope* (zʏŋkɔ-pe:), but *enklitisch* (en'kli:tiʃ), &c.; (4) in colloquial North German *n* or *m* in French words in the combinations *an* or *en*, *in*, *on*, *un* or *um*, &c., as illustrated in 25, where however on the stage instead of ŋ the preceding vowel is nasalized as explained in 25; (5) *g* before *n* in foreign words, however, only in foreign words other than French and Italian, as in *Agnes* ('aŋ-nɛs), *Signal* (ziŋ-'na:l). Instead of the ŋ sound, *x* and *ç* are often heard here: 'ax-nɛs, ziç-'na:l. In choice language, however, *gn* here is pronounced *gn*, as in *Agnes* (aɣnɛs). In French and Italian words *gn* is pronounced *nj*, as in *Cham'pagner*, *Cam'pagna*.

### LIQUIDS.

37. The liquids *l* and *r* are sounds differing somewhat from the English *l* and *r*.

1. In forming German *l* the back part of the tongue is not raised as in making English *l*, but is lowered and brought farther forward than in English and pressed against the teeth, while the front part of the tongue assumes a convex form, so that the space between its surface and the roof of the mouth is more narrow than in the position for English *l*, and hence the resultant sound is clearer and lighter. In making German *l* the opening of the lips in the corners of the mouth is much more marked than in English *l*.

2. The old *r* (r) is pronounced with the tip of the tongue with a distinct trill. It is now, on the one hand, confined to provinces and small towns, or, on the other hand, elevated to use upon the stage on account of its forcible sound. It is disappearing despite its adoption by the stage and certain enthusiasts. The more common *r* is the uvular. See 34. 6.

### GLOTTAL STOP.

38. There is in German a consonant that is not represented by any sign in the written language, namely, the glottal stop. Phonetists represent this sound by ʔ. It resembles a very faint cough. The glottis is closed and then suddenly opened, the air thus escaping with a slight explosion. It is usually found before all strongly accented initial vowels, i.e. before pronouncing a stressed initial vowel the *breath is stopped for a moment*. This is one of the most characteristic features of German speech and hence is rarely lacking, except dialectically in sections of the South. Thus Germans who speak the glottal stop do not run words together, as we often do in those cases where a word ending in a consonant precedes one beginning with a vowel, since there is really in the German a consonant between the words. Thus we say *notatall*, but the Germans say *ein ʔApfel*. This glottal stop is most clearly perceptible in strongly accented syllables, and hence often entirely disappears in rapid conversation in enclitics and proclitics: *da hab' ich* (ha:p'ʔɪç), or more commonly *da háb' ich* ('ha:'bɪç); *es* (ʔɛs) *zappelt ja noch*, when spoken distinctly, but *es* (əs) *zappelt ja noch*, when spoken rapidly, the proclitic *es* losing its identity and becoming a part of the following word. As a rule it is heard in the second element of compounds, if that element begins with a vowel: *Windesʔeile*. It is not, however, heard in the second element of the following classes of compounds, as the separate elements are not distinctly felt and thus blend together: (1) in compound particles, as *daran* (da:'ran), *hinab* (hɪ'nap), *herein* (he:'raen), *vorüber* (fo:'ry:bər), *woraus* (vo:'raos), &c.; (2) in *Öbacht*, *be'öbachten*, *ei'nander*,

vollenden (fo'ləndən), vollends (fo'lənts), allein (a'laen), &c.; (3) in foreign compounds, as Sy'node, Inte'resse, &c.

The glottal stop is not especially indicated in this treatise.

### CONSONANTAL COMBINATIONS.

39. The following consonantal combinations are discussed here, as they may present some difficulties:

1. pf represents a compound of the simple sounds p and f, the p passing over into f before the closure is fully exploded. The greater volume of breath is expended upon the f so that it is lengthened and strengthened. This is the natural pronunciation of the South, and is also found upon the stage and in choice North German, but the people in a large part of the North and Midland pronounce only f in the initial position and after m: Ferd (fent) instead of Pferd (pfent), Dampf instead of Dampf.

2. x represents a compound of the two simple consonants k and s. ks is written: (1) x, as in Axt, exakt (eks'akt), Xaver (ksa:vən or ksa'ven); (2) chs, as in Ochs, Ochsen; (3) ks, as in (des) Werks; (4) cks, as in klecksen, Klecks; (5) gs, as in flugs, Jagst (Jaxt), Augsburg.

3. z represents a compound of the simple consonants t and s. ts is written: (1) z initially, also after a long or half long vowel or a diphthong and after a consonant, as in zehn, dü'zen, A'kâzie, inspizieren (inspi'tsi:nən), Kauz, Herz; see 4. 2. A. d. (2), 3rd par.; (2) tz after a long vowel in a few proper names, as Grätz (now usually Graz), &c.; (3) tz regularly after a short vowel, as in Katze (katsə); (4) ts, as in Rätsel (re'tsəl), (des) Hochmuts; (5) tts, as in (des) Tritts; (6) dts, as in Bodenstedts (gen. of a proper name); (7) ths, as in Freiligraths (gen. of a proper name); (8) ds, as in (des) Bads; (9) c, or often better z in foreign words before front vowels, as in Cäsar, Ac'cent or better Akzent (ak'tsent); (10) t before an i that stands before a vowel, as in Patient (pa'tsiənt), but not in French words, where ie=i:, as in Partie (par'ti:); (11) zz in words from the Italian: Gran'dezza, Skizze, &c.

4. The compound sound dz, which is like g in gentleman, is represented in print by j or g in words taken from the English and by g (before e or i) and ggi in Italian words. See 35. 5. (4).

5. In the popular language of the North ll after i, and il and ill after another vowel not initial, are pronounced lj medially and lç in the final position in all words taken from the French: Billet (bil'jet), Médaille (me'daljə), Fauteuil (fo'təlç). Medial lj is also spoken in S.G. popular speech, but finally or before a consonant the usual S.G. pronunciation here is l: Fauteuil (fo'təl or fo'tel), Fauteuils (fo'tels or fo'tels). The pronunciation of the medial lj has become established also in the literary language in a number of common words, as, Bataillon (batal'jo:n), Billet (bil'jet), Bouillon (bul'jə), Kanaille (ka'naljə), Médaille (me'daljə), Patrouille (pa'truvljə), Postillon (postil'jo:n), Reveille (re'vevljə), &c., but the final lç or l finds little favor. Aside from the list just mentioned, most educated people prefer to pronounce these sounds more in accordance with the French, j in the medial, i in the final position: Feuillet (føjə'ti:), Fauteuil (fo'toi), Detail (de'tai), &c. The stage here recommends a pronunciation which is more conformed to popular S.G. speech but which as yet has not come into wide use in the literary language. It prescribes l', i. e. an l blended with the mouth position of j: is heard after this sound when a vowel

6. In French Champagner (šam'pan-jən), &c. For gn in other foreign words see 36. c. (5).

7. qu and ku represent a compound of the two simple consonants k and v, of which the latter is more commonly labio-dental than bilabial (see 34. 1), both in German and foreign words: Quelle (kvelə), Quadrat (kva'da:rt), Biskuit (bis'kvit), &c. In a number of words from the French, however, qu is



pronounced k: Quarantäne (ka·rā·'tɛ:nə), Queue (kø:), Bouquet or better Bu'kett, Marquis (mar'ki:), Mar'quise, &c. These words are still felt as French words and follow more or less closely the French pronunciation, but in case of older loan-words the pronunciation has become German, as in quitt (kvit).

8. gy is pronounced dj in words from Hungarian: Magyar (mad'ja:n) or better Mad'jar Magyar, Hungarian.

## BRIEF HISTORY OF GERMAN CONSONANTS.

### Their Relation to those of other Languages.

40. 1. Consonants form in every language the strong enduring trunks of linguistic growth, and thus remain tolerably constant thruout the centuries, both in the original language and in related tongues, also in words which have passed from one people to another. Thus the consonants in German and English are much the same. Altho consonants in general have thus not changed radically their nature as have vowels, a number of them have nevertheless a clearly marked development, which furnishes important data for determining the relation of languages to each other. There are three distinct periods of development. The first period, which represents the original order of things, is found in a large measure preserved in Latin, Greek, and other older languages, and their modern forms such as modern Greek, Italian, French, Russian, &c. The second period appears in Gothic, Scandinavian, Low German, and hence also in English, which in its original stock of words is Low German. This first shifting took place in prehistoric Germanic. The detailed account of these sound changes is given in *a*, *b*, *c* below. The third period appears in High German. This second shifting began in the sixth century and was completed in the tenth. It is described in detail below.

A brief history of the more difficult and characteristic consonantal changes and their relations to the different dialects and kindred languages is here given in the hope that it may prove helpful to the student in increasing his appreciation of the language.

*a. Indo-European bh, dh, gh.* Where we have in the parent language (Indo-European) bh (developing later in Latin into f- or -b-), dh (in Latin f-, -d-, or -b-), gh (in Latin h-, g-, -g-, or -h-) we have in Gothic, Low German and English b (in English, however, appearing as b initially, v medially, and f finally), d, g (in English also written y initially before front vowels, y, i, w, medially or finally), and in High German b, t (sometimes written th), g. In passing from the second to the third period, bb (now written b in English) and gg (often appearing as dg in English) usually become pp, ck.

### EXAMPLES.

First Period		Second Period First Shifting		Third Period Second Shifting
Early Stage	Latin	Early Stage	English	German
bh	(1) frater, (2) lubet	b	(1) brother, (2) love, (3) grave, (4) calf, (5) rib (O.E. ribb)	(1) <u>Br</u> uder, (2) <u>lie</u> ben, (3) <u>gr</u> aben, (4) <u>Kal</u> b, (5) <u>Ri</u> ppe
dh	(1) fores, (2) vidua, (3) verbum	d	(1) <u>door</u> , (2) widow, (3) word, (4) <u>bid</u> (O.E. biddan)	(1) <u>T</u> ür, (2) <u>Wit</u> we, (3) <u>Wor</u> t, (4) <u>bi</u> tten
gh	(1) hortus, (2) helvus, (4) longus, (6) velere	g	(1) yard (O.E. geard), (2) yellow, (3) grass, (4) long, (5) to sty, (6) way (O.E. weg), (7) waïn, (8) haïl, (9) borrow, (10) wedge	(1) <u>G</u> arten, (2) <u>gel</u> b, (3) <u>G</u> ras, (4) <u>lang</u> , (5) <u>stei</u> gen, (6) <u>Weg</u> , (7) <u>Wag</u> en, (8) <u>Ha</u> gel, (9) <u>bor</u> gen, (10) <u>We</u> ck

Note 1. We often find in literary German bb, gg instead of pp, ck: Krabbe (Eng. crab), flügge (Eng. fledge). Such words have been borrowed from the Low German, which in general has much influenced the literary language.

Note 2. Within the third period the t that had developed from Germanic d became voiced after nasals, and thus the t remained: hinter, hinten, unter, unten, munter, also in the conjugation of verbs, as nannte, konnte, &c., after the analogy of liebt, &c.

Note 3. The characters b, d, g do not represent the same sounds in different periods and different parts of the same territory. In Germanic in the early stage of the first shifting they were voiced spirants, b, d, g. In prehistoric High German they developed into voiced stops, b, d, g, and still later in oldest South German appear as voiceless stops. The present literary language recognizes this development in case of Germanic d by employing the character t, which in the North is pronounced t', i.e. as an aspirated t, in the South also t' in choice language but in colloquial speech and dialect as an unaspirated t or a voiceless d. In case of the sounds that have developed out of

netter, etc.

*b Indo-European p, t, k* Where in Latin we have the voiceless stops p, t, k (c, q), we find in Gothic, Low German, and English the voiceless spirants f, th (d in modern L G), h (in English also written gh), and in High German f, d, h (ch). The character h does not represent the same sound in the different periods. Early in the second period, immediately after the first shifting, it was pronounced as ch. Even as early as the Gothic period it had become h, at least initially. It is in the German of our time always pronounced as h initially, and elsewhere is silent, except when final or before a t or st, where the older pronunciation is still sometimes preserved, and is indicated by the character ch: hoher, but hoch, höchst; naher but nächst; schmahen, but Schmach; sehen, but Gesicht; (er) fleht, but in poetic or archaic language (er) fleucht. Usually, however, final ch has been leveled to h under the influence of medial h that stands in other forms of the same word. Thus older Schuch (still preserved in the proper name Schuchardt (= M H G schuochworhte shoe worker, i e shoe maker) has become Schuh after the analogy of des Schuhs. In isolated words where this analogy does not present itself the old final ch is preserved: doch, durch, nach, nach. In old German double h was pronounced (tseç çan), altho the doubling or 7 below. Also in English, h has become h initially, elsewhere pronounced as f.

The various changes of p, t, k (c, q) in the different periods are illustrated by the following examples

First Period, Latin.	Second Period, English (First Shifting)	Third Period, German (Second Shifting)
pes	foot	Fuß
fres	three	drei
cor, sequor	heart, sight and see, high, rough	Herz, Gesicht and sehen, hoch, rauh

While it is true as above stated and illustrated that p, t, k of the first period developed into the spirants f, th, h (= ch) in the second period, these new sounds very soon even before the time of historic records experienced a further development. In the initial position and after a stressed vowel, f, th, h (= ch) remained f, th, h (= ch), but after an unaccented vowel between spirants became voiced spirants, b, d, g as described and illustrated above and developed

the articulation of the p, t, k of the first period, i e aspiration (29 a) developed after p, t, k, expressed phonetically by p', t', k', and later became so strong that it developed into an independent spirant, so that p', t', k' became pf, tþ, kx. Later the second sound in each combination assimilated to itself the first sound, and pf became p, tþ became t, kx became k. Still later x lost the character of a spirant, and was regarded as assured, for described in c below,

Note 1. The first stages of this development we see almost in the last part of the first period.

spew  
NHC  
acht

cates clearly that after the second shifting aspiration had developed after k. In our own time there has been a further development of aspiration after p, t, k in combination with other consonants, but in certain combinations, as described in 29. a, it has not yet appeared.

The *ft* and *ht* have been increased from another source. In Germanic before a *t* all labials appear as *f*, and velars as *h* (= *ch*): give, gift; geben, Gift; may (O.E. *mæg*), might (O.E. *miht*); mögen, Macht; think, thought (O.E. *dohte*); denken, dachte. This movement began in pre-Germanic, and is so complicated that it cannot be explained here.

Note 2. In the earliest history of English, *th* developed into *d* after or before *l*, so that we here find *d* in both English and German: wild, wild; gold, Gold; needle, Nadel, &c. In the eleventh century Low German *th* began to develop into *d* in all positions, thus shifting to *d* as High German had already done, so that modern Low German, differing from English, now has the same sound here as High German: dat (L.G.), das, that.

Note 3. Indo-European *p, t, k* have been seemingly preserved in Germanic where they stood before an accented syllable with initial *n*. The Indo-European *p, t, k* became, according to rule, *f, th, h* (*ch*), which according to Verner's Law (see 2. a below) developed into *b, d, g*, as the preceding vowel was unaccented. By assimilation the *bn, dn, gn* became *bb, dd, gg*. Simple *b, d, g* were spirants, but *bb, dd, gg* developed into stops, and later became voiceless *pp, tt, kk*, perhaps at the same time that Indo-European *b, d, g* became *p, t, k*, as described in c below. In the second shifting *pp, tt, kk* became, according to c, below, *pf, tz, ck*, so that in case of *k* there is no difference of sound in the three periods: ducō (L.), tuck (Eng.), zucken. Related words will have different sounds here, according as Indo-European *p, t, k* were originally simple sounds or were followed by an accented *n*: schnauben (regular Germanic *f* having developed into *b* according to Verner's Law), schnupfen; schneiden, schnitt (Germanic *th* having developed into *d* according to Verner's Law and later in H.G. shifting to *t*), schnitzen; ziehen, zog, Zug (the regular Germanic *h* having developed into *g* according to Verner's Law), zucken, compare English tie (O.E. *tiegan*), tuck; biegen, bücken; schmiegen, schmücken.

Note 4. Corresponding to English *thousand* we should expect Dausend and in O.H.G. the form with *d* is found. After much fluctuation the form with *t* has become established. In older German *teutsch* was often used for the correct *deutsch*, but it has disappeared.

Note 5. In Low German *f* before *t* goes over into *ch*, which is also found in the literary language in a few words from L.G.: *sacht* (= H.G. *sanft*), Schlucht (H.G. *Schlucht*, now little used in plain prose, but not infrequent in poetry and even in prose in S.G. writers, as in Hermann Hesse's *Peter Camenzind*, p. 2), *Nichte* (H.G. form *Niftel*, now only archaic). For the dropping out of *n* in *sacht* see 2. c below.

Note 6. In M.G. dialects *nd* becomes *ng*. Luther introduced this form into the language in *schlingen* to swallow. The original form survives in the related word *Schlund*.

Note 7. The old final *ch* is often better preserved in southern dialects than in the literary language: *Viech* instead of the literary form *Vieh*. This old *ch* often spreads in these dialects to the medial position: *Viecher*, pl. of *Viech*. In the literary language the opposite development usually takes place, medial *h* leveling out final *ch*: *Schuh* instead of older *Schuch*, as it follows the analogy of *des Schuhes*.

c. Indo-European *b, d, g*. Where in Latin we find the voiced stops *b, d, g*, we find in Gothic, Low German, and English *p, t, k* (*c, q*, in English also *ch, tch*), and in High German two different groups, according to their position in the word—*pf, z, k*, on the one hand, and *f, s* (*ss, ß*), *ch* on the other. In passing from the second to the third period, *p* remained *p* before *p*, it became *pf* initially, also after *m* and *p* but elsewhere became *f*; *t* remained *t* before *t*, it became *z* (*tz*) initially, also after *t* or another consonant, but elsewhere, i.e. medially and finally after a vowel, became *ss, ß*, or *s*; *k* remained unchanged initially, after another consonant, or when doubled (written *ck*), but a single *k* developed into *ch* medially and finally after a vowel. Thus as explained below, *p* remained unchanged before *p*, *t* unchanged before *t*, *k* unchanged before *k*, also initially and after *k* or another consonant. As a modification of this statement it should be noted that *p* and *t* remained unchanged after *s*, and *t* unchanged after *f* and *ch*, as explained in b. Note 1. Also for the peculiar development of *k* after *s* see b. Note 1. The various changes described above may be illustrated by the following examples:

First Period, Latin.	Second Period, English (First Shifting).	Third Period, German (Second Shifting).
<i>dubūs</i> (Lithuanian* word corresponding to (4))	(1) <i>pool</i> , (2) <i>stump</i> , (3) <i>apple</i> , (4) <i>deep</i> , (5) <i>help</i>	(1) <i>Pfuhl</i> , (2) <i>Stumpf</i> , (3) <i>Apfel</i> , (ap-pfəl), (4) <i>tief</i> , (5) <i>helfen</i>
<i>decem</i> , cor (cordis)	<i>ten</i> , heart, <i>sittan</i> (O.E.; now <i>sit</i> ), <i>eaf</i> , <i>ate</i> , <i>it</i>	<i>zehn</i> , Herz, <i>sitzen</i> (zit-tsən), <i>essen</i> , <i>aß</i> , <i>es</i>
<i>jugum</i>	<i>yoke</i> , <i>bake</i> , <i>cold</i> , <i>drink</i> , <i>milk</i> , <i>lick</i> (Note 4); <i>bench</i> , <i>stretch</i>	<i>Joch</i> , <i>bachen</i> or <i>backen</i> (Note 5), <i>kalt</i> , <i>trinken</i> , <i>melken</i> , <i>lecken</i> , <i>Bank</i> , <i>strecken</i>

*Pf* and *z* or *tz* (both = *ts*) in German are the result of the strengthening of the aspiration (29. a.) found in the *p* and *t* of the second period, which is still preserved in English. While *pf* thus developed out of the aspirated *p* after a *p*, and *z* after the aspirated *t* after a *t*, the *p* before the aspirated *p* and the *t* before the aspirated *t* remained unchanged, as *p, t, k* then as now (see 29. a) were not aspirated before an aspirated sound: *Apfel* (ap-pfəl), *sitzen* (zit-tsən). German *pf* and *z* (*ts*) further developed in certain positions into *f* and *ss* or *ß*, as the first sound in these combinations was assimilated to the second. Hence we should naturally expect to find the strong aspiration of the *k* of the second period developed into *kch* and we should expect to find this new combination in certain positions developed by assimilation into *ch*. All these changes have actually taken place and are still clearly discernible in the extreme South as described in Note 6 below. In the literary language only the final stage of this development has been preserved, namely the *ch* which developed out of the *kch* which had developed out of the aspirated *k* of the second period, as in *Joch*, from older *Jokch*, which is from an older form with aspirated *k*, which is still preserved in English *yoke*. This development is found in the literary language only after vowels, but it is old. Later it spread in the extreme South to other positions. The development here of *p', t', k'* to *f, ß* (i.e. *s*), *ch* (i.e. *x*) is almost identical with that described in

\*As *b* was a rare sound in the original language it is difficult to find apt examples. Lithuanian is used for the illustration here as Latin does not serve the purpose so well.

... when the *p* of the first period became aspirated and developed into the *p* of the second period

of *p* or *f*, we should not expect to find any *p* in German orthography, as in *Apfel* (*apple*) and those that came from *p* or *f* are *p* or *f* in German orthography.

*Note 2* *Tt* (or *t*) before *er* (or *r*) did not shift in the change from the second to the third period: *haites* (Gothic), *bitter* (i. e.), *bitter* (G.), *wintrus* (Gothic), *winter* (i. e.), *Winter* (G.); *otter* (Lang.), *Otter* (G.), *truce* (Lang.).

## 2. OTHER CONSONANTAL CHANGES.

The above consonantal changes, the main points of which were in part discovered by Jacob Grimm, in part formulated by him from the older discoveries of Rask and then published in 1822, in part presented to scholars later by other investigators, have been sketched only in their roughest outlines. There are many exceptions and also additional changes. Attention is here called to a few of the more important:

*a. Verner's Law* In 1876 the Danish scholar K. Verner published his discovery that the cause of the deviation of a certain group of words from the laws given in the preceding articles lay in a difference of accent in the prehistoric period. From this discovery it becomes evident that in the pre-Germanic period the accent was not on the first syllable of a word, but on the first syllable of a word, and that the same free stress was preserved in part in Sanskrit and Greek. In this prehistoric period, as can be later seen in Gothic and less perfectly in Old English and other Germanic languages, the voiceless spirants *f*, *th*, *h* (= *ch*), *s*, remained voiceless only initially and after an accented vowel, but between

*z* (voiced *s*): *'kleptō* (Greek), *rāter* (Latin), *brōðar* (Gothic), (Gothic) *ten*, but *de'lu* (Gothic).

Germanic), *tigus* (Gothic) *decade*, *quis* every one. Also the unaccented prefix form of an originally voiceless consonant consonants here as the Gothic, but in the considerably, as described for the *b*'s, *d*'s,

Both of these groups—the b's, d's, g's from Indo-European bh, dh, gh and the b's, d's, g's from Germanic f, th, h (= ch) according to Verner's Law—which had come from originally quite different sources merged into one in prehistoric Germanic. From then on, the b's, d's, g's from both of these sources had the same development. Germanic z became r in English, and all the other members of the German family before the period of the second shifting: Eng. was, were; was (15th century, later leveled to war by the plural form), waren. The r from older z is found in the pronouns er, ihr, mir, wir, ihr, wer, in the plural ending -er, in the comparative ending -er, in the inseparable prefix er-, &c.

After the second shifting of the consonants had taken place in High German, the b, d, g, which resulted from f, th, h (ch) according to Verner's Law, appear as b, t, g, while the f, th, h (ch) which followed the accented vowel appear as f, d, h (ch). Germanic z had already become r previous to this shifting, while Germanic s remained s. Hence different consonants may still be found in the different grammatical forms of the same word or in related words, owing to the original difference of accent. Thus we find an occasional change of f to b, d to t, h to g, s to r: Hof and hübsch, schneiden and schnitt, ziehen and zog, zehn and zwanzig, Frost and frieren. The English consonants here as elsewhere did not participate in the second shift. Low German differing from English suffered also the change of th to d, but the change took place much later than in High German.

Note. A force somewhat similar to Verner's Law was again at work in English at the close of the Middle English period, especially in the final position after a vowel: oath with voiceless th after a stressed vowel, but the unstressed proposition with voiced th; stressed off with voiceless f, but unstressed of with voiced f, i.e. v; voiced s after an unstressed vowel, as in kisses (kɪsɪz), &c.

b. The labialized velars g<sup>w</sup>h, k<sup>w</sup>, g<sup>w</sup> of the parent Indo-European language shifted irregularly in different languages, altho they in general followed the laws described in the preceding articles. They consisted of a velar and a labial element. In the course of their development they lost by assimilation sometimes one of these elements, sometimes another, and were otherwise variously affected. The following table presents a general view of these changes:

I.-E. g <sup>w</sup> h	Lat. f, gu, v	Germanic gw, g, w.
" k <sup>w</sup>	" qu	" hw, h; gw, g, w.
" g <sup>w</sup>	" v, gu	" qu (i.e. kw).

The Germanic g's in the second line are the result of development from h (= ch) under the operation of Verner's Law (see a above) and hence once followed an unaccented vowel. Only a few examples can be given here: angustus (L.), aggwus (Goth.), eng (G.); quis (L.), who (Eng.), wer (G.); linquo (L.), leihsan (Goth.), loan (Eng.), leihen (G.); tranquillus (L.), hweila (Goth.), while (Eng.), Weile (G.); aqua (L.), ahwa (Goth.), -ach (G.; see 245. I. 18. a), as in Salzach (river), where the older sound of Germanic h is preserved; vivus (L.), quick (Eng.), Quecksilber (G.), erquicken (G.). It will be seen by a glance at the table that it does not contain consonants that were usually affected by the second shifting, so that in general we find the Germanic consonants still surviving in both English and German. In the individual life of the two languages, however, these consonants have here developed somewhat differently, as can be seen by the examples.

c. Germanic thw has developed peculiarly. It went over regularly into dw in O.H.G., and later in M.H.G. developed into tw, and still later in that period into zw: thwingan (Old Saxon), dwingan (O.H.G.), twingen (M.H.G.), zwingen (late M.H.G. and N.H.G.).

Germanic dw has had a similar development: dwarf (Eng.), twerg (O.H.G.), twerc (M.H.G.), Zwerg (N.H.G.).

High German tw, whether derived from Germanic thw or dw, has developed into zw or qu. A number of words fluctuate between the two forms, and in other cases independent differentiated forms have become established: Zwerg (literary German), Querg (East Middle German); Quinger (Lamentations II. 8) in modern editions Zwinger; Zwerchfell diaphragm, quer across.

Also lw and rw have had a peculiar development. In O.H.G. in the final position the w, at that time bilabial like English w (34. 1. Note), became o or u, which later was reduced to e and at the close of the M.H.G. period disappeared, but medially the w in late M.H.G. developed into b, at that time the bilabial spirant v (34. 1), a sound closely resembling the w but later developing into the stop b (29), altho it is still widely heard in the dialects of the Midland and the Southeast, also in sections of the North as a spirant: Mehl (O.H.G. melo), but Schwalbe (O.H.G. swalawa, Eng. swallow); gar (O.H.G. garo), but gerben (O.H.G. garawen). In case of inflected words we should expect to find a form without b in the final position and a form with b when a vowel follows in the inflectional ending, but usually leveling takes place, so that the one or the other form is extended thruout the inflectional system. In case of M.H.G. val, gen. valwes both forms survive as fahl and falb, sometimes without differentiation, sometimes slightly differentiated. This group of b's, the stop as well as the spirant b's, has joined the group of b's in 1. a. Note 3 above.

d. In the M.H.G. period, final m in an unaccented syllable developed into n: Busen bosom, Faden fathom, &c. Atem forms an exception as the original final m has been retained after the analogy of the verb atmen (M.H.G. atemen), which naturally keeps the m as it is not the final sound.

e. Suppression of n. In the literary language n has disappeared in the combination -ing in the e words the stems of which ended in an n: König for older Kōning, &c. The form Pfennig was still in limited use in the classical period.

In dialect final *n* has disappeared in large parts of the Midland and South, especially in unaccented syllables. Occasionally such forms appear in books which reflect colloquial usage: *Fräulein, wie gefällt es Ihne* (for *Ihnen*) denn in *Schwaben?* (Raabe's *Pechlin*, chap 12)

The opposite tendency, the insertion of an *n*, appears occasionally in the literary language as well as in dialect: *genung* (Goethe, Schiller, &c) for *genug*, &c

Notice that the *m* and *n* which preceded Germanic *f*, *th*, *s* have disappeared in English, while they still remain in German in the form of *n*: soft (O E *söfte*), but *sanft* (O H G *semft* adj, *sanft* adv), other, but *ander*; tooth, but *Zahn* (O H G *zand* and *zan*), goose but *Gans*, us, but *uns*. Of course, also in Low German, the parent of English, consequently also in literary German wherever Low German words with such a development have become established: *sacht* (from older L G *säfto*, High German *sanft*; see Note 5 under 1 *b* above), English soft

*f* The older tongue *r* has been replaced by a uvular sound. See 34. 6 and 37. 2

*g* *The Origins and Developments of the S Sound*

(1) *Germanic S* The original Germanic *s* was a sound between *s* and *ʃ*. In the prehistoric period in accordance with Verner's Law (*a* above) it became voiced between vowels after an unaccented syllable and later developed into *r*. For examples see *a* above. In other positions it was in older periods a voiceless *s*. In North Germany this voiceless sound survived only in the positions described in 33. 2 (1) (2). Initially before a vowel and medially between vowels it became voiced, i.e. became *z*: *Sohn* (zo n), *lesen* (le zən). Initially before *l*, *m*, *n*, *w*, *p*, *t*, as illustrated below, it developed into *ʃ*. In the South the old voiceless *s* remained intact except initially before *l*, *m*, *n*, *w*, *p*, *t*, where it developed into *ʃ*. This change to *ʃ* began in the South and in dialect has gone much farther there, taking place sometimes also before vowels and in the final position in case of the genitive ending *s*.

changes. As late as the sixteenth century we still find instances of *sl*, *sm*, &c, even in the South. This movement has not yet come to a close, for

(2) *S from Germanic T* In the second half of the thirteenth century the number of voiceless *s*'s in German was increased by the development of consonants Germanic *t* into a voiceless hispid *s*. This development in learned works of to-day is represented by the *z* = *ts*, which still exists in English two, *biz* (in M H G the second half of the thirteenth century *z* fell together with Germanic *s*, but it must have been a little more strongly articulated because it did not later become voiced between vowels as Germanic *s*: *reisen* (naezən, from M H G *reisen*), but *reißen* (naezən, from M H G *rizen*). When final, before a consonant, or doubled they both still have the same voiceless sound, i.e. *s*, as at the close of the thirteenth century: *Kuß* (kus, from M H G *kus*), *küßte* (kyzta, from M H G *kuste*), *kussen* (kysən, from M H G *kussen*), *aß* (as, from M H G *az*), *es* (es, now representing both the M H G *neut*, *nom*, and *acc ez* and *gen es* (see 140. c)), *gutes* (gutəs, from M H G *guotez*), *ist* (ist, from M H G *izzet*), *essen* (es-sən, from M H G *ezzen*). Initial *s* before a vowel is always the old Germanic *s*, but it is now voiced in the North: *Sohn* (zo n), &c

*h* Foreign words of course form exceptions to the general rules for the development of *C*

&c. The older the words the more of course they are introduced into the language. If the words were borrowed before the period of manner as German words: *Pflaume* (L *prunum* Kerker (from L *carcerem*, *Karzer*, derived from *guare* later by them) as introduced into the language later than Kerker, as can be seen

## SYLLABLES IN INDIVIDUAL WORDS.

41. A word has as many syllables as it contains separate vowels or diphthongs: *Se'en*, *bau'en*. In dividing words into syllables when there are consonants at the close of the syllable, the division is based upon the following principles:

1. As in English a single consonantal sound between vowels belongs after a long vowel or diphthong to the following syllable, which is uniformly dynamic, i. e. begins with an increase of breath impulse: *hō'len*, 'Sprā'che, 'hei'lig. After a short vowel it is in the North as in English divided equally between the two syllables: *hassen*, *alle*, *er'schrecken*, *lachen* (laxən), *singen* (zɪŋən). Such divided consonantal sounds are usually represented by double consonants (double *k* usually written *ck*) except in case of *ch* and *ng*. Altho the written language in these two cases does not by doubling indicate that the syllabic divide is *within* the consonant this division regularly takes place in the spoken language. In case of explosive consonants the explosion takes place in the second syllable at the end of the sound, as in *t* in *Hütte* (hytə). Wherever, as in all these cases, the double consonant is in a simple word the second syllable is static, i. e. begins without an increase of breath impulse so that the articulation glides along almost evenly and the two syllables are thus not separated by any appreciable mark. Where, however, the double consonant is in a compound the second syllable is dynamic, as in *mittun* (mɪt'tu:n, or better mɪttu:n, as explained in 2 below). For convenience to indicate the kind of syllable the consonant is written single in the phonetic transcript to show that the second syllable is static and double when it is dynamic. Sometimes, however, when it is desirable to call especial attention to the fact that a consonant before a static syllable is divided it is written twice with a hyphen between the two characters: *al-le*, *has-sen*, &c., but *mit'tun*, &c. with the sign for secondary stress to indicate that the syllable is dynamic.

In the Southwest there is often quite a different system of syllabic division. There it is usual to carry over the consonant to the next syllable wherever it can be easily done, not only after a long vowel but also after a short one: *holen* (ho:'lən), *fassen* (fa-sən), &c. This syllabic division is not a modern development but a survival of older usage. See 4. 1. b. *Note* and 4. 2. B. b. *Note*. (1).

2. In common German words two or more consonantal sounds are after a long vowel or a diphthong carried over, wherever it can be easily done, to the following syllable, which is uniformly dynamic: *hū'sten*, *Au'ster*, *rē'gnen*, *Rē'dner*, *duzen* (du:'tsən), *hā'tscheln*, &c. The consonants, however, must be conveniently divided up between the syllables if it is difficult to carry them over: *sagte* (zak'tə), *rauchte* (raox'tə), &c. After a short vowel the second syllable is static, i. e. begins without a marked increase of breath impulse, so that the articulation glides along almost evenly and the two syllables are thus not separated by any appreciable divide: *fasten*, etc.

In case of compounds the second element, of course, begins with an increase of breath impulse as in a dynamic syllable in a simple word, but the impulse is much stronger and there is a slight pause between the two components: *täuf'eucht wèt with dēw*. The stress mark over the vowel indicates that the accent is group-stress (50. A. 6) rather than word-stress, for compounds originated in a group of words in a sentence and are still felt as groups as can be clearly seen in English, where a large number of Old English compounds are to-day represented by modern groups. Similarly in English we distinguish *bee'stings* (first milk from a cow after calving) from *bēestings* and *selfish* (without an increase of breath in the second syllable) from *shēllfish*.

*Note. Syllabic Division in Foreign Words.* In foreign words where the vowel stands before a single consonant, *ti* (tsɪ), *z* (ts), *qu* (kv), a stop (*p, t, k, b, d, g*) + *r* or *l*, or a double consonant which is followed by an accented vowel, the syllable is open, i. e. terminates in a vowel and this vowel is long or half long except before a double consonant, where it is short: *Étymologie* ('e-ty-'mo-lo-'gi:), *Bibliographie* ('bi-bli-o-'gna-'fi:), *Nation* (na-'tsi-ɔ:n), *Alkazie* (a-'ka:'tsi-ə), *reziprok* (re-tsi-'pro:k), *konsequent* (kɔnse-'kvent), *Metrum* (me-'trum), *Kommode* (kɔ'mo:'dɔ), *Kollege* (kɔ'le:'gə). The accents indicate the beginning of a dynamic syllable and probably also the dots after the vowels indicate a faint increase of breath impulse. In all these cases the consonants are carried over to the next syllable. Notice how differently we pronounce these words in English: 'eti'mɔlə'dʒi, 'bibli'ɔgrə'fi, &c. As these vowels are in large measure short the syllables are closed, i. e. terminate in a consonant, which leads to the formation of static syllables. There is thus a tendency to form the syllables into groups of two or three, where only the first syllable in each group is dynamic. The German only forms static syllables after a double consonant which is not followed by an accented syllable and after a combination of consonants other than a stop + *r* or *l*: *Kollation* (kɔla-'tsi-ɔ:n), *Kolportage* (kɔlpon'ta:ʒə), *Zirkus* (tsɪnkʊs). Notice that the first vowel here is short and that the syllable is closed. Compare 4. 2. B. c. *Note*.

3. Compound words form exceptions to the above rules, as the syllabic division is made on etymological principles, and hence falls between the components. Haus'tur, ent'außern

a Exceptions are dar, war, her, hin, when they stand before a vowel in compounds da ruber, wa'rum, he rum, hi'nein In the pronunciation of ordinary conversation other exceptions occur, as the distinct etymological elements are not always in the consciousness of the speaker be ð bachten, O bacht, vo lenden (fo lenden) a llein, Au-fent halt, &c especially where the etymology has become obscured by sound changes as in em pfangen (p for older t), &c

4. In unaccented el, em, en, er, the e in rapid talking often drops entirely out, and the consonants l, m, n, r become syllabic, i e form of themselves syllables, which is indicated by phonetists by the sign ̣ under the letter Hugel, liebem, lieben, pro hy'g̣l li ḅm, li ḅn In careless speech the front nasal, i e the dental nasal n, when syllabic, often becomes the labial nasal m after the labials b, p, m, and becomes the velar nasal ŋ after the velars ŋ and k and the uvular r, i e becomes a back nasal after a back consonant li ḅm, li p̣m, na ṃp instead of lieben, Lippen, Namen, zing̣ ḍaṇḳ va. ṛg̣ instead of singen, danken, waren

All syllabic consonants fill out about the full time required to pronounce an unaccented syllable, and hence words containing them cannot form good rhymes with words containing unsyllabic consonants thus Karren (kaṛp̣) should not rhyme with Garn

#### Syllables in Connected Discourse

42 In ordinary language, words often lose their etymological identity in our consciousness and different words blend together, and are often treated in actual practice as one word with different syllables in which case the rules given above for separating syllables apply also here Heute nahm er das Buch mit is pronounced Heute na-mer das Buch mit

#### Separation of Syllables at the End of a Line

43 The separation of long words at the end of a line usually takes place according to ' but a few va

1 A cons  
Le-ben, &c

2 If several consonants stand between vowels usually only the last one is carried over Rit-ter, Sperlin-ge (pro 'sperliŋə i e ŋ being pronounced as any double consonant with both syllables), klir-ren, Klemp-ner, Ach-sel, krat-zen, Stad-te, Verwand-te, kamp-fen, Karp-fen

3 ß, ch, sch, ph, st, th are never separated Bu-ße, Be-cher, Ha-scher, (but Haus-chen, see 6 below) Geogra-phi-e, La-sten, Klo-ster, Ma-thilde

4 ck is separated into k-k Dek-ke

5. In foreign words all combinations of b, p, d, t, g, k with l or r are carried over Pu-blikum, Me-trum, Hy-drant

6 Compound words are separated first into the different elements of which the compound consists and within each element the rules given above are observed Fursten-schloß, Tur-an-gel (pro aṇəl), Haus-chen Notice Schuffahrt, &c but at the end of the line separated Schiff-fahrt, &c

a This separation at the end of the line of compound words into their component elements will not always be the same as the pronunciation darum (= dar + um) is separated dar um, but pronounced da rum, Inter esse (= L inter + esse), but pronounced Inte resse

#### ACCENT

44 Particular syllables in a word or particular words in a sentence may be made prominent above others and distinguished by especial stress Thus there is a *word accent* and a *sentence accent*, the latter of which is usually called group-stress, as the sentence falls into groups of words, each with a chief stress,



## I. WORD ACCENT.

45. In polysyllabic words there may be not only the principal accent, but also a secondary accent, and even a third, besides the unaccented syllables. The principal accent in the following articles will be marked by ', or, if there are three accents, by '', the secondary by ', or, if there are three, by ', the third accent by ', the unaccented syllable by ~: Ber'lin, 'Luther, lu'the'risch, 'Eigen'tum, 'Vorur'teil, ''Un'ebën'heit. The mark of accent is placed immediately *before* the stressed syllable. Where the principal accent is upon the first syllable the mark is usually omitted as the place of the accent is self-evident. When the marks of accent, as in the preceding examples, are placed before the accented syllables of a word the desire is to indicate the word-stress, the usual stress that the syllables of a word have. When the mark is placed *over* the vowel the desire thruout this book is to indicate group-stress, the stress which the word has when it stands as a component in a syntactical group of words, as in *der Aufgang der Sónne*. As such words often, as explained in 247. 2, assume a oneness of meaning and hence are then written as one word, as in *Sónnenàufgang* sún-rise, the mark is still often placed above the vowel to indicate that the word was originally a group of words and has retained its original group-stress.

Accent must not be confounded with quantity. A syllable may be long, i.e. contain a long vowel, or diphthong, or a short vowel followed by two or more consonants, and yet have weaker accent than a short syllable, as in 'Ab'grund.

The placing of the accent in German is regulated by the following principles:

1. *Normal accent.* Some particular syllable in a word, usually the root syllable in a simple word or a derivative and the modifying component element (see 248) in a compound, receives the principal accent: 'singen, Ge'sang, 'Schulhaus.

In words of more than one syllable a secondary stress often becomes necessary. If the word is a compound, that syllable in the basal component receives secondary accent, which would have principal accent if the component were an independent word: 'Durch'messer, 'Fahr'wasser, 'Haus'herren.

It will be noticed from these examples that this normal accent usually brings the chief stress upon the first syllable. This principle of accenting words is the leading one, but deviations occur, as described in 2, 3, 4 below.

*Note.* The results of the operation of Verner's Law (40. 2. a) make it plain that in the prehistoric period of the Germanic languages at the time of the shifting of the Indo-European stops p, t, k to the spirants f, th, h (= ch) the accent had not yet become fixed upon the first syllable of a simple word as we find it to-day. The original causes that later in this prehistoric period led to the fixing of the stress upon the first syllable of simple words are not known. As becomes probable, however, from 215. 3. *Historical Note* and 247. 2 the first member of a syntactical group of words was in the prehistoric period regularly stressed. A large number of compounds formed directly from these old syntactical groups have come down to us with their old stress. It seems quite probable that in the prehistoric period the stress of simple words gradually conformed to this old type, found not only in compounds but everywhere in the normal syntactical groups of the sentence. This seems all the more probable, as in our own time, as seen in 47. 3. A. e and g, a very large number of modern formations, an'statt, he'rab, berg'auf, &c. have the new group-stress of our day, which now has the accent upon the second member of the group, and many old formations, as seen in 47. 3. D. a, are giving up their older accent and are now conforming their stress to the new group-stress.

2. *Emphatic Accent.* The speaker may for some emotional reason place unusual stress upon some particular word, but he is then not content with accenting the syllable which usually has the stress, but also puts equal or perhaps a little stronger stress upon some other syllable, even tho it is usually unaccented, and thus arises a double accent: 'undank'bares Kind! eine 'ausge'sprochene Schönheit, 'end'loser Gram, 'wunder'licher Gedanke, 'gē'rechter Himmel! Er ist ein 'abge'feimter Schurke! Wir sind 'furcht'bar zurück! 'Unter'steh dich! The tendency here is to make the second stress slightly stronger in order to preserve the unity of the word. Words that have this double accent are indicated in this treatise by a chief stress upon each of the two strongly accented syllables, altho the second stress is probably slightly stronger.

This emphatic stress is most commonly found in exclamations, especially in words that stand in the attributive relation: ein 'unge'zogenes Betragen!, but usually in the predicate: Sein Betragen ist 'ungezogen (Th. Ameis in Herrig's

*Archiv*, 49, p. 231) Exclamations, which are among the oldest forms of speech have had from earliest times the old attributive type of sentence structure as explained in 252 1 *b* Note, and do not even yet conform readily to the newer normal type of sentence which requires the predicate adjective to stand after the copula

In a number of cases this emphatic stress has become so intimately associated with certain words which are often spoken with emphasis that the stronger of the two stresses is the one which rests upon the syllable that originally did not have the chief stress often or in some cases even regularly remains in normal speech as the principal accent of the word *ab'scheulich*, *all'mächtig*, *aus'drücklich*, *ausge'zeichnet*, *außer'ordentlich*, *eigen'tümlich* (in the meaning peculiar but 'eigentümlich in the sense as one's own property as in *etwas 'eigentümlich an sich bringen* to purchase something so that it becomes one's own property) *glück'selig*, *haupt'sächlich*, *über'schwenglich*, *un'endlich*, *unge'heuer*, *un'sterblich*, *ur'sprünglich*, *vor'züglich*, *wahr'haftig*, *wahr'scheinlich*, *zu'kunftig*

3 *Rhythmical Accent* For physiological reasons it is difficult to pronounce two strongly accented syllables in succession. Therefore in such a case the accent is divided so that there will be a rhythmical succession of strong and weak syllables. This rhythmical principle is quite an important one in German and often disturbs the normal accent. Thus it is more common to day to say 'Endur'teil, 'Schwimman'stalt, 'unabhängig, 'unacht'sam, than 'End'urteil, 'Schwimm'anstalt, 'un'abhängig, 'un'achtsam

4 *Foreign Accent* In many foreign words the German principle of accenting is entirely abandoned in favor of the original accent of the foreign word and hence in many words from the French and Latin the chief stress is found upon the last or less frequently upon the next to the last syllable. *Ele'fant*, *Initia'tive*. The accent upon the last syllable is however for rhythmical reasons sometimes removed to the first when the final syllable is followed by an accented syllable in the next word. 'General 'Blucher instead of Gene'ral 'Blucher, So'fie, but 'Sofie 'Krause, der Rentier (ren'tie) but der 'Rentier 'Schmidt. This rhythmical accentuation has not yet become so well established in German that it usually displaces the regular stress upon the last syllable.

The secondary accent in these foreign words is usually upon the first syllable.

Here again the rhythmical to make a succession of strong  
ial position of the secondary  
on. In long words there may

be a third stress. *Respektabilität* ('re spek'ta bi li''te t or re'spekta'bi li''te t) *Etymologie* ('e ty'mo lo'gi). A marked peculiarity of German stress in these long foreign words is that the accents are distributed over the whole word so that the different vowels do not suffer much in quantity or quality while in English one strong stress carries two or more weak syllables so that the weakly stressed vowels suffer in quantity and quality. A fuller discussion is found in 4 2 B c Note and 41 2 Note

## II SENTENCE ACCENT

46 Logical and emphatic stress prevail in sentence accent. All that seems to the speaker logically more important or as weightier from the standpoint of his own feeling is made prominent by accent. The number of shades in stress is here much greater than in word accent, some being more or less marked others very fine and scarcely perceptible. The short sentence *Wo wollt ihr denn hin?* may be read with the following accentuations according as the one or the other word becomes logically more important. *Wo wollt ihr denn hin?* or *Wo wollt ihr denn hin?* or *Wo wollt ihr denn hin?* The lower numbers here denote stronger the higher numbers weaker accent.

## DETAILS CONCERNING ACCENT.

## I. WORD ACCENT.

*Principal Accent.*

47. 1. *Accent in Simple Stem Words.* The root syllable has here the accent: 'Sprache, 'gingen, 'gutem.

2. *Accent in Derivative Words.* Words with suffixes and prefixes are often differently accented.

A. *Accent of Words with Suffixes.* In words with suffixes the principal accent rests upon the root syllable: 'Bäcker, 'hei'lig, 'traum'haft.

The following exceptions occur:

a. Words ending in the suffix -lei have fluctuating stress with the principal accent now upon the root syllable, now on the suffix. See 47. 3. A. b. cc.

b. A few words have from various causes shifted their accent from the root syllable: the verbs in 178. 2. A. b. (3) so far as they are of German origin, as schar'wenzeln, schma'rotzen, kla'bastern, kar'nüffeln, &c.; Hor'nisse (also 'Hornisse), le'bendig (in the eighteenth century also the older form 'lebendig), Wa'cholder, Ho'lunder; sometimes offen'bar, unmittel'bar (or more commonly 'offenbar, 'unmittelbar), and regularly a number of other similar words given in 45. 2; Fo'relle, Herme'lin, Wal'küre (on the stage 'Walküre); a few feminine Christian names, the second component of which ends in an unaccented syllable, as Ger'trude (but 'Gertrud), Kuni'gunde, &c.; in the North often names in -lin, as Böck'lin (instead of the more correct S.G. 'Böcklin).

Note. The origin of many of the German verbs in 178. 2. A. b. (3) referred to above is not clearly understood. Some see in the first syllable an arbitrary insertion of a vowel and a consonant, so that the accent remains in fact upon the root syllable: schar'wenzeln from schwän'zeln, &c. In many cases it seems more probable that these verbs are onomatopoeic formations and hence naturally in accordance with 47. 3. A. c. (11) are accented on the last element. In some words, as will'fahren, where the syntactical relation of the components is not clear, there is a natural tendency to stress the second element and thus conform to normal group-stress (50. A. 6), which requires accent upon the second member. The accent in le'bendig, Ho'lunder, Wa'cholder, Fo'relle, &c. is usually explained by the weight of the second syllable, but there may be other factors involved. The stress le'bendig may be the result of emphatic stress, as in 45. 2, for it is often used in emphatic language, as in Er ist ein 'le'bendiger Beweis dafür! The same is true of offen'bar, unmittel'bar. Fo'relle, Hor'nisse, Herme'lin, Ho'lunder, Wa'cholder may have developed their present stress from the resemblance of their form to foreign words of similar appearance, as Li'belle, Nar'zisse, Ber'lin, Ka'tender, Ole'ander.

c. A very large number of foreign words have the accent upon the last or next to the last syllable: Infini'tiv, Initia'tive, &c. There is a tendency for those accented upon the last syllable to shift it upon the first in accordance with German fashion: 'Infini'tiv, &c.; especially in case of contrast, as in 'Singular in contrast to 'Plural, 'Objekt in contrast to 'Subjekt, &c. Some, as 'Kompaß, have become thoroly naturalized and have the accent upon the first syllable. Those in -ik have the accent upon the stem where they are derived directly from the Latin but receive the stress upon the suffix where they have entered the language thru the French: Ar'senik, Bo'tanik, 'Chronik, Gra'mmatik, 'Metrik, Po'etik, Rhe'torik, 'Taktik, 'Technik; Fa'brik, Katho'lik (but ka'tholisch), Poli'tik, Phy'sik, formerly 'Musik with Latin accent, now in French form Mu'sik; sometimes with fluctuating stress: Arithme'tik or Arith'met'ik, Meta'physik or Metaphy'sik, Mathema'tik or Mathe'matik, &c. Notice especially the accented ending in, as in Ber'lin, &c.

Foreign names of nationalities in -er accent the next to the last syllable, if that syllable is long, otherwise the first syllable: He'bräer, Kar'thäger, but 'Aräber, 'Itäler.

A number of accented foreign suffixes are also now added to German words, especially 'äge, 'älie, 'äner, 'ant, 'ei, 'eien (infinitive ending), 'enser, 'ieren (infinitive ending), 'ierung, 'ist, 'ös: La'ppälie, Weima'räner, inhabitant of Weimar, Bäcke'rei, kas'teien, Je'nenser inhabitant of Jena, stol'zierer, schau'de'rös (slang) frightful, pe'chös (slang) unfortunate.

d. In adding the German suffix isch to words, foreign adjectives have the accent upon the syllable preceding isch, while German words accent the root syllable: a'rabisch, ä'therisch, but 'Klopstockisch or 'Klopstocksch. Only lu'therisch Lutheran among German words, as in die lu'therische Kirche, has here foreign accent. This word has also a regular German accent, but with a different shade of meaning: 'Luther(i)sch Luther's, coming from Luther, as die 'Luther(i)sche Bibelübersetzung. Catholics and often Protestants pronounce this word 'luthe-risch in both of these meanings.

B. *Accent of Words with Prefixes.* Prefixes are differently accented, as follows:

a. Adjectives or substantives with the prefix ge- are accented upon the root syllable, those with ant-, et-, miß upon the prefix, those with un- sometimes upon the root syllable, sometimes upon the prefix: Ge'sang, 'Antwort, 'etwas, 'Mißmut; 'Unhold, but unüber'sehbar. Nouns with un- and mono-syllabic and also polysyllabic adjectives with un-, provided they do not end in -lich, -bar, or -sam, accent usually the prefix, while perfect participles with un-, and polysyllabic adjectives with un- and at the same time the suffixes -lich, -bar, or -sam, take usually the stress upon the root syllable, the last group, however, only when the words have passive force. 'Unmensch, 'Ursprung, 'unpaß, 'unabhängig, 'unvorteilhaft, 'unvermögend; unent'wegt, unge'flogen, unver'dient, unbe'schäftigt; uner'forschlich, unaus'führbar, unauf'haltsam, but 'unerfreulich, 'untauglich, &c., as they have active force. The passive idea naturally suggests verbal force and leads to the stressing of the verbal stem. A few in -lich have the accent upon

the root syllable, altho they do not have passive force, as they have emphatic accent (see 45 2 above) *un'möglich*, *un'endlich*, *un'sterblich*, *unver'züglich*, &c. Even where the meaning is passive we find the accent upon the prefix if the idea is that of actuality rather than mere possibility *'unausführlich* not carried out in detail, but *unaus'führlich* or *unaus'führbar* impracticable. The *un-* is stressed in the first example as the idea of actuality, a finished condition of things, suggests adjective force, while the idea of possibility suggests verbal force hence stress upon the verb in the second and third examples. Usage fluctuates with regard to the accent of the participle with the prefix *un-*, but there is a marked tendency to place the accent upon the root syllable in the predicate relation and upon *un-* in attributive function. *Der Brief ist unge'öffnet*, but *der 'ungeöffnete Brief*. The *un-* is stressed in the attributive relation standing before the governing noun, as the adjective force in this form is vividly felt. On the other hand, the verbal stem is stressed in the predicate relation as the verbal force is here distinctly felt while the *un-* naturally loses its accent as the negative with verbs is usually unstressed. See also 246. I 9 a (2nd par.) The strong stress on *un-* in adjectives often causes a following accented syllable to lose its stress. See 45. 3. Participles, however, in which *un-* stands before an accented prefix take the chief stress upon *un-* in the attributive relation but have it usually upon the following accented prefix in the predicate relation *eine ganz 'unange'brachte Sparsamkeit*, but *Sparsamkeit ist hier ganz un'ange'bracht*. With reference to *un-* it should not  
 ein 'unfeines  
 s Benehmen

b The verbal prefixes *be-*, *emp-*, *ent-*, *er-*, *ge-*, *ver-*, *zer-*, and usually *muß*, are unaccented *be'fehlen*, *zer'schlagen*. For the explanation of the lack of accent in these prefixes see c below and 215 I 3 *Historical Note*. The accent of verbal prefixes is treated at length in articles 215. I and II and 246 II 8.

c Nouns and adjectives on the one hand and verbs on the other are sometimes differently treated with regard to accent. Derivative and compound nouns and adjectives have the accent upon the first component, while firm derivative and compound verbs with the same components have the stress upon the second component *'Durchsich*, but *durch'stechen*. This difference is explained by prehistoric conditions. In the prehistoric period nouns and adjectives readily formed compounds as attested by the large number that have come down to us. At that time as to day a compound was made up of a group of words that stand in a syntactical relation to each other *'Haustür* (= *die Tür des Hauses*). In this book such a compound is often called a group-word. See 247. 2 for fuller information. In these oldest compounds or group words the modifying component regularly preceded the governing component and in accord with its importance regularly received the principal stress. In the later development of the language the modifier usually followed the governing word but retained its old stress, so that in these modern groups the second member has the principal accent *die Mütter des Jüngen*. When such a modern group was felt as a unit and thus became a modern compound or group word it retained its modern group stress *die Müttergöttes* the picture of the Virgin Mary. Thus there are two types of compounds or group words, the older group with the stress upon the first component, the modern group with the stress upon the second member. The older type, however, is still a powerful factor in the language and sometimes influences the modern compounds, as described in 249 II 2, and often leads to the formation of new compounds and group words with the form and accent of the old type. Compare 3 B a below.

On the other hand, firm verbal compounds with the stress upon the first component have not had such a rich development. Few such firm verbal compounds have come down to us from

have lost much of their older form thru loss of stress, as *er-* (from older *ur-*), *ver-* (= Gothic *faur*, *fra*, *fair*) in compound verbs are al-o found as the first component older fuller *fc* strong stress in nouns has preserved their /mology tho not in meaning to *er'teilen*)

See also 215 I 3 *Historical Note*

This difference of development in derivative and compound nouns and verbs has left the following traces behind

aa Ant and *ur-* prefixes of nouns and verbs have preserved their full vowels, fullness of vowel but *ent'sprechen*. When nouns are formed with *ent-* and *ur-* they are not direct compounds, *chuldigen*, *Er'werbung* from *er'werben*.  
 Urteil

present *ant-* and *ur-*. Later they lost their accent as they were so much used in verbs with weak stress that this stress became uniform. A few isolated examples of stressed *be-* in its older form *bi-* survive, as the present form is so different from *be-* that it is not felt as the prefix *be-*: *'bieder*, from M H G *'biderbe*; *'Beichte* from M H G *biht*, from older *'biht*

bb. In nouns and adjectives the prefix *miß* is usually accented, while in verbs it is usually unaccented: *'Mißbrauch*, *'mißbräuchlich*, but *miß'brauchen*. In verbs, however, there is at present a marked tendency to shift the accent upon the prefix: *'mißbrauchen* instead of *miß'brauchen*. For explanation of this shifting of the accent see 246. II. 8. Nouns derived directly from verbs have verb accent: *Miß'handlung* from *miß'handeln*. Sometimes the same word has verb or noun accent according as the influence of the verb or noun is felt: *das Miß'trauen in die* (the acc. showing the direction of an activity toward) *Bevölkerung distrust in the people*, but *das 'Mißtrauen in der Bevölkerung the distrust that prevails among the people*.

cc. The difference in the accent of compound nouns and verbs is treated in 3. B. a below.

3. *Accent of Compounds*. The compound formations of the different periods, which in 2. B. c above and in 247. 2. a, b, c are distinguished more accurately as old, younger, and modern group-words, are here for sake of brevity called compounds. The rules here given refer uniformly to the older formations except where otherwise expressly stated.

A. *Accent of Compound Nouns and Adjectives*. The modifying component usually takes the principal accent: *'Hauptmann*, *'Lesebuch*. This brings the accent usually upon the first syllable.

There are a number of exceptions:—

a. A number of compound adjectives and adverbs in *-ig*, *-lich*, *-los*, have the accent upon the stem of the second component: *not'wendig*, *ab'sichtlich*, *heil'los*. This accent is the result of the emphatic stress which they often have in forcible language. See 45. 2. The regular accent upon the modifying component is also common: *'notwendig*, &c. A number of other common compounds much used in emphatic language take emphatic stress: *ausge'zeichnet* excellent, &c.

In a number of other compounds the accent upon the second component seems to result from the tendency to follow the rhythm of the sentence, i. e. to conform to normal group-stress (50. A. 6), which requires accent upon the second member of a group: *barm'herzig*, *drei'einig*, *leib'haf-tig*, *leib'eigen*, *teil'haftig*, &c. In all these words there is an unaccented syllable after the second root syllable. Compare 3. D. a below. Also the strong descriptive force in these compounds tends to favor the stress upon the second component. See 247. 2. b.

b. In some compounds the accent has not yet settled down definitely upon either element, since the logical force of neither is strongly pronounced. In this case the accent fluctuates according to the position of the word in the sentence. At the end of the sentence or within the sentence wherever no strongly stressed word immediately follows, the word is accented upon the second element, within the sentence, when an accented word follows, the first element is accented: *Der Mensch ist noch blut'jung*, but *ein 'blutjunger Mensch*. Words that have this fluctuating accent are indicated in this treatise by a chief stress upon each element: *'blut-jung*. This must, however, not be construed as equality of stress, for the one or the other of the elements is usually stressed with a little more force to indicate the unity of the group. There is a tendency here, as elsewhere in modern groups with descriptive force (247. 2. b.), toward a stronger stress upon the second element: *'schnee'weiß*, but *Schnee'weißchen* or *Schnee'wittchen* (name), etc. Many of these words are used in emphatic language and the stress is then the emphatic stress described in 45. 2.

These words are:—

aa. Compounds of which the first element is a substantive that does not contain an essential modification of the basal component, but only strengthens it by giving a concrete illustration of the general idea already contained in it: *'haar'scharf*, *'mause'tot*, *'blut'rot*, *'pech'schwarz*, *'baum'stark*, *'wunder'schön*, *'feder'leicht*, *'sonnen'klar*, *'stock'blind*, *'gras'grün*, &c.

Similar to these formations are the compounds the first component of which does not have its literal meaning but contains mere strengthening force, such as often the prefixes *erz-*, *un-*, *ur-* and nouns like *Hunde-*, *Mords-*, &c.: *'Erzbe'träger*, *'erz'dumm*, *'Un'summen*, *'ur'alt*, *'Hunde'kälte*, *'hunde'müde*, *'Mords'kerl*, &c.

bb. Thus also compounds of which the first element is an adjective or adverb that does not contain an essential modification, but only strengthens or defines more definitely the general idea contained in the second element: *'hell'gelb*, *'dunkel'gelb*, *'wild'fremd*, *'schreiend'rot*, *'vielge'nannt*, *'klein'winzig*, &c.

cc. A number of uninflected compounds: *'aller'hand*, *'aller'lei*, *'der'lei*, *'einer'lei*, *'meines'gleichen*, &c.; certain adverbs, as *'aller'orts*, &c.

c. Sometimes there is a difference of meaning in connection with a difference of accent: *'steinreich* stony, but *'stein'reich* very rich; *'Erzbischof* archbishop, but *'Erz'schelm* arrant knave; *'Unmensch* inhuman creature, but *'Un'summen* enormous sums; *ein 'außer'ordentlicher* professor an assistant professor, but *ein 'außer'ordentlicher* Professor a professor of extraordinary merit; *'Donnerwetter* thunderstorm, but *'Donner'wetter* (exclamation or oath); *'ausgezeichnet* (participle) distinguished, but *ausge'zeichnet* (adj.) splendid. The accent upon the first syllable marks the element as a modifying one, while the double accent indicates fluctuating (b) or emphatic (45. 2) stress and the lack of stress upon the first element shows the result of emphatic stress, as in 45. 2.

d. The adjectives and adverbs all, groß, and especially words that have intensifying force, as *hoch*, *wohl*, &c., usually have chief stress in compound nouns, while they have secondary or fluctuating (see b. aa and bb above) stress in adjective compounds: *'Allmacht*, *'Großmacht*, *'Hochdeutsch*, *'Wohlstand*, but *all'mächtig*, *groß'mächtig*, *hoch'weise*, *wohl'edel*, *hoch'fein*, &c. It must be noticed, however, that nouns made from these adjectives also have the accent of the adjectives: *allge'mein* and *Allge'meinheit*. Notice *'Alltag* week-day, *'allt'äglich* on week

comes from the fact that the modifying force of the component is felt in nouns while in adjectives the first component has only strengthening force as in the first component must have accent when it really has accent. In nouns the first component is usually unstressed, e.g. *allseitig*, *großmütig*, *hochdeutsch*, while in adjectives the first component is usually stressed, e.g. *allseitig*, *großmütig*, *hochdeutsch*. This is the reason why the first component in nouns is usually unstressed, while in adjectives it is usually stressed. This is the reason why the first component in nouns is usually unstressed, while in adjectives it is usually stressed.

e. *Accent of Modern Compounds* A large number of compounds called modern compounds (247 2 c) have the stress of a modern group. In spoken language a sentence is not a unit but is made up of groups of words. The unity of each group is usually indicated by a stress upon the last member of the group. A few illustrations of this modern group stress may serve to explain many deviations from the rules given above for accent in compound. (1) Adjectives compounded with a substantive have usually the accent but as adjectives standing before nouns in the syntactical structure of a sentence shift the accent upon the noun so many such syntactical constructions retain their original group stress when they are written together and spoken as one word i.e. as a modern compound. Jungfrau, Graubart, but der Hohe priester, Geheimer rat (but Geheimrat, but when the syntactical structure is broken and an old compound is formed). Compare 50 A 6 b. (2) The articles in modern compounds remain unaccented as in a modern group. der'selbe, des gleichen, ein mal (but einmal *once* as ein is a numeral and not an article) *once upon a time* but derjenige, as the demonstrative force is felt. (3) An attributive genitive in modern compounds takes as in a modern group the accent if it follows the dependent noun. Mutter Gottes, zeit lebens. If noted in case of compounds denoting a period of time as in original modern group stress while other compound ends and take the accent upon the first component. (4) A name of a material or something measurable when compounded with some word denoting a measure quantity or weight takes the accent as in a modern group. Viertel stunde, Viertel jahr, but Halbjahr, as it is an old compound. (5) Prepositions in modern compounds remain unaccented as in a modern group. ab handen, ab seiten. (6) Numeral compounds take the accent upon the last element except

varies according as it is felt as a modern or an old compound. Lebe hoch, gott lob, but 'Kehraus, Saufaus, 'Packan. Compare carefully 249 II 2. Modern group stress is very common in a large number of fragments of sentences as berg an, berg auf, nach dem, &c. (9) Points of the compass have accent upon the last element. Nord ost, Süd ost, Nord west (10) Co-ordination is indicated by a strong accent upon each element but with a little stronger stress upon the last one to indicate the unity of the group as in schwarzweiß rot, deutschfranzösisch, Schleswig Holstein. (11) In a very large number of words especially onomatopoeic formations and compounds in which the original meaning of the components is no longer clear and in which there is no essential modification of the basal component felt the unity of the different parts in a sentence by placing the accent upon 'dauz, piff paff, kla bastern (see 47 2 A b).

ment distinguishes them from other words of similar formation <sup>accent upon the second element as that ele</sup> Jahr'zehnt, Jahr'hundert, Jahr'tausend,

g. *Accent of Compound Proper Names* No absolute rules can be given for the accent of names of places as there are two different types without fixed rules for their use. In most words the place is pointed out by a strong logical stress upon the first member to distinguish it from other places with the same second member. Thus *Amsterdam* is stressed on the first member, *Amster-* in contrast to *Amsterdammer* in contrast to *Amsterdamer*.

must in all cases take the accent when it becomes essential to the thought as for instance to  
Al  
to  
nec  
poi

able or firmly united (1) If the modifying component is separable it is accented 'aufstehen,  
untergehen, ausgehen (2) If the modifying component is inseparable it is unaccented

über'setzen, voll'ziehen. The adjective voll'kommen *complete, perfect*, belongs here, as it is in fact the perf. participle of the lost inseparable voll'kommen. The adjective participle will'kommen *welcome* has been influenced in its accent by voll'kommen. (3) If the verbal compound is not directly compounded, but has been formed from a compound noun, it has noun accent: 'frühstücken. This subject is treated at length in articles 215–218. For the historical explanation of the accent of compound verbs see 2. B. c above and 215. I. 3. *Historical Note*.

a. Nouns formed from these verbs retain the accent of the verb: voll'ziehen, Voll'zug; 'vorfallen, 'Vorfall.

However, here, as in 2. B. c. aa above, we find in one group of words a different treatment of noun and verb. Nouns in composition with durch, hinter, über, um, unter, wider, have uniformly the accent upon the prefix, altho the corresponding verb is accented upon the verbal stem: 'Widerspruch, but wider'sprechen; 'Durchstich, but durch'stechen; 'Überschlag, but über'schlagen; 'Unterhalt, but unter'halten. Many of these nouns are modern formations, as 'Überschlag, and tho formed from verbs with the accent upon the second component of the compound, they have the stress upon the first component after the analogy of the many old compound nouns of the language which have this stress, as described in 2. B. c above. This is true, however, only when they are felt vividly as nouns. Whenever the noun has an ending which has strong verbal force, such as -ung and the -en of the infinitive, they have the stress of verbs: der 'Durchstich the cut, excavation that has been made thru a dike, hill, &c., but beim Durch'stechen or bei der Durch'stechung des Deiches, where the idea of verbal activity is prominent.

b. In older periods of the language the perfect participle like other adjectives took the accent upon the first syllable and hence upon the prefix, while in case of verbs compounded with a proclitic adverb (i.e. an inseparable prefix) the pure verbal forms had group-stress, i.e. accent upon the verbal stem, as explained in 2. B. c above. The old manner of accenting the participle may still survive in the one participial adjective 'untertan *subject to*, participle of the now obsolete unter'tun (still found in early N.H.G.; see 1 Cor. xv. 27). It is quite possible here, however, that the present accent of the adjective participle is modern, the accent shifting from the verbal stem to the prefix, as the word was felt as an adjective and noun, and all relation to the lost unter'tun was forgotten. Aside from this isolated example the accent of the participle now follows that of the verb: voll'zogen, part. of voll'ziehen.

C. *Accent of Compound Adverbs and Interjections.* The accent here rests usually upon the last syllable as modern group-stress prevails here (see 3. A. e. (8) and (11) above): berg'auf, strom'ab, hi'nüber, her'vor, da'rauf, vie'lleicht, viel'mehr, juch'hei! The logical importance of some other syllable often causes exceptions to this rule: da'durch, da'rin, &c. become 'dadurch, 'darin when the demonstrative force is felt. See 141. 5. A. b.

D. *Accent of Decomposite Words.* Altho a compound may consist of two words or several, it can as a rule have only two component elements—the *basal component*, which contains the more general idea, and the *modifying component*, which contains an essential modification. Either component may be a compound. The stress of the modifying component of decomposites is regulated by the principles given in A and B above for simple compound nouns, adjectives, and verbs: 'Bundestagsbeschuß ('Bundestag + Be'schuß), 'vorurteilsfrei ('Vorurteil + frei), über'vorteilen (über + 'vorteilen), and many compounds (see 245. IV. 3. B) which are not yet generally written as one word, such as in'stand setzen, zu'grunde legen. Nouns made from this last class of verbs retain the verb accent and are usually written as true compounds in one word: In'standsetzung, Zu'grundelegung. If the compound has more than two components it is usually a modern compound, i.e. a whole sentence or a syntactical fragment of a sentence which is written as one word, or it may be a mere co-ordination of words. Such a modern compound has in some cases group-stress upon the last member and in others accent upon the first syllable after the manner of an old compound: Einmal'eins, sechshundertund'dreißig, schwarz-rot'goldene Fahne, but 'Stelldichein, 'Springinsfeld. For fuller discussion see 249. II. 2.

a. Many exceptions are found to the above general rules. There is an evident tendency in long words, which in reality consist of a group of words, to shift the accent from the first component to the second, if the latter is compound, in accordance with the natural impulse to conform to the usual law observed in stressing groups of words in the sentence, namely in a group consisting of two distinct components to stress the second component, as described in 50. A. 6. This occurs especially in case of: (1) The names of certain church festivals or holidays: Palm'sonntag, Kar'freitag, Ascher'mittwoch, &c. (2) Many titles or official positions: Feld'zeugmeister, Vize'feldwebel, General'postmeister, especially those in ober- and unter-, as Ober'staatsanwalt, Unter'staatssekretär. Many other words of this form but with different meaning, as Kriegs'schauplatz, &c., often have this stress, as it is a question of form not meaning. The longer the compound the stronger the tendency to conform to the normal group-stress of the sentence. In the North, where we often hear Vor'mittag, Nach'mittag, &c., instead of the regular 'Vormittag, &c., this tendency is more widespread than in the South, is found sometimes even in compounds with a simple basal component, as in Bürger'meister, Rats'keller (in Bremen), Lebens'mittel, &c. This stressing of the basal component has become generally established in the words in 47. 3. A. a (2nd par.) with a dissyllabic basal component, as leib'haftig, also in certain names ending in an unaccented syllable, as Ger'trude, Ma'thilde, &c., but not Ger'trud. The hesitation to follow this tendency where the accent would fall on the last syllable is observable elsewhere. Many words like Landge'richtsrat with a compound modifying component and a simple basal component often have the chief stress upon the second member of the modifying component instead of the regular stress upon the first member and thus conform in general to the normal group-stress of the sentence in that the stronger stress follows the weaker. Such

words cannot take the stress upon the monosyllabic basal component and thus conform closely to the normal group stress of the sentence, for the stress upon the final syllable of a word would give the impression of foreign origin. A modern *group* takes the stress upon the final member but a native German *word* is only stressed on the last syllable when it originated in a modern group. Neuen'teich (zum neuen Teich), Schön'brunn, an'statt, Viertel'jahr, &c.

E *Accent of Derivatives formed from Compounds and Compounds formed from Derivatives*. A derivative formed from a compound is accented as a derivative, but a compound in which the basal component is a derivative is accented as a compound. Liebhabere'i (Liebhaber + ei), but 'Stadtpolizei (Stadt + Poli ze'i); Schriftstelle rei ('Schriftsteller + ei), but 'Paßschererei (Paß + Schere'rei).

4 *Pronunciation of Foreign Words*. The accent here depends upon whether the word is still

foreign accent in earlier periods of the language. In view of the great irregularity that here prevails, this subject cannot be treated in a grammar, and the student must be referred to his lexicon. The German dictionaries in use in Germany avoid these foreign words, but they are usually treated in a separate work called *Fremdwörterbuch*.

### Secondary Accent.

follows

A. In compound words, that syllable receives secondary accent which would receive principal accent if the component were an independent word, 'Fahr'wasser, 'Haus'herrin, 'aus'mer-

instead of 'Vor'anzeige, 'End'urteile. Compare 45, 3

B *Accent of Suffixes*. After a root syllable which accented the prefix, chief cent, i' raten,

-, leb'haft.

nzeige. On the

and hence the natural tendency provided, however, that it will Gestalt, but the secondary acc would stand before another acc

das 'End'urteil 'spricht. Thus secondary accent depends largely upon the accents in the preceding or following syllables. The following details should be noted

a. In polysyllabic words the secondary accent depends upon the position of the syllable

admits of it 1

of two or more

'heute're Gē'sell'schaft

The intensity of all secondary accents increases with

and sometimes becomes stronger than the accent u

in "Auf'seher'innen the suffix in has a stronger accent

"mit'teil'sam, "wirt'schaft'lich, &c. Here, however,

Das 'Altē 'schützt vōr 'Torhēit 'nicht  
are both unaccented f



between two accents, but between an accent and a pause: Dem 'Glücklichēn 'kann es an 'nichts ge'brechen, or Dem 'Glückli'chen | 'kann es an 'nichts ge'brechen. Dem 'wechsēlndēn 'Leben, but Gar wechselnd ist des Mānnes rascher Sinn, dem Leben untertan, dem 'wechseln'den.

d. If there are three syllables between two accents, the middle syllable usually takes the secondary accent unless it be considerably lighter and shorter than the first syllable, in which case the first syllable is accented: ein 'undank'bāres "Kind, but eine 'un'glücklichē "Liebe. The third of these syllables can never have the accent, as it would bring it immediately before the principal accent (see e).

e. A secondary accent can stand *before* the principal accent, but never immediately before it: 'wider'legen, 'Theolo'gie. Here as elsewhere the intensity of the secondary accent increases with its distance from the principal stress. Thus the secondary accent is much stronger in the second of the two preceding examples.

f. For secondary accent in foreign words see 45. 4 (2nd par.).

### *Unaccented Syllables.*

49. The limitation of the principal accent in the main to the root syllable is now a principle quite generally observed thruout the Germanic family of languages, including both English and German. This system has not always obtained, as fossil remnants still show, but since its adoption has been of great influence in shaping the form of the German language. Since the principal syllable, which is usually the root syllable, receives the main accent, the inflectional endings, many suffixes, and the prefixes *be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ge*, *ver*, *zer*, are neglected in accenting, and hence they have lost the full vowel forms which they once had. The various vowels and diphthongs of the languages, as *a*, *o*, *u*, *au*, &c., have been preserved only in the accented syllables, while in the unaccented syllables the same vowels and diphthongs have all been reduced quite uniformly to *e*: *er'füllen* (Gothic *usfulljan*). In words like 'Eigēn'tümēr the secondary accent has preserved the vowels from decay, while the unaccented vowels have been reduced to *e*. Many words have lost their fulness of sound, many vowels have disappeared for ever. The process of decay has not yet ceased. Sometimes the vowel *e* is now of so little importance that it can be pronounced or omitted: *gerade* or *grad*, *bange* or *bang*. Sometimes the *e*, altho it has dropped out in comparatively recent times, is no longer felt at all. No one thinks any more of the *e* once after *g* in *Glaube*, *Glück*, &c. In the different inflectional systems, *e* is often in familiar language entirely suppressed, while in a more choice style it can be skilfully dropped or employed according to the rhythmical requirements of the sentence. See 62. F. *b*. It will also in this connection be noticed thruout the Grammar that the German is especially fond of the trochee (˘ ˘) or the falling spondee (˘ ˘) as a word foot, and is now often disposed to change longer feet into these favorite shorter feet by dropping an unaccented *e*, if it can be conveniently done. Thus ˘ ˘ ˘, ˘ ˘ ˘, ˘ ˘ ˘, become ˘ ˘, ˘ ˘: 'Königs, not 'Königēs; 'Mon'tags, often instead of 'Mon'tagēs; 'himm'lisch, not 'himmē'lisch. It must be noticed that the dropping of *e* here is solely a question of accent, for in dissyllabic forms the same words retain the *e*: (des) Tages, (der) Himmel. Also in words closely united by thought we can notice the tendency to divide up the syllables into dissyllabic feet: *heute*, but 'heutzū'tagē. Thus also trisyllabic rising feet become dissyllabic: *bē'gleiten*, from *be* + *geleiten*; *bē'gnügen*, from *be* + *genügen*. Compare 62. C. *Note* and D. It should be noticed, however, that the literary form of speech is averse to all these changes of feet, if the clearness of the thought could thereby be endangered. Thus we must say *wandelte* (past indic.) and not *wandelt*, for the latter form would be the same as the pres. indic., and would thus endanger the thought. In the *e*-less plural class of strong nouns, however, even the literary language has endorsed this dropping of *e*, altho the plural became thereby identical in form with the sing. See 68. Dialect goes much farther in suppressing unaccented sounds than the written language. In S.G. dialect also unaccented final *n* has disappeared: *Du muscht* (mußt) *bei mir bleibe* (for *bleiben*)—Auerbach.

In many words full vowels have been preserved in the unaccented syllable, but such words are quite uniformly of foreign origin: *Mu'latte*, 'Doktor, Mi'nute, &c. Only in such words as 'Uhu, and in a number of names, as *Otto*, *Herta*, &c., has the unaccented vowel been preserved in German words.

## II. SENTENCE ACCENT.

50. Just as a word may have different syllables with different degrees of stress so has a sentence words with different degrees of stress, which in long sentences form definite groups each with its principal and secondary accent. Just as logic and emotion may influence the stress of a word so do they often in a sentence change the character of a group of words. The different forces at work in the accentuation of a sentence are discussed in the following articles.

### A. Grammatical or Group Accent.

As certain syllables of a word take accent, so also are certain grammatical elements in a sentence stressed. The factors that enter into stress are largely mechanical. Just as words are usually distinguished as separate units in speech by a heavy stress upon the first syllable of each word different grammatical groups are usually distinguished as larger units by a strong accent upon the *last* member of each group, as illustrated in 6 below. There are, however, many variations from this simple principle, for which general rules can be laid down, but it must be remem-

bered that they are only shifts to other elements connected with that of w and indicate not word stands in a syntactical group of words

The following general hints on grammatical or group stress may be useful

1 In general the predicate as the most important thing to be communicated is more strongly accented than the subject. Der Hund bellt.

The predicate adjective or noun, the  
if more importance  
hence receive the

sicher angekommen (compare 3 a below) Er ist ein tüchtiger Mann Er ist reich Er ist  
Männ geworden. I or this important point, see 215 II 1 A and 285 II B b gg

merken! Do you intend to pay attention?! Gähst du gleich her! (verb. stressed more heavily, than the prefix her) Don't you intend to come at once?<sup>21</sup> Däß du mir aufmerkst! Ob du hergehst! Wenn du das noch einmal tust! (Albert Debrunner in *Deutsche Literaturzeitung*, 1919, p. 739) Däs tust du mir nicht mehr! (id) Läß mir das ein andermal bleiben! (id) Nimm dich in acht, daß das nicht mehr vorkommt! (id)

3) *Stress of Verb and Adverb* If the predicate verb has an object or adverbial modifier, these usually, in normal or inverted word-order take a stronger accent than the verb itself, except in case of a reciprocal, reflexive, or personal pronoun. Das Werk lobt den Meister. Er spricht laut. Sie reden zusammen (at the same time), but Sie reden zusammen (= miteinander). Er freut sich.

a Modal adverbs, i.e. such as modify not the verb but the thought of the whole sentence, are usually stressed less than the verb. *Er geht nicht. Du kennst ihn ja.* The use of such weakly accented adverbs in connection with heavy stress on the verb is the characteristic German

ment Stress upon the verb emphasizes not only the verbal activity but the statement as a whole. Hence when stressed than an advc  
géhnt sicher He'll be  
pare 2) Er rácht si  
principal propositions with normal or inverted word-order the attention is directed to some detail expressed by an object or an adverbial element, so that the verb is usually stressed less than its modifiers, but when as in these examples, the attention is directed to the thought as a whole and the question of achievement is involved the verb is more heavily stressed than its modifiers  
See also b

*b* As in a subordinate clause or an utterance with transposed word order the attention is

but ich mochte gern wissen, ob er morgen kommt, ob er morgen oder übermorgen kommt. Wie sie ihn liebte, liebte, liebte! (Wildenbruch's *Schwesterseelen*, chap VII) For further treatment see 284 I 3 a (toward end) Where, however, in the principal proposition the at-

principal  
the sub-  
ordinate  
things.

<sup>c</sup> A simple verb in the initial position is always stressed just as other important words that stand in the first place. *Reiche mir das Büch! Reisen Sie dieses Jahr wieder nach Karlsbad? Säh ein Knäb' ein Röslein stöhn* (Goethe's *Heidenröslein*). Compare 284 I. 2. c.

<sup>d</sup> The stress of the verbal elements in compound tense forms is discussed in 215. II. 1. A; 285 II B b aa, bb, cc. 237. I B a Note

4 If there are a number of objects or adverbial modifiers the logically more "important" are accented and stand toward the end of the sentence.

5 Pronouns articles, prepositions conjunctions of speech. These classes of words often become *enclitics*, that is, when an accented syllable immediately precedes or follows, that is, they here lose their accent and are treated as if they were

a part of the preceding or following word: (enclitics) *hást du* (pro. *hástu*), *die Náchť durch*, &c.; (proclitics) *durch Liebe*, *es íst*, *er wéiű*, but *er békénnt* because the pronoun is followed by an unaccented syllable. Often monosyllabic pronouns or articles become enclitics after prepositions, and are sometimes even contracted and thoroly fused into one word with the preposition: *mít euch*, *béi ihm*, *áuf das* or *aufs*, *ín dem* or *ím*. See also 57. B and C, and 58. B. *b*, *c*.

6. *Different Kinds of Group-stress.* When two or more elements are closely related, there is often a marked tendency to form a unit, i.e. to bind the parts closely together by one principal accent, which rests upon the last element. The strong stress upon the last member of the group marks the *unity* of the group, indicating the end of one group and distinguishing it from the next one if the discourse is continued. This is normal or descriptive (247. 2. *b*.) group-stress. The strong stress that is occasionally found on the first member calls attention to the logical importance that it has assumed under the special circumstances, hence it is often used to distinguish one person or thing from another. This is logical, or distinguishing or classifying stress. It is not only employed in the usual syntactical groups of a sentence, but is very common in group-words (247. 2). Examples are given in 247. 2. *b* and 255. II. 1. Descriptive stress and distinguishing or classifying stress are also characteristic of English, which, however, has developed a more uniform, consistent use of the two principles. Compare 255. I. *b* (2nd par.). In German a sharp discrimination here has been prevented: (1) by the survival of an older descriptive stress upon the first member in certain attributive adjective groups (247. 2. *a*); (2) by the development of a new normal or descriptive group-stress with the accent upon the first member at the end of sentences or clauses which have a compound tense. This new normal or descriptive stress is in this treatise called end-stress. It is discussed more at length in 215. II. 1. A (3rd par.).

The following groups of normal or descriptive stress are common:

*a.* The adverb is less stressed than the following adjective, participle, or adverb: *Das Buch íst ungewóhnlich réichhaltig und interessánt.* Of course, the logical importance may shift upon the preceding adverb: *Das Buch íst ungewóhnlich réichhaltig und interessánt.* Thus the chief stress upon either the first or the last element of the group does not destroy the grammatical relations, but an *equal* stress upon the preceding adverb and the two following adjectives may, as here, entirely destroy the grammatical relations: *Das Buch íst ungewóhnlich, réichhaltig und interessánt.* Here *ungewóhnlich* is an adjective on a par with the two adjectives that follow it.

Emphatic descriptive stress is very common here in strong excited language. The adverb is accented strongly but just a *little less* strongly than the following adjective: *Das Buch íst zú dúmm!*

*b.* An adjective usually receives less stress than the noun which it limits: *das Dèutsche Réich.* If, however, a numeral precedes a noun denoting a weight or measure and its dependent substantive the adjective numeral has a heavier stress than the following noun: *dréi Pfúnd Zúcker.* Here as in *h* below *Pfúnd Zúcker* forms a group. Now when this group enters as a unit into the larger group *dréi Pfúnd Zúcker* the first member *dréi* must have a stronger stress than *Pfund* or else it would be felt as forming a group with *Pfund* instead of with the larger unit *Pfúnd Zúcker*. The strongest stress upon *Zucker* in *dréi Pfúnd Zúcker* clearly shows that the end of the group is *Zucker*, not *Pfund*. Of course, the logical importance often shifts from the noun upon the preceding adjective: *Gib mir das bráune Pfêrd.* This logical or distinguishing stress is also found in group-words and compounds: *Júngfráu*, &c. See also 247. 2. *a*, *b*, *c*, and 249. II. 1. A. This logical stress which is stronger than the accent upon the governing noun must be distinguished from emphatic descriptive stress, which is also strong but just a *little less* strong than that of the governing noun: *O allzu ráscher Mánn!*, *dieser Schúft!*, *Der Jörg* (pet name for Georg) *íst éin Sáufer!* Logical stress distinguishes one person or thing from another. Emphatic stress describes *one* person or thing and often indicates strong feeling or shows an emotional interest in the statement. For another form of descriptive stress see 111. 9.

*c.* When the second word stands as an appositive to the first: *Múttér Natúr. Wer soll dein Húttér sein, Váter Rhéin? Schúller der Díchter, der Díchter Schúller.* Also *d* contains this appositional construction. In older German the appositive was stressed as to-day, but it preceded the governing noun. This older usage survives in compounds and group-words: *der Rhéinstróm.* See 255. II. 1. G. *a* (2nd par.).

*d.* When a title and a proper name form one idea: *Káiser Wílhelm*; but *Kónig Kárl, nícht Hérzog Kárl.*

*e.* In case of Christian and surname: *Jákob Grímm*; but *Érich Schmídt, nícht Jóhánnes Schmídt.*

*f.* Usually in case of a noun and its modifying genitive, generally with clear descriptive force: *Er wírd die Schwélle méines Háuses nícht úbertreten*, or *Er wírd méines Háuses Schwélle nícht úbertreten.* *Góethes Váter*, or *der Váter Góethes.* See 255. II. 1.

Of course, the logical importance often shifts from the second member to the first and we then have *logical stress*: *Selbst die Kráuter und Wurzeln míű ich ungern, wenn auch der Wért der Wáre nícht gróű íst.* *Das íst Wílhelms Búch, nícht méines.* This logical stress is very common in compounds and group-words (247. 2): *Knábenárt, Fráuenhánd, Mánneswórt, Lúngenentzúndung, Áugenentzúndung*, &c. Also often in old group-words (247. 2. *a*), where the genitive relation as in the older period of uninflected speech is not marked by an ending: *Kópfverlétzung, Hérzklópfen*, &c.

Quite different from this logical accent is *emphatic stress*, which calls attention to the important member of the group: *(Johannes) Was fúhrt Dích denn zu uns? (Vockerat) Góttés Wílle, tja! Der Wílle Góttés fúhrt mích zu Euch (Hauptmann's Einsame Menschen, V).* *Sie sagte*

neulich: Wir Frauen lebten in einem Zustand der Entwürdigung (id II) Where the emphasis, as in these examples, rests upon the second member the stress can be as strong as desired hatic member precedes it is second member, so that the richten, die augenblicklich (id) If the first member

Emphatic stress describes

to each other the stress be-  
ntfaltet wie die der Verba

phrase, when they together

1011 011 1011 1011 1011 1011 1011 1011

h When a noun denoting a weight or measure and the following noun denoting a material or something measurable together form the idea of a complete whole ein Stück Tuch, ein Glas Wein

1 In case of several words which are connected by a preposition or conjunction and form together one idea Zweig auf Zweige one branch upon the other, 1 e all upon one pile, weit und breit, Grund und Boden property, real estate, jung und alt, groß und klein, arm und reich. The unity of the idea arises here from the fact that the words are either synonyms, and thus represent the same thing from two different standpoints, or thus show the whole range of the idea from the two extremes of the first word may sometimes require it to be accented first example above) one branch at a time The accent upon the first word here shows that it is to be taken separately

j Co-ordination Hans, Max und Wilhelm waren da

### B. Logical and Emphatic Accent.

Logical accent is sovereign and can set aside all the preceding rules, disturbing both the group and word accent Any word or syllable can for logical reasons receive the accent Der Mann (the man, not the woman) ist nicht alt. Der Mann ist alt. Der Mann ist nicht (contradicting) alt. Der Mann ist nicht alt, sondern jung Der (that) Mann ist nicht alt. Thus also that

take the principal accent, remains unaccented Der Bräunerei, sondern eine Brännererei, Aufgeschoben ist nicht aufgehoben. Nicht die Gartentür, sondern die Gartenmauer ist beschädigt. One says in correcting an incorrect grammatical form geben, nicht gebé.

Emphatic stress results from emotion Its effect on words is described in 45. 2, its effect on groups of words in A 6 a, b, f above

51. Sentence Accent affected by the Rhythm Words that are comparatively unimportant to the meaning, and hence do not absolutely demand stress, may be with or without accent ac-

le in the other it is accented, but Kleider machen Leute. must receive accent, even tho ter the number and sex of the

children that a man has with the words Er hat drei Töchter.

59 Sentence Accent affected by the Rhythm

points mentioned above, there tempo plays an important rôle of accents decreases, and their sentence or before a pause the

accent becomes more pronounced

### PITCH, OR TONE.

53. 1 The pitch in which something is spoken indicates the attitude of the mind or the state of the feelings. In a foreign language pitch is one of the most subtle of things, but in English and German, so closely related by a common origin, it is for the most part the same. There are, however, differences. A number of scholars have observed in the English of England that pitch is considerably lower than in German, which indicates that the people of England give to their feelings a more restrained expression marked by less variation in tone. On the other hand, pitch differs somewhat in different parts of the same country, also in individuals according to health, age, and sex. In spite of these differences

the tone in which something is spoken is usually understood quite clearly by men and often even animals, and hence there must be fixed rules which underlie these phenomena. This subject, however, cannot be discussed here.

2. *Falling and Rising Intonation.* Falling intonation is indicated by a period, rising intonation by a raised period. Attention is here called to only a few important fundamental points, which in general correspond to English usage:

a. Falling intonation usually indicates completeness, hence is employed at the end of a statement: *Karl· ist· krank· ge·we·sen.*

b. Rising intonation usually indicates incompleteness, expectancy, hence is used at the close of a question that is to be answered by yes or no: *Ist· er· hier· ge·we·sen·?* In other kinds of questions the voice usually falls at the end of the sentence as there is no state of expectancy or suspense as to the outcome of a decision or an act but a mere demand for information: *Wer· hat· das· ge·tan·?* If, however, one *repeats* the interrogative pronoun or adverb with emphasis in impatient tone the voice rises at the end of the sentence to indicate that one expects an answer: *Wér· hat· das· ge·tan·?*

The voice rises at the end of a clause which precedes another clause and falls at the end of the sentence: *Er ruft mich·, wenn ihr fertig seid. Wenn ihr fertig seid·, ruft er mich.* In a sentence containing a direct quotation the principal proposition closes with rising intonation if it precedes the quotation, but if it follows the quotation it has the intonation of the syllable which immediately precedes it: *Er· sag·te·: „Ge·hen· Sie· mit·!“ „Ge·hen· Sie· mit·!“, sag·te· er· „Ist· er· hier· ge·we·sen·?“ „frag·te· er· (Siebs's *Bühnenaussprache*, p. 87). Compare 269. 1. b and 164 (toward end).*

#### USE OF CAPITAL LETTERS.

54. The use of capital letters in German differs from the English in several points. The following are begun with a capital:

1. Every complete sentence in prose, and in poetry every verse.

2. Every direct quotation: *Der Bettelsack sagt nie: „Ich habe genug.“*

3. Every noun and any word used as a noun, if it can take the definite article, an adjective, or any other modifying word before it: *der Mann, der Alte, der Junge*, but *alt und jung* *old and young*, because no article can stand before these words in this set expression; *das Weinen; das trauliche Du; Schönes, etwas Schönes.*

a. Pronominal adjectives, indefinite pronouns and numerals, tho often used substantively, are written with a small letter: *mancher, niemand, man, einer, ein wenig, &c.*

b. Also many nouns in certain set expressions, used adverbially, are written with a small letter: *zuliebe tun; zustatten kommen, von alters her, anfangs.*

4. Adjectives and ordinals preceded by the article, when they stand after proper names, forming with the name the designation of one individual: *Friedrich der Große* or *der Zweite.*

5. Adjectives and possessives in titles: *Seine Majestät; das Königliche Zollamt; der Wirkliche Geheimrat; die Norddeutsche Schulzeitung.*

6. Certain pronouns in direct address, as explained in 138. 1, and also those referring to the speaker in the proclamations and words of emperors and kings. Also other pronouns, pronominal adjectives, and the numeral *ein* sometimes take a capital to indicate emphasis, but more commonly are written with a small letter with an accent above the vowel, as *éin*, or are spaced, as *e i n*. If, however, groups of words or whole sentences are to be emphasized the letters are spaced in German, or they appear in heavier type. Differing from English, the pronoun of the first person, *ich I*, is written with a small letter, unless it begins a sentence or direct quotation.

7. Adjectives in *sch* derived from names of persons and those in *-er* from names of places: *die Grimmschen* or *Grimm'schen Märchen; der Kölner* (sometimes also *kölner*) *Dom.*

*a* But adjectives made from proper names whether of persons, peoples, or countries, are written with a small letter when used, not with reference to one person or thing, but in a general universal sense *die lutherische Kirche, romisch, preußisch, kölnisch, &c*

8 Usually only the first element of compound nouns is written with a capital but sometimes other elements take a capital, especially in the following cases (1) When a misunderstanding might arise from the use of small characters *Erd-Rücken* to keep it from being confounded with *Er-drucken, der Z-Laut, &c* (2) Proper names and adjectives *Schleswig-Holstein, Niederschlesisch-Märkische Eisenbahn* (3) The last component element in long compounds *Dampfschiffahrts-Gesellschaft, Appellationsgerichts-Präsident* (4) Common class nouns in compounds containing a prep phrase *das In-die-Hohe-Kommen*, but with a small letter where the thought is clear *das Imamtbleiben* Notice that in the above cases a hyphen (-) must be used when an element with in the compound has a capital

#### APOSTROPHE

55 An apostrophe is used as in English to indicate that a sound which can be pronounced is suppressed *wen ge* for *wenige*, *er redet* for *redete*

The exceptions are as follows

1 An apostrophe is not used in the common contractions of the article with a previous preposition *am, ans, &c* for *an dem, an das, &c*

2 It is not now usual to place an apostrophe before *s* in the gen *Schillers, Goethes, &c* Older usage *Schiller s, &c*

3 If a proper name ends in a sibilant *s, ß, tz, &c* no additional *s* appears in the printed or written form of the gen altho an additional *s* is actually spoken In the printed and written form the apostrophe is usually employed here to indicate the case *Voß* (now sometimes *Voß s*) *Luise* See also 86 2 *a*

# PART II.

## THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

### THEIR GRAMMATICAL FORMS, USE, NATURE.

#### PRELIMINARY.

#### *Number, Case, Gender.*

56. *a.* There are in German two numbers, the singular and plural.
- b.* There are four cases: the *nominative*, the *genitive*, the *dative*, the *accusative*. The meaning and uses of these cases are treated in the Syntax.
- c.* There are three genders, *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*. The general rule for the gender of nouns denoting living beings is that the noun is masculine or feminine according to the natural sex of the object represented by it, but there are many exceptions to the rule. The gender of nouns denoting things destitute of sex is not always neuter as in English, but is masc., fem., or neut., regulated in part by the meaning or the form of the word. Some rules for gender are given in 98 and 99, but in general the gender of each word must be learned, as there is much irregularity. The gender of the noun is usually indicated by the form of the preceding article or other modifying word.

## INFLECTION OF THE ARTICLES.

### DEFINITE ARTICLE.

57. A. The *definite* article has in the development of the language become ever more and more a necessary accompaniment of the noun. It stands immediately before the noun, and thus not only indicates its gender, but also, as it is richer in forms, marks its case more distinctly.

SINGULAR.					PLURAL.
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		M., F., and N. alike.
Nom. . . .	der	die	das	...	die <i>the</i> .
Gen. . . .	des	der	des	...	der <i>of the</i> .
Dat. . . .	dem	der	dem	...	den <i>to (or for) the</i> .
Acc. . . .	den	die	das	...	die <i>the</i> .

B. The definite article is an enclitic, i.e. it leans upon a preceding word, the voice passing rapidly over it, as if it were a part of the preceding word. For this reason the article suffers many contractions with a preceding preposition or other word, especially the contraction of **dem** (neut. and masc. dat.) and **das** (acc.) with a preceding monosyllabic preposition. **Zur** for **zu der** is the only fem. contraction allowed. The more common contractions are **am**, **ans**, **aufs**, **beim**, **fürs**, **im**, **ins**, **vom**, **zum**, for **an dem**, **an das**, **auf das**, **bei dem**, **für das**, **in dem**, **in das**, **von dem**, **zu dem**; sometimes in the familiar language of every day: **aufm**, **hinterm**, **gegens**, **übern**, &c., for **auf dem**, **hinter dem**, **gegen das**, **über den**, &c. In the spoken language contraction with a preceding verb is also very common: **Er hat's** (**hat das**) **große Los gewonnen**.

*a.* In the classics we find the contractions **zun** for **zu den** (dat. pl.), **an** (pronounce **an'n**) for **an den** (acc. sing. masc. and dat. pl.), and **in** (pronounce **in'n**) for **in den** (acc. sing. masc. and dat. pl.), which have since disappeared from the literary language: **vom Kopf bis zun Füßen** (Schiller's *Räuber*, 2, 3). **Ihr wart sie dem Feind an Kopf** (Goethe's *Götz*, 1, 2). **Und setz' dich in Sessel!** (id., *Faust*, 1. 2428). **Er fabelte gewiß in letzten Zügen** (ib., 1. 2962). Such contractions are still common in colloquial and popular language.

*b* Contraction is the rule in all the above cases in the numerous *set phrases* where the article loses its demonstrative (see D) force entirely and hence its importance pointing to no concrete object in particular which thus needs to be pointed out or described in order to be identified but to one which has taken on abstract and general force. *Er schlug die Gegner aufs Haupt* He defeated his opponents (lit. hit them upon the head). *Er faßte ihn scharf ins Auge* He looked at him sharply. *Er geht zur Schule* (no reference to a particular school but in general to the place where one learns).

Outside of these *set expressions* the article is also on the same general principle very often contracted when it has no demonstrative force especially in familiar language where the relations of the persons and objects to each other are perfectly clear and need not be pointed out. However, when the least demonstrative force enters into the article it cannot be contracted especially in choice language. *Ich habe im guten Glauben gehandelt* I acted in good faith but *Ich habe in dem guten Glauben gehandelt*, daß ich in meinem Rechte wäre.

*c* In stead of being contracted the article is sometimes lengthened. The lengthened gen. and dat. forms *derer* (for *der*) and *denen* (for *den*) are found more or less frequently up to the beginning of the nineteenth century. *die Befolgung derer Gesetze* (Klopstock). *Vielleicht daß Gott denen Großen die Augen aufthut* (Goethe). Occasionally still in language colored by dialect. *Aber geholfen hat er schon vielen, weil er mir die Wissenschaft von denen Kräutern gegeben hat* (Wilhelm Fischer's *Sonett* 1).

*C* The definite article is also a proclitic (i.e. leans upon the following word), the voice passing rapidly over it and resting upon the next word. *Der Mensch ist sterblich*. Hence the article is often contracted or written as a part of the following word. *'s Morgens* = *des Morgens of mornings*, *der'selbe* *the same*. The article is a proclitic or enclitic according as it precedes or follows a stronger accent to which it naturally attaches itself.

*D* The definite article is in fact only the unaccented and shorter form of the demonstrative adjective *der* *that* (see 129. 1) and still, tho in greatly reduced degree retains its demonstrative force. Owing to its enclitic nature the pronunciation of the def. article differs according to circumstances just as the English *the*, tho always more or less short and obscure, thus differing from the demonstrative *der*, which has a strong accent.

### INDEFINITE ARTICLE

58 A Its declension is as follows

	SINGULAR				PLURAL	
	Masc	Fem	Neut		M, F, and N	
Nom	ein	eine	ein	<i>a</i>	.	meine <i>my</i>
Gen	eines	einer	eines	<i>of a</i>	.	meiner <i>of my</i>
Dat	einem	einer	einem	<i>to (for) a</i>	.	meinen <i>to (for) my</i>
Acc	einen	eine	ein	<i>a</i>	.	meine <i>my</i>

*B* Of course there can be no plural of *ein*, but as all the other words declined like *ein* have a plural *mein* is declined as a model for the whole group in the plural. The words declined like *ein* are *kein no* and all the possessive adjectives, *mein my*, *unser our*, *dein thy*, *euer your*, *sein his its*, *ihr her*, *ihr their*. Notice that this group has no ending to show gender in nom. sing. of the masc. and nom. and acc. sing. of the neut. Of these words *ein* is the only one that is an enclitic, and hence is the only one that can suffer aphesis (see *b*).

*a* The indefinite article like the definite is an enclitic or proclitic being the unaccented form of the accented numeral adjective *ein one* which is sometimes distinguished from the indef. article by being written with a capital or more commonly by an accent, or by spaced letters. *Ein, ein, ein*.

*b* Owing to its enclitic or proclitic nature the indef. article is often contracted after or before a word forming in the familiar language of every day a complete shorter declension as follows

	SINGULAR			
	Masc	Fem	Neut	
Nom	n	ne	n	
Gen	nes	ner	nes	
Dat	nem (or m)	ner	nem (or 'm)	
Acc	nem or n (=n n)	ne	n	
Example	Es war ne furchtbare Zeit (M. Dreyer's <i>Drei</i> 1)			



c. This group of words had in early N.H.G. other abbreviated forms, as *eins* (gen. masc. and neut.) for *eines*, *eim* or *em* for *einem*, *einn* or *ein'* for *einen*, &c. These forms are often found in the language of Luther and occasionally in the works of Goethe: *Es ist besser wonen im wüsten Lande | Denn bey eim zenckischen vnd zornigen Weibe* (Proverbs 21. 19). *Mit eim leidlich Geld* (Goethe's *Urfaust*, I. 258). *Wenn ich so saß bei 'em Gelag* (ib., I. 1372). In the careless spoken language of every-day life these contractions still continue to take place: *Mit eim Mal?* (M. Dreyer's *In Behandlung*, I.) In the same manner we find earlier in the period contracted forms of the other words inflected like *ein*, namely, *kein* and the possessive adjectives, and in poetry and popular language such contractions still appear: *König Sifrid liegt in seim roten Blute!* (Uhland's *Die drei Lieder*).

d. In more choice language the indefinite article is pronounced in full, but with weak accent.

## USE OF THE ARTICLES.

### I. GENERAL STATEMENT.

59. A. The indefinite article *ein* *a*, in form the unaccented numeral *ein* *one*, true to its origin singles out one object, action, or quality from among a number. It designates an individual object in different ways:

a. It points to an individual person or thing without fixing its identity: *Ein Kind begegnete uns. Ein Buch liegt auf dem Tisch.* If the individual introduced by the indefinite article is afterwards referred to, it is designated by the definite article, since it is considered as known: *Es war einmal ein König. Der König hatte kein Kind.*

b. In its more indefinite sense, *ein* is equal to *irgend ein* *any*, designating no individual in particular: *Nie ist ein Kaiser so reich gewesen.*

c. The indefinite article can usually stand before a proper name in only two cases: (1) to designate one member of a family: *Ich habe einen Schmidt gekannt* I knew a man by the name of Schmidt; (2) to convert a proper name into a common class noun: *Für einen Knaben stirbt ein Posa* (*a man like Posa*) *nicht* (Schiller's *Don Carlos*, 5, 9). *Ein Goethe kommt nicht alle Jahrzehnte vor.* Compare *d*.

d. *Ein* always indicates individualization, but usually without definite reference. In M.H.G., however, there are abundant evidences of a tendency toward definite reference as *ein* often assumes the force of a weak demonstrative or determinative. (130. 2): *wer was ein maget, diu den gral truoc?* (*Parzival*, 500. 24) = *Wer war die Jungfrau, die den Gral trug?*, *lit.* Who was a certain maiden, who carried the grail? In early N.H.G. the weak demonstrative force of *ein* is still common: *Geitz ist eine* (now *die*) *wurtzel alles vbels* (1. Tim. vi. 10). In a few instances it still survives in official language: *An ein hohes Ministerium* instead of the now more common: *An das hohe Ministerium*. This old demonstrative force is still sometimes used where in English we may render *ein* by *such a man as*, *such men as*, *such distinguished*: *Die Erhebung des deutschen Volkes im Befreiungskriege ward von den poetischen Klängen eines Körner, Arndt, Eichendorff begleitet. Die Darstellung und Inszenierung war eines Burgtheaters würdig* (Dr. Hans Hartmeyer in *Hamburger Nachrichten*, Feb. 13, 1906, describing the presentation of a play in the Burgtheater, Vienna). *Zum zweiten Male will man vom Deutschen Reich zwei Provinzen (Elsaß und Lothringen) losreißen, die ständig zu Deutschland gehörten bis zu den Raubzügen eines Ludwig XIV* (definite person) (*Lokalanzeiger*, Jan. 12, 1917). This *ein* is quite different from the *ein* described in *c*. (2) above, altho it is sometimes impossible to distinguish them by reason of insufficient context. Here the reference is to definite individuals, while in *c*. (2) the name denotes, not a definite individual but *any* member of a certain class of persons or things.

In colloquial language the old determinative force of *ein* is still quite common where it has the meaning of *ein solcher*: *Es war eine Nacht, in der man nicht gern einen Hund hinausjagt. Er hat eine Freude, es ist kaum zu glauben.*

B. *Definite Article with Individualizing Force.* The definite article *der* *the*, in form the unaccented demonstrative *der* *that*, true to its origin, points out a

definite object or thing, not directly by a gesture, as the demon der, but by implication, referring to a person or thing which has already been brought before the mind by previous mention, or which is clearly indicated by the context, and hence is either a weak demonstrative or a weak determinative (130. 2) *Trudchen hatte eine arme Mutter. Aber die Mutter war sehr fromm und gottesfürchtig. Der damalige Kaiser von Deutschland; die zwei letzten Kaiser von Deutschland; das Buch auf dem Tische; das Buch, das auf dem Tische liegt.* The definite article individualizes persons and things, i e it points, not to a class but to a definite individual or to definite individuals within a class.

Altho originally the definite article pointed out a definite individual within a class, the idea of a definite individual often so overshadows that of a class that the idea of a class in part or entirely disappears (the idea of a class still felt) *der Montag, der Januar, der Merkur, &c*, (the idea of a class almost or entirely absent) *der Erlöser* the Redeemer, *Friedrich der Große* Frederick the Great, *der Grunewald* (forest near Berlin), *die Vereinigten Staaten* the United States, &c Thus for many centuries common class nouns have been developing into proper names, so that a large number of these strong individualizations of the new type with the definite article now stand over against the strong individualizations of the old type the articleless proper names in D. A number of the words of the new type have already dropped or occasionally drop the definite article and have joined or occasionally join the older group *Deutschland* (formerly *das deutsche Land*), etc. On the other hand, this new group has been greatly increased by accessions from the older group, as illustrated in II B C D E G H I (1).

*C Both Articles with Generalizing Force* Both *ein* and *der* have individualizing force, both indicating individualization within a class. Hence in general statements, i e where there is no reference to a definite individual *ein* and *der* both assume generalizing force, i e the representative idea becomes more prominent than the conception of a sharp individualization, one individual representing a whole class. Here *ein* corresponds in general to English *a*, both *ein* and *a* representing a less definite, a less vivid form of individualization than *der*. In general, *der* corresponds to the articleless form in English as *man* in *Man is mortal* but is much more widely used, the German form with *der* representing the new type of individualization described in B (2nd par.), the English form of expression representing the old style of individualization as found in proper names. The new type of individualization with *der*, so common in German, is also often found in English with the definite article where the idea of a class is strongly pronounced. Examples *Das weiß ein Kind. Eine Ratte ist größer als eine Maus.* A rat is larger than a mouse, or *Die Ratte ist größer als die Maus.* The rat is larger than the mouse. *Ein Mensch ist in seinem Leben wie Gras.* As for man his days are as grass. *Ein Dieb ist furchtsam, ein Löwe stark. Der Mensch ist sterblich.* Man is mortal. *Der afrikanische Elefant ist größer als der indische.* The African elephant is larger than the Indian. *Der Tisch ist ein Hausgerät. Du bist doch die geborene alte Jungfer* (Fontaine's *Effi*, chap 1) You are, indeed, a regular old maid. *War er nicht der Generalbsewiewitz?* (Kroger's *Leute eigener Art*, p 117) Wasn't he a consummate villain? *Das ist die reine Lüge.* That is a downright lie. The plural of the article is also used. *Beide waren ja noch die reinen Kinder* (R. Voss's *Psyche*, XIII) Both were still mere children. *Der Blinde erregt or die Blinden erregen unser Mitleid.*

*D Omission of Article* Proper names do not usually take an article, as the name itself points out clearly the object in question. *Hans ist angekommen.* This is the survival of a once much wider usage. In oldest Germanic the definite article was little used with nouns not even with common class nouns. All things living and lifeless were conceived of as individuals. Gradually the old idea of individuality became much restricted. It is now common only with proper names in a much less degree with names of materials and abstract nouns sometimes in names of planets, ships, &c., and in a few accessions from the new type, such as titles, as discussed below in II C, D, E c g Note. It is most

restricted in the genitive, where it is now little used except with proper names as the idea of a living personality has become closely associated with the articleless genitive: **Gold** (II. C. *b*) **schmilzt bei 1064°**, but **das Atomgewicht des Goldes ist 197,2**. See also II. E. *g. Note*. On the other hand, the absence of the definite article to-day is often felt as a contrast to its presence and hence indicates an indefinite portion, amount, or extent, as illustrated below in II. C, D, or a class or kind in contrast to a definite object, as illustrated in E below and III. *f*. Also words which in the sing. usually require the article often drop it in the *plural*, as the reference is not to definite individuals but only in a general way to a class or indefinite number: **Kinder und Narren sagen die Wahrheit**. In all these cases when the reference becomes a definite one the article must stand.

E. *Use of the Article with Modified Nouns*. Nouns which do not usually take an article require it at once when they become modified by an adjective, a genitive, a phrase, or relative clause, provided the modifier thus with the aid of the article marks the noun as a definite and distinct thing, but, of course, a modified noun is without the definite article if the reference is to something indefinite or to the general conception of a class or kind: **Wilhelm William**, **Frankreich France**, but **der kleine Wilhelm little William**, **das sonnige Frankreich sunny France**, as German contrary to modern English usage requires, except in direct address, the article before modified proper names as before other modified nouns wherever the reference is to a definite individual, i.e. as in older English usage, often still surviving in poetic or choice language, modern German still employs here regularly the new type of individualization described in B (2nd par.), while modern English drops the article after the analogy of usage with the unmodified proper name. Aside from proper names usage is here in general the same in both languages. The absence of the article suggests something indefinite or the general conception of class or kind with only a general characterization, while the definite article points to something definite or to a definite individual: **Sie hat nervösen Kopfschmerz** (idea of class or kind, not the idea of a definite attack), **heftige Kopfschmerzen** (indefinite number), but **Sie hat den gestrigen Kopfschmerz** (definite attack) **noch nicht überwunden**. **Schwarze Tinte** (idea of class, kind) **sieht hier besser aus als rote**. **China produziert schwarzen und grünen Tee** (idea of class or kind and indefinite quantity). **Feines Weizenmehl fine wheat flour** (general indication of class or kind), **das feinste Weizenmehl zu dem billigsten Preise** the finest wheat flour at the lowest market price (the superl. in both cases with the art. as a definite quality and price are stated), but **feinstes Weizenmehl zu billigstem Preise** very fine flour at a very low price (not entirely definite); **in hohem Alter** at an advanced age (indefinite), but **im hohen Alter von 78 Jahren** (definite); **Gott sei Dank!** thanks be to God! but **dem Gotte Israels** to the God of Israel. **Der Gott, der Eisen wachsen ließ, der wollte keine Knechte** (Arndt's *Vaterlandslied*). The article is of course dropped in case of persons when the identity of the individual is perfectly clear and the modifier is added only to call attention to some particular fact, not to point out the individual: **Gott, der uns bisher beigestanden hat, wird uns auch in der Zukunft nahe sein**.

F. The article must often be used on merely formal grounds to make clear the case: **Er zieht den Rosen Nelken vor**, but when the substantive clearly shows the case, the article in such instances drops out, as the reference is an indefinite one: **Er zieht Äpfeln Pfirsiche vor**. **Gold** (II. C. *b*) **schmilzt bei 1064°**, but to indicate the dative clearly: **Dieses Metall gleicht dem Golde**. Likewise **Er studiert Mathematik** (II. H), but **Er hat sich der Mathematik gewidmet**. **Zinn ist dem Zink ähnlich**. **Er läuft der Ehre nach**. In the genitive: **Die Geschichte der Mathematik, ein ganzer Tag der Arbeit** a whole day of work; **in Prima** or **in der Prima**, but **der deutsche Unterricht der Prima**; **der Glanz des Goldes**. **Er liebt Ruhe** or **die Ruhe**, but only **Er bedarf der Ruhe**, even tho the reference is to an indefinite amount, where there is usually no article. The use of the articles is especially frequent before names of persons to bring out clearly the case: **Ich ziehe Homer dem Virgil vor**.

## II. DETAILED STATEMENT OF THE USES OF THE ARTICLES

A Common class nouns take the article both in the sing and pl, when they are the names of definite objects, or stand as representatives of their class or genus, but drop it in all cases where they express an indefinite number or an abstract, general idea. Die Blätter sind der Schmuck der Bäume, but Der Baum treibt Blätter. Das Buch auf dem Tisch, but Jeder Kaufmann muß gehörend Buch führen. Every book, but his accounts in general) properly. Aus jedem ihrer Worte sprach die Dame. she was a lady familiar with the ways of the

Wirtshaus gewesen (*the way they do it in a*  
o sentences Mensch and Wirtshaus neither

refer to definite individuals nor do they picture a man or a tavern as the representatives of their kind, but are used in a general abstract sense almost with the force of a predicate adjective. See III a

See 111. a. If a genitive precedes its governing noun, the latter must drop the definite article, as the genitive points out definitely the particular object, and hence must itself require the article *Der Herr des Hauses*, or *des Hauses Herr*.

b The definite article stands very frequently for a possessive adjective when no ambiguity could thus arise, especially before parts of the body or articles of clothing often accompanied by the dat. of the pronoun or noun referring to the person affected. Der Kopf tut mir so weh. My head aches so badly. Man nahm den Besiegten die Waffen ab. Er steckt die Nase in alles. Er schloß ihm die Augen. He closed his (a friend's) eyes. Er schloß die Augen. He closed his (own) eyes. Er verlor das Leben. Er kam herein mit dem Hut in der Hand. Er rieb sich die Augen.

c In a distributive sense the definite article in German often corresponds to the English

is the generalizing article described in 1 C.

d. A title in the form of an attributive gen takes the indef art in German, while in English no article at all is used. *Wilhelm I nahm den Titel eines Kaisers an* William I accepted the title of emperor

e The indefinite article in German is used in many idiomatic expressions ein jeder or ein

use a proper name      compare 1 (1) below

If the collective noun is *Es* if the reference is to the *er*  
Nach dem Treffen *ersch*  
*infantry came up*, but *Es*  
*came up*

C. Names of materials usually, differing from English, have the article as they are felt as individualizations of the new type described in I B (2nd par) above, but as in the old type of individualization, so common in English, the noun is still often unaccompanied by an article as it is felt as representing something single in kind, like a proper name. Gold or perhaps more common! der Gold. Silber. Eisen.  
der Wanne  
mass or of a  
Tisch T

<sup>a</sup> The indefinite article is often placed directly before a noun indicating a food or drink, where in English such nouns are commonly preceded by some other noun or an indefinite pro-

restricted in the genitive, where it is now little used except with proper names as the idea of a living personality has become closely associated with the articleless genitive: Gold (II. C. *b*) *schmilzt bei 1064°*, but *das Atomgewicht des Goldes ist 197,2*. See also II. E. *g. Note*. On the other hand, the absence of the definite article to-day is often felt as a contrast to its presence and hence indicates an indefinite portion, amount, or extent, as illustrated below in II. C, D, or a class or kind in contrast to a definite object, as illustrated in E below and III. *f*. Also words which in the sing. usually require the article often drop it in the plural, as the reference is not to definite individuals but only in a general way to a class or indefinite number: *Kinder und Narren sagen die Wahrheit*. In all these cases when the reference becomes a definite one the article must stand.

E. *Use of the Article with Modified Nouns*. Nouns which do not usually take an article require it at once when they become modified by an adjective, a genitive, a phrase, or relative clause, provided the modifier thus with the aid of the article marks the noun as a definite and distinct thing, but, of course, a modified noun is without the definite article if the reference is to something indefinite or to the general conception of a class or kind: *Wilhelm William, Frankreich France, but der kleine Wilhelm little William, das sonnige Frankreich sunny France*, as German contrary to modern English usage requires, except in direct address, the article before modified proper names as before other modified nouns wherever the reference is to a definite individual, i.e. as in older English usage, often still surviving in poetic or choice language, modern German still employs here regularly the new type of individualization described in B (2nd par.), while modern English drops the article after the analogy of usage with the unmodified proper name. Aside from proper names usage is here in general the same in both languages. The absence of the article suggests something indefinite or the general conception of class or kind with only a general characterization, while the definite article points to something definite or to a definite individual: *Sie hat nervösen Kopfschmerz* (idea of class or kind, not the idea of a definite attack), *heftige Kopfschmerzen* (indefinite number), but *Sie hat den gestrigen Kopfschmerz* (definite attack) *noch nicht überwunden*. *Schwarze Tinte* (idea of class, kind) *sieht hier besser aus als rote*. *China produziert schwarzen und grünen Tee* (idea of class or kind and indefinite quantity). *Feines Weizenmehl* fine wheat flour (general indication of class or kind), *das feinste Weizenmehl zu dem billigsten Preise* the finest wheat flour at the lowest market price (the superl. in both cases with the art. as a definite quality and price are stated), but *feinstes Weizenmehl zu billigstem Preise* very fine flour at a very low price (not entirely definite); *in hohem Alter* at an advanced age (indefinite), but *im hohen Alter von 78 Jahren* (definite); *Gott sei Dank!* thanks be to God! but *dem Gotte Israels* to the God of Israel. *Der Gott, der Eisen wachsen ließ, der wollte keine Knechte* (Arndt's *Vaterlandslied*). The article is of course dropped in case of persons when the identity of the individual is perfectly clear and the modifier is added only to call attention to some particular fact, not to point out the individual: *Gott, der uns bisher beigestanden hat, wird uns auch in der Zukunft nahe sein*.

F. The article must often be used on merely formal grounds to make clear the case: *Er zieht den Rosen Nelken vor*, but when the substantive clearly shows the case, the article in such instances drops out, as the reference is an indefinite one: *Er zieht Äpfeln Pfirsiche vor*. Gold (II. C. *b*) *schmilzt bei 1064°*, but to indicate the dative clearly: *Dieses Metall gleicht dem Golde*. Likewise *Er studiert Mathematik* (II. H), but *Er hat sich der Mathematik gewidmet*. *Zinn ist dem Zink ähnlich*. *Er läuft der Ehre nach*. In the genitive: *Die Geschichte der Mathematik, ein ganzer Tag der Arbeit* a whole day of work; in *Prima* or in *der Prima*, but *der deutsche Unterricht der Prima*; *der Glanz des Goldes*. *Er liebt Ruhe* or *die Ruhe*, but only *Er bedarf der Ruhe*, even tho the reference is to an indefinite amount, where there is usually no article. The use of the articles is especially frequent before names of persons to bring out clearly the case: *Ich ziehe Homer dem Virgil vor*.

## II. DETAILED STATEMENT OF THE USES OF THE ARTICLES

A Common class nouns take the article both in the sing and pl, when they are the names of definite objects, or stand as representatives of their class or genus, but drop it in all cases where they express an indefinite number or an abstract, general idea. *Die Blätter sind der Salat* and *das Buch auf dem Tisch*, but *Jeder Kauf* keep his book account (no definite book, 'elt Lauf *That is the way of the world*, but

Aus jedem ihrer Worte sprach die Dame von Welt *from every word that she spoke it was clear that* soch *ty (= Welt, here used in its abstract appli* he representative of his race) *is mortal*, but *Mensch* *able to all that is of human interest*) means to be a wäre *Wirtshaus gewesen (the way they do it in a*

*Wirtshaus, i.e. coarse and vulgar*) In the last two sentences *Mensch* and *Wirtshaus* neither refer to definite individuals nor do they picture a man or a tavern as the representatives of their kind, but are used in a general abstract sense almost with the force of a predicate adjective. See III. a

oun the latter must drop the definite article, as the object, and hence must itself require the article

b The definite article stands very frequently for a possessive adjective when no ambiguity could thus arise, especially before parts of the body or articles of clothing often accompanied by the dat of the pronoun or noun referring to the person affected. *Der Kopf tut mir so weh* My head aches so badly *Waffen ab* Er steckt die Nase in alles Er schloß ihm die Augen Er schloß die Augen He closed his (own) eyes Er verlor dem Hut in der Hand. Er rieb sich die Augen.

title of emperor.

c The indefinite article in German is used in many idiomatic expressions: *ein jeder* or *ein jeglicher* each, everybody, *ein solcher* (Mann, &c) such a (man, &c), so *ein* (großes Land), or *ein so* (großes Land) such a (large country), &c

B Collective nouns are treated as common class nouns, as they point to definite groups of persons or things. *schaffen, &c*

like a proper name. Compare I (1) below.

If the collective noun is felt

if Ni *Some of Rappenhelm's infantry came up*

C Names of materials usually, differing from English, have the article as they are felt as individualizations of the new type described in I B (2nd par) above, but as in the old type of individualization, so common in English, the noun is still often unaccompanied by an article as it is felt as representing something single in kind, like a proper name. *Gold* or *perlmutter* more commonly *der Gold* *der Wärme* Cor mass or of a cla *Trinken Sie Tee* an article is used *ein* (or *das*) *Tuc* Eisen a horse sl

a The indefinite article is often placed directly before a noun indicating a food or drink, where in English such nouns are commonly preceded by some other noun or an indefinite pro-

nominal adjective indicating the usual amount of the substance served at one time to one person, or the usual amount prepared at one time in one mass: *eine Suppe* a dish of soup, *ein Butterbrot* a piece of bread and butter, *eine Kartoffel* some potatoes, a dish of potatoes, *ein Bier* a glass of beer, *ein Bitterer* a glass of bitters, *ein Brot* a loaf of bread. *Meine Frau bringt mir einen Kaffee mit einem Rum* My wife is bringing me a cup of coffee with rum. *My lord bereitete sich einen Tee* My lord made himself some tea.

b. *Origin of the Article with Names of Materials and Abstract Nouns.* As the names of materials and abstract nouns in older periods had no article, whenever it was desired, on the one hand, to give expression to the idea of a strong individualization of the old type and, on the other hand, to the idea of a class, an indefinite mass, extent, amount it was often unclear on the language used which of these ideas the speaker intended to convey. It gradually became the custom to prefix the definite article to express individualization. As this idea, however, is most forcibly expressed in the old style as in case of proper names, it is still quite common to employ the old style: *Gold schmilzt bei 1064°*. *Redlichkeit ist die Lebensluft alles guten Stils* (Engel's *Deutsche Stilkunst*, p. 23).

D. *Abstract nouns*, differing from English, usually have the definite article as they are felt as strong individualizations of the new type described in I. B (2nd par.), but as in the old type of individualization, so common in English, the noun is still often unaccompanied by an article as it is felt as something single in kind, like a proper name: *Der Geiz ist die Wurzel alles Übels*, but in 1. Tim. vi. 10 *Geitz ist eine wurtzel alles vbels*. *Der Mut verlernt sich nicht, wie er sich nicht lernt* (Goethe's *Götz*, 4, 3). *Nu aber bleibt Glaube | Hoffnung | Liebe | diese dry | Aber die Liebe ist die grösstest vnter jnen* (1. Cor. xiii. 13). The simple noun without the article is still often preferred as a more vivid form of individualization: *Kleinmut erzieht nicht, Glaube erzieht* (Cauer). *Eine Reformation ist ein gesellschaftliches Werk, und als solches bedarf sie des Zusammenwirkens von Führung und Masse* (F. Wieser in *Deutsche Rundschau*, March 1920, p. 352). *Zeit ist Geld*. Very common in old saws: *Ehrlichkeit währt am längsten*. *Müßiggang ist aller Laster Anfang*. *Zeit bringt Rosen*. *Kommt Zeit, kommt Rat*. See C. b above and I. (1) below. On the other hand, abstract nouns regularly appear without the article when the idea of amount, extent, degree, or kind of the quality, condition, or activity is defined in only a general way, but they at once demand an article or a pronominal adjective when the idea is individualized, that is, when the extent or kind becomes definite, or the attention is directed to some particular case or cases, or when the abstract noun is used in the singular in a generalizing sense to represent the idea in all its entirety, in its widest sense, and not as limited to one individual case or several: *Der Mensch muß Ruhm und Tadel ertragen lernen* Man must learn to bear both praise and censure. *Glück macht Mut*. *Er trägt alles mit Geduld*. *Ich fange nur mit freier Hand, aber Gelenkigkeit gehört dazu* I catch fish with my hands, but it takes some skill. *Der Alte versank in Nachsinnen*. *Jammern ist unnütz*. But: *Ich finde dazu die Zeit nicht* I have not the time (for this particular task). *Dén Ärger möcht' ich sehen!* *Who ever saw such an aggravation?*, or simply *Dér Ärger!* *Eine Geduld, welche nichts erschüttern kann; der Friede der Seele, die Liebe Gottes, die öffentliche Meinung* public opinion, *diese Meinung*. Solche Ungerechtigkeiten sind unerhört. *Das Jammern ist unnütz* Your lamenting will do no good. *Das war ein guter Rat* That was good advice or a piece of good advice. *Geben Sie mir einen guten Rat* Give me some good advice. *Er war ganz liebevoller Sohn, die Rücksicht und Ehrerbietung selbst* He was quite an affectionate son, *the very personification of consideration and respect*. Ist denn das die Möglichkeit? Is it possible, within the range of the possible?! or in shorter, weaker form: *Ist's die Möglichkeit?* You don't say so!

E. *The names of persons* in general need no article, as the name itself indicates with sufficient clearness the individual. This is the old style of individualization described in I. D. The definite article, however, is often found here in the following cases:

a. When the reference is to a person already mentioned, or one that is explicitly designated by some adjective modifier: *Das ist der Karl* That is Carl (of whom we were speaking). *Friedrich der Große, or der große Friedrich, der dicke Wilhelm, der alte Herr Schmidt*. Since the sixteenth century it has been quite common to place the definite article before a name not designated by any modifier, as the name is felt as a strong individualization of the new type described in I. B (2nd par.), i.e. an individualization within a class, so that the person is felt as being a definite member of a definite class or circle: *Wenn die Kinder ihn nur von weitem sahen, so riefen sie schon: Mutter, der Brezelkaspar kommt!* Whenever the children saw him even afar off, they cried out: Mother, Jasper the brezel-seller is coming! *Mit dem Theodor* (member of the same class at school) *will ich gar nicht mehr umgehen*. *Ich mag und will's nicht glauben, daß mich der Max verlassen kann* (Schiller's *Wallensteins Tod*, 3, 18, where Wallenstein speaks of his friend Max). In familiar language the definite article sometimes takes the place of *Herr* *Mr.* and *Frau* *Mrs.* or *Fräulein* *Miss* before surnames, when the persons spoken of are individualized, are felt as being definite members of a definite circle of acquaintances or friends: *Der Schmidt* or *Herr Schmidt*, *die Schmidt* or *Frau Schmidt*. It is quite common to use the article before the name of a celebrated writer, statesman, &c., who has become distinguished in his class: *die Marlitt*, *die Ebner* (*Frau Baronin Marie von Ebner-Eschenbach*), *die Elliot*, &c.; *der Bismarck*, &c.

Note. *Origin of the Article with Names of Persons.* The definite article before names of persons and animals is more common in the spoken than written language, and very much more common in the South than in the North: *der Karl* instead of *Karl*, *der Plato* (name of a dog). The use of the article with names of persons comes from the tendency of German to individualize within a class, a tendency already perceptible in M.H.G., as illustrated in *Ich wendete mich, warum des Doktors (93. l. 6) nicht kommen . . . des Löwenwirts haben mir's sogar versprochen* (Martin W. Löwen, 20). Throughout the story the latter character is called not by his name but *der Lö-*





and acc. than in the nom., and is avoided also in the dat. and acc. if the colloquial weak ending -en be used: *Die Werke des Praxiteles*, but where an s can be easily added *die Werke Schinkels*. *Karl sagt es dem Fritz* or *sagt es Fritzten*. *Karl lobt den Fritz* or *lobt Fritzten*. Also in case of a preceding title which usually has no article or inflection, being felt as one with the name, the article must stand if the name itself resists inflection by reason of its sibilant ending, and the case relation is not otherwise made clear: *das Leben Kaiser Wilhelms I.*, but *das Leben des Kaisers Tiberius*. But occasionally the title is inflected, but is without the art. See 92. 1. a.

e. Proper names of course take an article when they are used as common nouns. This is the case when a proper name, which has become noted for some one thing, is applied to any individual who has distinguished himself similarly, or when by way of metonymy the name of an individual is applied to one of his works or creations, or a work of art is named from the person it represents: *Wilhelm der Stille* *weiht sich*, *ein zweiter Brutus*, *dem großen Anliegen der Freiheit*. *Die Gottsched* *sind zahlreicher als die Goethe* *Men like Gottsched* are more numerous than those like Goethe. *In Tertia* *lesen die Schüler den Ovid*. *Ich habe den Goethe* *I have the works of Goethe*. *Ich bringe ihr den Ho'mër* *I'll bring her a copy of Homer ('s poems)*. *Der Raphael in der Dresdener Galerie* *the painting by Raphael in the Dresden gallery*, *der kleine Sanders* *the smaller edition of Sanders's German dictionary*, *der Herkules* *the statue of Hercules*, *Die Minna von Barnhelm* *(play named from its heroine)*, *der Faust* *(play named from its leading character)*. On the contrary, however, in case of names of books, plays, &c. the article is often dropped after the analogy of proper nouns in general: *Und hier habe ich Gerok—Palmblätter* *(Hauptmann's Einsame Menschen, 2, p. 47)* *And here I have Gerok, namely his Palmblätter*. Frequently *Minna von Barnhelm*, *Faust*, &c., but usually with the article in the genitive: *Der erste Teil des Faust*.

f. A proper name takes the article as any common class noun when the reference is to one, a definite group, or the entire number of individuals who have the same origin, and hence a name in common: *ein Bourbon* *a Bourbon*, *die Bour'bonen* *the Bourbons*. This is the rule in case of illustrious or well-known houses, but in case of private families the article is more commonly omitted, as according to 93.-1. a the form was originally a genitive singular, not a plural: *Brauns sind nicht reich* *The Browns are not rich*. Illustrious names must of course drop the article when they are used partitively: *Die deutschen Kaiser des achtzehnten Jahrhunderts waren Habsburger*.

g. Names of planets, ships, hotels usually take the definite article as they are felt as strong individualizations of the new type described in I. B. (2nd par.), i.e. each name is felt as an individualization within a class, so that the object is felt as being a definite member of a definite class: *der Mars*, *der Jupiter*, *die Viktoria* *(name of a ship)*, *der Polarstern* *Polar Star (ship)*, *der Coriolan* *(newspaper)*, *die Union* *(newspaper)*, *im Blauen Stern* *at the Blue Star (hotel)*.

Note. In lively language the names of planets and ships are often, as in the old style of individualization, unaccompanied by the article as each name is felt as representing something single in kind, like a proper name, usually however only in the nominative, less commonly in the dative, rarely in the genitive: *Von den Planeten* *ist Merkur nur noch in den ersten Tagen des Februar am Morgenhimmel sichtbar* *(Hamburger Nachrichten, Feb. 2, 1905)*, but *die Monde des Jupiter*. *Hannover (ship)* *ist gestern Kap Henry passiert* *(Hamburgischer Correspondent, May 30, 1901)*. *Die Arbeiten auf „Brandenburg“ gehen ihrer Vollendung entgegen* *(Hamb. Nachr., Oct. 28, 1904)*. German periodicals sometimes treat the names of newspapers in the same way, especially foreign words: „Daily Telegraph“ *meldet usw.* *(Allgemeine Zeit., June 14, 1905)*. *Trotz ihres hohen Alters besitzt aber Tante Voß (familiar name of die Vossische Zeitung) noch immer eine ziemliche Lebenskraft* *(Hamb. Nachr. Oct. 29, 1904)*. *World berichtet usw.* *(Neue Freie Presse, Oct. 3, 1919)*.

F. *Geographical names* fall into two distinct classes, one with the article, the other without it:

1. The names of the natural divisions of the earth's surface, such as rivers, lakes, seas, oceans, mountains, forests, peninsulas, deserts, plains, valleys, groups of islands, &c., except the names of individual islands and the names of continents, take the article, as they were originally common class nouns, or are designations of familiar objects (see E. a above) and hence are strong individualizations of the new type described in I. B (2nd par.): *der Rhein* *(Gallic Rēnos river)* *the Rhine*, *die Salzach* *(ach related to Latin aqua water)* *tributary of the Inn*, *der Brocken* or *Blocksberg* *(peak in the Harz Mts.)*, *das Matterhorn* *(Mt.)*, *der (or das) Wasgau* or *die (pl.) Vogesen* *(vo'ge:zon)* *the Vosges (Mountains)*, *die Eifel* *(highlands in the extreme western part of Prussia)*, *der Grunewald* *(forest near Berlin)*, *der Pelopo'nnēs* *the Peloponnesus*, *die Sa'hara* *the Sahara*, *die Campagna* *(kam'panja:)*, *das Enga'din* *the Engadine*, *das Veltlin* *(velt-'lin)*, *die Zy'kladen* *the Cyclades*, but *Kreta* *Crete*, *Eu'ropa* *Europe*, &c.

a. The article may drop out before words in a list or when connected by *und*: *Das Schicksal des Luthertums an Donau, Moldau und Elbe* *(Lamprecht's Deutsche Geschichte, 7. 2., p. 532)*; *der nördliche Westerwald, durchströmt von Wied und Nister* *(Emil Hommer's Studien zur Dialektgeographie, p. 1)*.

2. The neuter names of the political divisions of the earth, such as cities, countries, and minor divisions of countries, usually have no article when they are unmodified as they are individualizations of the old type, each noun being felt as representing, like a name of a person, something single in kind, but they require the definite article when modified by an adjective, a gen., or a relative clause: *Berlin Berlin*, *Deutschland Germany*, but *das schöne Deutschland* *beautiful Germany*, &c., Compare I. E. Many names of places had an article in an older period, as they were originally common class nouns, or had for their final element a common class noun, and hence were individualizations of the new type, i.e. individualizations within a class. Compare I. B (2nd par.) and 88. 1. In most cases all feeling for the origin of such words is lost, but a few groups of words and a few isolated names still retain the article in accordance with older usage:

*a* Only one town or city, *der Haag* The Hague (lit the hedge), takes the article *im Haag*, but also after the analogy of other towns *in Haag*

*b* All feminine and masculine names of countries and districts take the article a number of fem in -ei or -ie, as *die Lombardei* Lombardy *die Tschechoslowakei* Czecho Slovakia *die Norr* some fem in -au, as *die Moldau* Moldavia fem *fem*, as *die Schweiz* Switzerland, *die Pfalz* the Palatinate, *die Lausitz* Lusatia, *die Le'vante* the Levant, *die Bretagne* (bræ tanjə) Brittany, *die Gaskogne* (gas kɔnjə), *die Riviera* (ri 'vie.na) &c., masc in -gau *district* which are also sometimes neut in accordance with the earlier gender of the word, as *der* (das) *Rheingau* *der* Su'dan the Sudan, *der* or more commonly *das Elsaß* (sometimes like other neuters without the article *durch Elsaß*—*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Jan 10, 1905) *Alsace* Notice also *die Vereinigten Staaten* the United States according to I B (2nd par) above

*c* Neuter names of places quite uniformly are used without the article, except the few in *b* and those in -land, where the -land is felt in some cases as a common noun, and thus requires the article, or in most cases drops it in accordance with the general rule that neuter names do not take the article *im Hessenland(e)* or *in Hessenland* in Hesse (lit land of the Hessians), *das Vogtland* section in Saxony (lit land under a governor), once a bulwark against the Slavs, *das Wendland* section in Hanover, originally *land of the Wends*, *die Niederlande* the Netherlands, &c., but *Deutschland* Germany, *Ermeland* and *Samland*, sections along the Baltic, &c. Notice the isolated neuter *das Banat* the Banat

*G* The names of streets, squares, and city wards prominent element is a common noun *die Friedrichstr* *Spandauerviertel* (part of Berlin) These are prescribed in I B (2nd par) above Compare I (1) street and number the article is often omitted *Wo*

*H* The names of the sea and months less also *3 A b), days, parts of the day, the meals, the article in Sommer, in Anfang des Frühst*  
*the classes* (in August, am S class in a secondary school), *die Sekunde*, *die Botanik* botanics &c *organische Chemie* organic chemistry, *die Astronomie* astronomy &c The nouns with the article in all these groups type described in I B (2nd par) above Compare I (1) bel school and the sciences however, are often felt as each represent like a proper name *in Prima*, *kommt nach und die Geometrie*, *matk.* In lively style *die flandrischen Lar*

1916, p 38) *Um die Mitte Dezembers* (Morike)

*I* A difference of development or article in the two languages (1) From has preserved much better than Germ

article wherever it represents a person or thing single in kind, like a proper name In German after the definite article had become firmly associated with common class nouns the idea of individualization—inherent in the definite article from the very start, at first however only individualization within a class—became so strong that often the idea of class entirely disappeared Thus the new form with the definite article often has the same force as the old simple articleless noun and represents a person or a thing single in kind like a proper name, only perhaps with a little more concrete force and a little less vivid individualization *das Schicksal* destiny, *der Tod* death, *die Vorsehung* Providence, *der Himmel* heaven *die Hölle* hell, *das Paradies* paradise *das Elysium* elysium, *die Ehe* matrimony *die Nachwelt* posterity, *das Christentum*, &c See also B,C,D,E and I B (2nd par) (2) On the other hand the article

*mit jemandem* machen to form an acquaintance with someone *Er hatte bei guten Leuten Wohnung* (a place to board) gefunden (3) German often uses the definite article where English employs the indefinite *einem das Leben zur Last machen* to make life a burden to someone, *im Augenblick*, *im Nu* in a moment, *im Galopp* in a gallop, *im Schritt* at a foot pace, *im Trab* at a trot, *in der Lage sein*, *Gutes zu tun* to be in a position to do good, *zur Abwechslung* for a change, &c

### III OMISSION OF THE ARTICLE

The article in general is omitted (1) sometimes when the noun contains an abstract idea and regularly when it contains the general conception of a class or kind and hence does not designate a definite object; (2) when, as in case of

proper nouns or common class nouns used as proper nouns, the object is already sufficiently defined, also when the noun is felt as representing something single in kind, like a proper name; and (3) in many set expressions and proverbs coined in an early period when the article was little used.

The article is omitted in the following common cases:

a. In the predicate when the noun does not designate a definite individual but something abstract, such as a quality, relation, condition, calling, or capacity of any kind, moreover, any fact or idea in a broad general sense, also indefinite time: *Der Mensch ist ein Gott, sobald er Mensch ist* Man is a god when he is humane. *Ich bin Partei I am biased.* Beispiel (= illustrative of) einer lebenden flexivisch reich ausgebildeten Sprache ist das Russische. *Ich bin Braut I am betrothed.* Sie fühlt sich Mutter. *Thu'kydides war ganz und gar ein Kind der Sophistenzeit wie Hero'dot, dessen Werk ihm Vorbild war.* Es war doch etwas anderes, als letzten Winter auf dem Regimentsballe in Königsberg, aber freilich Königsberg ist Provinz (provincial). Und doch war er (the artist Menzel) treuester Diener, Idealbild eines Beamten, ja Verkörperung des urpreußischen Begriffs Soldat; aber sein König war die Kunst (Karl Storch in *Der Türmer*, March 1905). Er wurde preußischer Untertan. Sie ist noch Kind. Im Grunewald (forest near Berlin) ist Holzauktion. Es ist Aufgabe des Staates, strenge darüber zu wachen, daß usw. it is the business of the state, etc. Es ist Tatsache, daß usw. It is a fact that, etc. Das ist fast Gewißheit That amounts to almost a certainty. Er ist nur Anfänger He is a mere beginner. Er ist Baumeister, Witwer, Junggeselle, Bürgermeister von Berlin, Professor an der Universität Berlin, Inhaber des eisernen Kreuzes, Vater vieler Kinder. Er kam als Retter in der Not. Die Überproduktion an Staatsnoten ist gewöhnlich Folge eines Krieges. Es war Eckzimmer des Hauses. Es wurde Abend. Es wurde Winter. The adjective nature of the predicate noun is sometimes clearly indicated by the use of the singular with reference to a plural subject: Er sagte, jeder Friedensfreund werde herzlich wünschen, daß die dem Senate vorliegenden Schiedsgerichtsverträge Gesetz würden (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Jan. 31, 1905). Sometimes the predicate substantive assumes almost pure adjective force and can be modified by an adverb: Ich bin nicht Kenner genug (adv.). Aside from this common group of abstract meanings it is usual to employ the indefinite article in the predicate: Er ist ein Esel, ein Schafskopf, ein Dieb, ein Verräter, ein Verächter der Weiber. Der Wal-fisch ist ein Säugetier. Of course, the slightest approach to definiteness calls for the definite article: Das ist der Baumeister That is the architect (of whom we were just talking).

Note. This omission of the article in the predicate is especially frequent in appositional and parenthetical phrases, which are often contracted clauses in which the appositional substantive is the real predicate, and hence the omission of the article is natural, but the omission often thus occurs even when in a complete sentence the same word in the predicate would require the article: Als Anfänger (= Obgleich er Anfänger ist) behandelt er die Sache doch mit Meisterschaft. Ich Esel, dreifacher Esel verscherze auf diese Weise meinen Freund, but Ich bin ein Esel. Unter der Regierung des Königs Sigmund, Sohn des deutschen Kaisers Karls IV. (*National-Zeitung*). Ich schreibe Ihnen in Aix (ehemalige Hauptstadt der Provinz).

b. If a genitive precedes its governing noun, the latter must drop its article. See II. A. a.

c. The article is often dropped when a singular noun is used by way of synecdoche, to designate more than one or a regular succession, as the idea is that of a class or kind, not the designation of a definite object: Er trug sie mit starkem Arm. In tiefem Tal, auf schneebedeckten Höhen war stets dein Bild mir nah. Mit scharfem Schritt with a quick step.

d. In prepositional phrases the indefinite article can be omitted when the reference is evidently to only one object: ein Gebäude mit flachem Dach. Ein auf bewaldetem Berge liegendes Schloß. Auf hagerem Halse hob sich ein blasses vergilbtes Frauenantlitz.

e. The article is dropped before a noun as in English when it introduces a formal definition of itself, as it represents something single in kind, like a proper noun: Kunst ist (or heißt) die Darstellung des Schönen.

f. The article is dropped before a noun which does not represent a definite object or thing but is used in a broad, general sense to indicate a class or kind: Blutigel ist Blutigel A leech is a leech wherever you find it. Ende gut, alles gut If the end is good, all is good. Kinder, ihr kommt offenbar von der Arbeit, ihr riecht frisch nach Palette (Wilbrandt's *Die Maler*, 1, 1). Seehauch geht durch alles hellenische Leben, seine Schönheit und Poesie (Prof. Dr. Ed. Heyck in *Velhagen und Klasings Monatshefte*, May 1905, p. 275). Nur Leute mit jungen Herzen könnten wir gebrauchen, und junges Herz hat Mut und faßt schnell Vertrauen (Paul Keller's *Das letzte Märchen*, p. 10). Eigener Herd ist Goldes wert. Altklug (111. 7. h. (2). (a)) lebt nicht lang. Examples with modifying adjective are given in I. E. The article is absent thus in many pithy sayings some of which date back to a time when the article was little used, and thus bear the stamp of an earlier coinage. Older usage has survived in such expressions, as their general meaning and the idea of a class or kind contained in them precluded the use of the article with its definite, individual force. This old type has also influenced modern expression considerably.

The article is frequently omitted before the absolute superlative to express a high degree in a general way without reference to any particular comparison: Einfachste, tiefste Harmonie ist im Sturm, wie in der Windstille (Raabe). Auf fadeste Dummköpfe machte er Eindruck, auf Arnold nicht (G. Hauptmann).

g. The article is dropped in an enumeration of things or particulars, for now as in oldest German the idea of unit, sovereign individuality, separate item, something single in kind usually overshadows all other conceptions, but of course the article is used if for any reason it is desired to individualize certain objects within a class: Bei der Ausfüllung der Frachtbriefrubrik „Art

der Verpackung" hat der Versender einen möglichst bezeichnenden Ausdruck (Faß, Sack, Kiste, Kasten, Ballen, u. dgl.) zu wählen. Die falsche, aber bisher landläufige Ansicht, daß die Verpackung die Sache selbst ist, ist irrig. Die falsche, aber bisher landläufige Ansicht, daß die Verpackung die Sache selbst ist, ist irrig. Die falsche, aber bisher landläufige Ansicht, daß die Verpackung die Sache selbst ist, ist irrig.

u. a., bedeutender Handel, Eisenbahnknotenpunkt und lebhafter Fremdenverkehr. But the article is used in the following sentence as the objects are individualized within a class. Da (unter dem Christbaume) lag ein braunes Müffchen, ein schwarzer Samthut, ein buntes Kleid, ein Märchenbuch, ein Bilderbuch, sechs Schreibbücher, Federn und Schieferstifte, Strickgarn und auch eine wunderschöne Puppe.

k Similar to the above is the very common use of dropping the article of each of a pair of words connected by und, or weder — noch neither — nor nicht — noch not — or for the first of  
 of in oldest (er  
 ste Blick des Pa-  
 bu und Branden-  
 Kaspar dahin,  
 achte nicht auf Stock noch Stein, nicht auf Zaun noch Graben

Note. The omission of the article is not limited to set expressions as stated in some grammars. It is permitted before all words that are coupled together except in the genitive case where as yet the rules are not uniformly observed. Vater und Mutter sind heimgekehrt. Liebe Vater und Mutter. Gebornte Vater und Mutter, but Gedanke des Vaters und der Mutter. Trotz Schübens und Stemmens.

The article is dropped before nouns which are used twice, once before and again after a preposition. Woge auf Woge, von Tag zu Tage, Schritt vor Schritt, Auge um Auge, &c.

j The article is dropped in a very large number of set expressions, most of which have this in common—that they either indicate sovereignty in liveliness or something single in kind, or on the other hand have a broad general meaning, and do not refer to definite objects or things. These expressions are survivals of a very old period when the article was not as now required with nouns. Later the demonstrative der became attached to the noun as an article, weakened in recent but still with enough survived in many expressions.

found

aa The adverbial gen of time place manner condition morgens or des Morgens of mornings summers in the summer time bei erster Gelegenheit, höheren Orts before a higher authority flugs quickly schlimmstenfalls if the worst happens in the worst event &c.

b! The acc. is object of a verb or the dat. or acc. after preps in numerous set expressions

cc The dat. or acc. in numerous prep. phrases in which the substantive retains its separate meaning, independent of the verb but has a general or indefinite application. The more common cases are the following

(1) In general statements of time vor Mittag before noon, nach Tisch after meal time Tag über all day &c. Nach getaner Arbeit ist gut ruhn

(2) In adverbial phrases of manner and reason zu Fuß, zu Wasser gehen to go on foot by water &c. vor Angst beben to tremble on account of anxiety, aus Liebe handeln to act prompted by love &c.

k The article is dropped before certain adjectives or adjective substantives (see 111 3 a and 7 h) (1) folgender kleine Roman, &c. (2) Alt und jung waren da. In the first group

adjective In the second group adjective has to article before it as the reference is indefinite or general usually used before hundred hundred and tausend thousand  
 zurück! concise commands or warnings Augen links! Kopf

n The article is often dropped before abstract or collective nouns and names of materials when they represent something single in kind like a proper name or on the other hand when they indicate an indefinite portion amount or extent. The details are given in II B C D.

Also any noun which usually has concrete meaning loses the article if it assumes abstract meaning. Der Oberst hatte in seiner kurzen, etwas militärischen Art und Weise gesprochen, aus der jedoch Herz klang, das zum Herzen ging.

o The article is almost always dropped before proper names or common class nouns used as proper names in direct address and as a rule elsewhere but there are many exceptions as enumerated in II E and the sub articles. Also the following points come under this head

aa. In familiar language, titles and designations of relationship are often used as proper names and as proper names, of course, have no definite article before them, and in poetry and folk-lore also the names of familiar objects, may, in order to impart vividly the idea of personality drop the definite article and assume the force of proper names (see II. E. a. Note and 90): *nach Hoheits Befehl* according to the command of your Highness. *Herrschafts sind heute ganz unter sich* (words of a hired girl) My employer and his family are to-day entirely to themselves. *Gnädiges Fräulein ist in ihrem Recht!* (Hans Hoffmann's *Iwan der Schreckliche*, chap. IV, where the speaker is speaking of a young lady whom in direct speech he addresses as *gnädiges Fräulein*). *Tantes Kleid* Aunt's dress. *Mutter hat's erlaubt*. *Knabe sprach: ich breche dich*, *Röslein sprach: ich steche dich* (Goethe's *Heidenröslein*). Individualization of the new type described in I. B (2nd par.), i.e. the form with the definite article, is also common here: *Du kommst doch her, um den Papa zu bitten, daß er dir heraushelfen soll* (Wildenbruch's *Schwester-Seele*, II, chap. XVII).

bb. In official language or a familiar style, definite persons or organizations are called not by their proper name but by some common noun that represents the capacity in which the person or thing appears. This common noun like a proper name drops the article: *Beklagter trete vor* Let the defendant step forth. *Schreiber dieser Zeilen* the writer of these lines, *Verfasser* the author, &c.

cc. Names of books, firms, and headings and addresses like proper names in general drop the article: *Geschichte der Völkerwanderung* History of the Migration of the Nations, *Vorwort* Preface, *Einleitung* Introduction, *Eisengießerei von R. M.*, *Artikel bei Stoffnamen* The Use of the Article before Names of Materials (heading of an article in a German Grammar). *Mein Geschäft befindet sich S.W., Friedrichst. 160* My place of business is in the southwest part of the city, Frederick Street, No. 160.

INFLECTION OF COMMON NOUNS.

60. 1. *Classification.* Nouns are divided into three declensions, the Strong, Weak, and Mixed. The different cases and numbers in all these declensions are formed by adding certain vowel or consonant endings to the stem of the noun and sometimes by modifying (indicated below by *..*) the stem vowel. The following is the general outline of the different systems of terminations and different methods of treating the stem vowel:—

STRONG.					WEAK.	MIXED.		
E-Plural Type			Er-Plural Type	Singular.	Singular			
Unmutated	Singular. Mutated	E-less Form						
—	—	Nom. —	—	— (e)	—			
— (e)s	— (e)s	Gen. —s	— (e)s	— (e)n	— (e)s			
— (e)	— (e)	Dat. —	— (e)	— (e)n	— (e)			
—	—	Acc. —	—	— (e)n	—			
Plural.				Plural.	Plural.			
					1st Cl.	2nd Cl.		
—e	<u>..e</u>	Nom. ( <u>..</u> )			<u>..er</u>	— (e)n	— (e)n	—s
—e	<u>..e</u>	Gen. ( <u>..</u> )			<u>..er</u>	— (e)n	— (e)n	—s
—en	<u>..en</u>	Dat. ( <u>..</u> )n			<u>..ern</u>	— (e)n	— (e)n	—s.
—e	<u>..e</u>	Acc. ( <u>..</u> )			<u>..er</u>	— (e)n	— (e)n	—s

The declensions are distinguished by the case ending in the gen. sing. and nom. pl.

A. The Strong declension has *s* or *es* in the gen. sing.: *der Spaten* spade, gen. *des Spatens*. It subdivides into four *classes* in the plural according to the formation of the nom. plural:

a. The Unmutated E-Plural Type adds *e* in the nom. pl. without modification of the root vowel: *der Arm* arm, pl. *die Arme*. Such a noun is here for short called an unmutated e-plural.

b. The Mutated E-Plural Type adds *e* in the plural and modifies the root vowel: *der Fuß* foot, pl. *die Füße*.

c. The E-less Form of the E-Plural Type drops the regular plural ending *e* in the nom. pl., but sometimes modifies the root vowel: *der Spaten*, pl. *die Spaten*; *der Vater*, father, pl. *die Väter*. A noun in this class is here called an e-less

plural and is further distinguished as an unmutated e-less plural or a mutated e-less plural according to its form in the plural.

d. The Er-Plural Type adds *er* to form the nom. pl. and modifies the root vowel: *das Buch* book, pl. *die Bücher*. Such a noun is here for short called an *er-plural*.

B. The Weak declension has *n* or *en* in every case sing. and pl. except nom. sing.: *der Knabe* boy, gen. *des Knaben*, dat. *dem Knaben*, acc. *den Knaben*, pl. nom. *die Knaben*, &c.

C. The Mixed declension is *strong* (i.e. takes *s* or *es* in gen.) in the sing. and falls into two groups in the pl.

a. The first group takes the weak pl., i.e. ends in *n* or *en* thruout the pl.: *der Staat* state, gen. *des Staat(e)s*, pl. *die Staaten*.

b. The second group has the foreign ending *s* thruout the pl.: *das Echo* echo, gen. *des Echos*, pl. *die Echos*.

D. In any of these declensions where the case ending of the noun is deficient the article (which is ever playing a more important rôle) marks distinctly the case: *der Omnibus*, *des Omnibus*, &c. See 2 below.

2. Present Fluctuations and Tendencies. There is at present considerable confusion in German declension in case of many individual words. Grammars and dictionaries differ very much in the types of inflection which they recommend for these individual words, according as their authors are looking conservatively into the past or hopefully into the future. In the language itself there is evidently a marked tendency in the direction of uniformity, a movement away from the complexity of older inflection with its many groups toward a greater simplicity which manifests itself by a gradual gravitation of many words toward the largest groups with the most common inflectional forms. Two types of inflection are gaining the ascendancy—for feminines the weak inflection, for masculines and neuters the unmutated e-plural with the e-less form after *-el*, *-en*, *-er*, *-chen*, *-lein*, *Ge—e*. Words from the different groups are slowly finding their way into these two living groups. Foreign words accented upon the last syllable are following these same lines of development with the exception of masculines representing living beings. These masculines denoting living beings still cling to their old historic inflection, the weak declension, as the conception of life has, in case of masculines, become intimately associated with the weak declension since it now contains very few masculines which denote lifeless things: *der Ban'dit* bandit, *des Ban'diten*, pl. *die Ban'diten*, but *der Gra'nit* granite, *des Gra'nits*, pl. *die Gra'nite*. Also here, however, there is a trend toward the unmutated e-plural, as masculines ending in accented *-al*, *-an*, *-än*, *-ar*, *-är*, *-eur* (om), *-ier*, *-on*, *-or* are usually e-plurals even when they represent living beings: *der Ma'jor* major, *des Ma'jors*, pl. *die Ma'jore*.

Earlier in the period there developed a tendency to drop the *s* of the genitive singular, especially in case of proper nouns preceded by the definite article, as the feeling prevailed that the preceding inflected article marked the case with sufficient clearness. At the present time usage is still somewhat unsettled here, but there is a tendency to restore the *s* in certain categories, especially in titles, as is described in the proper places below. With foreign nouns, common and proper, the *s* has never been securely fixed, but there is at present a marked tendency to treat foreign class nouns as far as possible exactly as native words.

#### GENERAL RULES FOR ALL DECLENSIONS.

61. a. Feminine nouns never vary in the singular, the article or context alone showing case. Thus feminines belong to their respective classes and declensions only in the plural. Occasionally traces of inflection in the sing. can still be found, indicating a different state of things in earlier periods. See 76. II. 1.

b. Nouns ending in unaccented *ar*, *e*, *el*, *em*, *en*, *er*, *chen*, *il*, *ir*, *lein*, *sel*, *ul*, always lose the *e* of the case ending: *der Flügel* wing, gen. *des Flüfels*, dat. pl.

den Flügeln, not des Flügeles, den Flügelen; die Feder pen, pl. die Federn; der Ungar Hungarian, pl. die Ungarn, but der Ta'tar Tartar, pl. die Ta'taren.

c. Usually the last noun of compound substantives is alone declined, and also gives the gender to the compound. Certain modern compounds, however, are inflected differently. See 80. 2.

## STRONG DECLENSION.

### General Rules.

62. A. In every strong masc. or neut. (for fem. see 61. a) noun the nom. and acc. sing. of the respective genders are the same, and in nouns of all genders the nom., gen., and acc. plural of the respective genders are alike, the accompanying article or adjective alone marking case relations.

B. Every strong noun ends in *en* or *n* (see 61. b) in the dat. pl.

C. The case ending *e* according to 61. b is dropped after the suffixes *-e*, *-el*, *-em*, *-en*, *-er*, *-chen*, *-lein*, *-sel*: *der Engel* angel, *des Engels* (not *Engeles*), *dem Engel* (not *Engele*), &c. In case of those ending in *n*, no additional *n* is added in the dat. pl.: *der Spaten* spade, gen. *des Spatens*, dat. pl. *den Spaten*; *das Fräulein* young lady, dat. pl. *den Fräulein*.

*Note.* The rule of dropping *e* after the above-mentioned suffixes is a special application of the old law that required the suppression of the most weakly stressed vowel or vowels in words of more than two syllables. This old law which began to operate in M.H.G. and was still at work in early N.H.G., has produced marked results in the form and inflection of words: *Händler* (from older *'Hande'ler*), *Wagner* (M.H.G. *'wage'ner*), *Gärtner* (M.H.G. *'garte'nære*), *himmlisch* (M.H.G. *'hime'lish*), &c. Likewise in a group of words the components of which are so closely related that they are felt as one word: *hër Pärzival!* (*Parzival*, 315. 26) in direct address, but elsewhere *he're*, now always *Herr*; similarly *Graf* and *Fürst*, which have been shortened from older *Grafe*, *Fürste* as the words are much used in titles before names, where they have weak stress: *Gräf Albrecht*, *Fürst Bismarck*. For the effects of this law in the inflection of nouns see 68. As the tendency increased to pronounce the vowel of the root syllable more forcibly and give it relatively much greater length than the vowels of the other syllables the vowels that were the least stressed gradually lost their fullness and finally disappeared. Thus as a result of this old law the trochaic foot (˘ ˘) has gained a great victory over the dactylic (˘ ˘ ˘): pl. *die 'Wagēn* for older *die 'Wagēnē*. Altho this law under S.G. influence has after the suffixes *-el*, *-em*, *-en*, *-er* prevailed in the inflection of nouns and in part elsewhere, it usually yields to the M.G. usage of retaining the inflectional endings in order that the grammatical relations may be clearly indicated: past tense *er dienete* (Luther), later *diente*, not *dienet* or *dient*; pl. *die 'Käfige*, not *die Käfig*. Compare 110. A. a, b, c and 178. 1. B. a.

D. The gen. sing. takes *es* when it ends in some sound difficult to unite with the *s* of the case ending without the aid of *e*, just as *es* in English is added to form the pl. when *s* alone would be difficult to pronounce: one glass, two glasses. Usually *es* stands after final *b*, *d*, *ld*, *nd*, *mpf*, *s*, *ß*, *ss*, *z*, *sch*, *st*, or after a final vowel or diphthong: *der Fisch* fish, *des Fisches*; *der Bau* building, *des Baues*. In case of a final vowel or diphthong, even tho in print the *e* (as in *des Baus*) be suppressed, it is nevertheless slightly heard.

Also in the other cases *es* is usually employed in monosyllabic forms, especially in choice language, but simple *s* is also widely used, in familiar speech even after some of the above-mentioned consonants. Simple *s*, on the other hand, is used in the following cases: (1) According to the old law described in C. *Note* regularly in the *e*-less plural class and also elsewhere in order to avoid a dactyl (˘ ˘ ˘), in less measure also to avoid an antibacchius (˘ ˘ ˘), that is, when the final syllable of the uninflected form of the word is unaccented or has only secondary accent: *der Vogel*, *des Vogels*, not *des 'Vogelēs*; *der Käfig* cage, *des Käfigs*, not *des 'Käfigēs*; *des Höfes*, *des Mōndes*, but usually *des 'Kirch'höfs*, *des 'Voll'mōnds*, not infrequently however also *des 'Kirch'hōfēs*, *des 'Voll'mōndēs*, as we feel that the inflected genitives *-hofes*, *-mondes* are not fixed forms but living genitives and ought to have the full ending *-es* in accordance with present general usage outside of compounds. On the other hand, we *must* say *Schafskopf* blockhead, *Kindskopf* childish person, *Blutsfreund* kinsman, &c., as they were coined earlier in the period when the old law described in C. *Note* was in full force and are now felt as set forms. But we say *'Tages'anbruch*, *'Tages'presse*, *'Jahres'zeit*, *'Kindes'pflicht* as they are modern formations and stand in close touch with the genitive groups of a modern sentence which prefer a genitive in *-es* to one in simple *-s*. In such common cases as *im Anfang des zweiten 'Kriegs'jahres* (*Neues Wiener Journal*, Oct. 12, 1919), &c. we find groups in which there are two genitives, as in *Kriegsjahres*, the first

a set form, the second a genitive in close touch with the genitive groups of a modern sentence. Thus where we find traces of the old law, as in the first component of numerous old compounds of older coinage, in the e-less plural class, and in nouns abbreviated from older dactyl form, as in *des Käfigs* (from older *Käfiges*), it is preserved rather than observed, i.e. it has become fixed in these set types. (2) Also in the adverbial genitive: *tags drauf* on the next day, *hierorts* at this place, *falls*, *flugs*, &c., all set expressions and hence not in close touch with the genitive groups of a normal sentence, which prefer a genitive in -es to one in simple -s; likewise in *nichts* (145. g. Note 2), *Dings* (83), &c., which are no longer felt as genitives. (3) Usually in foreign words except after sibilants: *des Lords*, *des Klubs*, &c., but *des Kompasses*. The -es, however, is not infrequent after an accented syllable in very common foreign words, which naturally assume the -es that is now so common in German words: *die Prüfung des gesamten Materiales* (Wolf von Unwerth in *Anzeiger für deutsches Altertum* xxv, p. 115). (4) In proper names -es is now not used at all. In case of names of persons the genitive usually ends in -s, even after sibilants, for as explained in 86. 2. a an additional s is actually *spoken* after a sibilant, altho in print we find here only an apostrophe: *Wilhelms*, *Max'* (maks's). Names of persons ending in a sibilant, however, may take -ens in the genitive: *Maxens*. Names of places take -s in the genitive, except those ending in a sibilant, which take a *von* before the name instead of a genitive ending: *Ber'lins*, but *die Straßen von Paris*.

E. The dative sing. ending e is still widely used in choice language, but it is much disregarded in familiar language, especially in words of more than one syllable. In certain cases it is not used at all, even in choice language.

It is not usually found: (a) in the e-less plural class: *mit dem Spaten*; (b) in the word *Gott* *God* when no article stands before it: *Gott sei Dank!*, but *dem Gotte Israels*; (c) in proper names: in *Frankreich* in France; (d) usually after an unaccented syllable when it would form a dactyl (˘ ˘ ˘) or anti-bacchius (˘ ˘ ˘): *mit dem 'König, vor einem 'Mönāt*, but it is also often found here, as many with a sensitive grammatical conscience feel that the dative sign ought not to be suppressed: *dem Könige*, *dem Monate*; (e) after words ending in a vowel: *in dem See*; (f) in the names of winds: *dem Nord* (but in *gen. des Nordes*) *ausgesetzt* exposed to the north-wind; (g) in case of nouns without an article or adjective modifier in prepositional phrases, either in the attributive or the adverbial relation, especially in case of names of materials and abstract nouns used in a general or indefinite sense and in case of prepositional phrases connected by a conjunction: *ein Tisch von Holz*, *ein Ring von Gold*, *der Ankauf von Land*, *Zufuhr von Fleisch*, *eine Art von Haus*, *ein Mann von Geist*; *zu Fuß* on foot, *von Jahr zu Jahr*, *von Ort zu Ort*, *aus Neid*, *mit Ernst*, *mit Weib und Kind*, *mit Mann und Maus*, *von Haus und Hof*, *mit Rat und Tat*; but with an article or adjective modifier the e may appear: *das Ende vom Lied(e)*, *ein Ring von gediegenem Gold(e)*; (h) in nouns which are preceded by a name of a weight or measure: *mit einem Liter Wein*; (i) usually in foreign words: *dem Senat*, *dem Problem*, &c.

F. The using or dropping of e in the gen. and dat. is often a matter of euphony:  
 a. The poet feels quite free to drop e in the dative: *Die Axt im Haus erspart den Zimmermann* (Schiller's *Tell*, 3, 1). The suppression of e in *Hause* here is rather for the sake of rhythm than to avoid a hiatus, for in German a hiatus here does not seem to give offense either in poetry or in prose: *mit dem Schwerte in der Faust* (*id.* 2, 2). *Er ist dem Geize ergeben*. Compare 178. 1. B.  
 b. The e is much used both in prose and poetry to avoid two accented syllables coming together, and thus standing between accented syllables it causes



a rhythmic succession of accented and unaccented syllables: Năch Góldě drängt, ăm Góldě hăngt doch alles!

# UNMUTATED E-PLURAL TYPE OF THE STRONG DECLENSION.

63. To this class, which forms its plural by adding *e* without mutation of the root vowel, belong:—

## 1. Masculine monosyllabics:

a. Almost all masculine monosyllabics not capable of mutation in the plural, that is, those monosyllabics not containing one of the vowels *a, o, u, au*: *der Weg* way, *der Dienst* service, *der Preis* prize, *der Plüsch* plush. This is a very large group, but the words need not be enumerated, as they are easily recognized by their form.

b. The following masculine monosyllabics containing one of the vowels *a, o, u, au*, but forming their plural without mutation. Those marked with \* have sometimes a mutated plural, only occasionally in the North, but in the South quite frequently or even regularly earlier in the period, those marked with † fluctuate in the plural everywhere between mutated and unmutated form, but mutation is much more common in the South. \**Aal* eel, *Aar* eagle, *Akt* act, *Alk* (also *wk.*) auk, *Alp* incubus, *Ar* (see 5. *c* below), *Arm* arm, *Ban* ban, ruler of a banat, *Barsch* perch, *Bas* master, \**Bast* bast, *Bau* (pl. *Baue* dwellings of animals, pl. *Bauten* buildings) building, *Blaff* bark (of a dog), *Bold* fellow, dwarf, *Bord* (rarely neut.) edge, *Bord* (see 5. *c* below), \**Born* fount, \**Borst* crack, fissure, *Buchs* box-tree, *Bums* low beer-saloon, *Butt* (pl. usually *wk.*; also a *wk. fem. die Butte*) turbot, *Clan* (pl. also *Clans*) clan, \**Dachs* badger, *Dank* (pl. rarely *Danke* or *Dänke*, usually *Danksagungen*; see 96. 5. B), *Docht* wick, *Dolch* dagger, *Dom* cathedral, \**Dorn* (see 83), \**Dorsch* torsk, *Drall* (also a *wk. fem. die Dralle*) groove in the bore of a rifle, *Drost* (also *wk.*) magistrate, *Druck* (see 83), †*Drusch* thrashing, *Duns* (pl. also *wk.*) dunce, *Falz* groove, \**Fant* coxcomb, *Farn* fern, *Faun* (sometimes *wk.*) faun, \**Fjord* (pl. also sometimes *Fjords*, *Fjorden*) fiord, *Flachs* flax, *Flaps* boor, \**Flaus* or \**Flausch* tuft, *Flor* (pl. rare) bloom, blossom, *Flur* (sometimes a *wk. fem.*) entrance hall, *Forst* (79. 1. a), \**Fund* find, *Fuß* (83), *Gau* (pl. sometimes *Gauen*, especially, however, in poetry in the second meaning; sometimes neut.) district, field, *Golf* gulf (of sea), *Grad* degree, *Gran* (see 5. *c* below), *Grand* coarse sand, \**Grat* ridge, *Groll* (pl. rare) resentment, *Grunz* groan (sign of disapproval), *Guck* look, *Gurt* girth, belt, *Hack* stroke with a hoe, \**Haft* (pl. sometimes *wk.*) clasp, *Hag* enclosure, fence, grove, *Hall* sound, clang, *Halm* (pl. sometimes *wk.*) blade (of grass), *Halt* halt, *Harst* (prov.) troop, *Haß* (pl. rare) hate, *Hau* place where timber is being or has been cut down, blow, often in the pl. with the meaning *flogging*, *Hauch* breath, *Holm* holm, *Hops* hop, *Horst* aerie, *Hort* safe retreat, treasure, \**Huf* (pl. sometimes *wk.*) hoof, *Hulk* (pl. also *Hulks*; sometimes *fem.*) hulk (naut.), *Hund* dog, *Hupf* jump, *Jux* (pl. sometimes *wk.*) joke, *Kalk* lime, \**Karst* mattock, *Khan* (pl. sometimes *Khans*) khan, *Klapp* or †*Klaps* slap, *Klatsch* clash, slap, lash, *Klonz* wedge, *Kloon* ball of spun yarn, *Klopf* knock, *Klops* cooked meat-ball, *Knack* or *Knacks* crack, break, injury, \**Knall* crack, loud sound, *Knast* knot, \**Knorz* knot, *Knups* thump, *Kohl* cabbage, \**Kolk* deep pool, whirlpool, \**Kork* cork, *Kral* (sometimes neut.) kraal, *Krach* (pl. also *Krachs*) crash, panic (in business), *Kran* (pl. also *Kräne*; sometimes *wk.*; nom. sometimes *Kranen*) crane (machine), *Kratz* scratch, *Kulm* peak, *Kult* or *Kultus* (pl. *Kulte*) cult, †*Kumpf* or *Kump* (N.G.) basin, *Kurs* exchange, course, *Kux* share in a mine, \**Lachs* salmon, *Lack* lac, *Lahn* plate-wire, †*Latz* breast-cloth, *Lauch* leek, *Laut* sound, *Lolch* cockle, *Lorch* or *Lörk* (N.G.) toad, \**Luchs* lynx, *Lump* (often also *wk.*) worthless fellow, *Lunch* (pl. also *Lunches*) lunch, *Lurch* batrachian, *Lurks* (colloq.) awkward fellow, fumbler, *Maat* mate (naut. term), *Mahr* nightmare, *Mast* (79. 1. a), †*Matz* Mat, little fool, *Mohn* poppy, *Mohr* moreen, *Molch* salamander, *Mond* (see 83), *Mord* (pl. *Morde* kinds of murder, pl. *Mord-*

taten, *cases of murder*), Most unfermented wine Muck or Mucks half audible sound, Muff (sometimes a wk fem die Muffe) muff, \*Mund (pl also Munder) mouth Murks (pop) dirty or contemptible fellow, Mutz (sometimes wk) bohtul, bear, stupid fellow, short coat Nord north wind, Ohm (also neut) arm Olm proteus, Ort (83), Ost east wind, †Pacht (see 70 1 a) †Pack pick, bundle Paff report (of a gun) whiff or puff (in smoking), Pakt (pl sometimes wk, especially in Ehepakt marriage contract) agreement, Park (pl also Parks) park, Part (also neut) part †Pasch doublets, Pfad path Pfau (76 1 f) †Pfropf (nom also Pfropfen an unmut e less pl), cork, stopper \*Pfuhl pool, Plan (70 1 a), Poch rip, Pol pole (north and south) Port port Prahm (also a wk fem die Prahme) flat bottomed boat, Prall shock Puls pulse Punkt point, \*Punsch punch Putsch revolutionary attempt Putz (pl rare except in compounds, as Kopfsputze different styles of head dress) adornment, \*Qualm vapor, thick smoke, Quarz quartz, \*Quast (more commonly a wk fem die Quaste) tassel, Ratz polecat \*Rost grate (of a stove) \*Ruck jerk Ruf call, Rutsch land- or snow slide Salm (sometimes wk) young salmon Samt velvet, Sand (see 83), †Schacht shaft (in mine), \*Schalk rogue wag †Schall sound, \*Schaub bundle of straw, Schläks (colloq) ungainly fellow, long shanks Schlamp (pop) fast train (of a dress), untidy man, Schlaps lout, \*Schlot chimney, \*Schluck swallow (of water, &c), Schlump (pop N G) lucky chance, †Schmatz smuck, Schmuck (pl more commonly Schmucksachen) ornament, Schof flock (of seals), Schorf scab, \*Schöß shoot, branch Schrat syren spirit, Schrot (5 c below), \*Schuft scamp, Schuh shoe Schupp (N G) or Schupf (S G) shove, \*Schurz apron (for men), Schwalch opening (in a furnace), Schwof (colloq) dance, hop Shawl, better Schal (pl usually Schals) shawl, Skalp scalp Sod (pl sometimes Sode, Soder) boiling Sog wake (of a ship), Spalt split, Spann instep, Spitz spar, Sporn (79 1 a), Spröß (also wk der Sprosse) shoot, off-spring, Spuk ghost, Spunt (naut term, sometimes neut) a small piece of timber, Stahl (see Note), Stäks (N G) lean and awkward person, Star (sometimes wk) stalling, Start (pl usually Starts) start, Stock story (of a house), Stoff stuff, Stopf stopper, darned place, Strand strand, Strauß (usually here in first meaning sometimes however wk, pl usually Strauße in the second meaning, pl always Strauße or in pop language Straußer in the last meaning) ostrich, combrit, bouquet, Strolch vagabond, Stups (colloq N G) or Stupf (colloq S G) prick punch, blow, \*Sud brewing, Sund sound, strait, Taft taffeta, Tag (pl sometimes Tage in S G) day, Takt time, measure (in music), Talg tallow, Talk tale, Tang ting, Tank (pl also Tanks) tank, Taps clumsy fellow, Täß (N G) heap (of shewies) Thron throne, Toast toast, health, Tod (pl Tode kinds of death, but Todesfälle cases of death) death, Ton clay, Topp (79 1 b), Trakt tract, stretch, Tran train oil, Träß trass, Trauch crank, Troll hobgoblin, boor, Trosch crest of feathers, Troß crowd, gang, Trupp (83), Tuff, tuff, Tupf (nom also Tupfen) dot, spot, Tusch flourish of trumpets, Ulk joke, Ur urus, Wal whale, Walm hipside (of a roof), Warl swivel hook, Warp ledge, Wart warder, Wau weld, Zapp bald coot, Zoll inch, Zuck jerk, twitch, Zulp sucking bag

No. Th. . . . .

a large  
1st  
different

Stahl

## 2. Masculine dissyllabics and polysyllabics

a A number of derivatives, the first component of which is a prefix and the second a monosyllabic noun which is rarely found as an independent word, or as such does not belong to this class Be'fehl command, Be'gehr (also neut) demand, desire, Be'huf purpose, Be'lang (in the first meaning without a pl in the second meaning with the pl Belange or interest Be'richt report Be'scheid answer, in proof, Er'folg success, \*Erlaß (Ablaß indulgence granted by the church, Aderlaß

*bleeding*, *Anlaß* cause, occasion, always with mutation in the pl.; *Auslaß* *so* *Durchlaß* culvert, *Einlaß* entrance, more commonly with mutation, *Na* bequest, that which is left behind after death, sometimes with, sometimes as with mutation in the pl.) decree, *Er'werb* acquisition, gain, *Ge'mahl* (also *so* nei the meanings *husband*, *wife*, especially the latter) husband, *Ge'span* (some wk.) comrade, *Ge'span* in Hungary a count, high official, *Ge'spons* (also also neut., especially in the meanings *bride*, *wife*; now rare, usually *y* emp in humorous language) bridegroom, husband, *Ge'wahrsam* safe keeping, *Ge'* or *Ge'winst* gain, *Urlaub* leave of absence, *Ver'ein* society, *Ver'gleich* parison, *Ver'hack* or *Ver'hau* abatis, \**Ver'lust* loss, *Ver'such* attempt, ex ment, *Ver'weis* reproof, *Ver'zicht* renunciation.

b. A few compounds the last component of which is rarely found as an independent word or as such does not belong to this class: \**Aufrührer* uproar, re *Hans'wurst* (sometimes wk.) buffoon, -jan (pl. sometimes *-jans*) in compounds (as *Dummerjan*; see 245. I. 16. b), *Mischmasch* hodgepodge, *1* woch Wednesday, *Nachweis* proof, *Pausback* chubby-faced child, *Unart* chievous little fellow, *Unhold* mischievous being, fiend, *Unterschlupf* she *Vielfraß* glutton, -zack in compounds (as *Dreizack* trident), a *Zwieback* also *Zwiebäcke*) pieces of cold toast.

c. A number of dissyllabic or polysyllabic nouns with accent upon the syllable which do not have component elements of an appreciable meaning but are made up of elements not distinctly felt, whether it be from the fact that they have been in the course of time corrupted, or because they are of an origin that is not clearly felt, including a number of foreign words: *Abend* evening, *Ahorn* maple-tree, *Alfanz* tom-fool, *Amböß* anvil, *Atlas* (pl. *Atla* also *At'lanten* in the second meaning) satin, atlas, 'Balsam (pl. also *Bal'sa* balm, *Barchent* fustian, *Bastard* (pop. *Bastert*, pl. *Basterte*) and *Banl* (vulg.) bastard, *Bräutigam* intended, *Bussard* buzzard, *Derwisch* derv *Eidam* (poetic) son-in-law, *Fetisch* fetish, *Firlefan* foolishness, fool, *Windl* *Hagestolz* (also wk.) bachelor, *Harnisch* armor, *Heiland* Savior, Christ, *Her* herald, *Herzog* (see 70. 1. c. (2)), *Klimax* (see 4 below), *Kobalt* cobalt, *1* bold (see 245. I. 16. a.) hobgoblin, *Kodex* (des *Kodexes* or *Kodex*, pl. *Kod* or *Kodizes* *kodi'tses*) code, *Leichnam* corpse, *Oheim* or *Ohm* uncle, *Palla* heavy cavalry sword, *Popanz* bugbear, *Scharlach* scarlet (cloth), *Stiegg* (sometimes wk.) goldfinch, 'Tabak (also *Ta'bäk*) tobacco, *Talisman* talism *Tolpatsch* awkward fellow, *Transit* (pl. sometimes *Transits*) transit, *U* (des *Ukases* or *Ukas*, pl. *Ukase* or *Ukas*) ukase, *Wallach* (also wk.) geld *Wiedehopf* hoopoe.

d. A few onomatopœic formations: *Kiebitz* lapwing, *Kuckuck* (pl. a *Kuckucks*) cuckoo, *Uhu* or *Schuhu* (pl. also *Uhus*, *Schuhus*) horn-owl, *Wau* *wau* (pl. also *Wauwaus*) doggie.

e. A small but growing number of modern compounds (see 249. II. as *Springinsfeld* romp, *Guckindiewelt* greenhorn, &c.: *Guckindiewelte* (*Storr Viola tricolor*, II. p. 71). Most compounds of this kind still prefer non-inflective forms: *alle Pharisäer* und *Gernegroß* (Fontane's *Stechlin*, XXXII. p. 398). See also 80. 2.

3. Masculine derivatives formed by the aid of unaccented suffixes other than those employed in the e-less plural class and -tum of the er-plural class, namely those in -at, -(i)ch, -icht, -ig, -ing, -ling, -is, -rich, &c.: *Monat*, *Zierat* (79. 1. *Rettich*, *Habicht*, *Frühling*, *Wegerich*, &c.

Also usually unaccented masculine foreign suffixes, as -al, -ian, -iv, -ol, &c. except those in 79. 2. and 70. 4: 'Plural (also *Plu'ral*), 'Grobian, 'Superlat (also *Superla'tiv*), 'Alkohol, &c. Also some of those in 79. 2 are trending in this direction. See 79. 2. d.

4. A few feminines: a number in -nis and -sal, as *Betrübnis*, *Drangsal* &c.; *Maid* (poetic) maiden; the foreign words *Ananas* (pl. -sse or uninflected) pineapple, *Klimax* (also masc.) climax, *Salpinx* salpinx, *Sphinx* sphinx.

a Earlier in the period the feminines in -*nus* and -*sal* were also inflected weak after the analogy of other feminines that do not suffer mutation in the plural *Verstehet jr diese gleichnissen* (now usually neut.) *nicht?* (Mark iv 13) *Warum fluehe ich Trubsalen?* (Lessing)

## 5. Neuters

The following neuters belong here

a All ending in -*icht*, -*nus*, -*sal*: *Dickicht*, thicket, *Ereignis* event, *Schicksal*, fate

b. All beginning with *ge-* and not ending in -*e*, -*el*, -*er*, as *Ge'setz* law, except the few in 74 4.

c. The majority of monosyllabic neuters Among these words are many names of materials the plurals of which we translate by *kinds* or *grades* of See 1 b Note above The list is as follows *Ar* (also masc) are *As* (des *Asses* pl *die Asse*) *ace*, *Beer* (in early N H G and still in dialects as in the works of Rosegger, now a wk fem in the form of *die Beere*, which is in fact the old pl) *berry*, *Beet* (pl sometimes wk) *bed* (in a garden) *Beil* axe (with short handle), *Bein* leg, *Bett* (83), *Bier* beer, *Blei* lead, *Boot* (pl sometimes *Bote*) boat, *Bord* (also masc) shelf, *Brau* brand of beer (*Lowenbrau*, *Spatenbrau*, &c), *Brot* (pl sometimes *Brote*) loaf of bread *Bund* bundle, bunch, *Deck* deck, *Ding* (83), *Dock* (pl more commonly *Docks*) dock, *Eck* (in use earlier in the period and still occasionally found, now usually restricted to compounds such as *Dreieck* triangle, &c, elsewhere now replaced by the wk fem *Ecke*) corner, *Erz* ore, *Feil* hide, *Fenn* fen, *Fest* festival *Fett* fat, *Fjall* (or *Fjeld*) elevated plain (in Scandinavia), *Flach* flat bottom of a boat *Flet* (N G) navigable canal, *Floz* horizontal stratum, *Frett* ferret, *Garn* yarn, *Gas* gas *Gift* poison, *Gleis* track, *Gluck* happiness, *Gold* gold, *Gramm* gram, *Gran* (also masc) grain (weight), *Gros* (des *Grosses*, pl *die Grosse*) gross, *Haar* hair, *Haff* (pl also *Haffs*) fresh water bay (along the Baltic), *Harz* gum (of tree), *Heck* stern, *Heer* army, *Heft* note book *Heil* happiness salvation, *Hirn* brain, *Jahr* year, *Joch* yoke, *Kap* (pl also *Kaps*) cape, *Kar* bowl, dish pocket (in the mountains), *Kinn* chin, *Knie* knee *Kreuz* cross, *Kumt* hame, *Land* (83), *Laub* (earlier in period with the plurals *Lauber* or *Laube* in the first meaning, now usually in the second meaning without pl) leaf, foliage, *Leck* (also masc) leak, *Liesch* flowering rush, *Lob* (pl usually *Lobeserhebungen* or *Lobspruche*) praise, *Log* (ship's) log, *Los* lot, *Lot* plumb line, *Maar* kind of crater, *Mahl* (pl also *Mahler*, usually so in *Gastmahler*) repast, *Mal* (pl more commonly *Maler*, especially in *Denkmaler* or *Denkmale*, *Muttermaler*, but now always *Merkmale* characteristics, *Wundenmale* or *Wundmale* scars, *Nagelmale* marks of nails) mole, mark, sign, *Mal* time (two, three times, &c), *Malz* malt, *Maß* measure, *Meer* sea, *Mehl* flour, *Moor* moor, *Moos* (pl *Moser* swamps) moss, *Mus* (pl sometimes *Muser*) marmalade, *Netz* net, *Niet* (also masc, also wk fem *die Niete*) rivet, *Nock* yard arm, *Ohr* eye (of a needle), *Ol* oil, *Paar* pair, *Pech* pitch, *Pferd* horse, *Pfund* pound, *Pult* desk, *Quart* quart, *Recht* right, *Reck* horizontal bar, *Reep* rope (naut term), *Reff* reef (in a sail), *Reh* doe, *Reich* empire, *Ried* (pl sometimes *Rieder*) reed, swampy land, *Ries* ream, *Riff* reef (of rocks), *Rohr*

reed, pipe, **Roß** (pl. in early N.H.G. **Rösser**, as in Deut. xvii. 16; still so in Austria, as in Rosegger's *Martin der Mann*, p. 80) horse, steed, **Rund** (sometimes masc.) circle, **Salz** salt, **Schaf** sheep, **Scheit** (83), **Schiff** ship, **Schilf** (sometimes masc.) reed, **Schock** three-score, **Schott** (pl. also wk.; also a wk. fem. **die Schotte**) bulkhead, **Schrot** (also masc.) cylindrical block, coarse-ground grain, **Schwein** hog, **Seil** rope, **Sieb** sieve, **Siel** (also masc.) sewer, drain, **Spiel** play, **Spill** capstan, **Spind** (sometimes masc., also a wk. fem. **die Spinde**) case for clothes, books, &c., **Spriet** sprit, **Stag** stay (naut. term; pl. also **Stags**), **Stück** (pl. sometimes **Stücken**) piece, **Tau** heavy rope, **Teil** (83) share, **Tief** deep channel, canal, **Tier** animal, **Tor** gate, **Tuch** cloth, **Vieh** (74. 1), **Vlies** fleece, **Watt** (79. 1. b), **Wehl** (also masc.; also fem. **Wehle**) deep place wrought by the waves, water-gall, **Wehr** dam, **Werft** (more commonly a wk. fem.) wharf, **Werk** work, **Wort** (83), **Wrack** (pl. also **Wracks**) wreck, **Zelt** (pl. sometimes **Zelten**, **Zelter**) tent, **Zeug** (in early N.H.G. also masc.) stuff, troop or army (early N.H.G.), **Ziel** goal, **Zink** (sometimes masc.) zinc, **Zinn** tin, and a few more names of materials and a few technical terms.

d. A few derivatives and compounds the final component of which does not exist as an independent noun, or as such does not belong to this class: **Antlitz** (poetic) face, **Augenmerk** aim, **Be'steck** (pl. often **Be'stecks**) knife and fork, **Darlehn** (now usually **Darlehen**, e-less plural) loan, **Eiland** (83 under **Land**), **Elend** (pl. rare) misery, **Ge'bot** commandment, **Hundert** hundred, **Kleinod** (79. 1. b), **Rückgrat** backbone, **Tausend** thousand, **Urteil** judgment, **Ver'bot** prohibition, **Ver'lies** dungeon, **Ver'steck** (sometimes masc.) hiding-place, **Viel-flach** polyhedron, **Vollblut** (pl. also **Vollblut**) thorobred (horse, &c.).

e. A few dissyllabics and trisyllabics the component parts of which do not have an appreciable meaning, among them a number of foreign words: **Defizit** (pl. also **Defizits**) deficit, **Dutzend** dozen, **Fazit** (pl. also **Fazits**) sum, result, **Mammut** (pl. also **Mammuts**) mammoth, **Messing** brass, **Petschaft** seal, **Tesching** (sometimes masc.; pl. also **Teschings**) a gun of very small bore.

6. A few modern compounds (see 80. 2): **Vergißmeinnicht** forget-me-not, **Lebewohl** farewell. Non-inflection or a form in -s is more common here in the plural, and non-inflection is also found sometimes in the singular. See 80. 2.

7. A large number of foreign words accented upon the last syllable. The striking feature of these words is the very strong preponderance of neuters. Almost all the neuters in the language accented upon the last syllable belong here, except a few in 74. 5 and 79. 2. e and f, and a number of words in these groups are trending in this direction.

In some of these foreign words there is a tendency to shift the accent upon the first syllable after the manner of German words. Some take occasionally the plural in -s instead of the regular ending -e, as **die Gra'veurs** instead of the more common **Gra'veure**. In general, however, there is now a strong tendency in choice language to discard -s in favor of the German ending e.

To this group belong:

a. Masculines and neuters ending in accented ag, ast, at, ct (kt), et, il, ist, it, ith, ll, ng, og, om, op, ost, ot, ph, pt, tt, ut, only, however, when they represent things, for nouns which have these same endings are weak when they represent persons or other living beings: **der Appa'rat** apparatus, **des Appa'rats**, pl. **die Appa'rate**, but **der Ag'nat** agnate, **des Ag'naten**, pl. **die Ag'naten**; **das Ven'til** valve, **des Ven'tils**, but **Ä'dil** edile, **des Ä'dilen**; **der Gra'nit** granite, **des Gra'nits**, but **der Ban'dit** bandit, **des Ban'diten**; **der Epi'dot** epidote, **des Epi'dots**, but **der Idi'ot** idiot, **des Idi'oten**; &c. For exceptions see 76. I. 4. a. Note. Also **das Kroko'dil**, inflected according to the e-plural type and a few other neuters in -'il (79. 2. e) inflected according to the e-plural type or the mixed declension form exceptions to this rule. These neuters in -'il are trending toward b below.

The list of the above endings is not complete, but in general it holds good that masc. and neut. nouns accented upon the last syllable belong here if they represent lifeless objects.

b. Masc and neut nouns representing either beings or things ending in accented al (see *Note 1*), an (see *Note 2*), an, ar (see *Note 2*), ar, ast, em, ert, eur (pronounce or), ier, iv, lt, mm, ol, on (see *Note 2*), or, and the sibilants s, ß, x, z: O'pal opal, Pe'nna! pen-case, Adm'r!al, Aeroplan (a eno 'pla n, = Flugzeug) aeroplane, De'kan dean, Kls'ter clyster, Offi'zier officer, &c. Occasionally the accent shifts upon the first syllable after German fashion der 'Kompaß, des 'Kompasses, &c. But if the sibilant was originally unaccented the word does not belong here der Kon'sens consent, des Kon'senses, but 'Musikus (82) musician, des Musikus.

c. The isolated masc Cha'rakter character has the accent upon the final syllable of the stem only in the pl, Charak'tere, but in the language of the common people the pl is Cha'rakter, and the word with them has thus passed over into the e-less plural class. This plural was formerly also sometimes used in the literary language die verschiedenen Charakter der verschiedenen Bücher (Goethe)

*General Note* It will be observed by even a glance at the preceding groups that some of them especially the masc

#### 64. Models of Inflection for the Unmutated E-Plural Type:

##### Singular.

Arm, <i>arm</i> , m	Gefängnis, <i>prison</i> , n	Drangsal <i>distress</i> , f.
N. der Arm	das Gefängnis	die Drangsal
G. des Arm(e)s	des Gefängnisses	der Drangsal
D. dem Arm(e)	dem Gefängnis (or -nisse)	der Drangsal
A. den Arm	das Gefängnis	die Drangsal

##### Plural.

N. die Arme	die Gefangnisse	die Drangsale
G. der Arme	der Gefangnisse	der Drangsale
D. den Armen	den Gefangnissen	den Drangsalen
A. die Arme	die Gefangnisse	die Drangsale

*Note* Words in s preceded by a short vowel double the s when a vowel follows see the inflection of Gefängnis above Thus also der Itis, des Itisses, der Atlas, des Atlases, &c. See also 4 2 C a p 17

#### UNMUTATED E-LESS PLURAL TYPE OF THE STRONG DECLENSION.

65. To this class, which has no additional ending in the nom plural and never has an e in a case ending, belong

a. Masc and neut. nouns ending in unaccented -el, -en (always contracted to n after -el and -er in verbal nouns das Handeln acting, das Stottern stuttering), -er, -chen, -lein, -sel: der Spaten spade, der Vater father, &c. In popular language the plural here is often weak. See 79. 1. a. *Note*.

Also the diminutives in -erl and l, which have been borrowed from the Bavarian and Austrian dialects, belong here when used in the literary language der Gigerl fop, des Gigerls, pl die Gigerl. In certain dialects the words of this group are weak in the plural and this inflection is often found in the literary language. See 79. 1 b *Note*

b. All neuter nouns beginning with the prefix ge- and ending in -e das Gemälde oil painting, &c

c. The isolated masculine Käse cheese, and two neuter verbal nouns, Tun doing and Sein being.

d. Diminutives in -le in the Swabian and Alsatian and -li in Swiss dialects: das Herrle the little man; des Herrles, pl. die (, der, den, die) Herrle. Some Swiss dialects lengthen the stem in the plural: das Äugli (= Äuglein), pl. N. Äugli, G. (lacking), D. Äuglene, A. Äugli. The n drops out in all these dialects in the dat. pl. of this group.

## 66. Models of Inflection for the Unmutated E-less Plural Type:

### Singular.

N. der Spaten	das Hündchen	das Gemälde
G. des Spatens	des Hündchens	des Gemäldes
D. dem Spaten	dem Hündchen	dem Gemälde
A. den Spaten	das Hündchen	das Gemälde

### Plural.

N. die Spaten	die Hündchen	die Gemälde
G. der Spaten	der Hündchen	der Gemälde
D. den Spaten	den Hündchen	den Gemälden
A. die Spaten	die Hündchen	die Gemälde

67. Notice that: (1) if the noun ends in en it does not add another n in the dative plural. (2) Neuter nouns of the form Ge—e, as Gebäude, often (full explanation in *Note* below and in 83. b) modify the root vowel, and usually so the diminutive endings -chen and -lein, as das Hündchen or Hündlein *little dog* (fuller statement in 245. I. 8. 1. c). This mutation is not a sign of the plural, but goes thruout the sing. and pl. (3) Words of the forms Ge—e, —chen, —lein are usually neuter: der Hund, but das Hündchen, &c.

*Note.* Words of the form Ge — e or Ge — (ending in el, er, as Gefieder,) often have modification of the stem vowel by mutation (see 23. A and C), as they once had after them an i, which has become e or dropped out: Gedränge (O.H.G. gidrengi), Gefilde (O.H.G. gifildi) derived from Feld, Gefieder (O.H.G. presumably gifidari or gifidiri) derived from Feder. However, a large number of verbal nouns, usually new formations formed from the infinitive stem, do not mutate: das Gelaufe. When the mutated form and the unmutated form exist side by side there is often a little shade of difference in meaning. See 83. b.

68. This class is historically only a modified form of the e-plural type. The old rule that did not allow e to stand after -el, -em, -en, -er, caused as early as M.H.G. many words that were formerly in the unmutated e-plural class to drop the plural ending e: (O.H.G.) engil *angel*, pl. engila; M.H.G. engel, pl. engel(e). This movement has thus given rise to a new class of nouns not found in O.H.G. The neuters with these endings passed over into this new class very easily and naturally, as they already as neuters in general had no plural ending in the nom. and acc. as early as O.H.G., and hence needed only to drop the e in the other case endings. The fact that only words of more than one syllable came over into this e-less plural class indicates that the cause of dropping the e lies entirely in the accent. This reduction of form is the result of the older tendency to suppress the most weakly stressed vowel in words of more than two syllables—the old law described in 62. C. *Note*. The masculines and neuters in -e, -el, -em, -en, -chen, -er went over entirely into the new class. This development is essentially South German. Middle German inclined to retain the e in the plural after masculines in -el, -en, -er, as in Hügele, Meistere, &c. Luther sometimes followed this M.G. usage, but in general adopted the S.G. tendency to drop e here. Masculines and neuters with heavier suffixes, such as -at, -ich, -ig, -ing, -ling, -rich, -nis, -sal, did not participate in this movement. The old law described in 62. C. *Note*, which required the suppression of the unaccented vowel in the third syllable, did not work so uniformly after a secondary accent as after a lightly stressed -el, -en, -er. Moreover the general tendency of the literary language was in the direction of developing a distinctive plural ending, so that many neuters instead of dropping endings assumed the clear plural ending e after the analogy of masculines, as described in 63. 5. *Historical Note* and the *Notes* under a and b of the same article. Neuter diminutives in -lein, however, did not add -e in the plural but remained unchanged after the analogy of diminutives in -chen.

The words in the new e-less plural class were later greatly increased by accessions from the weak declension: M.H.G. balke *beam*, G. balken, D. balken, &c., but N.H.G. Balken, G. Balkens, D. Balken, &c. This new trend of weak nouns toward the e-less class of the strong declension began to manifest itself at the close of the fourteenth century. The new development first appeared in the South in the plural of nouns denoting lifeless objects in the form of mutation to distinguish the plural more clearly: schäden instead of schaden. About the same time nouns denoting lifeless objects, much less commonly nouns denoting living beings, began to appear with the strong genitive -s added to their regular weak genitive as there had arisen a feeling that the strong ending, so widely used in the language, was a more characteristic sign of the genitive: des schadens, des knabens instead of des schaden, des knaben. Later the genitive -s was dropped in case of the nouns denoting living beings as the feeling prevailed that the weak genitive, so closely associated with many very common nouns denoting living beings,





those marked with † fluctuate in the plural between mutated and unmutated form. Abt abbot, Arzt physician, Ast branch, Bach brook, Balg (83), Ball ball, Band volume, Bart beard, Bäß bass, Bauch belly, Baum tree, Bausch bolster, pad, Block block, Bock he-goat, Brand fire, Brauch custom, Bruch fracture, Bruch (also, perhaps however less commonly, a neut. er-pl.) bog, Bug bend, Bund alliance, Busch bush, Chor (see 3 below), Damm dam, Dampf vapor, Darm intestine, Draht wire, Drang (pl. rare) impulse, strong desire, †Drusch thrashing, Duft fragrant odor, Dunst vapor, Fall fall, Fang catch, tusk (of boar), tooth (of wolf), talon, claw, Floh flea, \*Flor crape, gauze, Flöß (see 3 below), Fluch curse, Flug flight, Fluß river, Frack (pl. also Fracks) dress-coat, Frosch frog, Frost frost, Fuchs (S.G. sometimes also wk., sometimes wk. also elsewhere in the second and third meaning) fox, chestnut horse, Freshman (in a German university), Fuß (83) foot, Gang walk, Gast guest, \*Gauch (pl. sometimes wk.) cuckoo, fool, \*Gaul horse, nag, Grund ground, reason, Grüß greeting, Güss casting, Hahn (earlier in the period also wk.) cock, Hals neck, Hang declivity, Hof court, Hub lift, Hut hat, Kahn boat, Kamm comb, \*Kamp enclosed field, Kampf combat, Kauf purchase, Kauz (earlier in the period also wk. and an unmut. e-pl.) brown owl, fellow, Klang sound, †Klaps slap, Klöß clod, dumpling, Klotz block, Knauf knob, Knaus (S.G.), or Knaust or Knüst (N.G.) heel (of a loaf of bread), Knopf button, Knuff cuff (blow), Koch cook, Kog land wrested from the sea, Kopf head, Korb basket, Krampf cramp, Kran (63. 1. b), Kranz wreath, Kropf craw, wen, Krug pitcher, †Kumpf (63. 1. b), Kuß kiss, Lauf (sometimes, especially earlier in the period, also Lauft) course, time, Lohn reward, Markt market, Marsch march, †Matz Mat, little fool, Mops pug dog, Napf bowl, †Pacht (more commonly a wk. fem.) lease, rental, †Pack (63. 1. b), Papst pope, †Pasch doublets, Paß pass, Pfahl stake, Pflock peg, Pflug plow, Plan (pl. earlier in the period Plane, which is still often used in the second meaning) plan, grass-plot, Platz place, Propst provost (of a church), rector, \*Puff thump, Ranft crust, Rang rank, Rat councilor, Raum space, Rausch intoxication, Rock coat, Rumpf trunk, body, Saal room, Sack sack, Saft juice, Sand (83), Sang song, Sarg coffin, Satz sentence, Saum hem, †Schacht shaft (in mine), \*Schafft shaft, Schatz treasure, Schaum foam, Schlaf (usually a wk. fem. die Schläfe) temple (on the head), Schlag blow, Schlauch leather bag, Schlund chasm, Schlupf hiding place, Schlurf gulp, Schluß close, †Schmatz smack, Schmaus feast, Schnaps whiskey, Schopf tuft (of hair, feathers), Schöß lap, Schrank case, press, Schrund (usually wk. fem. die Schrunde) cleft, Schub push, Schurf scratch, pit, opening (min.), Schuß shot, Schwamm sponge, Schwan (76. I. 3. b) swan, Schwang swing, Schwank prank, farce, Schwanz tail, Schwarm swarm, crowd, Schwung flight, soaring, Schwur oath, Sohn son, Span shaving, Spaß joke, Spruch saying, saw, Sprung jump, Spund bung, Stab staff, Stahl (63. 1. b. Note), Stahl (pl. also Stahle, nom. sing. also Stahlen, an unmut. e-less pl.) sample, Stall stable, Stamm trunk, tribe, Stand stand, rank, station, Stock stick, cane, Storch (sometimes wk.) stork, Stoß push, pile, Strang rope, trace, Strauch (pl. now perhaps more commonly Sträucher) bush, shrub, Strauß (63. 1. b), Strom stream, Strumpf stocking, \*Strunk stump, Stuhl chair, Stumpf short end, stump, Sturm storm, Sturz (earlier in the period unmut. in pl.) fall, Sumpf swamp, Tanz dance, Ton tone, Topf pot, Trank drink, Traum dream, Trog trough, Tropf (earlier in the period wk. and sometimes still so) simpleton, Trumpf trump, Turm tower, Vögt governor, steward, Wall rampart, Wanst paunch, Wolf wolf, Wuchs growth, Wulst (also fem.; see 2 below) pad, bustle, roll, Wunsch wish, Wurf throw, Zahn tooth, Zaum bridle, Zaun hedge, fence, Zoll toll, Zopf plait of hair, cue, Zug train.

*Note.* This mutating group is a *little* smaller than the unmutating mutable group in 63. 1. b, but it may turn out to be *much* smaller, as the latter group may prove to be larger than the present enumeration shows, as explained in the *Note* under 63. 1. b. The mutating group, however, contains a number of very common words, and has thus naturally from the earliest historic times attracted to itself words from the other group. It has thus been slowly increasing thruout the different periods almost up to our own time, and in dialect, especially in the South, may perhaps still be spreading, but at present in the literary language mutation in this group seems to be losing ground, and a number of words have gone over to the other group or fluctuate between them. Compare 63. 1. b. It has also not the prospect of attracting foreign monosyllables that seems to be before the non-mutating group. The former inflection of some of the words that have come from the non-mutating group to this class can still be seen in fossilized proper names: Königshofen (dat. pl.; see 88. 1). The pl. of Hof is now elsewhere uniformly Höfe.

*b* Several masculines of the form Ge- Gebrauch custom, Genuß enjoyment, Geruch odor, Gesang song, Geschmack (pl sometimes Geschmacker) taste, Gestank stench

c. A few derivatives and compounds, the final component of which does not exist as an independent word or as such does not have a mutated plural

(1) Derivatives. **Bedacht** (pl rare) consideration, **Belag** slice of meat for a sandwich, **vencer**, **coring** **Bestand** amount on hand, **Betrag** amount, **Ertrag** yield, return, **Verdacht** (pl rare) suspicion, **Verdruß** vexation, **Vertrag** contract

(2) Compounds. Ab-, Aus-, Ein-, Händedruck (see Druck in 83), Ab-, Ader-, An-, Aus-, Durch-, Ein-, Nachlaß (63 2 a) Antrag offer, \*Anwalt attorney, Beitrag contribution Diebstahl theft Einwand objection †Hanswurst (63 2 b), -hans *Johnny* in compounds (as Prahlhans braggart) Herzog (earlier in the period wk, now with pl Herzoge, still used in choice language, or more commonly Herzoge, still wk in compound names of places as Herzogenbusch) duke, earlier in the period in its original meaning leader of an army leader, captain, Lautschwund suppression of a sound Marschall (early N H G, Marschalk, pl also Marschalls) marshal, Vorwand pretext Zwieback (63 2 b)

neuters **Boot** *boat*, **Brot** *loaf of bread*, **Rohr** *pipe*, which are usually unmutated e-plurals.

4. A few masc. foreign words with accent upon the final syllable, but sometimes after German fashion upon the first: **Al'tar** (and in earlier N.H.G. 'Altar; pl. also **Al'tare**) altar, 'Bischof bishop, **Cho'ral** hymn, **Gene'ral** (pl. in choice language more commonly **Gene'rale**) general, **Ka'nal** canal, **Kap'lan** chaplain, **Kardi'nal** cardinal, **Mo'rast** (pl. also **Mo'raste**) morast, **Pa'last** and 'Palast palace, **Te'nor** (pl. also **Te'nore**) tenor. In these words it is the second vowel that suffers the mutation: **der Al'tar**, pl. **die Al'täre**. Sometimes other foreign words, as **Admi'ral** admiral, **Korpo'ral** corporal, join this group, and earlier in the period the list was still larger, comprising such as **Bibliothe'kar**, **Po'kal**, &c., but present feeling is opposed to the mutation of foreign words.

#### 71. Models of Inflection for the Mutated E-Plural Type:

	Singular.	
<b>Sohn</b> <i>son</i> , m.	<b>Floß</b> <i>raft</i> , n.	<b>Hand</b> <i>hand</i> , f.
N. der Sohn	das Floß	die Hand
G. des Sohn(e)s	des Floßes	der Hand
D. dem Sohn(e)	dem Floß(e)	der Hand
A. den Sohn	das Floß	die Hand
	Plural.	
N. die Söhne	die Flöße	die Hände
G. der Söhne	der Flöße	der Hände
D. den Söhnen	den Flößen	den Händen
A. die Söhne	die Flöße	die Hände

#### MUTATED E-LESS PLURAL TYPE OF THE STRONG DECLENSION.

72. To this class, which is an e-less plural type with the same inflection as the nouns in 65 with the additional feature of mutation in the plural, belong only a small number of words in -el, -en, -er. The unmutated e-less plural group in 65 is very much larger. Among those that suffer mutation in the plural can be safely counted: only one neuter, **Kloster** cloister, but also quite often **Wasser** (*Stille Wasser sind tief*, but **Mineralwässer**, **Industrieabwässer** waste water from factories, **Kanalisationsabwässer** sewage water, &c.) water, and sometimes **Lager** camp, warehouse, bed (of ore, &c.); two feminines, **Mutter** and **Tochter**; the following masculines: **Acker** field, **Apfel** apple, **Boden** (pl. also **Boden**) bottom, soil, **Bruder** brother, **Faden** (earlier in the period without mutation in the pl.) thread, **Garten** garden, **Graben** ditch, **Hafen** harbor, pot, **Hammer** hammer, **Handel** contention, **Laden** shutter, shop (in the first meaning, pl. also **die Laden**), **Mangel** lack, **Mantel** cloak, **Nabel** (pl. also **Nabel**) navel, **Nagel** nail, **Ofen** stove, **Sattel** saddle, **Schaden** damage, **Schnabel** beak, **Schwager** brother-in-law, **Vater** father, **Vogel** bird. In the expression **Es ist schade!** *It is too bad!* **Schaden** preserves an older nom. sing. form, just as the nouns in 69.

a. Many other masculines also belong here sometimes: **Bogen** bow, **Hammel** wether, **Kasten** box, **Kragen** collar, **Magen** stomach, **Wagen** wagon, &c. Grammarians discourage the spread of mutation here, as these words were unmutated in earlier periods of the language. When this class was formed by dropping e in the plural, in accordance with the development described in 68 a number of words which entered the new class, **Apfel**, **Hafen** pot, **Hammer**, **Mantel**, **Nagel**, **Sattel**, **Schnabel**, were already mutated in the plural. **Mutter**, **Tochter**, and **Bruder** had no ending in the nom. and acc. plural as early as O.H.G. and a little later **Vater** joined this little group. In M.H.G. these four words had assumed mutation in the plural and, with the seven nouns with mutated e-less plurals mentioned above, established in the language the mutated e-less type of plural. This mutating group possessed a great advantage over the other words in the e-less class, as they had a plural form clearly distinct from the singular, and the economic instincts of the people, undisturbed by historical considerations, appreciated this advantage at once, and extended the mutation in the plural to other words. Even originally weak words were affected. In Luther's language **der Garten** is still weak as in M.H.G.: **des garten** (2. Kings ix. 27). Later it became an e-less plural like a number of other weak nouns as described in 68

(2nd par.), and finally joined the above mutating group. The list given above represents the view of conservative grammarians. Literary men do not always confine themselves to it: Schubkäten (Gutzkow), die Glaskäten (Raabe's *Hungerpastor*, chap. iv), die Köpfe, die Herzen und Mägen der Menschheit (Raabe's *A. T.*, chap. 26), preußische Mägen (H. Hoffmann's *Rittmeister*, p. 141). South German authors use mutation here still more freely. There is evidently, however, in the North a tendency at present in choice language against the extension of mutation here as in general also elsewhere.

### ER-PLURAL TYPE OF THE STRONG DECLENSION.

73. This class adds *er* to form the nominative plural and mutates the root vowel if it is capable of it: das Buch book, des Buchs, pl. die Bücher. Those ending in *-tum* mutate this suffix instead of the root vowel: das Herzogtum duchy, pl. die Herzogtümer.

a. The en- and hence the muta-  
tion. This - was in earlier periods  
of a form in -elt as a plural ending.  
derivatives, where, however, its force is no longer felt. See

a very popular one, and is often used in dialect or familiar  
humorous language with words of the mutated or the unmutated e-plural class instead of the

74. To this class, which has no feminines, belong:

1. All other native German neut. monosyllabics not found in the unmutated e-plural group in 63. 5. c, the mutated e-plural group in 70. 3, and in the *mixed declension* in 79. 1. b, namely: Aas (pl. also Aase) carcass, Amt office, Bad bath, Balg (83), Band (83), Biest (pop.) beast (of fleas, bedbugs, dogs, &c.), domestic animal, Bild picture, Blatt leaf, Brett board, Bruch (see 70. 1. a), Büch book, Däch roof, Daus deuce, Ding (83), Dorf village, Ei egg, Fäch compartment, Fäß barrel, Feld field, Geld money, Gicht convulsion, Glas glass, Glied link, Grab grave, Gras grass, Gut property, Haupt head, Haus house, Holz wood, Horn horn, Huhn fowl, Kalb calf, Kind child, Kleid dress, Korn grain, Kraut herb, Lamm lamb, Land (83), Licht (83), Lid eyelid, Lied song, Löch hole, Mahl (63. 5. c), Mal (63. 5. c), Maul mouth (of animals), Mensch (83), Moos (83), Mus (63. 5. c), Nest nest, Pfand pledge, Rad wheel, Reis shoot, Rind beef, Scheit (83), Schild shop sign, Schloß castle, Schwert sword, Stift endowed institution, Tal (in poetic language sometimes an unmut. e-pl.) valley, Tuch (83), Vieh (collective noun, hence usually without pl.; sometimes referring to an individual, occasionally with pl. Viehe, but more commonly *Vieher animals*, fig. *Rindvieher stupid fellows*; colloq. and pop. S. G. pl. *Viecher beasts*, 'critters', see 40. 1. b. Note 7) cattle, Volk people, Wams (pl. also Wamse; sometimes masc.) waistcoat, Weib woman, Welf (also a masc. e-pl., more commonly replaced by *das Junge*, ein *Junges* cub, whelp, Wort (83). Here also belongs *Trumm* (also masc.) ruin, fragment. Its plural is usually *Trümmer*, and only rarely *Trümme* and *Trumme*. The sing. is very little used, and hence its form is not vividly felt. This has given rise to new formations in the sing. The usual plural form is sometimes taken for a sing. This new sing. is either fem.

or masc. The pl. formed from this new sing. is of course wk., i.e. **Trümmern**, if it is regarded as fem., and is an e-less pl., i.e. **Trümmer**, if it is felt as a masc.

a. In M.H.G. and even later in early N.H.G. a number of these words were inflected after the model of the unmutated e-plural class, as described for the early N.H.G. period in 63.5. *Historical Note*. This can still be seen in many fossilized forms, as in **Feld**, **Haus**, **Haupt** in names of places, as **Rheinfelden** (dat. pl.; see 88. 1), **Rheinhausen** (dat. pl.), **Berghaupten** (dat. pl.); also in the dat. pl. form **Häupten** in a few set expressions, as **zu Häupten** (des Bettes, &c.) *at the head (of the bed, &c.)*. In early N.H.G. **Haupt** had as a rival the M.G. form **Häupt** (O.H.G. **houbit**, and hence mutation), which still in such expressions as the preceding survives in its early N.H.G. dat. pl. form **Häupten**, which, however, in meaning has now the force of the sing. The pl. form here is probably after the analogy of **zu Füßen**, where the plural has a real meaning.

2. All in **-tum**, of which two only are masc. (**Irrtum** *error* and **Reichtum** *wealth*) and the rest neut.: **das Christentum**, &c.

3. A few isolated masculines: **Bösewicht** (pl. now perhaps more commonly **Bösewichte**) rascal, **Dorn** (83), **Geist** spirit, **Gott** God, god, **Hundsfott** (pl. **Hundsfötter**) scoundrel, **Leib** body, **Mann** man, **Mund** (63. 1. b), **Ort** (83), **Rand** edge, **Ski** (ʃi: or ski; pl. also **Skis**, **Skī'e**) ski, **Strauch** (70. 1. a) bush, shrub, **Strauß** (63. 1. b), **Vormund** (in early N.H.G. wk. with form **Vormünd(e)**, later str. with pls. **Vormünde**, more commonly **Vormunde**, most commonly **Vormünder**) guardian, **Wald** (see b) forest, **Wurm** (pl. rarely **Würme**; see 83).

a. Masculines did not originally belong to this class. Some of these masculines, as **Ort**, **Gott** (M.H.G. *der got* **God**, but *daʒ abgot* *idol*), were once neut. as well as masc., and later retained the neut. pl. form, altho they dropped the neut. article in favor of the masc. Several masculines were attracted into this class, assuming the neut. pl. after the analogy of neut. nouns of a similar meaning: **Wälder** *woods* after the analogy of **Hölzer** *woods*; **Geister** *spirits* after the analogy of **Götter** *gods*; **Leiber** *bodies* after the analogy of **Geister**, with which it stands in contrast; **Männer** *men* after the analogy of **Weiber** *women*.

b. **Wald** was formerly an e-pl., as can still be seen in the fossilized proper name **Unterwalden** (dat. pl. = *unter den Wäldern*).

4. A few neuters, exceptions to the e-pl. cl. (63. 5. b): **Gehalt** (earlier and sometimes still masc. with pl. **Gehalte**) salary, **Gemäch** room (of a house), **Gemüt** disposition, **Geschlecht** (poet. pl. **Geschlechte**) generation, **Gesicht** (83), **Gespent** ghost, **Gewand** (pl. sometimes **Gewande**) garments, **Gewölb** (usually **Gewölbe**, an e-less pl.) vault.

5. A few foreign words: (1) exceptions to the unmutated e-pl. class: **das Kapi'tell** or **Kapi'täl** (both forms usually e-pls.) capital of a pillar, **der Pe'nnal** (pl. sometimes **Pe'nnale**, **Pe'nnäle**; nom. sing. more commonly **Pe'nnäler**, an e-less pl.) gymnasium student, **das Prä'sent** (pl. usually **Prä'sente**) present, **das Regi'ment** regiment, **das Spi'tal** or **Hospi'tal** (pl. sometimes **Hospi'tale**) hospital; (2) **der Wiking** viking.

75. Models of Inflection for the Er-Plural Type:

	Singular.	
<b>Buch</b> <i>book</i> , n.	<b>Irrtum</b> , <i>error</i> , m.	<b>Bild</b> <i>picture</i> , n.
N. <b>das Buch</b>	<b>der Irrtum</b>	<b>das Bild</b>
G. <b>des Buch(e)s</b>	<b>des Irrtums</b>	<b>des Bild(e)s</b>
D. <b>dem Buch(e)</b>	<b>dem Irrtum</b>	<b>dem Bild(e)</b>
A. <b>das Buch</b>	<b>den Irrtum</b>	<b>das Bild</b>
	Plural.	
N. <b>die Bücher</b>	<b>die Irrtümer</b>	<b>die Bilder</b>
G. <b>der Bücher</b>	<b>der Irrtümer</b>	<b>der Bilder</b>
D. <b>den Büchern</b>	<b>den Irrtümern</b>	<b>den Bildern</b>
A. <b>die Bücher</b>	<b>die Irrtümer</b>	<b>die Bilder</b>

#### WEAK DECLENSION.

##### 76. I. *Present Literary Usage.*

The weak declension ends in **-n** or **-en** (see 61. b) in every case sing. and pl. except the nom. sing., and never modifies the root vowel in the pl.: **der Knabe** boy, **des, dem, den**, pl. **die, der, den, die Knaben**. Feminines not being declined

in the singular have only the plural of this declension. To the weak declension belong:—

1. All the native and foreign fem. nouns in the language, with the following few exceptions: (1) Mutter and Tochter in the *mutated e-less plural class*; (2) those ending in -nis and -sal in the *unmutated e-plural class*; (3) the list in the *mutated e-plural class* (see 70. 2); (4) a few foreign words (see 80. 1 and 63. 4).

a. Foreign fem. in -a and -is drop these letters in the pl. and add -en: die Firma firm, pl. die Firmen; die Basis, pl. die Basen. All in -in double the n in the pl.: Fürstin princess, pl. Fürstinnen. The plural of die Thalax phalanx is usually die Phalangen.

2. All masculines of two or more syllables ending in unaccented -e, provided they represent persons or other living beings: der Knabe boy, der Preusse Prussian, der Löwe lion, &c. Also three names of lifeless things belong here: der Buchstabe (see 69), der Hirse (usually str.; now more commonly fem. die Hirse) millet, der Zehnte tithe. \* The list of lifeless things was once much larger. In 68 and 78. Note a description is given of the forces that have withdrawn from the weak declension the masculines and neuters representing lifeless things. Hence, of the many masculines and the smaller number of neuters which once belonged to the weak declension there remain only the masculines denoting living beings, so that the idea of life has become associated with weak masculine inflection.

3. The following list of masculines representing living beings, which, having no -e in the nom. sing., or having lost there the e which once belonged to them, cannot now be recognized by an ending and hence in a number of cases are now often felt as e-plurals, i.e. strong nouns with -s in the gen. sing. and -e in the plural: Ahn (often str. in sing.) ancestor; Bär bear; Bauer (also str. in sing.; always str. in the compounds Ma'schinenbauer machinist, Orgelbauer organ-builder, &c., where it is derived from bauen to build) peasant; Bayer (sometimes str. in sing.) Bavarian; Bleß (also a wk. fem. die Blesse) blazed horse; Bursch (pl. not infrequently Bursche) or Bursche young fellow, student, servant; Christ (but an e-pl. in the meaning Christmas present) Christian; Dolmetsch (sing. also uninflected, pl. also Dolmetsche; usually replaced by the str. Dolmetscher) interpreter; Drost (also an e-pl.) magistrate; Ehehäft (early N.H.G. and still used in the South) servant; Elf elf; Farr or more commonly Farre (earlier in the period, still in the Southwest) bull; Faun (usually an e-pl.) faun; Fex (more commonly an e-pl.) fool; Fink finch; Fratz silly fellow; Fuchs (70. 1. a), Fürsprech (also an e-pl.) attorney; Fürst ruling prince, prince; Geck (earlier in the period also an e-pl.) vain fellow; Gesell workman, fellow, and with the exception of Gemahl (63. 2. a), Gespan (63. 2. a), and sometimes Gespons (63. 2. a) all other masculines of this form (i.e. beginning with Ge- and not ending in -e) representing persons; Gnom gnome; Graf count; Greif (also an e-pl.) griffin; Held hero; Herr (des Herrn, pl. die Herren) Mr., gentleman, lord, master; Hirt shepherd; Hohenzoller (the form Hohenzollern is also used as a collective noun inflected as a proper name: Hohenzollerns Taten [Wildenbruch's *Quilzows*, 3, 12] the deeds of the family of Hohenzollern) a member of the House of Hohenzollern; Kaffer (also str. in sing.) clod-hopper; Kaffer (also str. in sing.) Kafir; Kakerlak (see 79. 1. a); Kum'pan (usually an e-pl.) companion; Leu (dat. and acc. sometimes Leu; poetic word for Löwe) lion; Lump (63. 1. b); Mensch human being; Mohr Moor; Muselman (or Muselmann, gen. -s, pl. -männer) Mussulman; Nachfahr (sing. sometimes str.) successor, descendant; Narr fool; Oberst (or more rarely Obrist; sometimes str. or uninflected in sing.) colonel; Ochs ox; Pfaff priest, parson (contemptuously); Pfau (often str. in sing., pl. sometimes Pfaue) peacock; Pommer Pomeranian; Prinz son of a Fürst; Protz vulgar, conceited man of wealth; Scheck dapple (horse); Schelm (earlier in the period wk. and sometimes so still; now usually an e-pl.) rogue; Schenk cup-bearer; Schöps (usually an e-pl.; only rarely wk. as a simple word, but regularly so in compounds, as in Schöpsenfleisch) wether; Schultheiß mayor (especially of a small place); Spatz (often str. in sing., pl. sometimes Spatze) sparrow; Steinmetz stone-cutter; Tor fool; Tropf (70. 1. a);

**Truchseß** (also an e-pl.) formerly one who placed food before his lord; **Untertan** (sing. also str.) subject (of a king, &c.), **Vorfahr** (sometimes str. in sing.) predecessor, ancestor; **Weih** (also an e-pl.) and **Weihe** (also a wk. fem.) kite (bird); **Welf** Guelph; **Zar** (sometimes an e-pl.) czar; also a few names of nationalities and famous families which are usually found only in the plural: **Angeln** Angles, **Zimbern** Cimbri, **Nibelungen** (pl. sometimes **Nibelunge** as in M.H.G.) Nibelungs, **Billungen** (pl. sometimes **Billunge**), &c. Most of the weak nouns denoting nationalities have e in the nom. sing. (as **der Däne** Dane, **der Russe** Russian, &c.), and hence belong to 2 above.

A few masculines not ending in -e representing lifeless objects are weak: **Frank** (10 **Frank[en]**; in Austria, also str. in sing.; in Switzerland entirely replaced by the unmut. e-less plural **Franken**) franc (coin); **Spitz** (Schiller's *Wallensteins Lager*, 6, now a weak fem. **die Spitze**, usually in this meaning found in the plural) lace; **Zeh** (also str. in sing., usually a wk. fem. **die Zehe**) toe. This list was once larger.

a. Also others sometimes drop the e of the nom. sing., as **der Schranz** or **Schranze**, &c. **Hirsch stag**, **Lenz** (poetic) *spring-time*, **Mai May**, **März March**, **Salm young salmon**, **Star starling**, and **Strauß ostrich**, are occasionally weak, but are more commonly e-plurals, **Mai** and **März** however, are still more commonly uninflected (see 85. a).

b. Some of the words which used to belong here, especially names of living beings, after throwing off the -e which distinguished them as weak, drifted over into the strong declension, but still show their original weak inflection in compounds: **Greisenalter**, **Hahnenfuß**, **Schwanengesang**, **Sternenhimmel**, &c., from **Greis**, **Hahn**, **Schwan**, **Stern**, &c., all now mut. e-pls. except the first and last, which are unmut. e-pls. For fuller statement see 249. II. 1. B. a.. Provincially, especially in the S.W., some of these words which represent animals are still as simple nouns inflected weak when used as names of taverns: „zu den drei Schwanen“ (on a sign) 'At the Three Swans,' **im Hirschen** (see a above), &c. The frequent use of the oblique case ending -en of these weak nouns after prepositions has left the impression that the words also in the nominative end in en, hence such forms as **der Hirschen**, **der Schwarze Bären**, **der Pfauen** (Spitteler's *Conrad*, p. 204), all names of taverns.

c. There is a tendency for some of the above list of weak nouns to become strong, which especially manifests itself in the acc.: **Da lauerte einst der wilde Urgermane auf den zottigen Bär** (instead of **Bären**) (Raabe's *A. T.*, chap. xiii). Less frequently in the gen., but sometimes also there: **mit des Markgrafs Weib** (Hauptmann's *Schluck und Jau*, p. 24), **but des jungen Markgrafen Weib** (ib.).

#### 4. Many masc. foreign nouns:

a. Those ending in accented ag, arch, ast, at, aur, ct (kt), et, ik, il, ist, it, ith, ll, ng, og, om, op, ost, ot, ph, pt, rd, tt, urg, ut, yst, only, however, when they represent persons or other living beings: **Le'gāt** legate, **Pi'lōt** pilot, &c. Formerly e was added to a number of these endings. After b, d, g this older usage still in general prevails as the omission of e here would in the nom. sing. give b, d, g a different pronunciation from that found in the other cases: **E'phebe**, **Rhap'sode**, **Stra'tege**, **Philo'loge**, &c. After nd (see c), however, the e is dropped: **Vaga'bund**, &c. If the e is retained these words, of course, belong to 2 above.

*Note.* The following exceptions occur: **Pe'dell** (an e-pl. or wk.) beadle, **Hippo'gryph** (an e-pl. or wk.) hippogrif, **Leo'pārd** (sometimes an unmut. e-pl.) leopard, **Prä'fekt** (also an e-pl.) prefect; the following masculines, which are wk., tho they represent things: **Auto'mat** slot-machine, **Den'drit** dendrite, **Diph'thōng** (usually an e-pl.) diphthong, **Ko'mēt** comet, **Ma'gnēt** (usually an e-pl.) magnet, **Mono'lith** (also an e-pl.) monolith, **Pla'nēt** planet, **Sate'llit** satellite; the plural **A'nñälen** annals.

b. Names of peoples having a consonantal ending which is accented upon the last syllabl. **Ko'sāk** Cossack, **Sara'zēn(e)** Saracen, **Bul'gār** Bulgarian, **Mag'yar** or **bette**, **Mad'jar** (sometimes str. in sing.) Magyar, Hungarian, **Ta'tar** Tartar, &c. A few which have the accent upon the first syllable (see 61. b): **'Ungar** (sometimes str. in sing.) Hungarian, **'Kaffer** (see 3 above).

c. Masculines ending in accented and, end, und, ant, ent, isk, graph representing persons or things: **Multipli'kand** multiplicand, **Dokto'rand** one who is passing his doctor's examination, **Dia'mant** (wk. with poetic forms **'Demant** or **De'mant**, which are e-pls. or wk.), **Konso'nant** consonant, **Ok'tant** octant, **Stu'dent** student, **Quo'tient** quotient, **Obe'lisk** obelisk, **Tele'graph** telegraph, &c. There is one exception: **der Ama'rant** amaranth, **des Ama'rants**, pl. **Ama'rante** or **Ama'ranten**. Neuters having these endings are e-plurals: **Kompli'ment** &c.

d. The bird der Papa'gei (sometimes an unmut e-plural) parrot.

## II. Older Usage and Modern Dialect.

the singular after the analogy of the group of strong feminines which after the loss of their distinctive vowel endings seemed in M H G and early N H G to be uninflected in the singular. Thus arose clear forms for singular and plural. In the same manner the strong feminines of the mutated e plural class which were once inflected in the singular as described in 71. 2 c, became uninflected there after the analogy of the other strong feminine group, and thus all feminines

three classes

2 Earlier in the period strong masc and neut nouns have not infrequently in the gen plural

Sittenspruchen (Goethe), but it is now strictly confined to it and survives in only a few archaic expressions, such as 'aller'orten everywhere, 'vieler'orten in many places, 'aller'wegen everywhere, always

### 77. Models of Inflection for the Weak Declension:

#### Singular.

Knabe boy, m.	Graf count, m.	Frau woman, f.	Feder pen, f.
N. der Knabe	der Graf	die Frau	die Feder
G. des Knaben	des Grafen	der Frau	der Feder
D. dem Knaben	dem Grafen	der Frau	der Feder
A. den Knaben	den Grafen	die Frau	die Feder

#### Plural.

Knabe boy, m.	Graf count, m.	Frau woman, f.	Feder pen, f.
N. die Knaben	die Grafen	die Frauen	die Federn
G. der Knaben	der Grafen	der Frauen	der Federn
D. den Knaben	den Grafen	den Frauen	den Federn
A. die Knaben	die Grafen	die Frauen	die Federn

### MIXED DECLENSION.

78. This declension, which is a mixture of the strong and weak declensions or the strong and foreign declensions, falls into two groups—one strong in the sing and weak in the pl., the other also strong in the sing. but with the foreign ending *s* in the pl. — der Staat state, des Staat(e)s, pl. die Staaten; das Echo echo, des Echos, pl. die Echos. There are but few native German words in the mixed declension, but a large number of foreign nouns in both groups, among which there is a tendency, not now so marked as earlier in the period, to drop sometimes the *s* of the gen sing. das Drama, 'des Dramas, or occasionally Drama. Foreign words in this declension do not so frequently take the accent upon the last syllable as in the other declensions.



*Note. Historical Development.* The mixed declension is made up of words from different sources. The nucleus of the group with the weak plural in -en consisted of weak neuter and masculine nouns. On account of their frequent use in the plural they were prevented from following the weak nouns described in 68, into the strong declension. Their frequent use in the plural preserved their old weak plural form in -en, which in these words developed a peculiar plural meaning, namely the idea of a group of connected parts or closely related individuals: *Augen, Ohren, Wangen*, (wk. neut. in M.H.G.), *Waden* (wk. masc. in M.H.G.), *Schmerzen, Sporen, Strahlen, Vetter, Ahnen, Untertanen*, &c. As the en-plural became associated in these words with the idea of a group, the ending -en could not be used here in the singular to indicate a single individual as the -en in the other weak nouns in 68 which went over into the strong declension, as in *Balken* sing. and *Balken* pl. Thus the strong inflection came to be used here in the singular, which established a clear distinction, strong inflection in the singular to indicate an individual, and the weak en-plural to indicate a group: *das Auge, des Auges*, but in the plural *die Augen*. A number of words indicating living beings, however, fluctuated between strong and weak inflection in the singular as the idea of life was so closely associated with the weak declension that it often suggested weak inflection here. These fluctuations with the indication of present usage are given after the different nouns in 79. 1 and 76. 1. 3.

This association of the idea of a group of related individuals with the en-plural created a new masculine and neuter plural type, which became productive and thus attracted a number of strong nouns into this new plural: *Dornen, Stacheln, Zieraten, Forsten* (connected tracts of forest land), *Staaten* (first used in a collective sense of the States General of Holland), *Enden* (beide Enden after the analogy of beide Augen), *Betten* (at first with a collective idea of all the beds in the house), *Hemden* (at first with a collective idea, one's shirts), *Gliedmaßen* (in a collective sense of the limbs of the body), *Kleinodien, Unbilden*. A number of Low German and foreign words naturally gravitated into this declension under the influence of their meaning, which in the plural suggested the idea of a group of related parts or individuals: *Masten, Marsen, Toppen, Spanten, Watten, Muskeln, Nerven, Professoren, Konsuln, Dezemviren, Insekten, Statuten, Interessen, Juwelen*, &c. In words representing living beings, however, there is some fluctuation, as the idea of life often suggests here weak inflection, as indicated below after the different words.

As these words are so frequently used in the plural and in some cases so little in the singular the gender is not firmly associated with the word, so that some nouns appear in the singular as feminine as the en-plural, which is the commonest plural for feminines, suggested the feminine gender: *die but* in M.H.G. *das Wange*, *die but* in M.H.G. *der Wade*, *der* or now also *die Forst*, *der Zins* but formerly also *die Zinse*, *die Unbill* or less commonly *die Unbilde* for M.H.G. *daz unbilde*, *der Nerv* or sometimes *die Nerve*, *das Juwel* or sometimes *die Juwelle*. On the other hand, as in some words (*See*, &c.) the gender was either masculine or feminine the weak feminine form facilitated the entrance of the strong masculine into this declension by suggesting the en-plural.

In colloquial speech there is a tendency to inflect strong nouns in -el and -er according to the mixed declension, strong in the singular, weak in the plural, in order to distinguish the plural from the singular. See 79. 1. a. *Note* and b. *Note*.

Many foreign words with unstressed suffixes are inflected according to this declension, strong in the singular, weak in the plural, as they fit in here best. As they in general denote lifeless objects they were naturally inflected strong in the singular, but as their foreign unstressed endings did not adapt them to strong inflection in the plural they were declined according to the weak declension, which earlier in the period was intimately associated with foreign words.

The rise of the mixed declension has greatly hindered the development of German inflection toward greater simplicity in form, toward one declension for all masculines and neuters, i.e. the e-plural class or in case of nouns in -el, en, -er, -chen, -lein its e-less form. There is to-day a strong reaction against the mixed declension among good writers and scholars. The plural *Sinnen*, common in the classical period, has made way for the regular form *Sinne*. Forms like *Stiefeln, Pantoffeln* are yielding to *Stiefel, Pantoffel*. Foreign words are manifesting a tendency to assume the inflection of e-plurals, as indicated below.

**79. Strong in the Singular, Weak in the Plural.** To the group that forms the sing. strong and the plural weak belong:

1. A few native German or naturalized words:

a. Masculines: *Bur* (also wk.) *Boer, Butt* (sometimes an e-pl., sometimes a wk. fem. *die Butte*) *turbot, Dorn* (83), *Forst* (older plural *Forste* still often used; sometimes a wk. fem.) *forest, Gevatter* godfather, *Hader* old rag, *Kakerlak* (sing. also wk.) *albino, Lorbeer laurel, Mars* (sometimes fem.) *top* (naut. term), *Mast* (pl. also *Maste*) *mast, Muskel muscle, Nachbar* (sometimes wk.) *neighbor, Nerv* (sometimes a wk. fem. *die Nerve*) *nerve, Psalm psalm, Schmerz* (des Schmerzes, &c.; earlier in the period nom. also *Schmerze* or *Schmerzen*, gen. *Schmerzens*, dat. *Schmerzen*, acc. *Schmerzen*) *pain, See lake, Sinn* (from early N.H.G. almost up to our time pl. *Sinne* and *Sinnen*, now usually the former) *sense, Sporn* (pl. usually *Sporen*, but also sometimes *Spornen* and *Sporne*, the latter always when it refers to persons, as *Heißsporne hot spurs*) *spur, Staat state, Stachel sting, Strahl beam, ray, jet* (of water, &c.), *Topp* (pl. sometimes *Toppe, Topps*) *top part of the mast, Vetter* (sometimes wk.) *cousin, Zierat* (sometimes an e-pl.; sometimes a wk. fem.) *ornament, Zins* (pl. earlier in the period *Zinse*; sometimes a weak fem. *die Zinse*) *rent* (in this meaning now usually *Mietzins*), *interest* (in this sense usually in the pl.).

*Note.* In the language of the common people many words that belong to the unmutated e-less plural class, especially those in -el and -er, are inflected according to this group. This arises from the feeling that the plural ought in some way to be distinguished from the sing. This tendency appears occasionally in good authors: *spitze Giebeln* (Goethe); *das einzige Gelaß, welches noch Fenstern hatte* (Immermann); *die schlimmsten Gewissensskrupeln* (Raabe's A. T., chap. xxxiii); *die Splittern | zerbrechender Schäfte* (Scheffel). *Klirrend flogen die Splittern des Wurfgeschosses* (Raabe). *Die neuen Onkeln und Tanten* (Ertl's *Freiheit*, p. 79), *solche Trotteln* (ib. p. 259), *kuglige Dinge wie Klinkern und Marbeln* (W. A. Lay's *Experimentelle Didaktik*, p. 69), *seine Augen, voll blauer heimlicher Feuern* (Frenssen's *Bismarck*, p. 31). The plural *Stiefeln boots* is quite common, but not so much so as a little earlier in the period: *das Paar neuer Stiefeln* (Raabe), *ein Paar hoher Stiefeln* (Spielhagen's *Faustulus*, p. 45), *Reitstiefeln* (Hauptmann's *Und Pippa tanzt*, 1). The plural *Pantoffeln* is quite common, but is now yielding gradually to *Pan'toffel*.

b. Neuters: *Auge eye, Bett bed, Ende end, Gör* (N.G.; also a wk. fem. *die Göre*) *a little child, urchin, brat, Hemd shirt, 'Kleinod* (pl. *Klei'nödien*, also *'Kleinöde*, always when figurative) *jewel, Möbel* (pl. earlier in the period *Möbels* and *Möbeln*, of which the latter is still used, but is being gradually replaced by

Möbel) article or piece of furniture, Ohr ear, Schott (63. 5. c), Spant (used sometimes in the sing. in a collective sense as in das Achterspant, more commonly in the pl., die Achterspanten) frame (of ship), Want (used sometimes in the sing. in a collective sense: Ich stieg ins Fockwant; usually in the pl.; sometimes fem.) rigging, Watt (usually in the pl.; sometimes e-pl., sometimes a wk. fem. die Watte) shallow place bordering upon the shore only covered at high tide, and Herz heart, which inflects: N. and A. das Herz, G. des Herzens, D. dem Herzen, pl. die, der, den, die Herzen. Rarely with Dative dem Herz: Schier wird's dem Herz zu enge (Scheffel's *Trompeter*, Lieder jung Werners, v).

## 2. Many foreign nouns:

a. Masculines ending in unaccented -or, which is short and unaccented in the singular, but long and accented in the plural, thus conforming to the Latin, which shows a short and unaccented o in dissyllabic forms and a long and accented o when an additional syllable is added: der 'Doktör doctor, des 'Doktörs, dem 'Doktör (not 'Doktöre), den 'Doktör, plural die Dok'tören, &c.

*Note.* Of course, words in accented -ör belong to the unmutated e-plural class der Ma'jör major, des Ma'jors, pl. die Ma'jore.

b. Masculines in -ismus: der Kate'chismus, des Kate'chismus, pl. die Kate'chismen. They do not add an additional s in the gen. sing., and they change in the pl. -mus to -men. Earlier in the period the words of this group were often in French form instead of the Latin: Despotism, &c., instead of Despotismus, &c.

c. Neuters in -a, which sometimes drop the s of the gen. sing. and usually change -a in the pl. to -en: das Drama drama, des Dramas or sometimes des Drama, pl. die Dramen. Sometimes s is added to form the pl.: die Dramas. The plural of das Klima climate is die Klimate or Klimata, Klimas, Klimen, Klimaten. The plural of Komma comma is die Kommas, Kommata, Kommaten, Kommen.

d. Neuters ending in -eum, -ium, -uum, -on (unaccented) and masculines in unaccented -us and -ius, all of which take s (except those in us and ius) in the gen., or sometimes remain unchanged, and change in the pl. -um, -on, and -us to -en: das Mu'seum museum, des Mu'seums, pl. die Mu'seen; das Parti'zipium participle, des Parti'zipiums, pl. die Parti'zipien; das Indi'viduum individual, des Indi'viduums, pl. die Indi'viduen; das Distichon *distich*, des Distichons, pl. die Distichen (also Disticha), &c. Those in -us and -ius usually remain unchanged in the gen. sing.: der Nunzius, des Nunzius, pl. die Nunzien. A number of very common nouns in -us are manifesting a decided tendency to add the endings of the e-plural class to the foreign ending -us, more frequently, however, in the pl.: der Krokus, des Krokus, pl. die Krokusse or Krokus; der Omnibus, des Omnibus or Omnibusses, pl. die Omnibusse or Omnibus; der Bambus, des Bambusses or Bambus, pl. die Bambusse or Bambus; like Krokus also Fokus, Kaktus, (pl. also Kak'teen), Globus (pl. also Globen). This tendency is also marked in a number of proper names in -us, -es, -as, whether used as proper names or as common class nouns: Brutus, Herkules, Judas, pl. die Brutusse, Herkulesse, Judasse. A number of words may drop the foreign ending in the sing., and then add s in the gen. sing. and ien in the plural, or may be inflected according to the unmut. e-plural class: das Parti'zip, des Parti'zips, pl. die Parti'zipien or die Parti'zipe; das Kon'zil (more common than Kon'ziliun), des Kon'zils, die Kon'zilien or more commonly Kon'zile; das Prin'zip, des Prin'zips, pl. die Prin'zipe or Prin'zipien; der Typus or Typ, des Typus or des Typs, pl. die Typen.

Some neuters in -um take s in the gen. and change um to a in the plural: das Masku'linum, des Masku'linums, pl. die, der, den, die Masku'lina. Some

of these nouns often drop the *-um* of the sing., then take *s* in the gen., and change the *a* of the pl. to *en*: *das Verb* or *Verbum*, *des Verbs* or *Verbums*, pl. *die Verben* or *Verba*. A few of these neuters in *-um* take *s* in the pl.: *das Album*, *des Albums*, pl. *die Albums* (also *Alben*, *Album*, *Albume*).

e. Neuters formed from neuter adjectives which in the Latin end in *e* in the sing. and *ia* in the pl. The German nouns drop the *e* of the sing., thus ending usually in *-il* and *-äl*, and change the Latin pl. *ia* into *ien*: *das Fo'ssil* fossil, *des Fo'ssils*, pl. *die Fo'ssilien*; *das Mine'ral* mineral, *des Mine'ral's*, pl. *die Mine'ralien*, &c. A number of these words are drifting toward the unmut. e-pl. class: *das Rep'til* reptile, *des Rep'tils*, pl. *die Rep'tile* or *Rep'tilien*; *das Mine'ral*, *des Mine'ral's*, pl. *die Mine'rale* or *Mine'ralien*.

f. A number of isolated foreign words: the masculines *A'spekt* aspect (astrol.), prospect, view, *'Augur* (pl. *'Augure* or *Au'guren*; also wk.) augur, *Cä'sar* (pl. *Cä'saren*) Caesar, emperor, *'Dämon* (des *'Dämons*, pl. *die Dä'monen*) demon, *De'zemvir* (pl. *De'zemvirn*; also wk.) decemvir, *Fa'san* (also an e-pl. and wk.) pheasant, *'Großmogul* (pl. *'Großmoguln*, *'Großmogule*, or *Großmoguls*) Great Mogul, *Konsul* (pl. *Konsuln*) consul, *Pharao* (pl. *die Phara'onen*) Pharaoh, *Satyr* satyr, *Tri'bun* (also wk. and an unmutated e-pl.) tribune (magistrate), *Tri'umvir* (pl. *Tri'umvirn*; sometimes wk.) triumvir, *Zen'turio* (also wk. des *Zenturi'onen*, &c.; pl. *die Zenturi'onen*) centurion; the neuters: *Auto'graph* autograph, *In'sekt* insect, *Inte'resse* interest, *Ju'wel* (sometimes an e-pl.; often masc.; only rarely fem. *die Ju'wele*) jewel, *Kon'klave* conclave, *Sta'tut* statute.

g. A number of neuters in *-ens* remain unchanged in the sing. and change in the pl. *-ens* to *enzien* (entien): *das Rea'gens* reagent, *des Rea'gens*, pl. *die Rea'genzien* (Reagentien).

h. A number in unaccented *-os* and *-as* remain usually unchanged in the sing. and change in the pl. the stem and shift the accent upon the suffix: *der 'Heros* hero, *des 'Heros*, pl. *die He'roen*; *der 'Kustós* custodian, *des 'Kustos*, pl. *die Kus'toden*; *der 'Atlas* atlas, *des 'Atlases* or *des 'Atlas*, pl. *die 'Atlasse* or *At'lanten*; *der 'Primas* primate, *des 'Primas* (or *des Pri'maten*), pl. *die Pri'maten*, *'Primas*, or *'Primasse*; *das Epos* epic, *des Epos*, pl. *die Epen*, but *das Rhi'noze'ros* rhinoceros, *des Rhi'noze'ro(sse)s*, pl. *die Rhi'noze'rosse*.

80. To the group that takes the *s* in the gen. sing. and thruout the pl. belong:

1. A large number of masc. and neut. words from the French, English, and other languages, ancient or modern, which are still felt as foreign on account of their foreign sound, accent, or endings (often *a*, *o*, *u*, *i*; the French nasal vowels, *ain*, *ein*, *im*, *in*, *om*, *on*, *um*, *un*, for which see 25; a vowel before a silent final consonant) that cannot easily be fitted into the German declensions: *der Domino* domino, *des Dominos*, pl. *die, der, den, die Dominos*; *das* (also *der*) *Kinō* theater in which moving pictures are presented, in this sense = *Lichtspiel-theater*, sometimes also *kinetoscope* or *kinetograph*, in this sense = *das Kineto'skop* or *der Kineto'graph* (or *Kinemato'graph*), *des Kinos*, pl. *die, der, den, die Kinōs*; *das Cha'mäleon* (k-) chameleon, *des Cha'mäleons*, pl. *die, der, den, die Chamäleons*; *das Restaurant* (resto:'Rä:) restaurant, *des Restau'rants*, pl. *die Restau'rants*; *der Paletot* (palə'to:), *des Pale'tots*, pl. *die Pale'tots*. Also a few feminines belong here: *die Lady*, pl. *die Ladys*; *die Ma'ma*, pl. *die Ma'mas*; *die Miß*, pl. *die Misses* or *Missen*; *die Villa*, pl. *die Villas* or *Villen*; *die Team* (ti:m; fem. after the analogy of the corresponding German word *die Mannschaft*) team (as in football team), pl. *die Teams*.

Since the eighteenth century there has been a marked tendency in choice language to replace the foreign plural ending *s* by German *e* in case of masculines and neuters, and thus place these words in the unmutated e-plural class, or in case of feminines to inflect according to the weak declension. A large number of these words are already entirely or partially naturalized: *das Kos'tüm*, *des Kos'tüms*, *die Kos'tüme*; *der* (sometimes *das*) *Lift* (usually masc. after the analogy of the corresponding German words *der Aufzug* or *Fahrstuhl*), *des Lifts*, *die Lifte* or *Lifts*; *der Kaftan*, *des Kaftans*, *die Kaftane* or *Kaftans*; *der Turban*, *des Turbans*, *die Turbane* or *Turbans*; *das Defizit*, *des Defizits*, *die Defizite*

or Defizits; der (or das) Schrap'nell, des Schrap'nells, die Schrap'nells or Schrap'nelle; der Kai, des Kais, die Kais or Kaie. The words ending in a vowel sound or the French nasals offer the most stubborn resistance. Where, however, the nasal vowel has been replaced by a German vowel plus dental *n*, the words may be inflected according to the unmutating *e*-plural type: das Bataillon (batal'jon), pl. die Bataillone (batal'jona). If the French pronunciation is retained or if the nasal has been replaced by a vowel + velar *n* (*ŋ*) the words resist German inflection: das Bassin (ba'sē: or ba'sen) basin, pl. die Bassins (ba'sēs or ba'senŋ).

2. A few German words not really substantives may take an *s* in the gen. sing. and thruout the pl., such as letters of the alphabet, exclamatory particles, other parts of speech used as substantives, or the syntactical fragment of a sentence or a whole sentence used as a modern compound (see 249. II. 2: for rule as to gender see 98. 2. C. c): das A the letter a, des As, pl. die As; das Ja the word yes, des Jas, pl. die Jas; das Ach the exclamation Oh!, des Achs, pl. die Achs. Mein früheres Ich my former self; entweder sind die Menschen von ihren Ichs und was damit Bezug hat, besessen usw. (Schiller). Ein ganzes Heer von Freilichs, Dennochs und Abers (Gutzkow). Da gibt's Gutentags und Gutenabends, daß kein Ende ist (Goethe). Der Schlagetot ruffian, des Schlagetots, der Schubbejack ragamuffin, des Schubbejacks, pl. die Schubbejacks or Schubbejacke.

Others prefer non-inflection here: das A, des A, pl. die A. Wie so schal dünkt mich dies Leben! . . . Stets das Heute nur, des Gestern und des Morgen flaches Bild (Grillparzer's *Der Traum ein Leben*, 1). Das Bild eines frechen Tunichtgut (Fontane's *Vor dem Sturm*, IV. 19); alle Pharisäer und Gernegroß (id., *Stechlin*, XXXII); die Stellungnahme des Ich zu dem Volke (Hugo Gaudig in *Zeitschrift für Pädagogische Psychologie*, Nov.-Dec. 1918, p. 360). Sie (die Jugend) ist durchaus erfüllt von den Aussichten des Morgen und Übermorgen (*Vossische Zeitung*, June 8, 1919).

In a number of cases there is a tendency more or less strong to inflect such formations according to the regular declensions: mein reizendes Gegenüber (beim Tisch), meines Gegenübers, pl. meine Gegenüber; das Jelängerjeliieber, d. J. . . . ber; über uns deutsche Gernegroße (1906, p. 268), lebhafte Hoche (*Frankfurt* . . . or Hoch), Übersehen der anderen Iche (*Zeit. für den D. Unterricht*, Jahrg. 25, p. 387), Nichtsnutze (nom. pl., quite common), diese Nimmersatte (nom. pl., quite common), alle ihre Stelldicheine (rare) (J. Paul), Kehrause (pl. more commonly unchanged Kehraus), Saufause (often in colloquial speech, usual pl. in literary language Saufaus), Taugenichtse (nom. pl.; very common), die Tunichtgute (Fontane's *Pog.*, VIII), Vergißmeinnichte (nom. pl.; quite common). See 63. 2. *e* and 6.

3. Many words in the regular declensions, mostly words representing persons, take colloquially this *s* in the pl., especially so in N.G.: die Kerls the fellows, die Mädchens the girls, die Fräuleins the young ladies, and even in case of wk. nouns, which add the *s* to the regular weak plural: die Herrens the gentlemen, die Jungens young chaps.

a. This *s* was used in Gothic to form the pl. of all masc. and fem. words, but it had disappeared in H.G. before the O.H.G. period. It was, however, still preserved in Middle Low German in a few words representing persons, like Herdes (= Hirten), where the *s* was needed to dis-

and proper names, which German in Müllers haben Gödeke, Rötteleken, their plural became common for many names of things. In the six Dutch influence, this plural spread in Low German and was used colloquially in the language.

avoided in choice

## 81. Models of Inflection for Mixed Declension:

## Singular.

Staat <i>state</i> , m.	Drama <i>drama</i> , n.	Trupp <i>troop</i> , m.	Villa <i>villa</i> , f.
N. der Staat	das Drama	der Trupp	die Villa
G. des Staat(e)s	des Drama(s)	des Trupps	der Villa
D. dem Staat(e)	dem Drama	dem Trupp	der Villa
A. den Staat	das Drama	den Trupp	die Villa

## Plural.

N. die Staaten	die Dramen	die Trupps	die Villas
G. der Staaten	der Dramen	der Trupps	der Villas
D. den Staaten	den Dramen	den Trupps	den Villas
A. die Staaten	die Dramen	die Trupps	die Villas

## FOREIGN WORDS.

82. A few foreign words that, on account of the retention of their foreign endings (us, is, um, o, &c.), cannot be declined in any of the preceding declensions remain as they are found in their native language, the form of the nom. sing. being used thruout the sing., and the nom. pl. thruout the pl., the article alone marking the other cases: *der* (des, dem, den) *Musikus* musician, pl. *die* (der, den, die) *Musizi*; *der Kasus*, pl. *die Kasus*, &c.

Scholars, however, often prefer to decline Latin words thruout as in the original, more frequently so earlier in the period: *Imperfectum*, *Imperfecti*, &c. This is most common with grammatical terms.

a. Note the following irregular formations: *der Cherub*, *des Cherubs*, pl. *die 'Cherubim* (also *Cherube*, *Cherubs*, *Cheru'binen*); *der Seraph*, *des Seraphs*, pl. *die Seraphe* or *Seraphim*.

## DIFFERENTIATION OF SUBSTANTIVE FORMS.

83. Many nouns have two forms and may be declined according to the one or the other. This redundancy may assume one of four forms: (1) The noun may have two genders for the same form, as *der* or more commonly *die* *Hirse millet*. (2) There may be two forms for the same noun, each with a different gender, as *der Quast tassel* or *die Quaste*. (3) The noun may have only one form for the sing., but two in the pl., as *der Ort town*, pl. *Orte* or less commonly *Orter*. (4) The same word may have in different dialects the same gender, but different forms or declensions or both, which often pass from their respective dialects over into the literary language with or without differentiated meaning: *die Schluff* (H.G., but now little used) and *die Schlucht* (L.G., but now well established in the literary language) cleft, gorge; *der Brunnen well, fountain*, *Born* (L.G. and M.G.; poetic) fount, well-spring. Redundant forms occur often in the spoken and written language, and it is frequently difficult to choose between them, and no harm will be done if the one or other be chosen, unless usage at last settles down upon one of the forms, as in *das Bündel bundle*, *der Docht wick*, *der Garaus finishing stroke*, *der Käfig cage*, &c. Double forms have always existed in the language and have resulted in good, for many of them have been put to use by the people who, led by an economic instinct, have given to each form a slightly different shade of meaning. Words also which have only one form for different meanings and applications tend to develop different forms for the different meanings and applications. Also nouns which are derived from the different forms of the same verb or other word tend toward a distinct differentiation in meaning.

Either the difference in gender or in the form of the noun in the singular or plural may cause the difference of meaning, as can be seen by the following illustrative examples:

*Der Acker* field, pl. *Äcker*; *der Acker* acre, pl. *Acker*.

*Der Akt* act (in a drama), pl. *Akte*; *die Akte* act (of parliament or some other authority), document, pl. *Akten*.

*Der Antichrist* antichrist, *des Antichrists*, pl. *die Antichriste*; *der Antichrist* enemy of Christianity, *des Antichristen*, *die Antichristen*.

*Die* (Goethe's *Egmont*, 5; this attempt at differentiation has not been generally sustained, now usually *das*) *Ärgernis* anger; *das Ärgernis* that which causes anger, i.e. offense.

*Der Balg* skin, pl. *Bälge*; in the meanings *child*, *thing* (in familiar language referring to a child, boy, or girl), also in a bad sense *brat*, *der Balg*, pl. *Bälge*, but now also frequently neuter with plural *Bälger*, following the analogy of *das Kind*; in the meaning *bellows* with the plural *Bälge* or *Balgen*, the latter usually in compounds: *Die Bälge* or *Balgen* einer Orgel treten, *Balgenschwengel*, &c.

*Der Ball*, pl. *Bälle* ball; *der Ballen* bale.

*Der Band* volume, pl. *Bände*; *das Band* ribbon, pl. *Bänder*; *das Band* tie (of friendship, &c.), *fetter*, pl. *Bande*.

Der Bau (see 63 1 b)

Der Bauer peasant, der (also das) Bauer bird cage

Das Beet bed (in a garden), pl Beete, das Bett bed (for sleeping), river bed, pl Betten  
In the meaning river bed the plural Bette is sometimes used längs der Flußbette (Fr König  
Feb 16 1905) die Benutzung der öffentlichen  
Aug 31 1905)  
der Born well spring fount poetic word  
die Buckel boss (on a shield), pl Buckeln,

lf, das (or der) Chor place in the church

where the choir sits See also 70 d

Der Christ (pop., also in Faust, Abend) Christmas present, des Christes, pl die Christe,  
der Christ Christian des Christen, pl Christen

Das Denkmal monument, pl usually Denkmäler, but often Denkmale in choice language

Der Dienstmann man on the streets who carries bundles for hire, vassal, pl Dienstmänner in  
the first meaning, pl Dienstleute servants of a house pl Dienstmännern vassals

Das Ding thing pl Dinge, pl Dinger when speaking in a tone of pity or playfully of the  
young of animals, birds, or of girls (as queer things) or disparagingly and contemptuously of  
things das, der, or (a genitive used now for all cases see

255 II 1 II c) da or person) what you may call it, what  
you may call him or girls das kleine Dings (Storm's Ein

Doppelgänger, p 215)

Der Dorn thorn, pl Dornen used of the bush, pl Dorne with reference to different varieties  
as Hage-, Kreuz-, Schwarz-, Weißdorne; pl Dorne and Dörner of the individual thorns, and  
also in the mechanical arts of a punch tongue of a buckle, &c Usage in all these points, how  
ever, is not yet firmly fixed Compare 78 Note

Der Druck print pressure, pl of the simple form usually Drucke; pl in compounds usually  
unmutated where the word is felt as belonging to drucken to print as in Nachdrucke pirated  
editions, Abdrucke reprints, Neudrucke reprints, pl in compounds usually mutated where the  
word is felt as belonging to drucken to press, as in die Abdrucke impressions (by stamping),  
proofs (of photos) copies (of books), Ausdrücke expressions Eindrücke impressions (of the  
mind), Händedrucke

Der Effekt effect, impression pl Effekte; pl Effekten effects movables, stocks

Der Erbe heir, das Erbe inheritance

Erkenntnis decision of a judge, die Erkenntnis  
voran

de

tillage, but the tendency is to

meanings Fleck more commonly in the literal meaning, as Unfleck, etc., and Flecken in the  
moral sense of blemish In the compound Marktflecken market town, borough the form in -en  
is always used

Der (sometimes die) Flur entrance hall of a house, pl Flure if masc., die Flur field (poetic),  
pl Fluren

Der Fuß foot (of a person), pl Füße; zwei Fuß (see 96 4 (1)) lang two feet long, Füße ver-  
schiedener Länge feet (standards of measurement) of different length

Die Gans goose pl Gänse, das Gans word goose pl die Gans or Ganses, Das erste Gans  
ist nicht so schön geschrieben wie das zweite Thus any noun of any gender becomes neut  
when it stands not for a person or object but for the written word which represents it

Der Gehalt intrinsic worth or value, also der Salzgehalt des Wassers, &c das (sometimes  
still der, in accordance with older usage) Gehalt salary, pl Gehälter (sometimes as formerly  
Gehalte)

Das Geschrei cry, clamor, das Geschrei continued disagreeable screaming See b below

Das Gesicht face pl Gesichter, das Gesicht vision pl Gesichte

Das Gewand garment pl Gewänder, pl Gewande (poetic) See also 73 b

Die Gift (rare except in the compound die Mitgift) present, das (see 100 1) Gift poison

Der Haft clasp die Haft arrest

Halte, ein (neut) Halt a stop or end as in ein Halt  
only seeming differentiation The second form is  
h is here used as a noun, and hence is neut accord

Heide to rule (see 90 2 c e)

Der Heide heathen die Heide heath

Das Horn horn pl Hörner, pl Horne kinds of horn

Der Hut hat die Hut guard die Vorhut vanguard

Der Import import pl Importe (also Importen) Der Wert der Importe (Hamburgischer  
Die

Das Korn corn grain pl Körner, also Korn whiskey, pl Körne or Korns feiner Korn Dutch

Der Kunde customer die Kunde information

Der Laden shutter, pl. Laden (also Läden); der Laden store, shop, pl. Läden.

Das Land land, pl. Länder; pl. Lande, the older pl. form, which still remains (1) in poetry, as in *über alle Lande* (in prose Länder); (2) in proper names, as in *die Niederlande* the Netherlands, *die Rheinlande*, *die Vierlande* (four islands in the Elb southeast of Hamburg); (3) to designate the different divisions of one political whole: *die deutschen Lande*, in recent usage, however, assuming more and more a general poetic meaning, being replaced in the exact meaning of the existing states by *die deutschen Länder* (Dr. Fritz Poetsch in *Die Woche*, Sept. 6, 1919, and so regularly in *Die Verfassung des Deutschen Reichs*, Aug. 11, 1919). See also *a* below. (4) in *Eilande* islands.

Das Licht light, candle; pl. Lichter lights; pl. Lichte candles.

Der Lump poor, ragged, worthless fellow, pl. die Lumpe, also Lumpen; der Lumpen rag.

Der Mai (month of) May; die (formerly der) Maie green bough (used for festive decorations in May), Maypole, pl. Maien.

Der Makler broker, agent; der Mäkler broker or more commonly faultfinder.

Der Mann man, pl. Männer; pl. Mannen warriors, vassals; pl. Mann (see 96. 4. (1)); pl. -leute (see 96. 9).

Der Mensch human being; das Mensch wench, strumpet, pl. Menscher. The neuter is sometimes used in a good sense in the meaning *woman*: *Es ist gut, daß ich altes Mensch noch bei wege bin, wenn ihr mich braucht* (Bernhardine Schulze-Smidt's *Im finstern Tal*, XII).

Der Mittag noon; das (also der) Mittag dinner.

Der Mo'ment moment (of time), das Mo'ment moment (consequence, weight).

Der Mond moon, satellite, month, now an unmutated e-plural, was also weak earlier in the period. The weak gen. still occurs in the first meaning in compounds in poetic style, as in *Mondenglanz*. In the last meaning Mond is still sometimes weak in poetic style, especially in the plural.

Das Moos moss, pl. Moose; das Moos (or Ried) swamp, pl. Möser (Riede).

Der Muff, pl. Muffe, or sometimes die Muffe, pl. Muffen; die Muffe, pl. Muffen sleeve (in mechanics).

Die Mutter mother, female screw: pl. Mütter mothers, Muttern (earlier here also Mütter) female screws.

Das or der Nickel nickel (metal); der Nickel ten pfennig piece.

Der (or das) Ort awl (from the original meaning *point*), pl. Orte (or Örtel); der Ort place, town; pl. Orte places, as in *Man kann nicht an allen Orten zugleich sein*; pl. Orte or Örtel towns. Many grammarians favor Örtel in the last meaning, so as to distinguish between Orte places and Örtel towns. Actual usage, however, favors Orte for both meanings.

Der Ost east wind, Nord north wind, Süd south wind, &c., all with a pl. in e; der Osten the East, Westen the West, Norden the North, Süden the South, all indicating a section of country. Both forms may also often be used for the points of the compass, the shorter forms especially in maritime expressions: *Der Wind kam rein aus Ost(en)*. In plain prose it would be more common to say *der Ostwind*, *Westwind*, &c., for the winds, while in nautical language *der Ost*, *West*, &c., are much used.

Der (sometimes das) Pack or Packer pack, bundle; das Pack rabble.

Die Pfirsiche or more commonly der Pfirsich (pl. die Pfirsiche) peach (fruit); der Pfirsich peach-tree, more commonly Pfirsichbaum.

Das Pro'dukt production, pl. die Pro'dukte productions of the mind; pl. die Pro'dukten productions of the soil, produce. This distinction is common in familiar language, but the pl. Produkte is the only form used in the literary language for all these meanings except in compounds: *Produkte*, but *Produktenhändler*, *Produktenmarkt*.

Der Rest that which is left, ruin, pl. die Reste, pl. die Rester remnants of cloth in a dry goods store.

Der Sand sand, strand, sandy plain, sandbank; pl. Sande kinds of sand, in poetic style strands, sandy plains; pl. Sände sandbanks (in river or sea).

Die Sau sow, pl. die Säue (early N.H.G.) sows, swine, in the latter meaning still Säue in expressions following more or less accurately biblical utterances, as in *Man muß die Perlen nicht vor die Säue werfen* (G. Ompteda's *Eysen*, chap. xxxiii); (eighteenth century) pl. die Säue sows, domestic swine, Sauen, wild swine; now the wk. pl. is usually used for domestic sows and wild swine, altho Säue is sometimes in accordance with older usage employed for the former meaning.

Das Scheit piece of wood; pl. Scheite or Scheiter pieces cut for a purpose, as to burn, &c., pl. Scheiter pieces broken by violence: *das Schiff geht zu Scheitern*.

Der Scharlach scarlet (color, cloth); der and often das Scharlach scarlet-fever.

Der Schild shield; das Schild shop sign.

Die Schwellung swelling, or more commonly die Geschwulst; der Schwellung bombast.

Der Schurz apron for men, pl. Schurze; die Schürze apron for women and children.

Der See lake, pl. die Seen; die See sea.

Die Spalte (sometimes der Spalt in the first meaning) split, column (in a newspaper); der Spalt (pl. die Spalte) split in a figurative sense, contentious division, quarrel, especially common in the compound *Zwiespalt* dissension.

Der Stock stick, cane, story (of a house), pl. die Stöcke canes, pl. Stocke or Stock stories: *Spazierstöcke walking sticks*, but *ein Haus von drei Stocken* or *Stock a house of three stories*, and *Das Haus ist drei Stock hoch*.

Der Teil part; das Teil share.

Der Tropfen drop; der Tropf dull, stupid fellow.

Der Trupp gang, unorganized crowd, flock, pl die Trupps (or Truppe), as ein Trupp Arbeiter, Menschen, Kinder, Hühner, Genssen; die ~  
 Das Tuch piece of cloth (handkerchief, sh  
 Eine Uhr a clock, watch, pl die Uhren, e

pl zwei Uhr two o'clock, &c  
 Der Verdienst wages, das Verdienst merit, desert

Die Vesper vespers (see also 96 8), das also die Vesper afternoon meal Nachmittage lang hatten sie hier gespielt und zum Vesper rohe Ruben gegessen (Hermann Hesse's *Unterm Rad*, p 21)

Die Walnuß (pl Walnusse) walnut (fruit), der Walnuß (pl Walnusse) or more commonly der Walnußbaum walnut (tree)

Die Wehr defense, das Wehr dam (in a river)

Das Wort word with reference to meaning in connected discourse, pl die Worte; pl die Wörter words apart from their meaning Er sprach in beredten Worten, but Das Telegramm hat 16 Wörter. This distinction is not yet universally observed, Worte seeming to be the favorite in both meanings

Der Wurm worm, das Wurm helpless babe, 'poor thing' (man or woman)

Das Zeug material, substance, stuff, das Zeugs (gen now used for all cases, see 255. II 1 H c) stuff in a contemptuous sense

The similarity in form is sometimes merely accidental das Tor gate, der Tor fool, die Mark mark (coin), das Mark marrow, &c

a There is a tendency to make a difference between the neut pl in -e and that in -er, when they both occur with the same word The former has in a number of cases collective force, denoting a number of connected parts or related individuals, the latter form has separating, individualizing force das Wort word, pl Worte words in connected discourse with reference to their meaning, pl Wörter words as individuals without reference to their connection in one sentence, as Wörterbuch, lit word book, dictionary, das Band tie, ribbon, pl Bande ties of

or related individuals is also closely associated in many words with the plural ending -en of the mixed declension, as shown in 78 Note The difference between plurals in -er and -e is sometimes merely a matter of style See 73 b The forms in -e are older than those in -er, and hence often naturally incline to use in poetical or less common expressions

b There is a tendency to distinguish between the meaning of words of the form Ge — e and on the other hand Ge ~ The form Ge — e (never mutating the stem vowel) has a more abstract meaning tempt or dislike while the form ~

proceeds about however, in a disparaging sense Ihr Benehmen war ein wenig keck, das konnte er sich nicht verhehlen, aber wie so ganz frei von Dreistigkeit war diese Keckheit, wie so ganz ohne Gefall-sucht ihr gefälliges Getue und Gehabe—Wildenbruch's *Die heilige Frau*, p 130), das Geklopfe a continual unpleasant knocking or ham and fro, but das Geräusch the noise, pl directly from the stem of the verb witho of the derivative noun must of course a from hämmern, &c The -e, however, altho the distinction cannot appear in tl screaming, but das Geschrei a cry, clamor, &c

.. according to their gender,  
 meaning das Hindernis  
 There is, however, much

## INFLECTION OF PROPER NOUNS.

84. Proper nouns as well as common nouns were once inflected strong and weak. In the seventeenth century both masculine and feminine names are sometimes still inflected weak thruout, but almost all traces of this older inflection have disappeared from the literary language



except the plural ending *-en* of feminines (see 93. 1. *b.* (2)), the rather colloquial *dat.* and *acc.* ending *en* (see 87), and the corrupted *gen.* *ens* (86. 2. *a.*), which is in fact a *str. gen.* added to a *wk. gen.* Other weak forms are still occasionally found: *Was ist die ganze schleswig-holsteinische Geschichte neben der Geschichte des Alten Fritzen?* (Fontane's *Der Tunnel über der Spree*, chap. iv). *Mit des alten Fritzen eigenhändigem Krückstock* (id., *Vor dem Sturm*, III. chap. ii). *Mit des Herzogs Moritzen Obersten, dem Herrn Sebastian von Walwitz* (Raabe's *Unseres Herrgotts Kanzlei*, chap. vi). *Er redete auch den jüngsten Ursleuen, sein Paten- und Enkelkind, an in einer Weise, die mich besonders belustigte* (R. Huch's *Ludolf Ursleu*, chap. xi). The old weak *gen.* has also been preserved in a number of compounds: *Ottendorf, Luisenstraße*. Outside of these compounds the *gen.* of these names is *Ottos, Luise(n)s*. Other traces of weak inflection in the names of persons and families are given in 93. 1. *b.* (2) and (6). The ending *-en* is best preserved in the plural of feminine names. See 93. 1. *b.* (2). It is often found in the singular in the *dat.* and *acc.* of unmodified names. See 87. Tho this singular form in *-en* is now felt as a weak case form, it was originally in all strong masculine proper names an ending borrowed from the *acc.* of the strong adjective declension, as in *diesen, guten*. Later it spread to the *dat.*, as it was taken for a weak case ending, which is the same for the *acc.* and *dat.* This misconception was all the more natural, as many masculine and feminine proper names were originally weak and hence had *-en* in the *dat.* and *acc.* Thus this *-en*, now used uniformly in the *dat.* and *acc.* of *masc.* and *fem.* proper names, had a twofold origin.

The *str. declension* has also been much reduced, and there is, as will be seen below, much fluctuation in present usage. There is a general tendency in all classes of proper nouns and often in titles to drop the *s* of the *gen.* whenever preceded by an article or other modifying word that marks distinctly the case. With names of persons this can now be considered a rule.

85. Those proper nouns that have the article always before them—i.e. the names of natural divisions of the earth's surface (as rivers, lakes, seas, mountains, plains, forests, &c.), the names of countries of the *fem.* or *masc.* gender, names of newspapers, works of art, months, days of the week, nations, peoples, parties, dynasties—were originally, and in part are still, common class nouns, and hence are in general declined, as common class nouns of the same form would be: *der Rhein* the Rhine, *des Rheins*, &c.; *der Brocken* (peak in the Harz Mts.), *des Brockens*, &c.; *die Alpen* the Alps, *der Alpen*, &c.; *die Schweiz* Switzerland, *der Schweiz*, &c.; *in den letzten Tagen des Augusts* (Raabe); *der Preuße* the Prussian, *des Preußen*, &c.; *der Karolinger* Carolingian, *des Karolingers*, &c.

*a.* The names of months, newspapers, works of art, literary productions, organizations, boats, ships, now more generally drop the *s* of the *gen.*: *Am Abend des 22. August* (*Beilage zur Allgemeinen Zeitung*, 18. Sept. 1901), *zu Ende des Februar* (Stilgebauer's *Götz Krafft*, I, p. 41), but in poetic language where the genitive precedes its governing noun inflection is preserved as in *des Maies Erwachen*; *der Redakteur des Coriolan*, *des Bund*, &c. editor of the *Coriolan*, *Bund*, &c.; *der Dichter des Faust* the author of *Faust*; *der Gruß des „Schubertbund“* the greeting from the Schubertbund (musical organization), *auf der Kommandobrücke des „Sperber“* (Dominik's *Kamerun*, p. 43) upon the conning-bridge of the "Sperber" (name of boat) (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Dec. 15, 1905), &c. The names of days of the week are inflected when used adverbially, but when used after prepositions or after a governing noun non-inflection after the article is common: *Die Zusammenkunft ist des Dienstags*, but *während des ganzen Montag* (Rundschau, 2. 5, 278, quoted by Sanders in his *Ergänzungs-wörterbuch*, p. 547 and censured by him as careless, but to-day this dropping of the genitive ending *s* is quite common and natural in accordance with usage in case of names of months), *die Ereignisse des Donnerstag* (*Hamburgischer Correspondent*, May 5, 1905), *in den Morgenstunden des Montag* (*Frankfurter Zeit.*, May 19, 1920). Also foreign names of rivers and mountains as a rule drop the *s* in the *gen.*: *die Höhen des Monte Cavo* the heights of Monte Cavo, *das Tal des* (or *der* in accordance with German usage) *untern Rhône*, *im Wassergebiet des Po und des Rheins* (K. Bohnenberger in *Zeitschrift für deutsche Philologie*, 1913, p. 372), &c. This usage, tho strongly condemned by grammarians, is spreading even to German geographical names: *für einen Anwohner des Stechlin* (lake) (Fontane's *Stechlin*, III), *auf dem Gipfel des Hohenstaufen* (Raabe's *Pechlin*, chap. xiv), *am Westhang des Schratzmännle* (*Großes Hauptquartier*, Oct. 13, 1915), *die Gewässer des Rhein* (Kutzen and Steinecke's *Das deutsche Land*, p. 30), *diese Gegend des Main* (ib., p. 223), *die fernen*

Hohen des Spessart (Stilgebauer's *Golz Kraft*, I, 1, p 30) the distant heights of the Spessart (a well-wooded mountainous district of Bavaria), &c Examples can even be found in textbooks on geography. It is a natural impulse towards uniformity, as all other proper nouns drop s in the gen when preceded by an article (see 86 1)

b The names of the months often drop the article and remain uninflected after Anfang, Mitte, Ende: Ende Mai the last of May See 94 3 A b

c The great mass of foreign names of peoples and tribes have been conformed to German inflection, but those which still retain endings (a, i, o, u, oi, &c) which resist inflection according to German models take an s in the gen sing and throught the plural, or perhaps more commonly remain uninflected, especially in the plural, the article alone indicating the case and number: der Eskimo, des Eskimo(s), pl die Eskimo(s), die Herero (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Oct 18, 1904) found nine times in this issue and die Hereros in this same issue three times. If s becomes established in the genitive singular and the uninflected form in the plural the inflection will be conformed to that of the e less plural type except in the dative plural, where the uninflected form or the form in -s must be used

86 1 Names of persons and all political divisions, as countries, states, counties, cities, and the like do not in general take an article except when modified by an adjective. The proper name takes an s (never es) in the gen sing when it is not preceded by an article or limiting adjective, but takes no ending when preceded by an article, limiting adjective, or the genitive of a noun with which it stands in apposition: Wilhelms Hüt, but der Hüt des kleinen Wilhelm, Annas Hüt, or der Hüt der Anna; die Universitäten Deutschlands, but die Verfassung des republikanischen Deutschland; die Einwohner der Hauptstadt Berlin, das Kind des Schuhmachers Schmidt. In all these cases the proper name forms with the governing noun a group with the chief stress upon the last member.

If the person has two or more names, the last one only takes the s: die Regierung Friedrich Augusts, Marie von Ebner-Eschenbachs gesammelte Schriften, &c

a If a masculine noun in the genitive modified by a preceding article limiting adjective or the genitive of a noun with which it stands in apposition precede the noun upon which it depends it usually takes an s: des großen Karls Taten (but die Taten des großen Karl) des Adolfs Burgers Haus, des verrathenen Arthurs Vater (Lienhard's *König Arthur* 5) des Pastors Friedrichs Sohn, des Onkels Heinrichs Stimme. Also the modified name preceding the pro-

in all these cases is the survival of an older usage which always required an s in the genitive of strong masculine names (see 89). Now however not even the above mentioned remnant of this rule is observed closely: des Stabtrompeters Raffmanns Blasen (Scheffels *Trompeter* 6 Stück) des Heinzls Mutter (Meinhardt) des alten Sparrs Augen (Wildenbruch) des alten Petersens Tochter (Fontane) des alten Pastors Reiche Amtsnachfolger (Fedor Sommers *Ernst Reiland* p 27). These examples indicate that the law of immediate contact referred to above and also in 92 1 a is not yet firmly established. It is opposed by the feeling that a name ought not to be inflected if it is preceded by an article.

In case of neuter names of countries continents and states the

*stück*, III). A proper noun cannot only be used as a common noun with reference to one of a class of individuals, but also to one individual in different stages of development as different characteristics are here compared: *Wiewohl diese Szene erst in der Ausgabe von 1808 hinzugekommen ist, hat sich hier Goethe völlig in den Charakter des Fausts seiner frühen Jugend hineinzufühlen vermocht* (Johannes Volkelt's *Zwischen Dichtung und Philosophie*, p. 7).

c. There is sometimes a shade of meaning between inflection and non-inflection after a preceding noun: *die Blüteperiode der Ostseestädte Stettin, Dänzig, Königsberg* *the period of greatest prosperity for the Baltic cities Stettin, Danzig, Königsberg*, but *Es ist die Blüteperiode vornehmlich der Ostseestädte: Stettins, Dänzigs, Königsbergs* (Lamprecht's *Deutsche Geschichte*, zweiter Ergänzungsband, p. 459) *It is the period of greatest prosperity, especially for the cities along the Baltic, particularly for Stettin, Danzig, Königsberg*. In the first example *Stettin, Danzig, Königsberg*, appositives to *Ostseestädte*, stand in such a close grammatical relation to the two preceding nouns that they form with them a group and, as the last member of the group, receive the chief stress. In the second example the three appositives stand in a looser grammatical relation to the preceding nouns and hence form an independent group with independent stress and it becomes necessary to indicate the grammatical relation to the preceding group. Similarly *der Tód der zwei bedeutenden Förscher Mínor und Erich Schmídt*, but *mit dem Töde zweier bedeutender Förscher, Mínor's und Erich Schmídt's* (Jos. Körner in *Literaturblatt für germanische und romanische Philologie*, XXXIX. Jahrg., p. 18).

2. For names of persons and places not preceded by an article, the following variations of the general rule for the formation of the gen. occur:

a. Names of persons ending in a sibilant *s, ß, sch, x, z*, may remain unchanged in the gen. sing., adding, usually, however, the apostrophe: *Voß' Gedichte*, *von Ines' kleinen kräftigen Händen* (Storm), *nach Pentz' Weisung* (Fontane), *die Stimmen von Felix' Kameraden*, *eine Anzahl von Lenz' Versen* (Hermann Grimm), *Agnes' Hochzeit* (G. Hirschfeld), *das Bildnis aus dem dunkeln Winkel der Studierstube Adam Olearius'* (Jensen), *Isolde Kurz, die Tochter Hermann Kurz'* (Bartels's *Deutsche Dichtung*, p. 202), *Brockhaus' Konversations-Lexikon*, *Professor Delitzsch' Hypothesen* (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Feb. 11, 1905). Sometimes we find *s* after those in *s* and quite often after those in *sch*: *Voß's Luise* (Karl Erbe's *Wörterbuch der deutschen Rechtschreibung*, p. xvi), *Busch's Erzählung* (Minor), *beim Anblick Grobitzsch's* (Hartleben), *bei der Beliebtheit Ludwig Pietsch's* (*Neue Zürcher Zeit.*, Jan. 4, 1904), *die Vorträge Professor Delitzsch's* (*Hamb. Nachr.*, Feb. 11, 1905), *Äußerungen Busch's über seine eigenen Werke* (*Frankfurter Zeit.*, Sept. 21, 1913). Instead of *s* we rarely find *es*: *Meljanzes Vater* (Martin's *Wolframs von Eschenbach Parzival*, II, p. xxv). Some use in case of all sibilants the mixed gen. ending *ens*, a form once common, but apparently much less used to-day, more frequent, however, with Christian names than surnames: *an Ludwig Pietschens Seite*, *Köselitzens* (surname) *spärliche Meldungen* (Franz Overbeck in *Die neue Rundschau*, March 1906, p. 329), *auf Hansens Bitten* (G. Hauptmann), *Franzens Idee* (G. Hirschfeld), *Götzens Blicke* (Stilgebauer's *Götz Krafft*), *Luciussens* (surname) *Musik* (Hermann Hesse's *Unterm Rad*, p. 127).

Grammarians are, in general, eager to find a way out of the tangle of present usage here. A number urge the form in *-ens*, but it does not find a wide support outside of a few short names like *Hans, Max, &c.* The most common form—the one with the mere apostrophe—is in reality no genitive at all, as it cannot be distinguished in the spoken language from the nominative. Grammatical justice demands here a clear genitive ending, and it is quite probable that most people who write *Voß'* in fact speak *Voßs*, i.e. pronounce an *ß* with double pressure, thus making a slight syllabic division in the middle, so that a real double *s* is spoken. Likewise in case of the genitive *-sch'*, as in *die Auflehnung Popowitsch'* (Jellinek's *Geschichte der neuhochdeutschen Grammatik*, p. 263), it is quite probable that an *s* is in fact spoken after *sch*. Careful observers even write the *s* here as can be seen by the examples given above. It would be desirable if this common usage of speaking an *s* after a sibilant should find an expression in the written language. It was once the rule to write *s* or *es*: *Artuses hof* (Wolfram's *Parzival*, 296, 25), *Artuss her* (ib. 326, 5). At one time the *'s* was in large measure lost also in English, but it seems to be the prevailing form to-day. Some South German grammarians avoid the difficulty here by recommending the use of the definite article, thus elevating here a common S.G.

colloquialism to the dignity of literary form der Bruder des Klaus instead of der Bruder Klaus<sup>7</sup>.

In the eighteenth century the genitive in -(e)ns was not restricted to names ending in a sibilant but was widely used, especially with names in -e Karlens, Achillens, Fichtens (nom Fichte), Adelheidens, &c This usage is still found with feminines in -e (see b below), sometimes with names ending in a sibilant, sometimes with names in -eke, as in Meinekes or in colloquial language sometimes Meinekens, sometimes with Vater and Mutter (see 90)

<sup>7</sup> In case of  
die Bücher des Fei  
used if modified d  
a title or some des  
Curtius. Compare 89 II L a

b Fem in -e may add -s or -ens: Mariens or Mariens Hut

c Foreign nouns ending in a sibilant often prefer the article, and thus remain uninflected as die Germania des Tacitus the Germania of Tacitus, or they may perhaps more frequently be treated as a German word Tacitus' Germania (title of a book by E Schwyzer, published in 1912), Tacitus' Historien (Stilgebauer's *Golz Krafft* I p 206), Thoas' letzte Worte (Hermann Grimm's *Fragmente*, I p 98) Sophokles' Antigone (ib II p 29) der ästhetische Wert Dickens' (Paul Hensels *Thomas Carlyle*, p 113), or in case of a few, having thrown off their foreign ending, may take the apostrophe or -ens Ho'raz' Oden or Ho'razens Oden the odes of Horace, instead of die Oden des Ho'ratus, A'ne'as' or A'ne'ens, gen of A'ne'as, &c

d Foreign names of persons do not now retain their original Latin or Greek declension except in a few biblical names N Jesus Christus, G Jesu Christi, D Jesu Christo, A Jesum Christum; das Evangelium Matthai the gospel of Matthew &c Even here the rule for German nouns is often preferred Christus' Geburt, &c

e As it is not customary for names of places to insert en before s of the gen, such names of places as end in a sibilant form no gen, but express this relation by the prep von of die Straßen von Paris, but die Straßen Hamburgs, or Hamburgs Straßen In poetry, however, the apostrophe may be used after sibilants an Kolchis' Kuste (Grillparzer's *Argonauten*, 2) für Hellas' Heil und Glück (ib), Hellas' Dichter (Wildenbruch's *Die Lieder des Euripides*, p 13) Sometimes also in plain prose der Schwerpunkt der Verteidigung 'Tripolis' (*Neue Zürcher Zeit*, Dec 8, 1911) nicht ein kaum bekannter Fürst, der von der Gnade Paris' oder Londons lebt (*Frankfurter Zeit*, Nov 23, 1915)

87 Names of places and persons take no sign for the dat and acc in choice language but earlier and still in the classical period the ending -en for dat and acc sing was quite common in case of unmodified names of persons The an - has again become quite common Rechte, dachte er sich we die icht, p 148) Das tranken wir be das Leben p 60) Als icht, Frau Imme öffnete, stand laß er Vatern holen solle the forms in en sec 84 und Hedwigen auch (Fonta

2  
uns n  
n) B  
der be  
Wehr  
89  
took an  
Goethe's works)

90 Colloquially masculine and feminine common nouns (the latter of which according to the general rule are not inflected) dropping the article and taking a when it refers to a definite persc

tane's *Effi*, chap. vii). Du bist Vaters Tochter (Hauptmann's *Michael Kramer*, Act 1). Ja, deine Tochter und Vaters bin ich (ib.). Nachbars Hänschen, Schusters Dortchen, Pastors Gustav, Mamas (Mutters, Tantes) Zimmer. Ich werde das Muttern sagen. Als Frau Imme öffnete, stand Rudolf auf dem kleinen Flur und sagte, daß er Vatern holen solle und Hedwigen auch (Fontane's *Stechlin*, chap. xiv). Ich werde Großmutter bitten. Likewise fem. titles: Majestäts Befehl his Majesty's order. Of course these words, like proper names, may take -(e)ns instead of -s in the genitive if they end in a sibilant or -e, sometimes also in case of Vater and Mutter: Exzellenz' or Exzellenzens Befehl, Tantes or Tantens Kleid, Mutterns Geburtstag (Viktor von Kohlenegg's *Eckerlein in Vellagen und Klasings Monatshefte*, Dec. 1919, p. 373).

A title with a preceding article is sometimes treated as a name, if it is used as such: des Dekan (Marriot's *Der geistliche Tod*, chap. ii), mit den Sachen des Doktor (Hauptmann's *Friedensfest*, p. 15), but more commonly with inflectional s: die Stimme des Doktors (ib., p. 48), des Doktors Hand (ib., p. 52).

91. The residence of an individual is often written in one word with his name: Herr Lammers-Bremen Mr. Lammers from Bremen; Direktor Wirth-Plötzensee bei Berlin Director Wirth from Plötzensee near Berlin. Formerly von was placed before the name of the place. The von is not now used, as it might be construed as representing a title of nobility. Compare 94. 3. A. c and 92. 5.

### INFLECTION OF TITLES.

92. A full treatment of the proper titles which must be given to people of different social standing can be obtained in any of the numerous *Briefsteller* which usually treat this delicate subject.

The leading points as to the inflection of these titles are as follows:

1. When a title (or titles) not preceded by an article stands before a name of a person, the title and name are now usually felt as a unit, i.e. as a compound name, and hence the second element, i.e. the name is alone inflected, except the one title *Herr Mr.*, which is always inflected: Kaiser Wilhelms Schloß, Professor Dr. A. Kuhns Vorlesungen, Reichskanzler Fürst Bismarcks Verdienste, Das Leben Herzog Bernhards. Er sprach von Präsident Gränt, von Gräf Réchberg. But Herrn Schmidts Hut, der Hut Herrn Schmidts, der Hut des Herrn Schmidt, der Sohn des Kaufmanns Herrn Schmidt. Earlier in the period *Herr* could also be treated like other titles and was left uninflected when not preceded by an article: Mache Er Herr Justen (see 87) den Kopf nicht warm (Lessing's *Minna*, 1, 2).

a. Exceptions occur not infrequently when a genitive follows its governing noun. Here the title often assumes the inflection, as the feeling prevails that the inflection of the dependent element should take place at the point of immediate contact with its governing word: die Medaillen Papsts Clemens des Siebenten (Goethe), bis zum Monumente Königs Max II. (Hans Hopfen), die Schwester Königs Artus (E. Martin's *Wolframs von Eschenbach Parzival*, II, p. 445), einige Jahre im Hause Meisters Lorenz (Wilhelm Fischer's *Die Freude am Licht*, p. 181), neben der Grabstätte der Gattin Herzogs Konrad des Roten (Steinhausen's *Geschichte der deutschen Kultur*, p. 111), die Festrede Bürgermeisters Dr. Pauli (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, March 23, 1905), vom Tode Königs Christian tief erschüttert (ib. Jan. 30, 1906), nach Ansprachen Majors a. D. [außer Dienst] Badhauser, des katholischen und protestantischen Anstaltsgeistlichen (*Allgemeine Zeit.*, April 12, 1905). The inflected title is often preceded by an inflected form of *Herr*: vom Munde Herrn Majors Bennecke (Wildenbruch's *Schwester-Seele*, chap. x).

b. The inflection of *Herr* in all positions is the survival of older usage, where weak titles did not. Strong ones, enter into close relations with a following name to form a unit: frouen froun Uoten muot (*Parzival*, 262. 25), mines hern Gawanes munt (id., 300. 21), der junge sun I, p. 349), but (*Nibelungenlied*, Aventure 33), under den vanen hern Saules (quoted from Blatz, unity could arise küene Artuses hof (Walther von der Vogelweide, p. 99, Paul's ed.). The idea of inative and accuse more easily with strong nouns because they usually had no ending in the nom-

2. a. When a title and often in the dative, which facilitated the blending of title and name. other modifying the title standing before the name is preceded by an article or ing: ilg word, inflection or non-inflection results according to the mean-

(1) If the title retains a degree of independence not entering into such close relations with the name as to form a unit with it, it is inflected: der Sohn des Pastors Rasche or des Pastors Réiche Sohn. In the latter case the name is sometimes inflected as the feeling sometimes prevails that inflection ought to take place in the dependent word when it stands in direct contact with the governing word: meines Freundes Papphoffs Regenschirm (Raabe's *Frühling*, chap. IV). Inflection of the name here is rare when the governing word precedes: auf der staubigen Chaussee des Vettters Wassertreters (id. *Abu Telfan*, xxxvi).

(2) If title and name form a unit, both words remain uninflected when the governing noun precedes: die Stimme des Onkel Heinrich or more commonly without the article: die Stimme Onkel Heinrichs. Sometimes as in older usage with the inflection of the name: der Klang der Hausglocke des Doktor Dachreiters (Raabe's *Pechlin*, chap. xix). If a common noun is used here instead of the name, inflection is quite common: Die Meinung des Bruder Stadtrats his brother the alderman (Raabe's *Abu Telfan*, p. 32), im traulichen Forsthause Karls sowohl wie in dem Heim des Bruder Juristen (his brother the lawyer) am Rhein (Hans Brand in *Westermanns Monatshefte*, May 1905, p. 245).

When the governing noun follows, the feeling usually prevails that inflection should take place at the point of immediate contact with the governing noun: des Onkel Heinrichs Stimme or more commonly without the article: Onkel Heinrichs Stimme. This is the common usage of the M.H.G. period: des kunec Gahmuretes kint (*Parzival*, 301, 5). Inflection of also the title here is quite rare in case of strong nouns: in des küneges Ezeln lant (*Nibelungenlied*, Aventure 24). To-day both title and name sometimes remain uninflected as they are together felt as a name, which in the position before the governing noun is not only inflected but sometimes remains uninflected: des Stabtrompeter Raßmann Blasen (Scheffel's *Trompeter*, 6. Stück).

(3) Weak titles are in general treated as strong ones, but they manifest a reluctance, as in older usage (see 1. b), to enter into close unity with the following name, especially after the article. Thus we often find such expressions as die Truppen des Generaloberst von Woyrsch (*Großes Hauptquartier*, July 2, 1915), dem Generaloberst von Hindenburg (*Der Völkerkrieg*, IV, p. 154), but inflection in choice language is more common: die Offensive der Armee des Generalobersten von Woyrsch (*Großes Hauptquartier*, July 18, 1915, also July 19, &c.); der Sohn des Grafen Rechberg, des Grafen Rechbergs Sohn, or des Grafen Rechberg Sohn. Close union, however, is more common in case of things: an Bord des „Prinz Waldemar“ (boat). Likewise in case of persons when the article drops out: Graf Rechbergs Sohn.

b. If several titles preceded by an article stand before a name, often only the first title is inflected, or in case Herr is used both Herr and the following title are inflected, but there is here much fluctuation in usage, the tendency, however, being towards inflection, especially in case of weak nouns: die Vorlesungen des Professors Hofrat Schmidt; des Herrn Staatsministers von Stein; die Mitteilung unseres verehrten Herrn Direktors Doktor Rosenberg (Hirschfeld); des Herrn Professor Niedermöller (M. Dreyer); die Armee des Generals Graf Bothmer (*Großes Hauptquartier*, Oct. 10, 1915). The second and third title are usually felt as standing in apposition with the first. Where non-inflection is employed as in the preceding examples this grammatical relation does not find a formal expression, hence it is becoming more common to indicate this grammatical relation by appending an inflectional ending to the second title as the one that stands in immediate contact with the governing word: das großherzige Entgegenkommen des Geheimen Medizinalrats Professors Dr. Külz (*Weser-Zeitung*); des Feldmarschalls Prinzen Eugen or des Feldmarschalls Prinz Eugen (both forms given in Nagl's *Deutsche Sprachlehre*, p. 167); die Truppen des Generals Grafen Bothmer (*Großes Hauptquartier*, Sept. 1, 1915); im Beisein des Oberbefehlshabers, Feldmarschalls Erzherzog Friedrich (ib., May 3, 1915).

Often the last title and name are considered as a compound noun and hence the last element: der Empfang Seiner kaiserlichen Majestät des Kaisers; Albrechts V. von Bayern (Dr. 16, 1905); die Feier des ersten

Geburtstages unseres jüngsten Hohenzollern, Prinz Wilhelms (*Daheim*, 1907, Nr. 41). Compare this last example with the first one from Nagl's *Deutsche Sprachlehre* given above.

If a second or later title is preceded by the article it must of course be inflected: **die Freude Seiner Majestät des Kaisers.**

3. An appended title is in case of persons inflected whether the preceding name is declined or not: **die lange Regierung Friedrichs** or **König Friedrichs des Großen**, or **die lange Regierung des Königs Friedrich des Großen**; **Heinrichs des Finklers Name**; **Max' I. (read des Ersten) Gemahlin**; but non-inflection in case of names of ships: **zu Ehren der Offiziere des deutschen Linienschiffes „Kaiser Karl der Große“** (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, July 27, 1905), **die Entsendung des Kaiser Karl der Große** (*Neue Zürcher Zeit.*, July 28, 1905). Some prefer to drop *s* in the first example, as the inflection of the appended title clearly marks the case relation: **der Bruder Friedrich des Großen** (Fontane's *Vor dem Sturm*, II. 14), **bald nach dem Regierungsantritt Friedrich Wilhelm I.** (*Hamb. Nachr.*, Oct. 29, 1904). This usage, however, seems in general to be yielding to the tendency to mark grammatical relations clearly in both elements. The title alone may be inflected in case of junior, senior: **auf dem Bette Butzemann juniors** (Raabe's *Deutscher Adel*, chap. xx), **Raabe juniors Stimme** (Halbe's *Mutter Erde*, p. 157). We also often hear: **die Stimme Raabes junior**. If the name is preceded by an article the title here remains uninflected: **das Hochzeitsgeschenk des Herrn Eckhart senior** (Baumbach's *Der Schwiegersohn*, chap. xi).

4. Such words as **Freund, Vater, &c.**, are often treated as titles: **Das ist Freund Müllers Frau.**

5. The word following **von** in names originally marked the residence or locality. As the use of **von** became in the seventeenth century the prerogative of nobility the word after **von** became fixed and gradually lost its force so that it is now felt as a part of the name, and hence the *s* is appended to it: **Otto von Bismarcks Reden**. Some inflect the name here according to the principle described in 1. *a* and 2. *b* above. The genitive *-s* is appended to that part of the name that stands in direct contact with the governing noun. Thus if the name precedes the governing noun, the ending is appended to the end of the name, as in the example just given. If the name follows the governing noun the ending is added to that part of the name that stands before the **von**, as it is in immediate contact with the governing noun: **die Reden Ottos von Bismarck**, **das Leben Götzens von Berlichingen** (Goethe), **die Braut Friedrichs von Glimmern** (Raabe's *A. T.*, chap. xii), **ein Jugendporträt Wilhelms von Oranien** (*Kölnische Zeitung*, No. 1, 1895), **Leben und Bildnis Friedrichs von Hagedorn** (title of a book by Hubert Stierling, published in 1911). Present usage, however, seems to prefer here inflection at the end of the entire name as it is felt as a unit, a compound, and like a compound takes inflection at the end: **der jüngere Bruder Friedrich von Hagedorns** (Daniel Sanders's *Deutsche Literaturgeschichte*, p. 81), **im Zeitalter Otto von Bismarcks** (Fontane's *Cécile*, XIII), **zwei Briefe Wilhelm von Humboldts** (*Beilage zur Allgemeinen Zeitung*, 1901, No. 84). **Das ist eine Beleidigung des Andenkens unseres Väterchens und Professor von Rangenhofens** (G. Ompteda). Thus in accordance with this conception the name always has inflection at the end, whether it precedes or follows the governing noun. The other type with the inflection of the word before the **von** is now rarely generalized so that it is also employed when the name precedes the governing noun: **Alberts von Köstnitz Vater** (Wilhelm Fischer's *Die Freude am Licht*, II, p. 52). Of course, this type is not infrequent in learned literature dealing with older periods where historic names occur in which the word after the **von** is a real dative, a name of an actual place: **Wolframs von Eschenbach Parzival und Titurel** (name of a book by Ernst Martin, Halle 1903). This type is still in full force where the word after **von** is the name of an actual place or country: **Friedrich Wilhelms III. (read des Dritten) von Preußen lange Regierung.**

In our own time it is again common to distinguish individuals by mentioning the place where they live, which is now placed after the name as an appositive

to it Schmidt-Berlin. A little earlier in the period von was placed before the name of the place as in older German Hoffmann von Fallersleben, &c. This usage has been abandoned as the von here easily creates the false impression that it indicates a title of nobility.

6 The title Frau is placed before the name and rank of the husband, and Frau or Fraulein before a designation of relationship and usually alone has inflection, if the article or a pronominal precedes (die) Frau Schmidt, gen der Frau Schmidt, &c., but Frau Schmidts Sohn, (die) Frau Professor, (die) Frau Doktor, (die) Frau Oberst, &c., Ihre Frau Mutter, Ihre Frau Tante, Ihr (Ihre) Fraulein Tante, &c. Earlier in the period -in was often added to the title and still occasionally occurs (die) Frau Professorin (Goethe). In a number of cases the old ending -in is still usually employed (die) Frau Ratin or Rat, (die) Frau Geheime Ratin, (die) Frau Senatorin, die Gräfin or die Frau Gräfin, die Herzogin or die Frau Herzogin, die Königin or die Frau Königin, die Kaiserin Friedrich the wife of Emperor Frederick &c., Ihre Frau Gemahlin, Ihre Frau Schwägerin, Ihr (Ihre) Fraulein Schwägerin, &c. If the title is preceded by an adjective, or is itself an adjective, the adjective must be inflected (Frau Geheime Ratin, Frau Abgeordnete Zeitzeugin).

Instead of Frau or Fraulein the fem. article is often placed before the name, which in popular language often adds in (usually corrupted to en) and in N G dialect also sche (see 245 1 6 1 c) die Marliitt Miss Marliitt (the pseudonym of a well known authoress) die Schulzen (corruption of Schulzin) Mrs Schulz die Beckerin or Beckersche Mrs Becker die Frau Pastorsche (Rabe's *Odfeld* chap. xxi) Formerly in was added to the name also in the literary language (die Gottschedin (authoress, 1713-62), die Karschin (poetess, 1722-91).

In case of males Herr is placed before the designation of relationship or rank, and is always inflected Ihr Herr Vater, Ihres Herrn Vaters, Ihr Herr Bruder, &c., Ihr Herr Gemahl, &c., Ihr Herr Chef your employer, der Herr Oberst, &c., Herr Oberst (direct address), der Herr Professor, &c., Herr Professor (direct address).

#### PLURAL OF NAMES OF PERSONS AND PLACES

93 There is considerable diversity of usage in the formation of the plural of names of persons and places.

1 The favorite formation in familiar language is either to add s ('s, or ens after sibilants) to the name or title used as a name, or less frequently to leave the name undeclined in all the cases. Mullers haben Besuch. The Müllers have company. Kurz darauf traten Lehweiß's ein (Ernst Heilborn's *Kleefeld*, X). Wir gehen zu Schulzens, zu Doktors. We are going to Schulze's, to the family of the doctor. Zwei Wolfs, zwei Marien (or very commonly Marien according to b (2) below), two persons by the name of Wolf, Mary, die beiden Elisabeths or Elisabeth (or often Elisabethen and sometimes Elisabethe according to b (2)), but usually die beiden Agnes, Ines with non inflection, to avoid the repetition of the sibilant, non inflection being also more common here than the form in -en according to b (2), die vielen Ludwig in der französischen Geschichte, im Familienhause der Weyland (Rabe's *Wunnefeld*, chap. i), die beiden Sarasin (*Neue Zürcher Zeit*, Oct 26, 1906) the two Sarasins (well known scientists and travelers).

Geographical names especially remain uninflected in the plural die beiden Frankfurt the two cities of Frankfurt, die beiden Mecklenburg (or Mecklenburgs) the two Mecklenburgs.

If the title used as a name is weak, the plural is formed by adding ens: Präsidentens treten heute eine kleine Reise ins Gebirge an. The family of the president starts out on a little trip into the mountains to-day. Exzellenzen machen umgehend ihren Gegenbesuch (Hans Arnold's *Nicht Lügen*). Bei Kronprinzens (*Frankfurter Zeit*, May 1, 1914). The regular plural in s is also used. Ich kann doch in diesem Aufzug nicht zu Oberpräsidenten gehen (Arnold's



*Nicht Lügen*). Titles in the mixed declension add *s* in the plural: *Pro'fessors lassen bitten (ib.)*. *Zu 'Pastors (ib.)*. The accent in the last two nouns indicates that these forms are in fact genitives. See *a*. Compare 59. II. E. *f*.

*a*. In such examples as *Wir gehen zu Schulzes* the *es* is now felt as a plural ending, altho the noun originally was a gen. sing. dependent upon a governing noun understood such as *Angehörige*. In S.G. popular language the gen. of the sing. article in the reduced form of *'s* is here still placed before the name, even tho the verb plainly shows that the noun is felt as a plural: *'s Hartmanns begleiteten uns*. In other cases, however, as in *die beiden Bertas* the *s* is a real plural ending.

*b*. Many prefer to inflect names of persons according to the regular declension for common nouns, as follows: (1) Most of the masculines end in the plural in *e*: *die Wolfe, Friedriche, der letzte der Weylande* (Raabe's *Wummig*, chap. ii) *the last of the Weylands, &c.* Earlier in the period the plural of *Hans John* was weak, but it is now usually *Hanse*, or when used as a common class noun *Hänse* (see 70. I. *c* (2)). Sometimes the plural of the proper name is *Hänse*: *In „Westermühlen“ waren wir beiläufig mitunter sechs oder sieben Hänse beisammen und es gehörte Übung dazu, um nicht in Konfusion zu geraten* (Storm an Mörike, Nov. 1854). (2) Most feminines take the weak plural ending *n* except those in *a* and *y*, which take *s* quite uniformly: *die Marien, Mathilden, Adelheiden, but die Bertas, Nannys, &c.* Those ending in a consonant have sometimes a strong plural according to the unmutated *e*-plural class: *die Elisabethe* instead of the more common wk. form *Elisabethen*. Diminutives in *-chen* and *-el* form the plural according to the *e*-less plural class: *die Hannchen, Marthel*. (3) Those masculines ending in *-e, -el, -en, -er*, also all diminutives in *-chen* and *-el*, take no ending in the plural: *die Luther, Schlegel, Karlichen &c.* (4) Foreign nouns may remain uninflected, but may also add *-s* or *-e*, and some in *-o* may add *-nen* or *-ne*: *die Noah, Alba, &c.; die Cagliostro* (ka·li'stro:s), &c.; *die Vir'gile, &c.*; for those in *-as, -es, -us*, see 79. 2. *d*; *die Scipi'onen, weltberühmte Cice'rone* (Paulsen's *Geschichte des gelehrten Unterrichts*, 2nd ed. p. 51), &c. (5) As a rule names of persons are not inflected according to the mutated *e*-plural and *er*-plural classes of the strong declension, as there is at least in the literary language an aversion to mutation here, but in colloquial speech mutated plurals can also be found after the analogy of common nouns: *die Wölfe in der Schule, die Quäste* (pl. of *Quast*) (Fontane's *Wanderungen*, vol. I, chap. Garz). These mutated plurals are not infrequently used in a sarcastic or humorous sense: *Es wird gewünscht, daß sämtliche Kortmänner* (pl. of *Kortmann*) *in Zukunft ihre unverschämten Zudringlichkeiten gefälligst unterlassen* (Stader). *Sie ist eine Grünebaum, und die Grünebäume können im Notfall die Zähne zusammenbeißen* (Raabe's *Hungerpastor*, chap. i). (6) Only the names of nationalities and a few famous families are inflected weak. See 76. I. 3 (toward end). Raabe in his *Eulenpfingsten*, chap. ix, has formed the plural of the family name *Nebelung* weak, perhaps facetiously after the analogy of the mythical dynasty *die Nibelungen* (see 76. I. 3, toward end). Fontane in his *Vor dem Sturm* forms the plural of the family name *Vitzewitz* according to the *e*-plural class, but in one place (I.1) we find a weak plural where it is represented as a part of an inscription upon a house of the year 1634: *Das ist der Vitzewitzen Haus*. Some N.G. authors employ the weak plural quite commonly: *Leonie des Beaux! Wie klingt dir das von einer Schneider-tochter hier im Lande der Fritzen und Karlinen?* (Raabe's *Die Akten des Vogelsangs*, p. 71). *Und wenn wir hier noch drei Dierksen hätten* (Otto Ernst's *Flachmann als Erzieher*, 3, 1). *Das war die Sippschaft der Uhlen* (Frenssen's *Jörn Uhl*, chap. i, and often elsewhere). *Die Ursleuen der alten Zeit waren vielleicht religiöse Schwärmer* (R. Huch's *Ludolf Ursleu*, chap. ii).

*c*. The names of countries and places usually form their plural with *s* or remain uninflected. The plural of *die Schweiz*, however, takes *e*: *Die Schweiz werden immer kleiner* (Fontane's *Wanderungen*, vol. I, chap. *Die Ruppiner Schweiz*).

2. Some make a shade of difference in meaning between the uninflected plural form and the plural in *s*. In the sense of *men like*, all proper names remain uninflected in the plural, while they end in *s* to designate all or several members of a family: *die Scherer, die Grimm* men like Scherer, Grimm, but *Brauns sind nicht reich* The Browns (a definite family) are not rich. Here again we find a difference of usage. In the former meaning we now more commonly find proper names inflected according to the regular declension for common nouns, as described in 1. *b* above: *die Goethe* the men like Goethe, *die Luther, die Bismarcke, die Sokratesse, die Scipionen, die Shakespeares, &c.* Sometimes, however, we find uniformly *-s* here even with German names: *kleine Lindaus und Blumenthals* (A. Bartels) little Lindaus and Blumenthals.

Some add *s* to indicate different members of the same family and inflect the name according to the regular declensions, to distinguish different families of the same name: *die Schmidts* the different members of a definite family by the name of Schmidt. *Es gibt viele Schmidte (or Schmidt)* There are many families of the name of Schmidt.

3. Two or more names are often found in the singular after one plural article, which indicates the case of each of the proper names and by its plural form

shows that all are included in the statement: Goethe war menschlich- und dichterisch den Fielding und Smollet überlegen. Eichhorn war aus der Zeit der Befreiungskriege her bekannt als ein Freund der Arndt, Schleiermacher, Perthes, Reimer. Die Lindau und Genossen Lindau and his literary following; die Schmidt, Vater und Sohn; die beiden Stechlin, Vater und Sohn (Fontane's *Stechlin*, chap. ii); and also without the article: Stradnitz Vater und Sohn (Marriot's *Seine Gottheit*, chap. viii), von Arnstein Söhnen, Wien (H. von Hofmannsthal's *Der Abenteurer*, p. 161).

Sometimes we find not only a plural article but also a plural adjective, both of which show by their plural form that they apply to all the proper names: Bei Steinau zwang er die völlig überraschten Thurn und Bubna zu schimpflicher Kapitulation.

The article in each of the above cases has collective force, and hence when the names are to be taken separately the article must be dropped: Nachkommen von Geschlechtern, deren Namen mit den Tagen Karl Augusts, Amalias, Goethes für immer verknüpft sind, wollten die neuerfrischte Goethearbeit fördern.

Instead of the definite article before a number of names we often find the indefinite with the force of *such men (women)* as: Zu den Dorfgeschichtenerzählern stellen wir schließlich auch noch einen Dichter, der mit seinen Natur- und Landschaftsschilderungen einen gewissen Gegensatz zu den Kultur- und Sittengemälden eines Auerbach, Rank und Rosegger bildet, Adalbert Stifter (L. Salomon). Auf der anderen Seite wollen wir aber auch nicht vergessen, daß in dem Land eines Albert Bitzius, eines Gottfried Keller und eines Konrad Ferdinand Meyer der deutsche Geist mit seine herrlichsten Blüten getrieben hat (*Hamb. Correspondent*, July 5, 1902). Compare 59. I. A. d.

4. If a title or other noun stands before an appositive name, the plural form depends upon the relation of the title to the name. If title and name are usually found together and are thus felt as *one* name, the combination is accordingly treated as a single name, and hence the plural ending is added to the last word of the combination: die Fräulein Schmidts *the Miss Schmidts*; ihr Vogel Strauße (Wildenbruch's *Unter der Geißel*, Werke, IV, p. 7). Usage here, however, fluctuates as in 263. I. 1. a and also in English, and hence we also find die Fräulein Schmidt *the Misses Schmidt*, especially where no ambiguity can arise, as in case of a modifying word or a plural verb: die beiden Fräulein Schmidt. Die Fräulein Schmidt sind krank. But even where there is no ambiguity we also find the pl. in s: die beiden Fräulein Felgentreu (Fontane's *Frau J. T.*, iv). In die Frau Mutter the second word usually takes the pl. form: von den Frau Müttern (Raabe's *Deutscher Adel*, chap. iii). In case of Herr, however, both words are inflected: meine lieben, verehrten Herrn Leutnants (Hartleben's *Rosenmontag*, 2. 3). Also in case of Frau: mit den Frauen Müttern (Raabe's *Gulmanns Reisen*, chap. iv).

If the title or other noun does not necessarily form a part of the appositive name, but is felt as containing a definite important modification of it, it is inflected, while the name itself remains uninflected: die Forschungen der beiden Vettern Sarasin, die Gebrüder Grimm, bei den Schwestern Fröhlich (Marie v. Najmájer in *Jahrbuch der Grillparzer-Gesellschaft*, XIV, p. 141). Both words are often inflected: Meine Vettern Rambergs (Hartleben's *Rosenmontag*, 3. 5). Grafen Basedows habe es im Lande gegeben, solange Menschen zurückdenken könnten (Spielhagen's *Herrin*, p. 209).

#### PECULIARITIES IN THE INFLECTION OF NOUNS.

94. 1. Many nouns, especially those that have no article or other modifying word before them, often remain uninflected. Non-inflection usually results because the person or thing is conceived abstractly without concrete relations, or the noun stands for a definite individual, as in the cases in d, and hence, as proper names in general, resists inflection after the definite article. Inflection,

however, also often occurs in most of these categories, as the person or thing is conceived with concrete relations, especially in the plural, which is always concrete, or the writer becomes conscious of the case relation and in a mere mechanical way employs inflection. The following categories are common:

a. Unmodified nouns connected by *und*: *die Grenze zwischen Affe und Mensch, das Verhältnis von Herr und Sklave, ein Mann von Herz und Mut. Nun setze dich dahin zwischen Herr und Frau Dörr* (Fontane). Sometimes also with inflection: *Dort verabschiedete er sich sofort von Herrn und Frau Lehmann* (Hirschfeld's *Das grüne Band*, viii). *Die Kluft zwischen Fürsten* (here Kaiser Wilhelm II.) *und Volk* (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Sept. 3, 1910).

Non-inflection is also common in case of unmodified nouns connected by *weder — noch*: *Du meinst, du brauchst weder Gott noch Mensch* (Frenssen's *Hilligenlei*, p. 530). In both of the two cases here discussed, however, a plural assumes its proper ending: *zwischen Herr und Gesinde, zwischen Hausvater und Familienmitgliedern* (Lamprecht's *Deutsche Geschichte*, zweiter Ergänzungsband, p. 360).

b. In a list of unmodified words: *die Stufen von Lehrling, Gesell und Meister* the different stages of apprentice, journeyman, and master. Inflection is also found here: *diese Mischung von Pedanten, Halbkünstler und Gesellschaftsmenschen* (Carl Busse in *Velhagen und Klasings Monatshefte*, July 1914, p. 470.) Adjective-substantives must always be inflected: *die Errettung von Schiff, Mannschaft und Reisenden*.

c. As an unmodified objective predicate (262. III. 2. A): *Der Wirt nannte mich Graf und dann Exzellenz* (Immermann). Sometimes inflection occurs here: *Es war ungefähr so, wie wenn Sie auf der Durchreise nach einem andern Stern wären oder von einem andern kämen. Kurz was man so Idealisten nennt* (Wilbrandt's *Franz*, III). For fluctuation of usage after reflexive verbs see 218. 2. b. Except in case of reflexive constructions an objective predicate after *als* is usually inflected, as it is usually necessary to show the case: *Er besang den Kaiser als Helden* (not *Held* as the form could be construed as a nom. agreeing with the subject.). Where the thought is perfectly clear the uninflected form may be used: *Besonders die Zentrumspreste gibt sich geflissentlich Mühe, es als Wille des Kaisers hinzustellen, daß usw.* (*Neue Zürcher Zeit.*, Sept. 4, 1910). The abstract meaning of *Wille* here suggested non-inflection, but where the meaning is more concrete inflection is common even where non-inflection would not impair the thought: *Eine blonde junge Dame hat ihr Söhnchen als Husaren gekleidet* (Eugen Zabel's *Europäische Fahrten*, p. 4).

d. As an unmodified appositive: *das Gebell des knurrischen Hofhunds Gewissen* (Goethe's *Götz*, 2, 1). *Dem Ausgestoß'nen seine Tochter geben, heißt s e l b s t sich um den Namen Jude bringen* (Gutzkow's *Uriel Acosta*, 3, 4). *Und doch war er (the artist Menzel) ja Verkörperung des preußischen Begriffs Soldat* (K. Storck in *Der Türmer*, March 1905). The noun which the appositive explains may in German be suppressed: *Was verstehen Sie unter Engel? Aber kommen Sie mir nicht mit [dem Wort] Flügel* (Fontane's *Frau Jenny*, chap. ix). The appositive in all these cases is seemingly a common class noun, but it has the force of a proper noun, as explained in 255. III. 1. B. A proper noun is still more common here: *der Sohn des Pastors Schmidt*.

e. Modified or unmodified nouns that have become so closely associated with a verb as to form one idea with it, especially in the predicate relation: *Wir sind nicht mehr Herr über das, was entsprungen ist, aber wir sind Herr, es unschädlich zu machen* (Goethe's *Wahlverw.* 2, 12). *Unter Umständen können wir alle Modell sein* (Hauptmann's *Michael Kramer*, Act 2, p. 58). *Aber wir wurden Zeuge eines zweiten Vorfalles* (Oempteda's *Der Doppelgänger*). *Nach einigen Wochen schon waren sie gut Freund mit mir* (Marriot's *Seine Gottheit*, chap. ii). Sometimes also in the accusative relation. For an example see 257. 2. A, last two sentences.

f. In case of an unmodified noun that stands before a preposition and is repeated again after it: *Sie ruhten Herz an Herz*. Also in case of a single



Stück Viehs. (Raabe's *Die Innerste*, chap. i). Wir sollen uns des kleinen Stückchen festen Bodens freuen (Hans Dragendorff in *Deutsche Monatsschrift*, April 1906, p. 41). The gen. ending s of the noun denoting the weight or measure is sometimes suppressed, while the following noun is without inflection: die Hälfte des halben Schoppen Apfelwein (Raabe's *Eulenpfingsten*, chap. x).

It must be noticed that in case of a pl. noun of weight, measure, or quantity, the following noun in apposition can sometimes alone show the case, as the noun denoting weight, &c. has the same form for sing. and pl. and cannot distinguish case relations in the pl.: mit zwei Dutzend Äpfeln, mit drei Schock Eiern, ein Viehstand von 50-60 Haupt Rindern.

The noun or pronoun denoting weight, measure, &c. sometimes follows the dependent noun and may even be separated from it by one or more words, in which case words modified by a limiting adjective (see B) can also take the appositional construction: Harmonisches Getön war wenig dabei (Raabe's *Horn von Wanza*, chap. xvi). Sonst bot es (i.e. das Gedicht) angreifbare Punkte die Menge (Fontane's *Vor dem Sturm*, I. chap. xvii). Einfache Zahladverbia gibt es nur wenige (Braune's *Althochdeutsche Grammatik*, p. 202). Solche Fehler können die Menge im Plinius sein. For historical explanation see 255. II. 1. H. a, 2nd par.

a. Instead of the appositional construction the dependent noun often in colloquial speech prefers the nom. form of each number thruout that number, except in the masc. acc. sing. and the dat. pl., where the appositional construction is the rule: der Preis eines Fuders österreichischer Wein the price of a fuder (a measure) of Austrian wine, samt einem Fuder österreichischer Wein, ein Fuder (acc.) österreichischen Wein, der Preis eines Paars wollene Strümpfe, mit einem Paar wollenen Strümpfen. Titles, however, remain uniformly in the nominative: Dreißig Jahre deutscher Schulverein the activities of the German School Association during a period of thirty years. Ich habe die zwei Bände Grüner Heinrich gelesen.

In Austrian authors the dative is sometimes found instead of the appositional construction: Aber auch ein gut Stück menschlicher Schwäche und echt österreichischem Behagen an guter Speise, am Wein, am Lachen lächelte aus ihm (R. H. Bartsch's *Die Haidlkinder*, p. 148). For the Austrian tendency to use the dative instead of the appositional construction see 255. III. 1. A. k).

b. With names of streets, months, and seasons the article often drops out and the gen. then gives way to the appositional construction, or more commonly retains the nom. form thruout: Ecke Hoher Steinweg on the corner of the High Causeway, mit dem Anfang Juli or Anfang Juli with the beginning of July, Ende Dezember, Ausgangs Sommer, and always so in naming the day of the month: der erste [Tag understood] Mai the first of May. In a more careful style also inflection: an der Ecke der Buckowerstraße und des Luisenufers, am Ende des Dezember.

c. The gen. also gives way to the appositional construction in certain cases of proper nouns where possession is not to be emphasized, but where it is desired to show that the proper name is closely identified with the thing expressed by the preceding noun: das Porträt W. Zimmermann the portrait of (i.e. representing) W. Zimmermann, zehn Grad Fahrenheit, Celsius, Reaumur ten degrees Fahrenheit, Celsius, Reaumur, der Antrag Rümelin the motion made by Rümelin, im Verlage der bekannten Kunstanstalt Rudolf Schuster, Berlin published in the well-known art institution conducted by Rudolph Schuster, Berlin, die Leipziger Maschinenfabrik Karl Krause the machine works of K. K. in Leipzig, der Prozeß Reinsdorff the law suit carried on by or against Reinsdorff, das vor einigen Tagen vorgekommene Duell Kotze-Schrader the duel which took place a few days ago between Messrs. Kotze and Schrader, Ferdinand Schmidt Nachfolger (on a sign) Ferdinand Schmidt, now followed by a successor, der gräfliche Zweig Eysen (G. Ompteda) the branch of the Eysens that has the rank of counts, die Arche Noah Noah's ark, die Villa Schirmacher the villa of Mr. S. Sie fuhrten in den Bahnhof Kassel (into the railroad station at Cassel) ein und, ebenfalls glücklicherweise, bald weiter (Raabe's *Gutmanns Reisen*, chap. iv). Methode Schliemann zur Erlernung der englischen Sprache Schliemann's method of learning English, das Ministerium Windischgrätz the ministry formed by prime minister Windischgrätz, die Armeegruppe Mackensen (*Großes Hauptquartier*, May 8, 1915). And often by Luther where we should expect a gen.: die Tochter Pharaos, die Zedern Libanon. This idiom is also very common with geographical names: Das Elsässische erstreckt sich von einer Linie Zabern, Weißenburg, Seltz südwärts bis usw. The Alsatian dialect extends from a line passing thru Zabern, Weißenburg, Seltz, southward to, &c. Der Plan einer Bahn Posen-Warschau, im Abendschnellzug Breslau-Gleiwitz, beim Überlandflug Berlin-München, Hansen-Dresden Hansen who lives in Dresden, to distinguish one man from another of the same name, and similarly Hansen-Bonbon Hansen the manufacturer of bonbons, coined facetiously to distinguish this Hansen from others of the same name.

B. The gen. alone can be used in all the above cases if the dependent noun is modified by an article or a limiting adjective: ein Pfund guter Tee or besserer

Tee, but des besten Tees, ein Pfund unseres Tees, &c The dat after von here often takes the place of the gen einer von diesen Mannern For an important exception to the general rule see last part of A

4 Titles of books, &c are inflected, or more commonly uninflected in Hauptmanns „Einsamen Menschen,“ in „Der Fleck auf der Ehre.“ See also 255 III 1 A g

5 The inflectional ending is sometimes affixed only to the second of two nouns connected by und, to emphasize their oneness of meaning (see 249 II 2 F a) der Besitz eigenen Grund und Bodens; von Gott und Rechts wegen by rights, trotz Sturm und Regens; aus der Mitte seines energischen Tun und Treibens (Raabe's *PM*, XVIII); Verlust ihres Hab und Gutes, ein unbandiger Geselle mit einem Tropfen des Marloweschen Sturm und Dranges (*Neue Zürcher Zeit*, Feb 11, 1905), but also with the inflection of both words von seiten unseres neuesten Sturms und Drangs in der deutschen Literatur (Konrad Falke in *Deutsche Monatsschrift*, Sept 1906, p 862) The inflection of the second of a pair of words connected by und was employed freely in early N H G vmb Korn vnd Mosts willen (Luther), mit geschenck vnnnd gabenn (id), or also with inflection of the first word, mit gesetzen oder werck (id) This usage is still not infrequent in the classical period mit mancherlei Mangel und Gebrechen (Goethe), an Tier und Vogel fehlt es nicht (id *Faust*, I 238) Von Sonn und Welten weiß ich nichts zu sagen (ib, I 279) With the exception of a few set expressions, as those given above, it is now rare Dann hort man sie auf Trepp und Gangen stöhnen (Storm's *Im Nachbarhause links*)

6 When compound nouns have been formed by writing as one word a noun and a preceding modifying adjective which enters the compound with its inflected form the adjective is declined thruout as if it stood apart from the noun. der Hohepriester the high priest, des Hohenpriesters, ein Hoherpriester If such a compound enter again into a new compound of which it is itself the first component element and another noun the second, the inflected adjective of the first component element usually agrees illogically with the second component element der arme Sünder the condemned criminal, but ein bleiches Armesündergesicht a pale face of a condemned criminal, das bleiche Armesündergesicht, zu den Armensünderfrühstücken, das Schwärze Meer the Black Sea, but die übrigen Schiffe der Schwärzen-Meer-Flotte (*Neue Zürcher Zeit* July 1, 1905), Tausend und eine Nacht *The Arabian Nights* but wie ein Abend aus dem Tausendundeinennächtbuch (Raabe's *Zum Wilden Mann*, chap vii) Such compounds are mere syntactical fragments struggling toward the estate of a true compound The adjective is inflected, since it is customary for adjectives to be inflected, and usage here as elsewhere requires adjective inflectional forms to follow the last component A more logical system of inner inflection is to construe as often as possible the first noun of the compound as nominative singular or plural and allow the adjective of the compound to agree with it in der Max II-Kaserne (read Mäx der Zwēte Kaserne), Meuterei auf der Schwärze-Meer-Flotte (*Allgemeine Zeit*, June 30 1905, the first element of the compound is singular) The weak inflection of the adjective, as in compounds usually preceded by t

a face such as poor condemned criminals have Von Armeläutemalerē als kunsthistorischem Begriffe ist in einem eben erschienenen Hefte die Rede

we often in the South find in a few words pl of the first noun preceded by the weak das Armensunderglockchen (Gottfried

Keller's *Die Leigen* in *L v S* II, p 192) A still more logical way of declining such compounds bound to triumph tho in many cases not as yet employed or not so common as the above is to form them into genuine compounds and dispense with the inflection of the adjective of the first element das bleiche Armesündergesicht, die Schwärzmēerflotte the Black Sea fleet, &c still with their original group stress, while others have the principal stress upon the

first component after the manner of old compounds: *Kürzwären* *hard-ware*, &c. Compare 249. II. 2 and also A thereunder.

In many cases such compounds are not written together as forming one word, altho they are entitled to such recognition as well as the preceding: *der silberne Kreuzbund* Society of the Silver Cross, &c. A number of similar formations, as *ein geräucherter Fischhändler*, *reitende Artilleriekaserne* (inscription formerly upon the barracks near the 'Oranienburger Tor' in Berlin), *ein ausgestopfter Tierhändler*, *ein wohlriechender Wasserfabrikant*, *ein dreistöckiger Hausbesitzer*, &c., are capable of a comical construction, a *smoked fishdealer*, instead of a *smoked-fish dealer*, &c. The comical feature of this clumsy construction has helped to bring it into disrepute and facilitate the movement toward the form of a genuine compound, mentioned above.

7. In a few modern compounds (249. II. 2), which in reality are each only a fragment of a sentence written together as one word, that element of the compound may be inflected which in the syntactical structure of the sentence would be inflected, or the compounds may remain wholly uninflected: *die Handvoll* handful, pl. *zwei Hände voll* or *Handvoll*. Some of these compounds are now felt more or less as old compounds and hence are treated as such, the final element alone being inflected: *der Springinsfeld* romp, *des Springinsfeld(es)*, pl. *Springinsfelde*. See 80. 2 and 249. II. 2.

8. A fossil noun in an oblique case may not be felt as such and hence construed as a simple stem: *M.H.G. ze den wihen nahten* (dat. pl.) *on the holy nights*, now *Weihnachten* construed as a fem., neut., or masc. sing. See 96. 1. Compare 88.

9. Feminine nouns are not now in general inflected in the sing., but the following exceptions occur:

1. The following groups of feminines take an s in the gen. sing. after the manner of strong masculines and neuters:

- a. Feminine names. See 86. 1 and 2. b.
- b. Names of relationships and feminine titles when used as names. See 90.
- c. Some articleless feminines depending upon a preposition, prep. phrase, or an adjective which governs the genitive: *an Zahlungs Statt* *instead of payment*, after the model of *an Kindes Statt*; *von Obrigkeits wegen* *by order of the authorities*, after the model of *von Amts wegen* *officially*; *krankheitshalber* after the model of *Feiertags halber*. *Antworts* (now *Antwort*) *genug* (Lessing) after the analogy of *Brots genug* (Luther). The s of *Antworts* may also be explained according to 102. c.

2. Feminines show weak inflection in the singular only rarely in simple forms, but quite frequently in compounds. See 76. II. 1 and 249. II. 1. B. a.

10. If it is desired to call attention to the word itself, not to the thing represented by the word the case form is not the case required by the grammatical construction but the *nominative*, the form usually employed in naming a substantive when it is simply cited, lit. the *naming* case, a usage which has given the name to this case, altho it has other more common functions: *Ungewöhnlich ist der Plural von Haß* (nom., not vom Hasse). *Stuhl ist der Singular zu* (or *von*) *Stühle* (not *Stühlen*).

#### DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVE-SUBSTANTIVE.

95. Nouns made from adjectives are only rarely declined according to any of the regular declensions for nouns. See 111. 10. A few substantives made from adjectives have no inflection. See 111. 7. h. They are usually inflected just as the adjective would be in the same position, but like nouns are written with a capital letter: *der Alte* the old man; *die Alte* the old woman; *das Schöne* the beautiful. For declension in full see 109. For survivals of older usage see 111. 10. *Note*.

#### PECULIARITIES OF NUMBER IN NOUNS.

96. 1. While in general the sing. denotes one and the plural more than one, in certain cases the opposite, namely, that one denotes many and many one,

may be true. A number of objects may be divided into groups, each one of which may be looked at as a unit, a whole. ein Tausend Zigarren a thousand cigars, ein Dutzend a dozen, ein Schock a numerical whole consisting of 60 units; eine Mandel a numerical whole consisting of 15 units. Thus also collective nouns, as die Herde herd, die Armee army, &c., are nouns in the sing. denoting many. These words can usually form a plural as naturally as any common noun, but some, as das Vieh cattle, das Gesinde servants taken collectively, cannot form a plural, since they are conceived of in a general way and not as divisible into distinct groups. Thus as the mind can conceive of individual units as a whole and give expression to this conception in language, the form of the word does not always distinguish between sing. and pl., and colloquially and in popular language we can even find pl. words with a sing. article. ein zehn Mark the sum of ten marks. ein (also eine) 8 Tage a period of a week, eine zehn Jahre nach den andern (Fedor Sommer's *Ernst Reiland* p. 129), am Ende der zweiten acht Tage (Wildenbruch) at the end of the second week. Thus also Ostern Easter, Pfingsten Pentecost, Weihnachten Christmas, tho originally dative plurals, dative after the preposition zu and plural on account of these festivals each lasting several days, may also be regarded as singulars, fem. (under the influence of the pl. die), masc. (under the influence of der Tag), or perhaps more commonly neut. (under the influence of das Fest). So waren wieder Pfingsten gekommen, aber wie waren es diesmal andere Pfingsten! (Stifter's *Stud.*, I 154). Die ewigen Ostern des Herzens (Keller's *Selduzyla*), vorige Weihnachten (Fontane's *Effi*, chap. vi), jede Weihnachten (Lewald's *Gedenkst.* du noch an einen Weihnachten? (Storm's *Unter dem Tannenbaum*, vol. I, p. 180). Auf ein frohes Weihnachten (Fontane's *Unwiederbringlich*, chap. vii). Ostern fällt (or die Ostern fallen) dieses Jahr spät. Pfingsten ist (or die Pfingsten sind) vorüber. Was ist Weihnachten (or Was sind die Weihnachten) ohne Kinder? In case of the conception of the form as plural notice the peculiar use of the plural of the ordinal. Kein frohliches Fest im Sinne harmloser Freude sind diese zweiten Kriegsw Weihnachten (Frankfurter Zeit. Dec. 25, 1915). The singular of these three festivals is usually only preserved in compounds. Osterferien, Pfingstmontag, Weihnachtsabend. The simple singular feminine form Weihnacht is sometimes found instead of Weihnachten.

Sometimes the name of a foreign newspaper is treated as a singular, as in English, altho the form is distinctly plural. Der „Times“ meldet man aus Petersburg, daß usw. (*Neue Zürcher Zeit.*, June 8, 1905). Wenigstens wird der „Times“ gemeldet usw. (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Jan. 2, 1907). See also 253 I 2 g.

Thus also Buch book, literally letters, now always sing., for one object, was in Gothic and O.H.G. in the pl. to designate one book.

On the other hand, the pl. is so associated with the original sing. form Geschwister (in Lessing's *Nathan* I, 2, still used in sing.), a collective noun meaning brothers and sisters, that the pl. article is now used (die Geschwister), while we in other cases use the sing. article before collective nouns of the same form. das Gedränge throng, das Gebirge mountain system, &c.

2. Names of materials do not from their very nature admit of a plural in the usual sense, but may take a plural to designate different species, varieties, or grades of the same thing. der Wein wine pl. Weine different kinds of wine, Rheinweine Rhine wines, Rotweine, das Holz wood, pl. Holzer different kinds of wood, die Baumwolle cotton pl. die amerikanischen Baumwollen American varieties of cotton, feine Bleie fine grades of lead (for pencils, &c.).

a. This simple pl. is often replaced by compound pl. plurals formed by adding to the name of the material or kinds of manufactured articles or products or for different brands or to the name of textile of wood Stahlarten Kohlrassen, Brannat's Atlasgewebe satin



also geographical names just as in English: die Alpen the Alps, die Zy'kladen the Cyclades, die Darda'nellen the Dardanelles, die He'briden the Hebrides, die Niederlande the Netherlands, die Pyre'näen the Pyrenees, die Vo'gesen the Vosges, &c., but these plurals do not correspond in every case in the two languages, as das Felsengebirge the Rockies; die Vereinigten Staaten als ein ganz anderes Land als das heutige an entirely different U. S. from that of to-day; &c.

Note 1. Besides the more common words in the above list, there are many others, especially those scientific terms which designate classes of animal or plant life: die Herbi'voren herbivorous animals, Orchi'deen orchids, &c.

Note 2. The sing. is often used, in order to indicate an individual of a class or group, or a fragment or portion of a whole, or to express a collective idea: die Alpe a single range of the Alps. Diese Haue (pl. used as a sing. in a collective sense) erfolgte (Langenscheidt Berl. 55). Unter diesen Worten waren sie bis in den Garten gekommen, an eine Stelle, wo viel Buchsbaum (sing. used in a collective sense) stand (Fontane's *Stechlin*, chap. vi). „Wenn also das Schiff — apropos, was kann es geladen haben?“ „Jedenfalls Hering, Herr Doktor, salzen und frischen“ (Spielhagen's *Faustulus*, p. 60). The singular is often used in English of fish in a collective sense where the plural is used in German: perch Barsche, pike Hechte, trout Fo'rellen, smoked fish geräucherte Fische, &c. Do you like fish? Essen Sie gerne Fische?

8. A number of very common words are singular in German (and hence often also capable of a plural) which are only plural in English: das Almosen alms, pl. die Almosen different items of alms, die A'postelgeschichte Acts (in the Bible), Aufwartung respects, (einem seine Aufwartung machen), ein Bitterer bitters (Er trinkt einen Bitteren), der Bodensatz settlings, lees, dregs, grounds, sediment, die Brille spectacles, pl. die Brillen the pairs of spectacles, in Buntstift in crayons (ein Bild in Buntstift), das Dam(en)spiel or Dambrett(spiel) draughts, checkers (Spielen Sie Dambrett or Damen?), das Domino dominoes, die Drehkrankheit staggers (disease), die Druse the strangles (disease), der Erlös the proceeds, Ersparthes savings, das Feuerwerk the fireworks, die Fleischbank the shambles (meat-market), die Flügeltür the folding doors, die Gasanstalt or das Gaswerk the gas-works, der Gewinn winnings, die Golfbahn or das Golfeld the links, das 'Hauptquar'tier the headquarters, das Hirschgeweih the antlers, im schottischen Hochland in the Highlands of Scotland, die Hochzeit the nuptials, die Ka'serne the barracks, das (or der) Kehricht the sweepings, die Kneifzange nippers, die Lichtputze snuffers, der Lohn (pl. die Löhne) wages (Der Arbeitgeber bestimmt den Lohn für den Arbeiter, but Er zahlt seinen Leuten die Löhne aus), die Lunge the lungs, lights, die Mauke the scratches (disease), das einzige Mittel the only means, remedy, vielerlei Mittel many different kinds of means, remedies, im Mittelalter in the Middle Ages, die Nachricht (piece of) news, die neuesten Nachrichten the latest items of news, das Proto'koll the minutes, der Reichtum riches (Reichtum entflieht *riches fly away*, but also in the plural: Er besitzt Reichtümer), mit der Miete im Rückstande sein to be in arrears with the rent, Schadenersatz damages, die Schere scissors, das Seifenwasser the soapsuds, die Sittlichkeit the morals, die Traube the bunch of grapes, Treff clubs (Treff ist Trumpf clubs are trumps), sein Treiben his doings, die Treppe stairs, pl. die Treppen the flights of stairs, Trumpf trumps (see Treff), das Uhrwerk the works of a clock or watch, das Unkraut weeds (Unkraut vergeht nicht), pl. Unkräuter weeds of different varieties, einen zur Vernunft bringen to bring one to his senses, die Vesper (zur Vesper gehen) vespers, der Wald the woods, forest, die Wasserleitung water-works, water-pipes, water-supply, West'indien the West Indies, eine oftmalige Wiederkehr des Tages many happy returns of the day, im rechten Winkel at right angles (Diese Linien schneiden sich im rechten Winkel), diese Wirtschaft these goings-on, das Zahnfleisch the gums, die Zange the tongs, pl. die Zangen the pairs of tongs, der Ziegenpeter the mumps, der Zirkel pair of compasses.

A number of words are in German used in both numbers where in English the singular is employed: die Auskunft information, pl. die Auskünfte, der Fortschritt progress, pl. die Fortschritte, das Geschäft business, pl. die Geschäfte, das Haar hair, pl. die Haare, die Kenntnis knowledge, pl. die Kenntnisse: Er ist bereit, Auskunft or Auskünfte zu erteilen, the plural when different matters are involved, so that the plural idea becomes prominent. Die Partei des Fortschritts the party of progress, but Meine Schüler machen große Fort-

schritte My pupils are making great progress Er hat ein sehr ausgedehntes Geschäft He has a very extensive business, but Die Geschäfte gehen langsam Business (i.e. sales, &c) is slow Sie hat schwarze Augen und dunkles Haar or dunkle Haare Etwas kommt mir zur Kenntnis Something comes to my knowledge, but ein Mann von vielen Kenntnissen a man of great knowledge

9 The pl of -mann in compounds is usually -leute, which, however, does not mark sex as -mann does in the sing, but may include both sexes, and thus represent people not as individuals, but as belonging to a distinct class or profession, or trade der Edelmann nobleman pl Edelleute people of noble birth, der Hauptmann captain, pl Hauptleute; der Kaufmann merchant, pl Kaufleute. Thus many such plurals Bergleute miners, Fuhrleute drivers &c The regular pl is, however, used when the sex becomes prominent der Ehemann married man, pl die Ehemänner married men, but Eheleute married people Thus also when the persons designated are not so much thought of as belonging to a class, but rather are conceived of as individuals who embody the idea of inner personal, manly worth der Ehrenmann man of honor, pl die Ehrenmänner, der Kraftmann man of power genius, pl Kraftmänner; der Ersatzmann substitute, pl Ersatzmänner. Thus also Biedermänner honest men, Staatsmänner statesmen, Hauptmänner leading men, but Hauptleute captains Thus sometimes, as in the last example, the same word forms a plural either in -männer or -leute, according to the meaning The plural in -männer is also used with reference to the exterior form of men, as in Hampelmänner jumping jacks, Schneemänner snow men, Strohmannen men of straw (lit or fig), &c

10 If a noun is modified by two numeral adjectives the first indeclinable with pl force, the second declinable with sing force, added to the first to complete and make more exact the statement, the noun may be either sing or pl If the sing form of the noun be chosen, then the second adjective must agree with it but if the pl form be preferred, which is more common then the second adjective like the first remains uninflected Tausend und eine Nacht The Thousand and One Nights (The Arabian Nights'), hundert und ein Kamel one hundred and one camels, in zwei und einem halben Jahr in two and a half years, drei und eine achte Meile three and one eighth miles or more commonly (except in the first example in this one meaning) in zweiundenehalb Jahren, dreieinundachtzig Meilen For a case where the noun must be in the pl see 121.2 d Note

11 In German the singular is used where in English the plural is employed, in that case where a plural noun refers to as many different things as it has modifying adjectives, as die englische und die deutsche Sprache the English and German languages, but die französischen und die deutschen Universitäten the French and German universities i.e. the French universities and the German universities Die schwarze und die weiße Kuh the black cow and the white one, die schwarzen und die weißen Kühe the black cows and the white ones die schwarz und weiße Kuh the black and white cow, i.e. the cow which is part black, part white, die schwarz und weißen Kühe the cows which are part black, part white The article can be used only once where there is only one person or thing or one group of persons or things, as in the last two examples The

article is also used only once where there are two objects which are parts of a whole: **der erste und zweite Band** the first and second volumes (of a set), **die ersten und zweiten Bände der beiden Reihen** the first and second volumes of the two series. Similarly where two distinct units are merged into one for a common purpose, or where two distinct parties are struggling against one another in a common contest for the mastery: **die englische und französische Flotte** or **die englisch-französische Flotte** the English and French fleet or the Anglo-French fleet; **der deutsch-französische Krieg**, &c.

12. The Germans often use the sing. in a distributive sense (where we use the pl.) when the reference is to a *single* thing or respect which applies alike to a number of persons: **Viele haben das Leben verloren** Many lost their lives. **Allé hoben die rechte Hand auf** All raised their right hands. **Der Henker hieb den Verurteilten den Kopf ab.** **Ihr müßt den Kopf gerade halten.** See also 263. II. 3.

13. The sing. is much used with generalizing force both in German and English, but in the former to a greater extent than in the latter: **Der Mensch wird zum Unglück geboren** Man is born unto trouble. Often this generalizing sing. takes on real abstract force, as is described in 5. A. *b* above.

14. For the words which have different plurals with differentiated meanings, see 83.

#### GENDER OF NOUNS.

97. Gender in German is not, as in English, determined by sex or non-sex, but is either natural or grammatical.

The gender of nouns is natural when it is based upon sex. Natural gender is confined to names of animate beings. Such nouns are masculine if they denote males, and are feminine if they denote females.

Grammatical gender is determined, not by sex, but by the meaning and form of the word. It is of three kinds—masculine, feminine, neuter. By grammatical gender even nouns denoting things and abstract ideas are often masculine or feminine by virtue of their meaning or form: **der Herbst** autumn, **der Fluß** river, **die Fahrt** drive, **die Reife** ripeness. The origin of grammatical gender and its original relation to natural gender is not clearly understood. Some think that the basis of all gender is the natural sex of man and beast, which originally in the lively play of the imagination was also ascribed to lifeless objects. Others with greater probability think the question more a matter of form and meaning. The idea of masculine or feminine sex could attach itself to certain suffixes which occurred in certain nouns and pronouns denoting males or females. Many nouns which denoted lifeless objects or abstract ideas had the same ending as the nouns denoting animate beings, and thus became intimately associated with them and were treated *grammatically* in exactly the same way, their modifiers being required to assume a masc. or a fem. form. Also many words which did not have an ending that suggested the masc. or the fem. gender had a *meaning* similar to certain masc. or fem. nouns and hence were similarly treated, their modifiers being required to assume a masc. or a fem. form. All the pronouns referring to these nouns that had become masc. or fem. upon the basis of mere form or meaning were masc. or fem., so that a large number of lifeless objects had become thoroly associated with the idea of sex and had thus been brought into relation to life, but it does not seem probable that a vivid idea of sex and animate life was ever associated with these things in ordinary language. From the very beginning the ideas of form and general meaning were the principal factors. In a limited number of words, however, masc. and fem. forms have led to the vivid idea of sex. Thus popular fancy pictured to itself the moon as a shepherd among his sheep (stars), starting from the grammatical gender of (der) **Mond**. The imagination may also in a limited number of words have directly personified things, assigning gender to them on the basis of some fanciful resemblance to animate beings.

The neuter (i.e. neither) gender denoted originally, as its name signifies, absence of gender, and has arisen to the dignity of a third gender only by its difference in grammatical form from that of the other two genders. In Indo-European, from which Germanic has come, the masculine and feminine had a different form for the nominative and the accusative as the nouns were felt as representing living beings who act and are acted upon, while neuter nouns did not have a different form for the two cases as they were felt as representing an inert mass that could neither act nor suffer when acted upon. Even in oldest German this old order of things had in a large measure disappeared. To-day the feminine as well as the neuter has under all circumstances the same form for the nominative and the accusative. Thus language has grown less picturesque, more matter-of-fact.

It is now only possible by the aid of philology to determine the different forces at work in gender, and that only imperfectly. The following detailed treatment is intended only as a practical guide to the use of gender as it is to-day.

### GENDER ACCORDING TO MEANING.

98. 1. The gender of nouns indicating animate beings is, as in English, masc. or fem. according to sex: *der Vater* father, *die Mutter* mother; *der Mann* man, *die Frau* woman; *der Bruder* brother, *die Schwester* sister; *der Knecht* servant, *die Magd* maid-servant; *der Bock* male goat, *die Ziege* female goat; *der Ochse* ox, *die Kuh* cow.

There are a few exceptions:

a. A few isolated words: *das Weib* and *Frauenzimmer* woman, *das Mensch* wench, in the language of the common people *das Mannsen* man, *das Weibsen* woman.

b. Nouns representing not an individual but a species or class are not of uniform gender, some being masc., some fem., some neuter: *der Mensch* man, *der Adler* eagle, *die Person* person, *die Waise* orphan, *die Schwalbe* swallow, *das Pferd* horse, &c.

c. In nouns denoting the young of animals and also of human offspring the idea of sex is not prominent, and hence the gender is usually neuter: *das Kalb* calf, *das Füllen* colt, *das Junge* eines Schafes, ein ganz Kleines baby, &c.

d. All nouns representing living beings become neut. when they take a neut. suffix: *Fräulein* Miss, young lady, *liebes süßes Tantchen* dear good Auntie.

2. The gender of nouns indicating lifeless objects is difficult for the foreigner to detect, but may be learned in part by the following rules:

A. Masculines are:

The names of the days of the week, months, seasons, winds, points of the compass, mountains, stones, and foreign rivers (see B. a): *der Montag* Monday, *der Januar* January, *der Winter* winter, *der Pa'ssat* the 'trade-wind,' *der Norden* the north, *der Brocken* the Brocken, *der Diamant* diamond, *der Don* the Don (river). Of course if such names are compounds they are not necessarily masc., but are governed by their last component: *das Frühjahr* Spring, *das Matterhorn* (peak of the Alps), &c.

B. Feminines are:

(1) The names of most German rivers, most trees, plants, flowers, fruits (except *der Apfel* and *der Pfirsich*, the latter of which also has a fem. form, *die Pfirsiche*), cigars (see b below), postage stamps (see b below), and cardinal numerals used as substantives: *die Weser* the Weser river, *die Elbe* the Elbe river, *die Eiche* oak, *die Rose* rose, *die Kar'toffel* potato, *die Traube* grape, *die Henry Clay* (name of a cigar), *die Porto'riko* the Porto Rico postage stamp, *die Eins* the figure 1. For more concerning the gender of numerals see 121.

3. Note.

a. The prevailing gender for German rivers is fem., as a number were originally compounded with a fem. suffix -aha related to the Latin *aqua* water: *Werra* from *Werraha*. A few German rivers, as *der Bober*, *Eisack*, *Elbing*, *Inn*, *Kocher*, *Lech*, *Main*, *Neckar*, *Pregel*, *Regen*, and

**Rhein**, are masc., as are also American rivers and foreign streams in general excepting those ending in a fem. suffix, as *e*, *a*, and often these are masc.: *der Mississippi*, *Don*, *Columbia*, &c., but *die Themse* *Thames*, *Volga*, &c. Some foreign rivers have double gender, sometimes according to the languages from which they were taken, as *der Rhone*, *der Tiber*, sometimes fem. after German fashion, as *die Rhone*, *die Tiber*.

*b.* The names of cigars and postage stamps are fem., as the mind supplies the words *Zigarre*, *Marke*. In the same manner other words may take the gender of some word supplied by the mind: *ein* (neut.) *Stahl*, for *Stahlpulver*; *das* (see also 83) *Scharlach* (with gender of *Fieber*) scarlet-fever; *feiner Korn* (with the gender of *Branntwein*) Dutch gin; *beim Blindenkuh* (with the gender of *Spiel*) (Fontane's *L'Adultera*, chap. viii) in the play of blindman's-buff; *die Blickensderfer* (name of eine Schreibmaschine).

(2) The gender of the names of ships is usually that of the original word, but there is a tendency to employ the feminine gender in case of ships named after persons or places: *der Kaiser Wilhelm*, *die Luise*, *die Möwe*, but *die Deutschland*, *an Bord der „Moltke“* (*Hamburgischer Correspondent*, June 24, 1903), *auf der „Hohenzollern“* (ib.), *die Hamburg* (ib., June 29, 1903), *die Navahoe* (ib.), *die Emden* (official German report of Sept. 25, 1914), *die Rückkehr der Bodensee* (*Das Berliner Tageblatt*, Nov. 5, 1919) the return of the Bodensee (passenger airship). In case of ships named after persons or places many avoid the feminine as an anglicism and employ the masculine after the analogy of *der Dampfer*: *an dem Untergang des „Maine“* (*Neue Zürcher Zeitung*, March 23, 1898), *der Caracas* (*Hamburgischer Correspondent*, Dec. 24, 1902), *unser tapferer Emden* (Engel's *Ein Tagebuch*, II, p. 387). In case of ships named after persons and places some writers employ the gender of the original word, dropping the article when the word is unmodified, but using it when modified: *Scharnhorst*, but *der stolze Scharnhorst*; *Emden* but *das tapfere Emden*. *Bodensee benötigte* (auf der Fahrt von Friedrichshafen nach Berlin) *nur 3¾ Stunden* (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Nov. 22, 1919).

*C.* Neuters are:

*a.* The names of minerals except: *der Stahl* steel, *der Tombak* (sometimes neut.) tombac, *der Kobalt* (sometimes neut.) cobalt; and *Nickel* (masc. in the meaning *Zehnpfennigstück*) nickel, *Wismut* bismuth, *Zink* zinc, which are either neut. or masc., but more commonly the former.

*b.* The names of countries, islands, provinces, cities, and places except those that always take the article (59. II. F. 2. *a* and *b*).

*Note.* In poetic style cities are often personified and treated as fem., as a survival of a once more general usage: *die rege Zürich* (Schiller), *die goldene Augsburg* (Frenssen's *Bismarck* p. 52).

*c.* Certain abstract nouns, especially abstract adjective-substantives, as *das Schöne* the beautiful, and infinitive-substantives, as *das Singen* singing.

*d.* The letters of the alphabet, as *das A* the a, *das Abc* the A-B-C.

*e.* Modern compounds and nouns formed from other parts of speech (see 80. 2), except those that denote persons, or other living beings, which also sometimes take the neut. but usually the natural gender: *ein Vergißmeinnicht* forget-me-not, *ein Mehr* a majority, *ein Plus* that which is above and beyond, *ein unbekanntes Etwas* an unknown something, *das bessere Ich in uns* (Goethe's *Wilhelm Meisters Lehrjahre*, II. chap. xi). Oswald: *Du heiraten? Wen?* Simpson: *Eben dieses Wen wollte ich dir unterbreiten.* (Wilbrandt's *Die Maler*, 3, 3). You marry? Whom? — It is just this question of the whom that I was about to lay before you. *Ich hasse dieses pedantische allerdevoteste deutsche Sie* (id., *Franz*, III). „Entweder Sie erklären augenblicklich, daß Sie meinen würdigen Vater mit Ihrem Gelächter nicht kränken wollten, oder wir verzichten auf die Ehre Ihrer Gegenwart“. „Wer ist das Wir?“ schrie sie kirschbraun vor Zorn dem Doktor zu (Baumbach's *Der Schwiegersohn*, VIII). Hier gibt's kein Rückwärts, sondern nur ein Vorwärts. Bei Tische hatte ich ein reizendes Gegenüber At the table a charming young lady sat opposite me. Wenn sie mich wollte — Sie! Welche Sie? (Wilbrandt's *Maler*, 3, 4) If she would have me—She! What She? Es ist kein Er; es ist eine Sie (Raabe's *Frau Salome*, chap. xi) It (here the thief) is no male person; it is a girl. *Ein* (masc.) *Springinsfeld* romping boy or girl, *ein* (masc.) *Saufaus* toper, &c.; *das Kikeri'ki* crowing of the cock, but *der Kikeri'ki* cock, and hence also *der*

**Kikeri'ku**, name of a comic paper Some formations of this kind used as names of newspapers and periodicals, as **der Vorwärts** and **der Über'all**, are masc as they are conceived as having the qualities of men i.e. are the representatives of certain principles or the embodiments of certain ideas, but others as **Über Land und Meer** and **Vom Fels zum Meer**, are neuter in accordance with the general rule Substantives derived from interjections denoting noises are not neut but usually masc after the analogy of other names of noises which are largely monosyllabic derivatives from verbal stems and hence are naturally masc **der Knack**, **der Klatsch**, **der Paff**, **der Kladdera'datsch** *great noise row*, and hence **der Kladdera'datsch**, name of a satirical paper in Berlin **Luginsland** watch tower is masc after the analogy of **Turm**

A sentence or a part of a sentence is often used as a neut noun **Wie schmerzlich, nach und nach hinter der eigenen Leistung zuruckzubleiben**, ein ungestumes „Mach' Platz!“ zu horen (Erich Schmidt's *Charakteristiken* II, p 233) Er war dann später mit einem kurzen „gute Nacht“ in seine Kammer gegangen (Storm's *In St Jorgen*)

The gender of modern compounds is sometimes regulated by the first word See 102. h (toward end)

### GENDER ACCORDING TO FORM

99 To some of the rules of formal gender there are many exceptions In the following articles only the general outline of present usage can be given

#### 1 Masculines are

a Most monosyllabics by gradation (197 A a), showing in many cases the same vowel as the past tense of the strong verbs from which they are derived **der Band** *volume*, from **binden** *to bind*, **der Biß** *bite*, from **beißen** *to bite*, **der Sproß** *sprout*, from **sprossen** *to sprout*, **der Schluß** *close* from **schließen** *to close* A few monosyllabics show another vowel than that of the past **der Tritt** *step*, from **treten** *to step*, **der Befehl** *order*, from **befehlen** *to order*, &c A few are neuter **das** (sometimes **der**) **Floß** *raft*, **das Schloß** *lock castle* A few are feminine See 2 a below

Examples of this class of words with the peculiarities of their formation are mentioned in articles 198-205 under each class of strong verbs, where they should be studied carefully

b Most monosyllabics formed from the stem of wk verbs or the stem of the present tense of strong verbs **der Tanz** *dance*, from **tanzen** *to dance*, **der Fall**, from **fallen** *to fall* &c

c Nouns having the following suffixes **-er, -ler, -ner**, denoting agents, as **der Schreiber** *clerk*, **der Künstler** *artist*, **der Pfortner** *door keeper*, **der Wecker** *alarm clock*, literally awakener, those in **-el** denoting an instrument, as **der Hebel** *crow bar*, those in **-em, -ich, -ig, -ing, -ling, -rich**, as **der Atem** *breath*, **der Fittich** *wing*, **der König** *king*, **der Hering** *herring*, **der Frühling** *Spring*, **der Ganserich** *gander*, &c

#### 2 Feminines are

a Dissyllabics by gradation ending in **-e**, showing in many cases the same vowel as the past tense of the strong verbs from which they are derived **die Sprache** *language*, from **sprechen** *to speak* &c, (with another vowel than that of the past tense) **die Fliege** *fly*, from **fliegen** *to fly*, &c

Most monosyllabics by gradation are masculine, but a few are feminine **Schur** *shearing*, **Fuhr** (usually in compounds, as **Ausfuhr** *exportation*) See close of 1 a

b Nouns having the following suffixes **-e** (in abstract nouns and names of lifeless objects), many in **-t**, all in **-ei** (accented), **-in, -ung, -heit, -keit, -schaft**, a few in **-ut** and **-at**, a number in **-nis** and **-sal**. **die Große** *greatness, size*, **die Stube** *room*, **die Macht** *might*, **die Necke'rei** *teasing*, **die Gräfin** *countess*, **die Hezung** *heriting*, **die Vermessenheit** *audacity*, **die Frommigkeit** *piety*, **die Landschaft** *landscape*, **die Armut** *poverty*, **die Heimat** *native place*, **die Bangnis** *state*

of fear, die *Bedrängnis* distress, die *Besorgnis* apprehension, die *Betrübnis* sadness, die *Düsternis* darkness, die *Fährnis* (Koser's *König Friedrich der Große*, II, p. 333) danger, die *Kenntnis* knowledge, die *Unkenntnis* ignorance, die *Kümmernis* sorrow, die *Trocknis* (Raabe, Frenssen) dryness, die *Wildnis* wilderness, die *Wirrnis* chaotic condition, die *Trübsal* (see 3. c below).

3. Neuters are:

a. Nouns having diminutive suffixes (see 245. I. 8. 1. f), and those in -icht denoting a collective idea: das *Kindchen* little child, *Dickicht* thicket, but der or das *Kehricht* sweepings.

b. All in -tum (except der *Reichtum* wealth, and der *Irrtum* error) and those in -tel (from *Teil* part): das *Fürstentum* principality, das *Viertel* fourth.

c. The majority of those in -nis, -sal, -sel: das *Gefängnis* prison, das *Schicksal* fate, das *Rätsel* riddle, &c. A goodly number in -nis are fem. See 2. b above. A few fluctuate between fem. and neut. with a preference in most cases for the former: die (formerly also das) *Befugnis* authorization, die (or das) *Beschwernis* trouble, burden, die (also das) *Bitternis* bitterness, die (das) *Ersparnis* economy, saving, *Erkenntnis* (see 83), die (das) *Säumnis* delay, die (das) *Verderbnis* corruption, die (das) *Versäumnis* delay, das (die) *Wagnis* bold venture, &c. Four in -sal are usually fem., sometimes neut.: *Drangsal* distress, *Mühsal* drudgery, *Saumsal* slothfulness, *Trübsal* affliction. A few in -sal are generally neut., sometimes, especially earlier in the period, masc.: *Rinnsal* channel, *Scheusal* monster, &c.

d. All of the form Ge—e, or Ge- (without e), except the strong masculines *Gebrauch* use, *Gedanke* thought, *Gedeih* (now obsolete) prosperity, *Gefalle(n)* favor, *Gehalt* (see 83), *Gehorsam* obedience, *Genuß* enjoyment, *Geruch* odor, *Gesang* song, *Geschmack* taste, *Gestank* stench, *Gewahrsam* (earlier in the period fem., sometimes neut.) custody, *Gewinn* or *Gewinst* gain; the masculines *Gesell(e)* companion and all other masculines of this form (Ge—e or Ge-) which represent persons; the feminines *Gebärde* gesture, *Gebühr* due, fee, *Geburt* birth, *Geduld* patience, *Gefahr* danger, *Gefährde* fraud, danger, *Gemeinde* community, *Genüge* satisfaction, *Gerechtsame* privilege, *Geschichte* history, *Geschwulst* swelling, *Gestalt* form, *Gewähr* guarantee, *Gewalt* power.

#### FLUCTUATION IN GENDER.

100. The gender of nouns is now much better established in the language than earlier in the period, but it is still unsettled in many words. The following points may be of service:

1. The following substantives have double gender with a preference, perhaps, for the first mentioned form: das and der *Abteil* compartment (in a railway car), der and das *Alt'ar* altar, die and in early N.H.G. and classical period der *Angel* fishing-hook, das and der *Ar* are, das and der *Ar'senik* arsenic, das and der *A'tom* atom, der and das *Bauer* bird-cage, der and das *Begehr* wish, demand, der and das *Bereich* domain, der and das *Breisgau* (section in Baden), der and das *Brüch* swampy land, das and der *Bündel* bundle, der and das *Büschel* bunch, tuft, das and der (rare) *Datum* date, die and das *Drangsal* trouble, perplexity, das and der *Elsaß* Alsace, der and das *Episko'pat*, *Pri'mat*, &c. (see 245. I. 19), das and der *Euter* udder, der and das *Ex'trakt* extract, das and der *Fi'asko* failure, das and der *Filter* filter, das and der *Flöß* raft, die and der *Geisel* hostage, das (with Goethe and Schiller also der and still occasionally so; in early N.H.G. die) *Gift* poison, das and der *Gran* grain (weight), der and das *Grat* ridge, das and der *Gummi* rubber, der and die *Haspel* reel, das and der *Hehl* secrecy, die and der *Hirse* millet, das and der *Ju'wel* jewel, der and das *Ka'min* fire-place, der and das *Karzer* school prison, der and das *Ka'theder* teacher's desk, chair in a university, der and das *Kies* gravel, das and der *Kino* moving picture theater, der and formerly also die *Kleinmut* faintheartedness, der and perhaps as frequently die *Klimax* climax, das and often der *Knäuel* (ball of yarn, &c.), das and often der *Kompro'miß* compromise, der and das *Kris'tall* crystal, das and perhaps as frequently der *Leck* leak, das and der (rare) *Lexi'kon* lexicon, das and der *Liter* liter, das and der *Lob* praise, der and das *Lohn* wages, das and der *Mete'or* meteor, das and der *Meter* meter, always masc. however in *Trimeter*, *He'xameter*, and *Gaso'meter*, das or der (for a boy or a girl), also die (for a girl) *Mündel* ward, das and der (after the analogy of der *Dom*) *Münster* cathedral, der and die *Muskel* muscle, das and die *Neunauge* lamprey, das and der *Nickel* nickel, der and formerly also das *Ort* place, der and das *Ort* (83) awl, der and often die *Otter* otter, die and der *Pacht* lease, das and der *Pathos* pathos, solemn or often high-sounding, bombastic language, das and often der *Pendel* pendulum, das and der *Perpen'dikel* plumb-line, pendulum, der and das *Pfühl* pillow, die and formerly also der *Phalanx* phalanx, der and das *Plaid* (plet) shawl, das and der *Polster* cushion, pillow, das and der *Pult* desk, die and der *Quader* square dressed

block of stone, die and der Reihing breast-rail, die and formerly also der Reve'renz bow, curtsy, das and der Ruckgrat back-bone, der and formerly also die Scheitel crown (of the head), der and die Schneid snap, courage, das and der (rare) Se'mester semester, das and der Siel sewer, der and das Spek'takel noise, racket, das and often der Spittel old people's home, das and der Tesching gun of a small bore, der and das Ungestum vehemence, das and der Versteck hiding-place, die and formerly also der Waise orphan, die and das Wiek little bry, der and das Ze'ment cement, das and often especially earlier in the period der Zepter scepter, der and die Zierat ornament, das and der Zink zinc, das, die, der Zubehö'r belongings, die and formerly also der Zwiebel onion, and others

a In dialect many deviations from the literary language occur in the gender of words die (for der) Bach, der (for die) Butter, das (for der) Monat, &c

2 The following have not only double gender, but also double forms, with perhaps a preference for the first mentioned at least in ordinary language, and in some cases a leaning to the second in elevated diction die Backe and der (as a rule earlier in the period) Backen cheek, der Karren and (especially in N G) die Karre cart, der Muff (83) and die Muffe muff, der Nerv and die Nerve nerve, das (or der) Niet or die Niete rivet, die Peri'ode or formerly also der Peri'od(e), der Pfirsich and die Pfirsiche peach, der Pfosten and die Pfo'ste post, der Pfiem or Pfiemen and die Pfieme awl, die Quaste and der Quast tassel die Quelle and in poetic language der Quell spring (of water), die Rutze and der Rutz chink, die Schläfe and der Schlaf temple (on the forehead), die Scherbe and der (S G) Scherben shard, der Sparren and die Sparre rafter, die (and das) Werft and die Werfte dock-yard, die Zehe and der Zeh toe, and others The different dialects and sections often diverge here widely

3 For nouns which have different genders and forms with differentiation of meaning see 83

### GENDER OF FOREIGN NOUNS.

101. Foreign nouns retain the gender which they had in the language from which they were borrowed der Kerker from the Latin *carcer*, m.; das Kloster from the Latin *claustrum*, n

a A . . . . . dance with the  
rules for . . . . . cases by their  
ending . . . . . das Gefängnis  
prison, r . . . . . on account of  
der Stein stone, das Banner and Panier banner, standard (from the French bannière, f) under  
the influence of das Feldzeichen banner, names of foreign countries usually neuter after the  
analogy . . . . . Latin fem) old Europe, der  
Keller c . . . . . ds in -er, die Etage (masc in  
French) . . . . . -e, die Kanzel and die Bibel,  
as they . . . . .  
Latin p . . . . .  
in the Eng . . . . .  
in near . . . . .  
Streich after the analogy of der Streich As the Frenc  
it are masc often become neut, in German das Poisson, from a poisson, was resultat from  
le résultat, &c On the other hand, words which originally in the Latin are neut have become  
masc influenced by the French, which has converted the neut into the masc: der Palast from  
Latin palatium, n thru French palais, m

b In quoting from a foreign language, if it is not possible to avoid placing an article before a foreign word or the first word of a quoted phrase, the gender is commonly conformed to the gender of the corresponding word in German Sweet in seiner History (die Geschichte) of English Sounds, der Korrespon'dent der „Daily Mail“ (die Post).

### GENDER OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

102. Compound nouns have the gender of the last component: die Haustür door of the house, der Hausflur entrance hall of a house, das Haustier domestic animal

The exceptions are:

a A number of words having for their final component Mut, namely, Demut, Langmut, Sanftmut, Anmut, Großmut (sometimes masc.), Schwermut, Wehmut, are fem, while others, as Freimut, Gleichmut, Hochmut, Jagdmüt, Kleinmut (sometimes fem), Mißmut, Übermut, Unmut, &c, are masc Here the fem words have a different origin from the masc. words, being originally abstract nouns derived from adjectives formerly in use and having in M.H.G. the fem ending e and mutating the stem vowel, while the masculines were formed by adding the masc substantive Mut and are according to rule masc entirely disappeared and dropping mutation under the m identical in form with them, but retained the fem article However, the meaning of the word has also exercised some influence over the gender of these words, for, after the masc and fem



forms had become identical, some masc. became fem., and some fem. became masc., and of words of modern coinage some took on the masc., some the fem. article. At present the feminines, as can be seen from the above complete list, express the milder virtues and qualities, while the masculines denote the more vigorous or violent traits or feelings, or their opposites.

b. *Abscheu disgust*, *Vogelscheu* (Goethe's *Egmont*, act 4, Straße; now *die Vogelscheuche*) *scarecrow*, are masc., but other compounds of *Scheu* are fem., as *die Wasserscheu*, &c.

c. *Die Antwort answer*, but *Wort* and its compounds are neut. *Antwort* is in fact not a compound of *Wort*, but a derivative from it, and had in M.H.G. a different form: *antwúrte* (later changed to *Antwort*, as its form was influenced by that of *Wort*), neut. or fem. In early N.H.G. *Antwort* is still neut., and a few survivals of this usage still occur in the classical period: *ein richtiges antwort* (Prov. xxiv. 26). *Ich glaubte, das sei Antworsts genug* (Lessing's *Emilia*, 4, 3). The *s* of *Antwort* may in the sentence from Lessing be also explained according to 94. 1. c.

d. *Teil* is now usually masc., but it is still neut. in accordance with older usage in certain set expressions: *der letzte Teil des Buches*, *der vierte Teil des Landes* (but in early N.H.G. *das zehende teil der Stad* fi—Rev. xi. 13). It is still neut. in the meanings *allotted portion*, *portion* (in certain set expressions), and sometimes *a good deal*: *Sie haben ihr Teil dahin* They have their portion (i.e. reward). *Du hast das beßre Teil erwählt* (Schiller's *Maria*, 5, 6; compare Luke x. 42). *Ein gut Teil Leichtsinns, um ein gut Teil reicher* a good deal richer. Also its compounds are usually masc., except: the contracted and uncontracted form in fractions, as *das Drittel* or *Dritteil* third, &c.; *das* (also *der*) *Abteil compartment* (in a railroad car), *das Gegenteil* opposite, *Hinterteil* (perhaps more commonly masc.) *back part*, *Vorderteil* (perhaps more commonly masc.) *forepart*, *Pflichtteil* (more commonly masc.) *that which necessarily falls to a legal heir, whether the testator will or no*, *Erbeil inheritance*, *Mutterteil inheritance from the mother*, *Vaterteil patrimony*, *Altenteil* (perhaps less commonly masc.) reservation made by an old person in making over his estate to an heir. *Urteil* (n.) is not a compound of *Teil*, but is derived from the corresponding verb *er'teilen* (ur- reduced to *er-* by reason of loss of accent), which formerly also had the meaning *to pass sentence or judgment* besides its present significations. This old meaning is now expressed by *urteilen*, which is a derivative of *Urteil*.

e. *Mittwoch Wednesday* is masc. after the analogy of the other days of the week.

f. *Heirat marriage* is fem. altho *Rat* is masc., since the origin of the word was forgotten and the force of *Rat* was no longer felt. The abstract nature of the present meaning led to its use as a fem.

g. Compounds which are the names of places are neut. even tho the last component is of some other gender, since they follow the general rule for the gender of places: *das schöne Hamburg beautiful Hamburg*, but *die Wartburg* (a single castle).

h. A number of compounds, which are in fact each a syntactical fragment of a sentence or a whole sentence written as one word, are neut., or if they represent persons have natural gender without reference to the gender of the last component: *das Vergißmeinnicht forget-me-not*, *der Springinsfeld romping boy*, *der Taugenichts a good-for-nothing fellow*, &c. See 98. 2. C. e.

In other cases where the natural gender is not pronounced, the gender of such a syntactical fragment is sometimes regulated by that of the first word: *die Handvoll handful*, *der Löffelvoll spoonful*, *der Fußbreit the width of a foot*.

## INFLECTION OF THE ADJECTIVES.

103. Adjectives may be divided into two general classes—*descriptive* and *limiting* (see 118) adjectives.

### DESCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

104. 1. *Inflection*. A descriptive adjective is one that expresses some quality or attribute of the object designated by the noun. Also the two participles usually have descriptive force when used adjectively. Contrary to English usage these adjectives and participles are, except in the predicate, inflected, forming two distinct declensions—the *strong* and the *weak*. The leading points as to their inflection are as follows:—

A. The *strong* declension, which has by far the fuller inflection (see 106), is employed when the descriptive adjective or participle is not preceded by a limiting adjective, or when there stands before the descriptive adjective or participle a limiting adjective which has no ending to show gender and case: *N. guter Wein*; *mein kleiner Bruder*; *ein schlafendes Kind*; *zwei kleine Brüder*. Hence the strong adjective not only modifies the meaning of its noun, but it also marks its case and gender in the absence of the article or some other limiting adjective that has full endings to show case and gender.

a. A descriptive adjective which is not preceded by an article and follows *von* in a phrase that stands as an appositive to a preceding noun often agrees in case with the article of the preceding noun and is also regulated in its inflection by it, and hence is strong if the article has no form to show gender and case. so ein Esel von alter (or better *ältem*) Freund! Compare B. c below and also 109. c.

B. The weak declension, which has only two endings, *e* for the nom. sing. of all genders and for the acc. sing. of the fem. and neut., and *en* for all other cases of the different genders, sing. and pl., is employed when there stands before the descriptive adjective or participle some limiting adjective such as the def. article or other limiting adjective with strong inflection which can show the case and gender: N. der gute Knabe, G. des guten Knaben; N. der erquickende Schlummer.

a. Sometimes the limiting adjective is understood, having already been previously used in the same sentence, in which case the descriptive adjective or participle is weak: der Erbfeind  
unserer Ratsch und heissen Gleiches

us  
in  
ac

that stands as an appositive to a preceding noun often agrees in cases with the article of the preceding noun and is also regulated in its inflection by it, and hence is weak if the article has a form which shows the gender and case durch eine Versäumnis von zwei Monaten, die ich einem Esel von alten (or better *ältem*) Freunde danke (Schwind an Mönke).

C. If the descriptive adjective is preceded by two limiting adjectives with different inflection, its declension is controlled by that of the second limiting adjective: Dieser mein guter Freund.

D. Two or more descriptive adjectives which modify the same noun take the same inflection: guter alter Wein; ein guter alter Mann; dieser gute alte Mann.

2. *Non-inflection.* Descriptive adjectives and participles were in older German much more widely used without distinctive case endings than to-day, as explained in E. a below. At present they are not declined in the following cases:

A. In the *predicate* in the positive and comparative, but they are inflected here in the superlative (see 112. 1). In the predicate relation the adjective or participle is used:

a. As the *predicate complement* of intransitives of incomplete predication (as *sein* to be, *bleiben* to remain, *scheinen* to seem, *werden* to become, &c.; see 252. 2. B. a) or of passive verbs: Er ist alt. Das Wetter scheint besser. Er ist der älteste. Er wird glücklich genannt. Here also belongs the past participle in the compound tenses of such intrans. verbs as are conjugated with *sein*: Er ist gekommen.

b. As *predicate appositive* (see 252. 1. c): Sie kamen glücklich an. Sie saß weinend am Bette ihrer Mutter. Der Wind bläst kalt.

c. As *objective predicate*, i.e. when the adjective or participle predicates a quality or state of the object. This predication is not represented as absolute, but as limited and modified by the idea contained in the verb: Er glaubt sich krank (= Er ist, nach seiner Meinung, krank). Sie weinte sich krank (= Sie wurde durch Weinen krank). Wir fanden ihn sehr leidend (= Er litt sehr, gemäß unsrer Wahrnehmung). Ich betrachte dies als überflüssig (= Meiner Meinung nach ist dies überflüssig). Ich halte die Sache für abgemacht. Ich sehe dich gegürtet und gerüstet (= Du bist, wie ich sehe, gegürtet und gerüstet). But in the superlative: Man preist diesen Mann den glücklichsten. Ich fühle mich heute am schwächsten.

Here also belongs the past participle in the compound tenses of transitive verbs: Er hat den Brief geschrieben.

The copula *sein*, which in case of predicate adjectives and participles usually formally announces the predication, is here in accordance with older usage still not expressed, as explained in 252. 1. b. Note and 262. III. 2. B.

*Note.* The objective predicate often indicates the result of the action of the verb upon its object, and hence is in this use by some called the *factitive predicate*: *Er schlug ihn tot.*

B. After the noun which it modifies, but only in the positive and comparative, never in the superlative:

a. Instead of standing attributively before a noun, an adjective or participle often follows it in the relation of an appositive. A single adjective or participle rarely stands after the noun, as *Röslein rot*, except in poetry, but it *usually* takes this position when it is itself modified by an elliptical clause or by a phrase which is limited by a clause, also sometimes if it is merely modified by another word or words, or if there are several adjectives or participles separated from each other by commas or by *und*: *eine Rose rot wie Blut [ist], ein Mann älter als ich [bin]*. *Ein panischer Schreck, vermehrt durch das falsche Gerücht, daß vor den Toren sich Cäsars Reiter gezeigt hätten, kam über die vornehme Welt. Und küßte sie an (now usually auf) den Mund so bleich (Uhland). Eine Stange drei Meter hoch. Endlich erscheint ein weibliches Ding, flüchtig, unbedachtsam, wild, witzig bis zur Unverschämtheit, lustig bis zum Tollen. Der Himmel nah und fern, er ist so klar und feierlich. Ein Edelknecht sanft und keck.*

But in the superlative: *Dieser Mann, der älteste unter allen.*

The adjectives in 111. 7. c can only in this position be used attributively.

*Note 1.* With the exception of the cases mentioned above which usually require the adjective or participle to stand after the noun, this position of an adjective and participle is peculiarly adapted to poetic style, and in prose is often replaced by the usual attributive position before the noun, an arrangement of words which often is markedly different from the English, as is nicely illustrated by the following sentence: [In her revery which carried her back to her youthful days] *Sie sah sich heranwachsen im Hause ihres Vaters, des alten, reichen Kaufherrn, ein von Luxus umgebenes, durch Schmeicheleien verwöhntes und doch inmitten alles Reichtums ein armes, weil von keiner Mutter behütetes Mädchen (Helene Stökl's *Am heiligen Abend*).*

*Note 2.* The non-inflection of these adjective or participial appositives is readily explained by the fact that they are not real attributive adjectives, but stand in elliptical clauses of which they are felt as predicate: *Sie hat einen Nacken [der] weißer [ist], als Schnee.*

*Note 3.* For exceptions to the rule that the adjective is here uninflected see 111. 9.

*Note 4.* If the adjective or participial appositive have an article, which is especially the case in poetic style, where for emphasis an epithet instead of preceding follows the noun, it is always inflected: *Auf dem Teich, dem regungslosen, weilt des Mondes holder Glanz.* Also in prose in case of titles: *Friedrich der Große, Karl der Fünfte.*

*Note 5.* In M.H.G. the postpositive adjective could be inflected, and this older usage survives in rare instances in poetry: *Ich habe einen solchen Baum jüngst gesehen, gebogenen über eines Baches Saum und schwankenden in Frühlingslüfte Wehen (Rückert).* A little more common is the inflection here of *selig deceased*: *Mein Mann seliger war bei Jahren und nicht leicht zu rühren (Goethe).* The nom. masc. form *seliger* has become a mere fossil, as it is also used in the oblique cases: *Ich habe die Sache von meinem Vater seliger ererbt (Immermann).* Non-inflection here, however, is the rule: *mein Vater selig* (or still more commonly *mein seliger Vater*).

b. In case of those nouns (see 96. 4. (1)) which remain uninflected when used in a collective sense to express weight, measure, extent, the modifying qualifying adjective follows the noun, and hence is not inflected: *fünf Pfund flämisch, zehn Fuß rheinisch.*

C. Uninflected adjectives or participles often stand in the relation of a predicate appositive to a following or preceding noun or pronoun, when the adjective or participle represents a subordinate adverbial clause of which it would be the predicate complement or verbal predicate: [*weil sie*] *Froh [war], ganz allein und jeder lästigen Beobachtung entrückt zu sein, hatte sie sich in die Ecke zurückgelehnt und die Augen geschlossen. Dies hörend (= als er dies hörte), brach er in Tränen aus. Er grüßte, sich tief verbeugend (= indem er sich tief verbeugte). Allzustraff gespannt (= wenn er allzustraff gespannt wird), zerspringt der Bogen. Often introduced by als: Mein Freund hat als enterbt (= da er enterbt worden ist) keine Mittel mehr. The appositional construction here is much older than the fuller clause forms which are given in parentheses. See 268. 4.*

*Note.* The adjective or participle usually refers to the subject of the sentence, as in the above examples, but it is also used as objective predicate: *Der Arzt hat den Kranken als geheilt (=da er geheilt war) entlassen. Dieses Gericht ist man warm (=während es warm ist).* This construction may become ambiguous: *Ich verließ ihn, sein Unglück beklagend.* Here *beklagend* may refer to *ich* or *ihn*. The participial construction should be avoided here, but of course is unobjectionable where no ambiguity is liable to arise: *Ich fand ihn seine Bücher ordnend.*

D. In the absolute construction, where the participle or adjective is not in apposition with any word in the main clause, non-inflection is the uniform rule. This absolute construction is treated at length in 265. B. By comparing 265. B. a, b. (1) it will become evident that the participle here was originally a predicate appositive and hence this construction once belonged to C.

E. Sometimes non-inflection of adjectives and participles occurs in the attributive relation, in poetry, dialect, familiar language, and in many set

expressions that have come down to us from an earlier period when non inflection here was more common. In all of these cases however non inflection is now usually limited to the nom and acc neut sing in the strong declension. Ein unnutz Leben ist ein fruher Tod (Goethe's *Iphigene*, I 115) Kein großer Glück als ein vertrauend Herz (Dahn's *Jugendgedichte*, 190) Lieb Weib, lieb Kind, auf gut Glück at random, auf baldig Wiedersehen I hope to see you again soon. Especially frequent in old maxims Bar Geld kauft wohlfeil The uninflected attributive form occurs only rarely elsewhere. Das Alter ist ein hofflich Mann (Goethe) Lieb Knabe (Schiller's *Tell* 1, 1) der gleißend Wolf (Uhland) Sinnend sprach zu ihm jung Werner (Scheffel's *Trompeter*, Sechstes Stuck) Lieder jung Werners (ib, p 212) Und ich weiß ein ander Lied von einem jung jung Zimmergesellen (ib, Zweites Stuck)

a *History of the Uninflected Form* Luther was much freer in the use of uninflected forms than even elevated discourse allows to day. He often dropped the strong masc nom sing ending and also final e both in the strong and weak declensions in any gender case or number manch frum (= frommer) priester, ein zornig man, weltlich gewalt, die weltlich gewalt, etlich gotlich vnd Christlich artickel. This older usage survives in compounds Edelmann, Großstadt, &c

A historical view of the case is at this point helpful. The so called uninflected form is here in a number of cases the natural historic form. The adjective followed in earlier periods the inflection of nouns as can also be seen in Latin. In course of time the endings of the nouns became much weaker beaten so that they seem to day endingless in the nom and acc sing of masculines and neuters and in case of neuters (see 69 5 *Historical Note*) also in the plural der, den Tag, das Wort, zehn Pfund. The adjective should here also be endingless and the uninflected forms we find in Luther's writings are in part the correct historic forms. Even in Gothic however the oldest Germanic language we often find in descriptive adjectives instead

same form as in the singular since the idea of number is not now felt as essential in the predication of a quality. In certain pronominal adjectives we still find both old and new forms but with differentiated function mein Buch, but sein Buch und meines

105 *General Rules* The fem and neut have each their respective acc sing like the nom, the nom and acc of all genders are alike in the pl, also the gen and dat sing of the fem are always identical

106 Strong declension of gut good

	Singular			Plural
	Masc.	Fem	Neut	Common form for all genders
N.	guter	gute	gutes	gute
G	guten(es) <sup>1</sup>	guter	guten(es) <sup>1</sup>	guter
D	gutem	guter	gutem	guten
A	guten	gute	gutes	gute

No e 1 The strong descriptive adjective is now really weak in the gen and the m

von weitem, aber wenn man es als seins betrachten soll . . . (Ompteda's *Cäcilie von Sarryn*, chap. xx). Man lernt ja von manchem so das und jen's (Hauptmann's *Michael Kramer*, Act 1).

*Note 3* The strong ending -em, masc. and neut. dat. sing., is in different periods sometimes replaced in careless language by the more convenient -en, which gives the word the appearance of a weak form. Weinhold, in his *Mittelhochdeutsche Grammatik*, p. 560, gives examples for M.H.G. In early N.H.G. this seemingly weak form is quite frequent: von den Römischen reuber (Luther), von einem Bischoff (Luther), vor anbrechenden Morgen (*Faustbuch des Christlich-Meynenden*, 1725). It occurs occasionally in the classical period and still later: von weiten (Lessing), daß ich mich kaum vor jemanden sehen lassen konnte (Lessing), welche Sprache niemanden von der Familie fremd war (Goethe). Sie traucten niemanden mehr, nicht dem Nachbar, nicht dem Verwandten, ja kaum noch dem Herrgott (Raabe's *Else von der Tanne*). Sie möchte von niemanden abhängen (Wilhelm Fischer's *Die Freude am Licht*, II, p. 42). Was er sonst niemanden sagte usw. (Anna Schieber's *Alle guten Geister*, p. 235, and also frequently elsewhere). It is most common in jemanden, niemanden, but even here it is not so common as the strong form. Elsewhere it now rarely occurs in the literary language, but is often found in popular speech: Sie elender, undankbarer Mensch, ist das der Lohn, daß wir Ihnen in unsern Haus ein Jahr und sechs Monat' Geld hab'n verdienen lassen? (Anzengruber's *Das vierte Gebot*, 1. 8).

*Note 4* In Low German, where the nom. and acc. neut. sing. was in earlier periods without an ending we now often find under the influence of the literary language the ending -et, the Low German form corresponding to High German -es: Een janzet, schöniet, richtiget Tannenbäumken! (= Bäumchen) (Fricke in G. Hauptmann's *Friedensfest*, 1).

### 107. Weak declension of gut:

	Singular		Plural for all genders.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
N.	der gute	die gute	das gute	die
G.	des guten	der guten	des guten	der
D.	dem guten	der guten	dem guten	den
A.	den guten	die gute	das gute	die

} guten

For the origin of this declension see 111. 10. *Note*.

*Note*. In early N.H.G. the acc. fem. sing. sometimes ended in en instead of e, thus occasionally preserving here the M.H.G. form: vber die gantzen (instead of gantze) Erde (Gen. I. 26).

**108. Mixed Declension.** It must be especially noted that after ein and the other limiting adjectives inflected like it, i.e. kein and the possessives (see 58. A and B), the descriptive adjective is strong in the sing., in the nom. of the masc. and the nom. and acc. of the neut. because the preceding limiting adjective is here deficient in endings to show gender and case. Elsewhere in the singular and thruout the plural the descriptive adjective is weak because the preceding limiting adjective has here distinctive endings.

mein guter Freund,  
my good friend

meine gute Schwester,  
my good sister

mein gutes Buch,  
my good book

Singular.

N. mein guter Freund  
G. meines guten Freundes  
D. meinem guten Freund(e)  
A. meinen guten Freund

meine gute Schwester  
meiner guten Schwester  
meiner guten Schwester  
meine gute Schwester

mein gutes Buch  
meines guten Buch(e)s  
meinem guten Buch(e)  
mein gutes Buch

Plural.

N. meine guten Freunde  
G. meiner guten Freunde  
D. meinen guten Freunden  
A. meine guten Freunde

meine guten Schwestern  
meiner guten Schwestern  
meinen guten Schwestern  
meine guten Schwestern

meine guten Bücher  
meiner guten Bücher  
meinen guten Büchern  
meine guten Bücher

a. In earlier periods the weak form of the adjective was also used here in the nom. sing. As a late survival of this older usage the weak form was earlier in the present period occasionally employed after the nom. unser: unser nicht genug zu preisende Kapellmeister (Goethe); unser alte Vater (Novalis, 1, 119).

**109. Adjective-substantives.** Nouns made from adjectives or participles (see 6) are declined as adjectives, but are written with a capital:—

	the rich man	a rich man	the rich	rich people	that which is good
N.	der Reiche	ein Reicher	die Reichen	Reiche	das Gute
G.	des Reichen	eines Reichen	der Reichen	Reicher	des Guten
D.	dem Reichen	einem Reichen	den Reichen	Reichen	dem Guten
A.	den Reichen	einen Reichen	die Reichen	Reiche	das Gute

(1) The gender of adjective-substantives which do not represent living beings can often be explained by supplying some word understood: die Linke, short for die linke Hand the left hand; der Bittere for der bittere Schnaps bitter; Gegenwärtiges (referring to das Schreiben) besawckt Herrn E., Sohn eines unserer hiesigen Freunde, Ihnen bestens zu empfehlen.

Zieh Dir rasch Dein Meergrünes (referring to das Kleid) an. The neut. form is used for the young of animals and for children (see 98 I c) ihr Junges her (i.e. the cow's) calf, ein ganz Meines a baby.

(2) The neut. adjective substantive preceded by the definite article has a comprehensive generalizing force: das Schöne the beautiful, all that is beautiful. The form without the article contains a collective idea: Schönes beautiful things. Kleinstes wird an dem getadelt, der in Menge Größtes adelt (Rückert) I easily can see very little things in him who puts nobility into many very great things. Für Fräulein Dora war natürlich mehreres dabei. Among them were of

has a meaning that cannot be embodied in one English word since ihr Innerstes her inmost feelings. Lange, lange könnte es nach in dem metallenen Reifen, als habe die... for a long time after the rim of the ball ceased it. I or a thing to say of its own initiative. Morgen ein mehr-morrow. Er hat von einer Base ein wenig geerbt. I relative. Er tut nie ein übriges. He never does more than he must do.

b. Participles when used as substantives still retain their former verbal nature and hence retain their adverbial modifiers and take direct objects: etwas längst Bekanntes something that has been known for a long while. ein Medizin Studierender a student of medicine (lit. one studying in medicine). See 111 7 d.

c. The unmodified adjective substantive following von in a phrase that stands as an appositive to a preceding noun is regulated in its inflection by the article of the preceding noun and also agrees with it in case. Der Schlingel von Bediente the rogue of a servant. ein alter Schelm von Lohnbedienter. If the adjective substantive is modified by an article it is uniformly in the dat. instead of agreeing in case with the preceding noun: der Hund von einem alten Bedienten. Compare 104 I A a and I B c also 94 2.

d. The inflection of adjective substantives was originally weak. See 111 10 Note. There is one group of neuters however, which were originally strong and are still inflected strong or are uninflected. See 111 7 h.

work if it is preceded by a title or a noun denoting thing adjective. Meine Herren Geschworenen! (I on der 70 Millionen Deutschen (Engel's Ein Tagelohn,

110 Adjectives having a suffix sometimes vary from the regular inflection.

A. In colloquial speech the e of the unaccented suffixes -el, -en, -er often drops out before an e of the following case ending, or still often in accordance with older usage the e of the case ending -en and -em drops out after -el or -er, but in the literary language there is a tendency to prefer—except immediately after a diphthong—the full form, almost always so in case of adjectives in -en and -er: der edle Mann, des edlen or edeln Manns, aus edlem or edelm Hause, die offne Tur, ein heitres Gesicht, eines heitren or heiteren Gesichtes, mit heitrem or heiterem Sinne, (in the literary language) teurer (sometimes teurerer) Freund, but often der edele Mann, aus edelem Hause, mit heiterem Sinn and usually die offene Tur, ein heiteres Gesicht. As the inflected forms of the comparative of such adjectives are so clumsy there is a natural tendency to replace these words by more euphonious ones wherever possible: mit herberem (rather than bittererem, bittrrem, or bittererem) Schmerze.

a. Nouns made from adjectives (see 111 10) with these suffixes do not follow this rule of adjectives (see b).

before other case endings the e of the noun but in general the new and nat

but the adj. nom. neut. form anderes, besonders (adv.) especially, but the adj. nom. neut. form

Originally there was in most cases no vowel before the l, n, r in adjective and substantive suffixes. A vowel developed here in a later period which has ever since remained firm in nouns

However, in adjectives containing a diphthongal stem the vowel did not fully develop when a vowel followed in the next syllable, and we still say: *der teure* (or sometimes *teuere*). In other adjectives the *e* developed in the suffix and has remained up to our time, as described in A and B.

In M.H.G. the *e* of the inflectional endings was suppressed after the suffixes *-el*, *-en*, *er*. This older usage is still observed in nouns (see 62. C), and survives also in verbs before *n* (see 178. 1. B. a) and often in adjectives before *n* and *m* (see A above). Present usage is not favorable to the mutilation of adjective inflectional endings. Thus the fluctuation described in the above articles represents the struggle of modern usage with older laws.

B. Adjectives ending in *-ig* often in N.G. colloquial speech lose in pronunciation and sometimes in print the *i* of the suffix before the case ending *es*, while in S.G. the *e* of the case ending *-es* is still sometimes suppressed: *mut(i)ges* (*mut:tes*) *Roß* (N.G.); *mutigs Roß* (S.G.). South German here preserves older usage. See 106. Note 2.

## PECULIARITIES IN THE DECLENSION OF DESCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVES.

111. 1. Adjectives in the vocative (case of direct address) do not suffer an article before them, and hence are usually strong: *lieber Freund*, *liebe Freunde*. Not infrequently weak forms still occur in the plural, the survivals of a once common construction (see 10. Note below): *Guten Tag*, *jungen Leute!* (M. Dreyer's *Der Probekandidat*, p. 25). *Geht*, *lieben Leute* (Keyserling in *Der dumme Hans*, Aufzug 2).

a. In beginning letters an exclamation point is placed after the vocative: *Liebe Schwester!* *Liebster Bruder!*

2. Descriptive adjectives in the nom. and acc. pl. following the indefinite pronominal adjectives and indefinite numerals *ähnliche* similar, *andere* other, *beide* both, *einige* some, *einzelne* single, *etliche* some, *gewisse* certain, *manche* many, *mehrere* several, *sämtliche* all, whole, complete, *solche* such, *sonstige* other, the remaining, *verschiedene* different, *viele* many, *irgendwelche* any at all, *wenige* few, &c., are strong or weak but are, except after *beide*, *sämtliche*, *solche*, more commonly declined strong, altho the preceding limiting adjective is strong and shows the case: *beide gleiche Hälften* (Fontane), *einige gute Bücher*, *manche unbetonte Wörterchen* (Wilman's *Deutsche Grammatik*, I, p. 388), *sämtliche preußische Bataillone* (Koser's *König Friedrich der Große*, p. 145), *solche eindeutige Assoziationen* (Wundt's *Völkerpsychologie*, II, p. 81), *solche jüngere Bauten* (R. Zahn in *Velhagen und Klasings Monatshefte*, Nov. 1905, p. 296), *irgendwelche kulturkämpferische Allüren* (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Jan. 20, 1907). Also in the gen. pl. the adjective is, perhaps, more commonly inflected strong but differing from the usage in the nom. and acc. the weak form is also quite common: *einiger guter* (or often also *guten*) *Bücher*, *der Optimismus gewisser deutscher Politiker* (*Hamb. Nachr.*, Nov. 11, 1905), *mit Ausnahme weniger unbedeutender Schiffe* (ib., May 31, 1905); *die berufsmäßigen Ausüßer dieser und ähnlicher mimischen Künste* (Vogt and Koch's *Geschichte der deutschen Literatur*, 1st ed., p. 247), *sich einzelner vorgeschobenen Posten zu bemächtigen* (*Hamb. Nachr.*, Nov. 28, 1904), *trotz mancher unvermeidlichen* (strong nom. form employed above by the same author) *Mängel* (Wilman's *D. G.*, I, p. viii), *die Deutung solcher kretischen* (strong nom. employed above by the same author) *Funde* (R. Zahn in *V. & K. M.*, Nov. 1905, p. 309). Weak forms occur sometimes also in the nom. and acc. pl. after some of these indefinites, rarely however after *einige*, *viele*, *wenige*, *andere*: *gewisse in der Sprache eine wichtige Rolle spielenden semantischen Gegensätze* (Brugmann's *Kurze vergleichende Grammatik*, p. 315), *über so manche seltsamen Begebenheiten* (G. von der Gabelentz's *Der Mönch*, IV), *auf irgendwelche englischen Zusicherungen hin* (*Hamb. Nachr.*, Oct. 24, 1905). In the singular, adjectives after most of these words are almost uniformly weak: *einiges frische Obst*, but occasionally strong, as in *solcher adnominaler Gebrauch* (Brugmann's *K. v. G.*, p. 434). *Darin ist einiges Wahres enthalten* (G. Hauptmann). Some of these words as *ähnlich*, *gewiß*, *sonstig*, *verschieden*, have not become so firmly established here as the others, and hence the strong inflection of the following descriptive adjective is often found after them, perhaps more commonly so: *längst widerlegte Legenden*, *Entstellungen und sonstiges krauses Zeug* (*Hamb. Nachr.*, Jan. 19, 1907). Earlier in the period the strong form of the adjective is not infrequent after *all-* or *kein-* either in the sing. or the pl., and survivals of this older usage still occur occasionally: *alles Gutes* (Lessing), *alle rechtschaffene Christen* (id.), *trotz aller angewandter Mühe* (Raabe's *Die Leute aus dem Walde*, II, chap. x), &c. *Solche*, *sämtliche* and *beide* seem to be about to follow the example of *alle* and *keine*, as they often require the weak inflection of the following adjective: *solche stillen Abende* (Fontane's *Schach von Wuthenow*, chap. iv), *solche lautlichen Elemente* (Brugmann's *K. v. G.*, p. 289), *Vertreter der Studentenschaft sämtlicher deutschen Hochschulen Österreichs* (*H. N.*, Nov. 5, 1904), *sämtliche englischen Schiffe* (ib., Nov. 15, 1904), *beide deutschen Mächte* (Lamprecht's *Deutsche Geschichte*, 7. 2., p. 731).

The weak form has become established after *alle* and *keine* because they possess more pronouncedly the character of a limiting adjective than the other words. The other words, like descriptive adjectives, often have a limiting adjective before them and hence are often felt as descriptive adjectives. As descriptive adjectives they do not influence the inflection of the adjective that follows them. In meaning, however, they resemble limiting adjectives. This doubleness of nature is confusing German feeling. While in most cases they are usually felt as descriptive adjectives, *solche*, *sämtliche*, and *beide* are gradually becoming established as

limiting adjectives as *sämtliche* and *beide* are closely related in thought to *alle* and *solche* to the demonstrative *diese*.

a In the gen pl after zweier and dreier there is fluctuation *das Zusammentreffen zweier gleicher* (or less frequently *gleichen*) *Konsonanten*

3 If several adjectives limiting the same noun are co-ordinate they have the same declension  
frisches, klares Wasser But if the second or second and third adjective stand closer

<sup>a</sup> In some dialects the first adjective is inflected strong and the second or second and third adjectives stand weak as in German.

The r  
nd not

by placing it in the wk declension is new and not to the following cases

<sup>a</sup> The following adjectives which resemble in their nature limiting adjectives may after the manner of limiting adjectives require a wh. adjective after them but usually only in the singular and much less commonly in the plural though the trend is in that direction: beifolgend or beiliegend enclosed accompanying benannt aforementioned besagt, erwähnt, vorerwähnt afore-

&c.) in question derartig of this kind erster- the former  
erster mentioned several times mentioned letzter- the latter  
vorausgehend preceding obig abovementioned &c. all

of which contrary to English idiom may have no article before them folgender kleine Roman, bei der Besprechung von Harnacks erwähntem großen Werk, folgende wichtige (or perhaps less commonly wichtigen) Gründe folgende eingehenderen Mitteilungen *Hamburger Nachrichten* Oct 13 1901 folgende beiden Zahlen (Otto Hutzsch in *Deutsche Monatsschrift* Feb 1906 p 610) Wir wissen bereits durch das Töchterlein, daß der Rat Nebelung nicht rauchte, sondern nur schnupfte, und letzteres harmlose Vergnügen hatten die Götter gleich benutzt, &c (*Rarbes Lufdenpfusen* chap m) Aus vorstehender kurzen Skizze (A Schroer in *Englische Studien* 1907 vol 38

in Engländerne Sitzen 1848. Vor 13  
Zeitschrift für deutsche Mundarten  
einziges Erbtöchterlein (Voss's Psy  
14 1904) folgender treuer Auszug

vollendetem fünfzehnten Lebensjahre, zu nächster großen Messe, wegen eingetretener  
ner französischen Weine, in  
me 6 1801) das Zustromen  
für den deutschen Unterricht,  
from an version to the re-  
i Gesicht (Spielhagen) Thus  
r (Bayerl. Hist. 15) It is

probable that the aversion to the repetition of such endings as *em* and *er* first gave rise to the weak forms here and later the mind perceived that there also often existed here a difference in the relation of the different adjectives to the noun and then for logical reasons began to distinguish regularly between them by their endings. There is at present considerable fluctuation of usage here some authors preferring the weak form others the strong but there is in choice *lingua*

the regular inflection of adjectives  
or more strong descriptive adjectives it is

1

of adjective substantives to be weak. See 10. Note below "                c) repeated the injection

b Adjective substantives not preceded by an article or inflected pronominal adjective are now quite uniformly strong altho the older weak forms occasionally occur especially in the words *Reamer, official, and Redemptor*.

(Temme) Fünf neue Liebsten (H Hoffmanns *Wider den Aufsriss* chap iv). In early NHG weak forms were much more common here. Und es giengen zu im (him) Blinder und

In the masc dat sing however the weak form is not thus restricted but is in general still quite common dem Herrn N N. Gedenken an den Herrn N N.

So blieb ihm als Mann, Held und Verliebten nichts übrig (Raabe's *A T chap xix*). The old wk. dat. of the neut. and fem. is also occasionally found nach *genossenem Guten* (Raabe's

Hoxter und Corvey chap. xv) Aber ein sauberer Brei . . . roch nach Pech, Schwefel und noch



viel Schlimmern (id., *Stopfkuchen*, p. 138). Im ganzen war übrigens diese Art, unversehens zu einer Art Vertrauten (used here with reference to a lady) von wildfremden Menschen gepreßt zu werden, nicht behaglich (S. Junghans in *Zwei Brüder*, p. 62). Sometimes in other cases when the form follows a dependent gen.: aus Treue gegen den Bruder und dessen Angehörigen (Ludwig's *Zwischen Himmel und Erde*, X). See 10. Note below.

5. A descriptive adjective which modifies a noun that stands in apposition with a preceding word is usually inflected regularly, but the following irregularities occur when the adjective is not preceded by an article:

a. The proper inflection of a descriptive adjective that is not preceded by an article and follows immediately in close connection a personal pronoun is not entirely clear to the German. As personal pronouns have neither an article nor the strong endings of the other pronouns to mark gender, it should seem natural for the descriptive adjective in a following appositional phrase to be inflected strong, which is also usually the case, except in the dat. sing. and nom. pl. and sometimes in the acc. pl., where according to present usage either str. or wk. forms may stand, in the case of the nom. pl. perhaps more commonly the wk., in the acc. pl. the str.: ich armer Mann, but mir armem or armen Mann, mir armem Wurm (Fontane), von Dir jungem Schnaufer (Raabe), mit mir altem Hunde (Hauptmann's *Fuhrmann Henschel*, 4), mir kranken Sohn der Musen (Heine), mir armen Büblein (Walther Siegfried's *Ein Wohltäter*), mir jungen, ihr fast unbekannten Menschen (Karl Hans Strobl in *Velhagen und Klasings Monatshefte*, Oct. 1905, p. 238); mir armer or perhaps more commonly armen Frau, mit mir armen Fürstin (Freytag), mir alten erfahrenen Frau (Hauptmann's *Einsame Menschen*, 2); wir alten Juristen (Raabe), wir Deutsche (Fontane), wir Deutschen (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Aug. 27, 1913), wir deutsche Schreiber (Eduard Engel's *Deutsche Stilkunst*, p. 6), wir zwei Einsamen (Lienhard's *König Arthur*, 5); O ihr närrischen Leute (Raabe), less commonly strong after ihr: Ihr hochwürdige Herren (Anzengruber's *Der Schandfleck*, chap. ii), ihr plumpe, rohe Menschen! (Scheffel's *Trompeter*, Zehntes Stück), ihr Auserwählte (Halbe's *Das tausendjährige Reich*, p. 71); für uns arme Frauen (Fontane) rather than uns armen Frauen, to distinguish it from uns (dat.) armen Frauen. Fluctuation often occurs even in the same author: Der junge Bursch mit dem Milchgesicht, er stellt uns Alte in Schatten (Meinhardt). Er schickt uns anderen in die Berge zur Erholung (Meinhardt). The weak forms here are survivals of a construction common in earlier periods. See 10. Note below.

b. When a descriptive adjective that modifies an appositive noun or is itself an appositive is not preceded by an article and follows a noun or pronoun, it is usually str. except in the gen. and dat. sing. of the fem., where the wk. form is also found, and perhaps more frequently so: von dem Herrn Erich Schmidt, ordentlichem Professor, but mit der schönen Baroness Christine Arne, jüngsten Schwester seines Gutsnachbarn Arne (Fontane's *Unwiederbringlich*, chap. i). Man spricht jetzt von Frau Krescentia Rossel, geborenen Schopp (P. Heyse). Mit einer Art wilden Ironie (Raabe's *Die Leute aus dem Walde*, III, chap. vii). Aber wir huldigen dir, schönsten der Himmlischen, | reinsten, jungfräulichsten, Artemis, dir (Wilamowitz-Moellendorff's *Griechische Tragödie*, I, p. 131). But also the strong form: von . . . dessen . . . Weibe Anna, geborener Weibikin (Raabe's *Meister Autor*, III). Occasionally wk. forms occur in the masc. and neut. dat.: einem Stück gebacknen Fisch (Goethe), mit einem Stück brüchigen Eisen (Raabe's *A. T.*, chap. xx), an einem Schöppchen recht sauren Mosel (H. v. Sp. in *Velhagen und Klasings Monatshefte*, Jan. 1907, p. 642), kleine Vorteile, die ihm als ältesten Hauptmann eigentlich zukamen (*Tägliche Rundschau*). The wk. forms in all these instances are survivals of a construction common in earlier periods. See 10. Note below.

6. The descriptive adjective following a gen., especially dessen or deren, gen. of the demonstrative or relative, is sometimes wk., tho the preceding word can in no way show their gender and case: in der Natur balsam'schen Wohltat (Goethe). Es klang wie Erlösung aus Theas rasch hervorgestoßenen Frage (from a recent novel). Was in Preußen nur wenige, außerhalb Preußens niemand, auch nicht dessen besten Freunde, zu verlangen wagten, forderte nach kurzem Schwanken Treitschke (name) mit rückhaltloser Entschiedenheit: die Vereinigung Schleswig-Holsteins mit Preußen (Bailieu in *Deutsche Rundschau*, 1896, Heft 1, p. 61). Mit dessen adjektivischen Attribut (Eugen Eienkel in *Anglia*, 1903, vol. xxvi, p. 483), mit dem Kronprinzen Georg an dessen zehnten Geburtstage (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Feb. 11, 1905). Ihre . . . Augen . . . , von deren ihm gehörenden Wunderreichtum er nichts wußte (Raabe's *Die Akten des Vogelsangs*, p. 114). Die Entwicklung des Zeitungszweikampfes, deren wesentlichsten Punkte Ihren Lesern bekannt sind (*Hamb. Nachr.*, Jan. 7, 1908). Compare: von ir vil grimmen zorne (*Nibelungenlied*, Aventure VI). This is the survival of a once common construction. See 10. Note below.

7. The adjective is not declined:

a. When it is derived from the name of a city and is formed by adding er to the proper name: der alte Berliner Lehrer the old Berlin teacher, des alten Berliner Lehrers; der Verband Berliner Industrieller (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Nov. 6, 1904). When the substantive is understood, such adjectives are manifesting a tendency toward inflection, to the vexation of strict grammarians, who are mindful of the origin of the form (see Note): Erzähle mir davon, aber nichts von den grönländischen Gespenstern; ich habe an unseren Hohen-Vietzern (name of place Hohen-Vietz) über und über genug (Fontane's *Vor dem Sturm*, II, chap. xvi). Such adjectives are not usually employed in the predicative or substantive relation. See 245. II. 10. 1. b.

Note. Here Berliner is felt as an indeclinable adjective, and hence written sometimes with a small letter, but it is in fact a noun in the gen. pl., and means of the people of Berlin. That it is now felt as an adjective can be seen from the adverb which is often placed before it instead of the originally more correct adjective: echt Münchner Löwenbräu, or echtes Münchner Löwenbräu genuine Munich beer of the lion brand.

b. If it is the first of two or more adjectives which together unite in forming *one idea* rote und weiße Kühe cows spotted red and white, die weiß und roten Dolden des Wasserliesch (Fontane's *Stechlin*, chap. i), der Eingang zum schwarz und weißen Zelte des Hohenzollern (Wildenbruch's *Die Quico*), in the case of a number of uninflected adjectives in -e, the 1st word der Berlin-Frankfurt-Charleviller Schenke, The inflection of the first adjective in a number of cases would entirely change the sense rote und weiße Kühe red cows and white cows. Instead of the uninflected forms we also find now quite commonly compound adjectives: ein schwarzrothgoldenes Banner (Treitschke's *Deutsche Geschichte*, II 422), die schwarzrothgoldenen Farben (ib. III 756). In some cases two adjectives form a real compound, the second element alone assuming the inflection, but are written as separate words: die großherzoglich badische Regierung the government of the *grand-duchy of Baden*, die königlich preussische Flagge the flag of the *kingdom of Prussia*.

c. In the case of the following adjectives, since they are only used as predicate complement or objective predicate, or in some cases in the appositive relation following the noun (see 104.2 B):

(1)  
sion.  
(colloq.)  
sturm

the form in -lich also in compounds, as in Das Blatt ist regierungsfreundlich. Er ist mir gut Freund. Der Sache Feind, der Person Freund adverse to the cause but friendly to the person who represents it. Das ist nicht not. Ich habe das nicht not (objective predicate). Es ist ewig schade It's a thousand pities. Es ist schade um die schöne Zeit It is so much valuable time should be wasted. Es ist schade um die schöne Zeit It is so much valuable time should be wasted. Es ist schade um die schöne Zeit It is so much valuable time should be wasted.

Aber für einen Nichtstuer ist meine Schwester ein Zeug. Aber für einen Nichtstuer ist meine Schwester ein Zeug. Aber für einen Nichtstuer ist meine Schwester ein Zeug.

as good for, &c. Es ist recht schade, daß man ganz sturm im Kopf könnt' werden (Hermann Hesse's *Dressents*, p. 221). The older substantive nature of these forms often leads to the use of capitals with some of them, but the absolute proof that these substantive forms are now felt as adjectives is the occasional comparative forms that occur. Mir tät' ein Löffel[ein] Warmes noch nöter (H. Kurz's *Sonnenwirt*, 318).

(2) Also the following, which are usually —

tributive use usually barfußig) bare-footed, 1  
 eingedenk mindful of, einig or eins in the m  
 (Mein Stock ist futsch) gänge und erbe (com  
 as kl  
 cook  
 inclu  
 Mut.  
 gewi  
 has c  
 gage  
 the l

are inflected, now replaced attributively and in large measure predicatively by *nützlich*, altho

the negative form *unnütz* is still quite common in both relations) of use, *quitt* rid of, even (with somebody), *schlüssig* resolved, with *werden* to make up one's mind, *teilhaftig* sharing in, *unpaß* unwell, *untertan* subject to, *verlustig* deprived of, (with verbs) to lose, *forfeit*, *zugetan* devoted: *Er ist mir abhold. Ich mache mich dazu anheischig* I pledge myself to do it. *Der Knabe, eingedenk der früher erlittenen Strafe, gehorchte.* These words are usually only used in the predicate because they have entered into such close relation with a verb like *sein*, *werden*, or *gehen* that the expression has become fixed. Where, however, there is need of an inflected attributive form there is a tendency in some cases, as mentioned above, to employ as in 245. II. 9. 2. B a special attributive form rather than to use the form that has become associated with the verb and is felt as an adverb. In other cases the predicate form is occasionally used attributively and inflected: *der barfuße* (altho there is a special attributive form, namely *barfüßig*) *Knirps* (Heer's *Joggeli*, p. 16). *Leider blieb ich infolge der kaputten Füße liegen* (Feldpostbrief, Oct. 23, 1914). *Miese Sache!* (Feldpostbrief, Aug. 19, 1914). Also used sometimes substantively: *Bist du ein Linkser?* (left-handed) (Hesse's *Unterm Rad*, p. 264).

d. When adjectives or participles which are modified by an adverb are converted into adjective-substantives, the limiting adverb does not make the corresponding change into the state of an adjective, but still like an adverb remains uninflected, tho it modifies a substantive: *die geistig Armen* those weak intellectually, from the adjective expression *geistig arm*; *etwas längst Bekanntes.* The words *geistig* and *längst*, tho they apparently limit their respective substantives, do not take on adjective force and inflection, because the former still as an adverb limits the quality in the word *Armen*, and the latter modifies the verbal force in *Bekanntes* (perf. part.), and neither refer to the living being or the thing implied in the noun. However, if the word before the adjective-substantive limits the substantive as a whole, including both the quality (or action) and the individuals or things represented by the noun, it is inflected: *geizige Reiche* stingy rich people, *ein fleißiger Studierender* (pres. part.) a diligent student.

e. In the case of a very few foreign adjectives, especially those denoting colors: *prima Material* first-class material, *das rosa Kleid* the rose-colored dress, *lila Schleifen* lilac-colored bows. Thus also *karmesin* crimson, *pensee* (pā'se:) pansy-colored, and a few others less common. In colloquial language we sometimes find inflection: *Mutter: Sieh mal! So ein Pech, Lotten ihre Tasse [habe ich zerbrochen]. Hanni: Ach?! die rosae?* (Beyerlein's *Dämon Othello*, 1, 4). They are of course inflected when compounded with the German words *farbig* or *farben* colored: *in lilafarbenen Kleidern, in orangefarbenem Hut.*

f. In a few geographical terms where adjective and noun together form one name: *in Russisch Polen*, or written together *Russisch-Polen* in Russian Poland, and many other similar expressions.

g. An apparent exception is the non-inflection of *eigen* own: *Das ist mein eigen.* Here, however, *eigen* is a neut. substantive, which, tho once in common use, is now so little used that it is quite usually felt as the common adjective *eigen*, and hence is written with a small letter.

h. *Adjective-substantives.* When an adjective now becomes a substantive it retains its adjective form: *der Gute, ein Gutes, &c.* In the prehistoric period adjectives had the same inflection as nouns. A few adjective-substantives still have the inflection of strong neuter nouns, often however dropping the *s* of the genitive and usually the *e* of the dative. As they usually have no plural they seem to be uninflected. These words have an abstract general meaning and hence have not followed the tendency of other adjective-substantives, which refer to definite persons and things and hence like adjectives have assumed distinctive endings. The neuter of the inflected adjective often conveys the same meaning as the endingless form of these old abstract nouns, as in *Unverhofft* (or also *das Unverhoffte*) *kommt oft*, but older usage persists tenaciously here in a very large number of pithy old sayings, preserved as it were by the charm of the terse apt expression and sometimes in part by the rime, as in this example. Some of these old words have acquired more concrete meaning and hence also plural forms: *Gut*, pl. *Güter*; *Recht*, pl. *Rechte*; &c. Compare 104. 2. E. a.

The following groups occur:

(1) When no article precedes and they are mentioned in pairs, or occur in set prepositional expressions: *Der Abstand von reich und arm* (see 54. 3), *von vornehm und gering* the contrast between rich and poor, genteel and humble, *gleich und gleich* 'birds of a feather,' *jung und alt* young and old, *schwarz auf weiß* in writing, *von klein auf* from early childhood, *der Unterschied zwischen Wahr und Freierfunden, Jenseits von Gut und Böse* (title of a book by Fr. Nietzsche). Also with the article: *von da an bis zu Shakespeare, Byron und dem übrigen Groß und Klein* (Raabe's *Die Akten des Vogelsangs*, p. 38). *Einer Entscheidung über das Falsch oder das Richtig, an der dem Rat Suchenden gerade gelegen ist, gehn sie* (i.e. die Grammatiken) *aus dem Wege* (Grunow's *Grammatisches Nachschlagebuch*, Vorwort). These combinations both with or without the article are, as explained in 249. II. 2. F. a, modern compounds and naturally resist inflection within the compound and usually also at the end, as so often elsewhere in such compounds.

(2) When the adjective-substantive is used to indicate in a general way without definite reference a thing or a person briefly characterized by an articleless adjective or participle:

(a) As subject: *Gut ist gut und besser ist besser* A good thing is good, but a better thing is better yet. *Allzu scharf macht schartig* What is too sharp like a knife with too fine an edge will break off. *Ehrlich währt am längsten* Honesty is the best policy. *Vorschnell ist nicht Bauernart* To act overhastily is not the nature of the peasant. *Unversucht schmeckt nicht* That which has not been tried has no taste, i.e. you can't tell how it tastes until you try. *Geschehen* (adjective-substantive) *ist ein'mal geschehen* (verb). *Altklug nie Frucht trug*, or

Alt'klug lebt nicht lang = Was alt'klug ist, lebt nicht lang. Jung geheiratet (183. 1. B. b) lebt lang, but Jung gefreut hat niemand geret:

(b) As an object Wir haben frei We hält gut für böse He considers good bad

Grüner a green-

varying forms,

He is studying the German language Das Althochdeutsche, das Mittelhochdeutsche, das Neuhochochdeutsche, das Bayrische, das Niederrheinische. Of course, the same word may be uninflected or inflected according as it represents the language as varying from a standard or represents it as an organic whole with distinct laws of its own altho it may have relations to another kindred language das Deutsch der Schweiz, or Schweizerdeutsch when we think of it as a variant form of German, but die vollständige Sammlung aller im Schweizerdeutschen eingebürgerten Fremdwörter when we think of it as a distinct dialect

Sometimes as in (3) we find -(e)s in the genitive instead of the indeclinable form Gegen Deutsche Sprachsunder, p. 5) Statt des kraftspringt einem ein eiliger, ohne Feingefühl und Velhagen und Klasings Monatshefte, Sept. 1913,

8. The adjective in the predicate is now uninflected, but in M H G was here inflected as elsewhere, as one or two fossilized remnants still show Er ist voller Tücke. This strong masc. nom. sing. voller is still much used in the predicate before nouns not preceded by a modifier, but all feeling that it is a masc. nom. sing. is lost, as it is used of all genders and numbers as predicate complement, as objective predicate, or in the appositive relation Das Stück war voller Handlung. Die Finger sind voller Ringe, but before an adjective modifier voll von schönen

un-inflection  
This uninflected form is used

in the mean-  
-ected form is used

her periods: Herr  
peter, Lieder jung  
67), S' Witter ist

follows its noun,  
is not the case and  
Zum dritten Male

then. The inflected attributive adjective follows the noun (as in scolding or sweetening) the other hand in expressions of

tenderness, in all of which cases the governing noun has a strong accent and the adjective an almost equally strong one, the emphatic descriptive stress described in 50. 6. *b*: Das ist nicht mein Fräulein, Schäf, dümme! (Hartleben's *Rosenmontag*, p. 118). Spion infämer! (Lienhard's *Münchhausen*, 1). Kannst du nicht ein bißchen nachhelfen, Mutterchen einzigstes? (Marianne Mewis's *Mettes Kinder*). An inflected adjective often follows the governing noun in the market reports: Tee, indischer, ruhig (*Hamburgischer Correspondent*, June 22, 1903).

10. Some adjective-substantives cannot be either strong or weak like adjectives, but are inflected according to one of the regular declensions for common or proper nouns: der Herr (compar. of the adj. hehr august, honored) master, gentleman, des Herrn, pl. die Herren; die Eltern (compar. of alt old) parents; der Junge lad, des Jungen, pl. die Jungen (colloquially in N.G. die Jungens), ein Junge *a lad*, but the word applied to the young of animals has the regular adj. inflection, as ein Junges, pl. die Jungen, zwei Junge; der Fürst (M.H.G. vürste *the first*, wk. superlative) ruling prince, des Fürsten, &c.; der Oberst (superlative) colonel, des Obersten, &c.; der Greis old man, des Greises, pl. die Greise, earlier in the period wk. thruout and still so in compounds, as in Greisenalter *old age*; der Jünger disciple, lit. *the younger* in contradistinction to the master or teacher, des Jüngers, pl. die Jünger; das Gut estate, des Guts, pl. die Güter, but das Gute that which is good, des Guten; das Übel evil, des Übels, &c.; das Recht right, des Rechts, pl. die Rechte, and thus also Unrecht injustice; the fossil gen. Rechters (in such common expressions as das ist Rechters That is the law, in accordance with the law, &c.), the wk. gen. of the adj. recht to which a strong gen. has been added; das Dunkel darkness, des Dunkels, but still with adj. declension in certain set expressions: ins Dunkle gehen to go out into the dark, im Dunkeln tapen to grope in the dark; many names of persons, now inflected like other names of persons: Herr Weiße, Rothe, Schwarze, Braune, which still have their old weak nom. ending *e* altho no longer inflected weak. An old group of neuter adjective-substantives, which are declined like *e*-plurals or are uninflected, have been treated in 7. *h* above.

*Note. Origin of the Weak Inflection of Adjectives.* Altho the adjective may now be inflected weak, the weak type of inflection originally belonged strictly to nouns. In the prehistoric period it was extended to adjectives, at first, however, only when used as nouns. The surviving representatives of this oldest type of adjective-substantives differ considerably from the common type of to-day in that the adjective has often suffered a change of meaning. The adjective in this oldest type was the *habitual* characterization of an individual, so that it often lost much of its original meaning and became a mere formal sign of individualization, a mere formal device to distinguish *permanently* one individual from others: Braune Brown, family name, lit. *brown one*, still with its old weak nominative ending, but now inflected strong; Bruno Bruno, Christian name which has come down from the O.H.G. period unchanged = modern Braune, hence also lit. *brown one*, still with its O.H.G. weak nom. ending *o*, but now inflected strong; Eltern parents, lit. *older ones*, still always weak as in older German; &c. At the beginning of the historical period a further development is already well established. We often find the adjective-substantive used with the full literal meaning of the adjective to distinguish *for the moment* one individual from others, i.e. used as a temporary individualization and hence weak after the analogy of the old habitual individualizations: Tho wihte siu ther alto, thar forna ju ginanto (Otfrid, I. 15. 25, ninth century) Da weihte sie (i.e. Maria und Jesum) der alte, eben genannte, where *alto* and *ginanto* are temporary individualizations here made for the purposes of the moment to make clear to the reader the person in question. These weak forms were felt by Otfrid with the full meaning and grammatical force of adjectives so that he often uses them elsewhere attributively before a noun wherever he desires to distinguish for the moment one individual from others, or very frequently thruout his book wherever he wishes to characterize a person by a term which expresses his feeling of the moment, as in line 9 of the same passage where he calls the same old man *ther saligo man* der heilige Mann and in line 12 where he calls him without the noun *ther guato* der Gute. Thus arose the weak type of adjective inflection, a type unknown in Latin and Greek. Weak inflection became associated in this new construction with the idea of *definite* individualization, but it was not necessarily associated with the definite article, as in these examples. Otfrid often uses weak forms without the definite article: fater unser guato! (ib., II. 21. 27), now strong, Vater unser, du guter!, as the weak form is no longer used in direct address in the singular, altho it is sometimes still used here in the plural as in Guten Morgen, jungen Leute! (Max Dreyer's *Der Probekandidat*, p. 25). Weak inflection without the definite article is sometimes still used in other forms of definite individualization described in 4. *b* (last example), 5. *a* and *b*, and 6 above, and in the ordinal compounds selbtritt (M.H.G. selbe dritte), &c. (see 126. 2. *c* and *Note*), where the distinguishing weak ending has disappeared. The weak form in these newer formations rests entirely upon the definiteness of the idea. The older habitual individualizations differ from the newer type in that they are uniformly weak whether the reference is definite or indefinite. The first five weak nouns in 10 above still faithfully preserve the characteristics of this old type. It is also well preserved in compounds, where in spite of the general or indefinite reference the adjective-substantive is still always weak as in the prehistoric period. Armenarzt parish doctor, lit. doctor of poor people, Gelehrtenversammlung convention of learned men, &c. In M.H.G. and early N.H.G. weak inflection was thus often used in *simple* adjective-substantives, even where the reference was indefinite. Examples are given in 4. *a* above and also in the first paragraph of 4. *b*. This usage is still found in certain dialects, as in the neighborhood of Bern, Switzerland: e Stumm (M.H.G. ein stumme, now ein Stummer), &c. In the literary language both of the older types of individualization are now confined to the groups of survivals given above. The inflection of adjectives and adjective-substantives is now elsewhere regulated by a mere formal principle: Weak inflection is used if the form is preceded by the definite article or other strong limiting word, otherwise the form is strong.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

### ASCENDING COMPARISON.

112. Adjectives are compared by adding -er to form the comparative and -st to form the superlative:

Positive.	Comparative.	Relative Superlative.	Adverbial Superlative.
schlank slender	schlanker	der, die, das schlankste	am schlanksten
klein small	kleiner	der, die, das kleinste	am kleinsten

A few monosyllabics modify the stem vowel in the comparative and superlative. See 113. 4.

the negative form *unnütz* is still quite common in both relations) of use, *quitt* rid of, even (with somebody), *schlüssig* resolved, with *werden* to make up one's mind, *teilhaftig* sharing in, *unpaß* unwell, *untertan* subject to, *verlustig* deprived of, (with verbs) to lose, *forfeit*, *zugetan* devoted: *Er ist mir abhold*. *Ich mache mich dazu anheischig* I pledge myself to do it. *Der Knabe, eingedenk der früher erlittenen Strafe, gehorchte*. These words are usually only used in the predicate because they have entered into such close relation with a verb like *sein*, *werden*, or *gehen* that the expression has become fixed. Where, however, there is need of an inflected attributive form there is a tendency in some cases, as mentioned above, to employ as in 245. II. 9. 2. B a special attributive form rather than to use the form that has become associated with the verb and is felt as an adverb. In other cases the predicate form is occasionally used attributively and inflected: *der barfüße* (altho there is a special attributive form, namely *barfüßig*) *Knirps* (Heer's *Joggeli*, p. 16). *Leider blieb ich infolge der kaputten Füße liegen* (Feldpostbrief, Oct. 23, 1914). *Miese Sache!* (Feldpostbrief, Aug. 19, 1914). Also used sometimes substantively: *Bist du ein Linkser?* (left-handed) (Hesse's *Unterm Rad*, p. 264).

d. When adjectives or participles which are modified by an adverb are converted into adjective-substantives, the limiting adverb does not make the corresponding change into the state of an adjective, but still like an adverb remains uninflected, tho it modifies a substantive: *die geistig Armen* those weak intellectually, from the adjective expression *geistig arm*; *etwas längst Bekanntes*. The words *geistig* and *längst*, tho they apparently limit their respective substantives, do not take on adjective force and inflection, because the former still as an adverb limits the quality in the word *Armen*, and the latter modifies the verbal force in *Bekanntes* (perf. part.), and neither refer to the living being or the thing implied in the noun. However, if the word before the adjective-substantive limits the substantive as a whole, including both the quality (or action) and the individuals or things represented by the noun, it is inflected: *geizige Reiche* stingy rich people, *ein fleißiger Studierender* (pres. part.) a diligent student.

e. In the case of a very few foreign adjectives, especially those denoting colors: *prima Material* first-class material, *das rosa Kleid* the rose-colored dress, *lila Schleifen* lilac-colored bows. Thus also *karmesin* crimson, *pensee* (pā'se:) pansy-colored, and a few others less common. In colloquial language we sometimes find inflection: *Mutter: Sieh mal! So ein Pech, Lotten ihre Tasse [habe ich zerbrochen]*. *Hanni: Ach?! die rosae?* (Beyerlein's *Dämon Othello*, 1, 4). They are of course inflected when compounded with the German words *farbig* or *farben* colored: *in lilafarbigen Kleidern, in orangefarbenem Hut*.

f. In a few geographical terms where adjective and noun together form one name: *in Russisch Polen*, or written together *Russisch-Polen* in Russian Poland, and many other similar expressions.

g. An apparent exception is the non-inflection of *eigen* own: *Das ist mein eigen*. Here, however, *eigen* is a neut. substantive, which, tho once in common use, is now so little used that it is quite usually felt as the common adjective *eigen*, and hence is written with a small letter.

h. *Adjective-substantives*. When an adjective now becomes a substantive it retains its adjective form: *der Gute, ein Gutes*, &c. In the prehistoric period adjectives had the same inflection as nouns. A few adjective-substantives still have the inflection of strong neuter nouns, often however dropping the *s* of the genitive and usually the *e* of the dative. As they usually have no plural they seem to be uninflected. These words have an abstract general meaning and hence have not followed the tendency of other adjective-substantives, which refer to definite persons and things and hence like adjectives have assumed distinctive endings. The neuter of the inflected adjective often conveys the same meaning as the endingless form of these old abstract nouns, as in *Unverhofft* (or also *das Unverhoffte*) *kommt oft*, but older usage persists tenaciously here in a very large number of pithy old sayings, preserved as it were by the charm of the terse apt expression and sometimes in part by the rime, as in this example. Some of these old words have acquired more concrete meaning and hence also plural forms: *Gut*, pl. *Güter*; *Recht*, pl. *Rechte*; &c. Compare 104. 2. E. a.

The following groups occur:

(1) When no article precedes and they are mentioned in pairs, or occur in set prepositional expressions: *Der Abstand von reich und arm* (see 54. 3), *von vornehm und gering* the contrast between rich and poor, *genteel und humble*, *gleich und gleich* 'birds of a feather,' *jung und alt* young and old, *schwarz auf weiß* in writing, *von klein auf* from early childhood, *der Unterschied zwischen Wahr und Freierfunden*, *Jenseits von Gut und Böse* (title of a book by Fr. Nietzsche). Also with the article: *von da an bis zu Shakespeare, Byron und dem übrigen Groß und Klein* (Raabe's *Die Akten des Vogelsangs*, p. 38). *Einer Entscheidung über das Falsch oder das Richtig, an der dem Rat Suchenden gerade gelegen ist, gehn sie* (i.e. die Grammatiken) *aus dem Wege* (Grunow's *Grammatisches Nachschlagebuch*, Vorwort). These combinations both with or without the article are, as explained in 249. II. 2. F. a, modern compounds and naturally resist inflection within the compound and usually also at the end, as so often elsewhere in such compounds.

(2) When the adjective-substantive is used to indicate in a general way without definite reference a thing or a person briefly characterized by an articleless adjective or participle:

(a) As subject: *Gut ist gut und besser ist besser* A good thing is good, but a better thing is better yet. *Allzu scharf macht schartig* What is too sharp like a knife with too fine an edge will break off. *Ehrlich währt am längsten* Honesty is the best policy. *Vorschnell ist nicht Bauernart* To act overhastily is not the nature of the peasant. *Unversucht schmeckt nicht* That which has not been tried has no taste, i.e. you can't tell how it tastes until you try. *Geschehen* (adjective-substantive) *ist ein'mal geschehen* (verb). *Altflug nie Frucht trug*, or

Altklug lebt nicht lang = Was altklug ist, lebt nicht lang. Jung geheiratet (183. 1. B. b) lebt lang, but Jung gefreit hat niemand geret.

(b) As an object Wir haben frei We hält gut für böse He considers good bad

Grüner a green-  
varying forms,

He is studying the German language. Das Althochdeutsche, das Mittelhochdeutsche, das Neuhochdeutsche, das Bayrische, das Niederrheinische. Of course, the same word may be uninflected or inflected according as it represents the language as varying from a standard or represents it as an organic whole with distinct laws of its own altho it may have relations to another kindred language das Deutsch der Schweiz, or Schweizerdeutsch when we think of it as a variant form of German, but die vollständige Sammlung aller im Schweizerdeutschen eingebürgerten Fremdwörter when we think of it as a distinct dialect.

Sometimes as in (3) we find -(e)s in the genitive instead of the indeclinable form Gegen Deutsche Sprachsunder, p. 5) Statt des kraftspringt einem ein eiliger, ohne Feingefühl und Velhagen und Klasings Monatshefte, Sept. 1913,

8. The adjective in the predicate is now uninflected, but in M H G. was here inflected as elsewhere, as one or two fossilized remnants still show. Er ist voller Tücke. This strong masc. nom. sing. voller is still much used in the predicate before nouns not preceded by a modifier, but all feeling that it is a masc. nom. sing. is lost, as it is used of all genders and numbers as predicate complement, as objective predicate, or in the appositive relation. Das Stück war voller Handlung. Die Finger sind voller Ringe, but before an adjective modifier voll von schönen

versprochen (Laut's Frau Aleit n 78)  
Fleck auf der Fl. 2 11)

on-inflection  
This unin-  
altes: Wie

bers in the mean-  
ected form is used

lier periods: Herr  
peter, Lieder jung  
67), S' Witter ist

follows its noun,  
is not the case and  
Zum dritten Male

ten. The inflected attributive adjective follows the noun (as in scolding or expression -- the other hand in expressions of

tenderness, in all of which cases the governing noun has a strong accent and the adjective an almost equally strong one, the emphatic descriptive stress described in 50. 6. b: *Das ist nicht mein Fräulein, Schäf, dümme!* (Hartleben's *Rosenmontag*, p. 118). *Spion infämer!* (Lienhard's *Münchhausen*, 1). *Kannst du nicht ein bißchen nachhelfen, Mutterchen einzigstes?* (Marianne Mewis's *Mettes Kinder*). An inflected adjective often follows the governing noun in the market reports: *Tee, indischer, ruhig* (*Hamburgischer Correspondent*, June 22, 1903).

10. Some adjective-substantives cannot be either strong or weak like adjectives, but are inflected according to one of the regular declensions for common or proper nouns: *der Herr* (compar. of the adj. *hehr* august, honored) master, gentleman, *des Herrn*, pl. *die Herren*; *die Eltern* (compar. of *alt* old) parents; *der Junge* lad, *des Jungen*, pl. *die Jungen* (colloquially in N.G. *die Jungens*), *ein Junge a lad*, but the word applied to the young of animals has the regular adj. inflection, as *ein Junges*, pl. *die Jungen*, *zwei Junge*; *der Fürst* (M.H.G. *vürste* the first, wk. superlative) ruling prince, *des Fürsten*, &c.; *der Oberst* (superlative) colonel, *des Obersten*, &c.; *der Greis* old man, *des Greises*, pl. *die Greise*, earlier in the period wk. thruout and still so in compounds, as in *Greisenalter* old age; *der Jünger* disciple, lit. *the younger* in contradistinction to the master or teacher, *des Jüngers*, pl. *die Jünger*; *das Gut* estate, *des Guts*, pl. *die Güter*, but *das Gute* that which is good, *des Guten*; *das Übel* evil, *des Übels*, &c.; *das Recht* right, *des Rechts*, pl. *die Rechte*, and thus also *Unrecht* injustice; the fossil gen. *Rechts* (in such common expressions as *das ist Rechts* That is the law, in accordance with the law, &c.), the wk. gen. of the adj. *recht* to which a strong gen. has been added; *das Dunkel* darkness, *des Dunkels*, but still with adj. declension in certain set expressions: *ins Dunkle* gehen to go out into the dark, *im Dunkeln* tapen to grope in the dark; many names of persons, now inflected like other names of persons: *Herr Weiße*, *Rothe*, *Schwarze*, *Braune*, which still have their old weak nom. ending *e* altho no longer inflected weak. An old group of neuter adjective-substantives, which are declined like *e*-plurals or are uninflected, have been treated in 7. *h* above.

*Note. Origin of the Weak Inflection of Adjectives.* Altho the adjective may now be inflected weak, the weak type of inflection originally belonged strictly to nouns. In the prehistoric period it was extended to adjectives, at first, however, only when used as nouns. The surviving representatives of this oldest type of adjective-substantives differ considerably from the common type of to-day in that the adjective has often suffered a change of meaning. The adjective in this oldest type was the *habitual* characterization of an individual, so that it often lost much of its original meaning and became a mere formal sign of individualization, a mere formal device to distinguish *permanently* one individual from others: *Braune* Brown, family name, lit. *brown one*, still with its old weak nominative ending, but now inflected strong; *Bruno* Bruno, Christian name which has come down from the O.H.G. period unchanged = modern *Braune*, hence also lit. *brown one*, still with its O.H.G. weak nom. ending *o*, but now inflected strong; *Eltern* parents, lit. *older ones*, still always weak as in older German; &c. At the beginning of the historical period a further development is already well established. We often find the adjective-substantive used with the full literal meaning of the adjective to distinguish *for the moment* one individual from others, i.e. used as a temporary individualization and hence weak after the analogy of the old habitual individualizations: *Tho wihite siu ther alto, thar forna ju ginanto* (Otfrid, I. 15. 25, ninth century) *Da weihte sie* (i.e. *Maria und Jesum*) *der alte, eben genannte*, where *alto* and *ginanto* are temporary individualizations here made for the purposes of the moment to make clear to the reader the person in question. These weak forms were felt by Otfrid with the full meaning and grammatical force of adjectives so that he often uses them elsewhere attributively before a noun wherever he desires to distinguish for the moment one individual from others, or very frequently thruout his book wherever he wishes to characterize a person by a term which expresses his feeling of the moment, as in line 9 of the same passage where he calls the same old man *ther saligo man* der heilige Mann and in line 12 where he calls him without the noun *ther guato* der Gute. Thus arose the weak type of adjective inflection, a type unknown in Latin and Greek. Weak inflection became associated in this new construction with the idea of *definite* individualization, but it was not necessarily associated with the definite article, as in these examples. Otfrid often uses weak forms without the definite article: *fater unser guato!* (ib., II. 21. 27), now strong, *Vater unser, du guter!*, as the weak form is no longer used in direct address in the singular, altho it is sometimes still used here in the plural as in *Guten Morgen, jungen Leute!* (Max Dreyer's *Der Probekandidat*, p. 25). Weak inflection without the definite article is sometimes still used in other forms of definite individualization described in 4. *b* (last example), 5. *a* and *b*, and 6 above, and in the ordinal compounds *selbdritt* (M.H.G. *selbe dritte*), &c. (see 126. 2. *c* and *Note*), where the distinguishing weak ending has disappeared. The weak form in these newer formations rests entirely upon the definiteness of the idea. The older habitual individualizations differ from the newer type in that they are uniformly weak whether the reference is definite or indefinite. The first five weak nouns in 10 above still faithfully preserve the characteristics of this old type. It is also well preserved in compounds, where in spite of the general or indefinite reference the adjective-substantive is still always weak as in the prehistoric period. *Armenarzt* parish doctor, lit. doctor of poor people, *Gelehrtenversammlung* convention of learned men, &c. In M.H.G. and early N.H.G. weak inflection was thus often used in *simple* adjective-substantives, even where the reference was indefinite. Examples are given in 4. *a* above and also in the first paragraph of 4. *b*. This usage is still found in certain dialects, as in the neighborhood of Bern, Switzerland: *e Stumm* (M.H.G. *ein stumme*, now *ein Stummer*), &c. In the literary language both of the older types of individualization are now confined to the groups of survivals given above. The inflection of adjectives and adjective-substantives is now elsewhere regulated by a mere formal principle: Weak inflection is used if the form is preceded by the definite article or other strong limiting word, otherwise the form is strong.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

### ASCENDING COMPARISON.

112. Adjectives are compared by adding *-er* to form the comparative and *-st* to form the superlative:

Positive.	Comparative.	Relative Superlative.	Adverbial Superlative.
schlank slender	schlanker	der, die, das schlankste	am schlanksten
klein small	kleiner	der, die, das kleinste	am kleinsten

A few monosyllabics modify the stem vowel in the comparative and superlative. See 113. 4.



best Es war lieblichster Frühling Einfachste, tiefste Harmonie ist im Sturm, wie in der Windstille (Raabe's *Leute aus dem Walde* III 5) Auf fadeſte Dummköpfe machte er Eindruck, auf Arnold nicht (Hauptmann's *Michael Kramer* Act 1) Die Vorgänge, die hier nur an einzelnen wichtigsten Beispielen verfolgt werden konnten (Lamprecht's *Deutsche Geschichte*)

dd Often after ein, kein, jeder, alle (pl) and other pronominal adjectives eine leiſeſte = ereignen, Goethe's der Unternehmungs-  
sſe zu erſehen (Lam-  
intest breath of wind  
teutendsten Zuge aus  
Artikel iſt von vielen  
by many of the very

best authorities

b This idea is also expressed by placing sehr, höchſt, außerſt, überaus, or some such word having the general meaning of very, before the positive ein ſehr or höchſt fruchtbares Land a most fertile land Das Land iſt ſehr or höchſt fruchtbar In the literary language this positive form of ſtatement is more common than the ſuperlative in the attributive relation and in the predicate it is excluſively employed except in caſe of the one word allerliebſt (ſee a above) In colloquial ſpeech, however it is frequently replaced by other forms of ſtatement in both attributive and predicative relations

aa In colloquial language in German as alſo in Engliſh a high degree is often expreſſed not by an adverb and the positive of an adjective, but by certain ſimple adjectives which have become very emphatic ſuch as fa'moſ ſplendid capital, rieſig gigantic very great pyrami'dal very great large lit pyramidal kolo'sſal very great &c famoſer Kerl, famoſes Wetter, ein rieſiges Vergnügen Alles bricht in pyramidalen Jubel, in Fanatismus aus (Gutzkow) Die Rede war famoſ, kolossal Such words can alſo be uſed adverbially like ſehr, &c, to ſtrengthen an adjective ein kolossal netter Menſch a mighty' nice fellow, rieſig kalt, &c

bb Inſtead of a ſimple adjective we often find, eſpecially in colloquial ſpeech, a compound in which the high degree is indicated by the firſt component: 'ſtock-blind blind as a bat, 'blut'jung quite, very young 'mords'dumm or 'kreuz'dumm awfully ſtupid, 'hunds'elend or 'hunde'elend very miſerable, ſick as a dog 'hunds'kalt beaſtly cold Das ſteht bomben'feſt That iſt dead ſure Das iſt jammer'schade! That iſt a great pity Es war eine ſtockfinſtere Nacht For the fluctuating accent here ſee 47 3 A b

4 The force of the comparative is often heightened by prefixing weit or bei weitem by far, and that of the ſuperl by aller (gen pl) of all Karl iſt weit fleißiger als Emil Gustav iſt der allerfleißigſte See A

5 The proper conjunctions to be uſed with the different degrees are diſcuſſed in articles 239 1 a, b and 2 a

113 The following variations from the regular comparison as given above occur

1 a Adjectives ending in el, en, er ſometimes form the ſuperlative by adding the e of the ſuffix eſſing the  
and m der ed g before n  
ſorm See 116 a or ed(e)-

b The ſuperlatives of adjectives ending in el, en, er retain the e of the ſuffix der heiterſte  
Morgen

dem gr mit  
(Wilder Eifer  
formly un  
blüdes der  
combin iſe a  
Gemütsverfaſſung (Raabe) ſuch ſch wou d be difficult to pronounce in der boſhafteten

Adjectives ending in iſch may add ſt die kändiſchſte Torheit. Some recommend here t as a ſuperlative ending as the s iſt often abſorbed in the preced ng ſch der bau(e)riſchte Our time however ſeems averse to the mutilation of grammatical forms and hence we even find here the ending eſt as a way out of the difficulty das Praktiſcheſte

a. Sometimes to avoid such and other clumsy forms writers and speakers prefix *am meisten* or *im höchsten Grade* to the positive to form the superlative: *als die am meisten praktische der drei Damen* (Roquette); *am meisten*, or *im höchsten Grade barbarisch*.

3. We often find the comparative repeated, the two forms being separated by *und*: *weiter und weiter farther and farther*, or *ever farther*. Instead of this form we also find the positive instead of the first comparative: *rot und röter* (Goethe), *nah und näher* (Johannes Scherr's *Schiller*, II. chap. iii). *Die Blicke der Mütter wurden kühl und kühler*, *die Händedrucke der Väter flüchtig und flüchtiger* (O. v. Leixner). In the language of the early part of the period the first member of such expressions is often a positive in form, but in fact a comparative, the suffix *-er* being understood in accordance with older usage, which often in case of two words separated by *und* expressed the suffix or case ending but once (see 111. 7. b. Note): *Viel weiß und bleicher als der Mon* (Spee's *Trutznachtigal*, 38. 11). Thus also in case of the superlative: *in den allerschön und lustigsten Landschaften* (Zesen's *Adrial. Rosemund*, 154. 13).

4. *Mutation in Comparative and Superlative*. The following monosyllabics are mutated in the comparative and superlative: *alt* old, *arg* bad, *arm* poor, *grob* coarse, *groß* large, *hart* hard, *hoch* (see 5 below) high, *jung* young, *kalt* cold, *klug* wise, *krank* sick, *kurz* short, *lang* long, *nah(e)* (see 5 below) near, *oft* (117. 1. a), *scharf* sharp, *schwach* weak, *schwarz* black, *stark* strong, *sturm* (S.W. German) out of one's senses, *beside one's self*, *warm* warm. Example: *arm*, compar. *ärmer*, super. *der, die, das ärmste* or *am ärmsten*. The following are sometimes mutated and sometimes unmutated: *bang* anxious, *blank* bright, *polished*, *blaß* pale, *dumm* stupid, *fromm* pious, *gesund* healthy, *glatt* smooth, *karg* stingy, *knapp* close, tight, *krumm* crooked, *mager* (mutated in com. and superl. in S.G.) lean, *naß* wet, *rot* red, *sauber* clean, *schmal* narrow, *zart* tender, and a number of others, all of which mutate more or less frequently in the individual cases in familiar speech, tho not so commonly in the written language. Of these doubtful words *bang*, *blaß*, *dumm*, *fromm*, *gesund*, *glatt*, *karg*, *naß*, and *rot* are, perhaps, more commonly mutated, but the unmutated forms are not infrequent. *Rot* is usually unmutated in figurative meaning and in compounds, as in *die rotesten Gesinnungen* *the most extreme socialistic views*, *die dunkelroteste Rose* *the rose of the darkest red*; but sometimes with mutation: *der rötteste Sozialdemokrat* (Telmann's *Was ist Wahrheit?*, V.). Also a number of other adjectives which usually mutate in simple forms usually remain unmutated in compounds, as in case of *rot*: *der klügste* *the wisest one*, but *auf die altklugste Weise* in the most precocious manner; *der jüngste*, but *der blutjüngste*, *unerfahrenste* *Kiekindiewelt* (Sanders's *Hauptschwierigkeiten*, p. 288), &c. Also, however, with mutation: *Der lebensklügste* (Frenssen's *Hilligenlei*, XI).

Note. In a former period of the language the comparative and superlative had each two methods of formation: the comparative ended in *-ir* or *-ör*, the superlative in *-ist* or *-öst*. Those that had *-ir* and *ist* were of course mutated (see 26. A), and the others did not suffer mutation. Later *-ir* and *-ör* became *-er*, and *-ist* and *-öst* became *-est*, mutation alone distinguishing still the former groups. Many words which were not entitled to mutation assumed it later after the analogy of the mutating group. Since the classical period, however, mutation has been slowly declining.

5. The two adjectives *hoch* *high* and *nah(e)* *near* are irregular: in *höch* the *ch* becomes *h* when a vowel follows in the degree or case ending, as *der hohe*, *der höhere*, but *der höchste*; *nah* becomes *nächst* in the superlative. We sometimes find an unmutated absolute superl. of *nah* with *h* instead of *ch*: *das Noch-näher-bringen von zwei so allernähesten Herzen* (Suttner's *Die Waffen nieder!*, III, p. 270).

6. Sometimes words for especial emphasis or to convey a little different idea than is usually implied in them are compared when in their ordinary meaning they do not admit of comparison: *Du bist mein und nun ist das Meine meiner als jemals* (Goethe's *H. u. D.*, IX. 311). At the close of letters we sometimes find: *Der Deinigste, der Ihrigste*. We say *die eisernste Herrschaft ausüben* *to exercise the most oppressive* (lit. most iron) *authority*, altho in a literal sense *eisern* cannot be compared.

## 114. Comparison of Adverbs.

*Adverbs* have in the positive usually the uninflected form of adjectives, and also elsewhere have no inflection whatever. They are compared just as adjectives except in the superlative:—

Positive.	Comparative.	Relative Superlative.	Absolute Superlative.
hart hard	härter	am härtesten	aufs härteste
schön beautifully	schöner	am schönsten	aufs schönste

1. a. *Relative Comparative*. Differing from English usage German employs usually only one form here, the comparative in *-er*: *Hans schreibt schöner als Wilhelm* John writes more beautifully than William. The few exceptions are given in 115.

b. *Absolute Comparative*. The regular relative comparative form is sometimes used absolutely: *des Herrn Seminardirektors Dr. Michael Geistbeck schon länger vergriffene, aber anhaltend begehrte „Elemente der wissenschaftlichen Grammatik der deutschen Sprache“* (Karl Credner in the Preface of his *Deutsche Grammatik*); *die für f, þ, s häufiger erscheinenden Schreibungen*



## PERIPHRASTIC COMPARISON.

115. Besides the case mentioned in 113. 2. *a*, where the periphrastic form of comparison occurs, are the following:

1. When two qualities of one thing, or two adverbs or adverbial phrases modifying one verb, are compared with each other, the comparative is usually formed by placing *mehr*, also *eher*, before the simple positive instead of adding *-er*: *Das Zimmer ist mehr lang als breit. Er ist eher klein als groß* He is rather to be called small than large. *Er sprach mehr aufrichtig als klug. Sie drückte mich an den Busen mehr mit schmerzlicher als zärtlicher Bewegung. Er las eher laut als deutlich.*

The regular comparative suffix *-er* is also used here in the classical period, and not infrequently still: *Vielleicht hat er wahrer als klug und fromm gesprochen* (Goethe's *Egmont*, I, Palast der Regentin). *Das zweifenstrige Gemach war bedeutend länger als breit* (Raabe's *Die Leute aus dem Walde*, chap. vii).

2. In comparing two objects as to the one quality which each possesses in an eminent degree, *mehr* may be placed before the positive of each adjective, or the comparative may also be formed regularly with *-er*, the former method, however, emphasizing the comparison of the predicates, the latter emphasizing the subjects: *Karl ist mehr klug, Wilhelm ist mehr schlau*; or *Karl ist klüger, Wilhelm ist schlauer*. *Mehr* is also used in the same manner in the attributive relation to call attention to the characteristic feature of some object: *Wüllersdorf war wieder darauf aus, das Gespräch auf mehr gleichgültige Dinge zu lenken* (Fontane's *Effi*, chap. xxviii). *Mehr praktische Ziele verfolgt die Broschüre, welche Prof. Dr. Hunziker in Aarau im Auftrage des Alldeutschen Vereins herausgab* (A. Büchi in *Anzeiger für Indo-Germanische Sprach- und Altertumskunde*, xiii. Band, p. 62). *Eine mehr nebensächliche Rolle spielen bei der Ablauffrage folgende zwei uridg. Lauterscheinungen* (Brugmann's *Lautehre*, p. 145). *Er war sehr ruhig und benahm sich verständig und war in seinen Urteilen so befestigt, daß er die mehr theoretischen Ausführungen von Pastor Frisius und die mehr praktischen Anschauungen, die Lehrer Haller entwickelte, bei allem guten Willen, den er als höflicher Mann hatte, nicht verwenden konnte* (Frenssen's *Die drei Getreuen*, chap. iii).

*Mehr* is also used in the predicate with reference to one person or object when the question is raised as to which of two qualities is more characteristic of the subject: *Ich Euch um den Hals fa — [Ilen] — seid Ihr mehr närrisch oder mehr frech?!* (Lienhard's *Till Eulenspiegel*, Der Fremde).

3. If an attribute of one object, or an activity, is compared with itself under different circumstances or at different times, the comparative is formed with *mehr*, or also regularly: *Ich war früher mehr bekannt und vertraut (or bekannter und vertrauter) mit ihm. Die Sache wird immer bedenklicher, or wird mehr (und mehr) bedenklich. Im Antlitzausdruck eigentümlich halb der Psyche und halb dem Amor gleichend, nur wollte es den Fortgehenden bedünken, als sei sie während seiner Abwesenheit dem letzteren etwas mehr ähnlich geworden* (Jensen's *Das Bild im Wasser*, p. 335).

*a.* *Mehr* is often used in connection with the word *immer* *ever*, or in the form *mehr und mehr* *more and more*, to indicate a gradual increase of intensity: *Er wurde dadurch immer mehr, or mehr und mehr verlegen, or immer verlegener.*

4. Adjectives and participles which require after them an object in an oblique case or a prepositional object, and thus approach the nature of verbs, are compared either as regular adjectives, or by placing *mehr* before the positive and *am meisten* before the superlative: *Ludwig ist mir ähnlich; ich habe kein mir ähnlicheres or mehr ähnliches Kind* (Daniel Sanders); *keins meiner Kinder ist mir ähnlicher, or mehr ähnlich; er ist mir am meisten ähnlich, or am ähnlichsten. Dieser Beweis ist der älteste, kläreste (now klarste) und der gemeinen Menschenvernunft am meisten angemessene* (Kant). *Das mich am meisten Verdrießende*. Where the verbal nature of the participle, as in the last example, is distinctly felt, the compar. and superl. are more commonly formed by prefixing *mehr* and *am meisten* to the positive.

5. Adjectives (111. 7. *c.* (1)) or adverbs which are derived from substantives or other parts of speech and are not yet felt fully as adjectives or adverbs are usually compared with *mehr* in the compar. and *am meisten* in the superl.: *Ich bin ihm mehr gram als dir. Das tut mir mehr leid, als ich sagen kann. Dem jugendlich rastlosen Greise Blücher (proper name) wurde die Unentschiedenheit der Dinge zuerst und am meisten zuwider* (also preposition and adverb). The regular forms in *-er* and *-st* are sometimes found, tho rarely.

*a.* Thus also nouns and the pronoun *es* which stand in the predicate with the force of adjectives are compared: *Er ist mehr Diplomat als Feldherr. Es war mehr Spaß als Ernst. Schön bist du; wüßtest du's minder, du wärest es mehr.*

6. Some adverbs which denote a relative position with regard to the speaker or some other point form a comparative with *mehr* or *weiter* and a superlative with *am meisten* or *am weitesten*: *Er stand mehr links* He stood more to the left. See also 117. 2. *b*, second paragraph.

A few adjectives which denote a relative position, such as *äusser, inner, äußerlich*, form a comparative with *mehr*, but their superlative with the regular *-st* ending: *Sonst ging die Entwicklung unserer Sprache dahin, die beiden Flexionsformen ganz unabhängig von Bedeutungsgruppen bei allen Adjektivis nach mehr äusseren Bedingungen zu regeln* (Wunderlich's *Der deutsche Satzbau*, 1st edition, p. 170). *Leute, die wenig oder gar kein Gewissen haben, würden auch allzu glücklich sein, wenn die ewige Gerechtigkeit es nicht so prächtig verstünde, ihnen auch an mehr äußerlicher Stelle den Sachverhalt klar zu machen!* (Raabe's *Die Leute aus dem Walde*, II. chap. viii). See also 117. 2. *a*.

7 Es ist möglicher, daß, &c is not so common as Es ist eher möglich, &c

8 Occasionally we find periphrastic comparison elsewhere where we should expect the suffix -er Und dir ist Vaterland mehr als die Fremde fremd (Goethe)

9 Double comparison is rare eine mehr schicklichere Ursache (Lessing) In den Donaufürstentümern ward die Lage des russischen Heeres mehr und mehr unhaltbarer (Volk's Zeitung 21 267) See also 117 1 b

### DESCENDING COMPARISON

116 Descending comparison of adjectives and adverbs is formed by placing weniger or minder less before the positive to form the comparative, and am wenigsten or am mindesten to form the superlative hart hard weniger (or minder) hart less hard ein weniger (or minder) hartes Ei, eine weniger stark gewürzte Suppe, am wenigsten (or am mindesten) hart lebst hard, der am wenigsten (or am mindesten) fleißige Schüler, die am wenigsten stark gewürzte Suppe In case of adjectives or participles, especially in the attributive or substantive relation it is also quite common to employ the uninflected superlative form wenigst or mindest instead of am wenigsten or am mindesten, now often writing the two words as one In diesen Dingen sind die klugsten Frauen die wenigst klugen (Adele Gerhards *Pilgerfahrt*, p 51) Das erleichtert den Skandinaviern, die mindestromantischen Germanen zu sein (Prof Fd Heyck in *Velhagen und Klasings Monatshefte*, May 1905, p 283)

### IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

117. 1 Irregular adjectives and adverbs (the simple stem only is here given)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
{ bald (adj) soon früh (adj & adv) early soon	eher rather sooner früher (now less commonly bälder or balder) earlier, sooner	baldigst as soon as possible frühest (bäldest, baldest) earliest, soonest, first
gern (adv) willingly ungern unwillingly often regular	lieber (see c below) more commonly, however, as	liebst gern
gut (adj & adv) good well	besser (bäß, adj see d below)	best (gutest, see f)
wohl (adv) sometimes used in the positive instead of gut (see c below)		
{ oft (adv) often or oftmalig (adj) häufig (adj & adv) viel (adj & adv) much	{ öfter (adj & adv see a) öfterer (rare) häufiger (adj & adv) mehr (uninfl) mehr- (see b)	{ öftest (adj) öfterst (rare) häufigst (adj & adv) meist mehrst (see b)
{ wenig (adj & adv) little (in amount or degree) pl few	{ weniger (adj & adv) minder (adj & adv)	{ wenigst (adj & adv) mindest (adj & adv)

a Ofters, comparative of oft, is often used adverbially in an absolute sense and is to be

lungen des Kör  
Dreißig Jahre  
expressions D  
detail more fully  
n moral a

Mehrere (pl

of mehrer) however is still quite common as an indefinite

see 139 1 h

is only used in the meaning well with reference to regular in comparison It must not be confounded

## PERIPHRASTIC COMPARISON.

**115.** Besides the case mentioned in 113. 2. *a*, where the periphrastic form of comparison occurs, are the following:

1. When two qualities of one thing, or two adverbs or adverbial phrases modifying one verb, are compared with each other, the comparative is usually formed by placing *mehr*, also *eher*, before the simple positive instead of adding *-er*: *Das Zimmer ist mehr lang als breit.* Er ist eher klein als groß He is rather to be called small than large. *Er sprach mehr aufrichtig als klug. Sie drückte mich an den Busen mehr mit schmerzlicher als zärtlicher Bewegung. Er las eher laut als deutlich.*

The regular comparative suffix *-er* is also used here in the classical period, and not infrequently still: *Vielleicht hat er wahrer als klug und fromm gesprochen* (Goethe's *Egmont*, 1, Palast der Regentin). *Das zweifenstrige Gemach war bedeutend länger als breit* (Raabe's *Die Leute aus dem Walde*, chap. vii).

2. In comparing two objects as to the one quality which each possesses in an eminent degree, *mehr* may be placed before the positive of each adjective, or the comparative may also be formed regularly with *-er*, the former method, however, emphasizing the comparison of the predicates, the latter emphasizing the subjects: *Karl ist mehr klug, Wilhelm ist mehr schlau*; or *Karl ist klüger, Wilhelm ist schlauer.* *Mehr* is also used in the same manner in the attributive relation to call attention to the characteristic feature of some object: *Wüllersdorf war wieder darauf aus, das Gespräch auf mehr gleichgültige Dinge zu lenken* (Fontane's *Effi*, chap. xxviii). *Mehr praktische Ziele verfolgt die Broschüre, welche Prof. Dr. Hunziker in Aarau im Auftrage des Alldeutschen Vereins herausgab* (A. Büchi in *Anzeiger für Indo-Germanische Sprach- und Altertumskunde*, xiii. Band, p. 62). *Eine mehr nebensächliche Rolle spielen bei der Ablauffrage folgende zwei uridg. Lauterscheinungen* (Brugmann's *Lautlehre*, p. 145). *Er war sehr ruhig und benahm sich verständig und war in seinen Urteilen so befestigt, daß er die mehr theoretischen Ausführungen von Pastor Frisius und die mehr praktischen Anschauungen, die Lehrer Haller entwickelte, bei allem guten Willen, den er als höflicher Mann hatte, nicht verwenden konnte* (Frenssen's *Die drei Getreuen*, chap. iii).

*Mehr* is also used in the predicate with reference to one person or object when the question is raised as to which of two qualities is more characteristic of the subject: *Ich Euch um den Hals fa — [llen] — seid Ihr mehr närrisch oder mehr frech?!* (Lienhard's *Till Eulenspiegel*, Der Fremde).

3. If an attribute of one object, or an activity, is compared with itself under different circumstances or at different times, the comparative is formed with *mehr*, or also regularly: *Ich war früher mehr bekannt und vertraut* (or *bekannter und vertrauter*) *mit ihm. Die Sache wird immer bedenklicher, or wird mehr (und mehr) bedenklich. Im Antlitzausdruck eigentümlich halb der Psyche und halb dem Amor gleichend, nur wollte es den Fortgehenden bedünken, als sei sie während seiner Abwesenheit dem letzteren etwas mehr ähnlich geworden* (Jensen's *Das Bild im Wasser*, p. 335).

*a.* *Mehr* is often used in connection with the word *immer* *ever*, or in the form *mehr und mehr* *more and more*, to indicate a gradual increase of intensity: *Er wurde dadurch immer mehr, or mehr und mehr verlegen, or immer verlegener.*

4. Adjectives and participles which require after them an object in an oblique case or a prepositional object, and thus approach the nature of verbs, are compared either as regular adjectives, or by placing *mehr* before the positive and *am meisten* before the superlative: *Ludwig ist mir ähnlich; ich habe kein mir ähnlicheres or mehr ähnliches Kind* (Daniel Sanders); *keins meiner Kinder ist mir ähnlicher, or mehr ähnlich; er ist mir am meisten ähnlich, or am ähnlichsten. Dieser Beweis ist der älteste, kläreste (now klarste) und der gemeinen Menschenvernunft am meisten angemessene* (Kant). *Das mich am meisten Verdrießende.* Where the verbal nature of the participle, as in the last example, is distinctly felt, the compar. and superl. are more commonly formed by prefixing *mehr* and *am meisten* to the positive.

5. Adjectives (111. 7. *c.* (1)) or adverbs which are derived from substantives or other parts of speech and are not yet felt fully as adjectives or adverbs are usually compared with *mehr* in the compar. and *am meisten* in the superl.: *Ich bin ihm mehr gram als dir. Das tut mir mehr leid, als ich sagen kann. Dem jugendlich rastlosen Greise Blücher* (proper name) *wurde die Unentschiedenheit der Dinge zuerst und am meisten zuwider* (also preposition and adverb). The regular forms in *-er* and *-st* are sometimes found, tho rarely.

*a.* Thus also nouns and the pronoun *es* which stand in the predicate with the force of adjectives are compared: *Er ist mehr Diplomat als Feldherr. Es war mehr Spaß als Ernst. Schön bist du; wüßtest du's minder, du wärest es mehr.*

6. Some adverbs which denote a relative position with regard to the speaker or some other point form a comparative with *mehr* or *weiter* and a superlative with *am meisten* or *am weitesten*: *Er stand mehr links* He stood more to the left. See also 117. 2. *b*, second paragraph.

A few adjectives which denote a relative position, such as *äußer, inner, äußerlich*, form a comparative with *mehr*, but their superlative with the regular *-st* ending: *Sonst ging die Entwicklung unserer Sprache dahin, die beiden Flexionsformen ganz unabhängig von Bedeutungsgruppen bei allen Adjektivis nach mehr äußeren Bedingungen zu regeln* (Wunderlich's *Der deutsche Satzbau*, 1st edition, p. 170). *Leute, die wenig oder gar kein Gewissen haben, würden auch allzu glücklich sein, wenn die ewige Gerechtigkeit es nicht so prächtig verstände, ihnen auch an mehr äußerlicher Stelle den Sachverhalt klar zu machen!* (Raabe's *Die Leute aus dem Walde*, II. chap. viii). See also 117. 2. *a*.

- 7 Es ist möglich, daß, &c. is not so common as Es ist eher möglich, &c.  
 8 Occasionally we find periphrastic comparison elsewhere, where we should expect the suffix -er. Und die ist Vaterland mehr als die Fremde fremd (Goethe).  
 9 Double comparison is rare: eine mehr schicklichere Ursache (Lessing). In den Donau-Fürstenthümern ward die Lage des russischen Heeres mehr und mehr unhaltbarer (Volks-Zeitung 21. 267). See also 117 1 b.

## DESCENDING COMPARISON

116 Descending comparison of adjectives and adverbs is formed by placing *weniger* or *minder* *less* before the positive to form the comparative, and *am wenigsten* or *am mindesten* to form the superlative. hart hard, weniger (or minder) hart *less hard*, ein weniger (or minder) hartes Ei, eine weniger stark gewürzte Suppe, *am wenigsten* (or *am mindesten*) fleißige Schüler, die *am wenigsten* stark gewürzte Suppe. In case of adjectives or participles, especially in the attributive or substantive relation it is also quite common to employ the uninflected superlative form *wenigst* or *mindest* instead of *am wenigsten* or *am mindesten*, now often writing the two words as one. In diesen Dingen sind die klügsten Frauen die wenigst klugen (Adelb. Gerhard's *Pilgerfahrt*, p. 51) Das erleichtert den Skandinaviern, die mindestromantischen Germanen zu sein (Prof. Ed. Heyck in *Vellagen und Klasines Monatshefte*, May 1905, p. 253).

## IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

117. 1 Irregular adjectives and adverbs (the simple stem only is here given)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
{ bald (adj.) soon	eher rather sooner	baldigst as soon as possible
{ früh (adj. & adv.) early	früher (now less commonly	frühest (bäldest, baldest)
soon	bälder or baldere) earlier	earliest, soonest, first
gern (adj.) willingly	lieber (see c below)	liebst
ungern unwillingly often regular	more commonly, however, as	gern
gut (adj. & adv.) good	besser	best
well	(bä, adv. see d below)	(rute, see f)
wohl (adj.) sometimes used in the positive instead of gut (see c below)	öfter (adj. & adv. see a)	{ öftest (adj.)
{ oft (adj.) often or	öfterer (rare)	{ öftest (rare)
oftmalig (adj.)		
häufig (adj. & adv.)	häufiger (adj. & adv.)	häufigst (adj. & adv.)
viel (adj. & adv.) much	{ mehr (uninf.)	{ meist
	{ mehrer- (see b)	{ mehest (see b)
{ wenig (adj. & adv.) little	{ weniger (adj. & adv.)	{ wenigst (adj. & adv.)
(in amount or degree).	{ minder (adj. & adv.)	{ mindest (adj. & adv.)
{ pl few		

a Öfter, comparative of oft, is often used adverbially in an absolute sense and is to be distinguished from the relative comparative öfter. Das begegnet mir öfters. That happens to me

expressions. Davon künftig ein mehreres more about it at some other time. des mehreren more in detail more fully. Mehrere (pl. of mehrer-) however is still quite common as an indefinite

numeral adjective in the sense of several. See 139 1 h.  
 c Wohl is a prelativ adjective which is only used in the meaning, well with reference to the health or bodily comfort and is entirely regular in comparison. It must not be confounded

den Entschlie-  
 Badermann a

in a few set

with **gut**, which besides its usual adjective meaning *good* is used as an adverb of manner with the meanings *well, nicely*, and also used as an adjective in the comparative and superlative with the force of *wohl*: *Er schreibt gut, besser, am besten*, but *Ihm ist heute wohl, wohler or besser*. *Er befindet sich wohl, wohler or besser, am wohlsten or am besten*. Historically considered, *wohl* was originally not an adjective as at present, but the adverbial form of the adjective *gut*. This original usage occurs frequently as late as the classical period, and is still retained in adjective, participial, and substantive compounds and in a number of set expressions: *wohlgemut, wohlschmeckend, wohlerhalten, wohlbekannt, Wohlklang, Wohlgeruch, &c.* *Wohl* is found before adjective participles also where they are not written as a part of a compound: *Sein Hinterstübchen war wohl geziert* (Raabe.). In set expressions: *Er will mir wohl. Er tut wohl daran. Ich wünsche Ihnen wohl zu schlafen* I wish you a good night's rest. *Möge es Ihnen wohl bekommen!* May it agree with you well! *Mir gefällt der Kerl ausnehmend wohl* (also *gut*) (Raabe's *Zum wilden Mann*, chap. x).

d. An old adverbial comparative of *gut* is *baß*. It is sometimes in antique style or dialect still used with the meanings *better, more, rather*, more frequently *very much, again, further*: *Eines Dieners mit Weisheitszähnen bin ich baß entraten* (Storm's *Pole Poppenspäler*) I am better rid of, &c. *Ich habe mich manchmal baß (very much) gewundert über dich* (Hauptmann's *Vor Sonnenaufgang*, 1). The adverb was not mutated in the compar. in older periods of the language as was the adj., as can be still seen in this fossilized form *baß* (adverb) in contradistinction to *besser* (adj.).

e. In earlier periods the comparison of *gern* was regular. It is also frequently regular in early N.H.G. and occasionally even later, and is still often so in popular language, which thus preserves here older usage.

f. The regular superlative of *gut* is not infrequent in colloquial speech, especially in comic or sarcastic language, only, however, in direct address: *Seh'n Sie, mein Gutester, das nennt man so Menschenliebe in den Tropen* (Schulze-Smidt's *O Tannebaum*, 1). *Nee, mein Gutester!* (Fulda's *Jugendfreunde*, 1, 7).

g. A regular superlative of *viel* occurs sometimes, always, however, an absolute superlative: *Vielste Grüße von Ihrem G. Keller* (G. Keller an T. Storm, May 19, 1883).

2. Defective adjectives with positive wanting, only used attributively or substantively:

Comparative.	Superlative.
<b>Der, die das</b> äußere outer	<b>der, die, das</b> äußerste outmost
erstere former	erste first
innere inner	innerste inmost
hintere hinder	hinterste hindmost
letztere latter	letzte last
mittlere middle	mittelste middlemost
obere upper	oberste uppermost
untere under	unterste undermost
{ vordere in front	{ vorderste foremost
{ vördere (earlier in the period)	{ vörderste (still surviving as an adverb; see <i>b</i> below)

a. Of these *erst* and *letzt* are superlatives treated as positives, from which compar. forms *erster-* and *letzter-* have been made. The compar. forms of the others have been made from adverbs and are in force really positives, and of the one word *mittel* all three degrees can sometimes be found without difference of meaning: *der mittele* (or *mittlere*, or *mittelste*) *Finger*. When it is desired to impart real comparative force to these comparatives, which does not often occur, it is necessary to prefix *mehr*. See 115. 6.

Contrary to English usage the article is often, perhaps even more commonly, omitted before the comparative forms *erster-*, *letzter-*: *Er reichte mit freundlichem Morgengruß Heiding und danach Erwin Buchhoff die Hand und sagte zu letzterem, daß usw.* (Adolf Stern's *Der Pate des Todes*, II). In the masc. and neut. gen. sing., however, the form with the article *des ersteren*, *des letzteren*, is always used, as the form without the article, *ersteres*, *letzteres*, might be construed as a nom. or acc. neut. For the misuse of the form *letzter-* see *c* below.

b. Only the superl. of adverbs is formed from these adjectives: *zu äußerst* the farthest away, *zu hinterst* the farthest behind, *zu innerst* the farthest within, *zu mittelst* the farthest towards the middle, &c., and three in which *zu* and the adverb are written together, *zu'erst* first, *zu'letzt* last, *zu'vörderst* or *zu'vorderst* foremost, in the first rank, in front, before all (things), in the first place, first and foremost. In the case of *zuvörderst* and *zuvorderst* there is a tendency to differentiate, so that the former is used with regard to time and the latter with regard to place.

However, corresponding to these defective adjectives denoting a position are other adverbial forms of kindred origin, which with the aid of paraphrasing can form all three degrees: *außen* without, out of doors, *innen* within, *hinten* behind, *oben* above, *unten* below, *vorne* in front. Their comparatives are formed by placing before the adverb the comparatives *weiter* *farther* or *mehr* *more*, and their superlatives by the superlatives of the same adverbs: *oben*, *weiter oben*, *am weitesten oben*; *unten*, *mehr unten*, &c. Likewise in case of other adverbs denoting position: *links to the left*, *weiter links*, *am weitesten links*. In case of some of these adverbs we sometimes find here in facetious language the regular comparative ending *-er*: *Wenn wir sie erst links haben, dann ist's nicht mehr schwer: dann graulen wir sie ihm auch wohl immer linker* (Wilbrandt's *Hermann Iffinger*, chap. iii).



c. The comparative form *letzter-* (see a) is a favorite in present usage and is even often employed to refer to the last of a number of persons or things, where it is grammatically incorrect, as it is a comparative and should indicate the latter of two persons or things. Er konnte sich demnach mit seinem schwarzen Gesellschaftsrock, den neuen sandfarbenen Beinkleidern und einer plänzenden rotschottischen Atlaskrawatte schmücken, *welch letztere* er mit einer unechten Brillantnadel feststeckte (M. Kossack's *Lebe Liebe Western* 1892, vol. 71, p. 782). It is also often used where a personal pronoun, a possessive, a demonstrative, or an adverb might be more tersely and appropriately employed. Dessenungeachtet vergaß Herr Volker keinen Augenblick die dem Gaste schuldige Rücksicht. Er behandelte *letzteren* (instead of *ihn*) nur etwas von oben herab (ib.). Das Blumenfädchen stieß durch eine Lücke des Schloßgartens an den *schattigsten* Teil des *letzteren* (instead of *an dessen schattigsten Teil*). Der Statthalter und Herr v. H. haben neulich das vom Kaiser jüngst erworbene Gut Urville besichtigt, wie verlautet, weil der Kaiser auf *letzterem* (instead of *dort*) nächstes Frühjahr einige Tage zubringen will. It is often entirely superfluous. Daß die deutsche Ausgabe . . . auch durch verschiedene Zusätze des Herrn Übersetzers bereichert ist, *welch letzterer* (instead of *welcher*) zugleich einige Irrtümer berichtigt hat (James Bryce, *Das heilige römische Reich*, Deutsche Ausgabe von Dr. A. Winckler, p. vi).

### LIMITING ADJECTIVES.

118. A limiting adjective is one that merely defines or restricts the meaning of a noun.

Limiting adjectives differ in form or meaning from descriptive adjectives in that:

a. They do not stand uninflected in the predicate, and hence the masc. form for the nom. is usually, except in the case of uninflected words, given in the dictionary to represent the word instead of giving the simple stem, which only occurs in a few cases, as will be found recorded in the proper places. The simple stem of these latter words is often given to represent the word, as indeed these forms do sometimes occur.

b. They cannot all be inflected strong or weak. Some are always declined strong, even in the masc. and neut. gen. sing.; some are inflected str. or wk. according to circumstances. Thus the different groups of this class must be treated separately.

Note. The weak forms in this class of adjectives are in general of comparatively recent origin and have been gradually increasing, as they have been influenced by the declension of descriptive adjectives.

c. They cannot be compared, except a few which are treated under the head of comparison of descriptive adjectives. See 117, and 113. 6.

119. Limiting adjectives are divided into two classes—*numeral* and *pronominal* adjectives.

### NUMERALS.

#### 120. Cardinals:

- 0, null
- 1, ein, eine, ein, but eins in counting when no noun follows
- 2, zwei; early N. H. G. zween (masc.), zwo (fem.); see 121.  
2. a. Note
- 3, drei
- 4, vier
- 5, fünf or funf (early N.H.G.)
- 6, sechs
- 7, sieben
- 8, acht
- 9, neun
- 10, zehn
- 11, elf, eilf (now obsolete)
- 12, zwölf
- 13, dreizehn
- 14, vierzehn
- 15, fünfzehn (funfzehn, pop. fufzehn)
- 16, sechzehn

- 17, siebzehn, (siebenzehn)
- 18, achtzehn
- 19, neunzehn
- 20, zwanzig
- 21, einundzwanzig
- 22, zweiundzwanzig
- 23, dreiundzwanzig
- 30, dreißig
- 31, einunddreißig
- 40, vierzig
- 50, fünfzig (funfzig, pop. fufzig)
- 60, sechzig
- 70, siebzig (siebenzig)
- 80, achtzig
- 90, neunzig
- 100, hundert
- 101, (ein)hundertundeins
- 102, (ein)hundertundzwei
- 200, zweihundert
- 300, dreihundert

400, vierhundert  
1,000, tausend  
1,001, (ein)tausendundeins

10,000, zehntausend  
100,000, hunderttausend

eine Milli'on a million, zwei Milli'onen two millions, eine Milli'arde a thousand millions, eine Billi'on a million millions.

### 121. Inflection:

1. Ein is inflected strong or weak as any descriptive adj. with several variations:

A. If it is used attributively and is not preceded by a limiting adjective, it is inflected exactly as the indefinite article, differing from it only in being more strongly accented: **ein** (see 58. B. a) Mann nicht zwei, **ein** Buch nicht zwei, **ein** guter Mann.

d. Before numerals used as collective nouns, before fractions and the substantive *Uhr o'clock*, and also before certain pronominal adjectives and nouns denoting an indefinite quantity, **ein** is found uninflected: mit **ein** (i.e. *about a dozen*, but for an exact dozen we say *einem*) Dutzend guten Äpfeln. Ein Sechstel von **ein** halb, bleibt ein Drittel One-sixth from one-half leaves one-third. 20 multipliziert mit **ein** Viertel gibt 5. Nach **ein** Uhr after one o'clock, mit **ein** bißchen Mut with a little courage, in **ein** paar Tagen, mit **ein** wenig Geduld.

b. The uninflected **ein** is found in a few set expressions connected by *und* and *oder* (see 2. d below): Ich sah es **ein** und anderem Augenpaar an, daß hier geweint worden war. Franzerl (proper name) war sein **ein** (or *eins*; see B below) und alles. An einunddemselben (also *einem* und demselben) Tage; zu (at) dreiundeinhalb Prozent; **ein** oder zwei Wochen; in **ein** oder zwei Stunden, or often inflected here and in similar expressions, as in mit *einem* oder zwei Blumentöpfen (Adele Gerhard's *Die Geschichte der Antonie van Heese, I*); in colloquial language in **ein** Tager (contracted from Tag oder) sechs in about six days, &c.

c. The singular form **ein** or *eine* is used in colloquial language to give a collective idea to nouns in the pl.: Er bleibt noch wohl **ein** (or *eine*) 8 Tage He will probably remain yet about a week. Vor **ein** 7, 8 Jahren about 7 or 8 years ago. So **ein** 2 bis 3 Jahre Zuchthaus wird er wohl bekommen. Wenn ich nur *eine* 2 oder 300 Taler hätte! If I only had the sum of two or three hundred thalers! See also 96. 1.

d. In colloquial language **ein** is often used in the plural in the expression *so ein*. See 131. 1. a. Note 2.

B. If **ein** is preceded by some limiting word which cannot mark the gender and case of the noun, as the possessive gen. of a noun or pronoun, or the nom. masc. and nom. and acc. neut. of a possessive adjective, it is inflected strong: Des Königs eines Schloß lag in Stuttgart, das andere in Ludwigsburg. Mein Freund und dessen einer Sohn (or *eine* Tochter or *eines* Kind) sind schon angekommen. Wir feiern heute einen tragisch doppeltfestlichen Tag. . . . Indem sich mein eines Auge für die Grabrede feuchtet, fängt das andere für die fröhliche Geburtsrede zu lachen an (Wilbrandt's *Die Maler*, 2, 7).

C. Preceded by the definite article or some other limiting adjective which marks gender and case, **ein** is inflected weak: **der eine** Knabe; **der eine**, **der andere** the one, the other. In S.W.G. we find sometimes the form **der einte** instead of **der eine** when used in contrast to **der andere**.

a. The definite article may stand before the pl. of **ein**, referring collectively to one of two groups: **die einen** . . . **die andern** the persons in the one group . . . those in the other.

D. Used substantively, standing alone, **ein** is declined as a strong adj., the neut. nom. and acc. usually, however, in the contracted form **eins**: **einer von diesen Herren**, **ein(e)s von diesen Büchern**, **so einer** such a one.

a. The uninflected neut. form **eins** occurs in some very common idioms: **zwölf Minuten nach eins** twelve minutes after one o'clock, **mit eins** suddenly, **von eins bis hundert zählen** to count from one to one hundred.

b. In popular language **ein-** is often used in the plural: **Diese Knöpfe sind eine der besten** = *gehören zu den besten*. See also 134. 2 (3rd par.).

2. The cardinals except **ein** are not now usually inflected: **zehn** Finger, **einige** zwanzig Jahre some twenty years, **einige** hundert Jahre several hundred years.

In case of the absence of some preceding article or pronominal adj. to show case, the prep. **von** marks the gen. relation of these indeclinable numerals: **der dritte Teil von sechs ist zwei**. In the other cases the context as in English shows the case.

a Sometimes *zwei* and *drei* are in the attributive relation declined strong in the gen and dat pl, if there is no preceding word to show case. *Zweier Zeugen Mund tut alle Wahrheit kund* The testimony of two witnesses establishes the truth. The gen *zweier, dreier*, occur more frequently than the dat *zweien, dreien*, as some preceding preposition in the latter case usually makes the dative relation sufficiently clear without the aid of the case ending. If an adjective follow *zwei* or *drei* the numeral may remain uninflected leaving to the adjective the office of indicating the case, or it may itself assume this function. *Durch zwei unverdächtiger Zeugen Aussage* or *durch zweier unverdächtiger Zeugen Aussage*. Sometimes we find the strong gen pl form of other numerals but non inflection is much more common während zwölfer Tage (Niendorf's *Gudrun* 1, 10)

The neuter of *drei*, and much more rarely of *vier*, has when used substantively developed strong sing forms with collective force after the analogy of *beides* (see 139 1 d) *Ich will alles dreies merken* I will note all three points. *Alles dreies wirkte mächtig zusammen* All three things worked powerfully together. *Und ich bin eigentlich alles drei's* (i.e. Kind, Narr, Poet) (Fontane's *L'Adultera*, XXI) And I am really all three (of the things you have mentioned). In popular language the neut of *zwei* is often used instead of *beides* *dieses zweies nehme ich*.

b The numerals in -zig lengthen this form to -ziger to show the decades of the century or the period in Germany after the great year in the middle of the forties

c When these numerals stand alone, either substantively or with some noun understood, they are sometimes, especially in the dat and least frequently in the gen, declined, usually with the inflection of nouns of the unmutated e plural type, but in general this inflection is limited to certain set expressions, and should rather be considered as quaint, and hence avoided. *diese viere* these four (boys), *sechs* (more common than *sechse*) *kamen* six (people) came, *wir sind unser sechs* (or *sechse*) there are six of us, *der Rat der Vier* (*Vossische Zeitung*, June 7, 1919) Council of Four, "The Big Four" (in the peace treaty at Paris), *das Vorhaben der Drei* the intention of the three, *tausend* thousand (as opposed to the *Erben dieses Lebens*, *dachte* er der reissen und spi

*erschauete sie*  
den Sechzigern (or *Sechzig*), wenn einer, wie ich,  
(or *drei*) sitzen to sit three together, auf allen viere  
nach and six Er hat alle neune geworfen He has  
zig (more common than *fünfzigern*).  
1, wohl nie gemacht worden und nie  
Meine Kindertage) Allen viere  
sten Tag (Oempteda's *Sylvester von*

d Also numerals which are capable of inflection remain usually uninflected when brought into connection with uninflected numerals by some conjunctive

Met  
for  
(or  
Jah  
300 und ein Ei, dreiundeinhalb  
or in sechs und einem halben  
(above) oder zwei Tagen.

a sing. adj. before a pl. noun in the same case and brings about a clash instead of an agreement: *von den tausend und einem Mißgeschicken* (Sealsfield's *Transatlantische Reiseskizzen*, I. 64).

e. The numerals are especially uninflected in giving dates, numbers of houses (in the street), time of day, and often with suppression of the case form of the noun, the omission of articles, and even of nouns and prepositions: *Leipzig hatte 350,000 Einwohner in 1890* (in imitation of the French, or more commonly according to the German idiom *im Jahre 1890*, or simply *1890*) *gegen 170,000 in 1885*. *Er wohnte (im) Dezember (des Jahres) 76 Lindenstraße 74* (short for *im Hause 74 der Lindenstraße*). *Die Strecke Berlin-Potsdam, 1838 eröffnet, war die erste preußische Bahn* The line between Berlin and Potsdam was the first Prussian railroad, opened in 1838. *Ein Viertel (auf) eins or ein Viertel nach zwölf* a quarter after twelve, *halb (auf understood) zwei half-past one, drei Viertel auf drei, or ein Viertel vor or bis drei* a quarter to three, or in railroad language as in English: *zehn (Uhr) zwanzig* (written 10.20).

3. When used substantively as names of figures, all numerals are declined weak, as they are all fem.: *Die Eins ist nicht deutlich* the figure 1 is not plain. *Du hast die Fünf zu groß geschrieben* You have written the 5 too large. *Eine römische Zehn* a Roman X. The form in -e is less common: *So? und warum nennt Ihr | die Fünfe eine heilige Zahl* (Schiller's *Piccolomini*, 2, 1). The plural always has -en: *die Zahl 1881 enthält zwei Einsen und zwei Achten*.

Note. These numbers are also used as feminine substantives in various other applied relations: *eine schöne Drei von Freunden, eine böse Sieben* a vixen, *zwei Dreien* a pair-royal of treys. *So stellt sich endlich | die große Drei (Jupiter, Venus, Mars) verhängnisvoll zusammen* (Schiller's *Wallensteins Tod*, 1, 1). *Der einzig Eine bist du, doch du lenkst | als eine mystisch große Drei die Welt* (Platen).

*Zwei and Drei* are sometimes used as neuter substantives in a collective sense: *Liebe, menschlich zu beglücken, | nähert sie ein edles Zwei; | doch zu göttlichem Entzücken, | bildet sie ein köstlich Drei* (Goethe). *Das schwesterliche Drei* the three Graces (or the three Parcae or Fates).

4. *Hundert, Tausend, Million, Milliarde, Billion*, can be used substantively, and are then inflected as nouns, the first two according to the unmutated e-plural type and the others weak: *Das erste Hundert, ganze Hunderte von Menschen*. *Es geht in die Tausende* It reaches up into the thousands. *Man schätzt die Zahl sämtlicher Rumänen (Roumanians) auf 10 Millionen*.

5. Masc. substantives are formed from the numerals by adding *er*, all inflected according to the e-less plural type: *die Einer, Zehner, Hunderter* units, tens, hundreds, *ein Vierziger* a man of forty, *ein Achtundvierziger* one who took part in the stirring events of 1848, *die Achtundzwanziger* the troops of the 28th regiment, *ein Gläschen Dreiundachtziger* a nice glass of wine of the year '83, *ein Greis nahe den Achtzigern* (or *den achtziger Jahren*, or *den Achtzigen*, or *den Achtzig*) an old man near the eighties, *ein mittlerer Vierziger* (Fontane) a man in the middle of the forties, *ein Vierer* a boat with four rowers, *ein Siebener* a member of a body or committee of seven. Some of these formations are also common in compounds: *ein Viererzug* a team of four horses, *der Siebenerausschuß* the committee of seven men, *der Viererrat* the Council of Four (in the peace treaty at Paris in 1919).

## 122. Ordinals:

1. The ordinals except those for 'first,' 'third,' and 'eighth,' which are irregular, are formed by adding *t* to the numbers 2–19, and *st* from 20 on. They are declined strong and weak as adjectives. Only the last number is inflected if compound.

1st der (die, das) erste  
2nd der zweite; earlier in the period  
also der zweete, die (fem.)  
zwote; also, der, die, das  
ander (still found in andert-  
halb—see 126. 2. b— and in  
am anderen Tage *the next day*  
3rd der dritte  
4th der vierte  
7th der siebente, or siebte (S.G.),  
early N.H.G. siebende  
8th der achte (adds no t)  
20th der zwanzigste

21st der einundzwanzigste  
22nd der zweiundzwanzigste  
101st der hundertunderste, some-  
times der hunderteinte or  
hunderteinste  
102nd der hundertundzweite  
103rd der hundertunddritte, some-  
times der hundertdreite  
107th der hundertundsieb(en)te  
108th der hundertundachte  
200th der zweihundertste  
300th der dreihundertste  
1000th der tausendste

a. Ordinals are sometimes uninflected in the idiom *zu zweit, dritt, &c.*, with the force of *zu zweien, dreien*, or *zu zwei, drei* *two or three together*: *Ich bin jetzt*

wahrlich nicht in der Stimmung, zu dritt zu sein Indeed I am not in a mood to have a third party with us. Wir Göppinger sind zu zwölf There are twelve of us from Göppingen.

b. Ordinal adverbs are formed by adding *ens* to the simple stem: *erstens* in the first place, *zweitens* in the second place, *zwanzigstens*, &c.

c. After the analogy of *der vierte* (&c.) and *der zwanzigste* are formed *der wievielte* and *der wievielte* *what date, what number, how many: Der wievielte ist heute? or Den wievielten haben wir heute? what is the day of the month? Der wievielte waren Sie im Examen? What was your place in the examination? Die wievielte Liebschaft ist dies wohl? About how many love-affairs does this make that he has already had? Also other similar formations occur: in der elfdreiviertelten Stunde in the last quarter-hour, literally, in the last quarter-hour before twelve. See also 126. 2. b.*

2. The ordinals are often in certain set expressions replaced by cardinals, which in this case stand after the noun: *Kapitel sechs* chapter 6, *Band fünf* vol. 5, &c. *Das Stück ging bis Schluß Aktes III steigend empor—Akt III schlug am mächtigsten ein* (Wildenbruch to B. Litzmann, Nov. 25, 1881).

123. The ordinals all require an article or pronominal adj before them, but *erst* often drops it and is then used in the sense of an absolute superl. *erste Schriftsteller* authors who are among the best, but *die ersten Schriftsteller* the best authors.

124. *The days of the month.* As in English, the ordinal is used for the days of the month. Letters are usually dated after the following model: *Berlin, den 5. (read fünften) März 1894. Ihr Schreiben vom 19. (read neunzehnten) ds. (dieses Monats), am Abend des 20. (read zwanzigsten), vom 3. (read dritten) bis 14. (read den vierzehnten) from the 3rd to the 14th, bis mit den 1. (read ersten) Oktober, or bis und mit den 1. Oktober up to and including October the first.*

125. Distributive numerals are formed by prefixing *je* to cardinals or ordinals: *Er gab den Knaben je zehn Pfennig* He gave to each of the boys ten pfennigs. *Die Gefangenen wurden zu je zwei und zwei (by twos) zusammengebunden. Je der zehnte Bürger* every tenth citizen.

#### 126. Compound numerals:

##### 1. Numerals formed from cardinals are:

a. *Variative* numerals, which add *-erlei* to the simple cardinal, forming an uninflected compound: *einerlei* of one kind, *zweierlei* of two kinds, *dreierlei* of three kinds; *hunderterlei*, *allerlei* of all kinds, &c. The *lei* in these compounds is in reality a fem. noun in the gen., as can still be seen in the ending of the cardinal (*einer* fem. gen.), but it is felt and treated as an uninflected adjective: *allerlei gute Bücher* all kinds of good books, *dat. von allerlei guten Büchern*, *allerlei guter Wein* every kind of good wine, *Kinder beiderlei Geschlechts*, *die mancherlei Falterschrauben*, &c. Substantively: *mit hunderterlei solcher Vorsätze* (Hauptmann's *Friedensfest*, 3).

b. *Multiplicatives*, which add *-fach* and *-fältig* to the cardinal: *einfach* single, simple; *einfältig* simple (silly); *zweifach* and *zweifältig* twofold; *dreifach* and *dreifältig* threefold, &c. The inflection is strong and weak.

c. *Iterative* adverbs, which add *-mal* to the simple cardinal: *einmal* once, *zweimal* twice, *dreimal* three times, &c. Also with inflection: *das eine Mal*, *mit einem Male* all at once, *zu vier verschiedenen Malen*, &c. Also the ordinal is thus used: *das erste Mal* the first time, &c. See 2. d below.

##### 2. Numerals formed from ordinals are found in:

a. The neut. substantives expressing fractions, formed by adding *-tel* (reduced form of *Teil part*) to the stem of the ordinals, suppressing, however, the final *t* of the ordinal before the *t* of the suffix: *ein Drittel* a third, *ein Viertel* (pro. *fünftel*) a fourth, *ein Siebtel* or *Siebtel* (S.G.), *sieben Achtel* =  $\frac{7}{8}$ , &c.,

but instead of *ein Zweitel* is used *ein halb* (121. 1. A. a and 139. 2. d, Notes 1 and 2) or *die Hälfte* (except in the technical language of business and music, where *ein Zweitel* is also employed, as in *Zigarren in Zweitelkisten, eine Zweitelnote*); *vier Hundertfünfstel* =  $\frac{4}{105}$ ; *hundert und hundertvier Hundertfünfstel* =  $100 + \frac{4}{105}$ ; *ein Hunderteintel* =  $\frac{1}{101}$ ; *ein Hundertzweitel* =  $\frac{1}{102}$ ; *ein Zwanzigstel* =  $\frac{1}{20}$ ; *ein Hundertstel* =  $\frac{1}{100}$ . Sometimes *teil* is still used in full instead of the reduced form *tel*, especially after *hundert* (formerly also used as ordinal instead of *hundertst*) in the meaning *per cent.*: *ein Drittel one-third, 92 Hunderteile 92 per cent.*

*Note.* These substantives are often considered as indeclinable adjectives: *ein fünftel Kilometer, eine fünftel Meile, drei viertel Pfund, drei viertel Stunden*. The numeral may also be regarded as the first element of a modern compound, and hence both parts are then written as one word: *eine Viertel'stunde, ein Viertel'jahr*. The accent in such compounds still shows that they are not felt as old compounds. See 47. 3. A. e. (4).

b. The compounds which add *halb* to the ordinal, which tho formerly declined are now usually uninflected: *dritthalb* or *dittehalb* two and a half, lit. (two and) half of the third, *vierthalb* or *viertehalb* three and a half, &c., but always *anderthalb* (for *anderehalb* half of the second; see 122. 1; the *t* in place of *e* after the analogy of *vierthalb*, &c.) instead of *zweit(e)halb*. Exs.: *anderthalb Ellen. Das sind schon dritthalb Jahre* (Hebbel's *Agnes Bernauer*, 4, 3). *Um dritthalb Jahre* (Fontane's *Frau Jenny*, chap. ii), *durch dritthalb Jahrhunderte* (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Dec. 16, 1904), *dittehalb Meter hoch* (*Westermanns Monatshefte*, Aug. 1905). This construction is still in use but is not so common as *zwei(und)einhalb* two and a half, *drei(und)einhalb* three and a half, in *sechs(und)einhalb Jahren*, or in *sechs und einem halben Jahre*, &c. *Anderthalb*, however, is much more common than the other words of the same formation.

When these words in *-halb* stand alone substantively they *may* be inflected strong: *Mein Vatter hett nur einen Arm, so hab' ich anderthalben* (Fischart, *Garg.*, 94 b). The original nature of this construction requires the sing. form, and this still occurs, but the plural is now more common: *auf einen Schelmen anderthalbe* (Goethe). *Für zwei essen oder wenigstens für anderthalbe* (Kurz, *W.*, 89). Inflection still occurs occasionally also in the attributive relation, but only in the old sing.: *Mehrere und zwar die erfolgreichsten dieser Dramen dauern nicht länger als einen vollen Tag, andere nur anderthalben Tag* (Eugen Zabel in *Velhagen und Klasings Monatshefte*, Aug. 1906, p. 612).

Corresponding inflected forms with a stem in *-t* and the force of ordinals occur occasionally: *noch in der zwölftehalbten Stunde* (*Mont.-Ztg.*; 17. 17) in the last half-hour (before twelve). Sometimes the form without *t* is used here: *in der zwölftehalben Stunde*.

c. In the following idiomatic compounds:

(1) Inflected: *der, die, das zweitbeste* the next to the best, *der drittbeste* the third from the best, *der vorletzte* the next to the last, *der drittletzte* the third from the last.

(2) Uninflected (see *Note*): *selbander* or *selbzweit* myself the second, i.e. myself along with another, *selbdritt* myself the third, *selbviert*, &c.: *Ich pflege selbander zu reiten. Dann schritten sie selbzweit dahin* (Anna Schieber's *Alle guten Geister*, p. 185). Inflection here also occurs: *selbzwanzigster gefangen* (Lessing's *Nathan*, 1, 5) taken prisoner along with nineteen others. The use of the cardinal here is less common, and from the strict standpoint of grammar is incorrect. It occurs, however, in the best authors: *selbfünfe* (Goethe's *Wanderjahre*, 2, 12), *selbst* (instead of *selb*) *funfziger* (Lessing's *Emilia Galotti* 3, 1).

*Note.* The apparently uninflected forms *selbdritt*, &c. are mutilated remnants of older weak forms, *selbe dritte*, &c. The force of the weak inflection is the same as described in 111. 10. *Note*.

d. The ordinals can be compounded with *mals* to form adverbs and with *malig* to form adjectives: *erstmals* for the first time, *die erstmalige Zusammenkunft der deutschen Architekten in Leipzig* the first meeting of the German architects in Leipsic. Compare 1. c above.

## PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

## DEMONSTRATIVES.

127. The demonstratives, which can be used either adjectively or substantively, are: *dieser, diese, dieses* this; *jener, jene, jenes* that; *der, die, das* this, that; *derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige* that; *welcher, welche, welches* (130. 3) that, that one; *solcher, solche, solches* such, such a, or *solch ein* (eine, ein), or *ein solcher, eine solche, ein solches*, or *so ein* (eine, ein), or *simple ein, eine, ein* (see 131. 2. a); *der'selbe, die'selbe, das'selbe* the same; *selbiger, selbige, selbiges* the same; *der nämliche, die nämliche, das nämliche* the same; *derartiger, derartige, derartiges* of such a nature. The inflection of these pronominals is treated in the following articles. For the demonstratives or determinatives which are always uninflected see 161. 2 and 3; 141. 5. A. b; 143.

128. A. *Dieser, diese, dieses* *this*, and *jener, jene, jenes* *that*, are inflected like the strong descriptive adjective except in the genitive of the masculine and neuter sing., where the regular strong ending *-es* is used instead of the weak *-en* (see 106. Note 1). In the nom. and acc. neut. sing. *dieses* is often contracted to *dies*. In the masc. and neut. dative sing. we sometimes find instead of the correct strong form the weak ending *-en* after a strong limiting adjective after the analogy of descriptive adjectives: *in allem diesen Trubel* (Bismarck to his wife, Nov. 17, 1848), *allem diesen Jammer fern* (Marriot's *Der geistliche Tod*, p. 266, 5th edition), *von allem diesen aber nun abgesehen* (Adolf Bartels in *Deutsche Monatsschrift*, Dec. 1905, p. 409).

a. The forms *dieses* (or more commonly *dies*) and *jenes* remain uninflected when they are used in connection with the verb *sein* and a predicate noun, to indicate that the subject is identical with the predicate: *Erlauben Sie mir, Ihnen die Herren vorzustellen. Dies ist Herr Schmidt und jenes ist Herr Meyer. Dies ist eine schöne Blume. Dies sind schöne Blumen. Ist dies Ihre Feder?* Note in these sentences that the verb agrees with the predicate. The regular inflected form showing the proper gender and number can also be used: *Dieser (or der) ist der Schuldige*.

b. *Dies* is also uninflected when it is used as a subject or object referring to something that is introduced to one's attention by a gesture or explained by the context immediately preceding: *Wofür halten Sie dies?* What do you take this for? *Dieses alles geschah auf der Mittagsseite des Schlachtfeldes*.

B. *Dieser*, often strengthened by the adverb *hier*, refers to something near the speaker, while *jener*, often strengthened by some adverb as *da, dort* *there, yonder*, points to something more remote: *dieses Haus hier und jenes dort; in dieser und jener Welt* in this world and the one to come. Hence *dieser* is often translated by *the latter* and *jener* by *the former*: *Der Frühling und der Herbst hat seine Freuden: dieser gibt Früchte, jener Blumen*.

Both are used much more in the attributive than the substantive relation. The neut. sing., however, is often used substantively (see A. a and b). Also the other genders are frequently employed in the substantive relation in the meanings *the former, the latter*.

a. *Jener* is also much used to indicate something well known, either by referring backward to some definite person or thing already mentioned or by making reference to some well-known person or thing that is at once recognized by the accompanying description: *jene eben zitierten Stellen. Jene Blätter, nach denen Sie fragten, habe ich noch nicht gefunden. Es war jene Nacht, in der die dickbauchige, schwarzgeteerte Holländer Kuff gegen den Büsener Deich jagte* (Frenssen's *Die drei Getreuen*, III, 1). *Ada war nicht von jenen Puppen, die mit sich machen ließen, was man wollte. Flechten von jenem schönen Kastanienbraun, wie man es in Deutschland so selten findet. Ihm kam der Gedanke, sein Oheim müsse auch zu jenen Menschen gehören, die ein Verständnis für die Sprache der Naturdinge besäßen* (Jensen's *Das Bild im*

*Wasser*, p. 87). Er meint jene Sorge, die uns zu furchtsamen Sklaven des Tages und der Dinge macht, jene Sorge, durch welche wir stückweise an die Welt verfallen (Harnack's *Das Wesen des Christentums*, Fünfte Vorlesung).

b. Often, especially in popular ballads, *jener* is used in a quite indefinite sense, indicating a place well known to the speaker, but not in any way described so as to be clearly recognized by those addressed: Da droben auf jenem Berge, | da steht ein feines Schloß (Heine). Die Sonne hebt sich noch einmal | leuchtend vom Boden empor, | und zeigt mir jene Stelle, | wo ich das Liebste verlor (id.).

c. For determinative use of *jener* see 130. 2. a.

129. 1. *Der, die, das* *that* are used either adjectively or substantively, but with somewhat different inflection for each use. Adjectively used, *der* is inflected exactly like the def. article, differing from it only in that it has a much stronger stress and has the stem vowel long before *m*, *n*, and *r*. To distinguish it from the article in print it is sometimes written with a capital, spaced letters, or furnished with an accent: *Der, d e r*, or *dér*. Used substantively it is declined as follows:

		Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Common form.	
N.	dēr	die	dās	die	
G.	dēssen	dēren	dēssen	dēren	
	dēs	dēr	dēs	dēr	
D.	dēm	dēr	dēm	dēnen or dēn (2. B)	
A.	dēn	die	dās	die	

2. From the beginning of the N.H.G. period there has been considerable fluctuation in the use of the demonstrative forms, and usage is not yet entirely settled. The prevailing usage of our time seems to be as follows:

A. Genitive Forms. The form here depends upon the grammatical function:

If the demonstratives are used attributively before the noun the short forms are uniformly used: *der Name d e s* (that) *Knaben*, *der*, &c.; *die Namen d e r Knaben*, *die*, &c.

If the demonstratives are used substantively, the forms vary according to their grammatical function and fall into four groups:

*First group.* If they are used as pure demonstratives, or instead of personal pronouns (see 141. 2) or possessives (see 138. 2. d), the forms are quite uniformly: (sing.) *dessen* (masc.), *deren* (fem.), *dessen* (neut.); (pl.) *deren* (for all genders). Exs.: Ich erinnere mich *dessen* nicht mehr I do not remember that any more. Sie empfang ihre Freundin und *deren* (her) Tochter. Es lagen Spanier hier; *deren* erinnere ich mich sehr wohl. Nimm die Trauben, ich habe *deren* (of them) genug.

*Second group.* If they are used determinatively followed by a relative clause, the forms are: (sing.) *dessen* (masc.), *derer*, *deren*, or still more commonly *der* (fem.), *dessen* (neut.); (pl.) *derer* for persons, unless it stands before the governing noun, where the form is usually *deren* (sometimes *derer*); pl. for things *deren*, or *derjenigen*, sometimes *derer*. Exs.: Es ist *der* Sohn *dessen*, den wir gestern gesehen haben. Das Glück *derer*, die fern von ihm war (Ompteda's *Sylvester von Geyer*, LXXVIII). Der Himmel hat durch die Hand *derer*, die du liebst, mich davor geschützt (Jensen) (also *deren* and more frequently *der*, but better *der* Dame. It is often better in the gen. of the fem. to use a noun here, as the thought will otherwise be impaired, for the forms *derer* and *deren* are felt as plural, and *der* has not yet become fixed here as a sing. in contrast to the plurals *derer* and *deren*). Das Schicksal *deren*, die ihn trug (Auerbach's *Dorfgeschichten*, 1, 61). Sich lächerlich zu machen in den Augen *der*, die ihn zu einem Gott erheben kann (Spielhagen's *Selbstgerecht*, II, p. 45). Der Herr vernichtet die Macht *derer*, die sich wider ihn auflehnen. Habe ich aber auch jemand übervorteilet durch *dēren* (in original ed. *der*)



etliche, die ich zu euch gesandt habe (2 Cor. XII. 17, revised ed.). Trockne die Tränen von deren Gesicht, die dann um mich weinen (Kleist). Bei dem Studieren der Wissenschaften, besonders deren, welche die Natur behandeln (Goethe). Die Waffen, einschließlich deren, die die Personen bei sich tragen, sollen an ihrem augenblicklichen Platze gelassen werden (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Jan. 4, 1905). Das Jahrhundert ist meinem Ideal nicht reif. Ich lebe ein Bürger derer (now more commonly deren or derjenigen), welche kommen werden (Schiller). Reißt alle, alle [Blumen] ab, sogar die Knospen derer (now more commonly deren or derjenigen), die erst kommen (Hebbel's *Nibelungen*, II, V, 7).

*Third group.* If they are used determinatively followed by a gen. or a prepositional phrase, the forms are: (sing.) dessen or des (masc.), der (fem.), dessen or des (neut.); (pl.) derer for persons, deren (also der and sometimes derer) for things. Exs.: Die Besprechungen meines Anwalts und dessen (or des) meines Gegners haben zu einem Vergleich geführt. Ich bin in Sorge nicht sowohl wegen deiner Angelegenheit, wie wegen der deines Bruders. Sie erinnert sich gern ihrer Freundinnen, besonders derer aus ihrer Schulzeit. Er fand neue Bundesgenossen statt derer aus frühern Zeiten. Sie erinnert sich gern ihrer frühern Erlebnisse, besonders deren (or der) aus den Schuljahren. Ihre Augen hatten nicht ganz das leuchtende Blau, auch nicht den tiefen Ernst derer Sophiens (Perfall's *Der schone Wahn*, p. 60). To this group also belongs derer before von in names of people of noble birth: das Geschlecht derer von Logau.

*Fourth group.* The following corrupted gen. forms, dessent (masc. and neut.), derent (deret) fem. gen. sing. and gen. pl. for all genders, are not infrequently found in composition with wegen on account of, um — willen for the sake of, halb(en) on account of: derentwegen on account of these things, &c. There is, however, a slight tendency in choice language to restore the correct form, especially in case of um — willen: Wenigstens hoffe ich, daß sich Ihre Verrichtungen in Braunschweig . . . werden so gehäuft haben, daß Sie wenigstens derenwegen bleiben müssen (Lessing). Ich will kein Geld von Euch; um dessen willen bin ich nicht gekommen (Storm's *Im Brauer-Hause*, p. 102). Ein mutmaßlich aus einem alten märkischen Herrenhause herstammender . . . Pfeilerspiegel . . . lieb der ärmlichen Einrichtung trotz ihres Zusammengeachtseins oder vielleicht auch um dessen willen etwas von einer erlöschenden, aber doch immerhin 'mal dagewesenen Feudalität (Fontane's *Poggenpuhl*, chap. i).

Ich sage das aber, Kind, um dessen willen, was mir noch zu erzählen bleibt (Spielhagen's *Was will das werden?*, I, chap. xi). Sometimes also 'dessentwillen here: Zwar nicht um dessentwillen was er getan (Walther Siegfried's *Um der Heimat willen*, X).

The new lengthened forms *derer* (fem. gen. sing. and gen. pl.) and *denen* (dat. pl.) were formed by adding the regular strong adjective endings to the original short forms. The form *denen* begins to appear first in the Southwest about 1450, the form *derer* in Middle Germany about 1536. They both became established in prose about 1600. The forms *dessen* and *deren* lengthened from *des* and *der*, originated in the Southwest. The genitive plural form *deren* begins to appear about 1450 and becomes established about 1600. The singular forms *dessen* and *deren* appear later than the plural *deren* and come slowly into general use. The S.G. *deren* and the M.G. *derer* have not as yet, as stated above, become clearly differentiated.

In early N.H.G. also the M.H.G. forms *dere* and *dero* were used with the force of *deren*: **Denn welche diese Grewel thun dere seelen sollen ausgerottet werden von jrem volck** (Lev. xviii. 29). Of these *Dero* *your, his*, used in speaking to and of persons of high rank, were in the last days of monarchical Germany still lingering on in official style and in the language of the princely courts: *Dero* Erlaubnis the permission of your (or his) Highness.

b. Earlier in the period the distinction that the short forms should be used in the gen. for attributive and the long ones for substantive use was not known, and even in the classical period was not yet fully developed: *Ich habe oben gesagt, der Raum sei die Ordnung derer Dinge, die zugleich sind, die Zeit hingegen die Ordnung dessen, was auf einander folgte* (Chr. Wolff). *Kurze Übersicht derer Gaben, welche usw.* (Goethe). Present usage is nicely reflected in the following sentence from Wildenbruch: *Seine dunklen, blaugrünen Augen hatten den scharfen Blick d e r Menschen, die viel und aufmerksam mit der Natur verkehren, und seine hageren Gesichtszüge jenes nach innen gekehrte Lächeln derer, die viel erlebt haben, und deren* (151. 1) *Herz ein gutes Gedächtnis besitzt*. The lengthened forms are to-day found attributively only in antique or, as in the following sentence from Hans Hopfen's *Studiosus Taillefer*, p. 37, in comic style: *Es kam ihm vor, als sollt' er von ihm wie von dem Repräsentanten aller derer braven Burschen, die eben nicht vom gleichen Bande umschlungen gewesen waren, das ihrige aber in Ehren getragen hatten, gleichfalls gerührten Abschied nehmen*.

c. To give a clear formal expression to the idea of the dative relation the genitive forms *dessen* and *deren*, which are used instead of a possessive (see 138. 2. d), are, tho they are genuine pronouns, sometimes still as occasionally also earlier in the period treated as adjectives and inflected like *sein* and *ihr*: *Minna blieb von ihrem Gatten bis zu dessem Tode getrennt* (Stahr's *Goethe's Frauengestalten*, 2. 286). This is as yet confined to the dat. of the masc. and neut. See also 151. 1. c. In the same manner within historic times the possessive *ihr her, their* was developed out of the gen. of *sie*.

B. Dative Forms. The form depends upon the grammatical function in the dat. pl. The distinction is the same as for the gen., namely, the short form is used attributively before the noun, the lengthened form substantively: *von den Leuten, die, &c.; mit denen, die* with those who; *mit seinen Verwandten und denen seiner Frau*. If the dative plural is used determinatively followed by a genitive or a prepositional phrase, the form is usually *dēnen* as elsewhere in substantive use, but we still find here sometimes the older short form *dēn*: *Ob sich die Verhältnisse bei größeren Schiffsformen mit dēn der Versuchsobjekte decken werden, erscheint fraglich* (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Nov. 27, 1904). The form *dēn* is also sometimes employed instead of *dēnen* when the demonstrative stands alone: *In dēn* (i.e. in den Hunden) *da steckt etwas* (Freytag's *Die verlorene Handschrift*, 1, 188). *Ginge es nach dēn* (i.e. den Scharfmachern), *so hätten wir nicht nur Attentate wie in Rußland, sondern auch längst den Bürgerkrieg* (*Der Türmer*, March 1905, p. 822).

a. Earlier in the period the lengthened form *deren* was also used in the fem. dat. sing.: *Hab deren zu Lieb ein neu's Liedlin gedicht, so Euer Gnad das begehrt zu hören, wollt' ich's deren zur Letzt singen* (Wickram's *Rollwagen*). Still in dialect in the form of *dere, deren, or derer*: *Wann ich nur von derer wegkimm!* (Anzengruber's *Kreuzelschreiber*, 2, 9). Also in adjective function: *Ich frag' dich nur, ob du glaubst, daß du in derer Weise was richt'st?* (id., *Schandfleck*, xiv).

b. Earlier in the period the distinction between attributive and substantive use of the double forms had not developed so sharply as to-day: *von denen* (now *den*) *Leuten, die, &c.* (Goethe). This usage is still preserved in S.G. and West M.G. dialect.

C. The Neuter Singular. The neuter singular forms, especially the nom. and acc. *dās* (in dialect frequently spoken *des* or *dös*) and the dat. *dēm*, are much used without a change of form for reference to one or more objects or to things of different genders but always with the case required by the grammatical construction:

(1) Like *dies* (see 128. A. a) the nom. is used to express identity: *Das ist meine Feder. Das sind meine Federn*. It is often very similar in meaning to *dies*: *Ist das* (or *dies*) *der Weg auf den Bahnhof?*

(2) It is often used as subject or object, a more emphatic form than *es*, referring without regard to the gender of the noun to some object at hand, some matter in hand, a condition of things, or an activity: *Wie heißt man das?* What do you call that? *Das geschieht ihm recht* That serves him just right. *Das geht bei mir nicht so* That won't do with me. *Das können wir nicht ruhig mit ansehen* We cannot tolerate that. *Dem kann ich nicht ruhig zusehen* I can't look on with indifference while such things are going on. *Das verwickelt sich* Matters are becoming complicated.

(3) *Das* with sing. verb is used to represent a class of people or beings as a whole: *Kinder leben sorglos dahin; das singt und spielt bei den ernstesten Lagen des Lebens.* Was aber sich Mensch nennt, das lebt von dem Gedanken der alles schonenden und erhaltenden Liebe und ihres Gebotes (Hermann von Blomberg in *Der Türmer*, March 1905, p. 824). A. Sie sind Anarchisten. B. Was ist denn das? A. Das sind Leute, die usw. Often also with reference to one or more in a contemptuous sense: *Will das* (referring to Riccaut) *zu uns?* (Lessing's *Minna*, 4, 2). *Aber das* (i.e. die Arkebusiere) *denkt wie ein Seifensieder* (Schiller's *Lager*, 1. 1006).

(4) As a subject, predicate, or object, to refer emphatically to an idea already expressed in some preceding sentence, noun, adjective, or participle: *Er hat mich heute morgen barsch angefahren.* *Das* (subject) *darf nicht wieder geschehen*, or *das* (object) *darf er nicht wieder tun.* Zwischen nicht geringen Teilen der Bevölkerung und der neu geschaffenen bewaffneten Macht hat sich eine Konfliktsstimmung eingestellt, die zu einer ersten Gefahr werden kann. Es muß versucht werden, dem (dat. object) vorzubeugen (*Vorwärts*, June 4, 1919). Often in the predicate relation: *Er ist ein Bettler*, or *Er ist arm.* *Das war er früher nicht.* Dieses Frauenzimmer gibt sich für die Tochter des englischen Konsuls aus. *Das ist sie auch in der Tat.*

Also *es* can be used here instead of *das* except in the dative relation, where *dem* is employed, as illustrated in the sentence from "Vorwärts" and in 141. 4 (2nd par.). Elsewhere *es* is employed much more frequently than *das*, differing, however, from it in that it is less emphatic and has not the freedom of word-order, in the object and predicate relation only standing *after* the verb: *Er hat mich heute morgen barsch angefahren.* *Es darf nicht wieder geschehen*, or *Er darf es* (or *das*) *nicht wieder tun.* *Er ist jetzt ein Bettler*, or *Er ist jetzt arm; er war es* (or *das*) *aber früher nicht.* Dieses Frauenzimmer gibt sich für die Tochter des englischen Konsuls aus. *Sie ist es auch in der Tat.* *Sie meint, du seist entflohen; und halb und halb bist du es schon.*

(5) It is also often used in a collective sense. See 153. 1. (1); 263. II. 4, c.

D. Dative and Accusative after Prepositions. After prepositions the demonstrative usually takes the adverbial form, if it points to things. See 141: 5. A. *b, c, d.*

Note.

3. *Der, die, das this, that*, are the most popular demonstrative forms, altho the least definite, as they are used in a general way for both *dieser* and *jener*, indicating the position of objects as near or distant only by the aid of a gesture or the context.

*Der* is used substantively more than attributively, yielding in large measure to *dieser* and *jener* in the latter function. In several substantive relations, however, *dieser* and *jener* are common. See 128. A. *a* and *b*; 128. B. Besides the meanings of *dieser* and *jener*, *der* has other meanings, often replacing the personal pronouns (see 141. 2) and being used like *derjenige* (see 130. 2) as a determinative followed by a genitive, prepositional phrase, or relative clause. In all these common substantive uses of *der* the primarily adjective forms *dieser* and *jener* are little used.

a. **Der** is sometimes still omitted before a dependent gen., not only in poetry but also in plain prose: **Und welch ein Band ist sichrer als (das) der Guten?** (Goethe's *Tasso*, 3, 2). **Durch wessen Schuld ist sie so geworden, wenn nicht durch Ezards und Galeidens?** (R. Huch's *Ludolf Ursleu*, chap. xxiv). Earlier in the period this usage was much more common.

b. In a few expressions **der** is rendered by *such*, *So* and *So*: **Wenn das sein Wunsch ist** if *such* (that) is his wish, in **dêr und dêr Stadt** in *such* and *such* a city, an **dêm und dêm Tage** on *such* and *such* a day. **Der und Der (Die und Die) hat es gesagt** Mr. (Mrs.) *So* and *So* said *so*.

130. 1. **Derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige** *that* are declined as if each element (**der** and **jenige**) were written apart and the latter element were a wk. adj. Used adjectively or substantively, their declension is as follows:

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Common form.
N.	derjenige	diejenige	dasjenige	diejenigen
G.	desjenigen	derjenigen	desjenigen	derjenigen
D.	demjenigen	derjenigen	demjenigen	denjenigen
A.	denjenigen	diejenige	dasjenige	diejenigen

a. Earlier in the period up to the close of the seventeenth century we find here the simple wk. form of **jen-**: **dem jenen, welcher . . .** (Opitz 1. 105). From the sixteenth century we find the lengthened form **jenig**. Earlier in the period it could be used without the def. art.: **ich verfluch alle jenige, die anderer Meinung sein** (Fischart).

b. The form **dieserjenige** *this one (here)* is used in popular speech: **Ich denke immer, der hat sich aus einer andern Welt in diesejenige verirrt und kann den Weg nicht wieder zurückfinden** (Raabe's *Schüdderump*, chap. ix).

2. **Derjenige**, unlike **der**, which is either a determinative or a pure demon., has only determinative force, i.e. is followed always by a gen., prep. phrase, or a relative clause: **derjenige, der (or welcher) that one who; nicht mein Hut, sondern derjenige meines Bruders; nicht dieses Buch, sondern dasjenige im roten Einband; derjenige Mann, der (or welcher)**. There is no difference of meaning between the determinative **der** and **derjenige** except that the latter is a heavier and consequently more emphatic word. It is also in general much used in the written language in the attributive relation in preference to **der**, as the latter cannot in the printed form be distinguished from the definite article by a heavy accent as in the spoken word. Also in the precise phraseology of definition and law and of exact language in general it is a decided favorite: **Notwehr ist diejenige Verteidigung, welche erforderlich ist, um einen gegenwärtigen rechtswidrigen Angriff von sich oder einem anderen abzuwenden** (*Bürgerliches Gesetzbuch*, § 227). As **derjenige** is much used in print and is much employed by clumsy speakers to gain a little time, certain grammarians have felt themselves called to ridicule it as stilted and ungainly, at the same time failing to recognize the true province of the word. Recent literary usage is evidently tending to prefer it to **der** as a clearer expression for the determinative idea. The lengthened forms of **der**, however, especially **derer** (gen. pl.), are more common here than the monosyllabic forms, as they are clearer determinatives and not so liable to be confounded with the definite article or the demonstrative.

In early N.H.G. also **welch** and **solch** were used as determinatives. The four determinatives **der**, **jener**, **welcher**, and **solcher** were already in use in M.H.G. In the sixteenth century the new form **derjenige** came into use. Differentiation in meaning and function has been gradually developing. **Der** is more inclined to pure demonstrative function pointing to a definite person or thing, altho it is still widely used in determinative function to point forward to a person or thing described in a following relative clause or a genitive or prepositional phrase. For *definite* reference to a person or thing which is described in a following clause or phrase **derjenige** is now the favorite determinative, **Jener** is also still used here but with a little different shade of meaning. See *a* below near end and 128. B. *a*. For indefinite and general reference **derjenige, welcher**,

and *solcher* are employed. The use of *welcher* is given in 3 below. The boundaries between *derjenige* and *solcher* in present usage are drawn in 131 3 below.

a Sometimes in accordance with older usage *jener* is still used determinatively instead of *der* or *derjenige* modified by a *gen* or a relative clause. *Der hohe Adel zürnte über den politischen Einfluß des Bürgertums, welches im Reichsrat das Ansehen des Herrenhauses durch jenes der Abgeordneten in Schatten stellte* (von Sybel). *Mir dienen | als Zeugen jene, die's mit Augen sah'n* (Fulda's *Der Tahsman* 4 6). *Nur gering ist die Zahl derjenigen, welche sich mit der Venus beschäftigt haben, noch geringer die Zahl jener, welche auf diesem Planeten etwas gesehen haben, und am allergeringsten die Zahl je* dich  
*einen Wert besitzen* (Leo Brenner). *Wenn er von jenen |* und  
*dem Leben abzurufen* hoffte, so war immer nur vor die  
*Rede* (Ganghofer's *Der Glucksucher*). Also in general usage *jener* or its governing word is followed by a relative clause but it here differs in meaning from the determinatives *der* and *derjenige* in that it only points out somebody or something that has already been mentioned or refers to some well known person or thing that is at once recognized by the accompanying description. For examples and further explanation of this use of *jener* see 128 B a.

b Instead of *der der* (or *welcher*) or *derjenige der* (or *welcher*) we sometimes still find in accordance with older usage simple *der*. *Aber die einen anderen Menschen brauchen, kommen selten zur Höhe* (Prof. D. Martin Schian in *Deutsche Rundschau* 1911 vol. 146 p. 408). The relative pronoun after the determinative *der* is here not expressed in accordance with older usage. See 154 Note. The reference in this example is general but it has as in case of *derjenige* *der* a shade of meaning quite distinct from that found in *wer* as it has individualizing force. See 156. Simple *der* more commonly points to definite or fairly definite individuals. *Die ich* am meisten  
s Briefe die  
1 nur wenige

3 *Indefinite and General Determinative*. The old general indefinite determinative *welcher* is still sometimes used. *In welche Unternehmung er sich auch einlaßt, stets hat er Glück* *In whatever enterprise he enters upon &c.* lit. *in that enterprise he enters upon &c.* The adverb *auch* is now usually found here in connection with *welch*, which indicates that this older usage only survives in concessive clauses. In early N H G, however, it was not thus limited but was freely used where to day *derjenige der*, or *wer* is employed. *Welcher Baum (= derjenige Baum, der) nicht gute Früchte bringet | wird abgehauen* (Matth. 10). *Welchen (= wen) der HERR lieb hat | den züchtigt er* (Hebrews 12 6). This *welch* is usually classified as a general indefinite relative adjective, but historically considered it is a general indefinite determinative. The definite or indefinite determinative *derjenige* is always followed by a relative pronoun. The indefinite determinative *welch* is followed by an asyndetic relative clause, i.e. one not introduced by a relative pronoun a construction very common in English as illustrated by the literal translation of the first German example given above. Compare 154 Note. In early N H G *welcher* began to take on definite meaning. *Welchen (= den or derjenige, den) ich küssen werde | der ist's* (Mark. 14 44). In substantive clauses as in this example and other varieties of the substantive clause *welcher* with definite force has not become so common as *der* or *derjenige der*, but in attributive relative clauses it is now thoroughly established and used interchangeably with *der*, where however, it is now felt as a relative pronoun. *Das Buch, welches (originally that one, an appositive to Buch pointing forward to the following explanatory clause, now only felt with the force of the relative which) ich in der Hand halte, ist eine deutsche Grammatik*.

131 1 *Solch such*. *such* a is strong or weak as any adjective but is uninflected before *ein* and inflected or uninflected before a descriptive adjective. If strong the *gen* of the masc. and neut. sing. ends properly in *es*, but as in the case of descriptive adjectives a weak *gen* is often found. Exs. *solcher kleine Hund*, or *solch ein kleiner Hund*, or *solch kleiner*, or (perhaps the most common form) *ein solcher kleiner Hund*, *jedes solche geblumte Tasselein*; *solches* or *solchen* *Glückes ungewohnt*. *Not such* is translated by *kein solch*. *Ich bin kein solcher Narr*. *Keines solchen Narren, keine solchen Narren*; *in einzelnen solchen Fällen* in individual cases of this kind, *eine Mehrheit*

von beigeordneten solchen Einheiten a number of such units that have been coordinated; viele solche (or solcher) Menschen. Es gab größere und kleinere solche Wagen There were larger and smaller scales of this kind. Es sind zwei solche da. Substantively: Ein solcher ist gefährlich Such a man is dangerous. Mußte nicht Christus solches leiden? (Luke xxiv. 26). Das sind ein Paar Ohrgehänge, wie der Herr keine zweiten solche findet in Venedig (H. von Hofmannsthal's *Der Abenteurer und die Sängerin*, p. 171). The masc. and neut. gen. sing. is usually weak in substantive use: In der Lebensform des Bürgers als solchen (wk. gen.) liegt etwas Tragisches (Kühnemann's *Schiller*, p. 237). In der Anschauung des Griechentums als solchen (Ernst Heilborn in *Frankfurter Zeit.*, Dec. 23, 1913).

English *such* is sometimes rendered by *der*. See 129. 3. b.

a. In colloquial language *solch* is very commonly replaced by *so ein*, negatively often in popular language in the form *so kein*: Von *so einem* Manne spricht man Jahrhunderte. *So einer* *such* a one, &c. *So kein* Gesicht sah ich in meinem Leben! (Goethe's *Faust*, 2808). Ich habe einen Hunger, *so hab' ich* mein Lebtage keinen verspürt. Instead of the neuter substantive form *solches* we now more commonly hear in colloquial speech *so etwas*: Hat man je *so etwas* gehört? *So etwas* verlernt sich nicht *so leicht*. *So etwas* von is often used instead of attributive *solch* or *so ein*: *Solchen*, or *so einen*, or *so etwas* von Kot sieht man nicht alle Tage. Instead of the attributive *solch* we often find the adverbial form *so* in popular language: Es gibt *so* Gänschen (i.e. girls), die hübsch weiche Schnäbel haben (H. Hoffmann's *Wider den Kurfürsten*, chap. i).

Note 1. *So ein* is often used referring to something so well known that there is no need of detailed description: Er trägt auch *so einen* großen breitkrämpigen Hut He also wears one of those large broad brimmed hats (which are now so commonly worn). Ich möchte *so ein* Bilderbuch für ein kleines Kind haben I should like to have a picture book such as would be suitable for a little child.

Note 2. *So ein* is often contracted to *so'n* and quite frequently takes a plural, altho simple *ein* has no form for the plural: Ich dünkte, wenigstens unsere streng gesitteten Kreise halten sich — *so — nen — so'ne* Sachen vom Halse (Sudermann's *Heimat*, 1, 7).

b. Instead of *solch* we sometimes find in colloquial language *so welch-*, only, however, in the substantive relation: Es sind Waldbeeren; *so welche* wachsen in den Gärten nicht (Storm's *Unter dem Tannenbaum*, vol. I, p. 191.)

c. Notice especially the case where a qualifying adjective follows the demonstrative and the idea of the intensity of the quality is more prominent than the demonstrative idea. Here *such*, *such a* are usually translated by *so*, *ein so*: *such* bad weather *so schlechtes* Wetter, *such* a good man *ein so guter* Mann. Also *solch*, *so ein*, or *so etwas* von (example in a above) contains this idea of intensity, especially before a noun not modified by an adjective: Dieses Schiff rannte mit *solcher* Heftigkeit gegen die Brücke, daß es sie auseinander sprengte. *Solch ein*, *so ein* (in sing.), *solch —* (in pl.) are often used with disparaging force: Mit *solchen* (with such a meager stock of) Kenntnissen wollen Sie sich zum Examen melden?

2. *Solch as a Determinative*. *Solch* is also a determinative, followed by a relative clause, a genitive, or a prepositional phrase, but it differs from the determinatives *der* and *derjenige* in that it does not point to definite individuals but refers to a person or a thing as a member of a *class* of persons or things without fixing definitely the identity of the individual in question, variously translated, *one*, *such* (*as*), *that*, *those*, or by repeating the noun to which it refers: Zur Begleitung eines Flügels sang dort eine angenehme weibliche Stimme ein leidenschaftliches Lied, ein *solches*, das Sturm und Aufruhr der heftigsten Gefühle darstellte (H. Seidel's *Lorelei*). Der weise Erzieher lehrt seinem Zögling *solche* Wahrheiten, die der Stufe seiner Erfahrung und seines Verstandes entsprechen (Kuno Fischer). Die Krankheit, welche eben vorwiegend eine *solche* des Willens gewesen war und nicht des Körpers (Frenssen's *Die Sandgräfin*, chap. viii). Bislang war es mir noch nie in den Sinn gekommen, daß mein Vater sich vielleicht mit noch anderen entscheidenderen Gedanken trug als nur mit *solchen* der Sorge und des Kammers (R. Huch's *Ludolf Ursten*, chap. xxii). Wohl fehlte es weder an Ausdrücken des moralischen Entzückens, noch an *solchen* der ästhetischen Empörung (Kühnemann's *Schiller*, p. 29). Ebenso wichtig, wie ältere Nachweise für Tollwut sind mir natürlich *solche* für tollwütig (Stosch in *Zeitschrift für deutsche Wortforschung*, I. Band, p. 374). Der berühmte Mann einer kleinen Stadt zu sein ist etwas ganz anderes als ein *solcher* in einer großen (Wildenbruch's *Schwester-Seele*, chap. xi) To be the famous man of a little town is something quite different from being the famous man of a large city. Eigentümlichkeiten des Wortschatzes sowie *solche* der Syntax (O. Tacke in *Zeitschrift für den deutschen Unterricht*, 1915, p. 776)

peculiarities of vocabulary as well as peculiarities of syntax. There is in *solch* always something indefinite, hence it must be replaced by *der* or *derjenige* when the reference becomes definite, even where the idea of class, kind, quality is clearly present. Wie den Engländern eine gewisse Sentimentalität, die freilich ganz verschieden ist von derjenigen ihrer deutschen Vettern, durchaus nicht fremd ist (Prof. Dr. Ernst Sieper in *Westermanni's Monatshefte*, vol. 111, p. 189).

a. Accented *ein* is often used here like *solch*. Es war eine (= eine solche) Nacht, in welcher man nicht gern einen Hund hinausjagt. Das Zenzl ist eine, die einen Mann glücklich machen kann (Voss's *Psyche*, VIII).

3. *Solch Competing with Other Forms*. In the use of *solch* described in 2 to refer not to definite individuals but to persons or things of a particular class or kind the idea is always more or less general or indefinite. Hence there arose early, even in the M.H.G. period the tendency to use *solch* for general or indefinite reference. In the sixteenth century the new form *derjenige* gradually became established as the determinative for more definite reference than that suggested by *solch*. The use of *solch* for indefinite reference, however, is at present in general confined to cases where *solch* refers to a noun which has already been used, as in the examples from Frenssen, Huch, Kuhnemann, Stosch, Wil denbruch, and Tacke in 2 above, or where it itself stands before the noun and points to a following relative clause, as in the example from Fischer. If there is no such noun present *derjenige* is usually employed, even tho the reference is general and indefinite. *Derjenige, der sich mit Einsicht für beschränkt hält, ist der Vollkommenheit am nächsten* (Goethe). *Wie sonst diejenigen, die im Herrn sterben* (Paul Heyse's *Marienkind*, p. 96). Compare 156. In the plural however, also *solch* is used here. *Für solche, denen die vergleichende Grammatik schon vertraut ist, ist es (i.e. dieses Werk) nicht bestimmt* (Meillet Prinz's *Einführung in die vergleichende Grammatik*, Preface). Also the neuter sing. as it has indefinite force. *Wir können im Rahmen der Schule von zeitgenössischer Literatur nur eine Auswahl des Besten geben und nur solches, was entweder an andere Lektüre anzuknüpfen ist usw.* (*Zeitschrift für den deutschen Unterricht*, 1915, p. 447). Instead of *solches* we might use *das* or *dasjenige* here, but *solches* stresses more the idea of class or kind.

In contrast to this use of *solch* is its employment to refer to definite persons and things. *Nunmehr fuhr der Kaiser bei dem Zelt an, betrat solches (= es) und usw.* (Goethe). *Ein Haufe Franktireurs überfiel die Brücke und sprengte solche (= sie) in die Luft* (*Kölnische Zeitung*). This usage is not in accord with the indefinite nature of *solch* and in spite of its frequent employment by the great writers of the classical period is now gradually disappearing from choice language. Where however the personal pronouns are themselves not employed and are usually replaced by other words it is much used, competing here with *der* and *derselbe*, as described in 141 1, 2, 3 5 B b Note.

*Solch* not only competes with *derjenige* and the personal pronouns as described above, but is also used instead of the indefinite *welch* *some*, *any*. *Bei alledem verbrauchte er aber Geld, ohne solches (= welches) einzunehmen* (R. Huch's *Schlaraffis*, p. 140). This usage is in harmony with the indefinite nature of *solch*.

Grammarians have written a good deal upon the false use of *solch*, but their censure is often indiscriminate. In many instances present usage is not incorrect, as often claimed, but manifests a keen sense for a fine shade of meaning, the *solch* referring not to a definite person or thing, as in case of *er*, *sie*, *es*, *der*, *derjenige*, but rather to an object or objects of some particular kind, often described by the modifying element of the compound in case of a compound antecedent or by a modifying word following or preceding a simple antecedent. *Ich durfte den armen Studenten doch nicht für einen sechswöchigen Kursus ihre letzten Zwanzigmarkstücke aus der Tasche ziehen, wenn sie überhaupt solche besaßen* (H. Hoffmann). *Die bedeutendste Schrift über das Niederdeutsche ist Agathe Lasch's mittelniederdeutsche Grammatik. Eine solche nach dem jetzigen Stande der Wissenschaft zu schreiben, war nicht leicht*

(Oskar Weise in *Zeitschrift für den deutschen Unterricht*, 1915, p. 520). Ich danke Ihnen sehr dafür, daß Sie so gütig waren, dem Herzog in meinem Namen ein Exemplar der Horen zu überreichen. Es folgt solches (= dafür ein anderes Exemplar der Horen) hier zurück (Schiller an Goethe, 1. 105). Er erwartete von ihr unbedingt den ersten Brief und dieser Brief kam nicht, denn sie erwartete einen solchen von ihm (Ompfeda's *Frieden*, chap. xii). Ich hatte mir . . . eingebildet . . . auf dem Bock säße der Tod in einem schwarzen, flatternden Mantel, auf seinem klappernden Schädel einen blanken niedrigen Hut, wie ich solche an unseren Droschkenkutschern zu sehen gewohnt war (R. Huch's *Ludolf Ursleu*, chap. xxvi). Out of this common usage has arisen the common employment of *ein solcher* or *simple solcher* to point to something as a member of a class without definitely fixing its identity: Unter den zahlreichen Telegrammen befindet sich auch ein solches aus New York (*Kölnische Zeit.*). U in du ist zweimal mit Längezeichen gedruckt, zweimal ohne solches (Oskar Weise in *Zeitschrift für den deutschen Unterricht*, 1915, p. 430). Here *ein solcher* competes with *einer one*, but it is a clearer expression, for the idea of number is not prominent. *Eines* may be used instead of *ein solches* in the first example, but it could not be used at all in the second as the idea of class entirely overshadows the idea of number. *Solch* often refers similarly to a simple noun, where in English we use the word *mere* before the repeated noun: Er meinte, sie wäre selbstsüchtig, sie gönne ihm das Vergnügen (of studying Spanish dialects in Spain) nicht, das ihm mehr als ein solches (*mere pleasure*) war (Ompfeda's *Frieden*, chap. xii).

132. 1. A. Der'selbe, die'selbe, das'selbe *the same* are inflected like derjenige. See 130. 1. It is not only used adjectively, as in derselbe Mann, but also substantively: Er ist derselbe, der (subject) uns gestern anbettelte. Unser Freund ist nicht mehr derselbe, der (predicate) er war, or als der (predicate appositive) er herkam.

a. If contraction with a preceding preposition takes place the parts are separated: am selben, zur selben, &c.

b. Sometimes the article is dropped and *selb* is inflected strong: um selbe Zeit (Schiller). Ich nehme meinen Kindern alle Bücher ab, sobald sie selbe nicht mehr brauchen, und lege sie in Verwahrung (Rosegger).

c. Lengthened forms both with and without the article were common earlier in the period: derselbige, selbiger. With the article the form is weak, without it strong. The lengthened forms are little used to-day in plain prose, but still occur not infrequently in poetic language or in antique or solemn style. It is sometimes used as an emphatic form of derselbe: Auch wenn man zweimal dasselbe tut, ist es gleichfalls nicht mehr dasselbige (Raabe's *Alte Nester*, I. chap. x).

d. In S.G. dialects derselbe or selbiger have developed various forms, as dersall, dersell, seller; desebe, seb. These forms usually have demonstrative force = der or jener. See B. a. Note below. These dialects use *der nämliche* instead of the literary derselbe.

e. The form *dieser selbe* is occasionally found, usually with a slight shade of difference, in that it, as the English *this same* or *this very same*, has more distinctly demonstrative force and conveys more emphasis: Diese plötzliche Frage setzte das Mädchen kaum in Erstaunen, das sich heute und gestern mit nichts anderem als nur mit diesem selben Gegenstande beschäftigt hatte (K. F. Meyer).

f. The form *jener selbe* *that same* is occasionally found: In jenem selben Jahre noch war es, wo usw. It was in that very same year that, &c.

B. Derselbe has a wider range of meanings than the English *the same* as used in ordinary prose. Besides its primary meaning it is also used in the following derived meanings:

a. Derselbe is often used instead of a personal pronoun. See 141. 2, 3, 4, 5. B. b, 6, 7. This use developed out of its employment as a demonstrative, which was common in early N.H.G. See Note.

Note. The demonstrative idea and that of identity approach each other at times very closely. In reply to the question Sind Sie nicht Herr Waldfried, der Sohn des Bezirksförsters? the answer may be: Ich bin derselbe, or Der bin ich. From such or similar cases derselbe had already in M.H.G. assumed demonstrative or determinative force, and hence was strongly stressed: Weh aber dem Menschen | durch welchen des menschen Son verrhaten wird | Es were dem selben Menschen besser | das er nie geboren were (Mark xiv. 21). Wenn du in einem ungewissen und zweifelhaften Werke, da du zweierlei für dir hast, begriffen, so erwähle (erwähle) denselben Teil, welcher am leichtesten zu thun ist (Olearius, *Rosenthal*). Also used substantively: vnd wenn du seinen Mund auffthust | wirstu einen Stater finden | Den selbigen nim vnd gib jn für mich und dich (Matth. xvii. 27). As can be seen in the first two sentences of this Note, both der and derselbe may have the force of emphatic personal pronouns. Both of them often lose their original force and are then used merely to replace personal pronouns, as described in 141. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5. B. b, 6, 7. The older use of derselbe as a demonstrative or determinative pure and simple has in a large



); Aber ein neues  
Selb (= das) ist  
al pronouns has in-

*b.* In the language of monarchical Germany *derselbe* was used in connection with *allerhöchst*, *höchst*, *hoch* in addressing an emperor, king, and other potentates, and is still used in case of legislative bodies, to replace as a personal pronoun the title *Ew. Kaiserliche Majestät*, *Hoher Reichstag*, &c., after it has once been used. The exact form depends upon the title in question: *Allerhöchstdieselben* (to the emperor; pl. in form, also with pl. verb), *Hochderselbe* (to the Reichstag), &c.

NOTE. Wherever *derselbe* in the cases in *a* and *b* is used to replace a personal pronoun it is more weakly accented than in the primary demonstrative use.

2. *Der nämliche* *the same, the very same, the identical* is inflected like *derselbe*; the parts, however, are separated in writing. The parts of *derselbe* were also written separately early in the period. *Der nämliche* has a much narrower range of meanings than *derselbe*, not being used at all in the groups *a* and *b* under 1. B above. It is sometimes used with the primary meaning of *derselbe*, sometimes with a different shade in the sense of *identical*: *unter demselben Blau, über dem nämlichen Grün* (Schiller's *Spaziergang*, 199). *Wir gehen tausendmal den nämlichen (identical) Weg, aber nimmer wieder denselben* (Raabe's *Alle Nester*, I. chap. x).

133. *Derartig* *of such a nature*, strong or weak, or less frequently *derart* uninflected: *derart* or *derartige* *Beleidigungen* insults of such a nature. *Das Verhältnis war nicht derart* or *ein derartiges*, daß es *Johanna* große Verlegenheit verursacht hätte. Eine *derartige* *Schnelligkeit* war bisher unerhört. *Derartiges kommt nicht vor* Such things do not occur.

NOTE. The form *derart* or *der Art* should remain uninflected, as it is in fact a fem. noun in the gen. However, it is sometimes felt as a demon. adj. and accordingly inflected, *von derartigen Maßnahmen* (*Volks-Zeitung*).

## INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE ADJECTIVES.

134. 1. The interrogative adjective *welcher, welche, welches* *which, what*, used adjectively or substantively, in questions direct or indirect, is always strong when declined, but must be uninflected before *ein*, and may be before a descriptive adjective and sometimes before a neut. noun in the nom. and acc. sing.: *welcher Schüler? welches edle Herz? Welch edlen* or more commonly *welches edlen Mannes Tat* ist das? *Ich möchte wissen, welcher Mann das gesagt hat* (indirect question). The uninflected form is especially frequent in exclamations: *Welch eine Torheit! Welch edler Mann! Welch schönes Fest! Welch* or more commonly *welches Glück! What good fortune!*

2. The parts of the interrogative *was für ein (eine, ein)* *what kind*, used in questions direct and indirect, are indeclinable except *ein*, which is declined as the indefinite article when used adjectively, and like strong adjectives when used substantively: *Was für ein Buch ist das? Ein deutsches. Was für eins? What kind of book is that? A German book. What kind? Ich möchte wissen, was für ein Buch Sie lesen* (indirect question).

The *ein* drops out before a noun denoting an abstract idea or a material and in the plural of the adjective use, but in the substantive use it is replaced thruout by the strong indefinite *welch* *some*: *Was für Torheit treibst du da? Was für Wein haben Sie getrunken? Wir haben starken Wein getrunken. Was für welchen? What kind? Was für Bücher sind das? Deutsche Bücher. Was für welche? What kind? Er hat Freunde, aber was für welche? Mit was für einem Bleistift schreibt er?, but Mit was für Bleistiften schreiben sie?* The *für* in these examples is not a preposition, but a particle introducing the following appositive. For the history of this construction and the relation in meaning between *was für ein* and *welch*- see *d* below.

The use of *welch*- in the substantive relation after names of materials and abstract ideas and in the plural, as found in the above examples, is wide-spread. Many, however, prefer to drop the *welch*-: *Wünschen Sie Butter? Was für*

haben Sie? (instead of Was für welche haben Sie?) Gelehrsamkeit, aber was für? (Goethe). Ich kaufte zwei Bücher. Was für sind es? (instead of Was für welche sind es?) Bei der Kur erfuhr man gegenseitig alle Leiden und Schicksale und was für! (Berlepsch's *Fortunats Roman*, 178). In popular language eine is often heard in the plural instead of welche: In dem Park wachsen Bäume. Was für eine?

When the reference is not to a material or an abstract idea, but to a single thing, was für was is used in the substantive relation: „Wie heißt er denn?“ „Tiberius.“ „Was für was?“ frug er, und das Kind wiederholte das Wort (Storm's *Bötjer Basch*, p. 27).

- a. In the nom. and acc. für can be separated from was: Was ist das für ein Vogel?
- b. Was für ein is often used like *welch-* in exclamations: Was für ein schönes Haus!
- c. In questions direct and indirect, also in indefinite or general relative clauses, was für, often strengthened by the adverb alles, is used in the general indefinite sense of *what, what all, what different, all the various* (things, &c.) *which*: Was ist das alles für ein Schreien und Toben? Was sind das nicht alles für Ausflüchte! Was du dir doch alles für Sorgen machst! Sie fing an, herzuzählen, was alles für gute Dinge und schöne Sachen im Hause seien, was sie selbst für Hauptsachen in einer kleinen Truhe besitze.
- d. In M.H.G. and early N.H.G. was with the partitive genitive was used, where we now find was für ein: Was Nutzens hast du von mir? (Steinhöwel) In what have you received any benefit from me? Here as elsewhere the genitive passed over into the appositional construction, later the appositive being usually introduced by für (see 252. 2. A. b. (2). Note): In was Land [now was für ein Land] ziehen nicht die Zigeiner (Zigeuner)? (Fischart, 1590). Ach, was ist's ein Mann! (Goethe's *Egmont*, 1, Bürgerhaus). Now, and even in Goethe's time, the usual form is Was ist's für ein Mann! The simple appositional construction is, however, still common in colloquial language, especially in exclamations: Ei was Gewissenhaftigkeit! (Ludwig's *Zwischen Himmel und Erde*, XIX). Was ein Gesicht! (M. Dreyer's *Drei*, 3). O was komische Sachen! (id., *In Behandlung*, 1). For a fuller history of the construction see 147. 1. E. In such sentences was für ein may be replaced by *welch* when it inquires after a particular thing: Welchen Nutzen (what particular benefit) hast du von mir? There is often, however, no difference between was für ein and *welch-*, but the growing tendency has been to differentiate the meanings of the two expressions, the former expressing an inquiry after a particular kind or sort, the latter an inquiry after a particular thing: Was für ein Pferd ist das? *What kind of horse is that?* but Welches Pferd wollen Sie reiten? — Den Braunen *Which horse are you going to ride?* — The bay. In some dialects *welcher* is not used here at all, was für ein still being used for *welcher*: Was for en Mann is des? (dialect of Mainz).

3. In indirect questions and exclamations the German has two adjective forms, *ein wie*, *eine wie*, *ein wie*, or *ein welch*, *eine welch*, *ein welch*, which correspond to English *what a*, which is also confined to indirect questions and exclamations: Der Vorfall führt uns recht lebhaft vor Augen, eine wie gewaltige Wirkung die geistlichen Spiele zu ihrer Zeit auszuüben vermochten (Vogt and Koch's *Geschichte der deutschen Literatur*, p. 248). Es ist erstaunlich, ein welch intensives Leben aus diesem Wörterbuch hervorquillt (*Jahresbericht der germanischen Philologie*, 33, 163).

4. The early N.H.G. form *waser* has been entirely replaced by *was für ein*. See 147. 1. E.

135. The relative adj. *welcher*, *welche*, *welches* is declined like the interrogative: Er sagte „guten Tag“, welchen Gruß sie freundlich erwiderte; with noun understood: Die Bevölkerung Rumäniens besteht zu  $\frac{4}{5}$  aus Rumänen, einem Mischlingsvolke aus lateinischen und slavischen Bestandteilen, welche letzteren (the latter of which) romanisiert wurden.

a. *Welcher* is usually a pure pronoun with the additional function of a subordinate conjunction, and requires the verb at the end of its clause. Even as real adjectives, as in the preceding examples, enough of the pronominal and conjunctive nature is left to require the verb at the end.

#### POSSESSIVES.

136. The possessives are *mein* my, *dein* thy, your, *sein* his, its, *ihr* her, its, their, *unser* our, *euer* your, *Ihr* your. These words are used either adjectively or substantively, but with different inflection for each use. For their use see 138.

- a. In S.G. dialects other possessives are in use: *enker* = *euer* your, *ihner* their, *söner* their.

## DECLENSION.

137. 1. Used adjectively the possessives are inflected exactly like the indefinite article in the sing. and like the strong adjective in the pl.: *mein Hut, meine Feder, mein Buch, dieser mein Sohn* *this my son*, pl. *meine Hüte, Federn, Bücher*. When a strong pronominal precedes, we sometimes find instead of the correct strong form weak inflection of the possessive after the analogy of descriptive adjectives: in *diesem unseren Phantasiestübchen* (Raabe's *Die Akten des Vogelsangs*, p. 90). Bei allem seinen großen Ruhm (Ebner-Eschenbach's *Glaubenslos*, chap. iii).

a. In poetry *mein* (Uhland). *Steh auf, du Schwester*  
*mein* (Uhland). *Lord's Prayer, always*  
 when used as a n *Lord's Prayer* Also  
 the form *Euer* (sometimes found in the contracted form *Ew.*, which form is explained by the  
 older spelling *ewer*) is still sometimes uninflected when used before a title in direct address:

heutigen  
 Johann A.

2. A. Used substantively they agree in gender with the noun to which they refer and are inflected like a descriptive adjective, and hence have three forms—the *strong*, the *weak*, and in the predicate the *uninflected* form.

a. When standing *adjective* they are, especially in familiar *except in the gen.* of the masc. and neut. sing., where they still have the strong form *es* instead of the wk. *en* (see 106. Note 1): nom. *meiner, meine, meines*, &c. *Ist das Ihr Hut oder ist es meiner? Mein Bruder und seiner, unser Haus und Ihres.*

b. If preceded by the def. article, which form is now a favorite substitute for the simple possessive (see *a* above), they are declined exactly as the wk. adj.: *der meine, die meine, das meine; mein Bruder und der seine, meine Schwester und die seine, mein Buch und das seine.*

Often the stem *mein, dein*, &c. is lengthened by adding *ig* and then inflected in the same way: *der meinige, die meinige, das meinige; Unser Haus und das Ihrige*. These lengthened forms have gradually established themselves since the sixteenth century and have now, perhaps, become more common than the unlengthened ones. The latter, however, are in no wise felt as unusual, and are even favorites in choice prose or poetry: *Wenn Ihr Gesetz denn anders lautet als das meine, so kann ich nur dem meinen folgen. Lieber will ich ein gequälter Sünder bleiben als eine Puppe in der Hand meiner Mutter oder in der Ihren* (H. Hoffmann's *Rittmeister*).

Note. This possessive form with the article is now only used substantively, but this is only a modern differentiation. In M H G it is also used attributively before the noun, *die sine riche geste* (*Nibelungenlied*, Adventure 9).

c. These possessives, with the exception of *ihr her, their, Ihr your*, which are now usually inflected or replaced by some other construction, may like descriptive adjectives remain uninflected in the predicate after the intransitives *sein, werden, bleiben, scheinen*, and sometimes *gehören* (not only colloquially, as often stated, but occasionally even in elevated discourse), and as an objective predicate after *nennen, wissen, glauben, fühlen, empfinden, machen*, &c., if they express the abstract or general

inflected strong or weak if it is simply *ed* by the predicate is identical with *ist, soll euer bleiben* What is yours shall remain yours. *Der Wagen ist nur halb mein. Das Geld ist sein. Der Tag ist unser* (Liliencron's *Kriegsromanellen*, battle of Vionville). So lang das Schwert ich schwinde, | gehört, was ich besitze, Herr, auch dein! (M. Greif's *Heinrich der Löwe*, 1, 2). *Dein g'hört alles da herum* (Ebner-Eschenbach's *Glaubenslos*, chap. vii). *Mein scheint die Schuld, doch weiß ich sie dein. Der Mensch hat nur sich selber sein zu nennen* (P. Heyse).

Earlier in the period also *ihr* was used predicatively, but it is also possible to construe this form in early N.H.G. as a gen. of the personal pronoun (see 140. b), and later in the period, where the reference is to one woman, as a dative of the personal pronoun (see 258. 1. A. c): *Selig sind | die da geistlich arm sind | Denn das Himmelreich ist jr* (Matth. v. 3). *Sagen Sie meinem Fränzchen, daß ich noch immer ihr bin* (Goethe to K. Fabricius, June 27, 1770). *Ihr bin ich, bildend soll sie mich besitzen* (id., *Tasso*, 2, 2). Instead of *Ihr* and *ihr* in the predicate we now often find *Ihre* and *ihrer* (see Note 2 below). Perhaps most people would avoid this construction here and use another.

But inflection for the expression of identity: *Mein Geschmack ist immer auch der seine* (Fulda's *Talisman*, 2, 6). *Er wollte Reilands Sache auch weiterhin die seine bleiben lassen* (Fedor Sommer's *Ernst Reiland*, p. 405). *Sein Los ist uns'res!* (Hebbel's *Nibelungen*, III, IV, 4). *Die Wünsche, die sie hegt, sind auch die meinen* (Fontane's *Vor dem Sturm*, III, 8). Compare these last examples with *Ihr habt mich auserwählt zu Eurem Führer, | mein wurde Euer Wille, Eure Tat* (Wildenbruch's *Die Quitzows*, 2).

Note 1. If the subject is *er*, *sie*, *es*, the uninflected form of the possessive is usually employed in the predicate; but if situation *es* (141. 9. a), which does not change form for gender and number, is made subject, the inflected substantive forms must be used: *Wem gehört der Hut — die Feder — das Buch?* Answer: *Er ist mein — sie ist mein — es ist mein*; or *es ist meiner* (der *meinige* or der *meine*) — *meine* (die *meinige* or die *meine*) — *meines* (das *meinige* or das *meine*), and in the pl.: *es* (speaking of hats, pens, books) *sind meine* (die *meinigen* or die *meinen*). The uninflected form emphasizes the idea of possession, and the inflected form that of identity. Even if the subject is *er*, *sie*, or *es*, the inflected form must be used if the idea of identity is prominent: *Dein Weg ist krumm, er ist der meine nicht* (Schiller's *Wallensteins Tod*, 2, 7). Also here the uninflected form emphasizes the idea of possession and the inflected form that of identity.

Note 2. In familiar conversation still, especially in the Midland and North, and also in the classics, there is an uninflected form in the predicate which in case of *ihr* *her*, *ihr* *their*, *Ihr* *your* ends in *e*, as *ihre*, *Ihre*, which is a survival of the M.H.G. form *ire*, employed in the Midland for the usual M.H.G. *ir*, the fem. gen. sing. and the gen. pl. of the personal pronoun *si* (*sie*): *Ich fürchte fast, daß dieses Frauenzimmer niemals Ihre wird* (Schiller). *Mein ist alles, was sonst ihre war* (Grillparzer's *Ottokar*, 2). *Das [das Kruzifix] ist nun Ihre* (Fontane's *Vor dem Sturm*, IV, 26). *Trud und Gerdt schritten langsam die lange Straße hinunter, bis an das Mindesche Haus, das nun ihre war* (id., *Grete Minde*, chap. vii). *Wir denka halt alle, das Mädchen wär' Ihre* (Hauptmann's *Fuhrmann Henschel*, Act 2). This is a survival of older periods when there was no possessive adjective for the fem. 3rd person and for the 3rd pers. pl., altho there were elsewhere regular adjective possessive forms. The possessive idea was in these places, where special forms were lacking, expressed by the gen. of the personal pronoun. The surviving pronominal forms *ihre*, *Ihre* were, however, after the formation of a possessive adjective for the 3rd pers. fem. and 3rd pers. pl., construed as a weak predicate adjective, and hence similar forms were sometimes made from the other possessives: *Sie doch wenigstens wissen, daß das, was meine ist, auch Ihre ist* (Lessing).

Instead of the colloquial *ihre* we find in choice language the form *ihrer*, the modern genitive of the personal pronoun *sie*: *Wir selbst, als Schwestern deiner Fürstin gleich, | gehorchen ihr, weil ihrer ward das Reich* (Grillparzer's *Libussa*, 3). *Denn ihrer* (i.e. der Leidschaften) *ist ja das Reich und die Herrlichkeit der Welt* (Raabe's *Schulderrump*, chap. xii). *Ihrer ist die Schuld, — ganz allein ihrer!* (Teilmann's *Wahrheit*, X).

B. These possessives can also be used as real substantives without antecedent, in which case they are written with capitals, with inflection as follows:

a. Referring to one's relatives, friends, party associates, and also, in neut. form, to one's property or duty, they are inflected weak: *Er lebt nur für die Seinigen* He only lives for his family. *Die Meinigen werden erfreut sein, die Ihrigen zu begrüßen* My folks will be glad to greet yours. *Die — Meinigen? Ich habe keine Meinen* (Wildenbruch's *König Laurin*, 3, 1). *Die drei verbündeten Herrscher hielten selbst auf einer Anhöhe in der Nähe und sahen die übermenschlichen Anstrengungen der Ihrigen*. In letters: *Ganz der Ihrige, die Deinige*. *Meine Schwester hat all das Ihrige verloren* My sister has lost all her property. *Ich habe das Meinige getan* I have done my duty.

Note. Provincially these substantives may be heard strong: *Meiner* my husband, my master, *Meine* my wife, my mistress. *Die hat eine Kusine, der Ihrer* (whose husband) *trifft nur alle vier Wochen einmal nach Haus* (Ebner-Eschenbach's *Rittmeister Brand*, V).

b. The short forms *Mein*, *Dein*, &c. are uninflected neut. substantives when used in the abstract or general sense of *possession*, *right of possession*: *Streit um Mein und Dein* contention as to what is mine and yours. *Dein und Mein bringt alles Unglück herein* Contention as to the right of possession of property brings about a good deal of misfortune.

NOTE. From the above it will be seen that aside from the special case in B. b, above, there are *four* substantive forms for the predicate, but only three for the subject, while there is only *one* form for the adj. use: *Das Buch ist mein, meines, das meine, or das meinige* (predicate). *Ihr* (adj.) *Buch ist neuer als meines, das meine, or das meinige* (subject.)

## USE.

138. The following points as to the use of possessives may be of practical value:

1. As there are three forms corresponding to the three forms for the second person of the personal pronoun, care must be exercised as to their proper use. *Dein* *your, thy* is the form of the possessive, corresponding to the familiar form *du* (140. a): *Du wirst das Deine empfangen* You will get what is due you. *Ich habe mein Buch vergessen; leihe (du) mir deines.* The form of the possessive corresponding to *Sie*, the polite form of address, is *Ihr*: *Wo haben Sie Ihren Überrock gekauft?* The form of the possessive corresponding to *ihr*, the familiar address to two or more, is *euer*: *Ich rate euch, bekümmert ihr euch mit euren Angehörigen nicht um meine, sondern um eure Angelegenheiten.* Thus in familiar language *dein* or *euer* is used according as the address is to one or more persons, but each must agree in gender, number, and case with the following noun which it limits: *dein Buch* *your* (speaking to one friend) book, pl. *deine Bücher* *your* books; *euer Buch* *your* (speaking to several friends who own one book) book, pl. *eure Bücher* *your* books.

All pronouns and their corresponding possessives are written with capitals when employed in direct address in letters (not usually, however, elsewhere except in case of the polite form of address): *Lieber Bruder! Ich habe seit Deinem letzten Hiersein keine Nachricht von Dir erhalten.* The polite form of address *Sie* (with reference to one or more) and the corresponding possessive *Ihr* are always written with a capital, and usually also the other forms of conventional address explained in 140. a. *Note*, namely *Er*, *Sie* (fem. sing.), *Ihr* (with reference to one or more) along with their corresponding possessives *Sein*, *Ihr*, *Euer*. Usage, however, fluctuates here at several points, some using capitals more freely, others more sparingly.

... kings, &c.,  
- Ihr: Mein  
... s, das ganz  
... Untertanen  
... h gerne der

... a. Note.

2. There are two pronominals for the third person. Referring either to a masc. or neut. noun, *sein* is used and hence must be translated by *his*, *one's*, or *its*: *Er hat sein Schläfchen gemacht* He has taken his nap. *Man kennt nicht immer seine wahren Freunde* One does not always know one's true friends. *Jedes Land hat seine Vorzüge* Every land has its advantages. When the reference is to a neut. collective noun, the German possessive is *sein*, which must in some cases be translated by *their*: *Das Volk bestand auf seine Rechte* The people insisted upon their rights. The form *ihr* may mean in English *her*, *its*, *their*. If it refers to a female, it is to be translated by *her*: *Marie schreibt ihren Aufsatz* Mary is writing her essay. If it refers to a thing of fem. gender, it is translated by *its*: *Die Sache hat ihre gute Seite* The affair has its bright side. If it refers to more than one, it is translated by *their*: *Die Mädchen schreiben ihre Aufsätze* The girls are writing their essays.

a The adverbial expression *seinerzeit* is used with reference to a word in the first, second, or third person, sing. or pl, masc, fem., or neut., with the meaning in *our* (*your, his, her, its*) *day*

... die Gallapfelwespe, 1  
... Kreisen Aufsehen (Raabe)

... Meine Frau sagte seinerzeit  
... dankbar können wir doch sein, daß du nicht  
... Ich werde seinerzeit (in due season) auf die  
... (in due time) erfahren. Some prefer here to

select the possessive according to the gender, person, and number of the word to which it refers: Eine Geschichte des deutschen Volkes, welche an Stelle der ihrer Zeit tüchtigen . . . Geschichte der Deutschen von Pfitzer treten soll (*Augsb. Allg.*). This is especially the case to bring out a contrast: Auch Gärten, die aneinander grenzten . . . gab es da noch zu unserer Zeit, als die Stadt noch nicht das „erste Hunderttausend“ überschritten hatte (Raabe's *Die Akten des Vogelsangs*, p. 8).

b. The possessives, like the personal pronouns, may be used reflexively referring to the subject of the sentence, and when the subject is pl. may also be used reciprocally: Ich fördere meine, du fördest deine, er fördert seine, sie fördert ihre Interessen I further my, you further your, he furthers his, she furthers her interests. Sie fördern ihre Interessen They further their own interests, or it may mean their mutual interests.

In case of the third person of the reflexive possessive and the reciprocal possessive thruout, the reference cannot always be made clear by the use of the simple pronominal. It may not be clear whether sein *his* and ihr *her* refer to the subject or to another party, and whether unser *our*, euer, Ihr *your*, ihr *their*, are to be considered as personal, reflexive, or reciprocal pronominals, hence it is often necessary to add eigen *own* to the reflexive and gegenseitig *mutual* to the reciprocal possessive: Er fördert seine eigenen Interessen. Sie fördern ihre gegenseitigen Interessen.

Note. In careless and in popular language sein is sometimes found as a reflexive possessive, referring indifferently to a fem., masc., or pl. noun instead of the usual sein for the masc., ihr for the fem. and pl.: Die Untersuchung wider Sonzogno's Mörder geht seinen regelmäßigen Gang (*Volkszeitung*, 23. 39). Alle diese tendenziösen Stellen mußten seine fulminante Wirkung üben (ib., 24, 56).

c. In M.H.G. and even as late as the classical period of N.H.G. we find a pleonastic possessive of the third person in conjunction with the gen. of a noun: an des Illo (name) seinem Stuhl (Schiller), des Teufels sein Angesicht. Often where in the literary language of to-day the genitive is dependent upon a form of the determinative der, or where some other construction must be used: Da, nimm meinen Ring, verwahre ihn und gib mir des Majors seinen (for gib mir den des Majors) dafür (Lessing's *Minna*, 4, 5). This construction is still found in colloquial and popular speech, but the dative which has also been in use for a long time and has been steadily gaining ground has become more common here than the genitive: Da schlägt Fritz' seine Pendule elf Uhr (Moltke in a letter). Du bist meine Frau und nicht der Diplomaten ihre (Bismarck's *Briefe an seine Braut und Gattin*, May 14, 1851). Meiers (gen. of a name) ihr Haus ist schön. In Meiers ihrem Hause gefällt mir's gut. Gegen dem seine Weisheit (Lessing). Wem sein Hut ist das? for the literary form Wessen Hut ist das? Es ist dem Wilhelm seiner for Er gehört dem Wilhelm. Dem Vogel seine Federn, dem Hans sein Hut, dem sein Hut, der ihr Kind, &c. Für meinem Feldwebel seine Frau (Auerbach's *Dorfgeschichten*). Ich will dem Mathes (name) seine Kinder sehen (ib.). Du hast eine gute Stirn, ganz wie dem Väterchen seine (Schulze-Smidt's *Denk' ich an Deutschland in der Nacht*, II).

The dative construction has arisen out of the dative of interest (258. 3. B). From dem Vater ist sein Haus abgebrannt has come Dem Vater sein Haus ist abgebrannt. The dative is now naturally the favorite in popular speech as the genitive is in general little used there.

d. The demon. genitives dessen *his*, deren *her*, *their*, are much used instead of the declined forms of sein and ihr to avoid ambiguity, dessen, deren referring to an oblique case, and sein, ihr to the subject: Sie sprach viel von ihrer Schwester und erzählte viel von deren Schicksalen She spoke much of her sister and related a good deal of her (i.e. the sister's) experiences. But if the reference is to her own experiences, it should read: von ihren Schicksalen. Der Graf hat diesem Manne und dessen Sohne alles anvertraut The count has entrusted all to this man and his (the latter's) son. But if the reference is to the count's own son, it must read: seinem Sohne. Also derselbe can be used instead of dessen, deren in such cases. Der Graf hat diesem Manne und dem Sohn desselben alles anvertraut.

Dessen, deren are also used in a following independent proposition instead of the possessive when the reference is to a nom. or an oblique case in a preceding independent or subordinate proposition: Ablativ und Lokativ sind am frühesten untergegangen, schon in urgermanischer Zeit, und die übrig gebliebenen Kasus mußten deren frühere Aufgaben mit vertreten (Behaghel's *Die deutsche Sprache*, p. 316, 2nd ed.). Zuletzt trat Heinrich in diesem trauernden Hause fast ganz in die Stelle, die Rudolf eingenommen hatte. Er wohnte in dessen Stube, er benutzte dessen Bücher (Raabe).

Dessen and deren are also used elsewhere instead of sein to avoid ambiguity: die Gräfin, ihre Verwalterin und deren (i.e. the latter's) Tochter.

Dessen and deren are often used of persons of high rank or position even where no ambiguity would arise by the use of sein, ihr: der König und dessen Gemahlin. The use of dessen and deren is not thus limited to persons of rank: Es unterschreibt der Vater oder dessen Stellvertreter (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Feb. 19, 1905). In M.H.G. the use of the demonstrative was common where a possessive is now employed. Later a differentiation between possessive and demonstrative developed, as described above, but as in the last two German examples older undifferentiated usage still lingers on.

e. Instead of the possessive the demonstrative der or derselbe is much used if the reference is to things: Sie legte die Hand auf den Stein und empfand dessen Wärme or die Wärme desselben rather than seine Wärme. Meine Absichten will ich verteidigen, nicht deren künstlerische Ausführung (Fulda's *Die Kameraden*, Vorwort).

f. Earlier in the period Ihr or the uninflected Ihro was used instead of Sein *his*, when the reference was to a person with a high title, as it was thought proper to use a possessive which would accord with the fem. title or the plural form of the verb: Ich bin kein Rebell, habe gegen

Ihre Kaiserliche Majestät nichts verbrochen (Goethe's *Got* 4 2) We now say here Seine Majestät, with reference to the queen or empress Ihre Majestät With reference to a *preceding* fem title Ihr is still used to indicate males See 263 I 3

3 The possessive is often in German replaced by the article in connection with the dative of a personal pronoun For examples of this usage see 258 3 B a The simple article without the personal pronoun is often employed instead of a possessive provided no ambiguity could arise thereby Sie hatte die Blumen in der Hand *She had the flowers in her hand*

Also dessen, deren, and derselben may under certain circumstances replace the possessive, as explained in 2 d and e above

On the other hand the possessives are used in some expressions in German where they are omitted in English Meine Herren! Gentlemen! Meine Damen! Ladies! Sie werden Ihren Arger mit ihm haben You will have a good deal of trouble with him Er hat seine liebe Not mit dem Reden He has a good deal of difficulty in speaking In popular and colloquial language the possessive is a favorite and is often used even where it does not seem necessary Seine siebenzig Jahre hat er bald gut auf dem Nacken (Raabe's *Meister Autor*, chap xviii) Der Ring ist seine 100 Mark wert This unnecessary use of the possessive is especially frequent in the popular constructions described in 2 c above, and in 258 3 B a

4 Notice the difference of idiom in the two languages in the following expressions ein Verwandter von Ihnen *a relative of yours*, ein Freund von mir *a friend of mine* Die Sperlinge sind noch mein Tod (H Seidel's *Eine Sperlingsgeschichte*) *The sparrows will be the death of me yet*

## INDEFINITE NUMERALS

139 The indefinites which are used adjectively or substantively, may be divided into three groups

1 The following contain the idea of number

a 'allerhand all kinds of, every kind of, uninflected allerhand gute Weine, mit allerhand guten Weinen, allerhand guter Wein, mit allerhand Flitter geschmückt, allerhand Unverständliches Substantively einem allerhand mitteilen See 161 4 The stress here is the same as that of the adjectives in 47. 3 A b cc

Note This form is in fact a modern compound consisting of the noun *hand* *kind* in the gen pl and its modifying adjective which in M H G were written apart *aller hande of all kinds*

b 'allerlei all kinds of every kind of uninflected allerlei gute Weine, mit allerlei guten Weinen, allerlei guter Wein, allerlei Unverständliches Sie führen in allerlei Gefahr (Ilse Frapan's *Mamsell Biene*) Substantively Sie sprechen von allerlei Da hat man denn allerlei solchen Klatsches gehört, der dich vielleicht auch interessiert (Frau von Thadden in a letter, March 23, 1863 *Deutsche Rundschau* Dec 1911, p 373) See also 126 1 a For accent see 47 3 A b cc

c ander- other, str and wk ein and(e)rer Mann; der and(e)re Mann, and(e)re Manner, ein and(e)rer another (man), eine and(e)re Frau, ein and(e)res Buch, am anderen (see 122 1, 2nd) Tage the next day Wollen Sie noch eine (not eine andere) Tasse Tee haben?

Note Altho in the literary language *ander* in expressions of time points to the future it may in dialect as also in literary English point to the past Compare I saw him the other day This usage is also found in older literary German *daz st m r durch den knappen le t | ders andern tages (the day before) m t züchten re t | und Ga van sagte m r c (Parz vol 381 4-7)*

d beid- both str and wk beide Hände, or die beiden Hände, die (or meine, diese, jene) beiden Knaben both of the (or my, these those) boys The neut sing is used collectively embracing two nouns or the ideas contained in two verbs beides, Brief und Paket both letter and package Er irrte sich in beidem He was mistaken in both points Das beides ist richtig Both points are correct Wir müssen bußen und wir können suhnen, diese Frau hat es beides getan (Opfeda's *Frieden* chap xiii) Much used in idiomatic combinations wir beide, or less commonly beide wir both of us diese beiden Knaben more

common than *diese Knaben beide*, or *beide diese Knaben*, the latter forms, however, being more emphatic; *keiner von beiden* neither of them, *alle beide* (or in popular and colloquial language *zwei beide*, or *alle zwei beide*) both of them, *welche beide* both of which.

*Note 1.* Following pronouns, the inflection of *beid-* is strong except after *wir* and *ihr*, where after the manner of descriptive adjectives we also find the weak inflection, and even more frequently so after *ihr*: *wir beide* (Raabe), *wir zwei beide* (P. O. Höcker's *Dodi*, 1), *wir beiden verloren* (M. Halbe), *ihr beide* (Grillparzer's *König Ottokar*, 1), *ihr beiden Narren* (Raabe), *ihr beiden* (Hauptmann's *Michael Kramer*, 3), *dies beides* both of these, *das beides* both of those, *alles beides* both. *Sein Tod ist ein schwerer Schlag für die Gemahlin und für die Königin, die beide* (both of whom) *niedergeschmettert sind*.

*Note 2.* *Beide*, *alle*, and often *jeder* (see last example in 1st par. of *f* below) have a position in the sentence differing sometimes from English: (1) They usually follow pronouns, standing in the appositional construction, when *all* are embraced in the statement: *Ich kann nicht Ihnen allen helfen* I cannot help all of you (or as in German *you all*). *Sie schickten mir Handschuhe, welche mir alle zu groß sind* You sent me gloves all of which are too large for me. For examples of the position of *beide* see examples in *Note 1* above. When a partitive idea is to be expressed, they usually stand in the *dat.* after *von*: *Einer von beiden kommt* One of the two will come. (2) They may for emphasis follow a noun: *Ich sah die Eltern beide* I saw both of the parents. *Er wandte sich von seinen Freunden allen ab*. (3) When they are modifiers of the subject they may for emphasis stand after the verb: *Die Schuldigen verstummten alle* Every one of the guilty ones became silent. *Deine Eltern sind beide wohl* Both of your parents are well, or as in German *Your parents are both well*. (4) For especial emphasis they may, when they are modifiers of the subject, also stand first in the sentence followed by the verb and later by the subject: *Alle wollen sie des Kaisers Antlitz sehen* (Wildenbruch's *Kaiser Heinrich*, 2, 2). *Beide standen wir am Fenster*. (5) *Beide* differing from *alle* now usually follows a *gen.*, a possessive, or other pronominal: *all seines Vaters Gut* and *alle meine Bücher*, but *meines Vaters beide Güter* and *mit meinen beiden Augen*. Earlier in the period, however, *beid-* might also precede: *beiden seinen Frauen* (Luther), *von beiden diesen Punkten* (Lessing). This older word-order is still occasionally found and indeed Sanders in his *Hauptschwierigkeiten*, p. 67 recommends it for present usage where *beid-* is to be made emphatic. *Beid-* still regularly precedes the possessive when it is itself preceded by the article: *Meinert hatte überrascht die Hand seines Besuchers, die er bis dahin in den beiden seinen gehalten, losgelassen* (Tilmann's *Wahrheit*, 1). The first examples in (5) show how *beide* in a greater degree than *alle* is becoming more like attributive adjectives, in that it now usually follows the article and the pronominals. They were both originally predicate appositives, which accounts for their peculiar position in the sentence, as illustrated in (1)-(5).

*e. ein one, any, some*, often in connection with the adverb *irgend*, which gives the generalizing force in the sense of *any, some, any at all*, inflected like the indefinite article when used adjectively, and like a strong adjective when used substantively: *Wenn ich nur irgend ein Mittel dagegen wüßte!* If I only knew some remedy for it! Substantively: *irgend einer* any one; *jenes Buch oder irgend eines*.

The wanting plural of *irgend ein* is supplied by *irgend welche* or simple *welche* in declarative sentences, and in questions either by *irgend welche* or *irgend* alone: *Irgend eine Person hat*, or in the plural *irgend welche Personen haben es ihm verraten*. *Meiner Überzeugung nach richtet sich die Schwere der Silben weder nach der Klasse noch nach irgend welchen syntaktischen Funktionen* (Saran's *Deutsche Verslehre*, p. 45). *Die Fischlein waren . . . so schön, wie er noch nie welche gesehen hatte* (R. Huch's *Schlaraffis*, p. 94). *Haben irgend welche Personen* or *irgend Personen außer Ihnen* *darum gewußt?* In the substantive relation *welche* cannot be dropped here.

The wanting plural of *ein* in the meaning *several, a few* is supplied by *welch-* (used as a rule only substantively) or *einige* (used adjectively): *Hast du ein paar Pfennige?* *Ich habe welche*, but usually *Er ist schon einige Jahre tot*. Many prefer to omit *welch*. See 3. *k* below, last sentences. In popular and colloquial language *welch* is often used here adjectively: *Welche* (in choice language *einige*) *Menschen sind nicht zufrieden*. Other forms than *welche* and *einige* occur in dialect, such as *ere* (a partitive *gen.* = *ihrer*), *eine*: *Hast du ein paar Pfennige?* *Ich habe ere* or *eine*. With reference to materials *ein* is replaced in the singular by *welch-* in the substantive and by *etwas* in the attributive relation: *Wenn Sie Geld haben, so geben Sie mir welches*. *Geben Sie mir etwas Geld*.

So great a favorite is *welch-* that it is often used in the singular where *ein* might be used: *Kann ich und will ich früher abreisen, so kann ich ja am Donnerstag noch irgend welche mir triftig scheinende Ausrede nach Letzlingen senden* (Bismarck to his wife, Oct. 21, 1850). *Sie sind am allermächtigsten ohne irgend welchen Rang* (H. Hoffmann's *Wider den Kurfürsten*, chap. x).

*f. jed- every, each, any*, strong (see 106. *Note 1*), or if preceded by the indefinite article mixed, used adjectively or substantively. The indefinite article *must* precede the genitive in the substantive relation. Exs.: *ein jeder rechtschaffene Bürger* (Goethe's *Egmont*, 2), or *jeder rechtschaffene Bürger*; *das Gefühl eines jeden*, but *das Gefühl jedes* or *eines jeden edlen Menschen*. *Ein jeder ist seines Glückes Schmied*. *Jede Feder ist gut genug* Any pen will



do. Jeder (anybody) kann Ihnen sagen, wo ich wohne. Jeder dieser Männer hat sein Verdienst, or diese Männer haben jeder ihr Verdienst. Wenn drei Konsonanten, die jeder gesprochen werden usw. When three consonants each of which is pronounced, &c.

Earlier in the period *jed-* could be used in the plural with the force of *alle*: jede andern Mittel (Goethe's *Egmont*, 1. Palast der Regentin), jede zehn Schritte (Heine). Occasionally still: Lustig rasselt über ein Räderwerk der Lotdraht in die Tiefe; bei jeden neuen 1000 m. steigt die Erwartung usw. (F. Bidlingmaier in *Deutsche Rundschau*, July 1901, p. 69). Mit anzusehen, wie unfehlbar Baldwin in allen (with collective force) und jeden (with individualizing force) Fragen ihre Einwände besiegte (Walther Siegfried's *Um der Heimat willen*, VII).

Earlier in the period *jedwed-*, *jedweder-*, and *jeglich-*, all with the inflection and meaning of *jed-*, were frequently used, and with the exception of *jedweder-* still occur in choice language, especially in a solemn or dignified style: *jedwede Art von Sünde* (Ranke), ein *jeglicher wunderliche Vogel* (Raabe's *Unseres Herrgotts Kanzlei*, chap. v). The form *jeglich*, like *all*, is sometimes found uninflected before a possessive: So zieht mit *jeglich ihrer Habe* die Seele des Kindes und *kindhaft junger Völker* in die *ahnende Weite der Unerforschlichkeit* hinaus (Prof. Dr. Ed. Heyck in *Velthagen und Klasings Monatshefte*, May, 1905, p. 274).

Note. Instead of *ein jeder* we find *jed-* *ein-* in N.G. dialect, just as in English: Damit kriegt man *jeden einen mübe* (M. Dreyer's *In Bekleidung*, 2).

*g.* *manch* *many a*, *many*, *a number of*, strong and weak, but uninflected before *ein*, also often before a descriptive adjective: *mancher Mann*, *manche Frau*, *manches Kind*, *mancher many a man*. Ich habe Ihnen so *manches* zu sagen I have a number of things to tell you. *Manche gute Leute* a number of good people; *die manchen Stunden*, die ich darauf verwendet habe. But *manch ein starker Mann*, or *manch starker Mann*, or *mancher starke Mann*; im Erinnerungsbilderbuch *manch jetzigen Millionärs* (Heyking's *Briefe, die ihn nicht erreichten*, New York, Jan. 1900). It is rather uncommon in general to place the indefinite article before *manch-*, altho in some sections, as in the S.W., it occurs occasionally: Ein *mancher* blieb haften (Scheffel's *Ekkehard*, 13).

*Manch* differs from *viel* in that it denotes only number, while the latter denotes also quantity: *viel* (not *manch*) *Geld*. Both *viel* and *manch* denote number in the plural. The former denotes a large number and stands in contrast to *wenige few*, while *manche* indicates an indefinite number larger than *einige several*. Also in the singular in a collective sense with the same differentiation in meaning: Von Gold und Silber *starrt Euer Schatz*: | *mir fehlt's an manchem*, *fehlt's an vielem wohl* (Grillparzer's *Ottokar*, 3). *Manch* differs from *viel* also in having individualizing force, which explains its frequent use in the singular, just as *many a* in English. On account of its individualizing force, it cannot be used in questions asking after the number: *Wie viele* (not *manche*) *waren da?*

*h.* *mehrer-* (117. 1. *b*) *several*, strong and weak: *mehrere wichtige Dinge*, *mehreres Wichtige several important things*. Wie sollte man die *mehrern Wagen* fortbringen? (Goethe). A little earlier in the period the form *mehr* was not infrequent: mit *mehren Damen* (Bismarck to his betrothed, Feb. 1, 1817).

*i.* *ein paar a few, several*, uninflected (see 121. 1. *A. a*): mit *ein paar Worten*. In colloquial language and dialect the *ein* is often suppressed: Ich lebte *paar Jahre* in Berlin. Ich war nur *paarmal da*. Vor *paar Täg'n* (Anzengruber's *G'wissenswurm*). The definite article or a limiting adjective may precede *paar*: Aber diese *paar archaishtischen Abweichungen* sind kaum von Belang (Wackernagel's *Allindische Grammatik*, I. p. xlv). *A.* Ich war nur 5 Tage in Berlin, aber in den *paar Tagen* habe ich die Stadt gründlich kennen gelernt. *B.* (contemptuously) Was? In *dén paar Tagen* (or in den *páar*) *Tagen* willst du Berlin gründlich kennen gelernt haben? *A.* (contemptuously) Mit *déinen paar* (or



*c ganz all, whole, entire, strong and weak, but may also be uninflected before names of countries and places which have no art before them, when used in a figurative or inexact sense ein ganzer Apfel a whole apple der ganze Apfel, ein ganzer Mann a man every inch of him, das ganze Deutschland the whole of Germany, Germany one and undivided, but Ganz Deutschland lag in Schmach und Schmerz All Germany lay in disgrace and grief „Ganz Berlin“ ist noch lange nicht „das ganze Berlin“ Die begeisterten Wünsche ganz Frankreichs Ich durchreiste ganz Deutschland But the ending cannot be dropped in case of those countries which always take the art die ganze Schweiz all Switzerland not ganz Schweiz It is much used in idiomatic expressions im ganzen on the whole, im ganzen einkaufen to buy by wholesale im ganzen und großen überschlagen to make a rough estimate &c*

*Ganz is often used in the plural but it never denotes number, indicating also there entirety, i.e. the completeness of each whole See 3 d Note, below, toward end*

*d halb half strong and wk, and like ganz remains uninflected before names of countries and places which have no article before them when used figuratively or in an inexact sense ein halber Apfel half of an apple der halbe Apfel, die halbe Stadt, ein halber Mann, das halbe Paris half of Paris das halbe Paris or more commonly halb Paris half of the people of Paris durch halb Paris Die französische Revolution erschütterte halb Europa But always die halbe Schweiz*

*halben used adverbially and de ist schon halb um Tle neun (o'clock) Formerly*  
*See Note 2 under c.*

*e ein wenig a little uninflected ein wenig Wasser (in older German ein wenig Wassers—Gen XIII 4), mit ein wenig Verstand Substantively Ich nehme ein wenig von dem Brot There is little or no difference between ein wenig here and ein wenig a small amount, a little in 3 j below. See also a above*

*Note Ein wenig is much used adverbially Sie haben die Sache ein wenig übereilt.*

*3 The following contain the idea of quantity or number, according as the noun is in the sing. or pl*

*a aller, alle, alles all, usually strong when inflected, but may remain uninflected before an article or pronominal, usually with the form all, but often in popular language alle alle Freude all the joy, alles Gute all that is good, all or alle der Wein, all or alle des Weins, &c, all der Wein all the wine (quantity), but alle Schüler all the pupils (number) alles in allem all in all but alle, Gute und Böse all people, good and bad, all der Schmerz all the pain, but Sie kamen alle They all came For further details concerning inflection see 111 8*

*In referring to definite persons and things which are clearly indicated by the context, the definite article is not used so frequently after all as in English, being usually employed only when it has strong demonstrative or determinative force aller Wein, alle Butter all the wine, butter (in the house, &c, according to the connection) Alle Gäste verließen eiligst das Haus All the guests left the house in great haste But with demonstrative or determinative force All das Geld reicht nicht ihm, ihn zufrieden zu stellen All this money (which has been given him) does not suffice to satisfy him Bei all der Pracht ist er nicht glücklich In the midst of all the splendor which surrounds him, he is not happy All die (or alle die or simply alle) Gemälde, die er auf die Ausstellung gesandt hat, sind verkauft*

*For the position of alle in the sentence see 1 d Note 2 above*

*Note 1.* Instead of the regular str. forms, all often has wk. forms in the gen. (see 106. *Note 1*) sing. when not preceded by def. art., and, perhaps, still more frequently in the gen. and dat. sing. when preceded by the article: trotz allen Vertrauens. Und fiel' ein Feind in unsre Gauen, | wir würden des allen die Früchte schauen (Grillparzer's *Libussa*, 2). Dabei läßt sich aber nicht leugnen, daß die Erreichung des allen durch die neuen Bestrebungen stark behindert wurde (Dr. Hans Kleinpeter in *Beilage zur Allgemeinen Zeit.*, Sept. 10, 1905). Mir ist so angst bei dem allen. Ich werde nichts von dem allen tun.

*Note 2.* In the predicate in the sense of *out of* the invariable form *alle* is much used: Der Wein ist alle We are out of wine. Perhaps the form *alle* was originally a predicate appositive in the nom. pl., originating in such sentences as *die Kuchen sind alle (verzehrt)*.

*Note 3.* Before the dat. neut. sing. the uninflected form *alle* is quite common: trotz alle'dem in spite of all that.

*Note 4.* In the classical authors *all-* is sometimes equal to *jed-*: So schläft nun aller Vogel (Goethe). In a few cases we can still use both *all-* and *jed-*, the former with general, the latter with individualizing force: Aller oder jeder Anfang ist schwer. Wir hatten allen Grund (*every reason*, in a general sense) zum Verdacht gegen ihn. Getragenes Zeug aller Art (H. Seidel's *Das Atelier*, I). Usage now generally prefers here the sing. of *jed-* or the plural of *all-*, especially the latter, in a number of expressions: alle paar Minuten every few minutes, alle Tage every day, alle drei Tage every third day, alle sieben Tage ein Heft (on the outside cover of each number of *Die Woche*).

*Note 5.* After *ohne* we translate both *all-* and *jed-* by *any*: ohne alle (or ohne jede, or ohne alle und jede) Ursache without any reason.

*Note 6.* In the course of the present period *all-* has gradually been supplanted by *ganz-* in the meaning *whole, entire*, but the older usage still survives in poetic language: durch all sein Leben (Geibel, 2, 241), now usually durch sein ganzes Leben. Differentiation of meaning here has taken place in *alle Welt everybody* and *die ganze Welt the universe*. Compare *die ganze Nacht all night*; *ganz Deutschland all Germany*; *die ganze Familie all the family*.

*Note 7.* In dialect the neut. form *alles* is frequently contracted to *als*, which often by reason of this change of form becomes isolated from the original form, and takes on more general meaning, especially that of the adverb *immerfort*: Da saugt mir das Mädel—weiß Gott, was als (for *alles*) für?—überhimmlische Alfanzereien ein (Miller in Schiller's *Kabale und Liebe*, 1, 1). Solltest nur die wunderhübsche Billeter auch lesen, die der gnädige Herr an deine Tochter als (= *immerfort*) schreiben tot (ib., Frau Miller). Er ist als (= *immer*) noch ledig (*Wörterbuch der elsässischen Mundarten*, 1, p. 28). Also with the force of *eben, gerade*: Es ist als nach Ihrem Herrn Pastor geschickt (C. Viebig's *Die Wacht am Rhein*, p. 448).

*b. einig-*, earlier in the period = O.H.G. *einag one, only, single*, later, in N.H.G. *harmonious* (in this meaning still in use), and O.H.G. *einig* = *irgend ein* (see 1. *e* above), from the latter of which come the common meanings of our day, *a few, some, several*, inflected strong and weak: der einige Gott (Matth. xix. 17), ein einiger Son (Tobit vi. 16). Denn du vermagst nicht ein einigs Har weis und schwartz zu machen (Matth. v. 36). Kein Handwercksman einiges Handwercks (Rev. xviii. 22), aus Furcht des Todes oder sonst einiges Dinges (Claudius) from fear of death or some other thing; einiges frische Obst some fresh fruit, einige Schritte davon several steps away, in einiger Entfernung, einige Zeit darnach. In diesem Buche findet sich neben einigem Guten auch einiges Mittelmäßige und einiges Schlechte. Von diesen einigen 70 Bänden der Tauchnitz Edition gehören nur 20 den Jahren 1893 bis 1898 an (Conrad's *Syntax der Englischen Sprache*, p. v). Nur einige waren da Only a few people were there. Er besah die zwei Gespanne Ochsen, die Kühe, die einigen Schafe (Stifter's *Witiko*, 1. 202). See also 2. *b. Note* and 1. *e* above.

*aa.* The forms *etlich-* (strong and weak = *einig-* and now being gradually displaced by it) and *etwelch-* (strong and weak = *irgend ein* or *irgend welch-*, or *einig-* in the sing. and *irgend welche* and *einige* in the pl.) still occur in the literary language. The former was very common in Luther's language and is still sometimes used, and quite frequently so in archaic and biblical style. The latter form was not common earlier in the period, but it still lingers on in choice language: Etwelches kleine Geschenk mitzubringen sei immer empfehlenswert bei großen Herren (H. Hoffmann's *Teufel vom Sande*, p. 174). Zum Überfluß hatte er die Gewohnheit, jedesmal selbst gleichsam seine Visitenkarte abzugeben, vermöge etwelchen kleinen Unfugs, den er in dem betretenen Raume zu verüben für gut fand (id., *Rohleders hohe Minne*). Das anvertraute Gut war viel zu kostbar, um es etwelchen Gefahren auszusetzen (id.). Denn dieser pflegte an dergleichen niedlichen Geschöpfen Wohlgefallen zu haben, welche im Grunde doch mehr ihn verehrten, als er ihnen huldigte, da sein Alter und seine geistige Bedeutung eine Überlegenheit mit sich brachten, die nicht einmal durch etwelche Verliebtheit seinerseits auszugleichen war (R. Huch's *Ludolf Ursleu*, chap. xv). Dann etwelche Portionen Kaffee, sagen wir vorläufig fünf (Fontane's *Frau Jenny*, chap. xi). Auch setzte sie ihm ein Glas trinkbaren Weines vor . . . mit etwelchen Schnitten kalten Bratens (Wilhelm Fischer's *Die Freude am Licht*, II, p. 40). In the language of Switzerland it is often preceded by *ein* and *der*: Hierauf trat eine etwelche Besserung ein. Wegen der etwelchen Unsicherheit, in welcher die Männer die Welt halten (Keller's *Seldw.*, 2. 311).

*c. g(e)nug* (sometimes *genung* earlier in the period and still in dialect and poetry) *enough*, uninflected, also used adverbially: Er hat genug Geld, or Geld genug; genug Bücher. It formerly governed the genitive, which is still sometimes used: Es ist des Weins genug, or genug des Weins, or genug Wein, or Wein genug. See *i. Note*.

*d. gesamt* and *sämtlich all, entire, complete*, both strong and weak: die sämtlichen zwölf Kessel des Dampfschiffes waren im Betrieb. Schillers sämtliche Werke, die gesamte Familie, mit gesamter Heeresmacht, die gesamten Armen des Ortes; eine Arbeit, die ihre gesamten Geisteskräfte in Anspruch nahm.

*Note.* Usually, as in the above examples, *gesamt*, in accordance with the force of its prefix *ge-*, denotes a union of homogeneous or integral parts into one whole, and even when used in the plural has the force of one mass or a corps of forces working as one, while *sämtlich* in the sing. or pl. indicates that there are different distinct units which form the whole. They both differ from the more common and general *alle* in that the latter simply indicates that the quantity or number is complete and lacks the distinct idea of a union of integral or homogeneous parts or individual forces. *alle* is used in the following examples: *alle* (at all) to the parts that der ganze Körper the ganze Familie, die einzige branches of the Lychn Völker zu den Waffen (Müller).

*c.* *kein* *no, none, not a, not* (see *Note*), *no one, not a one*, inflected like the indef. article *ein* when used adjectively in the sing., but like a strong adjective when standing alone (see 106, *Note* 1) in the sing. or pl., or when used adjectively in the plural: *kein Buch. Ein Buch ist besser als kein(e)s. Das steht in keines or keines Menschen Macht. Keine Bücher.* For the genitive after *kein* see *Note* under *a* below.

*schöne Blumen. Natürlich ist das alles eitel Wind* (talk, wind)! *Es herrschte eitel Ruhe und Frieden.*

*Note.* The *e* words are still inflected in early N.H.G.: *aus lauterem Haß* (Eck. xxy. 11).

*g.* *mehr* *more*, usually uninflected: *mehr Geld; mehr Leute.* See *i. Note.* For the form *mehrer*—see 117. 1. *b.*

*Note.* Throughout the period attempts have been made by good authors to introduce inflection, and such forms still occur: *Ein Dutzend Häuser stehen schon in Brand, und es kommen ihrer noch sehr viel mehre dran* (H. Hoffmann's *Wider den Kurfürsten*, chap. xxvii). Inflection is most common in the adverb *mehrtheils* = *meistentheils*.

*h.* *übrig* *the rest, remaining, superfluous*, strong and weak: *Er tut nie ein übriges* He never does more than he has to do. *Im übrigen Europa* in the rest of Europe; *die übrigen Personen; im übrigen*, or was das übrige betrifft *as to the rest.*

*i.* *viel* *much*, pl. *many*, strong and weak, inflected or uninflected, but inflected always when preceded by the definite article or a pronominal adjective and almost always in the pl. when used substantively: *viele or viel Bücher, viele (or viel) gute Bücher, die vielen Bücher, viel Gutes* much that is good, *vieles Gute* many good things, *mit viel Gutem. Unter vielem Verhaßten* ist mir das Schreiben das Verhaßteste (Goethe's *Egmont*, 2). *Laß dein vieles Reden. Der viele Wein, den er trinkt; die viele Milch, die wir brauchen.* Substantively: *viele* many persons; *zum Besten vieler; die vielen, die hier sind; vieles* many things (see *Note* toward end).

German often distinguishes between the idea of *quantity* and that of *degree*, where in English no distinction is made: *Er ißt viel* He eats much, but *Ich liebe ihn sehr* I love him much. Formerly *viel* was used with the force of *sehr* before adjectives, and this older usage is still found in poetic and archaic style: *die vielschöne gnädige Frau* (Eichendorff's *Taug.* 8). It is still commonly used before a comparative or *zu*: *Er ist viel reicher. Er läuft viel schneller als Hans. Er ist viel zu reich, als daß usw.*

There is little live feeling for the old partitive genitive here, for it is often construed as a word in the accusative or nominative limited by *ein, kein, einzig, solch, kein* + descriptive adjective, or without a limiting word: *Kein Mensch hat davon ein Aufhebens* (acc.) *gemacht* (Bismarck's *Reden*, 2. 76) No one has made a fuss about it; but also with its correct form, *Ich meinte, Sie wären doch viel zu sehr von der Wissenschaft und Philosophie, um um solch 'ne Kleinigkeit so'n Aufheben zu machen* (Raabe's *Der Lar*, p. 23). *Er macht kein Federlesens* (acc.) He will make short work of it. *Die Jupiterstatue des Phidias, von der damals einiges Aufhebens* (nom.) *gemacht wurde* (Ebner-Eschenbach), *Mach' mir kein großes Aufhebens!* (acc.) Don't make a great fuss, I beg of you! *Ich weiß ja nicht, was antworten, wenn du solch ein Aufhebens* (acc.) *machst* (Walther Siegfried's *Ein Wohlfäter*). Also without a limiting word: *ohne Rühmens* (acc.) (Grünebaum in Raabe's *Hungerpastor*, chap. vi), *ohne Aufhebens* (acc.) (Lauff's *Kärrekiek*, p. 107).

The words *viel, wenig, mehr, genug* are differently treated when they express the idea of number and stand alone or before a pronoun or a noun which is modified by an article or pronominal adj. In these cases *viel* and *wenig* are usually inflected, and if modified must be followed by the partitive gen., or by *von* or *unter* with dat., while *genug* and *mehr* are indeclinable here, but like *viel* and *wenig* are followed by the gen., or *von* with dat.: *viele waren da* many persons were there, *aber diesem Rufe folgten heute nur wenig* [as a survival of older usage; more commonly *wenige*] (Fontane's *Quint*, chap. vi), *viele von ihnen, viele dieser Bücher, oder viele von (or unter) diesen Büchern; genug waren da* enough people were there, *mehr solcher (or solche) Leute, mehr von ihnen, genug der Träume*.

*Genug, mehr, viel, and wenig* are all used as indeclinable substantives when they denote an indefinite mass or amount, in which case they may stand alone or be followed by the gen. or the dat. after the prep. *von*: *Ich habe genug davon. Genug des Geschwätzes oder genug vom dem Geschwätz.* Du reichst mit *wenig* von dem bessern Stoff (or des bessern Stoffes) weiter als mit *viel* von dem schlechtern You will accomplish more with a little of the better material than with much of the worse. See also 253. I. 1. g. Note 2, with reference to the number of the verb after these words. The substantives *viel* and *wenig* may also be inflected, taking the neut. forms of the strong adjective, however, usually with a different shade of meaning from the uninflected forms. The former may, in accordance with the nature of the strong neut. form not preceded by an article, contain a collective idea, while the uninflected form of the strong form preceded by the indef. article emphasizes the idea of amount: *Ich meine nicht vieles, sondern viel: ein wenig*, aber mit *Fleiß* (Lessing's *Emilia*, 1, 2) I do not mean [that an artist should work on] many things, but much of one thing: a small amount, but thoroly. *Man kann vieles (many things) lernen und doch nicht viel (much) wissen*.

j. *wenig*, earlier in the period and in a few expressions still *little* in size, value, importance, now and thruout the period more commonly *little* in amount, pl. *few*; strong and weak, inflected or uninflected, but inflected always when preceded by the definite article or a pronominal adjective and almost always in the plural when used substantively: *Denn du bist das wenigst vnter allen völkern* (Deut. vii. 7). *Meine wenige Person* (Adelung); *wenig Gutes* little that is good, *weniges Gute* few good things, *mit wenig Gutem*; *wenige* or *wenig Bücher, von wenigen* or *wenig Büchern*; *mit seinem wenigen Gelde*; *das wenige Geld, was ich besaß* (Raabe). *Ich malte es mir aus mit der wenigen Phantasie, die mir gegeben* (Ompteda's *Frieden*, VI). *Die wenigen Bücher*. Substantively: *das wenige, was ich habe* the little that I have; *wenige* few persons; *die wenigen, die es gesehen haben*. The strong form here not preceded by the indef. article contains the idea of number: *ein wenig* a small amount, a little, but *Von den Menschen wüßte ich nur wenig* (*few things*) und *wenig (little) Erfreuliches zu sagen*. See also i. Note.

Note. The comparative form *weniger*, tho inflected in the earlier part of the period, now prefers decidedly non-inflection except where ambiguity would arise therefrom: *Mit weniger Vergnügen. Es waren heute weniger Abgeordnete versammelt als gestern* There were fewer representatives present to-day than yesterday. But *weit weniger Freisinnige* much fewer *Liberals* is clearer than *weit weniger Freisinnige*, which might mean *far less liberal-minded men*, as *weniger* can be construed as an adverb. As the positive is sometimes inflected and sometimes uninflected, the form *weniger* is sometimes ambiguous, as it may be construed as a fem. gen. or dat., or as the uninflected comparative. Thus in *mit weniger Mühe* the meaning may be *with little trouble* or *with less trouble*. The ambiguity can be avoided by dropping inflection in the former meaning and by substituting the inflected comparative of *gering* *little* for the uninflected comparative *weniger* or the rare inflected form *wenigerer*: *mit wenig Mühe* *with little trouble*, *mit geringerer Mühe* *with less trouble*. On the other hand, the uninflected form should be avoided in the positive when it would stand before an adjective, as it might be construed as an adverb: not *Er verkehrt mit wenig gebildeten Herren*, but *Er verkehrt mit wenigen gebildeten Herren* He associates with few educated men.

k. *welch* *some*, strong: *Haben Sie Zucker — Milch — Geld — Äpfel? Ich habe welchen — welche — welches — welche*. It serves as the plural of *ein* and is also used instead of the singular of *ein* when the reference is to materials. See 1. e above, also 134. 2. Sometimes with the definite article: *Da (auf dem Wasser) sind sie (die Schiffer) was, un da haben sie'n weiten Blick — die welchen wenigstens, die welchen auch nich* (M. Dreyer's *In Behandlung*, 1). A number of grammarians are unfriendly to this word, but they are not supported by actual usage: *Wenn die Pferdchen nicht Geschäfte haben, so möchte ich Väterchen wohl bitten, daß er welche zu heut über acht Tage, 27. früh nach Schlawe oder Stolz schickte* (Bismarck to his wife, Oct. 21, 1850). *Je mehr Geld sie verloren, desto sehnsüchtiger wünschten sie welches zu haben* (G. Keller's *Romeo und Julie auf dem Dorfe*, p. 25). *Unanfechtbare Wahrheiten gibt es überhaupt nicht, und wenn es welche gibt, so sind sie langweilig* (Fontane's *Stechlin*, chap. i). *Auch setzte sie ihm ein Glas trinkbaren Weins vor mit Küchlein, wenn sie welche gebacken hatte* (Wilhelm Fischer's *Die Freude am Lichte*, II. p. 40). „Rosen!“ „Das sind mindestens für fünfzig Mark welche,“ meinte Marie, „so ein Haufen!“ (H. Böhlau's *Adam und Eva*, chap. vi). The examples could be indefinitely increased, as the word is a general favorite in colloquial language.

Oftentimes, especially in the South, the *welch* is omitted, and some grammarians recommend this form of statement: Elisabeth: Weißt du noch, wie er das letzte Mal ausritt, da er dir Weck mitbrachte? Karl: Bringt er mir wieder mit? (Goethe's *Götz*, 1, 3). Ja, Geld, mein Freund, | Geld ist ein gutes Ding, wenn man nur hat (Grillparzer's *Ottokar*, 3). Dort standen allerlei Schächtelchen mit guten Hustenbonbons, die ich sonst sehr zu würdigen wußte. „Nimm Dir,“ sagte sie (Ebner-Eschenbach's *Meine Kinderjahre*). Jetzt hast du Ohrringe. Wart' einmal, ich hänge mir auch an (Anna Schieber's *Alle guten Geister*, p. 52).

## PRONOUNS.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

140. The personal pronouns are: *ich I*, *du* (familiar form) *thou* or *you*, *Sie* (polite form) *you*, *er he*, *sie she*, *es it*. These are declined as follows:

## Singular.

First Person. (for all Genders).	Second Person. (for all Genders)		Third Person.		
	Familiar.	Polite (see a).	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. <i>ich</i>	<i>du</i>	<i>Sie</i>	<i>er</i>	<i>sie</i>	<i>es</i>
G. <i>meiner</i> ( <i>mein</i> )	<i>deiner</i> ( <i>dein</i> )	<i>Ihrer</i>	<i>seiner</i> ( <i>sein</i> )	<i>ihrer</i> ( <i>ihr</i> )	<i>seiner</i> ( <i>sein, es</i> )
D. <i>mir</i>	<i>dir</i>	<i>Ihnen</i>	<i>ihm</i>	<i>ihr</i>	<i>ihm</i>
A. <i>mich</i>	<i>dich</i>	<i>Sie</i>	<i>ihn</i>	<i>sie</i>	<i>es</i>

## Plural.

			For all Genders.	
N. <i>wir</i>	<i>ihr</i>	<i>Sie</i>	<i>sie</i>	
G. <i>unser</i>	<i>euer</i>		<i>(ihr)</i>	
uns(e)rer	eu(e)rer	<i>Ihrer</i>	<i>ihrer</i>	
D. <i>uns</i>	<i>euch</i>	<i>Ihnen</i>	<i>ihnen</i>	
A. <i>uns</i>	<i>euch</i>	<i>Sie</i>	<i>sie</i>	

a. *Form and Use of Pronouns in Direct Address.* The polite form of the second person is in reality only the capitalized forms of the 3rd person pl. The pl. is exactly like the sing. This form is now used in all ordinary intercourse between people except in the familiar language of close friendship. Altho it is so common in actual life, it is almost unknown in poetic language and higher diction generally, as the air of conventionality associated with it ill accords with the spirit of poetry.

The familiar form *du* in the sing. and *ihr* in the pl. is used towards animals, children, parents, and close friends, also in lyrical poetry and in the solemn language of the Church and prayer, and stating general truths not directed to any person in particular, and occasionally in addressing individuals not as such, but as a mass or a class in an informal and general way, where it is not necessary to observe the formalities of polite society, and furthermore in polemical treatises in directing words directly to one's opponent, or in one's thoughts in directing words to one to whom one would aloud only use *Sie*: Sage mir, mit wem du umgehst, und ich will dir sagen, wer du bist (a proverb couched in familiar language, since the address is to no person in particular). Darum, Bergleute, steigert weiter die Kohlenförderung, Landwirte, liefert Kartoffeln ab (Proclamation of President Ebert, Nov. 4, 1919 to urge greater production, &c.). Aber die Herren Journalisten haben Nerven, wie die Frauen. Alles regt euch auf, jedes Wort, das jemand gegen euch sagt, empört euch! Geht mir (away with you), ihr seid empfindliche Leute (Freitag's *Journalisten*, 1, 1). In the last three sentences the speaker addresses in a general way several sharp remarks in the familiar form to journalists as a class, but he would not be so impolite as to use this form in speaking directly to any one person or a definite group of

persons. Kurzichtigster aller Schullehrer, verknöchertster aller Pedanten, ist dir denn niemals davon eine Spur der Erkenntnis aufgegangen, daß gerade ihre unerschöpfliche Fruchtbarkeit der größte Vorzug der deutschen Sprache ist? (the reply of Dr. Karl Kaerger to the lamentations of Dr. Gustav Wustmann over the decay of the German language). Kommandant, du bist ein armer Mann (Heer's *Felix Notwest*, p. 196, words directed in thought to one previously addressed by Sie).

*Note. Historical Development.* Of later origin than the editorial *we*, the Plural of Modesty discussed in *f.* (3) below, is the associative *we* used in imperial decrees in that period of Roman history when two or three rulers reigned together and hence were associated in the official proclamations. Later whenever the political power was centered in one emperor the old *we* was retained, so that altho often the associative force was present as the ruler included his advisors the associative *we* developed into royal *we*, the Plural of Majesty or the Plural of Dignity, as the ruler spoke of himself in his official announcements in the pl. instead of the sing., as 'We decree' instead of 'I decree.' This usage was imitated by German kings, dukes, &c., in their official decrees, and still in our own time the last German emperor writes (Oct. 28, 1893): Wir Wilhelm, von Gottes Gnaden deutscher Kaiser, König von Preußen usw. verordnen usw. A person of high rank speaking thus of himself in the 1st pers. pl. must use the possessive *unser* instead of *mein*: Es ist uns zu Ohren gekommen, daß unsere getreuen lieben Untertanen usw.

In the ninth century such persons in high standing who thus spoke of themselves in the 1st pers. pl. were by others addressed by *Ihr* (2nd pers. pl.) instead of the 2nd pers. sing. Later all persons of rank or even of good standing were addressed by *Ihr*, and thus *Ihr* became the universal polite form till the fifteenth century. In the Middle Ages children also addressed each of their parents by *Ihr*, which custom lingers still in places in the country: Vater, das erste Reis, das Euch auf Eurem Heimweg an den Hut stößt, das brecht für mich ab (from Grimm's *Märchen*). Likewise in Wolfram's "Parzival" Gahmuret addresses his elder brother by *Ihr* but is in return addressed by *du*. This usage still survived in the eighteenth century as seen in Gellert's comedy "Die zärtlichen Schwestern," where the younger sister respectfully addresses the elder sister by *Ihr*.

At the beginning of the fifteenth century arose a new form of address towards persons of high rank. From a feeling of hesitation to approach them directly they were addressed indirectly by their pompous titles, which caused the verb to be placed in the 3rd person, at first in the singular, later in the singular or plural, finally only in the plural: Ich thet was uwer gnad mich hieß (Hans von Büchel, A.D. 1400). Wenn Euer Kurfürstliche Gnade glaubte, so würde Sie Gottes Herrlichkeit sehen (Luther). Wir wollen also tun wie Euer Fürstliche Gnaden schreiben (id.). Haben Euer Fürstliche Durchleuchtigkeit (Durchlauchtigkeit) auch Falken? (1594, H. J. v. Braunschweig). The plural of the verb here is due to the plural subject Gnaden, an abstract plural much used also elsewhere as a more emphatic form than the singular, as in von Gottes Gnaden *by the grace of God*. The plural form of the verb was then extended by analogy to use with other titles. The plural form of the title itself, however, has become fixed only in *Eure* or *Euer* (137. 1. a) Gnaden (formerly an address to princes and rulers, now only to a Graf, Reichsfreiherr, and the highest orders of the clergy, as Bischof), Eure Hochwürden (the address used to a Propst, Abt, Domherr, Ober-Konsistorialrat, Hofprediger), Eure Hochehrwürden (address to a pastor), Euer Liebden (in the time of the empire the address used by one prince or ruler to another). They are now felt, however, as singulars in spite of the plural form: Sr. (Seiner) Hochwürden dem Propst N. N. (form of address upon the envelop). As in the examples given above from Luther the possessive *Euer*, which was used in connection with the old polite address *Ihr*, was inconsistently retained in connection with the new polite form in the third person, but there soon sprang up the third person possessives *Sein* with reference to a male (*Ihr* with reference to a female), *Ihr* with reference to either a male or a female: *Euer*, *Seine*, or *Ihre* Gnaden. The last mentioned form, i.e. *Ihr*, was used either because the title to which reference was made was usually feminine or plural, or it was thought that the plural form of the verb which was so often used with these titles required a possessive which referred to more than one. In the seventeenth century the uninflected possessive *Ihro* sprang up to vie with *Euer*, *Seine*, and *Ihr*. To-day only *Euer* is used immediately before the title, but elsewhere it is replaced by *Ihr*. See also 138. 1. a and 2. f.

Towards the close of the sixteenth century the direct address in the third person, so common with persons of rank, began to be used toward untitled persons as a polite form of address. The titles Herr Mr. and Frau Mrs., or often with the article der Herr, die Frau, were used and further on in the same sentence or following ones were replaced by the pronouns *Er* and *Sie*: Ich bitt ganz freundlich, der Herr woll' (instead of *du* woltest or the more polite *Ihr* wollet) mir es nicht für übel deuten, das (= daß) ich ihn (instead of *Dich* or *Euch*) anspreche' bey den Leuten (Herzog Heinrich Julius, A.D. 1593). Finally Herr and Frau dropped out, and *Er* and *Sie* with the 3rd pers. sing. of the verb were used in direct address: Wohin geht Er? Where are you going? (addressed to a gentleman). Wohin geht Sie? (to a lady). *Ihr* was the next polite form, and *du* was used toward friends.

Towards the close of the seventeenth century a new polite address arose, which began a struggle for supremacy with the polite forms *Er*, *Sie*, and *Ihr* already in use. The new polite form was *Sie*, the 3rd pers. pl. instead of the 3rd pers. sing. thus only having one form for the two genders. It was first used as a convenient substitute for *Euer* Gnaden after the full title had already been mentioned: Ich bin oft vermahnet und gebeten von vielen, ich wollte und sollte Euer Kurfürstlichen und Fürstlichen Gnaden schreiben, daß Sie den Gefangenen H. ja nit wiederumb loslassen wollten (Luther). Later its use was widened, so that it replaced *Er* and *Sie* (with the 3rd pers. sing. of the verb). This new form gained the final victory somewhere near 1740 and became firmly fixed by the rich prose literature which sprang up at this time. However, *Er*, *Sie*, *Ihr*, *du* still continued to be used with varying shades of meaning. Towards the third quarter of the eighteenth century, *Sie* (with the verb in the 3rd pers. pl.) was the very polite form used to persons of high rank or position, or as a special mark of respect. *Er* and *Sie* (with verb in 3rd pers. sing.) were the ordinary polite forms for ordinary people not well acquainted, for older people in addressing respectfully those younger, for those in higher station in addressing in respectful tone those in lower station, or for young people who desired to be respectful to older people but not coldly formal. *Ihr* was still less formal, and *du* with its pl. *ih* was used towards intimate friends or towards young people. This state of things can be seen in Lessing's play *Minna von Barnhelm*, and continued over into the nineteenth century, and even lingers still in the conservative country districts, as can be seen in recent authors who give us pictures of rural life, as in Ludwig's *Der Erbsforster*, Ebner-Eschenbach's *Die Unverständene auf dem Dorfe*, and Lauff's *Frau Aleit*. The student must remember, however, that this relation of *Sie*, *Ihr*, and *Er* to each other will not usually be found in the more stately language of the higher forms of the dramatic literature of this period, for *Sie* is here replaced by *Ihr*. Thus in Goethe's *Faust*, Margaret addresses her neighbor Martha by *Sie* (3rd pers. fem.), towards whom she desires to be at once respectful and cordial, while she addresses Faust at first by the more formal and dignified *Ihr*. Martha addresses Margaret by the familiar *du*, but usually uses *Ihr* to the stranger Mephistopheles. On the other hand, strict distinctions of rank often disappear and *du* is uniformly used or occasionally employed without regard to the station of the person addressed. This is especially true in dramas of a high ideal character where the petty distinctions of conventional society are naturally disregarded thruout or are for a moment forgotten. Thus with Greek simplicity Goethe uses *du* quite uniformly thruout his "Tasso." For our own time usage is given above. *Er* and *Sie* (with verb in sing.) once so polite, have sunk in rank even below *Ihr*, and are now very rarely used except in a half-jesting familiar tone, while *Ihr*, which was promoted to use in poetry and elevated discourse, especially in the more serious dramas of the classical period and the early part of the nineteenth century, has been relegated to use among peasants, where it is in sections still employed as a form of address to avoid the too familiar *du* and the too polite *Sie* (with verb in pl.), or is employed by children as a more respectful form of address to parents than *du*. The polite form *Sie* has in the drama of our day in large measure replaced the stately *Ihr* of the classical period, as the language of the drama has in general taken on to a greater extent than ever before the form and tone of the living spoken language. In the recent dramas, however, that are of a high ideal character, removed from the common scenes of every day, the traditions of the classical drama are faithfully preserved and the stately *Ihr* prevails.

For the peculiar use of pronouns in over-polite language see *f* below.



*b Genitive and Dative Forms* The short forms for the gen sing are now rarely found except in a few set expressions and in poetry. The grammarians concede that the long forms have gained the victory for the gen sing, they still dispute the victory of all the long forms except *ihrer* for the pl. Of these short forms *ihr* (earlier spelling *jr*) for the gen fem and gen pl for all genders is now (except occasionally in the gen pl before *aller*, as in *Ihr aller Glückwünsche empfang ich*) entirely obsolete altho used much in early N H G and even occurring sometimes in poetry up to our own time. *Der Herr bedarf jr* (Matth xxi 3). *Da wurden jr beider Augen auffgethan* (Gen iii 7). *Allein je mehr die Seele wert, je mehr der Teufel ihr begehrt* (Uhland). But now *ihrer*, not only in the sing but also in the pl *ihrer beider Augen*. Hence it is only natural that the plural gen of the other pronouns often assumes the long form after the analogy of *ihrer*. In spite of the oft repeated protests of the grammarians, these forms are quite common in every style of literature. *Ich erinnere mich Eurer nicht* (Goethe's *Götz* 3, 6). *O meine Eltern! Muß ich erst jetzt, jetzt eurer mich erinnern!* (Grillparzer's *Sappho*, 2, 1). *Kein merkwürdiger Gegensatz hatte unserer warten können* (G Keller's *Nachgelassene Schriften*, 223). *So Ihr Euch nur wacker haltet, | wartet Eurer noch ein Stuhl im | hohen Reichsgericht zu Wetzlar* (Scheffel's *Trompeter*, zweites Stück). *So sind Eurer zu viel* (Freitag's *Rittmeister*, chap iv). *So muß ich es tun statt eurer* (Fontane's *Schach von Wuthenow*, chap iv). *So lachen wir eurer* (Raabe's *A T*, chap xxiii). *Und laßt dies Bett statt Eurer mich besteigen* (M Greif's *Heinrich der Lowe*, 2, 1). *Wir mußten unserer hundert sein, um das Erforderliche tun zu können* (Suttner's *Die Waffen nieder!*, III, p 270). *Die Tafel wartet Eurer, Herr König* (Wildenbruch's *König Heinrich*, 1, 9). *Du horst den Jubel aller Frühlingssänger, die unsrer warten* (Hauptmann's *Versunkene Glocke*, 1 1208). *Vor eurer aller Augen* (Fulda's *Talisman*, 1, 9). *Und dann ware auch wohl mal die Zeit gekommen, daß du dich unserer geschämt habtest* (Ompteda's *Sylvester von Geyer*, XCI). *Aber ach, welche Enttäuschung harnte unserer* (Königsmarck's *Japan und die Japaner*, p 4). *Um unserer selbst willen* (Felix Hollaender's *Der Weg des Thomas Truck*, II, p 413). *eurer gedenkend* (Heer's *Joggeli*, p 77). *Jetzt oder nie bedarf ich eurer* (H von Hofmannsthal's *Die Hochzeit der Sobeide*, p 97). *Die Frage, ob in der Zukunft ein neues Jena oder ein neues Sedan unserer harrt* (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, May 21, 1906).

The lengthened gen forms *meiner*, *deiner*, *seiner*, *ihrer*, instead of older *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, *ihr*, have probably arisen under the influence of the ending *er* in the gen pl forms *unser* and *euer*. The lengthened forms began to appear in the fourteenth century and in prose in the singular gained the ascendancy over the short forms by the end of the sixteenth century. The ascendancy of the long forms in the plural has not yet been generally recognized. In the Southwest the lengthened singular forms *meinen*, *deinen*, &c, were in use in the sixteenth century instead of *meiner*, *deiner*, &c.

In Luther's earlier writings the old dat pl 3rd pers *jn* (M H G *in*) is still used. The weakened form *en* is still found in the language of the youthful Goethe. *Ich will 'en die Wurme* (now *Würmer*) *schon aus der Nase ziehn* (*Urfaust*, p 23). This weakened form is still in use in colloquial language, but is no longer written. Traces of the lengthened form *ihnen* began to appear in M H G in the twelfth century. From there the long form slowly spread over the entire territory. It became the prevailing form about 1600 in prose and a little later also became established in poetry. The addition of *-en* is after the analogy of the dative plural in *-en* found in nouns and adjectives.

*c Old Genitive es.* The old neut gen sing *es* is still found in a few set expressions, but is in fact not felt as a genitive. *Ich bin es müde* I am tired of it. *Er will es nicht Wort haben* He will not acknowledge it. *Dann wird es jeder Dank wissen, wenn Preußens Regent und Preußens Heer bereit sind* (Raabe's *Gutmanns Reisen*, chap xix). This *es* is now felt as a nom or acc, and this false conception has led to the use of the nom or acc of other words, where the gen should stand. *Es* (gen construed as nom, hence also *das*) *nimmt mich*

**Wunder** It surprises me, lit. wonderment seizes me on account of it. **Es stand also wirklich schlimm**; aber das (acc.) wollte er nicht Wort haben (Spielhagen's *Freigeboren*, p. 264). **Ich weiß dir deine** (acc.; better für deine) Freigebigkeit großen Dank (Alex. König, *1001 Nacht*, II. p. 15). See also 260. 3. b, and 262. II. B. b).

**d. Meinetwegen, meinethalben.** The gen. of all genders and numbers in composition with the prepositions *wegen on account of*, *willen for the sake of*, *halben* (or *halb*) *on account of*, change the last letter of their long forms to *t*: **meinetwegen** on my account, for all I care; **meinetwillen** for my sake; **meinetthalben** on my account; **deinetwegen**, &c.

*Note 1.* This is only a convenient way of stating this rule, for *et* in *meinet*, *deinet*, &c. is in reality not the gen. ending of the personal pronouns at all, but the corrupted form of a possessive adj. In compounds with *halben* (sometimes contracted to *halb*), the second element is in reality a noun in the dat. pl., used adverbially (see 223. I. 10. c), the first element is the modifying possessive: *meinen halben*, lit. *upon my sides* (i.e. account). In the compounds with *wegen* the forms *meinetwege*, *deinetwegen*, &c. represent older *von meinen Wegen on my account*, lit. *from my side*. The compounds with *willen* are in reality in the acc. sing. governed by the prep. *um*: (um) *ihre(n)twillen* = *um ihren Willen* (still in this form in Luther's Bible, Gen. xii. 16). In all these cases an excrescent *t* has forced its way into the words after the *n* of the possessive, followed by the dropping of *n*. However, by popular conception these possessives are construed as the genitive of the personal pronouns, and indeed often the real genitive of the personal pronouns can be heard: *Es tut mir leid, daß Ihr jetzt wegen meiner den weiten Weg macht* (Auerbach's *Dorfgeschichten*, 8, p. 11). *Wegen meiner lies!* (Hauptmann's *Michael Kramer*, Act 1) Read for all I care! *Quälen Sie sich nicht wegen meiner* (Adele Gerhard's *Die Pilgerfahrt*, p. 207). The genitive forms are the rule when the pronoun is separated from the preposition by one or more words *meiner selbst* und *deinetwegen*, *deiner* und *der Mutter wegen*, *um seiner selbst willen*, but with different word-order: *nur der Mutter und meinetwegen*, &c.

*Note 2.* Instead of the ending *-et* or *-er* we often find *-s* in colloquial language after the analogy of the genitive of nouns in such expressions as *Rechts halben*, *Gesundheitswegen*: *Meinshalben redet doch, was ihr wollt* (Hauptmann's *Michael Kramer*, Act 1). *Meinswegen* (ib.; also Hirschfeld's *Agnes Jordan*, Act 3). We sometimes find the double ending *ts*: *mein'tswegen* (Anzengruber's *Schandfleck*, chap. xiii).

**e. Reduction or Change of Form.** On account of the enclitic or proclitic nature of the personal pronouns they often in colloquial language suffer aphesis, syncope, or a shortening of the vowel. If monosyllabic the initial vowel, if dissyllabic the unaccented *e*, may drop out, as in the following examples taken from Hauptmann's *Einsame Menschen*: **Und der Junge . . . na ja! Dem gibt man seine Milch, man hält'n** (for *ihn*) **sauber . . . aber das kann 'ne Magd auch machen, und später . . . später kann ich'm** (for *ihm*) **doch nichts mehr bieten. Ich muß Ihn'n sagen. Ich hab's** (for *es*) **schon lange bemerkt.** The one form *'s* (for *es*) is now common even in the literary form of speech. In colloquial language unaccented *Sie* often becomes *Se* (zə).

*Note.* In dialect the personal pronouns are often curiously deformed, as in the following: *mir* or *mer* (for *wir*), arising from assimilation to the final consonant of the preceding verb, as in *habm mir* (for *haben wir*); *dir* (or *der*) or *tir* (or *ter*) = *ihr*, arising from such forms as *sei dir* (for *seid ihr*); *ns* (for *sie*), from such forms as *habns* (for *haben sie*).

**f. Peculiar Uses of Pronouns.** In addition to the statement of usage given in *a* and *Note* thereunder, attention is here called to the following points:

(1). **Over-polite Speech.** In over-polite language, when the address is to a superior, the direct form *Sie* is avoided in the first instance and the title in the third person used instead. Later on in the sentence when the same person is again addressed, the third person pl. form of the personal pronoun is used and also the possessive corresponding to this form, both pronoun and possessive, however, being written with a capital letter to indicate direct address: **Dem Karl muß man gut sein, der ist so alert, wie was, Herr Amtsrat werden Ihre Freude haben** (Arnold). **Mein Herz weissagt, Ew. Durchlaucht werden die Erhaltung meines Lebens, das ganz Ihnen gehört, nicht verschmähen, und mich in der Ferne als Ihren unveräußerten Untertanen betrachten wollen** (J. H. Voss). In early N.H.G., however, the pronouns of the third person sing. could also be used here, as the verb could also be in the sing. (see *Note* under *a* above): **Da nun Ew. kurfürstliche Gnade begehrt zu wissen, was Sie tun soll in dieser Sache, zumal Sie meint, Sie habe viel zu wenig getan, so antworte ich untertänig, Ew. kurfürstliche Gnaden hat schon allzuviel getan, und sollte gar nichts tun** (Luther).

When the person is spoken of in the third person, the third person pl. form of the pronoun is now also used here, but is written with a small letter: **Der Herr Maler lassen sich empfehlen, und sie würden am Sonntag zum Diner erscheinen** (report of a servant to his mistress in Wildenbruch's *Eifernde Liebe*, chap. vi) The artist sends his compliments and begs to say that it will give him great pleasure to dine with you on Sunday.

(2) *The First Person Plural for the Second Person Singular* This often takes place in colloquial language in a tone of stern censure *Wo haben wir so lange gesteckt? Where have you been all this time? Often also instead of the imperative See 177 I B b (2nd par)* On the other hand often in a mild tone of familiarity *Was haben wir Neues, Marinelli? (Lessing's Emilia, 1, 6)* What news do you have for me, Marinelli?

(3) *The Editorial "We"* Just as in English the first person plural is often used by authors and speakers instead of the first person singular and the possessive *unser* instead of *mein*, the author or speaker thus modestly turning the attention away from himself by representing his readers or hearers as accompanying him in thought *Wir wenden uns nun zunächst zur Zeit des 15. Jahrhunderts usw (Behaghel's Der Gebrauch der Zeitformen p 104)* *Ist unsere Ableitung der Nebensätze richtig usw (ib p 181)* This Plural of Modesty is very old, for we find a quite similar usage in classical Latin

g In Gothic the personal pronouns have a dual i.e. a form used in addressing two persons and the plural assumed its office in addition however the dual forms for the second person, *enk*, replaced the plural forms the office of both dual and plural *Um Bote hervor Aus ist's Der Anderer enk nicht (Rosegger)* From the fre-

quent contraction of the verb with the following dual ending of the indic and imper is *ts* *Os jung' Leut' ferhanns (Anzengruber's Kreuzschreiber 3 1)* *Geh Hof 'naus (Raimund's Der Verschwender, 3 7)*

#### 141 Substitutes for the Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns have a much narrower range of usefulness in German than in English. The lack of accent and other defects cause them very often to be replaced by heavier or more explicit forms

1 When the *third* person is emphasized, the demon *der, die, das* very often takes the place of the personal pronoun *Mit dem kann man nichts machen* You can't do anything with *him* *Und ein Hut, ein Hut! Mit dem ging' ich nicht in der Wüste Sahara um Mitternacht* What a hat! I wouldn't wear it in the desert of Sahara at midnight Formerly *er* often had strong demonstrative or determinative force as *he* in *he who* in English and *derjenige* in German A survival of this older usage is given in 160 2 a Note It is still stressed in a contrast *Er ging von hinnen, aber dir ließ er als Erbe das halb zerstörte Reich (Sudermann's Teja, 11)*

When the reference is not to definite individuals but to things as members of a class of things without a definite fixing of their identity we usually find a form of *solch*, which is variously translated, *they, one such*, or is often rendered by repeating the noun to which it refers *Die Zahl der Abkürzungen im Bibeltexte ist gering* In den lateinischen Randbemerkungen begegnen dagegen solche häufig (P. Pietsch and E. Thiele in Einleitung p xxi, vol I, *Luthers Deutsche Bibel*) There are few abbreviations in the text of the Bible On the other hand in the Latin marginal notes they occur frequently *Die bedeutendste Schrift über das Niederdeutsche ist Agathe Lasch's mittelniederdeutsche Grammatik* Eine solche nach dem jetzigen Stande der Wissenschaft zu schreiben, war nicht leicht (Oskar Weise in *Zeitschrift für den deutschen Unterricht*, 1915 p 520) The most important work on Low German is Agathe Lasch's *Middle Low German Grammar* To write one or To write such, or more smoothly To write a Middle Low German Grammar in the present state of our knowledge of the subject was not an easy task The use of *solch* in 2, 3 5 B b Note below is based upon this principle See also 131 3 (2nd par) for incorrect use of *solch* for the personal pronouns *er, sie, es*

2 The gen sing and pl of pronouns representing things is usually replaced by the demon *genitives dessen, deren, desselben, derselben*, or in the plural where the reference is a little more indefinite also *solcher* or *von solchen* *Behalte dein Geld, ich bedarf dessen nicht* Keep your money I am not in need of it

Spare die Worte; es sind deren genug gewechselt Save your words; enough of them have already been spoken. Sie, trotz eines languissanten Zuges, oder vielleicht auch um desselben willen, eine Schönheit ersten Ranges (Fontane's *Cécile*, chap. ix). Während der Winterabende war im Refektorium etwas Figurenzeichnen getrieben worden, und ich hatte mir, als ich eine Menge radiierter, bekleideter Staffagefiguren kopierte, einige oberflächliche Übung im Entwerfen solcher erworben (G. Keller's *Der grüne Heinrich*, p. 280). Der logische Akzent ermöglicht bei abweichender Wortfolge die Bildung von Formeln, andererseits kann er aber auch bei normaler Wortstellung die Bildung von solchen hintertreiben (Herbert Wenck in *Beiträge*, 1905, vol. 31, p. 233).

Except in the case of a collective idea or a general or indefinite reference there is a growing tendency to use here the regular genitive forms of the personal pronouns, especially wherever a thing is personified or is vividly pictured as having individual life or force: „Sicherheiten für die Zukunft“ hat der Reichskanzler wiederholt als das unerlässliche Ziel des Krieges für uns bezeichnet. Wir bedürfen ihrer gegen Rußland mindestens so sehr wie gegen eine andere Macht (Prof. J. Haller in *Das größere Deutschland*, March 13, 1915, p. 356).

*Note.* The partitive gen. of personal pronouns representing either persons or things may often be replaced in the 3rd person not only by the gen. of *der* or *derselbe*, but also by the dat. of the personal pronoun after the prep. *von* in case of persons and the adverbial compound of the prep. with the demon. *da* (see 5 below) in case of things: *viele derselben*, *deren viele* many of them (persons or things according to the context), *sechs von ihnen* six (persons) of them, *sechs davon* six (things) of them. The dat. after *von* may also replace the gen. of the first and second persons: *sechs von uns*. Sometimes the prep. *unter* is used instead of *von*: *welcher unter euch* which of you, who among you.

3. The gen. of a pronoun which represents a thing and depends upon a noun preceded by the indefinite article or a pronominal adjective is usually replaced by the gen. of *derselbe*, not by the gen. of *der*: *Namen wie Nāvius, Pacuvius, Attius usw. schießen weit über das Ziel des Gymnasiums hinaus und brauchen nicht in einem Lehrbuch desselben zu stehen* (*Zeitschrift für das Gymnasialwesen*, xi, p. 623). *Zwischen meiner letzten Heimkehr ins Vaterhaus und meinem endgültigen Verlassen desselben* (Raabe). In case of a reference to an amount or part we may also use an adverbial compound here: *Er hatte die von Anna ihm mitgegebenen Brotschnitte aus seiner Jagdtasche genommen; aber er aß nur einen kleinen Teil davon* (Storm's *Schweigen*). *Es blieb nichts übrig als den Bart abzuschneiden; dabei ging ein kleiner Teil desselben (or davon) verloren* (Märchen).

In the plural where the *ein* before the noun drops out and the reference becomes indefinite *solcher* (gen. pl.) or sometimes *von solchen* is usually employed instead of *derselben*: *Auf die Lexikographie angewendet, will das besagen, daß die Behandlung jeder einzelnen Terminologie oder doch einer beschränkten Anzahl solcher je einem anderen Philologen anzuvertrauen wäre, der in den betreffenden Fächern heimisch ist* (Dr. H. Tiktin in *Germanisch-Romanische Monatsschrift*, 1910, p. 247). Die zweite Eigenschaft besteht in der Beschränkung der Aufmerksamkeit auf bestimmte Gegenstände und auf gewisse Teile von solchen (Wundt's *Völkerpsychologie*, II, p. 80).

4. The simple dative forms of the personal pronouns are not freely used with reference to things; but occur with ever increasing frequency: *Die Unternehmungen meines Busens sind zu groß, als daß du ihnen im Wege stehen solltest* (Goethe's *Götz*, 4, 4). *Beide liebten das Zimmer und gaben ihm auf Kosten aller andern den Vorzug* (Fontane's *Schach von Wuthenow*, IV). The dat. forms *ihm*, *ihr*, *ihnen* are so thoroly identified with persons that with reference to things they are avoided by many who prefer here the dat. of *derselbe*: *Versuche, den Verein zu verfolgen, werden demselben nur neues Wachstum verleihen. Durch Höhe der Gebäude suchte man zu ersetzen, was denselben an Breite und Tiefe abging.*

The dat. *dem* is usually used with reference to the thought of a preceding clause or sentence: *Das Fräulein tat einen affektierten Schrei und wich zurück. Joachim schenkte dem keine Beachtung, sondern sagte bloß, &c.* (Marriot's *Der geistliche Tod*, chap. xviii).

5 A *Personal Pronouns Replaced by Adverbial Compounds* The *dat* and *acc* of the personal pronouns of all genders and numbers, when they represent things, are not usually used after prepositions, but are replaced by an adverbial compound formed by appending the prep to the demon adverb *da* (before consonants except in case of *darnach*, which occurs about as frequently as *danach*) or *dar* (before a vowel) *Hier ist ein Tisch, und drauf or da'rauf* (for *auf ihm*) *ist ein Buch Er kam vor eine Tür und stieß da'gegen* (for *gegen sie*) A *Er hatte mir versprochen, diese wichtigen Briefe auf die Post zu geben B Wenn Ihnen da'ran liegt, will ich da'mit* (with them) *hingehen Seine Stühle waren uralte, aber er lud täglich jemanden ein, da'rauf zu sitzen* (Goethe)

In colloquial language these adverbial compounds *may* in a few cases be used with reference to *das Mädchen*, and hence in this one instance may refer to persons *Namlich der junge Mensch . . . in unserer Geschichtserzählung kriegte sein Mädchen ebenfalls, und wird so glücklich damit als möglich* (Raabe's *Gulmanns Reisen*, Intr)

The one preposition *in* is changed to *ein* in these compounds to express the *acc* relation (223 I 9 B 4) *Wer andern eine Grube grabt, fällt selbst drein or da'rein*, but *Ist er im Hause? Nein, er ist nicht drin or da'rin*

Sometimes another adverb can be used instead of *da* *Endlich fanden wir das Zimmer und gingen hinein*

In many cases the preposition has entered into such close relations with the verb that it forms a compound with it, in which case it is treated as a separable prefix, not as a preposition, altho it still retains its original prepositional force *In diesem Zimmer liegen viele Bücher auf* In this room there are many books lying on the tables for reference, for use The peculiar development of meaning in the compound differentiates this construction from the one described above Where the differentiation of meaning is not so sharp fluctuation of usage follows *Er sitzt am Tisch und stemmt die Ellbogen auf* (prefix) *or darauf* (adverbial compound) Compare 223 I 9 B

In connection with the rule for the use of the adverbial compounds study carefully *e* and *B* below, where exceptions to the rule are given The literary language of our time is not in general favorable to adverbial compounds as substitutes for pronouns and the rule is not so broad and not so uniformly followed as the grammarians represent See also 153. 2 A

*a* This same construction is used when the reference is to persons if they are taken collectively *Viele Knaben waren da, aber Wilhelm war nicht da runter* Many boys were there, but Will am was not among them or in the crowd

is of the same orig as the demonstrative *der*, the demonstrative force becomes strong with the aid of the *acc* and *pl* place or all the attendant circumstances thru *this* *Daran erkenn(e) ich ihn By 'dabei bleibt er* Often doubled espe

Note In early N.G. *h* *t* *a* *d* *h* *a* *e*

*d* Thus we see in *b* and *c* that the demonstratives *der* and *dieser*, when they refer to things, are replaced after prepositions in the same way as the personal pronouns differing from the latter only in accent

*e* The regular pronominal forms are however with ever increasing frequency preferred to the adverbial compounds in all grammatical and rhetorical uses but especially in the plural

(except in case of a collective idea) and where a thing or idea is personified, or is vividly pictured as having individual force or life: Er nahm einen Bogen Schreibpapier, der vor ihm auf dem Pulte lag, und begann auf ihm mit dem Bleistift allerhand Schnörkel und Arabesken zu zeichnen (Volkmann). Unmittelbar hinter dem Pfarrhause steigt der Kirchhof lehnend, auf ihm so ziemlich in seiner Mitte die frühmittelalterliche Feldsteinkirche (Fontane's *Stecklin*, I. p. 4). Ihre blauen Augen waren vielleicht zu hell, aber es lag Seele in ihnen (G. Ompteda). In Straßburg bildete sich jenes Leben in und mit der Natur, jenes Gefühl der Verwandtschaft, des Einsseins mit ihr (personifying nature) bei Goethe zu der Kraft und Tiefe aus, die wir in seiner Dichtung der nächsten Jahre als einen bedeutenden Fortschritt zur modernen Auffassung der Natur bewundern. Die Dichtung ist kein photographischer Apparat, der Autor kommt in ihr doch stets zum Vorschein (Richard Weissenfels). Vom besten Stil und vom Wege zu ihm (heading to chap. V in Eduard Engel's *Deutsche Stilkunst*). Die genaue Auffassung der Bezugsart des Genitivs und des Grades seiner Abhängigkeit von einem andern Satzteil ist uns Deutschen einigermaßen erschwert durch unsere heutige Gewohnheit, den adnominalen Genitiv unmittelbar neben sein Nomen zu stellen und so engstens an es zu fesseln (Brugmann's *Vergleichende Grammatik*, II. p. 615).

In the same manner we often find the adverbial compound hier + preposition replaced by a preposition followed by a case form of the neuter of dies-: Nach diesem—es war wieder ein Sonabend—gingen Lewin und Hirschfeldt in die Pfarre (Fontane's *Vor dem Sturm*, IV. chap. xxvii). The adverbial construction, however, is quite uniformly used to refer to a verb, or to the thought contained in a preceding or following phrase or proposition, also to refer collectively to things already mentioned: Wird er kommen? Ich zweifle daran. Aber sage mir doch, fragte die Weide den Dornstrauch, warum du nach den Kleidern der vorbeigehenden Menschen so begierig bist. Was willst du damit?

f. In colloquial speech the pronoun is often omitted: Das Haus ist nicht neben dem Berge, sondern auf (Georg Edward). Der Unfall ereignete sich nicht nach dem Balle, sondern vor (id.).

B. Not all prepositions can, as in A, form compounds with the demonstrative da, but this construction is limited to an, auf, aus, bei, durch, für, gegen, hinter, in, mit, nach, neben, ob, ohne (only, however, in popular language), über, unter, um, von, vor, wider, zu, zwischen. In case of other prepositions, this construction is replaced by others:

a. The preps. halb and wegen are appended to the gen. of the demon. pronoun (see 129. 2. A. a): deshalb, deswegen on account of it, therefore.

b. After all other preps. or prep. phrases with the force of a prep. the personal pronouns are usually replaced by derselbe: Sie wollte sich durch das Geld Vorteile verschaffen, auf die sie ohne dasselbe nicht rechnen konnte. In meinem dritten Jahre befahl mich eine schwere Krankheit und ich blieb infolge derselben an allen Gliedern gelähmt.

Note. We often find derselbe even after prepositions which can form with da the adverbial compounds described in A, as there is a desire for a more concrete expression of the idea of object than that afforded by an adverbial form: Und segnete den siebenden Tag und heiliget in | darumb | das er an dem selben geruget hatte von allen seinen Wercken (Gen. ii. 3). Vier Wochen später hatte er das alte Haus im gerichtlichen Aufgebot gekauft und hielt mit einem alten Gesellen und einer noch älteren Schwester seinen Einzug in dasselbe (Storm's *Bölger Basch*).

The use of derselbe is especially common to represent a noun after one preposition in instances where two prepositions which take different cases govern one noun: in der Kirche und um dieselbe instead of the incorrect in und um die Kirche. In case of persons the personal pronoun should be used instead of derselbe: mit dem Vater und ohne ihn. Good authors, however, often disregard these rules of the grammarians and place both prepositions before the noun or pronoun, which is then governed by the second preposition: um und neben dem Hochaltare (Goethe). Ihre Tochter wird meine Frau mit oder gegen Ihren Willen (H. Seidel's *Lang, lang ist's her*). Sometimes the noun is repeated: mit Gott und durch Gott (Andresen's *Sprachgebrauch*, p. 193). Often in case of a pronominal object: Was in ihm und um ihn und über ihm ist (W. Wackernagel).

There is, in general, a feeling against the clumsy form derselbe and an evident tendency in choice language to replace it by a simple personal pronoun, as in A. e.: Sie (Frau von Olfers) kannte ihre Grenze, aber innerhalb ihrer ihr Recht und ihre Befugnis (Hermann Grimm's *Fragmente*, I. p. 379). So sehen wir also, daß Raabe trotz seiner Vorliebe für die Fremdwörter doch statt ihrer oftmals schöne deutsche Wörter verwendet (Otto Schütte in *Zeitschrift des Allgemeinen Deutschen Sprachvereins*, 1908, No. 2, p. 42).

Often in colloquial speech the pronoun is omitted: Wie jammert mich Vaters Bärtchen: ich kenne ihn gar nicht mehr ohne (Bismarck to his wife, Oct. 7, 1850).

Solch is usually employed instead of a personal pronoun when the reference is not to a definite individual but to a member of a class without a definite fixing of its identity: U in du ist zweimal mit Längezeichen gedruckt, zweimal ohne solches (Oscar Weise in *Zeitschrift für den deutschen Unterricht*, 1915, p. 430). Compare 131. 3 (last par.).

6. Similar to the distinction between sein, ihr and dessen, deren (see 138. 2. d) is the difference between er, sie, es and derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe. Er refers to the subject of the preceding sentence, or in a complex sentence to the subject of the main clause, while derselbe (or dieser) refers to some oblique case in the preceding sentence, or in a complex sentence to some oblique case in the main proposition, or to some word in a preceding subordinate clause or infinitive phrase, be it a nom. or an oblique case: Mein Bruder ist zu seinem Freunde gegangen. Derselbe (or better dieser) will ohne ihn den Kauf nicht abschließen My brother has gone to his friend's. The latter will not close the bargain without him. Tagtäglich ritt er (Graf Beust) aus auf seinem

bekannten Schimmel, bis derselbe (i.e. der Schimmel) in Paris an Altersschwache starb. Der Knabe wollte nicht sagen, daß der Hund ihn gebissen hatte, damit man denselben (i.e. den Hund) nicht schlagen mochte.

The personal pronoun should, however, always be used in all the above cases instead of *derselbe* or *dieser*, if no ambiguity would arise therefrom. Die Diplomaten forderten die Völker auf, demütig Gott zu preisen und ihm Lob zu singen (Raabe).

a The oblique cases of either *er* or *derselbe* may refer to an oblique case in the preceding sentence. Mein Bruder ist zu seinem Freunde gegangen. Er will dann mit ihm (now more common than *demselben* or *diesem*) in die Stadt gehen. In case however the reference is to a thing *derselbe* is quite common. Durch Höhe der Gebäude suchte man zu ersetzen, was denselben an Breite und Tiefe abging. Die Pronomina demonstrativa bezeichnen einen Gegenstand dadurch, daß sie auf c back to some definite thing and

р. 3-4 and 10 /

b If there are two substantives in a sentence besides the subject both of which are referred to in a following sentence or clause it is often best to represent the one which in the following sentence or clause must be in the nom. by *dieser* and the other one by *derselbe*. Der Herr nahm dem Bedienten das Geld wieder ab, als *dieser* ihm *dasselbe* gestohlen hatte, or als ihm *dieses* von demselben gestohlen worden war. It is best to avoid such clumsy sentences wherever ambiguity would not arise and use the simple personal pronoun for reference to persons. Ich nehme meinen Kindern alle Bücher ab, sobald sie *selbe* nicht mehr brauchen (Rosegger).

7 In general *derselbe* is used instead of a personal pronoun for sake of euphony or harmony. The following cases of this use occur not infrequently.

a To prevent two *sie*'s, or a *Sie* and a *sie* from coming together. Ich bitte um die Zeitung, wenn Sie *dieselbe* gelesen haben. Many good stylists however, do not feel the repetition of *sie* as harsh. Anna Elisabeth . . faßte deswegen Onkel Harres Andeutungen einerseits ernster auf als Eva, andererseits beurteilte sie *sie* weniger streng als der Großvater (R. Huch's *Ludolf Ursleu*, chap. xxi).

b *Derselbe* is often used in a comprehensive sense to refer to some preceding word with all its modifiers as it is felt as a more appropriate form than the light personal pronouns to represent a weighty expression or a heavy combination of words. zum taglichen Umgang wackerer Leute sowohl als zur Briefwechselung zwischen denselben. Das Erscheinen der Wörterbücher von Kluge und Heyne konnte mich nicht von meinem Vorhaben (intention to publish a dictionary) abbringen, da *dieselben* (i.e. die Wörterbücher von Kluge und Heyne) in ihrer Anlage ganz verschieden von dem meinigen sind (Paul's *Wörterbuch*, Preface).

*Historical Note* In early N H G *derselbe*, aside from its primary meaning *the same*, was often employed as a pure demonstrative or determinative = *der* or *derjenige*. See 132 1 B a. The word gradually extended its boundaries so that it included the meanings of *der* and *er* (*sie*, *es*). The older use as a pure demonstrative or determinative has in large measure disappeared, but its use instead of the personal pronouns has increased so that it is often used without reason where a personal pronoun would be simpler and better. Kleinkerten, die *er* von Mariannen erhalten oder *dieselben* (= *ihr*) geraubt hatte (Goethe). Der Prinz Karl ist von seinem Unwohlsein so weit wieder hergestellt, daß *derselbe* (= *er*) nicht mehr das Bett zu huten genötigt ist (*Kölnische Zeitung*). At the present time grammarians quite generally censure this free use of *derselbe*, and urge that the simple forms *der* and *er* be used where it is possible. The best usage of our time has been given in the preceding articles.

8 The demonstrative *solch* is often used instead of the personal pronouns. See 1, 2 3, above, and also 131 3.

9 *Uses of es* Except after prepositions the uninflected *es* has, differing from other personal pronouns, a wide field of usefulness.

a *Situation Es* Like *dies* (128 A a) uninflected *es* is employed in the identification of persons and things where *es* refers to an unidentified person or thing that becomes known thru the situation, or is identified by some *per*

son: *Es ist Hans* (uttered by someone who has just heard approaching steps). *Wer kommt die Treppe herunter?* *Es ist Hans, or Es ist mein Bruder.* *Wer ist an der Tür?* *Es ist eine arme Frau.* *Was liegt auf dem Tische?* *Es ist eine schöne Blume, or in the plural Es sind schöne Blumen.* *Sind es Ihre Kinder?* *Es sind die Kinder meines Bruders.* *Es* often points to something definite which is more or less clearly defined by the situation: *Es steht schlecht* Things are in bad condition. Compare 219. 3 (last par).

*b.* As object in various constructions, especially referring to some fact or thing already mentioned or more or less understood, or to a condition of things: *Marie ist hier. Ich weiß es. Ich kann es nicht länger mit ansehen. Ich hielt es endlich nicht länger aus. Er bringt es weit* He is getting along in the world. *Machen Sie sich's bequem* Make yourself comfortable. *Er macht es zu arg* He carries things too far. *Er läßt es gehen, wie's Gott gefällt* He lets things go as it pleases God.

*c.* As a predicate, representing an idea already expressed. See 129. 2. C. (4).

*d.* As a grammatical and anticipative subject. See 185. A. I. 3; 251. I. 2. A and B, and II. B.

*e.* As an anticipative object. See 185. A. I. 3 and 272. C. a.

*f.* As a mere formal subject in the various impersonal constructions described in 219.

## REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

(Compare with 218.)

142. 1. A personal pronoun can also show that the action which goes forth from the subject bends back upon that subject, and is then called a reflexive pronoun: *Ich lobe mich* I praise myself. Special pronominal forms to show this reflexive action are wanting except in the third person, where *sich* *himself, herself, itself, themselves* is used for all genders and both numbers and for both dat. and acc.: *er lobt sich; sie lobt sich; sie loben sich* they praise themselves; *er spricht immer nur von sich; sie spricht immer nur von sich, &c.* For the gen. of the third person and the gen., dat., and acc. of the first and second persons, the reflexives are identical in form with the personal pronouns: *du lobst dich; wir loben uns; ihr lobt euch, &c.* The reflexive by its very nature has no nom., as it is always an *object*, either of a verb or a prep., or dependent upon some adjective. Reflexive verbs in German usually take an acc. object, but certain verbs, contrary to the English idiom, take an object in the dat. or gen.: *Du lobst dich, but du spottest deiner, du schmeichelst dir.* To the gen. of the third person the indeclinable *selbst* is usually added, or otherwise it is ambiguous: *Er spottet seiner selbst.* Without *selbst* it would mean, He is ridiculing *him* (some one else), but with *selbst* *himself*.

*a.* In early N.H.G. there was except after prepositions no dative of the reflexive, its place being supplied by the dative of the personal pronoun, which usage occasionally occurs as late as the classical period, and in popular South German is still found: *Wer sich Knall und Fall, ihm (= sich) selbst zu leben, nicht entschließen kann, der lebet andrer Sklav auf immer* (Lessing's *Nathan*, 2, 9).

*Note.* The use of *sich* instead of the dative of a personal pronoun in the reflexive relation arose at the close of the O.H.G. period, at first however only found after prepositions. Luther much later still only uses dative *sich* after prepositions, elsewhere the dative of the personal pronoun, some writers of his time use the dative of the personal pronoun thruout. The present usage of employing dative *sich* thruout began to gain the ascendancy about the beginning of the eighteenth century under Low German and Middle German influence. In Middle and Low Franconian dialect dative *sich* has in certain sections been modified to *sir* under the influence of *mir* and *dir*. On the other hand, in the South German dialects the old usage of employing the dative of the personal pronoun here is in general well preserved.

*b.* If the reflexive refers to subjects of different persons the first person usually has the preference over the second and third and the second person the preference over the third: *Ich und du (wir) retteten uns. Du und er (ihr) rettetet euch.* *Sich* is so frequently used with the verb in the third person plural that it has become so thoroly identified with this form that in loose colloquial speech and dialect it is also often used with the other person of the plural having the same form, namely the first person: *Bloß ich und ein paar Kameraden konnten sich (instead of uns) retten* (Hans Hoffmann's *Von Haff und Hafen*, p. 74). Especially in the Annaberger Gegend hört man selbst von Gebildeten oder liest man in der Lokalpresse: *Wir müssen sich beeilen, Wir haben sich Mühe gegeben* (Göpfert's *Mundart des sächsischen Erzgebirges*, p. 75).



In SG this usage is of course confined to the accusative in the sections which according to a use sich only in the accusative. Weil wir uns (literary form instead of dialectic sich) scheuen, das Red' zu haben, was wir uns (literary form) eigentlich zu sagen hätten und worüber wir sich (dialectic form) ausreden sollten (Anzenberger's *Schardfleck*, chap. xviii)

2 A The reflexive usually refers to the subject of the proposition in which it stands. The Germans also use a reflexive of the third person after prepositions if the reference is to the subject, while in English a personal pronoun is used here as a survival of older usage, where in general personal pronouns also served as the usual reflexive forms. Er (sie) hat Geld bei sich He (she) has money with him (her). In poetry older English usage survives also elsewhere. To their salute he bends *him* slightly (Byron)

a In prepositional phrases modifying a noun a personal pronoun of the third person must be used according to C. The phrase is equivalent to a subordinate clause and the reference is to the subject of the principal proposition. Diethelm traf die Brüder mitten im Gespräch über ihn sprachen, but Alle Unzufriedenheit des Menschen ist sich selbst (Thummel) [= Frucht des Widerspruchs, den er

B If there is a reference in the subordinate clause to the subject of the principal proposition, a personal pronoun should be used. Er belobte die Soldaten, die sich gehorsam gegen ihn (referring to the subject of the principal proposition) bewiesen hatten

C In participial, adjective, prepositional, and infinitive constructions which have the force of a subordinate clause, the reflexive refers to the subject of the contracted clause. Wir erblickten einen Mann, der sich schnell entfernte. Wir erblickten einen sich schnell entfernenden Mann. Wir baten ihn, sich zu entfernen. Soll ich diese an sich verständliche Regel (= diese Regel, die an sich verständlich ist) wiederholen? If there is a reference in the contracted clause to the subject of the principal proposition a personal pronoun must of course be used. Er bat uns, ihn zu besuchen. Sie trug ein ihr vollkommen ähnliches Kind auf dem Arme.

a Usage makes distinctions

(1) If the infinitive has no subject expressed, or has passive force, the reflexive refers to the subject of the principal proposition. Er horte über sich schmahen. He heard someone talking abusively about him. Er horte sich (acc.) von seinem Freunde rufen. He heard his friend call him, lit. He heard himself called by his friend. Dort ließ er sich (dat.) erzählen, wie alles gekommen. There he allowed himself to be told how all had come about.

(2) If the infinitive has an accusative subject and is active, it usually takes a personal pronoun as a reflexive object referring to the subject of the principal proposition. Pentheus sieht die Furien ihm nahen (Schiller). Er ließ sie ihm zu Füßen fallen (id.). Er sah sein Luftschiß noch einmal ihm zuwinken (Kurz). Es fühlt der Mensch mit bleichem Beben den Tod ihm sitzen im Genick (Lenau). Sometimes, however, we find a reflexive here instead of a personal pronoun especially after lassen. Er ließ sich (acc.) von zwei Arbeitern

Der Schimmelreiter, schützen nicht nahe kommen (Blatz's *Deutsche Grammatik*, II, p. 271). Der Kanzler ließ sich das nicht anfechten (id.). This is the survival of an old construction which required the reflexive in the infinitive clause when the reference was to the subject of the principal proposition. Ir gäst si sich küssen bat (Parzival, 23-30) = Sie bat ihren Gast, sie (referring to the subject of the sentence) zu küssen. This older usage is still lingering on but its ambiguity is leading to the firmer establishment of the rule given above. It is however, still the rule in (3).

(3) The old usage of employing a reflexive referring to the subject of a principal proposition is still the rule if the reflexive depends upon a preposition. Er sah einen Fremden neben sich stehen. A personal pronoun however is used if the reflexive would cause ambiguity. Sie sieht ringsum im Waldesschlag die Wipfel ernst sich zu ihr neigen (Redwitz).

(4) A reflexive verb is used as an infinitive where the reflexive refers to the subject of the infinitive: *Die Stadt sah den Hunger nebst seinem ganzen Gefolge mit schrecklichen Schritten sich nähern* (Goethe). *Er sah den Pithecius sich über ihn* (with reference to the subject of the sentence) *beugen* (Raabe's *Der Lar*, p. 220). *Ich hieß ihn sich setzen*.

(5) A reflexive often refers to an object of an infinitive when there is no ambiguity: *Beim Scheiden bat ich mir die Erlaubnis aus, ihn bei sich zu sehen* (Goethe's *Dicht. u. Wahr.*, Zweiter Teil, Zehntes Buch). *Wir wollen ihn sich selbst erhalten* (Gustaf E. Karsten). *Ich wollte ihn bei sich zu Hause sehen* (Georg Edward), but in *Er wollte ihn bei sich sehen* the *sich* is felt as belonging to *er*, the subject of the sentence. When the subject of the sentence is thus in the third person and it is desired to bring the reflexive in relation to an object of the infinitive in the third person we may often use the personal pronoun: *Er wollte ihn bei ihm zu Hause sehen* (Gustaf E. Karsten).

### THE EMPHATIC ADJECTIVES *Selbst* AND *Selber*.

143. The indeclinable strongly stressed limiting adjective *selbst* or *selber* *self* is much used to emphasize personal and reflexive pronouns and also nouns, always following as an appositive the governing word but not always immediately as it was originally a predicate appositive and still often stands in the predicate referring to the subject: *ich selbst* or *selber*, *wir selbst* or *selber*. *Ich tat es selbst*. *Ich selbst habe ihren Brief gelesen*, or *Ich habe ihren Brief selbst gelesen*, the latter of which forms, however, may also mean: I have read her letter itself, not a copy of it. *Er kam selbst*. *Er ist die Ehrlichkeit selbst*. *Er lobt sich selbst* or *selber*, but not without the reflexive, as in *er lobt selbst*. *Selbst* may, however, be used alone after the prep. *von* and in a few other idiomatic expressions: *Die Mühle geht nicht von selbst*. *Selbst essen macht satt* If you want to get satiated you must do your own eating. *Selbst ist der Mann* If you want to have a thing done well, do it yourself. *Selbst eingebrockt, selbst ausgegessen* As you have brewed, so you must drink. *Selbstgebackenes Brot* home-made bread. Also in paying back an insult: *Er schalt ihn einen Betrüger. „Selbst Betrüger!“ gab der Bescholtene zurück*.

Note 1. In M.H.G. the emphatic limiting adjective *selb* was inflected strong and weak. *Selbst* is the corrupted form of the old strong gen. *selbes* and *selber* is the old strong masc. nom. The frequent use of the old gen. and nom. led to their becoming established as set forms for all cases, genders, and numbers.

Note 2. As an adverb *selbst* (only rarely *selber*) may stand before or after a noun or pronoun, usually with the meaning *even*, always with weak accent: *Die Ermahnung selbst des Vaters* (or *des Vaters selbst*) *fruchtete nichts*.

### THE RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS.

144. When the pronoun shows that the action of the verb is mutual between two or more persons, it is called a reciprocal pronoun. The following reciprocal forms are used:

a. The reciprocal pronoun for the dat. and acc. of all genders and persons is *ei'ander* *each other*, *one another*: *Wir loben einander*; *sie loben einander*; *sie sprechen voneinander*.

b. For the gen. *einer* (*eine*) . . . *des andern* (*der andern*) are used: *Sie gedenken einer des andern* They (lady and gentleman, or two gentlemen) are thinking of each other. *Sie gedenken eine der andern* They (two ladies) are thinking of each other.

c. For the dat. and acc. the reflexive pronouns are often used for the reciprocal when no ambiguity can arise: *Ihr seht euch oft* You see one another often. *Die Eheleute sind sich* (dat. = *einander*) *treu und lieben sich* (acc. = *einander*) *innig*. *Sie geben sich die Hände*. *Sie lieben sich* is ambiguous, as *sich* may mean *each other* or *themselves*, but by the addition of *selbst* or *selber* the reflexive idea is brought out, and *sich* may be changed to *einander*, or *einander* or more commonly *gegenseitig* may be added to *sich*, to make the reciprocal idea clear: *Sie lieben sich selbst* They love themselves, but *Sie lieben*

einander *They love one another*. Sie halfen einander, or sich gegenseitig, or sometimes sich einander.

Only when the reciprocal depends immediately upon a verb or an adjective, as in the first sentence, can it be replaced by a reflexive, hence after prepositions the reciprocal form is as a rule einander: Sie saßen nebeneinander, not neben sich. After the prepositions unter and über, however, either einander or a reflexive can be used: Wir wollen das untereinander (or unter uns) abmachen. Sie machten das untereinander (or unter sich) ab. Sie fielen übereinander (or über sich) her.

Several common intransitive verbs take sich as object: Die zwei Jungen streiten sich, balgen sich, zanken sich, or Der eine streitet sich mit dem anderen usw.

Note. In dialect sich is often used reciprocally instead of uns or einander: Na, mir (wir) können sich net heiraten (Anzengruber's *Jungferngift*, 4, 7).

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

145. The indefinites have been treated under adjectives, as most of them can be used as an ordinary adj., or used alone substantively. The following are more like real independent pronouns:

a. jedermann *everybody* has only the gen. sing. in s, the dat. and acc. being like the nom.

b. jemand *somebody*, declined: N. jemand, G. jemandes, D. jemand, or jemandem (a comparatively new str. form, but common), jemanden (see 106. Note 3; like the preceding a new form, but not so common as earlier in the period), jemande (formerly in limited use, now obsolete), A. jemand or jemanden (new but common); very common in combination with anders: jemand anders or anderer somebody else, dat. jemand(em) anders, or jemand(em) anderem, acc. jemand(en) anders or jemand(en) anderen. In early N.H.G. the indeclinable form jemand is also found. See Numbers xvi. 40; Leviticus xxi. 17.

Note 1. In these cases anders is a dependent gen. and should as such remain unchanged.

unvollständige  
amer Mond-  
ause jemand  
ihel handeln

c. niemand *nobody*, inflected exactly like jemand.

Note 1. It has the same fluctuating construction of the following.

Note 2. In dialect various forms occur. neamd, niemer, niemerd. Compare d. Note 2.

d. man (in dialect often me or ma) or einer or sometimes ein(e)s *one* (as in *one says* = they say), a fellow (as in *What is a fellow to do?*), a man, a person, a body. The oblique cases of man are replaced by those of einer: N. man, G. eines, D. einem, A. einen: So was erinnert einen an etwas, woran man nicht erinnert sein will; eines Haus und Hof *one's house and land*. Das wird einem sauer. Man ist erst ganz man selbst, wenn man wieder den

eigenen, angestammten Boden unter sich hat (Frieda von Bülow). Wenn man (or einer) Reisen gemacht hat, so kann man (or er if the antecedent is einer) etwas erzählen. Da soll eins nicht aufwachen, wenn 'n ganzes Ulanenregiment zum Felddienst ausrückt! (Beyerlein's *Zapfenstreich*, 1, 5). The personal pronoun referring to man, as can be seen in the next to the last example and in the first, is man, but er if it refers to einer, and the corresponding possessive of both man and einer is sein: Man or einer kann seinen eigenen Kopf nicht essen.

Note 1. In popular or colloquial language einer or ein(e)s is often used with the force of jemand. It also frequently indicates that the person referred to excels in something, often in something bad: Das soll einmal einer nachmachen! Let somebody imitate that if he can. Er lügt wie einer He lies equal to anybody, lies like a trooper. Das ist einer! He's a fine fellow! (ironical).

In colloquial language man or einer is often used with the force of a personal pronoun: Wenn ich einmal deine Frau bin, tust du doch nichts mehr für einen (= mich). Wenn einem Mädchen ein Schurzband aufgeht, denkt der Verehrer an einen (= sie).

Note 2. In dialect man is often reduced to the form of me or ma, or on the other hand assumes the form mer, mar, or mr: Ma muß sagen, was recht is (Ludwig Thoma's *Die Medaille*, p. 94). Es kann ja ein' Menschen recht sein, daß mer ihm merken laßt, mer weiß, was er für a Mensch is (Anzengruber's *Das vierte Gebot*, 1, 12).

e. wer (for declension see 147. 1), which is used as an interrogative and also relative pronoun, is moreover not infrequently in colloquial language used as an indefinite = jemand or einer: Ich glaube, wenn mein Bruder Alfred stirbt, oder vielleicht auch wer, der dir noch näher steht, &c. (Fontane's *Unwiederbringlich*, chap. vi). Ich habe auch keine Geheimnisse—wie wer anderer (Schnitzler's *Liebelei*, p. 68). Michael kümmerte sich wenig um mich—dem mußt du erst klar machen kommen, daß ich auch wer bin (Sudermann's *Es lebe das Leben*, p. 37). Also sonstwer anybody else is used: Bezeichnend bei dieser Lage . . . daß weder von Correggio noch von sonstwem . . . die Probleme der Luftperspektive gefördert worden sind (Lamprecht's *Deutsche Geschichte*).

Note 1. A following adjective-substantive has the same double construction as after jemand and niemand (b, c, above): Schmidts haben Besuch; 's ist wer Fremdes da. Ich meine—wer Fremdes? (Sudermann's *Blumenboot*, 4, 10) I mean, was there any stranger there? Wer Vornehmer hat dich empfohlen (Blatz's *Neuhochdeutsche Grammatik*, II, p. 380). Das Ding wird wer anderer gemacht haben (Rosegger).

Note 2. From the indef. wer have come the interrogative and relative wer, in both of which the former indefinite force is still felt.

f. etwas (often in dialect in the assimilated forms ettes, eppes, öppis, &c.) or in colloquial speech often in its original simple form was something, some, somewhat, what, uninflected: Er hat etwas getan. Soll ich Ihnen etwas von diesem Hammelbraten zukommen lassen? Er ist etwas (somewhat) von einem Gelehrten. Ich will dir was sagen I'll tell you what. Es mochte nun von Glaubenssachen . . . oder von was immer (anything whatever) die Rede sein (Mörke's *Werke*, 6, 273). Note that the negative not anything is rendered, not by nicht etwas, but by nichts: Haben Sie nichts von Ihrem Freunde gehört?

Note 1. When a neut. adjective-substantive depends upon etwas, it was formerly in the partitive gen., but this usage has now given place to the appositional construction, the adjective-substantive agreeing with etwas: etwas Gutes something good, von etwas Gutem. Es ist etwas Wahres (once felt as a gen., but now felt as a neut. nom. in apposition with etwas) daran. Ich kann vor etwas Schöнем stundenlang stehen. Die Scham brennt Mascha auf den Wangen, nach rechts und links blickt sie scheu und ängstlich, etwas Schrecklichen (old weak gen. to avoid the strong form in -es, which is not distinguished from the nom. and acc. in -es) gewärtig (Schubert's *Boris Lensky*, xi). Ich muß dich noch wegen etwas anderen (weak gen.) or anderem (as the prep. also governs the dat.) fragen. Only rarely is the partitive gen. of the adjective-substantive now found here, but the following example from Hauptmann's *Vor Sonnenaufgang*, p. 90, proves that it is not entirely extinct: Du schwatzest von alter Freundschaft und so was Guts (106. Note 2).

Note 2. In early N.H.G. corresponding to the neuter etwas was a masculine etwer (now replaced in literary speech by jemand) somebody, which is still widely used in the dialects in the assimilated forms etter, epper, öpper, &c.

g. nichts (in popular speech nix) nothing, uninflected: Gott hat die Welt aus nichts erschaffen. It is avoided in the gen.

Note 1. If a neut. adjective-substantive depends upon it, the same appositional construction is found as after etwas (see f. Note 1): Wissen Sie nichts Neues? Kannst du dich mit nichts Besserem beschäftigen?

Note 2. It was once inflected as a few set expressions still show. The old nom. and acc. form nicht (contracted from ni wicht = nicht ein Wicht, not a thing, not a whiff) is used in a number of set expressions, preceded by the partitive gen.: Hier ist meines Bleibens nicht (nom.) It's too warm (fig.) for me here, or I can't stay here. Wenn ich mit Menschen- und mit Engeln reden redete und hätte der Liebe nicht (acc.) Tho I speak with the tongues of men and of angels and have not charity. The real gen. still survives in nichtswürdig contemptible, lit. worthy of nothing. In the expression zu nichte machen to destroy, it is dat. with the usual dat. case ending. The dat. form in mit nichten not at all has arisen from a contraction of M.H.G. mit nihte en (old negative; see close of this Note). The gen. nichts was formerly much used as a partitive gen. depending upon nicht (nom. or acc.), nichts nicht nothing at all, lit. nothing of nothing. Later when nicht was felt as an adverb the gen. nichts remained as the regular nom. or acc. of the pronoun. This change of construction was facilitated by the fact that nichts remained as an old gen. in a number of set expressions where it was construed as a nom. or acc.: Nichts (old gen. felt as a nom. since gebrechen was often used with a nom. subject, as explained in 255. II. 1. H. c) gebriecht (formerly imper. verb with gen.) uns Nothing is lacking to us. Er vergißt (formerly with gen., now usually with acc.) nichts (an old gen. felt as an acc.). The old acc. nicht has now become the regular form for the adverbial negative not. This adverbial negative is in fact

in an earlier period only added to strengthen the negative en *nē* (e is not used) not in any respect or thing. After the close of the twelfth century the negative without the support of *nē* it and gradually disappeared where there was no night of appearing without leaving any trace.

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

146. The interrogative pronouns are *wer* who; *was* what; *welcher, welche, welches* which, what; *was für einer, was für eine, was für ein(e)s* what kind.

147. 1. *Wer* is declined:

Masc. and Fem.

Neuter.

N. *wēr* *u/o*

*wās* *u/at*

G. *wēssen, wēs* (poet.) *u/hose*

*wēssen, wēs* *of u/hat*

D. *wēm* (masc. and fem.), *wēr*  
(fem.; see B b) *to u/hom*

*wēm* (B a), *wō(r)* *u prep.* (see C b); *wās* (see C. a)

A. *wēn* *u/hom*

*wās* *u/at*

It is usual to say only *wer anders* *u/ho else*, *wessen anders*, *wem anders*, &c., altho it is common to say either *jemand anders* or *jemand anderer*, *jemand(em) anders* or *jemand anderem*, &c. Compare 145. b. Note 1.

A. *Genitive* The neut gen *wes*, still common in early N.H.G., is now little used except in the adverbial compounds *weshalb* for what reason, *weswegen* on what account, why, also in attributive use, as explained in 1 below.

The corrupted form *wessent*, instead of the more correct *wessen*, is still quite common in composition with the prepositions *wegen* and *um* — *willen*, where the reference is to a person: *wessentwegen*, *um wessentwillen*. Ex. *Um wessentwillen quälen wir uns denn überhaupt mit solchen Sachen?* (Montane's *Stechlin*, XI p 115) As *wessen* is so often used with reference to a person, it is avoided with reference to a thing.

C. *With Prepositions.* The neuter dative is not used in connection with a preposition, in which case the form is either:

a. That of the acc., not infrequently in the classical authors and with ever increasing frequency in the language of our time, which is in general becoming averse to adverbial compounds (see b): *Zu was die Posse?* (Goethe). *Bestellt, gnädiger Kaiser? zu was?* (Wildenbruch's *Kaiser Heinrich*, 2, 18). *Zu was soll der eine was voraus haben?* (Halbe's *Haus Rosenhagen*, I. p. 43). *Brigitta: Sie liegt, weint, schwört: sie müsse ihn erlösen.* Gottfried: *Von was?* (Hauptmann's *Der arme Heinrich*, I. p. 33). *Odysseus: Herr, ich fürchte mich.* Eumaios: *Vor was?* (id., *Der Bogen des Odysseus*).

b. Or especially in choice language the adverbial compound *wo* (or *wor* before a vowel) + a preposition: *womit* with what, *wovon* of what, *worin* in what, &c. The prepositions governing the acc. also form compounds with *wo(r)* in the same way: *worüber* about what, *wofür* for what, *worein* (the one prep. in changes its form in these adverbial compounds to express the acc. relation, becoming *ein*) into what, *worum* (more commonly in this case *um was*) concerning what, &c. The accent fluctuates here. In questions direct and indirect the preposition is usually stressed, *wo'rauf*, &c., but in direct questions the accent for especial emphasis often rests upon the *wo*. These compounds cannot be freely formed, but occur only in case of the prepositions enumerated in 141. 5. B. But also here there is a growing aversion to the adverbial forms: „*Rede, | damit wir uns verständigen.*“ „*Über was?*“ (Wildenbruch's *König Laurin*, 3, 1).

D. *Plural.* The German like the English has no special form for the plural, but differs from the English in that the verb also remains sing., except in case of *wer* and *was* as predicate in connection with the verb *to be*: *Wer sind die Damen da? Ich weiß nicht, wer sie sind.* *Was sind die Dinge da? Das sind Blumen.* But as subject: *Wer war da? Who was or were there?* A general indef. pl. idea can be brought out by placing directly after *wer* (or *was*), or several words removed, the adverbial *alles*: *Wer kommt denn alles?* Who all are coming? *Ich weiß nicht, wen alles er eingeladen hat, or wem alles (or wem allem, or sometimes to bring out the plural idea wen allen in colloquial speech and welchen Leuten allen in the literary language) er eine Einladung geschickt hat.* *Was man doch nicht alles hört!* Well, I declare, what strange things one hears! *Es ist unglaublich, was uns hier jetzt alles als Schillerfest geboten wird (Hamburger Correspondent, May 8, 1905).* A plural may follow *wer* and *was* alone, altho the verb is in the singular: *Wer anders wohnte denn zu jener Zeit vor den Toren der Städte als nur armes und geringes Volk, Gärtnersleute noch im besten Falle?* (S. Junghans's *Lore Fay*, I). In inquiries after definite persons or things, the sing. verb with *wer* or *was* alone is used, as usually the connection will show whether one is speaking of one person or thing, or of more than one. Some form of *welcher*, *e*, *es* should be used if some noun or pronoun can be understood: *Wer hat das gebracht? — Zwei Schüler. — Welche (Schüler)? Wer hat das gebracht? — Ein Schüler. — Welcher (Schüler)?* Thus in German *wer* usually introduces an inquiry of a more general and *welcher* of a more individual nature.

E. *Partitive Construction.* *Was* was formerly often followed by a dependent noun in the partitive gen.: *was Dancks habt jr dauon (davon)?* (Luke vi. 34). This construction is still occasionally found: *Aber was hast du nun Vorteils davon, Lieber?* (Lienhard's *Till Eulenspiegel*, 3). It is still the regular construction in case of adjective-substantives: *Was ist Gutes dabei?* What good is there in it? In case of these adjective-substantives all feeling for the genitive is lost, and the form is regarded as a nom. or acc. neut. in apposition with *was*, as in similar cases after *etwas* (see 145. f. Note 1).

Except in case of adjective-substantives simple apposition is now little used, altho more common earlier in the period, and is usually replaced by the appositional construction introduced by *für* or by the construction with *welch*: *Was gibt es Vorzügliches im heutigen Konzert?*, but rarely *Mit was lieblichem Bezeigen | gab sie sich mir ganz zu eigen!* (Canitz), now *Mit was für einem lieblichen, or welch lieblichem, &c. Ach, was ist's ein Mann!* (Goethe's *Egmont*, 1), now *Was ist's für ein Mann!* So weiß ich doch nun auch, auf was [now was für eine, or welcher] Art sich die Teufel danken (Schiller). *Was zahlt man Eintritt?* (Grillparzer's *Ein treuer Diener seines Herrn*, 2) (*Eintritt* here = *Eintrittsgeld*, now more commonly *Was zahlt man für Eintrittsgeld?*) *Was hast du hier [now usually + für] Geschäfte [in apposition with was or possibly a pl. partitive gen.]?* (Storm's *Ein Fest auf Haderslevhuus*, p. 258). *Zu was [now welchem] Zweck und Nutzen haben wir die weltliche Geschichte gelernt?* (Scheffel). In certain set expressions, however, the simple appositional construction has become established: *Was Wunder!* (the gen. here is also used: *Was Wunders, daß unser Dichter für diese in fast täglichem Verkehr vor ihm entfalteten Vorzüge nicht unempfindlich blieb — Johannes Scherr's Schiller*, II. chap. iii) *what wonder! was Teufel! Was der Teufel!* (Ebner-Eschenbach's *Verschollen*), but also with gen.: *Was Teufels einem doch plötzlich durch das Dach herein-schneien kann!* (Walther Siegfried's *Um der Heimat willen*, VIII). *Was Henker! Wes Geistes Kind ist er?* Of what mettle is he? *Wes Namens, Standes, Wohnorts seid ihr?* (H. v. Kleist). *Das preußische Kultusministerium hat in der Frage der marianischen Kongregationen gezeigt, wessen Geistes es ist (Hamburger Nachrichten, Feb. 24, 1905).* In some of these examples *was* or *wes* (recently also *wessen*, as in the preceding German sentence) is used almost or quite as an attributive adjective, and earlier in the period even assumed in the dat. of the fem. the form of a strong adjective: *Aus waser* (in revised editions was *für*) *macht thustu das?* (Matth. xxi. 23). In English, *what* has, indeed, become an attributive adjective in many cases, and can be used freely as such, while in German the appositional construction has in general been retained, and is usually, aside from certain groups described above, clearly marked as such by the *für* preceding the appositive. The construction with *for* is also found in older English:

What is he for a fool that betroths himself to unquietness? (Shakespeare's *Much Ado*, I, 3) In dialect and colloquial language the development of *was* here lies in the direction of the English in that *was* is often used attributively. Ne, was'n Jux, was'n Jux! (Adalbert Meinhardt's *Heiterkeit*, p. 71) for the literary *was für ein Jux!* or *welch ein Jux!* Also separated. Was gibst du mir denn gute Lehren, Mutter! (Georg Hirschfeld's *Ne'erwanderer*, p. 35) For other examples see 134. 2 d.

Wer was in M.H.G. like *was*, followed by a dependent partitive gen. as in *wer herren* which is now replaced by a prep. construction *wer von* or *unter den Herren*. Another stage of development in case of *was*, is found in early N.H.G. *müch't's erdenken?* (Spec. s. *Truhschloß* 91 196) Wen 1.) This old attributive use of *wer* & *es* survives in case 1. *ist nicht da?* "Wer er?" (Suttner's *Der seltsame Herr* III) (Isolde) Der (Carl) Wenn der? (Ernst Rosner's *Damenerung*, Act 4) Compare *Es ist kein Er, es ist eine Sie* (Ranke's *Frau Salome* XI).

2. Wer and was are used in questions direct and indirect. Wen meinen Sie? Ich weiß nicht, wen Sie meinen. Wer ist's? (a biographical dictionary by H. A. Degener) Who is who?

a. Wer can be limited by a relative clause. Wer, der es nicht mit Augen gesehen hat, vermag sich dies geheimnisvolle Gebiet auch nur vorzustellen? (H. Hoffmann's *Reinhold*, III p. 133) *What person who, &c.*

b. Was is much used colloquially after the statement of an opinion or idea to ask for a confirmation of the same from the person addressed. Hübsche Straße, was? It's a fine street, isn't it? Ich liebe schnelle Entschlüsse — Sie auch — was?

c. Sometimes *was* is used adverbially in the meaning of *how*. Was lachst du? Why do you laugh? It is also used sometimes like *wie* *how*. Was sind Sie glücklich! How happy you are!

148. Welcher, welche, welches *which, & lat.*, used adjectively or substantively. For inflection see 134. 1. Lx. Welches Buch ist das Ihre und welches ist das seinige?

Welches Buch ist das Ihre und welches ist das seinige?  
s ist länger,  
hre Brüder?  
Ergebnisse  
Welches die  
einstweilen

was is also used here but with a different shade of meaning. Was is more general while welcher inquiring to a general was) ist die Hauptstadt Rußlands?

149. Was für einer, eine, ein(e)s *what kind* For inflection see 134. 2.

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

150. There are no independent forms for the relative pronouns, but as such are used the demonstratives *der, die, das* (151) *who, which*, or the determinative (130. 3) *welcher, welche, welches* (152) *who, which*; the indefinites *wer who, whoever* (155 and 156), *was which, what, whatsoever* (153. 1; 157), the adverbial compounds *worn, worunter, &c.* (153. 2 A), or *darin, darunter, &c.* (153. 2 B), the adverbs *wo, woher, wohin* (153. 3 A), *wie* or *als* (153. 3 B, D (1)), *wie* (153. 3 C), *als, wenn, wann, wo, da, wie* (153. 3 C), *so viel* (153. 4), *so* (153. 5), *daß* (153. 3 C e), *dergleichen* (153. 3 D (3)), *derselbe* (153. 6), *was für ein* (153. 7), *wo* (153. 8), *als* (153. 8), *da denn* (238. 2 c Note 2).

They have in course of time developed a different word-order from the original demonstratives and indefinites and now require the verb to stand at the end of the clause. *diejenigen Fürsten sind die besten, die mit Aufopferung ihrer selbst des Volkes Wohl befördern.*

The parent language did not contain relative pronouns. Hence they are comparatively modern formations that have developed independently in the different languages and consequently vary widely in structure, altho at points a number of languages employ materials that were originally common to them all. Glances into their development are given in 154. Note, 153. 5 Note, and 130. 3.

151. *Inflection of the Relative Der.* 1. Der, die, das are inflected as the substantive forms of the demon. der, die, das (129. 1) except in the gen., where the forms dessen (masc. and neut. sing.), deren (fem. sing. and pl. for all genders) are used.

a. The forms of der are unaccented, thus differing from those of the demon. der; but the vowels except before ss are long and cannot be contracted, thus differing from those of the def. art. and resembling those of the demonstr.

b. In composition with the prepositions wegen *on account of*, um — willen *for the sake of*, halb(en) *on account of*, are the following corrupted gen. forms: dessent, gen. masc. and neut.; derent or deret, gen. fem. sing. and gen. pl. for all genders: der Mann, um dessentwillen; die Frau, um derentwillen; die Absicht, um deretwillen das Buch geschrieben ist (Dr. U. Zernial in *Anglia*, 1886, vol. IV, p. 27), &c. There is a pronounced tendency to restore the correct form: Jenes Vorrecht, um dessenwillen sich einst Bayern unterworfen hatte (Giesebrecht); das Weib, um dessenwillen ich Jahre lang alles getan und gesprochen und geopfert habe (H. Hoffmann's *Rittmeister*, II. p. 172). Auf jenem schönen Turm habe ich der das Wiederkommen versprochen, um derenwillen ich jetzt diese weite Reise mache (Storm's *St. Jürgen*). Das also war die, für die sie drangegeben, um derenwillen sie um ihr Leben betrogen und bestohlen worden war (Wildenbruch's *Vize-Mama*).

The short genitive des is often used here instead of dessent when the antecedent has a general or indefinite meaning or contains a collective idea: Alles das, um deswillen er fünf Jahre gelebt und gelitten hatte (Johannes Wilda's *Bei der Glockenboje*). Compare 153. 1. (1). a.

The preceding forms refer to antecedents. When the reference is to the thought contained in a sentence, the short gen. forms wes, or now less commonly des, are used in composition with wegen and halb(en): Vollkommenheit ist ein nie zu erreichendes Ziel, weshalb (or now less commonly deshalb) so wenige danach streben. Also wo/her or da/her (153. 3. A) and da denn (238. 2. c. Note 2) are sometimes used here. Earlier in the period also da'rum: Ich bin nicht werd | das du vnter mein Dach gehest | Darum ich auch mich selbs nicht würdig geachtet hab | das ich zu dir keme (Luke vii. 6-7).

If wegen precedes the relative, the regular uncorrupted long gen. forms are used: Sie passen zu dem dreibeinigen Halunken, wegen dessen wir hier versammelt sind! (Lienhard's *Till Eulenspiegel*, 1).

c. To give a clear formal expression to the idea of the dative relation the forms dessen and deren are sometimes still as occasionally also earlier in the period inflected like strong adjectives, when they stand before a masc. or a neut. noun in the dat. sing., altho they are in fact the gen. forms of the relative pronoun: die letzten Reste ihrer (i.e. der Häuser) Fundamente, in deren Kalkgehalt sich eine kleine aparte Flora häuslich eingerichtet hat (Fedor Sommer's *Ernst Reiland*, p. 197). See 129. 2. A. c.

d. Instead of the gen. forms dessen and deren the older forms des (formerly written deß) and der still occur, the former often earlier in the period but now only in poetry, the latter, der (fem. gen. sing. and gen. pl. for all genders), now little used in the plural but still often used in the fem. gen. sing. even in plain prose when it is the object of a preposition, verb, or adjective, but never when it modifies a noun in the attributive relation: Wo bist du, Faust, des Stimme mir erklang (Goethe's *Faust*, erster Teil, Nacht). Dann auf Wellen | fliegt der Mann, des Bild ich wirkte, in die Weite (Wildenbruch's *Die Lieder des Euripides*, p. 26). Fejervary hat die Regierung nach einer langen ministerlosen Zeit, während der (= deren) Graf Tisza die Geschäfte weitergeführt hatte, am 13. Juni übernommen (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Sept. 13, 1905). Die Frau, der er so liebeich gedachte (Eduard Engel's *Gutes Deutsch*, 152). Earlier in the period besides the short fem. gen. sing. and the gen. pl. form der there were the two longer forms deren and derer. Later derer became restricted to demonstrative use, but survivals of the older usage occur occasionally, especially after a preposition: Das dauerte wohl eine Minute, während derer ich mich nicht zu regen, kaum zu atmen, wagte (Spielhagen's *Was will der Mensch?*, I. chap. XI). Einige blingliche Minuten, während derer Frau Curtis die Augen geschlossen hielt (id., *Ein neuer Pharo*, p. 13).

e. The early N.H.G. occasional long form deren (fem. dat. sing.) has entirely given way to the short form der, as there seemed a desire, as in case of the demonstrative der, to distinguish, contrary to usage elsewhere in the inflection of fem. adjective forms, between the gen. and dat. sing.: O Fürstin, deren (now der) sich ein solcher Fürst verbunden (Weckherlin). The older short form den (dat. pl.) is now entirely replaced by denen.



f In the language of monarchical Germany the relative der höchst, Höchst, Hoch with reference to the antecedent seine "seine Durchlaucht Auf Annehmung Ihrer Königl. Hoheit der mit Genehmigung Sr Majestät des Kaisers, Allerhöchstend schließung ehrfurchtsvoller Dank geföhrt, erscheint zum hundertsten Geburtstage der Kaiserin Augusta der erste Teil einer Auswahl ihrer Aufzeichnungen und Briefe (Iul. Bullen in Deutsche Rundschau, 1911, p. 161)

g The relatives das and welches were earlier in the period employed like the identifying das (129. 2 C (1)) as the subject of the clause remaining unchanged for all genders and numbers. Unter andern hat er eine Sundflut gemalt, das etwas Einziges ist (Goethe). Die Luftkanäle anzubringen, welches kleine Rohren von gebrannter Erde waren (id.). Dies Buch nannte man den Shakespeare, welches der Verfasser desselben war (G. Keller). These relatives are now usually inflected and agree with the antecedent. The older usage is still sometimes found when the relative is used in a collective sense. Ich kenne den Bruder und die Schwester, welches beides (or more commonly welche beide) sehr achtungswerte Personen sind (D. Sanders). Different is the case where the relative is the predicate. See 153. 1 (3), towards end of art.

2 Where Der Is Not Used. Der is not used adjectively at all in which function it is replaced by forms of welcher: Er sagte „guten Tag,“ welchen Gruß sie freundlich erwiderte. Also in the expressions welch ersterer (or welcher erstere) the former of which and welch letzterer (or welcher letztere) the latter of which, where the substantive is understood. Das Bild stellt Johannes den Taucher und den Christusknaben dar, welch letzterer von dem Taucher in die Welt eingeföhrt wird.

3 Uses of Der. On the other hand in the substantive relation der is more frequent than welcher both in the literary language and in common conversation. The leading points as to use are as follows.

A Der, not welcher, is used in the gen. sing. and pl. if the gen. stands before the noun upon which it depends. Das Haus in der Kaiserstraße, dessen Besitzer wir kennen, ist feil. Elsewhere also the genitive of welcher is used with the limitation however that it is only employed in the plural and the feminine singular. Die alte Mauer, innerhalb deren or welcher jetzt nur ein Teil der Stadt liegt, wird bald abgebrochen werden.

It should be carefully noted that dessen and deren, differing from the English of which, of whom, must always precede the noun or pronoun upon which they depend and that the definite article before the governing noun is then dropped: das Gebäude, dessen Fenster geschlossen sind the building the windows of which are shut, Heldenlieder, bei deren jedem (in every one of which) sich eine reine Marchengestalt hinter einem geschichtlichen Namen verbirgt (Wundt's *Volkerpsychologie* II, p. 393). Sometimes apparent exceptions occur. Die Statistik, auf Grund deren Prof. Lorenz sein Werk aufbaute, erstreckte sich auf 419 Häuser (Hamburger Nachrichten, Oct. 18, 1904). The relative deren does not here depend upon the substantive Grund, but upon the two words auf Grund, which together have the force of a preposition and hence precede.

a In adjective use welcher must be used even if the gen. precedes the noun upon which it depends. Denk' an Goethe, welches Dichters Werke dir oft empfohlen wurden.

b Earl er in  
ber | verderbe d  
xiv 15) Denn  
(Mark vii 25)  
Got 4 2)

B Der is also usually employed when the relative refers to an interrogative, a personal or indefinite pronoun, or a noun in the vocative. Wer, der es nicht mit Augen gesehen hat, vermag sich dies geheimnisvolle Gebiet auch nur vorzustellen? (H. Hoffmann's *Rittmeister*, III p. 133). Er, der nur | gewöhnt ist zu befehlen und zu tun, | kennt nicht die Kunst, von weitem ein Gespräch | nach seiner Absicht langsam fein zu lenken (Goethe's *Iphigenie*, 1, 2). Jeder, der ihn kennt. Niemand, der ihn kennt. Especially after the indefinite

welch for sake of euphony: Mit dieser Sorte von Spiritisten habe ich nichts zu tun. In den spiritistischen Klubsitzungen treiben sich immer welche herum, die da im Trüben fischen (Blüthgen's *Die Spiritisten*, p. 275). After a vocative: Ha, Herr Graf, der Sie nicht nach Massa wollten (Lessing's *Emilia*, 3, 2). Much less commonly welcher: O Du Lamm Gottes, welches Du hinwegnimmst die Sünden der Welt (Lauff's *Pittje Pittjewitt*, p. 176).

a. If a personal pronoun referring to a vocative or repeating a personal pronoun of the first or second person already mentioned stands after the relative, which is very commonly the case when the relative is the subject of the verb, *der* is usually employed, and the verb must agree with the antecedent in person: unser Vater, *der* du bist im Himmel (Luther); du, *die* du alle Wunden heilest (Schiller) thou (friendship) who dost heal all wounds. The pronoun of the first or second person to which reference is made may be contained in a possessive: Und tröste dich an meinem größern Jammer, | *die* ich getan, *wo* du nur unterlassen (Grillparzer's *Medea*, 5.).

This construction originated in the fifteenth century and hence is younger than the two competing constructions described in *b*, but it is at present apparently the favorite.

Welcher, formerly little used here, is now beginning to compete here with *der*. For example see last sentence in B above.

*Note.* When such sentences are transferred to indirect discourse, the personal pronoun may be allowed to remain standing after the relative, altho it as well as its antecedent has become a third person in the indirect statement: Wie kannst du, *die* du es selbst gesehen hast, das bezweifeln? becomes Er wunderte sich, wie sie, *die* sie es selbst gesehen habe, das bezweifeln könne. The personal pronoun of the first or second person to which reference is made may be contained in a possessive: (independent form of indirect discourse; see 172. a) Sie hatte einmal gelesen: „Nichts ist ohne Zweck.“ Aber was war ihr Zweck? Ihr Zweck, *die* sie doch keine Blüte trieb. Sie war doch eine tote Frucht, sie war Tante (G. Ompteda's *Cacilie von Sarryn*, chap. xii).

b. Sometimes there is no personal pronoun after the relative as in the cases described in *a*, the verb, however, agreeing in the same manner with the antecedent in person: Unselige, *die* [du] mir aus deinen Höhen, | ein Meteor, verderblich niederstreifst (Goethe). This usage arose in O.H.G. under Latin models and in later times was favored by the example of French, which has the same construction, but it has never secured a firm foothold in German as in English. In the fifteenth century attempts were made to avoid the harsh clash here between the third person form of the relative *der* and the first or second person of the verb by inserting a personal pronoun of the first or second person after the relative and thus bringing the old historic foreign construction nearer to German feeling. This is the now common construction described in *a*. Much earlier a more simple way out of the difficulty was found, a pure German construction, in O.H.G. rare, later more common, and still quite frequent, but never as yet prevailing over the construction in *a*. The clash between the third person form *der* and the first and second person of the verb was avoided by placing the verb in the third person, thus bringing it into harmony with the relative: O.H.G. fater unser, *der* ist in himilom (*Freisinger Paternoster*, Emmeram MS.) = N.H.G. Vater unser, *der* im Himmel ist. Ich bin Gabriel, *der* fur Gott stehet (Luther; Luke I. 19). Was kann ich tun, *der* selber hilflos ist? (Schiller). Wir, *die* Bergmann und Virchow (professors) hörten, haben den Eindruck usw. (*Westermanns Monatshefte*, Feb. 1912, p. 897).

The verb cannot of course be controlled by the relative if some other word is subject: O du, *den* ich suchte von meiner Kindheit an.

The verb is in the third person if the pronoun to which the subject refers is in the third person: Er, *der* es weiß.

The relative *welcher* is sometimes used instead of *der*: Du, *welcher* der Welt die Komödien des Plautus wiedergegeben hast (K. F. Meyer).

*Note.* If the reference is to the polite form *Sie* referring to one individual, the relative and, provided the third person is employed, also its verb are in the sing., altho *Sie* is grammatically in the 3rd person pl.: Das weiß eben niemand besser zu beurteilen, als eben *Sie*, *der* meine Mutter so gut kennt.

c. The construction with the verb in the third person is still much used, but the newer form in *a* seems in general more common and in *one* case *must* be employed, as ambiguity might otherwise arise. If there are two pronouns in the principal clause, one in the first or second person, the other the unin-

flected *es*, the construction which repeats the personal pronoun after the relative should be chosen, if the *es* is predicate and the relative refers to the pronoun of the first or second person, which is itself the subject of the principal clause; but the construction which drops the personal pronoun and puts the dependent verb in the third person is of course used if the *es* is the grammatical subject and the following relative clause the real subject of the main verb. *Wer ist unglücklich? Ich (subject) bin es (predicate), der ich meine Eltern verloren habe* *Who is unhappy? I am, I who have lost my parents*, but *Ich (predicate) bin es (subject; see 251. II B a ca), der seine Eltern verloren hat* *It is I who have lost his parents*. In the second sentence the verb of the main clause is attracted into the person of the predicate *ich*, which stands before it, and hence it does not agree with its real subject. The relative here is usually *der* according to C.

C. In subject and object clauses where the relative is equal to *derjenige* *welcher*, we usually find *der*: Subject clause *Selig sind, die Gottes Wort hören und bewahren*. Accusative clause *Lehre, die dir folgen wollen, deine Wege*. Dative clause *Ehre, dem Ehre gebührt*. Notice that in these clauses the partitive idea is expressed by the appositional construction, not by the genitive or the preposition *von*: *Die wir viel gelitten, wir scheuen uns davor, die dunkelsten, verborgensten Tiefen des eigenen Herzens zu durchleuchten* (Heyking's *Briefe, die ihn nicht erreichten*, p. 232) *Those of us who, &c.* Also when the provisional subject *es* precedes, the relative of subject clauses is usually *der*: *War ich's, der ihm sein Glück zerstörte?* See also B c. Where the predicate is a noun or pronoun and *precedes* the subject, as in the last sentence, *welcher* is also often used. *Er selbst war es gewesen, welcher dem Freunde die letzten Liebesdienste erwiesen hatte* (Marriot's *Der geistliche Tod*, chap. xvii). *Welch-* is much rarer in object clauses. *Und sicherst deinen Kindern großes Gut: | sie dürfen nennen, welche sie gebar* (Grillparzer's *Medea*, 1). Earlier in the period *welch-* was used freely in subject and object clauses, but with a different shade. See *a* below.

*Wer* is also employed in subject and object clauses, but with a different meaning, namely, with generalizing or indefinite force. See 156.

*a* In early N.H.G. *welcher* was used in subject clauses with general or indefinite force just as *wer* (see 156) is now employed. *Welcher isset | der isset dem HErrn* (Rom. xiv. 6). See also Rom. xiv. 2, 3. *Der* is also much used in subject clauses, but with a different shade of meaning, namely, with individualizing force. Compare 130. 2 b. Later *wer* replaced *welcher* here for general or indefinite reference, and *welcher* assumed the definite force of *der* and often became interchangeable with it. *Welcher* is not, however, used here in subject and object clauses so much as *der*, and cannot be used so freely, as it is limited to the cases where the predicate is a noun or pronoun and precedes the subject. Compare 130. 3.

D. *Der* is usually employed in predicate clauses (270. 1): *Du bist nicht, der du scheinst* (Fulda's *Talisman*, 1, 1). In early N.H.G. *welcher* was sometimes used here, but it has not become well established: *Welchen (now usually den) ich küssen werde | der ist's* (Mark xiv. 41). Compare 130. 3. *Wer* is now used here if the relative has a general or indefinite meaning: *Ach Vaterchen, wir (in a broad general sense) bleiben, wer wir sind* (Fulda's *Talisman*, 1, 10). In early N.H.G. *welcher* was quite common here. Compare C. *a*

2. *Welcher* is much used in some parts of Germany, where it is preferred to *der*, and is, in general, very useful where a number of relatives occur in the sentence in relieving *der*, thus varying the construction, especially where one relative depends upon a word in another relative clause. Or, on the other hand, *der* may relieve *welcher*; and indeed it is more common in case there are two relatives to use first *welcher* and then *der*: *Es ist eine Reihe von Jahren her, als zu dem Artillerieregiment, welches hier in Garnison steht, ein Hauptmann versetzt wurde, der aus dem Westen Deutschlands kam (Wildenbruch)*. Grammarians usually state that either *der* or *welcher* can be used in parallel clauses depending upon the same word, but that they should not relieve each other: *Worte, deren Sinn man einmal gefaßt, die man sich einmal ins Gedächtnis eingeprägt hat*. Even good authors do not always follow this rule, but sometimes prefer to change relatives for the sake of variety of expression, or as in the following sentence to heighten a contrast: *Ich beginne meine Geschichte mit unbegrenztem Wohlwollen sowohl gegen Mitwelt und Nachwelt, als auch gegen mich selber und alle mir im Lauf der Erzählung vorübergleitenden Schattenbilder des großen Entstehens, Seins und Vergehens—des unendlichen Werdens, welches man Weltentwicklung nennt, welches freilich ein wenig interessanter und reicher als dieses Buch ist, das aber auch nicht, wie dieses Buch, in drei Teilen zu einem befriedigenden Abschluß kommen muß (Raabe's *Hungerpastor*, chap. i).*

a. Some grammarians claim that *welch-*, not *der*, should be used if the relative is preceded by the demonstrative *der* and followed by the article *der*, to avoid an unpleasant repetition; but the colloquial language does not seem to be averse to this combination, as the words are so differently accented that they receive quite a different pronunciation: *Ach, das (i.e. die Schneider the daddy-long-legs) sind die, die die langen Beine haben (Fontane's *Stechlin*, XXX).* H. Seidel in his story *Die weißen Ratten* facetiously calls attention to a warning notice in a public park which shows a too liberal use of this repetition: *Die, die die, die die Anlagen beschädigen, zur Anzeige bringen, erhalten fünf Taler Belohnung*.

### 153. *Der* and *Welcher* Replaced by Other Words.

Both *der* and *welcher* are replaced by other words in the following cases:

1. *Was*. In the nom. and acc. relation *was* is usually employed under the following circumstances:

(1) If the antecedent is a word of general or indefinite meaning, or expresses a collective idea, such as *das, einiges, eins, das einzige, etwas (or was), solches, ein anderes, nichts, mehreres, manches, viel(es), allerhand, allerlei, das bißchen, wenig, genug*, an ordinal, as *das Erste, das Zweite*, with especial frequency *alles*, also a neuter abstract noun or adjective-substantive (*das Schöne the beautiful, &c.*, especially a superlative, *das Beste that which is best*), also a neuter noun denoting a material or a collective idea, provided the reference is to an indefinite mass or amount: *Eins aber weiß ich, was ihr nicht mehr wißt: was Recht und Unrecht, Gut und Böse ist (Hauptmann's *Ver-sunkene Glocke*, p. 106).* *Sie sprach wie von etwas, was sie gar nichts anging (H. Böhlau's *Rangierbahnhof*, p. 43).* Infolge davon (in consequence of grouping conjugational forms in accordance with their meaning) hat sie (i.e. die traditionelle Grammatik) zum Teil solches, was formal zusammengehört, voneinander getrennt, und solches, was formal verschieden ist, vereinigt (Brugmann's *Vergleichende Grammatik*, II, III. Teil, p. 42). Sie sah aber nichts, was um sie vorging. Es gibt im Leben so manches, was uns rätselhaft erscheint. Freilich vieles, vielleicht sehr vieles, was dieser und jener noch wünschen würde, fehlt (Fuchs's *Deutsches Wörterbuch*, Vorwort). Und das Dritte, was der modernen Kunst als Schwäche anhäftet, ist ihr Streben, nur ästhetisch sein zu wollen (Otto Lyon in *Zeitschrift für den deutschen Unterricht*, 1905, p. 5). Er sprach mit ihm vertraulich von allem, was ihm nahestand. Er verzweifelt überhaupt an allem Heil, was der Menschheit durch die Gesellschaft zu teil werden kann (Albert Geiger in *Die Nation*, 10th March, 1900). Man kann das ja nicht im entferntesten ausdrücken: das Mysterium, was sich damals vollzog (Hauptmann's *Michael Kramer*, Act 3). Alles Weh, was

er mir bereitet hat (Fontane's *Schach von Wuthenow*, chap. xxi). Das Häßliche, was in seinem Gesichte lag, wurde durch sein gefälliges Benehmen zurückgedrängt. Er preiset das Höchste, das Beste, was das Herz sich wünscht (Schiller). Um ihn her war alles Getier lebendig, was auf der Heide die Junischwüle auszubrüten pflegt (Storm's *Ein grünes Blatt*). Das wenige Geld, was ich besaß, war in den nächsten Tagen vertan (Raabe's *Die Leute aus dem Walde*, chap. x). Wenn damals ein Säemann gekommen wäre, ein kluger, wahrhaft kluger, herzenskluger, und die Saat gestreut hätte, aus der Heil für die Menschen aufgeht, einzig und allein, Vergebung, Vergebung, Vergebung, statt des tauben, toten Zeugs, was so schöne Schulmeisternamen hat, Zucht und Ordnung, heilsame Strenge, und wie es heißt usw. (Wildenbruch's *Neid*, p. 127).

Was often points to a definite person or thing, the speaker at first intentionally making the reference indefinite by the use of *was*, reserving the definite information for the last part of the statement: Das erste, was ihnen hier begegnete, war die Krügersfrau (Fontane's *Vor dem Sturme*, IV. 3).

*Was* is also used here contemptuously of a person: Was ist das für ein ungebackenes Brötchen (referring to Emil), was da hinten sitzt und mitspricht (H. Böhlau's *Rangierbahnhof*, p. 208).

The use of *was* as described above seems to be the outcome of a long process of differentiation. Earlier in the period *das* and *welches* were also used here. This older usage is still, especially in elevated diction, not infrequently found, as the process of differentiation is not yet completed: Vieles, das diesem Volke gut hieß (Nietzsche's *Zarathustra*, p. 80). It is possible that there is often here an intentional use of *das* or *welches* by way of differentiation, to refer to something definite, definite at least to the speaker: Herr v. Körber erwiderte, er erachte die Schaffung einer provisorischen Fakultät als das einzig Richtige, das die Regierung vorläufig tun könnte (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Nov. 7, 1904). Das Höchste und das Beste, das der Deutschlehrer in Schule und Universität leistet, kann immer nur Anregung sein (Friedrich Kluge, in Marburg, 1913). We cannot, however, in many cases on account of the lack of clearness in the thought absolutely determine whether the *das* or *welches* is used merely as a survival of older usage to indicate a collective idea or something indefinite or general, or is employed intentionally in accordance with modern usage elsewhere, to refer to something definite. Thus *das* and *welches* are now as formerly still used with both of these two groups of meanings, with a tendency, however, toward the second group, while *was*, which also once fluctuated between both of them, is now established in the first group, as described above.

(a) In the genitive relation, *wessen* is sometimes used under the same circumstances which require *was* in the nom. or acc. relation: Es handelt sich, Helmuth, nicht um *das*, *wessen* Du bedarfst, sondern es handelt sich um *das*, *wessen* die Kinder bedürfen (Fontane's *Unwiederbringlich*, chap. vi). Indessen beunruhigte ihn *das*, was ich ihm von dem Betragen seines Vaters in dieser Angelegenheit sagte, und alles, *wessen* er ohnehin von ihm gewärtig sein zu müssen glaubte (R. Huch's *Ludolf Ursleu*, chap. xxvi). The older form *dessen* (or *dessent-*) is still the usual construction here, especially where as in the preceding paragraph the reference becomes a little more definite: *das* Gleiche, *dessen* sie ihre Gegner anklagten (Keller's *Seldwyla*, I. p. 194); *das* unaussprechlich Innige aller Musik, vermöge *dessen* sie als ein ganz vertrautes Paradies an uns vorüberzieht (Schopenhauer's *Die Welt als Wille und Vorstellung*, p. 347). Der Nebensatz kleidet meist *dasjenige* in Worte, um *dessentwillen* die Periode ausgesprochen wird (Armin Dittmar's *Syntaktische Grundfragen*, p. 8). Also *des* is used here. See 151. b (2nd par.)

(b) In the dative relation *wem* is not used here. The old dative form *dem* is still uniformly employed: Wir müssen *das* für recht halten, *dem* es der Verstand zuspricht (Felix Stahl in *Preussische Jahrbücher*, 1915, vol. 159, p. 302).

(2) With reference to a thing; *was* is now usually used in substantive clauses. The student should remember this especially in case of clauses which are in apposition with *es*: *Nicht Furcht war es, was seine verstellte Hartnäckigkeit endlich besiegte* (Schiller). *Steht auf! sind's diese nicht und dieser Ort, | was euch zu Boden zieht* (Grillparzer's *Libussa*, 1). *Es ist nicht Furcht, was mich bewegt* (Hebbel's *Agnes Bernauer*). *Es war eine große Neigung, was sie zusammenführte* (Fontane's *Stechlin*, XIII. p. 164). *War es ein Traum, was sie erlebten?* (Wildenbruch's *Neid*, p. 61).

Thruout the entire present period *das* is more or less frequently found in substantive clauses instead of *was* as a survival of older usage: *Was ist's, das den Befehl des Königs hindert?* (Goethe's *Iphigenie*, 4, 2). *Was war es nur gewesen, das alle Menschen zu ihm hinzog?* (R. Huch's *Ludolf Ursleu*, chap. xxxvii).

When the predicate of the sentence precedes the relative clause, as in the preceding examples, the relative (either *der* or *welcher*) is very often attracted to the gender and number of the predicate: *Der Zweifel ist's, der Gutes böse macht* (Goethe's *Iphigenie*, 5, 3). *Denn eben diese kaiserliche Mild' und Gnade ist's, die sie bisher so ungeheuer mißbrauchten* (Goethe's *Götz*, 3, 1). *Diese Fragen und andere mehr waren es, welche die untern Räume des Hauses bewegten* (Raabe's *Frühling*, chap. xiii).

(3) In descriptive clauses where the reference is to the idea contained in a whole sentence: *Sie fürchtete wohl — was auch wirklich geschah — daß ich ihr auf alle mögliche Weise die Verbindung widerraten würde*. In the classics of the eighteenth century *welches* was still used here as in older German, indeed more commonly than *was*, and it even occurs sometimes in the language of to-day. For the sake of emphasis or a contrast both *was* and *welches* may be used here in the same sentence: *Davon sagte er zu niemandem etwas, was freilich ein Vergehen war, aber welches ihm vorzuwerfen mir, seinem Sohne, nicht ziemt* (R. Huch's *Ludolf Ursleu*, chap. xvi). The employment of *welch* here in early N.H.G. is explained by the general indefinite meaning that very commonly lay in *welch* in earlier usage. As it gradually acquired more definite force with definite reference to a particular person or thing it was gradually replaced here by the new general indefinite *was*. In M.H.G. and early N.H.G. *das* was used here, but as its force was felt as too definite it was gradually replaced by *welch*.

*Welches* should not be employed if ambiguity might arise from its use: *Er hat den Verkauf abgeschlossen, was (or sometimes welches) ich ihm widerraten hatte*, but *Mein Freund hat ein neues Haus gekauft, was* (referring to the fact of the purchase, but *welches* or *das* if the reference is to the house itself) *mir gefällt*.

A reference to the former or latter of two ideas is expressed by *was ersteres*, *was letzteres*: *Man baute eiserne Treppen, die von den Logengängen direkt ins Freie führten, was nutzt das aber? Sie sind zu steil und werden nie benutzt. Jetzt steckt man neuerdings ein Heidengeld hinein, um ein neues Gestühl und Gänge im Parkett anzubringen, was letzteres (the latter of which procedures, i.e., putting in new seats and aisles) allerdings sehr begrüßenswert ist* (Alfred Frhr. von Mensi in *Hamburger Nachrichten*, Oct. 27, 1905).

Both *was* and (less commonly) *welches* are used when the relative refers collectively to two or more things or ideas in the preceding proposition: *Sein Pelz hängt an der Wand zwischen einer Auswahl stark angerauchter Pfeifen, zwischen Bastbündeln, Hirschgeweihen, Leinwandsäckchen mit Sämereien, was alles im behaglichen Durcheinander sich darstellt* (H. Böhlau's *Rangierbahnhof*, p. 5). *So erkannte er, daß jenes Fenster nicht nach dem Flusse hinausging, vielmehr sich zwei Fuß hoch über der sichern Erde befand, welches (more commonly was) beides er bei etlicher Besonnenheit ohne große Geistesanstrengung genau hätte wissen können* (H. Hoffmann's *Rittmeister*, III. p. 41).

In another case *welches* is still not infrequent—when the relative is used as a predicate and the reference is not to individuals but to the idea contained

in some adjective or noun Mein Bruder ist reich or ein Millionär, welches (or perhaps more commonly was) ich nicht bin

(4) Was is now avoided in choice language if the reference is to one object See 157. Earlier in the period, however, this usage was not infrequent even in the best authors, and still survives in loose colloquial speech Otfried erinnerte sich jedes Wortes, was gesprochen ward (Goethe) Ihr wollt das Gut verkaufen, was über zweihundert Jahre in der Familie ist? (Halbe's Mutter Erde, I p 52)

2 *Prepositional Relative Adverbs* When the relative pronoun refers to a thing, it is very often replaced after prepositions by a compound adverb consisting of wo or wor (before a vowel) and the desired preposition die Feder, womit ich dieses schreibe, ist sehr schlecht These compound adverbs can not be freely formed, but occur only in case of the preps enumerated in 141 5 B This adverbial construction can even be used of persons if taken collectively Er bekam 30 gefangen, wo'von auf der Stelle 20 aufgehängt wurden These compounds are separable in popular speech Es war ein Loch, wo der Wind durch piff. See also B below

A Besides these relative adverbs the appropriate forms of der and welcher, as mit dem, mit welchem, &c. are also employed here Altho the relative adverbs are still common in popular and colloquial speech as in older usage there is in choice language whether spoken or in nominal forms Es war eine Nacht, in der or Lies nicht solche Bücher, aus denen du nichts lernst (Goethe) In denen eine Regierung selbständig nachpo- (Hamburger Nachrichten April 29 1921) The adverbial forms however are widely used in the three following categories in the first and third of which it is the usual form of expression (1) In descriptive clauses where the antecedent is a whole sentence Der Vater hatte nach dem Sohne geschickt, wovon dieser freilich nichts erfahren hatte In the cases given in 2 above where the adverbial forms are not used der must still be employed even when the antecedent is a whole sentence Ich bin sehr gedrückt, insofern dessen ich nicht arbeiten kann With the prepositions wegen and halb the short gen form of was, i.e. wes, is usually used See 151 1 b (2) When the antecedent is an expres-

the use of the relative adverb Er hat ihm viele Vorwürfe gemacht, von denen (with reference to Vorwürfe, wovon would refer to the statement of the main proposition) aber nichts in die Öffentlichkeit gekommen ist. (2) The relative pronoun der and welcher is also usually employed when it refers back to the general or indefinite determinatives der, derjenige Der liebe Gott gebe ihrer Seele das, zu dem (or wozu) er sie geschaffen, Freude As can be seen by the form in parentheses the relative adverb is also employed here in accordance with the once more general usage after indefinites but the present tendency is toward the use of a pronominal form der or welcher, as there is an aversion to the employment of an adverb in the function of a pronoun Bei den Sachen habe ich eine vielleicht willkürliche Auswahl getroffen, habe dasjenige verzeichnet, von dem ich glaube, daß man es leichter und lieber hier nachschlagen würde als in der Inhaltsübersicht (Behagels Die deutsche Sprache Vorwort 2nd ed.) In the accusative relation by the use of was we can give expression to the general indefinite idea here and at the same time avoid the adverbial form Die Kenntnisse dessen, um was man neidet (Felix Stahl in Preussische Jahrbücher 1915 p 293)

present usage requires the relative der or welcher will, das Unmögliche, vor das er sie gestellt hat involved with reference back to two or more things already mentioned the relative was accompanied by the appositive alles is used Er tüftelte über diese Dinge, deren Zweckmäßigkeit und den Kostenpunkt, über die Jahreshoffnungen und den Stand der Feldfrüchte, von was allem er nicht den Teufel (223 A B d) verstand (Gottfried Keller's Die drei gerechten Kammmacher)

B Instead of the relative adverb we still find sometimes the construction which was very common earlier in the period An lag das Haus drin (now more commonly in dem or worin wohnten (Fontane) These adverbial compounds are now little used with reference to the thought in a preceding sentence but this usage was common earlier in the period Die Gesellschaft lachte, und er herzlich mit, bis er in einen Husten verfiel der unsern Diskurs eine Zeit lang unterbrach darauf denn der junge Mensch wieder das Wort nahm (Goethe's Werther am 1. Julius) See also 151 1 b 3rd par (last sentence)

Earlier in the period such adverbs also referred to persons and were often separable ein Weib, da der Mann keine Freude an hat (Luther) den Berg, da du auf wohnest (Luther)

C. This adverbial construction, except in the case mentioned in 2 above, must not be used of persons, as is often heard in the language of the common people: *Der Freund, mit dem or welchem (not womit) ich gereist bin.* Earlier in the period, however, these adverbs were also used with reference to persons even in the literary language: *der, womit man spricht* (Hagedorn); *das Mädchen, wovon du gestern das Lied sangst* (Goethe). *Ich dachte der lieben Brüder, der Westfalen, womit ich so oft in Göttingen getrunken* (Heine).

3. *Other Relative Adverbs.* Other adverbs and conjunctions can also take the place of the relatives after prepositions and sometimes elsewhere.

A. *Place.* *Wo, wo'her, wo'hin*, or in choice prose and poetry *da, da'her, da'hin*, for place: *Der Platz, wo (= an welchem) er stand; die Stadt, woher (= von welcher) er kam; die Stadt, wohin (nach welcher) er geht.* Also figuratively: *Fälle, wo* cases in which. The idea of place in *wo'her* (common form) and *da'her* (in choice language) often goes over into that of cause, *in consequence of which*: *Das war der Gewaltige, den das Land nur mit unterdrückter Empörung als das Geschöpf und Werkzeug der Despotenlaune nannte, der aber den Zauber einer bezwingenden persönlichen Liebenswürdigkeit besaß, daher er in der Familie ebenso geliebt wie anderwärts gehaßt und gefürchtet war* (Isolde Kurz in *Deutsche Rundschau*, Sept. 1905).

B. *Manner, Degree.* *Wie* for manner and *als* or *now* also *wie* for degree: *Die Art und Weise, wie (= in welcher) er auftrat. Seit jenem Tag verfolgt mich sein Vertrauen | in gleichem Maß, als ihn das meine flieht* (Schiller's *Piccolomini*, 1, 3). *Sie errichten Verschanzungen in dem Maße, wie sie vordringen* (*Hamb. Nachr.*, Oct. 25, 1905).

C. *Time:*

a. *Als when*, if actual occurrences or conditions are recorded: *im Jahre 1890, als ich in Berlin studierte.*

b. *Wenn or wann* (now rather infrequent, occurring only as a survival of earlier usage) *when*, if not a definite actual occurrence is before the mind, but something that is or was wont to happen, or a point in future time: *An schönen Abenden, wenn wir vor der Tür sitzen. Manchmal in tiefer Nacht, wenn alles rings umher ruhte, sang sie mir. O schöner Tag, wenn endlich der Soldat | ins Leben heimkehrt, in die Menschlichkeit* (Schiller's *Piccolomini*, 1, 4).

c. *Wo when*, the most common of the temporal particles used either of actual occurrences or conditions in the past or present, or of some point in the future, largely replacing *als* in case of present and often *wenn* in case of future time: *Und mit der Dämmerung kam ein Augenblick, wo jede Stimme verstummte* (Raabe). *Ich bin in einem Alter, wo mir die schönen Worte nichts mehr helfen* (Halbe's *Mutter Erde*, p. 75). *Ich war in den glücklichen Jahren, wo uns alles gefällt. Einst kommt der Morgen, wo ich . . . die Burg schon früh' verlasse* (Hebbel's *Nibelungen*, II. 1, 2).

d. *Da* is often used instead of *wo*, quite commonly earlier in the period and not infrequently still in choice prose: *Bis den Augenblick, da mich Ihr Billet aus dem Schläfe weckt* (Goethe). *Trotz des Zwischenfalls scheint die Zeit nicht mehr allzufern, da England findet, daß usw.* (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Nov. 5, 1904).

e. Also the conjunction *daß* is used in a few expressions of time, especially after *Mal, Zeit*, where however it is now more commonly replaced in most cases by other words: *Das letzte Mal, daß (or-als) ich ihn sah, war er wohl*, but still regularly: *Freunde, dies ist wohl das letzte Mal, daß ich den Krug euch führe zum Munde* (Goethe). *Die Zeit, daß (or während) du hier bist*, but *die Zeit als (or wo, not daß) du ankamst. Während der Zeit, daß (or in der) ich Don Karlos ausarbeitete, hat sich in mir vieles verändert* (Schiller). *Während der Viertelstunde, daß (or in der) ich diese kleine weiße Hand in der meinigen gehalten habe, hat das Herz des jungen Dinges fast zweitausend Schläge getan* (Raabe's *Frühling*, chap. xiii). *Die drei Monate — die kurze Zeit, daß (or während) ich hier bei euch futtere (colloq. eat, board), bin ich zwanzig Pfund schwerer geworden* (M. Dreyer's *Drei*, 1).

f. Sometimes *wie* is found instead of the more common *als* or *wo*: *Es fällt in die Zeiten, wie ich die von Miltenberg in der Wirtsstube fand* (Goethe).



D. *Such as*. The English *such as* is translated in various ways:

(1) By *wie* (earlier in the period *als*) followed usually by a personal pronoun of the third person or sometimes in the plural in case of indefinite reference *solche* referring to the antecedent (see 251. II. A. d): *Es war eine Kälte, wie sie nur im Februar erlaubt ist. Das war ein Kampf, wie ihn keiner noch gesehen hat. Er zeigte eine Rührung, wie jener kleine Dienst sie gar nicht wert war. A solch, derartig, derlei, dergleichen, so may precede the wie (als): Solche (derartige, derlei, dergleichen, so große) Schiffe, wie (sie) hier gebaut werden, sieht man anderwärts selten. Grammatische Verstöße, wie solche die Umgangssprache der besseren Wiener Kreise verunstalten, kommen in der guten Berliner Gesellschaft nicht vor (Suttner's Die Waffen nieder!, II, p. 170). Dergleichen schlechte Übersetzer, als (now wie) ich Ihnen bekannt gemacht habe, sind unter der Kritik (Lessing). So ein armes Mädchen, als (now wie) ich bin (Goethe).*

Instead of the personal pronoun or *solch-* we also find *ein-* in the sing. and *welche, viele, wenige* in the pl.: *Auf der Stirn hat es ein Horn, aber nicht ein so krummes wie das Nashorn eins hat. . . . Von seinen vier Hufen ist der eine von Gold, . . . der vierte wie einer von den blauen Steinen, wie Mama welche um den Hals trägt (Wildenbruch's Neid, p. 100). So hat er (Raimund) sich hier als ein Volksdichter bewährt, ein Volksdichter im wahrsten, echten und schönsten Sinn des Wortes, wie Deutschland ihm nicht viele an die Seite zu stellen hat (A. Sauer's Ferdinand Raimund). Lehrhaft ohne Aufdringlichkeit ist es (Grillparzer's Der Traum, ein Leben) ein Volksstück der edelsten Art, wie die deutsche Literatur deren wenige besitzt (id., Festeide).*

To express the partitive idea the genitive *deren* or *ihrer* is sometimes used instead of the nominative or accusative of the pronoun: *Unweit wird die heilige Wiese sich befunden haben, wie deren in diesem Kulte oft vorkommen (Wilamowitz-Moellendorff's Griechische Tragödien, I. p. 105). Briefe, wie ich deren häufig erhielt. See also 255. II. 1. II. c.*

The pronoun is sometimes omitted, the *wie* or *als* serving as a relative as in English the conjunction *as*: *Denn selten steht neben dem Perfektum des Nebensatzes dasselbe Tempus im Hauptsatz, außer in solchen Fällen, wie oben besprochen sind (H. Blase in Historische Grammatik der lateinischen Sprache, III, p. 169). In general some pronoun in connection with *wie* is more common than the employment of simple *wie*, while in English simple *as* is alone used. In older English, however, an accompanying pronoun is sometimes found: *Such young knyghtes as he is one ben neuer abydyng in no place (Caxton's Blanchardyn and Eglantine).**

(2) After *solch-* also by the usual relatives: *solche Bücher, die dazu beitragen, das Herz zu beruhigen.*

(3) By *dergleichen* (uninflected): *Es überfiel ihn ein Unbehagen, dergleichen er in seinem Leben noch nicht empfunden hatte. See also 161. 2.*

E. English *as* = a thing or fact which is translated by *wie* or *was*: *Er war Engländer, wie (or was) sie an seinem Akzent bemerkten.*

4. *Soviel*. *Soviel* is used relatively: *Die Fremden, soviel ihrer anwesend waren, unterhielten sich gut.*

5. *So*. In the same way as . . .  
used for  
language in  
er ihm abge  
Rummel au

Note. This *so* was originally a demonstrative adverb, i.e. a determinative (184. Note) pointing to the following asyndetic (184. Note) relative clause, just as the determinative *der* and *so* described in 184. Note. Later this *so*, just as *der*, developed into a relative.

6. *Derselbe*. Earlier in the period *derselbe* was used occasionally as a relative, but this usage is now quite rare: *So hielten sie mich acht Tage im Gefängnis, nach Verlauf derselben (now nach deren Verlauf) sie mich zum Verhör holen ließen (Goethe). Die Kreise zu überschauen, innerhalb derselben (now deren) sich jene hohen Geister bewegten (Heine).*

7. *Was Für Ein*. In concessive clauses *was für ein* is used relatively: *Was er für Handelsgeschäfte beginnt, er gewinnt bei allen.*

8. *Popular Relative Forms.* The relatives *der* and *welcher* are not popular with the common people, and are often here replaced by the demonstrative *der*, the relative adverbs *wo* and *als*, the adverbial compounds *womit* (see 2. C above), &c., and the uninflected *was*: Ach Vater, sagte Hänsel, ich sehe nach meinem weißen Kätzchen, das sitzt oben auf dem Dach (Grimm's *Märchen*). Das schlechte Messer, wo (= das) er hat (Hebel). Ist doch all manche zu Rang und Stand gekommen, wo (= der, fem. dat. sing.) man's nicht an der Wiege gesungen hat, daß die mal wird gnädige Frau heißen und vierlang fahren (Halbe's *Das tausendjährige Reich*, p. 43). Wer sind die, wo (= welche) eben gekommen sind? (ib., p. 63). Das Quecksilber in der Röhre ist demjenigen, als in dem Köhllein steht, gleich (Hebel). Der Knecht, was mit'm Wagen war, hat so was dergleichen g'redt (Anzengruber). Compare *als* in the next to the last sentence with the cognate relative *as* that is used in older English and is still found in popular English: Those *as* sleep and think not on their sins (Shakespeare's *Merry Wives of Windsor*, 5, 5). Compare *was* in the sentence from Anzengruber with English *what* as used in popular speech: If I had a donkey *what* wouldn't go.

9. For the use of *da* denn as a relative see 238. 2. c. Note 2.

### 154. Relative not Omitted in German.

Neither *der* nor *welcher* can be omitted as so often the relative in English: Das Buch, das (or welches) ich gestern gelesen habe, ist interessant The book I read, &c.

*Note.* In older periods the relative was often lacking in German: In droume sie in zeltun den weg sie faran scoltun (Otfrid's *Evangelienbuch*, I. 17. 74) In a dream they (the angels) told them the way *they should* go. In this primitive construction the relative clause *sie faran scoltun* is, as so often in English, merely placed alongside of the principal proposition without a relative pronoun, i.e. without a connective to indicate its subordination to the principal proposition, but the weakened demonstrative (i.e. the article) *den* before *weg* in fact points graphically as with an index finger to the following modifying asyndetic clause, i.e. a clause not introduced by a connective. When a demonstrative thus points to a following clause which determines or modifies the thought we often call it a determinative. Often in oldest German the determinative for clearness' sake was repeated after the noun and stressed: Bigan tho druhtin redinon den selben zuelf theganon, | then thar umbi inan sazun (ib. IV. 10. 1) Then the Lord began to speak to the twelve disciples *who sat there about Him*, lit. to those [they] sat there about Him. The *then* is a dative plural as it is governed by the verb of the principal proposition. Often in Otfrid's language under Latin influence the repeated determinative assumes the case form required by the verb of the subordinate clause and thus passes from the principal proposition to the subordinate clause, i.e. the determinative becomes a relative pointing backward and asyndetic hypotaxis is replaced by formal hypotaxis (267. 4), the inwardly or logically subordinate clause receiving in the relative pronoun an outward sign of subordination.

The primitive asyndetic relative construction disappeared in German for the most part in the seventeenth century. The form without the repeated demonstrative is sometimes preserved after the determinative *der* when it refers to persons: Der mich liebt (asyndetic relative clause), ist in der Weite He *who loves me is far away*. Du bist nicht, der du scheinst! You are not the one or the man you seem to be. Die ich meine, heißt Frau Findeklee (Hauptmann's *Versunkene Glocke*, I. 1047) The woman I mean is called Mrs. F. It is used here in German where the omitted pronoun is in the subject, predicate, or object relation, while in English it is only freely used where the omitted pronoun is predicate or object. On the other hand, it is used in English after nouns as well as the determinative *the one* and is used with reference to things as well as persons. Moreover, it is much more common in English, for in German the *der* is usually repeated, i.e. the asyndetic construction is replaced by formal hypotaxis with the relative pronoun: Die, die ich meine, heißt Frau Findeklee. In early N.H.G. the asyndetic construction was also used with reference to things: Vnd wer nicht hat | von dem wird man nemen auch das (now was) er hat (Mark iv. 25).

Just as the determinative *der* used to stand before and after a noun pointing to a following modifying asyndetic relative clause so the determinative so used to stand before and after the indefinite pronouns *wer* (145. c) and *was* (145. f) pointing to a following asyndetic relative clause, originally in the form "so wer (or was) so", later "swer" "swaz", now *wer anybody*, was *anything*: So will ich mich verlieben in wen ihr vorschlagt (J. Paul's *Hesp.*, 118) I'll fall in love with anybody you propose. Ich mach' ihn zu was (acc. for dat.; see 147. 1. C. a) ich will (Laube, I, 124) I'll develop him into anything I wish. The original asyndetic construction with *wer* and *was* in the principal proposition is here preserved, but usually *wer* and *was* are now felt as relatives with the force of *whoso-ever*, *who-ever*, *what(so)-ever* and stand in the subordinate clause: Wer einmal lügt, dem glaubt man nicht. Was Hänschen nicht lernt, lernt Hans nimmermehr. In English the older form with *so, whoso-ever*, etc., is preserved but no longer understood, hence is now felt as a relative. The asyndetic construction is also found in German after the indefinite and general determinative *welcher* (130. 3).

Somewhat different from asyndetic hypotaxis is parataxis (267. 4), where the two propositions lie side by side without any outward or marked inward sign of subordination: Gegen Frankfurt liegt ein Ding über, [es] heißt Sachsenhausen (Goethe's *Gotz*, I, 4). Ein Herr — [er] sieht aus wie ein Fürst — und ein Fräulein wie eine Prinzessin. Das sind ihre Bedienten (Sudermann's *Heimat*, 3, 1). This construction is also found in English: There is a man at the door [he] wants to see you. In both English and German it lingers on in colloquial speech, while in more formal language it is replaced by the hypotactic relative construction.

### 155. General and Indefinite Relatives: Wer, Was.

1. Wer *who, whoever, somebody who* and was *what, which, whatever, that which* are inflected exactly as the interrogatives *wer* and *was*. See 147. 1.

a. The old gen. *wes* is sometimes still used instead of *wessen* in poetry and biblical language: Wes das Hertz vol ist | des gehet der Mund vber (Matth. xii. 34). The neut. gen. *wes* is still common also in prose in the compounds *weshalb*, *weswegen*. See 151. 1. b. The masc. and neut. gen. *wes* is also still occasionally found in concessive clauses, where it is used seemingly as an adjective modifying a following gen.: Einem Mädchen, *wes Standes* (of whatever rank) es sei, ist die Frage über ihre Wohlgestalt ein wichtiges Problem. This attributive use of *was* has taken the place of an older partitive gen. construction, as explained in 147. 1. E. The original partitive gen. is now only rarely found: Dem Bischof gönnen wir willig, was Ehren er auch hat (Freiligrath, 2, 174). It is still quite common in case of adjective-substantives, but is felt rather as a nom. or acc. in apposition with the *was*: Es schien, als wollte jeder sich von allem entblößen, was er nur Bewegliches besaß (Goethe's *Dichtung und Wahrheit*, I, 3). It is elsewhere usually replaced by the prepositional construction with *von* or now more commonly with *an*: So stürzte ich alles, was ich von (or an) Geschirr erschleppen konnte, in gleiches Verderben (ib., I. 1). The prep. phrase often precedes the *was*: Marinja hatte, um sich mög-

lichtest rasch an Technik anzueignen, was ihr nach dieser Richtung fehlte, in ihrem Übereifer die rechte Hand übermäßig angestrengt (Schubert's *Refugium peccatorum*, VIII).

2. Both *wer* and *was* can be used in a general sense without an antecedent, but was has a wider range of usefulness, as it can also have an antecedent. See 157.

For the development of these general indefinite relatives out of the indefinites *wer* (145. c) and *was* (145. f) see 154. Note.

156. *Wer* is always used in an indefinite sense and may thus refer to one or more, but never has an antecedent and never refers to a definite person: Nur *wer* die Sehnsucht kennt, weiß, was ich leide Only he who knows what yearning is knows what I suffer—a statement in the singular, but with an indefinite reference to many. *Wer* etwas gelernt, der (269. 1. a) gilt etwas. Wem nicht zu raten ist, dem (269. 1. a) ist nicht zu helfen. *Wer* das gesagt hat, ist ein Lügner Whoever (somebody, but I don't know who) said that is a liar. *Wer* aber hereinkam, das war der Wilhelm The one who came in—but I know you don't know who it was—just think, it was William. Es tut doch wohl, wen (somebody whom) man lieb hat, einmal wieder mit Augen zu sehen. In these sentences the relative *wer* still contains something of its original indefinite nature. See 145. c. Note 2.

For more definite reference or for indefinite reference with individualizing force, i.e. to emphasize the idea of an individual with individual responsibility for his actions, with individual characteristics, experiences or to point to a group of . . . er, followed by *der* or *welcher*, is employed. *Derjenige*, . . . laume steht, ist mein Bruder. . . hält, ist der Vollkommenheit am nächsten (Goethe). Ich lege dies Drama in die Hände derjenigen, die es gelebt haben (Hauptmann's *Einsame Menschen*). In accordance with older usage simple *der* is still often used here instead of *derjenige der*. See 130. 2. b. *Solch* is also often used with the same general meaning as often found in *derjenige* or *der*, but it always seems to be a little more indefinite and hence is largely confined to the plural: Es gibt immer solche, die nur an sich selbst denken. Compare 131. 3.

a. The double construction is employed after *wer* as found after *jemand* described in 145. b. Note 1. *Gefallen Sie jemandem* . . . und wem Sie etwa Gutes (or now usually Gutem) begnügen (Goethe).

b. Earlier *wer* was used for an antecedent *der*, *jeder*, or *niemand*: Glückselig *wer*, . . . Weimar, 1. 9. 271, 2032). Das mag nun jeder betrachten (id. 1. 43, 228. 7). Daß es niemand, *wer* es falsch auslegen könnte, zu sehen kriegte (id., IV. 1. 169. 23). Weh dem, *wer* sich der Welt verdungen (Lenau's *Werke*, Nat. Lit., 2, 216, 915). Now *der* or *welcher* is used here instead of *wer*.

157. *Was* refers in a general or indefinite way to a thing or a thought, or indicates a collective idea, which may be definite or indefinite: Was du heute tun kannst, das (272. C. a) verschiebe nicht auf morgen. Was du für recht hältst, dessen (272. A, 3rd par.) brauchst du dich nicht zu schämen. Was mir unrecht scheint, dem (272. B. a) versage ich meine Beistimmung. Was (referring to a definite group of words, i.e. a definite statement) du da behauptest hast, ist unrichtig. Was (indefinite collective idea) die Geschichte reicht, das Leben gibt, sein Busen nimmt es gleich und willig auf (Goethe). Was (definite statement) ich gesagt habe, dabei (272. D. a) bleibt's.

*Was* can have an antecedent, if that antecedent be a word expressing an indefinite general idea, such as an indefinite pronoun, a neuter adjective used substantively, or a thought contained in a . . . have use it instead of the more correct *welch*. . . thus (see 200. 1. (4)): Alles, was er sagt, ist gut. Das war das Schlimmste, was ich befürchtete. Mein Bruder ist reich, was (here also *welches* but not now das; for fuller explanation see 153. 1. (3)) ich nicht bin. Das Gut, was (instead of *das* or *welches*) der Vater hinterlassen hat (Freytag). For fuller treatment of the use of *was* with an antecedent see 153. 1 and the various articles thereunder.

After prepositions a prepositional relative adverb is usually employed instead of a form of *was*: *Wovon das Herz voll ist, (davon) läuft der Mund über. Wonach man eifrigst strebt, (das) bleibt oft unerreicht.*

a. In early N.H.G. *das* could also be used in plain substantive clauses in the sense *that which*, where it is now usually replaced by *was*: *Vnd wer nicht hat | von dem wird man nemen | auch das er hat* (Mark iv. 25). *Das* is most common in such substantive clauses as are in apposition with an *es*. See 153. 1. (2).

b. *Was* is also used of persons in a collective sense: *Was von Offizieren im Lager war, wurde zusammengetrommelt* (Oempteda's *Sylvester von Geyer*, XLIX). *Was hier gemeinsames Los jedes Tages und jeder Stunde teilte, geht nun die verschiedensten Wege* (Stilgebauer's *Götz Krafft*, I, p. 5) *All those* (i.e. members of the graduating class) *who* &c. Especially in a broad sense to include little and big, or often males and females: *Was noch die Beine gebrauchen kann, das geht an Feiertagen aus.* Sometimes with the force of *wer* in a general indefinite sense: *Früh übt sich, was ein Meister werden will* (Schiller's *Tell*, 3, 1). *Was* in this meaning is often employed contemptuously: *Was so herumbummelt, bringt es zu nichts.*

c. When *was* denotes a collective idea the predicate appositive may be in the singular in accordance with the form of *was* or in the plural in accordance with the meaning: *So viel als möglich werde ich im folgenden nach diesem Beurteilungsgrunde das, was sich als bloßer Gräzismus verdächtig macht, von dem zu sondern versuchen, was wir als echt deutsche Eigentümlichkeit der alten Sprache mögen gelten lassen* (Ribbeck's *Syntax des Ulfila*). *Manches, was als Gräzismen in der Übersetzung erscheinen könnte, ist doch im Geiste der Sprache gewesen* (W. Krafft's *Die Kirchengeschichte der germanischen Völker*, I. p. 260).

### 158. Adverbs in Connection with Relatives.

1. The adverbs *immer*, *auch*, or combined *auch immer*, also *auch nur*, *nur immer* standing after *wer* and *was*, or several words removed, give generalizing force to the relative, and are much like our *ever*, *soever* in *whoever*, *whatever*, &c.: *Wer immer es gesagt hat, er hat gelogen. Von wem er es auch immer gehört haben mag, es ist gelogen.*

2. The adverb *da* which often earlier in the period followed *was*, *wer*, or *der* once had a concrete meaning, as described in the *Note* below, but now as we feel *was*, *wer*, and *der* as relative pronouns it has become meaningless and hence is usually suppressed: *Komme was da will. Vnd wer da suchet | der findet | Vnd wer da anklopfft | dem wird auffgethan* (Matth. vii. 8). *Wie nämlich jedes Ding sich putzt, | vor's andern Auge pfauisch stutzt, | dran da sich zeigt eines jeden Gab'* (Goethe, Weimar, I. 4. 206, 21). This use of *da* is still occasionally found. *Sie harrten der Dinge, die da kommen sollten* (Keller). *Sie schritten vor dem Vater und der Mutter her, mit einer gewissen Feierlichkeit, wie Menschen, die da wissen, daß ihnen eine große und bedeutende Aufgabe zu teil geworden ist* (Wildenbruch).

*Note.* The *da* here was originally a determinative (154. *Note*) strengthening the preceding determinative *der* (154. *Note*) and explaining the preceding indefinite *wer anybody* or *was anything* by pointing forward to the following explanatory asyndetic (154. *Note*) clause.

3. Earlier in the period an *als* often preceded the relative pronoun or adverb, originally for the purpose of introducing the following descriptive clause as an appositive, i.e. as a loose explanatory clause bearing upon a preceding noun or the preceding statement as a whole: *Er wollte von den hohen, hohlgeschliffenen Schrittschuhen nichts wissen, sondern empfahl die niedrigen, flachgeschliffenen, friesländischen, als welche zum Schnellaufen die dienlichsten seien* (Goethe). This *als* has become rare in our time: [Er] sagte laut und feierlich-grimmig: „Es lebe Alexius der Dreizehnte“ — *als worauf sich etwas Kurioses ereignete* (Raabe's *Eulenspiegel*, chap. XVI). We feel the simple relative now as sufficient.

4. The demonstrative adv. *so* is placed after *was* to denote the general idea of quality, so that both words together convey the idea of *such things as*: *Was mag wohl darin sein? Allerhand Krimskrams: Kleider, Schürzen, Bänder, Flittertand, was so Frauenzimmer brauchen.*

### CONDITIONAL RELATIVE.

159. *Wer for anybody who, if any one* has the same declension as the relative and interrogative *wer*. It has the force of *wenn man*, *wenn einer*, and the clause in which it is found is treated as if it were a conditional clause, the verb standing at the end of the clause: *Freiheit? Ein schönes Wort, wer's recht verstünde* (Goethe's *Egmont*, Act 4). *Fragen ist keine Schande, wer ein Ding nicht weiß* (Grimm). *Das (Selbstbeherrschung) ist eine schöne Errungenschaft,*

wer etwas davon hat (Bismarck to his betrothed Feb 23, 1847) Wer's konnte, wie er! (Boßhart's *Baretttochter*, p 136) *If one (or here if I) could only do as he did!* In early N H G and as late as Goethe's day, *der* was also used in the same way

## CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS

160 1 A Referring to a def person or object

*He (she, that one (of a thing), the man, the woman those who (which),* are represented in German by the following correlatives

a *Der (die, das)jenige, welcher (welche, welches) or der (die, das)*

b *Der (die, das), welcher (welche, welches).*

c *Der (die, das), der, &c*

d *Er (sie), der (die), see 2 a below*

e Without antecedent (see 130 2 b and 154 Note) *Der (not welcher) mich hebt, ist in der Weite, or der, er* (see 2 c below)

f *Solcher, der (welcher) one which of such a nature that such as solche, die würdig sind such as are worthy* We often find *wie* or *als* instead of *der* or *welcher*, and *derartig, derlei, so, ein* instead of *solch* See 153 3 D

g *Derselbe, der the same one who* *Er ist eben derselbe, den wir gestern sahen*

h *Der, so (early N H G, see 153 5) = der, welcher*

i The first member in all the above cases can also, except in d and e, be used adjectively

B Referring indefinitely or in a general way to persons or to some thing

a *Wer, der* *Wer das sagt, der lügt* See 156, and 2 b below

b *Das (or dasjenige, eins, etwas, nichts, alles, manches, vieles, das Beste, or any adjective substantive), was (not now usually das or welches) as in the earlier part of the period)* *Das(jenige), was er sagt, ist wahr* *Es gibt im Leben so manches, was uns rätselhaft erscheint* See also 153 1 (1)

2 a The form *er, der* (1 A d above) is different from the other forms in A The determinative *derjenige* or *der* in a b c is of itself indefinite and its meaning is only determined by the clause that always follows it Hence the determinative forms a b c are used when the identity of the person in question is yet to be established When the subject is a person already mentioned and thus known and some particular statement with regard to him follows in the relative clause *er, der* are used *Er* (Arneth the Austrian historian who is the subject of the sketch from which this sentence is taken and who has just been presented to the attention of the reader), *der im ganzen eines der glücklichsten Menschenleben hinter sich hat, genoß auch das große Glück, eine Mutter zu haben, die zu den herrlichsten deutschen Frauen gerechnet werden muß*

Note Occasionally *er* is used determinatively with the force of *der(jenige)* in accordance with an older usage once quite common *Für mich steht s o (e d e Musik) auf der untersten Stufe gut für Kinder und Traumer, aber nicht für s e d e s ch zu handelnden Menschen ausgewachsen haben* (Spelhagen's *Freigeborn* p 176)

In English the development is in the same direction We still say in a determinative sense *he who* but more commonly in the plural *those who* instead of the older and once common *they who* On the other hand we still use *they who* corresponding to German *sie die* when the reference is to persons who have just been mentioned so that the differentiation of form that has resulted in German is also found in English in the plural There is also a strong tendency to differentiate in the singular by using *he who* for pointing to a person already mentioned and *the man who* or *the one who* in a determinative sense *He who*, however is also much used in a general indefinite sense = *wer*, so that differentiation here is not so close as in German

b The *der* in 1 B a is not an antecedent of *wer*, but only the repetition of the subject *wer*, and not being necessary can be dropped However, if *wer* and its seeming antecedent do not stand in the same case it is not usually omitted *Wer einmal lügt, dem glaubt man nicht und wenn er auch die Wahrheit spricht*

c. The definite subject *der* can be repeated by a following *er* in the same manner as indefinite *wer* is repeated by *der*, as described in b: *Der meinen alten Gliedern Mut verlieh, | in eure Höhle mich hinauf zu wagen, | er steht mir bei, ich fühl's* (Hauptmann's *Versunkene Glocke*, Act 3, ll. 1382-4).

### STEREOTYPED PRONOMINAL FORMS.

161. There are a number of compound pronominal forms which are now treated as indeclinables and are written with a small letter, altho some of them are in fact substantives.

1. 'meines ('deines, 'seines, 'ihres, 'unseres, &c.) 'gleichen *one of my* (your, his, her, our) *stamp, one who is my* (your, his, her, our) *equal*, fossilized genitives (see a) used substantively without change of form for any case sing. or pl.: *Seinesgleichen* (nom. sing.) *läßt sich kaum wieder finden*. *Seinesgleichen* (nom. pl.) *lassen sich kaum wieder finden*. *Er erkannte ihn für seinesgleichen* (acc. sing.). *Ich habe nie ihresgleichen* (acc. sing. or pl.) *gesehen* I have never seen the like of her (them). *Leute ihresgleichen* (gen. pl.) *finden sich selten*. *Er geht mit ihnen wie mit seinesgleichen* (dat. pl.) *um*. For stress see 47. 3. A. b. cc.

a. Such forms as *meinesgleichen*, tho used with unchanged forms for all cases, are in fact fossilized genitives of the wk. masc. adjective-substantive *Gleiche equal, one who is like*. This gen. was once a real partitive genitive. It became fossilized in negative sentences: *Er findet nicht seinesgleichen* (partitive gen. depending upon *nicht*; see 145. g. Note 2), literally *He will find nothing of one equal to himself*. Later this original construction was forgotten and the gen. was used for any case, sing. or pl., masc. or fem. The fossilized acc. sing. masc. is also used in *ohnegleichen, sondergleichen without a parallel*: *Sie erlauben sich Kühnheiten ohnegleichen* (in form a masc. acc. sing., but refers here to an abstract fem. noun in the pl.). The fossilized acc. form is also still found in *dessen Gleichen* and *deren Gleichen*. See 2.

In Luther's time *gleich* was still felt as a wk. masc. noun: *Denn er ist nicht mein Gleiche* (Job ix. 32). Compare *Ich bin's, bin Faust, bin deinesgleichen!* (Goethe's *Faust*, Nacht).

2. *Des'gleichen* (for the sing.) and much more commonly *dēr'gleichen* (for sing. or pl., masc., fem., or neut.) *of such a nature, such, the like, of the (that) kind, of the same kind, such as*, used adjectively and substantively, demonstratively or relatively. Demonstratively: *Vnd dis gleichen Reuchwerg solt jr euch nicht machen* (Ex. xxx. 37). *Sie scheinen sich auf dergleichen Handel zu verstehen* They seem to understand trade of such a nature. *Eine dergleichen* (now more commonly *derartige*, as *dergleichen* does not now usually tolerate an indefinite article before it) *Lobrede* (Lessing), *dergleichen Scherze*, *dergleichen Leute*. *Bei dergleichen ist aber das Weib dem Mann über* (Rosegger) In such things a woman is ahead of a man. *Ja, ganz unverhofft; vor acht Tagen haben wir uns nichts dergleichen träumen lassen*. *Auf einem Tische hatte er die Gewinne ausgelegt: lauter Kleinigkeiten, Bonbons, Bildchen, Bleistifte und dergleichen*. *Der neugebackene Sextaner stand wie ein armer Sünder da und erwartete einen tüchtigen Rüffel; doch nichts dergleichen* (Oempteda's *Sylvester von Geyer*, XIII) *but nothing of the kind happened*.

Relatively: *wil wunder thun | der gleichen nicht geschaffen sind* (Ex. xxxiv. 10). *Und hat solche grosse straffe vber vns gehen lassen | Des gleichen vnter allem Himel nicht geschehen ist* (Baruch ii. 2). *Einen überlegenden Schurken, dergleichen Franz ist* (Schiller). *Er ging im Sonnenschein auf der Wiese, wo allerlei merkwürdige und unbekannte Blumen blühten, umflogen von Schmetterlingen, dergleichen er nie gesehen hatte* (H. Seidel's *Der Schatz*, III).

The above forms are fossilized genitives (see 1. a), but also the acc. is similarly used in connection with a gen. of a relative: *dessen Gleichen* with reference to a masc. or neut. sing. and *deren Gleichen* with reference to a fem. sing. or any noun in the pl. Exs.: *Den merkwürdigsten Platz, dessen Gleichen in der Welt vielleicht nicht wieder zu sehen ist* (Goethe). *Immer war ihr Antlitz von leuchtender Heiterkeit und all ihr Gebaren von einer leichten Anmut über-gossen, deren Gleichen er noch nicht gesehen hatte* (H. Hoffmann's *Die Toten-hochzeit*, p. 159).

a Dergleichen is also used adverbially. Die Hofrätin wußte, wo das hinaus wollte, tat aber nicht dergleichen (Berleppch's *Fortunals Roman* p. 10) but she didn't let on i.e. pretended not to know. Also nichts instead of nicht. Und die Bewegung, die kurze, stolze, mit der sie die Blume zum Fenster hinauswarf, weil Edith sie weiß gefunden — und ich nichts dergleichen getan hatte (Schulz's *Refugium peccatorum* II c) because I had pretended not to notice (that she wore the flower to show her love for me). Manchmal dergleichen. Es schien unmöglich daß Frau Uelzen nichts bemerkt haben sollte, wenn diese auch keineswegs dergleichen tat (Spielhagen's *Das Skelett im Hause* II).

3 'Derlei' (= dergleichen) of such a nature used as a demonstrative, both adjectively and substantively. aus allen derlei Betrachtungen. Derlei waren damals die Ideale junger Leute. Such things were at that time the ideals of young people. Thus also a number of compounds with lei: allerlei all kinds of beiderlei both both kinds of einerlei of one kind all the same (Das ist mir einerlei), mancherlei many kinds of solcherlei such kinds of &c. See 126 I a. For stress see 47 3 A b cc.

4 'Allerhand' (= allerlei) all kinds of used adjectively and substantively. allerhand Blumen all kinds of flowers. Es ist die Rede gewesen von allerhand. The conversation was about all sorts of things. Allerhand Gutes all sorts of good things. See 139 I a. Note 1 for stress see 47 3 A b cc.

5 Unser eins (= unser einer one of our stamp) tho usually inflected like a strong neuter adjective with contraction to -eins in the nom. and acc. is sometimes invariable thruout. Mit unser eins (instead of unser einem) machen sie nicht viel Umstände. These modern compounds are formed by writing together two distinct words unser (gen. pl. of the personal pronoun) and einer or eins, substantive forms of the numeral ein. For the double gender here see 263 I 6 b. See also 263 II 4 f.

Unser einer is now also often used with the force of ich. Unser einer hat's nicht so gut.

## THE VERB

162 A verb is a word that predicates action or being

## CLASSIFICATION

163 Verbs are divided into two classes *transitive* and *intransitive*

1 A *transitive* verb is one that requires a complement in the acc. case. Ich liebe den Vater.

2 An *intransitive* verb is one that either requires no complement as ich knie, or takes a complement in the gen., dat., or in some case governed by a preposition. Ich bedarf des Trostes. Ich begegne einem Freunde. Er trachtet nach dem Gelde.

a The following verbs can be used transitively or intransitively sometimes however with a little different meaning in the two functions. In a few cases also with different principal parts according to the function: anfangen, anheben, beginnen, backen, baden, biegen, braten, brechen, brennen, enden, fluchten, gleichen, hangen, heilen, irren, kleben, lehnen, kochen, quellen, rauchen, reifen, reißen, schlagen, schießen, schließen, schmelzen, speisen, spritzen, sprühen, stecken, stoßen, stürzen, treiben, trocknen, verderben, weiden. Ex. Er hat das Glas gebrochen and Das Glas ist gebrochen. Er hangte den Hut an den Nagel and Der Hut hing an dem Nagel. Compare 257 I a b. Germans very often employ a reflexive verb where in English an intransitive is used. See 218 3 B.

3 Under the above classes are distinguished

a Reflexive verbs which take an object designating the same person or thing as their subject. Er lobt sich (acc.). Er schadet sich (dat.). For the use of reflexive verbs see 218.

b Impersonal verbs used only in the 3rd person sing. with the formal subject, expressed or understood. Es schneit. Mir graut davor, or Es graut mir davor. For the use of impersonal verbs see 219.

## GRAMMATICAL FORMS OF THE VERB.

## ASPECT.

**164.** The verb distinguishes by its forms person, number, tense, mood, voice, and aspect. The terms persons, number, voice need no especial explanation here as they are in general used as in English. Tense and mood are treated at considerable length below.

At this point it is desired to say a few words about aspect: Aspect indicates the aspect, the type of the action. It often shows: (1) that the activity continues for some time in unbroken course, the durative aspect, as in *essen*, *schlafen*, *wachen* and in English *to eat*, *to sleep*, *to be awake*, or with an especial form to emphasize the idea of continuation, *to be eating*, *to be sleeping*. (2) That the activity represents only *one point* of time, the point-action or perfective aspect, as in *einschlafen*, *aufwachen*, *erscheinen* and in English *to fall asleep*, *to awake*, *to arise*. the ingressive perfective aspect calling attention to the first point, the beginning of the action or state, the moment when one enters into sleep, or comes into the waking state, or the moment when the sun appears; or on the other hand, as in *abblühen* *to cease blooming*, *verblühen* *to lose one's beauty*, lit. *to cease blossoming*, *aufessen* *to eat up*, the effective perfective aspect, calling attention to the final point in the activity, the moment when the blooming, blossoming ceases and the apple disappears in the throat. The durative aspect is usually expressed by the simple verb, the point-action or perfective aspect often by a verb with a dependent infinitive: *Es fängt an zu regnen*. *Es hört auf zu regnen*. In case of many very common verbs the ingressive perfective idea is expressed by giving a transitive verb reflexive form: (durative) *Er sitzt auf dem Stuhl*, but with ingressive force: *Er setzt sich auf den Stuhl*. Similarly *Er liegt auf dem Bette*, but *Er legt sich auf das Bett*. *Er steht auf den eigenen Füßen*, but *Er stellt sich auf die eigenen Füße*. Perfective force is in most cases expressed by the use of a prefix or particle. The particle or prefix originally had in every verb a concrete meaning, but it is often not felt to-day, as in *erscheinen* and English *arise*, and yet it usually has an appreciable meaning, for altho it has lost its concrete sense it has frequently developed point-action or perfective force. In *aufessen* and in *to eat up* it is quite evident that *auf* and *up* do not now have the original meaning of *upward*, for the apple in fact goes down. The particle here has become a mere grammatical form to indicate the final point in the activity. Sometimes a simple verb has by virtue of its meaning alone perfective force, as in *kommen* and in English *to come*. As the usual German way to indicate point-action or perfectivity is by the use of prefixes this question is treated under prefixes in 246. II. 3. *b*, 4. *a*, 5. D. *a*, *b*, *c*.; 223. I. 7. E. *b*, *c*, G. *d*; 191. I. 4. In older German *werden* with the present participle of the verb to be conjugated was much used with ingressive perfective force, which has left traces behind in the literary language and the dialects, as described in 190. 1. C. *a*. Note 1. The different forms of the durative aspect are discussed in 175. Note. Besides these formal characteristics of aspect there is an other which plays an important rôle in the spoken language—accent. Both transitive and intransitive duratives, when spoken somewhat more forcibly and rapidly than usual in connection with a strong rising intonation of the voice, become ingressive perfectives indicating the moment of a sudden change in the situation. This form of the ingressive aspect is most commonly found in joyful exclamations expressing satisfaction over the attainment of some end or over a pleasant discovery: *Ich hab's!* or *Ich seh's!* (Pollak in Paul and Braune's *Beiträge*, 1920, p. 414), an exclamation uttered upon finding a point in the landscape after a long search. Likewise in *Ich kann's!*, an exclamation spoken upon discovering that one can do something that one has been trying to do. It is also common in lively narrative to indicate a sudden turn in the development of the events: *Da wallt dem Deutschen auch sein Blut* (Uhland's *Schwäbische Kunde*, l. 29) *Then also the blood of the German begins to boil*.



There are also other aspects. The iterative aspect expresses the idea of the frequent occurrence and repetition of an activity, as in *streicheln to stroke*. For fuller discussion see 245. III. 2 and 3. The diminutive aspect indicates an activity of diminutive proportions, as in *lächeln to smile*. See 245. III. 2. b. The intensive aspect indicates intensification of the activity. *hören to hear*, but *horchen (intensive) to listen*. See 245. III. 5. The desiderative aspect represents an activity as threatening, indicating that there is a strong and persistent impulse present to perform it: *Mich schläfert I feel sleepy*. See 245. III. 3. b. For the terminate aspect see 175. Note, last par.

### TENSE (for formation see 177. I, II, III and 190).

165. There are three absolute tenses (present, pres. perfect, and future), which express time from the standpoint of the moment in which the speaker is speaking without reference to some other act; and three relative tenses (past, past perfect, and future perfect), which express time relatively to the preceding absolute tenses. The following articles on tense apply principally to the tenses of the indicative. The tenses of the subjunctive are treated under the head of the subjunctive mood.

1. *Present Tense*. The present tense represents an action as now taking place, or a state as now existing: *Der Baum blüht. Er ist sehr krank*. It often represents the act as something habitual, customary, characteristic: *Er wohnt im Winter in der Stadt. Er schreibt schön*.

It is also used:

a. To express a general truth: *Zweimal zwei ist vier*.

b. In narration, especially in lively style, to make more vivid past events and bring them nearer the hearer. This usage of the present, common also in English, is called the historical present. In German it frequently in narration relieves the past tense and thus furnishes a means to vary the style. Some authors are very fond of it, while others use it little or not at all. In Goethe's *Hermann und Dorothea* it is conspicuously absent, and is in general uncommon in epic poetry, where there is a calm and dignified movement.

c. As the English present perfect to express that an action or state that was begun in the past is still continuing at the present time, usually accompanied by the adverbs *bereits, schon already, erst only, lange long*, or the prep. *seit since*: *Wie lange lernen Sie schon deutsch? Ich lerne es erst seit sechs Monaten* How long have you been studying German? *I have been studying it for only six months. Wir warten bereits seit einer Stunde auf ihn. Wie lange sind Sie hier?* How long have you been here?

Note Thus also the perfect infinitive after modal verbs, e.g. *sein müßig gewesen wärest, c* might, as young as you are

d. Usually instead of the future in the subordinate clauses of purpose and condition and often elsewhere in both principal and subordinate propositions where an adverb of time or the context makes clear the thought, for this the oldest future form, long deeply rooted in German feeling, is still a favorite where there is no ambiguity: *Ich wünsche, daß du zu ihm gehst. Laß uns eilen, daß wir ihn noch erreichen. Wenn du dich beeilst, or beeilst du dich, so wirst du ihn noch einholen. Morgen kommt er. Wann kommt er? Ich weiß nicht, wann er kommt*. As in English the present is used after a future when both actions are contemporaneous: *Ich werde ihn, gut empfangen, wenn er kommt*. The present by reason of its pithy terseness is felt as more forceful

than the longer and more accurate but weaker future, hence is much used to express something confidently expected: **Kommt er?** **Er kömmt** Will he come? He surely will.

e. Instead of the imperative (see 177. I. B. b).

f. The present is often used where the reference is to a past act and a present perfect might be used. The speaker uses the present tense as tho the words had just been spoken as he feels the matter as one of present interest: **Ich höre**, or **Man sagt mir, daß er noch sehr krank ist**. The present is also used in quoting from a book still read and studied even tho the author belongs to the past: **Goethe meint, daß usw.**

2. *Present Perfect*. The present perfect is used to represent that something is finished at the time of speaking, or that the results of a past act still continue in the present (see also 3, A. a below): **Ich habe den Brief schon geschrieben**. **Ich bin eben von der Stadt gekommen**. **Kolumbus hat Amerika entdeckt**. **Die Kirche ist im 14ten Jahrhundert erbaut worden**.

The present perfect is also used:

a. Instead of the future perfect: **Wenn du angekommen bist, werde ich dich besuchen** (instead of **Wenn du angekommen sein wirst**, &c).

b. Often in dialect and colloquial speech instead of the past tense in narrative: „**Wir haben gezittert am ganzen Leib**,“ fuhr der braune Schmied fort, „**wir haben ein Vaterunser beten wollen, aber die Zunge ist wie gelähmt gewesen vor Schreck**“ (Rosegger). Ja, wie wir nu in seinem Zelt gekommen sind, da ist er erst eine ganze Weile so uf und abgegangen und hat nischt nuch geredt (Finke in Wildenbruch's *Die Quitzows*, 1, 8). Darauf hat Tante Ida mich angesehen und gefragt, „na also — wer war's?“ Weil ich aber doch gewußt habe, daß du's nicht haben wolltest, habe ich nichts gesagt. Da hat Tante Ida rote Flecke auf den Backen bekommen und gemeint, &c. (Young Georg von Drebkau in Wildenbruch's *Vize-Mama*). The use of the present perfect here seems to result from the desire of the speaker to attach importance to each individual utterance by representing it as an independent fact worthy of attention, as explained in 3. A. a and c below. The common people are very fond of this form of exaggeration. This usage first appeared in the fourteenth century. In the dialects of the South from this time on the present perfect gradually within two centuries supplanted the simple past indicative, not only on account of a natural fondness there for the present perfect but also largely because of a mere formal factor, namely certain forms of the past indic. had by the suppression of final e become identical with those of the present tense, as in **er spielt** (3rd pers. present or past indic.). Thus the Swabian writer Berthold Auerbach in his beautiful story „Brigitta“ in keeping with the dialectic setting lets the heroine use thruout the entire book the present perfect in narrative instead of the literary past tense.

3. A. *Past Tense*. The past tense usually represents a past act or condition not in its completeness, but as being performed or continuing at the same time as some other act or condition, or it represents the act as completed in past time in connection with some other event. Hence the past tense has for its leading idea that of the simultaneity of two or more related past acts or conditions. It accordingly represents single acts or facts as links in a chain of facts, and for this reason it is the usual tense for the description and narration of all related events and conditions in the past, and is therefore the prevailing tense of narrative, history, and the novel. The past tense, however, is not confined to lengthy description, but is used even in a single sentence if it describes something as it once was without relation to the present: **Die deutschen Kaiser wurden in Frankfurt gekrönt**. Thus the past tense cuts us off from the present entirely, and leads us into the midst of past events and conditions which are developing at the same time with close relations to each other, but with no relations whatever to the present, and thus this tense differs rather sharply from the present perfect, which represents the act as now completed, the occurrence as now an accomplished fact. The past tense does not, however,

imply necessarily time very remote, but is used for time past, whether it refers to remote acts or to those of a few moments ago, if it turns the mind from the present to two past acts or events, or to a series of past events in their relations to each other: Als die Bäume in vollster Blüte standen, trat heftiger Frost ein. Ich sang, indem er Klavier spielte. Ich sang beim Ankleiden. See 246. 11. 1 a for the force which brought about the differentiation between the past and the present perfect.

a. *Past Tense Compared with the Present Perfect* The past tense is often confounded with the present perfect. The latter is used when the results of a past act still exist in the present, or to represent a past event as an independent fact, not as a link in a chain of related events, and emphasizes the bearing of this past event upon the present. Thus the present perfect looks at the past from the standpoint of the present or of stern fact, while the past tense takes us into the past and enlists our interest in the events then taking place. Hence in the midst of a narrative where the past tense or past perfect has been uniformly used the speaker changes to the present perfect at once when he desires (1) to represent a past act not as a link in the chain of events but according to his judgment as an important independent fact, or (2) to represent that the result of a past act still exists at the time of the narrative. (1) Luther tat zu Worms einen Gang, dergleichen mancher Kriegsoberst in der schwersten Schlacht nicht getan hat. (2) In dem seiner Wohnung gegenüber liegenden Hause, wo sein Freund Wilhelm wohnte, war das Scharlachfieber ausgebrochen und, da Fritz allen Warnungen zuwider doch noch zu seinem dort wohnenden Freunde ging, so ist er ebenfalls erkrankt und liegt nun schwer darnieder.

b. *Past Tense Used by Eye-witness* Thus also an eye-witness of events naturally uses the past tense in narrating these events as he has seen them take place in their relations to each other, and may use this tense even in giving a single sentence as there is in his mind a complete picture of the whole occurrence. Gestern erkrank ein Kind. Sie waren gestern in der Oper. On the other hand when the things are communicated to a third party by the one who has only heard them, he uses the present perfect because they are to the speaker only independent facts. Gestern ist ein Kind erkrankt. Sie sind gestern in der Oper gewesen.

c. *English and German Past Compared* In both languages the past tense once performed the functions of four tenses: the past, present perfect, past perfect and future perfect. Examples of the use of the German past for the past perfect and the future perfect are given in C and G below. It is still often used where we should expect the present perfect so that it seems to correspond to English usage. Noch nie in der Geschichte war ein so gewaltiger Kampf (König von Bayern Aug. 10 1915). While older usage thus often still appears English and German independent facts conceived as having taken place recently are there is reference to a definite time or place, absolutely past so that it cannot be considered as a past perfect, uses the present perfect as the reference is to

an independent past act. My brother bought two hats last year or this morning but My brother has bought two hats this week as the speaker feels that the period in question is not yet closed, passed while in German the present perfect must be used in both cases. Mein Bruder hat voriges Jahr, heute Morgen, diese Woche zwei Hüte gekauft. Whenever the idea of past time is not prominent, i.e. where the reference is general or indefinite the present perfect is used in English. My brother has often bought two hats at a time. Mein Bruder hat oft zwei Hüte auf einmal gekauft. My brother has bought two new hats. Mein Bruder hat zwei neue Hüte gekauft. When statements of independent facts refer to a time more remote English usually employs the past tense while German inclines here to the use of the present perfect. Das eigentliche Bayern ist etwa um 600 von den Deutschen besetzt worden. Romanen haben sich aber am Gebirge länger gehalten (Büchgers, Geschichte der deutschen Sprache p. 11) But in proper German, however, the past tense is

always represents the act or state as absolutely completed, where

Thus it is perfectly clear the present perfect tense form was in reality a present tense as explained in 191. 1. 1 and 1. It has in German required power to point to the past, even the remote past, while in English it still always has close relations with the present.

B. The past is also used as the past perfect in English (just as the present in German is used for the present perfect in English, as described in 1. c above) to describe an action as begun at some previous time, but as still continuing up to the time spoken of in the past. Ich wartete schon zwei Stunden auf ihn, als er kam. I had been waiting two hours for him when he came.

C. In accordance with usage in older periods when there was no past perfect tense the past is often used for the past perfect. Wir waren mit Uechtritz auf

der Richards-Höhe, die meine Frau noch nicht sah (Hebbel's *Tagebücher*, Aug. 3, 1854). See also 4 *a* below and A. *c* above.

D. The past is also used for the future perfect. See 6 below.

4. *Past Perfect*. The past perfect tense represents a past action or event as completed at or before a certain past time: Als er das gehört hatte, erschrak er. When he had heard that, he became frightened.

a. The past perf. is often replaced by the past: Als er das hörte, erschrak er. See also 3. A. *c*.

5. *Future Tense*. The future tense represents an action or event as yet to take place: Mein Herz wird sich freuen, wenn ich dich wiedersehe.

The future is also used of an action or event in past time that was yet to take place: Die Dirne ging mit bloßem Kopfe, sie wird also den Holzschnitzer nur eine Strecke und nicht allzuweit begleiten (Anzengruber's *Sternsteinhof*, p. 69).

The present tense often takes the place of the future. See 1. *d* above.

a. The future is also used instead of the imperative (177. I. B. *c*).

b. It is often, especially in colloquial speech, used to express a probability or supposition, often accompanied by wohl, usually with the force of a present tense: Karl wird [wohl] krank sein = Karl ist wohl krank. Der Hund wird [wohl] sechs Jahre alt sein = Der Hund ist wohl sechs Jahre alt. The wohl is not necessary with werden but must be used with the simple present. The werden here contains strong modal force and can often be replaced by a modal auxiliary: Der Hund kann sechs Jahre alt sein.

Often in interrogative form, especially to question someone on some well-known fact or truth in such a way as to encourage him to essay an answer: Hans, wie wird der Mann heißen, der Amerika entdeckt hat? Johnny, you can tell me, can't you, the name of the man who discovered America? Hans, wie wirst du den Zinsfuß aus Kapital und Zeit und Zins berechnen? Now, Johnny, you can tell me, can't you, how to ascertain the rate of interest, &c.? The question form is also often employed to indicate surprise at a preceding question which inquires after something that ought to be self-evident: A. Bist du zufrieden? B. Wo werde ich denn zufrieden sein? = Wie kann ich denn zufrieden sein?

On the other hand, in connection with schon it is used with a peculiar modal force to indicate emphatically a certainty of a certain *condition* of things at the present time: A. Ich habe es nicht. B. Sie werden es schon haben. A. I haven't it. B. But I know you do have it. Bäcker. 's Blutgericht meenen Sie (meinen Sie) woll? Dreißiger. Er wird (for Sie werden) schon wissen, welches ich meine (Hauptmann's *Die Weber*, Act 1). This peculiar construction must not be confounded with another having the same form, which however points with emphasis to a future *act*: Ich werde es schon tun I'll do it, you can count on it.

*Note*. Scholars generally regard this form as the usual future tense, the thought being that the future will in the case at issue show that the assumption is true. As this form is common with this meaning in dialects where it is not used as a future proper it seems more probable to the author that it is the old periphrastic present tense described in 190. 1. C. *a*. *Note* 1. For centuries it had the same force as the simple present tense but finally differentiated itself from the terse forceful simple form by becoming less positive, so that werden came to be felt more as a *modal* than a *tense* auxiliary, and after the analogy of modal auxiliaries forms its present perfect tense in the same peculiar way that modal auxiliaries do when used in this sense, as explained in 212. 2. *e*: Damals wird der Hund sechs Jahre alt gewesen sein after the analogy of Damals kann or muß der Hund sechs Jahre alt gewesen sein. Both the present and the present perfect tenses of the periphrasis are already common in Luther's language: Da werden on zweyfftel die heiligen Engel gewest sein | Denn wo der Vatter, Son, und heiliger Geist sich lassen sehen | da wirdt das gantze himliche heer müssen sein (Luther's *Werke*, LII, p. 101) See 6. *a*. *Note* below. The old periphrastic present with schon naturally developed a different force in accordance with the meaning of schon.

c. In North German popular and colloquial language there is often used in lively narrative a form which is exactly like the future but seems in fact to rest upon the dialectic periphrasis for the present tense described in 190. 1. C. *a*. *Note* 1, usually alternating with a simple historical present or some other tense that points to the past. As this form uniformly refers to the past it is evidently a historical present, if it is in fact a present: Der Herr Schmidt hatte ja wohl so ein zwanzig oder dreißig letzten Donnerstag weggeschickt, weil sie Sozialisten waren, und das werden sich ja die andern zu Nutzen machen und von dem Herrn Schmidt einen ganz erschrecklichen Lohn fordern. Na, gnädige Fräuleins, der Herr Schmidt wird ja wohl die Rädelsführer zur Tür hinauswerfen, und die werden mit den andern in hellen Haufen wiederkommen, um den Herrn Schmidt totzuschlagen, als der Herr Kapitän in der Tür steht und

ein paar Pistolen herauszieht; u. . . . . auf dem ganzen  
Hof ist seit gestern keine Katze sometimes even  
in choice prose in lively narrativ un werden die  
beiden anfangen, sich mitten in Das edle Blut,  
Sämliche Werke, VI, p. 100).

6. *Future Perfect.* The future perfect tense represents that an action or event will be completed at or before a certain time yet future. This clumsy form has not yet become thoroly established in common usage, where, as in older periods, the pre-sent perfect is still much used. Wenn er diese Bedingung nicht vor Morgen erfüllt haben wird (or more commonly erfüllt hat), so ist der Vertrag nichtig. We also find the past tense instead of the future perfect, as the past is here as often elsewhere used instead of the pre-sent perfect: Hildebrandt: Wie lange soll der Jammer denn noch dauern? Dietrich: So lange, fürcht' ich, bis der letzte fiel (Hebbel's *Nibelungen*, III, 5. 1). Es ist nicht das letzte Mal, daß ich mich hier befand (Raabe's *Frau Salome*, chap. vii). Das Trudchen war da ganz gut aufgehoben, bis wir es abholen (id., *Meister Autor*, chap. vii). Viel gibt es nicht; doch nimm damit vorlieb; | wir hauen ein, bis nichts mehr übrig blieb (Fulda's *Talisman*, 1, 5). Wenn der Nebel verzog und die Hörner der Sachsen zum Kampf laden, so ruft mich (Lienhard's *König Arthur*, 5). Du wirst glücklicher sein, als du es seit Jahren warst (Hermann Hesse's *Rosshalde*).

When the idea of completion is not prominent the future perfect can be replaced, as in oldest German, by the present, which here as in older periods still often has future force, or it may be replaced by the modern future tense: Sobald du etwas erfährst or erfahren wirst, telegraphiere.

a. *Future Perfect for Reference to the Past.* Tho not common in the sense of a future perfect, the future perfect form is often, on the other hand, used to express probability or supposition, to represent an action as probably finished, or to state a supposition concerning some past act, often accompanied by wohl: Er wird jetzt wohl geschrieben haben He has probably written by this time. Er wird wohl der Täter gewesen sein He was probably the perpetrator. Often in interrogative form, especially to question someone on some well-known past event in such a way as to encourage him to essay an answer: Jakob sah, daß Getreide in Ägypten feil war. Was wird er da zu seinen Söhnen gesagt haben? Hans, in welchem Fluß wird Friedrich Rotbart den Tod gefunden haben? In the interrogative form it also expresses wonder: Wo wird er die Nacht zugebracht haben? (Lessing's *Minna*, 1, 1) I wonder where he has passed the night. Often to indicate surprise at a preceding question which inquires about something that ought to be self-evident: „Wo bist du gestern auf einmal hingekommen?“ „Wo werde ich hingekommen sein? Nach Haus gegangen bin ich, ausschlafen.“ (Ertl's *Freiheit*, p. 321).

#### MOOD.

166. Mood is a grammatical form denoting the style or manner of predication. There are three moods in German, the *indicative*, *subjunctive*, and *im-*

*perative*. These moods are used much as they are in English. In German as in English the indicative represents something as a fact or as in close relations to reality: A fact: **Die Sonne geht jeden Morgen auf** *The sun rises every morning*. In close relations to reality: **Ich gehe nicht, wenn es regnet** *I shall not go if it rains*. The indicative here in both English and German does not state that it *is* raining but indicates that the idea of rain is not a mere conception but something close to reality, for the speaker feels it as an actual problem in his day's program with which he must reckon and is reckoning. In English we sometimes use the present subjunctive here, *if it rain*, which however marks the idea of rain as a mere conception, as something not felt as close to us. In both English and German we can by the use of the past subjunctive indicate that the idea of rain seems far off and quite unreal, so that we are not reckoning with it at all: **Ich ginge nicht, wenn es regnete** *I shouldn't go if it rained*. Compare 169. 2. E. Note 2 and 171. 2. B. f. Grammarians are wont to talk about the sloven use of the indicative and the slighting of the subjunctive in current English and German, while in fact the increasing use of the indicative doesn't indicate carelessness but rather a change in our way of thinking. To-day we decidedly prefer to look at many things not as mere conceptions but as things near to us, as actual problems with which we must deal. The indicative is never a substitute for the subjunctive but is always felt as an indicative. Even when used as an imperative (177. I. B. c) it does not lose its old indicative character, for it represents the command as executed, the desired act as an actuality.

The imperative is discussed in 177. I. A and B, the subjunctive in the following articles.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

167. The original idea of the Germanic subjunctive may have been optative, as explained in 169. 2. E. Note 5. The basal idea of the German subjunctive as employed in the historic period is to represent something as not actually belonging to the domain of fact or reality but as merely existent in the mind of the speaker as a desire, wish, volition, plan, conception, thought, statement of another, sometimes with more or less hope of realization or in case of a statement with more or less belief, sometimes with little or no hope or faith. The different uses of the subjunctive may for practical reasons be classified under two general heads, which are here only briefly outlined, but which will be treated at considerable length in the following articles: (1) the *optative* subjunctive, which represents the utterance as something which is desired or planned, a present tense form indicating hope of fulfilment, a past tense form indicating little or no hope of fulfilment. By using a past tense form of the subjunctive and thus indicating that one does not count upon the fulfilment of one's wish one can avoid a blunt expression of will, so that the past tense subjunctive forms often lose in large measure the element of unreality and are used to express modestly an earnest wish or appeal, where it may be called the *subjunctive of modest wish*. (2) The *potential* subjunctive, which represents the statement not as an actual fact but only as a conception of the mind, a present tense form indicating that the speaker or writer feels the conception as probably conforming to fact or reality, or regards the occurrence of the act in question as probable, sometimes however indicating doubt as to the matter of fact or the occurrence of the act, a past tense form indicating decided doubt as to the matter of fact and pronounced improbability as to the occurrence of the act. By clothing one's thoughts in the language of doubt and uncertainty one can avoid a blunt expression of one's opinion, so that the past tense forms of the potential subjunctive often lose in large measure the element of doubt and uncertainty and are much used to state an opinion or seek information modestly, politely, or cautiously in a less positive and abrupt way than in the indicative. This is the *polite subjunctive* or the *subjunctive of modest or cautious statement*. Out of the potential subjunctive there has also developed more or less clearly

the subjunctive of *indirect statement*, which is employed not to represent the statement as merely conceived, but to indicate *indirectness* of statement. For illustrative examples see 168. II. F. c. (2) and G. a. (2), 2nd par. and b; 169. 2. G. a. (2), 3rd par.; 171. 1, 2nd and 3rd par. In the following discussion this subjunctive is treated under the head of the potential with which it is closely connected. This subjunctive of indirect statement should not be confounded with the subjunctive of *indirect discourse* treated in 170 and 171, which is a broader category including also the optative and potential ideas.

The tense employed is often a point of vital importance to the meaning, and hence instead of grouping the different uses of the subjunctive under these two leading heads the different heads are treated under the different tenses. The two following groups stand out in general quite distinctly from each other: 1. Present tense forms, namely the *present*, *present perfect*, *future perfect*, i.e. the simple present subjunctive or a compound form containing an auxiliary in the present subjunctive. 2. Past tense forms, namely the *past*, *past perfect*, *past periphrastic* (*würde loben*), and *past perfect periphrastic* (*würde gelobt haben*), i.e. the simple past subjunctive or a compound form containing an auxiliary in the past subjunctive. The different tenses within each group mark different distinctions of time, but the tenses of one group as compared with those of the other group do not mark different distinctions of time but differ only in the manner in which they represent the statement. Thus the present and the past subjunctive both denote *present* time, but they usually differ in the manner of the statement. Likewise the present perfect and the past perfect subjunctive both denote past time but differ in the manner of the statement. The distinctions of manner are indicated briefly above and are explained at considerable length in the following articles.

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PRESENT TENSE FORMS.

168. The subjunctive of present tense forms (see 167. 2nd par.) represents the statement not as an actual fact, but yet as a desire so reasonable that it is entertained with hopes of realization, or it represents the statement as a mere conception of the mind but yet indicating that the speaker or writer feels it as probably conforming to fact or reality or regards the occurrence of the act in question as probable. The special cases under these general heads are the following:

I. *Optative Subjunctive*. A present tense form of the subjunctive is used in the following expressions of will:

1. In principal propositions:

A. *Volitive Subjunctive*. The present subjunctive is much used in decided expressions of will—the volitive subjunctive. In principal propositions it is often employed to complete the wanting forms of the imperative. See 177. I. A.

B. *Sanguine Subjunctive of Wish*. A present subjunctive is often used to express a wish which in all probability may be realized: *Lange lebe der König* Long may the king live. *Gebe Gott* may God grant. *So sei es* Let it be thus. *Das walte Gott* May God see to it. *Geh' es Ihnen gut!* (Wilbrandt's *Die Tochter des Fabricius*, 1, 10). This wish, however, is more commonly, except in a few set expressions as the foregoing, expressed by the subjunctive of *mögen* or more modestly *wollen* with a dependent infinitive: *Möge es mir nun vergönnt sein*, *das Begonnene zu Ende zu führen* (Wilmann's *Deutsche Grammatik*, Vorrede). *O teure Herrin, eher mög' ich sterben, eh' sich in meinen Busen | solch ein Gedanke dränge* (I. p. 144). *Gottes Gnade w* *ichische Tragödien*, to his wife, Oct. 1, 1850). *Wollen* is often used by new readers or listeners as a polite admonition to pay especial attention to some particular point: *Auch wolle man nicht übersehen, daß* usw. I also beg that you may not overlook the fact that, &c. Earlier

in the period *müssen* was used where *mögen* is now employed and in a narrower sense it is still found in wishes as described in 213. 4. c.

a. In A and B normal, or more commonly question or inverted order may stand: *Er lebe hoch!* (used in toasts and cries of approval). *Hol' ihn der Teufel!* May the devil take him! *Es lebe die Freiheit!* *Er möge* or *möge er* vollkommen glücklich werden! Of course the sentence has inverted order if it begins with an adverb: *Lange lebe der König!* When the force of the utterance becomes a little more vigorous and approaches a polite request with volitive force the normal order is usually employed: *Das möge nicht dahin mißverstanden werden, als sei eine bloße Hypothese von Haeckel (name) in unwissenschaftlicher Weise als richtig angenommen worden* (Adolf Koelsch in *Frankfurt. Zeit.*, Feb. 15, 1914).

b. Sometimes, tho much more rarely than the pres. tense, the present perfect is used in wishes. It is employed to express the wish that some desired result may be accomplished in the future: *Doch er habe | umsonst sich der Verdammnis übergeben!* (Schiller's *Jungfrau*, 2, 2) May he in vain have given himself over to perdition! *Was hier geschähe, es sei in Traum zerfallen!* (Grillparzer's *Libussa*, Act 1) May that which has happened here soon have become nothing but a dream!

C. *The Subjunctive of Logical Reasoning.* The present subjunctive is much used in logical reasoning in laying down one or more desired propositions, from which conclusions are to be drawn: *Die Figur a b c sei ein gleichschenkliges Dreieck; b d sei ein Lot auf der Grundlinie* Let the figure a b c be an isosceles triangle and b d a perpendicular line on the base, &c.

## 2. In subordinate clauses:

A. *Concessive Subjunctive.* The present subjunctive is used in subordinate clauses with the force of a weakened volitive to concede, grant, admit that something may be true, but the indicative in the main clause, on the other hand affirms that the assertion of the main clause is, in spite of this admission, to be maintained and defended: *Der Berg sei auch noch so hoch*, or *Sei der Berg auch noch so hoch* (or quite commonly *Ist der Berg auch noch so hoch*, or *Mag der Berg auch noch so hoch sein*, or *Dèr Berg mag auch noch so hoch sein*), *ich ersteige ihn* Be the mountain (or Altho the mountain be, or Let the mountain be) ever so high, I will climb it. *Nein, es gibt kein Wiederfinden, heiße es Himmel oder Hölle* (Wiesner's *Die schwarze Dame*). *Wo der Berg auch liege* (or quite commonly *liegen mag*, or *liegt*), *ich ersteige ihn*. *Man kann es ihm nicht recht machen, was man auch tue, tun mag, or tut.* *Welche Entscheidung auch hier gefaßt werde* (also *gefaßt werden mag*, or *gefaßt wird*), *sie wird niemals eine Schande sein für die Versammlung* (v. Gagern, *Frankfurter Nationalversammlung*). *Was immer du seist, ich glaube, wir werden heut nicht spielen* (Schnitzler's *Der grüne Kakadu*, p. 118). *Er komme oder komme nicht, mir ist es* (or *es ist mir*) *gleichgültig*, or *Komme er nun oder komme er nicht, mir ist es* (or *es ist mir*) *gleichgültig* Whether he comes or not, it's all the same to me. The auxiliary *können* is also used, but is not so common as *mögen*: *Das mag* or (here and in similar expressions, but not freely) *kann wohl wahr sein, es ändert doch nichts an der Sache.* The imperative of *lassen* is sometimes used here: *Es hat's niemand gesagt, aber laß es jemand gesagt haben, or laß es gesagt [worden] sein, was kümmert's mich?*

a. Note that the word-order in the concessive clause is either normal or question order, if not introduced by a conjunction, relative pronoun, or relative adverb, in which cases the transposed order is of course used. However, if the auxiliary *können* is used instead of *mögen*, normal or inverted order is usually employed. The use of the normal or question order indicates clearly that the clause was originally an independent proposition. It has retained its original form, altho it has become logically subordinate.

After a conjunction, as *obgleich*, &c., the mood is usually indicative: *Obgleich ich ihn seit langem nicht gesehen hatte, erkannte ich ihn doch augenblicklich.* Occasionally the subjunctive appears here in accordance with older usage: *Und ob die Wolke sie verhülle, die Sonne bleibt am Himmelszelt* (Weber's *Freischütz*, III, 2). In rather choice language the subjunctive of *mögen* is found instead of the indicative when the normal or question order is used: *Er will unter allen Umständen die Wahrheit wissen, möge sie lauten wie sie wolle* (Bellermann's *Schillers Dramen*, p. 226).

B. *Sanguine Subjunctive of Purpose.* This subjunctive of purpose represents the statement only as desired or planned, but implies the expectation that the desire or plan will be realized. It expresses various shades of the volitive subjunctive and the sanguine subjunctive of wish described in 1. A and B. It is found:



(1) In object clauses after verbs of advising, beseeching, warning, wishing, willing, demanding, taking care, seeing to, &c., which of themselves indicate a purpose or design: Sie verlangt, daß er komme (or more commonly kommt), or kommen solle (or more commonly soll), but Sie verlangte, daß er käme or kommen sollte. Sie bittet, daß er kommen möge, but Sie bat, daß er kommen möchte. Ich wünsche, daß ich in diesem ernstesten Streben zur Förderung dieser Aufgabe nach meinem Teile etwas beigetragen haben möge (Bornhak's *Grammatik der deutschen Sprache*, Vorwort). For use of tenses and auxiliaries here see 171. 4. a. Compare b below. The idea of *willing*, &c. is often not expressed at all, but implied in the governing verb: Und außerdem schreibst du ihm, daß er mir seine Photographie und die deiner Schwestern schicke (Raabe's *Horn von Wanza*, chap. viii). Often in subject and attributive substantive clauses, especially where the idea of *willing*, &c. is contained in a noun: Es ist mein Wunsch, daß er gleich komme. Meister Richwin hatte zu Hause den strengsten Befehl gegeben, daß man den Hund wohl eingesperrt halte (Richl's *Der stumme Ratsherr*, II).

(2) In adverbial clauses after other verbs, if the subordinate clause itself expresses the purpose of the action of the principal verb: Er bindet den Baum an, damit er gerade wachse (in choice language), or more commonly wächst, but Er band den Baum an, damit er gerade wüchse. Compare b below.

(3) In choice language also in relative clauses expressing a purpose, and in early N.H.G. after the temporal conjunctions *bis* and *ehe*: Schickt einen sichern Boten ihm entgegen, der auf geheimem Weg ihn zu mir führe (Schiller). Und nun male einen Pfeil, der hinüberweise nach der andern Seite (H. Hoffmann's *Wider den Kurfürsten*, chap. xxxvi) And now draw an arrow which will point to the other side. Verb Zien willen er will ich nicht e. Luc. 11. 1. vnd vmb Jerusalem willen so . . . . . keit aufgehe wie ein glantz | vnd j: . . . . . For *ehe* see Psalm xxxix. 14. Sometimes still in choice language after *bis*, provided the verb of the principal proposition is in a past tense, or the principal proposition is in negative or interrogative form: Das junge Brautpaar machte heut' gewissermaßen die Honneurs des Hauses und stand wartend, bis alles Platz genommen habe (Jensen's *Jenseits des Wassers*, V). O Gott! Du willst nicht warten, bis die Zeit mich schuldlos spreche? (Wilamowitz-Moellendorff's *Griechische Tragödien*, I, p. 170). Sometimes also after *ehe*, if it follows a proposition containing another optative: O teure Herrin, eher mög' ich sterben, eh' sich in meinen Busen | solch ein Gedanke dränge (ib. I, p. 144). Sometimes when dependent upon an imperative: Teile ihm deinen Wunsch mit, ehe er ihn durchs Gerücht erfahre (K. G. Andresen's *Sprachgebrauch*, p. 127). Eh' sich dies Land dem Sieger unterwerfe (in rime with *Schärfe*), | stehet uns Rede, wer ihr seid! (Sudermann's *Die drei Reiherfedern*, 2, 11).

a. This subjunctive is much used in indirect discourse after the verbs in (1), but it must be noticed that after a past tense it is itself often attracted into a past tense (see 169. I. C. a).

after a past tense  
erence in meaning,  
e, especially in the  
of will is not felt  
which the subject is count-  
ly conceived that it is felt

wünsche allen von Herzen, daß jeder mit dem ihm zu  
materieller Art sein Ziel erreicht (Stilgebauer's *Gotz Krampf*, 1. 1). If the principal verb refers  
to past time, the dependent  
often in the tone of lively n  
den Menschen  
konnte er  
mutter wol  
p 52). N  
es unsere

Schotte in *Preussische Jahrbücher*, 1921, p. 1). Instead of *war* and *wurde* we more commonly find the subjunctive here, which is well preserved after a past tense, usually a past tense form according to the old sequence (171. 2. A), i.e. *wäre* in the first example and *würde* in the second and third examples, but often also a present tense form according to the new sequence (171. 2. B), i.e. *sei* and *werde*. Compare 171. 4. a and 169 1. C. a.

The subjunctive in (2) has been gradually declining. At present the indicative is very often used instead of the subjunctive, especially colloquially in the North after a present tense, as the present tendency is to look forward and imagine the design as accomplished rather than to regard the statement as merely planned: *Soll ich den Gemeinen Heiderieter (name) zurückschicken, daß er die Alarmkanone löst?* (Frenssen's *Die drei Getreuen*, chap. i). *Sie möchte etwas recht Hübsches sagen, damit man freundlich mit ihr ist* (H. Böhlau). *Es wär' doch gut, wenn er es bald erfährt, damit ihm der Mund gestopft ist* (Hirschfeld's *Agnes Jordan*, 5). If the principal verb refers to past time, the dependent verb which has a force that is future to the subject of the main verb often in the tone of lively narrative assumes the form of the past tense: *Da begannen die Menschen des Ackers zu warten, damit er ihnen im Herbst ihre Nahrung und Notdurft gab* (Enking's *Die Darnekower*, p. 162) (instead of *gäbe*). *Die Rambergs, deine lieben Vettern und Vormünder, haben die Traute an Grobitzsch verkuppelt. Einfach verkuppelt — nach allen Regeln der Kunst — jawohl! — damit du frei wurdest und dich verloben konntest* (Hartleben's *Rosenmontag*, 2, 7). Instead of *wurdest* and *konntest* we more commonly find the subjunctive here, which is well preserved after a past tense, usually a past tense form according to the old sequence (171. 2. A), i.e. *würdest* and *könntest*, but often also a present tense form according to the new sequence (171. 2. B), i.e. *werdest* and *könnest*. Compare 169. 1. C. a.

The subjunctive in (3) is now largely replaced by the indicative in colloquial language, as the things in question are now not felt as mere conceptions of the mind but as actual factors in the situation which must be considered and dealt with.

C. *Optative in Conditions*. The optative subjunctive occurs here in two forms:

a. Instead of a subordinate clause with *wenn* we may use a clause with a volitive subjunctive, which has normal order and was originally independent, but has become logically subordinate: *Einer trage des andern Last | so werdet jr das gesetz Christi erfüllen* (Gal. vi. 2). *Bald, es kenne nur jeder den eigenen, gönne dem andern | seinen Vorteil, so ist ewiger Friede gemacht* (Goethe's *Vier Jahreszeiten*, 74).

b. A volitive subjunctive often stands in a proviso after *nur daß* but *let it be, on condition that*: *Ich seh' es gern, das steht dir frei, nur daß die Kunst gefällig sei* (Goethe's *Faust*, Studierzimmer).

D. *Optative in Relative Clauses*. This subjunctive is found in the following groups:

a. *Volitive Subjunctive*. A relative clause often contains a volitive subjunctive, which is translated into English by *we wish, it is desired, &c.* *Von dem Erbeschen Heftchen: „Verdeutschung der Kunstausrücke in der Schule“ ist ein Neudruck notwendig geworden und wird demnächst ausgegeben, worauf alle Mitglieder und Freunde des Allgemeinen deutschen Sprachvereins aufmerksam gemacht seien* *to which we especially desire to call the attention of all the members, &c.*

b. A sanguine subjunctive of wish is also used here to express a wish: *unser König, den Gott erhalte* *our king, whom, we pray, God may keep*. Also in clauses with reference to the thought in another clause: *Was würden wir tun, wenn — was Gott verhüte (or verhüten möge) — ein Unglück geschehen sollte?* If some misfortune should occur—which, however, I hope God may prevent—what should we do? More modestly with *wollen*: *So vertrauen wir der ewigen Allmacht, die unsere Abwehr stärken und zu gutem Ende lenken wolle* (Emperor William II to the Reichstag Aug. 4, 1914).

c. For a subjunctive of purpose in relative clauses see B. (3) above.

E. *Optative in Substantive Clauses*:

a. The volitive subjunctive not infrequently occurs in substantive clauses as already described in part in B. (1) above:

(1) In subject clauses: *Es ist billig, daß man ihn unterstütze* (= *man unterstütze ihn* *let the people help him*) *It is fair that the people help him*. *Es geziemt dem Manne, daß er auch das Schwerste willig tue* (= *er tue auch das Schwerste willig*). *Das Geringste ist, daß der Rechtsunterricht von dieser Fessel befreit werde* (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Jan. 19, 1905) *The least that should be done*

is that &c The indicative to emphasize the necessity of fulfilment Das Wichtigste ist, daß das Vertrauen zu uns wieder hergestellt wird (Kurt Eisner speech Nov 30, 1918)

(2) In object clauses Er verdient es, daß man ihn unterstütze, but to express a simple fact daß man ihn unterstützt.

*b* Sanguine Subjunctive of wish

(1) In subject clauses Daß du an unserer Freude teilnimmest, ist unser inniger Wunsch. Mein letzter Wunsch aber ist: möge das ungemein reiche Buch recht eifrig benutzt werden! (Otto Weidenmüller in *Die Neueren Sprachen* 1916, p 186)

(2) In object clauses Seine Persönlichkeit und seine Vergangenheit verdienen es, daß sein Gedächtnis lebendig bleibe (*Hamb Nachr* Nov 10, 1904)

*F Optative in Adverbial Clauses* This subjunctive is occasionally used here in categories other than those previously described especially after *so wahr* and *so (= wenn)* In meinen Armen will ich dich durch das Leben tragen, so wahr Gott mir helfe (Raabe's *Die Leute aus dem Walde* chap x) Nein, nein, so Gott mir helfe (Storm's *Chronik von Grieshuus*, p 110)

## II Potential Subjunctive

The potential subjunctive of present tense forms represents the statement as a mere conception but yet as something which is quite probable, plausible, supposable, or as credible, but yet as only resting upon the testimony of others, or upon the subjective view of the speaker This potential must not be confounded with the *unreal potential* (see 169. 2) of past tense forms, which represents on the other hand the statement as barely possible, quite doubtful, or even as in conflict with fact or impossible In the present period of the language the tendency is to observe this distinction between the subjunctive of present tense forms and that of past tense forms, but, as will be seen below, there are still many survivals of an earlier usage, which always, irrespective of the meaning required, as at present in English, a past tense form of the subordinate verb whenever it depended upon a past tense form Er sagte, er sei krank, or often placing the tense of the subordinate clause in accord with that of the principal clause Er sagte, er wäre krank. The thought in both of these sentences is exactly the same, but in other sentences a sharp distinction is often made between present and past of the subjunctive, the former expressing a probability, the latter an improbability of the truth of the statement The tendency to distinguish between present and past tense forms of the subjunctive is stronger than the tendency to place the tense of the subordinate verb in accord with the tense of the principal verb, but as this growing tendency has not yet gained a complete victory, there is some confusion

The potential subjunctive of present tense forms is now only employed in subordinate clauses, but it has nevertheless a wide field of usefulness, as will be seen in the following detailed statement of its uses

*A Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse* The potential subjunctive of present tense forms is used in indirect discourse after verbs of *saying, thinking, feeling, &c*, to represent the indirect statement in the subordinate clause not as an actual fact, but only as a conception as something conceived as probable or plausible by the speaker or writer, thus sometimes indicating his own individual opinion or feeling sometimes however, suggesting a doubt in his mind Titus pflegte zu sagen, der Tag, an welchem er nichts Gutes tue, sei für ihn verloren Ich zweifle noch, ob er der rechte Mann hierfür sei

This subjunctive often differs markedly from other forms of the potential, as it is frequently no longer a potential pure and simple, but is often merely a grammatical form to express *indirectness* of statement See *G a* (2), 2nd par, and *b* below The subjunctive in this use has a broad field, not being confined to one grammatical category, and hence may reappear in a number of the following groups It should, however, be carefully noticed that this subjunctive may not only differ in each category from the other potential in the same category in its lack of real potential character, but also in its much greater

frequency of use, as it has become very productive in its employment as a formal indication of indirect statement.

This use of the subjunctive and the similar use in indirect questions are the most common in the language, and are treated at considerable length in 171–173.

B. *Clauses of Manner.* The potential subjunctive is very much used in these clauses to indicate that the comparison rests upon plausible grounds, or is the subjective view of the speaker: *Es scheint mir, als ob er früher nicht fleißig gewesen sei, als ob er jetzt aber recht fleißig sei. Es war ihm, als höre er noch einmal durch den Regen und Wind den Nachtwächter von Wanza in der Ferne die Stunde rufen* (Raabe's *Horn von Wanza*, chap. xi). *Mir war zuweilen, als sei ich von unserm lieben Gott geschieden* (Freytag's *Rittmeister*, chap. ix) It seemed to me sometimes as if I were separated from God and his goodness. As according to 276. A (2nd par.) such clauses are now felt as indirect discourse the conjunction *als* here is often omitted after the analogy of dropping *daß* in indirect discourse: *Ihm war, er höre einen zarten Engel weinen* (E. von Handel-Mazzetti's *Stephana Schwertner*, II, chap. IV).

a. This use of the subjunctive must not be confounded with the unreal potential of a past tense form, which implies that the comparison is unreal and contrary to fact. See 169. 2. B.

b. As in indirect discourse, as explained in 171. 2. B. a, a past tense form of the subjunctive is usually employed here if the present tense form is not distinguished from the indicative. Thus if the subjunctive in the sentence from Raabe were in the first person we should have to say: *Es war mir, als hörte ich usw.* Writers from the Southwest, however, employ also here present tense forms: *Er sah mich verwundert an, als ob ich irre rede und Fabeln erzähle* (K. F. Meyer's *Novellen*, I. p. 199). Compare 171. 2. B. a. *Note.*

C. *Plausible Subjunctive of Result in Attributive Relative Clauses.* The indicative denotes an actual result, represents an act as actually taking place. The subjunctive of result represents the result or act as conceived by the speaker or writer rather than as actually taking place. In the attributive relative clause there are two categories:

a. The present subjunctive indicates a result that naturally follows from the character of a person or thing, so that the relative pronoun may be replaced by *von der Art daß er (sie, es)*, but it represents this result not as actually taking place, but as only conceived, i.e. as something which *may* or *can* take place, in English usually rendered by *may* or *can*: *Nichts ist, das die Gewaltigen hemme* (Schiller). *Nimmer findet er den Heil'gen, der an ihm ein Wunder tu'* (Uhland). The subjunctive here is most common after a negative but it also occurs after a positive statement: *Ich will Auskunft erteilen, wie man ein Deutsch reden und schreiben soll, das vor dem Urteil der Sprachkundigen als richtig und gut bestehe* (E. Engel's *Gutes Deutsch*, p. 10, 1918). The present subjunctive here, tho a little earlier in the period quite common and still found in choice prose, is now usually replaced, on the one hand, by the indicative to represent the result confidently as taking place, or, on the other hand, by a past tense form of the subjunctive to indicate modestly that the result *might* possibly take place, implying that it does take place. Compare 169. 2. C.

b. The present subjunctive indicates a result that follows from a free act or a combination of circumstances, but represents it not as actually taking place but as only conceived: *Keiner ist, der noch aufrecht stehe, als ich ganz allein* (Hans Hoffmann's *Rittmeister*, II, p. 203). *Mir ist kein Volk bekannt, das die Sprachreinigung so entschieden und entschlossen verteidige, das dem Fremdworttaumel so unentwegt und mit so großem Erfolge zu Leibe gehe, wie das dänische* (E. Mogk in *Sprachentwicklung und Sprachbewegung bei den nordgermanischen Völkern*, 1897). *So denkt der junge Mann und im Überschwang des Glücks suchte er jemand, der ihm helfe seine Gedanken tragen* (Heer's *Der König der Bernina*, VII). *Und alles, was kommen mag, nehm' ich auf mich — alles, was daraus erwachse, Segen oder Unsegen!* (Frida Schanz's *Letzte Botschaft*). The present subjunctive here, tho still used in choice language, is now largely replaced, as in a, by the present indicative or a past tense form of the subjunctive.

**D Plausible Subjunctive of Result in Adverbial Clauses** The usual mood in clauses of result is the indicative as the statement is felt as a fact but in choice language a present tense form of the subjunctive is often chosen to indicate that the result is in an accurate sense conceived rather than actually attained. Und will meine Erfahrungen so stellen, daß meine Arbeit andern nicht ganz unnutz bleibe (Goethe's *Briefe*, 13, 18, 6) The most common categories in which this subjunctive occurs are here briefly described

**a** After *als daß* preceded by *zu* + the positive of an adjective or adverb. Die Erklärung ist viel zu weitläufig, als daß sie bei Entscheidung der vorhabenden Streitsache im geringsten zu brauchen sei (Lessing) The present subjunctive is now usually replaced here by the indicative or a past tense form of the subjunctive. Er ist zu reich, als daß er Sold nimmt or nahm (Wilmanns) Er war zu reich, als daß er Sold nahm or genommen hatte, or Er ist or war zu reich, um Sold zu nehmen

**b** After *als daß* preceded by the comparative of an adjective or adverb. Der ungeduldige Genius unsres Zeitalters bricht lieber herbe Früchte, als daß er ihre Reife abwarte (Herder) Wir alle wissen, daß in gegebener Lage der Offizier, der Soldat lieber blindlings kühn den ersten Schritt tun soll und muß, als daß er hin und her erwäge soll ich oder soll ich nicht? (Lilencron's *Krieg und Frieden*) In general, the indicative or a past tense form of the subjunctive is more common here

**c** After *daß nicht*, ohne daß (subjunctive more common after a negative than after an affirmative statement), earlier in the period also *geschweige daß* (238 3 C d) Er kehret nie | von einer Reise wieder, daß ihm nicht | ein Drittel seiner Sachen fehle (Goethe's *Tasso*, 3, 4) Die Alte hatte, um sich nach dem Tode des Mannes, ohne daß sie dem Dorf zur Last falle, durchzubringen, einen kleinen Kramhandel angelegt (Wilhelm Jensen's *Auf Fano und Mano I*) Aber eine Kultur von solcher Größe bricht nicht zusammen, ohne daß aus ihren Trummern neues Leben erblühe (Eduard Norden's *Die lateinische Literatur im Übergang zum Mittelalter*, Einleitung) Er sagt weder, wie es heißt, noch wer der Verfasser desselben sei, geschweige daß er es für das ruhrendste von allen Stücken des Euripides erkläre (Lessing) The present indicative or a past tense form of the subjunctive is now more common here

**d** After verbs modified by *so* The sentence from Goethe in D above is a good example The present indicative is now more common here, but a past tense form of the subjunctive is also used

**e** After *so* or *solch* + adjective or adverb Ich bitte Ew Gnaden, es auf eine so behutsame Art zu tun, daß er nicht merken könne, daß ich ihn ver-raten habe (Wieland) Haltst du mich für so schwach, daß solch ein Fall mich gleich zerrutten könne? (Goethe) The present indicative or a past tense form of the subjunctive is now more common here

**f** Earlier in the period a present subjunctive could be used in a clause of pure result (276 D) So wird muns gehen | das much todschlage wer much findet (Gen IV 14)

**E Probable Conditions** In most conditions that are represented as probable the indicative is now used as in English, as the conceptions that are busy-ing the mind of the speaker or writer, tho mere conceptions, are nevertheless felt by him as real factors in life with which he must reckon Ich gehe nicht, wenn es regnet I shall not go if it rains

The subjunctive is used in probable conditions in the following categories

**a Subjunctive in Exceptions after a Negative Proposition** In early NHG a present subjunctive was much used in clauses introducing an exception to a preceding or following negative statement Vnd so jemand auch kempffet | wird er doch nicht gekronet | er kempffe denn recht (2 Tim II 5) The subjunctive is usually accompanied by the adverb *denn*, which in earlier periods when the clause was negative in form was not absolutely necessary but which now is the distinctive mark of this old construction altho it need not be rendered into English The clause is now positive in form in German but is negative in English, where it is introduced by *if not*, *unless* This clause of excep-

tion with positive form was not infrequent in the classical period and still occasionally occurs in poetry or choice prose: *Und kommt man hin, um etwas zu erhalten, | erhält man nichts, man bringe denn was hin* (Goethe's *Tasso*, 1, 4). *Wohin er (i.e. Gott) uns stellt, da müssen wir ausharren, er rufe uns denn selber ab* (Spielhagen's *Freigeboren*, p. 176). *Einmütig erklärte man von seiten der Städte, keine Reichssteuern bewilligen zu wollen, es sei denn die Aachener Beschwerde vorher erledigt* (Lamprecht's *Deutsche Geschichte*, V, p. 661). *Es ist, als trügen sie tief im Herzen eine goldene Saite, die nicht klingen kann, es rühre sie denn der Finger der Schwesterseele* (H. von Krause's *Sein Geheimnis* in *Westermanns Monatshefte*, March 1905, p. 804). The present subjunctive is replaced here by the past to convey the idea of unreality, improbability: *Die Nürnberger henken (in the North hängen) keinen, | sie hätten ihn denn vor* (Schiller's *Räuber*, 2, 3).

This old construction is not now common in plain prose except in *es sei denn* or *es wäre denn* *unless* and in case of *müssen* with a dependent infinitive. The two expressions *es sei denn* and *es wäre denn* differ from each other just as in general the present subjunctive differs from the past subjunctive. The former expresses more assurance: *Ich werde es nicht tun, es sei denn, daß er mich darum bitte (or bittet)* I shall not do it unless he begs me to [do it], but *Ich werde es nicht tun, es wäre denn, daß er mich darum bitten sollte* I shall not do it unless he should beg me to [do it]. The expression *es wäre denn* *daß* is often replaced by the subjunctive of *müssen* with a dependent infinitive, the past subjunctive of *müssen* for present or future time and the past perfect for past time: *Daß werde ich nie von ihm glauben, er müßte es mir denn selbst sagen. Sie hing süßen Fragen und Vorstellungen nach, denn Elimar hatte beim Blindenkuh, als er sie haschte, Worte fallen lassen, die nicht mißdeutet werden konnten, er hätte denn ein schändlicher und zweizüngiger Lügner sein müssen* (Fontane's *L'Adultera*, chap. VIII). The construction *es sei (or wäre) denn daß* arose in this category but it now belongs to *c* below. The forms are now little more than a subordinating conjunction like English *unless*. The original construction was an independent proposition and hence was paratactic (267. 4), while the new form introduces a subordinate clause. The new construction is now more common, as the *sei* and *wäre* are always clear subjunctives, while the old construction often does not have distinctive forms: *Ich werde es nicht tun, es sei denn daß sie mich darum bitten, not Ich werde es nicht tun, sie bitten mich denn darum*. The construction with *müssen* is the old paratactic construction, but it is still widely used when there is need of a past tense form as its form is distinctive, but it can't be used at all in the present tense.

The subjunctive of the simple verb as found in the first examples given above represents the utterance not as an actuality, but as a mere conception of the mind, but the positive form and meaning of the clause sometimes leads to the use of the indicative instead of the subjunctive, especially in lively language where the action is represented as having actually taken place: *Ich laß nicht ab, ihr gebt den Gefangenen denn heraus* (Grillparzer). *„Ich lasse dich nicht fort, Ansas,“ rief sie, „du sagst mir denn, was du im Sinn hast“* (Wichert's *Ansas und Grita*). Even in case of the verb *sein* we find the indicative for the expression of reality: *Der Arzt hatte nie in ihrem Hause zu schaffen, es war denn, daß er bei der Ankunft eines neuen Weltbürgers zugegen war* (Telmann).

The positive form here is explained in *Note* below.

*Note* In O.H.G. and usually in the classical period of M.H.G. the clause here has negative form: *Des sint ir iemer ungenesen | got enwelle der arzat wesen* (Armer Heinrich, Heidelberg manuscript) You cannot be cured unless God be the physician. The second proposition here is an independent utterance joined to the preceding independent statement to add a qualification to it. As it is not a statement of fact but a mere conception of the mind the subjunctive is used. As the two negative statements indicate a positive issue, the actual performance of the act mentioned in the second proposition, the old negative *en* or *ne* began in the classical period of M.H.G. to drop out and later entirely disappeared. Sometimes the subjunctive is in lively style replaced by the indicative to indicate actual realization, as illustrated above. Exactly the same development has taken place in negative clauses of result following a negative proposition, both in clauses of degree expressing a result (277. 2) and those of manner (276. D, 4th par.): *Nieman lebt so starker, ern (= er en) müeze ligen tot* (*Nibelungenlied*) *Niemand ist so stark, daß er nicht sterben muß*. The result here is represented as a mere conception of the mind, hence the subjunctive is used. The clause of result is an independent proposition added to the preceding negative statement to explain it more definitely: *No one is so strong, i.e. he doesn't die*. To-day such clauses of result are usually dependent clauses introduced by a sub-

*b. Subjunctive in Exceptions after a Positive Proposition.* This usage, once common, is now restricted to the form *sei in es sei denn daß unless*: Meine Untersuchung hat dargetan, daß . . . die Stämme, die derselben Mundart zugetan sind, auch seit uralter Zeit unmittelbar nebeneinander wohnen, es sei denn, daß besondere Anlässe einen Strahl des Volkes voraussprengten (Grimm's *Geschichte der deutschen Sprache*, II. 609). The form is here positive, but it is negative in force as the form has retained the meaning of its older negative form. It is now a mere set expression, a conjunction with negative force. The positive form has arisen under the influence of the *sei in a*.

*c. Hypotactic Form of a.* The old paratactic construction in *a* is now usually, also not infrequently in M.H.G., replaced by a hypotactic (267. 4) form of expression, i.e. by a present subjunctive in a subordinate clause introduced by *es sei denn daß unless*: ODer | wie kan jemand in eines starcken haus gehen | vnd jm seinen Hausrat rauben | Es sey denn | das er zuuor den Starcken binde (Matth. xii. 29). Direkt einzugreifen hat es kaum eine Veranlassung, es sei denn, daß es sich darum handle, die mit Bezug auf Korea vorhandenen Handelsrechte zu wahren (*Deutsche Rundschau*, 1894, p. 273). The indicative might be used here but it would suggest a greater probability of realization. See also *a* (2nd par.). Instead of a subordinate clause here we often find a principal proposition, i.e. paratactic form: *es sei denn, es handle (or handelt) sich darum, die usw.*

*d. Present subjunctive after außer unless, except that, als daß except that in clauses following a negative proposition*: Ich tue es nicht, außer er bitte (act only conceived) mich darum, or außer er bittet (actual performance) mich darum. So bleibt wohl nichts übrig, als daß man seine Kräfte zusammennehme (Goethe), or now more commonly *zusammennimmt* or *zusammennehme*.

#### F. Plausible Subjunctive in Relative and Interrogative Clauses:

*a. In attributive relative and interrogative clauses.* Usage in attributive relative clauses is described in C. *a, b*. A present tense of the subjunctive, tho quite common here a little earlier in the period, is now rare and only found in choice language. It is, however, still the rule, if the relative clause is part of an indirect statement, even tho the governing substantive itself does not stand in a subjunctive clause with the outward form of indirect discourse: Die Regierung der Vereinigten Staaten beschwerte sich über die Landung so vieler Armen, welche manche europäische Regierung fortschicke.

Interrogative clauses are introduced by *ob whether*, or some interrogative adjective or adverb: Die Frage, wie er zu dieser Auffassung komme, verblüffte ihn. The subjunctive here, i.e. in indirect questions, is quite common.

#### *b. In substantive relative clauses:*

(1) As subject or predicate. As subject: Komme, wer wolle, ich bin nicht zu Hause. As predicate: Und wer der Dichtkunst Stimme nicht vernimmt, | ist ein Barbar, er sei auch, wer er sei. This subjunctive is only found in a few set expressions where the governing verb is in the optative (especially the concessive) subjunctive.

(2) As object: in a few set expressions after a concessive subjunctive: er sage, was er wolle. Es koste, was es wolle. . . . cre: der aufkeimende Trieb der Liebe findet, was er . . . . . hen-feind, scene 8) love springing up like a shoot finds something to which it may cling. Except after the concessive subjunctive the past subjunctive is more common here.

c. In substantive interrogative clauses. This subjunctive is very common in clauses introduced by *ob whether*, or some interrogative pronoun or adverb:

(1) As subject: *Wer den Brief abgesandt habe, ist noch nicht ermittelt worden.*

(2) As object of a verb or a preposition: *Ich habe gezweifelt, ob man dem Herrn Cramer ein poetisches Genie zugestehen könne* (Lessing).

The subjunctive in (1) and (2) is often not the pure potential, but a mere grammatical form for the expression of an indirect question, and hence may stand after such words as *sehen to see*, *vernehmen to learn*, *wissen to know*, &c., the meanings of which naturally preclude the idea of doubt: *Du siehst, wie ungeschickt in diesem Augenblick ich sei* (Goethe). *Wenigstens würden sie dort wissen, wohin er sich gewendet habe* (P. Heyse). *Als er in wenigen vorläufigen Worten vernahm, worum es sich handle* (*what the business was about*, a matter of fact, but subjunctive on account of the indirectness of the form), *ordnete er an, daß, &c.* (G. Keller's *Kleider machen Leute*). See also G. a. (2), 2nd par.

G. *Plausible Subjunctive in Substantive Daß- Clauses.* This subjunctive is not infrequently used, especially in choice language, to represent something as a mere conception of the mind but yet as something which is probably true, or to indicate that the event or result in question is not altogether unlikely. The *daß* here may sometimes be suppressed. This subjunctive is often replaced by the past as described in 169. 2. G. a. (1), (2). Of course the indicative is used if it is desired to represent the statement as a fact. This subjunctive is used in the following relations:

a. In subject and object clauses:

(1) As subject: *Denn es ist unmöglich | das Gott liege* (199, 2. Division, 4) (Heb. vi. 18). *Denn es geschieht, daß vor Gott ein Ackersmann besser tue mit seinem Pflügen, denn eine Nonne mit ihrer Keuschheit* (Luther). *Es ist fast unmöglich, daß er die Abgeschmacktheit ganzer Seiten und Bogen nicht einsehe* (G. Keller). *Unter solchen Umständen war es ausgeschlossen, daß Friedrich den Dienst verlasse* (Suttner's *Die Waffen nieder!*, III). *Aber daß ein siegreiches Japan den Spruch „Asien den Asiaten“ auf die Fahnen schreiben werde, das ist sicherlich zu gewärtigen* (*Neue Zürcher Zeit.*, Dec. 13, 1904). Eine seiner fixen Ideen war, daß sein Sohn ihn unterdrücke (Sudermann's *Frau Sorge*, chap. XIX). A subjective view is often introduced by *als* or *als ob*: *Leicht könnte der Schluß Eindruck der sein, als bestehe die vielverbreitete Meinung von Nietzsches lediglich negativem Wirken zu recht* (Richard M. Meyer in *Zeitschrift für deutsche Wortforschung*, XV, p. 144). The subjunctive is common where it is felt as logically dependent upon some verb of believing, expecting, &c. as in the example from the "*Neue Zürcher Zeit.*", or wherever the subject clause explains a preceding noun, as in case of *fixe Ideen* in the next to the last sentence and *Schluß Eindruck* in the last example, for the statement is felt as a form of indirect discourse. Elsewhere the present subjunctive, tho not infrequent in choice language, is now usually replaced in colloquial speech by the indicative, as the statement is felt as a fact, or if not as a fact at least a general truth, or where the act is not even certain is felt as a practical factor in daily life with which one must reckon rather than as a mere conception, as in *Es ist möglich, daß es morgen regnet*, or *Besser [ist] du läßt es*. On the other hand, a past tense form of the subjunctive is quite common here to indicate modestly or cautiously that the statement is at least conceivable and is probably true. See 169. 2. G. a. (1).

(2) Object clauses. As object of a verb or a preposition: *Wenige Menschen können leiden, daß man sie auf ihre Fehler aufmerksam mache* (not a definite case but merely a general conception). *Er billigt es nicht, daß Marie allein geht* (a fact, a fixed plan), but *Er billigt es nicht, daß Marie allein gehe* (a mere conception which has not crystalized into a fixed plan). Where a prepositional object clause explains a preceding anticipative prepositional adverb the subjunctive is often used, as the statement is in a certain sense felt



as a kind of indirect discourse, the clause explaining a preceding word as in the very common type of indirect discourse in *b* below: *Mein Glück hängt davon ab, daß dein Unternehmen gut vonstatten gehe* (or *geht* to indicate that the speaker is actually reckoning with this issue as a factor in his life rather than regarding it as a mere conception). Similarly in an adverbial clause of degree that explains a preceding anticipative demonstrative adverb: *Zunächst einigte man sich wenigstens so weit, daß an der vierjährigen Dauer der Grundschule unbedingt festgehalten werden solle* (*Berliner Tageblatt*, June 14, 1921). Sometimes as the object of an adjective: *Es ist wert, daß man einige Bemerkungen darüber mache* (Goethe, to whom the statement was a conception), or now more commonly *macht*, as the statement is felt as a fact.

The subjunctive in (1) and (2) is often not the pure potential, but a mere grammatical form for the expression of indirect statement, and hence may stand after such verbs as *beweisen* to *prove*, *melden*, *verkündigen* to *announce*, *sehen*, *ansetzen* to *see*, *überzeugen* to *convince*, *versichern* to *assure*, *wissen* to *know*, *zeigen* to *show*, &c., likewise after such adjectives as *sicher*, &c., the meanings of which naturally preclude the idea of doubt: Also *hab ich mit unsern alten Liedern bewiesen, daß allein der Glaub' an Jesum Christum selig mach'* (Alberus, 1539). *Verkündet ihr, daß ich gerettet sei* (Schiller's *Wilhelm Tell*, 4, 3). *Die junge Frau war überzeugt, daß alles den Krebsgang gehe, solange sie hier liege und sich pflege* (Anna Schieber's *Alle guten Geister*, p. 28). *Er wußte wohl, daß sein Werk getan sei* (ib., p. 272). *Man ist sicher, daß ...* *überaus großen Schärfe der österreichischen Note eine ... Österreichs nicht untätig zusehen werde* (*Vorworts*, July 20, 1917). *... war zugleich erheitert und entzückt, zumal der Vogel nach kurzer Pause zeigte, daß sein Reichthum noch lange nicht erschöpft sei* (H. Seidel's *Der Neuntöler*).

*b.* In attributive clauses: *Meine Herren, wir müssen uns den Fall vergegenwärtigen, daß die eine oder die andere Regierung nicht auf alle Bedingungen eingehe* (*Vorparlament*, p. 63). In one form of this clause this subjunctive is now very common—in indirect discourse: *ein eigenes Gefühl: er müsse den Ort kennen lernen* (Hirschfeld's *Damon Kleist*). *Sie glaubten mich mit der Nachricht zu überraschen, daß ich schwindsüchtig sei* (ib.). Similarly in attributive clauses explaining a preceding prepositional adverb: *Sein Verzicht darauf, daß er zuerst rede, hat allgemein befriedigt*. The potential idea often disappears, the subjunctive not implying uncertainty, but merely indicating indirectness of statement: *Mein ganzer Feldzugsplan ... fiel in sich zusammen vor der süßen Gewißheit, daß sie mich liebe* (Paul Keller's *Waldwinter*, XIV).

To express the idea of mere subjectivity or plausibility *als* (with question order) or *als ob* or *als wenn* (with transposed order) is often used instead of *daß*: *Die (die Rede) macht ganz den Eindruck, als ob es sich um ein abgekartetes Spiel handle* (*Hamburgischer Correspondent*, April 23, 1905). Compare 169. 2. G. *b* (2nd par.). Where the comparison is made in quite a positive tone the indicative is also used here: *Trotzdem gewinnt es den Anschein, als ob die auswärtige Politik Englands auch nach dem Rücktritte Lord Salisburys von Fehlschlägen heimgesucht wird* (*Deutsche Rundschau*). See also 238. 2. *d.* *Note*.

*Note*  
falls jene  
is derived  
is thus th

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF PAST TENSE FORMS.

169. The subjunctive of past tense forms (see 167, 2nd par.) is used to represent that which is wished for without much hope of realization, also that which is conceived as quite doubtful, contrary to fact, or that which merely exists in the imagination, or rests upon appearances without foundation in facts. This subjunctive is used both in principal and subordinate clauses. It has

only two tenses—the past to express present time, the past perf. to express past time: (pres. time) **Er sieht aus, als ob er krank wäre** He looks as if he were sick; (past time) **Er sieht aus, als ob er krank gewesen wäre** He looks as if he had been sick. The past subjunctive often points also to the future, as is usually made clear by the context: **Wenn ich so einen Mann haben sollte, der sich immer Gefahren aussetzte, ich stürbe im ersten Jahr** (Goethe's *Götz*, 1, 3). In conditional sentences (see 2. E below) in principal propositions, the simple past subjunctive can be replaced by the periphrastic past (**würde loben**), and the past perf. by the periphrastic past perfect (**würde gelobt haben**). In S.G. and with increasing frequency elsewhere the simple past subjunctive is thus also in subordinate clauses replaced by the periphrastic form, altho the practice is frequently condemned by grammarians. The case mentioned in 2. E. Note 3 below will serve in general as an illustration and partial justification of this forbidden construction, which is now often found not only in conditional, but also in optative and concessive clauses and clauses of manner and elsewhere, as indicated below. See 1. A. a; 1. B. a; 1. C. b; 2. B. a and D. a below, and 190. 1. E. a.

This subjunctive often loses the element of unreality and is used merely to make a statement in a less positive tone than is expressed by the indicative, and hence is often called the subjunctive of modest or cautious statement. The especial cases are mentioned below under the different categories.

The following are the principal groups of this subjunctive:

1. The Unreal Optative:

A. The *unreal subjunctive of wish* is used in principal propositions to express a wish of the heart but one which under the circumstances the speaker scarcely hopes to see realized. In these wishes the question order is the rule, and the subjunctive is often accompanied by the adverb **doch**: **Käme er doch!** If he would only come! Past time: **Wäre er doch gekommen!** If he had only come! It is also common to put such optative sentences in the transposed order in the form of a subordinate clause introduced by **daß, wenn**, and the conditional relative **wer** (159), as explained in 284. I. 3. a: **O daß ich das Glück hätte, einen von euch bei mir zu haben! Wenn er doch noch lebte! Eilende Wolken! Segler der Lüfte! Wer mit euch wanderte, mit euch schiffte!** (Schiller's *Maria*, 2098).

The subjunctive of the simple verb is often replaced by the subjunctive of **wollen, mögen, or können** with a dependent infinitive: **Möchte er doch endlich zur Besinnung kommen! Ach, könnte ich euch doch nur einmal besuchen!**

By using a past tense of the subjunctive and thus indicating that one does not count upon the fulfilment of one's wish one can avoid a blunt expression of will, so that the past tense subjunctive forms often lose in large measure the element of unreality, and are employed to express modestly an earnest wish or appeal, where it may be called the subjunctive of *modest wish*: **Wollte (modest wish) Gott sich deiner erbarmen, mein armes Herz, daß du nicht immer Schmerzen ausstehen dürftest (modest wish)!** (Bismarck an seine Frau, March 3, 1851). **Möchte diese kurze Charakteristik zu weiteren Forschungen Anlaß geben!** (Richard M. Meyer in *Zeitschrift für deutsche Wortforschung*, II, p. 291). In subject clause: **Daß du an unserer Freude teilnehmen möchtest, ist unser inniger Wunsch.** In clause of exception: **Es fehlt nichts, als daß du da wärst.** **Dem Weine fehlt nichts, als daß er völlig geklärt wäre.** Likewise the *modest* or *polite* volitive: **Herr Flemming möchte kommen!** (Otto Ernst's *Flachsmann als Erzieher*, 3, 10) Bid Mr. Flemming kindly step in.

a. The past periphrastic subjunctive is frequently, especially thruout the South, used here instead of the simple subjunctive of the verb, altho this usage is quite generally condemned by grammarians: Justinus Kerner schreibt: **Würdest du ihn nur auch kennen!** (K. Mayer über Uhland, 2, 183). **O, wenn doch der Herr Assessor mal kommen würde!** (Raabe's *Akten des Vogelsangs*, p. 184). **Wenn sie [die Rosen] doch nicht welken würden!** (H. Böhlau's *Adam und Eva*, chap. vi). The clumsy periphrasis here has justly incurred the disfavor of grammarians, but their censure is often indiscriminate. The use of the periphrasis in the sentence

from H. Böhlau is beautiful and is in harmony with a tendency that also appears elsewhere.  
See 190 1 E. a

b In the colloquial and popular language of the North the indicative often replaces the subjunctive here as elsewhere. Wenn wir man (= nur) erst draußen waren! (Halbe's *Das tausendjährige Reich*, p. 73). With reference to past time the past indicative is sometimes found also in the literary language, as the wish originally was the subordinate clause of the conditional sentence described in 1. Note 2: O, betrat ich doch nie sein Haus! (Wagner's *Meisters*, 1, 1), originally Betrat ich nie sein Haus, es kam nicht dahin.

B. The *unreal concessive* subjunctive which stands in the subordinate clause implies that the conceded proposition upon which the conclusion is based is not a very probable one. Sentences in which this subjunctive thus stands in the subordinate clause are in respect to mood and tense in both principal and subordinate clause exactly like unreal conditional sentences (see 2 E below):  
Und wenn Sie mir goldene Berge gaben, das würde ich nicht tun Even if you should give me mountains of gold I should not do it

a. The past periphrastic subjunctive is frequently used here in the subordinate clause, although. Thus a prominent German educator  
 bedingung nachahmenswerter finden würden  
 Bedingungen fehlen. See also 2 E Note 3

below, also 150. 1 1 0

C. *Unreal subjunctive of purpose*. In the three categories enumerated in 168. 1. 2. B, the unreal subjunctive of purpose is used to represent the thing desired or planned as a mere conception of the mind not resting upon any expectation of realization, or on the other hand by thus using here a past tense form of the subjunctive and thus indicating that one is not counting upon a realization of one's expectations one can often modestly express earnest wishes and plans which one inwardly hopes to see realized. (1) Ich wollte, er wäre nicht gestorben. Ich wünschte, er käme. The subjunctive here often loses the element of unreality and is used to express modestly a wish that may be fulfilled: Darum bet' ich zu unserm Herrgott, er möcht' mir meine höchste Freud' geben (Anzengruber's *Schandfleck*, chap. xii). Und das hat damals einen so großen Eindruck auf mich gemacht, daß ich dich bitten möchte, du machtest es auch so (Goethe's *Die Leiden des Werthers*, chap. viii). (2) Ich stünde die Konnt' ich verjüngen (Uhland). Es ist nur zur Nachfrage, wenn mir einmal der Einfall käme, daß ich gleich vor die rechte Schmiede ginge (Goethe's *Götz*, 2, 4). (3) So beschloß man, einen patriotisch-dramatischen Abend zu veranstalten, der zugleich Gelegenheit bote, die fünf Schauspieler der höheren Gesellschaft Frankenfelds vorzuführen (Riehl). Ich wartete, bis das Haus verkauft wäre (Wilmanns). Ich habe gewartet, bis ich Sie 'mal allein träfe (Frenssen's *Jörn Uhl*, chap. vii). Es blieb ihm nichts übrig als abzuwarten, bis diese wehevolle Orgie sich erschöpft hatte (Ertl's *Die Stadt der Heiligen*). Und ehe denn die Abendmette von den fernen Klostertürmen klänge, sollte aufgepackt werden (Alexis's *Die Hosen des Herrn von Bredou*, I). Papa hat nicht wieder aufbauen lassen wollen, ehe du nicht deine Anordnungen getroffen hattest (Sudermann's *Frau Sorge*, chap. XXIII). Thus the subjunctive in (3) is not at all infrequent, while the sanguine subjunctive of purpose is here almost confined to relative clauses in choice language, being elsewhere usually replaced by the indicative.

a After a past tense t'

and even still better in (2), as in *Er band den Baum an, damit er grade wachse*, but *Er bindet den Baum an, damit er grade wachse* or more commonly *wächst*. The present subjunctive, however, as in (171 2 B) asserts itself in the older simpler forms *Strom sich einigermaßen*

verlaufen haben würde (Wildenbruch's *Schwester-Seele*, II, chap. XI) instead of *bis der Strom sich verlaufen hätte*.

## 2. The Unreal Potential Subjunctive is used:

### A. In statements and questions direct and indirect:

(1) *In direct statements and questions.* In earlier periods the unreal potential subjunctive was established most firmly in indirect discourse and in other subordinate clauses. It is forcing its way more and more into independent propositions. Its use in subordinate clauses is treated at length in the different categories described below. It is employed in the principal proposition in the following cases:

a. In the principal clause of unreal conditional sentences. This use is discussed in E below.

b. In questions to express that some claim that has just been made is contrary to fact: *Wann hätten wir Euch je gehuldigt?* (Wildenbruch's *Die Quitzows*, 3, 12) When, pray, did we ever do homage to you? In doubting inquiries or exclamations of surprise: *Sollte Karl das getan haben?* Can it be that Charles has done that? *Wär's möglich? Könn't' ich nicht mehr, wie ich wollte?* (Schiller's *Wallensteins Tod*, 1, 4). *Er hätte jedes Hindernis besiegt, | und in dem eignen Willen seiner Tochter | soll't' (past subj.) ihm der neue Streit entstehn?* (id., *Die Piccolomini*, 3, 8) Can it be that he has overcome every obstacle only to find in the wilfulness of his own daughter a new source of opposition? *Du wärst | so falsch gewesen?* (ib., 5, 1) Can it be that you were so false? *Dies wäre Ihre Schwester! Well! this is your sister, is it? Das wäre! or Ei! das wäre!* Indeed!, or You don't say so! *Wo wäre der?* Where in the world can he be? *Wäre diese Sprache keine Täuschung?* Is it really true or not that these utterances are no delusion? *Noch eins. — Das wäre?* I have another thing to say yet.—What is it? It is in a similar manner often used to express joy, satisfaction over the attainment of some end whose successful issue has seemed doubtful or over a final resolution after an inner debate or struggle, or to express surprise or regret over some unexpected result: *Gottlob, wir wären am Ziel!* God be praised we are there at last! *So hätte ich denn alles getan, was mir zu tun obliegt!* And so I have actually done all that is incumbent upon me to do! *Das wäre nun in Ordnung!* That's in good shape now, I hope! *Nun machte sie als energische Frau einen Strich unter die ganze Episode und sagte sich: Damit wären wir fertig!* Now, as an energetic woman, she inwardly decided to put an end to the whole (love) affair, and said to herself: 'Well! I guess that's ended!' *Und so wär' ich für dies Jahr Meister* (Goethe's *Egmont*, 1, 1) And so I'm master-marksman for this year. *So hätten wir doch wenigstens etwas zu stande gebracht. Bis dahin ist blutwenig geschehen* (*Frankfurter Nationalvers.*, p. 841). *So wären wir am Ende, Herr Professor* (Freitag's *Journalisten*, 2, 1) So I suppose, Professor, we are thru with each other (i.e. all friendship between us is past).

c. By clothing one's thoughts in the language of doubt and uncertainty one can avoid a blunt expression of one's opinion or desire, so that the past subjunctive often loses in large measure the element of doubt and unreality, and is much used to state an opinion or seek information modestly, politely, or cautiously, in a less positive and abrupt way than in the indicative: *Sie dürften sich geirrt haben* You may possibly have made a mistake. *Das dürfte das Richtige sein* That is probably correct. *Ich wüßte wohl, was zu tun wäre* I think I know what would be best to do. *Nicht gut! Ich dächte doch!* (Lessing's *Nathan*, 2, 1) You think I am not playing well? I rather think I am! *Ich müßte nun gehen* I think I must go now. *Es wäre Zeit, daß du gingest* I think it is about time for you to go. *Ausstellungen im einzelnen hätte ich kaum zu machen* I scarce think I have, &c. *Das Verhältnis dieser flexivischen Verschiedenheit zu der Wortstellungsentwicklung in beiden Sprachen wäre zu untersuchen* (G. Hübener in Paul and Braune's *Beiträge*, 1920, p. 95) The relation . . . ought, I think, to be investigated. *Möchtest du in den großen*

Ferien an die Nordsee gehen? (R. Blümel in *Germanisch-Romanische Monatsschrift*, 1914, p. 386), indicating that the father has not yet formed a definite plan, hence is only cautiously seeking the desire of his daughter, not extending to her a definite promise, while the present indicative *magst du?* here indicates a definite plan and amounts to a definite promise. A modest inquiry often amounts to a polite request: *Dürfte ich bitten, mir Bescheid sagen zu lassen?* Might I ask you to send me word? *Möchten Sie die Güte haben, mir zu folgen?* Would you be so kind as to follow me? *Wie wäre es mit einer Partie Billard?* How should you like a game of billiards? *Könnten Sie mir sagen, ob ich auf dem Weg nach K. bin?* politely indicates that the speaker desires but is not demanding a reply, but the indicative *können Sie* here implies that the speaker is expecting an answer. *Wollten Sie mir erlauben — ich hätte ein Wort mit Ihnen —* (Wildenbruch's *Schwester-Seele*, chap. XII) Would you be so kind — I should like to speak a few words with you. Similarly the declarative form is very common in introducing a wish: *Ich wünschte* (the present indic. *ich wünsche* has more of the bluntness of a command), *Sie schenken mir Gehör* I wish you would be so kind as to grant me a hearing.

(2) In indirect discourse, to indicate that the statement in the subordinate clause is contrary to fact: *Was? [Sagen Sie,] Räuber wären es gewesen, die uns anfielen? — Mörder waren es, erkaufte Mörder!* (Lessing's *Emilia*, 3, 8). *Unterworfen hätt' ich mich | dem Richterspruch der Zweiundvierzig, sagt ihr? | Ich habe keineswegs mich unterworfen* (Schiller's *Maria Stuart*, 1, 7). *Die Leute lügen, die da unten schreien, | Ihr wärt ein anderer als Ihr waret* (Hauptmann's *Die versunkene Glocke*, 3, p. 96). Wenn freilich ein italienischer Abgeordneter behauptet hat, es bestünde eine permanente Gefahr für das Leben und das Eigentum seiner Landsleute, so ist das, gelinde gesprochen, eine Übertreibung (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Nov. 9, 1901). Leider können wir nicht sagen, daß sie (i.e. die Anklagen) unbegründet wären (ib., March 23, 1906). Deshalb bildet sich der gute Deutsche in einer gewissen Entfernung von den Tälern der Warta allen Ernstes ein, es gäbe keine polnische Nation mehr, weil man sie auf deutschen Kathedern für Staatsrecht und Geschichte theoretisch und wissenschaftlich totgemacht hat (W. von Massow in *Deutsche Monatsschrift*, Dec. 1906, p. 402).

This subjunctive is also used to indicate that the statement is a mere fancy, not an actual fact: *Dann machte er Experimente in der Chemie, daß ich manchmal heimlich die größte Angst ausgestanden habe, das Haus flöge auf mit uns allen* (S. Junghans).

It is often used as in (1) *c* above to state an opinion modestly or cautiously: *...wendet, will das besagen, daß die Behandlung ... oder einer beschränkten Anzahl solcher je einem ... trauen wäre, der in den betreffenden Fächern heimisch ist* (Dr. H. Iktun in *Germanisch-Romanische Monatsschrift*, 1910, p. 247).

We cannot always distinguish the unreal subjunctive from the plausible subjunctive which has been attracted into a past tense after a past tense. Even after a present tense we are not absolutely sure that the past tense forms denote unreality, as they often, under the influence of dialect or to get a clear subjunctive form, are used to report indirectly simple statements made by others. See 171. 2. A. *b. Note* and B. *a* (near end of 1st par). Thus a past tense of the subjunctive in indirect discourse is often not a genuine unreal potential at all. See also G. *a*. (2), 3rd par., below.

The past tense forms of the subjunctive are not now so widely used in indirect discourse as the present tense forms, but they nevertheless have a broad field of usefulness here, both as a pure potential and with less reason also as a grammatical form, to express merely indirectness of statement. This subjunctive of indirect discourse not being confined to one grammatical category, but assuming different grammatical forms, will reappear in a number of the following groups. It is discussed still more fully in 171-173.

B. *Clauses of Manner.* The unreal potential is used to indicate that there is little foundation of fact for the comparisons made, or to suggest a vague semblance or mere surmise: Ich halte Egmont hier, als ob ich ihm noch was zu sagen hätte (Goethe's *Egmont*, Act 4). Nettchen lehnte sich so zufrieden an ihn, als ob er eine Kirchensäule wäre (G. Keller's *Kleider machen Leute*). Der Braune griff so tapfer aus, als wäre er stolz auf seinen sichern Herrscher. The bay struck a brisk pace as if he were proud of his firm master. A present tense form of the subjunctive here has another meaning. See 168. II. B.

The past tense forms of the subjunctive are also often used here as elsewhere to make a statement cautiously: Ich bin nur eine alte Frau und kann mich also täuschen; aber — Kind, Kind, scheinen tut es mir doch so, als ob die Welt schriller würde (*were becoming, might be becoming*, subj. of cautious statement) (Raabe's *Horn von Wanza*, chap. xiv).

a. The past periphrastic subjunctive is frequently, especially thruout the South, used here instead of the simple past subjunctive, altho this usage is quite generally condemned by grammarians: Sie ließen sich gar nicht bei uns sehen, wie wenn sie das Elternhaus geflissentlich fliehen würden (for flöhen) (G. Keller). Jetzt fängt er verdrießlich wieder an zu graben; aber es war, als wenn er in einen Steinboden einhauen würde, alles umsonst (Wilhelm Fischer's *Die Freude am Licht*, II. p. 75). See 190. 1. E. a.

b. We often find the ideas of unreality, vague semblance, expressed by a past indicative both in poetry and common prose, most frequently in the language of the North, where there is a general trend toward the indicative: Du hast genannt mich einen Vogelsteller, | als ob du selber keine Garne zogst (Freiligrath). Es war, als ob sich unter der Haut pulsierende Strähne hinzogen (Auerbach's *Waldfried*). Mir war, als ob er mich plötzlich anders ansah als sonst, als ob er mir nicht mehr frei die Hand geben konnte (Hirschfeld's *Agnes Jordan*, 1, p. 42). Es war alles wie verhext und verwunschen. Als wenn das nicht wirkliche Häuser waren (Frensen's *Jörn Uhl*, chap. v, p. 83). Sieh', mir ist, | als waren lauter Puppen sonst um mich | die Menschen alle (Schnitzler's *Der Schleier der Beatrice*, 1, p. 31). This use of the past indicative indicates that the statement is vividly felt as narrative, a tale of things once felt as actual facts.

Also the present indicative is frequently used here, when the reference is to present time as the speaker feels the utterance as an actual fact, of course with the opposite meaning when spoken in a sarcastic tone: Dummes Zeug! Als wenn du überhaupt 'n Liebsten hast! (Halbe's *Das tausendjährige Reich*, p. 41), in sarcastic tone = Du hast keinen Liebsten! Wie kommen Sie hierher? Answer: Als ob man im Examen ist! (Carl Busse), in sarcastic tone = Ich bin nicht im Examen! Als ob ich nie allein fertig werd'! (C. Busse's *Kleinstadtliebe*), in sarcastic tone = Ich werde immer allein fertig! Felt as an actual fact: Ich weiß nicht, was das ist, daß ich nicht ordentlich lachen kann. Es ist, als wenn mein Gesicht gefroren ist (Frensen's *Jörn Uhl*, chap. xi). Er ist den ganzen Tag in Unruh und kann doch nachts nicht schlafen . . . als wenn . . . ich weiß nicht . . . als wenn er ein schweres Gewissen hat (id., *Das Heimatsfest*, 2, 3). Es scheint, als wenn die Richter seiner Sache ziemlich günstig sind (Otto Ernst's *Die Kunstreise nach Hinterpeldorf*, p. 60). Aside from narrative as in the preceding paragraph the corresponding tense here for past time is the present perfect: Die Mutter sieht ein bißchen gedrückt aus, als wenn sie früher mal was Nobleres vorgestellt hat (ib., p. 55). Sie haben so etwas Finsteres im Blick, als ob nie die Sonne in ihr Herz geschienen hat (Halbe).

C. *Unreal Subjunctive of Result in Attributive Relative Clauses.* Altho the present tense forms of the subjunctive are not so common as formerly in attributive relative clauses, as described in 168. II. C, the past tense forms are still quite common here. The present tense forms of the subjunctive are now usually replaced here, on the one hand, by the indicative as in English in order to represent the statement confidently as a fact, or, on the other hand, often by a past tense form of the subjunctive to indicate modestly or cautiously that the statement is at least conceivable and is probably true. Thus the idea of unreality which usually attaches to a past tense form of the subjunctive is in most cases overshadowed here by the derived meaning of modest or cautious statement: Haben Sie nicht stärkeres Papier? Answer: Ich habe etwas, das stärker ist, aber nichts in der gewünschten Farbe, das stärker wäre. Die Geschichte kennt keinen Staatsmann, der sich größere Verdienste um Österreich erworben hätte als Prinz Eugen. Ich kenne niemand, der genauere Kenntnis der Sache besäße. Doch wie es selten nur eine unerfreuliche Sache gibt, die nicht auch wenigstens eine gute Seite hätte, so war es auch hier (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, March 23, 1905). Noch nie ist eine Unwahrheit gesprochen worden, die nicht früher oder später nachteilige Folgen gehabt hätte. Wo ist ein Berg im ganzen Lande, den er nicht bestiegen hätte?

The old idea of unreality, doubt is also found here. Aber wo ist einer, der das tun könnte, wollte?

D. *Unreal Subjunctive of Result in Adverbial Clauses* In all the categories of result described in 168. II D the present tense forms of the subjunctive are now usually replaced, on the one hand, by the indicative in order to represent the statement confidently as a fact, or, on the other hand, often by a past tense form of the subjunctive to indicate modestly or cautiously that the statement is at least conceivable and is probably true. A few examples will suffice. Er denkt zu edel, als daß er nicht die Wahrheit sagte. Sie ist viel zu geschickt, als daß sie hineinfiel or hineinfällt (Burckhardt's *Theater*, p. 22). Ariostens Lob aus seinem Munde hat mich mehr ergetzt, als daß es mich beleidigt hatte (Goethe's *Tasso*, 2, 1). Ich bin nie in London, daß ich nicht das Museum besuchte I never go to London without visiting the museum. Er sprach nie, ohne daß er gefragt worden wäre, or gefragt wurde. Serlo (name) hatte sie nicht ein'mal zu Gastrollen gelassen, geschweige daß er ihnen Hoffnung zum Engagement gemacht hatte (Goethe). Und die Mutter schaffte ihnen noch braunlederne feine Halbschuhe an, statt daß sie sich selbst ein Sommermantelchen gekauft hatte (H. Böhlau's *Adam und Eva*, chap. II). Jetzt ging alles wieder seinen alten Weg, kaum daß einer mehr des Abwesenden gedacht hatte. Weit entfernt, daß man den Feldherrn unterstützt hatte, ward sogar der Sold der Truppen verschwendet. Er ist nicht so weise, daß er alles wußte. Other examples in II c.

a. The periphrastic past perfect instead of the regular past perfect  
giftigsten Schnupfen hindurch,  
darob gewundert haben würde

E. *Unreal Conditions* The unreal potential is also used in conditional sentences in which the conclusion rests upon a condition that is not likely to be fulfilled, or upon one which is contrary to the facts in the case. The principal clause has the periphrasis or the regular subjunctive, the subordinate clause the regular subjunctive only, as illustrated in the following sentences.

#### Present Time

a. Ich würde den Brief schreiben, wenn ich Zeit hätte *I should write the letter if I had time*, or

b. Ich schreibe den Brief, wenn ich Zeit hätte (about equal in meaning to a; see Note 1).

#### Past Time.

c. Ich würde den Brief geschrieben haben, wenn ich Zeit gehabt hätte *I should have written the letter if I had had time*, or

d. Ich hatte den Brief geschrieben, wenn ich Zeit gehabt hätte (equal in meaning to c)

Note 1. In the principal proposition the regular subjunctive is much more common than the periphrastic form in case of modal auxiliaries and the passive of all verbs in both present and past time. I use here however the two forms may be considered as equally good and common with the exception that the periphrastic is more common in the principal proposition than the simple past at least so in ordinary prose. See Note 3.

Note 2

Note 3. From Luther's day to the present the frequency of mean ne wenn es et Winckler, r uns ganz g vi.) Wü erstaunen ausspreche kommen k

wenn ich in einer Zeitung lesen würde, daß usw. (Eb. Nestle from Maulbronn in *Zeitschrift für den deutschen Unterricht*, 1902, p. 132). Grammarians, however, quite generally condemn the use of the periphrasis here in the subordinate clause and insist upon the usage given above. The evident explanation of this opposition is that the clumsy periphrasis robs the statement of its terseness of expression. The periphrasis, however, has an inner strength of its own, for it is gradually supplanting the regular subjunctive in the principal proposition without meeting with any opposition from the grammarians. The reason seems to be that it has more future force than the regular subjunctive and hence is felt as more appropriate for use in the principal proposition, which usually has stronger future force than the subordinate clause. This distinct future force which lies in the periphrasis often leads to its use also in the subordinate clause to bring out more clearly the idea of futurity which is often found there. Thus there seems to be a tendency to differentiate the two forms in the subordinate clause, as illustrated in 190. 1. E. a. Usage at present, however, is very unsettled at this point, especially in the South, where the periphrasis is often used without any justification whatever.

Note 4. Many sentences containing a subjunctive will upon study reveal themselves as a conditional sentence with a prepositional phrase instead of a conditional clause: *Unter anderen Umständen hätte ich zugestimmt*. A part of the sentence is often suppressed: *Ja wenn wir nicht wären, sagte die Laterne zum Mond*. *Da ging sie aus* (What would the world do) *If we were not, said the street-lamp to the moon*. Thereupon it went out. *Wer ein Narr wäre und redete mit fremden Leuten!* [der würde das tun] *If one were a fool he might do it!*, or *Only a fool would do that!* *Daß ich ein Narr wäre!* = *Wenn ich das täte, was mir zugemutet wird, so wäre das Ergebnis, daß ich ein Narr wäre*. Sometimes there is a mingling of two constructions: *Ich wäre beinahe gefallen* *I came very near falling* is a blending of *Es ist beinahe so weit gekommen, daß ich gefallen bin* and *Ich wäre gefallen, wenn ich mich nicht an das Geländer gehalten hätte*. Compare 1 below.

Note 5. The unreal conditional sentence is now usually felt as a potential category, but it was originally optative in character in both the principal proposition and the subordinate clause, as can still be seen in occasional sentences: *Kämeſt du* (originally *Kämeſt du! O that you would come!*), *ich gäbe dir gern etwas* (= *ich möchte dir etwas geben*) (Sommer's *Vergleichende Syntax*, p. 87). It is possible that the potential idea in general has developed out of the optative.

1. The subjunctive of *modest* or *cautious statement*, which is a weakened potential with a suppressed conditional clause, is used quite frequently to make the statement of a truth *modestly* or *cautiously*, in a less positive and definite way than in the indicative: *Ich könnte noch manches sagen (wenn ich wollte, or wenn es verſtattet wäre)*. See also A. (1). c above.

2. We have other unreal conditional sentences than the ones described in the preceding articles. The conditional conjunctions given in 238. 3. F are often used with the past tense forms of the subjunctive to represent the statement as a mere conception of the mind, with various shades of meaning. See examples in 279. See also 168. II. E. a, d.

3. In conditions the indicative competes with the subjunctive, as explained in 166.

F. *Unreal Subjunctive in Relative and Interrogative Clauses*. This subjunctive is much used to represent the statement as a mere conception of the mind without a basis in reality, on the other hand, however, often indicating that the speaker or writer regards the occurrence or performance of the act in question as *possible* or feels the conception as *possibly* conforming to fact or reality, hence often employed to state an opinion modestly or cautiously.

a. *Attributive relative or interrogative clauses*. Relative clauses: *Ich möchte gern einen Geldbeutel haben, der nie leer würde* (Grimm's *Märchen*). *Da ist der Kahn, der mich hinübertrüge* (Schiller's *Tell*, 1, 1). *Die Welt kann dir nichts darbieten, was sie von dir nicht empfinde* (Schiller's *Menschenfeind*, Act 8) *which it does not receive from you*, subj. of cautious statement. Other examples in C above.

The subjunctive in relative clauses also occurs in unreal conditional sentences: *Er wäre der letzte, den ich um Rat fragte [, wenn ich in Verlegenheit kommen sollte]*.

Interrogative clauses are introduced by *ob whether*, or some interrogative adjective or adverb: *Jetzt warf man die Frage auf, ob man das Werk zu Ende führen könnte*.

b. In substantive relative clauses. It is very common in the following relations:

(1) As subject or predicate. As subject: *Wer sie nicht konnte, | die Elemente, | ihre Kraft | und Eigenschaft, | wäre kein Meister | über die Geister* (Goethe's *Faust*, *Studierzimmer*). *Wer mir vorausgesagt hätte, daß die Arme meines Geistes so bald zerschmettert werden sollten, mit denen ich ins Unendliche griff, und mit denen ich doch gewiß ein Großes zu umfassen hoffte, wer mir das vorausgesagt hätte, würde mich zur Verzweiflung gebracht haben* (id.). As predicate: *Die Menschen sind nicht immer, was sie sein könnten*.

(2) As object: *Kaufe dir, was du gern hättest* (Lessing's *Minna*, 2, 3).

c. In substantive interrogative clauses. This subjunctive is common in clauses introduced by *ob whether*, or some interrogative pronoun or adverb.



(1) As subject: Es fiel ihm nicht ein, wieviel davon sich sagen ließe.

(2) As object: Ich brütete, wie ich dich retten könnte (A. Hausrath).

The subjunctive in (1) and (2) is often not a pure unreal potential, but, as in 168. II. F. c. (2), 3rd line, only a grammatical form for the expression of an indirect question, the tense having been attracted into the form of a historical tense after a historical tense: Was mit dem Andree geschehen würde [or werde], kümmerte ihn nicht im geringsten (P. Heyse). In such indirect questions a past tense form is not now in choice language so common as a present tense form.

G. *Unreal Potential Subjunctive in Substantive Daß-Clauses.* This subjunctive is very common to indicate a possibility, or to express a statement modestly or cautiously. The daß may be suppressed. This subjunctive is often used instead of the plausible subjunctive described in 168. II. G. Of course the indicative is used if it is desired to represent the statement as a fact.

This subjunctive is used in the following relations:

a. In subject and object clauses:

(1) As subject. The subjunctive of modest or cautious statement is very common here: Es scheint uns, daß mit einer solchen Zusage nicht viel gewonnen wäre. Es fehlte nur wenig or nicht viel, daß es ihm ebenso ergangen wäre or erging. Es konnte nicht fehlen or ausbleiben, daß sie sich nicht zuweilen getroffen hätten, or daß sie sich (nicht) zuweilen trafen (Wilmanns's *Deutsche Grammatik*, III, p. 281). Es täte not, ich ginge selbst hin. See also Matth. xviii. 6.

(2) As object. Here there is a strong tendency to use the past subjunctive of an auxiliary with a dependent infinitive rather than the past subjunctive of the simple verb: Ich rechnete darauf, daß er ausbleiben könnte (instead of ausbliebe). Ich fürchtete, daß mir die ganze Ernte verderben würde (instead of verdürbe). The subjunctive of modest statement is very common in this category: Ich glaube, meine Herren, damit wäre in starken großen Umrissen genug von unserem Aufenthalt in Wien gesagt (*Frankfurter Nationalvers.*, p. 811). Ich finde, der Verfasser müßte diese (i.e. die Ergebnisse) doch noch gesondert, in Zusammenfassungen, Tabellen, Karten oder wie sonst darbieten (Bacsecke's *Deutsche Philologie*, p. 41) I think the author ought by all means to present his results separately in the form of summaries, tables, &c.

There are also numerous traces of a tendency to give the subjunctive here the idea of unreality, especially to indicate a conflict with reality: Da behaupten die Leute, Freunde in der Not wären selten And now people say that friends in time of need are scarce (which is not my experience). Ja, Knoten—, das sind sie, die Menschen, alle, wie sie gebacken sind, Beamtenknoten, Geldknoten, Berufsknoten! Und am knotigsten, wenn sie sich Lackstiefel anziehen, einen Frack darüber hängen und womöglich ein paar Orden dran stecken und sich einbilden, jetzt wären sie fein (Wildenbruch's *Neid*, p. 80). See also A. (2) above, and 171. 2. B. c. The speaker often, however, employs a past tense form of the subjunctive, not to call attention to a conflict with reality but to withdraw the question entirely from the domain of reality and present it as a mere conception, as a supposed or imaginary case: Ich will mir einbilden, meine Pferde dort unten wären Schafe usw. (Kleist's *Kathchen*, 2, 1).

The subjunctive in (1) and (2) is often not a pure potential, but, as in 168. II. G. a. (2), 2nd par., a mere grammatical form for the expression of indirect statement or discourse, the tense having been attracted into a past tense form after a past tense: Er faßte es nicht, daß diese Lippen erkaltet wären (here of a fact), die so oft, noch gestern mit ihm über alle Fragen der Menschen geredet (Ompteda's *Eysen*, chap. viii). Ich wußte wohl, daß es ohne Lärm nicht abgehen würde (instead of werde) (P. Heyse). Als er vernommen, daß es Deutsche wären (here of a fact), sagte er zu seiner Begleitung usw. (Curt Gebauer in *Archiv für Kulturgeschichte*, vol. V, p. 462). In such indirect discourse past tense forms are in general not now in choice language so common as present

tense forms. It would be a gain for the language if they should disappear entirely except in the cases mentioned in 171. 2. B. a. This would leave room for the clearer development of the idea of possibility, unreality, and caution here. See also 171. 2. B. c.

b. In attributive clauses. To express possibility: *Das hat ihn so furchtbar gequält, Marie. Die Angst, er könnte nie etwas erreichen* (Hirschfeld's *Mütter*, Act 4), or *die Angst, daß er nie etwas erreichen könnte*. The subjunctive of modest or cautious statement is common here: *Es wäre höchste Zeit, daß du gingest. Es ist Zeit, daß ich ginge*.

To express the idea of unreality als (with question order) or als ob or als wenn (with transposed order) may be used instead of daß: *Ebenso habe ich mich bemüht, meinen Urteilen über mundartliche Färbungen der Schriftsprache eine Form zu geben, durch die ich dem Mißverständnisse, dem sie früher ausgesetzt gewesen sind, vorbeugen möchte, dem Mißverständnisse, als beurteilte ich das Verhältnis usw.* (Matthias's *Sprachleben und Sprachschäden*, Vorwort). The past subjunctive here is often the subjunctive of modest or cautious statement: *Auch bei Wassermann (name) wird man das Gefühl nicht los, als ob doch manche Stoffe wenig zu novellistischer Behandlung geeignet wären* (Richard Dohse in *Die schöne Literatur*, Dec. 1, 1906, p. 490).

Sometimes as in 2. B. b above the present indicative is used here instead of the past subjunctive as the person in question *feels* the utterance as an actual fact: *Wenn man mit der Eisenbahn von Weltevreden nach Buitenzorg reist, so hat man zunächst den Eindruck, als ob man fast ununterbrochen im Walde fährt . . . in Wirklichkeit ist es ausnahmslos Kulturgelände, welches den Schienenstrang begleitet* (K. Giesenhausen's *Auf Java und Sumatra*, p. 23). *Gegenüber all den Darstellungen, als ob es sich dort um eine wild gewordene Soldateska handelt, ist die Armee tadellos hervorgegangen* (Graf Westarp in the Reichstag, Jan. 24, 1914). See also 238. 2. d. Note.

H. *Unreal Subjunctive in Clauses of Degree* (see 238. 3. D):

a. In clauses expressing a comparison (see 238. 3. D. 1. A. a). This subjunctive is common here to express a possibility, or to make a statement modestly or cautiously: *Er ist so bescheiden, wie ein Mann sein könnte*.

b. In clauses expressing a restriction (238. 3. D. 1. A. c). This subjunctive is used here to express a possibility: *Ich bin nicht abergläubisch, versetzte Charlotte, und gebe nichts auf diese dunklen Anregungen, insofern sie nur solche wären* (Goethe's *Wahlverwandtschaften*, chap. i). *Angesichts der Gefahr, die von neuen Erfindungen und um sich greifenden Beschäftigungen und Vergnügen droht, ist es daher erfreulich, daß auch in unserer Zeit Vereine das Sprachgewissen schärfen und Behörden für die überflüssigen fremden Ausdrücke vernünftige deutsche einführen, soweit also nicht Verarmung des Sprachinhalts oder Mangel an Deutlichkeit zu befürchten wäre* (Sütterlin and Waag's *Deutsche Sprachlehre*, p. 15).

c. In clauses expressing a result (see 238. 3. D. 2). This subjunctive is common here to express a possibility, or to make a statement modestly or cautiously: *Die Luft ist so still, daß wir sie kommen hören könnten. Es* (Frenssen's *Jörn Uhl*) *ist, von seinem Kunstwert ganz abgesehen, dabei so deutsch, daß keine andere Nation der Erde es hätte hervorbringen können. Es ist speziell so norddeutsch, daß kein Süddeutscher an seine innerste Kraft herankönnte* (Carl Busse im *Tag*, Nr. 11 vom 8. Januar 1902). *Sie war so ergriffen, daß sie fast einen Weinkrampf bekommen hätte* (Ompteda's *Eysen*, chap. xxviii) *that she almost fell into hysterics*. Of course the indicative is used here to state an actual result. A more detailed statement of the uses of the subjunctive here is given in D.

I. *Unreal Subjunctive in Clauses of Time and Place*. The past tense forms of the subjunctive are used in adverbial clauses of time and place to denote possibility: *Die Totengräber hatten über dem Sarge eine Art Gewölbe aus Brettern hergestellt, um ihn später wieder leichter ausgraben zu können, wenn die Gruft fertig gemauert wäre* (Ompteda's *Eysen*, chap. ix). Von

meinen Schülern aber werde ich niemals weichen, wo eine Gefahr sie bedrohen könnte (H. Hoffmann's *Wider den Kurfürsten*, chap. xlii). See also 274. b; 275. b.

J. *Unreal Subjunctive in Clauses of Cause.* The past tense forms of the subjunctive are used here to denote possibility: Ich tue es gleich, weil es heute noch regnen könnte. A past tense form of the subjunctive is often used after weil preceded by a negative or a word with negative force to indicate modestly that a suggested explanation is not the right one: Zum ersten Male, solange ich denken konnte, griff der Urgroßvater diese Herausforderung nicht auf, weniger wohl, weil er durchaus nichts zu entgegenen gewußt hätte, als aus allgemeiner Betrübnis und Müdigkeit (R. Huch's *Ludolf Urselu*, chap. xxiii).

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

170. Indirect discourse is the indirect statement of the substance of the words, thoughts, suppositions, wishes, &c., of another, or is the speaker's report of the substance of his own words, thoughts, suppositions, wishes, &c. In German such indirect communications assume two general forms—the Indirect Form and the Independent Form.

### INDIRECT FORM OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

171. 1. *Mood.* In reporting the thought of another the speaker uses the indicative if he positively wishes to endorse the report, or represent it as evidently supported by facts; but if he desires to represent the report as doubtful, or wishes simply to submit to the judgment of the hearer the subjective views of himself or others, or to state his or their wishes, hopes, fears, intentions, &c., which are by their very nature not entirely certain of realization, he usually employs the subjunctive: Der Arzt glaubt, daß ich krank bin *The doctor believes me to be sick* (and I agree with him), but Der Arzt glaubt, daß ich krank sei *The doctor believes me to be sick* (but I don't agree with him). Er sagt, daß er schon zwei Kapitel gelesen hat *He says that he has already read two chapters* (and of course his word is good), but Da sage einer, daß ich kein feiner Diplomat sei *Now let someone say that I am not a shrewd diplomat!* (Who could now hold such a view, as I have already shown that I am one?). Ludwig Salomon meint, man dürfe Wilbrandts „Maler“ neben Freytags „Journalisten“ stellen *Louis Salomon believes that Wilbrandt's play 'Die Maler' compares favorably with Freytag's 'Die Journalisten' (the subjective view of Salomon).* Mein Vater glaubt, es sei (the subjunctive here contains nothing doubtful or disrespectful to the father, but simply indicates that the view expressed is his) besser, diesen Weg einzuschlagen *My father thinks it is better to pursue this course.* Er wünscht nicht, daß sie es höre *He does not want her to hear it.*

There is considerable fluctuation in the use of the subjunctive here according to the standpoint and feeling of the speaker or writer, but in general it is at present true that it is much more common after the second or third person than after the first, and more common after a past than a present tense, hence least frequent after the first person present: Ich fürchte, daß er kommen wird *I fear it is already too late, but Er f*

daß er lesen wird (O. Weise) *I do*  
er lesen werde (id.). The subjunctive after a first person present, however, is common in case of verbs expressing *will, command*: Ich will nicht, daß auch nur ein einziger schlaff werde durch Weibertränen und Weibergeschrei (Sudermann's *Teja*, 1, 5) *I do not desire that a single man should become enervated thru the tears and cries of women.* The subjunctive after the first person is necessary to indicate that something is merely conceived or represented as true without however an actual basis in fact: Ich kann doch nicht sagen, daß ich krank bin *I hesitate to announce the fact of my sickness, but Ich kann doch nicht sagen, daß ich krank sei* (Hermann Auer's *Schulgrammatik*, p. 145) *I hesitate to*

*pretend to be sick.* The subjunctive is also common after the first person when it is not a question of the truth or falseness of the utterance, but rather of the indirectness of the statement: *Ich erzählte ihm, daß ich am heiligen Abend immer ein wenig betrübt sei, denn so schön wie im Kloster könne für mich Weihnachten nie wieder werden* (Hermine Villinger's *Simplicitas*, 34). Likewise after the first person of the present tense: *Ich weiß nicht, ob die Frage damals weiter erörtert worden ist, und meine, es sei unter allen Umständen der Mühe wert zu untersuchen, ob wirklich der Dativ (in the expression Da kannst du dir am besten Rats erholen) bei jedermann Anstoß erregt* (J. Ernst Wülfing in *Zeitschrift für den deutschen Unterricht*, 1903, p. 730). So *glaube ich, daß auch mein Auge durch die lange Beschäftigung mit dem Gegenstand nicht verblendet, sondern dank der damit zusammenhängenden reichen Erfahrung vielmehr eigentümlich geschärft sei* (Günther Jacoby in *Journal of English and Germanic Philology*, 1914, p. 379). *Ich vermute stark, es handele sich um usw.* (F. Krüger in *Literaturblatt für germanische und romanische Philologie*, XXXIX. Jahrg., p. 126). All three writers are here quite sure of their statements, but they use the subjunctive because they feel that they are stating their views indirectly. Indirectness here in connection with a present tense form of the subjunctive expresses quiet confidence in the truth of the statement. If these writers had employed the indicative here instead of the subjunctive the statement would have been more personal and subjective, not at all, however, more suggestive of certainty. The frequent use of the indicative after the first person of the present tense results from the circumstance that we usually feel the words *ich glaube, ich weiß, &c.* as not so essential a part of the utterance as what follows and hence feel the utterance as a whole more as a declaration of fact than as an indirect statement: *Ich weiß, daß sie morgen kommen.* After a past tense the subjunctive is in general more common than after the present for the simple reason that when we speak of past events that have been told us we involuntarily fall into a narrative mood and hence feel all that we say as a report, an indirect statement and employ the subjunctive. Here the feeling of indirectness is more prominent than the desire to represent the utterance as a declaration of fact. We feel that we are narrating, not declaring. After a past tense, however, the subjunctive is naturally more common with reference to the future than to the past as we may report past events in the indicative as facts: *Es war gewiß, daß er log, gelogen hatte, lügen werde (or würde).*

As can be seen from the preceding sentences, the subjunctive employed in indirect discourse has not one distinct meaning, but is either optative or potential or both, as the statement may be represented as the will of someone, or as something that is possible, or it may be represented as both at the same time. Moreover, the subjunctive is often used merely because of the element of indirectness which lies in the statement, even tho the optative and potential ideas may be entirely absent: *Ich wußte wohl, daß der Hund von edler Art sei* (Riehl's *Der stumme Ratsherr*, III). See also 168. II. G. a (2), 2nd par.; 169. 2. G. a. (2), 3rd par; 3 (next to the last par.) below.

a. The indirect statement often depends upon a noun: *Den Vorwurf, daß er dich habe täuschen wollen, hat er nicht verdient. Die Behauptung, daß die Erde sich drehe, setzte Galilei mannigfachen Verfolgungen aus.*

b. The report of the speaker in the subjunctive may be interrupted by explanatory remarks of his own in the indic., but all remarks, explanatory or otherwise, which are a part of the original direct statement are put in the subjunctive when transposed into the indirect: *Karl erzählte, daß er das Haus, welches er von seinem Vater geerbt hat, verkaufen wolle. Seit Jahren (sagte sie) sei sie mit einem Standesgenossen verlobt gewesen, der gleich ihr arm gewesen sei.*

c. Often a subordinate clause is in the subjunctive in indirect statement, altho it has not the outward form of an indirect statement, which is easily explained by supplying some omission: *Die Athener (Athenians) verurteilten*

Sokrates zum Tode, weil [sie sagten, daß] er die Jugend verderbe. Mendel (name) sollte dabei behülflich sein, wich aber aus. [Er sagte,] Er habe drei Wochen zu Bett gelegen, fühle sich noch sehr matt und sollte nach des Arztes Anweisung jede Aufregung vermeiden

In long continued indirect discourse it is not necessary in German to be continually intercalating such clauses as 'she said,' 'he continued,' &c, for the subjunctive, as in the preceding examples, indicates clearly that the speech is indirectly reported

d The unreal optative and potential subjunctives of the direct change in the indirect their person but not their mood and tense Er sagt (or sagte), er mochte Sie sprechen Direct Ich mochte ihn sprechen Er sagt (or sagte), er wurde gehen, wenn er Zeit hatte Direct Ich wurde gehen, wenn ich Zeit hatte. Er sagt (or sagte), das konnten Sie am besten wissen. Direct Das konnte er am besten wissen Past time Er sagt (or sagte), er hatte Sie sprechen mogen Direct Ich hatte ihn sprechen mogen.

e In N G dialect and colloquial language the subjunctive of indirect discourse is very largely replaced by the indicative So, also das sagst du und meinst, ich bin solch ein Mensch? (Halbe's *Jugend*, p 87) For other examples see 2 B f below The indicative is here used also in case of unreality, as the person in question is represented as feeling the statement as true Die Kruppel glaubten, nu haben sie mich (E von Keyserling's *Ein Frühlingsopfer*, p 120). In South German the subjunctive is better preserved here Und sie hat mir g'sagt, sie hatt' mich nie mog'n, 'zwungen war' s' worden (Anzengruber's *Das vierte Gebot*, 2, 11) The indicative, however, is not infrequent in the South Alle sagen, daß du mich verlassen wirst! Nicht wahr, du tust es nicht . . . (Schmitzler's *Liebelei*, p 100) Mizi Er spielt ja nicht Baßgeigen, Violin spielt er. Theodor Ach so, ich hab' gemeint, er spielt Baßgeige (ib, p 23)

2 Tense The tense required in indirect discourse may as in English depend upon the tense of the principal verb Thus a present, present perfect, future or future perfect follows a present, as illustrated in A a below, while a simple past, past perfect periphrastic past subjunctive (wurde loben), or periphrastic past perfect subjunctive (wurde gelobt haben) follows a past, as illustrated in A b below Differing from English the German may also, without regard to the tense of the verb in the principal proposition, use the same tense in the indirect as stood in the direct, so that the present, present perfect, future, and future perfect usually stand in the subordinate clause, as explained in B below The former construction is the older, but the latter is steadily gaining upon it in the literary language In the dialects, which often influence the literary language, the old historic usage has been entirely abandoned and new and different constructions have arisen In the South, especially however in the Southwest, the present, present perfect, future, future perfect in the subordinate clause are the rule, whether they follow a present or a past, as illustrated in B below, while in the Southeast and the North the simple past, past perfect, periphrastic past subjunctive (wurde loben), and periphrastic past perfect subjunctive (wurde gelobt haben) prevail under the same conditions, as illustrated in A b Note below Thus it appears that the new literary sequence has developed under the influence of Southwest dialect, but it differs from it in one essential feature — it abandons the new sequence and retains the old historic construction, if in any case the subjunctive of the present, present perfect, future, and future perfect would not be clearly distinguished in form from the corresponding indicative tenses, as explained in B a below For a history of the younger construction and present literary usage see 5 below

The following points may serve to illustrate the form and use of these constructions

#### A The old law of sequence

a A present, present perfect, future, or future perfect follows a present Er sagt, er sei krank, er habe es schon getan, er werde morgen kommen, er werde es innerhalb einer Woche getan haben

*b.* A simple past, past perfect, periphrastic past subjunctive, or periphrastic past perfect subjunctive follows a past or past perfect: *Er sagte, er wäre krank, er hätte es schon getan, er würde (would) morgen kommen, er würde es innerhalb einer Woche getan haben.*

*Note.* Sometimes a past or past perfect subjunctive seemingly depends upon a present tense. Such constructions are elliptical, some verb in a past tense form being understood: *Und sag' Er (140. a. Note) ihr [, daß ich sagte], sie sollte sich in Acht nehmen, der Laharpe (name) — das wäre ein Spitzbube (Gutzkow's Zopf und Schwert, I, 7). Bringe Wendelin meine Grüße und [sage ihm, ich sagte,] es wäre hübsch von ihm gewesen, daß er dir diese Reise gegönnt (Fontane's Poggenpuhls, chap. viii). Likewise in indirect questions: Ein Kompliment an den Konrektor Eckerbusch, und [sagen Sie ihm, ich ließ fragen,] ob es morgen regnete (Raabe's Horacker, chap. I). The past tense forms of the subjunctive are nowhere in indirect discourse so generally used as in these elliptical constructions. We often, however, find in the Southeast and the North a past tense form after a real present tense, as the speaker or writer desires to give a dialectic coloring to the language, or is unconsciously influenced by dialect: Sie dürfen nicht Theater spielen und keine Bälle abhalten; der Hofer (name) sagt, für so etwas wäre jetzt kein Wetter (Rosegger). This is especially common in naturalistic authors: Sie sagt, du wäirst krank. Das hab' ich doch immer gesagt, Robert (G. Hirschfeld's Müller, Act 4). Dein Onkel Gottfried sagt, das wären die Folgen der Kadettenhauserziehung. Ob er recht hat, weiß ich nicht (Oempteda's Sylvester von Geyer, LIX). See 2 above.*

*c.* The unreal optative and potential subjunctives of the direct discourse do not change their tenses when transposed into the indirect statement, present time being always expressed by a past tense form, and past time by the past perfect tense, a preceding present or past tense not influencing the construction. For examples see 1. *d* above. Thus after a past tense the *unreal* optative and potential subjunctives cannot be distinguished by their form from the sanguine optative and the plausible potential which have been attracted into a past tense under the influence of a preceding past tense. For examples see 169. 1. C. *a*, 169. 2. A. (2), 4th par., 171. 4. *a* (2nd par.). It will therefore be a real gain for the language if the old sequence be still further restricted in its use.

*B. The new law of sequence.* The same tense may stand in the indirect discourse as stood in the direct with the exception of the past and past perfect. The past and past perfect of the direct discourse are both rendered by the present perfect in the indirect, or the past perfect *may* be rendered by the special form described and illustrated in *e* below. The past and past perfect subjunctive are avoided in indirect discourse, as they can easily be misunderstood. The past subjunctive is used so much after a past tense to express present time that it is now no longer as in former periods felt as having a past force. The past perfect subjunctive might be mistaken for an unreal potential as found in unreal conditions for past time. The tenses of the subjunctive employed in indirect discourse according to the new law are therefore the present, present perfect, future, and future perfect, and the special forms described in *e* below, a preceding present or past tense having no influence whatever upon the following tenses:

Direct.		Indirect.	
(1)	Ich bin krank	Er	sagt or sagte, er sei krank
(2)	(a) Ich tat es	" "	" er habe es getan
	(b) Ich habe es getan		
	(c) Ich hatte es getan		
(2)	(c) Nachdem ich gelesen hatte, schrieb ich einen Brief (an additional illustration of the preceding point)	" "	nachdem er gelesen [habe], habe er einen Brief geschrieben (another indirect form for (2) (c) is given in <i>e</i> below).
(3)	Ich werde kommen	" "	er werde kommen
(4)	Ich werde es innerhalb einer Woche getan haben	" "	er werde es innerhalb einer Woche getan haben.

*a. Modified new law.* Altho the new sequence may be followed as stated above, it is more common to employ it only where its subjunctive forms are clearly distinguished from the corresponding indicative forms, and elsewhere to use the old historic sequence. Thus as the past tense distinguishes the subjunctive more clearly than the present tense a present tense form (a present, a present perfect, a future) is regularly replaced after a past tense by a past

tense form (a past, a past perfect, a periphrastic past subjunctive) wherever the present is not a clear subjunctive: Sokrates erklärte, alles, was er wisse, sei, daß er nichts wisse; viele wüßten (the present subjunctive would be like the indicative) aber auch dieses nicht. Sie sagten, sie hätten (a past tense form instead of the present tense form haben) es nicht getan. Sie sagten, sie würden (a past tense form instead of the present tense form werden) morgen kommen. So strong is the feeling that a clear subjunctive form should be used that a past tense form is used instead of a present tense form even after a present tense, if a clear subjunctive form is thus secured: Sie sagen, sie hätten es nicht gesehen, &c. Sagen Sie ihm, ich käme schon.

In case of unclear forms the past tense forms are preferred even tho they themselves are not clear subjunctive forms: Die Bildhauerei, sagen sie, könne keine Stoffe nachmachen; dicke Falten machten eine üble Wirkung (Lessing). The very fact of choosing a past tense form here is felt as indicating a desire to express the subjunctive.

Thus the tense form used to-day in the subordinate clause does not depend upon the tense employed in the principal proposition, but results from a desire to secure a clear subjunctive form.

*Note.* Compared to this change from a present to a past tense in the subordinate clause, the change in the present perfect subjunctive is less marked. See 169. 2. A. (2) and G. a. (2), 2nd par. above, also 168. 11. 11. u. ned in 5 below See 2

b. Sometimes both constructions, the old and the new, alternate in the same sentence without any shade of difference or without any necessity at hand of re-orting to the old rule as mentioned in *a* above: Er sagte, Marie wäre wohl verschlossen, aber sie sei tief von Gemüt. This is quite natural. The old and the new construction are both felt and will continue to exist side by side until the new construction has gained a complete victory. In the Southeast and North there is a natural tendency to use past tense forms more than is necessary, as these tenses are alone used in indirect discourse in the dialects of these sections. For examples of this usage see A. b. *Note* above, towards end.

c. The existence of the present and past tense forms of the subjunctive side by side in indirect discourse without a shade of meaning is contrary to the development of these groups elsewhere, where there is a marked tendency to use the present tense forms to express something as desired, probable, or as a subjective view, and to employ the past tense forms to express unreality or possibility. There are numerous traces of the idea of unreality also in indirect discourse: Und wenn die alten Gelehrten da noch immer behaupten, Sie wären urgriechisch, wir beide wissen es viel besser (Meinhardt's *Allerleirauh*, p. 177). Es ist das Testament, von dem wir glaubten, daß es vernichtet worden wäre. It is the will which we erroneously believed to be destroyed. For additional examples see 169. 2. A. (2) and G. a. (2), 2nd par. For the idea of possibility or cautious statement see *d* below and the reference there given. These ideas of unreality and cautious statement cannot develop strongly in the past tense forms in indirect discourse until the old sequence disappears, and even then will be limited by the cases where the new sequence cannot well be used, where the old sequence will consequently remain.

d. For the use of the cautious or modest subjunctive in indirect discourse see 169. 2. G. a. (2). See also *c* above.

e. *Past Perfect of the Direct Sometimes Represented by a Special Form in the Indirect.* The present perfect of the indirect discourse stands for the past, present perfect, and past perfect of the direct, and hence there is a lack of clearness sometimes in the indirect. There is a tendency to represent the past perfect

of the direct in the indirect by a special form made by adding *gehabt* in case of transitives and *gewesen* in case of intransitives to the regular present perfect: *Er sagt (or sagte), er habe die Straße verlassen gehabt und sei schon in das Haus getreten gewesen, als der Schuß fiel* He says (or said) that he had left the street and had already entered the house when the shot was fired. This form is borrowed from dialect where it is the usual form for the past perfect. See 190. 1. B. a. Likewise in the passive there is a tendency to represent the past perfect of the direct discourse in the indirect by a special form. The regular present perfect tense of the actional passive (194. 4) is here replaced by the regular present perfect of the statal passive (194. 4), which as explained in 194. 4. Note 2 (2nd par.) often has the force of an actional past perfect and is so used where there is a desire of avoiding the past tense forms as here in the new sequence: *Er sei als wie von einem bösen Geist verfolgt gewesen, bis er eines Tages, als er sie in einer obern Kammer gewußt, ihr nachgegangen, ja vielmehr ihr nachgezogen worden sei* (Goethe's *Werther*, Am 4. September). *Die Ansicht, daß in Helsingland die göthische Herrschaft sich erhalten habe, nachdem sie im eigentlichen Schwedenlande bereits gebrochen gewesen sei* (Konrad Maurer in *Ger.* 18, 23). *Sie gingen auf eine Droschke zu, als Renard sich erinnerte, daß Lori ihm mitgeteilt habe: ihr Vater sei heute zum Reichskanzler geladen gewesen* (Wolzogen's *Die kühle Blonde*, I, 45).

f. *The Indicative in Indirect Discourse.* The use of the subjunctive in indirect discourse is one of the finest means of expression that the Germans have developed, for in exact thinking and in lively feeling it is often very desirable to represent things thought or spoken as mere subjective expression, or as the thoughts and words of others which we present with reserve, or to reinforce our own views, or which we brand as false. Moreover, one often uses the subjunctive here to clothe one's own thought and feeling in modest form. In every-day life, however, the subjunctive here is often replaced by the indicative, as the things thought and spoken are felt, not as mere conceptions, but as actualities with which one must deal, be they true or false. After a long struggle this practical way of looking at all that is thought and spoken as actuality has in English driven the subjunctive entirely out of indirect discourse. Between the English and the every-day German use of the indicative in indirect discourse there is, however, one important difference—in German the new sequence is often used, i.e. the same tense may be used as would stand in the direct statement: *Ich dachte, er arbeitet immer* (Hirschfeld's *Mütter*, Act 4). *Da tastete ich an den Riegeln und schlich hierher, denn ich wußte, du bist* (present time to the subject of the main verb) *hier, Meister!* (Sudermann's *Johannes*, 2, 8). *Wußte ja nicht, ob ich erwünscht bin* (Halbe's *Die Heimatlosen*, p. 77). *Ich erfuhr, daß meine Schwester schon seit Beginn des Krieges als freiwillige Pflegerin in einem Rotenkreuz-Spital in Kiew tätig ist* (aus einem Feldpostbrief eines Wiener Gymnasiallehrers, 1914) (in the direct discourse: *Sie ist seit Beginn des Krieges . . . in Kiew tätig*). *Haben die Leut' nicht erzählt, der Deichhauptmann ist vorbeigeritten auf'n Schimmel, Mama?* (Halbe's *Eisgang*, p. 80). *Ich fühlte mich glücklich, daß mir nichts geschehen ist* (Aus dem Feldpostbrief eines Steirers in *Grazer Arbeiterwille*, 1914). *Ich schaute schon, ob du den Schirm nicht vergessen hast* (Adele Gerhard's *Die Geschichte der Antonie van Heese*, I). *Ich hab' schon gewußt, es wird* (future time to the subject of the main verb) *dir recht sein* (Halbe's *Mutter Erde*, p. 89). *Ich hab' nicht gewußt, daß der Herr Olten kommt* (Hermine Villinger's *Das letzte Wort*) (the form *kommt* a present tense with the force of the future; future to the subject of the main verb at the moment in question, but past at the time of utterance); *'s ist gut, aber ich hätt' nicht geglaubt, daß du dies Jahr noch fertig wirst* (Hermann Hesse's *Peter Camenzind*, p. 254) (*wirst* used with the same temporal force as *kommt* in preceding sentence). *Sie wissen doch — er hatte mir doch geschrieben* (Hirschfeld's *Mütter*, Act 4).

If the principal verb refers to the past, the dependent verb which has a force that is future to the subject of the main verb often in the tone of lively nar-



rative assumes the form of the past tense instead of the present or future. Und diese Furcht vor den Menschen erschien ihr so natürlich, so notwendig, so zugehörig zu ihrem Schicksal. Wie konnte er verlangen, daß sie frei davon war (H. Bohlau) (instead of *ist* or much more commonly *ware*). Man hatte befürchten müssen, daß man sich Nase und Gesicht an den metallenen Zacken zerrüß (Wildenbruch's *Vive Mama*) (instead of *zerreißen wird* or *werde*). Sie wissen, daß Frankreich, so oft es die russische Geldnot befriedigte, sich ausbedang, daß immer der größte Teil der Anleihe zum Zwecke der Kriegsausrüstung verwendet wurde (Reichskanzler Bethmann Hollweg an den Reichstag Aug. 19 1915) (instead of *verwendet werde*).

A very common feature of indirect statement in the indicative mood is the use of the past tense instead of the present perfect which would usually be employed. This shows that the speaker or writer is inclined to be influenced in his indirect statements by the form of lively narrative. Sie telegraphierten über die neuesten Ereignisse, daß am 30. Oktober einige junge Armenier in das Regierungsgebäude drangen und dort auf den Kommandanten der Gendarmerie schossen (*Kölnische Zeitung*). Man sagt, er war früher katholischer Theolog (Wilbrandt). Ich erfuhr von dem Gastwirt, die Herrschaften kamen gerade aus hiesigem Ort (Hoffmann's *Rittmeister* p. 97). This usage is especially frequent in a clause subordinate to a subordinate clause. Er erzählte, schon in der Jugend, da sie noch auf derselben Schulbank saßen, seien sie gute Kameraden gewesen.

3. *Mood and Tense in Indirect Questions*. Indirect questions (see *Note* below) which are a form of indirect discourse have the same rules for mood and tense as are described above with the limitation that the subjunctive in the subordinate clause is now less common after a present tense in the main proposition. Erzähle mir, was geschehen ist. Kein Mensch vermag zu sagen, ob er nicht | des Helmes braucht (Schiller's *Jungfrau* Prolog 3). The subjunctive after a present tense *can* still be used if the attention is not called to a known fact or result so much as to the condition of doubt, inquiry or anxiety in the mind of the person or persons in question as to the result or proper course to pursue. Wie es bei der Medizin zu halten sei, weiß ich nicht (Hermann Grimm's *Fragmente* I p. 363). What the procedure may be in case of (admitting women to) the study of medicine &c. Überlegen wir verständig und mit Bedacht, was zu tun sei (Raabe's *Horacker* chap. iv). Im Vordergrund steht die Frage nach der inneren Eignung, d. h., welche Sprache dem Zwecke der Mitteilung am besten und einfachsten diene, welche also zugleich für die Fremden am leichtesten zu erlernen sei (H. Schuchardt in *Beilage zur Allgemeinen Zeitung* No. 230 1901). Und wenn du die junge Dame kommen siehst, gehst du auf sie zu, nimmst deinen Deckel ab und fragst sie höflich, ob sie vielleicht zu Herrn Leutnant Rudorff wolle (Hartleben's *Rosenmontag* 3 1).

After a past tense form the subjunctive here is the rule. Ich wartete, ob er kame. Er erzählte mir, was er gesehen habe, wie es in der belagerten Stadt aussehe. Auch sah er sich nicht ein einzig Mal danach um, ob man ihm folge.

The subjunctive may be used here as elsewhere in indirect discourse merely to give expression to the idea of indirectness of statement even though there is no doubt implied. Der Vorsitzende Rev. J. L. Weldon, headmaster von Harrow, kein Neuphilologe von Fach, betonte in seiner Ansprache, ein wie großes Interesse er dem neusprachlichen Unterricht entgegenbringe (W. Vieter in *Die Neueren Sprachen* 1898 p. 572).

In the dialect of the Southeast and the North a past tense form of the subjunctive is here as in 2 A b *Note* above quite commonly used even after a present. Der Strobel-Hies hat seinem Weib im Jahorn einmal einen Streich gegeben, seitdem hat er die Holl' auf Erden, und seine bessere Hälfte schreit's um, was er für ein Bußel war' (Rosegger). The individual known as Strobel Hies once gave his wife a blow in anger since that time he has had in his home a hell on earth, and his better half is noising it about what kind of rude fellow he is.

*Note.* An indirect question is one that forms a subordinate clause and thus differs from the direct question, which always forms a principal proposition: *Wann kommst du?* (direct). *Sage mir, wann du kommst* (indirect). Indirect questions are introduced by the conjunction *ob whether*, an interrogative pronoun or adjective, as *wer, was, ein wie* (example given above), or by interrogative adverbs, simple or compound, as *wann when, wo where, wie how, womit with what, woher whence, wohin whither*, &c.

4. *Indirect Commands.* Imperative sentences when put into indirect discourse are in general governed by the same rules for mood and tense as declarative and interrogative sentences. The subjunctive of the simple forms of the verb is not usually employed here as elsewhere in indirect discourse. Instead of the subjunctive of the simple verb the following constructions occur:

a. The subjunctive of the auxiliaries *sollen* and *mögen*, the former with stronger imperative force: Direct: *Gehe schnell!* Indirect: *Sage dem Jungen, er solle schnell gehen.* Direct: *Kommen Sie morgen wieder.* Indirect: *Bitten Sie ihn, er möge morgen wieder kommen.* Father to son: *Hole deinen Freund!* In approaching his friend the boy says: *Der Vater schickt mich, daß ich dich holen möge.* After a verb denoting a strong expression of will we sometimes have here a subjunctive of a simple form of the verb as elsewhere in indirect discourse: *Sie verlangte, daß die Kerle schwiegen, or schweigen sollten.* After all other verbs the simple subjunctive is avoided here as the form may be taken for an indirect statement instead of an indirect command or request: *Sie läßt ihm sagen, daß er kommen solle or möge, or in the former case more commonly soll, but in Sie läßt ihm sagen, daß sie komme or kommt the clause is an indirect statement. Sie ließ ihm sagen, daß er kommen sollte or möchte (indirect command or request), but Sie ließ ihm sagen, daß sie komme (indirect statement).*

As in older German, the past subjunctive is still usually found after a past tense, i.e. the old sequence (2. A above) is still fairly well preserved here: *Sie bat, er möchte nichts sagen.* The old sequence is better preserved here after verbs of commanding, requesting, &c., than after verbs of saying, reporting, &c., as the time relations are much simpler, the verb of the dependent clause always representing a present tense of the direct statement, while after verbs of saying, &c., the complicated time relations—the verb of the dependent clause representing a present, past, present perfect, past perfect, future, or future perfect of the direct statement—have gradually led to the use of the new sequence (2. B above) with its clearer expression of the time relations and its fine differentiation (167, 169. 1. A) of meaning between the present and past tense forms of the subjunctive. As a natural result of its advantages the new sequence is now also often used here after verbs indicating an expression of will: *Der Furchenbauer* (name) *befahl jetzt, daß alles wieder aufgeladen werde* (Auerbach's *Dorfgeschichten*, p. 48). *Käpt'n* (Kapitän) *Krautsch schrieb nach zweijähriger Fahrt an der indischen Küste, daß er Fracht nach Amsterdam habe* (indirect statement). *Mutter Krautsch solle* (indirect command) *sich auf die Bahn setzen usw.* (Gustav Falke's *Die Kinder aus Ohlsens Gang*, p. 25). *Vom Reichsfinanzminister forderte er, daß er so rasch wie möglich die Fehlbeträge in den Betriebsverwaltungen des Reiches beseitige* (*Frankfurter Zeit.*, Nov. 10, 1920). *Er wollte, es ginge* (unreal subjunctive of wish) *immer so fort. Sie ließ ihm sagen, er möge* (request) *kommen. Sie ließ ihm sagen, er möchte* (modest or polite request) *kommen.* Compare 2. A. c above, also 168. I. 2. B. b and 169. 1. C. a. The new sequence has long been in use in the Southwest. See 5 below.

b. In case of complex sentences the verb of the subordinate proposition may in the indirect discourse be put into the subjunctive, while the principal clause is abridged to the infinitive construction, provided its subject is identical with the subject or object of the governing verb: *Anton befahl dem Führer, im Hause Wache zu halten* (= *daß er im Hause Wache halte*), *bis er zurückkehre.*

c. The indicative of the simple verb or the auxiliary *sollen*, to express confidence that a command will be complied with: *Ich gebiete dir aber, daß du pünktlich zurück bist. Es ist verboten, daß dieser Weg von fremdem Fuhrwerk befahren wird. Sage ihm, er soll gleich kommen.*

The indicative, however, especially in the North, is often used without such emphasis but yet with the implication that the speaker is counting on the performance of the act: *Bitte, Kniehase, sagen Sie dem Rittmeister, daß er mich draußen auf der Chaussee erwartet* (Fontane's *Vor dem Sturm*, iv. 17). *Sag' ihr, daß sie ihn verbrennt* (id., *Effi*, chap. xxiv). *Sagen Sie dem Zimmermädchen, daß sie meine Tasche und mein Plaid wieder hereinbringt* (Stern's *Der Pate des Todes*, I). The indicative of the simple verb is here quite common after the imperative of *sagen*, as the imperative of itself makes it clear that the following clause is an indirect command, but elsewhere after such verbs as *sagen* an auxiliary must usually be employed to indicate that the clause is an indirect command, as otherwise this clause would be taken for an indirect statement, as illustrated in *a*. Sometimes, however, the simple indicative is used also here if the context renders it clear that the clause is an indirect command: *Ich sag's dir, daß du den Schimmel nimmst* (Spielhagen's *Hens und Grete*, p. 63).

5. *Historical Development of the New Sequence.* In older German a thought, feeling, or command was much

#### INDEPENDENT FORM OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

172. In a lively style the author or speaker often strips off all formal signs of subordination, and reproduces the thoughts, feelings, dreams, impressions, fears, &c., of another in grammatically independent form. The words are not represented as a free report of the author or speaker, but as a close tho indirect reproduction of the thoughts, musings, reveries, &c., of another. The following two groups occur:

*a.* The tenses used are, just as in English, those usually employed in narrative: the past indicative to correspond to the present indicative of the direct discourse, whether used as a present or a future; the past perfect indicative to correspond to the present perfect or past indicative of the direct; the past perfect subjunctive to correspond to the past subjunctive of the direct; the periphrastic past subjunctive, i.e. *würde* with the infinitive, to correspond to the future indicative of the direct. The last form, i.e. *würde* with the infinitive, deserves especial attention. There is no tense in narrative corresponding to the future tense of the direct discourse. Narrative proper can only relate past events and hence can only use past tense forms. If in a narrative of past events there is a reference to the future it must be the thoughts and plans of someone, not actual events. We may report these thoughts and plans for the future in the subjunctive, thus indicating that we are reporting thoughts and plans not actual facts. The words *he thought, she thought* are never expressed here as the subjunctive alone indicates that the words do not relate events

but merely report someone's thoughts, hence are indirect discourse. We may use here *würde* with dependent infinitive, but never *werde* with a dependent infinitive, hence employ a past tense form of the subjunctive, i.e. the old sequence in accordance with the general rule of using the old sequence in elliptical language, as described in 171. 2. A. b. Note. In English we similarly use *would* or *should* with a dependent infinitive. In German, on the other hand, the past indicative is much used here instead of *würde* with a dependent infinitive, for in direct discourse the German often uses instead of the future the present tense in speaking of his plans for the future, thus vividly conceiving them as actual events. Thus we can relate these thoughts and plans for the future in the past indicative as if we were relating actual events. The question form of direct discourse is uniformly retained in this independent form of indirect discourse, but the tenses here follow the general rules stated above. The present infinitive used as an imperative (177. I. B. e) in direct discourse in admonitions to one's self is here retained without change of form, as illustrated in the last German example below. Examples: Sie hörte plötzlich auf (zu weinen), ließ die Hände in den Schoß sinken und starrte ins Leere. Ja, warum denn eigentlich? Es war doch nichts Unrechtes geschehen. Das konnte ihr Marianne und jedermann bezeugen. Und ganz gewiß, sie hatte nicht mit einer Miene, nicht mit einem Wort Herrn Bodmann Gründe gegeben, sich in sie zu verlieben. War er denn überhaupt in sie verliebt? Nein, er empfand nur eine schöne, warme selbstlose Freundschaft für sie. Günther würde sich darüber freuen, daß ein so ausgezeichnete Mann sie einer edlen Freundschaft würdige. She suddenly ceased crying, allowed her hands to fall into her lap, and then stared blankly before her. Why, indeed, should she cry? Surely nothing wrong had happened. Marianna and everybody else could testify as to that. And surely she had never by a glance or a word given Mr. Bodmann reason to fall in love with her. Was he after all in love with her? No, he only had a beautiful, warm, unselfish friendship for her. Günther (her husband) would surely be glad that such an excellent man deemed her worthy of a noble friendship. „Vielleicht kommt der Vater,“ sagte sie hinausgehend. Er schien es aber nicht zu sein, denn sie zog nachher die Stubentür zu und sprach geraume Weile draußen. Eine männliche Stimme war zu vernehmen. Fortunat spitzte die Ohren, während er zerstreut sein [von Leni gemachtes] Marterl betrachtete, den Jäger im Schnee, den winzigen Christus am Kreuz, kaum so groß wie ein Fingerglied, und das Stückchen Strauchwerk und Hecke, alles einfach mit kindlicher Phantasie und doch geschickt gemacht. Aus dieser Leni hätte etwas werden können! Wann kam sie nur wieder herein? (Berlepsch's *Fortunats Roman*, pp. 80-81). Allerhand Gedanken gingen ihm durch den Kopf. Sein Ämtlein freilich verlor er, wenn die Zensur abgeschafft wurde — was tat es? Dann würde er eine Zeitung gründen (Ertl's *Freiheit*, p. 191). Er freute sich auf den Tag. Die Stunde war sein. In dieser Stunde würde er sie alle, die Verwandten und Bekannten, die Lehrer und Schüler, das ganze Gymnasium und viele Fremde . . . in seinen Händen halten (Stilgebauer's *Götz Krafft*, I, 3, p. 93). Ewald Wiskotten las den hohen Gesamtbetrag. Wie kam der zusammen? Aber jetzt nur nicht fragen, nur nicht feilschen! Er unterschrieb. (Rud. Herzog's *Die Wiskottens*, II, chap. 2). In the quotations from Berlepsch and Ertl the past tenses *kam*, *verlor*, *wurde* *abgeschafft*, *tat*, correspond to a present tense of the direct used as a future. English cannot usually thus employ a past tense pointing to the future. We can only use here the past of the auxiliary *to be going* with a dependent infinitive and even that in only a limited way: We might translate the simple past in the last sentence of the quotation from Berlepsch by the past of *to be going* with a dependent infinitive: *When was she going to come in again?* In all these cases the simple past tense might have been replaced by the past subjunctive *würde* with a dependent infinitive. In German the too frequent use of this clumsy form would be felt as inappropriate in this lively narrative form. The simple past tense here adds much to the liveliness of the style.

In the quotation from Berlepsch hatte etwas werden können correspond- to konnte etwas werden of direct discourse

This independent form of indirect discourse has become very common in the novels of our time

b Instead of the tenses employed in a we also find the same tenses and moods as used in the direct discourse Und wie der Friedl nun so mit sich allein war, da versank er in ein Traumen, wie sonst noch nie — Aus der Hosentasche zog er eine kleine goldene Uhr und schaute sie an und hob schon die Hand, um sie ins Gestein zu schleudern, tat's aber nicht — Ob nicht die Rosel so was mochte? Ei natürlich, die soll sich's nur selber kaufen Er wird überhaupt nicht mehr viel reden mit dem Geiß-Madl, er hat ganz andere Aussichten, wenn er will Manchmal einen Gefallen, wenn's drauf ankömmt, kann man einer ja wohl erweisen Aber ungut wird ihm schier, wenn er an diese — diese Stadtleute denkt Es ist halt doch wahr, was man von ihnen sagt. So dachte er und schüttelte den Kopf (Rosegger's *Durch'* p 67).

### CONJUGATION

173 *The infinitive* The form of the verb usually given in the dictionary is the infinitive, which ends in en except after -el and -er, where the e of the en is dropped, as also in the two isolated verbs tun to do, sein to be loben to praise, wandern to wander, wandeln to saunter

174 *The stem* By cutting off en from the infinitive, or n after -el and -er, the simple stem of the verb is found, out of which grow all the varied forms of conjugation

175 *Forms of conjugation* Like the English, the German verb has a common and an interrogative form, and has besides in the second person a form for familiar language and another for polite intercourse, but lacks the *emphatic* and *progressive* forms of the English, the common form serving usually for the English common, emphatic, and progressive The German has an emphatic form that corresponds in part to the English See 185 B 1 2 e (2) See Note below for the German methods of expressing the idea of progression or duration The *polite* form is the same as the third person pl, and is distinguished from it by writing its subject, the pronoun sie, with a capital sie loben they praise Sie loben you praise This polite form is the same in the sing and pl The familiar form, which is also used in solemn style, has du for its subject in the sing and ihr in the pl The personal endings of the verb are added to the stem

#### Present Tense Declarative

#### Present Tense Interrogative.

##### Singular

ich lobe I praise, am praising,  
do praise  
{ (familiar form)  
du lobst you praise, are praising,  
do praise  
{ (polite form)  
Sie loben  
er, sie, es lobt he, she, it praises,  
is praising, does praise

lobe ich? do I praise?  
  
{ lobst du?  
loben Sie? } do you praise?  
lobt er, sie, es? does he, she, it  
praise?

##### Plural

wir loben we praise, &c  
(familiar form)  
ihr lobt  
(polite form) } you praise, &c  
Sie loben  
sie loben they praise, &c

loben wir? do we praise?  
  
{ lobt ihr?  
loben Sie? } do you praise?  
loben sie? do they praise?

Hereafter the polite form will be omitted in the conjugation, as it is exactly the same as the third person pl., except that its subject *Sie* is written with a capital letter.

*Note. Different Forms of the Durative Aspect.* The durative aspect (see 164) is in both German and English usually expressed by the simple verb: *Er schreibt oft den ganzen Tag* He often writes the whole day. To emphasize the idea of duration indicating that the activity is progressing at a given time we have in English an especial durative form called the progressive form: He is now writing a letter *Er schreibt jetzt einen Brief*. Thus the English progressive form often corresponds to the simple verb in German. To emphasize especially the idea of progression, the German employs in connection with the verb the adverb *gerade* or *eben* or instead of the adverb a prepositional object, usually an + dative of the substantive, or these constructions may be replaced by a prepositional phrase consisting usually of the preposition *bei*, *in*, or *an* and the infinitive substantive of the verb: *Ich schreibe gerade* (or *eben*, both adverbs unstressed) *I am writing*. *Sie tanzten gerade, als ich eintrat* They were dancing when I entered. *Er schrieb an einem Briefe* He was writing a letter. *Sie ist beim Anziehen* She is dressing. *Die Kurse sind im Steigen, im Fallen* The value of stocks is rising, falling. *Sie hatte es gerade mit einem Kinde zu tun, das am Kartoffelschälen war* She was just then occupied with a child who was peeling potatoes. It should be noticed that in this progressive form the object must assume the form of a prepositional object after the preposition *an*, as in the third from the last example, or it must form a compound with the infinitive-substantive as in the last example. Instead of the infinitive-substantive it is quite common to employ the prepositional infinitive in connection with *dabei*: *Ich bin dabei* or *gerade dabei, einen Brief an meinen Vater zu schreiben*. This form is especially common, as here, where there are objects and adverbial modifiers which would be difficult to unite with the infinitive-substantive. The progressive idea is also expressed by means of the participles *begriffen* and *beschäftigt* in connection with a prep. phrase: *Die Truppen sind im Anmarsch begriffen* The troops are advancing. *Ich bin gerade mit Schreiben beschäftigt*. *Die japanischen Matrosen sind beim Aufräumen der Minen im Hafen beschäftigt* (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Jan. 7, 1905). As in the last sentence the object often assumes the form of an attributive objective genitive dependent upon an infinitive-substantive. The infinitive-substantive is often replaced here by the prepositional infinitive in connection with *damit*, especially where there are objects and adverbial modifiers which would be difficult to unite with an infinitive-substantive: *Ich bin (gerade) damit beschäftigt, einen langen Brief an meinen Vater zu schreiben*.

To indicate that an activity is sustained thruout a period we use in English *keep* or *keep on* in connection with the present participle, while in German the verb is compounded with the separable prefix *fort* and is often modified by the prepositional phrase in *einem*: *He kept on laughing* *Er lachte in einem fort*. *Das regnet ja heut in einem fort!* *Der Regen dauert fort*. *Er arbeitet unermüdlich fort*. To indicate a continuation of a condition of things *remain* with the present participle is used in English, *bleiben* with the infinitive in German: *He remained standing, sitting* *Er blieb stehen, sitzen*. *Etwas blieb hängen, an der Pfanne kleben*. *Die Uhr fiel hin, aber sie blieb gehen*. *Die Zigarre blieb brennen*.

Terminates, i. e. verbs in which the duration of the action is short, the action beginning and ending within a limited period, are closely related to duratives and, like them, have the simple form of the verb and are also often otherwise treated like them, as illustrated in 191. I. 3, but they differ from them in that they indicate an action *as a whole* rather than as continuing: *Er winkte mir*. *Er hat mit keiner Wimper gezuckt*. *Er schoß ihn tot*. *Sie wiegte ihr Kind in den Schlaf*. *Er lachte sich halb zu Tode*. In many terminates the *final point*, as in the last example, or the *beginning*, as in the next to the last example, is quite prominent, so that the terminate aspect is often closely related to the point-action aspect (164), often merging into it, as indeed the point-action aspect has itself largely developed out of it. The point-action idea is present when the conception of a point becomes more prominent than that of the action. See 246. II. 3. b.

## REGULAR CONJUGATION.

176. There are two regular conjugations, the weak and the strong.

1. The weak forms its past tense by adding *te* to the stem, and its perf. participle by prefixing *ge* and adding *t* to the stem: *loben* to praise, past *lobte* praised, perf. participle *gelobt* praised. This is by far the largest class of verbs and is growing at the expense of the strong as from time to time a few strong verbs have left their old class and joined this class. Moreover new formations, such as *radeln* to ride on a bicycle, *telefonieren* to telephone, are almost invariably weak.

2. The strong forms its past tense by a change of vowel within the stem of the verb, and its perf. participle by prefixing *ge*, usually changing the vowel of the stem, and by adding *en* to the stem: *singen* to sing, past *sang* sang, perf. participle *gesungen* sung. This class is not so large as formerly. Altho a few words have from time to time joined it, there has in general been a steady decrease. Altho it is comparatively small it subdivides into classes and divisions. The full description of these classes and divisions and the lists of verbs belonging to each are given in 198-205.

### *The Simple Forms of the Verb.*

177. The simple forms of the verb are all active except the perf. part. and the modal verbals (180), which are passive. In the following paradigms all the simple forms of the verb are given, and besides a few common compound forms which supply the place of the wanting simple forms. The words inclosed in parentheses are under certain circumstances a regular part of the verbal form, while under other circumstances they are omitted. The accompanying reference will usually explain in full this point.

## I The simple forms of the weak verb

Present I praise, &c		Past I praised, &c		Present	
Ind. c.	Subj	Ind. c. & Subj		Imperative	
ich lobe	lobe	lobte		lobe ich	
				(fam. l ar)	(pol. te)
du lobst	lobest	lobtest		lobe,	loben Sie praise
er lobt	lobe	lobte		er lobe	let him praise or er soll loben
wir loben	loben	lobten		loben wir	let us praise
				(fam. l ar)	(pol. te)
ihr lobt	lobet	lobtet		lob(e)t,	loben Sie praise
sie loben	loben	lobten		sie sollen loben	let them praise
Infinitive				Participle	
Pres (zu) loben to praise (185. A and B)				Pres lobend praising	
				Perf Passive ge'lobt praised	

The Modal Verbs.

Predicate Form zu loben (180 A)

Attributive Form der (, die, das) zu lobende (180 B)

## A. Imperative Forms

The *imperative* of both strong and weak verbs has forms only for the 2nd person sing and pl of the familiar form. Reiche mir das Buch! Vergest es ja nicht! Kommt doch mit! (spoken entreatingly) *Do come along!* Komm (see 50 A 2 b) doch endlich einmal! (spoken in a threatening, impatient tone) *Come this very minute!* These imperative forms spoken in an ironical tone in connection with the adverb doch or doch nur do not have the force of a command at all but are prohibitions. Kommt doch nur mit! *Don't you dare to come!*

The other simple forms given above are subjunctive forms used to replace the wanting imperative forms. The subjunctive imperative of the 1st pers sing is only rarely found. Denn, gesteh' ich es nur, nicht ruft die nahe Gefahr mich | aus dem Hause des Vaters (Goethe's *II* und *D*, iv 137) Ich sei, gewahrt mir die Bitte, | in eurem Bunde der Dritte! (Schiller's *Die Bürgschaft*) Allein zu Lieb' und Ehe braucht es zwei; | und sag' ich's nur, mein Vater, euer Fürst, | war mir des Mannes ein so würdig Bild, | daß ich vergebens seinesgleichen suche (Grillparzer's *Libussa*, 2) For the 3rd pers sing the subjunctive imperative has either normal or question order. er lobe, or lobe er. In the 1st pers pl and in the polite form of the 2nd pers sing and pl the question order is alone used. Doch, laß ruhen die Toten, sehen wir in die Zukunft (Bismarck to his betrothed, June 13, 1847) If the imperative is preceded by a subordinate clause the first person plural subjunctive form with its question order cannot be used, as it would be felt as an indicative with inverted order. It must here be replaced by an auxiliary with a dependent infinitive. Beten wir für einander, solange wir hier auf Erden sind, but Solange wir hier auf Erden sind, wollen wir für einander beten! Loben Sie (polite form, sing and pl) The 3rd pers sing and pl of the simple verb is usually replaced in colloquial speech by an auxiliary with a dependent infinitive. See B a below. It is, however, still quite common in commands which have the definite man, einer, keiner, niemand, or jeder, ein jeder for a subject. Man beachte folgendes. Let everybody note the following points. On the other hand, it is in general not infrequent in poetry and choice prose. Dann zerbreche dies Britannien, wenn es zu ehrenhaftem Leben zu morsch ist (Lienhard's *König Arthur*, 1) Less common in the plural, as the form is the same as for the indicative, but not entirely infrequent even here in commands or directions to a definite group of persons. Alle stehen auf! (Georg Fdward) Alle setzen sich! (id) Alle gleichen Nummern treten hervor! (military command)

Very common in a few formal expressions in polite language: *Erlauben mir die Herren, Sie mit einander bekannt zu machen*: Herr von Leslie-Gordon, Herr Hofprediger Dr. Dörffel (Fontane's *Cécile*, chap. 18). *Gestatten die Herren, daß ich Ihnen Herrn Lothar Brandt vorstelle* (Sudermann's *Die Ehre*, 2, 6). *Die Herrschaften verzeihen, aber, &c., (ib.)*.

a. The pronoun in the familiar form is only expressed for especial emphasis or contrast: *Wartet ihr, indem wir voranlaufen*. The pronoun may not only follow the verb as in the example just given, but it may also precede: *Ihr da! seid aufmerksam! Du da! sei aufmerksam!* Instead of a pronoun, a noun can of course be used: *Karl, sei aufmerksam!* If, however, *du* and *ihr* accompany a noun in direct address they are not usually stressed: *Gehe hin zur Ameise, du Fauler; siehe ihre Weise an und lerne* (Prov. VI. 6, rev. ed.).

The *Sie* of the polite form is usually expressed in the literary language, but colloquially it is sometimes omitted, especially if it has been once expressed: *Na, das überlegen (usually überlegen Sie) sich man (= nur)!* (Halbe's *Mutter Erde*, p. 152). *Reiten Sie zur Fabrik und bringen (usually bringen Sie) mir — ich bitte flotte Gangart — Bericht* (Liliencron's *Kriegsromanellen*).

b. For the pres. perfect imperative see 190. I. A.

### B. Substitutes for the Imperative of Strong and Weak Verbs.

The imperative is a formal expression of will, but it is not the only form of expression here, for different circumstances require different procedure, so that the will must formulate its demands in many ways, which in course of time have found a formal expression in the language. The simple imperative, the oldest of these forms, is still much used in commands, requests, admonitions, entreaties, supplications. The one form with its many meanings represents the simplicity of primitive speech. The meaning is indicated not alone by the form but as in primitive speech in general also by the situation, the accent, the tone of the voice. In course of time, however, other forms of expression have arisen. Of the different forms which are here gathered together under the general heading of substitutes for the imperative some are mere formal variants without a real difference of signification, while others have meanings more or less differentiated. These different forms of expressions are further differentiated by the modulation of the voice, which here as in the simple imperative plays an important rôle. The following groups appear:

a. The modal auxiliaries, which in connection with the infinitive of the verb to be conjugated are much used to replace the simple imperative and the wanting forms of the imperative. First person singular: *Möge ich ihn nie wiedersehen!* First person plural: *laß* (sing. familiar form), *laßt* (pl. familiar form), *lassen Sie* (polite) *uns loben!* The imperative with *lassen* arose early in the North and spread southward in large measure displacing the older simple form (*loben wir*). Even before Luther's day it had become well established in the Midland and was widely used in the literary language of the South, but later under S.G. influence the older simple form came into wide use again as it had remained firmly rooted in S.G. feeling. *Wollen*, like *lassen* a N.G. form that spread southward, competed earlier in the period with *lassen* for the mastery as over against the older simple form. It is still widely used: *Wollen wir einen Wagen nehmen? Nein, wir wollen* (indicative) *lieber zu Fuße gehen!* The question order is also used with *wollen*, altho not so commonly as the normal order: *Wollen* (subjunctive) *wir das annehmen!* (Storm's *Es waren zwei Königskinder*, p. 2). *Wollen* (subjunctive) *wir ihn* (Dr. Georg W. A. Kahlbaum) *in unserem Gedächtnis bewahren!* (Privatdozent Franz Strunz in *Beilage zur Allgemeinen Zeit.*, Aug. 31, 1905, p. 415). Of course the inverted order must be employed if some modifier of the verb is for emphasis placed at the beginning of the sentence: *Nun wollen* (indic.) *wir loswandern!* (Hauptmann's *Und Pippa tanzt*, p. 54). Second person: *Sechs Tage sollst du arbeiten; am siebenten Tage sollst du feiern* (revised edition, Ex. xxxiv. 21). The past subjunctive softens the force and imparts to the utterance the idea of advice offered modestly: *Neulich fragte sie noch nach dir. Die solltest du wählen* (Goethe's *H. und D.*, 2, 241). *Wollen* has much milder force here: *Traute, minnigliche Frau, wollest* (subj.) *nimmer fliehen* (Hölty). Imperative of *wollen*: *Wollet mir, geliebte Brüder im Herrn, Aufmerksamkeit schenken, daß ich euch ein Gleichnis erzähle* (Ertl's *Die Stadt der Heiligen*). *Bitte, wollen Sie Platz nehmen!* (Sudermann's *Fritschen*). Past subj. of *mögen* is very common in polite language: *Möchten Sie die Güte haben, mir zu folgen?* The auxiliary *dürfen* is much used here in prohibitions: *Ihr dürft nicht laut schreien!* Children, you must not scream out loud! *Müssen* is much used here in the positive form of statement, to express the idea of compulsion: „Geh!“ „Ich will nicht.“ „Du mußt gehen!“ Third person: *Er soll* (indic.) *loben!* Let him praise! (command),



or more mildly er möge (or still more mildly wolle; both subj.) loben, or möge (or wolle) er loben! May he praise! (wish) Plural sie sollen loben, or mögen sie loben. Wollen sich die Herren nur heraufbemühen! (R. H. Bartsch's *Schranz merl*, p. 11) When the force becomes

indicative of können: Du kannst gehen. See also 213 2 D  
 Of these auxiliaries sollen with its dependent infinitive in connection with the adverb nur, doch, or doch nur is not, when spoken in ironical tone, an imperative at all but a strong prohibition: Wollen sie meutern? Rebellion machen? Sie sollen nur! (L. von Handel Mazzetti's *Septim Scherzter*, II, chap. II) *Just let them dare to try it!*

b. The second person of the present indicative to express in a stern tone that the command must be obeyed Kuhnert (trotzig) Ich laß mir nicht'n Mund verbieten! Die alte Kuhnert: Still bist! (Halbe's *Das tausendjährige Reich*, p. 66) In mild hopeful tone this form indicates confidence that a request will be complied with Du kommst mit! Of course, you will come along! In deferential language the third person is employed, usually with question order Regt sich dennoch (dennoch) der Herr Pfarrer nit also auf! (L. von Handel Mazzetti's *Jesse und Maria*, p. 15).

The first person of the plural is often used here instead of the second person singular when spoken in a stern tone Hans, du hast deine Aufgabe für heute nicht ins Reine geschrieben. Wir tun so etwas nicht wieder! (Georg Adward)

A mild request is often expressed by the second person singular with the interrogative form of statement Kommst du nicht mit? When spoken in stern tone this form often has the force of a threat indicating considerable impatience Kommst du wohl bald? The stress is here uniformly on the first word See 60 A 2 b If the second person is used in connection with wenn, the transposed word order, at least: Wenn du das noch einmal tu subjoin is a polite imperative Ich

In dialect and colloquial language perative expressing assurance and expectation that the command will be obeyed Jetzt wird

future indicative to express an admonition or give advice Du willst hier sein Du wirst es tun! You will do it if you follow

my advice. Often in a more positive tone. Du wirst den Apfel schließen von dem Kopf! des Knaben — ich begehre's und will's (Schiller's *Tell*, 3, 3) Three lines further on the present indicative is used in still more positive tone. Often in the second person of the future in the interrogative form, spoken in positive tone Wirst du still sein? Wirst du gleich folgen, oder soll ich a Prigel (= Prügel) nehmen? (Hauptmann's *Die Weber*, act 5).

d. The perfect participle in short, sharp commands or warnings, or in brusquely urging a course: Aufgestanden! Stand up! Den Wagen angespannt! Schnell Hilfe geholt! Vorgehen! Look out! Nur nicht zu früh gefreut, Lenchen! (Halbe's *Das tausendjährige Reich*, p. 18). Nicht geplaudert! No talking! Aber reinen Mund gehalten! But don't you tell a word of it. Keinen verschont! Spare nobody! Aufgehört mit dem Spielen!

e. The present infinitive, to express a command or

mands in general, such as entreaties, requests, kind directed to the public Maul halten! Hold your tongue wieder so dicht am Wasser auf die Erde legen (bruch) But don't ever lie down again so near the stand? Ruhig, ruhig! Nur ja nicht ärgern (Hauptmann in *Note* below). Nein, nein, bitte, setzen! (Sudermann) No, no, please be seated. Bitte, mich auch fliegen lassen! Please throw me up into the air too! Ich bitte, bitte: essen! nur einen Bissen davon, aber ess! „Nur nicht aufregen“ (Hauptmann's *Die Weber*, act 5). streuung braucht er jetzt nicht, langweilen soll er's Brand, XVII) Dann rief ich dem Kutscher zu: „um! adressieren (in an advertisement) Address letters to (All aboard! (to passengers). Umsteigen nach Hanne in telegrams Vater schwer krank. Kommen! Gottfried (Umptied's *Sylvester von Greyer*, LXIII). The infinitive is especially common in admonitions to one's self as found in the novels of our time where the author reports in lively narrative style the musings of his character. This is an apt illustration of this common usage s original imperative force but is a narrow to himself.

Note 1. Observe in the above examples (1) that in a negative command the negative must precede the infinitive, (2) that the separable prefix is not separated (3) that reflexive verbs in this imperative form sometimes take the

reflexive pronoun and sometimes are without it, especially so in certain set expressions, as in the fourth and fifth examples. The omission of the reflexive pronoun is explained by the older substantive nature of the infinitive. Compare 185. A. I. 6. Note 3.

Note 2. Compare carefully the meaning of *d* and *e*. They are both essentially N.H.G. developments and aptly illustrate the modern tendency to differentiate. They are both fine contributions of colloquial speech to the literary language. They have added to German new shades of meaning not contained in the older simple imperative.

Note 3. *Origin of the Infinitive Imperative.* The infinitive here was probably dependent originally upon some auxiliary understood: [Du sollst dein] Maul halten!

f. A substantive or adverb: Achtung! Attention! Vorwärts! Forward!

g. A subordinate clause: Daß du so fortfährst und deinen lieben Eltern viel Freude machst! Keep right on in this way, and thus bring your dear parents much joy! Eduard! daß die Briefe noch vor 8 auf der Post sind Edward! see to it that the letters are at the Post Office by eight. Ob (for strong accent here see 50. A. 2. b) du hergehst!

### C. Dialectic Variations of the Personal Endings.

The personal endings of the plural pres. indic. vary in different dialects from the above models. There is in some dialects a tendency to use uniformly the same personal ending thruout the plural, one form leveling the others. This is also true of strong verbs, as they have exactly the same personal endings as the weak. Thus in most editions of Goethe's *Götz*, 1, 1 (not, however, in the Weimar edition) we find in the dialectic language there employed -en, the ending of the 1st and 3rd pers. pl., also in the 2nd pl.: Wollen ihr Ruh haben?

The old ending *ent* for the 3rd pers. pl. is preserved in parts of the Southwest, especially in the Swabian and the eastern Swiss dialects, in many sections, however, in the reduced form *et*, and from the 3rd pers. has spread to the 1st pers. and in many sections also to the 2nd person, so that the whole plural ends in *ent* or *et*. This old 3rd pers. pl. ending in the form of *nd* is also preserved in the literary language in the one word *sind*, which form has also spread to the 1st pers. pl. In dialect the older 1st pers. pl. form *sein* often occurs and has spread to the 3rd pers.: *wir sein, sie sein*.

In some of the western Swiss dialects the ending for the 1st and 3rd pers. pl. is *e* (older form *en*) and *et* for the 2nd pers. In other western dialects the whole plural may end in *e* (older *en*), or the ending for the 1st pers. pl. is *e(n)*, for the 2nd pers. *et*, for the 3rd *ent*.

In Bavarian and Austrian dialects complete leveling does not take place in the pl. The ending for the 1st and 3rd pers. pl. is *e(n)* and for the 2nd pers. pl. *et* or *ts* (regular 2nd pers. pl. ending *t + s*, the latter element of which is the contracted form of the old dual *es*; see 140. g).

In the literary language the 1st pers. pl. in *en* has leveled the old 3rd pers. pl. in *ent*. This development was greatly facilitated by the fact that the 1st and 3rd pers. pl. of the present subjunctive and the past indicative and subjunctive ended in *en*. This leveling began in M.G. and later spread to Bavarian and the literary language.

### II. The simple forms of the strong verb:

#### A. singen to sing.

Indic.	Subj.
ich singe	singe
du singst	singest
er singt	singe
wir singen	singen
ihr singt	singet
sie singen	singen

#### B. fallen to fall.

Present.	
Indic.	Subj.
falle	falle
fällst	fallest
fällt	falle
fallen	fallen
fallt	fallet
fallen	fallen

#### C. helfen to help.

Indic.	Subj.
helfe	helfe
hilfst	helfest
hilft	helfe
helfen	helfen
helft	helfet
helfen	helfen

#### Past.

Indic.	Subj.
ich sang	sänge
du sangst	säng(e)st
er sang	sänge
wir sangen	sängen
ihr sangt	säng(e)t
sie sangen	sängen

Indic.	Subj.
fiel	fiele
fielst	fielest
fiel	fiele
fielen	fielen
fielt	fiolet
fielen	fielen

Indic.	Subj.
half	hülfe
halfst	hülf(e)st
half	hülfe
halfen	hülfen
halfst	hülf(e)t
halfen	hülfen

#### Present Imperative

##### Singular.

1st singe ich

falle ich

helfe ich

(familiar)

(polite)

2nd sing(e), singen Sie

(familiar)

(polite)

fall(e), fallen Sie

(familiar)

(polite)

3rd er singe

er falle

hilf, helfen Sie  
er helfe

Plural		
singen wir sing(e)t, singen Sie sie sollen singen	fallen wir fall(e)t, fallen Sie sie sollen fallen	helfen wir helf(e)t, helfen Sie sie sollen helfen
Infinitive	Participle	The Modal Verbals (180)
Pres (zu) singen (185 A & B)	Pres singend Perf ge'sungen	zu singen (predicate form) der (&c) zu singende (attributive form see 180 B)
Pres (zu) fallen	Pres fallend Perf ge fallen	lacking with intransitive verb except those in 185 A 1 b (2)
Pres (zu) helfen	Pres helfend Perf ge holfen	zu helfen (the attributive form is lacking see 180 B b)

D The three models given above represent the three different forms of inflection in the simple mood and tense forms of strong verbs concerning which the following particulars are given

a Those that have an a in the stem modify as a rule that vowel in 2nd and 3rd person sing of the present indic as in B above *Laufen* and *saufen* are the only verbs in au that mutate here *Kommen* to *come* sometimes mutates For cause of mutation see 197 C a

Note In SG mutat on s often suppressed here du schlaft er schlaft for du schlafst er schlafst

b Those that have an e in the stem change it in the 2nd and 3rd person sing of the present indic to i, if it stands before two or more consonants and to ie, if it stands before one consonant or silent h ich treffe I hit du triffst, er trifft, but ich lese I read du liestest, er liest, and ich befehle I command du befiehlst, er befiehlt Where the stem vowel is short as in the first example, there are few exceptions but where it is long as in the second and third examples the exceptions are more numerous than the verbs that conform to the rule All exceptions are given in d below For explanation of the change of vowel here in the sing see 26 C 197 C b 201 f

*Erlöschen* to *become extinguished* go out changes o to i du erlischest, er erlischt *Gebaren* to *give birth* to changes a to ie du gebierst, sie gebiert

Note In ea I er per ods i was also found in the 1st person sing and the old form survives in SG dialect Ich vergißt hr alles — s e vergißt mir nix (Ebner Eschenbach's *Glaubenslos* chap 1)

c The imperative of the class that changes e to i or ie in the 2nd and 3rd pers sing of the present indic also has in the 2nd pers (never in the 3rd pers as it is in fact a subjunctive form) sing except in case of *werden* to *become* the same change of vowel but does not have a personal ending triff, gib, befiehl, but werde The exclamatory imperative siehe! behold! look! (from *sehen*) deviates often from the rule in that it not only has change of vowel but also after the analogy of the wk imperative may take the personal ending e

The imperative of all strong verbs not having an interchange of e to i or ie in the 2nd person either remains without an ending in the 2nd sing according to long established usage or takes an e after the analogy of wk verbs fahr or fahre drive sing or singe

The imperative is often replaced by other forms just as in the wk verb See I B above

d The following exceptions occur to the rules given in b and c above (1) In the 2nd and 3rd sing pres indic and the sing imper *geben* to *give* changes long e to long or short i, *nehmen* to *take* and *treten* to *step* change long e to short i and also double the final consonant of the stem ich gebe, du gibst, er gibt, gib, ich nehme, du nimmst, er nimmt, nimm, ich trete, du trittst, er tritt, tritt (2) *Bewegen*, *gehen*, *genesen*, *heben*, *pflügen*, *stecken*, *stehen*, *weben*, and usually *melken* and *scheren*, do not suffer an interchange of vowel at all in the present tense of either the indic or imper Now and then in loose colloquial speech other verbs show no interchange in the present ich schelte, du schiltst or scheltest, imper schilt or schelt(e) „Jetzt komm,“ lachelte sie, schon wieder zuversichtlich ihn an der Hand fortziehend,—„und schelt

halt noch einmal, wenn ich es nicht recht gemacht hab'" (Berlepsch's *Fortunats Roman*, p. 18). In the language of the common people this tendency to level out the irregularities of form and become regular is much stronger than in the literary language.

e. The subjunctive never shows interchange of vowel in the present tense but in the *past* tense regularly suffers mutation where the vowel is capable of it and sometimes as in case of **hülfe** has a vowel different from that of the indicative, as explained in **200**, 2. Division. *a.* and 3. Division, also in **201**. *b.*

*f.* All strong verbs not described in *a* and *b* follow the inflection of *singen* in pres. tense indic.

g. *Mixed Past Tense.* In early N.H.G. the past tense indic. of strong verbs often added an e in the 1st and 3rd person sing., after the analogy of weak verbs: Dct. Faustus name (for nahm) jm (for ihm = sich) wiederumb ein Gespräch für (for vor) mit seinem Geist zu halten (*Historia von D. Johann Fausten*, 1587). The oldest examples of this usage go back to the eleventh century. It reached its widest boundaries in the third quarter of the seventeenth century. We find these forms only rarely in the classical period: ich litte (Lessing's *Nathan*, 3, 8, 14th line). Es flohe Freund und Feind (Goethe's *Götz*, 3, 13). To-day wurde (for older ward) is the only surviving form of this mixed past tense.

### III. The simple forms of the irregular verbs *haben*, *sein*, *werden*:

a. haben to have.

*b.* sein to be.

Present.		Past.		Present.		Past.	
Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Subj.
ich hābe	hābe	hätte	hätte	bīn	sei	war	wäre
du hāst	hābest	hättest	hätt(e)st	bīst	sei(e)st	warst	wär(e)st
er hāt	hābe	hätte	hätte	īst	sei	war	wäre
wir hāben	hāben	hätten	hätten	sind	seien	waren	wären
ihr hābt	hābet	hättet	hättet	seid	seiet	wart	wär(e)t
sie hāben	hāben	hätten	hätten	sind	seien	waren	wären
Imperative.		Infinitive.		Imperative.		Infinitive.	
Sing.				Sing.			
1st hābe ich		Pres. (zu) hāben		1st sei ich		Pres. (zu) sein	
2nd hābe, hāben Sie		(185. A & B)		2nd sei, seien Sie		(185. A & B)	
3rd er hābe				3rd er sei			
Plur.		Participles.		Plur.		Participles.	
1st hāben wir				1st seien wir			
2nd hābt, hāben Sie		Pres. hābend		2nd seid, seien Sie		Pres. seiend	
3rd sie sollen hāben		Perf. ge'hābt		3rd sie sollen sein		Perf. ge'wesen	

## The Modal Verbals.

zu haben (predicate form)

der (, die, das) zu habende (attributive)

*Note.* Instead of the usual subjunctive present singular of *sein*, we occasionally find the forms *ich sei*, *du seiest*, *er sei*: *Da meint er, es sei die Burg schon genommen* (Uhland's *Graf Eberstein*).

Earlier in the period the perfect participle *gewest* was often used instead of *gewesen* by Middle German writers, as Luther, &c. and it still survives in popular speech.

Instead of the 2nd pers. sing. imperative *sei* the old form *bis* (from the same stem as *bist*) is still found in many dialects, especially in the Midland and Switzerland.

In early N.H.G. instead of the past indic. sing. war the older form was was used. Luther employed it in his earlier writings.

c. wērdēn to become.

Present.		Past.		
Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Subj.	Imperative
ich w <sup>äre</sup>	w <sup>äre</sup>	w <sup>äre</sup> or w <sup>äre</sup>	w <sup>äre</sup>	w <sup>äre</sup> ich
du w <sup>irst</sup>	w <sup>ärest</sup>	w <sup>ärest</sup> or w <sup>ärest</sup>	w <sup>ärest</sup>	w <sup>äre</sup>
er w <sup>ird</sup>	w <sup>äre</sup>	w <sup>äre</sup> or w <sup>äre</sup>	w <sup>äre</sup>	er w <sup>äre</sup>
wir w <sup>erden</sup>	w <sup>ären</sup>	w <sup>ären</sup>	w <sup>ären</sup>	w <sup>ären</sup> wir
ihr w <sup>äret</sup>	w <sup>äret</sup>	w <sup>äret</sup>	w <sup>äret</sup>	w <sup>äret</sup> , w <sup>ären</sup> Sie
sie w <sup>erden</sup>	w <sup>ären</sup>	w <sup>ären</sup>	w <sup>ären</sup>	sie sollen w <sup>ären</sup>
Infinitive.		Participles.		
Pres. (zu) w <sup>erden</sup> (185. A and B)		Pres. w <sup>ärend</sup>		
		Perf. (ge)'w <sup>orden</sup> (178. 2. C.)		

*Note* Wurde is the more common form in ordinary prose, ward is a favorite in poetry and choice prose. The plural forms worden and warden occur earlier in the period. sie worden (Luther) Die Länder werden Euch durch Margaretens Hand (Gripparzer's König Ottokar 1)

### 178. General Remarks respecting the Simple Forms of the Verb

1 Sometimes in adding the various endings to the stem, sounds are brought together that are difficult to pronounce, in which case an *e* is placed between stem and ending to facilitate the pronunciation. *zeichnen* to sketch, draw, *du zeichnest* not *zeichnst*, *es regnet* (not *regnt*) it is raining &c. This *e*, once a vital part of the word, has so lost its original force that it can thus be used to facilitate the pronunciation and dropped when it is not needed. It is also sometimes retained to distinguish the different inflectional forms more clearly from each other, as for instance the subjunctive from the indicative. It is thus to day sometimes a mere *connecting*, sometimes an *inflectional* vowel, and hence is used or dropped according to the requirements of euphony or grammatical clearness. A brief outline of its present use is as follows.

A The connecting vowel is usually retained in the following cases

a. If the stem ends in single *m* or *n* preceded by a consonant other than *l* or *r*, the connecting vowel *e* always stands between stem and ending. *atmen* to breathe, *du atmest*; *begegnen* to meet, *du begegnest*, *er begegnete*, &c., but *hemmen* to retain, check, *du hemmst*, *qualmen*, *du qualmst*, *lernen*, *du lernst*, &c.

*Note.* The other parts

*ebnf* See 41 4

b. When stems ending in *d* or *t* would stand before the ending *t* (and often before *st*), the connecting vowel is usually placed between stem and ending, except in the 2nd and 3rd person singular present tense of those verbs having a modification of vowel or interchange from *e* to *i* or *ie*, which latter classes never take the connecting vowel but the regular endings *st*, *t*, or in case of combinations difficult to pronounce suffer contraction. *beten* to pray, *er betet*, *du betest*, *du betetest*, *gebetet*, &c., but *laden* to load, *du ladest*, *er ladet* (*let*); *halten* to hold, *du haltest*, *er haltet*, *treten* to step, *du trittst*, *er tritt*, *fechten* to fence, *du fichtest*, *er fichtet*, but in the plural according to rule *ihr ladet*, *haltet*, *tretet*, *fechtet*.

c. When stems ending in a sibilant, as *s*, *sp*, *ss*, *ß*, *sch*, *z*, *x*, would stand before *st* the connecting vowel is inserted between stem and ending except in the 2nd person singular present tense of verbs having a modification of vowel or interchange from *e* to *i* or *ie*, which latter classes may take the connecting vowel in choice language, but in ordinary conversation add only the regular ending *st*, or in case of combinations difficult to pronounce suffer contraction. *fischen* to fish, *du fischest*, but *waschen* to wash, *du waschest* or *waschst*, *wachsen* to grow, *du wachsest* or *wachst*, *essen* to eat, *du issest* or *isst*, *lesen* to read, *du liestest* or *liest*. In familiar conversation contraction is also quite common here even when there is no interchange of vowel. *du paßt*, *heißt* instead of *passet*, *heisset*. The choice language of our time, however, is becoming ever more unfavorable to contracted forms.

d. Use of *e* to mark the

to facilitate  
in the present

T

and subjunctive weak are identical in form in the past tense and in the strong

*el e* besides serving  
on the indicative  
but the indicative

conjugation the *e* may drop out of the past subjunctive where the modification of the vowel already distinguishes the subjunctive: *du tust* (indic.), but *du tuest* (subj.); *du gingst* (past indic. of *gehen* to go), but *du gingest* (subj.); *du gabst* (past indic. of *geben* to give), but *du gäb(e)st* (subj.).

Verbs the stems of which end in single *m* or *n* preceded by a consonant other than *l* or *r* cannot distinguish between indicative and subjunctive except in the 3rd pers. sing.: *ich atme* (indic.), *ich atme* (subj.); *du atmest* (indic.), *du atmest* (subj.); *er atmet* (indic.), *er atme* (subj.).

*e.* In early N.H.G. the connecting vowel was much more used than at present, being found in many cases where it is not found at all to-day: *Der Weisen zunge machet die Lere lieblich | Der Narren mund speiet eitel narrheit* (Prov. xv. 2). The poet still often uses these old forms, either because old forms are in general well suited to a poetic style, or because they here and there suit his measure: *Ich bin der dunkle Edelstein, | aus tiefem Schacht gewühlet: | du aber bist der Sonnenschein, | darin er Farben spielet* (Geibel).

*f.* In the Bavarian dialects (including those in Austria) the past subjunctive usually retains the connecting vowel *e* and suppresses the personal ending, thus terminating in *et* or *at* (representing O.H.G. *ōti*, *ēti*) in weak and often in strong verbs, as the latter have come under the influence of the former: *Ich mag ihn ja nicht, wenn er mir gefallet (= gefiele), so saget (= sagte) ich nichts* (Raimund's *Der Verschwender*, 2, 1). *I möcht' bitt'n, daß i dös Beschwerdebuch allamal über'n Sonntag g'liehn kriegat'!* (Karl Ettlinger's *Das Beschwerdebuch*, p. 35). Also with vowel-gradation: *Wo nahmet denn unser Herrgott d' Finger her, wann er auf jeden einschichtigen Bauern deuten wollt'* (Anzengruber's *Die Kreuzelschreiber*, 2, 3). These dialects have no past indic. See 165. 2. *b.*

In Alemannic dialect we find the same use of the weak ending in the past subjunctive of strong verbs but with the suppression of the connecting vowel *e*: *ich kämt* (Gotthelf) = *ich käme*.

*B.* On the other hand, instead of inserting an *e* between stem and inflectional ending we often in loose colloquial speech drop an *e* of the latter: *ich seh* for *ich sehe*; *dreh* (imper. 2nd pers. sing.) for *drehe*, &c. The dropping of *-e* in indicative forms is most common here before an enclitic pronoun, where it is often suppressed to avoid a hiatus: *Da hör' ich, da hört' ich*, &c. In general, however, there is elsewhere little disposition in German to avoid a hiatus. Compare 62. *F. a.* Mutilations of any kind are avoided in choice language.

*a.* Verbs the stem of which ends in *-el* and *-er* in accordance with the old law described in 62. *C. Note* always drop the *e* of the inflectional ending before *n* in the indicative and infinitive: *wir wandeln*, &c. When *e* constitutes of itself the inflectional ending, it can never be dropped, but the *e* of the suffix may then be suppressed in its stead: (indic.) *ich hand(e)le*; (imper.) *hand(e)le* (*du*); (subj.) *ich hand(e)le*. The full form is now more common: (indic. and subj.) *ich handele*. In dialect and loose colloquial speech the ending is sometimes dropped: *ich handel*, &c.

*b.* The infinitives *tun* and *sein* are regularly without *e*, and *tun* also in the plural of the pres. indic., and *sein* in the 1st and 3rd pers. sing. pres. subj.: *wir tun*, &c.; *ich sei*, *du sei(e)st*, *er sei*. All verbs, both str. and wk., may drop the *e* of the inflectional ending *en*, when the stem ends in a vowel or a vowel followed by *h*: *schreien* or *schrein*; *gesehen* or *gesehn*. This dropping of *e* is very common in ordinary conversation, but is not usually indicated in the written language, the full ending *-en* being there preferred. The poet marks clearly the full or contracted form in the orthography, so as to make plain the metrical scheme. Even tho the *e* drops out, the number of syllables in the word is not in natural prose diminished, as the *n* assumes full syllabic function: *blühen* = *bly:n*.

*c.* The imperative of the 2nd pers. sing. of the weak conjugation has regularly an *e*, and the strong in imitation of the weak often takes an *e*, except those that have a change of vowel from *e* to *i* or *ie* in the 2nd and 3rd sing., which never take it with the one exception *siehe*: *beiße* *bite* for *beiß*; *wasche* *wash* for *wasch*; *singe* *sing* for *sing*; but always, *nimm* take, *hilf* help, *gib* give, &c. On the other hand, the wk. imperative often drops its *e* in the 2nd sing., but those in *-el*, *-en*, and *-er*, usually retain it: *reich* *reach* for *reiche*, but usually *läch(e)le*, *öffne*, *stolp(e)re*. Those in *-el* and *-er* drop sometimes in colloquial language the *e* of the ending and retain the *e* of the suffix: *lächel*, *stolper*. Those in *-en* always suppress the *e* of the suffix and retain the *e* of the ending: *öffne*.

2 Ge- does not stand in the perf. participle of —

A Those verbs that have no accent upon the first syllable. For the reason of the absence of ge- here see 246 II 1 a. Such verbs are

a Those that have the following prefixes: be-, ent- (emp before f- empfehlen), er-, ge-, muß (usually, see 246 II 5 B), ver-, wider-, zer-; and the following when unaccented: durch-, hinter-, über-, um-, unter-, voll-, wieder-: ver'letzt injured, be'schädigt damaged, über'setzt translated, but 'übergesetzt transported across, &c. Also when such verbs enter into other compounds: 'aner kannt, 'ab-ver'dient.

A 2. Example: *angereuen* in words where the prefix has been contracted as *hien* led with the verb so that its force as a prefix is lost: *gestressen* past of *stressen* = *to be* (as *malen* for *malen* *malen*, &c.)

b Many foreign verbs and a few German ones

(1) Those ending in 'ieren: stu'diert studied, buchsta'biert spelled &c. Children and uneducated people, earlier in the period also good authors, often prefix ge here: gestu'diert

(2) Those in 'eien: prophe'zeit prophesied, kas'teit chastised, mortified &c. Earlier in the period ge is often prefixed here, and sometimes still in case of bene'deien to bless: Sie gebenedeite unter den Frauen (Spielhagen's *Laustulus* p. 19)

(3) A number of other verbs which cannot be designated by an outward sign: a'launen to alum, cham'paguern to drink champagne, fran'zoseln to mix French words into one's speech, hu'raen (also 'hurraen) to hurrah, ka'paunen to capon, kal'fatern to cilk, kar'nüffeln to pommel, kra'keelen to kick up a row, kre'denzen to hand (a cup of wine to someone to drink), ku'ranzen to drub, mi'auen to mew, po'saunen to trumpet, sound forth, ro'boten to do compulsory service for a lord, ru'moren to make a noise, rumble, sal'badern to twiddle, schar'mutzeln to skirmish, schar'wenzeln or scher'wenzeln to bow and scrape, be officious, schlam'pampen to feast, live high, schma'rotzen to sponge on others, spek'takeln to make an uproar, sti'bitzen to pilfer, trom'peten to trumpet, zi'geunern to rove about like gypsies, and usually offen'baren to manifest, reveal, but it is also accented on the first syllable and hence takes ge- in the participle and usually so in its special sense of *divine revelation*: ein offen'bartes Geheimnis, but Wer an keinen persönlichen Gott glaubt, kann sich zu keiner ge'offenbarten Religion bekennen (Spielhagen's *Herrin*, p. 112). Earlier in the period usage fluctuated, so that offen'baren could also be used in the sense of *divine revelation*: Da ward Daniel solch verborgen Ding durch ein Gesicht des nachts offen'bart (Dan. ii. 19). Usage is even to day not entirely fixed.

In the case of the following compounds: frohlocken *to rejoice*, lieb'kosen *to caress*, will'fahren *to humor a person*, usage fluctuates (with preference perhaps for first mentioned form) between ge'frohlockt and froh'lockt, ge'lieb'kost and 'lieb'gekost, and sometimes lieb'kost, ge'will'fahrt and will'fahrt. Thus the compound may be treated as a simple verb taking accent on the first syllable and prefixing ge in the participle, or the first component element of the compound may be treated as an inseparable prefix taking no accent and hence no ge- in the participle. See also 217. b

For explanation of the accent in German words that take the accent upon the second element see 47. 2 A b Note

In spite of its accent the adj. participle gena'turt (earlier in the period common, now little used except in popular language) -natured prefixes ge, after the analogy of geartet. feiner gena'tur. als die aus fettem Ton geformte Menschheit (Musaüs)

B Perfect Participle with the Form of an Infinitive. The perfect participle has the form of an infinitive in case of certain auxiliaries or auxiliary-like verbs, when in a compound tense they have an infinitive depending upon them

a When there is a dependent infinitive the participle has the form of the infinitive (for historical explanation see Note 1). Er hat es gemußt *He has been compelled to*, but Er hat es tun müssen *He has been compelled to do it*. These

auxiliaries comprise the following: *dürfen*, *können*, *mögen*, *müssen*, *sollen*, and *wollen*; and more or less frequently the auxiliary-like verbs *heißen* to *bid*, *helfen* to *help*, *hören* to *hear*, *lassen* to *let* or *cause*, *machen* to *make*, *sehen* to *see*, *brauchen* to *need* (to do something), sometimes *fühlen* to *feel*, *lernen* to *learn*, and rarely *lehren* to *teach*, *vermögen* to *be able*, and *wissen* to *know*, all eighteen of which except *brauchen* (185. B. I. 2. a), *vermögen* (see example below), and *wissen* (212. 2. c) take an infinitive depending upon them without *zu*: *Ich habe es gekonnt* *I have been able*, but *Ich habe es tun können* *I have been able to do it*. *Wie viel traute Stunden hatte mir der alte Bursche bereiten helfen!* (Paul Keller's *Waldwinter*, xxi). *Man fühlte aus den Redewendungen heraus, daß die Zeit doch ihr Werk getan, daß neue Eindrücke die alten verwischt, neue Gesichter die Erinnerung an die alten hatten verblassen machen* (G. Ompteda's *Eysen*, chap. ii). *Ich hätte mich bloß nicht einzumischen brauchen* (or *einmischen brauchen*, or less commonly, but more correctly *einzumischen gebraucht*) *I simply had no need of mixing myself up in the matter*. *Wir hätten diese Schuld auch dann noch auf uns lasten fühlen* (Wustmann's *Sprachdummheiten*, p. 60, 3rd ed.)—now more commonly *lasten gefühlt*. *Hier tritt die Judith wieder ein . . . die den Teufel hat zähmen lernen* (G. Keller an T. Storm, June 25, 1878)—now more commonly *zähmen gelernt* [hat]. *Sie hat die Verhältnisse vorher nicht zu übersehen vermögen* (Ida Boy-Ed's *Fast ein Adler*, VII)—usually *zu übersehen vermocht*.

*Note 1. Historical Development and Present Tendencies.* This construction originated in the thirteenth century in such sentences as *Ich habe ihn lassen kommen*. Here *lassen* is an old perfect participle, which at this time was regularly without *ge-*, hence was identical in form with the infinitive, so that the group seemed to consist of two infinitives. As the relation between the two members of this infinitive group is as close as between the components of a compound the two members of the group were early felt as a compound verbal element and became fixed and rigid in this form—the form of two infinitives, altho the governing word was in fact a perfect participle. The two-infinitive form was also common elsewhere, as in *Er will ihn lassen kommen*, and helped fix this form here. Thus it early became usual in all close groups consisting of an infinitive and a governing verbal to give the governing word the form of an infinitive whether it performed the function of an infinitive or participle. This usage spread early to *tun*, *hören*, *heißen*, *helfen*, later to the modal auxiliaries *müssen*, &c., *anfangen*, *bitten*, *brauchen*, *fühlen*, *machen*, *lehren*, *lernen*, *pflügen*, *suchen*, *türren* or *thüren* (212. 2. f. (2)), *vermögen*, and *wissen*, whenever they had a simple infinitive dependent upon them: *Von einem han (= habe) ich hoeren sagen* (Biterolf, 7746, thirteenth century). Of these verbs *anfangen*, *bitten*, *pflügen*, *suchen*, and *tun* have abandoned the construction entirely. There is at present a growing tendency for other of these verbs to discard this peculiar participial form and use the form they have when there is no dependent infinitive, usually so in case of *fühlen*, *lehren*, *lernen*, *wissen*, and for the most part *vermögen*, quite often in case of *brauchen*, *helfen*, *lassen* (*Note 3*), *machen*, and with great frequency in case of *hören* and *sehen*. The modal auxiliaries hold most tenaciously to the old construction, but the true participial form seems also here to be gaining ground. Two forces are at present active and have long been active in spreading the true form. Firstly, the strong ever growing general tendency to place the personal part of the verb at the end of the subordinate clause asserts itself also here, often in colloquial speech, less frequently in the literary language, which of course makes it necessary to use the true participle, as the auxiliaries *haben* cannot stand after a simple infinitive: *Überdies ist jener Beruf (i.e. photography) ein Sammler und rettender Einfänger von vielen Geistern, die einstmal höher fliegen gewollt hätten* (R. H. Bartsch's *Die Haindkinder*, p. 128). The auxiliary here as elsewhere is sometimes suppressed: *Wenn er doch sterben gedurft!* (G. Ompteda). Secondly, in the principal proposition the dependent infinitive is often for emphasis placed at the beginning of the sentence, so that the participle at the end, no longer felt as standing as a fixed element in a group formation, often assumes its true form: *Essen hab' ich nicht viel gemocht* (Schulze-Smidt). From these two categories the true participial form spreads to others: *Wir hatten es ja nicht besser haben gewollt* (Raabe).

The infinitive is usually employed when the dependent infinitive has passive form, but the true participle is sometimes found here: *Es ist überraschend, mit welchem Erfolg der Grundsatz hat durchgeführt werden können* (*Hamb. Nachr.*, June 3, 1905). *Den S-gefügen, die Beiheft I, Seite 5 als in Westfalen üblich aufgeführt worden sind, hätten noch Werksführer, Werksbesitzer usw. zugeführt werden gekonnt* (Professor M. Trautmann in *Wissenschaftliche Beihefte*, No. 3, p. 133).

*Note 2.* *Lehren*, *helfen*, and *heißen* may also require a *zu* before the dependent infinitive, as described in 185. B. I. 2. c, *Note*. In this case their participles usually take the regular participial form with *ge-* instead of that of the infinitive: *Früh schon hatten sie sich kennen lernen* (or more commonly *gelernt*), but *Er hat sich zu beherrschen gelernt* and *Du hast gelernt, den Mund verschlossen zu halten*. *Brauchen*, however, quite commonly takes the infinitive form instead of the participial, whether the dependent infinitive has a *zu* or is without it. See example in a. Sometimes *heißen*: *Jesus hat die Armut und das Elend nie und nirgends konservieren wollen, sondern er hat sie bekämpft und zu bekämpfen heißen* (Harnack's *Das Wesen des Christentums*, Sechste Vorlesung).

*Note 3.* The participle of *lassen* may assume participial form but only in the meanings *to let go*, *slip*, *to allow*, never in its other meanings *to cause*, *to have done*, &c.: *Die Mutter hat das Kind fallen lassen* (or *gelassen*), but *Die Mutter hat das Kind taufen lassen*.

b. *Either Participle or Infinitive.* If the verb is understood, both constructions are found: *Wir haben nicht weiter [gehen] gekonnt*, or less commonly *können*. The use of the infinitive here is strictly confined to the modal auxiliaries.

c. *Word-order.* The participle which has the form of the infinitive, usually, as in *Er hat arbeiten müssen*, stands at the end of the sentence, as this position has become functional and is employed without regard to its logical force, but it may sometimes in colloquial language in accordance with older usage stand before the dependent infinitive: *Er hat müssen arbeiten*. The new word-order *Er hat arbeiten müssen* has resulted from the natural tendency to con-



form to the peculiar stress usually found elsewhere at the end of the sentence, as described in 215 II 1 A (3rd par) and 285 II B *baa, bb, cc*

*d Form in the Passive* In the passive, however, the past participle of the auxiliary assumes its regular participial form. Der Arzt wurde kommen gelassen. Es ist mir geheissen worden, dies zu tun. The passive however, is only used in case of lassen, lehren, heissen, and machen, and even with these verbs it cannot be used if the dependent infinitive has passive force: not Die Brücke wurde bauen gelassen, but Man liess die Brücke bauen.

*e Infinitive instead of Participle in Perfect Infinitive* In the perfect infinitive made up of the perf. participle of the auxiliary and the infinitive of haben (as for example gekonnt haben) the participle of the auxiliary usually assumes the form of the infinitive when an infinitive depends upon it or may here sometimes remain in participial form. Er muß es so haben tun wollen. Du wirst ihn so haben sagen hören. Ich freue mich, ihn haben begrüßen zu dürfen (Wilmann's *Deutsche Grammatik* III p. 163). Where the prepositional infinitive must be used as in the last example some prefer to use the participle in the perfect infinitive instead of the infinitive feeling that zu ought not to stand before a form which is an infinitive in appearance only in reality however a perfect participle. Ich freue mich, ihn begrüßen gedurft zu haben. The 'incorrect' form, however, by reason of its familiar end stress is the more common one.

C When an auxiliary and not an independent verb werden drops the ge- of the past part. Er ist gelobt worden. *He has been praised* but Er ist krank geworden. *He has become sick*. See also I.

D A few adj. participles without ge-, survivors of a period when the part. had no ge-, are still found: rechtschaffen *upright* lit. created right, trunken *drunk* so tan (i.e. so getan) *such* lit. thus fashioned, now rare. The following participial compounds which however do have a regular form with ge- 'altbacken' or 'altgebacken' *stale*, 'hausbacken' or 'hausgebacken' *home baked*, 'heimbacken' or 'heimgebacken' *home made*, 'neubacken' or 'neugebacken' *new baked*, 'frischbacken' or 'frischgebacken' *new baked*, 'halbwachsen' or 'halbgewachsen' *half grown*, 'neuwaschen' or 'neugewaschen' *newly washed*, 'hausgewebt' or 'hausgewoben' *home woven* and occasionally 'hausmachen' (for 'hausgemacht') *home made*, in analogy with those in -backen.

E A few participles without ge- are found in early N.H.G. and less frequently still later in the classical period and even to-day in S.G. dialect especially bringen to bring, finden to find, kommen to come, kriegen to get, werden (even when an independent verb). Ich habe das Geld erst den 19. Januar kriegt (Goethe). Often still in case of werden in poetic or archaic style. Der ist ein Welscher worden (F. Dahn's *Ein Kampf um Rom*, I, 1). For further treatment and explanation see 246 II 1 a (especially towards the end) and c (2).

## VERBALS

179 Those simple verb forms which partake of the nature of verbs and have in addition the function and inflection of adjectives or nouns are the *modal verbals*, the *participles*, and the *infinitives*.

## THE MODAL VERBALS

180 There are two modal verbals one for the predicate and one for the attributive relation.

A *Predicate Modal Verbal* The infinitive with zu assumes a peculiar modal force in the predicate here called the *predicate modal verbal*. The active in form it here has passive force and expresses the necessity, possibility, or fitness of an action. Es ist viel zu tun. There is much that must be done. Luft ist überall zu haben. Air can be had everywhere. Das steht nicht zu ändern. That cannot be changed. Der Schmerz ist kaum zu ertragen. The pain

can scarcely be borne. **Dieses Fleisch ist nicht zu essen** This meat is not fit to be eaten. **Er ist zu loben** He ought to be praised. **Er ist hoch zu verehren** He is to be (should be) highly respected. **Die Nachricht ist vorsichtig aufzunehmen** The news is to be (should be) received with caution.

This construction is found in the following common cases:

a. As predicate complement of the intransitives **bleiben** to remain, **gehen** to be possible, can, **harren** to remain, wait, **sein** to be, **stehen** (= **sein**, but not so common) to be, and sometimes **scheinen** to seem, **werden** to become: **Es bleibt abzuwarten** It remains to be seen. **Wie wunderbar, daß des einen Glück hienieden nur immer auf dem Unglück eines anderen aufzubauen geht!** (Hans Hopfen's *Stellvertreter*, II, 1). **Da war so vieles zu sehen** There was so much there to be seen. **Es war nicht zu ertragen** It was not to be endured. **Von diesem bin ich zu retten** I can be rescued by him. **Und leises Getön ward zu hören** (Wilhelm Fischer's *Sonnenopfer*, III). In English this passive construction survives in only a few expressions: The house is to let. He is to blame. Now usually passive form: He is to be censured. The older construction, however, is still quite common where the infinitive is used attributively: the man to blame, the thing to do. The passive form is also often used here: a question to be lightly touched upon. In German the attributive phrase must be rendered by a relative clause of which the modal verbal is the predicate, or the form in B may be employed: **der Mann, der zu tadeln wäre**; or **der zu tadelnde Mann**. Sometimes the infinitive form of the modal verbal is seemingly employed in German in the attributive relation, only, however, in the position *after* the noun as in English: **Er verübte sonst noch eine ganze Menge Schandtaten, gar nicht aufzuzählen** (Kröger's *Leute eigener Art*, p. 117). Such adjective elements like other adjectives that stand after a noun are not felt in German as attributive but rather as predicate adjectives that stand in elliptical relative clauses with the subject and the verb **sein** understood. Hence they are regular predicate modal verbals, only in a little different form.

*Note 1.* If the predicate verbal governs the gen. or dat., the subject of the sentence is always the impersonal **es**, expressed or understood: **Einem Einwurfe ist hier noch vorzukommen** (Lessing) There is here still one objection that must be met. Compare 219. 5. A (2nd par.).

*Note 2.* Corresponding to the peculiar impersonal passive described in 219. 5. B. c, which admits of an object, is the use of a reflexive object with the predicate modal verbal in colloquial language, a usage which is much censured by grammarians, tho occasionally used by good writers: **Doch ist sich darauf nicht zu verlassen**, instead of **Doch kann man sich darauf nicht verlassen**.

*Note 3.* After the verb **sein** this infinitive is used with intransitives and reflexives with the modal force of the modal verbal but with active meaning. See 185. I. 1. b. (2).

*Note 4.* To bring out clearly the passive force and the idea of necessity we sometimes find the passive form of the infinitive dependent upon the prepositional infinitive of **müssen**: **Leider scheint diese Hoffnung endgültig aufgegeben werden zu müssen** (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Sept. 27, 1907), instead of **Leider scheint diese Hoffnung endgültig aufzugeben**.

b. After **geben** in its impersonal forms, **es gibt** *there is*, **es gab** *there was*, &c.: **Es gibt noch viel zu tun** There is still much to be done. Also after the impersonal construction **es fehlt an**: **Dann fehlt's ja nicht an mancherlei zu tun** (Grillparzer's *Des Meeres und der Liebe Wellen*, 1).

c. As objective predicate, or object-complement, especially after **finden**, **haben**, and **sehen**: **Ich fand an ihr vieles auszusetzen** I found in her a good deal to criticise. See 185. A. I. 6 for fuller list of such verbs.

B. *Attributive Modal Verbal.* This form is made up of the present participle with **zu** prefixed and like the participle has the declension of descriptive adjectives. It is a N.H.G. formation created in order to express attributively the same idea that had already proved so convenient in its predicate form (explained in A above). It has therefore the same force as the predicate modal verbal: **der zu tadelnde Schüler** the pupil who *is to be* censured: **die zu fällenden Bäume** the trees that are to be cut down; **ein von dir zu verbessernder Fehler** an error that must be corrected by you; **diese leicht zu lösende Aufgabe** this task that can easily be performed; **ein leicht zu erreichendes Ziel** a goal that can easily be reached; **allmählich zu leistende Zahlungen** payments that are to be gradually met; **ein nicht zu übersehender Umstand** a circumstance that ought not to be overlooked.

a. The attributive form is sometimes employed without modal force to indicate the simple idea of the future passive tense: **sein im Jahre 1873 zu vollendendes 70. Lebensjahr**. Gram-

marians usually demand that the idea of futurity here should be clearly expressed by a future form with simple future force, not by a form which usually has modal force *sein* 70. *Lebensjahr, das er im Jahre 1873 vollenden wird.*

b. The attributive modal verbal is avoided in case of verbs which govern the gen. or dat. instead of *der zu gedenkende Vorfall* *the incident that is to be mentioned* we can say *Der Vorfall dessen man gedenken muß*; instead of *die zu gehorchenden Gesetze* *the laws which are to be obeyed* we can say *Die Gesetze, denen man gehorchen muß.* Or if the short modal expression

ed which governs the acc. and thus *die zu befolgenden Gesetze.*

uction was originally a substitute in *zu verbessernder Fehler* instead

with modal force with the infinitive

and the occasional use of the present participle with passive force, once more common than now as illustrated in 182. 2 a, suggested combining the two forms in order to create a passive attributive form with modal force corresponding to the predicate modal form. It began to appear early in the seventeenth century in official style and by reason of its conciseness and preciseness gradually came into use there. Later it slowly became established in the literary language.

d. Since the attributive modal verbal is passive in force we should not naturally expect to find it formed in intransitive verbs, but it is sometimes used by good authors with active meaning and the peculiar modal force of the modal verbal. *Die voranzugehende Bedingung* (Hegel) the condition that must precede. This construction is quite limited in German, but the corresponding infinitive form is very common in English. He is the man to go = *Er ist der Mann, der gehen sollte* (or *mußte*).

This form is sometimes used in German without the modal idea of necessity, possibility, or

fine  
des  
was  
train

um  
in English. The man to arrive first was John. *Der Mann, der zuerst ankam, war Johann.* German grammarians oppose the attributive form in both these cases and demand that a full clause be used.

### THE PARTICIPLES.

181. Participles are so called because they participate in the nature of both the verb and of the adjective. They sometimes have the force and construction of verbs, sometimes a force approaching nearer that of the adj., but they always have the inflection of the adj., except in their adverbial use (see a), and also when the adj. force is stronger than the verbal they are compared like adjectives: *Die Gefahr ist drohend, die drohende Gefahr, eine treffendere Antwort* an answer more to the point, *mein geliebtester Freund.* For points concerning comparison see 115. 4 and 114. 4.

a. Both participles can be used as adverbs and then remain uninflected: *siedend heißes Wasser* boiling hot water, *ein ausgezeichnet gelehrter Mann* a very finely educated man, *annähernd* approximately, *umgehend* by return mail, *unverhofft* unexpectedly, &c. The present part often expresses manner: *Er lernt spielend* He learns as easily as if it were play.

### THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

182. The leading points concerning the use of the present part. are:

1. The present participle can be used:

A. As an adjective: *das singende Kind, die untergehende Sonne.* *Man fand ihn schlafend* (objective predicate). *Du liegst hier träumend* (predicate appositive).

a. The present participle is not only inflected as an adjective, but also governs the same case, or takes the same construction as the verb from which it is formed. If the part. has thus a complement or adverbial modifiers, they must stand before it: *der die Festung überraschende Feind* the enemy taking the fortress by storm, *die dem Fremden gehörenden Sachen* the things belonging to the stranger, *ein am Flusse stehendes Haus.* *Nun war Margarete ganz fremd im Vaterhause, allen ein Stein des Anstoßes, alle hassend, von allen gehaßt.* While the reflexive *sich* is usually dropped with the perfect participle it is now more commonly retained with the present participle, altho

its omission here was quite frequent a little earlier in the period: **alle sich einschleichenden Irrtümer**. It is now most commonly omitted when used as a predicate appositive, especially as it can often here be interpreted as an adverb: **Vor diesem Hause hielt er wundernd an** (Schiller's *Tell*, 1. 221). In the attributive relation it is now usually only suppressed in a few instances where the adjective force of the participle is very pronounced: **ein herablassender Herr, eine hingebende Freundschaft, &c.** Notice also that in the attributive relation, as in the first three examples, the participle stands immediately before the noun, not after it as in English. The position of the participle after the noun is rare in the attributive relation except in the cases described for the adjective in 104. 2. B. a. The predicate appositive, however, as **hassend** in the fourth example, is usually separated from the noun.

b. The pres. part. is not used predicatively, if the verbal element becomes prominent. Thus we do not as in English say **Der Lehrer ist lobend**, but **Der Lehrer lobt** The teacher is praising. But when it is felt as an adj. it can like any adj. stand in the predicate: **Dieses Bild ist reizend** This picture is charming. **Die Frage ist brennend** The question is one that is exciting interest. **Der Beweis ist schlagend** The proof is a striking one. **Er ist noch immer leidend** He is still sickly. For the earlier use of the present participle in the predicate with verbal force see 190. 1. G.

c. The English present participle is here often replaced by other constructions in German: The fog came pouring in at the window **Der Nebel kam zum Fenster hereingeströmt**. He came running **Er kam gelaufen**. I cannot go on doing nothing **Ich kann nicht fortfahren, nichts zu tun**.

B. *Present Participle as Noun*. As a noun to denote persons engaged at the time in question in an action, duty, or occupation, or in case of neuter substantives to denote the characteristic feature of an act, or to represent something as continuing or acting: **der Redende** the speaker, **ein Geschäftsreisender** a commercial traveler, **der Vorsitzende** the chairman, **die Umstehenden** the bystanders, **das Demütigende dieses Auftritts** the humiliating nature of this scene, **das Überraschende dieses Ereignisses** the surprising character of this event, **alles Seiende** all that exists. **Die Sprache ist kein fertiges, ruhendes Ding, sondern etwas in jedem Augenblicke Werdendes und Vergehendes**.

a. *English Gerund and the Corresponding German Constructions*. Corresponding to the English participle in *-ing*, the adjective-verbal, is a noun-verbal in *-ing*, the gerund. There is no such correspondence in German. The English gerund, which is often a parallel of the prepositional infinitive, often however employed where the infinitive cannot be used, is treated in detail in 268. 4, 269. 3, 270. 3, 271. I. c, 272. C. g, 272. D. c, 275. c, 276. D. b, 278. b, 279. d, 280. d, 282. a. It corresponds to quite different constructions in German, as can be seen below where it is treated in general outline according to its syntactical function: (1) Subject: Seeing is believing **Sehen ist glauben**. The least that should be done is the freeing of the teaching of law from this fetter **Das Geringste ist, daß der Rechtsunterricht von dieser Fessel befreit werde**. (2) Predicate: Seeing is believing **Sehen ist glauben**. (3) Non-prepositional object: She stopped writing **Sie hörte auf zu schreiben**. She finished writing **Sie kam mit dem Schreiben zu Ende**. I like getting up early **Ich stehe gern früh auf**. I don't like his coming here so often **Ich habe es nicht gern, daß er so oft herkommt**. I don't like being treated with pity and indulgence **Ich will nicht geschont sein**. Object of an adjective: I am tired of dancing **Ich bin des Tanzens müde**. I am afraid of their seeing it **Ich fürchte, daß sie es sehen**. It is worth considering, worthy of consideration: **Es ist dies wert, erwogen zu werden**. I am against (= opposed to) your going to his house **Ich bin dagegen, daß du zu ihm gehst**. (4) Prepositional object: This led to my getting transferred to another regiment **Dies führte dazu, daß ich zu einem anderen Regiment versetzt wurde**. A dandy prides himself upon being well-dressed **Ein Geck bildet sich etwas darauf ein, daß er wohl gekleidet ist**. We got to talking **Wir kamen ins Gespräch**. Who told you of your wife's being there? **Wer sagte Ihnen, daß Ihre Frau da war?** You may depend upon my doing it **Sie können sich darauf verlassen, daß ich es tue**. He prefers starving to working **Er verhungert lieber, als daß er arbeitet**. (5) Attributive phrase: The idea of his son's wanting to become a business man pleased him **Die Idee, daß sein Sohn Geschäftsmann werden wollte, gefiel ihm**. I see no reason for your leaving us so soon **Ich sehe keinen Grund dazu (or dafür), daß du uns so bald schon verlassen willst**. I make a point of going myself **Ich lege besonderen Wert darauf, selbst zu gehen**. She adorned her room with things of her own making **Sie schmückte ihr Zimmer mit Sachen, die sie selber gemacht hatte**. (6) An adverbial element. Time: After saying this he went away **Nachdem er dies gesagt hatte, ging er fort**. You must show me the letter before your uncle's seeing it **Du mußt mir den Brief zeigen, bevor ihn dein Onkel sieht**. Manner: I put my money into my pocket without looking at it

Ich stockte das Geld, ohne es zu beachten, in die Tasche. . .  
 . . . . .  
 . . . . .

begleiten. Means By practicing daily upon the piano he became a good player. Dadurch, daß  
 er sich täglich auf ( . . . . . ) uch  
 you will hurt your . . . . .

One of the marks . . . . . here  
 is a strong tendency . . . . . with  
 a nominative subject and a finite verb as predicate, while in English there is a tendency to avoid  
 the use of a finite verb by employing a verbal noun, especially the gerund or the prepositional  
 infinitive, i.e. English is very fond of the old attributive or appositional thing type of sentence  
 structure described in 250. a (2nd par.) and 268. 4. Compare 252. 2. B. a. Note 1.

C. As an adverb. See 181. a.

D. As a prep. in case of während (w. gen.) *during*.

E. As an appositive to a noun or pronoun where it with its modifiers is  
 equivalent to a subordinate clause: Dies hörend (= Als er dies hörte), brach  
 er in Tränen aus. It is also used absolutely. See 265. B.

3. There is a decided paucity of participles in German, there being in the active only one form—the present. Hence the pres. part. is often used for the past and future active as well as for the present: **die vor kurzem noch blühenden Blumen** = **die Blumen, welche vor kurzem blühten**; **die jetzt oder früher oder künftig lebenden Menschen** = **die Menschen, welche jetzt leben, oder welche gelebt haben, oder leben werden**; **ein demnächst erscheinendes Werk**.

In a relative sense the present participle expresses time contemporaneous with that of some other action, and hence it should express the same time as that of the principal verb, but the real lack of different participles leads many to use the present participle also for time preceding or following that of the main proposition: contemporaneous action: **Siegend starb der Held**. Antecedent action: **Den 26. Oktober von Zürich abreisend, langten wir den 6. November in Nürnberg an** (Goethe). Neben Marie tretend, sang Ada (Spielhagen). Subsequent action: **Ada war in die Gesellschaft zurückgetreten, den Dank derselben entgegennnehmend** (id.).

### THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

183. The leading points concerning the use of this participle are:

1. *Grammatical Function.* The perfect participle can be used:

A. Adjectively: **der gebrochene Stab**. **Der Stab ist gebrochen** (predicate). **Man fand ihn eingeschlafen** (objective predicate). **Er focht mit Wunden bedeckt** (predicate appositive with passive force). **Karl mußte ungegessen** (predicate appositive with active force; see 2. C. *c* below) **zu Bette gehen**. In the conjugation of verbs: **Er ist gekommen** (predicate). **Er wird geschlagen** (predicate). **Ich habe den Brief geschrieben** (objective predicate).

*Note.* The perf. part. is much more used in German in the predicate and appositive relation than it is in English: **Ich weiß wohl, was ihr mögt, ihr alten Böhmen! gekauert sitzen in verjährtem Wust** (Grillparzer's *König Ottokar* 1). **Es klang ohne irgendwelchen Spott gefragt** (Jensen's *Die Kinder vom Oedacker*, I) There was no trace of sarcasm in the tone of the question. **Allgemein schießen die Leute (stehend oder knieend) freihändig besser als aufgelegt**. For other examples see 2. C. *c* below. We often translate the perfect participle by our present participle: **Das Beil war an den Block gelehnt** The axe was leaning against the block.

B. Substantively:

a. To denote persons or things in a state or condition produced by the action expressed in the verb (see 2 below): **der Getötete** the man who was killed, **der Gelehrte** the scholar, **die Angeklagte** the accused woman, defendant, **das Übertriebene dieser Behauptung** the exaggerated character of this statement, **das Geschehene** that which has happened, **Althergebrachtes** time-honored customs.

b. As subject, always without inflection, to indicate in a general way without definite reference a thing or a person briefly characterized by the participle: **Unversucht schmeckt nicht**. **Jung geheiratet lebt lang** = **Was jung geheiratet hat, lebt lang**. For fuller discussion see 111. 7. *h.* (2). This use of the participle differs from the preceding in that the participle here may have active force, while in *a* it has passive force in words formed from transitives and active force in words formed from intransitives conjugated with *sein*. See 2. A below. As can be seen in the second example the tense auxiliary **haben** is suppressed here as in 2. C. *c* and *d* below. In older usage when such expressions were coined there was a natural reluctance to add to a substantive a tense form which belongs only to a verb. As illustrated in 2. B below the verbal force of the participle is now felt so vividly that a formal expression is often given to the idea of tense.

C. As adverbs. See 181. *a.*

D. As a prep. in a few cases, as in **unbeschadet** (w. gen. & dat.) without detriment to, **ungeachtet** in spite of.

E. As an imperative. See 177. I. B. *d.*

F. As an appositive to a following or preceding noun or pronoun where it with its modifiers is equivalent to a subordinate clause: **Allzustraff gespannt** (= **wenn er allzustraff gespannt wird**), **zerspringt der Bogen**. For other

examples see 271. II 6, 275 c, 276 A a, 276 B a; 278. b, 279. d, 280. d  
It is also used absolutely See 265 B

G Participles are often used in lively narrative almost with the force of independent verbs indicating past time, as in animated speech the auxiliaries, the more formal elements of language, are crowded out by the perfect participles and their modifiers containing the important thought, which presses forward for immediate expression Ich bitt euch, schreibt nieder: Als Soldat die Pflicht getan Im Tirolerland gefallen auf dem Felde Im Frieden gestorben Und das, das schreibt ihnen auch: Einen guten Menschen zur Seite gehabt (Rosegger in *Wirt an der Mahr*)

2 Grammatical force A The perf participle used adjectively and substantively expresses usually a condition or state of things resulting from previous action but at the time in question finished and completed, and hence with the exception of the case in 1 B b above can only be used (1) with transitive verbs with passive force, and (2) with active force with intransitive verbs that are conjugated with sein and represent a state or condition resulting from previous action According to the very nature of this part, which expresses a condition, it cannot be used with intransitive verbs which are conjugated with haben and express action, or with reflexive verbs which express action of the subject exerted upon itself Thus we can say Der gelahmte Fuß the foot that has been lamed and is now in a lame condition, also der umgefallene Baum the tree which has fallen and is still prostrate for we say Der Baum ist umgefallen, the auxiliary sein expressing state, also substantively der Gesandte the ambassador, i.e. the one who has been sent Erwachsene grown people But grammarians maintain we should not say (tho very many do) die stattgehabte Unterredung the interview which has taken place, for the participle does not represent a condition resulting from previous action, but expresses only simple action

B The lack of a perf part with active force for transitives and those intransitives that are conjugated with haben leads some to use the perf part (already described as limited to passive use with transitives and active use with sich intransitives as are conjugated with sein) with active force, or more commonly to make a special form by adding habend to the perfect participle von seiner mit den Jahren zugenommenen Herzenskalte (Gutzkow's *Söhne Pestalozzis*, 2, 394), der schon stark gefruhstuckte Kantorsohn (Fontane's *Unterm Birnbaum*, xi) Wo es den Anschein hat, als waren solche (i.e. Zusammensetzungen) vorhanden, handelt es sich entweder um bloße Anlehnungen zweier früher lose nebeneinander gestandener Wörter wie teilnehmen usw (Dr A Jeitteles in Graz in *Zeitschrift für den deutschen Unterricht*, 1899, p 205) Er gab sowohl dem geprugelten Lord als auch dem geprugelt habenden Mitglied des Unterhauses den Laufpaß, womit der Friede wiederhergestellt war (Brumbach's *Der Schwiegersohn*, I) Das Warterhauschen trug überall die Spuren eines hier heftig getobt habenden Kampfes (Liliencron's *Krieg und Frieden*, Das Warterhauschen) In case of reflexives and transitives the reflexive pronoun or substantive object is used in connection with these two participial formations an diesem nach und nach sich verbreiteten Geheimnis (Goethe); die zur rechten Zeit sich eingestellten Erfindungen (Jacob Grimm), das den Grafen befallene Unglück (Goethe), quite commonly in case of stattgehabt and stattgefunden stattgehabte, stattgefundene Festlichkeiten An die Stelle der sich überlebt habenden historisch-heroischen Tragödie (Litzmann's *Das deutsche Drama in den literarischen Bewegungen der Gegenwart*, 3rd ed., p 31), ein sich seiner Selbständigkeit begeben habender Stamm (S Hochstetter in *Beilage zur Allgemeinen Zeit* April 10, 1906)

These formations have resulted from two tendencies which at first operated with united strength—the desire to bring out clearly the force of the present perfect tense active and the general fondness for the attributive form of statement, noticeable also elsewhere The short form i.e. the one without habend, is the older one See C c below In a large number of these short forms the

attributive force has become more prominent than the verbal, so that they now have merely the force of adjectives, as in C. *a* and *b* below. Grammarians now generally recommend the use of only the words with adjective meaning, but the two original tendencies described above manifest themselves still and produce formations with the force of both an adjective and a verb, as in the examples given above. The longer form, which now seems to be more common, is probably due to the desire to give more emphasis to the *verbal* idea. This participle is a verbal adjective that has been formed from the present perfect tense of the verb. Compare C. *c* below.

C. There are, however, to the rule as stated in A above, the following exceptions which have been generally sanctioned by good usage:

*a.* A number of transitive verbs and intransitives which are conjugated with *haben* have a perfect participle with active force, which can be defended, as these participles are in reality felt as adjectives or adjective-substantives, since they denote a quality, fixed habit, or state: *abgesagt* professed, open (*ein abgesagter Feind*), *bewandert* versed, *gedient* (*ein gedienter Soldat*, *der nicht gediente Landsturm* the landsturm that has not seen service) veteran, *gelernt* by trade (*ein gelernter Schuhmacher*), *Geschworener* jurymen, *studiert* well-read, educated, *trunken* drunk(en), *verlogen* mendacious, *verschwiegen* taciturn, &c.

*b.* *The Perfect Participle of Reflexives Used Adjectively with Active Force.* A large number of reflexives have in adjective function an active perfect participle, unaccompanied, however, by reflexive pronoun and tense auxiliary, as there is a reluctance to express a reflexive object or a verbal form in connection with an adjective: *altgedient* (*altgediente Soldaten*, *allerlei altgedientes Hausgerät*), *ausgesprochen* (*ein ausgesprochener Feind*), *erhitzt*, *erkältet*, *erklärt* (*ein erklärter Liebhaber*), *verirrt*, *verliebt*, &c. Thus we can say: *Das Kind hat sich erkältet* and *ein erkältetes Kind*. Also *Die Verhältnisse haben sich verändert*, *die veränderten Verhältnisse*, and *Die Verhältnisse sind verändert*. The reason that a perfect participle here can thus be used as an adjective is that the reflexive verb in German often has the force of an ingressive perfective (164) intransitive, so that its perfect participle has the force of an adjective indicating a new state as the result of the verbal activity. While we can often form an adjective participle from a reflexive verb used as an ingressive perfective intransitive, we should remember that by reason of its frequent ambiguity this usage is limited, so that often recourse must be taken to the much censured construction of placing the reflexive pronoun before the past part., or in choice language to the formation of a relative clause or some other construction: *Der sich zurückgezogene* or *sich zurückgezogen habende Seidenhändler*, or in choice language *Der Seidenhändler, der sich zurückgezogen hat*, or *Der in der Zurückgezogenheit lebende Seidenhändler*.

*c.* *The Perfect Participle Used as Predicate Appositive with Active Force.* A group of reflexive, transitive, and intransitive verbs form a perfect participle with active meaning when it is used as a predicate appositive. This perf. part. as a predicate appositive has relations with the principal verb, hence has adverbial force, i.e. the force of an abridged adverbial clause, but as a predicate appositive it also has relations with the subject, hence is also a predicate adjective and as an adjective in a few set expressions still takes the negative *un-* (246. I. 9. *a*, 2nd par.), altho it usually on account of its strong verbal force takes *nicht*: *Er ging unpräpariert* (lit. *not having prepared himself*) *zur Schule*. *Karl mußte ungegessen* (lit. *not having eaten*) *zu Bette gehen*. *Ich ritt ungewaschen und ungefrühstückt* (lit. *not having washed or breakfasted*) *gegen Sedan (Bismarck)*. *Er zündete sich ungefragt* (lit. *not having asked permission*) *eine Zigarre an (Riehl)*. *Er kommt gesprungen, geeilt, gegangen* (walking), *gefahren*. *Er kam mit dem Messer in der Hand herzugelaufen*. *Er kam mit einigen Freunden auf den Markt geritten*. *Heulend kam der Sturm geflogen*. The perfect participle here in accordance with its origin as a present perfect active tense indicates a single act or accompanying circumstance *as a whole* and hence differs markedly from the present participle which indicates an act as taking place at the same time as another act: *Er kam gelaufen* [*habend*, indicating an act as a whole, as in older usage where in this meaning *laufen* was used with *haben*] and *Er lebt eingezogen* [= *sich eingezogen habend*], but *Er kam in das Haus singend*. See also I. A. *Note* above. The accusative in connection with the perfect participle of transitives indicates clearly that the participle was originally active: *Dies vorausgeschickt* [*habend*], *fahre ich in meiner Erzählung fort*. The reflexive object, however, is regularly omitted here: [*sich*] *zur Wirtin gewendet* [*habend*] *sagte sie usw.* (Auerbach's *Dorfgeschichten*, 8, p. 39). The use of the accusative object here, as in the next to the last example, has led to the accusative absolute construction described in 265. B. *a*, *b*. (1).

As can be clearly seen by the last two of these examples *habend*, the auxiliary of tense, is suppressed in all these expressions. Originally the participle as an appositive was felt as an adjective so that there was a reluctance to express the auxiliary of tense, which properly belongs only to a verb. The participle, true to its name, participates in the nature of both an adjective and a verb. In the examples given above the verbal nature is much stronger than the adjective force and thus *habend* ought to be expressed. In English we regularly find the auxiliary here: Having finished this work I went to bed. In German as the feeling for the verbal force here became strong the participial construction was expanded into a full clause with subject and predicate: *Nachdem ich diese Arbeit vollendet hatte, ging ich zu Bette*. The retention of the



old participial construction here in English along with the new feature of expressing the auxiliary is one of the marked syntactical peculiarities of the language as compared with German. In German, on the other hand, there is a curious feature in the expanded clause, as the auxiliary of tense

Nachdem ich dich vollendet (habend), ging ich zu Bette. In English it is in general confined in German to use in the few set expressions given above. In MHG the old German requires another expression. Hier, mir tuot immer we, sol er's genozzen (habend) scheiden hin (Parzival, 290 ff). Sir, it would be likewise in early N.H.G.: I, 293, 31), now Da ich compare with d (last par.).

d. Use of the Perfect Participle with Intransitives. A perfect participle cannot be formed from all intransitive verbs that are conjugated with sein, but only from mutative perfectives (191. I. 4, 2nd par.), i.e. those in which a condition resulting from the action of the verb is expressed, or the final point or the beginning of an activity is indicated. Thus we can say ein entlaufener Sklave an escaped slave, because the slave has changed his condition by escaping from bondage, but we cannot say ein gelaufener Sklave, altho we say Der Sklave ist gelaufen. The slave has run, because there is no change of state resulting from the action.

Thus also to indicate the final point or the beginning of an activity we can say die eben angekommenen Gäste, der vor here and the student should to rule: Die vorhergegangenen zugestoßene Unfall, but not clause instead of the participle or employ another construction die Ereignisse, welche nachgefolgt sind, or die nachfolgenden Ereignisse; der Unfall, der ihm begegnet ist. In general, however, the simple perfect Baum gestiegener Kna often not be used, as it but not the boys just jumped down from the tree, where we mean the boys who have just jumped down from the tree.

The simple perfect participle of mutative perfectives is freely used in the predicate appositional relation, where the participle along with the words which accompany it has the force of an einer noch größeren = Nachdem er einer geworden: „Horch now Asmus, having language the perfect adjective function as

In English the feeling for the verbal force is clear expression to the idea of tense. In expanding the words into a full clause with but of survival of the old participial construction that the tense auxiliary is sometimes suppressed as in the abridged participial construction: Nachdem er einer Gefahr kaum entronnen (war), stand er usw.

3. Temporal Relations. The past part. does not necessarily imply past time, but also often present or future time, as there is no other participial form with passive force. It refers to the past when the context points to the past, as in Der am 15. ds. (dieses Monats) eröffnete Ausverkauf wird noch bis Ende des Monats fortgesetzt, but it also refers very often to an action that continues in present time: mein verehrter Freund, die geliebte Mutter, &c. Thus also Er ist bemüht, bestrebt, &c. See also 184. c. Future time: Das Gericht wollte sich auch nicht so ohne weiteres mit einer vielleicht nachher getadelten Arbeit belasten (Immermann's Münchhausen, 2, 321).

184. On account of the paucity of participles attempts are being made to form additional ones to supply the deficiency. The following will serve as examples of such, most of which are not yet generally accepted:

a. A present passive, formed with the perf. part. of the verb and the present part. of werden: Der gehofft werdende Persönl. the offspring that is being expected. Es gibt solche Menschen in der Reihe der geboren wordenen und werdenden (Rahel, 2, 6).

b. A future passive formed with the present passive infinitive of the verb and the pres. part. of werden: die in acht Tagen begangen werden werdende Festfeier the celebration that will be celebrated in a week. This construction

is mentioned by Keller in his *Antibarbarus*, p. 66, but the author of the present work has not found it elsewhere.

c. A perf. part. with active force. See 183. 2. B.

d. It is now common to use a perfect participle of the statal passive (194. 4), a participial expression made up of the perfect participle of the verb and *gewesen*, which latter form indicates that the *state* or *condition* expressed by the participle of the verb existed in past time: *der in jüngeren Jahren vielbegehrt gewesene Arzt* the physician who in younger years was much sought after.

e. Usually the perf. passive has but one participial form (*gelobt*), and cannot show here the shades expressed by the two forms (the actional and the statal passive; see 194. 1. A. & 4) of the indicative. To emphasize, however, the idea of a *state* or *condition* of things in *past* time the statal passive form in *d* above is often used. Since the usual perfect participle is not only used for past time, but also for present time, as in *das von mir bewohnte Haus* (= *das Haus, das von mir bewohnt wird*), ambiguity may arise: *die von dem verstorbenen Rentier Sch. bewohnte Wohnung ist zu Ostern anderweit zu vermieten*. The writer of this advertisement intended the participial form as a perfect, but, as G. Wustmann in his *Allerhand Sprachdummheiten*, p. 162, 3rd ed., remarks with regard to it, the resultant impression is rather an uncanny one, since the form may be construed as a present passive. The ambiguity can in the present instance be removed by using the statal passive form which calls attention to a past *state* of things: *die von dem verstorbenen Rentier Sch. bewohnt gewesene Wohnung*, &c. In order to call attention to a past *act*, a perfect passive part. corresponding to the regular actional perf. passive indic. is occasionally formed by adding *worden* to the perfect participle of the verb: *die zwei verloren gegangenen oder vielmehr vergessen wordenen Väter* (Raabe's *Gutmanns Reisen*, chap. x).

f. Participles formed from the modal auxiliaries are now occasionally found, usually in connection with a dependent infin.: *der sein sollende Witz* the utterance that was intended to be witty, *das nicht enden wollende Gelächter* the laughter that did not seem to desire to come to an end.

### THE INFINITIVE.

185. The infinitive was in an earlier period inflected as a noun and at the same time preserved its verbal nature by admitting of a direct object. The remnant of this older usage of inflecting the infinitive is the so-called infinitive with *zu*. This form of the infinitive is in fact a noun in the dat. governed by the prep. *zu*, hence was originally an adverbial element modifying the verb. This *zu*, as can still be seen in many sentences, originally meant *towards* and pointed to that towards which the activity of the principal verb was directed: *Wir zwangen ihn zu dienen (zum Dienst)* We compelled him to serve. *Entschliesse dich zu arbeiten (zur Arbeit)* Make up your mind to work. *Ich ging aus, einen Freund zu besuchen* I went out to call on a friend. This *zu*, however, is now often not felt as a prep. but rather as a part of the infinitive itself, and hence this prepositional infinitive is now no longer confined to the dat. relation, but may also indicate the nom. and acc. relations, where formerly the simple infinitive without *zu* could alone be used: *Nachzuahmen* (or still as in older German *nachahmen*) *erniedrigt einen Mann von Kopf*. *Sie fing an zu weinen*, but in M.H.G.: *der helt (Held) dō (dann) trüren (trauern)* began (*Nibelungenlied*). Thus the development of the prepositional infinitive is much like that of the simple infinitive, which was originally an accusative, used adverbially as an accusative of goal, as seen in B. I. 1. b. *Note* below, and as a direct object (B. I. 2. a, b, c, d) but already in oldest German had come into use in the subject relation. The first beginnings of the use of the prepositional infinitive as object go back to the O.H.G. period. It is even to-day often difficult to distinguish between a prepositional phrase as an adverbial element and as a prepositional object, as explained in 261 (3rd par.). The latter relation

indicates a closer association with the verb. As the prepositional infinitive often stood in a close relation to the verb it gradually came to be felt as a prepositional object, as a necessary complement of the verb and hence sometimes after certain verbs took the place of the accusative object. The *zu* gradually lost its original prepositional force so that the infinitive and *zu* were felt as one and in M H G were sometimes used in the subject relation. The use of the infinitive with *zu* has greatly grained on that of the simple infinitive, and for centuries it along with its modifiers has been developing into a distinct subordinate clause and in this capacity has been crowding more and more out of common use the older *daß* clause with a finite verb, so that it has acquired functions unknown to the simple infinitive, but as the latter is still in certain instances used in the nom and acc relation, it is necessary to note carefully the following detailed statements as to when the simple infinitive and when the infinitive with *zu* is used.

### A THE INFINITIVE WITH *zu*

#### I The infinitive with *zu* is used

##### 1 In the following independent relations

a As the subject of a verb. *Zu überlegen ist nicht die Sache der Jugend sich mitzuteilen ist Natur* To communicate one's thought and feeling is the impulse of nature. *Seine Schuldigkeit getan zu haben ist ein Trost im Unglück* The infinitive without *zu* is also used here. See B I 1 a. The form with *zu*, however, is always employed, when its object is a relative pronoun. *Sie (die bei Jena geschlagene Armee) erlag einem Verhängnis, das abzuwenden nicht in ihren Kräften stand* (C Freiherr v d Goltz in *Deutsche Rundschau*, March 1906, p 23). *Daß er (W Victor) ihnen (i.e. den Studenten) durch seine unbeeinträchtigte Sachlichkeit, Treue und Wahrhaftigkeit ein Vorbild wurde, dem nachzueifern wahrlich lohnte* (F Dorr in *Die Neueren Sprachen*, Band XXVI, p 297).

##### b In the predicate

(1) After certain verbs (180 A a) the prepositional infinitive of transitives is used as a modal verbal, i.e. contains the idea of the necessity, possibility, or fitness of an action and has passive force. *Viel bleibt noch zu tun* Much remains to be done. More examples are given in 180 A a.

(2) After *sein* it often contains also in case of intransitives and reflexives the idea of necessity, possibility, or fitness but of course has active force. *Es ist nichts zu danken, ein paar Rippen sind entzwei* (Goethe's *Götz*, 3, 9). There is nothing to be thankful for, i.e. that one can be thankful for, &c. *Was ist denn aber dabei zu lachen?* (Wildenbruch's *Der Astronom*). *War es zu verwundern, daß sich bei der wachsenden Spannung die Anstrengungen der Mächte, sich durch Flottenmacht zu schützen, steigerten?* (Albrecht Staufer in *Beilage zur Allgemeinen Zeit*, Jan 23, 1906). The infinitive often preserves here in case of intransitives and reflexives a good deal of its older substantive nature and hence does not show the prepositions and reflexives which the verb always demands. Thus in the sentences from Goethe and Wildenbruch the prepositions *für* and *über* are omitted altho *danken* requires *für* and *lachen* takes *über*. In the sentence from Staufer the reflexive is omitted. The English requires the prepositions and the reflexive where the verb requires them.

A few common impersonal verbs with passive form but active force, as described in 219 5 A (2nd par.), belong here. *Es ist nicht mit ihm zu leben*, or *Mit ihm ist nicht zu leben* *There (formerly it) is no living with him*. *Es ist ihm nicht zu trauen*, or *Ihm ist nicht zu trauen* *He cannot be trusted, or is not to be trusted*, lit. *There is no trusting him*.

(3) After the copulas *dunken to seem*, *scheinen to seem*, *erscheinen to appear* the infinitive is used with active force and without the peculiar modal force found in (1) and (2). *Er dunkt sich ein großer Geist zu sein*, or without the infinitive *Er dünkt sich ein großer Geist* or *einen großen Geist*. *Er scheint*

is mentioned by Keller in his *Antibarbarus*, p. 66, but the author of the present work has not found it elsewhere.

c. A perf. part. with active force. See 183. 2. B.

d. It is now common to use a perfect participle of the statal passive (194. 4), a participial expression made up of the perfect participle of the verb and *gewesen*, which latter form indicates that the *state* or *condition* expressed by the participle of the verb existed in past time: **der in jüngeren Jahren vielbegehrt gewesene Arzt** the physician who in younger years was much sought after.

e. . Usually the perf. passive has but one participial form (*gelobt*), and cannot show here the shades expressed by the two forms (the actional and the statal passive; see 194. 1. A. & 4) of the indicative. To emphasize, however, the idea of a *state* or *condition* of things in *past* time the statal passive form in *d* above is often used. Since the usual perfect participle is not only used for past time, but also for present time, as in **das von mir bewohnte Haus** (= **das Haus, das von mir bewohnt wird**), ambiguity may arise: **die von dem verstorbenen Rentier Sch. bewohnte Wohnung ist zu Ostern anderweit zu vermieten**. The writer of this advertisement intended the participial form as a perfect, but, as G. Wustmann in his *Allerhand Sprachdummheiten*, p. 162, 3rd ed., remarks with regard to it, the resultant impression is rather an uncanny one, since the form may be construed as a present passive. The ambiguity can in the present instance be removed by using the statal passive form which calls attention to a past *state* of things: **die von dem verstorbenen Rentier Sch. bewohnt gewesene Wohnung**, &c. In order to call attention to a past *act*, a perfect passive part. corresponding to the regular actional perf. passive indic. is occasionally formed by adding *worden* to the perfect participle of the verb: **die zwei verloren gegangenen oder vielmehr vergessen wordenen Väter** (Raabe's *Gutmanns Reisen*, chap. x).

f. Participles formed from the modal auxiliaries are now occasionally found, usually in connection with a dependent infin.: **der sein sollende Witz** the utterance that was intended to be witty, **das nicht enden wollende Gelächter** the laughter that did not seem to desire to come to an end.

### THE INFINITIVE.

185. The infinitive was in an earlier period inflected as a noun and at the same time preserved its verbal nature by admitting of a direct object. The remnant of this older usage of inflecting the infinitive is the so-called infinitive with *zu*. This form of the infinitive is in fact a noun in the dat. governed by the prep. *zu*, hence was originally an adverbial element modifying the verb. This *zu*, as can still be seen in many sentences, originally meant *towards* and pointed to that towards which the activity of the principal verb was directed: **Wir zwangen ihn zu dienen (zum Dienst)** We compelled him to serve. **Entschließe dich zu arbeiten (zur Arbeit)** Make up your mind to work. **Ich ging aus, einen Freund zu besuchen** I went out to call on a friend. This *zu*, however, is now often not felt as a prep. but rather as a part of the infinitive itself, and hence this prepositional infinitive is now no longer confined to the dat. relation, but may also indicate the nom. and acc. relations, where formerly the simple infinitive without *zu* could alone be used: **Nachzuahmen** (or still as in older German **nachahmen**) **erniedrigt einen Mann von Kopf**. **Sie fing an zu weinen**, but in M.H.G.: **der helt (Held) dō (dann) trüren (trauern)** began (*Nibelungenlied*). Thus the development of the prepositional infinitive is much like that of the simple infinitive, which was originally an accusative, used adverbially as an accusative of goal, as seen in B. I. 1. b. *Note* below, and as a direct object (B. I. 2. a, b, c, d) but already in oldest German had come into use in the subject relation. The first beginnings of the use of the prepositional infinitive as object go back to the O.H.G. period. It is even to-day often difficult to distinguish between a prepositional phrase as an adverbial element and as a prepositional object, as explained in 261 (3rd par.). The latter relation

indicates a closer association with the verb. As the prepositional infinitive often stood in a close relation to the verb it gradually came to be felt as a prepositional object, as a necessary complement of the verb and hence sometimes after certain verbs took the place of the accusative object. The *zu* gradually lost its original prepositional force, so that the infinitive and *zu* were felt as one and in M H G were sometimes used in the subject relation. The use of the infinitive with *zu* has greatly gained on that of the simple infinitive, and for centuries it along with its modifiers has been developing into a distinct subordinate clause and in this capacity has been crowding more and more out of common use the older daß clause with a finite verb so that it has acquired functions unknown to the simple infinitive but as the latter is still in certain instances used in the nom and acc relation, it is necessary to note carefully the following detailed statements as to when the simple infinitive and when the infinitive with *zu* is used.

### A THE INFINITIVE WITH *zu*

#### I The infinitive with *zu* is used

##### 1 In the following independent relations

*a* As the subject of a verb. *Zu überlegen ist nicht die Sache der Jugend sich mitzuteilen ist Natur* To communicate one's thought and feeling is the impulse of nature. *Seine Schuldigkeit getan zu haben ist ein Trost im Unglück* The infinitive without *zu* is also used here. See B I 1 *a*. The form with *zu*, however, is always employed, when its object is a relative pronoun. *Sie (die bei Jena geschlagene Armee) erlag einem Verhängnis, das abzuwenden nicht in ihren Kräften stand* (C Freiherr v d Goltz in *Deutsche Rundschau*, March 1906, p. 23). *Daß er (W Vietor) ihnen (i.e. den Studenten) durch seine unbeirrbare Sachlichkeit, Treue und Wahrhaftigkeit ein Vorbild wurde, dem nachzueifern wahrlich lohnte* (F Dorr in *Die Neueren Sprachen*, Band XXVI, p. 297).

##### *b* In the predicate

(1) After certain verbs (180 A *a*) the prepositional infinitive of transitives is used as a modal verbal, i.e. contains the idea of the necessity, possibility, or fitness of an action, and has passive force. *Viel bleibt noch zu tun* Much remains to be done. More examples are given in 180 A *a*.

(2) After *sein* it often contains also in case of intransitives and reflexives the idea of necessity, possibility, or fitness but of course has active force. *Es ist nichts zu danken, ein paar Rippen sind entzwei* (Goethe's *Götz* 3, 9). There is nothing to be thankful for, i.e. that one can be thankful for &c. *Was ist denn aber dabei zu lachen?* (Wildenbruch's *Der Astronom*). *War es zu verwundern, daß sich bei der wachsenden Spannung die Anstrengungen der Mächte, sich durch Flottenmacht zu schützen, steigerten?* (Albrecht Staufer in *Beilage zur Allgemeinen Zeit*, Jan 23 1906). The infinitive often preserves here in case of intransitives and reflexives a good deal of its older substantive nature and hence does not show the prepositions and reflexives which the verb always demands. Thus in the sentences from Goethe and Wildenbruch the prepositions *für* and *über* are omitted altho *danken* requires *für* and *lachen* takes *über*. In the sentence from Staufer the reflexive is omitted. The English requires the prepositions and the reflexive where the verb requires them.

A few common impersonal verbs with passive form but active force, as described in 219 § A (2nd par.), belong here. *Es ist nicht mit ihm zu leben, or Mit ihm ist nicht zu leben* *There (formerly it) is no living with him*. *Es ist ihm nicht zu trauen, or Ihm ist nicht zu trauen* *He cannot be trusted, or is not to be trusted, lit. There is no trusting him*.

(3) After the copulas *dunken to seem, scheinen to seem, erscheinen to appear* the infinitive is used with active force and without the peculiar modal force found in (1) and (2). *Er dunkt sich ein großer Geist zu sein, or without the infinitive* *Er dunkt sich ein großer Geist or einen großen Geist. Er scheint*

ein ehrlicher Mann zu sein, or Er scheint ein ehrlicher Mann. Er scheint mir fleißig (zu sein). Er scheint mir, fleißig zu arbeiten. Er scheint, künftig noch fleißiger werden zu wollen. Er scheint, zu wollen aber nicht zu können. Er scheint, früher nicht fleißig studiert zu haben, but the *sein* of the perfect infinitive is often omitted: Seine Mutter scheint früh gestorben (zu sein). Die Leute erscheinen mir liebenswürdiger geworden (zu sein). After *dünken* we find the infinitive of other verbs than *sein* only in older German: Der dünkt mich in England nach Wölfen zu jagen (Lessing). In M.H.G. *dünken* and *scheinen* could only be used as simple copulas with a predicate adjective or noun. In the fourteenth century *sein*—later replaced by *zu sein*—began to be added to *dünken*, a little later also to *scheinen*. Later also other infinitives than *sein* were used, but after *dünken* the infinitive except in case of *zu sein* has disappeared.

(4) The infinitive with *zu* is sometimes used in German as the progressive form or a participial predicate appositive in English: Und als er wieder zu fischen war, | da ließ ich einen Schatz ihn finden (Schiller's *Macbeth*, 1, 4) And when he was fishing, &c. Er wußte, jetzt saß seine Großmutter zu sticken (Enking's *Die Darnekower*, p. 130) He knew that his grandmother was sitting embroidering. Sonst säß' ich jetzt bei ihm zu schustern (id., *Wie Truges seine Mutter suchte*, IV). After *to be* this construction is sometimes found in older English: And I have been all this day to avoid him (*As You Like It*, 2, 5. 35). In older German also the simple infinitive was used here and in certain expressions is still common: Er ist fischen. Er ist mit seiner Mama spazieren gewesen (Wildenbruch's *Die Alten und die Jungen*, p. 55). Er blieb sitzen. Both constructions are old, originally infinitives of purpose. The simple infinitive, the original construction, is the infinitive of purpose described in B. I. 1. b. Note below. The original meaning is no longer felt, for the infinitive is now used as described above, often without a trace of the idea of purpose: Spür' ich einen rechten Sturmwind wehn, | als wollt' das Schiff zu Grunde gehn, | da stehen meine Gedanken | zu wanken (a popular song in Auerbach's *Dorfgeschichten*, I, p. 23). Du warst damals erst sechs Jahre alt und standest am Sarg zu weinen (Storm's *Werke*, II, p. 311). It is now little used in the literary language of the South, but in the North it still occasionally occurs in good literary style. After *stehen* and *sitzen* the present participle is now the common construction.

2. In the following dependent relations:

a. As the complement of a noun, pronoun, or adjective, performing:

(1) The function of the genitive of a substantive dependent upon an adjective: Er ist müde länger zu leben (= Er ist des Lebens müde). The passive force is sometimes expressed by acting form, but more commonly by the passive: In solchen Ritzen | ist jedes Bröselein | wert zu besitzen (Goethe). Die ich höre, scheint mir wert zu krönen (Schlegel's *Gedichte*, 1, 308). Dieser Stein ist wert, in Gold gefaßt zu werden.

(2) The function of an appositive genitive or a noun in apposition with a pronoun, substantive, or substantive clause: Die Kunst zu schreiben (= des Schreibens) war den Ägyptern bekannt. Unter allen Rollen gibt es keine kläglichere als die, mehr zu gelten als zu sein. In dem rätselvollen Wirrsal von Leid und Scham gab es nur eines: schweigend den Schmerz zu ertragen (Boy-Ed's *Die Ketten*, p. 223). Nur ein einziges Laster beherrschte sie: zwischen böse und gut keinen Unterschied zu kennen (Schiller). Was die meisten Romantiker doch nicht konnten, brachte er fertig: das als notwendig Erkannte zu tun (Ricarda Huch's *Ausbreitung und Verfall der Romantik*, p. 152). The simple infinitive is also quite common here. See B. I. 1. c below.

The appositional construction in 3 below might also be classed here.

(3) The function of a relative clause. The attributive use of the prepositional infinitive with the force of a relative clause, as illustrated also in 271. II. 6, is quite common in English, but it is in general little employed here in German and must usually be rendered by a full subordinate clause, or where the

force is passive, also often by a modal verbal (180. B) The king has no children to succeed him on the throne *Der König hat keine Kinder, die ihm auf dem Throne folgen konnten* That is a circumstance not to be overlooked *Das ist ein Umstand, der nicht übersehen werden sollte, or Das ist ein nicht zu übersehender Umstand.* Other examples and the German renderings are given in 180. B and *d* thereunder When the relative clause contains the idea of purpose or result it is often replaced by the prepositional infinitive as in English (purpose) *sein Bestreben, viel Gutes zu tun, (result) Erasmus war der Mann, den Glanz solcher Stellung zu genießen* (Paulsen's *Geschichte des gelehrten Unterrichts*, 2nd ed., p. 145) Here the *zu* before the infinitive has its original force as a preposition, as in *b* While English, starting from this same point, has developed the prepositional infinitive into the full force of a relative clause, German has scarcely passed beyond the first stage of development As the *zu* with the infinitive has in general lost its original meaning, *um* is often prefixed to it to bring out clearly the idea of purpose or result *Die Enden der Hirschgeweihe dienen als Haken, an welche man Hüte, Peitschen und Sporen hangt, or als Haken, um Hüte, Peitschen und Sporen daran zu hangen* The branches of the antlers serve as hooks on which to hang hats, whips and spurs, or as hooks to hang hats, whips and spurs on This now common construction with *um zu* + infinitive—much censured by grammarians—is treated at considerable length in 255 IV 2 *a* The use of *um* here indicates that German has developed a clearer expression for this idea than English

*b* In the dat relation, as the object of the prep *zu*, after verbs, nouns, and adjectives, to express, in accordance with the general meaning of *zu*, the aim, purpose, direction of the action or quality *Da treibt's ihn, den kostlichen Preis zu erwerben* *Er hatte den Hang, stets der Vollkommenheit seines eignen Wesens zuzustreben* *Er ist geneigt zu übertreiben.*

*Note* This is the original use of *zu* with the infinitive Here the *zu* is not the mere sign of the infinitive as in 1 *a* and *b* above but a real prep used in its usual sense of *direct on towards*

*c* In the acc relation, as the direct object of the verb *Das Kind beginnt zu reden, wie es anhebt zu denken. Warum versäumte man mich zu erinnern?* For exceptions see B I 2 *a, b, c, d, e*

*Note 1* T F L A B C D E

U M A N G A T U L C A B L U E U

3 As explanatory of a preceding anticipative subject or object, which appears in the form of *es, dies, das* or a pronominal adverb In apposition with a subject *Es ziemt dem edeln Mann, der Frauen Wort zu achten* (Goethe's *Iphigenie*, 5 3) In the relation of subject the simple infinitive is also used here See B I 1 *a* below In apposition with the object of a verb *Er wünscht es sehnlich, dich nur noch einmal wiederzusehen* *Ich denke mir das aussichtslos, so etwas zu unternehmen* In apposition with a pronoun which is the object of a prep, but which has in German only the form of an adverb *Wir sind bereit dazu, dich zu unterstützen. Jeder muß danach trachten, seine Seele vom Bösen rein zu erhalten* Occasionally we find here the simple infinitive preceded by a preposition, a construction similar to the English *gerund in ing* *Ihre einzige Sehnsucht ging jetzt nach Stille, nach nicht mehr hören und nicht mehr sehen* (Ernst Zahn's *Das Leben der Salome Zeller*, XVI) The simple infinitive, however, is often used instead of the form with *zu* when the infinitive for emphasis is placed at the beginning of the

proposition followed by the pronominal adverb: *Eine Sache anfangen und auf halber Tour hinwerfen — damit werden Sie nie im Leben zurechtkommen* (Anna Bemisch-Kappstein's *Das klingende Fließ* in *Deutsche Rundschau*, Sept. 1905, p. 325).

4. Certain complete substantive and adverbial clauses (see 269. 3; 271. I. c; 272. A. d, C. g, D. c; 276. A. a (2nd par.), D. b; 277. 2. b; 279. d, e; 281. b) may be contracted to infinitive clauses with *zu*, *anstatt zu*, *ohne zu*, or *um zu*. For examples see the references just given. The infinitive clauses can usually without changing the meaning be expanded into complete subordinate clauses, and complete subordinate clauses can be contracted to the infinitive construction. It should be noted, however, that in case of the verb *wissen* there is a difference of meaning between the two constructions: *Er weiß, daß er seinen Willen durchsetzt* *He knows that he will get his own way*, but *Er weiß seinen Willen durchzusetzen* *He knows how to get his own way*.

5. The infinitive is often employed absolutely, as illustrated in II. 2. c below. It is thus much used with or without *zu* in exclamations and in general in excited or vivid language, where without precise grammatical relations it becomes the bearer of the thought: *Ich möcht' euch alle mit eigener Hand umbringen! Was, fortlaufen! Er hatte keine Handvoll Leute mehr! Fortzulaufen, vor einem Mann!* (Hauptmann in Lager scene in 3rd Act of Goethe's *Gotz*). See also B. I. 4 below.

6. After (an)treffen, bekommen, erhalten, finden, geben, gehen (180. A. a) *to be possible*, haben, kommen, lassen (= übrig lassen), machen (see B. I. 2. d, toward end), reichen to reach, schenken, schicken, schlagen, sehen, überlassen, and the impersonals *es gibt*, *es gilt*, *es fehlt an* (180. A. b), where the infinitive with *zu* contains the idea of the necessity, possibility, or fitness of an action, in case of transitives usually passive in force and in this book in this meaning called a modal verbal (see also 180. A), but active in force in case of intransitives and reflexives: *Wir trafen viele Unordnungen im Hause zu beseitigen an* We found on our arrival much disorder that had to be removed. *Er bekam oft Lügen zu hören* (= *er mußte hören*). *Es wird fortan nichts mehr zu lachen geben* (H. Hoffmann's *Rittmeister*, III, p. 210) From now on there will be nothing to laugh about, i.e. nothing that one can laugh about. *Da hat die Menge was zu gaffen* (Fulda's *Talisman*, 2, 12). *Hast de doch wieder was zu ärgern*, Hans (Hauptmann's *Einsame Menschen*, Act 1). *Er hat viel zu tun*. *Haben Sie mich noch wohin zu schicken?* *Ich komme noch auf ihn zu sprechen* I shall have occasion to speak about him later. *Sie kam neben ihm zu sitzen* Chance brought it about that she should sit near him. *Er kam unten zu liegen*. *Das läßt noch viel zu wünschen*. *Anna hat ihr wirklich nicht viel zu schaffen gemacht* (Hauptmann's *E. M.*, Act 3) (see also B. I. 2. d, toward end) Anna has really not caused her much trouble, work. *Weil die größeren Kostgänger des Pastors ihren Freund dabei mitunter überfielen und ihm den Kopf zu bluten schlugen* (Storm's *Hans und Heinz Kirch*, p. 12).

For the construction after *es gilt* see Note 2.

Note 1. Some of these words are used here in a certain measure as auxiliaries and not as independent verbs, and it should be remembered that they also can be used in the latter way: *Er hat (has, possesses) alte Röcke zu verkaufen*.

Note 2. The impersonal *es gilt* was originally construed only with the acc. of a noun: *Es gilt dein Glück, deinen Besitz* Your happiness, your possessions are at stake, lit. It will cost your happiness, your possessions. The simple infinitive has substantive force, and was used as an acc. here: *Hie gilt's im Finstern und blinzling gehen* (Luther, *v. Abendm.*, 1528). In early N.H.G. the genitive of measure could also be used here as elsewhere instead of the acc. of measure (see 223. iv. 2. A. a): *Da gilt's Schweigens* (Luther, *v. Abendm.*, 1528). Formerly the construction with *um* was also used: *Und sollt's dem Teufel um ein Ohr gelten* (Schiller's *Räuber*, 2, 3). Sometimes still: *Es gilt um Tod oder Leben!* (Fritz Lienhard's *Wieland der Schmied*, p. 80). Later the gen. and in large measure also the prep. construction disappeared, and the infinitive with *zu* replaced in part the simple infinitive here as elsewhere, so that to-day both the infinitive with and without *zu* are used here: *Nur noch von Doktor Daun galt es Abschied zu nehmen* (Stilgebauer's *Gotz Krafft*, II. 14, p. 444). *Doch es galt das zerrinnende Geld ersetzen* (Ompteda's *Eysen*, chap. xii).

Note 3. The infinitive often preserves in case of intransitives and reflexives a good deal of its older substantive nature, and hence does not show the prepositions and reflexives which the verb always demands. Thus in the sentence from Hoffmann given above the preposition *über* is omitted altho the verb requires it and English requires *about*. In the first sentence from Hauptmann the preposition *über* and the reflexive pronoun are omitted. The reflexive is also omitted in the substantive use of the infinitive described in 188. a.

7. Quite rare is the construction of the accusative with the infinitive, as found in Latin and in part also in English, after verbs of reporting, thinking, knowing, supposing, wishing, &c. See B. I. 5 below.



II 1 *Position and Repetition of zu.* The *zu* must stand immediately before the present infinitive, and if there are several, must be repeated before each one: *Der Lehrer gab uns ein Gedicht abzuschreiben und auswendig zu lernen.* If there are several perfect infinitives, the *zu* is used but once, and stands between the last participle and the auxiliary, which is also used but once, being found with the last participle and understood with the others. *Der Lowe, sagt Lichtenstein, greift einen Menschen oder ein Tier, das nicht vor ihm flieht, nie an, ohne sich vorher in einer Entfernung von zehn bis zwölf Schritten niedergelegt und seinen Sprung gemessen zu haben.*

a In case there are a number of present infinitives there is a tendency to drop the *zu* after it has been used once or twice, as the simple infinitive here as in I 5 naturally becomes the bearer of the thought, the exact grammatical relations having faded from the mind. *Wir sind nur da, über die Interessen unserer respektiven Staaten und Dynastien zu wachen, jeder drohenden Verringerung ihrer Machtstellung entgegenzuarbeiten und jede mögliche Suprematie zu erringen trachten, eifersüchtig die Ehre des Landes hüten, uns angetanen Schimpf rachen* (Suttner's *Die Waffen nieder!*, II, p. 183)

2. *Subject of the Infinitive* The infinitive has for centuries been crowding more and more out of common use the full subordinate clause with a finite verb, but it is still less used in German than in English especially since it is not much used in the construction of the acc with the infinitive, which is so common in Latin and English. Thus the infinitive construction in English must often be rendered in German by a complete subordinate clause. *I wish him to come* *Ich wünsche, daß er komme.* See also I 7 above and B I 5 below. Detailed information concerning the use of the infinitive in contracted clauses in German and English is given in 269. 3, 271. I c, 271 II 6, 272. A d, 272. C g, 272. D c, 276 A a, 276 D b, 277. 2 b, 279 d, e, 281. b *Note* The expression *contracted clause* as used in this book is explained in 268 4. The origin and development of the infinitive clause are sketched in 269. 3 and 281. b *Note* (2nd par)

In general we can say

a In German the infinitive can be freely used when the subject of the infinitive is identical with the subject of the principal proposition, often also when the subject of the infinitive is identical with an accusative or dative object in the principal proposition, provided however that it is perfectly clear from the connection that the subject of the principal proposition cannot be the subject of the infinitive. *Er verspricht, noch heute zu kommen. Durfte ich Sie bitten, es zu tun? Er riet mir zu gehen.* Under similar conditions the infinitive can sometimes be used when its subject is identical with a genitive in the principal proposition or a genitive implied in a possessive adjective. *Ein Volk ist der Umschweif der Natur, um zu sechs, sieben, großen Männern zu kommen* (Nietzsche). *Erst standen wir alle von ferne, und wie unsere Neugierde großer ward, um zu sehen, was wohl Blinkendes und Rasselndes sich hinter der halbdurchsichtigen Hülle verbergen mochte, wies man jedem ein Stuhlchen an* (Goethe). The subject of *zu sehen* is the *wir* implied in *unsere*. The infinitive can sometimes be used when its subject is not revealed by any word in the principal proposition but is suggested by the connection. *Statt aber von dem Ton und Inhalt dieser Blätter nur zu berichten, moge an dieser Stelle ein kurzer Auszug eingeschaltet werden* (Paul Heyse). The speaker here is evidently the subject of *zu berichten*.

*Note 1* In a number of expressions the infinitive has a subject which is identical with the suppressed object of the principal verb. This has been noted.

principal proposition and the infinitive clause is not always strictly followed, good usage often admitting of violations where the thought is clear: *Die Mutter rief mich hinein, um ihr zu helfen.* Other violations of the general rule are given in *a* above. In general, however, the English-speaking student should keep rather close to the general rule.

*b.* The infinitive can be used in German when its subject is a general or indefinite one: *Gelegenheit, Gutes zu tun, findet sich immer. Er befahl zu öffnen. He ordered somebody to open the door. Er ist kein Rothschild und die Hauptmannspension ist nicht, um sich einen Viererzug davon zu halten (Omp-teda's Sylvester von Geyer, LXI).* The infinitive must here be replaced by a subordinate clause, if its subject can possibly be construed as identical with the subject or object of the principal verb: not *Er wünscht zu öffnen*, as the translation of *He wishes somebody to open the door*, but *Er wünscht, daß geöffnet werde*, or *daß man öffne*, for the infinitive construction might mean *He wishes to open the door*.

*c.* In German as in English, an absolute infinitive with *zu* is often used, the subject of which has no reference to the subject or object of the principal verb: *Die Wahrheit zu sagen, es sind schreckliche Leute, diese alten Cherusker (Klopstock). Ohne Ihnen meinen Rat aufzudrängen, so würden Sie viel besser tun, es zu lassen. Um es Ihnen geradeaus zu sagen, ich mag ihn nicht.* Even tho the infinitive precede the principal verb, there is no inversion except after *so*. See also 265. B. *d* and 281. *b*.

*d.* English, differing from German, often employs the infinitive construction when the subject of the infinitive is not identical with the subject or object of the verb in the principal proposition and when the subject of the verb in the subordinate clause is other than the indefinite *one*: Your plan for me to go at once does not please me *Ihr Plan, daß ich sogleich gehen sollte, gefällt mir nicht.* It should be observed that *for* must be used here in connection with the prepositional infinitive. For further details concerning this construction see 269. 3, 271. I. *c*, 271. II. 6, 272. C. *g* and D. *c*, 277. 2. *b*, 279. *d*, 281. *b*. *Note* (2nd par.).

*e.* Even tho the subject of the subordinate clause is identical with the subject of the principal proposition a full clause with a nominative subject must be used in both English and German after verbs of saying and communicating, as *sagen, mitteilen, melden, berichten, erzählen, verkündigen, ankündigen, &c.*, which impart facts and events, also after verbs of perceiving, noticing, picturing something to one's self, seeing (getting an insight into something), recognizing, comprehending, as *wahrnehmen, bemerken, sich etwas vorstellen, einsehen, erkennen, begreifen, &c.*, which report events and facts that have been perceived by the senses or grasped by the mind: *Er sagte, er werde morgen kommen*, or *daß er morgen kommen werde*, not *Er sagte, morgen zu kommen*. After such verbs the real object is felt to be the following clause as a whole, not any word in it. As the prepositional infinitive is still often, as in the original construction, felt as a modifier of the principal verb it is here out of place where no one word has individual relations with the verb. English at one point preserves this old usage better than German as it usually requires a full clause with a nominative subject after the verbs in I. 2. *c*. *Note* 1, which have a meaning somewhat similar to those given above, while German can employ here either the prepositional construction or the full clause. German can use the prepositional infinitive construction as the prepositional infinitive with its modifiers is coming more and more to be felt as a grammatical unit, as the equivalent of a full clause with a nominative subject. At this one point the development has gone farther in German than in English, but at other points as can be seen in *d* the English development has outstripped the German. Thus altho in a very large number of cases the prepositional construction has about the same meaning as a full clause, as in *Ich hoffe, morgen gehen zu können*, or *daß ich morgen gehen kann*, it is only natural that in certain cases the old difference between the two constructions has become fixed, the infinitive serving as a modifier of the verb, the clause representing a thought as a whole: *Er vergaß, ihm zu danken*, but *Er vergaß, daß er ihm Dank schuldete. Er weiß, sich zu benehmen*, but *Er weiß, daß er sich heute gut benehmen muß*.

B. THE INFINITIVE WITHOUT *zu*.

I. The infinitive without *zu* is used in the following constructions:

1. In the following independent and dependent relations:

a. As subject of a verb, especially in short pithy sayings, also in general used here quite as correctly as the infinitive with *zu*, altho perhaps not so frequently: Ungeliebt durchs Leben gehen, ist mehr als Mißgeschick, es ist Schuld (Ebner-Eschenbach's *Unselbstbar*, V.). Also as explanatory of the preceding anticipative subject *es* or *das*: Und herrlich deucht' es mich, die Fürstin sein | an eines Fürsten Seite (Schnitzler's *Der Schleier der Beatrice*, p. 138). Also the perfect infin.: Das wird mir ja unheimlich, sich dreißig Jahre — na, bis zum dreißigsten Jahre als Commis voyageur in der ganzen weiten Welt herumgetrieben haben und dann gar nichts mehr von ihr wissen wollen (Raabe's *Gutmanns Reisen*, chap. ii). The infinitive without *to* is also found in older English: To know my deed, 't were best not know myself (Macbeth, 2, 2). Still common in old saws: Better (= it is better) bend than break. Better ask than go astray.

b. As a predicate, or to complete the meaning of the predicate after *bleiben* to remain, *fahren* to drive (intrans.), *gehen* to go, *heißen* to signify, *kommen* to come, *laufen* to run, *legen* to lay, *liegen* (rarely with infinitive, usually with pres. participle) to lie, *reiten* to ride, *sein* to be, *schicken* to send, *schleichen* to creep, *segeln* to sail, *sich setzen* to sit down, *springen* (see ex.) to spring, leap, *stehen* (rarely with infin., usually with pres. part.) to stand, *wandeln* to walk, stroll, and the auxiliary *werden* in the future, future perfect, and the periphrastic subjunctive: Er bleibt sitzen. Wir gingen spazieren. Wir fuhren spazieren. Wir ritten spazieren. Wir segelten spazieren. Genua liegt schlafen (Schiller's *Fiesko*, 2, 18). Sich allein leben heißt gar nicht leben. Dem Himmel ist beten wollen auch beten. Die Mutter schickt das Kind schlafen. Unheilbares Siechtum bannte ihn ans Zimmer und gestattete ihm höchstens, bei schöner Witterung ein wenig in dem kleinen Garten spazieren zu schleichen (H. Seidel's *Der Neuntöter*). Die Alte hatte sich drinnen in ihren Lehnstuhl schlafen gesetzt. Der is (for ist) schon Klock (for Glock') sieben spazieren gegangen. Das heißt: spazieren gesprungen, muß man eigentlich sagen (Otto Ernst's *Die Gerechtigkeit*, 1, Verwandlung 1). Was steht ihr horchen? (Schiller's *Die Piccolomini*, 4, 5). Und die Väter wandeln würdevoll in der nächsten Umgegend spazieren (H. Seidel's *Die Geschichte eines Tales*). Er wird loben. Er würde singen, wenn er nicht heiser wäre.

The infinitive of certain verbs, as *sitzen*, *liegen*, *stehen*, *stecken*, *stocken*, *hängen*, *kleben*, *haften*, *leben*, *bestehen* is very common after *bleiben* and in poetic language the infinitive of *schweben* and *grünen* occurs, but this construction, tho sometimes found after other verbs, as in *Die Uhr fiel hin, aber sie blieb gehen* (Sanders's *Wörterbuch*) and *Die Zigarre blieb brennen* (ib.), cannot be freely used elsewhere, hence we cannot say: Er blieb essen, trinken, schlafen, &c.

Note. The simple infinitive cannot now be freely used after *fahren*, *gehen*, *kommen*, *laufen*, *legen*, *reiten*, *schicken*, *sich setzen*, and *springen*.

has been replaced by an infinitive, as ex.

After *heißen* and *sein* the infinitive is usually a true infinitive used as a predicate noun. See examples above.

c. In apposition with the pronouns *ein(e)s*, *das eine*, *nichts anderes* als, *das*, a substantive, or a substantive clause: Weil du nur eins kennst, mitmachen,

dabei sein, dich vergnügen (G. Wasner's *Der rote Faden*). Was mich quälte und ängstigte, mich stundenweise zur Verzweiflung brachte, war das eine: seiner selbst nicht sicher sein (Ernst Heilborn's *Die Krone*). Die Wahrheit zu sagen, hätte ihm nichts anderes bedeutet, als Vermutung auskramen und seinen besten Freund verleumden (Hans Hoffmann's *Der Stellvertreter*, IV). Ich denke mir das besonders trostlos, sich so mit malenden Damen herum-schlagen (Hauptmann's *Michael Kramer*, I.). Wochen und Wochen ver-gingen, in denen es für Ernst (name) nur zwei Obliegenheiten gab: den Dienst versehen und die Mutter pflegen (Fedor Sommer's *Ernst Reiland*, p. 230). Der Arbeitgeber, der sein Interesse wahren will, muß unentwegt an der alten Losung festhalten: Herr im Hause bleiben! (*Hamb. Nachr.*, Sept. 22, 1905). Der Name dieser Veröffentlichung sagt schon zum Teil, was sie soll: Der Kunst, besonders der Dichtung und dem Schrifttum, dienen (*Blätter für die Kunst*, Oct. 1892). The older simple infinitive is still quite as common here as the infinitive with *zu*. The use of the simple infinitive may often, as in the next to the last example, be ascribed to the fact that it not only contains the idea of apposition but also has the force of an imperative, as in *d*. Compare A. I. 2. *a*. (2) and 271. I. *a*.

*d*. As an imperative. See 177. I. B. *e*; 269. 2. *c*; 271. I. *a*; 272. C. *d*.

2. The simple infinitive is used in a number of dependent and independent relations after certain very common auxiliaries and auxiliary-like verbs. The original construction is little felt or completely forgotten. This infinitive stands:

*a*. As object after the modal auxiliaries *dürfen*, *können*, *mögen*, *müssen*, *sollen*, *wollen*, and in colloquial speech quite frequently *brauchen* to *need* to, which has come under the influence of this group, as it has assumed one of the older meanings of *dürfen* and is in general by its new meaning related to these words: *Ich will gehen. Du brauchst bloß wollen* (in choice language more frequently *zu wollen*), *Hannes* (Hauptmann's *Einsame Menschen*, Act 2). We employ also in English the simple infinitive after *to need* when negated, used in a question, and for the most part also when qualified: "He needs to hurry," but "He need not hurry," "Need he hurry?", and "He only need inquire of the porter."

Note 1. *Vermögen* differing from *mögen* requires *zu*: *Die betrübte Stadt vermag sich nicht zu trösten*. Earlier in the period the *zu* could be omitted: *Denn er vermag euch nicht erretten von meiner Hand* (2 Kings xviii. 29).

Note 2. *Brauchen* only rarely takes a genitive of the infinitive-substantive instead of the infinitive with or without *zu*: *Bin ich doch reich und brauche Stehlens nicht* (Grillparzer's *Die Jüdin von Toledo*, 2).

Note 3. The perfect infinitive is sometimes employed here instead of the correct present: *Was Huret über die Göttinger Studentensitten schreibt, hätte Emile Zola geschrieben haben können* (D. in *Deutsche Rundschau*, Sept. 1907, p. 464).

Note 4. The infinitive is often omitted as it can easily be inferred from a preceding finite verb: *Gehst du mit? Ich darf nicht [gehen]*.

*b*. As objective predicate after *lassen* to cause (to be done), have (something done), lead to, let, allow: *Ich lasse ein Haus bauen* I am having a house built. *Ihr Benehmen läßt mich glauben, daß ich ihr nicht gleichgültig bin* Her conduct leads me to think that I am something to her. *Der Oberst ließ die Soldaten zwei Stunden ruhen* The colonel let the men rest two hours. *Er läßt sich betrügen* He allows himself to be deceived.

*c*. After *blasen* (see ex.) to command by means of the bugle, *heischen* to demand, require, *heißen* to bid, direct, tell (order), command, call, *helfen* to help, *lehren* to teach, *lernen* (but *verlernen* to *unlearn* with *zu*) to learn, *nennen* to call, name, and sometimes *vergessen* (usually with *zu*) to forget: *Ich wende mich zu meinem Hornisten: „Weber! Avancieren blasen!“* (Liliencron's *Kriegsromanen*, Anno 1870, Unter flatternden Fahnen). *Die Pflicht heischt jetzt handeln, nicht trauern* (Kronprinz Rupprecht von Bayern, Aug. 29, 1914). *Er hieß ihn sich niedersetzen*. Sometimes, especially in older German, *Er hieß mich [mich] niedersetzen* to avoid the repetition of *mich*, but in current German the repetition is the more common usage as the grammatical conscience is more sensitive than formerly. *Er lehrte mich lesen. Das nenne ich schlafen* That is what I call a good sleep. *Vergiß nur nicht, der Adelheidchen guten Tag sagen, Kind* (Schulze-Smidt's *Denk' ich an Deutschland in der Nacht*, II).



force, while the infinitive calls attention to a statement of fact. In German no such distinction is regularly made between infinitive and participle, for in some cases the participle is rarely used or not employed at all. In some cases, however, this distinction seems to be observed: **Kaiser Otto III. fand den ersten deutschen Kaiser auf einem steinernen Stuhl sitzend, die Krone auf dem Haupt, den Reichsapfel in der Hand (Moltke). Im Kriege finden wir den König Opfer vollziehen (Ranke).** In earlier periods the infinitive and participle were both found with a number of these verbs. As a fixed differentiation did not develop, and the participle in careless pronunciation lost its final *d* and thus became identical in form with the infinitive, the latter construction in most cases became established and the possibility of making a beautiful shade of meaning was lost.

(2) **Haben** is used in a number of idiomatic expressions, of which some require no *zu* before the infin., while others require it: **Er hat gut reden** (construed as a substantive in the acc.) It is easy for him to talk. **Er hat zu reden** (modal verbal) He has to make a speech. **Er hat hier nichts zu befehlen** He has no right to give commands here. **Er hat mit mir zu tun** He has to do with me. See A. I. 6. In English the old objective form without *to* is still found in a few expressions: *I had* (past subjunctive = I should regard) *as lief* (= lieb = pleasant) *go as stay* **Ich möchte ebenso gern gehen als bleiben. You had better go at once Sie sollten lieber sogleich gehen. I had rather remain Ich möchte lieber bleiben.** In English the prepositional passive infinitive is freely used after *to have*, but in German this construction is usually replaced by others: *That has to be done* **Das muß getan werden, or Das hat man zu tun.** He will have to be told sooner or later **Man wird es ihm früher oder später sagen müssen.** The passive prepositional infinitive occasionally occurs in German, but it is usually censured by grammarians: **Beim Durchtrennen der Leber hatten drei starke Schlagadern unterbunden zu werden (Deutsche Zeit., Feb., 1902), instead of mußten unterbunden werden.**

(3) This use of the infinitive after *wissen* should not be confounded with the case where an infin. in an elliptical clause apparently follows *wissen*, but in reality is dependent upon a modal auxiliary understood: **Sie wußte nicht, was [sie] aus der Sache machen [sollte]** She did not know what to make out of the affair.

(4) In English the simple infinitive is used after a number of these verbs in the active, while the infinitive with *to* is usually employed after the passive: *I heard him say, I made him come*; but *He was heard to say, He was made to come.* Such a passive construction is truly characteristic of English, which can transform any active construction into a passive one by putting the object into the nominative and the main verb into passive form, elsewhere preserving the construction as nearly as possible as in the active, as if the verb formed with its modifiers a compound. The passive is not used here at all in German. The transitives admitting of the present participle construction after them instead of the infinitive sometimes form a passive, where however the present participle is always employed: **Henning (name) wurde öfters schlafend auf Ausguck getroffen (Hamburger Nachrichten, Dec. 10, 1904).** English may also employ the present participle, sometimes exclusively, sometimes alongside of the more common infinitive. There is often differentiation of meaning as in the active: (descriptive) He was found sleeping; (statement of fact) He was found to be sleeping.

#### e. After tun:

(1) In the common expression **nichts tun: Er tut nichts als klagen** He does nothing but complain.

(2) For emphasis, when instead of the simple finite verb the infinitive of the desired verb is used dependent upon **tun**. Emphatic words are usually placed at the head of the clause or sentence, but a finite form of the verb rarely. If the verb is to be made emphatic, the infinitive, which alone contains the verbal *meaning* and hence the important part of the verb, now usually introduces the clause and is then followed by a finite form of the auxiliary **tun**, which merely marks the verbal *function*: **Loben tat sie nicht viel, sie hielt's vom Überfluß** She rarely praised anybody, as she thought it superfluous. **Kutscher will ich wohl sein und auf dem Bocke sitzen, aber selbst ziehen, das tue ich nicht.**

In dialect, also in the language of children and clumsy speakers in general, **tun** is often used with a dependent infinitive which is not restricted to the first place in the proposition. This construction, which first appeared about 1200, differs from the later development, the emphatic form described above, in that it is a mere periphrasis for the simple verb: **Da täten sie sich trennen = Da trennten sie sich.** In S.G. often in the passive: **Gelt, das wär' Euch so das Rechte, wenn für jeden einzelnen von Euch ein besonderes Kirchengesetz gemacht werden tät'!** (Karl Ettlinger's *Das Beschwerdebuch*, p. 32). For irregular past tense in this construction see 210. a. In older English the *do*-form was thus used promiscuously with the simple form of the verb without a difference of meaning, but later a differentiation took place, so that the *do*-form has become fixed in the emphatic, negative, and interrogative form of state-

ment *It does matter* *It doesn't matter* *It doesn't matter* Does it matter? Does it matter? Doesn't it matter? Doesn't it matter? Notice that in English the *do* form is always accented when the statement is emphatic while in German the infinitive receives the stress and usually stands at the beginning of the proposition. The German emphatic form does not correspond closely to the English, for it is only used to emphasize the simple verb not to emphasize the statement. German uses in the emphatic form of statement some adverb where English employs a stressed auxiliary or copula. *Ich arbeite ja* (unstressed)! I *do* work but the *ja* is strongly stressed to answer affirmatively in emphatic language an expressed doubt or negation. *Es ist ja so* in answer to *Es ist nicht so*. *Wer in aller Welt schreibt solchen Unsinn?* Who *does* write such non sense? *Was suchst du nur?* What *are* you looking for? *Was ist denn aber dabei zu lächen?* What *can* they find in it to laugh about? Compare 223 XI A a In German the word-order also plays an important rôle here. See 287 B (7)

No 1. Zu + infinitive will tun in the 1st person zu wissen tun to announce acc  
 know. Come we'd say zu wissen tun to announce acc  
 No 2. After the 1st singular of the 1st person in the 1st person ex  
 was sein in colloquial use an incorrect repetition of the verb is  
 as an object it is not to express by the verb I mean and I mean  
 me & the verbal function. Haben hab ich ihn (ontane & de chap Vi  
 night.

3 The infinitive without *zu* is used when it is employed to repeat an idea contained in a finite verb which has already been used no matter what its construction in the sentence may be „Lehne dich an meine Brust und *schlafe*“ Der Elsasser ermannte sich wieder „Schlafen! dazu wird keine Zeit mehr sein!“ (Rosegger)

1. Where the situation makes clear the thought in questions direct or indirect introduced by some interrogative word the auxiliary is often suppressed as unimportant and the simple infinitive employed. Ja, was da tun, Engelke? (Montane's *Steellin* chap. 1) What in the world shall I do! Ingelke? Ich hatte nicht so beständig mit ihnen Rücksprache genommen, wenn ich sonst gewußt hatte, an wen mich halten. Sometimes the infinitive with zu is used. Was nun zu tun? (Grillparzer's *Die Argonauten*, 2) Daß Liselotte nicht gewußt hatte, wie dagegen anzukämpfen (Gabriele Reuter's *Liselotte von Reckling*, p. 26). Also other elliptical constructions occur [ich will] Auch ausfahren! Auch ausfahren mit der Mama! As the original construction has often become indistinct, the simple infinitive is now used very freely, and in excited or vivid language without precise grammatical relations often becomes the bearer of the thought. Aber wie Klarheit darüber gewinnen? Ihr schreiben? Wie den Brief in ihre Hände spielen? Und dann — qualvoll harren, bis die Antwort kame, vielleicht vergeblich harren! (Franzosa's *Der Gott des alten Doktors*, p. 135).

5 *Accusative with the Infinitive* Under the influence of humanistic studies the accusative

sehen, etc. more commonly without zu early in the period and later with zu. Ich achte es billig sein (2 Pet i 13) in revised editions Ich achte es billig zu sein, but in such cases where there is an objective predicate adjective participle mon to drop the sein. Ich achte es billig, or Ich glaubte ihn glücklich, im Recht zu sein, etc.

ly common in relative clauses. Dieser Aschines, den er  
The infinitive is now replaced by a subordinate clause  
von dem er glaubt, daß er ein so elendes Leben führe  
o be well. As can be seen by the English translation of  
this last sentence the infinitive once in use in German has been retained in English. Char-  
acteristic of modern English is the retention of the infinitive even in the passive form of state-  
ments to retain in the passive state-  
comes nominative or in case of two  
declared it to be true Er behauptete,  
wel to be true Es wurde behauptet,  
man usage here see 272 C g. Of  
where it has the force of a present

Failure as described in a d above

## II. Form of the Infinitive to Denote a Past Act.

In the different constructions described in I, above, the infinitive stands uniformly only when it has present force. In case its force would be past,—

*a.* It assumes the form of the perf. infin. after the modal auxiliaries and the auxiliary *werden*: *Er will es gesehen haben* He pretends to have seen it. *Er wird jetzt wohl geschrieben haben* He has probably written by this time.

*Note.* The perf. infin. depending upon these modal auxiliaries should not be confounded with another construction having exactly the same form, but a quite different meaning—namely, *haben* in the infinitive depending upon a modal auxiliary, and having on the other hand a perf. part. with passive force depending upon itself: *Ich wollte alles historisch erklärt haben* I wanted to have everything explained from a historical standpoint. More frequent and forcible than *haben* is *wissen*: *Numa wollte keine Gottheit in menschlicher oder tierischer Gestalt vorgestellt wissen* Numa did not want to have any god represented in the form of man or beast. Also *sehen* is thus used: *Er wollte diese Frage mit heiterer Gelassenheit behandelt sehen* He wanted to have this question discussed with cheerful composure.

*b.* Except often in the subject relation (see I. *a* above, under I), it assumes the form of the perf. part. in all the other constructions in I: in the subject relation: *Frisch gewagt [haben] ist halb gewonnen [haben]*. In older German the auxiliaries *haben* and *sein* were often omitted here in the compound tense forms after the analogy of their absence in participial clauses as explained in 183. 2. *C. c.* This older usage has in large measure passed away, but it persists tenaciously here in a very large number of pithy old sayings, preserved as it were by the charm of the terse apt expression: *Aufgeschoben (subject) ist nicht aufgehoben (predicate)* Having deferred a matter is not the same as having given up the idea altogether. [*Es ist*] *Besser schlecht gefahren, als zu Fuß gegangen*. Often also in the predicate relation: *Das heißt schlecht geworfen* That was a bad throw. *Das heißt gelogen* That was what people call lying. *Das heißt recht den Nagel auf den Kopf getroffen*. *Dies ist natürlich zu weit gegangen* *This is of course going too far*, or to bring out the force of the perf. part. *Here of course he went too far*. *Das war denn aber doch wohl etwas zu viel verlangt* But that was surely asking a little too much. *Das hieße den Bock zum Gärtner gesetzt* That would be making the goat the gardener. *Das heiße ich geschlafen (objective predicate)*. There is little difference in any of these sentences between the perfect infinitive and the simple infinitive, so that instead of the last example we may say: *Das heiße ich schlafen*. As the perfect infinitive here often refers to a definite past act it may perhaps emphasize the idea of actuality. On the other hand, the perfect infinitive, altho common in a few set expressions, is not so widely used as the simple infinitive. In imperative function, however, the perfect infinitive has become a great favorite, maintaining itself here well as over against the simple infinitive and usually differentiating itself from it in meaning, as described in 177. I. *B. d* and *Note* thereunder. In some cases, as after the verbs in I. 2. *d*, the perf. part. is the original construction, not an elliptical perf. infin.: *Er fühlte sich gekränkt (objective predicate)*. *Ich will ihn bestraft sehen*. *Ein Wort macht alles ungeschehen (objective pred.)* One word will smooth over the unpleasant feeling (bring it about that all will be as if the unpleasantness had not happened).

186. Two Infinitives Connected by *als*.

When two infinitives connected by *als* depend upon one of the verbs mentioned above as not requiring *zu* with the dependent infinitive, they both are usually without the *zu*, but not infrequently the second infinitive takes *zu* contrary to rule: *Mit der Welt muß niemand leben, als wer sie brauchen will; ist er brauchbar und still, sollt' er sich lieber dem Teufel ergeben, als zu tun, was sie will* (Goethe). Compare: I had rather *be* a doorkeeper in the house of my God, than *to dwell* in the tents of wickedness (Psalm lxxxiv. 10). When two infinitives used as subjects are in the same manner connected by *als*, they usually both take *zu* or both are without it, but often contrary to rule the one takes *zu* while the other is without it: *Aber Brücken abubrechen ist leichter als aufbauen* (Boy-Ed), instead of *sie aufzubauen*. The first infinitive may be without the *zu* while a later one takes it.

## 187. Passive Infinitive in Active Form.

The active infin. often assumes passive meaning in the following constructions:



1. After heißen, hören (sometimes also zuhören), lassen, sehen, and less commonly fühlen: Ich höre ihn kommen. Ich habe müssen zuhören, Sie herabsetzen, erniedrigen, und konnte und durfte Sie nur halb verteidigen (Goethe's *Die Leiden des jungen Werthers*, am 16. März). Er ließ den Arzt holen He had the doctor sent for. Wir mußten die Tür vom Schlosser öffnen lassen We had to have the door opened by a lock-smith. Ich lasse mir von dir nichts befehlen. Wir sahen den Stein emporwinden We saw the stone being drawn up. We occasionally find the passive form instead of the active: Wer hat je gesehen jemand also besprenget werden? (Luther's *Werke*, vol. 49, p. 132). Und da sitzt du nun und siehst ihn von dem braven germanistischen Pinsel von Vater und der lächerlichen Hexe seiner Mutter immer mehr verzogen werden (Raabe's *Der Lar*, p. 158). The passive form is not infrequent after lassen: Die Sage läßt Kronos von Zeus entthronen or enthroned werden. The passive form seems the rule in case of the verb gebären: Den Bildhauer Thorwaldsen lassen einige auf der Überfahrt von Island, andere in Kopenhagen geboren werden (August Gebhardt). Instead of a passive form of the infinitive we often find after hören, fühlen, sehen a perfect participle, which in case of transitives is here as elsewhere passive in force. Alt, sich beim Vornamen gerufen hörend, hob schnell den Kopf (Georg Waser's *Der rote Faden*, II). Er fühlte sich, sah sich von allen verlassen. The employment of the perfect participle here with verbal force has developed out of its adjective use as objective predicate (262. III. 2. B): Er fühlte sich gekränkt. We can often replace the infinitive with passive force by a subordinate clause with a passive verb: Ich hörte, wie er gerufen wurde instead of Ich hörte ihn rufen. The infinitive was originally a noun, hence the reluctance to give it the passive form of a verb and the feeling that it should be replaced by other more expressive constructions in the passive rather than be treated as a verb. On the other hand, as it has in the course of time acquired considerable verbal force, there is a tendency after lassen and sehen to give it passive form in accordance with its present-day verbal force.

a. Sometimes it is doubtful whether this infin. is active or passive: Ich hörte ihn rufen means *I heard him calling, or heard him called by someone.* See 1 above for a clear passive form of this sentence.

b. Formerly also machen belonged to this list: Man tat alles, um sich von dem König bemerken zu machen (Goethe's *Dichtung und Wahrheit*, II, 7). Occasionally still: Die „große Zeit“ hob ihn selbst über schweren persönlichen Kummer, der ihn eben erst betroffen hatte, hinweg und machte diesen „leichter tragen“ (Caroline Vicker in *Westermanns Monatshefte*, June, 1905, p. 407).

2. After certain other verbs. See 180. A. a, b, c.

#### THE INFINITIVE-SUBSTANTIVE.

188. Different from the preceding infinitives, which can be used substantively either as subject or object, is the abstract neuter infinitive-substantive, which may take an article or other adj. modifiers before it and is declined as any noun in -en and is written with a capital letter: Das unaufhörliche Weinen des Kindes the constant weeping of the child. Ich bin des Treibens müde. Der Erben Weinen ist ein heimlich Lachen (proverb). Auf Lachen folgt Weinen. Mit Warten wird nichts erreicht. It is the presence of the article (or other modifying adj.) that distinguishes this substantive from the verbal infin. used as subject or object, and when these modifying words do not stand before the substantive it is sometimes difficult to distinguish between them: Er lernt schreiben. Er lernt nicht nur Schreiben und Lesen, sondern auch Geographie und Geschichte. In the first sentence, schreiben expresses an activity, hence is the verbal infinitive, in the second, Schreiben a branch of study, hence a noun.

Sometimes the compound tenses of the infinitive—the perfect active and the passive forms—are used as substantives: jene dumpfe Angst des Versäumt-habens (C. Lara in *Westermanns Monatshefte*, Jan. 1905, p. 548), das träge und knechtschaffene Sichgenügenlassen am Regiertwerden von oben herab (Der

*Türmer*, Jahrgang VI, p. 352), das Gefühl des Hinausgestoßenseins (Boy-Ed). Das Gefühl des Geprügeltwordenseins trieb ihm die Schamröte in die Wangen (Georg Edward). Eine solche Partei bietet keinen Schutz gegen das Überlaufenwerden des Deutschen Reiches von der roten Flutwelle (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Jan. 7, 1912).

In earlier periods the infinitive-substantive had in one respect more substantive force than now, for it could not show tense and voice as to-day. Thus in M.H.G. the form was active, altho the meaning was clearly passive, as in *Welt ir uns toetens machen vri, | so ritet daz i' u verre si* (*Parzival* 259, 11-12) *Wollt Ihr uns von dem Schicksal des Getötetwerdens befreien, so entfernt Euch von uns.* Compare *b.* The old active form with passive force, however, is still often used: *Der Räuber fürchtet sich vor dem Hängen.*

*a.* In the case of the formation of substantives from reflexive verbs many now prefer, especially in case of the compound tense form, to retain the reflexive pronoun as it has become closely associated with the verbal stem: *Das immer tiefere Sichversenken in das Wort des Herrn* the penetrating ever deeper into God's Word, *das Bewußtsein des Sichfreigemachthabens.* *Ich will nicht einmal dagegen einwenden, daß diese unsere Schwäche ein freiwilliges Sichbegeben der Stärke sein dürfte* (Boy-Ed's *Die säende Hand*, p. 178). On the other hand in case of the simple infinitive many still prefer the older form without the reflexive pronoun: *Da war ein Freuen, wenn er wieder kam. Eine Hinneigung zur Natur, ein inniges Vertiefen in ihre Schönheiten* (H. R. Jockisch in *Westermanns Monatshefte*, Feb. 1907). The old form has become fixed in a few nouns, as *das Befinden* health, *das Betragen* conduct, *das Besinnen* reflection. See also 249. II. 2. G.

*b.* Sometimes in early N.H.G., as quite commonly in earlier periods, the infinitive-substantive could, like the verbal infinitive, take an object in the acc.: *Wollen habe ich wol | Aber volbringen das gute* (now *Vollbringen des Guten*) *finde ich nicht* (Rom. vii. 18). The object in this construction partakes of the nature of the object of a verbal noun and also that of a verb. It stands *after* the infinitive-substantive just as the object of a verbal noun, and it is in the acc. just as the object of a verb. The object of the infinitive-substantive is now usually in the gen., which shows that the infin. is now felt as a true noun.

189. The infinitive-substantive, which has much the same force as the prepositional infinitive or the gerund in English (as, *To read* is profitable, or *Reading* is profitable), has an abstract meaning bordering upon the abstract verbal nouns ending in *-ung* and those formed from the past tense of strong verbs. The relation of this infinitive-substantive to the other verbal nouns is that the former is more abstract and hence cannot usually take a plural, while more of the concrete enters into the latter, as can be seen from the following instructive sentence: *Das Unterscheiden ist nicht leicht, denn der Unterschied zwischen zwei Dingen ist oft so versteckt, daß die Unterscheidung des einen von dem andern kaum möglich ist.* This close distinction cannot always be detected so clearly as in the preceding sentence, and hence they are often confounded, and we find the infinitive-substantive instead of one of the other more correct verbal nouns, especially as the infin. is a favorite construction: *das Aufgehen der Sonne* instead of *der Aufgang der Sonne* the rise of the sun; *das Anfertigen des Sarges* instead of *die Anfertigung des Sarges* the making of the coffin.

#### FORMATION OF COMPOUND TENSES.

190. 1. A. The *present perfect*, indicative and subjunctive, of transitive and most intransitive verbs is formed with the present indic. or subj. of *haben* and the perfect participle of the verb to be conjugated, but some intransitives (see 191) form this tense with the present of *sein* and the perfect participle: (indic.) *ich habe gelobt*, but *ich bin gefallen*; (subj.) *ich habe gelobt*, but *ich sei gefallen*. For origin of this tense form see 191. I. 1 and 4 (2nd par.).

The imperative in this tense has only two persons, the second and third. The second person is formed with the present imperative of *haben* or *sein* and

the perfect participle, and the third person with the present subjunctive of haben or sein and the perfect participle: Habe nie umsonst gelebt! (Gutzkow). Ins Grab! Die Schaufeln her! Er sei gewesen (Kleist's *Kathchen*, 2, 8) Into the grave with him! Bring on the shovels! May he soon have ceased to be!

*a* Another form of the pres perf indic and subj is now common even in good authors, however, with a shade of difference in meaning. To the regular pres perf form gehabt is often added if the verb is trans, or gewesen if the verb is intrans, to indicate that a past condition or state of things is to be represented rather than a past act. Nicht auf dir lastet die Schuld, du hast dein Herz der Liebe nicht verschlossen gehabt (Jensen's *Das Bild im Wasser*, p. 134) Wie ich erschrocken gewesen bin! (Spielhagen's *Sturmflut*, 3, 30)

*b* Omission of Tense Auxiliaries in the Present Perfect and Past Perfect The auxiliaries haben and sein are sometimes omitted here

(1) In the subordinate clause, only occasionally in plain prose much more commonly in poetry. Die alten Rechte, wie wir sie ererbt (haben) von unsern Vätern, wollen wir bewahren (Schiller's *Teil*, 2, 2) Er wußte auch ganz genau, wer dem Attentat die ausführende Hand gegeben (hatte) (Hans Hoffmann's *Plan der Schreckliche*, 1)

The most common case of omitting the auxiliary in plain prose is where the same form re-occurs in successive subordinate clauses which do not modify the same word. Even if the same form occurs here only twice it is felt as unpleasant and one of them is suppressed bis die Periode, für die der Reichstag gewählt worden (war), abgelaufen war.

Altho present usage is not averse to an occasional omission of the auxiliary this freedom has almost disappeared in sentences containing a perfect participle with the form of the infinitive. Wenn er diesen Brief selbst geschrieben (hat), so will ich ihn anstellen, but Wenn er diesen Brief selbst hat schreiben können, so will ich ihn anstellen. In such sentences however, as the last Lessing still frequently suppresses the auxiliary and this omission occurs in rare instances later. Seiner fast unbewußt, hatte er die Richtung eingeschlagen, die sein zürnender Bröther ihn gehen heißen (Helene Raff in *Deutsche Rundsch* im Aug 1904, p. 172) At the beginning of the fifteenth century the omission of the auxiliaries began to be quite common and this remained so until the middle of the eighteenth century. From then on this freedom gradually disappeared. The causes for the rise and decline of this elliptical construction are given in 237. 1 B a Note, 183 1 B b and 2 C c d and 185 B 11 b

(2) In the crisp style of telegrams and also in familiar style the auxiliaries often drop out in the present perfect, even as they have not stress and are not felt as necessary to the thought: [hast du dich] Gut

Streich des Todes ist gefallen (Schiller's *Turandot*, 1, 2) Heinrich läuft heute nicht Schlittschuh; er ist gelaufen (Georg Edward) The auxiliary is similarly stressed to emphasize the actuality of, or on the other hand, the non-actuality of a past act or state. Ich höre auf zu leben, aber ich habe gelebt (Goethe's *Igmont*, 5, Gefängnis) Ja, er hat gefühlt und gewählt, und ist männlich entschieden (id., *Hermann und Dorothea*, V, 51) Hät' ich doch den Burschen aus dem Weg geräumt! Wär' ich doch dabei gewesen! Often with omitted participle Lina, das's Handgeld und hat er sich's G'alt (Pöhl's *...*)

ings is past the German stresses tense Er hat kein Geld mehr, ut he has had money. See also

194. 4 Note 2 for examples in passive form

B. The past perf. of trans and most intrans. verbs is formed with the past tense of haben and the perf. part. of the verb to be conjugated, but some intransitives (see 191) form this tense with the past tense of sein and the perf. part. (indic) ich hatte gelobt, but ich war gefallen; (subj.) ich hätte gelobt, but ich wäre gefallen. Originally this form was a past tense just as the present perfect was originally a present tense, as explained in 191. 1. 1 and 4 (2nd par.)

*a* As in certain dialects the pres perf replaces the past (see 165. 2 b), the past perf. is replaced by a special form made by adding gehabt in case of transitives and gewesen in case of intransitives to the regular pres perf. Bin ich schuld, daß der Baron sich im Zimmer bei mir hat eingeschlichen (perf. for past)?! Ich hab' ihn nicht hinbestellt gehabt! (instead of hatte hinbestellt) (1) Dann hat sich's (= sie sich) über das Kind g'wor g niedergedrückt (perf. for past) in die Kissen (chen) erstickt ist g'wesen (instead of erstickt)

This formation is sometimes employed in the literary language in the infinitive with the force of the past perf ct, altho grammarians have not generally recognized a past perfect infinitive Ludwig scheint sich entfernt zu haben It seems that L. has withdrawn, or L. scheint heint sich entfernt L. had withdrawn, c. is now common in case of intransi-

tives are added to the regular past perf. to form a past perf. with a slight difference of meaning. This past perf. differs from the regular one in that it expresses a *state* or *condition* of things instead of an *action*: *Ich hatte den Brief schon geschrieben gehabt, als ich deine Anfrage bekam. Der einige Monate verreist gewesen war* (P. Heyse's *Im Paradies*, 2, 347) *who had been away from town several months*. There is a tendency to use this past perfect tense form instead of the regular one, even where the reference is clearly to an act and not to a state or condition: *Das „Adieu“ hatte sie genau in dem nämlichen Ton hervorgebracht, mit dem er es damals an der Gartenpforte gesprochen und sie drauf erwidert gehabt* (Jensen's *Das Bild im Wasser*, p. 307).

c. The auxiliaries *haben* and *sein* are often dropped in subordinate clauses as in the case of the pres. perf. See A. b. (1).

C. a. The *future*, indic. and subj., is formed with the pres. indic. and subj. of *werden* and the simple infin.: (indic.) *ich werde loben, ich werde fallen*; (subj.) *ich werde loben, ich werde fallen*.

*Note 1. The Historic Development of the Future Active and the Actional Passive.* The explanation of the infinitive form here is given in G below. It first appeared in the eleventh century but for a long time was little used, so that it did not become thoroughly established until the fifteenth century. Thus thruout the M.H.G. period and in early N.H.G. we usually find not the infinitive but the present participle here, as in the following sentences from "Der sogenannte St. Georgener Prediger," completed July 24, 1387: *Versüchent und merket, wie süß Got ist, so werdent ir in minnende* (p. 171) *Try to see how lovely God is and you will love him*. The present participle *minnende* here in connection with the auxiliary *werden* seems to be the modern future tense, but it is in fact a periphrastic present tense used as a future just as the simple present tense is often employed as a future. In many other places in this old book it is evident that this form is a periphrastic present tense: *Recht als das wachs von der haissen sunnen smeltzent wirt und zerfliessent, also wirt du (= die) sele smeltzende von der waren sunnen, unsern herren Jhesu Christo* (id., p. 37) *Wie das Wachs von der heißen Sonne schmilzt und zerfließt, so schmilzt die Seele von der wahren Sonne, unserem Herrn Jesu Christo*. In this old book as in general thruout M.H.G. and in earliest N.H.G. there is a regular periphrastic conjugation: *er wirt smeltzent* (used as a present tense or a future), *er ward smeltzent* (past tense), *er ist smeltzent worden* (present perfect), &c. These periphrastic tenses express the same time relations as the older simple tenses, but they have a different aspect (see 164). Both *werden* and the present participle have here their original literal meaning, so that both taken together have ingressive perfective force (164), calling attention not to an activity or state as a whole but to one point, the moment of entrance into the state or activity: *das wachs wirt smeltzent und zerfliessent* the wax begins to melt and dissolve, lit. becomes melting and dissolving. At this time just as also to-day the perfective type was also expressed by means of prefixes, as explained in detail in 164. Often later and sometimes in the old book quoted above the periphrastic forms lose their original meaning and assume a new force. The idea of entrance into an activity develops into the idea of an act as a whole, so that the periphrastic tenses have the same force as the older simple forms: *Du (= die) werck du von tugenden gant, da mit werdent die tugend all gefüret und wachsend* (p. 214) *Die Tugenden werden ernährt und wachsen von den Werken, die von den Tugenden kommen*. In this sentence we find this development not only in the active periphrastic forms but also in the passive, *werdent gefüret*, i.e. the perfect participle of a transitive verb in connection with *werden*. This development, i.e. the reference to the action as a whole, took place much earlier in the passive forms, indeed was firmly established in O.H.G. and thus facilitated the development in the active forms. This change of meaning in the active periphrastic forms does not represent a gain to the language, for the older simple tenses have the same meaning and are much handier, but in the passive forms this change resulted in the development of the actional passive (194. 4) and thus represents real progress, for there were no simple passive forms in existence and there was thus gained a clear passive form for the expression of action as over against the form with *sein* which denoted state: *Das Haus wird jedes Jahr angestrichen* (action), but *Das Haus ist angestrichen* (state).

Thus the forms in the active periphrastic system were on the one hand pure ingressive perfectives, as explained above, or on the other hand were a mere useless periphrasis for the older simpler tense forms and as useless gradually disappeared from the literary language with the exception of the present indic., now used in suppositions as explained in 165. 5. b. *Note*, and the past subjunctive, which has become a useful form as described in E. a below. In dialect, however, the periphrasis has maintained itself better, as shown in E. a below. Also the ingressive perfectives have disappeared, not, however, by way of elimination but by the development of a new meaning. Even in the old book mentioned above there are evident signs that the ingressive present tense is differentiating itself from the simple present tense. It is the favorite where there is a reference to the future: *Die sint sälig die rainnes herten sint, won sie sint Got sehent werdent* (p. 259) *Selig sind, die reines Herzens sind, denn sie werden späterhin Gott sehen*. The idea of an entrance into an activity naturally suggests the idea of a future activity. This ingressive present gradually lost its original force and developed into a pure future tense. The establishment of the present ingressive as a pure future destroyed the whole ingressive tense-system as it no longer had a present tense to rest on. Its place has been taken by *anfangen* with a dependent infinitive, a construction that had from the start been competing with it, and also by other ingressive forms, as explained in 164. The old ingressive system with *werden* and a dependent infinitive has been preserved in certain dialects. See G below.

*Note 2.* In M.H.G. and early N.H.G. the future was formed by means of the auxiliaries *wollen* and *sollen*, just as in English to-day. The Low German dialects also preserve this older usage. The literary form with *werden* developed in the South. It became fairly well established in the fifteenth century. It is a decided improvement, as it expresses the idea of futurity pure and simple, while *wollen* and *sollen*, and in English *will* and *shall*, contain a certain element of modality, implying in addition to the idea of futurity that of desire and authority. The use of *wollen* and *sollen* to express futurity still continues in the infin. See b.

*Note 3.* The stress in the future tense usually rests upon the infinitive form, but to emphasize the idea of actuality the tense auxiliary is stressed, often with the omission of the infinitive: *Wenn's mir nur gelingt! Es wird, es wird!* (Viebig).

b. The future infinitive is formed with the infin. of *wollen* and the infin. of the verb to be conjugated wherever the act is planned by the subject of the sentence: *Gordon gab übrigens die Versicherung, es gnädig machen zu wollen* (Fontane's *Cécile*, chap. vi) *Gordon assured her, moreover, that he would not be too severe. Man trennte sich früh, aber doch mit der Zusicherung, am andern Tage spätestens um sieben beim Frühstück sein zu wollen* (id., *Die Poggenpuhls*, chap. xiv). Figuratively: *Es scheint regnen zu wollen*.

Wherever the act is planned by someone else than the subject, or the outcome of events depends upon factors beyond the control of the subject *sollen* is employed here: *Das Gut scheint verkauft werden zu sollen. Was die politische Lage betrifft, so scheint das neue Regime keinem ernststen Widerstand begegnen zu sollen. Man durfte kaum erwarten, noch so viel Neues und Beachtens-*

wertes über Friedrich von Hagedorn erfahren zu sollen, wie diese Schrift enthält (Albert Koster in *Anzeiger für deutsches Altertum*, XXXVI, p 159)

As yet there has appeared no tendency to use *werden* here as in the indic

D The *future perfect*, indic and subj, is formed with the present indic or subj of *werden* and the perfect infinitive (indic) *ich werde gelobt haben*, *ich werde gefallen sein*, (subj) *ich werde gelobt haben*, *ich werde gefallen sein* For the origin of this form see 165 6 a Note

E The *past periphrastic subjunctive* is formed with the past subj of *werden* and the simple infinitive *ich würde loben* I should praise, *ich würde fallen* I should fall

a The infinitive has replaced here the older present participle See G below The past periphrastic subjunctive is in fact the past subjunctive of the peculiar old past tense described in G below consisting of the past tense of *werden* and the present participle or infinitive of the verb to be conjugated The indicative of this past tense is now lost Before it disappeared it had become a mere periphrasis for the usual simple past tense having lost its original meaning Solon wart disen pilgram fragen, wie sein vatter genennet wer (Hans Sachs Coedeke ed I p 132) = Solon (name) fragte diesen Pilger, &c The present and past tense of this old periphrasis is widely preserved in the dialects *ich werde gehen* = *ich gehe* *Ich würde gehen* = *ich ging*

only survives in the past subjunctive (*ich würde* useful form Grammarians would limit its use to direct and to indirect discourse but in accordance used more widely standing wherever the regular

past subjunctive can stand as described in 169 1 A a 169 1 B a 169 2 B a 169 2 D a and E Note 3 On account of the lack of clear subjunctive forms here and the general dislike for the simple forms of this mood this usage is spreading especially in the South The best usage however instead of thus using interchangeably the inclines especially in clauses of manner and sometimes them so that the former expresses future time and the clauses the same time as that of the principal verb *Er spricht von meinen Besitzungen, als wenn ich so reich wie ein Herzog wäre* (present time) but *Die sehen nicht aus, als wenn sie so bald Bruderschaft mit uns trinken würden* (Goethe's *Egmont* Act 1) (future time) Wie sie in der nächsten Zeit kommen (present time)

doch nicht welken würden! (H Bohlau's *Adam und Eva* chap VI)

F The *past perfect periphrastic subjunctive* is formed with the past subj of *werden* and the perfect infinitive *ich würde gelobt haben*, *ich würde gefallen sein*

G *Ingressive and Progressive Forms* Rarely in OHG but often later in MHG and early NHG compound tense forms consisting of the present past, or present perfect tense of *werden* in connection with the pres part of the verb were used with ingressive force (164) to indicate the commencement of an action in the present or past *Er wird laufend* He is beginning to run *Er ward laufend* He began to run See also C a Note 1 above In the same way the present and past tense of *sein* were often in OHG, MHG, and early NHG used with the present participle to indicate the continuance of an action, just as the *progressive form* of the verb in English *Es waren aber Juden zu Jerusalem wohnend* (Acts 11 5) The present participle in these constructions often goes over into the infinitive form *Er ward laufen*, *er war wohnen* The infinitive form here first appeared in the eleventh century after *werden* and after a slow development became established in the fifteenth century In the fourteenth century it began to appear after *sein* after the analogy of usage after *werden* This change of form was rendered easy and natural on one hand by the fact that the present participle had in careless speech become identical with the infinitive in form on the other hand by the analogy of the infinitive after the auxiliary verbs *beginnen*, *sollen*, *wollen*, and *müssen* In MHG *beginnen* was commonly used with a simple dependent infinitive, not with the prepositional infinitive as to day As *werden* with the present par-

ticiples in M.H.G. usually had the same meaning as *beginnen* with a dependent infinitive there arose a tendency for *werden* likewise to take the infinitive. *Werden* also came under the influence of *sollen*, *wollen*, and *müssen*, as they were all often used as auxiliaries to indicate future time. Hence *werden* under the powerful influence of all these four verbs which took a dependent infinitive gradually became itself permanently associated with the infinitive. The participial and infinitive forms in connection with *sein* have lingered on even up to our own day in the case of the verb *vermuten*: *Ich war mir Sie in dem Vorzimmer nicht vermutend* (Lessing's *Emilia Galotti*, 2, 7). *Was gilt's, das warst du nicht vermuten* (id., *Nathan*, 2, 1). *So etwas war ich vermuten* (Müllner's *Die Schuld*, 4, 1). *Es gibt viele Redensarten für die Betäubung, die den Menschen überkommt, wenn ihm etwas begegnet, dessen er sich durchaus nicht vermutend war* (Raabe's *Hastenbeck*, chap. xiii). In certain dialects this old construction is better preserved and is found with other verbs: *Es ist, als wenn irgend etwas einen zwingen tät', im Gehen die Augen zuzumachen, wie wenn eins schlafend wär'* (Wilhelm Fischer's *Die Freude am Licht*, p. 54). As these compound forms, made up of *sein* and the present participle, were never deeply rooted in the language since the construction originated and flourished only under the influence of the Latin and as on the other hand these compound forms, as in the examples just given often had the same force as the simple tense, i.e. had become a mere periphrasis for the simple present or past tense and thus did not as in English develop a sharply differentiated meaning they gradually as useless forms disappeared from the language. The English progressive might possibly have met the same fate if the gerundial construction, as in "He is *fishing*" (from *a-fishing* from older *on fishing*), had not developed into the same form and given it more vigorous life. Also the German construction of *werden* with the infinitive has become obsolete except in two very common cases, where it has taken on a slightly different meaning, serving as the regular tense form of the future (see C. a. Note 1 above) and as a periphrasis for the past subjunctive (see E. a). In some dialects, however, as in Austria, the present participle survives here with its original force: *So oft die Red' auf'n Gelbhofbauer kommt, wird bei ihm's Radel laufend und da haspelt er die ganze alte Geschicht' aber* (Anzengruber's *Kreuzelschreiber*, 1, 1). *Es sind etliche streitend worden* (Handel-Mazzetti's *Stephana Schwertner*, I). The infinitive form is preserved in N.G. dialect: *Dat ward (= wird) regen* (dialect of Glückstadt) = *Es fängt an zu regnen*. *Do wor (= wurde) he ween'n* (ib.) = *Da fing er an zu weinen*. In the North this old form has in some dialects developed into a mere periphrasis for the simple form of the verb, as described in E. a.

The present participle is still often found in connection with both *werden* and *sein*, but it now has here only the force of an adj.: *Er ist vermögend* He is rich. *Gebt jeden Zweifel auf, Euer Mann ist sterbend* (in a dying condition) (Ebner-Eschenbach's *Maßlans Frau*). *Ihre Stimme ist ersterbend, verhauchend* (Hauptmann's *Versunkene Glocke*, Act 5).

2. These compound tenses are often abbreviated by suppressing the non-personal part, i.e. participle and infinitive, when the suppressed words can easily be supplied from the context. Altho the auxiliary verbs are usually only lightly stressed they are here accented heavily in order to bring out clearly the idea of the actuality or non-actuality of a past act or the certainty of a future act. The abbreviation may assume two forms:

a. The personal part of the verb, i.e. the auxiliary, may alone remain, accompanied by one of the pronouns *das*, *es*, *was*, which represent the suppressed non-personal part of the preceding verb with all its modifiers, and thus stand for the whole thought expressed in the preceding sentence: *Du würdest sie ja nicht gezwungen haben?* *Nein, das hätte ich nicht*, or *Nein, das würde ich nicht* You, certainly, would not have forced her, would you? No, I would not. *Sie hat gebüßt, wahrlich sie hat es* She has atoned for it, indeed, she has. *Er hat studiert, was ich nicht habe*.

b The personal part of the verb, with its subject may alone remain, unaccompanied by the neuter pronoun, the suppressed words easily being supplied from the context. *Kann sein, ich habe sie auch wirklich geliebt. Aber — ich habe!* (Lessing's *Emilia Galotti*, 1, 1) It may be that I once really loved her, but that is now all past, lit *I have* [loved her]. *Hattest du ihn nehmen mogen, Selma? Gewiß hatt' ich [ihn nehmen mogen]* Should you have wanted to accept him, Selma? Certainly, I should. *Wart! euch werd' ich [kürzen]* Just wait, boys! I'll give you a good sound thrashing. „Wenn's mir nur gelingt!“ „Es wird, es wird!“ (Clara Viebig) *Otto Wir hatten Straußberg auch ohne ihn bekommen! Barbara Warum habt Ihr nicht?* (Wildenbruch's *Die Quiltzows*, 2, 4)

### THE USE OF *haben* AND *sein*.

191. The Germans have not yet developed in their language the idea of tense pure and simple as in modern English. In German, tense is closely associated with aspect (see 164), so that each compound tense except the future has two different tense forms for the two different aspects, one with *haben*, one with *sein*. Hence the use of *haben* and *sein* as auxiliaries of tense presents peculiar difficulties to the English speaking student, as the German has two auxiliaries for the one *to have* in English.

The following distinctions between the use of *haben* and *sein* are to be observed.

#### 1 *Haben* is used

1 With transitives. *Ich habe den Brief geschrieben* I have written the letter, originally a present tense. *I have the letter in a written condition*.

2 With durative intransitives, i.e. such as represent an act as continuing, in order to indicate the completion of the activity. *Ich habe gearbeitet, sie hat gesungen, wir haben gelacht. Sie hat lange gelitten. Er hat lange geirrt und geschwankt, ehe er den Boden fand, darin Wurzel zu fassen ihm beschieden war. Es hat geregnet.*

3 With terminate (175 Note, last par.) intransitives to denote the completion of an act as a whole without reference to the idea of duration but with *sein* according to 4 (2nd par.) when the attention is directed to a change of place and to only one point of the activity, either to the beginning or to the end or result. *Der Schiffer hat* (to denote an act) or *ist* (to denote a change of place, the beginning of the voyage) *abgestoßen. Er hat* (to denote an act) or *ist* (to denote the end of the act and the resulting change of place) *gerückt. Der Habicht hat* (act) *auf Tauben gestoßen* came upon by chance but *Das Schiff ist* (result) *auf den Grund gestoßen. Die Flotte hat* (act) or *ist* (result) *gelandet. Er hat* (act) or *ist* (result) *über den Bach gesetzt. Er hat* (act) *geëilt, zu seinen Eltern zu kommen*, but *Er ist* (goal) *nach Hause geeilt. Er hat* (to denote an act of only a moment's duration) *nicht gezeugt. He did not win. Er hat* (act) *der Schlange auf den Kopf getreten. In Zwölf Bobs hatten so innerhalb einer Stunde gestartet* (*Frankfurter Zeit.*, Feb. 1914) *hatten* represents the starting in each case as a momentary act, something complete in itself, not the beginning of a long ride, but of course *sein* is used in *Der französische Aviatiker Poulet, der vor einigen Tagen gestartet ist und die 25000 Kilometer lange Luftreise in 30 Tagen zurückzulegen gedenkt* (*Das Berliner Tageblatt*, Oct. 29, 1919).

4 With perfective intransitives—point action intransitive verbs denoting not an act as a whole but only one point in the activity, either the beginning or the end—so far as they are non-mutative, i.e. do not indicate a change of place or condition. *Er hat laut aufgelacht. He broke out into a loud laugh. Der Regen hat aufgehört. Der Sturm hat ausgetobt. The storm has spent its fury.*

On the other hand, *sein* is used with mutative perfective intransitives, i.e. point action intransitives denoting only one point in the activity, either the beginning or the end in connection with a change of place or condition, ex-

pressed in an attained or contemplated goal or a resultant state. This goal or state is either (1) a final destination or condition: *Er ist eben angekommen, er ist nach Hause geritten, er ist heute gestorben, die Blumen sind abgeblüht* (*faded*, indicating a resultant state, but to indicate merely the end of an activity *der Weizen hat abgeblüht* *the wheat has ceased to blossom*); or (2) the beginning of a new state or activity: *er ist eingeschlafen, aufgewacht, errötet, abgefahren*, literally *he has gotten into sleeping, waking, &c.* The former class is called effective perfectives, the latter ingressive perfectives. Originally all these forms were present tenses, a present tense form of *sein* in connection with a perfect participle, which was originally felt as a predicate adjective expressing a resultant state. The full treatment of these perfectives is given in II below. The boundary lines of usage between *haben* and *sein* are not at every place clearly drawn. Earlier in the period *haben* was more widely used than to-day, especially in the North and Midland, as can be seen in II. B. c; C. 1. a and 2. a; D below. It has, however, under North German influence made small gains in the one group described in II. A. *Note*. Also in other groups the N.G. tendency toward *haben* occasionally manifests itself in the literary language, but in general S.G. usage, which favors a more liberal employment of *sein*, has prevailed. In English the development has been in the opposite direction, for *to be* has been entirely replaced here by *to have*, except in certain cases where *to be* may still be used to express the idea of a *state* or *result*: The melancholy days *are* come (Bryant). When he awoke, the boys of the village *were* gathered round him.

*Note.* The transitives *anfahren* to speak harshly to, rebuke, *angehen* to ask, solicit, concern, attack, *anlaufen* to touch (call) at (a port), *anwandeln* to come over, *durchfahren* to drive thru, *durchgehen* to go thru or over, *durchlaufen* to run thru or over, *durchwandern* to walk thru, *durchziehen* to travel thru, *eingehen* to enter into (a contract, &c.), *passieren* to pass (as a verb of motion), *überkommen* to come over, *seize*, are not only conjugated with *haben*, but also not infrequently with *sein*, as the force of the simple verb, which is primarily an intransitive conjugated with *sein*, asserts itself: *Bin ich ihn angefahren: Was er da beim Herd zu tun hätt?* (Rosegger's *Martin der Mann*, p. 76). *Sie hatten schon immer allerhand im Halbschlaf gehört: Türen werfen, die laute Donnerstimme des Vaters; aber es war sie nichts angegangen* (concerned) (H. Böhlau's *Adam und Eva*, chap. ii). *Das ganze Dorf war ich schon durchwandert von einem Ende zum andern* (Paul Keller's *Waldwinter*, IV). *Der Bischof Wedekind bereute nicht selten gar sehr den Handel, welchen er mit dem Abt Heinrich zu Fulda eingegangen war* (Raabe's *Die Hämelschen Kinder*, chap. iii). *Hannover* (ship) *ist* gestern Kap Henry passiert (*Hamburgischer Correspondent*, May 30, 1901; five times with *sein* on one page). *Sie wußte selbst nicht, was sie überkommen war* (Storm's *Zur Wald- und Wasserfreude*, p. 188).

*Ankommen* to seize, come (hard, easy, &c.) for (one), and verbs of motion, as *gehen*, *kommen*, *laufen*, *reiten*, in composition with *vorüber* or *vorbei* (see also 259. 36), are usually conjugated with *sein*, as the force of the simple verb asserts itself: *Denn es war in ein schrecken ankommen* (Luke v. 9). *Sauer ist's mich genug angekommen* (Anzengruber's *Schandfleck*, chap. vii). *Kein Geschöpf bist du vorbeigegangen* (Herder). *Wir sind kein Wirtshaus vorübergegangen, ohne einzukehren* (Blatz).

The transitives *einschlagen* to take (a way, road), *übergehen* to pass over, *umfahren* to drive around, *umgehen* or *umwandeln* to walk around, are occasionally found with *sein* earlier in the period, but are now usually conjugated with *haben*.

Verbs that take a cognate accusative (see 257. 2. A) are not real transitives, and hence usually take *sein* where the simple verb is conjugated with *sein*: *Ich bin so lange Eisenbahn gefahren, daß mich alle Kondukteure kannten*. *Haben* is, however, used here when the idea of motion disappears and that of an act or activity becomes prominent: *Ich hätte* (perhaps under the influence of *J'ai couru le risque*) *Gefahr gelaufen, mich zu verschnappen* (Lessing). *Die Soldaten haben zweimal Sturm gelaufen wider die Mauer* (Sanders's *Wörterbuch*). *Da aber hatte Brinckmann Attacke geritten* (Ernst Heilborn's *Zwei Kanzeln*, I). Present usage, however, inclines sometimes also here toward *sein* in accordance with the general trend of intransitives toward *sein*: *Ich bin (habe) große Gefahr gelaufen* (Blatz). In many other cases the acc. is an adverbial acc. and the verb is to be regarded as intransitive: *Ich bin diesen Weg noch nie geritten*. *Er ist die Zimmer alle durchgegangen*.

## II. *Sein* is only used with intransitives:

1. When the verb is a mutative perfective with effective force, i.e. when the subject is thought of, not as acting, but as resting in a state or condition produced by the action, or as reposing at or moving toward some goal or destination that has been reached or will be reached by means of the activity indicated in the verb: *Das liebe Kind ist unter meinen eigenen Augen verkümmert* *wasted away*, &c. *Er ist seinen Leiden erlegen* *succumbed to*, &c. *Sein Leib ist in Staub zerfallen*. *Die Post ist soeben eingetroffen*. *Er ist nach der Stadt gegangen*. Other examples are given in I. 4 (2nd par.) above and B and C below.

*Note.* In M.H.G. we often even in the South find *haben* where there is a goal expressed: *durch welche schulde die helde her geværn han* (*Nibelungenlied*, Aventure VII) *for what purpose the heroes have come here*. Here *haben* is used as the idea of action in *geværn* is more prominent than that of goal. The mention of the goal here gradually brought these words into relations with pure mutative perfectives, as *kommen*, &c., which are used with a goal and are conjugated with *sein*. Hence *sein* is used here to-day. Compare 175. *Note*, last par.

2. As the resultant condition and the attained goal are not only the outcome of an activity but also often the commencement of something new, *sein* often has ingressive force and points to the beginning of a state or activity:



Sein Herz ist zu ihr in Liebe entbrannt His heart has become inflamed with love for her. Er ist abgereist He has started on a journey. Other examples are given in I. 4 (2nd par.) above and in A, B, and C below. In the category explained in A and *Note* thereunder South Germans prefer sein to haben in order that they may give expression to the ingressive idea.

3. Sein is often used with certain verbs of motion pure and simple without mention of a goal or destination, for the reason that, being so often used with these words when a destination is expressed, it has become associated with them and remains even when there is no reference to a goal. Examples are given in C. 2. a and D.

These are the general principles which may serve as a general guide. The detailed treatment follows:

Sein is used as an auxiliary of tense:

A. With two verbs of rest, sein to be and bleiben to remain Er ist lange im Gefängnisse gewesen. Er ist den ganzen Abend zu Hause geblieben. This little list only represents the literary usage of the North. In the literary language of the South the list is larger. See *Note* below.

Die Buchen waren doch dem Zeitzeichen widerstanden (Stiller's Studien 2. 92)

B. With verbs which represent the subject as resting in a new state or condition as the result of a change brought about by the action of the verb. The idea of rest is contained in the auxiliary, that of action is contained in the verb, and that of change from or into may lie:

a. In some prefix of the verb such as ent away, from, transition into, er out of, into a state of, ver to the end of, change into, zer dissolution, zerfallen (fallen apart, scattered, auf reddened out).

The blooming away in death has arisen. Er

Hans ist aufgewacht. Hans ist eingeschlafen. Gestern Abend ist einer im Fluß ertrunken.

b. In some prepositional phrase or in a predicate adjective: *Der Wein ist* (to denote resultant state) *zu Essig gegoren*, but *Der Wein hat* (to denote an act) *gegoren*. *Der Wein ist klar gegoren*. *Er ist ganz blau gefroren*. The meaning has such a power over the form of conjugation that some verbs which usually take *haben* are conjugated with *sein* when they indicate a change of condition: *Eh, da müßte der Junge doch ganz aus der Art geschlagen sein!* (Raabe's *Finkenrode*, chap. xvi).

c. In the meaning of the verb itself in the following verbs when used intransitively: *altern* (also with *haben*) to grow old; *arten* (also with *haben*) *nach* to take after, resemble; *bersten* to burst; *bleichen* (also with *haben*) to turn pale, white; *brechen* to break; *frieren* to freeze; *gedeihen* to thrive; *gelingen* to be successful, and its opposite *mißlingen*; *genesen* to recover from sickness; *geraten* to turn out (to be so-and-so), *stray into*, and *mißraten* to fail, *turn out badly*, *prove a failure*; *gerinnen* to coagulate, congeal; *geschehen* to come to pass, happen; *glücken* to prosper, succeed, and its opposite *mißglücken*; *heilen* (also with *haben*) to heal; *keimen* to spring up, come up, bud out, germinate (in this meaning usually with *haben*); *krepieren* to burst, explode, die (of animals, and in coarse language also of men); *passieren* to happen, occur; *platzen* to explode; *quellen* to swell (of wood, &c.); *reißen* to break, tear; *rosten* (also with *haben*) to grow rusty; *scheitern* to be shipwrecked; *schleißen* to split (intrans.), wear out by use (intrans.); *schmelzen* to melt; *schwären* (also with *haben*) to fester, suppurate; *schweigen* or *geschweigen* to become silent, still in use in early N.H.G., as in Acts xv. 13, but now replaced by *verstummen*; *schwellen* to swell up; *spleißen* to split (intrans.); *sprießen* or *sprossen* to sprout up, to put forth buds or sprouts (in this meaning usually with *haben*); *springen* to break or burst (intrans.), spring (a leak); *sterben* to die; *wachsen* to grow; *welken* to wither, fade away; *werden* to become; *wurzeln* (sometimes w. *haben*) to take root: *Der Topf ist geborsten*. The pot has burst. *Die Nadel ist gebrochen*. The needle broke. *Getreide, welches angekeimt ist, kann den Nahrungswert nicht mehr haben, als wenn es noch nicht gekeimt hätte* (Bismarck's *Reden*, 10, 147). *Das Holz ist gequollen*. *Die Milch ist geronnen*. *Die Backen sind über Nacht geschwollen*. *Die Feder ist gesprungen*. The spring broke. *Das Schiff war leck gesprungen und drohte zu sinken* (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, March 10, 1906).

Earlier in the period *haben* was used with a number of these verbs and is still found occasionally: *Die arabische Religion und Nationalkultur haßte diese Blumen (der Dichtung), vielleicht hätten sie in Europa der Zeiten auch noch nicht gedeihet* (now *gediehen*) (Herder). *Es hätt' ihm auch geglickt, wenn nicht, &c.* (Wieland). *Wie weit ihr's gelungen hat* (Schiller). *Die verborgenen Klippen, an denen die stolze Vernunft schon gescheitert hat* (id.). *Daß diese Pflanze des nationalen Russentums nur auf Moskauer Boden zu gedeihen vermag und auch nur gediehen hat* (*Gegenwart*, 1887, No. 34).

*Altern*, *arten*, *bleichen*, *frieren*, *heilen*, and *trocknen*, are still conjugated with *haben* when it is desired to emphasize the idea of an act rather than that of a resultant state: *Onkel Harre nämlich hatte in der letzten Zeit so merklich gealtert, daß es selbst für uns, die wir ihn fast täglich sahen, auffällig war* (R. Huch's *Ludolf Urslen*, chap. xxi). But to call attention to a result: *Obleich sie furchtbar gealtert war* (Gutzkow's *R.*, 9, 452). *Es hat (act) gefroren*, but *Das Wasser ist (resultant state) gefroren*. *Die Wunde hat (act) gut geheilt*, but *Die Wunde ist (resultant state) geheilt*. *Die Wäsche hat gut getrocknet*, but *Die Wäsche ist getrocknet*.

Note 1. In using the above words, care must be taken to distinguish between the idea of *transitive* and *intransitive*, as only the latter use requires *sein* in the compound tenses. See 257. 1. b.

Note 2. The meaning has such power over the form of conjugation that some verbs which usually take *haben* are often conjugated with *sein* in those meanings which are similar to those of the verbs in the above list. This is especially true of *einschlagen* (after the analogy of *geraten*) to turn out (to be so-and-so), succeed, and *fehlgeschlagen* (after the analogy of *mißlingen*) to turn out unsuccessful: *Eine politische Spekulation dem alten preussischen Fritz gegenüber ist auch nicht so eingeschlagen, wie man's wünschte und verhoffte* (Raabe's *A. T.*, chap. xiii). Auch die Versuche, selbst die lateinischen Termini (terms) zu verdeutschen, sind immer wieder fehlgeschlagen (H. Wunderlich). *Das Wagnis ist fehlgeschlagen* (*Frankfurter Zeit.*, Aug. 8, 1914). Here as elsewhere, however, the force of the simple verb or the idea of an act asserts itself, and hence we sometimes also find *haben*: *Alle seine Hoffnungen sind oder auch haben ihm fehlgeschlagen* (J. Grimm). *Alle ihre derartigen Versuche haben aber bis jetzt fehlgeschlagen* (*Neue Zürcher Zeit.*, Feb. 16, 1904).

C. With all intransitive verbs of motion from place to place, when the subject is thought of as resting at some goal, or as starting from some point of departure or towards some end or destination.

1. The idea of rest or the beginning of the activity is in *sein*, that of action is contained in the verb, and that of a destination, arrival, departure may lie:

a. In some prefix such as *er out of*, *ent away from*, or in those denoting away, arrival, up, out of, thither, hither, into, upward, forth, towards, down, &c. (*ab*, *an*, *auf*, *aus*, *hin* or *da'hin*, *her* or *da'her*, *ein*, *em'por*, *fort*, *zu*, *wieder*, &c.): *Auf meine Frage ist keine Antwort erfolgt*. No answer has come to my question (lit. *has followed out of it*, i.e. the question). *Er ist dem Gefängnis entsprungen*. He has escaped from prison. *Bei Schmidts ist ein Töchterchen angekommen*. A wee daughter has arrived at Schmidt's. *Er ist die Treppe hinuntergegangen*. *Der Blitz ist herabgeflammt*. *Der Tag ist angebrochen*. *Dunkelheit ist eingebrochen*, but *Der Dieb hat (act) eingebrochen*. *Er ist durch Unglücksfälle ganz heruntergekommen*. Misfortunes have ruined him (lit. He has come down on account of misfortunes). *Er ist abgefahren, abgedampft, ausgekniffen*.

Earlier in the period *haben* could also be used here: *Er hat nider gekniet | vnd sich gelagert wie ein Leve* (Gen. xlix. 9). Thus earlier in the period the idea of the act as a whole was felt more vividly than the local force of the prefix, while to-day attention is uniformly directed to the point of arrival or departure.

The intrans. *umschlagen* to upset (intrans.), *capsize*, *change suddenly* is usually conjugated with *sein* on account of the idea of change of location or state contained in the prefix, altho the



and Er hat auf eine Raupe getreten (id.). Instead of *haben*, however, we often find *sein* here: Du bist mir auf mein Kleid getreten (Fulda's *Jugendfreunde*, 2, 4).

D. With the following growing list of intransitives, in most part simple verbs of motion, *sein* is used even where the destination is not expressed, also where the idea of duration is present, *begegnen* (see a below) to meet, *bekommen* (sometimes with *haben*) to suit, agree with, turn out (well or bad) for one, *desertieren* to desert the army, *fallen* to fall, *fliegen* (except in the one case in C. 2. a) to fly, *fliehen* to flee, *fließen* (see a below) to flow, *folgen* (see a below) to follow, *gehen* to go, *gleiten* to glide, *slip*, *kentern* to upset (of a boat), *kommen* to come, *kriechen* (see a) to crawl, creep, *laufen* to run, *promenieren* to take a walk, *reisen* to travel, *retirieren* to retreat, *rinnen* to run, flow, *scheiden* to depart, separate, *schleichen* to sneak, *schreiten* to step, stride, *schwinden* to disappear, *segeln* to sail, *sinken* to sink, *sprengen* to ride at full speed, *steigen* to rise, *stranden* to run ashore, *straucheln* (see a) to stumble and fall, *stürzen* to fall, tumble, *wandeln* to walk, *wandern* to travel, *journey*, *weichen* to yield, *ziehen* to proceed, move (intrans.): Er ist mir heute begegnet. Wie ist Ihnen das gestrige Fest bekommen (agreed with)? Wessen Uhr ist nun richtig gegangen? (Raabe's *Gutmanns Reisen*, chap. viii). Sie (i.e. die Uhr) ist nie ordentlich gegangen (Heer's *Der König der Bernina*, III). Ich bin den ganzen Tag gelaufen. Zwei Duell... schienen ein rasches Sichnäher an sein Schneidigkeitsideal zu verbürgen und hätten ebensogut wie Wendelins Talente zu großen Hoffnungen berechtigen dürfen, wenn nicht das Gespenst der Entlassung wegen beständig anwachsender Schulden immer nebenher geschritten wäre (Fontane's *Poggenpuhl*, chap. i). Deine treue Liebe ist nicht geschwunden.

It should be remembered that *haben* was much more common here earlier in the period: Denn wir haben nicht den klugen Fabeln gefolgt (2. Peter, I. 16). Mein fus hat gestrauchelt (Ps. xciv. 18). Nur einem Traurigen hab' ich begegnet (Schiller's *Jungfrau*, 3, 4). Survivals of this former usage can still be found: Ich habe heute früh Doktor Mettner begegnet (Schnitzler's *Das Vermächtnis*, p. 112), *haben* being most common with *begegnen*, as in this and the following example, in connection with an accusative object, altho the dative is also sometimes found here and in connection with *sein* is the usual construction. Auf einem Waldgang nun habe ich den Riedel (name) begegnet (Rosegger's *Sonnenschein*, p. 2). Also in case of other of these verbs do we sometimes find *haben* in accordance with older usage, especially in the North, where there is still a distinct feeling here for the idea of an act or activity: Zwischen uns hat's schon manchmal auf Hieb und Stich gegangen (Otto Ernst's *Jugend von heute*, 1, 15) = Wir haben auf Hieb und Stich gefochten. Das tut sie immer, aus Spaß, wenn ich so toll gelaufen habe (Frenssen's *Jörn Uhl*, XIV). So flüsterte der See und die Bäume und der Wind in der Nacht in der Gegend, wo er noch vor vierzehn Tagen gewandelt hatte (id., *Hilligenlei*, p. 571). Et hat alles jot jejangen! (Ponten's *Jungfräulichkeit*, p. 9) = Alles ist gut gegangen. Uns hat es bisher noch nicht schlecht gegangen (Feldpostbrief in *Magdeburger Generalanzeiger*, 1914). In colloquial speech also in the South: Aber erzähl' doch, Fritz! Wie hat es gegangen? (Ludwig Thoma's *Die Lokalbahn*, p. 25), but the "correct" Beringer on p. 53 of the same work says: Nun, wie ist es gegangen?

a. A few of these may take *haben* when the local idea disappears, and they become figurative, especially *begegnen*, in the sense *to meet with* (a difficulty), *meet* (an emergency), *confront*, *coincide with*, and often in the meaning *to treat* (friendly, &c.); *fließen*, *laufen*, *lecken*, and *triefen* in case of a metonymic subject; *folgen* in the sense *to obey*, *follow*; *kriechen* to crawl, *cringe*; *straucheln* to stumble (in a moral sense): Gestern bin ich einem Bekannten begegnet, but Der Lehrer hat den Unarten der Schüler nachdrücklich begegnet and Und in einem andern Punkte hatten Hohenlohes und Bismarcks politische Gedanken sich schon früher harmonisch begegnet (*Kölnische Zeitung*). Er ist or (laying the emphasis upon the idea of a conscious agent acting with intention) hat mir hart begegnet (met or treated). Der Eiter ist aus der Wunde geflossen, but Die Augen haben geflossen. Der Wein ist aus dem Faß gelaufen, but Das Faß hatte schon einige Zeit gelaufen (= geleckt), ehe ich es bemerkte. Das Wasser ist aus dem Kessel geleck, but Der Kessel hat geleckt. Der Schweiß ist von der Stirne getrieft, but Die Stirne hat von Schweiß getrieft. Der Sohn hat dem Vater or dem Rat des Vaters gefolgt. Hätt' ich nur gleich meinem Instinkt gefolgt! Er hat vor ihm gekrochen. Er ist gestrauchelt, but Er hat gestrauchelt (morally). On the other hand, except in the case of a metonymic subject, we perhaps more frequently find *sein* with the above verbs also in figurative use, as the force of the verb in its literal meaning asserts itself: Ferdinand VII. war vor der rauhen Macht Napoleons gekrochen (v. Sybel). Unter diesen Angehörigen war auch ein älterer Bruder von ihm, der ihm bis dahin ganz besonders unliebsam begegnet war (Fontane's *Der Tunnel über der Spree*, V). Ich bin seinem Rate gefolgt (Vogel's *Deutsches Nachschlagebuch*), but Paul in his Wörterbuch says we *must* use *haben* when there is no object at all: Warum hast du nicht gefolgt?

*General Note.* Of course verbs that are usually intrans. and take *sein* are conjugated with *haben* when they become trans.: Ich bin nach Hause gelaufen *I have run home*, but Ich habe mich außer Atem gelaufen *I have run until I am out of breath*. Er ist vom Dach gestürzt und hat dabei ein Kind tot gefallen.

E. Intransitives that denote a beginning or cessation of activity pure and simple without reference to a change of place or condition are usually conjugated with *haben*: Das Spiel hat eben angefangen. Der Regen hat aufgehört. Der Sturm hat ausgetobt. The storm has spent its fury. Drei Tage darauf hatte die alte Lisbeth ausgerungen (Marriot's *Menschlichkeit*). Meine Geschichte hat ausgeklungen (Lauff's *Kärrekiek*, p. 392).

On account of the pronounced ingressive force or the idea of an end or result contained in some of these verbs there is a tendency to employ *sein* instead of *haben*: Das Tier hat (act) or ist (result) verendet. Aber das Wort „Californien“ klang doch wie Gold und Abenteuer, und

es war zuerst vor seinem Ohr ge... , das er in seinem Pate'sen Vaters dessen drohende Verarmung herauszulesen mei... war es geklungen (*had sounded, i.e. the impression had*... stamme von ihrem für ein Mädchen sonderbaren Anz... tzte Schlag war schon fünf Minuten ausgeklungen (*Börne*). Sein aschenfarbenes Gesicht — ein Granatstück hat die Brust zerrissen — ist, soll ich so sagen, ruhig ausgeklungen. Er hat keine Schmerzen gefühlt (*Liliencron's Kriegsnotellen, Anno 1870, Umzingelt*) Die Glocken aber waren verklungen (*Lauff's Karreick, p. 374*)

With such compounds as have a verb in D as a basal component *sein* must be used Die Maschine ist unter starker Belastung angelaufen The machine started, &c

a In North German *anfangen* is not infrequently found with *sein*: Bist du nicht angefan-

## 192. PARADIGM OF THE COMPOUND TENSES OF loben AND fallen.

### Present Perfect Tense

I have praised, &c.

Indic		Subj	
ich habe	} gelobt	ich habe	} gelobt
du hast		du habest	
er hat		er habe	
wir haben		wir haben	
ihr habt		ihr habet	
sie haben		sie haben	

I have fallen (see 191. II D).

Indic		Subj.	
ich bin	} gefallen	ich sei	} gefallen
du bist		du sei(e)st	
er ist		er sei	
wir sind		wir seien	
ihr seid		ihr seiet	
sie sind		sie seien	

### Perfect Infinitive.

gelobt (zu) haben

gefallen (zu) sein

### Perfect Imperative.

2nd per. habe gelobt, hab(e)t gelobt

sei gefallen, seid gefallen

3rd per. er habe gelobt

er sei gefallen, sie seien gefallen

### Past Perfect Tense.

I had praised, &c.

Indic.		Subj.	
ich hatte	} gelobt	ich hatte	} gelobt
du hattest		du hatt(e)st	
er hatte		er hatte	
wir hatten		wir hatten	
ihr hattet		ihr hättet	
sie hatten		sie hatten	

I had fallen, &c.

Indic.		Subj	
ich wäre	} gefallen	ich wäre	} gefallen
du warst		du war(e)st	
er war		er wäre	
wir waren		wir wären	
ihr wart		ihr wär(e)t	
sie waren		sie wären	

### Future Tense.

I shall praise, &c.

Indic.		Subj	
ich werde	} loben	ich werde	} loben
du wirst		du werdest	
er wird		er werde	
wir werden		wir werden	
ihr werdet		ihr werdet	
sie werden		sie werden	

I shall fall, &c.

Indic		Subj	
ich werde	} fallen	ich werde	} fallen
du wirst		du werdest	
er wird		er werde	
wir werden		wir werden	
ihr werdet		ihr werdet	
sie werden		sie werden	

## Future Infinitive.

loben zu wollen

fallen zu wollen

## Future Perfect Tense.

I shall have praised, &amp;c.

I shall have fallen, &amp;c.

Indic.		Subj.		Indic.		Subj.	
ich werde	} gelobt haben	ich werde	} gelobt haben	ich werde	} gefallen sein	ich werde	} gefallen sein
du wirst		du werdest		du wirst		du werdest	
er wird		er werde		er wird		er werde	
wir werden		wir werden		wir werden		wir werden	
ihr werdet		ihr werdet		ihr werdet		ihr werdet	
sie werden		sie werden		sie werden		sie werden	

## Periphrastic Subjunctive.

Past. I should (would) praise,  
fall, &c.Past Perfect. I should (would) have  
praised, fallen, &c.

Past.		Past Perfect.		Past.		Past Perfect.	
ich würde	} loben	ich würde	} gelobt haben	ich würde	} fallen	ich würde	} gefallen sein
du würdest		du würdest		du würdest		du würdest	
er würde		er würde		er würde		er würde	
wir würden		wir würden		wir würden		wir würden	
ihr würdet		ihr würdet		ihr würdet		ihr würdet	
sie würden		sie würden		sie würden		sie würden	

## 193. PARADIGM OF THE COMPOUND TENSES OF sein AND werden.

## Present Perfect Tense.

I have been, &amp;c.

I have become, &amp;c.

Indic.		Subj.		Indic.		Subj.	
ich bin	} gewesen	ich sei	} gewesen	ich bin	} (ge)worden (178. 2. C)	ich sei	} (ge)worden (178. 2. C)
du bist		du sei(e)st		du bist		du sei(e)st	
er ist		er sei		er ist		er sei	
wir sind		wir seien		wir sind		wir seien	
ihr seid		ihr seiet		ihr seid		ihr seiet	
sie sind		sie seien		sie sind		sie seien	

## Perfect Infinitive.

gewesen (zu) sein

(ge)worden (zu) sein (178. 2. C)

## Perfect Imperative.

2nd per. sei gewesen, seid gewesen

sei (ge)worden, seid (ge)worden.

3rd per. er sei gewesen, sie seien  
gewesener sei (ge)worden, sie seien (ge)wor-  
den (178. 2. C).

## Past Perfect Tense.

I had been, &amp;c.

I had become, &amp;c.

Indic.		Subj.		Indic.		Subj.	
ich war	} gewesen	ich wäre	} gewesen	ich war	} (ge)worden (178. 2. C)	ich wäre	} (ge)worden (178. 2. C)
du warst		du wär(e)st		du warst		du wär(e)st	
er war		er wäre		er war		er wäre	
wir waren		wir wären		wir waren		wir wären	
ihr wart		ihr wär(e)t		ihr wart		ihr wär(e)t	
sie waren		sie wären		sie waren		sie wären	

## Future Tense

I shall be, &amp;c

Indic.		Subj	
ich werde	sein	ich werde	sein
du wirst		du werdest	
er wird		er werde	
wir werden		wir werden	
ihr werdet		ihr werdet	
sie werden		sie werden	

I shall become, &amp;c

Ind c.		Subj	
ich werde	werden	ich werde	werden
du wirst		du werdest	
er wird		er werde	
wir werden		wir werden	
ihr werdet		ihr werdet	
sie werden		sie werden	

## Future Infinitive

werden zu wollen

## Future Perfect Tense

I shall have been, &amp;c

Ind c		Subj	
ich werde	gewesen sein	ich werde	sein
du wirst		du werdest	
er wird		er werde	
wir werden		wir werden	
ihr werdet		ihr werdet	
sie werden		sie werden	

I shall have become, &amp;c

Ind c		Subj	
ich werde	(ge)worden sein (178 2 C)	ich werde	(ge)worden sein (178 2 C)
du wirst		du werdest	
er wird		er werde	
wir werden		wir werden	
ihr werdet		ihr werdet	
sie werden		sie werden	

## Periphrastic Subjunctive

Past I should (would) be, become, &amp;c

Past		Past Perfect	
ich wurde	sein	ich wurde	gewesen sein
du wurdest		du wurdest	
er wurde		er wurde	
wir wurden		wir wurden	
ihr wurdet		ihr wurdet	
sie wurden		sie wurden	

Past Perfect I should (would) have been, become, &amp;c

Past		Past Perfect	
ich wurde	werden	ich wurde	(ge)worden sein (178 2 C)
du wurdest		du wurdest	
er wurde		er wurde	
wir wurden		wir wurden	
ihr wurdet		ihr wurdet	
sie wurden		sie wurden	

## THE PASSIVE VOICE

194 The passive voice denotes that the subject receives the action. The passive in German has as in English no special tense or mood forms of its own, but is made up by combining the perfect participle with different auxiliary verbs. The following forms are used in German

1 A *Actional Passive Forms* The usual passive form to express action, i.e. the actional (see 4 below) passive, is formed by combining the various moods and tenses of *werden* to *become* with the perfect participle of the verb to be conjugated, which remains uninflected thruout (pres indic) *ich werde gelobt* I am being praised, *du wirst gelobt*, &c, (past indic) *ich wurde gelobt*, (pres perf indic) *ich bin gelobt worden*, (past perf indic) *ich war gelobt worden*, (future indic) *ich werde gelobt werden*, &c, (pres subjunctive) *ich werde gelobt*, *du werdest gelobt*, &c. The only irregularity in the conjugation is that the perf part of *werden* is here uniformly without the *ge* *worden*, not *geworden*. No passive idea lies in *werden*, as it also when combined with the present infinitive, forms the future active (*ich werde loben*), and the future perfect active when used with the perfect infinitive (*ich werde gelobt haben*). *Werden* retains in the passive its original meaning of *to become*, and thus denotes here a *passing into a state* which is indicated by the perfect participle *ich werde gerettet* I am being rescued, lit I am becoming or am going over into the state of being rescued

B. However, **werden** is not the only auxiliary employed in the actional passive, but **sein** is still, according to a usage prevailing in earlier periods, frequently used, replacing **werden** often in the pres. perfect, past perfect, future perfect, past perfect periphrastic subjunctive, and even regularly replacing it in the imperative, and often in the present infinitive. See *a, b, c*.

*a.* In M.H.G. the pres. perfect was formed by combining the pres. of **sein** with the perfect participle of the verb to be conjugated: (indic.) *ich bin gelobet*. The past perfect was formed by combining the past of **sein** and the participle: *ich was gelobet*. Thus the present perfect and the past perfect of the old actional passive were formed by the aid of the auxiliary **sein** and were exactly the same in form as the present and the past of the modern statal (see 4 below) passive. This former usage still lingers on, especially in the North, tho no longer recognized by grammarians: *Über den Begriff der Philologie ist viel herumgestritten* (H. Paul, Paul's *Grundriß*, p. 1, 2nd ed.). *Im übrigen gibt der Staatsanwalt selbst zu, daß in der Nähe des Postens zweimal scharf geschossen ist* (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Jan. 7, 1914). This form often occurs in the official reports of the Great War: *Der Brückenkopf von Friedrichstadt ist gestern erstürmt* (Sept. 4, 1915). This older usage is quite common with *gebären*: *Ich bin am 23. Mai 1844 geboren* (Wustmann's *Sprachdummheiten*, p. 107, 3rd ed.). The present regular passive forms with the auxiliary **worden** in the present perfect and the past perfect first appear in the thirteenth century, at first, however, very rarely. By the end of the sixteenth century they are fairly well established in the South.

*b.* The regular future perfect and the past perfect periphrastic subjunctive are still avoided on account of their clumsiness and nonconformity to the usual rules for end-stress (215. II. 1. A.), their place being often supplied by combining the future or the past periphrastic subjunctive of **sein** with the perfect part.: *ich werde gelóbt sêin* instead of *ich werde gelóbt wôrden sêin*; *ich würde gelóbt sêin* instead of *ich würde gelóbt wôrden sêin*.

*c.* In an earlier period of the language, **sein** was the more common passive auxiliary in the infinitive and imperative, and it has tenaciously defended these positions against **werden**, as it is still frequently found in the infinitive where we might naturally expect **werden**, and is used as a rule in the imperative, both in the 2nd and 3rd person, altho in the latter also **werden** is found. In the infinitive, **sein** seems to be especially common after the modal auxiliaries, particularly *wollen*: *Wenn er im Lager einherging, wollte er nicht gegrüßt sein* (Ranke). *Nur von dir möchte ich gut genannt sein, was die Welt von mir spricht, ist mir eins* (Heer's *Der König der Bernina*, XVIII). *Diese [Entschuldigung] beruht auf der Befürchtung, daß ich beleidigt sein müsse, an mein Alter erinnert zu werden* (Suttner's *Im Berghause*, p. 93). *Damit soll nicht gesagt sein, daß man nicht auch andere lieben kann* (Bartel's *Geschichte der deutschen Literatur*, II, p. 424). These examples can easily be multiplied, as the construction is still quite frequent, but the use of **werden** here is perhaps more common: *Es muß ja einmal gesagt werden* (Sudermann's *Die Ehre*, 2, 11). In the perfect infinitive, however, the older construction with **sein** may possibly be the preferred one: *Dann erzählte er, daß der junge Mensch seiner Gesundheit sowie seinem Beutel wohl zu viel zugemutet haben und von den Seinen in die Verbannung geschickt sein mochte* (Schubin's *Refugium peccatorum*, V), instead of the clumsy *geschickt worden sein mochte*.

The grammarians often give **werden** as the auxiliary with the passive imperative; usage, however, seems almost wholly upon the side of **sein** in the 2nd person and usually also in the 3rd person, which, however, is in fact the 3rd person of the pres. subjunctive. Second person: *Küsse Lieschen und die Kinder und sei geküßt von Deinem Theodor* (Fontane an seine Frau, March 10, 1857). *Seien Sie gesegnet für alles* (Sudermann's *Die Ehre*, 4, 12). Only rarely here with **werden**: *oder wirt* (older form, now *werde*) *alhie erslagen* (*Parzival*, 267. 20). *Komm — neue Erde will dich umgrünen, | will mit dir sich, der Blume, schmücken, | werde geboren!* (Wildenbruch's *Die Lieder des*



*Euripides*, p. 67) Third person Hier sei es bemerkt Here may it be permitted me to remark Gott sei es gedankt! Thank God for it! Gesegnet sei dein Eingang, liebes Kind! (Rabbe's *Die Leute aus dem Walde* III, chap. vi) Auf einen wichtigen Punkt sei hier noch die Aufmerksamkeit gelenkt (Brugmann's *Kurze vergleichende Grammatik*, p. 289) Sein is also used in a subordinate clause after a verb expressing will, command Herrin, ein alter Brauch | will, daß wenn Ostern kam ins Land, | wenn leise grünt der Dornenstrauch | . . . daß dann die erste Vollmondnacht | fliegend und wiegend sei durchwacht (Sudermann's *Die drei Reiterfedern* 3, 2)

In the following rather rare examples werden is used as auxiliary in the 3rd person Geheiligt werde dein Name (Luther) Ihr seid von mir geschieden — werd' auch mir, | von euch zu scheiden, Kraft und Mut verliehen! (Goethe's *Tasso*, 1, 2) Ewig werde dein gedacht (Schiller's *Siegesfest*) Die Welt will betrogen werden, so werde sie denn betrogen (Über Land und Meer)

The 2nd pers. imperative may be replaced by the imperative of lassen and a dependent infinitive laß dich überreden (familiar form) be persuaded, or allow yourself to be persuaded, laßt euch überreden (pl. of familiar form), lassen Sie Sich überreden (polite form)

2 *Passive with bekommen, kriegen, or erhalten, instead of werden* A peculiar passive construction is often found which deserves attention It is formed by placing the noun which denotes the objective point of the activity in the acc. as the object of the verb bekommen, erhalten, or kriegen (in popular language), and then making the real verb of the sentence an objective predicate in the form of a perfect participle Er hat es gesagt bekommen = Es ist ihm gesagt worden Bekamen Sie das Geld drahtlich angewiesen? Was the money wired to you? Jedermann erhielt 15 Patronen zugezählt 15 teen cartridges were dealt out to each man Ich kriege meine Mühe redlich bezahlt I am well paid for my trouble The passive idea here lies in the perf. part The object may be suppressed, and the verb bekommen or erhalten remains almost with the force of the passive auxiliary werden Aber nicht doch — dafür bekomme ich ja von Fraulein Philippi bezahlt (Wildenbruch's *Die Haidfrau*) Don't pay me—I shall be paid by Miss P

A similar construction is found after führen, bringen, and nehmen: Man führte ihn an einem Arm gefaßt He was led along held by one arm Mädchen bringen den Hut auf einer Stange getragen (Schiller's *Tell*, I 2015) Die Dienstenoten brachten kleine Walder in die Öfen geschleppt (Marin Jantschek's *Einer Mutter Sieg* IX) Man nahm ihn gefangen

3 *Passive with gehören* Another passive construction is not infrequently found which is worthy of attention by reason of its pithy terseness Instead of müssen ought (a necessity which lies in the nature of things) with a dependent passive infinitive a simple tense of gehören to belong, be fit is used followed by the perfect participle of the verb to be conjugated, which serves as a predicate complement Ein entlaufen Schaf gehort in seinen Stall geliefert (Schöffel's *Ekkehard*, chap. xxi) A runaway sheep ought to be brought back to its fold Sauber gehalten gehort ein Kind und wohl gepflegt (Hermine Villingen's *Romans Hull*) Dem gehört das Handwerk gelegt (Karrillon's *O Domina Mea*, p. 123)

4 *Actional and Statal Passive* Different from the above passive forms denoting an action is a statal passive which does not denote an action at all, but only a state It is formed by combining the perfect participle of the verb to be conjugated with the different moods and tenses of the auxiliary sein. The difference between this statal passive and the actional passive is indicated by the difference in the meaning of the two auxiliaries employed The forms with werden denote an action going on or an act conceived as a whole, while the forms with sein denote a state that has resulted from previous action Das Haus wird angestrichen The house is being painted and Das Haus wird oft angestrichen The house is often painted but Das Haus ist angestrichen The house is painted Die Tür wird jeden Abend um sechs Uhr geschlossen The

door is shut (i.e. some one shuts the door) every evening at six, but Die Tür ist geschlossen The door is shut. Die Schiffbrüchigen sind mit großer Gefahr der Brandung entrissen worden, jetzt sind sie gerettet. Where we might upon the first thought expect to find a statal passive form with sein we often find an actional form with werden, as not the idea of a *physical state* is before the mind but that of a *mental operation* which the mind itself performs over and over again, or performs each time anew when the subject presents itself: Jeder Kreis wird durch jeden Durchmesser in zwei gleiche Teile geteilt Every circle is divided by each of its diameters into two equal parts. Europa wird von Asien durch das Uralgebirge getrennt. For the origin of the actional passive see 190. 1. C. a. Note 1.

The statal passive forms a complete conjugation in all the moods and tenses: (pres. indic.) ich bin erschöpft I am exhausted; (past indic.) ich war erschöpft I was exhausted; (pres. perf.) ich bin erschöpft gewesen I have been in an exhausted condition; (past. perf.) ich war erschöpft gewesen I had been in an exhausted condition (at a time before a certain event in the past); (future) ich werde erschöpft sein There will be a time when I shall be exhausted; (pres. subjunctive) ich sei erschöpft; (past subj.) ich wäre erschöpft; &c.

Note 1. *Characteristic Differences between German and English.* Altho literary English is lacking in accurate passive forms colloquial speech has even fuller forms than German: (actional passive) The house often gets painted; (progressive actional passive) The house is getting painted; (statal passive) The house is painted. In German there is no progressive form, but this idea is sometimes expressed by combining a prepositional phrase with the perfect participle begriffen: Das Haus ist im Bau begriffen The house is being built. Andere Pläne zur Erledigung der Frage sind in der Ausarbeitung begriffen.

Note 2. *Characteristic Differences between the Actional and the Statal Passive.* The characteristic difference of nature between these two forms often becomes marked in the Present perfect. This tense represents the act as completed and the state as past at the present time, but in case of the actional form the results of the completed activity often remain intact at the present time, while in case of the statal form the state once obtaining is represented as having passed entirely away: Die Wände sind eben tapeziert worden The walls have just been papered and are now of course in fine condition, but Der Wirt: Das Zimmer ist doch sonst galant (= elegant) und tapeziert — Just: Gewesen! (Lessing's *Minna von Barnhelm*, 1, 2) Landlord: The room is elegant and papered — Just: It *has* been. Notice that to *emphasize* the idea that the condition has passed away the perfect participle gewesen is strongly accented in German, while in English the personal part of the verb is stressed. In normal German speech, however, the perfect participle of the verb to be conjugated is stressed here as elsewhere, for the mere use of gewesen usually indicates that the state has passed away: Diese Zeitschrift ist sehr verbreitet gewesen This periodical *has* been widely read. In English the personal part of the verb must also in normal speech be accented as otherwise the statal form could not be distinguished from the actional. On the other hand, the present perfect of the actional passive often points to a past activity that has left behind no results which remain intact at the present time, but also here the actional form differs distinctly from the statal. The former merely points to a past act or activity, while the latter indicates that the past state continued for a while before it passed away: Er ist viel geliebt und viel gehaßt, hoch bewundert und tief verachtet worden (Kippenberg's *Handbuch der deutschen Literatur*, p. 385), but Gottfried ist nicht nur von den Vertretern der Literatur auf lange Zeit gekannt und geschätzt gewesen, sondern er wirkte auch lebendig ein auf die Dichtwelt (Bechstein's *Einleitung zu Tristan*, p. xxv).

What has just been said of the force of the present perfect tense in the passive does not apply at all to indirect discourse, for here the present perfect represents often the past tense of the direct, so that the present perfect of the statal passive merely points in indirect discourse to a state of things in the past without reference to the present: Es ist die herrschende Ansicht, daß während der Blütezeit der mittelhochdeutschen Literatur eine von den Mundarten verschiedene Gemeinsprache bestanden habe, die allerdings nicht so fest geregelt gewesen sei wie die neuhochdeutsche Schriftsprache (Paul's *Mittelhochdeutsche Grammatik*, p. 4). As a state of things in the past implies that the action which has produced the state has already taken place, the present perfect of the statal passive is in indirect discourse in the new sequence (171. 2. B), which avoids past tense forms, much used to represent an actional past perfect of the direct. Examples are given in 171. 2. B. e. This same present perfect of the statal passive is of course regularly used as an actional past perfect tense also in direct discourse in dialects which use the present perfect for the past in narrative, for their present perfect statal passive always points to a past state and hence often indicates that the action which has produced the state has already taken place: Die ist aber nicht ausgestiegen, sondern hat immerzu nach den Fenstern von unsere Wohnung raufgesehen, wo eben Licht angesteckt gewesen ist (Therese in Sudermann's *Hermat*, 1, 10).

5. *Passive with Verbs governing the Genitive or Dative.* In case of verbs which govern a case other than the acc. the construction must be impersonal, the gen. or dat. being retained in the passive: Meine Mutter hat oft gesagt, sie wolle in das Wasser gehen, da sei ihr allein geholfen. Weshalb habt ihr sie denn in die Erde gegraben, wenn ihr im Wasser geholfen war? (Raabe's *Schüdderump*, chap. xiv). See also 219. 5. A (last par.).

## 195. SYNOPSIS OF loben IN THE ACTIONAL PASSIVE.

### Indicative.

### Subjunctive.

Pres. I am praised, am being praised, &c.

ich werde gelobt

ich werde gelobt

Past. I was praised, was being praised, &c.

ich wurde (or ward) gelobt

ich würde gelobt

Pres Perfect I have been praised &c

ich bin gelobt worden      ich sei gelobt worden

Past Perfect I had been praised, &c

ich war gelobt worden      ich wäre gelobt worden

Future I shall be praised &c

ich werde gelobt werden      ich werde gelobt werden

Future Perfect I shall have been praised &c

ich werde gelobt worden sein      ich werde gelobt worden sein

Past Periphrastic Subjunctive ich wurde gelobt werden I should (would) be praised

Past Perfect Periphrastic Subjunctive ich wurde gelobt worden sein I should (would) have been praised

Imperative

2nd sg sei gelobt (see 194 I B c) be praised

3rd sg er sei gelobt, or er werde gelobt let him be praised

1st pl seien wir gelobt let us be praised

2nd pl seid gelobt, seien Sie gelobt be praised

3rd pl sie sollen gelobt werden (or sein) they shall be praised

Infinitive

Pres gelobt (zu) werden (or sein, see 194 I B c) to be praised

Perf gelobt worden (zu) sein to have been praised

Participles

Used as a Verb, Adjective, or Substantive

Pres wanting, but often supplied by the perfect gelobt (see 183 3)

Perf gelobt, or more rarely gelobt worden (see 184 c)

#### SUBSTITUTES FOR THE PASSIVE

196 I In German more strictly than in English we are confined to the rule that *the passive is only used when it is desired to especially represent the subject as the objective point of an activity*. Often where in English the passive form is common or required, some other construction is used in German. The most common substitutes for the passive are the following

1 Very frequently man with an active verb. Bei uns schließt man die Türen um 10 Uhr. With us the doors are shut at 10 o'clock.

a This construction is always used in German where in English an infinitive follows the passive of verbs of hearing, perceiving, knowing, thinking, believing, finding, or where the passive form of these verbs is introduced by anticipatory *it* pointing forward to a following subject clause. Man horte ihn sagen. *He was heard to say*. Man fand ihn schlafen. *He was found to be sleeping*. Man sah, daß es zu spät war. *It was seen that it was too late*.

2 The simple reflexive construction described in 218 3 A and B

3 The use of lassen reflexively with a dependent infinitive. See 218 3 A a

4 Also in a number of other cases active forms in the German are rendered by passives in English

a. The auxiliary **sollen** is often rendered by *is said to, is expected to, is supposed to*: **Er soll sehr reich sein** He is said to be very rich. **Die Königin soll heute kommen** The queen is expected to arrive to-day. **Dieses Gemälde soll (is supposed) von Rubens sein.**

b. The auxiliary **dürfen** is often rendered by *to be allowed*: **Er darf nicht gehen** He is not allowed to go.

c. The active infinitive very often has passive force. See 187. 1.

d. The modal verbals (see 180. A. a, b, c and B), tho active in form, are passive in force.

e. An impersonal idiom is sometimes rendered by a passive: **Es bedarf keiner Hilfe** No help is needed.

f. The German intrans. **ertrinken** (of human beings) and **ersaufen** (of animals) are translated by *to be drowned*: **Der Knabe ertrank.** **Die Katze ersoff.**

g. In its intransitive use **heißen** is usually rendered passively in English *to be called*: **Herodot heißt der Vater der Geschichte** Herodotus is called the father of history. **Wie heißt das Kind?** What is the child called, or what is the child's name?

h. The intrans. **erschrecken** is translated by *to be frightened*: **Erschrick nur nicht!** Don't be frightened!

i. In German the passive is in general very little used in connection with an infinitive: He was known to be honest **Man wußte, daß er ehrlich war.** For fuller statement see 1. a above and 185. B. I. 2. d. (4). With **lehren** and **heißen**, however, the passive may be used here. See 178. 2. B. d. See also 185. B. I. 2. c. Note.

5. The English passive construction with verbs which take a prepositional object must be rendered in some other way: *He is often spoken of* may be translated by **Man spricht oft von ihm.** The German construction, however, may correspond closely to the English where the preposition has entered into a compound with the verb: *The skiff was run into by a sailboat* **Der Nachen wurde von einem Segelboot angerannt.**

II. *Impersonal Passive.* On the other hand, in its impersonal form, the passive is often used where there is no person or thing represented as being acted on. See 219. 5. B.

## GRADATION (ABLAUT) CLASSES OF THE STRONG VERB.

### VOWEL AND CONSONANT CHANGES.

197. A. *Gradation.* The conjugation of the weak verb is very uniform, and all can in general be conjugated after the model of **loben**, but the strong verb forms its simple tenses and perf. participle by a change of vowel in the stem instead of adding suffixes to the stem. This change of vowel in the different tenses is the result of a different accent which obtained in an earlier period, but is now used to make more clear certain grammatical distinctions such as tense and number. Strong verbs do not all show the same changes of vowel, but subdivide into classes and groups. Each class usually observes within itself a uniform change of vowel in the past tense. The pres. and past tenses cannot have the same vowel. The vowel of the perf. part. is in some groups the same as in the present, in others the same as in the past, or again it may have a different vowel from both. This change of the stem-vowel in the simple tenses and the perf. part. is called gradation. Each class usually has *subdivisions*, differing from each other in the quantity of the vowel or otherwise.

a. The nouns and adjectives made from strong verbs have also a relation to this gradation. Many masculine monosyllabics and feminine dissyllabics, also masculine derivatives in *-er* de-

noting agents and neuter verbal nouns in -e

participle *steigen* to mount ascend past *stieg*, perf part *gestiegen*, der *Steig* path the perfect  
*Steige* path staircase der *Steiger* climber der *Steigende* the one who is now ascending das  
*Steigen* ascending die *Besteigung* des *Berges* the ascending of the mountain der *Stieg* ascent  
*die Stege* (see 198, 2 Division d) staircase der *Hinaufgestiegene* the one who has ascended  
Nouns denoting agents verbal and participial nouns are made as those given above quite  
regularly upon the appropriate gradation form but many other nouns as *die Stege* (see reference  
given above) are seemingly irregularly f  
tion form of the verb as found in earlier

treatment

relation with the present gradation classes

as nouns since they often have retained old gradation forms which the verb has exchanged for newer formations *zahn lame* from the past tense of the M H G *zemen* (now *ziemen*, wk.) *to be becoming* past *zam* (pl *zâmen*) part *gezomen* &c

*b* The gradation classes are very old and in course of centuries changes of gradation in individual words within a group or thruout a group and shifting of words from one group to another have taken place and traces of these former gradation conditions can still be clearly seen and will be re followed by Roman numbers

In dialect the groups do not always corresp always corresp  
for a more popular one is have abandoned their group

In several groups the Middle High German form is given below the New High German form. In this case two vowels are given in the past tense as the past tense had a different vowel in the singular and the plural as can still be seen in old sayings where sometimes a rime has preserved the older form of the plural. *Wie die Alten singen* (as the old ones sing) 'head'. In Luther's language this difference of the past tense is preserved except in *past present* verbs (see 212.1 *wir wurden*). Wherever the vowel of the junctive had throut the singular and plural past present verbs the past of *werden* (past indicative *ich ward*, plural *wir wurden*, subjunctive *ich wurde*, plural *wir wurden*), and other cases mentioned under the definite classes.

Also nouns often show even to this day the plural vowel of the old past tense. Thus (der) Schuß still shows the vowel of the plural of the old past tense of *schießen*.

d Factitive verbs (which show that the subject *makes something do or become something*)  
y mutating the vowel  
} and ch of the stem  
, see 198 1 Division

c) and u  
(Note)  
appear i  
writers beca e more gene al (M H G) ersaufen ersaufen These factitive verbs being  
derivatives are of course weak. Ex erschrecken to be afra d to start with fright erschrick  
nfin from the mutated stem of the past to make start with  
verf part erschreckt, hegen to lie lag, gelegen, but legen  
tzen to sit saß gesessen h t setzen

gesteckt. In older periods when it had the same vowel as the singular, *ich* and *du* have retained the original singular vowel while this vowel has in a number of cases disappeared in the past tense of the corresponding strong verbs as the singular in this tense has often been leveled by the plural. In this way and also thru mutation and the change of the form of the final consonant.

of factitives was formerly upon the verbal suffix, not upon the stem as at present. The change of *ß* and *ch* to *z* and *ck* in the factitive arose from the fact that in prehistoric West Germanic the *j* that was then in the factitival suffix caused the doubling of the final *t* and *k* of the stem, as it later also caused the mutation of the stem vowel. In the O.H.G. period the *t* and *k* shifted to *ß* and *ch*, but double *t* and *k* to *z* and *ck* according to rule. In prehistoric West Germanic the *j* of the factitival suffix did not always double the preceding *t* after a long vowel or diphthong, so that here we find *ß* in some verbs and *z* in others: *flößen* (or less commonly *flözen*; see 199, General Remarks on the 1. Division, *c*), but *beizen* (198. 1. Division, *c*).

B. *A-Mutation*. This is a partial assimilation of the stem vowel to the vowel in the following syllable. The stem vowel *u* was in an earlier period changed to *o*, when an *a*, *e*, or *o* followed in the next syllable, except before a nasal + consonant or before *j*. Thus the perf. participle *geholfen* (O.H.G. *giholfan*) has the mutated *o*, while in *gebunden*, perf. part. of *binden*, a verb belonging to the same gradation class, mutation did not take place, as it was hindered by the *nd* following the stem-vowel. This force of *a*-mutation can be seen only in its effects. It can be better studied in O.H.G. by reason of its preservation of the vowels of the unaccented syllable. See 26. B. One result of this force has been that the third gradation class has been split into different sub-divisions.

Similarly an *i* became in this same older period *e* before *a*, *e*, *o* in the next syllable. For examples see 198. 1. Division, *d*, 2. Division, *d*. See also 26. B.

C. *I-, U-, and Nd-Mutation*:—

a. *I-Mutation of the back vowels*. In the 2nd and 3rd person sing. of the present indic. and thruout the subj. of the past tense mutation is the rule wherever the stem vowel is capable of it. See 26. A. The *i* of earlier periods which has often here been the cause of the mutation has either entirely disappeared or has been reduced to the form of *e*: (2nd pers. sing. of *fahren*) O.H.G. *du ferist*, N.H.G. *du fährst*; (1st pers. sing. of the past subj. of *nehmen*) O.H.G. *nāmi*, N.H.G. *nähme*. In early S.G., mutation in the 2nd and 3rd pers. sing. indic. was not an absolute requirement even in the literary language. In some cases the vowel remained here unchanged, especially *au* before a labial, in other cases usage fluctuated. In S.G. dialect and colloquial language of our time non-mutation here is still quite common: *Du fährst fort?* (Schönher's *Sonnwendtag*, p. 45). See also 201. *f*.

b. *I-, U-, and Nd-Mutation of e to i*. This change of *e* to *i* (see 26. C) brought about in several classes a difference of vowel between the singular and plural of the pres. indic., and also was the cause of splitting the third gradation class into different subdivisions: (pres. tense indic. of *helfen* in O.H.G.) *hilfu*, *hilfis*, *hilfit*, pl. *helfamēs*, *helfet*, *helfant*; but *binden* in the same class takes in O.H.G. (also in N.H.G.) *i* thruout, as it always stands before *n* + *t* or *d*: *bintu*, *bintis*, *bintit*, pl. *bintamēs*, *bintet*, *bintant*. The 1st person sing. of *helfen* is now *ich helfe*, as explained in 201. *f*.

D. *Leveling*. Another force at work among str. verbs is leveling. This is the natural tendency to level out the little irregularities in the conjugation and make it regular. This force has long been at work and is still continuing, as is illustrated below in 200, 2. Division, *a*.

E. *Verner's Law* (see 40. 2. *a*). The effects of a force which was at work in an earlier period upon the consonants of str. verbs—the so-called Verner's Law—can still here and there be seen. Owing to a difference in accent in different conjugational forms of the same word, there arose a difference in the consonants: *ziehen*, *zog*, *gezogen*; *leiden*, *litt*, *gelitten*; *war*, *gewesen*. Thus in the following classes there is occasionally a change in the same word or in related words of *d* to *t*, *h* (now a silent letter) to *g*, and *s* to *r*, as is indicated in each case below.

F. *Differentiation of Forms*. There is a tendency toward the wk. conjugation, and a number of str. verbs have wk. forms alongside of the regular str. ones. Sometimes the wk. and str. forms have the same meaning, sometimes an economic instinct has led to a differentiation of meaning. The wk. forms may be used more in familiar conversation, the str. ones may be choicer or have a slightly different application. Thus in familiar conversation *er scheltet* can be heard, while in choice language the form is *er schilt*. In the literal meaning *gären* to ferment is str., while in figurative language it is wk.: *Der Wein hat gegoren*, but *Es gärte in ihm*. There are also double str. forms. Here the older form is often used in old saws, poetry or elevated prose, while in common conversation the newer form is used. Thus *hub* is often used in poetry, while in prose it is usually replaced by *hob*.

198. I. Class. Gradation:

Pres.	<i>ei</i>	Past	<i>ī</i> and <i>ie</i>	Perf. Part.	<i>ī</i> and <i>ie</i> .
M.H.G.	<i>ī</i>		<i>ei</i> or <i>ē-ī</i> (197. A. <i>c</i> )		<i>ī</i> .

This class falls into two divisions strictly on the basis of the closing consonant of the stem. If the stem terminates in *ch*, *f*, *ß*, *t* (which includes *leiden* and *schneiden* by virtue of their past *litt*, *schnitt* and perf. part. *gelitten*, *geschnitten*), the vowel of its past tense and perf. part. is short *i*, while it is in all other cases long *i* (written *ie*).

*Historical Note*. The explanation of this division lies in an earlier condition of things. Formerly the vowel of the perf. part. and the plural of the past tense was uniformly short *i*. At the beginning of the modern German period all short vowels became long in open syllables; hence, as *ch*, *ff*, *ss*, *t* after a short root vowel according to 4. 1. *b*. Note formed a closed syllable, words in which *ch*, *ff*, *ss*, *t* followed a short root vowel could not participate in that movement which made the short root vowel of words long in open syllables. Thus verbs of this class fell into two groups in the perf. part. and the plural of the past tense, one with the new vowel gradation *ī* (written *ie*), the other with the old short *i*. Formerly the singular of the past tense of verbs in this class had a double vowel gradation, *ei* in

## 1 Division Gradation

Pres	ei	Past	i	Perf	Part	i
M H G	i		ei (197. A c)			i

Examples *beißen*, *biß*, *gebissen*, *schleifen*, *schliff*, *geschliffen*, *leiden*, *litt*, *gelitten*, *reiten*, *ritt*, *geritten*

The following belong here *beißen* to bite, *sich befleissen* to apply oneself to, but *sich befleißigen* with the same meaning is wk, *bleichen* (modern representative of the two M H G verbs *blichen* str, and *bleichen* [from adj *bleich*] wk) to turn pale, white, bleach (intrans) grow wan, fade, sometimes str usually wk in the first three meanings but str in the last two especially in compounds, *erbleichen* (modern representative of the two M H G verbs *erblichen*, str, and *erbleichen*, wk) to turn pale turn fade, die wk in the first meaning, str in the last, str or wk in the others, wk especially in the past tense and str in the perf part, *verbleichen* (modern representative of the two M H G verbs *verblichen*, str, and *verbleichen*, wk) to turn pale (now little used in this meaning), to grow wan, fade, die str in the last meaning and str or less commonly wk in the others, the transitive factitive *bleichen* (from adj *bleich*) to bleach, turn white is always wk either in simple form or in compounds, *gleichen* to resemble, smooth level, make equal, intrans with dat in the first meaning, trans with the acc in the other meanings and in all compounds in early N H G wk, and still so in all the meanings except the first where it is now always str, also usually str in compounds, *gleiten* to glide, slide, sometimes wk, and always so in *begleiten* (from *begeleiten*, and thus not related to *gleiten*) to accompany, but rarely so in the compound *ausgleiten* to slip, *greifen* to seize, *keifen* (rather coarse word) to chide, 'jaw,' str in the language of Goethe and some other writers, but now commonly wk as originally, *kneifen* (rarely wk) to pinch, *leiden* to suffer, but the factitive *verleiden* (from adj *leid*) to render unpleasant, spoil, set against, wk, *pfeifen* to whistle, *reißen* to tear, pull, break away from, *reiten* to ride on horseback, *schleichen* to sneak, *schleifen* in M H G to slide, glide, and still with this meaning in Austria, as in *Als der Schlitten vorüberschliff* (Rosegger's *Der Adlerwirt*, p 37), and also elsewhere in the narrowed meanings to shuffle with the feet and to slide on the ice (in these two meanings also wk), and from the idea of sliding back and forth on a surface come the common meanings to polish, grind, *schleifen* (now rare, see factitive in c) to split (intrans), wear out by use (intrans), *schmeißen* to fling, slam, *schneiden* to cut, *schreiten* to stride, *spleißen* to split (trans or intrans), sometimes wk, *streichen* to stroke, cross out, *streiten* to contend, *weichen* to yield, but the factitive *weichen* to soften, soak, from the adj *weich* soft, is always wk, also other verbs belong here, but only rarely, and hence are not given, see 205

a As the past tense and perf part contain a short vowel a single final consonant must in these forms be doubled to show that the vowel is short and a final d is changed to t (197 E) and then doubled *reiten*, *ritt*, *geritten*, *schneiden*, *schnitt*, *geschnitten* For change from ß to ss see 4 2 D p 17

b Luther still used a different vowel in the sing and pl of the past tense as in M H G *ich reit*, *wir ritten* See Historical Note above This old usage is still preserved in the old past tense *ich weiß* I know, *wir wissen*, but the form is now felt as an irregular present See 212 1

c The factitives (197 A d) in this division have still the vowels of the M H G period when the past sing contained an ei *beißen* to make bite into said of liquids in the mechanical arts as to stain (wood) soak (wood) corrode, &c *leiten* to lead lit to make go thus preserving an older meaning of *leiden* (formerly to go pass thru now only used in the derived meanings to experience suffer) *reißen* to provoke lit to cause to break away from one's self control *schleifen* lit to make slide, hence to drag trail race (a fortress), *schleußen* to split, to cause to wear out wear

*out* (trans.), often confounded with the intrans. str. *schleissen to split, wear out*, hence the trans. is wk. or more commonly str.

d. A number of monosyllabic and dissyllabic nouns show the vowel of the past tense: *der Biß bite, der Schnitt cut, der Pfiff whistle (sound); die Schnitte slice, &c.*

*Das Blech* (from *bleichen* in its older meaning *to shine, glitter*) *sheet-metal* shows the mutated (*a*-mutation; see 26. B) form of this vowel.

Some nouns have the vowel of the present tense: *der Streit contention, die Schneide edge* (of a knife, sword), &c.

## 2. Division. Gradation:

Pres. ei	Past ie	Perf. Part. ie
M.H.G. ī	ei or ē-ī (197. A. c)	ī.

Examples: *bleiben, blieb, geblieben; reiben, rieb, gerieben.*

Here belong: *bekleben* (simple *kleiben* now entirely lost) *to take root, stand firmly rooted*, now rare and confined to poetry; *bleiben* *to remain*; *gedeihen* (see *e*) *to thrive*, earlier in the period occasionally wk.; *fleihen* (N.G., sometimes wk.) *to put in order, arrange, fold*; *leihen* *to borrow, lend*; *meiden* *to avoid*; *preisen to praise*, earlier in the period wk., now str., but the compound *lobpreisen to praise in song*, str. or wk., *lobpries* or *lobpreis(e)te, gelobpriesen, lobgepriesen, or gelobpreist*; *reiben* *to rub*; *scheiden VII to separate*, as a verb now always str. according to its present class, but in early N.H.G. (see Gen. xiii. 14) still in class VII, 1. Division, which former inflection still survives in the adjective participle *bescheiden* (see 204. 1. Division, *a*), or in transitive use sometimes wk., as in Gen. i. 4; *scheinen* *to shine, seem*; *schreiben* *to write*; *schreien* *to scream*, in early N.H.G. also wk.; *schweigen* *to be silent*; *speien to spew, vomit* (fire, &c.), *spit* (formerly common in this meaning, now restricted to *Blut speien, Feuer und Flammen speien, &c.*), earlier in the period also wk., and still wk. in biblical and popular language; *steigen* *to mount*; *treiben* *to drive, impel*; *weisen to point out, show*, in early N.H.G. also wk. now str.; *zeihen to accuse*, sometimes wk.

a. Luther still used a different vowel in the sing. and pl. of the past tense, as in M.H.G.: *ich schreib, wir schrieben.*

b. The factitives (197. A. d) are: *kleiben to make stick, paste*, now little used, largely replaced by *kleben* (see *c*); *geschweigen or schweigen* (early N.H.G. and later, now only in limited use in the literary language) *to silence, hush*: *Du weißt, die Mutter hing oft ein Tuch über, um ihn (i.e. den Hänfling) zu geschweigen, wenn er so recht aus Kräften sang* (Storm's *Immensee*). *Er, der mit seinem Überlegenheitslächeln jede Unterhaltung zu Boden schweigte* (Carl Spitteler's *Imago*, p. 167).

c. The vowel *i* of the old plural of the past tense still appears in derivatives: O.H.G. *klīban* *to stick* (intrans.), which formerly belonged to this class and is still represented here by the poetic compound *bekleben* given in the list above, is the source of two derivatives: *klimmen* (O.H.G. *klīmban III*) *II to climb* (lit. *to stick*), which shows the gradation *i* of the old plural of the past tense of *klīban* and an insertion of a nasal (*m*) between the stem vowel and the consonantal termination, which, however, later became assimilated to the nasal; the wk. *kleben* (O.H.G. *klebēn*) *to stick*, at first intrans., later also trans., replacing largely in the latter function the factitive *kleiben* (see *b*). *Kleben* shows the gradation *i* of the old plural of the past tense of *klīban* changed to *e* under the influence of *a*-mutation (see 26. B). The wk. *zeigen to show*, from *zeihen to accuse* (lit. *to show something against*), has preserved the vowel of the old sing. of the past tense. The *g* instead of *h* is the result of the operation of Verner's Law (197. E).

d. *Der Steig path, die Steige path, staircase*, show the vowel of the present tense; *der Unterschied difference, der Stieg ascent*, show the new vowel of the past tense, while in *die Stege* (S.G. from O.H.G. *stega*) *staircase, der Steg path*, we see the mutated (*a*-mutation; see 26. B) form of the plural vowel of the old past. *Die Trift* (from *treiben*, hence *a place where cattle are driven*) *pasture* and *die Schrift writing* show the vowel *i* of the old perfect participle and the old plural of the past tense. *Zeichen sign, mark*, related to *zeihen to accuse* (lit. *to show, point out something against*), has preserved the vowel of the old sing. of the past.

e. The old perf. part. of *gedeihen*, according to Verner's Law (197. E), was *gediegen*. This form still exists, but is now felt as an adjective with the meanings *solid, genuine, sterling*, meanings which are easily brought into relation to the primary signification of the verb. In the present period the older participle has been replaced by the leveled form *gediehen*, which has resulted from the tendency to level out little inequalities and to extend the same consonant throughout the same inflectional system.

## 199. II. Class. Gradation:

Pres. ie, e, au, ü, i, ä, ö	Past ǝ	Perf. Part. ǝ.
M.H.G. ie (iu in sing., ie in pl.)	ou or ǝ-ǝ (197. A. c)	ǝ.



This class falls into two divisions strictly on the basis of the closing consonant of the stem. If the stem terminates in *ch*, *f*, *ß*, *sch*, *t* (which includes *sieden* by virtue of its perf. part. *gesotten*), a double consonant or a combination of consonants, the vowel of the past tense and perfect part is short *o*, while it is in all other cases long *o*. For some reason, however, *bieten* does not follow this law.

### 1. Division. Gradation:

Pres.	ie, <i>ē</i> , <i>ī</i> , au, <i>ō</i>	Past <i>ō</i>	Perf. Part. <i>ō</i> .
M.H.G.	ie (iu in sing., ie in pl.)	ou or <i>ū-ū</i> (197. A. c)	<i>ō</i> .

Examples: *fließen*, *floß* (pl. *wir flossen*), *geflossen*; *sieden*, *sott*, *gesotten*.

Here belong: 1. In *ie*: *verdrießen* to vex; *fließen* to flow; *gießen* to pour; *kriechen* to crawl, creep; *genießen* to enjoy; *riechen* to smell; *schießen* to shoot; *schließen* (S.G.) to slip; *schließen* to shut, close; *sieden* (choicer and less common than *kochen* to *boil*, *cook* and with a narrower range of meanings as it only means to *boil*) to *boil*, str. only when transitive and used of eggs and the like, which, when 'done,' are said to be *gesotten*, as in *gesottene Krebse*, *weich*, *hart gesottene Eier*, *Das Fleisch ist gar gesotten*, but elsewhere weak, as in *Das Wasser hat gesiedet*, *Mein Blut hat gesiedet*, *Ich siedete Wasser* (but *Ich sott Eier*); *sprossen* to *sprout*, sometimes wk., now largely confined to choice language, elsewhere usually replaced by the wk. *sprossen*; *triefen* to drip, *troff*, *getroffen*, now just as commonly wk. in the past and usually wk. in the perf. part., so that the form may be distinguished from *getroffen*, perf. part. of *treffen*.

2. In *e*: *dreschen* (du *drischest* or *drischst*, er *drischt*) III (O.H.G.), IV (M.H.G.) to *thresh*, perhaps more commonly in Class III, 3. Division, rarely wk.; *fechten* (du *fichtst*, er *ficht*) III (O.H.G. in the South and the Midland and M.H.G. in the Midland), IV (M.H.G. in the South) to *fight*; *flechten* (du *flichtst*, er *flicht*) III (O.H.G. in the South and the Midland and M.H.G. in the Midland), IV (M.H.G. in the South) to *braid*, *plat*, *plait*, rarely wk.; *melken* (du *milchst*, er *milkt*, or more commonly du *melkst*, er *melkt*) III to *milk*, str. and wk. forms in past tense and perfect participle both so common that it is difficult to decide which inflection present usage prefers here except that the strong form has become fixed in the adj. part. (*frisch gemolkene Milch* *milk just from the cow*); *quellen* (du *quillst*, er *quillt*) III to *swell up*, *gush*; *schellen* III to *sound* (intrans.), now replaced in the pres. by the wk. *schallen*, past *schallte*, in poetic or choice language *scholl*, in early N.H.G. *schall* (Mark i. 28) according to former class, perf. part. *geschallt*, str. only in poetic or choice language in certain compound words as *erschollen* *resounded*, and always in *verschollen* *forgotten*, lit. *sound or report (of him, her, it) died away*; *schmelzen* (du *schmilzest* or *schmilzt*, er *schmilzt*) III to *melt* (intrans.); *schwellen* (du *schwillst*, er *schwillt*) III to *swell up*, out (intrans.), sometimes wk.

3. In *i*: *glimmen* III to *glimmer*, *smoulder*, str. or perhaps more frequently wk.; *klimmen* III to *climb*, str. or wk.; also the adjective participle *beklomm-*

men breathing with difficulty, anxious, oppressed in one's feelings, oppressive, adjective and participle from the lost *beklimmen*, only rarely, however, as a real participle with verbal force: *Hat dir je den Busen Liebesschmerz beklommen?* (Platen).

4. In *au*, (*ä*), or *ö*: *saufen* (du säufst, er säuft, sometimes du saufst, er sauft) to drink (of animals, or as animals), *soff*, *gesoffen*, sometimes *wk.*; *erlöschen* (du erlischest or erlischt, er erlischt) III (O.H.G.), IV (M.H.G.) to go out (of a light, &c.), intrans., sometimes *wk.* Here also belongs the poetic part. *gerochen* from *rächen* IV to *avenge*, now usually entirely *wk.*, in early N.H.G. *ich reche*, du *richst*, er *richt*, past *rach*, later *roch*, now entirely replaced by the *wk.* *rächte*. The strong part. is still occasionally found in prose: *Das soll sieben Mal gerochen werden* (Frenssen's *Heimatsfest*, 1, 1).

General Remarks on the 1. Division:

a. For the change of vowel in the 2nd and 3rd person sing. pres. tense, see 177. II. D. a, b, c, d, e, f.

b. The 2nd and 3rd person sing. pres. still occasionally show in poetry old forms in *eu*, which were the rule in Luther's works: *fleußt*, *kreucht*, &c. for *fließt*, *kriecht*, &c. For the development of *eu* out of M.H.G. *iu* see (2), p. 2. The *ie* of the plural had in the Midland even before Luther's day largely supplanted the M.H.G. *iu* (N.H.G. *eu*) in the 1st pers. sing., but had not yet driven it out of the 2nd and 3rd pers. sing. Later the *ie* under S.G. influence leveled the entire sing. See also 201. f.

c. The factitives (197. A. d) are: *ersäufen* to *drown*, from M.H.G. *ersoufen*; *flößen* to *administer wine, medicine, &c.*, instil (courage, &c.), float or raft logs, as in *Holz flößen*, in this last meaning sometimes in the form of *flözen* (see 197. A. d, toward end); *träufen* to *make fall in drops upon*, from M.H.G. *troufen*; *löschen* to *extinguish, quench, slack (lime), lay (dust); quellen* to *soak (peas, &c.)*; *schellen* to *cause to sound, ring (bell for servant, &c.)*; *schmelzen* to *cause to melt, melt (trans.)*, also strong, as it is under the influence of the strong intransitive, as in *Sie schmolzen Schnee und Eis* (Ludwig's *Zwischen Himmel und Erde*, XX), and, perhaps, more commonly so in the perf. part.; *schwellen* to *cause to swell up*. For the change of M.H.G. *ou* to N.H.G. *au* see (4), p. 3. Hence M.H.G. *öu* became N.H.G. *äu*. The last five verbs in the above list were formed when they were in their former class (III), hence the vowel *e* in their stem, but *leschen* was later corrupted to *löschen*, which form was also extended to the str. verb. The strong verb *löschen* is often confounded with the *wk.*, hence the *wk.* forms which are frequently found instead of the more correct str. in the intrans. use: *Dann war es, als löschten alle diese Lichter aus* (Fontane's *Vor dem Sturm*, I. chap. i).

d. Most nouns made from the past tense of the original verbs of this class show the old vowel of the pl.: *der Verdruß* vexation, *der Guß* downpour (of rain), casting (of a bell, &c.), *der Genuß* enjoyment, &c.; *die Schluff* or more commonly *Schlucht* (from Low German) ravine. In other cases the *u* has changed to *ö* under the influence of *a*-mutation (26. B): *der Fluß* river, with old *u*, but *die Flosse* (O.H.G. *flozza*) *fin*, with *u* mutated to *ö*. In *Flöß* raft we have the old gradation *ö* of the past singular, and in *Schleife* (for the correct early N.H.G. *Schläufe*) *noose* the mutated form of the old gradation *au* (M.H.G. *ou*). For the explanation of the forms *Schall*, *Schmalz*, *Schwall* see 200. 3. Division, c.

## 2. Division. Gradation:

Pres. <i>ie, e, au, ü, ä, ö</i>	Past <i>ō</i>	Perf. Part. <i>ō.</i>
M.H.G. <i>ie</i> ( <i>iu</i> in sing., <i>ie</i> in pl.)	<i>ou</i> or <i>ō-ü</i> (197. A. c)	<i>ö.</i>

Examples: *biegen*, *bog*, *gebogen*; *wiegen*, *wog*, *gewogen*.

Here belong: 1. In *ie*: *biegen* to *bend*; *bieten* to *offer*; *fliegen* to *fly*; *fliehen* to *flee*; *frieren* to *freeze*; *kiesen*, see *küren* in 4 below; *schieben* to *shove*; *stieben* to *fly away* (in the form of *mist, dust, or other small particles*), to *scatter* (intrans.), sometimes *wk.*; *verlieren* to *lose*; *wiegen* and *wägen* (du *wägst*; see *Note*) V, the former to *weigh on the scales*, used transitively or intransitively, not only literally but also figuratively, as in *Das Fleisch wiegt* (past *wog*) 4 *Pfund* and *Meyer wiegt hundert Schmidts auf Meyer* *outweighs*, &c., trans. *Er wiegt das Fleisch*, also to *weigh in the mind, have value, be important*, when used intransitively, as in *Seine Gründe wiegen schwer* and *Ein Freund wiegt in der Not*, on the other hand, *wägen* to *weigh with the mind, consider*, is usually only employed transitively and only in this figurative meaning, as in *Er wägt seine Worte nicht*, *Erst wäge, dann wage* (with object understood), *Ich erwäge, ob ich mich darauf einlassen soll*, often, however, especially in the South, *wägen* (du *wägst*, er *wägt*, *wog* or *wägte*, *gewogen* or *gewägt*) is uniformly used in transitive function, without regard to meaning, while *wiegen*

(wog, gewogen) is employed only intransitively: *Der Metzger wägt das Fleisch und findet, daß es 4 Pfund wiegt*; (wiegen *to rock*, always wk. as it is a denominative from *Wiege cradle*, lit. *that which is moved*); *ziehen to draw*, pull, go, move (intrans.), *zog, gezogen*.

*Note.* The parts of *wiegen* and *wägen* *to weigh* (as in *Das Fleisch wiegt 4 Pfund*, lit. *moves sets in motion the four-*

2. In *e*: *heben* (hebst) VI *to lift*, see also *heben* in 203; *pflegen* (pflegst) V *to keep up* (friendship, &c.), *maintain* (relations), *carry on* (negotiations, &c.), past tense in poetical language sometimes *pflag* (according to its former class), now wk. thruout in the meanings *to be accustomed to*, *take care of*, *cherish*, altho earlier in the period strong forms occur; *scheren* (du *scherst*, or in poetic style also *schierst* you *cut or shear*, *scher'* or *schier dich fort* get out of here, du *scherst* or *schierst* you *bother*, *das schert* or *schiert dich nicht* *that doesn't concern you*) IV *to cut, shear, be off, bother, concern*, perf. part. usually str., past tense str. in the first and second meanings, wk. or less commonly str. in the fourth and fifth, and rare in the third, the word in this use being largely confined to the imperative; (*bescheren to give, present*, always wk.); *weben* (webst) V *to weave, be astir, float* (of clouds, mist, etc.), usually wk. in the second and third meanings, in the first meaning also usually wk., but often str., especially in poetic language and figurative use, sometimes with an adjective participle made according to its former class, as in *die festen hauswebenen* (for *hausgewebten*) *Stoffe the strong home-woven fabrics*; *bewegen* (du *bewegst*; see 1. *Note* above) *to move the will, induce*, but wk. in the other applications of the meaning *move*, as *to move the feelings, move objects*, &c.; *sich verwegen* or sometimes *verwägen* (du *verwegst* or *verwägst*; for construction see 262. II. A. b) V *to dare, venture upon*, now only used in the perf. part. as adj. or adv. The adj. or adv. perf. part. *verwegen bold, daring* is formed according to the former class of *verwegen*. The adj. or adv. perf. part. *verwogen*, according to its present class, is also found, but now more commonly with differentiated meaning, *jaunty*: *Er hat einen alten Jägerhut ziemlich verwogen auf den schon stark angegrauten Kopf gesetzt* (Hauptmann's *Hannele*, 1, p. 12.). *Ich seh' dich schon als verwogene Schloßherrin* (Halbe's *Haus Rosenhagen*, 2, p. 80).

3. In *au*: *saugen* (du *saugst*, in early N.H.G. also du *seugst* or *säugst*) *to suck*, elsewhere usually str., sometimes wk. thruout; *schnauben* (du *schnaubst*, in early N.H.G. also du *schneubst* or *schnäubst*) *to snort*, elsewhere usually wk., but in poetry and choice prose also str., *sich schnauben* (N.G.) *to blow the nose*, regularly wk.; *schrauben* (du *schraubst*) *to screw*, usually wk. as originally, sometimes str., especially in the adjective perf. participle *verschroben distorted, crazy, cranky*.

4. In *ü*: *küren* (from *die Kur choice*, and hence in a strict sense more properly wk.) or *kiesen* (more properly str.), both confined largely to a choice style with the meaning *to choose*, *kor* (rarely *kieste*) or *kürte*, *gekoren* (rarely *gekiest*) or *gekürt*; *lügen* (in early N.H.G. *liegen*; the present spelling has come from association with the derivative *die Lüge lie*) *to lie (falsify)*, sometimes wk.; *trügen* (older form *triegen* still common in eighteenth century; the present spelling has come from association with its derivative *der Trug deception* and analogy with *lügen*) *to deceive*, occasionally wk.

5. In *ä* and *ö*: *gären* (earlier in the period *giert* in 3rd pers. sing., now *gärt*) V *to ferment, work, effervesce*, str. in the literal meaning, wk. when used figuratively, as illustrated by an example in 197. F; see *Note* below; *schwären*, (*schwärt*, now rarely *schwiert*) IV *to fester, suppurate*, colloquially sometimes

wk. thruout to distinguish the forms from those of **schwören**; **schwören** VI to swear, **schwor** or perhaps more commonly **schwur** (according to its original class), **geschworen**, only rarely wk. thruout, see also **schwören** in 203; **wägen** (M.H.G. **wēgen**), see **wiegen** under 1 above.

*Note.* **Gären** comes from M.H.G. **jesen** (ich gise, du gisest), **jas** (pl. **jären**), **gejeren**. In N.H.G. the long *a* in the past developed here as often elsewhere into *ö* and spread to the singular of the same tense and then to the perf. part. Medial *s* has been leveled to *r* thruout. The initial *g* of the present tense sing. spread later to all the other forms. This development and the change of vowel from *e* to *ä* in the plural of the present tense and in the infinitive were probably furthered by the earlier grammarians, who derived the verb from **gar**.

### General Remarks on 2. Division:

- a. For interchange in 2nd and 3rd person sing. see 177. II. D. *a, b, c, d, e, f*.
- b. Old forms in **eu** occur in poetry in the 2nd and 3rd pers. sing.: **fleucht** &c. for **flieht**, &c. For explanation of the forms in **eu** see 1. Division, General Remarks, *b* and more at length in 201. *f*.
- c. The factitives (197. A. *d*) in this division are **beugen to make bend, bend** (the will, spirit, knee, head, &c.), from M.H.G. **böugen**; **bewegen to move, made when wegen** (see 1. Note above) was in class V; in Switzerland **entwegen to swerve**, from which comes the new but common literary perf. part. **unentwegt unswerung: an diesen Absichten unentwegt . . . festzuhalten** (Bismarck); **säugen to suckle**, from M.H.G. **söugen**; **stäuben** (sometimes replaced by wk. **stieben**, which is properly str. and intrans.) **to throw off fine particles (as dust, spray, mist), to scatter** (trans.), **strew**, from M.H.G. **stöuben**. Notice that in the original factitives of this class the stem vowel is **äu** (in **beugen** written **eu**), as according to (4), p. 3, M.H.G. **ou** has developed into N.H.G. **au**, and consequently M.H.G. **öu** is represented by N.H.G. **äu**.
- d. The nouns made from the gradation of the past tense show the vowels of the old singular and plural: **der Staub** (from M.H.G. **stoup**, which, according to (4), p. 3, has become N.H.G. **Staub**) **dust**, **der Flöh** **flea**, **der Flug** **flight**, **die Lüge** (O.H.G. **lugi**) **falsehood**, **Frost** (*a*-mutation from old stem **frosta**; see 26. B) **frost**, &c. The old *u* and *o* (*a*-mutation) were short, but at the beginning of the present period they became long before one consonant: **Lüg, Flüg, Geböt**, but **Flücht** (**fliehen**), **Verlüst, Fröst**.

### 200. III. Class. Gradation:

Pres. *i, e*

Past *a*

Perf. Part. *u, o*.

#### 1. Division. Gradation:

Pres. *ī*

Past *ǣ*

Perf. Part. *ū*.

M.H.G. *ī*

*ǣ-ū* (197. A. *c*)

*ū*.

Examples: **binden, band, gebunden**; **dringen, drang, gedrungen**.

Here belong: **binden** to bind; **dingen** to hire, **dang** (**dung**) or **dingte**, subjunctive **dänge, dingte, gedungen, gedingt**, originally wk.; **bedingen**, str. or now less commonly wk. in the sense *to reserve in a contract something for oneself*, but wk. in the adjective participle in the meaning *conditional* (**ein bedingtes Versprechen a conditional promise**, but **Das habe ich mir bedungen That I have reserved to myself**), always wk. in the meanings *to cause, bring about, require* (as a necessary condition of success), *constitute*; **dringen**, now usually intrans. *to penetrate, crowd, rush, press into*, earlier in the period also trans. *to press, crowd, push, force*, and still so in **abdringen to extort from, einem etwas aufdringen** (or **aufdrängen**) *to force something upon one*, and also in certain participial expressions, as **dringende Gefahr, eine gedrungene Gestalt, notgedrungen, ich fühle mich gedrungen**, also in **dringlich pressing, aufdringlich obtrusive, obtruding**, elsewhere now usually replaced in the transitive use by the wk. **drängen**; **finden** to find; **gelingen** to succeed; **klingen** to sound, either wk. or str. in the meaning *to clink glasses*; **ringen** to wrestle, wring; **schinden** to flay, skin (one's limb), **schund** or **schindete, geschunden**, originally wk.; **schlingen** to twine, swallow (in this meaning earlier with the form **schlinden**, from which **Schlund esophagus, abyss** survives; see 40. 1. *b. Note* 6); **schrinden** to burst, chap (intrans.), **schrund** or **schrاند**, **geschrunden**, now little used; **schwinden** to disappear; **schwingen** to swing, wave, whirl, but **beschwingen** to wing, derivative from **Schwinge wing**, always wk.; **singen** to sing; **sinken** to sink; **springen** to spring, leap; **stinken** to stink; **trinken** to drink; **winden** to wind; **wringen** to wring (out), N.G. form of **ringen**, but also in use in the South; **zwingen** to force.

a. Here belongs the adj. part. **gedunsen** (usually **aufgedunsen**) *bloated*, of the now otherwise obsolete **dinsen**; also the adj. part. **verwunschen** (also **verwünscht**) in the one meaning *enchanted*,



placed by *brennen*, which thus assumed the intrans. force of the parent word in addition to its own trans. meaning; *rennen* (*rannte, gerannt*) *to run* (dagger; &c.) *into* (trans.), *run* or *race* (intrans. with *sein*, originally trans., *ein Pferd rennen to make a horse run, race it*, later construed as intrans. as the object was usually understood and finally not felt at all), in the meanings *to curdle* (milk), *melt* (iron), *raft* (logs) always trans., usually with the principal parts *rennen, rannte, gerennt*; *schwemmen to wash away*, lit. *to make swim*.

### 3. Division. Gradation:

Pres. (see 177. II. C, D. <i>b, c</i> )	Past	Perf. Part.
ě (ĩ in 2nd & 3rd sing.)	ǎ	ǒ.
M.H.G. ě (ĩ in sing. and ě in pl.)	ǎ-ũ (197. A. <i>c</i> )	ǒ.

For an explanation of the change of vowel in the sing. of the present tense see 201. *f*.

Examples: *helfen* (du hilfst, er hilft), half, subj. *hülfe* or *hälfe*, *geholfen*. Except in case of *dreschen* the old past subj. with the stem vowel *ü* is still often, perhaps prevaillingly, used, as the new form with the stem vowel *ǎ* is identical in sound with the form for the present tense.

Here belong: *bergen* (du birgst) *to save*; *dreschen* (du drischest) *to thrash*, past *dräsch* or almost or quite as commonly *drösch*, subj. usually *drösche*, past indic. sometimes *dräsch* and in that case to be placed in class IV; *helfen* (du hilfst) *to help*; *sterben* (du stirbst) *to die*; *verderben* (du verderbst) *to spoil* (trans. and intrans.); *werben* (du wirbst) *to enlist*, woo; *werden* (see 177. III. *c*) *to become*; *werfen* (du wirfst) *to throw*; the adjective *verworren in a state of disorder, confusion*, perf. part. of the lost *verwerren*. The related *verwirren to confuse* is entirely weak. Compare the adjective *verworren* with the wk. part. *verwirrt*: *Weil er ganz verwirrt war, war auch seine Rede verworren* *Because he was confused, his thoughts were in a state of disorder*. *Er ist verwirrt* *He is* (temporarily) *confused* (by something), but *Er ist verworren* *His thoughts are in a chronic state of disorder*.

*a.* Luther still used a different vowel in the sing. and pl. of the past tense as in M.H.G.: *ich starb, wir sturben* (sometimes *storben*).

*b.* The one factitive (197. A. *d*) is *verderben to cause to spoil, to spoil* (trans.), but usually now limited to spoil in a moral or a phonetical sense, that is, *to corrupt*, and in other senses now replaced by the str. *verderben*: *ein verderbtes Herz; ein verdorbener Magen*. But even in the moral sense the str. forms are common.

*c.* Notice the noun *der Wurf*, which still shows the pl. vowel of the old past tense of *werfen*. The nouns *Schall sound, Schmalz lard, Schwall swell* still show the old past tense sing. vowel *a* of the verbs *schellen* (now obsolete in pres. tense) *to sound, schmelzen to melt, schwellen to swell*, all of which have left this class for Class II.

### 201. IV. Class. Gradation:

Pres. (see 177. II. C, D. <i>b, c</i> )	Past	Perf. Part.
ǎ, ě, ě, (ĩ, ie in 2nd & 3rd sing.), ǒ	ā	ǒ, ǒ
M.H.G. ě (ĩ in sing. and ě in pl.)	ǎ-ā (197. A. <i>c</i> )	ǒ

For an explanation of the change of vowel in the sing. of the present tense see *f* below.

Examples: *brächen* (du brichst, er bricht), *bräch, gebröchen*; *erschrecken* (du erschrickst, er erschrickt), *erschrāk, erschrocken*; *trëffen* (du triffst, er trifft), *träf, getröffen*; *stëhlen*, (du stiehlst, er stiehlt), *stāhl, gestöhlen*. The quantity of the vowel is the same in the infinitive and perf. part. except in *nehmen*. The vowel of the past is always long. See also *a* below.

Here belong: *brächen* (du brichst) *to break*; *gebären* (du gebierst, often *gebärst*) *to bear, bring forth*, past sometimes wk.; *befehlen* (du befiehlst) III *to command*; *empfehlen* (du empfiehlst) III *to recommend*; *nehmen* (du nimmst, er nimmt) *to take, nahm, genommen*; *schrecken* (du schrickst) or more commonly *erschrecken* *to be frightened*, usually str. used intransitively or reflexively, but sometimes also wk. in both uses, often wk. instead of the more correct str. in compounds, as *aufschrecken to start up with fright, zurückschrecken to start back with fright*, and *zusammenschrecken to be overcome with fright*; *sprëchen* (du sprichst) *to speak*; *stëchen* (du stichst) *to stick with a pointed instrument, sting, stab*; *stecken* (du stickst, er stickt, common in the

classical period but now usually replaced by the *wk* forms *du steckst, er steckt*) to remain sticking in, intrans, past *stak* or perhaps more commonly *steckte*, perf. part. rarely *gestocken*, usually *gesteckt*; *stehlen* (*du stiehst*) to steal; *treffen* (*du triffst*) to hit, *traf, getroffen*; *kommen* (*du kommst, kommst*, the latter form common in the classics but now less frequent, especially in choice language) to come, *kam, gekommen*.

a Those words that have double consonants or *ck* in the infin and part must drop one consonant or the *c* in *ck* in the past as the vowel is long. See examples.

b *Befehlen, empfehlen, stehlen* have either *o* or *ā* in the past subjunctive, preferably *ō* as it can be more easily distinguished from the *e* of the present subjunctive *beföhle* or *befähle, empföhle* or *empfähle, stöhle* or *stähle*. Earlier in the period the past indicative often had the vowel *ō* after the analogy of the perfect participle. In English the perfect participle has thus leveled the past tense in almost all the words originally belonging to this class. See 199, *Historical Note* (last par.) *Befehlen* and *empfehlen* were in earliest N H G still in class III. Under the influence of the vowel of their perfect participle they then trended toward class II, as indicated above, and finally under the influence of *stehlen* became established for the most part here in class IV.

c Here belongs *unverhohlen open, unconcealed*, adj. part of the late M H G *verheln*, now replaced by the *wk* *verhehlen* to conceal.

d The factitives (197. A d) are *erschrecken* to frighten, usually *wk*, but sometimes (as in case of the factitive *verderben* and others) is *str* in colloquial language, as it is influenced by the *str*. intrans, as in *Du erschrickst ein'n aber auch* (Hauptmann's *Friedensfest*, 1), *quälen* to torment, from the lost *quelen* to suffer pain with the stem vowel *ā* instead of *e* as the verb is now felt as a derivative from the substantive *Qual* (see *e*), *stecken* (from *stechen*; see 197. A d) to make stick, *stick* (trans).

e Nouns are made from the gradation of the present tense *der Befehl, der Schreck, der*

Other nouns have *u*, which was once also the stem vowel of perf. part *der Bruch, die Geburt, die Ankunft, &c*. The old stem vowel of the part suffered a-mutation (197. B), which was

il suffix. The nouns vowel of their stems tem can be still seen pl *die Brüche*. The from *brechen*, have, like was doubled

f Change of Vow short *i* of the first pers. sing pres indic we e, as in the Midland and closed syllables of the 2nd North short *i* develo and 3rd pers. no find the old *h* stem a short

e 1st pers sing was the same as the vowel of the plural l in the 2nd and 3rd pers sing This type influenced ered the 1st pers sing *ich krieche, du kreichst, er*

language The type *ich krieche, du kreichst* was once under M G influence widely used but later even in the Midland began to be replaced by the leveled type *ich krieche, du kreichst, er*

*nimmst; nunge; ngerman is still*

common in S G colloquial speech *ich nimm, du nimmst, er nimmst; ich rat, du ratst, &c*

Altho the literary language here rests upon N G and M G, it has in matter of quantity gradually developed its own short sound in the as in the plural *ich* Where the vowel survives in only for language of the Nc pers to a the same brächen. pers sing the choice

## 202. V. Class Gradation

Present (177. II. C, D b, c)  
 ē, ē, (ī, ie in 2nd and 3rd per. sing), ī, ie  
 M H G. ē (ī in sing and ē in pl), ī

Past	Perf. Part.
ā	ē, ē
ā-ā (197. A. c)	ē

## 1. Division. Gradation:

Pres. **ě, ē** (ī, ie in 2nd and 3rd sing.)Past **ā**Perf. Part. **ě, ē**

For an explanation of the change of vowel in the sing. of the present tense see 201. f.

Examples: **essen** (du **issest** or **ißt**, er **ißt**), **āß** (pl. wir **āßen**), **gegessen**; **lesen** (du **liesest** or **liest**, er **liest**), **lās**, **gelēsen**. The *quantity* of the vowel is the same in the infinitive and perf. part. The vowel of the past is always long.

Here belong: 1. In **e**: **essen** (du **issest** or **ißt**, er **ißt**; see also *a*) to eat; **fressen** (du **frissest**, er **frißt**) to eat (of animals or as animals); **geben** (du **gibst**, er **gibt**) to give; **genesen** (du **genesest**, earlier in the period du **geniestest**) to recover from sickness, earlier in the period occasionally wk. in the past tense and perf. part.; **geschehen** (es **geschieht**, in early N.H.G. **es geschicht**) to happen; **lesen** (du **liesest** or **liest**, er **liest**) to read; **messen** (du **missest** or **mißt**, er **mißt**) to measure; **sehen** (du **siehst**, er **sieht**, in early N.H.G. du **sichst**, er **sicht**) to see; **treten** (du **trittst**, er **tritt**) IV to step, tread; **vergessen** (du **vergissest** or **vergißt**, er **vergißt**) to forget; **sein** (which has replaced the regular **wesen** except in nouns, as **das Schulwesen** *the educational system*, and in part. adjectives, as **abwesend** *absent*, &c.) *to be*, **war**, **gewesen**.

*a.* The perfect participle of **essen** was in early N.H.G. **geessen**, and in contracted form **gessen**. Later the contracted form prevailed, but still later another **ge** was prefixed to it, as the first **ge** was no longer felt, the form thus becoming **gegessen**.

2. Those in **i, ie**, which do not show an interchange in 2nd and 3rd sing.: **bitten** to ask, beg, **bat**, **gebeten**; **liegen** to lie, **lag**, **gelegen**; **sitzen** to sit, **saß**, **gesessen**.

*General Note.* (1) The factitives (197. A. *d*) are: **atzen** to feed (birds, animals, prisoners), **ätzen** to etch, feed (birds, &c.); **ergötzen** (corruption of **ergetzen**) *to amuse*, lit. *to cause to forget*, factitive of M.H.G. **ergezzen** *to forget*; **legen** to lay; **nähren** (factitive of **nesen**, now only found in the form **genesen**; see 197. A. *d*) to nourish, lit. *to cause to recover or remain strong*; **setzen** to set.

(2) **Atzung** and **Satz** have short **a**, the vowel of the old sing. of the past tense. Except in case of **atzen** verbs no longer show this old gradation, as the sing. vowel was leveled by the pl. It remains, however, in mutated form in the factitives **ätzen**, **setzen**, and in rounded form also **ergötzen**. In the other factitives it has become long, as it stands in an open syllable. See art. 4. *b. Note*, p. 13.

## 203. VI. Class. Gradation:

Present (177. II. B, D. *a*)**ā, ā**, (**ǣ, ǣ** in 2nd and 3rd sing.), **ē, ō**

Past

**ū**

Perf. Part.

**ǣ, ā**

Example: **schlāgen** (du **schlāgst**, er **schlāgt**), **schlūg**, **geschlāgen**; **schāffen** (du **schāffst**, er **schāfft**), **schūf**, **geschāffen**. The perf. part. always has the same vowel as the infinitive except in case of **heben**, **schwören**, and **stehen**. The vowel of the past is always long.

Here belong: **bachen** (in early N.H.G. the literary word of the South and still used there) or **backen** (used by Luther and now the common literary word; du **bäckst** and now also not infrequently **backst**, er **bäckt**, **backt**) *to bake*, past tense **būch** (early N.H.G.), now **būk** or perhaps more commonly **backte**, perf. part. **gebachen** (early N.H.G.), now uniformly **gebacken** in this meaning, but in the North where there is a pronounced trend toward the weak forms there is also a weak perf. part. in the derived meaning *to cake, form a rigid mass*, as in **Eis und Schnee, die in der rauhen Rinde festgebackt waren**; **fahren** (du **fährst**, er **fährt**) to drive; **fragen** (du **fragst**, also **frāgst** but less common than a little earlier in the period, er **fragt**, **frāgt**) to ask, **fragte**, less commonly **frug**, perf. part. always **gefragt**; **graben** (du **grābst**, er **grābt**) to dig; **heben** (du **hebst**, er **hebt**) to raise, in early N.H.G. past **hub**, perf. part. **gehaben** (1 Cor. xv. 26), also sometimes wk. thruout, now usually in class II except in the past tense where we still not infrequently find the older **hub** alongside of the more common **hob**, which arose under the influence of **weben**, **wob** and since the 17th century has been gradually gaining ground; **jagen**<sup>1</sup> (du **jagst**, rarely **jāgst**, er **jagt**, rarely **jāgt**) to chase, hunt, **jagte**, rarely **jug**, **gejagt**, rarely **gejagen**; **laden** (du **lādst** or less commonly **ladest**) to invite (in this meaning properly

<sup>1</sup> The str. forms of **jagen** are earlier in the period sometimes employed in the literary language and still occur provincially, now usually with a different shade of meaning, being used in the derived meanings *to drive rapidly, dash, chase after, drive something before one*: **Ehe der Polizist die Nummer (des Wagens) merken konnte, jug** (shot, drove quickly) **der Bengel um die Ecke**.



wk and still often so in the present, but usually found str in the past and now always so in the perf part), to load (in this meaning str except in the present tense, where the wk unmutated forms are sometimes found), mahlen to grind, now entirely wk except in part gemahlen, in early NHG str, du mahlst, er mahlt, past muhl; schaffen (du schaffst, er schafft), str in the meaning to create, produce, wk in the meaning cause, bring about, as this meaning is only the figurative application of the following meanings, which are always found with wk form, but the str form is also found as this meaning is quite similar to the preceding meaning, as in Hier muß Wandel geschaffen werden (Prof Martin Havenstein in Zeitschrift für Deutschkunde, 1920, p 46), always wk in the meanings to procure, bring to the spot, work, command (in Bavarian dialect), schlagen (du schlagst, er schlägt) to strike, schworen (up to the 18th century usually schweren) to swear, past schwur or since the 17th century also but perhaps less commonly schwor, perf part geschworen, stehen (du stehst, er steht) to stand, in early NHG there were also other forms in use, which still survive in certain SG dialects, the old indic present stā(h) (du stā(h)st), the imperative stand and the subjunctive present stande, the last two forms representing the survivals of a longer stem in use in OHG and still surviving in the literary language in the past tense forms stund (quite common earlier in the period) and the now usual form stand, past subjunctive stande and still quite frequently the older form stunde, and the perf part gestanden, which forms now serve as the past tense and the perf part of stehen, tragen (du tragt, er tragt) to carry, wachsen (du wächstest or wächst, er wächst) to grow, past wuchs, perf part gewachsen, waschen (du wäschest or wäschst, er wäscht), past wusch, perf part gewaschen.

a The adj erhaben lofty lit lifted up is the old perf part of erheben, which has left this group for class II

b The one factitive (197 A d) is führen (from fahren) to lead guide

## 204. VII Class Ablaut

Present (177 II B, D a)

ă, â, au, ei, ô, û

Past

ie, î

Perf Part

ă, a, au, ei, ô, û

1 Division Gradation

Pres

ă, â, au, ei, ô, û

Past

ie

Perf Part

ă, a, au, ei, ô, û

Example halten (du haltst, er halt), hielt, gehalten. The perf part always has the same vowel as the infin

Here belong blasen (du blast, er blast, rarely du blasest, er blast) to blow; braten (du bratst, er brat, sometimes du bratst, er bratet) to fry, roast, bake, past sometimes wk, fallen (du fallst) to fall, fiel, gefallen, halten (du haltst) to hold, hauen (early NHG du heuest, now haust) to hew, strike with a sword, switch, whip, to flog, chop chisel in stone, &c, hieb, gehauen in choice language, in colloquial speech however the past tense is usually haute in certain expressions, as Er haute seinen Bruder, Er haute mich an den Kopf, Er haute Holz, hieb in others, as in Er hieb mit dem Stock auf mich, Du hiebst mit ihm in dieselbe Kerbe, Er hieb dem Hunde die Ohren ab, the perf part is gehauen in the North and the Southwest and gehaut in Bavaria and Austria, heißen (du heißest or heißt, er heißt) to bid, command, to be called, signify, lassen (in SG dialect and poetry still found contracted to lan as in earlier periods, du lassest or laßt er laßt) to let, cause to to have (something done), laufen (du laufst) to run, occasionally earlier in the period in the literary language and still often in popular speech with the past loff and perf part geloffen after the analogy of saufen, raten (du ratst, sometimes ratst) to advise, w dat of person and acc of thing, rufen (du rufst) to call (somebody in), with acc, to call out to some one, with dat, earlier in the period also wk, schlafen (du schlafst) to sleep, stoßen (du stoßest or stoßt er stoßt, in early NHG also du stoßest, er stoßt) to thrust, push, kick Salzen to salt, spalten to split, schroten to grind coarse have still a str part alongside of a wk one, but are otherwise entirely wk gesalzen or now rarely gesalzt, gespalten or less commonly gespaltet, geschroten

or geschrotet. Entirely wk. is schroten to roll (casks, &c.). The strong past forms spielt and schriet occur in early N.H.G.

a. Here also belong: the adj. part. bescheiden, once part. of bescheiden to instruct, which has left this class for class I, 2nd division, now felt as an adj. with the general meaning *instructed*, hence *wise*, *sensible*, or more commonly *modest*, as it is felt as belonging to sich bescheiden to be contented with; the adj. part. gefalten folded, still found instead of the more common wk. form gefaltet; sometimes geschmalzen greased, cooked in lard (perf. part. of the otherwise wk. verb schmalzen) after the analogy of gesalzen, especially in the expression weder gesalzen noch geschmalzen; in popular language the past tense kief from kaufen to buy and the perf. part. gemalen from malen to paint, both of which in choice language are always wk.

b. The factitive is fällen to fell. Notice that the one factitive of this class, differing from those of the other classes, has the same vowel as the present tense.

c. Nouns: der Fall fall, der Rat advice, der Ruf call, der Hieb blow, &c.

2. Division. Gradation: Pres. ä, ë Past i Perf. Part. ä

Example: hangen (du hängst, er hängt), hing, gehangen.

Here belong: fangen (du fängst, er fängt; in early N.H.G. also in the form of fahen, du fehest, er fehët, which still survive in poetry in the forms fahen, du fähst, er fäht) to catch, formerly also intrans. to grasp after and still occasionally so: Unseliger, der nur die Angel ist, | mit der der Heide fäht nach deinem Volk (Ludwig's *Makkabäer*, 2); gehen (du gehst, er geht) to go, in early N.H.G. there were also other forms in use, which still survive in certain S.G. dialects, the old indic. present gā(h) (du gā(h)st), the imperative gang (as in Gangen's [gangen Sie] nur ruhig schlafen! — Marriot's *Der geistliche Tod*, chap. I) and the subjunctive present gange, the last two forms representing survivals of a longer stem in use in O.H.G. and still surviving in the literary language in the past tense form ging and the perfect participle gegangen, which now serve as the past tense and the perfect participle of gehen; hangen (du hängst, er hängt; in early N.H.G. also du hangst, er hangt) or more commonly, but less correctly, hängen (du hängst, er hängt) to hang (intrans.), as it has become confounded with the trans. hängen (see a).

a. Hängen to hang is usually a weak transitive: hängen, hängte, gehängt. It has besides its wk. past hängte also the strong form hing, and besides its usual wk. perf. part. gehängt sometimes a strong perf. part. gehangen, a form once common. The str. trans. participle is becoming rare but it still occurs occasionally in good literature: Glauben Sie, daß Sie dann nicht ebenso gut aufgehangen werden wie einer (H. Hoffmann's *Rittmeister*, III, p. 105).

b. Nouns: Der Hang inclination, der Fang catch, der Gang walk.

c. The vowel of the past tense of this division was originally long, and the spelling i has only in comparatively recent years been generally recognized, the older spelling ie continuing long after the sound had become short. This shortening of the sound has split this class into two divisions. See also 4. 2. A. d. (2) Note.

205. Verbs formerly Strong. Earlier in the period also the following verbs were strong which have since become weak or have disappeared: bannen (VII); bauen (VII), sometimes with strong participle (gebauen), now weak; bellen (III, II), now weak; brauen (II), sometimes with strong participle (gebrauen), now weak; brinnen (III), intransitive, now replaced by the irregular weak trans. brennen, now trans. and intrans.; entbehren (IV); gellen (III), the vowel of the old past tense still surviving in Nachtigall; gleißen (I); greinen (I), sometimes with a str. part., now usually wk.; heischen (VII), earlier in the period str. or wk., now wk. with the exception that a str. participle is sometimes found; hinken (III), str. part. sometimes still found in S.G.; jäten (V); kneten (V); klieben (II) to split; kreischen (I); kriegen (I; in early N.H.G. often in M.G. form: kriegen, past kreig, part. (ge)kriegen, later replaced by the wk. kriegen) to get; nagen (VI), the part. genagen still preserved in pop. language; reuen (II), in early N.H.G. still with a strong perf. part. gerewen or gerawen; schaben (VI), still with str. part. in S.G.; schalten (VII) to shove; scherren (III; Josh. vii. 21), now replaced by the wk. scharren; schmiegen (II); schneien (I); schrumpfen (III; Job vii. 5), now replaced by the wk. schrumpfen; schweifen (VII); verseigen, versieg, versiegen [Ps. cvii. 33], from the last form of which the wk. versiegen developed in the sixteenth century, later entirely supplanting the older verseigen) to dry up; spannen (VII); walzen (VII); waten (VI). Strong forms of these verbs have also

appeared more or less frequently within the present period, but have now disappeared, or survive only in dialect or in an occasional participial form. Altho a few weak verbs have assumed strong forms as recorded under the different classes of strong verbs, the general tendency is toward the weak conjugation.

*Note.* In earlier German the compound verb *erschlagen* was formed from *schlagen* and *er*, but in later German it was formed from *schlagen* and *er* (a minor contraction to *erschlagen*). This is a strong verb (Swabian for *erschlagen* 1427). So *weisen*, mostly

206. *Conjugation of Strong Verbs in Compounds.* Strong verbs when compounded directly with some other word or prefix are conjugated as simple verbs: *erschlagen* (du *erschlägst*) to strike dead, *erschlug*, *erschlagen*. However, if the verb is compounded indirectly (see 217), that is, when it is made from a compound noun the last component element of which is made from a str. verb, it is conjugated wk: *ratschlagen* to take counsel with, made not from *rat* and the str. verb *schlagen*, but from the noun *der Ratschlag* counsel, past *ratschlagte*, perf. part. *geratschlagt*; thus also *radebrechen* to break on the wheel, derived from the noun *die Radebreche*: *Er radebrecht* (not *radebricht*, altho occasionally found in good authors) *das Deutsche* He speaks bad (lit. breaks on the wheel) German. See also 217. Note 2.

### IRREGULAR CONJUGATION.

207. *haben* (in popular language contracted to *han*) to have is irregular in the pres. and past indic. and also in the past subj., which tho a wk. verb suffers mutation. For conjugation see 177. III. a.

a The obsolete reflexive *sich haben* to behave one's self find one's self is entirely regular: *Er gehabt sich wohl* He is well. *Er gehabte sich besser.* Also *handhaben* to handle is entirely regular, as it is formed not from *haben*, but from the substantive *Handhabe* handle.

208. *Irregular Weak Verbs.* The so-called irregular weak verbs have a vowel in the past indic. and perf. part. differing from the vowel in the present, but are otherwise formed regularly according to the weak conjugation. They fall into two groups:—

1.	Infinitive	Past Indic.	Past Subj.	Perf. Part.
	<i>brennen</i> to burn	<i>brannte</i>	<i>brennte</i>	<i>gebrannt</i>

Here belong: *brennen*; *kennen* to be acquainted with; *nennen* to name, call; *rennen* to run (dagger, &c.) into, run (intrans.), race, sometimes in past tense and perf. part. *rennte*, *gerennt* instead of *rannte*, *gerannt*, and regularly so in certain other meanings, see 200. 2 b; *senden* to send, past indic. *sandte* or *sendete*, perf. part. *gesandt* or *gesendet* (see b); *wenden* to turn, past indic. *wandte* or *wendete*, perf. part. *gewandt* or *gewendet* (see b).

a *Unmutation.* These verbs had originally an *a* in the pres. tense, which according to 26 A was mutated to *e* by a *j* or *i* that once stood between the stem and the inflectional ending of the present. N H G. *legen*, Gothic *lagjan*, N H G. *brennen*, Gothic *brannjan*. This *j* is the rule in most wk. verbs in Gothic. It disappeared early in O H G., but its effects can still be seen as in the preceding examples in the mutated vowel of the stem. The connecting vowel *i* that once stood between the stem and the inflectional ending in the past indic. and perfect participle of wk. verbs was in O H G. in certain verbs syncopeated, which resulted in *unmutation*, i.e. a return to the original vowel as the stem was no longer affected by the *i* (a) *legen*, *legazt*, *gilegit*, but (b) *brennen*, *bruntra*, *gibrant*, also *gibrennit*. Most wk. verbs formerly belonging to *b* now retain, as the result of leveling from the infinitive and the second form of the perfect participle, the mutated vowel thruout, only the few words in the above list now following *b*. In early N H G., however, the number in the latter class was greater, especially in Luther's language and in M G. in general *setzen*, *satzte*, *gesetzt*, also *gesetztet*, now *setzen*, *setzte*, *gesetzt*. This leveling has largely resulted from Bavarian and Austrian influence, where the mutated form of the perfect participle gained the ascendancy, and the unmutated form gained the ascendancy, *rannte*, &c. indicate the mutated vowel, however.

subjunctive: *brennte*, &c. This M.G. feature of distinguishing indicative and subjunctive in the past tense of this weak group in contrast to the general usage of not distinguishing them in the weak past has become established in the literary language. Unmutation here in the perfect participle is also due to M.G. influence. A few fossilized adjective participles still show the old unmutated form of the perfect participle, which was once preferred in adjective function: *durchlaucht* and *erlaucht* from *leuchten*; *gedackt* from *decken*; *gelahrt* (now only used in archaic, solemn, or comic style) from *lehren*, which after the analogy of the verbs in (b) once, especially in M.G. and L.G., had the parts *lehren*, *lahrte*, *gelahrt*; *getrost* from *trösten*; *mißgestalt*, *ungestalt*, and *wohlgestalt* from *stellen*, &c.

b. Earlier the forms *sandte*, *wandte* and *gesandt*, *gewandt* were more common than the mutated forms *sendete*, *wendete*, and *gesendet*, *gewendet*. At present, however, both forms can be quite freely used except in certain expressions where the newer mutated or the older unmutated forms have become fixed. Thus we say *ein gewendeter* (renovated, lit. turned) [not now *gewandter*] *Rock*. The old forms are especially firm in the words *Gesandter ambassador*, *gewandt skilful*, *clever*, *bewandt such*, *verwandt related*.

2. Infinitive	Past Indic.	Past Subj.	Perf. Part.
bringen to bring	brachte	brächte	gebracht
denken to think	dachte	dächte	gedacht
dünken to seem	{ dünte deuchte (däuchte)	{ dünte deuchte (däuchte)	{ gedünt gedeucht

*Note.* In early N.H.G. we find the forms *dünken*, *dunken* (now obsolete), *es daucht* (after the analogy of the past *dauchte*; now obs.), past *dauchte* (now obs.), subj. *deuchte*, perf. part. *gedaucht* (now obs.). The present tense forms *dünken* and *dunken* spread to the past and perf. part.: *dünte* (now very common) or *dunkte* (now obs.), *gedünt* (now very common) or *gedunkt* (now obs.). The form of the very common past subj. *deuchte* spread to the present tense: *es deucht* (a little earlier in the period very common and still not infrequent) or *deuchtet* (now rare) with the infinitive *deuchten* (now rare). This new infinitive produced the new past *deuchtete* (now rare). The new present tense form *deucht* transformed the original past indic. *dauchte* and perf. part. *gedaucht* into *deuchte*, *gedeucht*. The grammarians usually recommend the forms given in 2 above. The tendency to-day is to level: *dünken*, *dünkte*, *gedünt*.

209. The verb *kriegen* to *get* is inflected regularly in choice language, but usually in the loose colloquial language of the North and Midland under the influence of dialect *ie* becomes *i* in a closed syllable, hence in the 2nd and 3rd pers. sing. of the present tense and thruout the past tense and also in the perf. part: *ich kriege*, *du kriegst* (pro. *krīchst*), *er kriegt* (pro. *krīcht*), *ich kriegte* (pro. *krīchte*), *gekriegt* (pro. *gekrīcht*). See 4. 1. a. *Note*, 205, and 201. f.

210. The verb *tun* to *do* is very irregular: present *ich tue*, *du tust*, *er tut*, *wir tun*, *ihr tut*, *sie tun*. The subjunctive present is regular: *ich tue*, *du tuest*, *er tue*, *wir tuen*, *ihr tuet*, *sie tuen*. The past indicative is *tat*, subjunctive *täte*, perfect participle *getan*.

a. In early N.H.G. and still in poetic or humorous language the past tense forms *tāt* (same as M.H.G. *tēt* and hence at present misspelled), pl. *tāten*, are often used instead of the usual *tat*, pl. *taten*, at present, however, only when employed in connection with a following infinitive as a mere periphrasis for a simple form of the verb (see 185. B. I. 2. e. (2)): *Vnd die Kinder Israel theten alles wie der Herr Mose geboten hatte* (Exodus xxxix. 32). *Er tät nur spöttisch um sich blicken* (Uhland) = *Er blickte nur spöttisch um sich*.

*Note.* In M.H.G. the past tense was *tēt(e)* in the sing. and *tāten* in the plural. Later in the literary language the plural vowel passed over into the singular. Alongside of these forms we find, as described above, the forms *tāt*, pl. *tāten*, which have resulted from the leveling of the plural by the singular.

211. For the irregular *werden* see 177. III. c; other irregularities in str. verbs under the gradating groups, 198–206.

PAST-PRESENT VERBS.

212. 1. Among the most irregular verbs are the Past-Present verbs. Their present tense tho present in meaning has the form of the past tense of str. verbs and even to-day preserves the peculiarities of the medieval past tense better than any other word except *werden*. These evident marks of the past tense are: a. The 1st and 3rd pers. sing. are alike. b. The sing. and pl. vowels are different as was once the rule for the past tense, and still show in part the gradation classes to which they once belonged. c. The vowel of the subj. is the mutated vowel of the pl. indic. which was once the rule for the past subj., as can still be seen in the past subj. of *werden* (past subjunctive *ich würde*, past indicative *ich ward*, pl. *wir wurden*). The mutated forms of the present indicative plural, as *wir müssen*, *dürfen*, &c., are in fact subjunctive forms, as the latter mood has leveled here the former. These mutated forms have

become established in the infinitive wherever they are found in the indicative *dürfen* (infin), *wir dürfen*, &c. After the old past had come to be used as a present the weak past was employed to express past time

2 These verbs are *wissen to know, know how to, be able to*, and the six auxiliaries of mood *dürfen to be allowed, können to be able (can), mögen to like, to desire to* (also often expressing a possibility or a concession = *may*), *müssen to be compelled, to have to (must)* sollen expressed in English by *shall, ought to, am (is) to, is said to, &c*, *wollen (see g) to be willing to, to be about to, to desire to, &c*. They are inflected as follows

## Present Indicative

ich weiß	darf	kann	mag	muß	soll	will
du weißt	darfst	kannst	magst	mußt	sollst	willst
er weiß	darf	kann	mag	muß	soll	will
wir wissen	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
ihr wißt	dürft	konnt	moget	mußt	sollt	wollt
sie wissen	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen

## Present Subjunctive

ich wisse	dürfe	konne	möge	musse	solle	wolle
du wissest	dürfest	könnest	mögest	mussest	solltest	wolltest
er wisse	dürfe	konne	möge	musse	solle	wolle
wir wissen	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen
ihr wisset	dürfet	konnet	moget	musset	solltet	wolltet
sie wissen	dürfen	können	mögen	müssen	sollen	wollen

## Past Indicative

ich wußte, durfte, konnte, mochte, mußte, sollte, wollte.

## Past Subjunctive

ich wußte, durfte, konnte, mochte, mußte, sollte, wollte.

## Perfect Participle

gewußt, gedurft, gekonnt, gemocht, gemußt, gesollt, gewollt.

The participle of *mögen* and *müssen* is only rarely *gemocht* and *gemußt*: *Wir hatten viele (Offiziere) nacheinander, doch habe ich nie einen gemocht (Tagebücher des Grafen August von Platen, p 14)* Und wer von der Liebsten scheiden gemußt (*Scheffel's Trompeter, Werners Lieder aus Welschland, XII*)

The compound tenses are formed regularly (see also e)

Pres Perfect	ich habe gewußt, gedurft, gekonnt, gemocht, &c ich habe (kommen) dürfen, können, &c (but not wissen; see b)
Past Perfect	ich hatte gewußt, gedurft, gekonnt, gemocht, &c ich hatte (kommen) dürfen, können, mögen, &c
Future	ich werde wissen, dürfen, können, mögen, &c
Future Perfect	ich werde gewußt haben, gedurft haben, &c ich werde haben (kommen) dürfen, können, &c
Past Periphrastic Subjunctive	ich wurde wissen, dürfen, können, mögen, &c
Past Perfect Periphrastic Subjunctive	ich wurde gewußt haben, gedurft haben, &c ich wurde haben (kommen) dürfen, können, &c, or ich hatte (kommen) dürfen, können, &c

a The imperatives and present participles are either deficient or rarely used *Wissen* and *wollen* alone have an imperative *wisse*, &c *wolle*, &c In popular language the imperative *will* (instead of *wolle*) is heard and is sometimes also found in literature (in Auerbach, Grillparzer)

The present participle is formed regularly: *wissend, könnend, &c.* With the exception of the participle of *wissen*, however, these forms are rarely found. The present participles of the modal auxiliaries are only used in connection with a dependent infinitive, as illustrated in 184. *f*, and in the case of a few derivatives and compounds, in the most part adjectives, as *bedürftend requiring, in need of, vermögend wealthy, wohlwollend well-wishing*. Also the participial substantive *der Wollende the one that wills* is used.

*b.* The modal auxiliaries (not including *wissen*) do not use the weak perf. participle given above when an infinitive depends upon them in a compound tense, but a form exactly like the infinitive, for which construction see 178. 2. *B. a* and *Note 1* thereunder. Thus the construction of *wissen* differs from that of the other past-present verbs: *Er hat zu antworten gewußt He knew how to answer*, but *Er hat antworten können He was able to answer*.

*c.* Note that *wissen* and *vermögen* (see 185. *B. I. 2. a. Note 1*) are the only past-present verbs that require *zu* before the dependent infin.: *Er weiß sich nicht zu halten He is not able to contain himself*, but *Er muß arbeiten He has to work*. However, the infinitive without *zu* is also used after *wissen*, but with a different meaning. See 185. *B. I. 2. d.*

*d.* Earlier in the period in the Southwest the third person of the present tense of *wissen* sometimes assumed *t*, *weiß* becoming *weißt* after the analogy of words in the regular present tense: *Der seine Burg zu schirmen weißt* (in rime with *Geist*) (Wieland's *Gedichte*, p. 98). In early N.H.G. and as late as the classical period the forms *du sollt* and *willt* are found, now always *du sollst, willst*. Cf. Eng. *shalt, wilt*. In early N.H.G. also other forms occur, which have since disappeared in the literary language: *durfen* and *dorfen* for *dürfen*, *dorfte* and *dörfte* for *durfte* and *dürfte*; *künnen* for *können*, *kunde, kunte, or kunt* for *konnte*; *mügen* for *mögen*; *wellen* and *wöllen* for *wollen*.

*e.* In an earlier period of the language the German, like the English of the present day, could not form a perf. participle from the modal auxiliaries. The older German had to express the pres. perfect by putting the dependent infinitive into the perfect tense, and the past perfect by placing the past indic. of the auxiliary before the perfect infinitive of the dependent verb: *ich kan getragen haben, now ich habe tragen können; ich kunde getragen haben, now ich hatte tragen können; ich künde getragen haben, now ich hätte tragen können*. When the new forms were introduced the old forms did not drop out, but remained, often, however, with a new shade of meaning: *Er kann gesprochen haben He may have spoken*, but *Er hat sprechen können He has been able to speak*. *Er konnte schon gesprochen haben It was possible that (at that time) he had already spoken*, but *Er hatte schon sprechen können He had already been able to speak*. *Er könnte gesprochen haben He might possibly have spoken*, but *Er hätte sprechen können He would have been able to speak*. The English-speaking student must be cautious here, as there are pitfalls for him at almost every step. We must not translate *He should have done it* literally by *Er sollte es getan haben*, as the German may mean: *He was said to have done it*. The German form should be *Er hätte es tun sollen*. *Er könnte gekommen sein* corresponds to the English *He could have come* only in the sense that *it is a possibility that he has come*. If we mean that *it would have lain in his power to come* we must say *Er hätte kommen können*. Occasionally the old and new constructions are used without differentiation: *Ich sollte vorsichtiger gewesen sein*, or more commonly *Ich hätte vorsichtiger sein sollen*.

*f.* In early N.H.G. there were two other past-present verbs:

(1) *Tügen* (now *taugen*, entirely wk.) with the following principal parts: (pres.) *ich taug, er taug, wir tügen*; past *ich tuchte, (subj.) tüchte, (ge)tucht*. Ex.: *Moses sprach | Das taug nicht | das wir also thun* (Exodus viii. 26). Derivatives are *tüchtig* and *Tugend*.

(2) *Thüren* (now obs.) *to dare* (same word as Eng. *dare*) with the following principal parts: *ich thar, er thar, wir thüren*, past *ich thurste*. Later it was replaced by *dürfen*, which in turn has been replaced in this meaning by *wagen* and *sich unterstehen*.

*g.* From the standpoint of historical grammar *wollen* is not a past-present verb. It is, however, now justly classed here upon the basis of its present forms, which are those of past-present verbs. The present indicative was originally a past subjunctive, which formerly had the force of the past subjunctive of cautious statement (see 169. 2. *A. (1). c*) as used to-day. Thus this original past subjunctive had the meaning of *ich wünschte wohl*. Later it took on the force of a present indic. and the forms of past-present verbs, as it was on account of its meanings under the influence of the past-present verbs.

### SPECIAL USES OF THE MODAL AUXILIARIES.

213. 1. *Dürfen*. *a.* A permission from someone to do something, or a right, cause, or liberty to so do, in so far as there is nothing in the dictate of circumstances or moral obligation or any authority to restrain or forbid: *Du darfst nicht hingehen* You are not allowed to go there. *Gefangene dürfen mit niemand verkehren* Prisoners are not allowed to associate with anybody. *Jedermann darf Waffen tragen* Everybody is permitted to carry arms. *Darf ich darauf rechnen, Sie morgen bei mir zu sehen?* *Er darf sich darüber nicht wundern* He must not (has no right, cause to) wonder at it. *Wir dürfen unsere Pflichten nicht vergessen* We should not forget our duties. *Wir dürfen es schon unseres Rufes wegen nicht tun* We cannot do this out of consideration for our reputation, *to say nothing about other things* (all in *schon*). This leads to the very frequent use of *dürfen* in negative sentences corresponding to *müssen* in positive form: *Ihr dürft nicht laut schreien!* Children, you must not scream out loud. *Müssen* here has a milder force. See 4. *c* below. The past subjunctive softens the force of *dürfen*: *Bald dürfte ich nicht!* (Lessing's *Minna*, 1, 2) I almost ought not to!

*b Need only to, need but.* Er darf nur winken, so sind wir da He need but make a sign and we shall be there. Sie dürfen nur klingeln You need only to ring. Sie dürfen nur befehlen

ute in a modest way  
a Now it is probably

and mögen with distinct shades of difference  
dürfen a rather positive assertion but stated  
chte Sie fragen You will likely be questioned

*d Rarer meanings occur* (1) In early N H G *to need*, now replaced by *bedürfen*: Die Gesunden dürfen des Arztes nicht (Luke v 31) This is the original meaning, and still survives in *dürftig needy*, *bedürfen to need*, *Bedürfnis need* (2) In early N H G and still in the classical period and even later in negative sentences and questions *to need*, *have occasion for*, now replaced by *brauchen*: Vor mir dürfen Sie sich Ihres Unglücks nicht schämen (Lessing's

unterstehen.

2 Können. A. Ability or power: Er kann gut reiten He can ride well. Der Kranke kann nicht gehen.

*Note* In this sense alone is *vermögen* synonymous with *können*, only differing from it in being stronger and in requiring *zu* with the infin. Er war zu schwach, er vermochte nicht die Mitteilung zu Ende zu hören, or er konnte die Mitteilung nicht zu Ende hören. In early N H G the infin. depending upon *vermögen* is also without *zu*.

oft kann kein Blut sehen

zu before the de-

stances, and often *probability* and in this sense synonymous with *mögen* in A, but more common than the latter

Brief kann vor Dienstag nicht dort sein.

kann wohl heute noch schneller.

Sie können (may) mich morgen erwarten.

C. *Permission*, arising from the idea that something can be done, as there are no hindrances in the way. Meinetwegen kann er kommen As far as I am concerned he may come. Von acht bis neun Uhr können wir noch in dem Garten ein wenig spazieren gehen. Sie können jetzt gehen.

D. It often contains in polite form *instructions, directions, a request*, or even a *mild command*. Ich habe jetzt nicht Zeit für euch, ihr könnt aber morgen wieder einmal nachfragen I have not

still stronger

ight take this

You may go.

intest) Immer

Das kannst

L. Good grounds or reasons or good opportunity for an action. Darauf können Sie stolz sein You can well be proud of that. Kann (or darf) ich nun anfangen? Should I begin now? (Are things favorable for action?)

F. Also used as an independent transitive verb with noun or pronoun as object in the sense *to be at home in*, which is the original meaning. Er kann das

ig by heart. Der kann etwas That fellow understands his

an you speak German? Der Schüler kann seine Vokabeln

Können Sie Klavier? Can you play upon the piano? Er

G. Also as an intransitive verb in the sense of *to have the power, skill*: „Du willst also?“ „Mach' mich können, so will ich“ (Goethe). Um zu können, mußt du in jedem Fall tun, um zu wissen, darfst du dich in vielen Fällen nur leidend verhalten (Pestalozzi).

3. Mögen. A. Probability, plausibility, that which rests with more or less probability on facts, but which is after all only supposition, conjecture (see können, B): Es ist unrecht, daß er nicht geantwortet hat, aber er mag krank sein It is not right that he has not answered, but it may be that he is sick. Er hat es keinem gesagt, er mag's wohl geheim halten wollen He has told no one, he may probably desire to keep it a secret. Das mag wohl sein That may be. Es mag wahr sein. Es mag jetzt zwölf sein It may be 12 o'clock. Sie mochte fühlen, daß sie mir unrecht getan She probably felt that she had done me injustice. Es mochte wohl Mitternacht sein It might have been about midnight. Er mag das gesagt haben He may possibly have said that. Usage is here confined to the positive statement. In negative form können is used here: Es kann nicht wahr sein. Kann das wahr sein? (with negative force).

a. It is much used in the past subjunctive (potential) to state modestly something as probable, plausible (see also dürfen, c. Note): Es möchte wohl besser sein, wenn wir es unterließen It would probably be better if we did not do it. Das möchte schwer zu beweisen sein That might be hard to prove. Daraus möchte wohl nichts werden That is likely enough to fail.

B. To indicate that something is granted, allowed, at least that no objection will be raised on the part of the speaker, and from this arises the idea of concession in general, which is much used in subordinate concessive clauses: Das mag er immerhin tun, was kümmert's mich? Let him do it, what matters it to me? Mögen die Leute reden, was sie wollen Let people say what they will. In subordinate clause: Was ich auch tun mag, so ist es dir nicht recht No matter what I do, I can't satisfy you.

C. Akin to the preceding is the idea of *inclination, liking*, in this meaning also used as an independent transitive verb with a noun or pronoun as object: Ich mag ihn jetzt nicht sehen I do not care to see him now. As a transitive verb: Ich mag diese Radieschen nicht. Vielleicht mögen Sie lieber Gurken I do not like these radishes. Perhaps you like cucumbers better. Mögen is often strengthened by the adverb gern: Ich habe nie gern tanzen mögen I never liked to dance.

a. The subjunctive is much used in wishes in independent clauses with different meaning according as present or past tense is employed (168. I. 1. B, and 169. I. A). The present subjunctive is also used in mild commands direct and indirect. See 177. I. B. a; 171. 4. a. The present indicative and subjunctive are used in warnings and menaces: Er mag nur aufpassen, sonst passiert ein Unglück He should be on the look-out or some misfortune will happen. Er möge sich hüten, mich zu reizen Let him beware of provoking me.

b. The subjunctive of mögen is in indirect discourse often used instead of the subjunctive of the simple verb, especially after verbs of wishing, fearing, doubting: Wir wünschten, daß er komme or kommen möge.

c. The past and past perfect subjunctive (potential), the former with *present*, the latter with *past* force, differ from the indicative in meaning in that not the mere record of a strongly pronounced desire or a habitual inclination is made, but especial attention is called to that which at the time and under the circumstances the subject *feels inclined* or *would like* to do: Fast möchte ich weinen I almost feel like crying. Ich möchte spazieren gehen I should like to go out walking. Ich hätte es ihm nicht sagen mögen I should not have liked to tell it to him. Da hätte er in den Boden sinken mögen Then he felt as tho he would like to sink thru the floor.

The subjunctive of modest statement (169. I. A, 3rd par.) is much used to state a wish modestly: Ich möchte Sie um ein Stückchen Hammelschlegel bitten, nur zum Versuchen I will thank you for a small piece of the leg of mutton, just to try it.

D. Its oldest meaning, that of *power* and *ability*, it has given over to *vermögen* in ordinary prose, but this meaning can still be found in elevated diction: O lieb', so lang du lieben kannst (can find an opportunity)! O lieb', so lang du lieben magst (are able)! (Freiligrath). This meaning occurs frequently still in the noun (die) Macht *might* and the adj. möglich *possible*, which have been derived from it.

a. After the analogy of *vermögen* (see 2. Note above) the infinitive with *zu* is in a few rather rare instances used here with mögen instead of the simple infinitive, especially when the infinitive precedes the auxiliary: Die Gefahr von ihr zu wenden magst du ganz allein (Goethe's *Die natürliche Tochter*, 2, 1).

4. Müssten. a. *Necessity* in the broad sense, either physical compulsion or that constraint which is imposed by the stress of circumstances, or lies in the very nature of things, or that which appears to the mind as necessary, appropriate, or belonging to the natural order of things, hence corresponding to the English words *must*, *have to*, *obliged to*, *ought to*, *need to*: Das Kind mußte zu Bette gehen The child had to go to bed. Er handelt, wie er muß He acts as he ought to do under the circumstances. Du kommst nicht mit, denn du hast keine Kleider und kannst nicht tanzen; wir müßten uns deiner schämen (we should indeed under the circumstances have to feel ashamed of you). Kinder müssen bescheiden sein In the natural order of things children ought to be modest. Effi (name), eigentlich hättest du doch wohl Kunstreiterin werden müssen (ought). Mußt du denn alles wissen? Do you need to know everything? Also translated in various other ways: Wir mußten uns freuen We could not but rejoice. Ich mußte lachen I could not help laughing. It is much used in commands. See 177. I. B. a.

It often denotes a logical or inferred necessity: Ihr Gesicht war regelmäßig und der Ausdruck desselben verständig; sie mußte in ihrer Jugend schön gewesen sein She must have been, &c. (Besieht ihn [i.e. den Brief]) Wahrhaftig, er ist erbrochen. Wer muß ihn denn



erbrochen haben? (Lessing's *Minna*, 3, 10) Somebody must have broken it open, who could it be?

Note Observe the difference in the meaning of *müssen* to pass by The simple same meaning where both *helfen* you ought to help

b It often conveys the idea that the circumstance or happening in question is untoward, unfortunate resulting in discomfiture to the person in question, translated by *unfortunately* to happen to to have of course to, it must needs be Gerade ihn mußte ich treffen! Whom should I unfortunately happen to meet but him! or more idiomatically Of course I had to run across him Und ich mußte so fern sein! And bad luck would have it that I just happened to be so far away! Mein Hund war ohne Maulkorb hinausgelaufen Nun mußte auch gerade ein Polizist daher kommen Now as bad luck would have it a policeman happened to come along just at that time, or Of course a policeman had to come along just then Es mus ja ergernis komet doch weh dem Menschen durch welchen ergernis komt (Matth xviii 7)

c Just as in English the meaning to be permitted, ought is found in negative sentences as in case of dürfen in 1 a above but with milder force Ich muß nicht vergessen, den Bettel zu vernichten (Lessing's *Minna von Barnhelm* 1, 7) I must not forget to destroy the trifle „Ach,“ sagte Elisabeth, „das weiß ich ja auswendig; du mußt auch nicht immer dasselbe erzählen“ (Storm's *Immensee*, Die Kinder)

This old meaning of *müssen* comes close to the original one, to find one's self in a situation to, have opportunity to, be free to, have occasion to with the additional idea that the result is unpleasant the idea arose that the situation in which the subject at he has to act, in accordance with his wishes but under the stress of circumstances The original meaning of *müssen* occurs not infrequently in early N.H.G. in different stages of development In optative sentences the original force is still found in the classical period So müsse (now möge) mir Gott helfen (Schiller) It is also still quite so above where the wisher expresses the desire that *er* Musse der elend umkommen, dem je besser von dir *rabbiala* Wären wir Bettler! Müßten wir barfuß durch die Stummensnacht wandern! (K. Huch's *Vita somnium breve*, I, p 7)

The related noun *Muße* leisure has retained more of the original meaning than the verb, and has developed in quite a different direction

d The verb in the sense of to suffer compulsion Kein Mensch *muß* (Lessing's *Nathan*, 1, 3) No one should suffer compulsion *muß* ist das Wesen, welches will (Schiller, 10 214)

varied meanings a moral constraint, indicating that that which is to be done does not proceed from the will of the person represented as the subject of the verb, but from some other person, or some other source The chief uses are

a The will of a certain definite person is to be carried out Du sollst nicht stehlen Thou shalt not steal (God's will) The father says to John Du sollst fleißig sein I want you to be

c Used in threats indicating that the speaker is willing for some one to do something if he dares Sie sollen sich nur regen, wenn sie's wagen! Just let them budge if they dare!

d In general the constraint of custom, law, &c. n ought to obey their parents Here sollen Wie sollte er sich rühren, wo vielleicht nur

er soll (is apt to) Ihnen schmecken Ic (are likely to)

Note In the same way the verb *sollen* is used in the sense of to be expected that he should bestir himself there

c Used in threats indicating that the speaker is willing for some one to do something if he dares Sie sollen sich nur regen, wenn sie's wagen! Just let them budge if they dare!

d In general the constraint of custom, law, &c. n ought to obey their parents Here sollen Wie sollte er sich rühren, wo vielleicht nur

er soll (is apt to) Ihnen schmecken Ic (are likely to)

Note In the same way the verb *sollen* is used in the sense of to be expected that he should bestir himself there

c Used in threats indicating that the speaker is willing for some one to do something if he dares Sie sollen sich nur regen, wenn sie's wagen! Just let them budge if they dare!

d In general the constraint of custom, law, &c. n ought to obey their parents Here sollen Wie sollte er sich rühren, wo vielleicht nur



Now he had been straying about among the fir trees for two hours already, and the forest seemed to have no end. Verlegen, daß keine Nachrichten von dem Arzt kommen wollten (Goethe) Puzzled, because it seemed that no news would come from the doctor.

*h* Also used as a trans verb with a noun or pronoun as object, in the sense of *to desire*, *to will* Wollen Sie Erbsen oder Blumenkohl? Will you take peas or cauliflower? Er will dein Glück. Gott will es God wills it thus Das wolle Gott nicht! May God forbid! Compare: *What wouldst thou of us?* (Shakespeare).

*i* Also used as an intransitive verb in the sense of *to have the desire* „Willst du das?“ „Wenn du willst.“ „Nein, du mußt wollen.“ — Mit freudigem Herzen. Sonst ist kein Segen dabei“ (Sudermann's *Die Ehre*, 3, 4)

214. *Omission of the Verb Depending upon the Auxiliary.* This omission is very common,

verbs of motion  
 8 nach Koblenz  
 y away by night,  
 it is common to  
 (to a conductor

*Can you tell me, what is the name of the...*

*b* In case the dependent verb is *tun* to do, heißen to signify, and various other words Was soll ich (tun)? What am I to do? Was soll das (heißen)? What does that mean? Der Kranke darf kein Fleisch (essen) the patient must not eat meat

2. In case the verb depending upon a modal auxiliary is dropped, difference of usage occurs according as the verb is trans or intrans With intransitives nothing shows the omission of the verb, but with transitives the pronoun *es* or *das* may stand after the auxiliary as the object of the verb which is to be supplied Sprich lauter! Ich kann nicht Speak louder! I cannot. Kannst du das beweisen? Jawohl; ich kann es, or das kann ich Can you prove that? Yes, indeed I can suggested by o sie kommen; word Klagewe

*tun?* Ich kann es (referring to the general idea of *doing the favor*, not to *Gefallen*, which is of a different gender) nicht Will you do me this favor? I cannot O hätte ich mich gefreut, als ich es (= mich freuen) noch konnte! O, had I enjoyed myself when I was still able to do so! Er hat es getan, ob er es gemußt hat, weiß ich nicht. With such transitives this object, however, is often omitted, especially in common conversational style Ich mache es so gut ich kann.

*Note* Distinguish between the cases where the auxiliary stands alone the dependent verb being understood, and the cases where these words are not auxiliaries but independent verbs. The latter case occurs in können, 213 2 F. G. in mögen, 213 3 C. in müssen, 213 4 d in sollen, 213 5. k. in wollen, 213 6 k.

## CONJUGATION OF COMPOUND VERBS.

### I. GENERAL STATEMENT.

215. 1. *Separable Compounds.* All accented prefixes (see II. 1. B) in compound verbs are separated in the following cases from the simple verb: (1) In the simple tenses (pres. and past) of principal propositions and such subordinate clauses as do not have the transposed word-order, the prefix is separated from the verb and placed at the end of the clause or sentence: (pres.) ich fange meine Arbeit an; (pres. imper.) fang deine Arbeit an; (past) ich fing meine Arbeit an. Er sagt, er fange seine Arbeit an; but Er sagt, daß er seine Arbeit anfangen. (2) In the perf part the *ge* and in the infin. and the modal verbals (180) the *zu* is inserted between the prefix and the verb, but in these cases the prefix is not really felt as separated and hence is written as one with the verb. ich habe meine Arbeit angefangen; ich habe versprochen, meine Arbeit morgen anzufangen; (attributive modal verbal) die morgen anzufangende Arbeit the work that must be begun to-morrow. Elsewhere the separable prefix is not separated from the verb (future) ich werde meine Arbeit anfangen; (pres part.) ein anfangender Rechtsanwalt a young lawyer who is just beginning to practise his profession

2 *Inseparable Compounds* The prefixes (for list see II. 2) which are always unaccented are never separated from the verb. Such inseparable compounds do not differ in conjugation from simple verbs except that they never take *ge* in the perf. part: Er erreicht seinen Zweck. Er erreichte seinen Zweck. Er hat seinen Zweck erreicht. Er versucht (is trying), seinen Zweck zu erreichen.

3. *Compounds Separable or Inseparable.* Certain prefixes (see II. 3. A) are separable or inseparable according as they are accented. If unaccented they are inseparable, if accented they are separable: *Er über'setzt das Gedicht* He is translating the poem. *Er hat das Gedicht über'setzt.* *Er versucht, das Gedicht zu über'setzen.* But *Die Truppen setzen über* The troops are crossing the river. *Der Fährmann setzt sie über* The ferryman is taking them across the river. *Sie beabsichtigen (intend) 'überzusetzen.* In the separable compounds each element usually has its full literal meaning, while the inseparable compounds have an altered or figurative meaning.

*Historical Note.* Originally adverbs preceded the verb in accordance with the old principle that a grammatically dependent element preceded the governing word. At the beginning of the historical period there was already in both German and English a strong tendency to place stressed adverbs and objects after the verb. This indicates the development of a new word-order, namely the removal of heavily stressed, logically important words to the end of the sentence in order by thus withholding them for a time to render them more conspicuous. Gradually almost all adverbs were removed to a place after the verb and this position has become functional for adverbs. Hence it became unusual to form new firm verbal compounds with a stressed adverb before the verbal element, as in 'ausging in *er 'ausging*, for this stood in conflict with the new law that required the stressed adverb to stand after the verb. A new compound, or group-word as it is often called in this book, is always formed from a group of words that stand in a grammatical relation to each other, and hence the new compound usually has the word-order and stress of the group from which it was formed, as explained more fully in 47. 2. B. c and 247. 1 and 2. Thus the new group with the stressed modifier after the verb prevented the formation of new firm verbal compounds. The firm verbal compounds that had come down from the prehistoric period, such as 'ausging (*ein after andaremo 'uzziengun—Tatian, 120. 6 = einer nach dem anderen ging hinaus*), 'abfuhr (*her 'abfuor—id., 228. 4 = er ging fort*), 'einging (*er tho sar thara 'ingiang—Otfrið, II. 11. 5 = er ging dann sogleich hinein*) from the ninth century, did not long remain firm under the new conditions, in fact were even in oldest German more commonly treated as separables and later became regularly separable, *ging aus, ging ein, &c.* under the strong tendency to place the stressed modifiers of the verb after the verb. They have survived as inseparable compounds only in the subordinate clause, where the stressed modifiers of the verb still precede the verb as in the prehistoric period and sometimes in oldest historic Germanic. It is usually stated by scholars that there were in the Germanic languages no firm verbal compounds in the prehistoric period and in oldest Germanic, but the rather frequent use of firm compounds in Otfrið and in O.H.G. translations from the Latin as in Tatian and in old glosses rendering Latin words as 'uzgat (= *er geht aus*) for Latin *exit*, &c. makes it seem quite sure that, on the one hand, Otfrið's poetry faithfully preserves older German usage and that, on the other hand, the old translators felt the firm Latin compounds as closely related to the similar forms still in use in poetical style in their own language. The two languages were at that time not so far apart at this point as later, for at one time in prehistoric Latin as in prehistoric German the adverb standing before the verb in verbal compounds was usually stressed as still indicated by the reduced vowels of many Latin compounds: *exigo* (from *ex+ago*), *incido* (from *in+cado*), &c. The word-order and in many forms the accent survived in later Latin, so that in the O.H.G. period the Latin compounds were quite similar to those found in poetic German. In prehistoric Latin these compounds had become rigidly fixed in form and thus later remained intact, while in German they were dissolved by the forces that had formed them. Just as in the prehistoric period the old laws of Germanic word-order had brought the components together and formed them into syntactical units the new laws of word-order, as described above, dissolved them, except in the subordinate clause, where the new laws have never become established.

A few weakly stressed adverbs did not follow the general tendency to assume the new emphatic position after the verb as they were naturally unfit for this position by reason of their weak accent. Thus verbs that form compounds with adverbs fall into two classes—*inseparables*, in which the weakly stressed adverb still stands in its old historic position before the verb, and *separables*, in which the strongly stressed adverb stands in the important end position. The reason of the weak stress of the first component in inseparables is in a large number of cases perfectly clear. The adverbial force is very faint as the form has acquired almost pure prepositional force. See II. 3. A. a (2nd par.). In case of the prefixes *be, emp, ent, er, ge, ver, zer* the force is still fainter as the prefixes have lost almost every trace of their former concrete meaning and are now used only with perfective force (246. II. 3. b). See also 47. 2. B. c.

In recent literature certain separables are manifesting a tendency to become firm compounds. The components are so often united in the infinitive and the subordinate clause that they are beginning to be felt as firm compounds: 'anerkennen, 'anerkannte, &c. More examples are given in II. 2. c and *Note* thereunder. These beginnings are as yet very small. It remains to be seen whether the new development will spread. The firmness of form in these recent compounds does not indicate that they are felt more distinctly as units, for the older separables on account of their peculiar form and stress are just as vividly felt as units. Firmness of form here simply means that the origin of the form has been forgotten. If such forms become established they will join the great throng of units which in spite of their obscure origin are performing their parts in the language creditably.

## II. DETAILED STATEMENT.

### 1. Separable Compounds.

A. *End-stress Now and Formerly.* The question of separation or non-separation is one of accent, and the accent is a question of the meaning and importance of the prefix. A clear understanding of the question of separable prefixes will result from a study of their origin and the position that the German gives to the important words in the sentence.

The word in a sentence that is logically the most important receives the strongest accent. Any word that for one reason or another seems especially important to the speaker is distinguished by stronger stress, tho it may ordinarily be quite unimportant. Logical accent is thus often a matter of subjective view and feeling, but on the other hand certain *grammatical* elements of a sentence are quite regularly more important than others, and are consequently distinguished by stronger accent. Usually the most important grammatical element is the predicate, and consequently it receives *grammatical* accent even tho some other word may for some especial reason receive a still stronger *logical* accent. The favorite position of the logically most important word is at the beginning of the sentence, while the favorite position of the grammatically most important element is the very last word in the clause or sentence. This position of the grammatically important element at the end of the sentence has in the literary language become fixed and stereotyped, and hence is retained even when the grammatically important word is immediately preceded by some modifier which is relatively more important, and in fact is more forcibly stressed: *Er hat eine Ohrfeige gekriegt.* Such grammatical elements are a predicate

in allen Kämpfen hoch He held high the flag in every battle Participle Er ist nach Hause gegangen Infinitive Er wird morgen kommen Er wünscht mich kennen zu lernen Separable prefix Das Schiff ging mit Mann und Maus unter

The perfect participle and the present infinitive often have less stress than the other words that stand at the end of the sentence for they are now felt as only a part of the verb and like the simple verb usually take less stress than the more important words that modify them Their present position is the survival of older usage when they had more independent force and hence stood at the end by virtue of their importance They were then not a part of the verb but an important complement of it Er hat einen Brief geschrieben (originally a verbal adjective used as an objective predicate lit *written in a written state* still with its full original force when stressed Er hat den Brief schon geschrieben) Er wird einen Brief schreiben (originally *schreibend*, a predicate verbal adjective) Er will einen Brief schreiben (originally as now the object of will) The establishment of the infinitive in the last place preceded by its modifiers as in the last example was greatly facilitated by the strong resemblance of this construction to that of old group words (247 2 a) as *Köpfverletzung*, *Blutvergießen*, &c where the verbal component is always preceded by its modifier In course of time the old historic position of participle and infinitive at the end has become permanent but it is now held as a grammatical or functional duty rather than as an indication of their logical importance The common position of a participle or infinitive with secondary stress at the end of the sentence preceded by a more strongly stressed predicate object adverb or prepositional phrase has brought about in sentences containing a compound tense form a new descriptive group stress with the chief stress upon the first member in this treatise called end stress Er ist gesund geworden Er hat Feuer gemacht Er will gesund werden Er will Feuer machen Er ist nach Hause gegangen Das Haus ist von Bäumen umgeben See also 285 II B b aa bb cc 50 A 6 This type of end stress has become productive within the present period in that it has influenced other end groups to assume the same word order and stress Luther's Er hat es können tun has become Er hat es tun können Older Er muß sein gekommen and Er kann den Brief haben

development in the subordinate clause see 237 1 B a Note Thus end stress is now characteristic that have a compound tense form

The proposi id the separable prefix of the principal ciple placed at the end on account of their stress and logical importance In course of time this position has become functional Of course however the predicate noun and adjective and the separable prefix are still often logically important and are consequently heavily stressed Thus they have not only kept their old historic position but also their old stress

a Separable Prefix and Participle or Infinitive Come Together at the End In the pres perf and past perf tenses of a separable element in the predicate at the end most important grammatical the prefix and part and in the future and fut perf both the each of course is impossible, as only one word can be last The verb (part or inf) is

its accent since it is the important element perf ) war mit Mann und Maus untergegangen Das Schiff wird mit Mann und Maus untergehen, or (fut perf ) wird untergegangen sein

Note The poet often does violence here to the prose construction and says e kann's nur vorhersehen I ab es werden kann sie nicht (Grillparfer's) (see 235 II B b ff) deviations from the usual rules from the infin and place it after the infin Er ist e gezogen zu uns nicht kann begegnen ein Unglück (words from a Jewish chara

b Position of the Separable Prefix in a Subordinate Clause The position of the separable prefix in the subordinate clause depends upon whether the conjunction introducing the clause is expressed or omitted

as If the required according grammatical im As both together und Maus untergeht, werden alle gerettet If the verb is in a compound tense the auxiliary

goes to the end and the verb compounded with the prefix stands next to it: *Ich glaube, daß das Schiff mit Mann und Maus untergegangen ist.*

bb. If the conjunction *daß* is omitted, the prefix is treated just as if the clause were a main clause: *Ich glaube, das Schiff geht mit Mann und Maus unter. Ich glaube, das Schiff ist mit Mann und Maus untergegangen.*

cc. If the conjunction *wenn* is omitted, the verb stands the first word in the clause and the prefix the last in simple tenses, but in compound tenses the auxiliary stands first in the clause, and the prefix compounded with the verb stands last: *Geht das Schiff vor Morgen nicht mit Mann und Maus unter, so werden alle gerettet. Ist das Schiff morgen früh nicht untergegangen, so werden alle gerettet.*

c. *Position of ge- and zu.* The *ge* of the part. and the *zu* of the infin. and modal verbals stand between prefix and verb: *Er hat die Tür aufgemacht. Ich bitte, die Tür aufzumachen* Please open the door. *Die aufzumachende Tür* The door that is to be opened.

d. *Non-separation in Pres. Part.* Separation does not take place in the pres. part.: *Sind alle diese Kinder Ihre Enkel? fragte die junge Frau, sich teilnehmend im Zimmer umsehend.*

e. All separable prefixes remain unseparated in simple tenses in one particular case. If the separable prefix is placed at the head of the sentence for logical emphasis, as can be done with any word, inversion takes place according to the usual rule, and this throws prefix and verb together: *'Niederjagt die Front der Major* (Schiller's *Die Schlacht*) The major dashes down the space in front of the troops. The components are here more commonly, but certainly not more correctly, written apart: *Auf steigt der Mond, und nieder sinkt die Sonne* (Raabe's *Nach dem großen Kriege*, p. 2).

f. If there are two accented, separable prefixes, which is a rare case, the first prefix takes the accent. Such compounds, however, are only used in the cases where complete separation never occurs: *Zünfte, welche sich wieder nach ihren verschiedenen Gewerken 'unterabteilen.* In the part. the *ge* stands after the second prefix: *'unterabgeteilt, 'rückumgelautet* (Blatz's *Neuhochdeutsche Grammatik*, I, p. 535, 3rd ed.).

B. *Form and List of Separable Prefixes.* The separable prefix of the verb may be:

a. An adverb or preposition (225. I. a and b): *ab* denoting a movement downward or off, away, often with the additional idea of deterioration; the taking back of a former order or announcement; separation or deviation from something or someone, often pure and simple, often with the additional idea of contrast, disapproval, disparagement, aversion, or deficiency; often losing every trace of its original concrete meaning and assuming perfective force expressing the end or result of an act, often with the additional idea of thoroughness, on the one hand, and the idea of excess and injury on the other hand, as illustrated in 223. I. 7. G. d; *an* at, upon, on, on to, to, expressing a rest at a permanent goal, arrival at a goal (223. I. 9. B. 1), motion toward, a general forward movement, or a steady continuation (223. I. 7. E. a), sometimes an upward movement, often the beginning of an activity or the idea of affecting an object only a little (223. 7. E. b. (2)); *auf* up, open, an arousing, a restoration to a previous condition, often losing every trace of its original concrete meaning and assuming perfective force expressing the beginning of an act or state or the end of an action, often with the additional idea of consuming, exhausting, as illustrated in 223. I. 7. E. c; often rest upon or direction toward an object as illustrated in 223. I. 9. B. 2.; *aus* out, out of, the finishing or cessation of an activity or a state, the pushing of an activity to a befitting end; *bei* by, at the side of, aside, expressing the idea of nearness, close association, coöperation, accompaniment, addition to, direction toward, hostility to; *be'vor* ahead of (of time); *da* (dar before vowels) *there* + preposition, as in *da'von, da'ran, &c.*; *dar to, before* (of place), early in the period used with the force of *da'hin* with reference to a definite place, now = *hin* without reference to a definite place, confined in its use to a few verbs; *ein* (223. I. 9. B. 4) into; *em'por* up; *fort* onward, away; *ent'gegen* toward, against, expressing a friendly movement toward, or a hostile resistance to, or movement against; *ent'zwei* (corrupted form of *in zwei*) in two, apart; *heim* home; *her* motion toward the speaker; *hin* motion from the speaker; compounds with *her* and *hin*, as *he'rab, hi'nab, da'hin, to that place, to it*, denoting motion toward a definite place, *da'her* or *ein'her* along, &c.; *hint'an* behind, in a secondary position, after; *los* loose, free from, off, a sudden and lively breaking forth of an activity that is conceived of as held in check, as *losschießen* to fire away, *losschlagen* to begin battle; *mit* with; *nach* after, a succession in order of time or place; *nieder* down; *ob* above, on top, upon, fig. of duties that rest or devolve upon us, or of work upon which we must bestow time and labor; *vor* (earlier in period sometimes *für*; see *für*, b in 230) before, forward, also in compounds (*voraus, &c.*); *weg* away; *da'von* up and away; *weiter* continuation: *weitergehen* to continue, but *weiter gehen* to go on further; *zu* to, toward, lively unceasing exertion (223. I. 4. A), addition, shutting; *zu'rück* back; *zu'sammen* together; *zu'vor* before, ahead of (of time), &c.

b. An adjective, usually used as an objective predicate (see 104. 2. A. c): *totschlagen* or *tot schlagen* to strike dead, *bloßstellen* to expose, lit. place bare, *'gutmachen* or *gut machen* to make good. This is a very large group of words, but there is no uniform way of writing them. The closer adjective and verb blend together by taking on a distinct meaning not contained in the words taken separately, the more liable they are to be written together.

c. A noun (see 249. II. 1. D. (1)): *achtgeben* to give attention, *haushalten* to keep house, *Folge leisten* to obey, *teilnehmen* to take part in.

d. A prepositional phrase (see 249. II. 1. C): *zu Schiffe gehen* to go on board, *zuteil werden* to be allotted, *zustande kommen* to be accomplished, *imstande sein, instand setzen, zugrunde gehen, &c.*

## 2 Inseparable Compounds.

The inseparable prefixes are *be-*, *ent-* (written *emp-* before *f*: *empfinden*), *er-*, *ge-*, *ver-*, *wider-* (except in *widerhallen*, &c., see 3 A *e* below, 3rd par.), *zer-*, and usually *miß-* (see *b* below). As they do not now as formerly have separate existence outside of compounds, verbs compounded with them are in reality not compounds, but only derivative verbs. These prefixes have, however, a distinct meaning, and often influence both the meaning and construction of the verb. Their meanings are treated in 246 II at length, as their importance deserves. These prefixes are ordinarily without accent, but to make a contrast, they may receive stress. In *zu feuchten Gegenden muß man die Felder nicht 'be-sondern 'entwässern*. In very moist regions, it is necessary to drain instead of irrigating. As they are usually unaccented they have in course of time changed considerably their original form, and have lost their identity as independent words which they once were, and are now so closely compounded with the verb that they are felt as one with it, and can never be separated from it.

*a* In the perf. part these prefixes never take a *ge* before them, but in the infin. and the modal verbals (180) the *zu* stands before them. *Er hat die Tür verschlossen*. *Ich bitte, die Tür zu verschließen*. Please lock the door. *Die zu verschließende Tür* the door that is to be locked.

*b* Among these prefixes *miß-* occupies an exceptional position, as fully explained in 246.

II S

*c* When a separable prefix stands before a separable one the compound is inseparable. *es place, but th tenne die Verdie Fontane's Vor de (G Keller's D) Verbanne und verschafften ihr genugende Arbeit (ib., p. 337) Niemandem auf der Welt anvertraute er das Schicksal seines einzigen Kindes mit größerer Beruhigung als gerade ihm (Ertl's *Mistral*, v) Mein Vater vorenthält mir nicht seine lobenden Worte (Gustav Falke's *Die Stadt mit den goldenen Türmen*, p. 18)*

Note There is

*d* When an inseparable prefix stands before a separable one the compound is inseparable. *An der Tür wird [Betlern] nichts ver'abreicht*. Compare 3 B below.

## 3 Compounds Separable or Inseparable

*A* A few prefixes have double accent, accented or unaccented according to their meaning, and as a consequence are treated as separable or inseparable according to their accent and meaning. These prefixes are *durch* thru, *hinter* behind, *über* over, above, *um* around, *unter* under, beneath, *voll* full, completion, *wider* (see *c*, 3rd par.) back, *wieder* again.

*n* the prefix receives the principal it of the compound. These verbs. This shifting of the accent upon a new compound or the weakening its accent, which latter result often. These inseparable verbs take on figure verb is intrans the compound verb becomes trans with figurative or literal meaning. In the latter case the inseparable verb takes on intensive force, and only in this respect and grammatical construction does it differ from the intrans separable verb. Few inseparable verbs are intrans. *Hinter* is rarely accented in these compounds, and hence is usually employed in a figurative application. It is accented, and has its literal meaning only in popular and colloquial language. *Die Studentin mütter stieg mit ihrem neuen Mieter ins zweite Stockwerk hinauf und fuhrte ihn einen halbdunkeln Gang hinter* (Sperl's *Burschen heraus!*, p. 201). The more detailed treatment is as follows.

*a* The separable verb is trans or intrans with literal meaning. *Der Fährmann setzte die Truppen über*. The ferryman transported the troops over the river, or intrans. *Die Truppen setzten über*. The troops went over the river on the ferry. The same verb is trans and inseparable in figurative or altered meaning. *Der Schüler über'setzte das Buch*. The student translated the book. *Er holt das Buch bald wieder*. *He will soon go to get the book*, but *Er wiederholt seine Aufgabe*. *He is reviewing his exercise*. Compare *hold up* and *uphold*, *set up* and *upset*, *run out* and *outrun*.

In this group of inseparables the prefix has, except in case of *voll-*, *adverbial* force, but on account of its figurative meaning it is little felt and hence is weakly stressed. The separable prefix *voll-* was originally a predicative one, and hence has strong stress. In a strong stress, and in a figurative sense. *I* has in most cases prep separable verbs the pref and hence has strong st. In all use of *voll-* is an objective predicate usually more strongly stressed than

the verb. Altho in the separable prefixes the adverbial force predominates they have, as other separable prefixes that are related to prepositions, also considerable prepositional force, as illustrated in 223. I. 9. B.

b. The separable verb is intrans. with literal meaning: *Er hielt nirgends an, er fuhr durch, ist 'durchgefahren* He stopped nowhere, he drove thru. *Die Milch ist 'übergelaufen* The milk has run over, overflowed. Also metonymically *Der Krug ist 'übergelaufen*. The inseparable verb is trans. with figurative meaning: *Der gellende Ruf durch'fuhr meine Glieder, hat meine Glieder durch'fahren* The piercing cry went thru my very limbs. *Ich habe die Rechnung nur über'laufen* I have only cast a glance over the bill. *Es über'lief mich kalt* My blood ran cold. *Seine Gläubiger über'laufen ihn* His creditors are annoying him. Also according to *c* with different shades of meaning: *Ich habe mich über'laufen* I have exhausted myself with running. *Tränen über'liefen sein Antlitz* Tears flowed fast down his cheeks.

c. The separable verb is intrans. with literal or figurative meaning: *Er reiste durch* He traveled right thru. *Er geht mit diesem Plane um* He entertains this project. The inseparable verb is trans. with literal meaning and often has intensive force: *Ich um'ging die Stadt in einer Stunde* I walked around the town in an hour. *Er durch'reiste die Gegend* He traveled all over that part of the country. *Er ist durch das Dickicht 'durchgedrungen*, but *Das Öl hat das Holz durch'drungen*.

d. Few inseparable verbs are intransitive: *Sie mußten im Walde übernachten. Kurzum, er konnte sich nicht halten und übersiedelte* (also separable) . . . *nach England* (Fontane's *Cécile*, chap. x). *Vier Söhne sind hinterblieben* Four sons survive (the deceased).

e. There is often only a slight shade of difference between separable and inseparable verbs. The trans. inseparable may have perfective (denoting the outcome or result of an action) force, while the trans. separable compound has both durative (denoting duration) and perfective force: *Der Soldat durch'bohrt den Feind* *The soldier is despatching the enemy*, but *Der Tischler bohrt das Brett durch* *The joiner is boring a hole thru the board*. The first sentence represents only the final point in the action, while the second shows the action as continuing, at the same time, however, intimating that the hoped-for result will be attained. Sometimes there is little or no difference between the trans. inseparable and trans. separable.

There is often no difference between the inseparable trans. verb and the separable intrans., except that they require after them a different grammatical construction: *Das Pferd hat den Graben über'sprungen. Das Pferd ist hin'übergesprungen* The horse has jumped over (the ditch).

There is often no difference at all between separable and inseparable formations, especially in case of *wider*: *Die Töne haben in den Räumen 'widergehallt* or *wider'hallt. Die Räume haben die Töne 'widergehallt, or wider'hallt. Die Sonnenstrahlen leuchteten von dem oberen Teil der harzigen Stämme wider* (*Dahcim*, 15, 785a). *Die offenen Fenster wider'leuchteten im Winde winkend* (R. H. Bartsch's *Zwölf aus der Steiermark*, p. 46). „Faust“ *klingt von diesen Eindrücken wider* (Guhrauer, 1, 75). *In Ruprechts Herzen wider'klangen des Bruders bitter gemeinte Worte mit der Freudigkeit einer Offenbarung* (R. H. Bartsch's *Die Haindlkinder*, p. 146). *Dann wider'klang das Dorment von saftigen Lufthieben* (Hermann Hesse's *Unterm Rad*, p. 112). Likewise *widerschallen*, *widerspiegeln* (more commonly sep.), and *widerstrahlen*, but *wider'fahren*, *wider'legen*, *wider'raten*, *wider'reden*, *wider'rufen*, *wider'setzen*, *wider'sprechen*, *wider'stehen*, *wider'streben*, and *wider'streiten* are always inseparable. Compare



such compounds ought to be inseparable, and they are generally so, but they often take a ge or zu after the accented prefix: Er überanstrengt sich. Er hat sich überanstrengt or überangestrengt. Sie sind überanstrengt (Anselm Heine's *Eine Gabe*, Am 13 Juni). Ich war immer ein überangestrenzter, geplagter Mann (Fulda's *Die wilde Jagd*, 4, 5). Ich fürchte, mich zu überanstrengen, or sometimes überanzustrengen (Frenssen's *Die drei Getreuen*, III, 10).

### NOUNS MADE FROM COMPOUND VERBS.

216. Nouns made from verbs of course retain the accent of the verb: 'ausgehen, der 'Ausgang outcome; be'fehlen, der Be'fehl command; 'übersetzen, die 'Übersetzung transportation; über'setzen, die Über'setzung translation. For notable exception see art. 47. 3. B. a.

### VERBS INDIRECTLY COMPOUNDED.

217. There is a class of verbs (see 206) that seem to be compounded by prefixing a noun or adjective to a simple verb, but they are in reality made from compound substantives or adjectives. Verbs that have received their compound form in this indirect way have noun accent, i.e., accent on the first syllable, and are treated as simple verbs: das 'Frühstück breakfast, 'frühstücken to take breakfast, 'frühstückte, ge'frühstückt; der 'Ratschlag counsel, 'ratschlagen to take counsel with, 'ratschlagte, ge'ratschlagt; die 'Handhabe handle, 'handhaben to handle, 'handhabte, ge'handhabt, &c.

a In some cases the noun or adj. from which the verb was made has gone out of use 'wetterleuchten to sheet lighten from WILG weterleuch. Thus also 'rechtfertigen to justify, 'brandschatzen to lay under contribution, 'weissagen to prophesy, &c.

b The class of verbs has been greatly enriched since the last edition, and has been formed from *caress*, &c. The last two, however, and also frohlocken may also be accented on the second syllable, and hence may be treated as inseparable verbs and drop ge- in the perf. part. See 178 2 A b (3). On the other hand, lobsingeln and lobpreisen are sometimes in the infinitive and perf. part. treated as separable verbs lobzupreisen, lobgepreisen.

Note 1. The verb ehebrechen is only used in the pres. part and the simple infinitive form without zu, elsewhere being replaced by the verb brechen and the noun die Ehe eine ehebrechende Frau Du sollst nicht ehebrechen. But Gott verbietet, die Ehe zu brechen.

### REFLEXIVE VERBS

218. 1. The verb may be connected with the reflexive pronouns (see 142) in much the same way as in English. Most reflexive verbs govern the acc., but a few govern the dat. and a still smaller number the gen.:

#### Present Tense Indicative.

sich irren (w. acc.), to be mistaken.	schmeicheln (w. dat.), to flatter.	spotten (w. gen.), to ridicule.
ich irre mich	ich schmeichle mir	ich spotte meiner
{ du irrst dich	{ du schmeichelst dir	{ du spottest deiner
{ Sie irren sich	{ Sie schmeicheln sich	{ Sie spotten Ihrer selbst
er irrt sich	er schmeichelt sich	er spottet seiner selbst
wir irren uns	wir schmeicheln uns	wir spotten unser(er)
{ ihr irrt euch	{ ihr schmeichelt euch	{ ihr spottet euer(er)
{ Sie irren sich	{ Sie schmeicheln sich	{ Sie spotten Ihrer selbst
sie irren sich	sie schmeicheln sich	sie spotten ihrer selbst

a. In all tenses, the reflexive usually stands first in order of words among the modifiers of the predicate, preferring especially the place next to the verb, and in compound tenses next to the auxiliary: *Das Kind hat sich vor der Strafe gefürchtet*, or in the question order: *Hat sich das Kind vor der Strafe gefürchtet?* However, in the question order the reflexive must follow the *subject* if the subject be a pronoun: *Wie befinden Sie sich?* How do you do?

b. As indicated by its position the reflexive pronoun is entirely without accent. If it is to be made prominent, the word *selbst* must be added, which bears the accent: *Der leidenschaftlich erregte Jüngling tötete sich selbst, nicht seinen Beleidiger.*

2. There is a difference in reflexive verbs. Some are usually reflexive, pronoun and verb together forming one idea: *sich schämen* to be ashamed, *sich sehnen* to long (for), *sich freuen* to rejoice, *sich wundern* to be surprised, *sich erkälten* (N.G. and in parts of the South), *sich verkälten* (S.G.), or *sich verkühlen* (Austrian) to catch a cold, *sich schnauben* (N.G.) or *sich schneuzen* (S.G.) to blow the nose, *sich ausschnauben* (N.G.) to blow the nose thoroly, *sich ausschweigen* to keep perfectly still, i.e. refrain from making the slightest expression of opinion (as in *Hierüber schweigt Ludendorff sich aus*—Hans Delbrück in *Preußische Jahrbücher*, Oct. 1919, p. 92), &c. Some trans. and intrans. verbs are also used reflexively: *baden* to bathe, *ich bade mich*; *gehen* to walk, *ich gehe mich müde* I walk myself tired.

a. The reflexive pronoun in genuine reflexive verbs is not felt as an object in the strict sense of the term and hence is not treated as an independent element in the sentence, but merely as a part of the verb, and consequently the predicate complement does not agree with it in case, but refers back to the subject with which it agrees: *Er wundert sich als unerfahrener* (not *unerfahrenen*) *Neuling über alles.*

b. The predicate complement of verbs not really reflexive but used reflexively agrees sometimes with the subject and sometimes with the reflexive object, as usage has not yet become fixed at this point: *Ich fühle mich als der Apostel eines verfeinerten, veredelten Menschevolks* (Ebner-Eschenbach's *Glaubenslos*, chap. viii). *Der Westwind stürzte sich vom Meer her über den Winter im Land und fing an, sich als den Stärkeren zu fühlen* (Frenssen's *Die drei Getreuen*, III, 8). *Briest gab sich als zärtlicher Großvater* (Fontane's *Effi*, chap. xxiv). *Es ist anstrengend, einem Gefühlsschwärmer, als welchen Paderewski sich ausschließlich gab, einen langen Abend hindurch zu folgen* (*Tägliche Rundschau*). *Du nennst dich einen Teil, und stehst doch ganz vor mir* (Goethe's *Faust*, 1). *Ich denk', er nennt mein guter Freund sich noch* (Kleist's *Der zerbrochene Krug*, 10). *Der sich wähnte den Herrscher der Welt* (Freiligrath, *Volksztg.*, 18, 191). *Es ist nichts Geringes, an der goldenen Tafel der Olympier zu sitzen, sich wohl gar einer ihrer zu wännen* (Spielhagen's *Selbstgerecht*, p. 64).

*Note.* There is a tendency to make a distinction here between nom. and acc. The former is an objective statement of the outcome of an act or activity, often also a simple predication of a fact known and acknowledged, the latter indicates a desire or intention on the part of the speaker or someone else to show himself in the capacity mentioned in the predicate complement, and in general calls attention to a fact not before known to the person in question: *Herr B. erwies sich als fertiger Pianist, aber als ziemlich gewöhnlicher Komiker*, but *Die Folge ist weiter, daß sobald sich der deutsche Arbeiter oder Handwerker (who in Paris for sake of personal security does not desire to be known as a German) aklimatisiert hat, er sich als Franzosen entdeckt* (Franz Wugk in *Hamburger Nachrichten*, Feb. 25, 1905) and *Er (Dr. Voß of Cologne) bekennt sich als grundsätzlichen Anhänger der konfessionellen Schule* (*Die Frankfurter Zeit.*, June 16, 1920). *Er zeigt sich als ein gebildeter, unterrichteter Mann, but Traue nicht jedem, der sich dir als deinen Freund zeigen will. Man kann sich empfehlen als jemandes aufrichtigen Verehrer, ergebensten Diener* (He desires to show himself in these capacities), aber nur als sein dankbarer Schüler (He is already known as a student and hence need not make known his desire to appear in this capacity, but simply states it as a fact by using the nom.).

c. Because the reflexive is not felt as object, it cannot in the passive voice become subject. Hence reflexive verbs should not form a passive, but the people insist nevertheless on forming one, however an impersonal (never a personal) passive (see 219. 5. B): *Da wird sich gerudert* (Halbe's *Mutter Erde*, ii, p. 24). The reflexive is also omitted in this construction: *Hier wird hin-gesetzt!* 's ist Platz genug für 'n lustiges Kleeblatt (Halbe's *Das tausendjährige Reich*, p. 133).

3. The reflexive verb in German has a wider field of usefulness than in English. It occurs in the following groups:—

A. *With Passive Force.* In a large number of cases where things come about of themselves Germans hesitate to use a passive, hence they employ reflexive form, which is so often, as in B, associated with intransitive meaning. But as this apparent intransitive force here always represents something as developing into a new state, consequently as affected, it usually develops into passive meaning, as often also in B. In English the strong passive idea here usually calls forth passive form, but sometimes, as in B, intransitive form. Examples: Zwischen den Augen hatte sich eine tiefe Falte gegraben A deep wrinkle had been formed or had formed (as the result of care) between his eyes. Der Mut verlernt sich nicht, wie er sich nicht lernt Courage is a natural gift that cannot be acquired or lost. Der Wiesengrund ist schon so bunt und malt sich täglich bunter The meadow is already resplendent with many colors and is daily adorned with still brighter ones. Der Saal füllte sich allmählich The great room was gradually filled with people. So etwas spricht sich schnell herum Such a thing is soon spread about, or soon spreads. Der Schlüssel wird sich finden The key will be found, or will turn up. Das begreift sich leicht That is easily understood.

a. Especially frequent is the reflexive use of *lassen* with a dependent infinitive which has passive force: *Das läßt sich leicht machen* That is easily done. *Das läßt sich leicht sagen* That is easily said. *Er läßt Holz auf sich hacken* He is easily imposed upon, He'll stand anything, lit. He allows wood to be chopped upon himself. *Er läßt sich leicht abschrecken* He is easily deterred.

B. *With Intransitive or Passive Force.* In German, reflexive form often corresponds to intransitive in English. In one large group the reflexive verb represents a person or, by way of personification, a thing as acting on himself or itself: *Sie kleidet sich einfach* She dresses plainly. *Die Erde dreht sich um ihre Achse* The earth turns on its axis. *Der Wind hat sich gedreht* The wind has turned. *Das Volk sammelt sich auf dem Rathaus* The people are assembling at the city hall. In another group reflexive form has a force closely related to intransitive use, so that the subject is not thought of as acting upon himself: *Die Ohnmächtige erholt sich* is coming to (herself again). *Der Kranke soll sich erheblich gebessert haben* is said to have improved. *Er hat sich nicht gezeigt* He didn't show up. *Das kleine Mädchen hat sich zu einem Fräulein ausgewachsen* has developed into. In another group of reflexive verbs passive develops out of intransitive force: *Der Dampf verflüssigt sich* The steam is becoming a liquid, hence is passing into a new state, which clearly indicates that it is being acted on. Similarly with passive force: *Solche Häuser vermieten sich leicht* Such houses rent or are rented easily. *Salz löst sich auf* Salt dissolves, or can be dissolved. English in a few cases clings here to intransitive form where in German the passive form is so clearly felt that passive form is used: *Die erste Sendung wurde in einer Woche ausverkauft* The first consignment *sold out* or *was sold out* in a week. *Sein Hut wurde in den Fluß geweht* His hat *blew into* the river.

The line of development here is clear. Reflexive force often develops into intransitive and intransitive into passive. When intransitive force develops, English often discards the old reflexive pronoun: I met a fool, who laid him down and *basked him* (now simply *basked*) in the sun (*As You Like It*, 2, 7, 15). As can be seen by the examples given above, English still often retains intransitive form after it has acquired passive force. It sometimes even retains the original reflexive form after the development of active and, still later, passive force: The fire *communicated itself* to the next house. German is usually tenacious of reflexive form even after its meaning has changed.

a. A few verbs are used intransitively or reflexively:  
hasten, endigen (or less commonly enden) or less co  
flüchten or perhaps  
baren  
nähere  
commo

more commonly sich  
uten or perhaps more

There is sometimes a differentiation of meaning: *ausruhen* to *rest*, as in *Er ruht auf seinen Lorbeeren aus*, but to indicate purpose *sich ausruhen*, as in *Ich habe mich ausgeruht und Er setzte sich, um sich auszuruhen*; *erübrigen* to *remain*, as in *Es erübrigt noch, auf den letzten Punkt der Tagesordnung, einzugehen*, but *sich erübrigen* to *be superfluous, unnecessary*, as in *Es erübrigt sich, auf diese Frage einzugehen*.

b. Corresponding to the German reflexive verb we often have in English a transitive with an object of the thing: *Er bessert sich* He is mending his ways. *Er hat sich erkältet* He has caught a cold. *Er räusperte sich* He cleared his throat. *Lowell versuchte sich einmal an einem Roman* Lowell once tried his hand at a novel. *Er schlägt sich mit ihm* He is having a fight with him. *Er schreibt sich mit ihm* He is carrying on a correspondence with him. *Er küßte sich mit ihr* He exchanged kisses with her.

c. In many common cases the use of a transitive verb reflexively gives the verb intransitive ingressive force. See 164.

C. With intransitives (or transitives used like intransitives without an object) in the impersonal construction, to show that the action is proceeding, or is able to proceed in a certain manner, which is represented as the natural result of the given circumstances: *Es tanzt sich gut in diesem Saal* This room is good for dancing. *Es fährt sich bequem in diesem Wagen* It is pleasant riding in this carriage. *Wie ritt es sich lustig durch die gebirgigen Wege!* What jolly riding that was over the mountain roads! *Es schreibt sich schlecht auf diesem Papier* This paper is bad for writing on. *Mit der Eisenbahn fährt es sich rasch.* *Von eurer Fahrt kehrt sich's nicht immer wieder* From journeys like yours it is in the nature of things that one does not always return.

a. Sometimes a trans. verb and its object are conceived of as forming together an intrans. verb, and can thus form this impersonal reflexive construction: *Wie hübsch spielt sich's den Vater, wenn man so allerliebste Geständnisse zu hören bekommt* (Schiller) How nice it is to play the father when one gets to hear such charming confessions.

D. Frequent is the use of a reflexive in connexion with a prep. phrase or an objective predicate to denote a change of place or condition, or the result of an action, often corresponding in English to a transitive verb with an object of the thing: *Ich lief mich in Schweiß* I began to perspire from running. *Ich fiel mich wund* I became sore from a fall. *Er drängte sich herein* He pushed his way in. *Er schlug sich durch den Feind durch* He fought his way thru the enemy. *Er tastete sich zum Fenster* He groped his way to the window. *Er hat sich um vier Mark verrechnet* He made a mistake of four marks in counting.

E. *Haben* is often used reflexively as a strong negative reply to a preceding statement, but is in fact an affirmative assertion, uttered in an ironical tone: *Und das Geschäft blüht? Jawohl, blüht! Hat sich da was zu blühen!* (Eckstein) Is your business flourishing? Oh yes, it is flourishing finely (ironically).

## IMPERSONAL VERBS

219. Impersonal verbs are conjugated like other verbs thruout the different moods and tenses, but are defective in having only a third person sing. and no passive at all (for exception see 5 below). The impersonal construction in German is a favorite one and has been very productive, and many verbs are now used impersonally which with other meanings are also personal. The *es* is not absolutely necessary here as the activity or state represented by the verb is not felt as standing in a relation to a subject, as explained in 250. a (2nd par.): *Mich hungert.* The *es* was first inserted in such forms of the sentence where the verb stood in the first place: *Es hungert mich.* The *es* was thus first employed here to distinguish the declarative from the interrogative form of sentence. Another influence helped establish *es* as subject in these impersonal constructions. Even early in O.H.G. there was already a strong tendency to conform German expression here to the normal type of sentence structure with a subject and a predicate, hence to use a mere formal subject without meaning rather than to leave the sentence entirely without a subject. This is clearly indicated by the frequent use of *es* where it was not needed to distinguish the declarative from the interrogative form: *Thar was fiur thuruh daz, wanta iz, flu kalt was* (Otfrid, IV. 18. 11) *Es brannte nun ein Feuer dort,*

weil es sehr kalt war. The employment of the formal subject *es* here was suggested by the use of anticipative *es* (251. I. 2. B) which, tho it had a little concrete meaning in that it pointed forward to a following clause, the real subject of the sentence, was nevertheless a mere formal element and as such could be omitted and can sometimes even still be omitted, as illustrated in 251. I. 2. B. *Note.* Present usage with regard to the use or omission of impersonal *es* is defined in detail below.

The following groups are very common:

1. Verbs which alone or in connection with a predicate noun or adjective express phenomena of nature, the time of day, seasons of the year, divisions of the month, week, &c., distances in space and time, &c., where the situation makes the thought clear without the aid of a definite subject: *es regnet* it rains; *es schneit* it snows; *es hagelt* it hails; *es friert* it freezes; *es dämmt* it is twilight; *es düstert* it is growing dusky; *es tagt* it is dawning; *es taut* it thaws; *es donnert* it thunders; *es blitzt* it lightens, *es blitzte* schelmisch in ihren Augen there was a sly look in her eyes; *es wird Nacht* it is getting quite dark; *es ist gutes, schlechtes Wetter*; *es ist zu spät*; *es ist kalt, warm, heiß*, and sometimes after the manner of the French *macht's heiß?* (Grillparzer's *Libussa*, 2), *es macht kalt*; *wieviel Uhr ist es?* what time is it?; *es ist elf* it is eleven o'clock; *es geht auf elf*; *es schlägt elf*; *es ist dunkel, es ist Sommer, es lenzt* spring is coming, has come, *es herbstet*. *Es ist heute Feiertag* It's a holiday to-day. *Es ist Montag* It is Monday. *Es ist der erste Juni* It is the first of June.

Often in German and sometimes in English there is still as in oldest German no *es* here in case of a predicate noun, adjective, or adverb where some other word than *es* introduces the sentence, or where the predicate noun stands in a subordinate clause: *Heute ist der erste Juni* To-day is the first of June. *Morgen ist Feiertag* To-morrow is a holiday. *Morgen ist bei uns frei, auf der Mädchenschule nicht* To-morrow is a holiday with us, but not at the girls' school. *Heute morgen hat es gefroren, jetzt ist Tauwetter*. Er trug immer eine braune Kutte mit einer Kapuze daran, die er über den Kopf stülpte, wenn schlecht Wetter war (V. Blüthgen's *Das Peterle von Nürnberg*, chap. II). *Der wievielte ist heute?* What day of the month is to-day, or is it to-day? Compare 219 and also 4. B. *a. Note* and 5. B. *a* below. In English the preservation of the old impersonal form without a subject has been rendered easy by the now common simple device of placing the expletive *there* at the beginning of the sentence: *There* was a heavy frost last night. Also in German there is a tendency in *lively* modern as well as older colloquial speech to omit *es*, as there is still a distinct feeling that the activity or state expressed by the verb does not stand in relation to a subject: *Ist kalt heute!* Compare 250. *a*.

The impersonal *es* here and elsewhere should not be confounded with the *es* which points to something definite which is more or less clearly defined by the situation: *Kommst du heute zu mir?* *Es* (i.e. the way, distance) *ist mir zu weit*, or *Es ist mir zu weit zu dir*. *Warten Sie bis nächste Woche*. *Es* (i.e. this period of waiting) *ist mir zu lange bis dahin*. This situation *es*, provided it does not stand in the first place in sentence or clause, is still often omitted in certain set expressions where the situation makes the thought clear: *Zu dir ist* (or *ist es*) *mir zu weit*. *Bis dahin ist* (or *ist es*) *mir zu lange*. Compare 3 (last par.) below. In *lively* colloquial speech also the *es* which stands in the first place may still drop out: *Ist mir zu weit!*

2. Many reflexive verbs or verbs used reflexively: *Es klärt sich auf* It is clearing up. *Es geht sich* (218. 3. C) *sehr gut* The walking is very good. *Es tritt sich auf dem Pflaster der Straße unangenehm*. *Auf diesem Wege fährt es sich gut*. *Es tanzt sich gut in diesem Saale*. *Es liest sich in der Dämmerung schlecht* *It's bad reading in the twilight*, but the *es* does not belong here at all where the reference is to something definite: *Es* (referring to a book under consideration) *liest sich angenehm* *It is pleasant reading*, or *Es liest sich, als wäre es wahr* *It reads like truth*.

Es is not omitted in this modern category which has developed under the domination of formal grammar, which requires a subject for every sentence.

3. Within the present period in both English and German the impersonal construction has come into much wider use than formerly as it seemed ever more desirable not to bring the activity or state into relation to a definite subject but to direct the attention solely to the activity. In German an impersonal transitive or intransitive verb with its formal subject *es* is employed, while in English the older form without a formal subject is preferred, introduced here as so often elsewhere by the expletive *there*, usually in connection with a predicate in the form of a verbal noun: *Es klopft* *There is a knock at the door*. In the English sentence *knock* is not a subject, so that the idea is not "A knock is at the door," but *knock* is a predicate, i.e. a knocking is predicated, and *is* is the formal sign of predication, just as the *t* in the German verb *klopft*. The German and English sentences are exactly alike in form and meaning. In both the attention is merely called to an activity without any desire of bringing it into relation to a definite subject. Altho the impersonal construction is very common in English the personal construction with the name of a person or thing in the nominative is sometimes found where the German construction is impersonal, so that in the following examples the two languages do not always coincide: *Es brennt!* Fire! Fire! *Es zuckte um seinen Mund* There was a twitching about his mouth. *Es reißt mir in allen Gliedern* I feel racking pains in all my limbs. *Es kocht in ihm* He is boiling with rage. *Da wallte es in ihm auf* Then his blood began to boil. *Manchmal lief es ihm kalt den Rücken herab* Many a time a cold thrill ran down his back. *Es setzt Schläge* It has come to blows. *Es wogte und tobte* There was a heaving and raging, i.e. their minds were in violent commotion. *Es zieht hier* There is a draught here. *Es schallt sehr in diesem Saale* There is a strong resonance in this hall. *Es riecht hier nach Talg*. *Es geht bergab mit seiner Gesundheit*. *Es braucht keines weiteren Wortes*. *Es bedarf nur eines Wortes*. *Es hapert irgendwo* There is a hitch somewhere.

Sometimes the *es* seems to indicate an indefinite, indescribable something and sometimes it imparts a weird, ghostly impression: *Es läßt mir keine Ruhe* A queer undefinable feeling of unrest disquiets me. *Oft ergriff es ihn mit dämonischer Gewalt* (Raabe's *Ein Frühling*, chap. vi). *Es geht im Hause um* The house is haunted. *Und als er im willigen Schlummer lag, bewegt es sich unter dem Bette* And when he was about to go to sleep something stirred under the bed. The verbs used here are such as usually have a personal subject. The vague, indefinite impression so often conveyed here by this construction seems to come from the fact that no definite person is mentioned with verbs that are usually associated with definite reference. The idea of indefiniteness thus attaches here to *es*, which altho subject does not reveal anything about the person or persons engaged in the activity.

The *es* is regularly expressed in this large modern category which has developed under the domination of formal grammar, which requires a subject for every sentence. Moreover the *es* is here often absolutely necessary to distinguish the declarative from the interrogative form of statement, for the verb here is usually important and naturally comes to the front by reason of its emphasis, or its prominence in the narrative style which markedly characterizes many of these sentences naturally brings it forward, as described in 251. II. B. a. bb. Compare 219 and 250. a (2nd par.).

The impersonal *es* here and elsewhere should not be confounded with the *es* or *das* which points to something definite which is more or less clearly defined by the situation: *Wird's bald?* Are you ever going to get thru?, lit. Will it (the work in hand) soon come into being? *Es geht nicht* It can't be done. *Es (or das) ist mir recht*. *Es ist mir einerlei*. *Es steht schlecht* Things are in bad condition. *Das regnet ja heut in einem fort!* *Das gibt ein Unglück*. *Es ist Hans* (uttered by someone who has just heard approaching steps). *Es* (i.e. the waiting) *dauerte lange, ehe er kam*. *Es brennt* (spoken in the house

with reference to the fire in the stove), but *es* is impersonal in *Es brennt!* (a cry upon the street). This situation *es*, provided it does not stand in the first place in sentence or clause, is still often omitted in certain set expressions where the situation makes the thought clear. *Er kommt so bald als möglich* = *so bald als es* (i.e. *das Kommen*) *möglich ist*. *Er benahm sich nicht, wie sich schickte, or wie es sich schickte*. Compare 251. II A. d. See also 1 and 2 above.

a. The impersonal *es gibt* *there is, there are* from its unusual frequency demands a careful study. It simply calls attention to a giving, causing, producing without any attempt to bring the activity into relations to a definite subject, hence it closely resembles in construction *es regnet*, differing from it only in verbal meaning and of course also in grammatical function in that it is a transitive and takes an accusative object indicative. *Es gibt viel Elend im Lande* *There is much misery in the land* *sonal construction misery is not an object as in German but misery is simply predicated without being represented as a result of active forces as in German*. When the idea of active natural forces disappears we find also in German the English form, but with *es* instead of *there*. *Es gibt Löwen in Afrika, aber nicht in Europa* *There are lions in Africa but not in Europe*, which is a natural result of the different state of civilization, but *Es sind weiße Elefanten in dieser Menagerie* *There are white elephants in this menagerie*, where the reference is merely to a state of things not to active natural forces producing results. Notice that the *es* of the *es ist* (sind) construction drops out if it is not the first word, while *there* in English always remains. *In dieser Menagerie sind weiße Elefanten* *In this menagerie there are white elephants*, but *In Afrika gibt es Löwen* *In Africa there are lions*. The German is very fond of the *es gibt* form. *Es gibt ein Verrath* *There is a betrayal*.

contention and noise going on

After the analogy of a number of the above sentences where *es gibt* is used in a broad general statement it is sometimes employed to avoid particular mention, and to state something in a vague, general way. *Es gibt hier einen jungen Menschen, der seine Äußerungen ein wenig mehr hamacher prägnanter* *There is here a young fellow (I do not desire to point him out) who might*

We shall get some snow yet to for dinner

man the impersonal form  
What shall we get to dry?  
Yesterday we had cabbage

Note. The real nature of this construction is sometimes little felt, as in dialect the object of *geben* sometimes becomes the subject and this incorrect usage appears occasionally in the literary language. *Es ist ein Kauz, wie's mehr noch geben* (Goethe's *Urfaust*, I 1175) *Es müssen auch solche Käuze geben* (*Kölnische Zeitung*).

4. A. Some verbs expressing states of the mind or body. There is here still, as in earlier periods, considerable fluctuation of usage as there often prevails the desire to call attention merely to an activity as going on in the body or mind without bringing it into a relation to a definite subject, when of course the impersonal construction is employed, or, on the other hand, it is often desired to call attention to a definite person or thing as the subject and thus indicate that the person is felt as passing thru an experience, or a definite person or thing is conceived as affecting the person: *Es erbarmt mich deiner* *I pity you*, *Mich erbarmt deiner*, *Du erbarmst mich*, *Dein Unglück erbarmt mich*, or more commonly *Ich erbarme mich über dich*. The impersonal idea which has proved useful in modern as well as older life and hence is well preserved in the other groups and has there even been spreading has in this group in general since O.H.G. been slowly yielding to the personal idea. In this group as in others impersonal *es* must be carefully distinguished from situation *es* (see 3, last par.), which points to something definite which is more or less clearly defined by the situation: *Es* (referring to a misfortune at hand) *betriibt mich tief*. *Es* (life) *gefällt mir in Berlin*. *Es* or *das* *verschlägt mir nichts* *It or that* (the issue, matter at hand) *is quite immaterial to me*.

On the basis of grammatical form this impersonal group falls into three classes:

a. Those that take an acc. of the person: *es dünkt* (rare form *dünkelt*) or *bedünkt* (bedunkelt) *mich* or *mir* it seems to me; *es brennt mich* it smarts; *es durstet* or *dürstet mich*, or *ich bin durstig* I am thirsty, *ich dürfte nach*; *es friert mich* I am cold, *es friert mich an* (w. dat. of the part affected, as den

Füßen, sometimes also w. acc. die Füße), or with a little different meaning in with acc. (: es friert mich bis in die Fingerspitzen), or ich friere an (den Füßen), or mir frieren die Füße; es fröstelt mich or sometimes mir, also ich fröstele I feel chilly; es hungert mich, or ich bin hungrig I am hungry; es juckt mich I itch, es juckt mich auf dem ganzen Körper, im Ohr, in den Zehen, die Zehen jucken mir, or meine Zehen jucken; es kitzelt mich (or sometimes mir), es kitzelt mich am Leibe, am ganzen Leibe; es kratzt or kitzelt mich im Halse; es schläfert mich I am sleepy; es schmerzt mich it pains me; es schüttelt mich it sends a shiver thru me, I'm shivering; es schwitzt mich, or more commonly ich schwitze I am perspiring; es würgt mich I'm choking, I have a choking sensation; es wurmt mich (or now less commonly mir) it vexes me inwardly.

b. Those that take a dative of the person: es ist mir bekehrt, common in colloquial language in the expression Ich weiß selber nicht recht, wie mir bekehrt ist (Telmann's *Wahrheit*, XIII), or Ich weiß nicht, wie ich bekehrt bin I am sorely puzzled; es beliebt it pleases in certain set expressions, as wie es Ihnen beliebt as you please, also es geliebt it pleases in a few expressions, as geliebt es Gott if God wills, geliebt's den Göttern (Grillparzer's *Libussa*, 2); es dämmer mir it dawns upon my mind, as in Es dämmerte mir in der Seele wunderbar bei seiner Rede, but often also with a nom. subject of the thing, as in Mir dämmer ein Strahl von Hoffnung; es eilt mir I am in a hurry, es eilt Ihnen ja auf einmal ganz gewaltig, Herr, mir gute Nacht zu wünschen (Wilbrandt's *Vater Robinson*, II. chap. ii), also ich habe Eile and es pressiert mir: Aber es ist doch besser, als daß Sie bis morgen warten müssen, wenn es Ihnen schon so pressiert (Spielhagen's *Faustulus*, p. 60), or ich bin pressiert; es fehlt mir an (w. dat.) I lack; es geht mir gut I'm well; es gelingt mir I succeed, still sometimes used impersonally, as in Es ist ihm damit gelungen, but more commonly with a nom. subject of a thing, as in Es, alles, nichts, der Versuch ist ihm gelungen, or with an infinitive as logical subject, as in Es ist mir gelungen, ihn zu besänftigen; es graut, grauert, grauselt, graust, gruselt mir or mich (vor w. dat.), or ich graue, grau[e]lle, &c. mich (vor) I shudder (at), es ist, wird mir angst, bange, or sometimes ich bin angst (originally a substantive, now sometimes construed as a predicate adjective) and more commonly ich bin bange (originally an adverb, now quite commonly felt as an adjective), bist du bange? (Otto Ernst's *Jugend von heute*, 4, 6), or es bangt mir or mich I am, am getting anxious, afraid, es bangt mir or mich für (um) mein Leben, meinen Freund, vor dem Tode, or ich bange mich or ich bange für etwas (or einen) or vor etwas, es fürchtet mir (Swiss = ich fürchte mich); es liegt mir daran it is of importance to me; es rappelt ihm or more commonly bei ihm something is wrong with him in his upper story; es schaudert mir or mich I shudder, mir schaudert (vor + dat.), or ich schaudere (vor + dat.); es schwindelt mir (sometimes mich) I am giddy, dizzy; sein in connection with certain adjectives and adverbs, as es ist mir kalt, warm I am cold, warm, or sometimes after the manner of the French: Hast du kalt? (Wildenbruch's *König Heinrich*, 2, 4); es ist mir schwach I feel faint, es ist mir übel I feel sick at the stomach; es ist mir wohl zu Mut I am in good humor; es träumt mir (only rarely mich), or ich träume I dream; es widert mir vor etwas, or etwas zu tun I loathe something, or to do something, also with acc.; mir zweifelt nicht daran I have no doubt about it, now usually ich zweifle nicht daran.

c. There is a group of impersonal verbs with an acc. or dat. and a gen.: Es erbarmt mich seiner or Mich erbarmt seiner I pity him. These verbs are given in 262. II. A. c. In early N.H.G. they formed a flourishing group, but since that time they have entirely or in part abandoned the impersonal construction and where it is retained the original form of expression has been considerably changed, as described in detail in 262. II. B. d.

B. a. The constructions a, b, c under A may be varied by changing the order, either placing the dat. or acc. object before and the es after the verb, or by thus inverting the object but suppressing the es: es graut mir, or mir



graunt es, or mir graunt Some verbs only take the es in the inverted word-order, when no other modifiers follow. *Ihn jammert es* It causes him pity but *Ihn jammert des Volkes* He pities the people. After a number of the verbs describing a state of mind or body the es can usually only stand as the first word in this construction in the principal proposition and in the subordinate clause is usually or  
*Selig sind die da* *er wird alt* *Mich hungerte*  
*Es ist, als ob jema* *er Gerechtigkeit* (Matth v 6)  
*nach dem mich durstet* (Spiel-  
 hagen's *Sonntagskind* II, 5) *Es ist nicht kalt, wie mich dunkt* (M Heyne, *Wörterbuch*) *Wie mir ekelt* *wie mir ekelt!* (delle Grazie's *Vineta*) Notice also the sentence from Telmann in A b above. More and more however, the formal subject es is gradually forcing its way into these positions. *Mir, mich ekelt* (es) (Daniel Sanders)

*Note.* Originally, such verbs did not take a formal subject, as the activity or state expressed by the verb was not felt as standing in a relation to a subject. Thus the omission of the es in the inverted and the transposed order is the survival of a once general usage. Compare 219 and also 250 a

b Observe that, tho the impersonal construction may sometimes be replaced by the personal as in *Es friert ihn*, or *er friert* *He is freezing* sometimes there is a sharp distinction between them. The impersonal construction indicates that the force exerted comes from without, while the personal subject indicates that the act comes from the subject. *Er friert und hungert aus Geiz* He freezes and goes hungry from pure stinginess. Here the impersonal construction could not be used.

5 An impersonal construction with es either expressed or understood is found in the passive of verbs that govern the gen or dat, and with many other intransitives, an idiom that is quite foreign to our language. Note the following points

A In transferring a sentence from the active to the passive, the acc as in English becomes nom, but the gen dat and a prep phrase remain unchanged and the subject becomes es expressed or understood (active) *er spottet meiner*, (passive) *es wird meiner gespottet*, or *meiner wird gespottet*, *er schmeichelt mir*, *es wird mir von ihm geschmeichelt*, or *mir wird von ihm geschmeichelt*. *Er schickte mich nach dem Arzt* He sent me for the physician. *Es ist nach dem Arzt geschickt worden* The physician has been sent for. *Ich habe an ihn geschrieben* I have written to him. *Es ist an ihn geschrieben worden* He has been written to. When the agent is not expressed as in the last sentence, this impersonal passive, as in B below, represents an activity only in a general way without reference to a definite agent. For fuller description of this construction, see 268 1

This construction is not only found with the regular passive forms but also with predicate modal verbals (180 A) which take a dative or a prepositional phrase, as this construction i.e. a prepositional infinitive after the copula *sein*, is now felt as a passive form since with transitive verbs it has passive force. *Es ist ihm* (or *Ihm ist*) *nicht zu trauen* *He is not to be trusted*. *Es ist ihm* (or *Ihm ist*) *nicht beizukommen* *There (formerly it) is no getting at him*. *Es ist nicht mit ihm auszukommen*, or *Mit ihm ist nicht auszukommen*

As actional passive (194 4) forms are used in all the examples given above the reference is to an act. The statal passive (194 4) must be used here when the reference is to a state. *Ihr ist* (or *Es ist ihr*) *geholfen* She is cared for. Here the participle is always the predicate but there is no actual subject, at most only a formal subject, es, which can only be expressed when it stands in the first place. In the objective predicate construction the object of the principal verb is the subject of the clause and the participle is the predicate. *Ich glaubte ihn geheilt* I believed him to be cured. In the impersonal objective predicate construction there can be no accusative object as there is no subject in the clause. The dative or prepositional object of the active is simply retained in the passive. *Ich glaubte ihr geholfen* I believed her to be cared for. *Ich fühle mir* (often *mich*) *durch Ihren Brief geschmeichelt* Compare 262 III 2 B (last par)

B. The impersonal passive of such intransitives as have no object at all and such transitives as are used like intransitives without an object does not represent the subject (see *a* below) as acted on, but denotes in quite a general way an activity or a state in and of itself without reference to a definite subject, and with no reference whatever to a direct object: *Es wird gelaufen* There (compare 3 above, 1st par.) is running going on; *Es wurde immer viel geplaudert, gescherzt und gelacht* There was always a good deal of chatting, joking and laughing. *Oben wird getanzt* There is dancing going on upstairs. *Es wird noch geschlafen* Some people are still asleep. *Für den lieben König und Herrn wird [personal passive] alles getan, wird [impersonal passive] treulich gekämpft, wird [impers.] willig geblutet, wird [impers.] freudig in den Tod gegangen, für ihn wird [impers.] mehr als gestorben: für ihn werden [pers.] starken Herzens auch die Kinder geopfert* (Vilmar's *Literaturgeschichte*). *Man muß Soldat sein für sein Land oder aus Liebe zu der Sache, für die gefochten wird.*

*a.* In principal propositions in both A and B *es* must, according to 219, be used when the verb is not preceded by a modifier, for it is then needed at the head of the sentence to distinguish the declarative from the interrogative form of sentence, but drops out when some other word takes the first place. It is also omitted as a rule in subordinate clauses with transposed word-order.

*b.* This construction can only be used with intransitives which express an activity or condition that stands in a relation to a free moral agent: *Es wird gegessen, geschlafen* They (indefinite) are eating, sleeping, but not *Es wird gefunkelt, geblitzt, gerauscht* There is a sparkling, it is lightening, there is a rushing of water.

*Note.* This construction arose with transitives that can be used in the active without an expressed object and hence in the passive without an expressed subject: *Bittet | so wird euch gegeben | Suchet so werdet ir finden | Klopfet an | so wird euch aufgethan* (Luke xi. 9). The original passive force can here still be felt, but as there is in the active no object and in the passive no subject the transitive idea is overshadowed by the conception of an activity pure and simple, an activity that is conceived as proceeding without reference to any agent at work or to any definite subject as acted upon, so that the force is usually felt as intransitive and the construction is extended to intransitives. *Heute wird gelacht.* This passive construction, already in use in Gothic and O.H.G., became common in M.H.G.

*c.* In certain set expressions a trans. verb and its object are conceived of as together forming the idea of an activity, and hence the verb with its object, both together being treated as a simple intrans., may form this impersonal passive: *Es wurde Kegel (acc. pl.) geschoben* There was playing at ninepins going on. *Rastlos wurde fortgewirkt, gewaffnet, geübt, gekleidet und Verwundete (acc. pl.) geheilt* (Kohlrausch). *Unter diesen wurde fleißig Karten gespielt, gemäßigte Parkpromenaden gemacht, den Tafelfreuden gehuldigt und unabsehbar viel „kannegegossen“* (Suttner's *Die Waffen nieder!*, III). In the same manner a verb and its reflexive object is sometimes treated as a simple intransitive: *Da wurde geknaufft und geprügelt, in zitternder Angst sich verkrochen und mit lautem Hallo losgestürmt* (C. Viebig's *Die Wacht am Rhein*, p. 48). Compare 177. I. B. *b* (last par.). The reflexive construction has not found favor with grammarians, altho it is widely used in dialect and colloquial speech and for hundreds of years has from time to time occasionally appeared in the literary language.

## PARTICLES.

220. A particle is a word that cannot be inflected at all. Particles are divided into adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections, but these classes cannot always be sharply defined, as many prepositions and conjunctions are also reckoned among adverbs.

## ADVERBS.

221. Definition. The adverb (i.e. belonging to a verb) is true to its name, a particle principally used to modify the meaning of a verb, but it may also modify an adjective or another adverb: *Der Sturm tobt sehr; ein sehr heftiger Sturm; ein sehr heftig tobender Sturm.*

*a.* The adverb is often used alone without reference to a verb, adjective, or other adverb: *herein! come in! vorwärts! forward! auf, auf, Kameraden!*

## THE FUNCTION AND FORM OF ADVERBS, ADJECTIVES, AND PREPOSITIONS COMPARED.

222. 1. The adverb borders very closely in its nature upon the adjective. It modifies a verb, adjective, or other adverb in the same manner as an adjective modifies a noun. Thus in.

general out of any adjective an adverb can be formed and there results a large number of parallel forms—an inflected one modifying a noun and an uninflected one modifying a verb, adjective, or other adverb.

... actly the ... form of the adjective  
guage w ... Thus as the adverb  
as the ... often approach each  
other closely in nature, the boundary between their respective functions is not always sharply  
Hence an adverb is often used for an adjective, where there  
any adverbs which are now used adjectively were originally  
verb, and did not take on adjective function until after the  
verb (i.e. participle) had been dropped and they themselves stood alone in the predicate, and  
were felt as the real predicate complement. *Die Tür ist zu(gemacht)*. It will be noticed in the  
articles below that these adverbs assumed adjective function first in the predicate. That they  
later were also used attributively and have taken on adjective inflection is only a natural de-  
velopment. The following cases of interchange of function, or form, or of both between adjectives  
and adverbs occur.

A An adverb or adverbial phrase often takes on adjective function when there is no cor-

ice or a condition, often with the verb *sein*, and  
verbs *lassen* and *wissen*, and sometimes when no  
*Ich weiß ihn dort, laß ihn dort* I know that he  
is there, leave him there. *Hier [ist] der ergrimmte Feldherr, dort [ist] die Fürchterliche* (Schil-  
ler's *Jungfrau von Orleans*, 2, 6) *Er ist zufrieden* (lit. in peace).

b In the predicate to express motion to or from a place, lit.  
the verb *sein*: *Sie sind fort* They are gone. *Die Wintersaat* . . .  
von dort He is from that place. *Er ist aus* (from) Frankreich.

c In the predicate to express time. *Es war im März*. *Das Konzert ist aus*. *Das ist nun  
vorbei*.

d Attributively, following the noun that it limits, in the case of those classes of adverbs  
described in a, b, c. *der Mann da* the man yonder, *der da oben* He on high, *der Berg dort*  
the mountain yonder, *die Fahrt hierher* the journey to this place, *die Aussicht auf den Fluß*;  
*ein Wort fürs Herz*; *der Baum drüben*; *die Kämpfe in den Jahren 1813-16*, &c.

e Sometimes in the predicate, in case of adverbs of manner after *sein* and sometimes *werden*:  
*Es ist so*, anders *It is thus*, different. *Es ist umsonst*, or *vergebens* *It is in vain*. *Er ist rechts*,  
Er wird mir zuwider He is becoming disagreeable to me.  
in case of an adverb of manner, when it stands before a  
gibt so Gänschen (i.e. girls), *die hübsch weiche Schnäbel*  
*erfürsten*, chap. 1).

g In the superlative (112. 3 B) in the predicate, instead of a superlative adjective. *Der  
Sturm war am heftigsten gegen Abend*.

B As a number  
cate, it was only a  
tributive relation  
ungefähr, teilweise,

tion Other adverbs which have not proceeded so far in this development are thus used in  
the literary language. *Ich mußte also*  
*ite und zuwider* (see A c) *Menschen*  
et goes much farther, and uses other

become *zu* and *hin* in adj. function  
language take on adjective function and  
9. 2 B

C In the case of verbal nouns in -ung and nouns denoting agents in -er the adjective in  
is have in reality the meaning and force of verbs  
*ein guter Erzähler* a good story teller the adjective  
the quality of an object. In some cases such ex-  
may also refer to the author of the action and

not t'  
(or f  
Redr

*schlechter Schmeißel*, &c. In such cases in German we must usu-  
or group words. *ein Lebemann* a fast liver, *der Frühaufsteher*  
*schreiber* good penman, *Feinschmecker* one with a fine sense of  
&c. It is often necessary in German to use a substantive-participle or a pure verbal form here.  
*Der richtig Ratende* the right guesser; *der Höchstbesteuerte* the highest taxpayer; *einer, der  
spät kommt* a late comer, &c.

D In dialect the adverb standing before an adjective is often erroneously taken for an  
adjective.

E On  
has in N F

periods, and assumed the exact form of the predicate adjective. However in poetry, elevated diction, and in case of a few isolated adverbs even in prose we still find occasionally the old adverbial form. See *Note*. In the superlative the adverb has in N.H.G. developed new special forms (see 114. 2. 3), one of which is, however, also used adjectively in the predicate (see 112. 3. B).

*Note.* In M.H.G. the positive of the adverb was often distinguished from the adjective by the ending *-e* or *-liche* (cognate with English *-ly*), and even to-day some adverbs have alongside of their short form also the M.H.G. form in *-e*, especially *lange*, *ferne*, *gerne*, *stille*, and in poetry and elevated diction also others as *balde*, &c. For survivals of the older adverbial form in *-lich* see 245. IV. 2. *b*. In M.H.G. some adverbs were distinguished from the uninflected form of mutated adjectives by taking no mutation, and this usage is still found in the classics, and even to-day in poetry: *Wir haben keine Magd; muß kochen, fegen, stricken | und nähen, und laufen früh und spät (now spät).*—Goethe's *Faust*, 3111-2. *Was beginnt ihr morgen früh?* (for *früh*) (Geibel). All feeling for this differentiation of form has in general disappeared, so that in the few cases in prose where double forms, one for the adverb, one for the adjective, still exist, each form has taken on a different meaning: *schon* *already*, but *schön* *beautiful*; *fast* *almost*, but *fest* *firm*. *Schön* and *fest* are now also used adverbially and then take the meaning of the adjectives *schön* and *fest*—*beautifully*, *firmly*. As here in case of *schon* and *schön*, *fast* and *fest*, so also, in general, related forms which have become separated from each other in speech-feeling may soon drift apart in meaning. For cases of the survival of the older meaning of *schon* see 223. II. 3. *a* and XI. A. *e* and *j*. In M.H.G. the comparative of the adverb differed from the uninflected comparative form of the adjective in that it lacked mutation. For a survival of this older usage see 117. 1. *d*.

3. Many adverbs approach close to the nature of prepositions. Their form and function are explained at length in 223. I. 9 and the articles there referred to.

### CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBS.

223. Adverbs and adverbial constructions may be divided according to their meaning into the following classes:

#### I. ADVERBS OF PLACE which fall into the following subdivisions, indicating:

1. Rest in a place near the speaker: *hier* here, in early N.H.G. *hie*, still used in poetry, also in prose, in the set expression *hie und da* here and there; *hier* accompanied by other adverbs which mark some place near the speaker more accurately, as *hier oben* here above, *hier unten* here below, *hier außen* outside here, here in a foreign land, *hier üben* (always contracted; see below) here on this side (of the ocean, river, question, &c.), *hier vorne* here in front, written together in *hie'nieden* here below, on earth, &c.; contractions of the preceding, as *hoben* for *hie oben*, *haußen* for *hie außen*, were formerly in use, but are now common only in dialect except *hüben* for *hie üben*: *Wackere Männer standen hüben und drüben* Brave men stood on this side (of the question) and on the other side.

2. Rest or motion near the speaker according to the verb used, in adverbs compounded of *hier* and some prep. (see 141. 5. A. *b* and *c* for the accent): *hieran* near this, *hierbei* by this, *hierauf* upon this, *hierunter* under this, *hieraus* out of this, *hierin* in this, *hierüber* over this, concerning this, *hierum* around this, *hierzu* to this, to this end, *hierneben* beside this; with preposition preceding and written apart: *von hier* or (in elevated diction) *von hinnen* from here, &c.

3. Motion *toward* the speaker either in a general way expressed by *her* or in a specific way expressed by a preposition in composition with *her*, very frequently with contraction, as (he)'*runter*, (he)'*raus*, (he)'*rein* (the one prep. in changes its form to *ein* in these adverbial compounds), (he)'*rüber*, *her'vor*, (he)'*rum*, *her'zu*, *her'nieder*, (he)'*ran*, *her'bei*, (he)'*rauf*, (he)'*rab*; with preceding prep. and adverb, as *von oben her*, *von oben herunter*; the indefinite *irgend woher* from somewhere, &c.: *Komm her* Come here. *Er steigt von der Anhöhe herunter* He is descending from the height (towards the speaker).

In oldest German the adverbial compounds *heraus*, &c., were quite rare. Just as in modern English, the mere preposition or rather adverb *aus*, &c., was sufficient: *Lazarus, cum uz* (Tatian, 135, 26), now *komm heraus*, but in English as in older German, *come forth* or *out*. In German the adverb *aus*, &c., has in large part lost its older concrete meaning and thus *her* is usually needed to bring out the concrete idea. Compare 7. G. *d* below.

*a.* In many cases the idea of motion towards the speaker contained in *her* disappears, and then this particle simply means *motion or rest with reference to some other person or thing* which is represented as the point of departure, centre of attraction, or as itself being in motion, sometimes implying in case of motion that the person preceding or following the person in question keeps step with him or goes at the same rate of speed, sometimes implying that the one party is in pursuit of the other: *Er ist von Berlin her* He is from Berlin. *Sie standen alle neugierig um ihn her*. *Der Heiduck läuft neben dem Wagen her*. *Die Musik geht vor, der Troß hinter dem Zuge her*. *Sie waren schnell hinter* (in hot pursuit of) *dem Ausreißer her*. *Er ist sehr hinter dem Gelde her* He is after money.

It sometimes represents an action merely as proceeding in a given way without reference to direction toward a definite object: *Es geht lustig her* They are having a gay time. *Der Zug ritt still und ernst ein'her* (*along*) or *da'her*. In N.G. colloquial language the force of *her* has become so faint that its original meaning is now no longer felt, and hence it is even used instead of *hin* to denote motion from the speaker: *Gehen Sie rüber* (for *herüber* instead of the literary *hinüber*) and *fordern Sie ihn auf, er soll den Wiesenweg sofort freigeben* (Halbe's *Haus Rosenhagen*, iii, p. 124).

*b.* *He'ran* denotes near approach to or movement toward the speaker on a plane surface or with upward movement, while *he'rauf* implies direction toward the speaker, but only with upward movement: *Ich winkte ihn zu mir heran*. *Er kletterte zu mir heran*. *Kommen Sie herauf* Come upstairs.

in changes its form in the  
as oben hin superficially  
below) irgend wo hin som

in die Tiefe hinab Ich w

Er hat sich nur so obenhin darüber geäußert He did not express himself fully concerning the matter Er will oben hinaus He is haughty gives himself airs

Here as in 3 above the adverbial compounds hinaus, &c were rare in oldest German into vvrpfun in uz (Tatian 132 20) now und warfen or stießen ihn hinaus, but in English as in oldest German and threw him out

A Besides hin also los and zu can be used with reference to movement towards a goal but with different shades Hin simply points to the goal while zu implies a lively unceasing exertion to reach the desired end and los emphasizes the beginning of the action and often implies that up to this time something has prevented action tho all was in readiness and hence often denotes a sudden violent breaking forth Nun schießt nur hin, daß es alle wird Now fire away at the mark that the matter (as to who would turn out to be the best marksman) may have an end! Schießt zu! Shoot away with all your skill and don't stop till you hit it! Immer zu! Go right ahead with all your might! Schießt los! Don't wait longer fire away Er hat Jahre lang bedächtig und stetig auf dies Ziel hingearbeitet, wahnst du, wenn du nun ohne Bedacht darauf los arbeitest, es ihm gleich tun zu können? Der Zorn des Generals brach los

B Hin may not only denote motion from on a level surface but may also denote movement downward towards a point at some distance away from the speaker In this sense it is synonymous with unter, nieder, and he rab or hi nab, he runter or hi nunter, according to the relation to the speaker

a Hin simply denotes direction downward toward a point at some distance from the speaker ab and nieder without any suggestion of distance indicating only a relative direction with reference to the speaker emphasizes the idea that the direction is from above downward unter often adds to the idea of nieder that in the course of the downward motion the object disappears below something Der Apfel fiel auf die Erde hin or nieder Der Reiter sitzt ab Ein ins Wasser geworfener Stein sinkt nieder or (down a steep hill) unter

b Moreover nieder seems in where the idea of slow and gradual motion enters into it (D) schon blau, die scheidenden, sieht in das Meer sie niedersinken (Goethe)

c (Hi) nab or (he) rab simply denote motion downward while hi nunter or he runter add to this conception that the whole distance in question is passed over Er glitt einige Stufen herab, kam dann ins Sturzen und fiel so die ganze Treppe herunter Er läßt sich herab He condescends (lets himself down a little) but Er ist in seinen Vermögensverhältnissen ganz heruntergekommen He is in very straitened circumstances (dropped clear down from wealth to poverty)

C (Hi) nan with a prep denotes a general movement forward on a plane surface with the way also add to the idea of pushing to the whole distance in question d implies usually that the whole distance in question is passed over Wir ritten an den Feind hinan Er fuhr den Strom hinan (up stream) Ich stieg die Quaderntreppe hinan und trat in eine Vorhalle Er geht den Berg hinan (is ascending) Er geht manchmal den Berg hinauf (to the top) Er ist auf das Dach hinaufgestiegen

D In early N H G dar (O H G dara) was used with the force of dahin, i.e. with reference to a definite place Die Diener aber kamen dar (Acts v 22) To day it is employed less definitely with the force of hin, but is used only in a few compounds darbieten, darbringen, dargeben, darlegen, darreichen, darstellen, darten

5 Motion action or change in a figurative or moral sense without expression of a definite direction to or from the speaker or at least with no conscious feeling of such on the part of the speaker is always expressed by (he) rab or (hi) nab or (he) runter or (hi) nunter, Er hat been taken down on us Er h Er blickt auf uns herab He looks the price Er ist (he) reingefallen figurative expressions ein Buch to treat somebody as an inferior, horse)

a Rest in a place at some distance from the speaker as dorten (poetic) or dort yonder in connection with other adverbs as dort oben up yonder dort unten down yonder &c

b Motion from the speaker to some point distant Dorthin yonder to that place with accent upon the first syllable to emphasize the place and on the second syllable to emphasize motion dort (hi) nauf up yonder dort (hi) nunter, &c Exs Dorthin zu sieht man noch Türme von Madrid Da wird dort hin das Ohr hehlich gezogen The ear is charmed and attracted in that direction Dort hinunter müssen wir

c Motion toward the speaker from some point distant Dorthier (accented as dorthin, see b above) or von dorthier, or von dorten (poetic) from yonder, &c Ich komme 'dorthier.— Kommst du wirklich dort her?

7 Rest or motion without expressing definitely nearness to the speaker or distance

A. Da there, da'selbst (demon. and rel.) at that place, at which place, da'her, ein'her along, von da from there, da'her (accented upon the last syllable except to emphasize especially the place), or von da'her, or (in elevated diction) von dannen from that place, dahin (accented in the same manner as daher) or in early N.H.G. dar (see 4. D above) to that place: Er ist schon da. Er eilt da'her He is speeding along. Ich komme eben da'her, or Da komme ich eben her! Von Weißenfels? 'Daher bin ich Are you from Weissenfels? That is the place I come from. 'Daher kommt die ganze Verwirrung.

B. Da accompanied by adverbs: da oben up there, in heaven, da unten down there, da außen out there, out of doors, da innen inside there, darüben (usually contracted; see below) over on that side, on the other side of the ocean, in the other world, &c.; the preceding very frequently contracted as droben, drunten, draußen, drinnen, drüben, &c.; also with a double da, as da d(a)roben, da drunten, &c.

C. Da (dar before a vowel) in composition with prepositions, with accent usually upon the prep., except to especially emphasize the place, hence usually contracted (see 141. 5. A): d(a)'ran, da'bei, d(a)'rauf, d(a)'runter, d(a)'raus, d(a)'rein, d(a)'rin, d(a)'rüber, da'vor, da'hinter, da'zwischen, d(a)'rum, &c. Er trug eine Kette; da'ran war eine alte Münze. Ich fahre 'hieran und du fährst 'daran I'll drive up here and you drive up there.

a. Earlier in the period and still in colloquial and popular language these compounds are separated, and often the da is lacking altogether. See 141. 5. A. b. Note.

b. The O.H.G. had two forms corresponding to N.H.G. da, namely dara (now dar, still preserved in the group in 4. D above) and dār, the latter of which now takes the place of both in this construction, usually in the reduced form-da, but in its former full form in compounds the second element of which begins with a vowel: darin, &c. The vowel, however, becomes short when the accent is shifted upon the second element: 'dārin, but dā'rin.

D. The relative and interrogative wo where, the indefinite irgendwoher from somewhere, irgendwo somewhere, anderswo somewhere else, &c.; the relative and interrogative wo (wor before a vowel) in compounds, as wo'bei near which, wo'runter among which, wo'hin whither, wo'her whence, &c., or sometimes demonstrative compounds in their stead: da'bei, da'runter, &c. See 153. 2. B.

Earlier in the period and still in colloquial speech these compounds are separable. See 153. 2. and B thereunder.

a. Corresponding to N.H.G. wo we find in older German two forms wo (O.H.G. hwār) and war (O.H.G. hwara), the latter of which survives in only one word wa'rum alongside of wo'rum. The older language often makes no distinction between worum and warum, using both forms relatively and interrogatively in the sense of *for* or *on account of which, what*: Erhabner Geist, du gabst mir, gabst mir alles, | warum (now worum) ich bat (Goethe's *Faust*, Wald und Höhle). Warum (now worum) soll ich bitten? (Herder). These forms still occur occasionally in elevated diction without differentiation, but present prose usage distinguishes sharply between the two forms, employing worum in the meaning *for* or *on account of which, what*, warum as an adverb in the meaning *why*.

E. The adverbs denoting a relative position or direction in space with reference to the speaker: oben above, unten below, außen outside, &c.; aufwärts upward, abwärts downward, to one side, heimwärts homeward, auf up, unter (see 4. B. a above) down, ab (see 4. B. a above) down, an (see a below).

a. An denotes a general forward movement or a steady continuation: Das Heer rückt gegen den Feind an. Der Lehrer spornt den Schüler an. Die Kälte hält an. Where the goal is more prominent than the idea of a forward movement he'ran and hi'nan must be used: Das Heer rückt heran. Ihr Jungen, kommt 'mal heran. Er reift zum Manne heran. As motion forward on an inclined plane leads to the idea of motion upward an now in some words has assumed the idea of upward: Der Pfad steigt an. Der Fluß schwillt an. Where the idea of a goal becomes more important than that of an upward movement heran and hinan must be used: Das Wasser steigt jedes Jahr bis zu einer beträchtlichen Höhe heran. Der Pfad steigt steil bis zu dem hoch aufragenden Felsen hinan.

b. An often loses its concrete meaning, which fades away into mere abstract perfective (see 246. II. 3. b) force, indicating: (1) the beginning of an activity: (Das Brot) anschneiden to make the first cut into, cut into, (ein Lied) anstimmen to strike up. Lassen Sie die Maschine anlaufen Start the machine. Die Schraube zieht an The screw begins to take hold. Das Dienstmädchen wird morgen antreten The maid will enter service to-morrow. Einen Dienst, ein Amt, eine Reise, sein Erbe, den Beweis der Wahrheit, sein zehntes Jahr antreten; (2) the affecting of the object only a little: (einen Apfel) anbeißen to take a bite of, eat some of, etc.

c. Auf often loses its concrete meaning, which fades away into mere abstract perfective (see 246. II. 3. b) force, indicating: (1) the beginning of an action or state: aufblühen to come out into bloom, aufmuntern to cheer up (trans.), aufwachen to wake up (intrans.), aufwecken to wake up (trans.); (2) the end of an action: aufbrauchen to use up, aufessen to eat up, &c.

F. Weg away, disappearance in any direction, used only of objects in space, fort on, forth, movement forward in time or space, in one continuous direction; Der Bruder sagt zur Schwester: setze deine Malerei jetzt weg (aside), wir wollen Klavier spielen. Nach einer Stunde aber sagt er: Es ist genug, setze deine Malerei fort (Go on with your painting). However, this distinction is very often disregarded: Er ist fort (better weg).

G. Movement from a place is expressed by ab and aus with different shades.

while aus, which dem Pferde sitzt, comes out from

within a thing may d with it, hence ab at the road entirely), b einzubiegen Wer v hält an demselben fe ihn.

c As ab and aus (<see a above) express motion from they also may naturally express separation, to which, however, a third adverb or inseparable verbal prefix must be added namely ent. Ab denotes surface separation, aus separation from a position within something and

d or into the pelt, when he che einer

unruhigen Geistes, die mich fast schon gepackt men Ent represents also a more complete separation than aus. Wer sich aus dem Staats- in den Hausrock geworfen, hat sich ausgekleidet, ohne doch entkleidet zu sein, wie der, der ins Bad steigen will

The difference between aus and ent is sometimes only a grammatical one. Aus is used in an adverbial phrase, and ent is compounded with the verb. Und unsre Reisenden entstiegen ihrem Waggon (Montane's *Cécile*, chap. vii), or stiegen aus dem Waggon. Sometimes aus is used where there is only one simple case object, and ent where there are two simple case objects

entnahm ihr einen großen, away into mere abstract e Sache ist gut abgelaufen or more commonly aus-

geleitet. There is a tendency to differentiate the two particles. The former indicates merely the end of an action while the latter implies an accompaniment. Die vom Wurm zernagte Ro the idea of excess or injury, while aus ab, but Er arbeitete seine Pläne sorgf seinen Vorteil ausgenutzt.

H The word together is represented in German by three words with different shades of meaning. Beisammen is only used with verbs expressing rest or an activity which is confined to a given place, and never with verbs of motion to or from and hence it merely denotes that a number of objects are found in the same enclosed space, or in a merely local sense near together.

relations, either or room but in das

Mein, es liegen wohl beisammen die vögel drüber her (Geibel's *Die junge Nonne*). Die Menschen sind nicht nur zusammen, wenn sie beisammen sind, auch der Entfernte, der Abgeschiedene lebt uns (Goethe's *Egmont*, 5, Gefängnis). Man hat sie in ein Grab zusammen gelegt (here beisammen could not be used). Zwei Schriftsteller arbeiten zusammen an einem Buch

8 General diffusion thruout, or extension thru or around a given space. über'all everywhere, durch'weg or 'durchweg thruout, hence usually as an adverb of degree entirely, rings round about, um'her around nirgends nowhere

9 Adverbial forms with prepositional force —

A A number of prepositions enter into compounds with da, hier and wo to form prepositional adverbs with the force of a preposition and a pronoun, as illustrated at length in 141 5 A and B, 147. 1. C b, 153 2 above, also in 2 and 7. C D of this article

B A number of adverbs, all verbal prefixes, have also prepositional force. The more difficult idiomatic constructions are here treated briefly. Compare these articles with 225, 258 1. B, and 262 1 b

1. The prefix an is used

a With intrans verbs to indicate rest at a permanent goal. here, table, a book

b To express rest with trans verbs an takes the prep an with the dat. in case of things, with reference to a person other ingt einen Haken an der Wand an. Man hört ihm den Aus- prep obj in case of persons

c denotes motion toward, which is usually expressed again jemanden, gegen etwas anlaufen,

by a

d. With trans. verbs of motion it denotes motion *toward* a person or goal and governs a dat. in case of a living object, while in case of the object of a thing the idea of direction *toward* is expressed again by the prep. *an* (with acc.): *dem Gefangenen Fesseln anlegen, dem Pferde den Zaum anlegen, but den Hund an die Kette anlegen*. The object of *an* is not expressed when it refers to the subject: *Er legte das Gewehr an*. Likewise other prepositional adverbs: *Er warf einen Mantel über*.

e. With many trans. and intrans. verbs the acc. obj. is the object of *an*, not the object of the verb: *den Feind angreifen, jemanden anflehen, jemanden anbetteln*. Likewise *über, be-* (246. II. 1), *ver-* (246. II. 5. B. *b* and *Note*): *jemanden überfahren, &c.*

2. The prefix *auf* often has the force of a preposition, expressing rest upon or direction toward an object, which must often be supplied in thought: *Hier liegen Bücher auf Books* are lying on the tables here for reference. *Das Schiff sitzt auf The ship is aground*. *Er horchte auf He* listened intently (in the direction of the object in question). *Man setzt das Essen auf (i.e. auf den Tisch)*. *Er setzt sich auf (i.e. auf das Pferd)*, but also with adverbial force: *Er setzt sich [im Bette] auf*. A living object is usually in the dat.: *Er drängte ihm seine Ansichten auf*. The object of *auf* is not expressed when it refers to the subject: *Er setzte [sich] den Hut auf*. Compare 141. 5. A (next to last par.).

3. For examples illustrating the use of the prefixes *durch, ent, entgegen, nach, unter, vor*, wider see 215. II. 3. A. *b, c* and 258. 1. B (and *a* thereunder).

4. One prepositional adverb and prefix has a different form according as it expresses rest or motion. Rest or motion *within* a given space is expressed by *in*, and motion into a place is expressed by *ein*, both of which words are only found in compounds, especially with adverbs belonging to the preceding classes, verbs, and sometimes with substantives: *Ich habe mich da'rin geirrt I have been mistaken in that*, but *Mische dich nicht da'rein Do not mix yourself up in the affair*. *Wo'rin hat er sich geirrt? Wo'rein hat er sich gemischt? Der 'inliegende Brief the inclosed letter*, but *Er legte den Brief ein He inclosed the letter*. *Feld'ein* into the fields, *wald'ein* into the woods, *'hafenein* (accent shifting forward in dissyllabics) into the harbor, *jahr'aus jahr'ein* year in year out; *Inhaber bearer, Inhalt contents*, but *Eintritt entrance, Einfuhr importation, &c.* *Ein* is much used figuratively to form compound verbs which are employed reflexively to indicate a practising of some activity for the purpose of attaining to (literally *entering into*) proficiency: *sich einschießen, sich einüben, sich einfliegen* to practise flying in an aeroplane, &c. It is similarly used in transitive compounds: *ein Pferd einreiten, einen einüben, &c.*

a. In M.G. and N.G. dialects and often in colloquial speech *in* is used for both *in* and *ein*. *Schlagen Sie in* (instead of *ein*) (Rauchhaupt in Hauptmann's *Der rote Hahn*, Act 4). Even in the literary language *inbegriffen* is often used instead of *einbegriffen*. From this failure on the part of dialect and colloquial speech to distinguish different forms for the different meanings there have also arisen in the literary language several cases where the two forms have been confounded, *ein* being used for *in*: *eingedenk mindful of, Eingeweide entrails*, and earlier in the period still others.

In some dialects we find the opposite usage—*ein* for *in*: *Jenseits der Alpen steht ein Grab, | gegraben am grünen Rheine, | drei wilde Rosen blühen drauf, | seine Liebe liegt dareine* (Scheffel's *Trompeter*, Werner's *Lieder aus Welschland*, v). *'s wird dir schier drein zu naß sein* (Anzen-gruber's *Wolken und Sonn'schein*, p. 238).

b. Instead of N.H.G. *in* for the preposition and adverb, M.H.G. had a differentiation of forms, *in* for the preposition, and *inne* or *innen* for the adverb. These adverbial forms are still sometimes found, *inne* especially in compounds, and *innen* both in compounds and uncompounded: *innehalten, innehaben, innewohnen, &c.*; *d(a)rinnen, von innen, &c.* In other instances, however, the adverbial forms have been contracted to *in*, in which case preposition and adverb cannot be distinguished in form: *in* (prep.) *dem Buch; darin* (adv.), common N.H.G. form for M.H.G. *darinne* or *darinnen*. In M.H.G. *in* had already begun to replace *inne* and *innen*. Later the long forms gradually kept yielding to the contracted one. The form *-inne*, as in *darinne*, is now restricted to poetry and popular language, and *-innen*, as in *d(a)rinnen*, is only in limited use, tho more commonly employed than *-inne*. In one meaning, *in the room, in the house*, with reference to some inclosed space, *drinnen* is quite common: *Struppmann (nach hinten weisend): Er ist drinnen* (Otto Ernst's *Die Gerechtigkeit*, 2, 4).

c. The words *offen* and *auf* have about the same relation to each other as *in* and *ein*: *Die Tür war offen The door was open*, but *Hans machte die Tür auf John opened the door*.

10. Place with its varied relations is also expressed by the case of a noun or by a preposition with its dependent noun as follows:

a. Place where or position are expressed, in certain adverbial expressions, by the gen. of a noun (fem. words often ending in *s* after the analogy of masc.) or by some expression formed after the model of such: *gehörigen Orts* before the proper authority, *höhern Orts* before a higher authority, *linker* (or *zu linker*) *Hand* to the left hand, *'aller'orts* (see 249. II. 2. A. *a*) everywhere, *seines Orts* in the proper place, *'jeden'orts* everywhere, *hierlands* (or more commonly *hierzu-lande*) in the country, *unter'wegs* (an incorrect gen. formed after the analogy of the preceding, now, however, replacing the older correct dat. *unter'wege* or in pl. form *unter'wegen*) on the way or road, *'halbwegs* (245. iv. 2. *c*), *seinerseits* upon his part, *mütterlicherseits* upon the mother's side, *'anderseits* on the other side, *'beiderseits* on both sides, *seitens* (now used as a prep. with gen.) upon the part of. *Ich bekam ein Zimmer in der Buchstraße, nächster Tür mit Kings* (next door to King's). *Halben Weges* (or *auf halbem Wege*) zwischen *Brückenberg* und der *Obermühle* trat er von dem tiefergelegenen *Wolfshau* her auf den eine lange *Schräglinie* bildenden *Fahrweg*





We often, especially in the Southeast, find *nur mehr* instead of *nur noch* *only, merely, but*: Wir sahen den Park *nur mehr* als einen dunklen Fleck in der Ferne liegen (Stifter). Bis zum Anbruch des Morgens hatten die Flammen gelodert, nun lag *nur mehr* ein Haufen von rauchendem Schutt (Jensen's *Das Bild im Wasser*, p. 410).

b. From the idea of continuation it has developed the idea of intensity, multiplication, addition, repetition, survival, contrast to a former situation: *noch einmal* so schön twice as beautiful, *noch einmal* so viel as much again, *noch größer* larger still, *noch zwei Jahre* two years more, *noch mehr* still more, *noch einmal* once more. Haben Sie nicht noch Mittel? Have you no means left? Der Hund knurrt *nur noch ganz leise*, er bellt nicht mehr im Kaufladen und denkt nicht von weitem ans Beißen.

c. From the idea of continuing to a certain point of time comes the idea of reaching a certain limit in a scale or a certain goal: Das geht noch an That will work all right up to this point. Du unterstehst dich noch, ihn zu entschuldigen? You even dare to excuse him?

d. Noch is much used in concessive clauses: Sei es auch noch so wenig be it ever so little; sei er noch so vorsichtig be he ever so cautious.

e. It is often translated by *very*: noch diese Woche this very week. Noch am Abend nach der Schlacht (on the very evening after the battle) ließ Graf Otto die gefangenen Ritter . . . enthaupten.

2. *Indefinite time*, expressed by an adverb, the gen. or in a few cases the dat. of a noun, or a prep. phrase: dann und wann now and then, immer always, nie never, nimmer in poetry with the force of nie, or in S.G. = nicht mehr no more, no longer; heutigestags in these times, jederzeit at any time, always, dieser Tage recently (with a past tense), within a few days (with future tense), letzterzeit, letzterer Zeit, letztens, letztthin, or letztlich of late, nächster Tage some time soon, eines Tages one day, eines schönen Tages one fine day, eines Mittwochs on a certain Wednesday; in einer dunkeln Nacht on a dark night, an einem herrlichen Sommermorgen.

In the classical period we still find the following participial gen. construction: Aber so lebten die Herren währendes Krieges (*while the war was going on*), als ob ewig Krieg bleiben würde (Lessing's *Minna*, 2, 2). See während, 228. 4.

a. This genitive is often used in a general indefinite way to designate the time of day in which something happens: Kommst du nachmittags (sometime in the afternoon) zurück? Nein, ich komme erst abends (sometime in the evening) zurück. This general designation is often accompanied by a precise date, day, or hour: am 16. Oktober abends on October the 16th in the evening, um acht Uhr morgens at about eight in the morning. Ich kam Dienstag nachts (old gen.; also the acc.: Dienstag nacht) an.

b. In elevated discourse the dat. is occasionally found in accordance with older usage instead of the gen. or a prep. phrase: Nächst (old dat., *last night, in the night*) ist in unsern Trieb | der gleißend' Wolf gefallen (Uhland's *Graf Eberhard*, 4). Nächten (dat. pl. = nächst) sah ich ihn im Traume (Weber's *Dreizehnlinden*). The gen. ending s is also added to the dat. pl.: So sind wir nächstens in dies Land gekommen (Sudermann's *Die drei Reiherfedern*, 2, 2). The dative plural of Weile is regularly used in a few adverbs: bis'weilen sometimes, einst'weilen for the present, je'weilen from time to time, and the corrupted form 'weiland once, formerly.

3. *Relative time*, expressed by an adverb, a gen. in earlier periods, and still in a few expressions, or more commonly by an acc., or a prep. phrase: vor'her before, before that (with reference to another act or time), before hand, vor'hin a few minutes ago, a short time ago, hier'auf here-upon, nach'her (also colloquially her'nach) afterwards, seit'dem from that point on, seit'her from that point to the present, bis'her up to the present, schon (see a below); Vnd des nehesten tages kamen wir gen Mileto (Acts xx. 15); anderen Tags on the next day, tags drauf the day after this, tags vor'her or tags zu'vor the day before this, mittler'weile, or less commonly der'weile, in the meantime; den nächsten Morgen, den Tag drauf, den Tag vorher; am nächsten Morgen, am Tage vorher, am andern Tag, unter'dessen in the meantime, in'dessen in the meantime, but now more commonly with adversative force, however, yet; im Anfang or anfangs at (or in) the beginning, at the outset, am Ende or letzten Endes in the end, after all, in fact, in reality, if you go to the bottom of it, if you come down to facts.

a. The adverb schon as explained in 222. 2. E. Note was originally the adverb corresponding to the adjective schön, and hence meant *beautifully*. This idea led to that of completeness, which was once common, and is still not infrequent. The original idea, however, is now somewhat faded or indistinct. We often translate it by *quite, of itself, sufficient, without going farther*: Das war schon (quite) ein ander Ding. Der von Folterqualen gebrochene Körper eines solchen Opfers würde schon (of itself) euer Mitleid erregen. Das ist schon gut That will do (enough as it is without going farther). The older meaning is also perceptible in the uses described in XI. A. e and j below.

The older idea of completeness applied to time led to the newer, now more common meanings *already, yet, even, the very, as early as, first*, often difficult to translate by any word. In all these meanings it should be noticed that schon often only strengthens some other more important word, and hence is then unaccented: Ist der Brief schon fertig? Is the letter ready yet? but Ist der Brief schön fertig? Is the letter ready so soon? Hatte sich der Meister vorher schon (strengthening vorher; translate by *even*) wenig um Haus und Beruf bekümmert, so tat er es jetzt noch viel weniger. Mit furchtbarem Schelten wurden sie hinauf zur Mutter geschickt und die beiden Knaben schon anderen Tages (the very next day) dem Schulmeister zur schärferen Zucht übergeben. In Versailles haben nicht nur die Prinzessinnen schon von zehn Jahren (as early as the tenth year of their age), sondern sogar die Puppen ihren Hofstaat. Da

muß man schon mit viere[n] fahren, in Gold und Seide gekleidet sein, wenn sie es der Mühe  
 h enough to ride in a coach and four, &c

the time at which something takes place  
 repeated is usually expressed by the gen  
 or by a prep phrase in the singular and by an acc. or a prep phrase in the plural Ich esse  
 mittags zu Hause, abends pflege ich auswärts zu essen Mittwoch und Sonnabend nach-  
 mittags (every Wednesday and Saturday afternoon) ist kein Unterricht Des Tags or tags  
 in the daytime vormittags or des Vormittags in the forenoon Montags Mondays nachts (of  
 gen) or des Nachts (after the analogy of masc nouns) in the night Und aller (more com-  
 monly acc. here see IV 2 B a below) Augenblicke muß sie sich jetzt schon hinlegen (Haupt-  
 mann's *Insame Menschen* Act 1) Her health has reached such a state that she must lie down  
 every few minutes Also prepositional constructions are common am Tage in the daytime  
 in der Nacht The prepositional construction is the usual one in im Herbst, im Frühling (but  
 quite commonly winters or des Winters, sommers or des Sommers), and in the more accurate  
 designations um zehn Uhr, um Mitternacht Sie wußte nicht, weshalb ihr solche Erinne-  
 rungen gerade am Sonntag Vormittag kamen

III ADVERBS OF MANNER (manner, specification, conformity, fitness) so  
 (or earlier in the period also or in contracted form als) so, leicht easily, schnell  
 fast &c

Manner is also expressed by

a A noun or adjective in the gen derart or dergestalt (see IV 2 A c below) in such a

in 262 2 A c From these two starting points the genitive has spread in I has come into wide  
 use as a genitive of manner So leichten Kaufs kommst du nicht fort You will not get off so  
 easily Wir fahren dritter Klasse (Storm) We travel third class Sie kamen unverrichteter  
 Sache zurück They came back without accomplishing anything Indem ich nach besten Kräf-  
 ten das Fräulein unterhielt, bemerkte ich, daß sie sehr schön war (Raabe's *Meister* chap  
 Smidt's *O Tannebaum* I)

conceived glücklicherweise so  
 and many similar formations in  
 maßen as mentioned before a  
 also IV 2 A c below) kur  
 ließ sich des weiteren darübe  
 I thank you heartily

rec  
 Sc  
 zehu jammern, bekamm von Leid und noch von Brust und blank von Augen (Irrsinn's *Jörn Uhl*,  
 chap viii) This gen was more freely used in early N H G (Paulus) fand einen Jüden mit  
 namen Aquila | der Geburt (= der Geburt nach) aus Ponto (Acts xviii 2) This old gen is  
 still found after certain verbs adjectives and participles altho its force is no longer felt See  
 260 and 3 thereunder and 262 II A In compounds it is still quite common segensreich,  
 handelsklug, geisteskrank, &c. Compare with M H G ein ellens (= Muts) richer man (A  
 belungenlied I 7)

b A noun or adjective after a preposition Er sprach mit Gelassenheit Er hörte mit ge-  
 spanntem Ohre zu Die Vögel singen den Menschen zu (Höfmann's *Die Leiden des jungen Werthers* 114 2) Pestalozzi war  
 aufs eifrigste (114 3)  
 werke nach ein Schn zu helfen Er ist seinem Hand-

c A dative of refe  
 survives in a few set  
 of broader application  
 If it is now thus with  
 wie ihm wolle Let that be as it may Die Geschichte ist gut, wenn ihr nur so wäre (Raabe's  
*Hoxter und Cortey* chap ix) In M H G Wie ist dem in mere? What is the state of things  
 with regard to this story? In all these sentences es understood is the subject Usually this  
 dat must be replace  
 tioned above Wie  
 sentence) There is  
 See 258 3 A

IV 1 ADVERBS OF DEGREE (degree, order, measure extent, price) sehr,  
 arg (S G), uberaus very, höchst, äußerst extremely, zu too, ziemlich tolerably,  
 fast almost schier (see a) well-nigh, entirely, etwa or ungefähr (in the South  
 also beilaufig, which in the North has the meaning of by the way, in passing)  
 about, erst (see b), nur (replaced often in the North colloquially by man; see

(b. (2). *Note*) only, zu'erst first, viel much, wenig little, über'haupt (see c) in general, &c.

a. Schier. This word is of double origin, and hence has two different groups of meanings:

(1) Schier (M.H.G. *schiere fast, soon*) in early N.H.G. *soon*, now *almost*, confined largely to poetic language.

(2) Schier (Old Saxon *skiri clean, pure*) common in N.G. and M.G., as an adverb, *entirely, thoroly*, as an adjective, *pure, clean, nothing but, sheer*: Das leicht Errungene | das widert mir, | nur das Erzwungene | ergetzt mich schier (Goethe's *Faust*, II, ll. 5169-73). Gerd blickte ihn verdutzt und schier ohne Verständnis an (H. Hoffmann's *Wider den Kurfürsten*, chap. xi). Nun findet man dich und freut sich schier, | da schimpfst du uns Pack und Diebsgelichter (Sudermann's *Die drei Reiherfedern*, 1, 6). Da ist alles so klar und schier wie . . . in Ihrer jungen siebzehnjährigen Seele (Spielhagen's *Herrin*, p. 34). Schieres Fleisch pure meat (i.e. without bones and fat), eine schiere Unmöglichkeit a sheer impossibility.

b. The adverb erst *first* has a number of derived meanings:

(1) *Not until, not before, no farther back than, only, but, once*: Er (der Hund) schlich erst (not until) spät nach Hause zurück. Ein stattlicher Holzbau, erst (only or but) vor zehn Jahren von Grund aus neu aufgeführt. Und hat er uns erst (once or only) am kleinen Finger, so hat er uns auch ganz. Often still more, much more: Er ist sehr stolz und erst seine Frau! Er ist schon erbittert, wie wird er erst toben, wenn er das erfährt! Especially frequent with recht in the meaning *all the more*: Ich rief ihm zu, er solle zurückkommen, aber da lief er erst recht.

(2) The adverb erst *only* should be distinguished from nur *only*. The former marks a point just reached in a supposed progress, while the latter represents the limit as fixed or final: Ich hatte erst wenige Seiten gelesen, als er zurückkam. Ich bin erst an der dritten Seite I am only at the third page. Warte nur bis Morgen. Es kostet nur einen Taler. Thus erst often implies that there is more to follow, while nur suggests that the progress is a limited one: Er ist erst (only as yet) Hauptmann, but Er ist nur (only, which is not much) Hauptmann. Ich habe erst (more to follow) drei Briefe gelesen, but Ich habe nur (not many) drei Briefe erhalten. Nur and erst may be combined: Wie klein, wie armselig ist diese große Welt! Sie kennen sie nur erst (as yet) von ihrer Flitterseite (Lessing's *Minna*, 5, 9).

*Note*. Nur is a contraction of O.H.G. *ni* (= nicht) *wāri* (= N.H.G. *wäre*, past subj.) and thus means *unless it were*. Its original use can still be found: Er sieht nich', er hört nich'. Nur diese Person (Hauptmann's *Einsame Menschen*, 4) He sees nothing, he hears nothing unless it be this person. From this original use has sprung up the general idea of limitation, as described above, and also the common use of limiting a preceding proposition: Er mag zuhören, nur soll er schweigen He may listen if he desires, but he must keep still. The adverb bloß is also used with the force of nur and sometimes both are combined: Kennst du mehr als nur den Namen bloß von meinem Hause? (Schiller). In N.G. dialect and colloquial language man bloß are often combined: Es is ja man bloß von Fritze Belkow wegen, daß ich gefragt gehabt habe (Wildenbruch's *Die Quitzows*, 1, 2).

c. Überhaupt expresses, as its parts signify (*passing over without counting the heads*, used in buying cattle by the lot without counting the heads), a statement in general without taking into consideration the limitations and conditions of a particular case. It may in part be translated by *in general, generally, as a rule, anyhow, really, after all, in any event, altogether, absolutely*, with negatives, after wenn, and in questions translated by *at all* and often difficult to render into English: Gutes Wetter wäre nicht nur unserer Reise halber, sondern überhaupt (in general) zu wünschen. Wie kann man überhaupt (anyhow) umtobt von so wilden Kindern einen jungen Hund erziehen? (Loth) Es sind die ersten Austern, die ich esse — (Frau Kruse) In dar (der) Seisong (Saison) mein'n (meinen) Se (Sie) woll (wohl)? — (Loth) Ich meine überhaupt (absolutely) — Hauptmann's *Vor Sonnenaufgang*, 1. Ich habe überhaupt (at all) kein Vergnügen an der Musik.

2. Instead of an adverb of degree, the acc. of a noun or pronoun, less commonly a gen., may be used to express:

A. Extent or degree: Das Dorf liegt eine Stunde (an hour's walk or ride, according to the connection) von der Stadt. Gehen wir einen Schritt weiter Let us go one step farther. Der See ist ein Kilometer lang und ein halbes breit. Er stand nur einen Fuß von mir entfernt. So geht das vier enggeschriebene Seiten fort (Spielhagen's *Frei geboren*, p. 138) And so it (i.e. the letter) goes on for four closely written pages. Das kümmert mich kein Haar That doesn't worry me in the least. Du glaubst nicht, was (to what extent) dies Tier mein Freund geworden ist (Mörke). Das Thermometer ist einen Grad gefallen. In early N.H.G. the gen. was common here: nicht eines fusses breit (Acts vii. 5). Sometimes in our own day: eines Strohhalmes breit (P. Heyse's *Gesammelte Werke*, 5, 108).

a. The simple acc. or the acc. after the prep. um may stand after a comparative to express the measure of difference: Friedrich ist einen halben Kopf or um einen halben Kopf größer als Wilhelm.

In early N.H.G. the gen. was here quite common: Da er vnter das Volck trat | war er eins heubts lenger denn alles Volck (1 Sam. x. 23). It is still occasionally used: Damit ist gesagt, daß er eines Hauptes länger als alle vorigen Heiderieter (name) ist (Frenssen's *Die drei Getreuen*, III. 10).

b. The gen. is now often used to denote that something takes place at fixed intervals of space: Und namentlich in Zeitungen ist aller paar Zeilen Ähnliches zu finden (Theodor Matthias's *Sprachleben und Sprachschäden*, p. 334, 1st ed.). The older acc. is still more common here. Compare II. 4 above and B. a below.

c. The gen. of extent or degree is found in a number of idiomatic expressions: dermaßen (maßen, an old wk. gen. sing. of Maße) to such an extent, also in such a manner, diesermaßen

to such an extent, sometimes in this manner, einigermaßen to some extent, solchermassen to such an extent, sometimes in such a manner, derart, dergestalt, solchergestalt = dermaßen, solchermassen. The gen. is used here under the influence of the gen. of manner which is employed with these words when they denote the manner of the activity. In most of these words the idea of manner is not now so common as formerly and in some cases, perhaps, not found any more at all, having been displaced by that of duration was also in use ein Vorwurf, der in simple gen. gewissermaßen) allen andern Sekt

B Duration or measure of time answering den lieben langen Tag He reads the whole liest schon drei Tage hier. Ziehen Sie auf uns 2 M. h bin's Betrags. Alle Tage every day, alle zwei Tage alle's Be- zwei Stunden, einmal, zweimal, &c. alle

a We not infrequently find also, especially in the Mäland the gen. in sentences answering the question *how often?* Bleib doch nicht aller (in both N G. and S G. usually alle) zehn Schritte stehen (a Leipzig mother to her child) See II 1 above

b In a number of expressions containing numerals the gen. is only seemingly a gen. of measure, while in fact it is a partitive gen. dependent upon the numeral zwei ganzer Stunden lang (Schiller) or now more commonly with the numeral after ganz, as in wie er denn noch ganzer drei Monate da gewesen ist (Lessing). The words zwei and drei are here in reality in the acc. of the measurement of time, but are now felt as attributive adjectives modifying the genitives Stunden and Monate. Also in such expressions the acc. of the noun is now more common ganze vier Jahre lang.

c The gen. is also used in a few set expressions denoting duration, as in den Tag über or tagsüber all day long Hunderte hatten tagsüber den Platz umlagert (H Böhlau's *Adam und Eva*, chap. i) Wer das mal gesehen hat, vergißt's seiner (or perhaps more commonly seine) Lebtage nicht (Halle's *Der Strom*, p. 11), also seine(r) Lebtage or sein Lebtage (a mutilated or contracted acc. sing. or pl.)

d In answer to the question *how often*, or *how much within a given time* the gen., or perhaps more commonly acc., of the noun expressing the given time within may be used in case of masculines and neuters, with feminines, however, only the acc., or both constructions may with all genders be replaced by a prep. phrase Das Schiff fährt zweimal des Tags, or zweimal den Tag, or jeden Tag zweimal, or an jedem Tage zweimal Einmal des Jahres zog die ganze Familie nach Tirol (R. Voss's *Psyche*, chap. xviii) Dreißig Reichstaler des Jahres ließen sie ihm (Raabe's *Odyssee*, chap. ii) Not zweimal der Woche, but jede Woche zweimal, or zweimal die Woche, or zweimal in der Woche. Der Kutscher muß wenigstens 160 m (Meter) in der Minute zurücklegen.

e Weight, amount, price. Es ist einen Zentner schwer. Die Rechnung beträgt einen Taler The bill amounts to one talar. Es kostet mir or mich viel Geld. Wie viel gilt es? Es gilt meinen Kopf How much is at stake? My head Ich bin ihm 10 Taler schuldig I owe him 10 talers Mit diesen Kirschen habe ich drei Mark den Korb verdient. Diese Kirschen kosten drei Mark den Korb. Hast du mir nicht immer den lateinischen Aufsatz gemacht, einen Silbergroschen das Stück? (J. Rodenberg's *Klostermanns Grundstück*, p. 51) Notice that in the last two examples we have the accusative of price and also that of amount in the same sentence. Instead of the acc. of amount we perhaps more commonly find the nom. when the noun denoting the material in question is in the nom. Diese Kirschen kosten drei Mark der Korb. Das Bier gilt 14 Pfennig der Becher (*Neue Zürcher Zeit.*, July 27, 1916) The two nominatives are in apposition with each other, the nom. replacing the older partitive gen. The construction becomes clear by changing the word-order der Korb Kirschen kostet drei Mark.

f of a pronoun Er lief, was er laufen was das Riemzeug hält (I. Schenck's *der Triumphgasse*, l).

gessions denoting a part of a whole halben Wegs entgegen (Goethe).

2. e elsewhere Da gilt's Schweiß-Ekkehard (1875) 81). With

gelten also a prepositional construction was used und solit's dem Teufel um ein Ohr gelten (Schiller's *Räuber*, 2, 3) Sometimes still Es gilt um Tod oder Leben! (Fritz Lienhard's *Irland der Schmied*, p. 80) Compare 185 A I. 6 Note 2.

3. Degree can also be expressed by a prepositional phrase: teils or zum Teil in part. Das Schiff ware auf ein Haar gekentert The ship came within a hair's breadth of upsetting.

V. ADVERBS OF CAUSE OR REASON, usually expressed by an adverb or a prep. phrase Man kann davon krank werden One can get sick from that Er ist zornig darüber He is mad about it. Das Kind zittert vor Frost. Er starb an der Schwindsucht.

The following five classes may also be considered as subclasses under the general class of cause.

1 gen. of cause was once common in the

a. *Als*. For full treatment see 260 and 262.

pression

ADVERBS OF CONDITION, usually

VI. *n*falls if it is necessary, *günstig*  
*nötig**schlimmstenfalls* if worst comes i  
itself, *ritschritte machen* You can make  
*du Foliligent*.

very c. ADVERBS OF CONCESSION, *ja*

VIIphrase: *jedenfalls* in any event,  
prep. ents, by all means. *Trotz* *all*  
*weich an Freuden*.

doch iI. ADVERBS OF PURPOSE OR EN

VII<sub>2</sub>: *Dazu* (for that purpose) *in der Jugend dafür* (für den  
schon ADVERBS OF MEANS, usually

IXsprengt damit (mit Pulver) die st  
Man t er sich zu retten.

glaub ADVERBS OF MATERIAL, usually

X. *ies Tuch*, wir wollen einen Rock  
Schör. MODAL OR SENTENCE ADVERBS.

XIceived by the speaker. They are  
is conmetimes expressed by the gen. of  
are scdiffer from them and all other adv  
they entence as a whole rather than any  
the sestels as regards me, as for me,  
*meintens* in my judgment, *unseres B*  
*Eracklücklicher Weise*, *vielleicht*, &c.

(un)g and difficult of comprehension a  
maticstudied, as each gives a distinct  
fully s:

stand Expressing an affirmation:

A. *Ja* indeed, truly, why, don't you see, you  
a. *you know*, all past. *Was ist vorgef*

now, y? You look very pale indeed. See al  
peneditic form of statement where English emp  
emphal end. These *ja*'s are all unaccented, but  
towardhatic language an expressed doubt or n  
in empty *will* do that. (2) To add force to a  
certain (3) In purpose clauses to express certai  
*hurry zusammen, um ja kein Korn des Goldes*  
*knappe* not to miss a grain of the gold. *Er kehrt*  
*be* conditional clauses to indicate that  
(4) Ince to the future will be contrary to exp  
*referete es ein. Wir wollen nicht mehr auf*  
*gestelchessen*.

er na Ein'mal or colloquially *mal* used to give

b. That is a picture *for* you! or, I tell you t  
*Bild!* *il nicht* I want you to know that I  
*einme*: *Das ist nun einmal hin* That is lost and  
*helped* meaning *not even*, making some partic  
in the, *und nicht einmal sein Kammerdiener*  
*selber* Doch has a different force according to

c. verted order it has the meaning of *after*  
or inused to strengthen a statement, but is c.  
It is or opposition to what precedes, or it may  
trast .trast to something implied or understoo  
a cont doch nur ein Mädchen She is not like t  
*sie is Setz' dich, Robert; ich muß dir doch e*  
*girl*. which I just must tell you (altho you  
thing in auch mich hinauswirft (The last man  
ob m they will go so far as to put me out t  
tho ipch der Andres mit I wonder where that g  
hat d that?) More about this use in g below.  
know to make in form of an exclamation some  
order

schon Undank erfahren! I have indeed and in truth met with unthankfulness often enough already. Hab' ich den Markt und die Straßen doch nie so einsam gesehen! I declare I never before saw the public square and the streets so deserted! Compare 287. B (7) (3) In the preceding cases doch is unstressed. It is on the other hand, stressed to contradict a statement firmly. „Das ist nicht wahr“ „Doch!“ In at all „Die Musik ist schrecklich“ „Na,“

d. Denn evidently, as is well known, as if  
and with various other translations of similar meaning. Es war uns schon  
und das hat er denn (as is well

Er ist denn (as I now perceive)

ann (seeing that he says it) wohl

ry to my expectation) zu arg (bad)

used to express great assurance

or emphasis. Es wird ihm schon genügen. Ich werde ihn schon dort treffen They will no doubt meet there. Er wird schon kommen He will doubtless come. Ihr Herrn vom Handwerk

kommt in allen Ländern herum und könnt schon (as a matter of course) erzählen. Often united with noch to express assurance of a future event. Ich werde ihn schon noch (or doch noch) kriegen I'll get him yet. In all these sentences we have the original idea of schon, only

somewhat faded. See II 3 a above. Compare 7

f. Ja wohl a stronger affirmative than ja, from it, merely to avoid the too iconic ja

as to a matter of expecting a negative answer adversative force as doch: Du kommst wohl nicht? Ja wohl you are not coming. Yes indeed I am

\*\* (see h and D h) so it often has the same general erts its adversative nature and thus distinguishes

unterstützen You might certainly (even if your ectly) support me with advice. The substitution

the translation, but in the German implies that

of ja for doch

nothing stands in the way

h. Wohl strengthens a statement much as doch, but lacks its adversative force, indeed, certainly. Der ist wohl dumme. Wohl war es eine lange, kalte Nacht (Uhland's *Ernst*, 1, 1)

In popular ballads this wohl loses much of its force, so that its meaning becomes so faint that it can scarcely be rendered. Es zogen drei Bursche wohl über den Rhein (Uhland's *Der Wirtin Tochterlein*)

Nur strengthens a statement in that it emphasizes the idea of urgency. Ich muß nur bald meinen armen Herrn aufsuchen (Lessing's *Minna*, 1, 1)

i. An uncertain affirmation may be expressed by an adverb or a noun in the gen. such as

vielleicht perhaps, etwa possibly, perhaps perchance, wohl used as statement, likely, probably. I think, möglicherweise (gen)

och heute. Er war es wohl nicht It is not likely that it

used with concessive force schon I admit wohl may be, freilich or zwar to be sure, 'aller' dings it must be admitted. I x. Das ist schon richtig, aber...

That is correct, I admit, but. „Fragst du deinen Mann nie nach seinen Geschäften?“

„Ich frage schon, aber er antwortet nicht“ Here we have the original idea of schon, only somewhat faded. See II 3 a. Er ist wohl ein geschickter Mann, doch traue ich ihm nicht

He may be a very clever man, but I don't trust him. Er ist allerdings reich, allein er ist nicht glücklich

B. Expressing a Negation. This is usually expressed by an adverb, a noun in the gen., or a prep. phrase. nein no nicht (in careless colloquial language often nit in SG. and nich in NG.)

not, keineswegs by no means, auf keinen Fall in no event, nicht etwa not as you might be

the adversatives doch and ja doch (after a preceding

eilt nie

of hast

ich jet

Doch

„Doch

auszusetzen

Meinst du, solchen Burschen sei es daran gelegen?

Aber hier handelt es sich um eine freche Beschmutzung meiner Ehre. Ach, warum nicht gar

Von andlung, 3)

II, there is no need for it

nnst n

h But I

tho

Warum

he Latin rule that two negatives make an affirmative language but in the language of the common people





= You surely know everything. The negative in such exclamations has arisen from a mingling of two constructions. I rom Wie viel tut die Einbildung? and Tut die Einbildung nicht viel? (see D b below) has come Wie viel die Einbildung nicht tut! The positive form of statement is now more common here.

f or the force of nicht in questions see D f below.

i The acc of certain word such as Henker, Teufel, is often in rather coarse language. I a strong negative. Er weiß den Henker davon. Da schert man sich den Teufel um die Ideen der Zeit (Sudermann's *Henriette* 1. 5). Sometimes the negative nicht is used in conjunction with Teufel with the same force as imple Teufel. Er tüftelte über diese Dinge von was allem er nicht den Teufel verstand (Gottfried Keller's *Die drei gerechten Kammerler*).

g An imperative may be strengthened by the adverb einmal (often contracted to mal), usually in N G man) and doch. Einmal emphasizes a request or command but it is also so light that it cannot be translated. It can sometimes be rendered by just. It serves to give to the style a more lively conversational tone. Denke dir einmal! Komm einmal her! Come here a minute! Hör' mal! Die Nachtigall singt. Nur and doch are used to urge in action or course of action the former rather peremptorily with the latter more firmly or beseechingly even in spite of evident opposition or reluctance. There is always here a clear adversative force in doch. Fange nur an! Es ist ja nicht schwer. Do make a beginning it is indeed not difficult. Schonen Sie nur den Vater! Seien Sie recht aufmerksam auf seine kleinen Liebhabeereien! Gut! Nur zu! Good keep right on! Nur nicht hitzig mein Herr! I hope you will not lose your temper. Treten Sie man (instead of nur ein)! Er! laß ihn doch! Let him alone! I say. Starren Sie mir doch nicht so polizeilich ins Gesicht, wie wenn ich gestohlen hätte! Setz dich doch! (O do be seated).

h The doch and nur are both used in common in exclamations there is a marked difference in their verbal meanings. Doch implies reluctance on the part of the person addressed while nur implies that the speaker desires the course and urges the other to adopt it. Thus as thus are (nur) on the part of the speaker and the reluctance (doch) on the part of the person addressed may both enter as factors into the case both words may appear in the same sentence. Ich, so komm doch nur, hebe es noch einmal von Käthes Lippen. Sometimes doch and einmal are combined in one sentence. Erklären Sie doch einmal! Come do explain. Klettere doch mal auf den Baum! Don't you dare to climb that tree! Sometimes in lively conversational tone all three adverbs may be combined in one sentence. Hören Sie doch nur einmal! I beg you do listen a moment!

i A strongly stressed ja is often used in emphatic language to imply a threat. Tu mir das ja nicht wieder! It is also employed in an urgent request. Kommen Sie doch ja!

j Admonitions or commands are also often strengthened by wohl, especially such as have the form of a question. The speaker in all cases assuming compliance upon the part of the person addressed. Überlege wohl, was du sagst. Willst du wohl machen, daß du fortkommst?

k In mild common direct and indirect also in granting permission immer is used to indicate that the speaker has no objection to the matter in question and sometimes to give encouragement. Die Leute mögen es immer wissen, daß ich nichts mehr habe (Lessing's *Minna* 3. 7). Let the people know for all I care that &c. Laß sie nur immer toben! Du darfst den Apfel immer nehmen. Sage ihm, er möge immer reisen. Tell him he should go by all means.

l A question.

a Denn used to put a question in an interested eager manner inquiring after the cause or reason of some fact that is already known or often only to ask a question in a tone of lively interest or of surprise. Sie denn? verkauft? Was ist denn passiert? Wie sehen Sie denn? you see it?

b Nicht ex.

c Etwa nicht suggests a doubt in the mind of the questioner as to something which he once half thought settled in the affirmative and concerning which he now asks definite information. In an inverted order nicht etwa, is often used politely to hint that the person addressed is in the wrong. Kommt er etwa nicht? Is there doubt about his coming? Haben Sie mir etwa diese Blumen nicht geschickt? (Sudermann's *Henriette* 1. 2). Can it be that you have not sent me these flowers? Irren Sie sich nicht etwa? Don't you think you are mistaken?

d Etwa or vielleicht in questions direct or indirect mark the matter in question as one of possible occurrence. Gibt's etwa heute Regen? Can it be that it will rain to day? Komme ich etwa ungelegen? Can it be that I come at an inopportune time? Zweifelt etwa (or vielleicht) jemand daran? Can it be that any one doubts it? Haben Sie etwa Geld bei sich? Do you happen to have any money with you?

e Wohl is used in questions in the following constructions. (1) In rhetorical questions (ie in such questions as need no express response as the answer is self evident) to which the speaker would give a negative answer. It is used in order to indicate that the speaker confidently

(1) It is used similar to as described below. (2) It is also very frequently used to ask after the opinion of the person addressed as to some doubtful point and also often without reference to any person addressed giving to the question the character of a mere inquiring conjecture. Wer ist wohl der schlanke Bursche? Who do you think that slender fellow is?



### PREPOSITIONS.

## NATURE.

225. Very closely allied in nature to adverbs are prepositions, which, like adverbs, limit the force of the verb as to some circumstance of place, time, manner, cause or reason, purpose or end, means, material, modal expression—in short the same circumstances as are expressed by the adverb *minus* degree; hence the preposition, unlike the adverb, cannot admit of comparison. Thus a preposition in connection with its dependent substantive is exactly equal in force to an adverb, but a preposition and an adverb differ in this that the latter limits the force of the verb in and of itself, while the former requires the assistance of a dependent noun or some other word. Mary was *in* (adverb), but Mary was *in* (prep.) *the house*. A preposition does not only serve to link thus its object to a verb, but also to an adjective, a noun or a sentence. As this connective particle usually stands *before* the dependent word, it is called a preposition (Latin *prae* before and *positio* position).

1. a. Sometimes a few prepositions and adverbs touch each other so closely that the preposition only be distinguished by its dependent substantive, and if that be dropped the same word, which was only a moment before a prep., becomes an adverb. Das Haus liegt *abwärts* (prep.) des Flusses The house lies back from the river. Das Haus liegt *abwärts* The house lies to one side.

b As described in 226 a number of adverbs have become common prepositions. The adverb, however, in entering into close relations to a noun and thus becoming a preposition did not always

an adverb and a preposition in *Er lief dem Diebe nach*, it is only an adverb in *Ich will dir das Geheimnis mitteilen, du darfst es aber nicht nachreden*. In general the prefixes of many verbs, tho used adverbially, have more or less prepositional force. See 223 1 0 B, 258 1 B a, and 262. 1 b

c Sometimes when there is a dependent noun, there is actual fluctuation of conception, usually the particle being construed as an adverb, but sometimes as a prep. This is true of an or gegen about, über more than, unter less than. Es ist an (adv.) or gegen (adv.) ein Taler or an (prep.) or gegen (prep.) einen Taler Verlust dabei. There is a loss of about a thaler in the transaction. Es ist über (adv.) ein Taler or über (prep.) einen Taler Verlust dabei. Es ist unter (adv.) ein Taler or unter (prep.) einem Taler Verlust dabei. In this idiom, notice that the prep. über according to its idea of going beyond and an from the idea of approaching take the acc, but the prep. unter the dat., while all three used as adverbs remain without influence over the case. Compare 261. f 1 A b

2 Prepositions approach in some cases the nature of conjunctions, and lose their influence over the case of the following word. This is true of *anstatt* or *statt*, *auffer*, and *erlicher* in the period, and even occasionally *luter*, also *ohne* *except*, which is now replaced here by *auffer* and

also connect sentences, daß, außer wenn, anstatt, *Heere der Schießgewehr*, außer daß was also find-mer, und darin will le, festsetzen (*Suttner's Im Berghause*, p. 26). I formerly ungeachtet daß was common, but the simple connective is now preferred. Instead of the connective seit the form seitdem is also used. The preps anstatt instead of, ohne without, and um in order, lit for, for the purpose of, are very commonly found as conjunctions in connection with the infin with zu in constricted clauses. Anstatt weg zu laufen, kam der Bär heran. Ohne sich umzusehen, lief der Dieb davon. Wir leben nicht, um zu essen, sondern wir essen, um zu leben.

b. In the case of *anstatt*, *statt*, and *außer* when they connect grammatical elements of like rank in the nom. or acc., the words can usually be used as preps. or conjunctions without dif-

ference of meaning: *Der Bauer brachte das Kalb anstatt der Kuh*, or *statt die Kuh*. Niemand kommt mir entgegen außer ein Unverschämter (Lessing's *Emilia*, 4, 3), or außer einem Unverschämten. But in case of *statt*, *anstatt* when there is only an indirect object after the verb, either in the simple dat. or a case after a prep., there is a sharp distinction between the prepositional and conjunctive construction. In the former construction, the noun following *anstatt*, *statt* is felt as the subject or author of an action, while a noun after these particles in the conjunctive construction is felt as the indirect object: *Sie dankte mir anstatt deiner* (instead of your doing so), but *Sie dankte mir statt dir* She thanked me instead of thanking you. *Er hat statt deiner* (instead of your doing it) *an mich geschrieben*, but *Er hat an mich statt an dich geschrieben* He wrote to me instead of writing to you.

3. A prep. often seems to show a relation of meaning between two nouns where in fact the relation is between a noun and a verb. Thus *Geld zur Reise* *money for the journey* is an elliptical expression = *Das Geld, das zur Reise bestimmt ist*. Thus also *Herr über Tod und Leben* = *Der Herr, der über Tod und Leben gesetzt ist*. In other cases the preposition may link together two nouns, the prep. phrase being a real adjunct to a noun representing an older simple case form: *ein Mäntelchen von Scharlach* = M.H.G. *ein scharlaches mentelin*. To-day, however, all these prepositional phrases are alike felt as attributive adjuncts.

4. Sometimes the same relations are expressed by a prep. and case as by a case alone, and sometimes by changing the prep. the idea may receive a new shade: *Man freut sich einer Sache*, or *an einer Sache* *One takes pleasure in a thing* (which one has), but *Man freut sich auf eine Sache* *One takes pleasure in something that one is expecting for the future*. Perhaps the prepositional construction is never entirely equal to the case construction, as the prep. often brings out more prominently some circumstance as cause, reason, &c.: *Ich bin müde vom* (*from*, on account of) *Arbeiten*, but *Ich bin des Arbeitens müde* *I am tired of work*, do not care to work longer.

5. Sometimes the prep. is followed by an adverb or a prep. phrase instead of a noun or pronoun: *von früh bis spät* *from early till late*; *von heute auf morgen verschieben* to put off from to-day till to-morrow. *Er dachte an zu Haus* (Oempteda's *Sylvester von Geyer*, XXV).

#### GOVERNMENT OF PREPOSITIONS.

226. Originally the nouns which followed prepositions were not governed at all by the latter, but received their case directly from their relations to the verb, the preposition likewise limiting the verb by adding some especial explanatory circumstance of place, time, &c. Thus most of the oldest and most common prepositions were in fact adverbs, and the same prep. could be followed by two or even three different cases according to the relation of the noun to the verb, and hence possessed no governing power over the noun. But in course of time a closer relation developed between the prep. and the noun, and the former gained governing power over the latter, certain prepositions habitually requiring certain cases after them. As the prepositions before the dative, locative, ablative, and instrumental were more concrete expressions for the ideas already expressed by the endings of these cases the case endings themselves became more and more slighted and finally lost their distinctive form, all merging into one—the dative—the preceding preposition indicating the relation between the verb and the noun. See 258. 1 (near end). The language thus lost three cases, but it gained in simplicity without losing any of its power of accurate expression. In this new period of development the prepositions not only assumed the functions of the case forms but they often retained and still retain the functions of the old adverbs out of which they had developed, as illustrated in 229. 2 under *nach*, *f* and *entgegen*. See also 225, 223. I. 9. B, 258. 1. B. *a*, and 262. I. *b*. A group of prepositions, discussed below, still allow two different cases to stand after them according to the relation of the noun to the verb, which fact shows that these prepositions are in fact still adverbs, for the verb has not lost its influence over the nouns following these prepositions.

As explained in 245. V a large number of prepositions have come from other sources than from adverbs and still retain in good measure the power of governing the same case with which they were associated in their former capacity ere they became prepositions, but also from the crossing of different conceptions may take another case without any difference of meaning, as is discussed in detail below.

For the construction employed when several prepositions governing different cases stand before one noun see 141. 5. B. *b*. Note.

## PREPOSITIONS WITH THEIR DEPENDENT CASES

227. The following lists contain the German prepositions. Those marked with a † usually govern some other case, but those with a \* less commonly take another case. Those marked with \*\* govern different cases according as they precede or follow the dependent noun. Several of the prepositions have several forms, the more uncommon being inclosed in parentheses.

In articles 261 and 262 IV, V, VI in connection with the government of verbs, adjectives, and participles these prepositions are treated at considerable length from another point of view, which throws additional light upon their use.

*Prepositions with the Genitive*

abgerechnet	diesseits*	inhalts	östlich	unterwärts
abschläglic	eingangs	inklusive*	ostwärts	unweit*
abseits	einschließlic	inmitten	punkt	vermittels
(abseiten)	entlang†	inner(t)†	rechts	vermittelst
(abseitig)	(entlängst)	innerhalb*	rings, ringsum	vermüge
abwärts	exklusive*	inwärts	rittlings	von seiten
abzüglich	gegenwärts	jenseits*	rücksichtlich	von wegen
anbetriffs	gelegentlich	kraft	rückwärts	vorbehaltlic
anfangs	gemäß†	längs*	seitab	vorwärts
angesichts	halb	(längst)	seitens	während*
anlässlich	halben	längsseit(s)	seitlich	wegen*
anstatt	halber	laut	seitwärts	westlic
antwortlic	halbwegs	links	statt	westwärts
aufwärts	herseits	macht	südl	zeit
ausgangs	herwärts	mangels	südwärts	zufolge**
ausschließlic	hinseits	mittels	trotz*	zugunsten**
außerhalb*	hinsichtlich	mittelst	überhin	zunächst†
ausweislic	hinsichts	namens	um — willen	zusätzlich
behufs	hinterhalb*	niederwärts	unangesehen	zuschläglic
beiderseits	hinterücks	nördlic	unbeschadet	zu seiten
besage	hinterwärts	nordwärts	unerachtet	zuungunsten
betriffs	hinwärts	ob†	unfern*	zuzüglic
bezüglich	hüben und drüben	oberhalb*	ungeachtet	zwecks
binnen	infolge	oberwärts	ungerechnet	
dank†	inhaltlic	osten*	unterhalb*	

*With the Dative*

ab	entgegen	mitsamt	samt	zufolge**
aus	fernab	nach	seit	zunächst*
bei	gegenüber	nächst	trotz†	zusamt
benebst	gemäß*	nebst	von	zusamt mit
binnen	längs (längst)	nid	vorgängig	zuwider
dank*	mit	ob*	zu	

*With the Acc*

auf und ab	entlang*	gen	per, pro, via, &	wider
bis	für	hindurch	sonder	
durch	gegen	ohne	um	

*With Dat and Acc*

an	hinter	neben	über	vor
auf	in	ober (S G)	unter	zwischen
außer	inner(t)			

Note For contractions of these prepositions with the article see 57 B

## ORIGIN, MEANING AND USE OF PREPOSITIONS WITH THE GENITIVE

228 1 The use of the genitive after most prepositions in modern times is easily explained by the substantive nature of a large part of them for when one noun depends upon another the dependent noun is in the gen. The prepositions governing the gen. are in fact

a Nouns in the adverbial gen. or expressions formed after the model of such often pre-senting in this form an abbreviated construction for an adverbial phrase. Thus instead of Von Berlin aus liegt Magdeburg auf jener Seite der Elbe we say more briefly jenseits der Elbe. This adverbial gen. in such prepositions is all on one side for a, as briefly jenseits der Elbe of masculines diesseits, seitens, &c. a capital as the original relation to the

oder Anfangs der nächsten Woche, Eingangs der sächsischen Schweiz, or perhaps more commonly *ausgangs, anfangs, eingangs*. There is here much caprice as to the use of capitals.

b. Nouns in an oblique case after a preposition expressed or understood: *in Kraft allein des Rings* (Lessing's *Nathan*, 3, 7), more commonly without the *in*, as *in kraft meines Amtes* by virtue of my office; *statt or anstatt meines Bruders* for an *meines Bruders Statt*; *um des Freundes willen* (acc. after *um*) for the sake of my friend; *von* (now usually omitted) *wegen* (dat. pl.) *des vergossenen Blutes*; *in Betracht seiner Jugend*. *Anfang in the beginning of*, *Mitte in the middle of*, *Ende the last of, toward the close of*, *Ecke on the corner of*, are now frequently used as prepositions dropping the preceding preposition and article, or both preposition and article may be retained: *Die Trippelli, Anfang (or im Anfang) der Dreißig, stark, männlich und von ausgesprochen humoristischem Typus, hatte den Sofaehrenplatz innegehabt. Ich werde Mitte (or in der Mitte) nächster Woche verreisen. Er war ein athletisch gebauter Mann Ende (or am Ende) der Zwanziger. Ecke (or an der Ecke) der Schadowstraße, aufgrund (or more commonly auf Grund) seiner Untersuchungen, anstelle (or an Stelle) des verstorbenen Vorsitzenden*. These prepositions are in different stages of evolution, and hence do not all stand in the same relation to the nouns from which they come. Some have thrown off the preposition before them, some retain it occasionally, some always, some drop it, but can be replaced by nouns with both preposition and article. In general, however, these prepositions differ from pure nouns in dropping the article, and in the more or less set form and position they assume in the sentence, usually admitting of no adj. modifiers, and standing always before the dependent genitive, thus having no freedom of position. For an interesting example where the word-order clearly distinguishes these prepositions from pure nouns see 151. 3. A (toward end).

c. Adverbs and participles, the former in some cases also, like the adverbial nouns in *a*, ending in *s*: *links des Zuschauers* to the left of the spectator; *nordwärts* to the north of, *einschließlich* inclusive of, &c.; *während* (pres. part.; see *während* in 4 below) during, *ungeachtet* (past part.; see *ungeachtet* in 4 below) notwithstanding, *abgerechnet* aside from, not counting, *ungerechnet* not counting.

2. The double construction, gen. or dat., after some of these prepositions is explained by the crossing of two or more conceptions. On the one hand, when one noun depends upon the other, the dependent one must be in the gen. Thus, as can be seen from 1. *a* and *b* above, a number of these prepositions, being in fact nouns, require the dependent noun to stand in the gen. On the other hand, the idea that is contained in some nouns suggests the use of the dative after the analogy of other similar constructions. Thus we say *Jenseits des Flusses steht eine alte Kapelle*, but we also find sometimes *jenseits dem Flusse*, as the idea of rest is so often associated with the dative. On the other hand a few prepositions governing the dative are also found with a genitive, as their originally substantive nature is felt, or they are influenced by prepositions which were once substantives. Thus we say *trotz den Befehlen des Königs* in analogy with *man bietet den Befehlen des Königs Trotz*, but we also, and now more commonly, say *trotz der Befehle des Königs*. Similarly we usually say *dank dir* after the analogy of *Dir sei Dank*, but in recent literature we often find the gen. here after the analogy of the gen. with other prepositions derived from nouns. See *dank* in 4 below. The form *gemäß* is in fact an adjective governing the dat. and can still be inflected and compared, but it has become associated in meaning with the prepositional formations in *Gemäßheit* and *zufolge*, so that it likewise sometimes governs the gen.: *dem Befehl gemäß*, or *gemäß dem Befehl* or *des Befehls*.

a. We sometimes find non-inflection or the dat. after prepositions governing the gen. on purely formal grounds: (1) We not infrequently find an unmodified substantive in the singular uninflected after these prepositions: *Gambetta folgte ihnen ebenfalls dorthin, indem er Paris mittelst Luftballon* (instead of the more correct and in choice language now more common gen.) *verließ* (*Deutsche Rundschau*). Thus also in a number of expressions, especially in popular language, such as *wegen Todesfall* on account of death, *wegen Abbruch* on account of the tearing down of the building, &c., instead of the more correct and in choice language more common *wegen Todesfalls, Abbruchs*, &c. After *aufwärts, diesseits, jenseits, oberhalb, unterhalb, außerhalb, innerhalb, unweit, unfern, nördlich, südlich, östlich, westlich* we usually find non-inflection before names of places, altho these words elsewhere more commonly govern some case: *nördlich Iwangerod* (*Großes Hauptquartier*, Oct. 27, 1914), but *nördlich der belgischen Maas* (river) (ib. Sept. 6, 1914). The uninflected form is in fact a dative after a suppressed *von*, which as it is unstressed easily drops out. The *von*, however, is often expressed: *nördlich von Metz*. The genitive with articleless names, tho still not so common as elsewhere, is nevertheless slowly gaining ground: *innerhalb Breslaus* (*Breslauer Morgen-Zeit.*, Jan. 19, 1915).

(2) The use of the dat. instead of the gen. is especially frequent where the latter is not clearly marked in form: *während fünf Tagen* (instead of *Tage*) which is not clearly marked as a gen.). Also the correct gen., however, is often used in case of such nouns, prompted by the feeling that the proper case of the noun should be used here as so frequently elsewhere where the form is not distinctive. The dat. is quite common in case of the masc. and neut. sing. of the relative and interrogative pronoun *welcher*, which has a gen. sing. exactly like the nom. and acc. neut. See *während* under 4 below. The dat. is likewise common in case of other pronouns which cannot distinguish a gen. from the nom. and acc.: *wegen manchem* (R. Schweichel's *Verloren*). See also *anstatt, während, wegen*, below.

3. These prepositions are constantly increasing in number, much more so than all other classes. It can be seen from the above that it is impossible to include in the list all such prepositional particles which govern the gen., for many nouns, as in 1. *a* and *b* above, and others are occasionally pressed into service as preps., tho they still retain their initial capital. In most

cases only such are given in the list as are usually written with a small letter and pass generally for prepositions.

4 The treatment of prepositions governing the genitive as to their meaning and use follows, the prepositions being arranged alphabetically. In some cases the mere definition will suffice, as these prepositions do not enter into so many idiomatic combinations as prepositions governing other cases.

**ABGERECHNET** aside from, not counting *abgerechnet einiger Städte* (*Austl.*, 38 521 a) The absolute construction in connection with an absolute acc. is more common here. *Narcissa, ihren Stolz abgerechnet, war ein lebenswürdiges Wesen.*

**ABSCHLÄGLICH** in part payment of *abschläglich meines Honorars* = auf Abschlag meines Honorars.

**AB SEITEN**, see *seitens*.

**ABSEITS**, less commonly **ABWÄRTS**, and the now rarer forms **ABSEIT**, **ABSEITEN**, **ABSEITIG** off to one side, aside from. *Abseits des Weges liegt das Haus.* *Abwärts des Eingangs.* Vergebens hatte der letztere gegen den jungen Senator hervorgehoben, daß „kraft seines tragenden Amtes, abseits des Ansehens der Familie,“ die Augen der ganzen Stadt auf ihn gerichtet seien (*Storm's Schre des Secretors* p. 301). They sometimes occur with the dat. *Etwas abseits dem Flecken und darüber erhöht lag ein einzelnes Schloßchen* (*Hans Hoffmann's Die Totenzeit*). *Abwärts* is also used in the meaning of *below down*, *down stream from*, usually with the gen., but often with non inflection before names of places: *abwärts der Brust*, *abwärts Hamburg* below Hamburg, (on the Elbe).

**ABZÜGLICH** deducting, abzüglich der Transportkosten.

**ANBETREFFS**, **BETREFFS**, **IN BETREFF**, **IN ANBETREFF** concerning, as regards. *Mein Plan betrifft einer Reise.* These prepositions are very closely related in meaning to *hinsichtlich*, *hinsichts*, *bezüglich*. *Seine Erzählung bedarf in Betreff, or in Anbetroff, or betrefis, or hinsichts, or hinsichtlich, or bezüglich mancher Punkte der Berichtigung.*

**ANFANGS** at or in the beginning of, often with non inflection in case of articleless nouns: *anfangs (or Anfang) der fünfziger Jahre, anfangs September* (*Carl Spitteler's In 50* p. 1).

**ANGESICHTS** in the face of, in view of, considering *angesichts der Feinde, des Todes, der Gefahr.*

**ANLASZLICH**, *auf* or *aus* **Anlaß** spurred on, impelled by the occasion of, upon the occasion of. *anlässlich des 90. Geburtstages des berühmten Gelehrten erschien eine Festschrift.*

**AN'STATT** or **STATT** instead of. *Anstatt (or statt) des Vaters erschien die Mutter.* Sometimes, especially in popular language, with the dat. *Anstatt dem Vater erschien die Mutter.* Also sometimes in the literary form of speech. *Statt Fluchen, Gähnen und dem schlürfenden Schritte der Trägheit hörte man auf diesem Hofe wieder den raschen, freudigen Tritt des Fleißes* (*H. Seidel's Der Schatz* VI). Especially when the gen. form has not an ending which clearly marks it as a gen. *Daß statt Bösem* (the gen. *Bösen* would not be a clear gen.) *Gutes daraus gewonnen wird* (*Rudolf Hildebrand's Vom deutschen Sprachunterricht* p. 117). *Doch wie staunten sie, als sie statt jenem, den sie hier gesucht, nun einen Ritter sahen im schlichten Kleide* (*M. Greif's Heinrich der Löwe* 2 1).

id b thereunder

reply to *Antwortlich Ihres geehrten*

*Le* . . . . . of names  
of . . . . . das Hoch-  
wi . . . . . 2, 1902)  
in case of articleless nouns *ausgangs*

**AUSSCHLIESZLICH** exclusive of, **EINSCHLIESZLICH** inclusive of, usually with the gen., in case of unmodified nouns or nouns with uninflected modifiers usually with non inflection in the sing. *1 + 1 = 2* the pl. instead of *ausschließlich, einschließlich* often with the same use of the cases *einschließ-*  
*lich der K* . . . . . to (*Die Landwirtsch.* 1st, Aug. 15, 1905). *Der*  
*Biervorbrauch betrug 1904 2000 im deutschen zollgebiet einschließlich Luxemburg auf rund*  
*69 Millionen Hektoliter* (*Nordd. Allg. Zeit.*, 1905). *Wir waren alle da einschließlich vier*  
*Fremde(n).*

**AUSZERHALB** outside, **HINTERHALB** back of, behind, **INNERHALB** inside, **OBERHALB** above, **UNTERHALB** below also sometimes with the dat., of  
of articleless nouns, especially names of places. *außerhalb der* . . . . .  
*innerhalb* . . . . . ago (Martin's

*WILHELM ZUM BILDE Gottes schuf er*  
(*Frankfurter Zeit.*, Jan. 10, 1915) *Inste*

halbe Meile unterhalb von uns

(Halbe's *Der Strom*, p. 15) See

**AUSWEISLICH**, nach Ausweis, besage (rare) as shown by the documentary evidence of: Dazu sind Sie ausweislich (or besage) des Vertrags verpflichtet.

(a) Synonymous with these words in so far as the reference is to documentary or written evidence are: gemäß in accordance with, **inhalts** or **inhaltlich** (in official style), laut, zufolge (with the dat. when it follows the noun), and the very frequent form nach (with the dat.) according to; see also each of these words.

**BE'HUFS**, **ZUM BE'HUF**, **ZWECKS** for the furtherance of, with a view to, for the purpose of, much used instead of the more simple but not so explicit zu (w. dat.): behufs Wahrung des Prestiges der italienischen Flagge for the purpose of maintaining the prestige of the Italian flag. Am 2. ds. (dieses Monats) brach die Kolbenstange zum zweiten Male, und das Schiff mußte infolgedessen behufs der Ausbesserung 41 Stunden still liegen. Er ist der Polizeibehörde zur, or behufs, or zwecks Einsperrung überwiesen worden.

**BEIDERSEITS** on both sides of, with the same construction as diesseits.

**BE'SAGE** (from older nach Besage) see ausweislich.

**BE'TREFFS**, see anbetreffs.

**BE'ZÜGLICH** or in Bezug auf (w. acc.) with reference to; see anbetreffs. Sometimes instead of the gen. after bezüglich we find the prep. auf (w. acc.): seine Bemerkungen bezüglich auf Farben organischer Körper (Goethe).

**BINNEN** within, inside of, of space and time, more commonly the latter, often with dat. like in and also often, perhaps more frequently, with the gen. like innerhalb: binnen Landes gemacht (Möser), binnen ihren notwendigen Grenzen (Immermann); binnen hier und einem Jahr (Lessing), binnen den nächsten drei Stunden (Raabe), binnen kurzem (Marriot) within a short time; binnen eines halben Jahres (*Hamburger Correspondent*, April 20, 1905), binnen knapper zwei Wochen (Mann's *Buddenbrooks*, vol. III, p. 91), binnen eines Monats (Artikel 73 der Verfassung des Deutschen Reichs), binnen zwei weiteren Wochen (ib., Artikel 74).

**DANK** thanks to, often with gen., more commonly with dat.: dank des für die Jahreszeit besonders schönen Wetters (Schubin), dank seiner fünfunddreißig Jahre (Fedor Sommer's *Ernst Reiland*, p. 185), and many other examples from recent literature.

**DIESSEIT** or now more commonly **DIESSEITS** on this side of, **JENSEIT** or now more commonly **JENSEITS** on that side of, **HÜBEN UND DRÜBEN** on both sides of, lit. on this side and that: diesseits des Flusses, jenseits des Grabes, hüben und drüben der Grenze. Sometimes von is used in connection with the regular form: Jenseit von des Oxus Wogen (Rückert's *Morg.*, 1, 251). Earlier in the period the dative sometimes occurs instead of the gen.: Diesseit den Alpen (Lessing). In case of names of places non-inflection of the noun is not infrequent: jenseits Bar. See also 2. a. (1) above.

**EINGANGS** at the beginning of, at the entrance to: Die eingangs dieser Zeilen wiedergegebene Zeitungsnotiz, in mittlerer und eingangs neuerer Zeit (T. Frings in *Paul und Braunes Beiträge*, 1917, p. 248). Er stand eingangs der Untersekunda. Eingangs der sächsischen Schweiz.

**EINSCHLIESZLICH**, see ausschließlich.

**ENT'LANG**, see längs.

**EXKLU'SIVE**, see ausschließlich.

**GEGENWARTS** in the presence of, or more commonly in Gegenwart: gegenwerts der Herren.

**GE'LEGENTLICH** or **BEI GE'LEGENHEIT** as to the topic of, apropos of, embracing the favorable opportunity of, upon the occasion of: gelegentlich dieser Gedichte will ich bemerken usw. Gelegentlich seiner Anwesenheit in der Stadt machte er einige Besuche. Gelegentlich (upon the occasion of) meines letzten Besuches auf Krasnawoda (the name of a village) lenkte sich das Gespräch auf einige neuerschienene Bücher.

**GE'MÄSZ** (see ausweislich) in accordance with, sometimes w. gen. or more commonly w. dat. when standing before the noun, always w. dat. when following the noun: gemäß Ihres Befehls or more commonly Ihrem Befehle gemäß. An die Sprache schließt sich aufs engste der Gesang an, dem fast alle Stämme gemäß ihres lebhaften und heiteren Wesens leidenschaftlich ergeben sind (Prof. Dr. Keller's *Die ostafrikanischen Inseln*, p. 59). For explanation of the gen. see 2 above, toward end. Gemäß was originally an adjective governing the dative which regularly preceded it. In most cases it is still an adjective whether used as an independent word or as the basal element in a compound. It is only distinctly felt as a preposition when it precedes the substantive. The s found in compounds such as standesgemäß in accordance with one's station in life, wahrheitsgemäß in accordance with the facts, &c., is not the gen. ending, but the connecting s so often found in compounds after the analogy of gen. compounds, as in standeswidrig, wahrheitsgetreu, &c. Compare gemäß in 229. 2.

**HALB**, **HALBEN**, **HALBER**, **WEGEN** express:

1. a. A motive, cause, reason, with the general translation on account of, sometimes with the dat. in case of wegen: Ich bleibe des schlechten Wetters wegen (or halber, halben) zu Hause. Der Strauß kann wegen seiner zu kurzen Flügel nicht fliegen. Of these words wegen is the most common in this meaning. The older form von wegen (dat. pl. of Weg) is still quite common in popular speech, and not infrequent in colloquial language: Lieber packe ich dir noch ein paar wollene Strümpfe, 'ne warme Unterhose und eine Reservenachtmütze zu, von wegen möglicher Erkältung bei dieser Erhitzung fürs allgemeine deutsche Vaterland (Raabe's *Gutmanns Reisen*, chap. i). For the dat. see wegen, below in the alphabetical arrangement.

b. A concern for a thing or that in regard to which some action is to be taken, or a regard for the interests of someone, translated by for the sake of, on account of, with regard to, concerning,



as far as it concerns (me, you, him, &c.) Wegen (with regard to) vergessener Sachen wende man sich an das „Büro für gefundene Sachen.“ Zwischen dem Vollbauer (possessor of a hide of land) Friedrich Schmidt von hier und dessen Kindern ist folgender Kontrakt wegen (in regard to) Überlassung des hier worden. Des Scheines halber for the sake of appearing albet This meaning is also quite common in compound. e preps form with the possessives Seien Sie meiner wegen (on my account) unbesorgt. Meinetwegen (as far as I am concerned, for aught I care) kann er gehen. Er hat es meiner halben or meiner halb (out of regard for me) getan. Meiner halben (as far as I am concerned for aught I care) kannst du es thun halb I feminine nouns often and are then written as compounds.

he language of the common people where the original form von — wegen (see a above) is still much used. Es ist man (= nur) von wegen das Vieh (acc. instead of gen. in popular speech), daß ich fragen wollte (Wildenbruch & Die Quitzers, 1, 2). Earlier in the period this form was also used in the literary language Gebt Rechenschaft . . . von wegen des vergessenen Blutes (Schiller's Jungfrau 1, 11).

The source or direction from which something comes, or the instance or occasion which calls forth some act, by, on the part of, in pursuance of, on the authority of, by the order of. In the literary language this meaning, once so common, only survives in the form von — wegen in a limited number of expressions: von Rechts wegen by rights, von Amts wegen officially, von Staats wegen by the state, von Obrigkeit wegen, von Regierung wegen, von Berufs wegen professionally, von Polizei wegen by order of the police authorities. Ohne mir einen Vorwurf zu erlauben — ich meine, Durchlaucht sollten die Fundamente des Staates, zu dessen Hüter Sie von Geburt und Partei wegen berufen sind, ein wenig höher einschätzen (Sudermann's . . .) werden wir von Fraktions wegen (as a party) Ich hatte zwei oder drei entfernte Verwandte

preceding examples that the fem. gen. sometimes takes the ending s after the analogy of the masculines.

Colloquially, and especially in popular speech, this usage is not confined to the group of expressions given above. Sag' ihm von meiner wegen, daß, &c. (Goethe) Tell him for me" (as coming from me) that, &c. Es ist ja man (= nur) bloß von Fritz Bellow (acc. in popular speech instead of the gen.) wegen, daß ich gefragt gehabt habe (Wildenbruch & Die Quitzers, 1, 2) It is only at the instance of Fritz Bellow that I asked.

2. Halb, halben, halber always follow the noun or pronoun while wegen may precede or follow. wegen seines Fleißes or seines Fleißes wegen, unserer Freundschaft halben or halber.

Halb is now only found in composition with des and wes, and the possessives (see 140 d Note 1) deshalb on account of that, weshalb why, meiner halb for my sake, &c.

halben (but never halber) like halb enters into compounds with the possessives and both halben and halber (now evidently the favorite, altho halben is common earlier in the period).

halben Friedens (set expressions) albet wanderten for the sake of viele Einwohner aus.

HALBWEGS, sometimes HALBWEG or HALBWEGE, halfway to up, thru between, with gen. except before names of halbwegs des Berges holen for water. Die Flüchtlinge (halfway up) der Höhe der

quarier July 7, 1915)

HERSEITS on his (her, their) side of, indicating the side towards the person in question, undlichkeit leitete sie das Mädchen, herseits in den von Mehlduft erfüllten Raum hinein

with gen., dat., or non inflection as in case

Synonymous with these preps are rd after it auf (w. acc.) instead of the gen. as in case of bezüglich.

ack of hinterrücks der Mutter. urtherwärts dieses Bauwerks.

HÜBEN UND DRÜBEN, see diesseits.

IN'FOLGE and less frequently ZU'FOLGE in consequence of: infolge or zufolge besonderer Umstände. Infolge (or zufolge) einer abermaligen schlechten Ernte und arger Unterlassungssünden der Ortsbehörden herrscht in Schardrinsk (in Rußland) Hungersnot. Compare this use of zufolge with that in 229. 2.

INHALTLICH or INHALTS, see ausweislich and laut.

INKLU'SIVE, see ausschließlic.

IN'MITTEN in the midst of, between, sometimes also w. dat. and w. von and dat.: Inmitten des Waldes stand ein altes Forsthaus. O Vaterland (Austria)! Inmitten | dem Kind Italien und dem Manne Deutschland | liegst du, der wangenrote Jüngling, da (Grillparzer's *König Ottokars Glück und Ende*, 3). Inmitten von Kummer und Elend.

INNER(T), see inner(t) under 231. II.

INNERHALB, see außerhalb.

INWÄRTS = innerhalb or in.

JENSEITS, see diesseits.

KRAFT by virtue of, by dint of: kraft meines Amtes. For synonyms see vermöge, Note.

LÄNGS (only rarely längst) along, with the gen., less frequently the dat., preferring the position before the noun, rarely with the acc.; ent'lang (rarely ent'längst), a Low German form with the force of H.G. längs and of the same origin as English *along*, now also common in literary German, often with the gen., usually with the acc. but also frequently with the dat., either preceding or following the noun but with a decided preference for the position after the noun when the acc. is used: längs des Ufers or dem Ufer; das Tal entlang, or dem Tal entlang, or entlang des Tales or dem Tal. Originally entlang was an adverb. This accounts for its common position after the acc., which in fact is a cognate acc., the object of the verb: Er kam den Weg entlang. It is still often used as an adverb without an object: Felix, die Hände in den Taschen seines kurzen Hausrockes, kam entlang (Junghans). Er kam am Bach entlang.

LÄNGSSEITS or LÄNGSSEIT alongside of: Das Boot glitt mit niedergeworfenen Segeln längsseits des Landungssteigs. Also with dat.: Unser Boot legte sich langseit dem englischen Dampfer (Gerstäcker).

LAUT (in early N.H.G. nach Laut, thus in fact a dative of the noun Laut in a former meaning which is preserved in Wortlaut) according to (the contents, tenor of a letter, command, law, agreement, &c.), usually w. gen., often also the dat., especially when the noun is without an article or other modifying word: Laut unserer Verabredung, laut seines Briefes. Laut alter Verträge war früher Ungarn mit Österreich unter einem Herrscher vereinigt. Laut ärztlichem Gutachten (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Oct. 9, 1904), laut einem Privattelegramm (ib. Aug. 7, 1905), laut Berichten des Reuterschen Bureaus (*Kölnische Zeit.*, Nov. 5, 1914), laut einem Beschluß des Kuratoriums (*Neue Zürcher Zeit.*, Sept. 12, 1916).

(a) Synonyms of laut are inhalts or inhaltlich (in official style), zufolge (usually following the noun), nach (see nach, e. (2). Note in 229. 2; usually before, but also after the noun): Das bestätigt sich laut, or inhalts, or inhaltlich neuerer Nachrichten, or nach neueren Nachrichten or neueren Nachrichten nach or zufolge.

LINKS to the left of, RECHTS to the right of, both with gen., also with von + dat., and always so in case of a pronominal object: links, rechts der Tür, or von der Tür. Links von ihm sah man mehrere holsteinische Geschichtswerke aufgeschlagen übereinander (Frenssen).

MACHT (rare) = kraft.

MANGELS out of lack of, for want of, in default of: Er wurde mangels der Beweise freigesprochen. Mangels Zahlung in default of payment.

MITTELS, VERMITTELS, or the corrupted forms with excrescent t VERMITTELST, MITTELST by, by means of: Viele Dampfschiffe werden mittels einer Schraube bewegt. Mittels Nachtmarsches war morgens früh vier Uhr die 18. Division vom linken auf dem rechten Moselufer eingetroffen (Moltke). We not infrequently find non-inflection of the noun here in the singular. See 2. a above. The dative plural is also sometimes found, especially in case of articleless nouns: Verfolgung des Wildes zur Winterszeit mittels Skiern (Erik Voigt in *Hamburger Nachrichten*, Oct. 17, 1905).

(a) Synonyms of mittels, vermittels are von, durch, mit. The *direct* source of an act is expressed by von, hence limited chiefly to a living, thinking agent. The *indirect* means by which the aim is attained is expressed by durch. The instrument which produced the *immediate* result is expressed by mit: Er wurde von (by — the agent and author of it all) dem Richter verurteilt, durch (as the indirect means) den Henker mit (the instrument which produced the immediate result) dem Beil hingerichtet zu werden. Of these durch approaches the nearest to mittels, but the latter has a much more narrow range of usefulness. Mittels is only used of some force as a means or a dead instrument that is purposely utilized, directed, employed to lead to a certain definite end, while durch is used of a force that in itself has in some degree self-acting, transforming power, which, however, need not necessarily act toward some definite end: Mühlen werden mittels des Windes, des Wassers, der Dampfkraft bewegt. Das Schiff wird durch die Strömung abgetrieben. In (ver)mittels there also lies something of the technical, which does not admit of its use in elevated language so much. See also vermöge, Note. Mit is also used to express means and differs from durch in that it does not necessarily point to a result: Er will uns damit anlocken, but Er hat uns dadurch verlockt. In some cases either mit or durch can be used, the former calling attention to the effort and the means employed, the latter emphasizing the effective means and the result: einen mit Worten or durch Worte antreiben. Durch also approaches sometimes von in meaning, and hence English *by* is used to translate both words.

For examples see *durch* (b), (c) in 230. In most of these examples the usual difference in meaning between *von* and *durch* is observed. In connection with a verbal noun, however, *durch* is usually employed to denote the agent where we should expect *von*, as the use of the latter, so common in the attributive relation to express other ideas, might be misunderstood: die Meldung von der Übernahme der Regentschaft durch den Grafen Leopold zur Lippe-Biesterfeld (*Deutsche Rundschau* Nov. 1901 p. 308).

**NAMENS** or **IM NAMEN** in the name of. Das fordere ich namens des Königs.

**NIEDERWARTS** below.

**NÖRDLICH** to the north of, most commonly with gen. also with *von* + dat., sometimes with the simple dat., usually with non inflection in case of articleless names: nördlich des Rheins or vom Rhein; nördlich dem Oldenhorn (Hermann Suchier in *Grobers Grundriß* I p. 722), das kleine Gefecht bei Lundby nördlich Hobro. In case of pronouns the adverbial construction with *von* is usually employed: am Barrenkopf (mountain peak) und nördlich davon (*Großes Hauptquartier* Aug. 24 1915).

**NORDWARTS** = nördlich, now most commonly with gen. also with *von* + dat. and sometimes with the simple dat. an einzelnen Orten nordwärts der Alpen (*Zürcher Zeitung* 11 Jan. 1903), nordwärts vom Rhein, occasionally nordwärts dem Rhein.

**ÖB**, see *ob* under 229. 2.

**OBERHALB** above, see *außerhalb*.

**OBERWARTS** = oberhalb.

**OSTEN** = ostwärts with the same construction rare. Wo einst ostem dem Dorfe ein Hafen der gefürchteten Vitalienbrüder gewesen sein sollte, sah man jetzt, &c. (T. Storm's *Renate*, p. 1).

**ÖSTLICH** to the east of with the same construction as nördlich.

**OSTWARTS** = östlich, with the same construction as nordwärts.

**PUNKTO** or **IN PUNCTO** (ablative of Latin punctum) = wegen on account of, with reference to especially a legal term. „Du meinst, der General ist allen geistlichen Leuten aufsässig?“

punkto gottloser Reden prozessiert und um eine schwere Summe

) So mögen Sie sich, liebster Freund, den Weihnachtstrübel

e Frau Do zwar freudig, aber doch mit einer gewissen Sorge in

puncto unserer alten Köpfe und sonstigen mit feinen Nerven gesegneten Glieder entgegen-

sehen (T. Storm an G. Keller, 23. Dezember 1880).

**RECHTS**, see *links*.

**RINGS** round about (rare) rings ihres kleinen Grabhügels (Fenske's *Denk*, 6. 558). Da ruhen die Gäste rings der Waldeswüste (Lenau). We usually find rings um (with acc.) here but now sometimes also rings um with the gen. ringsum des Marktes (Wustmann's *Allerlei Sprachdummler* p. 197, 7th ed.).

**RITTLINGS** a-triddle of across. Die Infanterie entwickelte sich rittlings der Straße (Moltke).

**RÜCKSICHTLICH** with respect to in consideration of (see *hinsichtlich*). Die Arbeit verdient Lob hinsichtlich des Inhalts, aber hinsichtlich, or rücksichtlich, or bezüglich des Ausdrucks ist manches zu tadeln.

lich and bezüglich.

**RÜCKWARTS** back of seine Stellung rückwärts des rechten Flügels (of the army).

**SEIT'AB** to one side of. Eine Dame hielt allein in der Einsamkeit, auch auf einem Maultier, seitab des Weges auf einem Felsenvorsprung (Rabe's *Frau Salome* chap. iii).

**SEITENS**, **VON SEITEN**, **AB SEITEN** on the part of. Es steht seitens, or von seiten, or less commonly abseiten des Magistrats nichts entgegen. The first of these forms, altho a new formation is now very common.

**SEITLICH** alongside of. Nachdenklich gehe ich den langen Korridor hinunter, in dessen glänzend gebohrten Streifen, seitlich des grünen Läufers, sich die gelben Messinggriffe der Türen widerspiegeln wie goldene, schwimmende Blumen (Anselm Heine's *Bis in das dritte und vierle Glied*).

**SEITWARTS** to the side of most commonly with gen. also with *von* + dat., and usually so in case of

(Rabe's

struction as nördlich  
struction as nordwärts.  
also with gen., and perhaps more commonly  
so but in the sense of as well as almost ex

bin ich jetzt, trotz einem I am now as well as anybody. Er lügt trotz (almost excelling, beating) einem Zeitungsblatt, or trotz einem Münchhausen (the famous liar of fable). Er muß einen Wahrsagergeist haben trotz (equal to) der Magd in der Apostelgeschichte. See *unangesehen*.

Zum Trotz also governs the gen., but it may stand after the dependent noun, and governs then usually the dat.: Ich will doch einen großen Musiker aus dir machen zum Trotz eines jeden, der mich daran hindern will, but allem Menschenverstand zum Trotz (contrary to). Sometimes, however, the gen. is found when the dependent noun precedes: allen Abredens seiner guten Freunde zum Trotz (Raabe's *Deutscher Adel*, chap. vii).

ÜBER'HIN on the other side of, rare: Überhin der March (river) beginnt's zu grauen (Grillparzer's *Ottokar*, 5).

UM — WILLEN for the sake of, on account of: um Gottes willen, um des lieben Friedens willen; nie um der Laterne, sondern um des Lichtes willen (Konrad Falke), or sometimes nie um der Laterne willen, sondern um des Lichtes (Georg Edward). The younger form *willen*, as in ihrer selbst willen (Rosegger), is not yet so common as the older *um* — *willen*, while on the other hand the younger form *wegen* has supplanted in most cases the older *von* — *wegen*; see *halb*, above.

UN'ANGESEHEN setting aside, notwithstanding, heedless of, now rare, and usually replaced by UNGE'ACHTET or UNER'ACHTET, or the rarer forms of *ohngeachtet*, *ohnerachtet*, either preceding or less commonly following the noun, but often found after pronouns, usually with gen., but sometimes with dat., when the prep. stands after the pronoun or substantive: ungeachtet des Wetters, des Wetters ungeachtet, dessenungeachtet, or sometimes demungeachtet (Marriot's *Seine Gottheit*, chap. ii) notwithstanding that, aller persönlichen Erlebnisse und Kümernisse unerachtet (Wildenbruch's *Vize-Mama*), allen Unfällen ungeachtet (Lessing), allem Abmahnen Truds unerachtet (Fontane's *Grete Minde*, chap. iii). Originally *unangesehen* was a perfect active participle used as a predicate appositive, just as *ungeachtet* in the example under *ungeachtet* below, but it of course governed the accusative instead of the genitive. Later as a preposition it took the gen. after the analogy of *ungeachtet* with which it was closely related in meaning and development.

Trotz is a synonym of *ungeachtet*, but is a much stronger word implying a more forcible resistance to obstacles: Er geht ungeachtet or trotz des schlechten Wetters spazieren, but only Er läuft trotz seines Stelzfußes (wooden leg).

UNBE'SCHADET without waiving, without detracting from, without detriment to, in spite of, with gen. usually, but sometimes with the dat., usually found before the noun, but sometimes after it: unbeschadet meines Anspruchs, meiner Rechte; unbeschadet Berlichingen (dat.) und unserer Verbindung (Goethe's *Götz*, 2, 7). Diesen unbedeutenden Einwänden unbeschadet bleibt Thumbs Buch ein des hochverdienten Forschers würdiges Werk (P. Wahrmann in *Anzeiger für indogermanische Sprach- und Altertumskunde*, 1913, p. 16).

UNER'ACHTET, see *unangesehen*.

UNFERN or UNWEIT not far from, usually with gen., not infrequently with dat., sometimes with *von* and dat., or in case of names of places with non-inflection of the noun: unfern des Feuers (Goethe), unweit des Dorfes (id.), unfern dem Haff und dem Ostseegestade (H. Hoffmann), unfern von Douay (Ranke), unweit von meines Vaters Stube (T. Storm), unweit Pillau (Moltke).

UNGE'ACHTET, originally a perfect active participle used as a predicate appositive as in 183. 2. C. c: Des schlechten Wetters ungeachtet [habend] ging er hinaus. For present meaning see *unangesehen*.

UNGE'RECHNET not counting: ungerechnet des Qualmes. Sanders gives a number of references in his *Ergänzungswörterbuch*, p. 409. The absolute construction with an absolute acc. is more common here: Das Buch kostet, den Einband ungerechnet, fünf Mark.

UNTERHALB, see *außerhalb*.

UNTERWÄRTS down; unterwärts des Stroms, unterwärts (at the foot of) des Berges.

UNWEIT, see *unfern*.

VER'MITTELS and VER'MITTELST, see *mittels*.

VER'MÖGE, earlier in the period nach Vermöge (old noun, now obs.), in virtue of, thru, by means of, in consequence of, by reason of, only rarely with dat.: vermöge (thru) seiner Redlichkeit. Alle Körper streben vermöge (in consequence of) ihrer Schwere nach dem Mittelpunkt der Erde. Die Lande Österreich und Steier fallen, vermög' dem Majestätsbrief Kaiser Friedrichs, wohl an des letzten Lehnbesitzers Töchter (Grillparzer's *König Ottokar*, 2).

*Note.* Synonymous with *vermöge* are *kraft* and *mittels*. *Vermöge* and *kraft* have much the same range of meanings, and are often almost identical. The latter, however, often emphasizes the actual *exercise* or *employment* of power, be it a natural force or power invested in one from without, while *vermöge* denotes an inherent *natural* force or power which is inseparably connected with the nature of a person or thing, and is conceived of as self-acting, as all natural forces: Er selbst, der nur mittelmäßig Begabte, hatte auf seinem Felde Rühmliches geleistet, aber kraft (by dint of) seiner sittlichen Eigenschaften, nicht durch eine geniale Anlage (Meyer). Kraft (by virtue of) der Gewalt, die mir geliehen ist, kraft (by virtue of) meines Amtes, unseres Vertrages. Ein Stein fällt vermöge seiner Schwere zu Boden. Vermöge des Verstandes bildet man Begriffe. Die Maschine wird vermöge (or more commonly *vermittels*) des Dampfes bewegt. Here *vermöge* touches *vermittels*, but differs from it in that it represents the power as a natural force, while *vermittels* represents it as controlled and operated by someone. See *a* under *mittels*.

VON SEITEN, see *seitens*.

VON WEGEN doesn't usually have the full causal force of *wegen*, but only the original meanings, *by the way of*, *on the part of*, *concerning*, *at the instance of*. *Wegen* without *von* has developed causal force, and in this meaning is widely used, while *von wegen* is now only found in a few set expressions (see *halb*, 1. c) in the literary language, usually with its original force, but it is still

often employed by the common people in both the old and the new meaning (see also halb 1 a b and c)

**VORBEHALTLICH, VORBEHÄLTICH, UNTER VORBEHALT** with reservation of upon the condition of Sie (die Verträge) wurden von der preussischen Regierung vorbehaltlich der Zustimmung ihrer Zollverbündeten am 2. August 1862 unterzeichnet

**VORWÄRTS** in front of usually with the gen. usually with non inflection with articleless names

Wien vorwärts in the adverbial gen. construction währendes Krieges

usually takes the dat. in case of the masc. and neut. Ich noch jenes Gewitters, den Vorsprung gedrückt? in general quite common the genitive

older form von wegen, on account of with reference to concerning (for other meanings see halb, 1 c above) usually with gen. but colloquially not infrequently with dat. Ich schäme mich von wegen dem ewigen Lug und Trug (Montane's 1<sup>ste</sup> chap. xxiv) The dat. is most common in the literary language where the gen. form has not an ending which clearly marks it as a gen. Sie will mich wegen Sommerkostümen (the gen. would not be different in form from nom. or acc.) um Rat fragen (Hulst's Die wilde Jagd 1 2) Wegen etwas anderem (also the wk. gen. anderen, but not anderes, as it would not be felt as a gen.) on account of something else Sometimes before unmodified nouns. Die Bücher liegen hier bloß wegen Friedeberg, den ich der beigegebenen Zeichnungen halber fragen will (Montane's Frau Jenny chap. 6) So ist dir vielleicht lieber, du läßt dich abends wegen Ausbleiben von deinem Vater und deiner Mutter durchprügeln (Rauk) „Hast du Kummer?“ Sie nickte „Kummer wegen Vater?“ (Oempteda's Sylvesters von Geyer 1 XII) Sometimes with non inflection Wegen dies und das! (Henssen's Die drei Cetreuen III 1) See also halb above

**WESTLICH** west of with the same construction as nördlich

**WESTWÄRTS** = westlich

**WILLEN**, see um — willen

**ZEIT** for the period of zeit meines Lebens, zeit lebens for life as long as I live (as he lives &c.)

**ZUFOLGE**, see infolge above

**ZU GUNSTEN, ZUGUNSTEN** in favor of for the sake of **ZU UNGUNSTEN, ZU UNGUNSTEN** against with gen. but with dat. when the preposition follows the word Der Richter hat zugunsten des Verklagten und zuungunsten des Klägers entschieden Der Ruhm einer Universität sollte nicht sowohl in der großen Zahl bunt durcheinander gewürfelter Hörer und inskribierter Studenten, als in der nachwe Erfolg und diesen zugunsten in der vornehmen Ablehnung auditoriums gesucht werden (H. Kefersheim in Beilage zur Allg

lative in 229 2 together with with the addition of Das ergäbe zu Mark Kapitalanlage 20 Milliarden Mark, von denen le bezieht (Somlart's Die deutsche Volkswirtschaft im

die Bäume zu seiten des Weges of opposite of abzüglich zuzüglich der Fracht In case of articleless nouns non inflection in the singular is the rule zuzüglich Porto

**ZWECKS**, see behufs

## MEANING AND USE OF PRÉPOSITIONS WITH THE DATIV

229 1 The prepositions that properly govern the dat. govern also other cases only in a few cases as the

2 The following are the prepositions with the dat. with their leading meanings, the preps standing in alphabetical order

**AB** from of time or place = von, now replaced by the latter except in SW dialect where it is still frequently used also in the literary language in the set expression abhanden misplaced It is used quite frequently and widely in business style before local adverbs names of places and before nouns or adverbs of time where however it is the Latin preposition ab from at or from — on or forward Fracht ab hier kostet 10 Mark Unfrankiert ab hier charges of transportation from this point not paid (by the sender) Heu ab Wiese verkauft hay sold at the meadow or at the farm further expenses of transportation to be borne by the purchaser sim

larly: Kohlen werden ab (at) Bahnhof geliefert, ich liefere den Weizen frei ab Berlin; ab Berlin, 7 the train leaves Berlin at 7 o'clock; zu vermieten ab Ostern for rent after Easter; ab morgen from to-morrow on; ab 1. (read ersten) Mai (adverbial acc.); ab nächsten Montag. This usage is fast becoming established in the literary language: Der Handel auf dem Strome gewinnt doch erst ab Regensburg einige Bedeutung (Berthold Riehl in *Beilage zur Allgemeinen Zeit.*, Oct. 18, 1906).

AUS (a) movement from the inside of, *out of, from*: Er geht aus dem Hause, aus dem Lande.

(b) Origin, source, *from* (see *Note* under von, d): Er stammt aus guter Familie. Er ist aus der Schweiz He comes from Switzerland. Ein Weib aus dem Volk (common people), aus Versehen by mistake. Origin of knowledge, feeling: Ich weiß es aus Erfahrung. Aus dem Auge schließt man aufs Herz From one's eye, we judge of the heart. Er bewies es aus der Bibel.

(c) Material, *out of*: aus weichem Ton gebildet. Granit besteht aus Feldspat, Quarz und Glimmer.

*Note.* With materials, von is used before nouns without an article, replacing the gen. case, and thus forms with its noun an adj. element, standing attributively, or as a predicate adj., while aus with nouns of material forms an adverbial element, representing the object as *being fashioned out of* the mentioned material: ein Ring von Gold a gold ring. Der Ring ist von Gold, but Der Goldschmied verfertigt Ringe aus Gold. Compare von, f.

(d) Motive, *from*: Aus welchem Grunde tat er das? Er handelt aus Liebe, Haß, Trotz. Er tat es aus freien Stücken (from his own free will).

(e) Figuratively in many ways corresponding to the above lit. meanings: Er hat mich aus (out of) mancher Verlegenheit gerissen. Er lachte aus vollem Halse He laughed heartily. Was wird aus ihm werden? What will become of him? Ein Märchen aus alten Zeiten, das kommt mir nicht aus dem Sinn (from a poem by Heine).

(f) Synonymous with aus is von, and sometimes vor. In aus lies the idea of movement *out of* or *from within* something, while von merely states that the movement begins *near* or *from* something: Die Quellen kommen oft aus den Bergen, but Die Flüsse kommen von den Bergen. Er steigt aus dem Wasser, but Er bricht den Apfel vom Baume. Der Reiter steigt aus dem Sattel, but vom Pferde. When we desire to express movement from something that threatens personal safety, then vor is the word: Er errettete seinen Freund aus dem Gefängnis und damit vor (from) dem Henkerbeil.

BEI. 1. Now usually with dat. expressing nearness to some object in a general and indefinite way, but neighborhood or conjunction without contact, thus differing in part from neben, which denotes *close* approach to the *side* of an object but without contact, and differing from an in that the latter denotes a closer approach and very often contact with the side of the object in question: Er stand bei or neben dem Baume, but Der Apfel hängt am Baume. Only rest can be expressed by bei, and for motion we use an, neben, zu, of which an expresses motion close up to an object, often till it touches it, neben direction toward the side of an object without contact, zu movement toward, much as an, but differing therefrom in that it expresses a close and intimate relation between the persons and things thus brought together: Er setzte sich an (at) den Tisch, or neben (near) den Tisch, but zu (by) mir (in order to chat). See *Note* under zu.

(a) Especially frequent is bei in the sense of *bordering upon, in the vicinity of*: Sachsenhausen bei Frankfurt, Linden bei Hannover. Die Schlacht bei Leipzig the battle of Leipsic.

(b) Nearness applied to things in its metaphorical use (1) expressing usually a condition of things: Er ist noch bei Leben He is still alive. Er ist schon bei Jahren He is already quite old. Er ist nicht mehr bei Kräften He is no longer strong. Er ist nicht bei Sinnen, or nicht bei Verstande, or nicht bei sich He has lost his senses, is beside himself. Er ist nicht bei Gelde He is out of money. Es bleibt beim alten The old order of things still remains. Er ist bei gutem Mut, guter Gesundheit. Bei Gericht at court. (2) *In, in connection with, in case of*: Bei diesem Geschäft kommt nichts heraus In this business there is no money made. Dieses Präparat ist bereits von vielen Ärzten als ein spezifisches Heilmittel bei (in case of) gichtischen Leiden erkannt worden. (3) A succession, *after*, now little used: Pfeiler bei Pfeiler stürzte nieder. (4) Occupation, *at, busied with, over, all wrapped up in*: Er ist bei (at) der Arbeit. Er ist beim Anziehen He is dressing. Er sitzt immer bei den Büchern He is always poring over his books. Sie saßen plaudernd beim Bier. Sie war mit ganzer Seele bei der Sache She was all wrapped up (deeply interested) in the affair. Er bleibt bei der Sache He sticks to the point. (5) *On*: Er verweilte bei (dwelt on) dieser Episode allzulange.

(c) Nearness to persons, *at the house of, place of business of, upon the person of*: bei (at the house of) dem Herrn Schmidt, bei mir at my house, bei (at the store of) dem Buchhändler, bei einem Professor hören to attend the lecture of a certain professor. Bei Gottfried Hermann hörte (heard lectures on) er Äschylus. Das bekommen Sie bei Schmidt You can buy that at Schmidt's (store). Er hat ein Konto bei (at) der Bank. Ich sprach bei ihm vor I called on him. Ich habe keinen Pfennig, kein Schnupftuch bei mir (upon my person).

(d) Nearness applied to persons in its metaphorical use, *with, in the case of, in, to, in the works of, under*: Ich halte es bei ihm nicht aus I can't get along with him. Er gilt viel bei ihm He passes for a good deal with him. Echt weibliche Naturen sind jedoch in der Regel entschlossenen Geistes; so war es auch bei (in the case of) dem sanften, bescheidenen Fräulein. Bei dir (in your case) wird die Hälfte genügen. Bei euch Jungen muß man streng sein In case of or with you boys one must be strict. Bei uns zu Lande in our country, bei den Alten in antiquity, with the people of antiquity. Er beklagte sich bei mir He complained to me. Er kann nichts bei (to) sich behalten (keep). Das Wort kommt bei (in the works of) Goethe nicht vor. Man lernte bei (under) ihm etwas.

(c) Bei often marks a conjunction or near association of two things or persons, of which the one denoted by the object of bei:

Bei der Unterhaltung ist er ein guter Gesellschafter. When quite young he was promoted to be a cardinal. Bei (in) der Unterhaltung ist er ein guter Gesellschafter. Noch bei Menschengedenken within the memory of man. bei Tag, bei Nacht by day, by night.

(2) Marks the cause of the other. Bei der Teuerung kann ich nichts kaufen. I can buy nothing when or since everything is so dear. Bei solchem Fleiß muß es ihm gelingen. With such industry he must succeed. Bei günstigem Winde segelt man schnell. Er zittert bei einem Gewitter. Bei zwei gegen eins ist die Partie ungleich. Two against one is not fair.

(3) Marks a concession in spite of which, however, the other statement is true, with, in spite of, usually followed by all. Bei aller stillen Sanftmut ihres Wesens war sie doch äußerst scharfblickend. In spite of all the gentleness of her nature she was nevertheless keen of observation. Bei allem Fleiß ist es ihm doch nicht gelungen.

(4) Marks the means of accomplishing the other. Er liest bei Licht.

(5) Marks an accompanying circumstance of the other, along with, together with, in. Eine elegante Gesellschaft, welche ebensowohl die leichteren einfachen, als die schwierigen eleganten Haltungen zu sich in Europa herum?

(6) Marks the condition on which the other is true. Bei 85 Pfg. (Pfennig) per Gramm, bei 100 Gramm 70 Pfg. 20 marks. Sie sagen, bei 20 marks. Sie sagen, bei 20 marks.

kommen bei (or zu or in) Paaren, or in pairs. Ich schwöre bei Gott. Er versicherte es mir bei (upon) seiner Ehre. Beim Himmel, dieses Kind ist schön!

(g) Gives the penalty. Es ist bei Leib und Leben verboten. It is forbidden under penalty of death. In threats. Bei Leibe nicht! Not if you value your life!

(h) With numerals to express approximately distance, quantity, &c.: bei mehreren Schritten Entfernung at a distance of several paces.

(i) The measure of difference. Er ist bei weitem (by far) der fähigste.

(j) Bei expresses sometimes a closer approach and even contact, especially in case of a part of the body with verbs of seizing, and a few set expressions. Er faßte ihn beim (by) Kopf, bei der Hand, bei den Haaren, beim Rockzipfel. Ich nehme ihn beim Worte. Ich rufe, nenne ihn beim Namen, bei seinem Namen. Wir fangen beim ersten Kapitel des Buches an. Er hat alles bei Heller.

Bei now rarely side, einen beiseite thing secretly away ever, the acc. after the a ladt, dem Ick muß t

Earlier Saulus ge BE'NEBST, see nebst. BINNEN within, sometimes with dat, sometimes with gen, see binnen in 228. 1 DANK thanks to, usually with dat often, however, with gen. Ich bin, dank Ihren Bemühungen, gerettet. See also dank in 228. 1 ENT'GEGEN against contrary to either following or, perhaps, more commonly preceding the dependent Haare waren sehr liebreiz must stand be which follows it is not only contrary to it, with them)

For full description of its use as a prep. and adv. see a under its synonym zuwider below. ENT'LANG, see under längs in 228. 4

posite, standing before the dependent noun, or following it, al pronouns. Gegenüber dem Sofa, or Dem Sofa gegenüber der Festung Ehrenbreitstein liegt die Stadt Koblenz. Er out sometimes with the preposition before the personal pro-

posite, standing before the dependent noun, or following it, al pronouns. Gegenüber dem Sofa, or Dem Sofa gegenüber der Festung Ehrenbreitstein liegt die Stadt Koblenz. Er out sometimes with the preposition before the personal pro-

noun when the meaning is figurative: *Gegenüber* (in contrast to) *mir glaubt Erdmann usw.* (L. Tobler in *Zeitschrift für deutsche Philologie*, 1875, p. 244).

(a) *gegenüber* (see its synonym *gegen*, *d*) in its figurative use is translated by *with respect to, towards, in the face of, in contrast to*: *Diesem stillen Wühlen, Planschmieden und Vorbereiten seiner Zunftbrüder gegenüber* (with respect to) *verhielt sich Gerhard Richwin kalt und zweideutig. Er sah voraus, daß seine Stellung (attitude) dem Justizrat gegenüber (toward) recht ärgerlich war. Gegenüber (in the face of) diesen Tatsachen kann nichts mehr beschönigt werden. Gegenüber (in contrast to) dem seit Einführung des Christentums sinkenden Latein trieben auf anderer Schicht und Unterlage die Romansprachen (Romance languages) empor* (Grimm).

(b) Earlier *gegenüber* was separated into its two component elements: *Ich sah mich gegen dem hohen Wall über* (Goethe). Sometimes still in dialect: *Gegen mir über ist die Tür* (Wilhelm Fischer's *Sonnenopfer*, II). Also the poetical form *genüber* is used: *Wie oft war sie an Festen mir genüber* (Grillparzer).

(c) Sometimes under the influence of *vis-à-vis de* we find *gegenüber von* instead of *gegenüber*, usually however only in case of names of persons and places in defining accurately the situation of a house or a city: *Es gibt so hübsche Häuser am Bollwerk, eins zwischen Konsul Martens und Konsul Grütmacher und eins am Markt, gerade gegenüber von Gieshübler (name) (Fontane's Effi, chap. x), instead of dem Gieshübler gegenüber. Gegenüber von Mannheim, or more commonly Mannheim gegenüber.*

*GE'MÄSZ* in accordance with the nature of, in accordance with the command, instructions, &c. of, either preceding or following the noun; sometimes also with the gen. when standing before the noun, after the analogy of *in Gemäßheit* and *zufolge* (see *gemäß*, 228. 4): *Er lebte seiner Gesinnung und seinem Stande gemäß sehr einsam. Gemäß deinem Wunsche or deinem Wunsche gemäß. Jeder Staatsbürger soll den Gesetzen des Landes gemäß sich verhalten. Gemäß or in Gemäßheit, or more commonly zufolge des erhaltenen Auftrags, or very commonly Dem erhaltenen Auftrag gemäß or zufolge übersende ich Ihnen die verlangten Werke.*

*LÄNGS* and *LÄNGST*, see under *längs* in 228. 4.

*MIT* corresponds to Eng. *with* very closely in its varied meanings, and hence is not treated here in detail: *Der Vater geht mit den Kindern aus. Sie sprechen miteinander. Sie arbeiten mit Fleiß.*

(a) When events or ideas stand in close relation *with* a person or thing, *mit* may mean *with reference to*: *Was gibt's mit dem Schmettwitz? What is that matter with reference to (Mr.) Schmettwitz? Nun sag', wie hast du's mit der Religion? How do you stand with reference to religion? Das mit dem Brief müssen wir uns noch überlegen* We must reflect over that plan we have concerning the letter.

(b) In many idiomatic expressions *mit* is used where in English other words are found, or it is not used where the English requires *with*: *Er ist mit meinem Bruder gleichen Alters* He is of the same age as my brother. *Ich wohnte mit ihr in demselben Hause* I lived in the same house that she did. *Meine Schwester wohnt zwar in demselben Hause, sogar auf ein und demselben Flur mit ihm (Ertl's Der Handschuh).* *Ich bin Geschwisterkind mit ihm (ihr)* We are cousins. *Der Gärtner reißt die Pflanze mit (by) der Wurzel aus. Die Dame mit (in) dem seidenen Kleide, ein Mann mit Namen Schmidt* a man by the name of Schmidt, *Kaffe mit (and) Milch. Versuchen Sie es mit kaltem Wasser* Try cold water. *Mit einmal (all at once) sprangen die Flügel auf. Er traf mit (on) dem letzten Zug ein. Das ist sein Fall* That is the case with him. *Er neckte mich mit (about) ihr. Ich war immer ein unheimlicher, garstiger, brummiger Kerl, mit dem man die kleinen Kinder fürchten machen konnte. Mit einem Schläge* at one blow, *mit Sturm* by assault, *mit Gewalt* by force, *mit Erlaubnis* by permission, *mit einer Mehrheit* by a majority, *mit einem Worte* in a word, *mit der ersten Gelegenheit* by (at) the first opportunity, *mit der Post* by mail, *mit der Eisenbahn* by rail, *verwandt mit* related to, *mit Vorsatz or Absicht on purpose, in solcher Nähe mit ihm* in such proximity to him, so close to him. 6 mit (by) 3 multipliziert gibt 18. *Er spricht mit (to or with) ihr darüber. Mit dem (in his) fünften Jahre lernte er lesen. Was meinen Sie mit (by) diesen Worten? Jobst Hermann war vermählt mit (to) Elisabeth Julianne, Gräfin Sayn-Witgenstein, mit (by; more commonly von) welcher er 20 Kinder hatte (Hamburger Nachrichten, Oct. 13, 1904). Er handelt mit Holz, Tuch usw. He deals in, &c. Die (französische) Kammer hat die Ratifikation des Friedensvertrages von Versailles mit 372 gegen 53 Stimmen angenommen (Neue Freie Presse, Oct. 3, 1919) by a vote of 372 to 53. Spart mit Licht und Kraft! (placard in Munich in Oct. 1919) Be economical in the use of light and electric power! Privatstunden, die mit 50 Pfennig bezahlt wurden.*

(c) For the relation of *mit* to its synonyms *mittels, von, durch, vermöge*, see *mittels*, (a) in 228. 4.

(d) With verbs, in the function of an adverb, *mit* has a different meaning according as it is accented or unaccented. Under stress, *mit* implies a close union and cooperation in the activity expressed by the verb, while unaccented it relinquishes the accent to the verb, and hence expresses mere contemporaneity or indicates that the main stress lies in the activity: *Wir wollen mitarbeiten* We desire to work along with you. *Wir wollen mit arbeiten* We desire to work too (at the same time as you work). *Wer nicht mit arbeitet, soll auch nicht mit essen* Who does not join with us in *working* shall also not join with us in *eating*. An accented *mit* is often used where we use the pronominal adj. *one*: *Er war mit dabei* He was one of the party. *Er war mit der beste Schüler in der Klasse* He was one of the best pupils in the class.

*MIT'SAMT*, see *samt*.



**NACH** (a) direction towards, without implying whether the goal is reached or not, in the direction of. In this use *nach* has the same general force as *gegen* (less common except in set expressions) Die Mutter blickte nach den Kindern. Er lenkt seine Schritte nach or gegen Westen. Das Haus liegt nach or gegen Norden. Das Fenster geht nach dem Hofe The window looks out upon the courtyard

Sometimes with the adv. zu or hin: Er reitet nach dem Walde zu. Der Fluß wird nach seiner Mündung hin schiffbar.

Figuratively. Die Mutter sieht nach den Kindern Mother looks after the children. Mir ist nicht nach Lachen zu Sinn I don't feel in a laughing mood

(b) A definite goal (for modification of this rule see *Note* under zu), to, only used of things: Er geht nach der Stadt, nach Berlin. Wie komme ich nach der Friedrichstraße? How can I get to I nedrich Street from here?

*Note 1* When th

ferent mean as. Er

*Note 2* Notice th

zu could also be a

survives in dialect

(c) Motion towards a person or thing with the intention of obtaining it, bringing it back, using, enjoying, hitting, or injuring it *after for at* Er reicht nach (after) dem Apfel. Er kauft nach (for) dem Arzt. Er geht nach (after) Wasser. Der Hund schnappte nach (at) mir. Er sehnt sich (longs to be) nach (in) Berlin, nach (with) der Braut hin. Er fragt nach (after) ihm, nach der Ursache. Nach mir fragt niemand Nobody cares for me Ein Herr ist da nach dem Eckzimmer A gentleman is here inquiring after (

or time, of

h He drückt

etaner Arbeit ist gut ruhen Einer nach dem anderen

Er war nach dem Kaiser der erste Mann.

*Note* Synonymous with *nach* in this use is *hinter*, only however when the idea of place is quite prominent: Die Minister kamen nach or hinter (following from behind) dem Könige.

(e) *Nach* - a few before - a few after of noun denotes a correspondence, accordance between

(1) Es riecht nach Veilchen.

(2) is fashioned or done, the standard of judg-

ment o the action, also the common standard of

weight or measurement employed ein Lustspiel nach dem Französischen a comedy following

freely the pattern of the French original Er malt ihn nach der Natur He is painting him from

nature. Er nannte sich nicht nach (after) seinem Vater. Ich kenne ihn nur dem Namen

nach (by) Sie singt nach (by) Noten. Sie tanzen nach dem Takte They dance keeping good

by my standard, ist nicht sehr hoch. Seinem Alter

n. Nach (according to the authority of) Engelen

schon beurteilt man am sichersten nach (by) ihren

und nicht nach meinen Taten He guided by my

words and not by my actions. Man empfängt den Mann nach (according to) seinem Kiede,

aber entläßt ihn nach seiner Rede. Man rechnet nach (by) Füßen, Ellen, usw. Wir werden

nach der Stunde bezahlt. Nach dem Alphabet in alphabetical order.

and place: Was wirst du zunächst (*next*) tun? Er übersieht das zunächst (*in front of, before, close by*) Liegende. Ich denke zunächst (*above all*) an dich.

NĒBST and the strengthened form BE'NĒBST (in the language of the common people) = zugleich mit together with: Die Stadt sah den Hunger nebst seinem ganzen Gefolge mit schrecklichen Schritten sich nähern (Goethe).

(a) Synonymous with nebst are mit and samt with its strengthened forms mit'samt, zu'samt, zu'samt mit. Of these mit has the broadest meaning, as can be seen by consulting this word above. It differs from the others in that it expresses a closer and more intimate relation between the objects or persons in question, but may also usually replace the other two even in their especial fields. Nebst and samt denote a connection (see *b*), a being together, an acting or being acted upon at the same time, with the distinction not always clearly marked that the former expresses a looser connection which can easily be severed, while the latter denotes that the connection is a usual and natural association, not however, a live mutual cooperation as with mit: Zur Aussteuer erhält die verehelichte Karoline Schmidt 1 Kuh nebst 8 Schafen. Die Wirtschaft ist zu verkaufen nebst den anstoßenden Grundstücken. Das Schiff samt der ganzen Mannschaft und Ladung ward ein Raub der Wellen. Die Mutter nebst or samt ihren Kindern, but Er hat den Baum samt der Wurzel ausgerottet.

(b) Nebst, samt, and mit often have the force of the conjunction und, connecting only nouns or pronouns, thus not showing the relation directly between a verb and a noun, and hence when so used they are treated as conjunctions taking the verb in the pl., especially earlier in the period: Vnd Saul sampt allen mennern Israel freweten sich (1 Sam. xi. 15). Der Pfarrer mit dem Vater gingen bedenklich dem Gemeindehause zu (Goethe). Ein Bedienter nebst einem Postillion folgten mir (*id.*). Present usage prefers the sing. in such cases in accordance with strict grammatical concordance: Mechtilde mit ihren zwei Söhnen erscheint auf der Zinne (M. Greif's *Heinrich der Löwe*, 5, 1). See also 253. I. 1. *d*.

NID = unter (halb) in Swiss dialect, but now found even there rarely, except in names of places: Auch der Alzeller soll uns nid dem Wald (*below the Forest*, a section of the canton Unterwalden) | Genossen werben (Schiller's *Tell*, 1, 4).

ÖB above, over, during, on account of, usually with the dative, often also with gen. in the last meaning after the analogy of wegen, in all the meanings now little used in colloquial language, as in the first three meanings it has been gradually supplanted by über, but not infrequent in early N.H.G., and still in poetry and choice prose: Ob (above) dem Altar hing eine Mutter Gottes (Schiller). Denn reiche Zukunft schwebt ob deinem Haupt (Uhland's *Ernst, Herzog von Schwaben*, I, p. 1). Ich will dich mir so lachend, strahlend wissen, | so himmelhoch ob jedem schwarzen Müssen (Sudermann's *Die drei Reiherfedern*, 3, 10). Österreich ob der Enns. Vnd namen jre waffen | vnd fielen ein zu Simon ob (during) dem Mahl (1 Macc. xvi. 16). Zürnen Sie mir nicht ob meinem kühnen Geständnis (Benedix's *Doktor Wesppe*, 5, 7). Dabei erhoben sie sich und standen verwirrt, schwankend ob all dem Abenteuerlichen, das der Abend enthüllt und gebracht hatte (Raabe's *Zum wilden Mann*, chap. ix).

With gen.: Versteinert ob solches nie dagewesenen regellosen Einbruchs (H. Hoffmann's *Wider den Kurfürsten*, chap. xx). Felix lachte ob meiner Sorgen (Meinhardt's *Heinz Kirchner*).

SAMT, see (a) under nebst.

SEIT since, for, representing the duration of some act or condition of things beginning at some point in the past and extending to some point later on: Wir leben schon seit 7 Jahren in Berlin We have been living in Berlin now for seven years. Seit (since) seiner letzten Krankheit hört er schwer.

(a) Synonymous with seit are vor and nach. The two latter differ from seit in that they do not express duration of time, but refer to a definite occurrence. Vor refers to a definite occurrence counting back from the present, while nach refers to something that took place *after* some other event or some fixed time: Er ist vor einem Jahr gestorben He died a year since. Er ist am Tage nach Ostern gestorben He died on the day after Easter. Er ist seit einem Jahre tot (not gestorben) He has been dead for a year.

VON (for synonyms aus and vor, see *f* under aus) denotes in various ways the *starting point*, used of:—

(a) Place (the opposite of nach and zu), *from*: Er ist von Paris nach Berlin gereist. Der Apfel ist vom Baume gefallen. Er geht von Haus zu Haus. Figuratively: Er wälzt die Schuld von sich. Ich muß mir erst meine Gegner vom Halse schaffen I must first get rid of my opponents.

(b) The starting point of some action or state of things, and hence often denoting the direct cause, means, *from, with, on account of, on, by*, and after passive verbs the agent, *by*: Von Worten kam's zu Schlägen. Das kommt vom Sitzen her That comes from sitting too much. Er ist müde vom (from) vielen Laufen. Naß vom (with) Tau. Er ist von (with) Rheumatismus gelähmt. Die Hand ist von (with) Frost erstarrt. Die Wasser sind von (on account of) dem Regen ausgetreten. Von (on) der Luft kann man nicht leben. Diese Menschen leben von (on) Kartoffeln, vom (by) Betteln. Der Leichnam war von (by) Wunden entstellt. Der Schüler wird vom (by) Lehrer gelobt. Der Baum wurde vom (by) Winde umgerissen. In older English the agent with the passive was indicated by *of*, which is related to von and has a similar meaning: They were baptized of him in Jordan (Matth. III. 6). After verbal nouns the agent is indicated in German by *durch*. See *durch* (b) in 230.

(c) The starting point of thought or perceptions, denoting the point or especial topic that busies the attention, *of, about, concerning*: Er denkt schlecht von (of) mir. Dies Buch handelt von (of) dem siebenjährigen Kriege. Berichte mir von dir. Wir sprachen, redeten von (about)



Freund von mir, or einer meiner Freunde. Das war ein Fehler von ihm That was a fault of his. Das ist eine Ausnahme von (to) der Regel. Das ist das Ende vom Lied That is the upshot of it all, &c.

(8) If it is desired to call attention to the word itself, not to the thing represented by it the genitive of possession is replaced by von or zu followed by the case form to which the attention is directed, not by the case form required by the preposition: Ungewöhnlich ist der Plural von or zu Haß (the nom., the form usually given in the dictionary to represent the word, not vom Hasse). Stuhl ist der Singular zu or von Stühle (not Stühlen).

(9) The use of von instead of the gen. is characteristic of the common people and familiar conversation. Hence there is often a shade of difference between the simple gen. and the dat. with von, the former being more choice, the latter more peculiar to the language of loose conversation or the dialect of the common people: Der Vater von diesem Kinde instead of dieses Kindes, &c.

VORGÄNGIG prior to: Vorgängig dem Kongresse deutscher Gas- und Wasserfachmänner hielt heute nachmittag der schweizerische Verein von Gas- und Wasserfachmännern in der Aula des Hirschengrabschulhauses seine 30. Jahresversammlung ab (*Neue Zürcher Zeitung*, June 23, 1903).

ZU. I. It is used of motion, direction, rest, and time, but these varied meanings lie rather in the verb or dependent noun than in the prep., which in all these meanings expresses a close approach and intimate relation which is often difficult to render fully into English, but which is usually translated by *to*, *at*, *in*, *on*, *by*, *for*, *with*, &c.

*Note.* Synonymous with zu are an and nach. Nach expresses a general direction toward or a destination in a broad general sense, as a city, state, or other place, while an and zu express a more specific or definite goal, as a person or object, but in the case of zu also a broader goal where a specific purpose is evident: Er geht nach der Stadt zu seinem Bruder. Ich poche an die Tür. Ich schreibe an (to) meinen Freund. Man fährt Steine zur (for building purposes, to the) Stadt, but nach Berlin, zu not being used at all before names of cities with verbs of motion. Both an and zu denote a near approach, but the latter expresses a much closer and more intimate relation between the objects and persons brought together. Ich schrieb an (to) ihn, but Ich sprach zu ihm. Er trat an das Bett He went up to the bed, but Er ging zu Bett He went to bed (to sleep). It is difficult to draw a line between the uses of an and zu, and in cases they blend together, but in general the difference is marked between them as above indicated. With zu the idea of a definite place or goal is often entirely lost sight of and in its stead arise the associations that cluster around the place, the efforts that were necessary to reach it, the ends and aims there to be realized, and often the prep. and noun lose their several individual functions and become together the complement of the verb after the manner of a separable prefix, thus taking on general or abstract meaning instead of a concrete local one (see Note under 245. IV. 3. B): Die Kinder gehn zur Schule, zu Tische, zur Kirche (not with any definite reference to a particular school, table, church, but with the general idea of to learn, to eat, to devotional services). Er ist zu Gelde, zu Ehren gekommen He has attained wealth, honor. Viel Unglück ist ihm zuteil (here equal to a verbal prefix) geworden Much misfortune has been allotted to him. Mit vieler Mühe brachten sie endlich ein Feuer zuwege With much trouble they finally started a fire, lit. brought it on the road.

II. The varied meanings of zu may be arranged into the following groups:—

1. The local meanings fall into the general heads of *motion* or *direction toward* a goal or destination (with the idea of near approach) and *rest* in a place.

A. *Direction toward* (see I. Note above) in its literal sense, of persons and things: Ich will Sie zu ihm führen. Ich gehe zu ihm, zu meinem Bruder I am going to see him (or to his house), to my brother's (house). Man gelangte über Felsen zur letzten Höhe. Viel Getreide wird zur Stadt geführt. Er hat die Feder zu den übrigen gelegt He has put away the pen with the others. Er steckte es zu sich (in his pocket). Er nimmt niemals irgendwelche Speise zwischen den Mahlzeiten zu sich (into his mouth). Er führte seine Braut zum Altare. Die Straße zur Stadt, die Türe zum Keller.

*Note.* The adverb zu has much the same force as the prep.: Das Schiff segelt dem Hafen zu. From its employment in such adverbial relations, where it stands after the dat., it has developed into a preposition governing the dat. and following the noun with the meanings in the *direction of*, *looking towards*, *facing*: Zwei Türen hat der Kursaal zu Cannstatt, einander gegenüber an den Langseiten des Gebäudes gelegen, die eine westlich (on the west side) der Stadt (dat. depending upon zu) und dem Neckar, die andere östlich der Sauerlingsquelle und dem Sulzrain zu (Raabe's *Pechlin*, II, chap. xi).

B. *Direction toward* in a number of applied relations:

a. *Toward* in an abstract or figurative sense: Er bringt seine Gedanken zu Papier He writes down his thoughts. Er nahm es zu Herzen. Er kommt zu Fall. Es kommt mir zu Ohren. Er geht zu Grunde (ruin). Ein fallender Apfel führte den großen Newton zur Entdeckung eines der wichtigsten Naturgesetze. Solche Erfahrung führt zum Menschenhaß. Das Volk griff zu den Waffen The people took up arms.

Especially in the sense of attaining a goal or end: Er kommt zu Ansehen, Vermögen. Der Plan gelangte nicht zur Ausführung. Er gelangte zu Amt und Würden. Er kommt zu Kräften (gathers new strength). Er brachte es zu Ende, zustande.

b. *Attitude toward* or close relation or association: Er schwieg zu der ganzen Sache He assumed an attitude of silence with regard to the whole affair. Er lachte dazu. Was sagen Sie dazu? Er hält zu unsrer Partei (sides with our party). Warum machen Sie da so 'ne Bude auf, wenn Sie so unhöflich sind zu den Gästen? (Hauptmann's *Michael Kramer*, Act 3). War er doch ein weiltäufiger Vetter zu [colloq. and pop.; in the literary language more commonly von] ihr (Rosegger's *Die Stadt im Walde*). Der Stillständer ist ja ein Vetter zu mir (Heer's *Der König der Bernina*, II). Was essen Sie zu (with) Ihrem Ochsenfleisch? Die Insel gehört zu (not possession, but with the idea of forming an integral part of) England. Zu einem großen Manne gehört beides: Kleinigkeiten als Kleinigkeiten und wichtige Dinge als wichtige Dinge zu behandeln. Sein Benehmen paßt nicht zu seinen Verhältnissen. Sie sang schöne Weisen zu (accompanied by) meiner Flöte. In der Nacht zum (or auf den) 23. Januar or vom 22. zum 23. Januar in the night before Jan. 23, während der Nacht von vorgestern zu (or auf) gestern.

c Proportion Der Montblanc verhält sich zu dem Brocken (Mont Blanc has the same relation to the Brocken) wie ein Riese zu einem Zwerge

or weight rate of interest  
tto (with a net weight of) 1000 Pfund jeder, die jaucheten  
Klepe (mensur)  
Klepe = 1 stickes car  
Das  
das  
Deutsche Reich, das u. land, die Schweiz recht  
Jahr zu 360 Tagen

Note This German preposition is often in commercial language replaced by the French prep à Wie viel betragen die Zinsen von M. (Mark) 753 80 à 6 % in 185 Tagen?

e The direction of an activity inclination growth thought or feeling toward an object or end especially frequent before an infin Er spricht zu mir Der Vater hält das Kind zur Schule, zur Arbeit, zum Fleiß, zum Gebet an Themistokles wollte Athen (Athen-) zu einer unüberwindlichen Seefeste machen Man nimmt zu (to mark) diesem Gebäck auf (to) ein Pfund des feinsten Weizenmehls ein halbes Pfund der besten Butter Er hat Lust, Neigung, Liebe zu der Sache Mir einen Hang zur Sünde Freundsich bin ich zu ihr, Es ward ihm zur Gewohnheit Ich hoffe zu siegen Ich bin bereit zu wissen Here belongs the common meaning, an essay or paper toward especially in titles of articles in periodicals Zur neuester thing upon the subject of) The Latest literature on Wallenstein der germanischen Sprachen

f The direction toward in the sense of purpose or intention or that for which something is most suitable or serviceable or to which it is best adapted or for which it has been set aside Es geschieht zu deinem Besten Er reist zur (for the purpose of) Erholung, zum Vergnügen, zur Ausbildung Steinkohlen dienen zum Brennen Wozu nützt so etwas? Es nützt zu nichts Sie sind der Mann zu (for) diesem Werk Wasser zum Trinken, ein Gefäß zu (for holding) Milch, Tuch zu einem Kleid, zum Andenken an (w acc) in memory of Ich stehe Ihnen zu Diensten I am at your service Ich stehe (Ihnen) zu Befehl I am at your command Zu Befehl, Herr Hauptmann! Right (or yes) sir! Often with the infinitive to express purpose (compare 281 Note) Er kommt, mich zu warnen

g The point which an activity or quality has reached or is expected to reach hence in general expressing the extent or force or the result or effect of the quality or action contained in the verb in Raßendwerden It is enough to drive one mad Sie ist so schön, daß man sie liebt that one is charmed Brav ist er und gut mit den Kindern und kind to the children to such an extent that one is Rolle zu allgemeiner Zufriedenheit Es gereicht ihm Er hat sie jetzt zur Frau Sie krönten ihn zum Kaiser etzt Wir wählen ihn zum Vorsitzenden Es kam zu einer Prügelei Der Schnee wurde zu Wasser Er fiel mir zur Last He became a burden to me Der Knabe wuchs zum Jüngling heran Der Richter zum Gefängnis, zum Tode Zur Not when it comes to a ca zum Teil in part zur Hälfte half (as in Sie kennen mich zu fortunately for me Often with the infinitive to express result (compare 281 Note) Er ist nicht mehr zu jung, dies zu begreifen

h Addition Tun Sie Zucker zum Kaffee Add sugar to your coffee Sie gießt Milch zum Kaffee Seitdem haben sie (die Österreicher) selbst zu (in addition to) der richtigen Tapferkeit auch die Fixigkeit hinzugelernet (Engels Ein Tagebuch I p 51) Da zu or zu dem besides moreover

C Rest or motion in or at a place and thus synonymous with an, bei, in (see each word) but differing from them in general in that it denotes a closer relation between the object and the place (see also 281 Note) Die Universität zu

is more used colloquially and the word stands between the preposition and the name of the place in not zu must be used in or zu Rom, but in dem alten Rom

Especially frequent of a place thru which something goes in or out Da kamen zum Fenster zwei Täubchen herein Dann gehen sie zum Tore hinaus Er wirft sein Geld zum Fenster hinaus (squanders his money) It is also used in a number of applied relations

a Noteworthy is the use of zu on the signboards of hotels and drug stores like the English At the Red Lion Gasthof zum weißen Roß Ap (Apotheke) zum Löwen, zum Pelikan (also Löwen Ap, Pelikan Ap)

b Distributively and collectively Sie kommen zu (also bei and in) Paaren Nun ging der Zug zu fünfen (in groups of five) zum Dorf hinaus Nun saßen sie zu dreien (three in all) um dasselbe Tischchen Wir sind nur zu vier (or viere) There are only four of us

c Manner or condition in a few set expressions by on Er reist zu Fuß, zu Pferde, zu Wagen, zu Schiff, zu Lande, zu Wasser Begleitscheine (giving weight value &c.) müssen solchen

Warenballen beigegeben werden, die zur Post oder pr. (per) Fracht über eine Zollgrenze gehen. Etwas besteht zu Recht (has legal force). Mir ist wohl zu Mut I feel well, cheerful.

2. In a temporal sense, *in, at, for*: zu Anfang, zu Ende des Jahres, zu (at) jeder Stunde, zu (in) meiner Zeit, zur (at) rechten Zeit. Er kommt zu Ostern, Weihnachten. Er ißt zu Mittag, zu Abend bei uns. Von Tag zu Tag, von Stunde zu Stunde, zum (for) ersten, letzten Male, zuerst first, zuletzt last. Willst du wenigstens meine Aufgaben zu (for) morgen machen: den Aufsatz und die dummen Exempel? (Spielhagen's *Sonntagskind*, I, 2).

ZU'FOLGE in accordance with, according to, in consequence of; see gemäß and also nach, e. (2), Note, above, and in 228. 4 the words gemäß, infolge, laut, (a). In the first and second meaning it usually governs the gen. when it stands before the noun, and the dat. when it follows the noun (the favorite position): zufolge des Gesetzes, Ihres Briefes, sometimes zufolge dem Gesetze, Ihrem Briefe; dem Gesetze, Ihrem Briefe zufolge. In the meaning *in consequence of* it usually precedes the noun and takes the genitive: Zufolge wiederholter schlechter Ernten ist in Indien Hungersnot eingetreten (Georg Edward). See also under infolge in 228. 4.

ZU'NÄCHST, see nächst.

ZU'SAMT, ZU'SAMT MIT, see nebst, (a).

ZU'WIDER *contrary to, against, averse to*, always following the dependent word. Like entgegen, it is not only a pure prep., but also an adverb, serving as a separable prefix of a verb, hence it has the position of a separable prefix in the sentence, except where it is a pure prep., in which case it always follows the noun: Der Konstitution zuwider (prep.) führte er fremde Truppen in ihr Gebiet. Am Kap der guten Hoffnung ist den Schiffen der Wind nicht selten zuwider (adverb). Zu viel Süßigkeiten sind mir zuwider (adverb). Das läuft dem Gesetz zuwider (adverb).

(a) The synonym of zuwider is entgegen. As prepositions they both have the same force, that of *contrary to*, with the exception that zuwider is perhaps the stronger word. As adverbs they both still govern the dat. with the same force they have as prepositions, but zuwider has not so broad a field of usefulness here as entgegen. The former can only be used figuratively with the opposite force of nach, gemäß, and zufolge *according to*, hence with the meanings *contrary to the nature, commands, or instructions of*, also in general with the idea of opposition, or hostility, *opposed, hostile to*: Er hat dem Befehle entgegen- or zuwidergehandelt. Die Arznei ist mir zuwider (contrary to my nature, hence *disagreeable to*). Das Glück war uns entgegen or zuwider. Dem steht nichts entgegen or zuwider There is no obstacle in the way of it. Der Wind war ihnen entgegen or zuwider. Entgegen has also, as can be seen from the preceding examples, a force opposite to that of nach or zufolge, hence with the meanings of *contrary to the instructions, commands of, opposed to, hostile to*, but also, in addition to these meanings which it has in common with zuwider, it is used literally with verbs of motion in the sense of a friendly or hostile movement towards: Er kam uns entgegen He came to meet us. Österreich scheint seinem Zerfalle entgegenzugehen (to be approaching). Die Armee geht dem Feinde mutig entgegen (against).

### PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

230. The following are the prepositions with the acc., with their leading meanings, the preps. standing in alphabetical order.

AUF UND AB up and down, always after the noun: Und doch war die Korridore auf und ab niemand zu sehen (Ernst von Hesse-Wartegg in *Daheim*, July 8, 1905).

BIS denotes in general a limit or boundary, used of time and place, before nouns and adverbs, and often prepositional phrases, *till, until, as far as, to, up to, except*. Time: Er bleibt bis (until) Weihnachten, bis Montag, bis morgen, bis zehn Uhr, bis mit (or bis und mit) den 1. (read ersten) Oktober up to October the first inclusive, bis einschließlich 9. d. Mts. (read neunten dieses Monats), bis nächste Woche. Er bleibt zwei bis drei Tage He will remain from two to three days. Bis wann or bis wie lange bleiben Sie? How long will you stay? Bis wohin or bis wie weit gehen Sie mit ihm? How far are you going with him? Bis Montag! Good-by until Monday. Earlier in the period and still in the dialects and in colloquial speech it is widely used to indicate the latest point of time at which something will take place, *by, not later than*: Bis Mittag bin ich wieder da. Similarly in questions where bis wann corresponds to simple wann in the literary language: Bis wann geht's denn nach Rußland? (Auerbach's *Dorfgeschichten*, 8, p. 42) How long will it be before it will be shipped to Russia? Place: Sie kamen bis (as far as) Berlin. Wir reisten zusammen bis Italien, and likewise before the name of any place, but not usually before the names of objects. There is a tendency, however, to extend this construction, and hence in short fragmentary utterances bis is sometimes found before names of objects: (Conductor of a street-car) Wie weit? (Passenger) Bis (instead of bis zur) Kirche. Before prep. phrases: Er hat alles bezahlt bis auf (except) einige Kleinigkeiten. Er hat alles bis auf (up to, here inclusive of) den letzten Heller bezahlt. Es währt bis gegen (until in the neighborhood of) Abend. Bis vor (until just before) Ostern währte die Kälte. Sie wachten bis nach Mitternacht.

Bis is also used as a conjunction without influence over the case of the following word, to connect individual words or different propositions: ausgewählte Texte des 4. (read vierten) bis 15. (also gen.: read fünfzehnten) Jahrhunderts. Ich blieb im Bett, bis er aufgestanden war.

DURCH and its strengthened form HIN'DURCH (always after the noun).

(a) Extension or penetration from one point of time or space to another, *thru, thruout*: Der Vogel fliegt durch die Luft. Er geht durchs Zimmer. Das schnitt mir durchs Herz. Mir

fuhr ein Gedanke durch den Kopf. Gott hat seine Kirche durch alle Jahrhunderte erhalten. Viele wohnen den ganzen Sommer hindurch auf dem Lande.

...le or inseparable  
lea of thru gives  
He goes thru the  
ons For further

(b) Means or agent employed to reach an end either of things or persons Die Niederländer schützen sich durch Dämme gegen den Ozean Ich habe mich durch etele List verleiten lassen Dividire diese Zahl durch (by) jene Durch ihn habe ich meinen Zweck erreicht. Die Ermordung Rizzios durch Darnley, die tatsächliche Fortführung der Regierung durch den Grafen Leopold The idea of agent with verbal nouns, as in the last two examples, is regularly expressed by durch, while with passive verbs it is expressed by von.

Acc For its synonyms see in 228 4 the prep mittels (a)

(c) Cause of persons or things Durch ihn bin ich glücklich geworden He is the author of all my happiness Durch angestrengte Arbeit ist er krank geworden Lissabon wurde im 18ten Jahrhundert durch ein Erdbeben zerstört Er ist durch (by) seinen Feind verdrängt worden. Sie ist elend durch (caused by, not necessarily intended by) mich

Note This use of durch approaches very close to von (see 228 4 mittels (a) and 229 2 von (b)) but they differ in that the latter emphasises more the starting place or the thinking agent working to a definite end while the former makes more prominent the manner or means.

(d) In the sense *all mixed up* especially in the compound *durcheinander* Er spricht deutsch und englisch, bunt *durcheinander*. Er erzählte, was er nur wußte, bunt *durcheinander* wie Kraut und Rüben.

ENTLANG, see längs in 228 4

FÜR (in early N H G, especially with Luther often *fur*) in all its varied meanings corresponds almost exactly to the Eng *for*, and will not need detailed treatment

(a) As could only be expected the German deviates from the Eng in a number of expressions

(1) Für is used with the verbs *achten* to consider, look at, *erkennen* pronounce make known, *halten* regard, *erklären* pronounce, *finden* consider Er achtet das für (as) nichts Sie erkannten (recognized) die von dem Finanzminister abgelegte Rechnung als (as) falsch, aber aus Mangel an Mut erkannten (pronounced) sie dieselbe trotzdem für richtig Ich halte ihn für einen ehrlichen Menschen Er erklärte das für eine Lüge. Er fand es für notwendig

(2) In case of diseases and poisons the German uses *für*, or perhaps more appropriately *gegen* or *wider*, where we use *for* ein Mittel für, or gegen, or wider Kopfschmerzen (das Fieber, ...)

konnte (Beyerlein's *Jena oder Sedan?* II)

(3) In naming a price, the German uses *für*, where in Eng *for* is used but he goes farther, and uses it for amount price in general Er kaufte es für 10 Mark Für 25 Pfennig Schokolade 25 pfennigs' worth of chocolate of 6 marks Lenz (name wenn sie für einen Heller 8 p 164) F

1) Die blät

Seidels *Lebe*

Mann (G *Ich* an *Amor* *Exil*, Aug. 21, 1850)

(4) In a few idiomatic expressions English *for* is rendered by other means Es ist jetzt kein Schiff nach (for) Boston in Bremen. Ich habe einen Brief nach (for) Berlin auf die Post gegeben Er ist auf (for) acht Tage verreist. Viele Deutsche geben ihre Verachtung der (for the) Juden immer zu erkennen Sie hätte einen unangenehmen Eindruck gemacht, diese Nase, wenn die Augen nicht gewesen wären if it had not been for her eyes Sie war berühmt gewesen wegen ihres Teints (for her complexion Ossip Schubin has here für ihren Teint). Zum (for) Frühstück erhält jeder von euch zwei trockene Wecken

(5) In a few expressions *für* is rendered differently in English Diese Tür ist für (to) dich geschlossen Er dient für (instead of) seinen Bruder. Es ist sehr hart für (upon) ehrliche Leute, daß usw Er stand ganz allein für sich He stood all by himself Für sich (stage direction) aside Er ist blind für (to) seine Fehler. Sie meinen also, für gewöhnlich (as a rule, as a usual thing) lüge ich? (Spielhagen's *Sonntagskind*, II, 5) Er ist wenig, aber er trinkt dafür (to make up for it) viel

(b) Originally the nearly related words *für* and *vor* were more closely related Both were used of time or space the former with the acc to express motion toward, and the latter with the dat to denote rest Early in the present period these relations became confused, as in N G and M G the two forms had merged into one namely *vor* This state of things can still be seen in the dialect of these sections In the literary language of early N H G *vor* had already assumed in large measure the meaning of *für* besides its own original meaning, and consequently governed the dat or acc according to the sense On the other hand as the result of this confusion *für* sometimes assumed the meaning of *vor*, and hence we find it with either the dat (as in *Bäume ... , die sich für der Last der Früchte zur Erde beugen—Goethe an Frau von Stein*, 3,

178—instead of *vor der Last*. &c.) or acc. according to the sense. These fluctuations still occur not infrequently in the eighteenth century, and even to-day in a few words, as *für'lieb* or *vor'lieb*, *vornehm*, or more rarely *fürnehm*. Gradually, however, *vor* replaced *für* also in the literary language, except in many derivative or figurative applications where *für* is still used, now always with the acc. Only in a few set expressions can its former literal meaning be seen: *Schritt für Schritt* (also *Schritt vor Schritt*) step by step, lit. one step before the other, *Punkt für Punkt*, &c. Occasionally in the classics *für* can be found in its original meaning, where present usage requires *vor*: *Ich ging im Walde | so für mich hin* (Goethe's *Gefunden*).

**GEGEN** and **WIDER**, both with the idea of direction or movement towards, the former in the sense of friendliness, hostility, or resistance, the latter only in the sense of hostility or resistance, used of time or space, literally or figuratively, *toward*, *to*, *about*.

(a) In the sense of a general direction toward or a position facing toward: *Wir ritten gegen den Rhein. Gegen Ende August* about the end of August. *Er wird gegen* (about) *drei Uhr zurückkommen. Das Haus liegt gegen Morgen* (to the east). *Es ist schwer gegen or wider den Strom zu schwimmen. Die beiden Heere kämpfen gegen- or widereinander. Man hält mich hier gefangen wider alles Völkerrecht.*

*Note.* In a few set expressions, especially in the Bible and poetry, before nouns without an article the shortened form *gen* is found instead of *gegen*: *gen Himmel, gen Osten, gen Westen, gen Rom.*

(b) The direction of thought or feeling toward, in a friendly sense, after *gegen* (here often closely related to its synonyms *zu* and *für*), or in a hostile sense or one of opposition, after *gegen* or *wider*: *Er erweist sich gefällig gegen Freunde. Seine Liebe gegen seine Geschwister, die Pflichten gegen Gott, seine Zuneigung gegen* (also *für*) *ihn, die Liebe gegen Gott* (or *zu*) *Gott, Ehrfurcht gegen das Alter, Ekel gegen das Lesen*, but usually *zu* or *für* with things: *seine übermäßige Liebe zum Brantwein, zum Vaterland, zum Spiel, zum Gewinn, Gefühl für das Schöne, Sinn für Ehre. Er hat einen Haß gegen or wider mich gefaßt. Was hast du gegen or wider mich? Das geschah gegen or wider alle Erwartung. Das geht ihm wider die Natur. Er tut es wider Willen.*

(c) Approach toward for the purpose of comparison, *in comparison with*, synonymous with *im Vergleich mit*, *im Verhältnis zu*: *Reichtum ist nichts gegen Gesundheit. Alle Bücher sind nichts gegen die Bibel. Gegen früher* in comparison with a previous period. *Ich wette hundert gegen* (to) *eins.*

(d) Attitude towards, synonymous with *gegenüber* (see this, a), sometimes, however, indicating a more positive attitude, *in the face of*, *to*, *in the presence of*: *Alles . . . war darüber einverstanden, daß das Gemeinwesen in diesem Falle eine Pflicht zu erfüllen habe und daß es derselben gegen jede, wenn auch noch so respektable Privatgegenmeinung nachkommen müsse* (Raabe's *Villa Schönau*, v). *Kaiser und Reich regten sich nicht gegen diesen unermesslichen Verlust. Die Regierung war gegen das entfesselte Element ohnmächtig. Er ließ sich gegen ihn nichts merken* He pretended to him that he did not notice it. *Gegen* (in the presence of) *andere rühmt er sich seiner Taten.*

(e) *In exchange for*, *for*, closely related to *für* and *um*: *Kriegsgefangene werden gegeneinander ausgetauscht. Man tauscht ein Ding gegen* (or *für*, sometimes *um*) *ein anderes. Sie können Ihr Geld gegen Quittung* (on receipt) *bekommen. Man pflegt Geld nur gegen einen Schuldschein zu leihen. Er gibt diese Ware nur gegen bare Bezahlung.*

(f) In estimates, an approximate judgment as to weight, magnitude, cost and the like, used as a prep. or as an adverb (see 225. 1. c), *about*: *Die Stadt hat gegen dreißigtausend Einwohner.*

(g) *Gegen* and *wider*, now exclusively with the acc., governed earlier in the period either the dat. or acc. without any difference of meaning between the two case forms.

(h) In Austrian and Bavarian dialects the *gen.* is found after *gegen*, especially with pronouns: *Stemm' dich an gegen meiner, was [du] kannst* (Ganghofer's *Der Dorfapostel*, II).

*General Note.* *Wider* is only used in (a) and (b) of the above articles.

**GEN**, see *gegen*, a. *Note.*

**HIN'DURCH**, see *durch*, above.

**OHNE** (a) is the opposite of *mit*, and hence denotes lack, *without*, *but for*: *So lange ich meinen Freund zärtlich liebte, ging ich nicht ohne ihn. Er ist ohne Freude. Es gibt keine Freundschaft ohne gegenseitige Achtung. Ich kann die Suppe nicht ohne einen Löffel essen. Ohne ihn wären wir gestorben* But for him we should have died.

(b) In an earlier period in the sense of *außer except*, *not counting*, *besides*, and still found in certain expressions: *Es waren zwanzig Personen da ohne die Kinder. Especially in the adverbial expressions: ohne'das, ohne'dies, ohne'hin besides.*

(c) In early N.H.G. *ohne* governed also the dat., as can still be seen in the one word *ohne'dem* (= *ohnedas*; see b above), which is still sometimes used: *Ohnedem aber war für ihn nicht mehr an einen Verkehr in Grafenwang zu denken* (Perfall's *Der schöne Wahn*, p. 86). The dat. still lingers in the classical period: *Bald mit, bald ohne dem Mitleid* (Lessing). It survives in the dialect of the Southeast alongside of the genitive (see d).

(d) After the verbs *sein* and *werden* in an earlier period, *ohne* governed a *gen.* which usually preceded it, in the sense of *void of*, *free from*, and is still commonly thus used in the word *zweifels- ohne doubtless*. In Austrian and Bavarian dialects *ohne* with the *gen.* is also used with other verbs, usually, however, preceding the dependent noun, or more commonly pronoun, like a preposition with the meaning *without*: *Ich kann ohne Ihrer* (perhaps a dat., which is also used here) *Tochter nicht leben* (Raimund's *Alpenkönig*, 3, 16). *Sie würden auch ohne seiner das Essen fertig bringen* (Anzengruber's *Schandfleck*, chap. xx).



PER is a Latin prep. much used in commercial language, both in foreign expressions as *per diem* and with many German words especially those without an article or other inflected word, but it is also sometimes employed before words which can show inflection. It is found in certain

es per (or durch die or mit der) Post, per Fracht Es  
Eisenbahn) Heutzutage geht alles per Dampf (= Ge-  
per Telegraph Per Maria per steamship Maria, per  
Er zahlt per Kassa (in cash) Ein Brief per (= unter  
Karl Schmidt

Er hat per Pfund, per Elle,  
so und soviel  
bei übersenden wir Ihnen  
1000 marks due 1st Jan

Note Three other  
will out modifying wo  
t = über) with the ai  
(per see (a) above) 1  
(unbound) 1 Mark, 1  
von 125 Gramm à (each) 1 Mark

SONDER = ohne, now little used except in poetical style usually before nouns without an article, only very rarely with an indefinite article sometimes with the dat. Sonder Zweifel, sonder allen Zweifel (Jensen's *Auf der Baar*, III) sonder gleichen without an equal Alle Hohen der Erde sonder herzliche Liebe ist Staub Sonder einer solchen Flasche blieb bei den Griechen ein zu begrabender Leichnam ebenso wenig als sonder Kranz (Lening)

UM. 1 It has in general the force of *around* either of rest or motion but has developed out of this meaning a rich

A *Around* in a literal s Die Gäste saßen  
um den Tisch Es fahren

(a) From the idea of the figurative idea of the  
central material cause thing, *over, on account of*  
Er trauert um den Tod I envy you this journey

(b) It often points to the person or thing about which thought feeling or action is busied, *concerning about with respect to of, with for* Weiß die Königin um diese Neigung? Es handelt sich um die Erbschaft. Just um diesen Brief war mir's zu tun It was just this letter that concerned me Ich bin so in Unruhe um den Vater I am so worried about father Ich komme um den Oheim I come (to consult with you) about Uncle Wie steht es um ihn? How are things

hair would be a pity Es tut mir leid um ihn I am sorry for him Compare von, c in 229 2

(c) Movement around in a circle leads back to a starting point hence the idea of change, succession, alternation Das Fieber kommt einen Tag um den andern The fever appears every other day Bote um (after) Bote wurde ausgesandt Sie sangen einer um den andern They sang alternately

(d) Movement in a circle implies a desire to encompass close in on, gain something, hence view, for, after, in order (to)  
Er arbeitet um die Ehre Sie  
working Viele bemühen sich  
des schönen Mädchens Er

bittet um Verzeihung. Especially with an infinitive to denote purpose Ich komme, um (in order) Sie zu sehen The ideas of purpose and result are closely related Thus leads to the use of um with the infinitive to express end or result Du bist alt genug, um dies einzusehen. See also 281 Note It also denotes price and exchange um jeden Preis at any price, um einen billigen Preis, um alles in der Welt nicht not for all the world um nichts und wieder nichts for absolutely nothing, etwas um (more commonly gegen or für) etwas tauschen; Auge um Auge, Zahn um Zahn

(e) In moving around an object we pass it by, miss it, hence the general idea of loss Es brachte ihn um sein Vermögen, um seinen Verstand It caused him to lose his property, reason Ich bin um meinen Schlummer Er ist ums Leben gekommen In moving around a circle one must sooner or later encompass it come to the end of it, hence the general idea of end es

um zehn Mark He flogged me ten times for me It also denotes amount extent Er strafte ihn um zehn Mark He fined him ten marks Er hat sich um eine Mark verrechnet He made a mistake of a mark

B In the neighborhood of, near used of space, time or number, in a more or less indefinite sense

(a) Of persons and things in space, *around*: Er hat keinen Freund um sich. Ich bin den ganzen Tag um ihn. Um Berlin herum gibt es viele Sandgegenden.

(b) Of time and number, synonymous with *gegen*, *about*: Es geschah um Mitternacht, um Ostern. Um dreihundert Hörer an audience of about three hundred. But with the hours of the day *um* expresses time more accurately, *at*: Er geht pünktlich um zehn Uhr zu Bette.

C. Less frequently the logical reason (A. *a* above) instead of its synonyms *um* — *willen*, *wegen* *on account of*: Ich lobe dich um deinen Fleiß, or more frequently um deines Fleißes willen or wegen deines Fleißes. But very commonly the words *wa'rum*, *da'rum* instead of *weswegen* wherefore, why, *deswegen* therefore.

We sometimes find *um* with the genitive in this meaning after the analogy of *um* — *willen*: O Gott! Ich danke dir mein Leben nur | um dieser Kunde (Kleist's *Schroffenstein*, 2, 1). Den der Papa um seines Geldes erkor (Heyse's *Im Paradiese*, 1, 178). Nur um der Wahrhaftigkeit frag' ich dich (Hauptmann's *Michael Kramer*, p. 71).

2. Quite rare is the use of the dative after *um*, when it denotes rest, after the analogy of other prepositions which denote rest: Das Eis um meinem Herzen (Börne), in und um unseren Dörfern (Hans Müller-Brauel in *Hamburger Nachrichten*, March 23, 1906).

WIDER, see *gegen*.

## PREPOSITIONS WITH EITHER DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE

### I. General Remarks.

231. 1. These prepositions (see list 227) govern the dat. when the place *in which* is denoted, whether motion or rest in that place is expressed, but the acc. when the direction *towards* or *into* an object is expressed: Das Buch liegt auf dem Tisch, but Hans legte das Buch auf den Tisch. Hans lief in dem Zimmer herum *John ran around in the room*, but Er lief in (into) das Zimmer. It is rather uncommon that with a verb of motion both the dative and the accusative can be used, the former to indicate rest, the latter to express the idea of motion toward: Er verschwand im Walde (place), but in den Wald (motion into). The dative is more common here, as the prefix *ver-* of the verb is perfective (246. II. 3. *b*) and the action is felt as completed, so that we conceive the person as within the wood rather than as moving into it. Likewise we say Er kehrte in dem Gasthofe ein rather than Er kehrte in den Gasthof ein as we do not think so much of the mere entrance into the hotel as the staying, resting in the place. On the other hand we do not say Die Statue kam auf der Brücke zu stehen as often as Die Statue kam auf die Brücke zu stehen, altho the dative fits the meaning better inasmuch as the statue finds a permanent place upon the bridge. Recent usage inclines, as in this example, toward the accusative with simple verbs of motion, but favors the dative with compounds with a perfective prefix, as further illustrated by the following examples: Er kam in die Stadt, but Er kam in der Stadt an. Er legte das Glas neben die Flasche, but Der Hund legte sich dicht neben den Körben nieder. Der Fluß mündet in den Rhein, but In seiner Jugend ein radikaler Idealist, mündete Hehn (name) in einem konservativen Idealismus aus. With simple verbs, however, denoting motion *between* objects on both sides the dative *must* be used, as illustrated under *zwischen* in II below. On the other hand, it is important for the English-speaking student to note that in countless cases, often even in case of perfective verbs, the *act* is more important than the resultant *goal* or *state* so that the accusative is with many words much more common than the dative, altho there is considerable fluctuation of usage: Er hat mich in das Zimmer eingeschlossen, but with the perfect participle which of itself denotes a state: Er ist im Zimmer eingeschlossen. Sie hat sich in grünen Samt gekleidet and also Sie ist in grünen Samt gekleidet, for we do not think of a resultant state but the *act* of her choosing green. Er hat sich in die Arbeit vertieft and Er ist in die Arbeit vertieft, for we do not think of him as passive but as penetrating deeper into his work.

a. Often the two ideas are only figurative: ein Buch über Goethe's „Faust“ a book on (spreading itself over the subject of) Goethe's *Faust*; über allen Zweifel beyond (lit. raised above) all doubt. Wilhelm kam auf einen guten Einfall William hit upon a happy thought.

2. In applying this rule to time the following rule will be of service: In answer to the question *when* they govern the dat., but in answer to the question

*how long and until when the acc* Wann kamen Sie nach Hause? In der Nacht. Wie lange, bis wann bleiben Sie in der Stadt? Bis tief in die Nacht.

3 In abstract or figurative expressions where the idea of place or motion toward does not appear, these rules cannot always be applied, but in these cases the following rule will be found useful. When manner, cause, or means are expressed, *an, in, unter, vor* take the *dat*, but *auf* and *über* the *acc*. Manner in dieser Weise, but *auf* diese Weise in this manner. Er schreibt am schönsten (see 114. 2), but Er schreibt aufs schönste (see 114. 3). Der König zog unter dem Jubel des Volks in die Stadt. *The king marched into the city amid the hurrahs of the people*, but Es geht über alles Erwarten schon. *Things are going along well even beyond all expectation*. Cause. Wir freuen uns an dem schönen Wetter, or über das schöne Wetter. We rejoice over the beautiful weather. Lena erwachte an (aroused by) einem wilden, markdurchwühlenden (piercing) Schrei, but Mehrere Leute liefen nun auf (alarmed by) den Lärm gleichfalls aus dem Felde herbei. Means. Man erkennt den Baum an (by) seinen Früchten. Means is rarely expressed by *auf* or *über*.

4 Sometimes fine distinctions may be made by using the *dat* when it is desired to represent the person or thing as already at the place where something is to occur and by using the *acc* when it is desired to emphasize the movement of the person or thing towards the place in question. Er wurde in (he is already there) der Gesellschaft freundlich aufgenommen, but Er wurde in die Gesellschaft aufgenommen (admitted by ballot). Setzen Sie sich auf diese (rarely dieser as in Schiller's *Tell*) Bank von Stein, but Sie lagerten sich bequem auf dem Rasen. Dieses Land ist die schönste Perle in der Krone dieses Fürsten (it has long been in his possession), but Das ist ein frisches Blatt in seinen Lorbeerkranz (it has lately been added to his wreath and is here vividly imagined as just entering it) and Ach, liebe Frau Justizrätin, Sie dürfen mir glauben, der Junge ist ein Nagel in meinen Sarg (Isolde Kurz's *Nachbar Werner*)

## II Treatment in Detail

These prepositions follow in alphabetical order

**AN** is synonymous with *bei, nach, neben, zu*, but often with sharp distinctions, as are described in 229. 2 under *bei*, 1, and in the *Note* under *zu*, 1

1 With the dative

**A** Close approach to or contact with the side of an object also with various figurative applications *at by on against to, near to in about*. Er sitzt am (at) Fenster. Er sitzt am (by) Ofen. Das Bild hängt an (on) der Wand. Frankfurt liegt am (on) Main (river). Er sitzt am Hügel (on the hillside). Der Stock lehnt an (against) der Wand. Sie stehen Kopf an Kopf. Arm an Arm (in English *shoulder to shoulder*). Es liegt mir am (near to) Herzen. Er ist am (near unto) Tode. Wir stehen auf (sometimes an, see *Note* below) dem Boden, but in a figurative sense to indicate a prostrate position. Der Mensch (Napoleon) ist am Boden (Treitschke's *Deutsche Geschichte* I, 551). Es ist nichts an (in) ihm. Es ist nichts Wahres an (in) dem Gerucht. Er hat keine Spur von Stolz an (about) sich. Die Reihe ist an mir. It is my turn. Dinge, die an (und für) sich (in themselves) gräßlich sind, werden in dichterischer Nachahmung ergötztlich.

(a) Applied to time or  
am Abend in the evening  
Die Leipziger Schlacht um  
der Stunde The time hour is at hand

Mittag at noon,  
(in day time)  
n der Zeit, an

*Note 1* We say *am Tage* in day time but in der Nacht, because *an* denotes a surface hence that which is visible while in expresses here the idea of an enveloping darkness. Thus we say *Es liegt am Tage* It is as plain as day but *Es ist in Dunkel gehüllt* It is shrouded in darkness. Thus also *im Sommer, im Winter* because we regard ourselves within a period of time.

gewe  
Auf  
aufl

(last Saturday) dort  
sah in early N.H.G.  
Und es begab sich

(b) The idea of *near approach* to which lies in *an* leads naturally to its use in the adverbial superlative (112. 3 B) of the adjective and the relative superlative (114. 2) of the adverb. Der Sturm war am heftigsten (lit. at that which is most violent, i.e. in the most violent stage) gegen Morgen. Er schreibt am schönsten von allen.

(c) Close approach on a certain side gives rise to the meaning *in respect to, in, about, as to, of, in the way of*: Es fehlt ihm an Geld, an Fassung He lacks (lit. in respect to) money, self-command. Das Land ist reich an (in) Mineralien. In Italien gewinnt der Kampf der Parteien an Schärfe. Ich zweifle an (have doubts about) der Aufrichtigkeit dieses Mannes. An (as to) Fleiß geht Karl allen andern Knaben vor. Mangel an Wasser, an guter Luft lack of water, good air; schwach am Leibe (but im Kopfe). So hatte sie in unbefangenster Plauderton ausgekramt, was sie in ihrem Kopf an (in the way of) Gedanken vorgefunden.

(d) Close approach gives rise to the idea of rapid succession, *after*: Pfeiler an Pfeiler zerbrach.

(e) Close approach gives rise to the idea of *close application, busying one's self with, being in the act of*, and often an together with an infinitive-substantive is equal to the progressive form of the verb in English: Ich will dich nicht zurückhalten — du bist am Ausgehen I will not detain you, as I see you are going out (down town). Sie hatte es gerade mit einem Kinde zu tun, das am Kartoffelschälen war She was just then occupied with a child who was peeling potatoes. It should be noticed that the progressive form of the verb in Eng. may have an object, while in German the object must form a compound with the infinitive-substantive as in the second example. Note also that an is here always contracted with the article. See also 175. Note.

B. Out of the idea of *approach to* and *contact with* comes the conception of varied relations which the persons and objects thus brought together sustain to each other: Er ist Lehrer an (in) dieser Schule, Prediger an der Hofkirche. Dieser Gelehrte arbeitet an (on) einem großen Werke. Er hat sich an seinem Gegner tötlich vergriffen He laid violent hands on his opponent. Es liegt an ihm (it is his fault), daß er nicht vorwärts kommt. Er nimmt an den Freuden der Kinder teil. Er stieß sich an der Wand blutig. Er wird an dir zum Verräter He will betray you. Er hat eine Stütze an (in) seinem Sohn. Er wird sich an seinen Feinden rächen. Du hinderst mich am Arbeiten You keep me from working.

(a) This relation may be that of cause, *of, from, &c.*: Er starb an (of) der Schwindsucht. Er leidet an (from) der Brust. Ich labe mich an (with) den Früchten. Er ärgert sich an (at) allen Dingen. Das Eis schmilzt an (in) der Sonne.

Note. In earlier periods (and occasionally still) the simple gen. was used here. See 223. V. a.

(b) This relation may be that of means, *by*: Ich höre am Geläute, daß heute Sonntag ist. Man erkennt den Vogel an den Federn. Ich weiß es an mir (by my own experience). Er erkannte mich an der Stimme. Er geht am Stock He walks with the aid of a cane.

2. With the accusative.

(a) Direction toward, implying close approach to the side of a person or thing, or even contact therewith, literally and figuratively: Hänge das Bild an die Wand, das Kleid an den Nagel. Er setzte sich an (at) meine Seite. Er schreibt an (on) das Fenster, but Er schreibt am (at) Fenster. Er steckte den Ring an (on) den Finger. Er zog den Strumpf ans Bein. Ich habe viel an ihn verloren I have lost a good deal to him (in cards, &c.), but Ich habe viel an ihm verloren I have lost much in him. Often with bis to mark limit: Das Wasser reichte bis an die Knie. Er begleitete mich bis an das Tor. Figuratively: Er geht an (to) die Arbeit. Ich denke an ihn. Ich schreibe oft an (to) ihn. Hier ist ein Brief an (directed) Sie. Die Reihe (turn) kommt an mich.

(b) Temporally, used only with bis to mark a limit of time: Sie tanzten bis an den Morgen.

(c) An approximate number, used as an adverb or prep. (see 225. 1. c), *about*: Wie lange habt ihr prozessiert? An die acht Jahre. Es waren an hundert Menschen versammelt.

AUF. 1. With the dative.

A. Contact with the *upper* surface of (see an, 1. A. Note), *on, upon*: Auf christlichen Kirchen steht gewöhnlich ein Kreuz. Das Buch liegt auf dem Tisch. Also without contact, but as a necessary part of: Der Punkt auf dem i. Figuratively: Ich habe eine Angst auf dem Herzen. Die Sache beruht auf Ihnen. Es hat nichts auf sich It is of no consequence. Was hat es damit auf sich? What of that?

(a) In a number of cases auf is used because the present or original conception is that of a place at some height, altho the place may be an enclosed one. It is translated accordingly in Eng. by *in*: Er wohnt auf einem Schlosse, auf Nummer zehn (in hotel). Er ist auf (of an upper room) seinem Zimmer, auf der Burg, auf der Kanzel, auf den Galerien.

(b) Before the common noun Insel *island* auf is used but before the articleless names of islands both auf and in are employed, the latter especially with large bodies of land which are thus conceived of as countries: auf der Insel on or in the island, but auf or in Kreta.

B. The idea of an upper surface gives way in many cases to that of a surface in general, considered as a base of operations: Er arbeitet auf (in) dem Felde. Im Sommer lebt man angenehm auf (in) dem Lande. Friedrich der Große war ein Meister auf der Flöte. Wir kegeln auf der Kegelbahn. Wilhelm liegt auf dem Rücken, auf der Seite. Er ist blind auf (or an in) beiden Augen, taub auf (in) einem Ohr. Auf diesem Wege wird er zu nichts gelangen In this way he will not accomplish anything.

Note. Sometimes there is quite a difference of conception in German and English, as the former regards certain things as extended surfaces or open public places while the latter looks at them as bounded spaces, hence in the former case we find auf, in the latter in, at: Man kauft etwas auf dem Markt, but at the market. Man fährt auf der Straße, wohnt aber in der Straße, while in Eng. one drives in the street but lives on (in U. S., but in England in) the street. Thus also auf (in) dem Friedrichsplatz, auf (at) dem Bahnhof, auf (in) dem Chor, auf dem Lager in stock, auf (in) der Station, auf (in) der Wiese.

(a) Closely connected with the idea of a literal base of operations is its figurative application to political, educational, business, and social organizations and individual activities which

proceed on a definite open basis auf (in) dem Reichstag, auf dem Parteitag at the party convention auf (at) der demnächst stattfindenden Sitzung des Ausschusses, auf dem Wiener (of Vienna) Kongreß, auf (at, of a pupil, but an of a teacher) dem Gymnasium, auf (at, of a student, but an of a professor) der Universität or Schule (but in der Schule of elementary schools) auf dem Kriegsschauplatz, auf dem Rückmarsch, auf (at) seinem Bureau, auf der Borse, auf (at) der Post, auf (at) der Messe, auf (at) der Weltausstellung in Chicago, auf (at) dem Balle, auf (at) der Hochzeit, auf der Jagd, auf (in) der Flucht, auf der Reise, auf (at) seinem Posten. Man ertappte ihn auf (in) der Tat. Er steht auf meiner Seite. Er ist auf seiner Hut. Auf diesem Gebiet in this line (of study, art, music &c.) Er halt mich auf dem Laufenden. He keeps me posted. Auf (at) einigen Punkten haben die sozialdemokratischen Stimmen seit der letzten Wahl zugenommen.

Note. In the above it can be seen how often the German and English conception differs but on the other hand where the idea of a close body or corporation or position or action *with* in a body distinctly appears in is used in both languages in dem preußischen Ministerium, Kabinett. Doch blieb Luxemburg im deutschen Zollverein.

2 With the accusative with the general idea of direction toward

A Direction or movement toward the upper surface of implying ultimate contact *on upon*. Er setzt sich auf den Stuhl. Er legt das Buch auf den Tisch. Er klettert auf den Baum. Also with movement toward without actual contact but so close as to form a necessary part of (see 1 A above). Er setzt den Punkt auf das 1. Coincidence. Das Fest fiel auf einen Sonntag. Er kam auf den Glockenschlag. Er bezahlt mich immer auf den Tag. Er kam pünktlich auf die Minute.

(a) Movement toward an object which according to the present or original conception is situated at some height (see 1 A a above), *to*. Er geht auf das Schloß, auf sein Zimmer, auf die Burg.

B As in 1 B above the idea of an upper surface gives way to that of a surface in general considered as a basis of future operations when reached *to into on*. Die Arbeiter gehen auf das Feld. Sie fahren aufs Land. Sie gehen aufs Eis (to skate). Er macht sich auf den Weg. Er legt sich auf die Seite, auf den Rücken. In nautical language *for* (the port of). Warum fuhr er nun seit zehn Jahren als Schiffszimmermann auf einem großen Dampfer auf Kalkutta? (Hamburgischer Correspondent May 17 1903)

Platz

(a) Corresponding to 1 B a above. Man geht auf die Post, auf den Ball, auf die Jagd. Er läßt sich auf den Kampf ein. He engages in the battle. Auf diese Bedingungen, Vorschläge kann ich nicht eingehen. I cannot assent to &c. Man ging auf den Scherz ein. Er stellte mich auf (to) die Probe. Often instead of naming such society or action mentioning some article or object which is suggestive of it. Er lud mich auf (to) eine Mahlzeit, auf eine Suppe, auf ein Butterbrot, auf ein Glas Wein, auf eine Tasse Tee. Er forderte mich auf Pistolen. He challenged me to a duel with pistols. Er hatte zwei schwere Forderungen auf krumme Säbel.

C Direction of some activity of the mind or of some feeling toward an object, in various relations representing it.

(a) As an object of attack attention or of some feeling either hostile or friendly. Das ist auf mich abgesehen. That is meant for (aimed at) me. Er schimpft auf mich. Das Mädchen r. Er ist auf mich gut (or übel) zu sprechen. He speaks well. Er ist auf seine Frau eifersüchtig, stolz. Mein Handwerk rauf kommen. I think a great deal of my trade, and allow no

(b) As the object of point toward which the mental activity or the nature of a person or thing is directed usually with a vie. nicht aufs Recht. Er halt auf Ord. ose Leute merken &c. Seid Ihr 'ne Backersfrau, die ihren Altknecht f. man who marries her head servant with a view to using him in her business? Sie ist bis vor kurzem in Berlin gewesen auf (in order to acquire) fe for life or death. Ich bereite mich wirft, wird in keinem soviel erreie auf meinen Anteil. Er versteht sic erpicht. Ich besinne mich nicht platze orders orders in advance fe die Menschen sind nicht eigen auf Boden, gedeihen in leichtem und schwerem Erdreich. Cherry trees are not particular with regard to the soil in which they grow &c.

(c) As the end or aim. Silber auf (to see whether it contains) Diese das auf (to) Ihre Gesundheit. Er reist auf (also in with dat see in) e house. Er reist auf Baukunst. He tra e Überraschung angelegt. Wir bestehen auf seine Absetzung. Mich deucht, du hast nicht gerade auf den Pastor studiert (Jensen's *Herkunft* VII). It seems to me that you didn't exactly study for the ministry. (d) As a basis as that upon which the action or feeling rests and from which the actor draws strength courage inspiration or as the false basis upon which a misdoer stands in order to conceal the true one. Er baut ein Haus auf dem Berg (place) but Er baut ein Haus auf den

Berg (firm basis) and Er baut auf ihn *He is counting on, trusting in him*. Auf seinen Beistand darf ich rechnen. Auf diese und andere Anklagen hin wurde er in den Tower gesperrt. Auf deine Gefahr (at your risk) wage ich es. Sie bildet sich was auf ihre Schönheit ein *She prides herself on, &c.* Es kommt auf dich an *It depends upon you*. Ich frage dich auf dein Gewissen. Er hat es auf eigene Faust getan. Er wagte es auf (trusting to) gut Glück. Er machte ein Gedicht auf Bismarck. Es ist gut auf (in) den Herrn (Lord) vertrauen und sich nicht verlassen auf Menschen. Ich kann auf (to) seine Unschuld schwören. Das Kind ist auf meinen Namen getauft (named for me). Einer dieser Pässe lautet auf einen Schweizer, den Furier Koch *One of these passes is made out in the Swiss quarter-master Koch's name*. Er war auf den Namen Wilhelm Schmidt eingeschrieben (registered under the name of, &c.). So wird dann freilich der Fürst für tausend Dinge verantwortlich gemacht, von denen er keine Silbe weiß, und die ganze Umgebung sündigt auf (on the strength of, under the cover of) seinen Namen.

D. Movement toward leads to the idea of some point of time or of some event in future time, and in general to the idea of futurity and expectation in varied relations (see an 1. A. (a). Note 2): Es geht auf neun *It is going on nine (o'clock)*. Es ist drei Viertel auf fünf *It is a quarter to five*. In der Nacht von gestern auf heute, in der Nacht auf den (or zum) 1. Oktober in the night before Oct. 1. Man hofft auf bessere Tage. Er bat mich auf den Abend zum Essen. Es wird Regen geben auf die Nacht. Die Verordnung über die Einberufung des Reichstags auf (on) den 16. (of next) November ist amtlich bekannt gemacht worden. Meine Frau Pathe (god-mother) habe ich in meinem Leben nicht gesehen, und Sie können denken, wie ich mich auf sie freute (how glad I was at the prospect of seeing her). Ich beschäftigte mich mit den neuen Sommerkleidern, welche mir die lieben Eltern auf das (in consideration of the approaching) Fest hatten machen lassen. Das Geld nahm er zu sich auf den Fall, wo er es gebrauchen würde. Diese Wohnung ist auf Ostern zu vermieten *This house can be engaged now for occupancy at Easter*. In early N.H.G. auf was also used with reference to some point of time in the past. See an, 1. A. (a). Note 2.

E. Movement toward a moving object gives rise to the idea of pursuit, and this leads to that of immediate or rapid succession, and hence a sequence or response in general: Er folgt auf mich *He succeeds me*. Auf Regen folgt Sonnenschein. Auf (after) das Essen darf man keine heftige Bewegung machen. Tropfen auf Tropfen schlug an das Fenster. Blitz auf Blitz, Schlag auf Schlag folgte. Auf die Dauer (in the long run) wird die kleinste Last schwer. Er hört (heeds) nicht auf meine Worte. Er hört (answers) auf (to) beide Namen. Er antwortete auf meinen Brief. Er kam auf den ersten Ruf. Die Hausfrau ... stach um so vorteilhafter von der Schwägerin ab, welche auf den lieblichen Ruf (by the title of) Fräulein ging (Raabe's *Hungerpastor*, XIII).

(a) From this idea comes that of following the will or desire of another, closely related in meaning to nach and gemäß: Ich habe es auf (in accordance with) Ihren Befehl, auf Ihren Wunsch getan. Auf (upon) seinen Antrag erfolgte Freisprechung.

(b) As that which follows upon something is often that which is caused by it, auf with its dependent noun is often considered as a cause: Mehrere Leute liefen nun auf (alarmed by) den Lärm gleichfalls aus dem Felde. Der Graf hatte mit Bedauern vernommen, daß sein Dienstmann einen Bürger auf (provoked by) so geringfügigen Anlaß geschlagen habe. Der Baum fällt nicht auf einen Hieb.

F. The limit *up to* which something may extend, sometimes taken inclusively, sometimes exclusively: Er ist auf den Tod verwundet. Ich bin elend, auf mein ganzes Leben elend. Er quälte mich (bis) aufs Blut (almost to death). Er will nur auf (for) einen Tag fortgehen. Er verließ uns auf vierzehn Tage. Auf Wiedersehen! good-by till we see one another again! Bei dem ungewissen Schein des Neumonds konnte man kaum auf fünf Schritte vor sich sehen. Er weiß es aufs Haar or auf ein Haar (accurately). Es kostet auf (as high as) 100 Taler. Man schätzt die Zahl sämtlicher Rumänen (Rumanians) auf (at) 10 Millionen. Sometimes after bis: Er trank das Glas bis auf die Neige (excluded) aus. Alle seine Freunde verließen ihn bis auf (except) einen.

G. A trend in a certain direction gives rise to the idea of manner: Auf diese Art, auf diese Weise wird er sein Ziel erreichen. Er empfing mich aufs freundlichste. Sie fechten auf den Hieb (with broad-swords). Er bezahlt es auf Abschlag (making payments from time to time). Er sagte es auf (in) Deutsch. Wollen wir die Droschke auf Zeit (auf die Stunde) oder auf die Fahrt nehmen? Shall we hire the cab by the hour or for the trip. Auf's Geratewohl at random, auf jeden Fall in any case, auf keinen Fall.

Note. With superlatives both an and auf denote manner, but as an with the dat. denotes arrival at the goal, while auf w. acc. indicates only a movement toward the goal itself, the latter is more general, and hence its use with the absolute superlative of the adverb, while the former is used with the relative superlative. See 114. 2 and 3.

H. Used distributively to show that which is allotted to, falls to the share of: Die Steuern verteilen sich folgendermaßen (are distributed as follows among) auf die einzelnen Provinzen. Eine Steigung von 1 Fuß auf jede 100. Die Pariser essen angeblich zu viel Fleisch, jährlich 93 Kilogramm auf den Kopf (*Hamb. Nachr.*). Er verteilte den Vorrat auf viermal *He divided the rations so as to make enough for four different times*. Er aß alles auf (at) einmal. Er wurde auf einmal wieder lustig.

I. The idea of resting something on something else gives rise to the idea of an underlying condition: Man nimmt einen Koch, Bedienten auf Probe (on condition that he gives satisfaction). Ein Kauf auf Besicht, auf Probe (subject to examination).

AUSZER. 1. With the dative:

(a) Position on the outside of an object or place which has fixed limits, once frequent, but now usually replaced by *außerhalb* with gen., and in case of greater removal from the object *außerhalb* der Stadt zu verhängern (Schl.)  
 (Sci) pzig gewesen (Lessing) Sie gehen  
 in d quer über die Bühne (Grillparzer's  
*Der Traum, ein Leben*, 3)

Note In a few set expressions *außer* is still used where the position is entirely indefinite and general out of doors, out Sie arbeiten außer dem Hause (out of doors) Wir speisen heute außer dem Hause We dine out to-day

very common,  
 Sie ist darüber  
 Wünsche außer  
 hr Seid außer  
 t außer stande,

(not able) es zu tun. Außer Hörweite, außer Schußweite.

Note Also *außerhalb* is here used when a definite limit is to be expressed Das liegt außerhalb des Planes

(c) Exclusion, *except* (in this meaning also used as a conj., see 225. 2 and a thereunder). Alle waren zugegen außer dir.

(d) Excess, *besides* Er verlangt außer dem Lohne auch gute Behandlung Er ist dumm und außerdem faul.

2 With the acc with verbs of motion The grammarians often demand the dat. here in accordance with older usage, but the acc. is not infrequently found after the analogy of other prepositions, which take the acc. with verbs of motion Da ich sie mit solcher Wahrheit reden horte, kam ich ganz außer mich (Goethe) Du bist nun außer unsere Gemeinschaft gestellt (G. Keller) The older dat. is also still used Was mich so außer mir brachte, war, &c. (Spielhagen's *Selbstgerecht*, p. 66) The acc. has become well established in certain expressions außer allen Zweifel or Streit setzen or stellen, außer den Stand setzen, &c.

3 v set expres-  
 sions außer Hauses  
 war? ce of außer-  
 halb vor derem  
 (161. im Lehrer-  
 Häuschen)

HINTER. 1 With the dative

(a) Position, *behind*, back of, *beyond*, from behind Der Hund liegt hinter dem Ofen. Der Hof liegt hinter dem Hause  
 liegt hinter (beyond) dem Gebirg  
 on him Er zog die Tür hinter  
 Feder hinter dem Ohr hervor,  
 hinter dem Berge He conceals  
 tom of all this Er bleibt hinter seiner Zeit zurück. Hinter deinem Rücken wird viel Wahr-  
 heit über dich gesprochen Er hat eine schwere Zeit hinter sich He has passed thru hard times.  
 Ich möchte es hinter mir haben I should like to have it over with Er hat mehr hinter sich,  
 als man meint There is more in (or to) him, &c.

(b) Pursuit, or when coming in behind the object, as in der...  
 closely related to nach: De  
 ein ehrsammer Bürger auffalle  
 of a dog) hinterdrein (after  
 mir hinterdrein (afterwards) gesagt.

(c) Succession (see in 299) the one...  
 2 With the acc. after

(a) Movement toward  
 den Ofen. Sie hetzten (s)  
 die Schule (plays truant)  
 hinter das Geheimnis I sh  
 puts the cart before the ho

Note Once more common than now was the combination *hinter sich* in the sense of backwards Er fiel hinter sich. Die Heirat ist hinter sich gegangen The match has been broken off

(b) Repetition fünfmal hintereinander five times running

3 In Austrian and Bavarian authors *hinter* is found also with the genitive, both with verbs of rest and motion, more commonly, however, with pronouns than nouns Setze dich hinter meiner (M. Jokay, *Andere Zeiten*, 2, 45) Und schimpfen s' net her hinter deiner? (Ganghofer's *Der Dorfapostel*, v.), but Keiner sieht net, was hinterm Mauerl is (ib.)

IN 1 With the dat. it denotes rest or motion within a given thing, or on a surface within the given limits  
 in or within, also  
 beitet in dem H  
 einem Monat w  
 languages see auh, 1 is note

German in often corresponds to both English *in* (containing the idea of a bounded space) or *at* (representing a space in general as only a point where something takes place) seine Wohnung in Weimar his residence in Weimar, seine Ankunft in Weimar his arrival at Weimar, in einem Augenblick in a moment, in demselben Augenblick at the same moment, &c. Of course

there are many other idiomatic differences: *im Durchschnitt* on an average, *in Geschäften* on business, *in Eilmärschen* by forced marches, *in den letzten Jahren* of late years. *Er reist in* (also *auf* with acc.) *Petroleum und tausend anderen Sachen* He is on the road selling &c.

2. With the accusative:

(a) Expressing a motion toward a position *within* something, corresponding quite closely to English *into*, but sometimes translated by *in, to*: *Ich komme in das Haus. Er fiel ins Wasser. Er ging in den Garten.* Translated by *in*: *ins Fäustchen lachen* to laugh in one's sleeve. *Ich steckte es in die Tasche.* English *in* is often used, not only to express rest or motion in a bounded space, but also to denote the direction toward an object or thing: *The pen is in the ink* and *I dip the pen in ink.* The German uniformly employs *in* with the acc. to denote motion toward an object. Translated by *to*: *Ich gehe in die Stube meiner Schwester. Ich gehe in die Oper, Schule, Kirche, ins Theater, in die Schweiz* (Switzerland). In numerous figurative applications variously translated: *Ein famoser Junge ist glücklich da. Wiegt stark ins achte Pfund hinein, der kleine Kerl. Schicke dich in andere Leute* Adapt yourself to other people. *Er fiel mir in die Rede* He interrupted me. *Er willigt in alles* He consents to anything. *Er ist in diese Dame verliebt* He is in love with this lady. *Er ist mir in den Tod verhaßt* I have a mortal antipathy to him. *Die (i.e. Komplimente) kann ich in den Tod nicht leiden* (W. He-geler's *Pastor Klinghammer*).

*Note.* Before names of places having no article *nach* is used to express direction toward, while before names of places that have an article and can thus by their accusative form indicate clearly direction toward *in* is still used: *nach Berlin to Berlin, nach Deutschland to Germany*, but in *die Türkei to Turkey*, in *das geliebte Deutschland*. In early N.H.G. *in* could also be used before articleless names of countries.

(b) Direction of measurement or of an activity in general: *Die Stube hat achtzehn Fuß in die Länge und vierzehn in die Breite. Zehn Fuß in die Höhe, ins Gevierte* (square), *bis in das Einzelne* to the minutest detail. *Er klettert in die Höhe* He is climbing up. In some expressions the dative is also used here with a slight shade of meaning, namely, expressing the idea of extent within a given direction: *Das Haus hat achtzig Fuß in der Höhe.*

(c) Applied to time usually preceded by *bis*, except in figurative expressions: *Er spielte bis spät in die Nacht. Er bleibt mir treu bis in den Tod. Er geht ins zehnte Jahr* He is going on ten.

(d) With reference to materials, *in*: *Er arbeitet in Gold, in Silber.*

(e) An approximate judgment as to weight, magnitude, &c., with a more general and indefinite meaning than *an* or *gegen*, and besides much less common, usually like *an* with the definite article, *about*: *Judas schlug die Gottlosen | vnd bracht jr in die dreissig tausent vmb* (II Maccabees xii. 23). Sometimes the dative is also used here with a slight shade of difference, namely, expressing the idea of an indefinite extent within certain limits: *Es ist in den zwanzig Tausenden, was er schuldig ist.*

**INNER**, and in Switzerland also in the form *innert, within, inside of*, a preposition now little used, governing sometimes the gen., sometimes the dat. or acc., according to circumstances: *inner der Grenzen der Wahrheit* (Grillparzer), *inner des Hoftores* (T. Storm's *Zur Chronik von Grieshaus*, p. 113), *innert einer Stunde* (Pestalozzi), *ruft inner dem Schloßstore* (Grillparzer's *Ottokar*, 4), *inner diesen Wänden* (Anzengruber's *Schandfleck*, chap. x), *innert vierzehn Tagen* (*Neue Zürcher Zeit.*, Aug. 20, 1904), *inner die Grenzen aufnehmen* (J. von Müller).

**NEBEN** (in early N.H.G. also *bei neben* and *be'neben*, usually, however, only in the dative relation) with dat. or acc. standing before the noun, occasionally in the form *zu neben* with the dat., also following the noun: *Vor dem Sarge geht der Kaplan in Barrett und Mantel, ihm zuneben der Sigrist mit dem Weihwedel und dem heiligen Wasser* (Ernst Zahn's *Wie dem Kaplan Longinus die Welt aufging*).

1. With the dative:

(a) Expressing rest or motion *alongside* of something: *Er sitzt, geht neben mir. Er wohnt neben* (next door to) *meinem Bruder.*

(b) In its figurative application, *in addition to*: *Mancher Kaufmann hat neben einem Tabaksgeschäft auch noch ein Weingeschäft.*

(c) Passing alongside of without hitting, hence missing the mark: *Das geht neben der Wahrheit vorbei. Er ist daneben gekommen* He didn't get anything.

2. With the acc. to express motion toward the side of something: *Er setzte sich neben mich. Er hat sein Haus neben das meinige gebaut.*

3. Formerly also with gen., and still occasionally found with this case in Austrian and Bavarian dialects, especially before a pronoun: *Z'neb'n meiner Tag über | geht's vorbei z' Roß und z' Fuß* (Anzengruber's *Die Kreuzelschreiber*, 1, 5).

**ÜBER**, a S.G. form for *über*, originally only with the dat., but now sometimes also with the acc. like *über*: *Da schau' ich auf und ober mir fliegt ein Adler* (Byr). *Sein Schnurrbart war ober die Lippe hinaufgestrichen* (Silberstein's *Dorfschwalben*, 2, 87). *Ober uns gebreitet | dies blauende Gewölbe* (Schnitzler's *Der Schleier der Beatrice*, p. 141).

**ÜBER** (with Luther *vber*), in M.H.G. only with the acc., but in the present period also with the dat., as it in this function has gradually supplanted older *ob* and *ober*.

1. With the dative:

(a) Position above something without contact, *over, above*: *Der Vogel schwebt über dem Dache. Er liegt immer über den Büchern. Ich bin eben über* (occupied with) *der Verpackung.* Figuratively of social position: *Sie steht über ihm.*

*Note.* The idea of place often mingles with that of cause (see 2. E below) and hence the dat. or acc. is used according as the idea of position or that of cause is more prominent: *Und noch jetzt scheint sie (i.e. die Natur) mit derselben Sorgfalt über ihm* (now usually *ihn* as the idea of cause is now in general felt as more prominent in such



cases) zu wachen mit der sein Auge sein kleines Gartchen übersieht (Ludwig's Zwischen Himmel und Erde) Sollte ein Kommissar über die Ausführung wachen (Ranke's Päpste 2 56)

(b) Position that can be reached only by going over something = jenseits, over on the other side of Er wohnt über der Elbe

(c) Contemporaneity closely connected with während, unter, during at Er sprach über der Mahlzeit, über Tische davon Ich konnte über dem Geschrei (while the noise was being made) nichts hören

rule in this case is that  
(while the noise was  
being heard)  
in the temporal and  
accusative usually found,  
such as der Spanier das  
accusative where to-day the

## 2 With the accusative

A Denoting motion toward a point above something Der Adler erhebt sich über die Wolken

(a) A heaping up of something over something else hence repetition upon after Er haufte eine Sünde über die andere Ich habe ihn einmal über das andere gewarnt

(b) Superiority Der Major geht über den Hauptmann A major is higher than a captain Zufriedenheit geht über Reichtum

B Diffusion or extension over a given surface usually with contact Sie breitet den Teppich über den Fußboden Das Wasser geht über die Wiesen Der Schweiß floß über sein Gesicht Er war über den ganzen Leib wund, naß Figuratively Unglück kommt über mich Er fiel über mich her He pitched into me (abused me)

(a) Power authority supervision over a given domain field Cäsar herrschte über die Franzosen Der König über das Land,

to cover the matter in question on about

## c in 229 2

C A passing over and beyond a certain limit Der Vogel flog über das Haus Figuratively Das geht über meinen Verstand, meine Begriffe, meinen Horizont, &c Ich kann es nicht übers Herz bringen Er lebt über seine Verhältnisse (beyond his means)

(a) A passing by or thru and then beyond via F

(b) Excess in amount weight measure number Er gab über sein Vermögen (more than his wealth) Beschreibung schon Es waren über fünfzig Personen da Die neue Quelle über eine Stunde Das ist über meine Kraft Das geht über meine Kräfte Überdies (in the eighteenth century sometimes over dem, after the analogy of zu dem) moreover

## D Of time

(a) Represents a future event as to take place after the close of a given period of time Heute über acht Tage (a week from to day) werde ich wieder kommen Thus heute übers Jahr, or without heute, übers Jahr, heute über drei Wochen, übermorgen day after to-morrow &c Formerly also with reference to past time after Darnach über drey jar kam ich gen Jerusalem (Gal 1 18)

(b) Excess of time über (more than) eine Woche, über ein Jahr, &c

(c) In a few expressions duration the prep standing in case of Nacht before with other words after the noun Er blieb über Nacht Den ganzen Sommer über war ich auf dem Lande

E Cause Man soll sich nie über das Unglück eines Menschen freuen Ich erstaunte über (at) diese plötzliche Erscheinung Earlier in the period we find also the dative here Und er war betrubet über jrem verstockten Hertenzen (Mark III 5)

Note Also an w dat. denotes cause The difference between an and über in this respect is in general that an denotes in accordance with its meaning of a close approach or contact a closer and more intimate relation than über Er starb an einer Nervenkrankheit Man lacht über einen guten Witz

## UNTER 1 With the dative

A A position below under something Der Hund liegt unter dem Ofen Der Hund fuhr bellend unter (from under) der Bank hervor Figuratively In der Kenntnis des Lateinischen stehe ich unter ihm

(a) Dependence subordination Der Lehrling steht unter der Leitung des Meisters

(b) Below a certain degree number value &c Unter fünfzig Mark kann ich die Ware nicht geben An manchen Orten blieb die Teilnahme unter der Erwartung Ein Kind unter zehn Jahren Das ist unter (beneath) aller Kritik

(c) Contemporaneity Manche schlafen unter der Predigt ein Unter Karls V Regierung war Antwerpen die lebendigste und herrlichste Stadt in der Welt

Note Synonymous with unter is während The latter usually expresses duration while unter may denote also only a point of time Der Sakristan schlief während der Predigt but Er ging unter der Predigt hinaus

(d) Very commonly used to add some attendant circumstance Der Kranke verschied unter (in) heftigen Schmerzen Ich wollte ihn unter vier Augen sprechen Ich lieh ihm das Geld unter (on) dieser Bedingung Er tat es unter meinem Namen

(e) Cause, *under*: Sie seufzten unter dem Drucke der Herrschaft. Seine Gesundheit hat unter der fortwährenden Aufregung gelitten.

(f) Classification, *under the head of, by*: Unter „Arm“ lesen wir usw. We find (in the dictionary) under the head of „arm,“ &c. Was verstehen Sie unter diesem Ausdruck? What do you mean by this expression?

B. Position in the midst of, *among* (see Note 2 unter zwischen): Ich saß unter den Zuschauern. Es steht viel Unkraut unter dem Weizen. Unter zwei Übeln muß man das kleinere wählen.

C. Often used instead of a partitive gen.: Unter (of) allen Getränken ist Wasser das gesündeste. See also 141. 2. Note.

2. With the accusative:

A. Movement to a point below or under something: Der Hund legte sich unter die Bank. Wir setzten uns unter den Baum. Er wurde in der Schule unter (in rank) seinen Bruder gesetzt.

(a) Change to a condition of dependence, subordination: Unter dieses Joch wird man euch beugen. Sie stellten den Verbrecher unter die Aufsicht der Polizei.

B. Movement toward a position in the midst of something, *among*: Ich setzte mich unter die Zuschauer.

(a) A belonging to a group: Der Krieg gehört unter die größten Übel. Ich zähle ihn unter meine Freunde.

(b) Distribution: Der Wohltätige verteilt Geld unter die Armen.

C. An interruption of an act: „Du,“ sagte Georg unters Essen hinein, „muß dir was sagen,“ &c. (Anna Schieber's *Alle guten Geister*, p. 53).

3. With the genitive in *unter'dessen in the meantime, while*, and sometimes in a few expressions of time: unter Essens (Adelung) during the meal. In der Wohnung war auch viel Besuch unter Tags (Hauptmann's *Michael Kramer*, Act iv).

VOR. 1. With the dative:

(a) Position in front of, *in front of, before, in the sight of, at the sight of*: Der Hund liegt vor der Haustür. Der Verbrecher erschien vor dem Richter. Vor Gott und der Welt strafbar guilty in the sight of God and the world. Er fiel vor Richmond. Activity or motion in front of: Er redete vor einer großen Versammlung. Sie haben ihn vor unserm Haus vorbeigetragen.

(b) Surpassing in degree, rank, value, hence also precedence: Sie war vor allen die Schönste. Er hat mich vor (more than) allen anderen beleidigt. Vor allen Dichtern gebührt ihm der Preis. Er hat vieles vor seinem Bruder voraus He has many advantages over his brother.

(c) Applied to time, *before, ago, since, back, prior, ahead of*: Er kam vor seinem Herrn an. Er kam vor mir, vor meiner Ankunft. Der Braten kam vor dem Gemüse. Ein Viertel vor 6 Uhr, vor einiger Zeit some time ago, vor nun zehn Jahren now ten years since, vor einigen Jahren a few years back, vor (prior) der Einführung der Gaslaternen. Moses lebte vor Christus. Du kommst vor (ahead of) der Zeit.

(d) Reference to something which stands before one in such a manner or condition as to cause fright, horror, aversion, or from which one must defend or protect one's self: Das Kind fürchtet sich (is afraid of) vor dem Hunde. Manche haben Ekel vor halbbrohem Fleisch. Dem Feigen ist bange vor dem Tode. Er flieht vor (from) dem Feinde. Ich habe kein Geheimnis vor Ihnen. Nimm dich vor ihm in acht. Warme Kleider schützen vor Kälte. Ich warnte ihn vor dem Menschen. See also aus, *f* in 229. 2. Also awe or respect: Achtung vor einem or etwas haben.

(e) Cause in a number of set expressions, *for, on account of, with*: Man kann vor Schmerz und vor Freude weinen. Das Herz schlug mir vor banger Erwartung. Er konnte vor Schmerz nicht schlafen. Er kommt vor Geschäften nicht zu sich selbst. Er sieht den Wald vor lauter Bäumen nicht. Er ist rot vor (with) Zorn.

2. With the accusative to express motion toward a point or position before something, literally and figuratively: Der Hund legt sich vor die Haustür. Er spannt die Pferde vor den Wagen. Man bringt die Sache vor den Richter. Komm mir nicht wieder vors Gesicht, vor die Augen. Er wirft seine Perlen vor die Säue. Er tritt vor den Riß (breach). Er sprach vor sich hin He talked to himself. For Schritt vor Schritt see für, *b* in 230.

ZWISCHEN with the dat. or acc. according as rest or movement toward is expressed, corresponding in meaning to English *between*: Sie saß zwischen mir und ihrem Bruder. Er ist zwischen 20 bis 30 Jahren alt. Sie setzte sich zwischen mich und ihren Bruder. When it is a question of movement or motion between objects on both sides, *zwischen* with the dat. is used, often in connection with some adverb as *hin, durch, &c.*: Zwischen den Kirchenstühlen hin schritten sie wieder auf den Ausgang zu (Fontane's *Vor dem Sturm*, IV, chap. xxv). Und schnell und machtlos fällt der König des Gebirges (i.e. der Adler) zwischen dem Weg und dem Wald auf die grüne Matte (Heer's *Der König der Bernina*, II).

Note 1. Also *unter* can be used of two instead of *zwischen*, if the noun is found in the plural in a collective sense including both parties, but never if two nouns are taken separately: Es entstand ein Streit zwischen dem Manne und der Frau, or zwischen beiden Eheleuten, or unter den Eheleuten.

Note 2. *Zwischen* does not mean exclusively *between two objects*, but may also refer to more than two. In this case, it differs from *unter* in that the latter indicates a confused mingling, a mass, while the former infers that the different objects in the group are homogeneous, and hence the introduction of a foreign object into their midst gives rise to the idea of a twofold division: Ein Schwarm Spatzen stob mit erbostem, endlosem Gezwitzsch auseinander, wie sie zwischen sie fuhr (Ilse Frapan's *Mamsell Biene*). Sein Blick streifte den jungen Gelehrten, der so vergnügt zwischen der ehrsamten Schneiderfamilie saß. Also as in English to express the idea of *individual relations* between more than two: Verkehr zwischen Nationen.

## CONJUNCTIONS

### DEFINITION AND CLASSIFICATION.

**232** 1 A conjunction is a particle used to connect sentences or the elements of a sentence. Conjunctions are divided, as in English, into co-ordinating and subordinating.

2 Classification, however, as to their influence upon word order in the sentence is a better method of grouping conjunctions for practical reasons. The particular word order required by certain classes of conjunctions is in part explained by their origin and development. Originally a number of conjunctions were demonstrative pronouns or prepositional phrases containing a demonstrative pronoun, as explained in 240 a. Many other conjunctions were adverbs. Certain adverbs not only performed their function of adverb within their own sentence, but also served to connect in thought the proposition in which they stood with the preceding or following. Thus many conjunctions still show traces of their adverbial nature in that like adverbs they have great freedom of position, as is illustrated in 234, and also cause inverted word order when they introduce the proposition in which they stand. *Wir waren eben vom Tische aufgestanden, da trat er in das Zimmer* We had just arisen from the table when he entered the room. Some adverbial conjunctions with this same freedom of position may or may not influence the word order in the proposition in which they stand, as illustrated in 236. While the adverbial conjunctions thus retain the freedom of position which they possessed as adverbs the subordinating conjunctions have developed in course of time quite differently, and at present can only occupy the first place in the dependent clause and require the verb to stand at the end of the clause. *Ich muß gehen, weil ich Eile habe.* In contradistinction to adverbial co-ordinating conjunctions with their different manner of influencing word order are the pure co-ordinating connectives, which influence in no way word order, such as *und* and, *oder* or, *aber* but, &c.

Thus the position of the verb at the end of a subordinating clause introduced by a subordinating conjunction is imperative, while on the other hand co-ordinating conjunctions with regard to their influence upon the word order are divided into three classes pure co-ordinating, adverbial co-ordinating, and such as admit of a double construction either influencing like adverbs the word order, or leaving it undisturbed after the manner of pure co-ordinating conjunctions.

### PURE CO ORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

233 The conjunctions which connect sentences or parts of sentences of like rank and do not disturb the word order are

A The pure conjunctions aber but however a llein but denn for ja yes indeed namlich  
as since oder o sondern b and d f f  
the prec  
each cont  
wie auch

and also *u* likewise as well as the following common tho new as coordinating conjunctions both — and ebenso — wie both — and wie — so mehr) not so much — as beide — und, or beide very common in early NHG the latter replacing it in the sixteenth century but now itself little used beziehungsweise (bezw.), beziehentlich, respektive (resp.) or as the case may be außer (225 2) except anstatt (225 2) instead of ausgenommen except earlier in the period also ohne (225 2) except Of these wie and sowie are in fact subordinating conjunctions originally also sowohl — als See *e* below. Außer sometimes connects two complete propositions with out influencing the word order See 225 2 *a* Examples

Das Bild der Toten wich nicht aus meiner Seele, ja es steht noch heute vor mir. Zwischen Bozen, das stets eine zweifelhafte deutsche Stadt war, und Trient liegt das Gebiet, wo deutsche und italienische Sprache wie Nationalität sich abgrenzen und mischen. Auf den südlichen Halbinseln sowie in Süd Frankreich blüht die Zucht der Esel und Maultiere. Im allgemeinen

ist das Klima (Chinas) ein binnenländisches, durch die östliche Lage des Landes stark beeinflusst: heiße Sommer und kalte Winter, ebenso in den nördlichsten wie in den südlichsten Gegenden des Reiches. Sowohl sein Vater als auch seine Mutter kamen. Hier war es ziemlich ruhig sowohl bei Tage wie bei Nacht (Rodenberg). Dadurch (i.e. its position) ist München wie der Hauptsitz für die Erzeugung des Nationalgetränks so der große Getreidemarkt Bayerns geworden. Nicht sowohl die schlechte Finanzverwaltung als vielmehr die zahlreichen Kriege haben das Land mit dieser Schuldenlast beschwert. Die Artillerie und Kavallerie muß mit ihren Kanonen bzw. (beziehungsweise) Pferden gut umzugehen wissen The artillery and cavalry must know how to handle well their cannons or horses as the case may be. Alle rauchten, ausgenommen du (but with different word-order: dich [absolute acc.] ausgenommen). Ich sage es keinem Menschen, ausgenommen dir.

a. Usually und connects two words, or, if there are a number, is placed before the last one, just as in English. Sometimes it is omitted and replaced by -, when two names are to be associated with one work or undertaking, either as co-workers or to represent one as the original worker and the other as the one who has carried it on after the author's death: kritische Ausgabe von Lachmann-Muncker, der Denkmalsentwurf von Schmitz-Geiger, &c. In contrast to the suppression of und here is the liberal use often made of it for purposes of style, especially to call attention to different activities separately in order to describe the situation in detail, as in Und es wallet und siedet und brauset und zischt (Schiller's *Taucher*), just as on the other hand the und is omitted altogether to indicate rapidity of action: Alles rennet, rettet, flüchtet usw. (id., *Die Glocke*).

b. The three adversatives aber, allein, sondern differ from each other in meaning. Sondern is only used after a negative, and introduces a contradictory statement, while aber, which is used after either an affirmative or negative proposition, concedes the statement of the first proposition, and introduces a limitation or a contrast: Er ist nicht reich, sondern arm He is not rich, but poor. Er war zwar nicht krank, aber doch nicht dazu angelegt He was to be sure not sick, but still he did not feel like it. Er ist arm, aber ehrlich He is poor, but honest. Aber and allein have the same general meaning, but the latter is much less used, hence more forcible in making a contrasting statement: Ich war bei ihm, allein ich traf ihn nicht an I was at his house, but did not find him at home. Aber has also a broader meaning than allein; the latter always introduces a limitation or a sharp contrast to the preceding proposition, while the former may also introduce something different from the preceding proposition without limiting it: Er war ein großer Feldherr, allein er besaß nicht die Gabe umfassender Berechnung He was a great general, but yet he did not possess the gift of comprehensive calculation. Ich vertraute so fest auf ihn, allein ich sah mich bitter getäuscht. Klein aber mein It is small, but it is mine. Abel war ein Hirt, Kain aber ein Ackermann Abel was a shepherd, Cain was a husbandman. Aber is also often (especially in the Bible) used without expressing any especial emphasis or contrast, merely to take up in a new sentence the thread of the story: Der Teuffel aber sprach zu jm (ihm)—Luke iv. 3.

c. Nämlich does not always introduce the proposition, but stands even more frequently after the verb, and aber has a still greater freedom of position, as it may be introduced at almost any point without influencing the word-order: Ich konnte ihn nicht sprechen, er war nämlich krank I could not see him as he was sick. Ich hoffte es; ich fand mich aber getäuscht I had hope, but I found myself disappointed.

d. Word-order after und. The proposition following und usually has normal order, sometimes, however, we find the question order as a survival of an older construction which allowed a verb to introduce a proposition if it was to be emphasized, lay nearer in thought, or if the statement as a whole was to be put in a more lively manner, or if the verb came to the front by the removal of the subject towards the end of the proposition for the sake of emphasis. See 251. II. B. b.

e. The conjunctions wie, sowie, sowohl als (sub. conjunc. in Psalms xlix. 11), now used so frequently to connect, like und, two parts of a sentence of like rank, are in fact subordinating conjunctions, as appears occasionally when they stand in a clause containing a verb, in which case, as after genuine subordinating conjunctions, the verb stands at the end of the clause: Für geheiligt galt die Person des Königs, wie (= und) ihm auch priesterliche Rechte beiwohnten. The verb may be understood, in which case the contracted phrase is still treated as a subordinate clause, and a following principal proposition has inverted order: Sowie die Schweiz [einmal zum Deutschen Reiche gehörte] gehörten auch die Niederlande zum Deutschen Reiche.

f. Often several conjunctions are used together with the combined force of them all in a way that is difficult to render exactly into English. Especially is this true of oder aber, or oder aber vielmehr or on the other hand, making more emphatic the second member of the disjunctive phrase: Der Angeredete wußte eine Stunde lang nicht, ob diese wunderlichen, wenn auch sehr höflich vorgebrachten Worte wirklich eine Artigkeit oder aber vielmehr die spöttische Einleitung zu einer unzeitgemäßen Herausforderung sein sollten (Hopfen).

g. The co-ordinating conjunction denn for must be carefully distinguished from the subordinating da or weil as, because: Er schreibt nicht, denn er kann nicht He doesn't write, for he doesn't know how to write. Here the first proposition is an independent statement given for its own sake. The second proposition is an additional independent statement given by way of explanation. On the other hand, in Er schreibt nicht, da er mir zürnt He doesn't write as he is angry at me, the first proposition is represented as the result of the causal clause introduced by da. Nämlich as, for, adding an explanation for the preceding act or fact, indicates a looser connection than denn, but closely resembles it in meaning tho it is much less common: Meine

Zeit wird mit allerhand in Anspruch genommen, ich mache mir nämlich fast alle meine Kleider und Sachen

Instead of denn we often find ja and doch in the position after the verb, the former with the force of English *you know*, the latter to add adversative force indicating that the reason is given to meet in advance some possible objection. Er konnte uns helfen, er hat ja die Mittel. Ich habe alles gestanden, ich konnte doch keinen Meineid schwören. Also so before an adverb often has the same force as denn: Alles hat geklatscht, so gut hat er gesungen. Instead of denn

B or contr

a When adverbial conjunctions connect different subjects of one and the same verb or different parts of the sentence of like rank they do not disturb the word order, but when there is more than one verb, and they thus connect different propositions, they have the full force of adverbial conjunctions. Weder er noch ich war da. Neither he nor I was there, but Der Neidische ist weder froh, noch gönnt er andern eine Freude.

b Often even when there are two distinct propositions with different verbs the adverbial conjunctions may introduce a proposition or follow the subject without causing inversion, if it is the subjects that are emphasized or contrasted, for here as elsewhere the emphatic word takes the first place in the prop-

difier of the subject when it precedes causes inversion. Selbst die Pflanze

C The following explanatory or intensifying conjunctions connecting parts of a sentence do not influence the word-order of the proposition als, or more commonly wie as, such as,

a pre-  
(d. h.)  
stood)  
zefne  
Der  
Eine

mir 2 Paar Handschuhe, nämlich 1 Paar und zwar einen Sohn. Die Medizin wirkte kaum lindernd, geschweige denn befriedigend. Das hält ein jungerer Mann nicht aus, geschweige ein alter.

a Sometimes als is followed by the particularizing adv. da and also by a verb, all three together containing the meaning such as „Viktualien?“ fragte Wally (name) verblüfft. „Nun ja, eßbare Gegenstände,“ erklärte Suse (name) lachend, „als da sind: Kaffee, Mehl, Reis, Grütze, Schmalz.“

## ADVERBIAL CO-ORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS.

234. Adverbial conjunctions (except those enumerated in 236), like true adverbs, generally cause inversion when they introduce the proposition, and have also in large part the freedom of position of adverbs. Hence these conjunctions can occupy almost any position in the proposition except the place between the subject and the verb: Er ist reich, daher braucht er (or er braucht daher) solche Ausgaben nicht zu scheuen. If some other modifier of the verb is for emphasis placed at the beginning of the proposition in which the conjunction stands, the conjunction must stand in some position after the verb and subject: Diesen Menschen, der ich in Wirklichkeit bin, kennst du weder, noch liebst du ihn (R. Huch's *Vita somnium breve*, I, p. 8).

235. Classification Many adverbs with quite different meanings serve to connect sentences, thus indicating a variety of relations. They can be roughly divided into eight classes:

### A Copulative

a. Connecting propositions of equal value auch, also, 'außerdem or außer'dem moreover, besides, apart from this, independent of this, davon abgesehen apart from this, independent of this, gleichfalls, ebenfalls, des'gleichen likewise, zu'dem moreover, über'dies furthermore, nicht — noch, or more commonly weder — noch neither — nor, or in older German weder — oder, also earlier in the period weder — weder and even noch — noch, the oldest of the correlative forms. Er hat eine reiche Frau; außerdem hat er selbst ein großes Vermögen. In O H G weder appears as ne weder not either one of the two, so that the old negative ne has dropped out here as explained in 145. g Note 2. For another case of the survival of the old form weder see 239. 7.

Note The conjunction auch does not only correspond to English also but has developed quite a rich store of adverbial and conjunctive meanings the more idiomatic of which are here given — (1) It often has the force of too, and together with a negative the force of nor. Ich auch I too. Ich auch nicht nor I. (2) Often = even. Auch ein Kind

muß das einsehen. Er hat auch nicht (or nicht ein'mal) ein Wort davon gesprochen. Often in connection with nur: Er hat es nicht auch nur (or nicht ein'mal) erwähnt. (3) Often in concessive clauses: Wenn er auch nicht reich ist, or ist er auch nicht reich, or mag er auch nicht reich sein, hat er doch zu leben. (4) It adds generalizing force to pronouns and adverbs: Wer er auch sei *whoever he may be*, wo es auch sei *whosoever it may be*. (5) It introduces or stands within a proposition to represent something as naturally following out of the given or implied circumstance: Die Nachricht ist seltsam, auch glaubt niemand daran *The report is very strange, and indeed no one believes it. Ich will dir verzeihen, nur mußt du es auch nicht wieder tun I will forgive you this time, but mind you do not do it again. Du bist auch ein guter Junge There's a good boy, or If you do that you'll be a real good boy. Ich schenke dir auch einen Zehnpfenniger If you do that I'll give you ten pfennigs. Jetzt weiß ich auch, wo du gestern warst Now I know (since I've found this out) where you were yesterday.* (6) It is often used to confirm a preceding statement or to indicate the realization of the thought or intention expressed therein: (A) Er sieht sehr gutmütig aus. (B) Das ist er auch. (A) He looks very good-natured. (B) And so he is.—(A) Er ist gar nicht dumm. (B) Das habe ich auch nicht gesagt, nur daß er höchst nachlässig ist (A) He is not at all stupid. (B) I did not at all mean to say that he is only that he is very careless. Endlich versuchte ich es, und es gelang mir auch. Often used ironically where the aim has not been realized at all: Das ist mir auch ein Lehrer! He's a fine teacher! Jetzt ist es auch gerade Zeit dazu! This is a pretty time for such things! (7) It stands after the verb in a proposition giving the reason for a preceding proposition: Dieser Ring ist sehr schön. Er kostet auch viel *This ring is very beautiful. It ought to be, it cost a good round sum.* Hence it is often used in reproaches, as the reproach gives the reason for the discontent felt: Du kannst (aber) auch nie den Mund halten *It's too provoking, you never can keep your mouth shut.* (8) It is often used in questions to indicate doubt as to whether the actual reality is in harmony or will harmonize with somebody's conception of it: Hast du auch wohl bedacht, was du mir rätst? Are you sure you have considered well what you advise me? Wirst du es auch tun? Will you be sure to do it? Haben Sie aber auch selbst genug? Are you sure you have enough for yourself? I'm afraid I'm robbing you.

b. The second proposition more emphatic or intensive than the first: namentlich particularly, besonders especially.

c. Ordinal conjunctions: erst first, erstens or erstlich in the first place, zweitens secondly, &c. so'dann in the next place, dann then, so (after a negative) then, ferner furthermore, da'rauf thereupon, zu'letzt at last, endlich finally, bald — bald now — now: Erst besinn's, dann beginn's. Es dauerte nicht lange, so kam er. Es wird kein Vierteljahr dauern, so ist die Marie seine Frau. Kaum warst du weg, so kam er zurück.

The ordinal conjunctions formed from numerals, as erstens or erstlich, zweitens, &c., are sometimes followed by a pause, and in print are then cut off by a comma, in which case they do not cause inversion: Erstlich, Jesus löste mit scharfem Schnitte die Verbindung der Ethik mit dem äußeren Kultus und den technisch-religiösen Übungen . . . Zweitens, er geht überall in den sittlichen Fragen auf die Wurzel, d. h. auf die Gesinnung zurück (Harnack's *Das Wesen des Christentums*, vierte Vorlesung).

d. Partitive conjunctions: teils — teils partly — partly, einesteils — andernteils, or einerseits — ander(er)seits on the one hand — on the other hand: Reisen ist immer nützlich; einerseits bereichert man dadurch seine Kenntnisse, andererseits stärkt es den Körper und erheitert das Gemüt.

B. Adversative: (restricting or limiting the contents of the previous proposition) hin'gegen, 'dagegen or da'gegen, and 'dahingegen or dahin'gegen on the contrary, übrigens moreover, gleich'wohl or dennoch yet, however, notwithstanding, nevertheless, 'trotzdem or trotz'dem in spite of that, dessenunge'achtet notwithstanding, nichtsdesto'weniger nevertheless; (the second sentence excluding the contents of the first) sonst, andernfalls otherwise, viel'mehr but rather. Exs.: Cäsar wurde gewarnt, trotzdem ging er in die Sitzung des Senats. Afrika ist nicht überall mit Wüsten bedeckt, vielmehr zeigt es in vielen Gegenden eine außerordentliche Fruchtbarkeit.

C. Illative, introducing an inference, conclusion, consequence, result: da'rum or 'därüm for that reason, deshalb or deswegen (and earlier in the period *derhalb*, *derhalben* [Romans xvi. 19], *derohalben*, *derwegen*, *derowegen*) on that account, dann then, nun now, consequently, infolge'dessen in consequence, consequently, da'her hence, so so, and the conjunctions introducing an inference or conclusion, with the general meaning of *therefore*, *consequently* such as mit'hin, so'mit, folglich, dem'näch or 'demnäch, so'näch or 'sönäch: In dem Koffer sind Bücher, darum ist er so schwer. Er ist reich, daher braucht er solche Ausgaben nicht zu scheuen. Er will uns nicht begleiten, so gehen wir ohne ihn. Du bist ein Mensch, folglich bist du sterblich. Ich war krank, folglich konnte ich nicht selbst kommen. Instead of *darum* or *daher* we sometimes find a principal proposition with question order. See 287. B. (7).

D. Causal: ja, doch, so with the general force of *denn* *for*, as illustrated in 233. A. g. The idea of cause or reason is also found in the *auch* described in A. a. Note (7) above.

E. Conjunctions of time and place: da just then, unter'dessen in the meantime, &c.; da, dort, hier, &c.: Der Weg macht eine Biegung, da übersieht man die ganze Gegend.

F. Manner: so: Die Sonne siehst du nur durch Sonnenlicht, so schaust du Gott durch Gott.

G. Degree: so, um so or desto, in'sofern, &c.: Der Krieg wurde rasch entschieden, so rasch hatte man es gar nicht erwartet. Das Leben ist kurz, um so sorgfältiger muß man es nützen. Es kann uns mehr oder weniger Kampf kosten, tugendhaft zu sein; insofern gibt es Grade der Moralität.

H. Conclusion of a conditional sentence: dann, so: Er kommt vielleicht; dann gehe ich mit ihm. Willst du mitgehen, so komme rasch!

## CO-ORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS WITH A DOUBLE CONSTRUCTION.

236. The following adverbial conjunctions introduce a proposition like the pure co-ordinating class without influencing the word-order, or, more commonly, may influence the word-order like adverbial conjunctions, and also like adverbs

either introduce the proposition or follow the verb also therefore so then, well then, nur or bloß only, im Gegenteil on the contrary doch, jedoch, in'dessen however, yet, entweder (from older eindeweder *either one of two*, compare 235 A a) either, so'gar (now usually after the verb) even, nun well, zwar I admit vollends added to this to crown all (introducing a climax) Es regnet, also gehe ich nicht aus, or ich gehe also nicht aus Also, 'darauf geht's hinaus? So that's the game is it? Also Sie kommen? So you'll come? Es ist also keine Hoffnung? There's no hope then? Es bleibt also dabei! That's settled then! Der ist groß und stark, wie nur einer sein soll, bloß er hat was Feineres und ist nicht so'n Untier, wie sein Großvater Grobschmied (H Hoffmann's *Wider den Kurfürsten* chap 1), or more commonly Der ist groß und stark, wie nur einer sein soll, bloß (or nur) hat er, &c, or er hat bloß (or nur), &c Er ist reich, doch (or jedoch, or indessen) ich möchte nicht mit ihm tauschen, or more commonly doch möchte ich nicht, or ich möchte doch nicht mit ihm tauschen, but for the sake of having the emphatic word in the first place the inverted order is avoided Doch seinem Vater, nicht ihm, kommt die Entscheidung zu rather than Doch kommt seinem Vater usw Entweder tust du es jetzt, oder ich rufe deinen Bruder, or Entweder du tust es jetzt, oder ich rufe deinen Bruder, but always without inversion when the conjunction connects different subjects of one and the same verb or when the subjects are emphasized Entweder er oder sein Bruder muß zahlen and Entweder er geht, oder ich gehe Wir sehen uns nicht nur gelitten, sogar wir sehen uns hochgeehrt (Goethe) now wir sehen uns sogar hochgeehrt Nun (pause) ich will mirs überlegen, or Nun will ich mirs überlegen Zwar, ich weiß es nicht bestimmt, or Zwar weiß ich es nicht bestimmt

a The conjunction nur (or bloß) also quite commonly takes the form nur daß (or bloß daß), and then of course requires the verb to stand at the end of the clause Und doch weiß man von eben diesem furchtsamen Knaben etliche Schelmenstreiche zu berichten, die Heldentaten überraschend ähnlich sahen nur daß eine Heldentat Sinn haben soll, und Ihre Streiche hatten keinen (H Hoffmann's *Wider den Kurfürsten* chap x)

most cases little  
Of these doch  
erb can be em

ployed when aber is not used as for instance to put a principal proposition in contrast to a subordinate clause Wiewohl ich ihn oft gewarnt habe, ist er doch (or dennoch or trotzdem, but not aber) wieder hingegangen

c Doch follows or more commonly precedes the verb but when it introduces a thought which seemingly stands in conflict with the preceding it must follow it (A) Mein Vater ist schwer krank (B) Er war doch gestern noch ganz munter

## SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

237 The list of the subordinating conjunctions is given in 238 Their origin is discussed in 240 a

1 Order of Words The subordinating conjunctions including the relative and interrogative pronouns and relative and interrogative adverbs now require the verb or in a compound tense the personal part of the verb to stand at the end of the subordinate clause Er kann nicht gut sehen, weil er alt ist Es lebte einmal ein König, der kein Kind hatte (see F below and 154 Note)

The following exceptions occur

A There are a number of common cases where subordinate clauses are not introduced by subordinating conjunctions and consequently do not have the word order of the subordinate clause

a In substantive clauses daß may be dropped especially in colloquial language in which case the word order is normal or if some other word than the subject introduces the subordinate clause inserted Ich glaube, daß Sie die Wahrheit sprechen, or Ich glaube, Sie sprechen die Wahrheit

There is a decided tendency to drop the conjunctions daß and wie after they have been used once and to return to the normal word order Der Apotheker unterrichtete Frau Rat Kirsten, daß ein alter seltener Wein in so staubigen und schimmeligen Flaschen auf den Tisch kommen müsse, das sei für den Kenner das Feinste (H Bohlaus *Ratsmadelgeschichten* p 14)

b In a conditional or a concessive clause that precedes the principal proposition wenn if tho may be dropped in which case the word order is that of a question Wenn er kommt, so

sehe ich ihn, or Kommt er, so sehe ich ihn. Wenn auch die alten Bücher nicht zur Hand sind, or Sind auch die alten Bücher nicht zur Hand, sie sind in unsere Herzen eingeschrieben.

*Note 1.* If there are two or more subordinate clauses connected by *und* or *oder*, the first of which is introduced by *wenn*, or if *wenn* is dropped and the question order takes place, the clauses after the first one, instead of taking the regular subordinate or question order, often have the word-order of a principal proposition: *Wenn er dann nach Hause kam or Kam er dann nach Hause, und die Frau hatte das Mittagessen nicht fertig* (instead of *die Frau das Mittagessen nicht fertig hatte or hatte die Frau das Mittagessen nicht fertig*), so schalt er sie.

*Note 2.* Such subordinate clauses with the question order now have the same intonation as other subordinate clauses in the same position, but originally they were often independent questions, as can be seen in the following passage from Luther, who places an interrogation point where the revised editions have a comma: *Ist jemand gutes muts? der singe Psalmen. Ist jemand Kranck? der ruffe zu sich die Eltesten von der Gemeine* (James v. 13, 14). On the other hand, in many cases a conditional clause of this form was originally an independent sentence expressing a wish: *Kämost du* (originally *Kämost du! O that you would come!*), *ich würde mich freuen*. As conditional clauses have often developed into concessive we find this form also in concessive clauses: *Käme er nun nach so langer Vernachlässigung, es würde mich nicht freuen*.

c. In the combinations *als wenn* or *als ob as if*, *wenn* and *ob* may be dropped, in which case, as in a conditional clause, the question order results: *Er sieht aus, als wenn er reich wäre or als wäre er reich* He looks as if he were rich. See also 239. 1. e. *Note*.

d. In concessive clauses if the volitive subjunctive (168. I. 2. A) of the verb can be used the conjunction can be dropped, in which case either the normal or the question-order is found: *Obschon es tausend Leben kostet, rette ich dich, or Es koste tausend Leben, ich rette dich, or Koste es tausend Leben, ich rette dich*. Instead of the volitive subjunctive we often find the indicative of *mögen* here with the same word-order and same force: *Er mag (auch or gleich) zürnen, or more commonly Mag er (auch or gleich) zürnen, ich frage nichts danach*.

e. To emphasize the point of time of an action the conjunctions *wenn* or *als when* may be dropped, and the adverbs *kaum scarcely*, *schon already*, or *noch still* substituted in their stead, followed by inverted order: *Als Sie fort waren, or Kaum waren Sie fort, so trat er ins Zimmer. Noch harnte im heimlichen Dämmerlicht die Welt dem Morgen entgegen; noch erwachte die Erde vom Schlummer nicht: da begann sich's im Tale zu regen. An dem Seile schon zieht man den Freund empor, | da zertrennt er gewaltig den dichten Chor* When they had begun to draw up the friend (Phintias) to crucify him, behold there he (Damon) came pushing his way with all his might thru the throng. See 275. a.

f. In the set expressions *es sei* (or *wäre*) *denn unless*, lit. *if it be (were) not*, or kindred expressions, as *er (sie, es) müßte denn unless he (she, it) should*, each of which is seemingly a negative conditional clause in force, the clause is not introduced by a conjunction at all, and the normal word-order is used. For fuller explanation of the construction see 168. II. E. a. *Note*.

B. *Personal Part of the Verb Still Often before Participle and Infinitive*. The personal part of the verb often, in accordance with the older freedom of withdrawing the verb somewhat from the end as described in a. *Note*, stands before an infinitive, or participle, or their modifiers, instead of standing at the end of the subordinate clause, especially in the following cases:

a. In clauses where the perf. part. assumes the form of the infin.: *Ich weiß, daß er es hat tun können*. This order is quite fixed as the incongruity of a finite form of *haben* standing here after an infinitive form is so great that no one would ever think of placing it there. Hence it has become quite common to make use of the older freedom of withdrawing the auxiliary somewhat from the end as described in the *Note* below. This older freedom has been best preserved in this category, but as it is gradually becoming less and less used elsewhere it is slowly losing its influence also here. When, however, one feels inclined to place the auxiliary at the end it becomes necessary for the participle to assume participial form: *Überdies ist jener Beruf (i.e. photography) ein Sammler und rettender Einfänger von vielen Geistern, die einstmal höher fliegen gewollt hatten* (R. H. Bartsch's *Die Haindlkinder*, p. 128). Compare 178. 2. B. a.

*Note 1.*

*Note.* In M.H.G. and early N.H.G. the auxiliary containing the personal part of the verb often stood before the perfect participle or the infinitive to which it belonged. This removal of the weakly stressed auxiliary from the end resulted from the desire to put into the emphatic end position a more important word. According to 50. A. 3. b and 284. 1. 3. a a simple tense in a subordinate clause stands at the end and is always stressed, i.e. is never entirely without stress. This stress with accented verb at the end is thus characteristic of a subordinate clause with the verb in a simple tense: When in M.H.G. and early N.H.G. an auxiliary was used in connection with the verb it was usually placed at the end in accordance with general usage which required the personal part of the verb to stand in the final position in the subordinate clause. The weak stress of the auxiliary, however, was often felt as incongruous when emphasis was to be conveyed as emphasis was associated with the close of the subordinate clause. Hence the auxiliary was often given an earlier position in the sentence to make way for the more heavily stressed participle or infinitive, or the stressed participle or infinitive preceded by a still more heavily stressed predicate word: *SJe (sie) brachten auch junge Kindlin zu jm (ihm), das (daß) er sie solt ärüren* (Luke xviii. 15). *Ich sage euch aber | das (daß) auch Salomon | in aller seiner Herrlichkeit nicht ist bekleidet gewesen | als der eines* (Luke xii. 27). Similarly the weakly stressed copula *sein* was often withdrawn from the end to make way for a strongly stressed predicate: *Hütet euch fur (= vor) dem Sawerteig der Phariseer | welchs ist die Heuchelēi* (Luke xii. 1).

Another way to prevent this conflict between form and stress was to omit the tense auxiliary, which on account of its weak stress and lack of logical importance easily dropped out without attracting much attention. The suppression of the tense auxiliary was greatly facilitated by the fact that in the abridged participial form the auxiliary was regularly omitted, as explained in 183. 2. C. c, and d. See also 190. 1. A. b. (1).

Both of these constructions have been almost destroyed by a mere formal principle. In the last two centuries the general tendency to place the personal part of the verb, i.e. here the auxiliary, at the end of the clause has become so strong that it now usually prevails without regard to the laws of stress. The result of this long conflict between form and stress is the development in the subordinate clause of a new end-stress (215. II. 1. A. 3rd par.), a strong stress followed by a weaker one: *Der Mann, der das tun kann*.

b. To avoid two similar forms of *werden* from coming together: *Ich bezweifle, daß diese Früchte je werden bei uns reif werden*.

c. Often when two or more uninflected verbal forms (infin. and perf. part.) come together at the end of the clause, the personal part of the verb may precede the uninflected verbal forms in order to prevent the heaping up of unaccented words at the end of the clause, but it is becom-



ing ever more common to disregard the stress and follow the formal rule for word order which requires the personal part of the verb to stand at the end. Kein Abgrund des Wehes, dem nicht ein Laut wäre gewidmet gewesen (Goethe) or more commonly gewidmet gewesen wäre. In this category the old freedom of withdrawing the personal part of the verb somewhat from the end is most common before two infinitive forms. So unzweifelhaft es immer Kämpfe wird geben müssen, so sicher ist es oft die Aufgabe der Politik, sie zu mildern. The position of the personal part of the verb at the end is not so common here as elsewhere, but this usage will doubtless become est. P. . . . . tersuchung über die Entstehung und . . . . . sogar erst noch einen dritten Band e . . . . . uische Philologie, 1890, vol. XXII, p. 115) Einem friedlichen Zeitalter, in welchem es (Bulgarien) das, was es mit blutigen Opfern erworben hat, ausnützen und zur Entwicklung der bulgarischen Volkswirtschaft verwenden können wird (Nouvelle Presse, Sept. 26, 1915).

C. In case the predicate or a word in the predicate is modified by a clause or an infin. with zu, the personal part of the verb usually stands before the clause or the infin. and its modifiers, or predicate complement. Ich bemerkte, daß sie nicht gleich wußten, was sie tun sollten. Als ich am nächsten Abend mich anschickte, zu ihr zu gehen, war das Wetter trüb und stürmisch geworden. Gute Kinder, die sich mit Plänen (now usually Plänen) und Aussichten beschäftigten, dich habhaft zu werden (Goethe). In short clauses however, it is often better to place the personal part of the verb at the end of the clause, in case the predicate verb is modified by a short infinitive phrase, especially wherever the verb and the dependent infinitive stand in a close idiomatic relation to each other. neulich als ich im Keller zu tun gehabt habe, bevor sie weiter zu sprechen verzeichnen war. introduce the clause hatte.

D. Earlier in the period there was more freedom in the word-order so that we often find some important modifier of the verb at the end of the clause instead of the verb itself, as illustrated and explained in B. a Note. Altho the position of the verb at the end of the clause has in general become stereotyped, the older freedom is preserved in poetry and asserts itself not infrequently in vigorous prose for the sake of emphasis. Als ich das Schwert in freier Hand, das ich dir und euch und eurer . . . . . en sagen, was ich denke von dir und euch und eurer . . . . . n Heimat, 3, 11) In colloquial language also unimpaired.

This irregular feature which is employed for the sake of meter or emphasis in literary or colloquial language has not been eradicated all . . . . .

p. 96) Compare also the German of Riccaut in Lessing's *Minna von Barnhelm*, 1, 2.

E. When two subordinate clauses have an auxiliary in common it usually stands in the second clause and is understood in the preceding one. Seine Unruhe vermehrte sich, da seine Gefühle nicht mehr von den sanften Tönen genährt und gelindert wurden. Sometimes in easy colloquial language the auxiliary is found with the first clause. Ich glaube, wenn wir uns heute mal wieder hinsetzen, wir würden wieder wie junge Studenten werden.

F. The relative pronoun *der* has arisen from the demonstrative *der* which differs little except in requiring the verb at the end of the clause. *der* of every day life the demon is still used with normal order in a descriptive (def. rel. clause), where in the literary language we should expect the relative with the word order of the dependent clause. Es lebte einmal ein kleiner Knabe, der hieß Hänschen. Es war einmal ein Kaiser, der hatte ein großes Land. For the origin of the relative construction see 154 Note.

2. *Position.* Subordinating conjunctions always introduce the dependent clause with the one exception that a prep. may stand before a dependent relative or interrogative pronoun: Das Mädchen ging an einen Spiegel, in dem es sich betrachtete.

238. *Classification of Subordinating Conjunctions.* Subordinating conjunctions, which join subordinate to principal propositions, may be divided into classes as follows:

1. Those which introduce *substantive clauses*. They are made up of the following groups of words (for illustrative sentences, see 269 270, 272):
  - a. The relative and interrogative pronouns *wer*, *was*; *der* (130. 2 b; 151. 3 C, D), *die*, *das*; *welcher*, *-es* (151. 3 C, D)
  - b. A prep. with its dependent relative or interrogative pronoun *mit wem*, *mit welchem*, &c
  - c. The relative and interrogative adverbs *da* (early N.H.G.; Matthew viii 20) *where*, *wo* *where*, *wann* *when*, *wie* *how*, *warum* *why*, *woher* *whence*, *wohin* *whither*, *wozu* *to what end*, &c

d. The conjunctions *daß* *that*, *since*, *wenn* *if*, *when*, *wie* (= *daß*), *seit* or *seit'dem* *since*, *als* or *als ob* (instead of older *daß*; 168. II. G. a. (1), 269. 2. b, 272. A. a, C, d, D. b), *weil* (= *daß*; 272. C), and *ob* *whether*: *Ich sehe, daß er da ist. Ich weiß nicht, ob er heute mitgeht.*

Note. For origin of conjunction *daß* see 240. a.

2. Those which introduce *adjective clauses*. They are made up of the following groups of words (for illustrative sentences see 271):

a. Relative or interrogative pronouns: *wer* (156. b), *was* (153. 1. (1), (3)); *der*, *die*, *das*; *welcher*, *-e*, *-es*; *so* (153. 5); *der'gleichen*, *des'gleichen* (161. 2).

b. A prep. with a dependent relative: *mit dem*, *mit welchem*, &c.

c. Relative or interrogative adverbs: *wo* (see 153. 3. A, C. c) *where*, *in which*, *when*; *wo'selbst* or occasionally *da'selbst* *in which place*; *da* (153. 3. A, C. d) *where*, *when*; *weshalb*, or *weswegen* (151. 1. b), or less commonly *wo'her* or *da'her* (153. 3. A), *da'rum* (151. 1. b), and *da denn* (Note 2 below); *wenn* (see 153. 3. C. b) or *wann* (in indirect questions) *when*; *wie* (153. 3. B, C. f) *as*, *how*, *in which*, *als* (153. 3. B, C. a); the compounds *wo'rin* *in which*, *wo'bei*, *wo'ran*, &c., or occasionally in their stead the demon. compounds *da'rin*, *da'bei*, &c.

Note 1. In familiar speech the compound relative adverbs are often separated. See 153. 2 and B thereunder.  
Note 2. Goethe is fond of using *da denn* in the meanings *in consequence of which*, *under which circumstances*: *Auch sang der Alte nicht übel, und meine Mutter mußte sich bequemen, ihn und sich selbst mit dem Klaviere täglich zu akkompagnieren; da ich denn das Solitario bosco ombroso bald kennen lernte* (Goethe's *Dichtung und Wahrheit*, I, 1). *Er saß fast niemals, als wenn er seine Harfe nahm und darauf spielte; da er sie denn meistens mit Gesang begleitete.*

d. *Daß* (168. II. G. b, 153. 3. C. e), *als ob* or *als wenn* (instead of *daß*; 168. II. G. b, 2nd par., 169. 2. G. b, 2nd par.; see also Note below), *weil* (instead of *daß*; 271. I), *ob* (168. II. F. a, 2nd par., and 169. 2. F. a, 3rd par.), *wie* (168. II. F. a, 2nd par., 169. 2. F. a, 3rd par., 153. 3. D. (1)), sometimes *als* (153. 3. D. (1)): *Wallenstein schmeichelte sich noch immer mit der Hoffnung, daß viele zu ihm noch umkehren würden.*

Note. The adjective nature of the clause introduced by *als ob* here is perfectly clear, but the governing noun in all such cases is a verbal substantive and suggests the use of *als ob*, which is so common after verbs in clauses of manner (168. II. B and 169. 2. B) and more or less frequent in substantive clauses (269. 2. b, 272. C, d, D. b). This modern use of *als ob* instead of *daß* emphasizes the subjective view or the unreality of the statement.

3. Those which introduce *adverbial clauses*. They are made up of the following groups of adverbial conjunctions, indicating:

A. Place: *wo* *where*, *wo'her* *whence*, *wo'hin* *whither*; in early N.H.G. and still in elevated diction *von wannen* (= *woher*) and *da* (= *wo*, for example see John vii. 34). Compare with 274.

B. Time: *als* *when*, *as*, used of an actual occurrence or a definite state of things in past or present (see c below) time, more commonly, however, the former; *kaum* — *als* (275. a) *hardly* or *scarcely* — *when*; *nicht sobald* (both taken together = *kaum*) — *als* (275. a) *hardly* or *scarcely* — *when*; *wenn* (see b and c below) or now rarely *wann* *when*, *whenever*, used with a present or past tense to indicate that something is or was *accustomed* to happen, and with a future tense to indicate a point of time in the future; *wo* (see c below) = *als*; *da* (see c below) corresponding to M.H.G. *dô* = *als*, but now more frequent in elevated discourse than in plain prose, tho very common in early N.H.G. and the classical period; *da* (M.H.G. *dâ*, earlier in the period used with the force of temporal *indem* *while* and adversative *während* *while*, *while on the other hand*, and in the latter meaning still found in the form of *da doch*; *wie* = *als*, common in colloquial language, especially with a present tense (see c below), sometimes also = *sobald*, *wenn*, *indem*; *in'dem* (earlier in the period also *indem daß*) *as*, see c; *kaum daß* or *kaum* (see d) *when* — *scarcely*; *so'oft* [*als*] *as often as*; *so'bald* [*als*], *wie* or now more commonly *so'wie* *as soon as*; *in'zwischen*, *in'zwischen daß*, and less commonly *mittler'weile* *while* (in the meantime); *während*, *während daß* (not now so much used), *in'dem* (earlier in the period *indem daß*), *in'des* (M.H.G. *innen des*) or more commonly *in'dessen* (240; earlier in the period *indes daß*, *indessen daß*), *unter'des* or *unter'dessen* (240; now little used here; earlier in the period *unterdes daß*, *unterdessen daß*), and the following forms common in early N.H.G.: *weil*, *der'weil*, *die'weil*, all fifteen forms with the meaning *while*, of which the first, i.e. *während*, is now the favorite; *seit daß* (or in early N.H.G. *sint daß*), *seit'dem daß*, now more commonly *seit* (in early N.H.G. also *sint*) and *seit'dem* *since*; *so'lange* *as long as*, or the separated forms *so lange* (in the principal proposition) — *so'lange* or *als* (in the subordinate clause); *bis daß*, *so lange bis* (in early N.H.G. *bis so lange daß*; Isaiah xxxii. 15), now more commonly *bis until*, in early N.H.G. also *while*, *as long as* (Matth. xxvi. 36), in colloquial language *bis by the time that* (see c below), also especially in Austria = *wenn* *when* (see e) referring to future time and = *als* *when* (see c) referring to time now past but future with reference to the person involved in the action; *kaum so lange* — *als bis* *scarcely until*, *nicht eher* — *bis*, or *bevor*, or more commonly *als bis* *not until*; *ehe* (earlier in the period also *ehe denn*, *ehe als*, and *ehe daß*) or *be'vor* *before*, or sometimes with emphatic form *ehe und bevor*; *nach'dem* *after*. Compare with 275.

a. *Adversatives*. From the meaning of contemporaneity *in'zwischen* *while in the meantime*, *während* (now the most common form), *in'dessen*, *wohin'gegen* (descriptive relative adverb; see 271. II. 7), earlier in the period also *unter'dessen*, *da*, and *wenn*, *while*, *while on the other hand*, *whereas* assume adversative or contrasting force: *Manche Menschen bleiben in gewisser Beziehung ewig Kinder, während andere vor der Zeit Greise werden.* In the classics we often find *anstatt daß* here instead of *während*. For other adversatives from another point of view see G.

b. The form *wann* *when* is rare only as a conjunction. As an interrogative adverb it is the common form both in direct and indirect questions: *Wann kommt er? Ich weiß nicht, wann*

er kommt The form *wenn*, like the English *when* of to day, once had a wider meaning, being

(Hauptmann's *Einsame Menschen*, Act III)

(Hauptmann's *Einsame Menschen*, Act II)  
c There is considerable fluctuation in the use of conjunctions which indicate a point of time in connection with the action. This is most widely illustrated by the use of *als* and *da*. After

the conjunction *als than as*, *da* is preferred to *als* when to avoid the unpleasant repetition of *als*. Wie eine elegante, junge Dame stand Lenes Tochter da; schlank, noch ein wenig mager, doch voller, als da sie kam (Wilbrandt). Lange hatte Feldwebel Rinke sich nicht so gefreut, als da die Infanterie ausrückte, die öffentlichen Plätze zu besetzen (C. Viebig's *Die Nacht am*

and indicates that an act takes place within the period of the duration of another act. Indem er so sprach, traf ihn die Kugel. Indem er dies sagte, trat sein Freund herein. With reference to present time usage is quite unsettled. Als is sometimes employed here, and still more frequently da, especially in poetry and choice prose. Es ist spät in der Nacht, als ich dies schreibe (Raabe's *Sperlingsgasse*, p. 235). Du kommst nur eben, da ich reisen muß (Goethe's *Tasso*, I, 4). Und willst du jetzt, da deinen Wahn besiegt | Wahrheit und Treue, schwesterlich verwoben, | da Falsch und Echt entschleiern vor dir liegt, | nicht einmal noch zu deines Volkes Glück | die Wunderkraft des Talismans erproben? (Ludla's *Talisman*, I 8). The most common conjunction here in the literary language is indem as if the conjunction is not preceded by an adverb of time. Das Vergnügen, das ich empfinde, indem ich dies schreibe. Wie is often used here. Ich will nicht dabei sein, wie Mutters Brautkleid verkauft wird (Halbe's *Das tausend-jährige Reich* p. 52). Ja, wie ich das jetzt schreibe, erfahre ich es erst, wie gut sie bei seiner Mutter Beiseid wußte (Raabe's *Die Akten der Mutter Erde*, I). Ich glaube dir nicht, was d. . . . . dein deutsches Gefühl in Frankreich verlore . . . . . unser Deutsches Reich in hohen Ehren dasteh . . . . . Nacht II). With reference to a point in the future, wenn is the most common conjunction. Und wenn du dann gehezt hast, gehst du in die Kantine (Hartleben's *Rosenmontag*, 2, 1). Wo . . . . . ja, wo du wieder da bist, hab' ich mir gedacht, sollen auch . . . . . Mutter Erde. I).

developed into a conjunction with the meaning *when* — *scarcely* or *barely*. *Kaum* daß ich Bacchus den lustigen habe, kommt auch schon Amor (Schiller). *Kaum* diese Worte gesprochen waren, wandte sich die junge, schöne Frauengestalt um und verschwand hinter der Tür (Rosegger's *Martin der Mann*, p. 14). See 269 1 b (last par).

Note the use of bis in the meaning by the time that die längst Großmutter (Sudermann's Johannes, 1, 1) In Austria bis is similarly used to denote a point of future time. Bis du nach Rom zurückkommst, ist es schon lange her, dass ich sie hier gesehen habe. n referring to time  
er erkennen sie (die Herrmann Bahr's Die Scheidende 40)

*a* Expressing a *comparison* and *manner* proper (see 239) *wie*, *so'wie*, or *gleich'wie* as *wie* as also *wie denn* (Ephesians 1:4) *eten* as *just as*, *according as*, *als wenn*, *als* (237. 1 A c), or *als ob* as *if*, *ob* (earlier in the period = *als ob*), *wie wenn* *us when*, *daß* (276 A) *that*, *als ob* (= *daß*). Compare with 276 A and 239

<sup>b</sup> Expressing in attendant circumstance in'dem as, ohne daß without, außer'dem daß or  
abgesehen davon daß besides, apart from, independently of. Ex Die Lerche singt ihr Lied,  
indem sie sich in die Luft schwingt Compare with 276 B

in the  
dem e

d expressing a result so — daß so — that, solch (or dērartig or simple der, ein, or kein before a substantive see 271 I) — daß such — that da'nach (in the principal proposition) — daß of the kind that in the manner that, with negative force an'statt daß or statt daß instead of ohne daß without daß nicht that — not without, common earlier in the period, where ohne daß is now used geschweige (1st pers sing pres tense ich being understood) (denn) daß to say nothing about much less weit ent fernt daß far from kaum daß scarcely A question may replace the words in the principal proposition Was ist der Tod, daß er mich schrecken sollte? (= der Tod ist nichts derartiges, daß, &c) Compare with 276 D.

D Degree or Intensity

1. Expressing a *comparison*:

## A. Signifying a degree equal to that of the principal proposition:

a. Expressing a comparison: *so*, also (rare), or *ebenso* (in the principal proposition) — *als* or *wie* (see 239. 3) *as* — *as*, *so* (with corresponding *so* in the principal proposition: *so hoch er stand, so tief und schmäählich war sein Fall*) *so*. Compare with 277. 1. A. a.

b. Expressing a *proportionate agreement*: *je* (in the sub. clause) — *desto*, or *um so*, or *um desto*, or now more rarely *je the — the* (as in *Je höher er stieg, desto bescheidener wurde er*), formerly also *so — so = je — je*, *da'näch* (still in proverbs), *näch'dëm* (especially in early N.H.G.), *je näch'dëm* (common form) according as, in proportion as, in dem Maße (or in dem Verhältnisse) *wie* in degree or proportion as. Compare with 277. 1. A. b.

c. Expressing the *extent* or a *restriction*: *in'sofern*, *in'soweit*, *sò wéit* (in the principal proposition) — *als* (or *inwie'fern* or *inwie'weit*) in so far as, *sò séhr* — *als* as hard as, *sò viel* — *als* as much as, (in)*so'fern*, (in)*so'weit*, or (in)*wie'fern* (now rare) so far as, *so'gut* as well as, *so'fest* as firmly as, *so'sehr* as hard as, *so'viel* (formerly *als viel*) as much as, *sò wéit* — *daß* to the extent that, *daß* (277. 1. A. c), was (277. 1. A. c). Compare with 277. 1. A. c.

B. Following a *comparative* expressing a different degree from that of the principal clause: *weder* (early N.H.G.; Job xxxiii. 12; now obsolete, see 239. 7) *than*, *denn* (early N.H.G.; now less common, see 239. 1. a. Note 2 and 6) *than*, *als* (common form) *than*, *wie* (239. 1. a. Note 1) *than*, *als* (more rarely *denn*) *daß* or sometimes *als weil* *than* that, *als wenn* *than* when. Compare with 277. 1. B.

2. Expressing a *result*: *so*, *der* (see 271. I), *ein* (see 271. I), or *solch* — *daß so* — that, *such — that*; *nicht so — daß nicht* not so — but that, or that not; *'dërärt* (or *'dërärtig*) *daß so* — that, *'dërärt — bis so* — that; *kaum daß so* that scarcely; (in the principal proposition *nicht genügend* modifying a following adjective, participle, or verb) — *als daß* not sufficiently — to; (in the principal proposition *zu + positive*, or less commonly a comparative instead of *zu + positive*) — *als daß* or less commonly *um daß too* — to (as in *Die Fixsterne sind zu weit von uns entfernt, als daß wir von ihrer Natur etwas Genaueres wissen könnten*). The clause of result may follow a *genug*, *hinreichend*, *hinlänglich* in the principal proposition: *Ich hatte mir das Bild ihrer Liebenswürdigkeit tief genug eingedrückt, daß* (less commonly *um daß*) *es so leicht auszulöschen nicht war* (Goethe). Compare with 277. 2.

## E. Cause:

Cause or reason: *da'rum* (early N.H.G.; 1. Thess. iii. 5), *da'rum daß* (early N.H.G.; Luke viii. 6) or *um daß* (early N.H.G.) *because*; *weil* (in early N.H.G. also *'alldieweil*, *die'weil*; Gen. iii. 17) *because* (material cause and motive), *since*, *as*; *weil nun doch*, or *weil nun ein'mal* seeing (or considering) that; *nicht daß* (269. 1. b, near end), *nicht weil*, *nicht als ob*, or *nicht als wenn* not that, not because; *nicht als ob — sondern weil* not that — but because; *in'dëm* in that, as (the idea of cause mingled with that of attendant circumstances); *näch'dëm* often used where the ideas of time and cause blend, as in Gen. xlvii. 30, formerly also and sometimes still, especially in Austria, with the pure causal force of *da* or *weil because*, as the causal idea has overshadowed the original temporal force; *da* (and in popular language also *wo*) *as*, *since* (logical reason); *da doch*, *da ja*, or *da nun ein'mal* as (introducing an obvious reason), seeing (or considering) that; *anerwogen* (in official or archaic language) in consideration of the fact that, considering that, now more commonly replaced by *in Anbetracht daß*; *in'maßen* or *maßen* (dat. pl. of *Maße*, both forms now little used) seeing that, *since*; *seit* or *sint* (both in early N.H.G.; the corresponding English form *since* still in wide use; now *seit* has only temporal meaning and *sint* has disappeared), *sintemal* (early N.H.G.; Acts xvii. 24) seeing that, *since*; *daß* (see c below) that; *zu'mal* or more commonly *zu'mal da* especially *as*; *nun* now *since*, now *that*; *desto*, or *um desto*, or *um so* (before a comparative in the principal proposition) — *als* (or *da* or sometimes *weil*) *all the more — as*; *da'von* or *da'ran*, or *da'her*, &c. (in the principal proposition) — *daß* from this (cause or source), by (because of) this — that. The adverb of manner *wie* or *wie denn* sometimes assumes causal force: *Ich habe, wie (as) die Sachen jetzt stehen, an mich selbst zu denken* (Goethe). *Wir gingen auseinander, ohne einander verstanden zu haben, wie denn* (as indeed) *auf dieser Welt keiner leicht den andern versteht* (id.). Compare with 278.

a. The most popular of these conjunctions is *weil*, and it often has a wider use than the one above indicated, encroaching upon the territory of *da*. Compare c below.

b. In the classical period *weil* is also still used in a temporal sense = *so lange als* or *während*: *Das Eisen muß | geschmiedet werden, weil es glüht* (Schiller's *Piccolomini*, 3, 1).

c. In causal clauses *daß* often seems to contain the idea of cause, but in older German this conception lay in a preceding genitive or prepositional adverb, which later usually disappeared: *Ich freue mich [dessen or darüber], daß du so gut davon gekommen bist*. *Schäme dich [dessen], daß du in der Prüfung nicht bestanden hast!* *Ich bin [dessen] froh, daß ich ihn los bin*. As the genitive and the prepositional phrase have for the most part disappeared and *daß* does not by its form clearly express the idea of cause it is becoming ever more common to replace *daß* by *weil* except as in the preceding examples after verbs and adjectives denoting emotion: *Der Herr lobte den ungerechten Haushalter, daß* (now more commonly *weil*) *er klüglich getan hätte* (Luther). Older *daß* is now regularly replaced by *weil* after the genitive expressions *deshalb*, *deswegen*, which are still often retained: *Ich habe es ihm nur deshalb in Erinnerung gebracht, weil er vergeßlich ist*. See 272. A, D.

F. A condition or exception: *ob* (early N.H.G.) or *so* (early N.H.G.) *if*, the former now obsolete, the latter now rare in prose but still in use in poetic language; *wo* (common in early N.H.G., now usually replaced by *wenn*, *im Falle daß*, or *falls*, but still common in *wo möglich*, *wo nicht*) *if* (lit. where, in case that), *wo anders* (earlier in the period) *if*, *wenn* (common form)

if, wenn . . . überhaupt if at all; anders (preceded by question order), wenn anders, or vorausgesetzt daß provided that; da or dafern earlier in the period, now replaced by wofern in case that, if, provided that; wenn (or in a few set expressions wo) nicht if not, unless; wofern nicht if not, unless; im Falle daß, falls (168 II G b Note), or sometimes im Fall in case that, provided that, für den Fall daß or falls for use (or to be ready, to be at hand) in case that, doch daß but only on condition that; in early NHG ohne daß, now re daß except that, unless, abgesehen davon daß except nur daß if it were not that, except that, only that, but tive; see 168. I. 2 C b) but let it be, on condition that, (kein anderer, wer anders, nichts and other negative forms, or instead of these forms a question) — als (usually in elliptical constructions, see 279 e and 239. 1 b) but, than, else than, unless, except, save, (nichts anderes) als daß (nothing else) but that, nicht — als wenn unless, wie (239. 1 b Note) but, denn (239. 6 a) but, ohne daß (after a negative proposition) but that, unless, denn (after a negative proposition and preceded by the present or past subjunctive with normal word order, see 168 II E. a) or es sei denn daß (with transposed word order see 168 II I a and c) if not, unless, mußte denn (with infinitive, see 168 II F a) unless, höchstens daß unless, at most, at best, wer (159) for anybody who Compare with 279

Note The explanation of the negative meaning of denn or es sei denn daß unless in spite of its seeming positive form is given in 168 II L. a and Note

The conjunctions außer and nur also introduce independent propositions without changing the meaning See 225. 2. a, 233 A and 235 a

G A concession so doch (early NHG, Jeremiah 10) altho whereas ob (Luke xvi 31), or und ob altho, ob — ob (or oder or oder ob) whether — or, ob auch, or wie wohl altho and the more common words having the same general meaning of altho ob gleich, ob wohl, ob schon, ob zwar, wenn gleich (sometimes separated, but not so frequently as formerly, now usually only when a personal pronoun can stand between the parts ob — gleich, ob — wohl, &c.), and the separable forms wenn schon, wenn auch, auch wenn, selbst wenn, or und wenn even tho, even if, so (followed by an adverb or an adjective, or a noun with its preceding modifying adjectives) — auch however (e.g. So groß er auch ist) wie — auch = so — auch, wie = so — auch; so = so — auch; welch (followed by a noun) — auch however whatever, wer auch whoever, was auch whatever, wo — auch in whatever place, wohin — auch to whatever place, ungeachtet or unerachtet (or more rarely ohngeachtet), or now less commonly ungeachtet daß notwithstanding that, trotz dem or trotz dem daß in spite of the fact that, unbeschadet dessen daß without assume adversative, während doch, wo

a Of the many wenn, auch wenn or sch — — — — — the statement is a mere assumption or English altho and are used in case of

F — — — — — oldest form but still much used in colloquial speech), da rum daß, auf daß (old forms once more common than at present, the latter a favorite with Luther), da mit (not often employed by Luther, but now the most common form; see also 240. a, 2nd par) in order that Compare 281.

I Means: da durch (or da mit, &c.) daß, or separated da durch — daß by, da ran daß by, in dem by Compare with 282.

23<sup>a</sup> — — — — —, wann. The following subo introducing an exception or a length below als than, from, but, except, as, wie as, like, than, but, denn than, but, weder than, als wie as, than, but, was than, but, wenn than, but The following may serve as a fair outline of their proper usage

1 Als is used

Wilhelm. Röter als Blut. Täte er nicht besser so spät zu gehen? Compare I rather like him In German I have been thoro disappeared I

Note 1 Als and the still older denn are now very often used as if they were the same

b After the after all- and jec anders als Sie, to do that Ich kann mich nirgends glücklich als hier I am happy nowhere except here Ich

sein (Wieland). An allem Mangel leidend, als an Schmerz (Grillparzer's *Medea*, 1) *suffering a lack of everything but pain*.

While als is still freely used after niemand, nichts, it cannot now as in the eighteenth century be freely used after other negatives but is usually replaced there by außer: Ich kann nicht einmal ein Stückchen Papier finden als (now außer) dieses blaue (Goethe's *Briefe*, 1, 263, 16).

After zu + adjective or adverb we still usually find als when a full clause follows, in the eighteenth century also when an abridged infinitive clause follows, but in the latter case als is now supplanted by um: Sie gehen zu langsam, als daß Sie Ihren Freund einholen könnten, or um Ihren Freund einzuholen. Weil er sein Mädchen zu feurig liebt, als (now um) sie verlassen zu können (Schiller).

*Note.* Wie is often used here instead of als, especially in colloquial language: Sie sind mir wert und lieb, aber ganz anders wie du (Auerbach's *Dorfgeschichten*, 8, p. 104). Sie werten anders, wie Ihre Eltern werten (Hauptmann's *Einsame Menschen*, 4). Du hast's ja selber zu tragen! Kein anderer wie du! (Halbe's *Das tausendjährige Reich*, p. 45). Also even in the higher forms of literature: An sich ist also der Sinn des Genitivs hier kein anderer wie in positiven Sätzen (Brugmann's *Vergleichende Grammatik*, II, 2, p. 612). Und da ich nun einmal nichts wie zu lieben weiß (Sudermann's *Die drei Reihfeder*, 3, 10).

c. After so/bald, so/oft (formerly also als oft), so/lange, so/fern, so/viel (formerly also als viel), &c., in which cases it is now usually suppressed: Komm, sobald [als] du kannst, und bleib, solange [als] du darfst. If als is used, sobald, solange, &c. are adverbs and belong to the principal proposition, but when it is suppressed, as is now usual, sobald, solange become subordinating conjunctions and belong of course to the subordinate clause.

d. In the combination so/wohl — als as well — as, both — and: Sowohl dem gegenwärtigen als auch dem vergangenen Jahrhundert verdanken wir große Fortschritte in Kunst und Wissenschaft. Here we also now find sowohl . . . wie, and indeed wie is more common than als if the identifying als described in 4 below follows: sowohl in seiner Eigenschaft als Berliner wie als Mensch überhaupt (Raabe's *Die Villa Schönow*, V).

e. In the combinations als wenn (or also wie wenn), als ob as if, as tho, in comparisons that are represented as resting not upon absolutely assured facts, but upon personal impressions, appearances, or even represented as unreal, contrary to fact: Es scheint, als wenn, or als ob sie reich wären.

*Note.* In early N.H.G. als could be used alone without wenn or ob and still be followed by the dependent word-order. See 1 Sam. xx. 20. If als be used alone, present usage requires the question order. See 237. 1. A. c.

2. Wie is used:

a. After the positive of adjectives: weiß wie Schnee white as snow. Karl ist ebenso fleißig wie du. Karl ist so alt wie Wilhelm.

When the adjective which would stand in the second member has already been mentioned, it may be suppressed in colloquial speech: Richard: Amtlich? (Is the dispatch) official? Holtzmann: So gut wie (Sudermann's *Es lebe das Leben*, pp. 43-44).

*Note.* Formerly als (in M.H.G. with its full form also, or instead of it simple so, of the same origin as English as) stood after the positive, as is still occasionally found in early N.H.G. See Matth. xxviii. 3. A survival of this older usage is still preserved in certain constructions, especially after so and solch, where als can occasionally be found: so/geschwind als (or wie) möglich. This accounts for its use in 1. c and d above.

b. Also in connection with verbs to indicate likeness, similarity: Das Schiff flog dahin wie ein Pfeil. Karl spricht, wie er denkt, but Er sprach anders, als (1. b) er denkt. Er handelt immer so (often used in German, but not in English), wie es sein Vorteil erheischt.

*Note.* In early N.H.G. als (in M.H.G. also or simple so) was here still frequently used, and even later in the classical period. See Matth. xxii. 39. A survival of this former usage is still preserved in the construction mentioned in 1. e above.

c. Often in the combination wie wenn as when (or also als wenn after so or a negative) in comparisons which are represented as real: Es zischt, wie wenn Wasser sich mit Feuer mischt.

d. After the comparative. See 6 below under denn, also 1. a. Note 1 above.

e. After negatives. See 1. b. Note above.

f. After umgekehrt the opposite or reverse: Die Sache ist umgekehrt, wie man sie darstellt (Saran's *Deutsche Verslehre*, p. 48). Das logische Verhältnis zweier Sätze kann auch geradezu das umgekehrte werden wie das grammatische (Paul's *Deutsche Grammatik*, IV, p. 325).

3. In one case usage fluctuates between als and wie, with, perhaps, the preponderance on the side of wie, namely, in comparing different objects or actions as to the degree or intensity of certain qualities or forces. The grammarians demand als when degree, intensity, is to be expressed, and wie to express manner, likeness, quality. Degree: Er schreibt so schlecht als du. Manner: Er schreibt schlecht wie du. This distinction is a nice one theoretically, but it is not supported by practice, as can be seen in the best modern authors: Es gibt keinen anderen Menschen mehr auf Erden, der so allein ist wie ich (Raabe's *Zum wilden Mann*, chap. 5). The form als is regularly replaced by wie when another als immediately follows: Als Schriftsteller dagegen steht er (i.e. Cicero) vollkommen ebenso tief wie als Staatsmann (Mommsen's *Römische Geschichte*, V, chap. 12).

4. In the predicate, however, a sharp distinction is now made in choice language between wie and als. Here als is used in all appositional constructions and hence denotes identity, oneness with, while wie expresses mere similarity: Ich ehre ihn als meinen Vater I honor him as my father (which he is). Ich ehre ihn wie meinen Vater I honor him just as I would my father, or like my father. Sie sprachen miteinander als Freunde They were speaking together as friends (which they were). Sie sprachen miteinander wie Freunde (like friends, but they were not). Leonidas focht bei Thermopilä wie ein Löwe und fiel als ein Held. Friedrich Wilhelm der Vierte haßte die Revolution nicht bloß wie, sondern als die Sünde. For that class of appositional

constructions which merely add an explanatory word or words to a previous noun see 233. C

a The distinction between *als* and *wie* described above is quite commonly neglected in colloquial language, as *wie* here as elsewhere replaces *als*. *Ich wie dem Alter, Kerichen, ich hätt' all meinen Rotzpon selber getrunken vor meinem End'!!* (Halbe's *Mutter Erde*, 3, p. 157)

5 *Als* *wie* was frequently used in the classical period instead of *wie* after a positive and instead of *als* after a comparative, and is still so used in colloquial N G. *Wir finden wohl heute abend keine Statte in Amelungsborn, wo er besser ruhte als wie hier* (Raabe's *Odfeid*, chap. xxiv). Sometimes even in the higher forms of literature. *Selbst die Abendröte | schaut anders aus als wie zuvor* (Sudermann's *Die drei Reiterfedern*, 5, 2)

6 *Denn*, like English *than* (older form of *then*), was originally a co-ordinating conjunction. *Mein Bruder ist alter, dann* (older form of *denn*) [*komme*] *ich*. Altho *denn* *than* was very common as a subordinating conjunction after comparatives in early N H G, it is now in general much less used there, but it is not so rare as grammarians often represent. *mehr denn ein Menschenalter durch* (Raabe's *Hoxter und Corey*, chap. 13), *blühender denn je* (H. Hoffmann). *Es ist ein großer Bau, der mehr in die Breite denn in die Höhe geht* (Ernst Zahn's *Menschen*, II). See also Note 2 under 1 a above.

It is, moreover, quite frequently employed after the comparative instead of *als*, when there is already an *als* (the identifying *als* described in 4 above, or the *als* in the conjunction *als ob*) in the sentence. *Das betrachten wir eher als eine Tugend denn als einen Fehler* (G. Keller). *Letzterer sah mir mehr danach aus, als ob er eines Arztes bedürfe, denn als ob er selber studieren wolle* (Adelbert Meinhardt). *Wie* is perhaps still more common here especially in colloquial language. *Als sie wahrnahm, daß ihr Besuch mehr als Störung wie als Freude empfunden wurde* (Fontane's *Effi*, chap. 9). *Viel höher wie als Epiker steht Hebbel als Lyriker* (Adolf Bartels).

a *Denn* was common in early N H G after a negative or a question, or after *ander-*, and survives in poetic language and choice prose. *Bei dir gilt nichts denn Gnad allein* (Luther). *Der Wind hatte seine Stimme wiederum erhoben, doch nicht so laut denn zuvor* (Raabe's *Else von der Tanne*). *Der Hausherr neckte bei aller Zartheit seine Frau so lustig und unbefangenen, als wäre niemand zugegen denn ein alter Freund!* (O. Ernst's *Semper der Jungling*, p. 120). *Wem wohl, denn ihr (i.e. der Frau), verdankt er des Liedes Keim?* (Otto Brahm in *Die neue deutsche Rundschau*, Dec. 1906 p. 1420). *Noch jetzt erscheint der Sohn nur im Traume anders nie denn frisch und blühend* (Uhland).

7 After comparatives we sometimes in early N H G find the form *weder* (235. A. a) *than*, lit. *not the one of the two*. *Denn ein Nachbar ist besser in der Nähe | weder ein Bruder in der ferne* (Prov. xxv. 22). *at hand is better, gewiß viel brave*. *He is taller nor I*.

8 In Austrian and Bavarian dialects *was* is found after a comparative or a negative instead of *als*. *Er ist grosser was I* = *Er ist größer als ich*. *Nix was lauter Guats* = *nichts als lauter Gutes*.

9 In certain Swiss dialects *wann* (= M H G *nunwan except*) is found after a comparative or a negative instead of *als*. *großer wann I*, *niemand wann I*. In older German this usage was not uncommon in the literary language.

## CONJUNCTIONS USED AS CO-ORDINATING OR SUBORDINATING.

240 The following conjunctions may introduce either co-ordinate or subordinate propositions, defining each as to the period used and the meaning.

*und* meaning 'and', used as a co-ordinating conjunction with the meaning *for* and also quite common as a subordinating conjunction with the meaning *since, as*, now only employed in the former function and meaning, *da* then, when, *insofern*, *insofern* thus far, so far as, *in'dessen*, *unter'dessen* a little earlier in the period used as co-ordinating conjunctions with the meanings *in the meantime, however, yet* and as subordinating conjunctions in the meaning *while, while on the other hand*, now in the latter function *indessen* is less common than formerly and *unterdessen* little used, *while* in the former function they are so differentiated that *indessen* is used in the meaning *however* *yet* as illustrated in 236 and *unterdessen* in the meaning *while* in the mean time, *while* in the mean time, now that, so so nating conjunction in this meaning both as former and as latter anders ging er ich dich versprochen; nun mußt hast, mußt du Wort halten. er Straaten, der es horte, in die Braut telegraphieren des Obersten Rates soll L. Hermann zu Aachmann Litauens aufgetordert werden, widrigenfalls mit Repressalien

gedroht wird (*Die Woche*, Oct. 4, 1919). Gib dem Kinde das Spielzeug, sonst fängt es an zu weinen. Die kleinen Leiden mit der aufdringlichen Krapüle und was damit zusammenhängt, gehen auch bei mir immer fort, allein es lohnt am Ende nicht der Mühe, lange davon zu sprechen, ansonst man ja doppelte Beschwernis hat (G. Keller an T. Storm, 5. Juni 1882).

a. *Origin of Subordinating Conjunctions.* In the oldest period of language development a formal expression to indicate the subordination of one proposition to another—hypotaxis—was unknown. The mere placing of one proposition alongside another—parataxis—was and is even still often sufficient with the aid of the context to indicate the grammatic relations: Beeile dich, es wird spät Hurry up, it is getting late, in hypotactical form, Beeile dich, da es spät wird Hurry up, as it is getting late. Hypotaxis has had within historic times a rich development becoming an ever more accurate expression of thought by means of its finely differentiated subordinating conjunctions. Most subordinating conjunctions were originally modifiers of the principal proposition. Thus Ich sehe, daß (the same word as the demonstrative das nom. and acc., from which it is first distinguished in orthography in the middle of the 16th century) er zufrieden ist originated in Ich sehe das: er ist zufrieden. Thus also Ich tue es nicht, ohne daß ich Ihre Erlaubnis habe originated in Ich tue es nicht ohne das: ich habe Ihre Erlaubnis. In both examples das is acc. neut., but later when it passed over into the subordinate clause the distinct feeling of its case passed away, and it, in a number of conjunctions, passed as a connective without inflection, the form das, later daß, standing even after a prep. governing some other case than the acc., as in außer daß *except*, während daß *while*, anstatt daß *instead*, or after a verb which governs the gen.: Ich erinnere mich nicht, daß ich dies gesagt habe. In other conjunctions the proper case of the original demonstrative still stands, as in nachdem *after*, seitdem *since*, indem *while*. In the same manner the demonstratives der, die, das were removed from the principal to the subordinate proposition and thus became relative pronouns. Compare 154. *Note.* Similarly ehe and bevor, originally adverbs with the meaning *before* (i.e. *previously*) standing in the principal proposition, were removed to the subordinate clause and became subordinating conjunctions with the meaning *before*, so that Ich war zufrieden ehe or bevor: er kam became Ich war zufrieden, ehe or bevor er kam. Notice that in all these examples the subordinating conjunction is a word that stood originally in the principal proposition pointing to the following proposition into which it finally merged. On the other hand, the co-ordinating conjunctions in the above list stood originally where they still stand, i.e. in the second proposition pointing backward to the preceding proposition: Er war krank; trotzdem ging er aus. In this position das is still found in its original function and form: Er ist zufrieden, das sehe ich, but Ich sehe, daß er zufrieden ist. The two propositions connected by a co-ordinating conjunction or a demonstrative pointing backward to the first proposition are both independent, but they are somewhat differentiated from simple parataxis by the use in the second proposition of a connecting word which shows a relation between the two propositions and thus indicates an intermediate stage of development between parataxis and hypotaxis—co-ordination. Compare 267. 4. The subordinating conjunction denn *than*, used after comparatives, was once co-ordinating. See 239. 6.

On the other hand, a few subordinating conjunctions stood originally in the subordinate clause as they were once relative adverbs standing in descriptive relative clauses (271. II. 7): Fliehst aus Babel, damit ein jglicher seine Seele errette (Jer. li. 6) = womit ein jeder seine Seele erretten möge. The idea of purpose here was at first indicated by the subjunctive of the verb in the relative clause, but later this idea became associated with damit, which in the relative function had elsewhere been replaced by womit and hence had ceased to be felt as a relative and began to be construed as a subordinating conjunction of purpose. Also the subordinating conjunctions da *when*, als *when*, so *when*, if, have developed out of relative adverbs, which are themselves developments out of older demonstratives which once stood in the principal proposition.

## INTERJECTIONS.

241. An interjection is a single particle, or some other part of speech used as such, or a combination of particles, or a fragment of a sentence used to give vent to some sudden outburst of feeling or passion, or to give expression to some intimation of will, or on the other hand to imitate some sound in nature. The simplest interjections, such as *oi*!, *au*!, belong to the oldest forms of spoken language and represent the most primitive type of the sentence. Compare 250. a. In order to facilitate an understanding of the more idiomatic interjections illustrative sentences are given under the several words. A few of the most common or most difficult here follow in alphabetical order, others must be looked for in the dictionary:

aber nein! expressing surprise.

ach! expressing pain, anger, regret, displeasure.

ach was! pooh! or bah!, expressing disdain.

ah! expressing joy, admiration, surprise.

also doch! Well, I never should have expected that!

ätsch or eetsch! teasing expression of joy at the loss or discomfiture of another.

au! or autsch! expression of physical pain.

bauz! imitating a falling body: Bauz, da liegt er!

bei'leibe nicht = um Gottes willen nicht!

kein Bein! (colloq.) not at all!

be'wahre! by no means!

nein, ich bitte Sie! expressing surprise.

bravo! or gut! hear! hear!, sign of approval, often in contrast to hört! hört!, which indicates disapproval, or is employed by one party in an assembly to call attention to



something just said which they believe to be unfavorable to their opponents  
 brrr! whoa! (to stop a horse)  
 bums, imitating a falling body Bums, da liegt er!  
 dalli (colloq.) = flink! quick!  
 Gehen Sie mir doch mit solchem Zeug! rot!  
 gutiger Himmel! good heavens!  
 i du meine Gute! good gracious!  
 holterdipolter, a heavy dull noise Das ging holterdipolter (in great haste and noisily)  
 hoppla, or hoppsa, or hoppsassa! excl. when some one stumbles or lets something fall  
 hurra! (or hurra) hurrah! hurra hoch! hip, hip hip hurrah!  
 husch! expression of rapidity Husch! fort war der Vogel!  
 keine Idee, or kein Gedanke! not at all!  
 i wo! by no means!  
 juch hei! or juch'hei! hurrah!  
 kladdera datsch, imitating a falling body  
 knacks, imitating the breaking of some brittle substance Knacks, sagte es, da war der Henkel an der Tasse abgebrochen  
 ja Kuchen! (colloq.) It's all imagination!  
 man ja nicht! in no case!  
 na! unusually frequent expressing surprise  
 displeasure an urgent admonition to do something desired by the speaker or en-

couraging words to someone to proceed  
 Wer kommt mit? Na (surprise)? Keiner? (What no one?) Na, das fehlte noch! Well!  
 That caps the climax! Na, vorwärts!  
 Often used when the speaker thinks that something confirms or soon will confirm his ideas words Na, das sagte ich Ihnen ja gleich! Used when one forms unwillingly a resolution which he cannot well avoid  
 Na, ich will denn nur weiter gehen To express doubt as to the outcome Na, na, wenn es nur gut auslauft! A warning  
 Na, na, na, nicht so hitzig! Sharp rebuke  
 na, na! Appeasingly Na, na, es war nicht böse gemeint!  
 na nu, strengthened na, expressing surprise pity indignation disappointment impatience Nanu, was bedeutet denn das?  
 na ob or und ob! in responses = well, I should think so! rather!  
 ne, very frequent = nein  
 oi oh! O! oh!  
 pfui! for shame! shame on you!  
 pst! or scht! sh! hush!  
 Quatsch! bosh!  
 schön! or gut! all right! indicating assent  
 schwups, expressing suddenness Schwups! hatte er eine Ohrfeige

## PART III

### WORD-FORMATION.

**242.** Words are divided with reference to their formation into three classes: Primitives, Derivatives, and Compounds.

#### PRIMITIVES.

**243.** Words were in most cases once longer than now. Altho we know almost nothing about the subject we often speak of the first syllable of these older words as the root, of the part next to the root as the root suffix, of both root and root suffix as the stem, of the final element as the inflectional ending, and of them all together as a word. As our ancestors in time lost all feeling for the real meaning of the different elements of each word they slighted them, so that these words have come down to us much reduced in form, often worn away to a single syllable or even a single vowel. We to-day have only feeling for the word as a whole. From these old words new words may be formed by the addition of prefixes or suffixes. These new words thus formed may in turn become the stems from which by the addition of other suffixes still other words may be formed. Words which have sprung up directly from the root syllable and now have no other suffixes than the usual inflectional endings, and which are themselves the stems from which other words by the aid of suffixes spring, are called primitives. The strong verbs of the present and past periods of the language form the primitive stems from which a large number of German words have sprung. In these primitives it is the consonants that give consistency to the roots, for the root vowels themselves differ in the different tenses: **singen, sang, gesungen.** This difference of vowel, called gradation, is due to a difference of accent in an earlier period. See **26. D** and **197. A.** It is no longer possible to tell what the original root-vowel was. Thus the original root has thrown up different stems which have become remarkably fruitful. The different classes of the gradating verbs are treated in articles **198-205.** The numerous nouns and adjectives which have been formed from the same roots as these strong verbs are, like the verbal stems themselves, in direct association with the root and are also true primitives. Usually, however, such nouns and adjectives are associated directly with strong verbs, as the original roots cannot be ascertained, and the strong verbs are the oldest related forms which can shed light on their real meaning. For fuller explanation of this point see **197. A. a. Note.** As certain primitive nouns and adjectives have the same gradation as the related strong verbs, they have been treated in detail under the different gradation classes (beginning at art. **198**) rather than here. A number of primitive nouns and adjectives have no relation to any existing strong verb, but can be traced back to verbs found in earlier periods of German or some older related language. Some primitives, however, cannot thus be traced back to verbal forms. Also a number of weak verbs must be regarded as primitives.

*a.* Next in nature to these primitives are those derivatives with endings that have no appreciable meaning. Such are the substantives formed by adding *e, de, te, d, dt, ft, st, t, or tt* to a primitive stem, and adjectives in *el, er, en, t*: *Grube* ditch, *Stand* condition, *Stadt* city, *Gruft* tomb, *eitel* vain, *bitter* bitter, *eben* level, *dicht* close.

*Note.* Such words have a change of *b* to *f* and *g* or *h* to *ch* before the suffix *t*: *treiben* to drive—*Trift* pasture, *schlagen* to strike—*Schlacht* battle, *geschehen* to happen—*Geschichte* history. See also **40. 1. b. Note 1.** After *-l* and *-n* we often find *st*, and after *-m* the ending *ft* instead of simple *t*: *Geschwulst* swelling, from *schwellen* to swell; *Gunst* from *gönnen*, *Kunst* from *können*, *Gespinnst* (spinnen); *Ankunft* from *ankommen*, *Vernunft* from *vernehmen*.



nouns denoting persons or other living beings: **Bote** messenger, **Bürge** bondsman, **Erbe** heir, **Gefährte** companion, **Geselle** fellow, comrade, **Schütze** marksman, **Hase** hare, &c. Some have lost the distinguishing suffixal ending in the nom.: **Schultheiß** (gen. **des Schultheißen**), **Herr** (gen. **des Herrn**), &c. In many words **-e** has been replaced by the foreign suffix **-er** (see 5 below), which is a great favorite: (Gothic) **fiskja**, (O.H.G.) **fiscari**, (N.H.G.) **Fischer**, &c. Formerly **-e** was also found in many weak masc. nouns denoting lifeless things, of which a few traces are left: **Name**, &c. For the history of these nouns denoting things see 68, 2nd paragraph.

In older periods three suffixes were much used to denote living beings, namely **-e**, **-el**, and **-er**, each of which was a live force in the language. Of these **-er** has been gradually replacing the other two. The suffix **-el** is now least common, and its former meaning is no longer vividly felt. The **-e** is best preserved in names of peoples, where it competes with **-er**: **Preuße**, **Russe**, &c., but **Engländer**, **Spanier**, &c. In Swiss dialect **-i** competes with these three suffixes. See 8. 1. *f* and Note 3 below.

2. Accented **ei**, **ie** (i:), and unaccented **ien** (iən), different forms of the same foreign suffix, from which are made abstract and concrete substantives. In **Abtei** the **ei** goes back to M.H.G. *eie*, but elsewhere it corresponds to M.H.G. *īe*, which in N.H.G. passed over into **ei**. Later, especially in foreign nouns, the French form was restored to some of the words: **Theorei** (Klopstock, Gellert), now **Theorie**. In a few cases both suffixes remain: **Melodie** or sometimes in poetry for sake of a rhyme **Melodei**. In one word differentiation of meaning has taken place: **Partei**, party, faction; **Partie** parcel, match (in matrimony), game, party, picnic.

The suffix **-ei** does not usually mutate the stem vowel. However, as a number of the derivatives to which it is added already have a mutated vowel, as in the case of **Färber**, **tändeln**, &c., mutation has in several instances spread by analogy: **Sämerei**, **Büberei**, **Andächtelei**, &c.

The following general points with regard to their use may be of service:

1. The form **ei** is found:

a. Affixed to derivatives in **-er**, which denote persons engaged in a certain business or occupation. Here the **ei** denotes the idea of a trade, business, art, profession, or an act or state of the class of people in question: **Färberei** the dyeing business, **Gerberei** the tanning business, **Verrätere** treachery, **Überläuferei** desertion. These words often take on concrete meaning, and then denote the building where the business is carried on: **Färberei** dyeing establishment, **Druckerei** printing-house, **Bäckerei** bakery, &c.

*Note.* The suffix **ei** is, after the analogy of the above words in **-er**, sometimes added to the plurals in **-er**, as **Kinderei** childishness, **Abgöttere** idolatry, &c. This frequent reoccurrence of **ei** after **-er** has led to the erroneous idea that the suffix is **-erei**: **Büberei** knavery, **Schurkerei** rascality, **Sklaverei** slavery, **Pfafferei** or **Pfäfferei**, &c. In a few cases only is **-ei** added here directly to the stem or to a noun not ending in **-er**: **Abtei** abbey, **Dechanei** deanery, **Pfarrei** parish, parsonage, **Propstei** provost's residence or office, **Vogtei** prefecture, **Narrei** (early N.H.G.) or now **Narretei** tomfoolery, which has resulted from the mingling of the older **Narrei** with **Narrente** or **Narrente** (early N.H.G.) or now **Narretei** (Fausl, I. 5798), **Armutei** (Walther Siegfried's *Um der Heimat willen*, IV; S.G. dialect, sometimes also in the literary language) cramped financial condition, poverty, **Auskunftei** intelligence bureau. However, in student slang **ei** is still (not so much tho as formerly) in some university towns added to the name of a family, to indicate a house where students live: **Schiller wohnte zu Jena in einer Schrammei und Hoffmann von Fallersleben in einer Knabei**. Also the beer-halls where the different academic societies meet take this suffix: **die Beckei**, **Oppelei**, &c.

b. Affixed to verbs, to denote the abstract idea of repetition or prolongation of the activity expressed by the verb: **eine große Graberei** (Frenssen's *Jörn Uhl*, chap. 26) extensive excavations, **Liebelei** love-affair, flirtation, **Plackerei** pestering, **Plauderei** chatting, chat, **Neckerei** teasing, **Tändelei** toying.

*Note.* Only **ei** is added to stems in **-el** and **-er**, but monosyllabic stems affix **-erei**: **Ziererei** affectation from *sich zieren*. The noun **Andächtelei** (see *d* below) *false devotion* affixes **-elei** after the analogy of the verbs in **-eln**.

c. Sometimes **-ei** has collective force: **Reiterei** cavalry, **Bücherei** library, **die ganze Treibe** (Fontane) the whole family or tribe of the Treibels.

Sometimes we find in **-el** the combined force of *c* and *d*: **Diese Treibe** (Fontane's *Frau Jenny*, XVI) This whole Treibel business (striving to get into the Treibel family by marriage) was a mistake.

If the stem of the word does not end in **-el** or **-er**, the suffix here is **-erei**: **die ganze Felgentreuerei** (Fontane) the whole Felgentreu family.

d. In the uses *a* and *b* and sometimes *c*, the *ei* very often has a disparaging force: *Juristerei* business of a pettifogger, *Lauferei* much unpleasant running about, *Leserei* indiscriminate reading, *Reimerei* poem without poetic merit containing jingling rhymes, *Ausländerei* predilection for everything foreign, affectation of foreign manners, *Engländerei* Anglomania, *Rückwärtseerei* reactionary movement, retrogression, *Schieberei* profiteering by selling things clandestinely in disregard of governmental regulations and restrictions, *Preistreiberei* forcing prices up for sordid purposes in contrast to *Preisabbau* bringing excessive prices down to a healthy level. Und daß das Mädel bei dieser ewigen *Warterei* vielleicht um die schönsten Partien kommt, das kümmert Sie wohl gar nicht? (Beyerlein's *Damon Othello*, 1, 8). The *Ge* — *e* (see 83. *b*) formations have a somewhat similar meaning, but more distinctly abstract and verbal force, and cannot be used in the plural, as can those in *-ei*, as in *Zu allem*, was er sonst . . . auf sich genommen, nun auch noch die Komiteesitzungen wegen des Kirchenbasars und die Laufereien von einem zum andern, um eine allgemeine Beteiligung der gebildeten Kreise zuwege zu bringen (Telmann's *Wahrheit*, XI).

e. In a few geographical terms; see 3 below.

2. The form *ie* is used mostly in foreign words, especially in a number of scientific and geographical terms: *Theologie*, *Geographie*, *Geologie*, *Picardie*, *Normandie*, &c. Also in the arts: *Stenographie*, *Lithographie*, *Photographie*, &c.

3. The form *ien* is found in a number of geographical terms: *Spanien* (pro. *špa:'niən*), *Italien*, *Sizilien*, &c., but *Picardie*, *Normandie*, &c. These foreign names in *-ien* have been conformed to the German model *Preußen* Prussia, &c., the *ie* becoming *ien*. In a few geographical names the form is *ei*: *Türkei*, *Lombardei*, *Walachei*, *Mandschurei*, *Mongolei*.

3. *el* masc., less commonly fem. and neut., suffix with the general idea of a close association, which has developed different groups of meanings more or less distinct: (1) the idea of a thing in close association with an activity, i.e. an instrument: *Hebel* (from *heben* to lift) lever, *Meißel* (from older *meißen* to hew, cut, now no longer in use) chisel, *Stempel* (L.G. and M.G. form of H.G. *Stempfel* from a L.G. verb corresponding to H.G. *stampfen* to stamp) stamp, pestle, *Stachel* (from *stechen* to prick) prick, spine, goad; (2) a person or living being in close association with an activity: *Krüppel* (originally a L.G. form with *pp* instead of H.G. *pf* from an older L.G. verb corresponding to older H.G. *krüpfen* to bend) cripple, *Gimpel* (from older *gumpen* to hop, jump) bullfinch, fig. block-head, dunce; (3) a thing in close association with a thing: *Knöchel* (from *Knochen* bone) knuckle, ankle, *Ärmel* (from *Arm* arm) sleeve, *die Eichel* (from *Eiche* oak) acorn, *die* (formerly *der*) *Angel* (from older *Ange* sharp point) fish-hook; (4) a person in close relation with a thing: *Tölpel* (from older Dutch *dorper*, where *dorp* corresponds to H.G. *Dorf* village) lout, rustic, dunce, lit. villager; (5) a person in close association with a person, a large productive group illustrated in 8. 1. *f*. Note 3 below. For important additional matter see 1. B. (2nd par.) above.

In late M.H.G. this suffix lost its productivity as a form to indicate instruments, as in (1). It was replaced in new formations by *-er*. See 5. *c* below. Much earlier than this, even in O.H.G. *-er* began to crowd out *-el* in its functions to denote persons in a close relation to an activity, as in (2).

Note. The *-el* of these words . . .

4. *en* or sometimes only *e* or even disappearing entirely, usually a masc. suffix, less commonly neut. It is of different origin in different words, and has to-day no appreciable meaning. It is used in words which denote:

- An instrument: *Spaten* spade, *Bogen* bow, *Haken* hook, &c.
- A place for storing or securing something: *Laden* store, *Schuppen* shed, *Hafen* harbor, &c.

c. A part of the body: **Magen** stomach, **Rücken** back, **Daumen** thumb, &c.  
 d. An abstract idea in a few cases: **Glaube(n)** faith, **Friede(n)** peace, **Schreck** or **Schrecken** fright.

e. Various other things: **Same** or **Samen** seed, **Ost** or **Osten** east, &c.

f. It forms the ending of many geographical names. See 88. 1.

5. **-er** (O.H.G. *āri*, from Latin *ārius* = English *er* or the latinized form *ar*, as in *baker*, *scholar*), masc. suffix, used to form appellations of male beings. Compare 1. B. 2nd paragraph. Mutation of the stem vowel is the rule when the suffix is added directly to the stem-word, but there are some exceptions: **Bäcker**, &c.; **Dampfer**, **Frager**, **Maler**, &c.; both forms without differentiation in **der Schlächter** or **Schlachter** *butcher*; with differentiation in case of **der Schläger** *beater, swordsman, sword, kicker* (of a horse) and **der Schlager** *something that takes*, of a play or a book, as in **Das Buch ist ein Schlager**. When **-er** is preceded by another suffix mutation is not so common, perhaps, as non-mutation: **Stamm(e)ler**, &c., but also **Pförtner**, &c. When the **-er** is added to names of cities and places a few irregularities occur in the form of the stem, which are the same as for the proper adjectives described in II. 10. 1. b.

Note 2. The leading points as to use are as follows:

a. Affixed to substantives it indicates that the person either manufactures the article or thing named in the stem of the substantive or is associated with it in a business or professional way: **Hafner** potter, **Gärtner** gardener, **Sänger** singer, **Schauspieler** actor (on the stage).

b. Affixed to verbal stems it indicates either that the person is temporarily engaged in the activity expressed in the verbal stem, or is engaged therein in a business or professional way: **der Leser** the reader, **Bettler** beggar, **Schneider** tailor, &c. It is also used of animals: **Weidenbohrer** caterpillar of the goat-moth, &c. The **-er** is added to verbal stems indicating an involuntary activity in order to denote a single manifestation of such involuntary activity: **Seufzer** sigh, **Schluchzer** sob, especially in colloquial speech, as in **Rülpser** belch, etc. From this starting point **-er** has developed into a productive suffix to indicate an activity that is conceived as a unit, i.e. not indefinitely prolonged but as an individual performance or act: **Jodler** yodling-song, **Hopser** hop-dance, **Walzer** waltz, **Spritzer** (ein Regen, der nur ein wenig spritzt) shower, **Abstecher** excursion, little trip (einen Abstecher nach B. machen), **Jauchzer** shout, cheer, **Treffer** lucky hit, **Fehler** mistake, **Schnitzer** blunder, **Puffer** thump, nudge, **Diener** bow (einem einen Diener machen), &c.

As in case of **-ig** in II. 9. 1. b below **-er** is sometimes employed to form derivatives from compounds made from a syntactical group of words: **Befehlshaber** = **den Befehl haben** + **er**; **Eckensteher** = **an der Ecke stehen** + **er**; **Langschläfer** = **lange schlafen** + **er**.

Note. After the analogy of the numerous derivatives from stems in *el* and *en* in *a* and *b* above, as **Bettler** beggar and **Hafner** potter, the suffix *er* is lengthened to *ler* and *ner* in a large number of words with stems not ending in *el*, *en*: **Dörfler** (now more common than the older form **Dörfer**) *villager* from *Dorf*, **Gegenfüßler** *antipode*, **Hinterwäldler** *backwoodsman*, **Kriegervereinler** (Raabe's *Villa Schonow*, v) *member of a club of veteran soldiers*, **Künstler** *artist*, **Neusprachler** *one who devotes himself to the scientific study of modern languages*, **Wissenschaftler** or **Wissenschaftler** *scientific investigator, man of science*, **Altertumskundler** *archeologist*, **Kriegsgewinnler** *one who has made money out of the war*, **Radler** *cyclist*, **Sommerfrischler** *visitor at a summer resort*, **Tischler** *joiner*, &c.; **Glöckner** *bell-ringer* from *Glocke*, **Hartner** *harpist*, &c. **Lügner** *liar* does not belong here, as 't is derived from the older form **Lügen** (still in use in early N.H.G.), now **Lüge**. There is usually no disparaging sense in **-ler**, as is sometimes claimed. If such force exists it lies in the meaning of the stem word, as in **Zuchthäusler** (*convict*)—**Zuchthaus** (*penitentiary*) + **ler**.

c. Figuratively **er** is often applied to names of lifeless objects: **Wecker** alarm clock, **Bohrer** gimlet, **Schraubenzieher** screw-driver, **Verflüssiger** condenser, **Trockner** drying apparatus, **Eindecker** monoplane, **Zweidecker** biplane, **Bagger** dredger, **Operngucker** opera-glass, &c. In a number of words it indicates an object that is affected by an action: **Ableger** or **Absenker** *layer, runner*, lit. a shoot that has been bent to one side and sunk in the ground for the purpose of rooting it, **Hinterlader** *breech-loader*, lit. a gun that is loaded behind, **Wälzer** *heavy, unwieldy book*, lit. a book that must be rolled when it is moved, &c.

d. It forms a few masculines corresponding to feminines in *e*: **Tauber** or **Täuber** male pigeon — **Taube** pigeon, **Witwer** widower — **Witwe** widow; **Puter** (N.G.) turkey-cock — **Pute** (N.G.) turkey-hen.

*e* Affixed to names of cities, countries, and continents, it indicates a resident or subject of the place in question *Romer* Roman, *Irlander* Irishman, *Euro'paer* inhabitants of Europe In a number of words the *-er* is usually added to a shorter stem than the one found in the name of the place *Barmer* inhabitant of *Barmen*, *Binger* inhabitant of *Bingen*, *Bremer* inhabitant of *Bremen*, *Emder* inhabitant of *Emden*, &c For explanation see II 10 1 *b*  
*Note 2* below

In the lengthened form *-r'aner* it is often added to a name of a person to indicate a follower, disciple of *Kantianer*, *Goethuaner*, *Wagnerianer*, *Ritschlianer*, &c

*Weimarsche* instead of *Weimarer*, &c

*f* In a number of foreign and in colloquial language a few German words the French form of this suffix accented *-ier* (n) are found instead of *-er* *Offiz'ier* officer, *Juwe'lier* jeweler. This same *-ier* is also found in the form of *eer*, as in *pioneer* In a few words *-ier* is added to the foreign *-ier* *Ka'ssier* or less commonly *Ka'ssierer* cashier *Tape'zier* or *Tape'zierer* paper hanger The *-er* indicates that the noun has been brought into relation to the corresponding German form of the verb *kassieren*, *tapezieren* In a few cases the French pronunciation of the suffix has been retained, as in *Portier* (pro *pon'tie*.) door keeper, *Ban'quier* banker In a few instances the French suffix with French pronunciation is added to German stems *Kneipier* toper, beer house keeper, &c In a large number of foreign words Latin or (unaccented in the sing and accented in the pl) and its French form *eur* correspond to German *er*: *der Pro'fessör professor* (pl *Profe'ssören*), *Redak'teur* editor, &c

*6 1 in* (usually causing mutation), fem suffix, used to form fem from masc appellations denoting a rank, dignity, occupation *Graf'in* countess, *Graf* count, *Pfarrer'in* pastor's wife For use with titles see 92 6

*a* Words ending in *e* drop it before adding *in*, as in *Fran'zösin* French lady, from *Fran'zöse* Words ending in *erer* may drop one of the *er*'s before adding *in*, as in *Zauber'in* sorceress, from *Zauberer*

*b* In popular language *-in* is often weakened to *-en* or *-n* *die Buchholzen* Mrs *Buchholz* *die Frau Junkern* Mrs *Junker* See 92 6

*c* In North German dialect *-in* is often replaced by *-sche*: *Sundersche* = *Sunderin*), &c It is most commonly found after masculine stems in *-er* as here It is derived from Latin *-issa* (as in *abbatissa abbess*) thru the French, and is thus of the same origin as English *ess*, which also came thru the French For the use of *-sche* in names see 92 6 (2nd par)

*2* Most appellations of male persons have corresponding forms for female persons only a few words as *Gast guest* and most nouns in *-ling* have the same form for both genders *Kaiser* emperor, *Kaiserin* empress, *Lehrer* teacher, *Lehrerin* lady teacher But *Sie ist unser Gast* *Sie ist der Liebling aller*. In the use of the feminine form German goes very much farther than English See, however, 253, III 2 *a* for other exceptions to the rule

*7. ing* (related to *ung* in 15 1 below) now commonly written *ling* (cognate with Eng *ling* as in *sapling*), except in the cases mentioned in *a* and *b*, usually a masc suffix whether it be applied to males or females sometimes however, in the form *lingin* with reference to the latter, as *die britische Junglingin* (Raabe's *Pechlin*, II, chap 11), usually causing mutation if affixed directly to the stem It is affixed to nouns, verbs adjectives and in a few cases to other parts of speech, to form designations of persons or other living beings, less commonly

of things, with the meaning of intimate relation or association: **Säugling** child at the breast (so called from its close association with sucking), **Säuerling** mineral water with a sour taste, **Ankömmling** new-comer, **Nädling** (Walther Siegfried's *Gritli Brunnenmeister*; S.G., sometimes used in the literary language) a piece of thread cut off from the spool and drawn thru the eye of the needle for use in sewing, **Häuptling** one who is associated with others in the relation of head, chieftain, **Günstling** one who receives favors, favorite, **Peinling** (H. Hoffmann's *Rittmeister*, p. 204) one who gives; causes pain, pedant, **Lüstling** one who seeks the gratification of his senses, sensualist, **Gründling**, groundling (a kind of fish that stays upon the bottom of a body of water), **Hänfling** a bird that feeds upon hemp-seed, linnet, **Häftling** prisoner; derivatives from verbs sometimes with active, sometimes with passive force, as **Eindringling** *intruder*, lit. *one who intrudes*, **Sträfling** *convict*, lit. *one who is being punished*; **Frühling** spring, **Neuling** novice, **Finsterling** a friend of darkness and ignorance, obscurant. From the idea of a close relation to something or in a close association with someone in the work of helping, teaching comes the idea of littleness, youth, dependency: **Sämling** seedling, **Setzling** small rooted plant for setting out, young fish to be put into a pond for the purpose of propagation, **Schößling** shoot, **Nestling** young bird, **Däumling** hop-o'-my-thumb, **Pflegling** ward, **Schützling** protégé, **Zögling** pupil, **Lehrling** apprentice, &c. In dialect this idea of littleness and that of the closely related conception of endearment are more distinctly and commonly associated with the older form **-ing**. These ideas developed in Mecklenburg and Hither Pomerania in the course of the last century out of the older idea of association as found in names of animals, as **Brüning** (= **Pferdchen**), originally from association with the color of the horse. The idea of endearment naturally became associated with **-ing** when it was applied to a pet animal and the idea of littleness as naturally arose when it was used with little pets. See 8. 1. f below. Also in the literary language the diminutive force in **-ling** is so strongly felt that an additional diminutive suffix is rarely added. In Old Norse and in modern English this suffix also has in a number of cases pure diminutive force, and the same is true of the corresponding Latin and Greek *k*-suffix.

A number of words in **-ling** have a depreciatory meaning: **Mietling** hireling, **Eindringling** intruder, **Nachäffling** one who apes another's ways, dress, **Auswürfling** scum, one cast out from human society, **Schädling** one who is a menace, a source of harm to society, &c. This **-ling**, from association with such words as have in themselves a depreciatory meaning or from the general idea of dependency developed in the suffix, often assumes depreciatory force and has become productive especially in this sense: **Höfling** courtier, **Dichterling** poetaster, **Günstling** one supported by the favor of a king, lord, &c., **Witzling** would-be-wit, **Emporkömmling** upstart, parvenu, **Einseitling** (H. Seidel's *Lang*, *lang ist's her*) one-sided, narrow-minded person, &c. Sometimes in a milder, humorous sense: **Feistling** (Raabe's *Stopfkuchen*, p. 129) fat fellow, 'fatty.'

a. The idea of close association early led to the idea of origin and gave rise to many patronymics as seen in the names of old Germanic tribes and families: **Thüringer**, **Merowinger**, **Karolinger**, &c. There are many modern family names that end in **-ing**, as **Henning**, **Grüning**. Corresponding to these names in **-ing** are also names in **s** or **sen**: **Ebers** (gen.) = **Ebers Sohn**, **Jansen** = **Jahns Sohn**, **Schmitz** = **Schmidts Sohn**. The Latin genitive ending *i* often occurs here instead of German **-s**: **Eberti** = **Eberz**. Instead of the genitive here the diminutive **-lein** (or **-lin**, **-le**, &c.) or **-ke** (Low German = **-lein**) may be added, or the adjective **klein** prefixed: **Böcklin**, **Gödecke**, **Kleinschmidt**, &c. Many names of places are derived from the family names in **-ing**, usually ending in **-ingen**, the **en** being the dat. pl. ending after the prep. **zu** understood (see also 88. 1): **Tübingen** city of **Tübingen**, **Göttingen**, &c.; also in shortened form, **-ing**, especially in Bavaria: **Freising**. In some sections of the Midland, as in Thuringia and Hesse **-ungen** is also found here, usually added to a noun designating a thing, thus indicating a close association with the thing in question: **Salzungen**, &c. In case of certain ruling families **-er** is added to **-ing**: **Karolinger** descendant of **Karl der Große**, **Carlovingian**, &c. This is a survival of older usage, which employed here **linger** interchangeably with **-ing**. Luther still uses both **Fremdling** and **Fremdinger** (Luke xvii. 18).

b. The earlier form of the suffix was **-ing**. As it very commonly stood after **al**, **il**, **ul**, the preceding **l** became associated with it, and finally the lengthened form **-ling** supplanted it in



above

8 1 *lein* (OH G *ilin*) and *chen* (earlier *ichin*, cognate with Eng *kin* as in *lambkin*), neuter diminutive suffixes different developments of the older simple form *-in* (see *f* Note 3 below) affixed to nouns usually causing mutation when they follow in accented syllable. The former is the original H G suffix, which in different dialectic forms is still used everywhere in the South in familiar language (see *f* below). In the form of *lein* and *lin* (more common in his later writings) it was employed by Luther in his translation of the Bible and elsewhere as the more dignified form, in preference to the M G *-chen*, but it has only limited use to day in the literary language and only in the form of *lein*, being largely confined to a beautiful style and a few common words with endings that are difficult to unite with *chen*, as *Buchlein*, *Fischlein*, &c. Modern authors however, do not seem to regard a number of these combinations as harsh. *die Fischchen* (Spielhagen's *Frei geboren* p 15). After stems in *ch* and *g* it is common to employ a double diminutive formed by adding *chen* to *-el* (the shortened form of *-lein*). *Buchelchen* booklet, *Sachelchen* little matter pretty little thing, *gimcrack*, *Wagelchen* little wagon.

In the eighteenth century *-chen*, the diminutive suffix of the middle portion of the Midland, replaced *-lein* in the language of the prose writers Lessing, Wieland Herder, and others who had taken the Upper Saxon dialect as their standard. Gradually *-chen* became established in the literary language in general and the familiar language of the North in particular, while under the influence of the poets Goethe, Burger, Voss, and others *-lein* secured a permanent place of honor in poetry.

a If a word ends in *e*, *el*, or *en* diminutive  
suffix. *Bubchen* from *Bube*, *Ni* *arten*, &c.  
b The diminutive endings a  
affixed to plurals in *er*, and also  
*chen* or *Kinderchen* (see *f* Note  
slightly or in a tone of friendly familiarity *die Kind*  
spoken of

c The mutation is often dropped especially when the suffix expresses irony and in case of proper names where the suffix has more the force of endearment than littleness (see 2 below). *Ich habe dies Jahr einen Roggen und Weizen, überhaupt ein Kornchen* (= ein prachtvolleres Korn a splendid crop of grain) gebaut wie noch nie. Dann kam auch noch ein kleines Schlaganfallchen! (Sudermann's *Heimat* 1 4) Then there came in addition a nice little (ironical) stroke of paralysis! By dropping mutation we may emphasize the idea of largeness or efficacy while the use of mutation makes prominent the idea of littleness. *Der Physiolog spricht von Blutkugelnchen, ein Jagdfreund aber spricht mit begeisterter Liebe von seinen nie fehlenden Kugelnchen*. Vorlauffriert's und schneit's noch lustig weiter. Das gibt wieder ein Wasserchen (Halbe's *Der Strom* p 20) a great flood. In the literary language it is the rule that the suffix does not cause mutation if it follows an unaccented syllable. *Monatchen, Hoffnugchen*, &c. Most of the exceptions to this rule occur after word in *-el* and *-er*. *Vögelchen, Brüderchen*, &c.

We say *Hansel* (also *Hansel* — Rosegger) *Hanschen, Annchen*, (but also *Annchen* — Bis march to Herr von Puttkamer April 5 1848) *Franzchen, Roschen*, but usually proper names remain unmutated. *Tonnerl, Lottchen, Karlchen* &c.

The use of mutation varies a good deal. *Frauchen*, but *Fraulein*, *Onkelchen*, but *Väterchen*, *Jüngchen* (also *Jungchen* — Sudermann's *Der Sturmgesselle Sokrates* 3 3) or *Jungelchen*, *Tantchen*, but *Baschen*, *Mutterchen* (also *Mutterchen* — Sudermann's *D S S* 1 17 *Schwager*).

wieder nach einer Weile sagte Hedwig, ihr  
p 91) Grandmother! What my Dear?  
(Goethe) Warming (see *f*) noch! Wait a mom

feining gezogen (M. Dreyer's *In Behandlung*, 1). In verbs the form *l* is very common: *lächeln* to smile, from *lachen* to laugh, &c. See III. 2 below.

*f*. In dialect these suffixes have assumed a great variety of forms which can be indicated here in only the roughest outlines: in southern Bavaria and Austria *-el*, *-erl*, *-l* with a plural of the same form or one in *-eln*, *-erln*, &c.; *-le* with a plural of the same form; *-le* or *-l* with the plural *-lan* or *-len*; in Upper Bavaria in palatalized form, *-ei*, *-ai*, *-i*, *-ö*, &c. with a plural of the same form: *Bübel*, *jedes Aderl*, *Herzerl* (with lengthened form after the analogy of many words in *-er*, as *Ader*, dimin. *Aderl*), *bissei* = *bissel* (S.G. for *bißchen*); in Switzerland *-li* with the plural *-li* or *-lini*; also found in palatalized form *-ji* or *-ti*: *Retli* (*Rädlein*), pl. *Retli* or *Retlini*; *Meitji* (*Mädlein*), *Vogulti* (*Vöglein*); *i* (older *-in*; see *Note 3*) with the plural *-ini*, used as a pure diminutive, also in pet-names and in words denoting a relationship, also found in other sections of the German-speaking territory in pet-names: *Hischi* (*Häuslein*), pl. *Hischini*, *Ruodi* (*ru:odi*, character in Schiller's *Tell*, now *Ruedi* or *Rüedi*, pet-name from *Rudolf*), *Ehni* grandfather; in Württemberg *-le* with the plural *-le* or the three reduced forms *-la*, *-li*, *-lich* (from older *-lach*; see 17. *a*. *Note* below): *Tischle*, pl. *Tischle*, *Tischla*, *Tischli*, *Tischlich*; in Franconia *-la* (from *-lein*) with the plural *-li* (from older *-lach*): *Kindla*, pl. *Kindli*; in the Midland *-chen* or *che*, pl. *-chen* or *-cher*; in the North *-ken* with the plural *-ken*, *-kens*, *kes*; often in palatalized form *-je*, *tje* with the plural *-jes*, *-tjes*; sometimes *-ke*, *-eke*, *-elken*, *-sken*, *-tjen* instead of *-ken*: *Mäken* (*Mädchen*), pl. *Mäkens*, &c.; *Annatje* = *Annchen*. In Mecklenburg and Hither Pomerania *-ing* (see 7 above) is used as a diminutive, especially, however, as a sign of endearment.

*Note 1.* The Austrian and Swiss dialects are especially inclined to the use of diminutive endings, which in consequence of their frequent use naturally lose somewhat of their original force. Hence some words, as *Hörl* (= *Hörnlein*), &c., are often found with diminutive ending, whether the reference is to something small or large, beautiful or ugly. The Swiss often refer to some familiar mountain even tho it be a high one as *das Bergli*. Thus the diminutive often seems to be only a means of sharp individualization, a kind of personification. Similarly the North German refers to his native village as *mein Dörfchen*. In general, however, the North is more sparing with the use of the diminutive than the South. In the dialect of some parts of the North the diminutive occurs very little. This may be a survival of older general usage. In the oldest historical period the diminutive was little used. It first became common in M.H.G. and spread from the South northward.

*Note 2.* In M.H.G. diminutives did not have a distinctive plural ending. As can be seen by a glance at *f* above most of the dialects have since developed a distinctive plural form. On the other hand, in the middle portion of the Midland, upon which the literary language rests, there is no such distinctive plural as words with the ending *-chen* are inflected according to the *e*-less plural class. The impulse, however, to give some expression to the plural idea in diminutives is often so strong that the stem word, if an *er*-plural, is given its regular plural form if the diminutive is used in the plural: *Kinderchen* instead of the strict literary form *Kindchen*. In loose colloquial speech and sometimes even in the literary language the *er*-plural here is not felt as incongruous as it is closely associated with the neuter gender and hence does not seem improper in the plural of a neuter diminutive. Such formations, *Kinderchen*, *Kinderlein*, &c., tho not strictly correct, began to appear in the literary language in the fourteenth century and have not since entirely disappeared. Further to the west in the Midland the dialectic form of the diminutive, *-che*, made it easy to find a plural form. The neuter plural ending *-er* is added to the suffix and in some dialects also to the stem word: *Kindche*, pl. *Kindcher* or *Kindercher*; *Mädche*, pl. *Mädcher* or *Mädercher*. In the last example the plural of the stem word does not end in *-er*, but this ending here has in certain dialects become a fixed type. Under N.G. influence a plural in *-s* also occurs: *Mädchens*, *Fräuleins*, See 80. 3.

*Note 3.* The oldest diminutive forms are *-ilo* (masc.) or *-ila* (fem.) of O.H.G., *-iko* of Old Saxon, and *-in* (identical with the *-in* in II. 3 below), all with the meaning close association with, coming from, springing from, hence often with the idea of endearment, sometimes with the conception of littleness: *die Eichel*, from O.H.G. *eihhila* acorn, something coming from the oak tree, O.H.G. *eih*, N.H.G. *Eiche*; *der Ärmel*, from O.H.G. *armilo* sleeve, something closely associated with the arm; *Uufilo* coming from *Wolfhart*, i.e. son of *Wolfhart*, in oldest German a type widely used for pet-names, sometimes also with diminutive force. The suffix *-in* survives as a fossil in *Schwein* (Sau + *in*, M.H.G. *su* + *in*) pig, lit. young of a sow, also in Low German *Kükē* (= *Küchlein*). It is still found as a living suffix in Swiss dialect as the diminutive *-i*, especially in pet-names: *Augi* (= *Äuglein*), *Ruedi* (pet-name), &c. In names the suffixes *-ilo*, *-iko* often lost every vestige of their original force, so that the words containing the suffixes became family names: *Wölfel*, *Reineke* or *Reinecke*, &c. As these suffixes from the very start had more frequently the idea of endearment than that of littleness *-in*, or in shortened form *i*, was even in oldest German sometimes added to the *l* or *k* to bring out clearly the diminutive idea: O.H.G. *Kindilin* or *kindili*; M.H.G. *kindelin*, *kindel*. These strengthened forms are the common S.G. *-lein*, *-le*, *-el* or *-l*, M.G. *-chen*, N.G. *-ken* of to-day as given in *f* above. Modern *-el* (or *-l*) represents both O.H.G. *-ilo* and *-ili*. Out of the diminutive idea of the strengthened forms arose the conception of endearment, so that these forms now indicate both littleness and endearment. As the *-el* that came from O.H.G. *-ilo* is now identical in form with the *-el* that came from O.H.G. *ili* it is no longer felt as a separate suffix. In names also the strengthened suffixes have often lost every vestige of their original meaning as in case of the simple suffixes described above, and the words containing them have become mere family names: *Wölflin*, *Beyerlein* (for *Bayerlein*), &c. Compare 7. *a* above.

On the other hand, we often find in sections of the Southwest the present diminutive suffix *-le* with the meaning of close association, either as a survival of older usage or as a modern development out of the diminutive idea, in either case indicating the close relation between the two ideas: *der Pfarrerle* the son, nephew, or servant of the pastor, i.e. someone closely associated with the pastor; *der Studentle* (Auerbach's *Dorfgeschichten*, II, p. 97), here used of one who had once been a student, lit. one of or belonging to the students; *Räuberles* (260. 2. A under *spielen*) *spielen* to play robbers, lit. to play belonging to the robbers. This idea of association is also found in these sections in nouns made from adjectives: *der Geschwindle* a slow worker, lit. ironically "the swift one," *der Geschcidtle* one who thinks himself bright, &c. In the Midland we find *-chen* similarly used: *Soldätschen spielen* (G. Asmus's *Amerikanisches Skizzenbuch*, p. 59). The old idea of association is well preserved in Swiss *-i*: *Götti* godfather, *Lufti* (Luft + *i* = *Windbeutel*), *Schlich* (= *Schleicher*), *Choli* (Kohle + *i*) coal-black horse, *Pläri* (plären + *i*) one who starts to cry, bawl for every little thing, &c. There always lies in *-i* a touch of feeling, a tone of endearment, playfulness, and often censure, disapproval, or scorn.

2. These suffixes have not only diminutive force, but are also used to express the idea of endearment, tenderness, comeliness, neatness, something affording satisfaction and pleasure, as well as the idea of slyness, stealth, and lastly contempt. Here *lein* and *chen* often form somewhat different shades of meaning. In the literary language of the North *chen* has usually the idea of endearment, comeliness, sarcasm, contempt, slyness, pleasure, and even of largeness, as the diminutive is often used ironically, implying the opposite of what is actually asserted: *Frauchen* dear wife, *Pa'pachen* dear Papa, *Hütchen* a

pretty hat, Kastchen an ornamental little box or jewel casket, die jungen Herren the young gentlemen (sarcastic), ein Potentatchen an insignificant little potentate, ein hübsches Summchen a nice little (meaning a big) sum of money. *Lein*, besides its use in beautiful poetic style, is also found sometimes in common style, be it prose or poetry, where it has more strictly than *chen* the idea of littleness and more intensely the idea of contempt: ein Hündlein a little dog,

„userlein (a contemptuous  
ste Pfafflein (contempt),

Was will das werden? I,

&c As *lein* is so little

used in the North in plain prose, the simple idea of littleness is best expressed by placing the adj *klein* before the noun. In South German authors the very opposite use of *lein* and *chen* above mentioned may be found. *Lein* denotes something nice and lar

ment and littleness e of in a sense of disparage

cherries Das letzte nice large bunch of seven

seit einigen Wochen verlassen (C Keller) gehabt, hatte ihn schon

ein paar schlechte Kämmerchen

(id)

The two forms *chen* and *lein* are in certain cases differently distributed, the one being used in connection with certain words the other employed with others. We say Ohrklappchen, Zündholzchen, Liebchen, ein bißchen, Bleib noch ein Stundchen bei mir, but Bauerlein, Brunnlein, sein Scherflein beitragen, Sein Stundlein hat geschlagen. Sometimes differentiation takes place. Frauchen dear wife and Fraulein Miss. Mannlein and Weiblein of human beings, Mannchen and Weibchen of animals.

In a number of words and expressions only the diminutive form of the noun is used. Gansfußchen quotation marks, Fraulein Miss unmarried woman, Grubchen dimple, Hautchen membrane, Scherflein mite, sein Schäfchen scheren to scather one's own nest, sein Mütchen an einem kühlen vent one's finger upon a person, ins Faustchen lachen to laugh in one's sleeve &c. In case of Fraulein, *chen* is in colloquial language added to *lein* to bring out the diminutive force or to give expression to the idea of endearment &c, as the original meaning of the *lein* is no longer vividly felt. Da auf dem Tisch, gnädiges Frauleinchen (Sudermann's *Fritzchen*, 1).

9 *nis* (cognate with *ness* as in *goodness*, see 15 2 below), earlier in the period also *nüß* (*nuß*) especially in S.G., a neut and less commonly fem (99 2 b and 3 c) suffix usually causing mutation, affixed to nouns, adjectives, perfect participles (as in *Gestandnis confession* = *gestand[en] + nis*), and verbs (especially such as have prefixes) to denote

a An act, performance, activity, function or something concrete which is represented as having active force. Gelobnis vow, Wagnis daring deed, Besorgnis fear, concern, Ereignis occurrence, Begrabnis funeral, also tomb (according to b), Gedachtnis memory, Verstandnis understanding, comprehension, Vermachtnis testament, legacy, Hindernis hindrance that which hinders, Argernis that which gives offense, Verhangnis evil fate that brings about evil things.

b That which is the result or object of the activity implied in the verbal stem of the noun, or that which is at the same time the result of an action and yet is itself an active force. Verzeichnis catalogue, list, Erzeugnis product, Ergebnis result, Bedürfnis need, that which one needs, Verhangnis sad or evil fate, Bündnis alliance that which is the result of union and at the same time has active binding force.

c A condition or quality or something concrete which possesses the quality indicated by the stem of the word. Finsternis darkness, Faulnis rottenness, Wirrnis chaotic condition, confusion, Geheimnis secret thing, a secret, Bitternis bitter thing.

d The place where the condition implied in the stem of the word is found. Gefangnis prison, lit a place where one is caught, Wildnis wilderness.

10. *rich*, see 17. *b*.

11. 1. *sal* or its weakened form *sel* (O.H.G. *isal*), usually neut., but in a few cases fem. (99. 3. *c*), and formerly also in a few cases masc. (99. 3. *c*), sometimes causing mutation. They are usually found after verbal stems, and only in several instances are affixed to nouns. These suffixes have in part a force similar to that of *nis*, but differ often from it in that they have a more comprehensive and intensive force. They have usually an abstract meaning and contain a collective idea, implying that the activity expressed in the verbal stem is long continued, oft repeated, customary, or is extended over a considerable field, or is associated with a large number of objects. Sometimes they may take on concrete meaning, especially *sel*. Nouns having these suffixes denote:

*a*. A thing which is represented as the subject, or the object, or result of the activity implied in the verbal stem of the noun: *Das Schicksal* that which sends, or is sent, hence *good* or *evil fate*, *destiny*, *der Stöpsel* that which stops, a *stopper*, *das* (also *der*) *Häcksel* that which is chopped, chopped feed, *das Füllsel* that which is filled in, stuffing, *das Rinnsal* that which has resulted from flowing water, a channel, watercourse, *das Labsal* anything (as food, drink, encouragement, &c.) which refreshes body or mind.

*b*. A condition, state, or an action: *das Wirrsal* confusion, confused state, *die Trübsal* affliction, *die* and *das Mühsal* difficulty, misery, *das Irrsal* state of erring, erring course, erring, serious error (as in religious belief), which causes a train of errors. In these same words and others the meaning may sometimes become more concrete, indicating something that causes this condition or state, or the place where the condition is found or the action takes place: *das Mühsal* that which causes misery, *das Wehsal* that which causes serious trouble, sorrow, *das Scheusal* that which instils fear and aversion, a monster, *das Irrsal* a place where one can easily err, a labyrinth.

*c*. *Sel* often denotes something insignificant or contemptible: *das Überbleibsel* something left over, remnant, *das Geschreibsel* a miserably written production, *das Hervorbringssel* inferior production. *Erschachert, indem er für ein Mitbringssel* (insignificant acquisition) *unsre Ehre preisgab* (Fontane's *Schach von Wuthenow*, chap. 6).

2. In derivatives in *-ig* *possessing*, *full of*, formed from words in *-sal*, this suffix becomes *sel*: *Wehsal* *sorrow*, but *wehselig* *sorrowful*; *Mühsal* *toil*, *misery*, but *mühselig* *toilsome*, *miserable*, *full of misery*; *Trübsal*, but *trübselig*; *Saumsal*, but *saumselig*. Sometimes the original noun has gone out of use: *armselig* *miserable*, from M.H.G. *armsal* *misery*. As these old nouns in *-sal* have disappeared or are little used *-selig* is now felt as an independent suffix with the meaning *possessing* or *full of* the thing indicated by the stem-word, so that new derivatives in *-selig* have arisen: *feindselig* *hostile*, *holdselig* *charming*, *habselig* *rich* (now little used but common in the derivative *Habseligkeiten* *effects*, *traps*), &c. Derivatives in *-selig* have the same form as compounds with the adjective *selig* *happy in*, *blessed with*: *gottselig* *pious*, *glückselig* *happy*, *blessed with happiness*, *redselig* *talkative*, *friedselig* *peaceable*, &c. The two groups cannot always be distinguished.

12. *schaft* (from *schaffen* to shape, create; cognate with Eng. *ship* as in *friendship*), once an independent noun, now a fem. suffix, affixed to the sing. or pl. of nouns, also to adjectives, participles, and verbs, to denote:

*a*. An act, activity: *Wanderschaft* *traveling*, *journeying*, *Urheberschaft* *act of originating*, *authorship*, *Täterschaft* *perpetration*, *Rechenschaft* *account*, *Wirtschaft* *management of a house*, *business*, or *government*, *Wissenschaft* *scientific study*, *Herrschaft* *rule*, *authority*, *Kaufmannschaft* *business of a merchant*, *Gesandtschaft* *duties and position of an ambassador*, *embassy*.

This suffix often assumes concrete meaning, denoting some person carrying on the activity or something which is associated with it or resulting from it: *die Herrschaft* *master or mistress or according to c* both, *Wirtschaft* *restaurant*, *Gesandtschaft* *dwelling or office of an ambassador*, *Errungenschaft* *something*

won, achievement, **Meisterschaft** mastery, masterly skill, **Wissenschaft** news, information

*b* Relationship, condition **Bruderschaft**, or now more commonly **Bruderschaft** relationship of brothers, close friendship, **Freundschaft** friendship, **Feindschaft** enmity, **Meisterschaft** championship, **Bereitschaft** readiness, **Gefangenschaft** captivity, **Brautschaft** state of being betrothed, engagement, **Witwenschaft** widowhood

*c* A collective idea **Wissenschaft** science **Bruderschaft** or now less commonly **Bruderschaft** fraternity, **Studentenschaft** student body, **Arbeitschaft** working class, **Arzteschaft** medical society, men of the medical profession, **die bayrische Arzteschaft**, **Burgerschaft** all the citizens of a place, **meine Herrschaften!** (in direct address) ladies and gentlemen! **Gegnerschaft** opponents, opposing party, or (according to *a*) opposition **Verbraucherschaft** consumers, **Kaufmannschaft** all the merchants of a place, **Gesandtschaft** embassy, an ambassador with his corps of assistants, **Ortschaft** city, town village **Wirtschaft** family, household (**Es sind vier Wirtschaften im Hause**), doings goings on especially of wild noisy disorderly doings (**eine lustige, tolle, schone** [sarcastic] **Wirtschaft**), **Hinterlassenschaft** property left by a person at his death, **Briefschaften** papers, written documents

13. *tel*, reduced form of *Teil* (formerly *neut*) *part* a neuter suffix added to the stem of ordinals to form fractions The final *t* of the stem of the ordinal is dropped before the *t* of the suffix **Drittel** *third*, **Sechstel** *sixth*, **Zwanzigstel** See also 126 2 *a*

14 1 **tum** (cognate with Eng *dom* as in *kingdom*), once an independent noun, now a neuter (except in the two masc nouns **Reichtum** wealth, **Irrtum** error) suffix, added to nouns, adjectives, and verbs to denote

*a* The dignity, rank profession of the class of persons mentioned in the stem of the noun, with all the peculiar characteristics which attach to such a dignity rank, or profession **Kaisertum** office and power of an emperor, **Priestertum** priesthood, **Volkstum** nationality

*b* A condition, state, or an action **Siechtum** a state of poor health, **Wachstum** a state of healthy growth, **Reichtum** wealthy state, **Irrtum** state of error, erring, error

*c* A collective idea **Burgertum** the citizens of a place **Judentum** the Jewish people **Reichtum** all that which is implied by the word 'rich,' **riches**, **Altertum** all that period of time which can be said to have age *antiquity*, **Pfaffentum** or **Bonzentum** priests (collectively and in a disparaging sense), priesthood, priestcraft, the arts and doings of crafty clericals, **Schiebertum** throng of profiteers who prey upon society, especially in times of distress, arts and doings of sordid profiteers who sell things clandestinely in disregard of governmental regulations and restrictions These words may also take on concrete meaning **Heiligtum** sanctuary, **Kaisertum** empire, **Eigentum** property, lit all that which is one's own, **Altertum** an object that has been preserved from a former age

*Note* If *tum* and *schaft* may both be affixed to the same stem to show the collective idea there is a little shade of difference in the meaning The latter marks more distinctly the collective idea the former the dignity or the peculiar character or nature which attaches to the dignity rank or profession **Priestertum** priests taken collectively **Priesterschaft** peculiar character and nature of the priesthood

2 The suffixes *heit*, *schaft*, *tum* had originally about the same force, and are still so used but in cases where these suffixes are added to the same stem as in the *Note* above, differentiation of meaning usually takes place **Christenheit** Christian world, **Christentum** Christianity, peculiar character and nature of the Christian faith and life, **Eigentum** property, **Eigenheit** peculiarity, **Eigen-**

schaft quality; **Bereitschaft** outward readiness, preparedness, **Bereithheit** inward readiness, willingness. Their use is sometimes subject to caprice, not to a fixed difference of meaning: **Heidenschaft** *heathenism, heathen world*, but **Christenheit** *Christianity, Christian world*.

15. 1. **ung** (cognate with Eng. *ing* as in *warning*), usually a fem. suffix, affixed in most cases to the stem of verbs, especially compounds and derivatives, rarely to the stem of nouns. It means *close association with, origin* and hence is related to **-ing** (see 7 above), as can still be seen in the few words where the suffix is masculine: **die Nibelungen** the children of the mist (**Nebel**), name usually given to the sons and vassals of **Nibelung**, a mythical king. The form **-ungen** is found in the Midland in some names of towns instead of the more common **-ingen**. See 7 *a* above. Altho the prefix **-ing**, **-ung** originally denoted the close association of a person or thing to some other person or thing the form **-ing** in English and **-ung** in German early became useful to denote a close association of a person or thing to an activity.

The feminine suffix has become exceedingly fruitful and is now used to denote:

*a.* An activity: **Bewachung** guarding, **Bewaffung** arming, **Erziehung** education. This suffix gives the noun sometimes almost pure verbal force, so that it can usually take a dependent object or a prepositional phrase which has almost the force of an adverb: objective gen.: **die Erziehung der Knáben**; **Góttelásterung**; acc. object, found only in group-words (247. 2) and compounds: **Háusháltung**. In case there are two objects one is usually understood: (acc. object omitted, gen. object expressed) **Ámstsentsétzung** (*Man entsétzt ihn des Ámtes*). Adverbial modifier: **Die Befrèiung aus der Nót** deliverance from distress. The **-ung** is also added to intransitive stems: **Die Binden stillten die Blutung** The bandages stopped the bleeding. With intransitive stems it can take a predicate noun, which is written as one word with the verbal substantive: **die Menschwerdung** the incarnation, lit. the becoming a man. These derivatives cannot only have active force as in the preceding examples, but also sometimes passive and even reflexive and reciprocal force: **Seine Erhebung auf den Thron verdankte er seinen Siegen** He owed his being elevated to the throne to his victories. **In der Opferung für andere seiner Seele Glück zu finden, ist nur wenigen gegeben** Only a few find happiness of soul in sacrificing themselves for others. **Die Kaiserbegegnung in Björkö** (substantive form of **Die Kaiser begegnen sich in Björkö**). See 189.

Notice that the corresponding English verbal noun in **-ing**, the so-called *gerund*, has developed still more verbal force, as it can take an accusative object outside of compounds and can assume compound active and passive forms: the thought of *having performed my duty*. Gloves prevent the hands from *being injured*. In oldest English and German these verbal nouns did not have very strong verbal force. English began to develop it much earlier than German and has gone much farther in this direction.

*Note.* A number of such formations which were common in the eighteenth century and even later are now replaced by shorter formations: **Abschließung**, **Anhauchung**, **Betrachtung**, **Genießung**, **Reizung**, **Verlegung**, **Versteckung**, **Wachung**, **Zurücknehmung**, now replaced by **Abschluß**, **Anhauch**, **Betracht**, **Genuß**, **Reiz**, **Verlag**, **Versteck**, **Wuchs**, **Zurücknahme**. The shorter form usually has more concrete force than the longer one in **-ung** and thus indicates the development of a finer differentiation. On the other hand, where abstract verbal force is prominent the derivatives in **-ung** are becoming ever greater favorites and the construction is extending its boundaries. An interesting extension is the now common construction which prefers to clothe the chief idea of the predicate in the form of a noun rather than that of a verb: **Das Stück wird bald zur Aufführung gebracht** (instead of *aufgeführt*) The piece will soon be played. See 252. 1. *a.* Note 2.

*b.* A condition, state: **Aufregung** excitement, **Beklemmung** anxiety.

*c.* Sometimes it denotes something concrete which is closely associated with an activity in the relation of an active force, a result, product, means, place, &c.: **Erfrischung** refreshment, that which refreshes, **Schickung** the Divine Will, the one that decrees, sends, a decree of Heaven, bitter affliction *or* trial, lit. something sent, **Zeichnung** the product of drawing, a drawing, **Kleidung** that with which one is clothed, i.e. *clothes*, **Wohnung** a dwelling-house, **Biegung** a bend in the road, **Krümmung** a turn in the river, **Festung** fortress, **Niederung** low ground.

*d* A collective idea, since a number of persons or things may be involved in the same activity *~ dienung* body of servants in a house, *Bemannung* garrison, *Dickung* (Hermann Lons in *Hamburger l* for the more common *Dickicht*), *Winterbereifung* tires for winter use, *Leitung* pipes, management, &c This collective idea is also seen in derivatives from nouns *Waldung* large forest (in its entirety), *Holzung* wood, grove

2 The suffix *-nis* sometimes approaches near to the force of *-ung*: *Verlobnis* or *Verlobung* betrothal, *Hindernis* and *Verhinderung* hindrance, &c However, in most cases the verbal force is stronger in *-ung*, as can be seen in the objective gen which may follow it In other cases the meaning of the two suffixes drifts still farther apart *Bildnis* picture, lit that which has been formed, *Bildung* education, culture, lit that which has been formed, *Ergebnis* result, *Ergebung* resignation, submission

16 A few suffixes which were originally used in forming proper names are later, as also to day, used in common class nouns

*a* *bold* (from M H G *balt*) *bold* *Leopold* (the bold one among the people) This suffix in common class nouns indicates an inclination to that which is indicated by the stem of the derivative *Witzbold* wit, one fond of getting off witty things, *Raufbold* one fond of getting into a fight, *Trunkenbold* drunkard, &c

*b* *jan*, Low German form of *Johannes John*, added to adjectival and verbal stems to indicate a person endowed with the quality or inclined to the activity expressed in the stem of the derivative *Dummerjan* a stupid fellow, lit *stupid Jack*, *Liederjan* dissolute fellow, *Murrjan* grumbling fellow Other forms of this name or other names are similarly used with the force of a suffix *Faselhans* driveler, *Zigârrenfritze* cigar dealer, *Ängstmêier* coward, &c Sometimes with the parts written apart with the original descriptive group stress *dümmer Péter*, *dümme Lise*, &c

The suffix *-jan* may be replaced by the foreign suffix *ian* of like meaning, hence there is sometimes a double form, as in *Dumfterjan* or *Dummrian* Some have more commonly the foreign form *Grobian*, *Schlendrian*, *Blodian* (Voegtlin's *Das neue Gewissen*, p 169), *Fadian* (Anzengruber's *Das vierte Gebot*, II), &c

17. A few suffixes occur only in a few words and have a force that is not always felt distinctly

*a* *icht* (O H G *achi* or *ach* early N H G *ich*), usually a neut, sometimes a masc suffix, sometimes both affixed to nouns, adjectives, verbs to denote a collective idea *das Rohricht* reeds or a place where reeds grow, *das Dickicht* thicket *das Dornicht* thornbrake *das Tannicht* grove of fir trees, *das Ruhricht* hotchpotch, *der* or *das Kehrlicht* sweepings, *das (der) Spulicht* slops, &c

*b* *rich*, in Gothic an independent word *reiks ruler*, in M H G an adjective *rich* mightily *rich* surviving in the adjective *reich* *rich* and the suffix *rich*, which is affixed to names of persons and plants with its original meaning *ruler*, but weakened in force *Friedrich* Frederick lit prince of peace *Wegerich* plantain, lit ruler of the road, &c *Enterich* (M H G *antreche*) is now felt as belonging here, meaning ruler of the ducks, as its older form *reche* developed in N H G phonetically into *-rich*, which suggested relationship with the *-rich* in names, but in fact it is of different origin The last part of the word is of the same origin as Eng *drake* The first part is the German *Ente* *Ganserich* and *Tauberich* have been formed after the analogy of *Enterich*, but the older simpler form *Tauber* is still more common

*c* *nd*, present participle ending but not felt as such, hence all words with this suffix have the inflection of nouns and are true fossils *Heiland* (heilen to heal) the Savior, lit the healing one *Wind* (wehen to blow) wind, *Feind* (Gothic *fijan* to hate) enemy, *Freund* (Gothic *frijon* to love) friend, &c

18. A few words are about to be degraded to mere suffixes:

a. **a(ch)** (= M.H.G. *ahe river*, cognate with Latin *aqua*), employed in the names of a number of rivers and small streams and places named from them: **Salzach** (river), **Werra** (river), **Fulda** (river and city). The names of rivers are fem. but the names of places are of course neuter according to the rule for such names. This form is not a genuine suffix as it is employed as an independent noun in the names of a number of streams: **die Ach** (tributary of the Danube), **die Aach** (in Baden), **die Ohe** (in Hesse), &c.

b. **kunft**, formed from a former gradation (201. e) of **kommen** *to come*, once an independent noun with the meaning *coming* and occasionally so used within the present period, especially in poetic language (as in **des Heilands Kunft**—Bürger's *St. Stephan*), but now usually found only as a suffix: **Ankunft** arrival, **Herkunft** origin, **Zukunft** future, &c.

c. **nahme**, formed from the vowel-gradation of the past tense of **nehmen** *to take*, once a noun with the meanings *a taking, robbing*, now found as a noun only in S.G. dialect in the second meaning, usually employed as a suffix in the first meaning: **Aufnahme** reception, **Ausnahme** exception, **Besitznahme** taking possession, **Stellungnahme** attitude, stand, &c.

19. **at**, an accented foreign suffix from the Latin *-atus* affixed to foreign stems to denote a rank, office, position, building where the office-holder resides, state. It is always neuter in a number of words, as **Rekto'rat** rectorship, **Konsu'lat** consulship, **Majo'rat** (right of) primogeniture, **Novizi'at** novitiate, **Pasto'rat** pastorate, parsonage, where the suffix has the force of the native suffix **tum** and is consequently influenced by its gender. In others under learned influences the masculine gender is also found as in Latin: **der** (especially in the 2nd meaning) and **das Episko'pat** episcopate, body of bishops collectively, **der** and **das Pri'mat** primateship, **der** and **das Zöli'bat** celibacy, &c. In **Magi'strat** city council, **Or'nat** official costume, **Trak'tat** treaty, treatise, it is usually masculine.

20. *Hybrids*. Certain suffixes are added, not only to foreign words, but also to native German stems and such foreign stems as have become thoroly established and are felt as German words in spite of their foreign form. A large number of these hybrids now belong to serious normal speech, but in many cases the suffix gives a facetious turn to the thought or contains depreciatory force. Besides the forms **-aner**, **-ei**, **-enser**, **-er**, **-ian**, **-ianer** (5. e), **-ie**, **-ier**, **-iner**, and **-sche** (under **-in** in 6. 1. c) treated above are the following suffixes:

a. **'äge** ('a:zə), a fem. ending indicating a disagreeable activity or a collective idea with depreciatory force: **Pa'ckage** packing, riff-raff (in this sense from **das Pack** riff-raff under the influence of **die Ba'gage** riff-raff), **Klei'dage** (or in Low German form **Klë'dage**) duds, traps, &c.

b. **'älien**, a plural form indicating a collective idea with depreciatory force: **Schmie'ralien** gifts for the purpose of bribing, scrawl, &c.

c. **'ant** a masc. ending to form appellations of male beings: **Pau'kant** (in student language) duellist, &c.

d. **'ēum**, a neut. ending indicating a place consecrated to the worship, service, or study of: **Mozar'tēum** building devoted to the study and enjoyment of the music of Mozart, **Lauso'lēum** facetiously used for **Entlausungsanstalt**, place where soldiers are freed from the lice which they have acquired in the trenches, &c.

e. **i'āde**, a fem. ending indicating facetiously a discourse or epic: **Jeremi'ade** lamentation in the plaintive style of Jeremiah, **Jobsi'ade** (a humorous epic by Karl Arnold Kortum dealing with the life and doings of Hieronymus Jobs), &c.

f. **ikus**, a masc. ending to form facetious appellations of male beings: **Luftikus** wind-bag, **Pfiffikus** sly-boots, &c.

g. **'insky**, a masc. ending with pronounced disparaging force: **Bucke'linsky** hunchback, **Liede'rinsky** dissolute fellow, **die Herren Radika'linskys** the extreme radicals, &c.

h. **'ismus**, a masc. ending corresponding closely to English *-ism*: **Ber-li'nismus** Berlinism, &c.



i. 'ist, a masc. ending corresponding to English '-ist: Hor'nist hornist, horn-player, Blu'mist florist, Gar'dist soldier of the guards, &c.

j. i'tät, a fem. ending indicating a condition of things: Schwuli'tät (student slang) uneasiness, &c.

k. 'ür (Latin *-ura*), a fem. ending indicating an activity or the results of an activity: Dre'ssur breaking in, training, from the common foreign verb dre'ssieren; Fri'sur act of dressing or curling the hair, or hair-dress, from the common foreign word fri'sieren.

## II. Derivative Adjectives.

1. artig (= Art *kind, manner* + ig), an independent adjective with the meaning *well-behaved*, and also added seemingly as a suffix to nouns and adjectives to indicate a kind, manner, resemblance: aalartig like an eel, eely, bergartig resembling a mountain, turmartig tower-like, &c.; fremdartig strange, großartig grand . . . . . natured, &c.; ein aalartiger Höfling; mit seiner . . . . . Artig is now perhaps often felt here as a suffix, . . . . . h is added to a compound or a group affenartig = Affenart + ig; gutartig = gute Art + ig. Hence -artig really belongs to 9. 1. b below.

2. bar (from O.H.G. *beran*, to carry, bear), once an independent adj., *bāri bearing*, now a suffix, affixed to nouns and verbs, to denote:

a. That the stem-word in the derivative is the object of the verb that is implied in the suffix: streitbar bellicose, war-like, lit. bearing war, fruchtbar fertile, lit. bearing fruit, dankbar grateful, lit. bearing thanks.

b. The possibility or ability to perform, or more commonly to receive the activity implied in the stem of the derivative: streitbar able to fight, in fighting trim, unfehlbar infallible, nahbar approachable, lesbar legible, capable of being read, schiffbar navigable, gangbar passable, sichtbar visible. Compare 11. 2. C. b, 3 below.

*Note* In some words both active and passive force lie in bar: haltbare Leinwand strong linen, linen that will hold, eine haltbare Behauptung a tenable assertion, one that can be held

c. Rarely with other parts of speech: offenbar, sonderbar.

3. en (M.H.G. *in*), n (after *er*), ern, a suffix sometimes causing mutation, affixed to a name of a material to indicate that the substantive which the adj. modifies represents an object made of that material: golden golden, hānfen or hanfen hempen, silbern silver, hölzern wooden.

This suffix is closely related to the diminutive endings -chen and -lein. The original idea is that of *close association, origin*, from which come the derived ideas of *material* (literally coming from, made of wood, &c.), *endearment, diminution*, as explained in I. 8. 1. f. *Note* 3 above.

a. The form -en is usually added to the stem of the noun unless the latter ends in -e or -er, in which case only -n is added: Wolle wool, wollen woolen; Kupfer copper, kupfern copper (adj.). In a number of cases the suffix -n is added to the plural of such words as form a. pl. in -er: Holz wood, hölzern wooden; Glas glass, gläsern glass, of glass. After the analogy of many adjectives thus ending in -ern a number have likewise mutated the stem vowel and added -ern to the stem as if this were the regular suffix, especially in cases of stems ending in l, n, s: stählern steel, beinern made of bone, steinern made of stone, zinnern tin, tönern earthen, wächsern waxes.

*Note* As general -n

b. This suffix denotes that the object in question is entirely made of the mentioned material: hölzerne Bänke wooden benches, but holzige Rettige radishes of a woody fibre.

c. This suffix is not much used in the predicate, being there replaced by the preposition *von* and a noun, and in the attributive relation is sometimes replaced by a compound noun: *Der Tisch ist von Holz. Marmorsäule marble pillar*, instead of *marmorne Säule*. But in elevated diction the suffix is also found in the predicate: *Der Stuhl ist elfenbeinern, darauf der Kaiser sitzt* (Rückert's *Barbarossa*). Rarely in plain prose, occasionally, however, in case of *eichen*: *Die Bücherschränke waren in Eiche geschnitzt, und eichen war auch der breite Arbeitstisch* (Fedor von Zobeltitz's *Die papierne Macht*, p. 9). In figurative use adjectives with this suffix are quite commonly found in the predicate: *Sein Gesicht war jetzt grau und steinern* (rigid) *wie das der Riesen am Tor* (Volkmann's *Die beiden Weiser*).

4. *erlei*, see 126. 1. a.

5. *fach*, see 126. 1. b.

6. *fältig*, see 126. 1. b.

7. *haft* (related to *Haft* clasp), once an independent adjective perfect participle, now a mere suffix. It is usually added directly to the stem, but weak nouns take *en* between stem and suffix, which is probably felt as the weak genitive ending usually found in weak nouns forming the first component of compounds, altho corresponding strong genitive formations do not occur here: *bärenhaft*, *knabenhaft*, *heldenhaft*, *riesenhaft*, *frauenhaft*, *lehrerinnenhaft* schoolma'am-like, but *mannhaft*, *schülerhaft*, *meisterhaft*, &c. Neuter *er*-plurals usually have their plural form here, as *kinderhaft*, *weiberhaft*, and it is possible to construe all the derivative stems in *-en*, *-el*, *-er* as plurals: *frauen-*, *gimpel-*, *schülerhaft*.

The leading points as to use and form are as follows:

1. a. Added to abstract nouns, it represents something as infected with, marred by, or as possessing the qualities implied in the stem of the derivative: *sündhaft* sinful, *lasterhaft* vicious, *fehlerhaft* faulty, *tugendhaft* virtuous, *schamhaft* bashful, &c.

b. Added to concrete nouns it represents something as possessing or inclining towards the thing or the characteristics of the thing mentioned in the stem of the derivative: *teilhaft* having a part, share in, *seßhaft* having a dwelling, settled, *wohnhaft* residing, *schalkhaft* having the characteristics of a wag, waggish, *riesenhaft* gigantic, *schülerhaft* schoolboy-like.

*Note.* Here *-haft* touches close to *-isch* and *-lich*: *heldenhaft* and *heldisch* *heroic*, *göttlich* *divine*. See also 10. 2. a. *Note* below.

c. In the adjectives *boshaft* *malicious*, *krankhaft* *morbid*, *wahrhaft* *truthful*, *leckerhaft* *loving nice things to eat*, &c., it represents persons as resembling in their manner and ways the attribute mentioned in the stem or as having a fondness for things possessing this attribute.

d. Added to verbal stems it implies an inclination towards the activity that is mentioned in the stem-word, or indicates that the person or thing to which reference is made performs the activity or incites it: *naschhaft* fond of eating tit-bits, *schwatzhaft* loquacious, *schmeichelhaft* containing something which flatters, hence *complimentary*, *glaubhaft* containing that which inspires belief, hence *worthy of belief*, *trustworthy*, *ekelhaft* containing that which nauseates. It touches here close to *-ig* and *-isch*. See 10. 3. *Note* below. Sometimes *-haft* and *-sam* differ only in that the latter emphasizes the idea of possession of pleasant or praiseworthy attributes: *lehrhaft* *didactic*, *moralistic*, but *lehrsam* *instructive*, as in *Sie (die Geschichten) sind natürlich, volkstümlich und lehrsam* (Max Dreyer's *Ohm Peter*, XXV).

2. In some words the lengthened form *-haftig* is also used with the same general meaning as the shorter one: *wahrhaftig* *truthful*, or now more commonly an adverb, *truly*, while *wahrhaft* is usually employed as an adjective, *truthful*; *teilhaftig* having a part, share in, *leibhaftig* *bodily*, in person, &c. The *-ig* was once more common and as a survival of older usage is still always thus added before *-keit* to form abstract nouns: *tugendhaft* *virtuous*, *Tugendhaftigkeit* *virtuousness*.

8. icht, closely related in origin and meaning to -ig (see 9 below), so that in most cases it has been entirely supplanted by the latter, or survives only as a less common variant: bergicht, or more commonly bergig, &c. Only the forms töricht and regnicht (or regnerisch) are established.

a. In M.H.G. -icht appears as *ēht*, *ohht*, *aht*, and hence there is no mutation in these words, except töricht foolish.

b. Formerly -icht was most common after the suffix -el, as in *kitzlicht* (now *kitzlig*) in Schiller's *Wallensteins Lager*, 9, and it is still occasionally found there in the form of -ich instead of the more common ig: *fünf von den weißmännlichen Kürassieren* (Fontane's *Vor dem Sturm*, III, chap. 12); *kurzärmlich* (id., III, 4).

c. In S.G. dialect icht often appears as *et*: *flachshaaret* for *flachshaarig*, &c.

d. This suffix in one meaning has assumed the form of -lich. See -lich in 11. 2. B. b. Note below.

9. ig (cognate with *y* in *hungry*), a very common suffix with the general meaning of *having, possessing*. The leading points as to form and meaning are as follows:

1. a. Its O.H.G. form was *ag* or *ig*; hence there have resulted two groups of words, one with mutation, the other without it: *frostig*, *durstig*, &c., but *flüchtig*, *sündig*, &c.

b. It is affixed to all parts of speech, also to compounds, as in *affenartig* (*Affenart* + *ig*) monkeylike, *aalartig* (*Aalart* + *ig*) like an eel, and in a number of cases it is even added to compounds which do not exist outside of this combination, as in *vielköpfig* *many-headed* (but not *Vie" eigenhändige Unterschrift*) with one's own hand, *warmherzig* warm-hearted, &c. Notice that in Eng

used. The basal element of such formations is a syntactical group of two words which have entered into such close relations to each other that they have formed a compound, and like many other compounds with an adjective as the first element have the adjective without an ending: *eigenhändig* = *eigene Hand* + *ig*. The basal element may be a compound formed from a genitive group: *völksmäßig* *popular* = early N.H.G. in *des Völkcs Maße* *in the manner of the common people* + *ig*. The first component of the compound here sometimes takes -s, sometimes -en, sometimes assumes the form of the bare stem, just as in compounds in general: *gefühlsmäßig*, *bühnenmäßig*, *gewohnheitsmäßig* is often a verbal stem, (= *er hört schwer* stress here see 249. + *ig*),

II. 2 and 247. 2. b.

2. Affixed to some parts of speech, it has a definite meaning, while after others it is a mere mechanical form used to make an adj. out of some other part of speech. The following points may be a guide as to its use:

A. It denotes:

a. The possession or the presence of the thing implied in the stem of the noun: *sonnig* sunny, *buschig* bushy, *fleißig* diligent, *sandig* sandy, *löcherig* full of holes, porous, *ein vierjähriges Kind* a four-year-old child, *eine dreiwöchige Reise*, a three weeks' journey. Compare B, also 11. 2. A. c below. This idea leads sometimes to a causative relation: *freudige Nachrichten* news that contains joy, hence news which makes us rejoice, *verdächtig* causing, arousing suspicion.

b. The presence of the quality implied in the adj. stem, usually, however, in a less degree or a different shade: *spitz* running to a sharp point, *spitzig* (possibly from the noun *Spitze*) pointed; *fett* fat, *fettig* greasy; *laß* wearied, *lässig* indolent, lacking energy.

c. An inclination toward or a quality naturally associated with the activity implied in the verbal stem: *bissig* inclined to bite (as of a dog), *brummig* inclined to grumble, *fähig* (*fahren* = *fangen*) capable, *gefällig* of a nature such as to please, agreeable, anxious to please, *ergiebig* productive, *freigebig* liberal, *fällig* due, lit. which should now fall or be paid, *harthörig* hard of hearing, *fein-*

fühlig of delicate feeling, **sich einem Vorschlage zustimmig erklären** to announce one's readiness to assent to a proposition; (with reflexive force) **wendig** so constructed as to turn or maneuver easily (of an aeroplane), &c.

d. It has much the same force as **haft**. Some stems regularly take the one suffix, some the other, and some have both. If both suffixes are added to the same stem, they sometimes have the same force, sometimes a differentiation of meaning: **klatschig** or **klatschhaft** *prone to gossip*; **herzig** *lovely*, but **herzhaft** *courageous*; **gläubig** *believing*, but **glaubhaft** *inspiring belief, worthy of belief*. Sometimes the meaning of **-ig** is also identical with that of **-isch** and **-lich**. See 10. 3. *Note* and 11. 3 below.

B. It is a mere formal suffix used to make an adj. out of other parts of speech, when added to the stem of pronouns, prepositions, and adverbs: **derjenige**, **der meinige**, **die übrigen** (*über* over, above) **Personen** the remaining persons, **die jetzige** (*jetzt* now) **Mode** the present fashion, **die heutige** (*heute* to-day) **Zeitung** to-day's newspaper, **der obige Satz** the above sentence, **die dortigen Gebräuche** the customs of that place. In a few words of more than one syllable the stem is shortened: **die morgige Feier**, **in der übermorgigen Sitzung** (Sudermann's *Der Sturmgesele Sokrates*, 1, 15). In several cases an *s* is now, contrary to earlier usage, inserted between the adverbial stem and the suffix to prevent two vowels from coming together: **die hiesigen** (*hie* here) **Fabriken** the factories of this place, **dasig** (*da* there) of that place. Thus also any noun or expression denoting the *time* or *duration* of an act or state may take on adjective function by affixing **ig**: **das nächtige Wegschleppen der Angeklagten** the dragging away of the accused in the night, **diese vierzehnmonatige Haft** this fourteen months' imprisonment. Also **lich** can be affixed to such nouns and expressions, but it denotes the *repetition* or *manner* of the activity. See 11. 2. A. e, f. All such formations in **-ig** and **-lich** are in fact true adverbs, as they denote some circumstance of time, place, or manner, and hence are adjectives only in form.

10. **isch** (cognate with Eng. *ish* as in *childish*) or **sch** (see 1. a below), a common suffix denoting a belonging to that mentioned in the stem of the derivative. This original meaning can still be seen in the following groups which illustrate its present use as to meaning and form:

1. Affixed to names of persons, countries, peoples, districts, and places, it usually has the force of an English noun in the possessive case, or the objective after the prep. *of*, and thus indicates a belonging to, or something concerning, or a coming or descent from the person, people, or place mentioned in the stem, or indicates a participation in their personal or local peculiarities and characteristics: **die Schirmmachersche Hypothek** the mortgage held (i.e. owned) by Mr. Schirmmacher, **das Schmidtsche Haus** the Smith residence, **die Treibelschen Dinners** the dinners given by the Treibels, **der Kommerzienrat Treibelsche Kutscher** the coachman of Mr. Treibel, councilor of commerce, **ein Schmidtsches Lieblingsthema** a favorite theme of Mr. Schmidt, **das Schmidtsche** that which characterizes a true Schmidt, **ich persönlich bin mehr ins Gieshüblersche geschlagen** I myself have taken more after the Gieshüblers (the father's side of the speaker's family), **die Paul Heyseschen Novellen** Paul Heyse's novelettes, **das Hallische Waisenhaus** the Orphans' Home of Halle, **die straßburgische Universität** the University of Strassburg, **die darmstädtische Verwaltung** the government of the city of Darmstadt, **die römische Geschichte** the history of Rome, or Roman history. In Austria adjectives in **-isch** are often used substantively much as the plural of a name is used in North German and English: **Es g'freut mich recht aufrichtig, daß ich und die Meinigen jetzt mit so scharmanten Familien, wie die Leodolterischen und die Beywaldischen es sind, in ein verwandschaftliches Verhältnis treten sollen** (Ertl's *Freiheit*, p. 62).

Adjectives formed from names of persons do not suffer mutation, and likewise most adjectives from names of places, but a few, as **hannöverisch** (or more commonly **hannoverisch**), **römisch**, and those in **-stadt** (**friedrichstädtisch**, &c., after the analogy of **städtisch** formed from the common noun *Stadt*), are mutated. Those derived from names of peoples usually mutate: **fränkisch**, **französisch**,

judisch, sächsisch, &c. A number, however, especially foreign words and new formations do not suffer mutation badisch, amerikanisch, arisch, gotisch, russisch, spanisch, &c.

tiation of meaning between the two forms sometimes takes place where there is reference to one person and *isch* where the mean-  
 die Lutherische Sprache *Luther's language* but die lutherische  
*Lutheran church* The form *isch* is most commonly employed  
 die Gottschedsche Orthographie the ortho-  
 schedisch Die Rankische or more cor-  
*He World* but Er versucht zwar Ranke  
 Rankisch However we also now find  
 hier ja, wir sind konservativ, sehr, aber  
 Ja, Corinthen, in diesem Belang bist d-  
 11) Emil, der Professor Bruder des  
 Eysensch aussehender Mann (G Ompt

b Many names of cities form indeclinable adjectives in -er (see 111 7 a) instead of taking (i)sch and some admit of either suffix. Lumburger Käse Limburg cheese der kölnische or Kölner Dom the cathed. H. Hamburger Nachrichten (newspapers) Hamburg night to der Bremische Staat the state of Bremen (i)sch can be used in the substantive relation or predicatively in the adjective relation. Das Berlinische the dialect of Berlin not das Berliner. Das ist Berlinisch (not Berliner) that is a Berlin trait. A few adjectives in -er, however, become substantives by simply dropping the following noun. Rüdesheimer (Wein), ein Leonberger (Hund), der Rheinländer (Tanz).

*c* In a number of cases usage adopts here the Latin adjective suffixes *anus*, *inus* and *ensis* converting however the last syllable into *isch* *amer'kanisch*, American *floren'tinisch* Florentine, *atheni'ensisch* or more commonly *a'thenisch* Athenian &c The foreign form should be avoided in case of German words *ha'nnoverisch* or *ha'nnoverisch* rather than *hannove'ranisch*, *'weimarisch* rather than *weima'ranisch*, &c *'bremisch* rather than *bre'mensisch* (used however, by Hauptmann in *Neue Rundschau* Jan 1908 p 9)

2 Affixed to common nouns denoting persons or things it denotes

a The peculiar manner and character of the class of persons or things mentioned in the stem word *teuflich* devilish *dichtersisch* poetic, *kriegerisch* warlike *durchgängerisch* inclined to run away (of a horse), *verschwenderisch* extravagant *erfinderisch* inventive *tierisch* animal brutal *hofisch* courtly, fawning *städtisch* after the manner of city people *irdisch* earthly *hollisch* infernal *demokratisch* democratic &c It is added to a plural in *freigeist<sup>er</sup>isch* free thinking There are a few contracted forms *deutsch* (O H G diot *people* + *isch*, used of the popular language in contradistinction to the Latin of the learned class) *German* *Mensch* (contracted form of *mannsch*, hence originally an adjective) *human being* = Latin *homo* *hubsch* (originally another form of *hofisch* *courtly* but now with differentiated meaning) *pretty*

The suffix usually causes mutation here. Those in *-erisch*, however, only mutate when the stem word is mutated: *traumerisch*, from *Traumer*, but *malerisch*, from *Maler*.

*Note.* Here *-isch* has the signification of *-lich* and *-haft*, but when they can be added to the same word their meanings often diverge, the first of the forms sometimes taking on a disparaging sense: *kindlich* child-like (in a good sense), *kindisch* childish; *weiblich* womanly, *weibisch* (in early N.H.G. still in good sense; see Peter iii. 7) womanish, *weiberhaft* after the manner or ways of women, as in *weiberhaftes Klagen*, *Plaudern*, an objective statement without a tinge of censure; *männlich* manly, *männisch* (see also *b*) like a man, when used in a derogatory sense of a woman, or *coarse*, when used of a man, referring to his lack of refinement; *höflich* polite, *höfisch* fawning, &c. Thus nouns meaning primarily something good, as *Recht* right, *Gott* God, *Jungfrau* virgin, do not usually take *-isch*, and those signifying something bad, as *Satan* Satan, *Abgott* idol, do not take *-lich*. On the other hand, *-isch* does in some words occur in a good sense: *Ich bin kein Held, und das Heldische läßt sich nicht lernen* (Fontane's *Frau Jenny*, chap. viii). *Er brauche ja nur ein Bauerngewand, denn herrisch* (dressed like a gentleman) *dürfe niemand kommen* (Berlepsch's *Fortunals Roman*, p. 183).

*b.* Somebody or something concerned or connected with, something affected by or restricted to that which is mentioned in the stem word, usually causing mutation only in native German words: *historisch* historical, *philologisch* philological, *seelisch* of the soul, *festländisch* continental, *städtisch* municipal, *eine telegraphische Antwort* an answer by telegraph, *überseeisch* transatlantic, *transmarine*, *völkisch* national, *eine zweimännische Kurbel* a windlass for two men, *ein zweimännisches* (provinc.; or more commonly *zweischläfiges*) *Bett* a bed for two persons. We usually find *männlich* male, *weiblich* female, on account of the disparaging sense often found in *-isch*, but *männisch* is quite commonly used in a good sense in compounds: *männliche Studenten*, but in *fachmännischen Kreisen* in professional circles, *kaufmännische Beziehungen*, &c.

*Note.* Tho *-isch*, here as in *a*, has the same general meaning as *-lich*, it is decidedly the favorite with words of foreign origin, as nicely illustrated by the following examples: *Und doch, lieber Pentz, ich möchte heute, wenn es geht, etwas anderes von Ihnen hören als Kulinarisches oder Frühstückliches* (Fontane's *Unwiederbringlich*, chap. 16). *Mündlicher, schriftlicher Verkehr*, but *telegraphischer Verkehr*. Compare 2. A. *c* under *lich*, below.

*c.* As in 1 above, it contains the possessive idea, but this idea is more commonly expressed in this category by *-lich* (see 11. 2. A. *b* below): *tierische Gewebe* tissues of animals, *animal tissues*, *die gegnerische Auffassung* the view of the opposing party, &c., but *pflanzliche Gewebe*, *das königliche Schloß*, &c.

3. Affixed to stems of abstract nouns or verbs, it denotes an inclination toward the thing or quality denoted by the stem, usually causing mutation: *zänkisch* quarrelsome, *neckisch* inclined to tease, *droll*, *mürrisch* morose. This is a favorite formation with the people, who extend it beyond the literary limits: *Robinson ißt immer so wenig, wiewohl er den Streußel ungeheuer gern mag. Aber so sind die Engländer, sie sind nicht so zugreifsch* (Frau Imme in Fontane's *Stecklin*, chap. 14, p. 186).

*Note.* Here *-isch* has the same force as *-haft* and *-ig*, some stems preferring one suffix, some another. Also *-sam* has the same general force, but it differs from the other three in expressing usually only an inclination toward praiseworthy things: *folgsam* obedient; *arbeitsam* industrious. See a o 7. 1. *d* above.

4. It is suffixed to an adj. in the one word *linkisch* awkward, lit. left-handed, to an adverb in *heimisch* home-like, to a pronoun in *selbstisch* selfish.

5. The frequent occurrence of *-isch* after stems in *-er*, as in 2 above, has given rise to the idea that the suffix is *-erisch*, as can be seen in *regnerisch* rainy.

*General Note.* As there is a fluctuation of usage in English between forms in *-ic* and *-ical*, as in *heroic* and *heroical*, there is also in German in the same group of foreign words a fluctuation between *-isch* and *-ikalisch*, but only in a few cases, as in *grammatisch* or sometimes *grammatikalisch*. In English both forms are often used with differentiated meanings, as historic and historical, but in German such differentiation is only found in a few instances as *physisch* physical (with reference to the body or the possible in nature: *meine physischen Kräfte*) and *physikalisch* physical (with reference to physics: *physikalische Instrumente*). In most cases the short form alone survives in German: *biblich* biblical, &c. Only in a few instances has the long form become established, as in *musikalisch*.

11. *lich* (cognate with Eng. *-ly* as in *friendly*), once an independent word, now a suffix with the general meaning of resembling or befitting that which is contained in the stem of the derivative. The following points may serve as a guide to its use:

1. It is affixed to nouns, adjectives, and verbs: *männlich* manly, *zärtlich* tender, loving, *verständlich* intelligible, *begreiflich* conceivable.

*a.* An excrescent *t* appears after the stem, when it is an infinitive or a noun or adjective ending in *-en*: *hoffentlich* as is to be hoped, *wissentlich* wilful, *wöchentlich* (M.H.G. *wochenlich*) weekly, *gelegentlich* occasional, &c. In case of *tunlich* the infinitive form is preserved. Earlier in the period *tulich* was also common.

*b.* In some words the lengthened form *-erlich* is found instead of *-lich*: *lächerlich*, *leserlich*, *fürchterlich*, &c.

*c.* If the stem-word is a monosyllable the vowel is mutated, except in *be-* *haglich*, *faßlich*, *folglich*, *fraglich*, *gastlich*, *gedanklich*, *glaublich*, *sachlich*,

sänglich, sorglich, sportlich, sprachlich, staatlich, stattlich, tauglich, unerforschlich, verdaulich, vertraglich (2. A. c), wahrlich, widerrüflich. If the stem-word is a dissyllabic, it is also sometimes mutated: brüderlich, mütterlich, väterlich, jämmerlich, nebensächlich. The same stem-word may be mutated or not with a difference of meaning: sächlich neuter, sachlich sticking to the question at hand, objective.

2. It differs somewhat in meaning according to the part of speech to which it is affixed:

A. Affixed to nouns it denotes:

a. An attribute which naturally belongs to the person or thing denoted by the stem: ein väterlicher Rat a piece of paternal advice, männlicher Mut manly courage; festlich festive, herbstlich autumn-like, autumnal, sonntägliche Stimmung. Mir ist nur immer merkwürdig, daß du, neben Homer und sogar neben Schliemann, mit solcher Vorliebe Kochbuchliches (matters which belong to a cook-book) behandelst (Fontane's *Frau Jenny*, chap. vii).

b. Possession or origin, often when expressing the possessive idea equivalent to an attributive possessive genitive: kaiserliche Schlösser castles of the emperor, pflanzliche Gewebe tissues of plants, plant tissues, sprachliche Eigenheiten peculiarities of speech, sein mütterliches Vermögen property inherited from his mother. Compare 10. 2. c above.

c. Something concerning, or concerned or connected with, or effected by that which is mentioned in the stem-word: nebensächlich concerning a minor point, of secondary importance,

matters pertaining to brotherlicher Onkel an uncle.

lichen (compare C. a) Be

by contract, künstliche Zähne artificial teeth. Compare 10. 2. b. Note above, under -isch.

*Note.* Notice the difference here between -ig and -lich: der fremdsprachliche Unterricht instruction in foreign languages, but Österreich war früher ein vielsprachiges Land und hatte zwei- und dreisprachige Schulen Austria was a land in which many languages were spoken, and hence it had schools in which two or even three languages were used as mediums for imparting instruction.

d. Somebody afflicted or blessed with that which is mentioned in the stem-word: gebrechlich afflicted with infirmities, glücklich happy.

e. Repetition: eine jährliche Reise a journey taken every year, ein täglicher Gast a daily guest, unser tägliches Brot our daily bread, i.e. bread that we need each day, tägliche Kleidung every-day clothes, eine halbjährliche Prüfung, &c.

f. An attribute of an abstract noun, indicating the manner in which an activity proceeds, or the means by which it operates, or the agents which direct the force: eine Wohnung mit halbjährlicher Kündigung a rented dwelling to which attaches the obligation to give notice six months before one leaves, eine tätliche Beleidigung an insult offered in the way of blows, briefliche Auskunft information obtained by letter, eine schriftliche Zusage assurance, drahtliche Nachricht news by wire, sinnliche Wahrnehmung perception thru the senses, polizeiliches Einschreiten intervervention. The suffix is, with this meaning, also added to adjectives, as ein gänzlicher Mangel a complete lack. Such adjectives are really adverbs in the form of adjectives, and hence cannot be attributes of objects, as they only modify the activity implied in the noun. Even when such adjectives modify nouns representing persons, they refer more to the activity exercised than to the persons: ein glücklicher Spieler a lucky gambler.

B. Affixed to adjectives and participles it has:

a. Adverbial force, being used just as the derivatives from nouns described in A. f above, to denote an attribute of an abstract, verbal noun: bitterlich bitterly, völlig complete, gänzlich complete, wissentlich wilful (sin, lie), gütlich amicable, &c. Ex.: die gütliche Beilegung des Streites the amicable settlement of the quarrel. In a number of cases such formations are only used adverbially: freilich to be sure, surely, kürzlich lately, bekanntlich as is well known, &c. See also IV. 2. b below.

b. The idea of approach to, partaking somewhat of the quality of with reference to things and the idea of inclination toward when applied to persons: **schwärzlich** blackish, **bräunlich** brownish, **länglich** oblong, **rundlich** roundish, &c.; **kleinlich** inclined to be small, pedantic, mean-souled, **kränklich** sickly, **süßlich** sweetish, affected, soft, fulsome, **schwächlich** weakly, **ältlich** elderly, &c.

*Note.* Earlier in the period and in dialect still the form **-licht** is found in certain words: **Der Sonne rötlicher** (now **rötlicher**) **Untergang** (Schiller). The older form indicates clearly that this suffix in this word and a number of others is identical with **-icht** described in § 8 above and thus originally had nothing to do with **-lich**. The **l** became connected with **-icht** in M.H.G. as the suffix was often attached to words in **-el**, as in M.H.G. **buckelecht**, later **buckelig**. Thus arose M.H.G. **rætelecht**, later **rötlich**. In most words older **-echt** or **-icht** later became **-ig**, but in the group in **b** it remained with the form **-licht** as an independent suffix with the meaning *having or possessing a little of*, the latter of which ideas seems to have been suggested by the **l**, which in verbs and nouns so often has diminutive force. Later this group was confounded with the group in **-lich**, which on account of the signification of the suffix **-lich** like *unto* had a similar meaning.

c. In other cases where there is a simple adjective and a derivative in **-lich**, a differentiation of meaning takes place: **arm** *poor*, **ärmlich** having the outward signs of poverty; &c.

C. Affixed to verbs, sometimes with a lengthened form in **-er**, **lächerlich**, &c., it has:

a. Active force, representing the person or thing to which it refers as acting, or acting upon something: **erbaulich** edifying, **schädlich** injurious, **schmerzlich** painful, &c. Exs.: **etwas tief Betrübliches** (Fontane's *Unwiederbringlich*, chap. 22), **nichts geradezu Verstimmlisches** (id., *Stechlin*, chap. viii).

It also expresses a willingness, a natural tendency to perform the activity, or indicates that something is of such a nature as to incite it: **empänglich** willing to receive, open to (**für Eindrücke, Schmeicheleien, das Schöne empänglich**), **unterhaltlich** inclined to entertain and interest (**eine unterhaltliche Dame**), **beweglich** (from **sich bewegen**; see next par.) inclined to move around, active, vivacious (**die beweglichen Wellen, bewegliche Augen, eine bewegliche Zunge, ein beweglicher Mann**), **lächerlich** inclined to laugh (**Mir ist nicht lächerlich zu Mute**), of such a nature as to incite laughter, laughable, **weinerlich** inclined to weep, **küsserlich** fond of kissing, of such a nature as to incite kissing, **fürchterlich** of such a nature as to instil fear, **leserlich** of such a nature as to be easily read, legible, hence with passive force as in *b*.

Also with reflexive force: **Die in seiner Bibliothek befindlichen Bücher; den damals in Leipzig aufhältlichen Lessing** (Proell's *Geschichte d. dram. Lit. und Kunst*, I, p. 40); **ein verträglicher Mensch**. **Mir ist brechlich** (colloq., from **sich brechen**); **eine einläßliche Charakterisierung** (**eine Charakterisierung, die sich auf den Gegenstand einläßt**). The reflexive is regularly suppressed.

b. Passive force, representing the person or thing to which it refers as a possible or deserving (often in a reprehensible sense) recipient of an action: **bestechlich** capable of being bribed, bribable, **beweglich** movable, **faßlich** comprehensible, **erhältlich** to be had (**Formulare sind bei allen Reichsbankanstalten erhältlich**), **löblich** deserving of praise, **beachtlich** worthy of being considered (**ein sehr beachtlicher Vorschlag**), **bedauerlich** to be deplored, deplorable, **sträflich** deserving punishment, **verwerflich** deserving rejection, bad, abominable, &c. With the idea of the possibility of an action but with active force, as in **unabkömmlich** indispensable (lit. unable to get away: **Ich bin hier unabkömmlich**), **dienlich** serviceable, &c.

**Lich** here touches close to **-bar**, but is more common in composition with prefixes, and not so common with simple stems: **brechbar, brennbar**, &c., not usually **brechlich, brennlich**, &c., on the other hand more commonly **zerbrechlich, verbrennlich**, &c. The **-bar**, however, can also usually be employed here, as it has a little different shade of meaning: it has more verbal force and emphasizes the idea of possibility. **Lich**, however, is always used in **möglich, leidlich, unausstehlich, üblich, löblich**, &c. See also 12. 1. *b*. *Note* below.

c. Either active or passive force, according as a relation is felt to the intrans. or the trans. use of a verb, which is used both intransitively and transitively: **zerbrechlich** breaking easily *or* easily broken. The positive form is sometimes active, while the negative form is passive: **vergeßlich** forgetful, but **unvergeßlich** never to be forgotten, &c.



3. The meanings of *-lich* often touch very close to those of *-haft* and *-bar*. When *-lich* and *-haft*, or *-lich* and *-bar*, may be added to the same stem or two stems of kindred meanings, the different words sometimes have about the same force: *tugendhaft* and *tugendlich* virtuous. *Es war bei allem Tantlichen etwas ausgesprochen Onkelhaftes in der Art und Weise, wie sie das junge ängstliche Mädchen an den Handgelenken ergriff* (Raabe's *Eulenspiegel*, chap. 5). Sometimes a shade appears: *schadhaft* injured, broken, *schädlich* injurious; *schmerzhaft* accompanied with pain, as *eine schmerzhaft Krankheit*, *Wunde*, *Operation*, *schmerzlich* causing pain, as in *Des Freundes schmerzhaft Krankheit ist uns schmerzlich* (D. Sanders); *glaubhaft* worthy of belief, trustworthy, *glaublich* credible, probable, likely, as in *Glaubhaft ist der Zeuge*, *glaublich* seine Aussage; *sündhaft*, *sündig* or *sündlich* sinful, all three of persons or things, but more commonly the first two of persons and the last of things, acts, as in *sündhafte* or *sündige Menschen*, *sündliche Handlungen*; *kosbar* costly, *köstlich* precious; *lesbar* decipherable, also readable, interesting, *leserlich* legible, easy to read. The meaning of *-lich* is sometimes identical with that of *-ig*: *kußlich* kissable, made to be kissed, *küssig*, *küsserlich* kissable, fond of kissing. Of these suffixes *-bar* is not employed with simple verbal stems to denote an inclination to perform the activity or to indicate that something is of such a nature as to incite it, and hence does not compete with *-haft*, *-lich*, and *-ig* at this point: *schwatzhaft* or less commonly *schwätzig* loquacious, but not *schwatzbar*; *lächerlich* or less frequently *lachhaft* laughable, but not *lachbar*. On the other hand, *-haft* is not used with verbal stems with passive force and does not compete here with *-bar* and *-lich*. See 12. 1. b. Note below.

12. *sam*, related to the Latin *similis* similar, Eng. same and *-some* (as in winsome), and German *samt* together with, denoting originally a close, intimate connection with or similarity, but this meaning cannot always easily be detected.

It is now usually affixed:

1. To abstract nouns and verbs to denote:

a. An inclination toward a thing implied in the stem of the noun, or an attribute which naturally belongs to it: *sorgsam* careful, *furchtsam* (originally belonging here, but now felt as belonging to b) timid, *gewaltsam* violent, *wonnesam* delightful, *mühsam* requiring laborious toil, *wegsam* passable (of a road, &c.), *unwegsam*.

Note. *Unwegsam* to be distinguished from *unweglich* = impassable.

sense), *emlich* honest, upright.

b. In a passive sense a possibility that the activity implied in the verbal stem may be performed, or in an active sense a possibility of performing it, or a natural inclination to do so: *bildsam* capable of being moulded, fashioned, *biegsam* flexible, *wirksam* efficacious, capable of making an effect, *kleidsam* becoming, *folgsam* willing to follow, obedient, *schweigsam* taciturn, *sparsam* saving, economical, *störsam* disturbing, apt to disturb, *überlegsam* thoughtful, reflective.

Note. The suffixes *-bar*, *-lich*, and *-sam* here touch close to each other in the sense of



(3) Affixed to sing or pl of nouns it denotes

(a) An activity which is directed toward the object implied in the stem of the noun, or which is employed to produce or procure this object *kopfen* to cut off the heads or tops, *er blättert* (from pl of the noun) *im Buche* he is turning over the pages of the book, *lochen* (from the sing) to punch, punch a hole or holes in (*eine Fahrkarte, ein Eisen lochen*), *durchlochern* (from the pl) to punch holes in, perforate, *buttern* to churn, *fischen* to fish

(b) A working or busying oneself with the object implied in the stem *pflügen* to plow, *eggen* to harrow, *meißeln* to chisel

(c) In student slang verbs are made from nouns in the freest manner, *ochsen* or *buffeln* to study hard (especially for examination), 'cram,' 'bone,' *holzen* to cane, *bechern* to drink freely, &c

(4) It is sometimes affixed to other parts of speech

(a) To particles *bejahen* (ja) to answer affirmatively, *verneinen* to answer in the negative

(b) To numerals *vereinigen* to unite, *entzweien* to set at variance

(c) To interjections *juch'heien* to call out *juch'hei* (hurrah)

2. *eln* (O H G -ilon and alon), a suffix usually causing mutation, added to the stem of verbs, adjectives and nouns, to express

a The idea of iteration, i.e. the idea of the frequent occurrence and repetition of an activity *betteln* to beg for a living, *wineln* to whine, *streicheln* to stroke, *hakeln* to crochet, *lit* to keep hooking, *schütteln* to shake Also the idea of rapidity often enters into the meaning *prasseln* to clatter down, fall thick and fast, *zappeln* to wriggle, strike out in all directions (with hands or feet or both) The blending of the iterative with the diminutive idea is very common See b below The idea of iteration is often coupled with more or less depreciatory force *schmeicheln* to flatter (lit smooth over), *heucheln* to play the hypocrite (lit keep bowing), *schmuggeln* to smuggle, *verzarteln*

b A diminutive idea *lacheln* (lachen to laugh) to smile, *tropfeln* to fall in little drops, drip, *kritteln* to cavil, make trifling criticisms, *sticheln* to make mean, little, stinging remarks, *norgeln* to find fault with in little things, *gangeln* to teach a child to make its first little steps *Er fluchte nie, er fluchelte hochstens* (Siegfried's *Ein Wohltäter*) *Ach ja, es „menschelte“* (a bit of human nature or weakness cropped out) *überall Mit diesem schönen Wort pflegte Holder (name) die Schwache der Gesellschaft nicht zu bemanteln, aber dem Verstandnisse naher zu bringen* (Stulgebauer's *Golz Krafft*, I 1, p 12) The iterative idea described in a often blends with the idea of diminution *husteln* to hack, emit a short dry cough and repeat it often, *krankeln* to be sickly, have frequent but rather light attacks of sickness The iterative idea can also be felt in a number of the examples given above The idea of diminution is often coupled with more or less depreciatory force *geistreicheln* to try to write in a bright sprightly style, *klugeln* to affect wisdom, *tufteln* to draw over nice distinctions *Weil er nicht auf dem geraden Weg der Uhrmacherei geblieben war, immer Neues entdecken wollte und daher immer allerlei probierte oder probelte, daher hieß er der Probler* (Auerbach's *Dorfgeschichten*, 2, p 7)

c The idea of likeness similarity close association *Es fuchsel* It smells of foxes, *anheimeln* to remind one of home, *ein hundelnder Hofling* a fawning courtier, *frommeln* to affect piety, *schwabeln* to speak the Swabian dialect, *naseln* to talk thru the nose The idea of likeness, similarity, close association is often coupled with depreciatory force as in a number of these examples

d. This prefix sometimes has ingressive perfective (164) force *Es herbstelt* It is getting autumn Often in the southern dialects *Es knuegelet* (i.e. *gnu-gelet*) *mir = Es wird mir genug I am beginning to get enough*

e In Swiss dialects it is much used to express the feeling of endearment (to a child) *Chumele* (i.e. *kommele*) *zu mir*.

3. *ern* (developed in part out of the *ern* which arises from the addition of *n* to a comparative suffix or the pl of a noun as mentioned in 1 (2). (a) and (3) (a) above), a suffix usually affixed to the stem of verbs to express

a. The frequent repetition or the continuation of an action which is often conceived of as proceeding by jerks or with unsteady motion: **schnattern** to cackle (like geese), **stottern** to stutter, **flackern** to flicker, **klettern** to climb, lit. to keep on sticking, **plätschern** to splash, dabble.

*Note.* Here -eln and -ern approach each other very closely, some stems preferring the one suffix, other stems the other suffix. Where both suffixes may be added to the same stem -eln expresses a weaker activity: **wandeln** to saunter along slowly, leisurely, **wandern** to go from one place to another, **auswandern** to emigrate; **schütteln** to shake (hands, &c.), **schüttern** to shake violently (as the earth in an earthquake, or the human frame under the influence of violent emotion).

b. The irresistible desire of doing that which is implied in the stem, a usage rare in older periods, at first confined largely to popular speech, but now gaining a foothold in the literary language, especially frequent in impersonal constructions: **mich schläfert**, **trinkert**, **durstert**, **tanzert** I feel like going to sleep, &c. **Es lächert mich noch** (Wilbrandt's *Ein Mecklenburger*, p. 30). Also with a noun as subject: **Dann begann ein peinliches Darben, durch kurze und kraftlose neue Anläufe unterbrochen, deren Hoffnungslosigkeit ihn schier selber lächerte** (Hermann Hesse's *Unterm Rad*, p. 189).

c. In a few cases it makes factitive verbs: **folgern** to draw a conclusion, to conclude, lit. to make follow out of, **steigern** to raise (the price), to increase, lit. to make ascend, &c.

4. **sen**, **schen**, **zen** with iterative and weak diminutive force, **'enzen** (or **eln**) denoting likeness or inclination: **mucksen** to mumble, **mutter** to one's self in complaint, **klatschen** to clap (with the hands), **ächzen** to groan, **grunzen** to grunt, **duzen** to address by *du thou*, **fi'schenzen** (or **fischeln**) to smell of fish, **wil'denzen** to smell or taste of game, **po'lenzen** to be fond of the Poles and their ways, **grie'chenzen** to imitate the Greeks, **'faulenzen** to idle away one's time. The suffix **-enzen** is a Middle German form and earlier in the period when M.G. writers were prominent was much used. In general the literary language now prefers as iterative and diminutive suffix the S.G. **-eln** (see 2. a, b, c above). The verb **'faulenzen**, however, is still quite common, but its stress on the first syllable might indicate that it doesn't belong here but comes from **Faulenz** = **fäuler Lënz**, i.e. *lázý Lăwrence*.

5. **chen**, **cken**, **pfen**, suffixes which in reality are the strengthening of the final consonants of the stem to express a strengthening or intensification of the meaning of the stem: **hорchen** (**hören** to hear) to listen, **büicken** (**biegen** to bend) to bow humbly, **rupfen** (**raufen** to pull) to pluck (a chicken).

6. **'ieren** (from the Old French ending *ier*), a foreign suffix, hence the accent. It has no distinct meaning, but is only a formal sign of the infinitive, affixed not only to foreign stems but also to German: **re'gieren** to rule, **mar'schieren** to march; **buchsta'bieren** to spell, **hal'bieren** to divide into two equal parts, **stol'zieren** to strut, &c.

a. From the last half of the twelfth century on, foreign, especially French verbs with this suffix began to appear, and later fairly swarmed into the language, assuming quite a stylish, aristocratic tone under the existing literary, political, and social supremacy of the French, but now for some time the tide has turned, and they are disappearing, and a number have sunk to the level of mere slang, or imply contempt, or mark something as being of a light, frivolous, "Frenchy" nature, as can be seen in the following ironical sentence from Lessing's *Minna von Barnhelm*, 3, 2: **Es war ein ganzer Mensch! Er konnte frisieren und rasieren und parlieren** (palaver or here perhaps 'talk French,' 'parley voo') — **und charmieren** (flirt).

b. Notice that the German ending **en** is added to the foreign infinitive ending, so that there are in fact two endings in all these words. In O.H.G. the German infinitive ending was added to the stem of the foreign word: **tih̄tōn** (from Latin *dictare*) now **dichten**. Sometimes we have the older and newer formation side by side with differentiated meaning: **dichten** and **diktieren**; **doktern** and **doktorieren**; **fabeln** and **fabulieren**; **ordnen** (L. *ordinare*) and **ordinieren**; **opfern** (L. *operari*) and **operieren**; **proben** and **probieren**; **spenden** (L. *spendere*) and **spendieren**, &c. These two endings are also added to German stems for purposes of differentiation: **hausen** and **hausieren**, **schatten** and **schattieren**, &c.

7. **i'sieren**, a suffix corresponding in large part to the English *ize*: **modernisieren** to modernize, **tyrannisieren** to tyrannize, **homerisieren** to homerize, write in the style of Homer, **goethisieren** to write in the style of Goethe, &c.

8. **'eien**, a suffix corresponding to the foreign ending *ei* in nouns and the

M H G infinitive ending *igen, ien* It has no distinct meaning *prophe'zeien* to prophesy, *ka'steien* to chastise, &c

*General Note* It should be noticed that all these verbal suffixes frequently appear in nouns as the infin. of a verb is often used as a neut. abstract noun *Das Gehen ermüdet* Sie konnte vor Schluchzen nicht sprechen.

#### IV *Derivative or Compound Adverbs*

Most adverbs are particles which are derived from adjectives, participles, nouns, pronouns, and a few from verbs The commonest of the adverbs derived from other words may be divided into the following groups

1 From adjectives and participles by casting off the inflectional endings *gut* well, *kuhn* boldly, *trefflich* excellently, *gelehrt* learnedly, *ausgezeichnet* splendidly, *entzuckend* charmingly, &c

a Instead of assuming the simple uninflected form of the adj. or participle the adverb sometimes takes the form of a case of the adjective or participle especially the gen. in -s *rechts* to the right, links to the left *anders* otherwise, *bereits* already, but in southwest Germany *almost*, *zusehends* perceptibly, &c

2 From adjectives, nouns, and sometimes other parts of speech by adding the suffixes -e, -lich, -lings, -warts, and by forming compounds with *Weg* and *Weise*: *gerne* willingly, *endlich* finally, *meuchlings* treacherously, *südwarts* southward, *kurz'weg* abruptly, *paarweise* by twos, &c

a In a few instances there is still, as in M H G, a slight formal difference between the positive of adjectives and adverbs The adverb adds e to the stem of the adjectives, or if the adjective has mutation the adverb is distinguished from it by taking no mutation See 222 2 E Note

b Some adverbs especially those formed from adjectives in -ig, were formerly distinguished from the corresponding adjectives by suffixing -lich *traurig* (adj.), *trauriglich* (adv.) Also to dry a few of these formations in -lich are *only* used as adverbs, as *bekanntlich*, *ewiglich*, *falschlich*, *freilich*, *gewaltiglich*, *gewißlich*, *hochlich*, *kurzlich*, *schwerlich*, *sicherlich*, *währlich* In English the similar development of adverbial *ly* has gone much farther A number of formations in -lich are adjectives only in form, and are in reality adverbs See II 11 2 A f and B a above

c The adverbial suffix -lings (related to the masc. substantive suffix -ling) is suffixed to nouns, adjectives, verbal stems, prepositions, and adverbs to denote manner or indicate position or direction toward *bauchlings* lying flat on one's belly, *rucklings* backward, *blindlings* blindly, *rüttlings* astraddle, *vorlings* forward This suffix was common earlier in the period, often in the form *lingen* or *ling*, but is now restricted to a few words

d The suffix warts denotes direction toward *ostwärts*, *westwärts*, *vorwärts*, *seewwärts*, &c.

e The compounds with -weg and -weise denote manner and have arisen from prepositional phrases (M H G) in *manegen wec in many a way*, in *menschen (gen) wise according to the ways of men* The group with -weg is not large *frisch'wäg* resolutely, briskly, *glatt'wäg* roundly, flatly, plunly, &c The word *'halbwäg* half way does not belong here as it comes from M H G *halben wec* (acc. of extent) This word also appears in the forms *'halbwege* (acc. pl.) and *'halbwegs* (gen.) in the same meaning

The group in -weise is quite large In M H G we find a prepositional phrase here in *kriuzes wise* *crosswise*, now *'kreuzweise* as *in* dropped out and the group was felt as a compound Now as in other compounds we sometimes find the first component in the form of the sing. or pl. stem, sometimes with the ending -s *faßweise* or *fasserweise* by the barrel, in barrels *paarweise* by pairs *schrittweise* step by step *stufenweise* by degrees, *ausnahmsweise* by way of exception, &c These compounds in -weise are now often also used as adjectives *das stufenweise Steigen*, *die teilweise Erneuerung*, *die versuchsweise Einführung*

3 From nouns

A. a. From the cases of nouns, especially the gen.: *vormittags* in the forenoon, *teils* partly, *rings* round about, *Donnerstags* on Thursdays, *rechter Hand* to the right hand, *unnötigerweise* unnecessarily; and often with an *s* in the gen. in case of fem. nouns after the analogy of masculines: *meinerseits* on my part, *unserseits* on our part; (in the acc.) *heim* home, *weg* (= M.H.G. *enweg*, i.e. *auf den Weg*) away, *ein bißchen* a little bit, *jeden Tag* every day, *ein Jahr* one year, &c.; (in the old instrumental) *heute*, from older *hiu tagu* *on this day*, corresponding to Latin *hodie*, from older *hoc die*. The genitive construction is treated more at length in 223. I. 10. *a*, II. 1, 2, 3, 4, III. *a*, IV. 2. A. *a*, *b*, *c*, B. *a*, *c*, *d*, C. *a*, VI, VII, XI, 249. II. 2. A. *a*; the dative in 223. I. 10, *c*, II. 1, 2, *b*, III. *c*; the accusative in 223. I. 10. *d*, II. 1, 3, IV. 2. A, B, C.

*b*. From nouns or adjective-substantives with a preceding governing prep. or a following particle: *übermorgen* day after to-morrow, *ab'handen* removed from its proper place, *auf gut Glück* at random; *berg'auf* uphill, *jahr'ein*, *jahr'aus* year in, year out; *bei weitem* by far, *vor allem* above all, &c.

*c*. From two nouns separated by *und* or a prep.: *Knall und Fall* suddenly, *Tag für Tag* day by day, *Arm in Arm* arm in arm.

B. Among the cases mentioned in A. *a* and *b* that are especially worthy of notice is a large group of adverbs formed from nouns which have lost their original meaning and force, and now form together with the verb a single idea. Such adverbial nouns in an oblique case after a preposition are now in force true compound adverbs, and can be distinguished from genuine nouns by the dropping of their article, and also by this that they no longer retain their original restricted literal meaning, but have taken on a much more general or a figurative one: *zu Bette gehen* to go to bed (not any especial bed, but in a general sense of *to sleep*), *zutage kommen* to come to light, *in See gehen* *to put to sea*, not any especial sea, but the broad ocean in contrast to land, *zugrunde gehen* to go to ruin, *zuleide tun* to hurt, *außer acht lassen*, or *außer aller Acht lassen* to pay no attention to, *zu Herzen nehmen* to take to heart, &c. These adverbs are sometimes written with capitals, especially when a preceding inflected modifier reminds us of their originally substantive nature, but in many cases they are written with a small letter when the originally substantive nature is not distinctly felt. These adverbs are in force separable prefixes, and should be written in one word with the verb, but as yet this practice is not always followed, and some fluctuation in usage in this respect occurs: *zu Grunde gehen*, or *zu grunde gehen*, or most commonly *zugrunde gehen* to go to wreck and ruin; *in Stand setzen*, *in stand setzen*, or most commonly *instand setzen* to put into working order, &c. Compare 59. III. *j* (and also *bb* thereunder) and 62. E. *Note*.

4. From pronominal stems: *wo* *where*, from the same stem as *wer*; *da* *there*, *dann* *then*, both from the same stem as the demon. *der*.

5. From other particles: *Die Sonne hellt den Himmel auf*. *Ich habe ausgeschlafen* I have had my sleep out.

6. In composition with other particles: *dagegen* on the contrary, *hierin* in this, &c.

7. From verbs: *gelt* (= *es gelte*, pres. subj.) in the popular language of South Germany, expecting the confirmation of the speaker's position, *isn't that true?*, expressing assurance, *I say, I'm sure, indeed*, also as an introduction to an entreaty or command; *bewahre*, or *ei behüte*, or *Gott bewahre*, or *behüte* no, not at all.

#### V. Formation of Prepositions.

The oldest and most common prepositions were originally adverbs, as described in 226. Similarly other parts of speech have from time to time been pressed into service at first temporarily to show the relation between a verb and some other word. In course of time the feeling of their former function disappeared, and the temporary office became a permanent one. Thus new prepositions are constantly being formed. The following instances may serve to illustrate in brief the varied origin of the prepositions that have come from

other sources than from adverbs. In an earlier period the comparative of the adj. was followed by the dat. (just as in the Latin by the ablative). Later this dat. construction after a comparative died out except in case of the two comparatives *ehe sooner than* and *seit farther on*. At present all feeling that they are comparatives is lost, but since they still as formerly govern the dat. they are construed as prepositions with the dat. The latter of these words, *seit*, is now the common prep. *since*, and the former, *ehe*, is also felt as a prep., tho only found written together with its dependent dat. in the one word *ehedem before that* in the literary language, but often heard thus as a prep. in the language of the common people in such expressions as *Ehe (before) Dienstag kann ich nicht kommen*. *Anstatt* or *statt instead of* are examples of recently formed prepositions the word *Statt* still existing independently as a noun. When the two elements of *anstatt* are separated the latter element is distinctly felt as a noun, as also *Statt* when preceded by an article or other modifying word, and hence written with a capital letter: *an Kindes Statt* in place of a child (of one's own), *Gutes Wort findet eine gute Statt*, and *Ich bitte, es an meiner Statt zu tun*. When *an* and *statt* are found together the compound is felt rather as a prep., and is written with a small letter, and likewise *statt* when there is no article: *Und nun anstatt or statt des Vaters erschien die Mutter*. The prep. *neben* is compounded of the prep. *in* and *eben level* and hence its meaning *on a level with, alongside of*. See also 228 I b and 4 under *während* and *ungeachtet*.

## 246 FORMATION OF WORDS BY MEANS OF PREFIXES

Only two classes of words—nouns and verbs—have especial prefixes. Adjectives and adverbs have their prefixes in common with verbs and nouns. Of course, very many nouns derived from derivative or compound verbs have the same prefixes as the corresponding verbs. *Ver'stand understanding ver'stehen to understand*, &c. In one prefix, however, the form differs in nouns and verbs, *Ruck- re, back* in nouns, but *zuruck-* in verbs. *Ruckfall relapse*, but *zuruck-fallen to fall back, relapse*. Only those prefixes are discussed here which are peculiar to nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, or which present difficulties when used with these parts of speech. The prefixes in derivative words were once independent words, but have in course of time lost their identity as such, and have now no existence outside of compounds. In connection with the loss of their independence is the loss of accent. In nouns, however, all the prefixes except *ge-* usually have stress. For details concerning accent, see Art. 47.

### I Formation of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns by means of Prefixes

1. *ab* has two meanings
  - a *Away, off, down* *Abfahrt, Abweg, Abgrund*, &c
  - b The idea of falseness, worthlessness, negation *Abgott idol, Abschaum, abhold*, and in an earlier period *abholz (= Abfallholz)*, *abewitze (= Unverstand)*, &c
- 2 *aber*, originally a comparative of *ab off* with the meaning *farther off*, with regard to time *later*, has three meanings
  - a It is still in early N H G an independent word, meaning *again*, which naturally developed out of the original meanings *farther off, later*. *Vnd der HERR rief Samuel aber zum dritten mal* (1 Sam iii 8). To day *aber* is in this meaning rarely used as an independent word, and is now found only as a prefix in a few words, as *abermals once more, again*. *Abersaat* second sowing, lit. later sowing or sowing again, *Aberglaube* superstition, lit. belief farther off (from the proper belief), &c
  - b In the conjunction *aber* the original idea of *farther off* naturally leads to the idea of something different, a contrast, in English rendered by *but, however*

c. In a few words *aber* is a corrupted form of *ober upper, higher*: *Aberacht*, now under the influence of *aber again* felt as meaning a ban which has been proclaimed again and made more severe, lit. a higher imperial ban resting upon the former one.

3. *after* (identical with Eng. *after*), which is prefixed to nouns, participles, and adjectives and has the meanings *behind, after* in their literal local or temporal sense, and also in their applied meanings *undeveloped, imperfect, approaching to, inferior, false*: *Afterbürge* one who stands behind another as security, *Aftermieter* one who sublets, *Afterrede* talk behind one's back, calumny, *Aftermutter* hard-hearted mother, *Afterklaue* dew-claw, *Afterblättchen* bot. stipule, *Afterkugel* spheroid, *Afterkritiker* would-be critic, *Aftergröße* false greatness, *aftergelehrt* having a superficial knowledge, *afterweise* would-be wise.

4. *ant* (the full form corresponding to the unaccented *ent-, emp-*; see II. 2 below), prefixed now only to two nouns *Antwort* answer and *Antlitz* poetic word for face. Here the prefix denotes *toward* or *against*.

5. *et*, prefixed to a few pronouns in order to convey to them a general or indefinite meaning: *etwas* something, *etlich* some, several.

6. *erz* (= Eng. *arch-*, Gk. ἀρχι), prefixed to nouns (1) to denote the leader of a class: *Erzbischof* archbishop, *Erzengel* archangel, *Erzherzog* archduke, *Erzpriester* archpriest, *Erzvater* patriarch, &c.; (2) to convey intensifying force: *Erzdieb* arrant thief, *Erzdemokrat* radical democrat, *Erzdummkopf* regular blockhead, *Erzlügner* infernal liar, arch-liar, &c. It is also added to adjectives to convey intensifying force: *erzdumm* extremely stupid, *erzfaul* very lazy, *erkatholisch* ultra-catholic, &c. For accent of these substantive and adjective derivatives see 47. 3. A. b. aa, c.

7. *ge* (cognate with *i* in English handiwork and Latin *co-, con-, cum*; compare II. 4 below), prefixed to the stem of nouns and verbs to denote:

a. A collective idea: *Gebirge* mountain-system, *Gebüsch* thicket of bushes, *Gesinde* all the servants of a household, *Gebrüder* two or more brothers of a family. See also 67. Note.

b. A person engaged with another in the activity mentioned in the stem, or a person sharing something with another: *Gefährte* a fellow-traveler, *Ge-spiele* play-mate, *Tischgenosse* table-companion, *Geselle* companion, literally one sharing the same room (Saal) with another.

c. The idea of a collection or association naturally passes over into that of repetition, duration, that which is connected in order of time: *Gezwitscher* chirping, *Geplauder* conversation. Here the idea of duration or repetition may be unpleasant, and hence *ge-* often takes on the meaning of disparagement, contempt. See 83. b.

d. In verbal derivatives *Ge-* denotes an aggregate that has resulted from the activity indicated by the verbal stem: *Gewächs* plant, lit. all that has resulted from the process of growing, *Geschick* fate, lit. all that has been sent to someone, *Gebäude* that which has resulted from building, *Getreide* (O.H.G. *gitregidi*, from *tragen to bear*) grain, lit. all that has resulted from the process of bearing, *Gemälde*, &c.

e. In adjectives the force of *ge-* is in general scarcely appreciable, as the stem-word is in most cases lost: *genug* enough, *genehm* acceptable, *gesund* healthy, &c. In a few cases where the stem-word is also in use a shade of meaning develops between the stem-word and the derivative: *treu* true (as in *ein treuer Freund*), but *getreu* loyal (to a ruler), true (dem Original *getreu*), close (eine *getreue Übersetzung*), faithful (eine *getreue Nachbildung*); streng strict, severe, but *gestreng* in use earlier in the period to address persons of noble rank, especially such as have the power of life and death over subjects, as in *gestrenger Herr* your Worship.

8. *miß* (in M.H.G. *misse*, which still survives in *Missetat*, cognate with Eng. *mis*, as in *mistake*), prefixed in most part to stems having an abstract meaning to denote:



*a* The opposite of that contained in the stem  *Mißgunst* disfavor,  *Mißfallen* displeasure,  *mißfällig* displeasing, unpleasant, &c

*b* Something wrong erroneous, defective, unsuccessful, bad  *Mißstand* abuse,  *Mißheirat* misalliance,  *Mißverständnis* misunderstanding,  *Mißton* dissonance,  *Mißernte* bad crop,  *Missetat* misdeed,  *mißgestaltet* misshapen,  *mißtonend* ill tuned, discordant

*9 un* (cognate with English *in*), prefixed to the stem of nouns, adjectives, participles, and adverbs, to denote

*a* The opposite of that mentioned in the stem or mere negation or lack prefixed to the stem of nouns  *Undank* ingratitude,  *Unart* naughtiness,  *Unsinn* nonsense,  *Unverstand* want of judgment,  *Unding* nothingness, impossibility, more commonly according to *b* absurdity, foolish thing In a few words *un-* or *miß-* can be used without difference of meaning  *Unbehagen* or  *Mißbehagen* uncomfortable feeling &c  *Un-* is also prefixed to adjectives adjective participles, and adverbs with the same force  *undankbar*, &c For accent in substantive and adjective derivatives see 47 2 B *a*

In younger group words (247 2 *b*), however, where the negative is not used to indicate the absence of an inherent quality or force but to state a fact negatively, *nicht*, not *un-*, is employed, just as *nicht* is usually employed in negative statements but differing from usage in a normal sentence it is stressed, as it is the first component of a younger group word and the stress of course is that of a younger group-word  *ein 'Nichtburger* one who is not a citizen, an alien,  *ein 'Nichtraucher* a car where there is no smoking,  *'nichtadelig* not of noble birth,  *das 'Nichtthalten eines Versprechens*,  *die 'Nichteinklagbarkeit von Zechschulden* the irrecoverableness of drinking debts (but  *eine 'uneintreibbare Forderung* a claim that can't be collected under the law, i.e. a claim of a certain kind) Present participles usually have almost pure verbal force and indicate acts or facts hence like verbs they usually take unaccented *nicht*:  *die nicht tanzenden Herren* the gentlemen who are not dancing Only when they approach the nature of pure adjectives do they take *un-*, as in  *'unbedeutend*,  *'unwissend*,  *'unzutreffend*, &c Perfect participles can of course only take *un-* when they are used adjectively In adjective function they take *nicht* when they denote an act, *un-* when they denote a state  *Der noch nicht geöffnete Brief* the letter that hasn't been opened yet,  *der ungeöffnete Brief* the unopened letter,  *der Brief ist noch nicht geöffnet [worden]* the letter has not yet been opened,  *der Brief ist ungeöffnet* The letter is unopened For the stress here see 47 2 B *a* In 183 2 C *c* a few traces are seen of an older order of things, where in the predicate appositive relation *un-* can be used even when the perfect participle denotes an act

*b* Something defective, bad, aside from the regular and usual, unnatural, hence sometimes repulsive, contemptible, also something worthless unpleasant  *Untat* (usually  *Untatzen*) spot, blemish,  *Unsitte* bad custom,  *Unkosten* transportation charges, that is, charges aside from the regular price of the goods, also disagreeable expenses,  *Unmensch* a brutish person,  *Unnatur* that which is contrary to nature,  *Unland* land swampy and good for nothing  *Unkraut* weeds,  *Ungeziefer* vermin,  *Unwetter* bad stormy weather,  *Unmut* or  *Mißmut* ill humor

*c* A strong intensification of the idea contained in the stem, however, with indefinite force so that the extent of the idea is not accurately defined  *eine 'Untat* an atrocious crime  *se Menschen* a great crowd of people,  *eine 'U* may-bugs  *ein 'Untier* a monster,  *'Un'summen* great depth, a deep place  *in a river* or according to *a* above just the reverse  *a shoal* For accent see 47 3 A *b aa c*

*d* In dialect and a few expressions in the literary language *un-* is sometimes used pleonastically somewhat as *nicht* (see 223 XI B *a*)  *unzweifellos* =  *zweifellos*, &c Compare 223 XI B *a* (6)

*10 ur* (full form corresponding to unaccented *er-*, see II 3 below), a prefix originally meaning *out* which can still be seen in its present signification *the*

*extreme*, in the direction of the beginning, source, from which or out of which a thing may come, or of the end of something, literally the coming out of some condition: *Urwald* primeval forest, *Urgroßvater* great-grandfather, *Urbewohner* aborigines, *Urheimat* original home, *Uranfang* first beginning; *Urenkel* great-grandson, *Urfehde* oath to put an end to a feud, lit. feud at an end.

a. In most words *ur-* is long, but in *Urteil* *judgment, sentence*, it is short.

b. The idea of *the extreme* has in adjectives given to *ur-* intensifying power: '*ur*'alt very old, '*ur*'plötzlich very sudden, all of a sudden, '*ur*'kräftig extremely powerful. For accent see 47. 3. A. b. aa.

11. *Foreign prefixes.* Besides *erz-*, described in 6 above, the following foreign prefixes are placed before German or foreign words: *anti-*, *ex-*, *hyper-*, *super-*, *quasi-*, *pseudo-*, *vize-*. They have the same force as in English: *anti*'deutsch, *Ex*minister, *hyper*aristo'kratisch, *super*klug, *Quasi*gelehrter would-be scholar, *Pseudo*fürst, *Vize*könig, &c.

## II. Formation of Verbs by means of Prefixes.

The long list of separable prefixes are not discussed here, as they largely consist of words which have an independent existence outside of compounds. Verbs containing such prefixes are compounds, not derivatives. Some of these prefixes, however, are little used outside of compounds and are approaching the nature of the inseparable prefixes discussed below. They are treated under the other separable prefixes in 215. II. 1. B and at greater length under adverbs in 223. The following inseparable prefixes were once also independent words, but as they are now only used in derivatives and have lost their former concrete meaning they present many difficulties and are hence treated here in detail.

1. *be* (related to the prep. *bei*) has the meaning *around, on all sides of*. Originally *be* was also a preposition, as can still be seen in *be'hende* (= M.H.G. *behende* = *bei der Hand*) *quick, nimble*. Originally this preposition governed also the acc., and this former construction still occurs in composition with intransitive verbs, where the compound takes an object in the acc. which is in fact the object of the preposition *be*. See *a* below.

The original local meaning *around, on all sides of* can still be seen in a number of verbs: *bedenken* to study something from all sides, consider, *bedrängen* to press someone hard on all sides. The idea of *around, encircling* leads directly to *grasping, seizing*: *begreifen* to grasp mentally, comprehend, *benehmen* seize, take away (*Etwas benimmt einem den Atem*), *sich gut benehmen* to conduct oneself well, lit. to have a good grasp, hold on oneself. The idea of *around, encircling, shutting in* is seen in *befangen* (*in einem Wahn befangen* wrapped up in a delusion), *belagern* to besiege, lit. put a camp around, &c.

The original local meaning of *be* is no longer vividly felt, but out of it distinct groups of applied meanings have been developed. The idea of *around, encircling* often leads to the idea of a definite, limited sphere or plane, *upon* which the action plays or *over* which it extends, or *into* which it penetrates. Hence *be-* is often used:

a. To bring the action expressed in intransitive verbs to bear *upon* some object, and change thereby intransitive verbs into transitive: *Sie weint* *she weeps*, but *Sie beweint den Tod ihrer Mutter*, or *beweint ihre Mutter* *she is mourning over the death of her mother*, or *weeping over her mother*, lit. *around, in the sphere of, concerning, about*. *Furcht und Entsetzen befällt mich* *Fear and horror seize me*, lit. fall around me, in my sphere, near me. Thus also *besitzen* to possess, lit. sit upon, *betreten* to step upon, *bekommen* to get, lit. come upon, &c. Older *bekennen* to know, know about survives in the participles *bekannt* and *Bekannter* and in the factitive *bekennen* to cause another to know about: *seine Schuld bekennen* to confess his guilt, lit. cause another to know about his guilt. One of these verbs has a genitive instead of an accusative object: *Er bedarf des Trostes* He needs consolation, lit. is needy in the sphere of, with regard to consolation.

*b* In composition with verbs already trans, to bring the action to bear upon some object or extend the force of the action entirely *over* or *about* something. Sie begießt die Blumen She is watering the flowers. Der Landmann bebaut (cultivates) das Feld. Er stahl einen Rock He stole a coat, but Er bestahl seinen Herrn He robbed, stole from his master.

*Note* Observe that the object of the simple verb often becomes in the construction with the derivative a dative after the prep. *mit*. Die Arbeiter laden Getreide auf das Schiff The workmen are loading grain on to the ship but Die Arbeiter beladen das Schiff mit Getreide.

*c* To give intensifying force to the simple verb. The idea of *around*, *on all sides* leads to the idea of completion, doing something well, thoroughly, accurately. bekommen to agree with (one's health, more lit. to come along, go along well, in early N.H.G. of plants to do well, flourish), besehen to examine carefully, lit. look at on all sides, berechnen to compute, calculate accurately, bestehen to stand firmly, pass thru a test successfully, insist upon, beheben (Übel, Hindernisse, Widersprüche beheben, growing ever more common instead of the simple form heben) to remove entirely, befolgen to follow closely (Gesetze, Lehren, Regeln, Vorschriften befolgen), &c.

*d* In composition with adjectives, to indicate that the attribute in question is placed all around, is bestowed upon or put *in*, *on*, *over* something. feucht moist, befeuchten to moisten, ruhig calm, beruhigen to calm, reicher richer, bereichern to enrich. Thus beschleunigen to hasten, betruben to grieve, belustigen to amuse, &c.

*Note* Some verbs are formed after the analogy of those derived from adjectives in *ig* and thus end in *igen*, although there is no *ig* in the stem from which they are formed. beedigen (be + Eid), beerden (be + Erde), befriedigen, bekräftigen, benachrichtigen, &c.

*e* In composition with nouns to indicate that that which is implied by the noun is placed all around, is bestowed upon someone, or that something or somebody is supplied, furnished, endowed with what is contained in the noun. Laub foliage, belauben to furnish with foliage, Saiten string (of an instrument), besaiten to furnish with strings, Seele soul, life, beeseelen to put life into, animate.

*f* There is also an ironical application of the idea *over*, *on* in some verbs formed from adjectives or nouns. Ich bin elend! Ach was, ich will dich be-elenden! I feel miserable! What, I will give you something to make you feel miserable about. Sie behauptet, sie sei die Frau Junkern (245 I 6 1 b), aber ich will sie bejunkern, daß sie an mich denken soll She pretends to be Mrs. Junker, but I will 'junker' her so that she will remember me. Was Latein? (What! you want to study Latin?) ich will dich Knirps belateinen (Raabe's Hungerpastor, chap. 5).

*g* Although the decided tendency has been for these derivatives to become transitive, a few of them are nevertheless intransitive with the same general meanings. beharren (*c*) to stand firmly by (Er beharrt auf seiner Meinung), bekommen to agree with one's health (see example and explanation in *c*), bestehen (*c*) to insist upon, pass (come off well in a test), beruhen to rest upon, behagen to be agreeable to, afford comfort or pleasure to, lit. put protection around someone, begeben to meet, lit. come into the sphere, neighborhood of, bedürfen (example and explanation in *a*).

*2 ent* (or *emp* before a few verbs in initial *f*), which is found in its original form *ant-* only in Antwort and Antlitz, is identical with Greek *anti* and hence meant originally *toward*, *against*. This meaning can now only be found in a few words. entbieten to send to, entgelten to pay for, atone for, enthalten to contain, entsprechen to answer, correspond to, empfangen to receive, empfehlen to recommend, empfinden to feel, be sensible of.

The following derivative meanings are now more common.

*a* From the original meaning of movement toward comes that of a beginning of an activity, a change, a passing into, a putting into a new state or condition. entbrennen to take fire, become inflamed, entstehen to arise, originate, entzünden to inflame, entfachen, to enkindle, entschlummern to fall asleep (in death), entleeren to empty, entblößen to lay bare, strip, einem etwas ent-

**fremden** to alienate something from someone, **sich entledigen** (262. II. A. b) to free one's self from, **sich entblöden** to become ashamed, most commonly used negatively (: *Du entblödest dich nicht, mir das ins Gesicht zu sagen?*), &c. As can be seen from the examples the basal part of such verbs is either a verb or an adjective.

*Note 1.* The prefix of a number of the verbs in this group whose basal element is a verb is in fact the modern corrupted form of O.H.G. in (identical with N.H.G. prep. in) *toward, into*, which was closely related in meaning to the original force of *ent*, and in certain verbs became confounded with it, as *int* (the O.H.G. form of *ent*) was itself often used in the corrupted form of *in*.

*b.* A change is not only a movement in the direction of that which is new, but is also a breaking away from the old, hence in general *separation, removal, withdrawal*, now the most common meaning: **entreißen** to snatch away from, **enttäuschen** to disappoint, lit. to tear away from a pleasant illusion, **entlassen** to turn off, dismiss, **entlohn** (= **ablohn**) to pay off, lit. to send someone off rejoicing with his pay, wages, **entkommen** to escape, **entsagen** to renounce, **entgleiten** to slip out of; **entblättern** to strip off the leaves, **enthaupten** to take off the head, decapitate, **entthronen** to dethrone, **entkräften** to enervate; **sich entblöden** to have the audacity, lit. to tear one's self away from being modest, shy, bashful, to make one's self bold, now little used in this meaning altho common in the meaning in *a*. As can be seen from the examples, the basal part of such verbs may be a verb, noun, or less commonly an adjective. Verbs of this class of meanings are called privatives. For comparison of this meaning of *ent-* with its synonyms see 223. I. 7. G. *c*.

*c.* Intimately related to the preceding is the idea of *reversal*, denoting the opposite of the simple verb: **ehren** to honor, but **entehren** to dishonor; **laden** to load, but **entladen** to unload; **siegeln** to seal, but **entsiegeln** to unseal.

*d.* With the idea of separation there is often associated the idea of a careful, systematic or natural unfolding or division: **entwirren** to disentangle, **entwickeln** to unravel, develop, **entfalten** to unfold, develop, **entwerfen** to sketch, map out, lit. to throw or take apart, **entfallen** to fall to one's regular share, &c. This meaning stands in marked contrast to that in *b*, which usually contains the idea of violent or unnatural separation. The idea of care and system did not originally lie in *ent* but in the verb itself, as in the first examples. From these verbs the idea may have become attached to the prefix and then spread to other verbs.

**3. er** (in Austrian and Bavarian dialects **der**), which is found in its original form **ur** only in nouns and adjectives, originally meant *from within out, out of*, and building upon this has developed a rich store of shades, all of which can be brought into connection with the fundamental meaning.

*a.* In its original literal sense or much more frequently its figurative application, but only dimly felt if felt at all: **erpressen** to press out (wine out of grapes), extort, **erziehen** to educate, lit. *to draw out*, **erbauen** to edify, **erheben** to elevate the thought or feeling, **erschöpfen** to exhaust, **sein Inneres erschließen** to disclose one's feelings, &c.

*b.* The prefix gradually lost its original local meaning, which faded away into mere abstract perfective force, i.e. the idea of point-action, not calling attention to the act as a whole but to only one point in it, the beginning or the end, in ingressive perfectives calling attention to the beginning, in effective perfectives calling attention to the end, that is, the idea of motion *from within outward* passed, on the one hand, into that of *change or transition* into a state or condition, or, on the other hand, into the idea of the final *result* or *outcome* of an action: (ingressives) **erblühen** to come out into blossom, **erwachen** to wake up (intrans.), **erwecken** to wake (trans.), **ermüden** to become tired, to tire out (trans.), **erwärmen** to warm, make warm, **erwarmen** to grow warm, **erblinden** to grow blind, **erröten** to blush, **sich ermannen** to summon up courage; (effectives) **erleben** to live to see, **erliegen** to succumb (the action resulting in somebody's lying down, i.e. giving up), **erlöschen** to become extinguished, **ergeben** (*die Untersuchung hat seine Unschuld ergeben* has proved his innocence, lit. has given his innocence as a final result), &c. As can be seen from

the examples, the basal part of such verbs may be a verb, adjective, or, less commonly, a noun. Also *ver-* in composition with verbs derived from nouns and adjectives has perfective force. See 5. D. *a, b* (and *Note*), *c* below.

The derivatives with *er-* often stand in a more or less marked contrast to their simple verbal forms, the simple verb representing an action in its duration, the derivative form representing only a particular point in the course of the action, namely, the entrance into the state or condition, or the outcome or result of the action: *grünen to be or remain green*, but *ergrünen to become green*; *wachen to be awake, watch*, but *erwachen to wake up*; *wählen to choose* (i.e. the entire act, including the period of deliberation and the final act of settling upon a choice), but *erwählen to select, elect, choose* (referring only to the resulting choice, excluding the preceding period of deliberation); *steigen to climb*, but *einen Berg ersteigen to attain the summit of a mountain by climbing*. *Ich sterbe, sterbe, und kann nicht ersterben* (Goethe's *Götz*, 5, 10). The derivative form often has a figurative application, while the simple verb has its literal meaning: *sättigen to satisfy* (one's stomach, &c.), but *ersättigen to satisfy* (one's longings, &c.); *weichen to soften* (leather, &c.), but *erweichen to soften* (the heart, feelings, &c.). In a few verbs *er-* converts intransitives into transitives: *warten to wait*, *erwarten to await, expect*. In some cases the distinction of meaning between the simple verb and the derivative is very faint.

*Note* In ingessives *er-* often represents the change as coming from within from inner causes. *Lackmuspapier in Säure getaucht wird rot* *Litmus-paper, dipped into an acid, becomes red*, but *Das Mädchen erröthet vor Scham* *the girl blushes* (lit. turns red) *for shame*.

*c.* The original idea and the more common one of result can be clearly seen in such expressions as *etwas erfragen to get something out of one by questioning*. From such expressions comes the very common meaning of getting, obtaining something in the manner described by the simple verb. *erfahren to experience* (i.e. to get by going, passing thru), to learn (i.e. to get in driving along, to pick up, in contrast to the laborious process indicated by *lernen to learn*), *erflehen to get by entreaty*, *erstürmen to get something by storm*, as a city, &c., *erstreiten to get by fighting*, *ergaunern to obtain by knavish tricks*, *erreichen to obtain by reaching*, to reach (an object, a river, a town, &c.) Compare the force of the simple verb with that of the derivative in the following: *Das Kind reichte nach den Früchten, aber es konnte sie nicht erreichen*.

*d.* *Er* refers in so many cases where a result is expressed to the life within, as in *erbittert embittered*, *erfrischen to refresh the inner man*, *erlösen to save the soul from sin*, &c., that it is associated in general with the vital forces, and when placed before certain verbs it indicates that the person died or was killed in the manner described by the simple verb: *erdolchen to stab to death*, *erdrosseln to throttle*, *erschießen to kill by shooting*, *erschlagen to kill by striking*, *ertrinken to drown*, *erlegen* (huntsman's expression) *to kill*, lit. to lay out dead, *erdrücken to press to death*, &c.

*e.* In accordance with the original meaning of *from within out* and the more common meaning of *a result*, there is a distinction made between *freuen* and *erfreuen*. The former is used of some *thing*, the existence of which merely occasions us joy, the latter of some *body* or *thing* that working from within outward, i.e. intentionally or by virtue of inherent qualities, produces joy: *Es freut mich, Sie zu sehen*, but *Erfreuen Sie mich doch mit einer Antwort*, *Ein weiser Sohn erfreut den Vater*, and *Der Wein erfreut das Herz*. The reflexive *sich erfreuen* (an, w. dat.) expresses a warmer, deeper interest than *sich freuen* (über, w. acc.) The participle *gefremt* is not used adjectively, because it is here the question of a result: *Er ist darüber erfreut, not gefremt*.

*4.* *ge* is cognate with *i* in English *handiwork* and Latin *co-, con-, cum-*, and hence denotes a collection or union (of persons, or things, or related parts). This meaning, so common in nouns, as in *Gebirge a chain or system of mountains*, *Geläut a chime of bells*, is now only rarely found in verbs: *gerinnen to coagulate*, lit. to run compactly together, *gefrieren to freeze*, *gefallen to please*, lit. to fall together with, coincide with (one's wishes). More common are the following derived meanings:

a. Like *er-* (see 3. *b* above), tho now much less common, *ge-* is used to represent a particular point in the course of an action, namely, the entrance into a state or condition, or the outcome, or result of the action: *gebrechen* to *lack*, originally meaning in its impersonal form *es gebricht* *there arises a breakage, a loss, hence a lack*; *M.H.G. bern* (now no longer used) *to carry, bear, gebären* *to give birth to*, referring to the result.

From the idea of a result comes the idea of completeness: *horchen* to *hearken, gehorchen* to *hearken to faithfully, hence to obey*. The idea of completeness is most commonly found in the *ge-* of the perfect participle: *Er hat einen Brief geschrieben*. The use of *ge-* with this meaning in the present perfect has gradually differentiated this tense from the past tense, which represents an act as going on in past time at the same time as another past act. Originally *ge-* here had only perfective force, thus not expressing the completion of an act as a whole, an accomplished fact as now, but only calling attention to one point in the action, namely the beginning or the end or result. As a survival of older usage when *ge-* had pure perfective force it cannot even to-day stand in the perfect participle before the perfective prefixes *be-*, *emp-*, *ent-*, *er-*, *ge-*, *miß-*, *ver-*, *zer-*: *begangen*, not *gebegangen*. According to older feeling *ge-* was here superfluous as the perfective prefixes expressed the perfective idea. For the same reason *ge-* could not, a little earlier in the period, stand before a word that of itself had perfective force expressing the idea of entrance into a condition or that of end, result, such as *werden* *to become, kommen* *to come, arrive, kriegen* *to get*. This older usage still survives in the perfect participle *worden* when used as an auxiliary in the passive.

The perfect participle of these derivatives with an unstressed perfective prefix has influenced the form of all other verbs unaccented on the first syllable in that they too, contrary to older usage, now assume no *ge-* in the perfect participle: *stu'diert* (not now as formerly *gestu'diert*), &c. See also 178. 2. A. *b* (1), (2), (3). Thus it is clear that the absence of *ge-* in the perfect participle before the unstressed prefixes *be-*, *emp-*, *ent-*, *er-*, *ge-*, *miß-*, *ver-*, *zer-* is no longer understood and hence is ascribed to their lack of accent, so that this usage has spread to other verbs unaccented on the first syllable. For further suppression of *ge-* in the participle in S.G. see *c*. (2) below.

*b*. The idea of coincidence and result naturally gave rise to the idea of succeeding or doing something satisfactorily: *gefallen* to *please, lit. to fall together with, coincide with (one's wishes), gedeihen* to *prosper, gelingen* to *be successful, genesen* to *recover (from sickness), geraten* to *turn out well, gewinnen* to *win, geziemen* to *befit*.

*c*. In a number of words all feeling of the meaning of the prefix has been lost, and in general it has in connection with verbs ceased to be productive and is frequently a mere fossil. This can be seen: (1) from the fact that in some cases the simple verb has been lost and now the compound alone exists: *genesen, geschehen, &c.* (2) In a number of words, especially those whose stem begins with *l, r, or n*, the vowel of the prefix is suppressed and is no longer felt: *glauben, gönnen, &c.* In S.G. the *e* of the prefix in the perfect participle is usually suppressed followed by the hardening of the *g* of the prefix to *k* and of a following *b, d, g* to *p, t, k* and the assimilation of the *k* of the prefix to a following *p, t, k*, so that the prefix is felt little or not at all: *k'wese, pote, tienet, tanzet, kange, kesse* for *gewesen, geboten, gedient, getanzt, gegangen, gegessen*. On the other hand, its force in the group in *b* must be dimly felt, for when *miß-*, which means the very opposite of *ge-*, is added the *ge-* is dropped: *gefallen*, but *mißfallen*; *gelingen*, but *mißlingen*; *geraten*, but *mißraten*. Notice also: *gebieten, but verbieten*.

5. *ver* is a very common prefix with meanings not always clearly defined and sometimes even contradictory. This is accounted for by the fact that it represents three older prefixes—Gothic *fra, faur, fair*, Latin *pro-, por-, per-*—with all their meanings. Thus *verzuckern* may mean *to spoil by sugaring too much* (A. *c*), *to cover with sugar* (C), *to turn to sugar* (D. *b*). On account of this

ambiguity *ver-* has in the last centuries been gradually replaced in many cases by other prefixes or other expressions. On the other hand, in certain groups described below *ver-* has become productive. The development of meanings is here given with as much accuracy as possible, but at a number of points we are not able to attain to even a reasonable degree of certainty as the prehistoric growth is hidden from view.

A Groups of meaning corresponding to those of Gothic *fra*

a The commonest meaning seems to be that of *away, forth* *verlaufen* to pass away (of time, &c), *verreisen* to go away on a journey, *verschenken* to give away, *verjagen* to chase away, *vergeben* to forgive, lit give away, let (a fault) go by, *verkaufen* to give away in exchange for something, to sell, *verheiraten* to give away in marriage (eine Tochter *verheiraten*). This idea often leads to the conception of a change of place *verlegen* to move (as in *Die Universität wurde von Ingolstadt nach München verlegt*), *versetzen* to transplant (einen Baum *versetzen*), promote (einen Schüler in eine höhere Klasse *versetzen*), put (*Versetzen Sie sich in meine Lage*), &c

b The idea of *away* may lead to that of the end, exhaustion, entire consumption of, even waste, and reckless and lavish use of *verblühen* to come to an end of blooming, *etwas verschmerzen* to get over something (as sorrow, &c), *verhallen* to die away (of a sound), *verbluten* to bleed to exhaustion or death, *verkummern* to waste away, *verhungern* to die of starvation, *verbrennen* to burn (something) up, *verbrauchen* to use up, *versaufen* to squander away in drink, *verschlafen* to sleep (precious time, &c) away, *vertandeln* to trifle away. This is a very productive group.

c The idea of *away* may lead to that of loss, destruction, error, out of the proper place, wrong, improper doing, spoiling, and the reversal of the meaning of the simple verb *verwirken* to forfeit, *verderben* to destroy, *verurteilen* to condemn, sentence, *verführen* to mislead, seduce, *verraten* to betray, originally to give advice or information that leads to the destruction of someone, now also used in the derived meanings to disclose, divulge, show (as in *Es verrät eine Meisterhand*), *verdrucken* to misprint, *sich verrechnen* to make a mistake in figures, *verschreiben* to write incorrectly, *sich verschreiben* (as in *Ich habe mich verschrieben It's a mere slip of the pen*) to make a mistake in writing, *sich versprechen* (as in *Ich habe mich versprochen It was a mere slip of my tongue*) to make a mistake in speaking, *sich verlaufen* to lose one's way, *verlegen* to misplace, *verkehrt* wrong, lit turned wrong (as in *die verkehrte Seite, etwas verkehrt anfangen*), *verrenken* to dislocate (den Arm *verrenken*), *sich an jemandem vergreifen* to lay violent hands on someone, *versalzen* to spoil by oversalting, *verzuckern* to spoil by sugaring too much, *verzarteln* to spoil by too much coddling, *verachten* to despise, opposite of *achten*, *verkennen* to misjudge, *verlernen* unlearn, forget (little by little), &c

B Groups of meanings corresponding to Gothic *faur*

On the basis of the few meager known facts we attempt to distinguish here three groups

a The general idea of *ver-* in this group is that of a general forward movement toward a goal, or a general outward movement *verkundigen* to announce, make known to, *verbeugen* to bow to, lit bend forward, *versehen* (mit) to look ahead, i.e. provide with, *sich versehen* to look forward, expect (as in *Ich hatte mich des Angriffs nicht versehen*), *verschlagen* to knock, push forward, i.e. to avail (as in *Es schlägt nichts*), *versetzen* to deal (jemandem einen Schlag *versetzen*), to reply (lit to put forward), *versprechen* to promise, *verlegen* to lay out or put up (the money) for, i.e. to publish (as in *ein Buch verlegen*)

b The general idea of movement forward into a position before something as found in a leads to the idea of protecting, guarding, defending, concealing, hindering, refusing obstructing *verfechten* to fight for, lit to go fighting before something to defend it, *verschließen* to lock up, lit to put a lock before to protect, *verantworten* to answer for, be responsible for, *verwesen* to manage, conduct (as a substitute for another), *vertreten* to take the place of, represent,

**versetzen** to pawn, lit. to give as security for, **verschleiern** to veil, **verwehren** to hinder, prevent, **versagen** to refuse, (**jemandem den Weg**) **verlegen** to cut off, (**einem Hause die Aussicht**) **verbauen** to shut out, &c.

*Note.* Also **be-** has a similar meaning. It has, however, only the general idea of *over, upon*, while **ver-** implies that the covering is to protect or conceal: **bedecken** to cover (the earth, &c. with snow, &c.), **verdecken** to cover (one's face to remove it from the observation of others or to conceal one's feeling); **bekleiden** to clothe, **verkleiden** to disguise.

c. The idea of a general forward movement leads to the conception of going beyond the goal, indicating excess: (**eine Gelegenheit, den Zug**) **versäumen** to miss, (**den Zug**) **verschlafen** to miss the train by sleeping too long, **sich verschlafen** to oversleep one's self.

C. Meaning corresponding to Gothic *fair*:

The original meaning of the prefix represented by Gothic *fair* cannot be clearly gleaned from the few Gothic words that have come down to us. From these meager materials it might possibly be assumed that the original idea was *around, encircling, covering*, as seems to be suggested by a few words still in use: **verschütten** to cover over with earth, &c., fill up (a ditch, &c.), **vergolden** to cover over with or as with gold, to gild, **versilbern** to cover with silver plate, **verzuckern** to sugar over, **verhüllen** to wrap up, cover over, &c.

D. The more or less concrete meanings in A, B, C have in many words faded entirely away into mere abstract perfective (see 3. b above) force. There are three groups more or less distinct:

a. We often find in **ver-** pure effective (3. b above) force, so that it indicates that the activity is sustained to the end, meets with successful issue, or is directed with energy to a certain goal or end: **verbleichen** to grow pale in death, **verbleiben** to remain until the end, **verlesen** to read (a roll of names, &c.) to the end, **verbüßen** to serve out (as in **seine Strafzeit verbüßen**), **vernehmen** to perceive, lit. to take a firm hold of (with the senses), **verfangen** to operate, take effect, avail, lit. to catch a good hold on, **verhelfen** to help someone to get something, lit. to help so effectually that the object is attained, **verstehen** to understand, lit. to stand firmly and thus have control of the situation, **verfolgen** to pursue (a course, design, &c.), **verhandeln** to negotiate, transact, **verkehren** to ply, go back and forth between definite points (as in **Die Züge verkehren stündlich zwischen diesen Orten**), to associate with, **versuchen** to try, test, lit. to seek thoroly, persistently, &c.

b. It often has pure ingressive (3. b above) force, so that it denotes a change, transformation into a state or thing indicated now usually by some adjective or noun which forms the stem of the verb: **verarmen** to grow poor, **verbilligen** to reduce the price, the expense of, render cheaper, **vereinfachen** to simplify, **verdeutschen** to translate into German, **veredeln** to ennoble, **verdicken** to thicken, **versumpfen** to become like a swamp, stagnant, **vergöttern** to deify, idolize, **verketzern** to brand as a heretic, **versilbern** to cash, **vertonen** to set to music, **einen Roman, ein Drama verfilmen** to film a novel, a drama so that it can be presented in the form of moving pictures, **vertrusten** to form into a trust, **verzuckern** to turn (intrans.) into sugar. This is a large productive group.

*Note.* Also **er-** has perfective force, indicating a change or transformation into a state or thing, some verbs preferring **er-**, others **ver-**: **erhöhen**, but **vertiefen**; **erweitern**, but **verengen**; **sich ermannen**, but **sich vernarren**. In a number of cases **ver-** has supplanted **er-** since early N.H.G.: in early N.H.G. **erarmen**, **erfaulen**, **ergrößern**, **erhungern**, &c., all now with **ver-**. In other cases **er-** has supplanted **ver-**, as in **erschrecken**. In dialect, however, the form may be preserved that has been rejected in the literary language: **Er ist ganz verschreckt** (Uschei in Marriot's *Der geistliche Tod*, chap. vi). Except in a few cases **ver-** is now used exclusively in case of verbs formed from nouns: **versteinern**, **verwässern**, &c. There is a slight shade of difference in meaning between verbs with **er-** and those with **ver-**, not always, however, can the difference be seen. Those with **er-** represent the transformation as a process of development, while those with **ver-** represent it as a final result: **ergrünen** to grow green (of the grass), but **verewigen** to immortalize, **versteinern** to petrify; **jemanden erbittern** to exasperate, irritate somebody (of a temporary condition), but **jemanden verbittern** or **jemandem das Leben verbittern** to embitter someone or someone's life (of a chronic condition).

c. It often has effective (3. b above) force, denoting a close fusion or union: **verschmelzen** to fuse, blend, **vermischen** to mix all up, confound, blend, **verwachsen** to grow together, **verbinden** to join, **verketten** to join together in close intimate relations, &c. This is a large productive group.

E. It sometimes converts intransitive verbs into transitives: **verlachen** to deride, from **lachen** to laugh; **verspotten** to ridicule, from **spotten** (**über** with



acc) to make fun of, make sarcastic remarks about, *verfluchen* to curse, damn, from *fluchen* to swear, &c. Also *be-* converts intransitive verbs into transitives, but there is usually a difference of meaning, resulting either from the former concrete meaning of the two prefixes or from gradual differentiation. *belachen* to laugh at (in mirth), *verlachen* to deride. *Die guten Witze wurden belacht, die schlechten verlacht. Man belacht den Sonderling, but Er verlachte mich mit meinen Traumereien.* Both *be-* and *ver-* indicate intensity, but *ver-* contains the additional idea of a desire to injure or a desire to attain to a definite end. *befolgen* to follow closely (*Regeln, Vorschriften befolgen*), *verfolgen* to pursue, persecute, give chase to (*Christen, Ketzer, ein Schiff verfolgen*), *pursue, follow, hold (einen Weg, einen Kurs verfolgen)*.

6 *wider against* and *re-* or *back* *wider'sprechen* (w dat) to contradict, *wider'legen* to refute, *wider'stehen* (w dat) to resist, *wider'rufen* (258 1 B a) to retract, repeal lit to call back, *widerhallen* (215 II 3 A e) re-echo, &c.

7 *zer* denotes separation a breaking to pieces, dissolution, a scattering. *zerbrechen* to break to pieces, *zerschneiden* to carve, *zerfleischen* lacerate, *zerfließen* to melt away, *zerstreuen* to scatter.

8 *miß* A This is a very productive prefix, expressing failure, error, something false or the opposite of the simple verb. *mißlingen* to fail of success, *mißdeuten* to interpret falsely, *mißfallen* to displease, *mißbilligen* to disapprove of, *mißgönnen* to begrudge, the opposite of *gönnen* to be glad to see somebody have something.

B The meaning of *miß-* causes no trouble but its accent in composition with verbs has become uncertain. In some verbs the prefix is usually unaccented in others it is either strongly accented or unaccented, and is hence treated as a separable or inseparable prefix. In the main, however, even tho accented it is not separated from the verb in the literary language except by *zu* and *ge-* in the infinitive and participle, where sometimes three forms can be found for the one word: *zu miß'deuten, zu 'mißdeuten, 'mißzudeuten; miß-'deutet, ge'mißdeutet, 'mißgedeutet.* Thus the infinitive and participle can in a number of verbs be treated as separable or inseparable verbs, and the participle may in addition be treated as if made from a compound noun (see 217). *ge'mißbilligt* (also *miß'billigt*), &c. The prefix was originally unaccented, but its newer use of placing the derivative in contrast to the simple verb naturally resulted in shifting in such cases the accent upon the prefix in accordance with its logical importance. Such participial forms as *'mißgedeutet*, &c., are after the analogy of adjectives and adjective participles such as *'mißgelaunt ill humored* which (see 47. 2 B c bb) uniformly accent the prefix. Moreover for rhythmical reasons the prefix is regularly stressed in all forms before an unaccented prefix: *mißzubehegen, mißzuverstehen, mißverstanden. O wie mißverstehen Sie mich!*

Tho the prefix is in general only separated in the above mentioned cases, there is a slight tendency toward complete separation as can be occasionally heard in facetious or sarcastic language: *O wie verstehen Sie, mein Vater, mich einmal wieder recht gründlich miß!* (Immermann's *M*, 2 5) Vogel in his "Grammatisch orthographisches Nachschlagebuch" even recommends separation in case of *mißstimmen*. *Du stimmst mich stets miß.*

## COMPOUNDS AND GROUP WORDS

247. 1 *Compounds* A compound is a word formed by the close union of two or more words whose meanings blend so thoroly as to produce one single idea. The natural tendency is to distinctly mark this oneness of meaning by a oneness in form that is by writing together the different words of a compound. *Abendmahl* *Lord's Supper* not literally *evening meal*. Languages differ in the accuracy with which they distinctly mark compounds as such by writing the parts in one word. German, tho more careful than English in this respect, often

fails to recognize the distinct unity in a group of words: *alt und jung* old and young = *jedermann* everybody, *die heilige Schrift* Holy Writ = *die Bibel* Bible, *kalt*es Blut sang-froid = *Kaltblütigkeit*.

A compound originates in a group of words which stand in close syntactical relations to one another and have a certain oneness of meaning. Such a group—here called a group-word—has two strong stresses, one a little stronger than the other. The origin and classes of group-words are discussed at considerable length below. A compound often develops out of a group-word as the different syntactical members of the group-word often lose their literal meaning, as in case of *Ábendmàhl* *Lord's Supper*, originally and historically *evening meal*, or their meaning and syntactical force, as in case of *Hérzòg* *duke*, lit. *leader of the army*, but now no longer felt as having this meaning or as indicating these syntactical relations, altho originally the literal meaning and the syntactical relations were distinctly felt. Sometimes the members of the group-word acquire a distinct oneness of meaning and a peculiar signification altho the literal meaning and the original syntactical relations are still felt, as in *das Dríttèil* *third*, from *das dritte Téil* (formerly neut., now masc.) *the third part*. In proportion as the idea of the oneness of meaning grows the idea of group becomes obscured and the compound develops. If this development continues, the compound develops into a simple word with only one strong stress: *Schúlze* *village mayor*, from *Schúlthèið* (i.e. *Schuldheiß*) *mayor*, lit. *one who commands the performance of duty*, a compound still in use; *Dríttel* *third*, from *Dríttèil*. When the same unaccented syllable occurs in a number of reduced compounds, as in *Drittel*, *Viertel*, *Fünftel*, &c., the syllable becomes a suffix. Thus out of compounds develop suffixes and simple words. On the other hand, where the idea of group remains intact as in a group-word, the vowels of the components have the same quality as in independent words, while the vowels of compounds are often different from those of independent words. Thus in the group-word *Heerführer* *commander*, lit. *leader of the army*, the first component has the same vowel as in the independent word *Heer* *army*, the vowel having become long in early N.H.G. in both component and independent word, while in the compound *Herzog* it is still short as in M.H.G. In the compound *élènd* *miserable*, lit. *in a foreign land* no one now feels that the second component has any relation to *Land*. The two stresses—somewhat reduced in strength however—alone indicate that the word is a compound. It stands on the boundary between a compound and a simple word.

2. *Group-words*. Group-words are old syntactical groups or modern formations after the analogy of old syntactical groups which have differentiated themselves more or less from modern groups, so that they are written as one word by way of distinction: *Köpfverlètzung* (group-word), but *Verlètzung des Kópfe*s (modern group). In the group-word the first member is stressed, in the modern group the last member.

There are three classes of group-words and compounds, which represent different stages of development.

a. *Old Group-words and Compounds*. In old group-words the first member of the group has no case ending. It is a bare stem and represents the oldest stage of development when the language did not have inflectional forms for adjectives and nouns. With the help of a fixed word-order—the modifying element always being in the first place—the mere juxtaposition of the members suggests the syntactical relations and makes the idea clear: subject relation, with the force of a subjective genitive: *Érdbèben* earthquake, i.e. the earth quakes; the relation of a genitive of origin or cause: *Wàsserschàden* damage from or caused by water; the relation of a possessive genitive: *Báumsaft* sap of the tree, *Fußgelenk* joint of the foot; the object relation: *Wéintrínker*, *Schúhmàcher*, *Blútvergiessen*; the prepositional relation: *blútbesprízt* (mit *Blút besprízt*); the adjective relation: *Gástfrèund* (ein *Freund*, der ein *Gast* ist), *Stéinkrùg* (ein *Krug*, der von *Stein* ist). Notice that in this primitive type of expression subject, object, &c. precede the member containing the verbal idea

or the governing noun, as they are felt as modifiers of it or as having grammatical relations to it. There is here, however, little danger of confusion as attested by the wide use of this construction in modern speech. Notice also that instead of *Blütvergießen*, &c. we say in English *shedding of blood*, as we have dissolved all such old descriptive group-words into modern groups, which require the stressed member to stand in the last place in the group. German more easily retained the old group-word form since it was supported elsewhere by old descriptive groups with the same word-order and stress, namely: (1) in *attributive adjective groups*: *der vom Régen tiefende Hut, das vom Méere umgébene Land*; (2) in end-groups, in groups at the end of the sentence with end-stress (215. II. 1. A, 3rd par.): *Er will Blüt vergießen. Er hat Blüt vergossen. Das Haus ist von Bäumen umgében.* Old group-words are also well preserved in English and have attained even wider boundaries than in German where the logical force of the first member is distinctly felt: *cotton crop*, *pure food laws*, *infant class*, *toothbrush*, &c., as we feel the logical contrast to other kinds of crops, laws, classes, brushes. For fuller treatment of English usage see 255. I. b (2nd par.). In *descriptive groups*, however, old group-words are much less used than in German, so that such old group-words must in English usually be dissolved into modern descriptive groups: *muskelschwäch weak in muscle*, *mêr-umgében surrounded by the sea*, *Stéinkrüg stöne jar*, &c. Notice that in the last example the old group is in English transformed into a modern group, not by changing the word-order but by merely transferring the stress from the first to the second member, as this simple procedure is sufficient to convert an old group into a modern group when the first member is construed as an adjective. See 215. I. 3. *Historical Note* for the explanation of the fact that compound verbs do not assume the form of old group-words.

A large number of German group-words from this class have developed into compounds: *Abendmähl*, *Gróbschmied* a smith who manufactures coarse iron (city), *Sálzach* (river), &c. Also Old English compounds, as the oneness of meaning and the loss of feeling for the meaning of the parts, were factors that naturally tended to preserve the original form, for the forces that were elsewhere active for dissolution of the parts were here not felt at all: *stár-board*, *cówsliþ*, *brídegróom*, &c.

b. *Younger Group-words and Compounds.* In many later formations we find inflection in the modifying word to indicate the grammatical relation: (subjective genitive) *Sónnenáufgang*, *Hérzensergúß*; (objective gen.) *Lánderverteidigung*; (dative) *érdenfêrn*; (adjective) *Rótkêhlchen*, *Áltenbürg*, *Néuenbürg*, *jédermánn* (-mann with its older meaning of *Mensch* as still preserved in English *man*); (preposition) *Únterseeboot*, *Úberseedämpfer*, &c. We say *ein rótes Kêhlchen*, *eine jünge Fráú*, *úber Sée*, *but ein Rótkêhlchen*, *eine Júngfráú*, *ein Úberseedämpfer*. The clear development of the idea of a group-word or compound in a modern group thus often converts a modern group into a younger group-word or compound. Modern group-words and compounds, however, often preserve their original modern group-stress. See c below. The reason that all modern compounds and group-words do not thus assume younger group-word stress is that the accent of the younger compound or group-word stands in open conflict with the pronounced descriptive force of these groups. Compare 249. II. 1. A.

Group-words and compounds with an endingless adjective as the first member may in some instances have been originally old group-words and compounds, but it is probable that most of them are younger group-words and compounds from the older periods when the adjective did not have distinctive forms for all its cases and genders, as explained in 249. II. 1. In all cases, however, they have the stress of old group-words and compounds, indicating thus clearly that they have given up their modern stress under the influence of the old group-words of the same form. Also many group-words with an inflected adjective as the first member have followed the analogy of old group-words and take the

stress upon the first member. Both of these classes of group-words are here designated younger group-words in contrast to the modern group-words in *c* which retain their original stress. They are younger formations than the old group-words, but they now have the stress of the old group-words.

A large number of *stressed* genitives that in oldest German and English stood before the governing word, now stand after it, while unstressed genitives, as in the oldest period, still stand before it: *Gòethes Lèben* *Gòethe's life*, but *das Lèben Góethes* *the life of Góethe*. The tendency to place the strongly stressed genitive after the governing noun is common in all the Germanic languages and stands in close relation to the tendency to place the strongly stressed modifier of the verb after the verb. Just as the strongly stressed modifier of the verb, however, often remains before the verb, so does a strongly stressed genitive often remain before the governing noun. Such a strongly stressed genitive did not follow the tendency to take a place after the governing noun because it was felt as having a different force. Thus the meaning became differentiated according to the position of the modifying word. When the stressed genitive stood before the governing noun, it had logical force, indicating a desire to *distinguish*, or *classify*, when it followed, it had descriptive force, indicating a desire to *describe*: with distinguishing force: *An meine Mütter schrieb ich, nicht an meinen Väter; Lúthers Gebùrtstag, nicht Góethes Lúther's birthday, not Góethe's*. With distinguishing or classifying force: *eine Früenhànd* *a wóman's hànd*, *ein Mánneswòrt* *a mán's wòrd*, *ein Wéspennèst* *a wásp's nèst*, *ein Horníssennèst* *a hórnet's nèst*, but with descriptive force: *die Belàgerung der Stádt* *the besíeging of the city*, *der Èinzug der siegreichen Trúppen* *the èntrance of the victorious tróops*, &c. As can be seen by the translation of the German examples the younger group-word is also in English a favorite. It is often employed where the old group-word form is used in German, but this construction has its limitations in English, as it is of necessity confined to words that may take an *s* in the genitive, i.e. designations of living beings and words denoting a unit of measurement: a bird's nèst *ein Vógelnèst*, a bréwer's càrt *ein Bráuerwàgen*, báker's brèad *Báckerbròt*; a bóat's lèngth *eine Schíffslànge*, a stóne's thròw *ein Stéinwürf*, &c., but a whíp-stòck *ein Péitschenstiel*, a stréet-còrner *eine Stráßenècke*, &c., as the first member cannot take *s* in the genitive. Thus outside of these two groups English must employ the old group-word form, to convey distinguishing force. In English a modern group very often corresponds to an old or a younger group-word in German: brèach of prómise *Wórtbrùch*, lètter of thánks *Dánkbrief*, cròwn of thórns *Dórnenkròne*, tòur of inspéction *Besíchtigungsreise*, prèsence of mínd *Géistesgègenwart*, &c. The evident reason for English usage is that such groups have descriptive force. Here as elsewhere English observes much more carefully the characteristic differences in meaning between the old and the younger group-word form on the one hand and the modern group on the other—the former with distinguishing, the latter with descriptive force. Compare 255. I. *b* (2nd par.). Altho this differentiation is not so sharp in German the tendency is in the same direction. Both old and younger group-words are freely used with distinguishing force but without any fixed rule for the use of the older or younger form, an old group-word being preferred in some instances, a younger group-word in others: *Ohrverletzung, Ohrenkrankheit; Kindtaufe, Kindesgefühl, Kleinkinderbewàhranstalt*, &c. There is sometimes a differentiation of meaning between old and younger group-words: *Herzkrankheit*, &c. with reference to the organ of the heart, but *Herzensangelegenheit*, &c. with reference to the heart as the seat of feeling, emotion. In general, however, there is a strong tendency to replace the old with the younger formation, as it expresses the grammatical relations more clearly. Many younger group-words now in use had the older form in early N.H.G. See 249. II. 1. *B. b*.

A *stressed* modifying genitive that precedes its governing noun still not infrequently has descriptive force as in older usage, which did not recognize distinguishing or classifying force as the normal meaning of a stressed genitive that preceded its governing noun: *beim Kriègsàusbruch* = *beim Àusbruch des*

Krieges, gegenseitige Fréundschaftsversicherungen = gegenseitige Versicherungen der Fréundschaft, das Fránkenrèich = das Rèich der Fránken, &c. Very often also in old group words, altho the modifying form still as in the prehistoric period has no formal expression for the grammatical relations das schmale méerumgèbene (= das vom Méere umgèbene) Land. As the stress here on the first member, as in a compound, gives the impression of oneness of meaning, it is often felt as desirable on mere formal grounds to employ the old or the younger group word form. Der Vertágungsántrag Klotz (name), where by its form the group Vertágungsántrag is brought as a whole, as a unit, into apposition with Klotz. The impression of oneness is imparted not only by the stress upon the first member, but also by the use of the article or other adjective modifiers that limit the second, i.e. the basal, component and hence the thought as a whole diese einzige, kleine Grénzüberschrèitung. Of course, the old or younger group form cannot be used at all when for any reason it is desired to break up the idea of oneness and call attention to a detail concerning the first member. Thus in the last example we should have to use the modern group if we should desire to modify Grenze: Die Überschrèitung ihrer (unserer, &c.) Grenze. Furthermore, the old or younger group form is often found useful to avoid ambiguity. Die durch den Krieg notwendig gewordenen Gesétzentwürfe rather than die Entwürfe der Gesétze, die durch den Krieg notwendig geworden sind, as the relative die might be construed as referring to Gesetze instead of Entwürfe, as here intended. Of course, the old or younger form has become absolutely fixed in compounds, as the oneness of the meaning and the loss of concrete literal force resist dissolution into a modern group. Fránkrèich *France*, formerly = das Rèich der Fránken; Sigmünd (name), originally = der Schütz des Sieges, &c. English development is somewhat different. Old English group words with distinguishing force are well preserved, as in *cirichèll chùrch bèll*, but those with descriptive force have been dissolved into modern groups as in *cirichbyce brèaking into a chùrch*. Compare 255 1 b.

Younger group words have in many cases developed into compounds. Mén-schenssöhn *Sòn of mán* Königsbèrg, &c. As we say Fürstenbèrg but Fürstenwálde scholars have tried to establish the rule that the stress has been put upon the second element for rhythmical reasons wherever as in Fürstenwálde it has two syllables. The dative ending *e* here in *-wálde*, however, seems rather to indicate that the name originated in a modern group—an des Fürsten Wálde—and hence naturally stresses the second member. Many other names have a monosyllabic form as the second component and nevertheless take the stress upon that member, which seems to indicate that they are felt as modern groups Friedrichsrüh, Rippoldsáu, &c.

c *Modern Group words and Compounds* A modern group becomes a modern group word when a modern group acquires a distinct oneness of meaning, with especial frequency where by a change of function a group becomes a single word ein freiwilliges Sichbegèben (from sich begèben) der Starke, ànstatt, indém, &c.

Out of modern group words have arisen a large number of modern compounds, which have differentiated themselves from modern group words by their peculiar signification zufriedèn (zu Frieden) contented, eine àlte Jüngfer an old máid, das gèlbe Fieber yellow fíver, das Schwärze Méer, der Wèisse Sál the White Róom (of the Imperial Palace of William II in Berlin), unsere liebe Fráu the Holy Virgin, Nèustettin, Jüngdèutschland (literary movement), eine Müt-tergóttes a picture of the Holy Virgin, der Söhn Góttes the Sòn of Gód, die Kinder Góttes, &c. As modern group words and compounds have no peculiar formal differing from that of a modern group few of them have as yet found a formal expression in the written language. In a small number the parts are written together, in a few others the adjective component is begun with a capital.

The modifying adjective in such group-words and compounds is usually, as in a modern group inflected, but as a survival of older usage it remains uninflected in many set expressions containing a neuter noun, as in Nèujáhr (see also 249).

II. 2), *Größberlín*, *Jüngdéischtland*, *auf güt Glück at random*, *bàr Géld cash*, &c., in poetry sometimes also with other genders in order to add a touch of endearment, as in *jüng Wérner* (better *Jung-Werner*) in Scheffel's *Trompeter*. In some names of places, as *Schônbrúnn*, the old uninflected masc. form is found in its literal meaning. See also 249. II. 1.

3. *Abbreviated Compounds*. Compounds are often, especially in colloquial language, shortened by cutting off the final element: *der Korn*, short for *der Kornschnaps*; *der Ober*, short for *der Oberkellner*; *der Schnauz*, short for *Schnauzbart*; *das Vieruhr* for *das Vieruhressen*; *das* (under the influence of *das Theater*) or *der Kino* for *der Kinematograph*; *das Kilo* for *das Kilogramm*; *der Vize* for *der Vizefeldwebel*; &c. Similarly in decomposites the final element of the modifying component may be suppressed: *Ölzweig* instead of *Ölbaumzweig*, &c.

### Parts of a Group-word or Compound.

248. A. Tho a group-word or compound may consist of two words or several, it can as a rule have only two component elements—the *basal component*, which contains the more general idea, and the *modifying component*, which contains the more special meaning, usually some *essential* modification of the meaning of the basal component, and hence, on account of its logical force, accented: *Zwéig-eisenbahn* a branch railroad, *Väterlands-liebe* love of native land. Each element can thus be either simple or compound. The exceptions to the rule that a compound has but two components are found in 249. II. 2.

a. If several compound words have the same basal or modifying component, the element which they have in common need only be expressed once, but a hyphen must in the written word follow the modifying element, in the first-mentioned case, and precede the basal element, in the second case: *Würfel-und Schachspiel* the games of dice and chess; *Wortableitung und -zusammensetzung* formation of words by derivation and composition.

b. One of the components is often shortened by dropping a word, as the natural tendency is toward simpler forms: *Bahnhof* railroad depot, for *Eisenbahnhof*.

B. The basal component determines the part of speech to which the compound belongs except in such cases as in 249. II. 2, where there are more than two components. Since every part of speech except the article can become the basal component, all parts of speech except the article can form group-words and compounds: *Mannesmut* courage of a man, *hilfsbedürftig* requiring help, *fünfzehn* fifteen, *dersélbe* the same, *bergáb* down hill, &c. In inflected words the basal component stands last and assumes the inflectional endings of the compound and in case of substantives also the gender: *frühstücken* to breakfast, *ich frühstücke*; *das Frühstück*, *des Frühstücks*. This rule, however, holds only in a broad general sense, the limitations being discussed in 249. II. 2.

C. The accent usually rests upon the modifying element, as it is the special point to which the attention is called. There are, however, manifold exceptions, and the whole question of accent in compounds is treated at length under the head of Accent, 47. 3. The general historical explanation has been given in 247. 2, where also the accent is treated in considerable detail.

### 249. Form of Group-words and Compounds.

#### I. Old Group-words and Compounds.

The first member is a bare stem, which in words of more than one syllable ending in a vowel is often shortened: *Hausherr* (*Haus + Herr*), *ehescheu* (*Ehe + scheu*), *Birnbaum* (*Birne + Baum*), &c.

a. In an earlier period of the language the stem of a word was not always identical with its nom. sing. as to-day, but often ended in one of the vowels a, i, u. In compounds the first element always stood in its simple stem-form, the second element was inflected: (O.H.G.) *N. taga-sterro* or *taga-stern morning star*, *G. taga-sterren* or *taga-sterne*, &c. As a survival of

this older usage are still found a few words with the final stem vowel *e* (which is the usual N.H.G. weakened form of O.H.G. *a, i, u*): *Tagereise* a day's journey, *Badehaus*, &c. In a few words this *e* is not a stem-ending but a cc  
*Hundeschnauze*, *Pferdesattel*, &c.

&c. In a number of these cases tl . . . . .

In most cases, however, the former

This vowel instead of disappearing has become productive in case of verbal stems, which now freely add *e*, especially if the stem ends in *b, d, g, s*: *Sterbezimmer*, *Ladestock*, *Zeigefinger*, *Lesebuch*, *Haltestelle*, &c.; many, however, without the *e*, as in case of nominal stems *Schreibfeder*, *Kaufleute*, &c. In general the old stem-vowel *e* has not only disappeared in a large number of words, but this old formation of stem-composition is often replaced by composition with inflection in the modifying component, as described in II, especially in modern words.

*Tagereise*, &c. The same modifying component often shows all three formations, the forms compound *Tagedieb* or *Tagdieb*, *Tagelohn*

*...slicht*, *Tagesordnung*, &c. In case of ad-  
 forms with the same basal element: *wort-*  
*brüchig*, but *vertragsbrüchig*; *gehaltreich*, but *verkehrsreich*, *inhalt(s)reich*; *gottfürchtig*  
 (Luke ii. 25), now *gottesfürchtig*, &c.

b. In case of verbs whose stems end in *en* (now always contracted to *n*), as *rechnen* to count, *compute*, we find the full stem only in compounds and group-words *Rechenlehrer arithmetic teacher*.

c. If the stem ends in a vowel it is usual in most cases to suppress the vowel, but in certain cases the vowel is retained, especially in proper names, where there is a growing aversion to mutilation: *Erdball*, *Saalbahn* *Saale* Railroad, but *Rachedurst*, *Saale-Zeitung* (newspaper published at Halle a. S.), &c.

## II. Group-words and Compounds with Inflected Modifying Component.

There are here two classes:

### 1. Younger Group-words and Compounds with Stressed Modifying Component.

These formations, such as *Driftteil*, *Edelmänn*, &c., tho not so old as old group-words and compounds, often bear plainly the marks of an older structural system than found to-day in a normal modern group. As explained in 104. 2. E. a, the modifying adjective, tho here never a bare stem and always a form that in the older periods could stand in a normal group of a sentence, often seems to us to be uninflected, as in the course of the natural *phonetic* development of the language the endings have disappeared. In oldest German descriptive adjective forms with the endings *-er, -e, -az* (now *es*) after the analogy of the common demonstrative forms *der, die, daz* (now *das*) had already begun to replace the older seemingly uninflected forms. In our own day these new forms have in the ordinary normal modern group gained a complete victory over the older forms without an ending, but the latter survive in many younger compounds that have come down to us from the older order of things. The old forms survived because the groups in which they stood developed into compounds, which as *set* expressions naturally resisted further development. Many recent group-words and compounds have been coined after the analogy of these older formations.

The following groups appear:

A. *Group-words and Compounds with an Adjective as First Member.* When the idea of a group-word or compound develops in a modern group there is a tendency in many cases to convert the modern group into a younger group-word or compound by transferring the stress from the second to the first member. There are two classes of such younger group-words and compounds, one in which the adjective is seemingly without an ending as in older periods, as explained in 1 above, one in which there is a weak or strong ending: *Driftteil* a third, *Kleingeld* change, *Rötkühchen* robin redbreast, *Edelmänn*, *Höchstpreis* (from *der höchste Preis*) maximum price allowed by law, a common word during the Great War, *Höchkirch* (city), *Deutschland* (formerly *das deutsche Land*), *Kleinschmidt* (family name); *Weissenfels* (from *zum weissen Fels*), *Jedermann* (gen. *Jedermanns*, from late M.H.G. *ièder mán*, gen. *ièdes mánnes*), &c. Compare 247. 2. b.

a. The different compound elements of such compounds have in a number of cases become so contracted and corrupted in the course of time that they are no longer clearly distinguished.

Hoffart *pride, arrogance*, from older hochfart, from hoch *high* and 'Fahrt' *riding, living*; Jungfer *maid, miss*, from Jungfrau; Junker *young nobleman*, from M.H.G. juncherre = junger Herr, &c.

B. *A Genitive of a Noun as First Member.* In some group-words and compounds the syntactical relation between the components is clearly that of a noun and its modifying genitive: (str. gen.) Göttesdienst *divine service, public worship of God*, Frühlingsregen *spring rain*, Wirtshaus *inn, tavern*, Herzenslust *desire of one's heart*, Glaubensfreiheit; (wk. gen.) Hirtenstab *shepherd's staff*, Gräfenstand *dignity and rank of a count*; (pl. gen.) Stundenplan *time-table, program of studies or recitations*, Blumenzucht *floriculture, lit. culture of flowers*, Wirteverein *association of tavern keepers*, Gästerecht *the rights of foreigners*, Städtebund *confederation of cities*, Völkerbund *league of nations*, Götterlehre *mythology, treatise on the ancient gods*; also many proper names: Königsberg, &c.; (gen pl.) Pharaonenreich *realm of the Pharaohs*, &c.

Such substantives are formed by placing the singular or the plural ending of the strong or weak genitive form of the modifying component before the basal component. In declining such compounds the genitive form of the modifying component remains constant thruout the different cases, only the basal component assuming the inflection.

*Note.* M.H.G. usage often placed the article which belonged to a governing noun before the preceding dependent genitive: der gotes segen. As many such old forms remained after this M.H.G. usage gave way to the N.H.G. rule that the preceding modifying genitive retains its article, while the governing noun is without one, as in des lieben Göttes Segen, it is evident that in case of these old forms the preceding genitive and the following governing noun were no longer felt as a modern group, but as a younger group-word or compound in which the genitive had strong distinguishing or classifying stress and force, often with the full meaning of a stressed classifying adjective, so that the words naturally did not develop into a modern descriptive group with unstressed genitive and the article in accordance with the general rule for group-words and compounds followed the gender and case of the last component: der Göttesseggen the divine blessing, die Kindesunschuld the childlike innocence, das Schafsgesicht the stupid look, das Diebsgesicht the face of a thief, der Fründesdienst the friendly service, der Knäbenhut the boy's hat, &c. Thus this N.H.G. change of construction has forced the recognition of such group-words or compounds in the common orthography. In German the form of the article reveals to us at once whether the words are considered as a group-word or a modern group, but in English we have no such formal evidence, as the article is uninflected: dieser Hirtenstab *this (pause) shepherd's staff*, dieses Hirten Stab *this shepherd's (pause) staff = the staff of this shepherd*. The accent in both English and German is usually different in these two cases. As explained in 247. 2. b, the accent is upon the first member in case of a group-word or compound. There is thus also in English a real difference between these two forms, but it has not found a formal expression in the orthography as in German.

a. In a number of words the old weak genitive still stands in such group-words and compounds, altho the same words have elsewhere long since become strong, or in case of feminines in the singular have lost inflection: Greisenalter (see 76. I. 3. b) *old age*, Schelmenstück *piece of roguery*, Herzogenbusch (70. 1. c. (2)), Spionenriecher (63. 7. c. *General Note*) *one who is always on the lookout for spies*, Epigrammendichter (63. 7. c. *General Note*) *epigrammatist*, Gelehrtenversammlung (111. 10. *Note*); Sonnenschein *sunshine*, Freudentag *day of joy*, &c. In a number of words the old feminine genitive of the strong declension, which was exactly like the nominative, has been retained: Rachegott *god of vengeance*, Mußestunde *hour of leisure*, &c. In an earlier period some of these strong feminines added e in the genitive singular, and the vowel was mutated. See 70. 2. c. This old genitive survives in a few compounds: Gänsefeder, Bräutigam (the first component being the genitive of Braut with an i corrupted from e, the second component an old noun, not now found elsewhere, the modern form of O.H.G. gomo *man*, related to Latin homo), &c.

b. The connecting of the two components by an s or es (62. D. (1)) has become very popular, probably to give formal expression to the feeling that the modifying component stands in a syntactical relation to the following basal component, hence the s has spread to a large number of words originally without it, often even to feminines, where Luther rarely has an s. Note especially the following cases where the s is now used:

aa. When a fem. modifying component ends in -at, -ut, -heit, -schaft, -t (in compounds and derivatives only), ion, ung, tät: Freundschaftsdienst, Hochzeitstag (but Zeitpunkt; see dd below), Krönungstag, &c.

bb. Usually after the modifying components Acht, Geschichte, Hilfe, Liebe, and often Miete: Achterklärung, Geschichtsforscher, Hilfstruppen, Liebesdienst, Miet(s)leute, Miet(s)wagen, &c. Also in Kindtaufskuchen (see dd below), Frauensperson, Frauensleute, Seelengüte or Seelensgüte (after the analogy of Herzensgüte). In the last three cases the s is added to the weak



gen. Colloquially the *ns* often occurs instead of *n* in *Menschenskind* fellow, lad, 'my boy': Jakob: Ist es nicht so, Ohm Reinhold? Ulrichs: So ist es, Menschenskind! (Halbe's *Der Strom*, p. 8).

cc. In a few feminines in *-d* and *-nahme*: Geduldsfaden, Aufnahmebedingung, &c.

Note. The *s* in the cases in *aa*, *bb*, *cc* after feminine nouns has resulted from analogy, the feminines following the example of the masculines and neutrals. It first appeared in the thirteenth century, but for a long time spread only slowly.

dd. Often when the modifying compound is itself a compound, except of course when the modifying component ends with a feminine other than those described in *aa*, *bb*, *cc*: Weihnachtsabend, but Nachtfalter; Handwerkzeug, but Werkzeug; Reichsverkehrsminister, &c., but Reichswehrminister, &c.

basal component: Tobtsuchtsanfall, &c.

ee. The connecting *s* now often stands where Luther has the old group-word form: Aber der Vnterheubtman gleubet dem Schiffherrn vnd dem Schiffman mehr | denn dem das Paulus saget (Acts xxvii. 11), in the revised edition Schiffsherrn and Schiffsmann.

Sometimes the same word has both the younger form with *s* and the older form without it, with differentiation of meaning: Landmann peasant, Landsmann fellow countryman; Wassernot lack of water, Wassersnot inundation.

ff. The connecting *s* now so common in group-words and compounds does not always have the force of a genitive singular ending. It may indicate: (1) that the modifying component is to be considered as an appositive to the basal component: Jägersmann, Rittersmann, Lieblingsbuch, &c., after the analogy of Volksmann, Volksbuch, where, however, the *s* represents a real genitive ending. (2) It may in fact contain a plural idea: Diebesbande, Gastwirtsverein, Freundeskreis, Anwaltstag, Bischofsversammlung, Jünglingschristian Association, Kardinalskollegium college of *erskorps* (Beyerlein's *Jena oder Sedan?*, xiii), das he best material out of which officers can be made, &c. Nouns with the plural ending *e* do not with

absolute freedom enter compounds with their regular plural ending as do most other nouns, but they often take an *s*, as in the examples given above, or frequently have the form of an old group-word, or in the case of certain nouns (see *a* above) which were once weak, or which are now weak or strong, or after the analogy of such assume the weak plural ending *en*: Offizierkorps (preferred to the form in *s* by a number of grammarians), Kopffzahl number of persons present, &c.; Sinnenaufregung, Spionenrieche, Dokumentenwurm, Inseratenteil, &c. In S.G. strong nouns can readily enter into compounds with their regular plural, as the plural ending *-e*, which often seems to be avoided in group-words and compounds, is regularly dropped even in the simple form of the word, and thus the endingless plural easily enters the compound as a sort of mutated stem: die Tannenästbahre (Meinrad Lienert's *Der Strahler*, p. 191). The *e* in the formations described in I. *a* above, may in part be felt as a plural ending, but it was originally an old stem-suffix. (3) It may contain the idea of a comparison: engelsgut, finger(s)lang, lebensgroß, kerzengerade, &c. In a number of cases this *s* has resulted from the analogy of similar noun formations where the *s* represents a real genitive ending: Engelsgüte, Fingerslänge, &c. (4) It may have the force of an accusative: der Feind von Wirklichkeitsbejahendem Realismus und Idealismus (Otto Eißfeldt in *Preussische Jahrbücher* geisttötend), verfassunggebend (more commonly heitsliebend, &c. after the analogy of Geistestod, Wa

force of a predicate nominative: weniger von jenem seligen Rausch der Jünglingswerdung (R. H. Bartsch's *Die Haindlkinder*, p. 61). (6) The force of a dative: gegenwartsnäher (Prof. Karl Lamprecht in *Frankfurter Zeit.*, May 6,

1914) = *der Gegenwart näher*; *mittelstandsfeindlich* (Dr. Wirth in the "*Nationalversammlung*," April 26, 1920) = *dem Mittelstand feindlich*, *regierungsfeindlich*, *reichsfeindlich*, &c. after the analogy of *Reichsfreund*, &c., but real compounds, not derivatives from them, see 111. 7. c. (1); *erfahrungsgemäß*, *wahrheitsgetreu*. (7) It is often equivalent to a prep. phrase: *eine Auflachensneigung ihrer Lippen* (Jensen's *Schatzsucher*, p. 288) = *eine Neigung ihrer Lippen zum Auflachen*; *Arbeitslosenfürsorge* = *Fürsorge für die Arbeitslosen*; *Auslandsaufenthalt* (*Die Neueren Sprachen*, Oct. 1914, p. 377) = *Aufenthalt im Ausland*; in *dem Kreuzestod Christi* (Adolf Metz in *Preussische Jahrbücher*, Nov. 1914, p. 214) = *in dem Tode Christi am Kreuze*; *Vom Gegenwartswert des griechischen Unterrichts auf dem Gymnasium* (ib., Dec. 1915, title of an article by Max Siebourg) = *vom Wert des griechischen Unterrichts auf dem Gymnasium in der Gegenwart*, but much clearer and hence better as it brings *Gegenwart* near the word (*Wert*) which it modifies.

The use of -s in such varied relations clearly shows that it is no longer felt as a genitive ending. It is a new formative indicating a syntactical relation between the two components, thus performing exactly the same grammatical function as in old group-words the simple stem, which in quite a different way, namely by the entire absence of inflection, also indicates a syntactical relation between the two components. Altho both the old form with the simple stem and the new form with the ending -s merely indicate a syntactical relation without specifying it definitely the connection usually makes the thought entirely clear, so that both constructions by reason of their pithy terseness have come into wide use.

c. The connecting of the two components by an -en, the weak genitive ending, tho not so popular as that of -s, has spread to a number of words originally without it. Especially those feminines now ending in -e which were originally strong take this -en in compounds after the analogy of weak feminines, which formerly ended regularly in -en in the genitive sing.: *Gnadenakt*, *Säulenknopf*, *Entenschnabel*, &c. Some words enter into compounds with their simple stem or the weak genitive ending with differentiated meaning: *Erdgeruch* *smell of fresh earth*, but in figurative sense *Erdengeschick* *lot of this earth or world, human fate*, &c.

Masculines do not usually take an -en when they are not entitled to it, but weak masculines often take an -en, especially in derivatives, altho corresponding strong nouns enter similar formations, not with the strong genitive ending -s, but with their simple stem: *bubenhaft*, but *schülerhaft*; *Fürstentum*, but *Kaisertum*, &c. See 245. II. 7. The -en, as -s in b. ff. (1) above, not only denotes the genitive relation but may also indicate that the modifying component is to be considered as an appositive to the basal component: *Hirtenknabe*, *Botenfrau*, &c. Sometimes this weak genitive is used where in a strict sense a predicate nominative should be employed: *Die Zeit der Austrocknung, Versandung und Wüstenwerdung* (Dr. Max Eckert in *Westermanns Monatshefte*, Oct. 1906, p. 140). Thus -en is now sometimes used, just as -s in b. ff above, as a formative to indicate a grammatical relation between the two components.

C. *An Adverbial Element as First Member*. In many group-words the modifying component stands in the relation of a modifying adverb or prepositional phrase: *hochbegabt* highly endowed, *weitverbreitet*, *aufstehen*, *Aufstand*, *Wohltat*, *Anteil*, *Ausland*, *Inland*, *Hinterland*, *Mitbürger*, *Nebenfluß*, *übergroß*, *landesüblich*, *ortsangesessen*, *Inbe'triebsetzung*, &c. To this group of group-words belongs the large class of verbs with a separable prefix (215. II. 1. B. a) or prepositional phrase (215. II. 1. B. d). These are not fixed group-words, as the prefix is separable in simple tenses in principal propositions. Nouns made from such verbs are, however, fixed formations: *Ausgang*, *In'standsetzung*, &c. There is also in case of verbs a tendency toward the fixed form. See 215. II. 2. c.

Instead of a younger group-word or an end-group (247. 2. a), or an attributive adjective group (247. 2. a) we still often find the old group-word form, where the preposition and sometimes the number of the noun and other grammatical

relations must be gathered from the context *régentriefend* = von Régen triefend, *windumräuscht* = vom Winde umräuscht, *bäum- und büschumgeben* (Spielhagen's *In Reih' und Glied*, 3, 76) = von Bäumen und Büschen umgeben. In many instances the plural idea here finds a formal expression by means of a plural ending but it is the mere plural stem without expression of the idea of case: von den Riesenstädten mit ihren schiffewimmelnden Hafen, der hauserumgebene Platz, &c.

D The modifying component may be

(1) The object (215 II 1 B c) of the verbal stem contained in the basal component, as in *stattfinden* to take place, *freudebringend*, *menschenbeglückend*, or in case of adjectives it may be the objective predicate (104 2 A c and 215 II 1 B b), as in *großziehen* to bring up, rear. Such compounds are in large part separable verbs, and hence are not fixed compounds. In case of verbal nouns the object is sometimes in the acc., sometimes in the gen. (acc sing) *Maßhalten* or *Maßhaltung*, *Besitzergreifung*, *Auskunftgeber*, acc pl *Hüftschwenken*; (gen sing) *Gehörsamsverweigerung*, *Friedensbrecher*, &c. The words in the accusative group tho for the most part modern formations and now felt as accusatives, may also be classed as old group words, for they have also the form of old group-words and the oldest members of the group had in Gothic a distinctive stem (I a) ending, indicating clearly that they were old group words.

(2) The modifying component may be the object of an adjective in the gen or dat according as it governs the gen or dat in the sentence *Lebensmüde* tired of life, *vorwurfsvoll* reproachful, *herzensfroh*, *seelenfroh* or *seelensfroh* (after the analogy of *herzensfroh*), *strahlenreich*, *problemenreich* (*Beilage zur Allg Ztg*, No 203, 1904 p 446, pl here work after the analogy of *strahlenreich*, &c., as the pl in -e is often avoided here as in B b ff (2)), *milchähnlich* milklake, *göttergeben* resigned to the will of God, devout. Altho the gen form is always clearly marked here, the dat form rarely takes a clear dat ending except in case of work nouns and there it remains uncertain whether the number is sing or pl *göttähnlich* (not *gotteähnlich*), but *menschenähnlich*. In *erdenfern* far from earth and its cares we have a clear case of the old dative form.

Instead of a younger group word the old group word form is still very common here *kampfmüde* tired of fighting, *denkge wohnte Manner* men accustomed to think (= des Denkens gewohnte Manner), &c.

E The modifying element may be a predicate noun or adjective *die Menschwerdung* the incarnation, lit the becoming a man, *das Flüssigwerden fester Körper*, *das Gefühl des Starkerseins*, (objective predicate) *Bekanntmachung*, &c.

## 2 Modern Group words and Compounds

The development of modern group words and compounds with stress upon the second member out of modern groups with stress upon the second member and their differentiation in meaning from old and younger group-words have been treated in 247 b and c. While in general the two classes are clearly distinguished by the *logical* force of the modifying component in old and younger group words and compounds and its *descriptive* force in modern group words and compounds this distinction sometimes entirely disappears in compounds made from sentences or fragments of a sentence, where the desire is not to convey the sentence with the concrete force of the words as a sentence but to indicate a type of people, animals or things by a short characterization. It here becomes necessary to distinguish the compound from the sentence by placing the stress upon the first member as in younger group words and compounds (247. 2 b), altho it has no logical force whatever *Päckän* big watch dog but with literal meaning in a sentence *Päckän!* Seize him! Likewise *Säufäus*, *Lügäus*, *Lügänsland*, *Springänsfeld*, *Schlägetöt*, &c. A younger group word with an adjective as second member can be used thus without a change of accent, as it already

has this stress, but it differs from an ordinary younger group-word in having no inflection: *ein alter Schädenfröh*. These sentence compounds are common also in English: a *gád-abòut*, &c. On the other hand, such modern groups in German, even tho used as substantives, often have modern group-stress where the literal force of the components is distinctly felt, as in *ein warmes Lèbewóhl*. See also H below.

Likewise a number of proper names, where the literal force of the components is not felt at all, have given up their modern descriptive stress upon the last component and have assumed the stress of younger group-words and compounds: *Ámstêg*, *Ímhöf*, names of places; (2) certain Swiss family names: *Vón der Mühl*, *Áuf der Mäuer*, &c.

The development of a new or somewhat different meaning in modern descriptive groups in which the first member is an adjective or a preposition often results in development into younger group-words and compounds (247. 2. *b*): *Kúrzwären* hard-ware, i.e. nails, screws, etc., but sometimes still with its modern endings and modern group-stress: *kürze Wären*. The trend toward younger group-words is especially strong in decomposites, and in derivatives it has become the fixed form: *Kürzwarenhändler*; *mein wármhêrziger Freund*, but *Mein Freund hat ein wármes Hêrz*; *übersêeisch*, but *über Sêe*; *vórmârzlich*, but *vór dem Mârz* (des Revolutionsjahres 1849); *wídernatúrlich*, but *wíder die Natúr*; &c. See also 245. II. 9. 1. *b*. The memory of the original modern group-stress here, however, is often so strong that it is retained even where inflection has been dropped and the parts are written together: *Nêujáhr* *Nêw-yêar*, still perhaps more common than *Néujáhr*; *Míttâg* from older *der mîtte* (adjective) *Tâg*, now the prevailing form, but the original modern group-stress is still found in poetry, as in *Nâch Míttâge sâßen wir* (Goethe's *Stirbt der Fuchs, so gilt der Balg*), and in many modern dialects; *Ârmsünderglôcke*, das *Ârmsündergesicht* or *Ârmesündergesicht*, die *Schwârze-Mêer-Flótte* or *Schwârmêerflótte*, das *Zwêimârkstück*, &c. See also 94. 6.

Of course, the desire to *distinguish* often leads to transferring the stress from the second member to the first: *Ich wohne nicht in Áltstrêlitz, sondern in Néustrêlitz*, but usually *Altstrêlitz, Neustrêlitz*. On the other hand, the opposite tendency is found. In a few names of places, as *Sâlzbrúnn*, *Sâltzschlúrf* the desire to *describe* rather than to *distinguish* has removed the stress from the first to the second element. See also 47. 3. A. *c* (10) and *g*. This tendency is marked in a large number of onomatopœic formations: *píffpâff*, &c. See also 47. 3. A. *c* (11). In a number of names of places there is fluctuation of usage. The people who live in *Weíßensee* say *Wêíßensêe* as descriptive stress seems natural and sufficient to them, but others pronounce *Wêíßensêe* as they feel the first component as having distinguishing force. In Berlin the desire to describe leads to the common pronunciation *Vormíttag, Nachmíttag*, which of course become old groups again when there is a desire to distinguish: *Komm nicht vórmíttags, sondern náchmittags!*

In general, however, compound nouns retain intact their original group form and stress: *Áufgâng, áufgêhen*; *Verstánd, verstêhen*; *das gêlbe Fieber, das kálte Fieber* (ague), *das Rôte Méer*, &c., which retain their original group form and stress except that occasionally for logical reasons they assume logical stress, as in *káltes Fieber, nicht gêlbes Fieber*. For exceptional development of *Dúrchstich* from *durchstêchen* see 47. 3. B. *a*.

The following groups will illustrate the kinds of modern group-words and compounds:

A. The compound consists of a noun and its modifying adjective, which is inflected as well as the noun: *der Hôhepriester* high-priest, *ein Hôherpriester, des Hôhenpriesters*; *das Hôhelied* Song of Solomon, *des Hôhenliedes*, &c. Also many geographical names: *Nêuentêich* (= zum *nêuen Téich*), &c. Many of these compounds have a stress upon the first member as they have become younger compounds (1. A above), sometimes with the modern endings of the adjective, sometimes with the old seemingly endless form: *Áltenbürg*,

Höhenstein; ein Zweitmädchen or ein zweites Mädchen; der Geheimrat or der Geheime Rat; aus Längweile or Längerweile.

a. A number of adverbial compounds consist of a noun in the adverbial gen., modified by an adj. in the gen., often with logical stress upon the first component. nötigenfalls or nötigenfalls *in case of need*, jedenfalls *at all events*. In a number of pl. compounds, where all feeling for the original construction has been lost, the substantive element of the compound has dropped its gen. pl. ending, and after the analogy of the sing. compounds taken on the ending s, altho the modifying adjective still remains as originally in the gen. pl.: aller Dinge (seventeenth century), allerding's (present form) *to be sure, certainly*, allerorts *everywhere*, &c. In a number of such compounds the substantive element adds s even to fem. nouns, following here the analogy of masculines: seinerseits *upon his part*, mütterlicherseits *upon the mother's side*. For a similar formation see unterwegs, 223. I. 10. a.

B. The article forms a compound with a following adj. or noun: derselbe, desgleichen.

C. A noun forms a group-word or compound with its modifying gen.: Muttergottes, zeitlebens. For accent see 47. 3. A. e. (3). Also many geographical names (47. 3. A. g): Rippoldsau, &c.; sometimes also common class nouns as described in 47. 3. A. e. (3): Tagesanfang, &c., very common in English in groups containing a genitive of measure: a day's journey, a thirty years' war, &c. The words of this group resemble in form the younger compounds with distinguishing force, described in 1. B above, but differ from them in having modern group-stress with descriptive force (see 50. A. 6. f, 247. 2. b., and 255. II. 1).

D. The name of a material or something measurable forms a group-word with some word denoting a measure, quantity, or weight: Viertelstunde *quarter of an hour*. See 126. 2. a. Note.

E. A prep. forms a group-word or compound with its dependent noun: absäiten. Du hattest doch hier 'n sichres, warmes Zuhause (Hauptmann's Friedensfest, 1). Also verbal derivatives are formed from such prepositional phrases: übernachten, überwintern.

a. In some of these words, all feeling for the nature of the compounds having disappeared, inflectional endings are added to the oblique case ending vorhanden (dat pl) *on hand*, die vorhandenen Vorräte *the provisions on hand*

F. In some group-words and compounds the syntactical relation between the parts is that of apposition, co-ordination, or addition: Göttmensch God incarnate, Fürstbischof a bishop who has also the dignity of a prince, Prinzregent a prince temporarily filling the place of the ruler, Hänswürst jack-pudding, Hänsnarr tom-fool; Österreich-Ungarn Austro-Hungary, Meyer-Brämen Meyer *who lives in Bremen*, das Ministerium Bismarck, die schwarzrote Fahne Württembergs the flag of Württemberg consisting of black and red, das schwarzrot-goldene Banner Deutschlands 1848 the banner of Germany in 1848 consisting of black, red, and gold; Nordöst, Südwest; einundzwanzig; bimbabum! piffpaff!

a. Not all words indicating a co-ordination of parts are written together as one word. In a number of cases a pair of words connected by und or oder form a single idea, when the two words are synonyms, and thus represent the same thing from two different standpoints, or are opposites or complements, and thus show the whole range of the idea from the two extremes (see 94. 5): sein ganzes Hab (die Habe) und Gut *all he owns or all his property*, der Verlust ihres Hab und Gutes, sein Tun und Lassen *his actions*, in die Kreuz und Quere fragen *to cross-examine*, in die Kreuz und Quere schwatzen *to talk, chat upon this subject* and that, and the other similar examples in 94. 5; auf ein oder die andere Weise *in one way or another*, schwarz und weiße Fahnen *flags consisting of black and white*, and the other similar examples in 111. 7. b. In the preceding examples the inflection of only the second of the two words, the heavier stress upon the second word, and the use of the article which belongs to the second word as the article for the combination, clearly stamp them as compounds, tho not written as such. In many other cases words are in fact compounds as indicated by the

stress upon the last component, but the absence of an inflectional ending in the second part does not show it so clearly: *wèit und bréit*, in *Sàck und Àsche* *trauern* to repent in sackcloth and ashes, *durch dick und dünn, über Lând und Méeer*.

G. In some modern group-words the syntactical relation between the parts is that of verb and object: *das immer erneute Sichflüchten zu dem Herrn* (Brückner), *Sichüberhében*, *Sichvergessen*. In accordance with older usage the reflexive object is still often omitted here, especially in certain words, particularly in connection with *selbst*: *sich befinden*, but *Befinden*; *sich hingeben*, but *Hingàbe* or *Hingèben*; *sich selbst beherrschen*, but *Sélbstbehèrrschung*, &c. See also 188. a. A dative object is sometimes found: *Sichselbstüberlássensèin*, &c. A dative of reference is also found: *Das Mènschenmögliche hab' ich getan* (Halbe's *Der Strom*, p. 109).

There may be a double object, an acc. object and an objective predicate: *Sobald ich am Menschen dieses unnötige Wesen und Sich-máusig-màchen bemerke*, so lasse ich ihn laufen (G. Keller an T. Storm, 5. Juni 1882). Also a dative and a direct object in the form of a dependent infinitive: *das träge und knechtschaffene Sich-genügen-làssen am Regiertwerden von oben herab* (*Der Türmer*, Jahrg. VI, p. 352).

The verbal stem may be modified by both an object and a prepositional phrase: *Dein seliger Vater würde darin kaum eine Ursache zum Sichimgráb-úmdrèhen finden* (Baumbach's *Der Schwiegersohn*, v).

H. A whole sentence, or the important part of it, may become a group-word or compound, especially in imperative sentences: *Lèbehóch*, *Lèbewóhl*, *Góttlób* (*Gótt sei Lób*), *Góttseibéiuns*, *Grüßgótt*, *Vergißmeinnicht*, *unser Märchen vom Tischleindéckdich*, *ein warmes Gùtenácht* (*Ich wünsche Ihnen eine gùte Nàcht*), *Jelàngerjelieber*, &c. Here we have modern group-stress, but many words have old group-stress, as explained in 2 above.

I. Some group-words and compounds consist of two components, of which the first is a modern group-word or compound and has the principal accent, which is placed according to the rules for a modern group: *Gùtenáchtgrúß*, *Drèikönigsfést*, *Áltwèibersómmer*, *Dùmmerjungenstréich*, in *dieser Dròschke-erster-Klasse-Geséllschaft* (Raabe's *Im alten Eisen*, XVII), *die Kaiser-Wilhelm-ÍÍ.-Reálschule* (read *Wilhelm der Zwéite*), *die Lòs-von-Róm-Bewégung*. The first element is sometimes inflected, and sometimes remains uninflected. See 94. 6.

3. A large number of words which by their form belong to one or other of the above-described categories form with respect to accent and meaning a distinct group, namely compounds the first element of which does not contain an essential modification of the basal compound, but only an intensification of the idea or a concrete or specific illustration of it, and hence does not take the principal accent: *hundselend* very miserable, *stockfinster* very dark, *pechschwarz* jet-black, *kreuzfidel* as merry as a cricket, &c. For particulars as to accent see 47. 3. A. b. *aa*, *bb*, *cc*, *c*, *d*.

### SYNTAX.

**250.** A sentence is an expression of a conception by means of a word or words used in such form and manner as to convey the meaning intended. The sentence may be: (1) exclamatory, uttering an outcry, or giving expression to a command, prohibition, warning, request, wish, or desire, closing with an exclamation point—  
fact, closing  
an interrogation point.  
                     asking a question, closing with

It is usually considered that there are two essential elements in every sentence—the subject and the predicate: **Karl singt.** The subject is that which is spoken of. The predicate is that which is said of the subject. In a normal sentence both subject and predicate are present, but sometimes the one or the other or both may be absent and yet the sentence be a complete expression of thought. See *a* below.

The proper intonation employed in the different kinds of sentences is described in 53. 2.

a. *Sentences Lacking the One or the Other or Both of the Essential Elements* In accurate thinking we often need a large vocabulary and intricate grammatical form, but language also adapts itself readily to the simpler needs of practical life, where action and the situation are often more expressive than words and grammatical form. If we call out Fritz!, to indicate night we wake up and find the house in flames we cry out in loud excited tone Feuer! Often an adverb suffices Herein! Frequently a pronoun spoken in angry tone is sufficient to express a threat. But still less common is the use of a single word.

in  
dis  
Et — — —

The oldest sentence, not than a sentence. This oldest type of sentence the simple imperative forms. In course of relation to each other that the different *senter* ing Sieh da das Feuer! In the oldest form changed form is still widely used, the single thing. This thing—an action, quality, place suggests the thought, as illustrated by a number of examples in the preceding paragraph. In

a later stage of development the thought may be suggested by the association of two things by simply placing one word alongside of another word, which in reality is a predicate but in form an appositive noun, adjective, adverb, or prepositional phrase, as in the early period when this construction arose the idea of predication by means of a verb had not yet come into use: *Träume Schäume. Alles still. Wer da?* More examples of the appositional variety of the thing type are given in 252. 1. b. *Note*. In this appositional type wherever the appositive was a verbal noun it became common in the prehistoric period to append to it personal endings in order to bring the action into relation to a personal subject. The verbal appositive thus became a verb and the old style of expressing thought by the association of two things was in large measure replaced by the new style of representing the subject as resting, acting, or being acted upon: *Der Junge schläft, arbeitet, arbeitete, wird geschlagen, wurde geschlagen, kleidet sich, &c.* With the new style came new possibilities of human expression. The new type—the predicating type—can represent the subject in a number of the different phases of its life, while the old appositional thing type can represent it in only one phase, that of the present moment. Moreover, the new predicating type possessed great possibilities of future development. Wherever in the old appositional type the appositive was a noun, adjective, adverb, or prepositional phrase a verb without a concrete meaning, now called a copula, was in the prehistoric period inserted before the appositive in order to conform to the new predicating type: *Der Fluß ist tief.* A fuller explanation is given in 252. 1. b. *Note*. Altho the normal sentence has thus contained a verb from the earliest historic times the older verbless thing type has never been entirely displaced, as illustrated above and more fully in 252. 1. b. *Note*. Moreover, even tho the copula is now usually found before a predicate noun, adjective, adverb, &c., the *spirit* of the old thing type of sentence survives, for we always feel the thought as suggested by a thing, not by the copula. Indeed the modern form of the old thing type of sentence with a copula is now such a favorite that it is one of the marked features of current speech not to put the main thought into the verb but to express it by means of the name of a thing, i.e. a noun, in connection with a copula-like verb, i.e. a verb that is chosen not to convey the desired meaning but merely to indicate predication: *Das Stück gelangt bald zur Aufführung* *The drama will soon be put upon the boards*, instead of *wird bald aufgeführt will soon be played*. For other examples see 252. 1. a. *Note* 2. We should, however, not forget that the modern form of the old thing type is a great improvement upon the original form, for the copula brings with it the power to express the time and modal relations. The spirit of older speech is not only thus preserved in modern form in sentences containing a verb of incomplete predication, such as a copula or a copula-like verb, but sometimes also in sentences containing a verb of complete predication: *Es regnet* *It rains*. There was originally no *es* or *it* here, for there is no subject expressed or understood. Later in oldest German and English we usually find here a formal subject, *es* or *it*, which was inserted to conform such sentences in a mere formal way to the predicating type, which requires a subject for a verb, but the spirit of the older sentence remains, for the activity has not yet been brought into relation to a real subject. For fuller discussion see 219 and 219. 1, 3 and *a* thereunder.

## 251. The Subject.

### I. The Case and Forms of the Subject.

#### 1. A. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative: *Der Schüler lernt.*

The genitive cannot stand in an elliptical subject without a governing word, as in English: *Von den drei Kraftwagen ist der Wilhelms der beste*, or in loose colloquial and popular language: *Von den drei Kraftwagen ist dem Wilhelm seiner der beste* *Of the three autos William's is the best*. *Goethes Leben war in fast jeder Beziehung ein glückliches* *Goethe's was in almost every respect a happy life*, which we say instead of *Goethe's life was in almost every respect a happy one*, as we desire to avoid the use of weak, meaningless *one*.

a. The subject can still as in older German be in the gen. or now more commonly in the dat. after *von*. See 255. II. 1. H. c.

b. In a number of instances a noun in an oblique case after a prep. is considered the subject of the sentence, since the real origin of the construction is no longer felt: *Gegen hundert Mann sind gefallen* *About a hundred men fell*. *An die tausend Menschen waren versammelt*. *Aus Deutschland werden jährlich für mehr als 100 Millionen Mark, namentlich an Damenkonfektion, ausgeführt, aber für viel mehr bleibt im Inland* (*Sombart's Die deutsche Volkswirtschaft*, p. 339). In these sentences the prep. *an*, *für*, *gegen* are now usually felt as adverbs with the force of *ungefähr* and *etwa*. Compare 225. 1. c.

#### B. The form of the subject may be that of:

a. A noun: *Die Sonne leuchtet*. Things are often personified: *Das Messer schneidet gut*. *Eine Brücke verbindet das rechte Ufer mit dem linken*. The subject is often *metonymic*, i.e. indicating not the real subject but a thing or a person in close association with it: *Das Faß fließt über*. *Die Bank sitzt voller Menschen*.



After certain words *anscheinlich, angeblich, wahrscheinlich, &c* the subject has the logical force of a predicate of a relative clause *Der angebliche Chirurg ist eigentlich ein Barbier = Der, der als Chirurg angegeben wird, ist eigentlich ein Barbier*

*b* A pronoun *Ich schreibe*

*c* An adjective or participle used substantively *Der Frohliche lacht Zu grob ist unanständig, und die Rechnung wird das ausweisen (Raabe's *Der Draumling* XXVI) Der Trauernde weint Der Besiegte trauert*

*d* An infinitive with or without *zu*. *Andern zu dienen macht ihr Freude Maßig leben macht stark*

*e* Any other part of speech used substantively *Auf ist eine Proposition*

*f* A whole clause *Wer nicht horen will, muß fühlen*

*o 2 A Grammatical Es* Sometimes there are two subjects in a sentence—the *logical* and the *grammatical* subject *Es* (grammatical subject) *war einmal ein König* (logical subject) The grammatical subject is usually the uninflected *es*, which as a provisional subject serves only as a formal introduction to the sentence and points forward to the logical subject in the nom. which follows the verb *Es sind viele hier gewesen* *There have been many here* The logical subject is here the real subject as it regulates the number of the verb In inverted order the *es* drops out *Hier sind viele gewesen* It is also dropped when the real subject stands at the head of the sentence *Viele sind hier gewesen* For the use of the grammatical subject see II B below

It should be noted that this use of *es* as grammatical subject corresponds in part to the use of *there* in English but the construction has in German a wider field of usefulness as it is in English not used at all with transitives in the active and is not freely employed with intransitives and passives *Es weiß ja niemand, wann er zuletzt zur Beichte gegangen ist* *Indeed nobody knows when he confessed (to the priest) last* In English on the other hand, the expletive *there* is in one particular case more used than *es* is in German namely, it can be used even when some other word introduces the sentence while in German *es* is then uniformly dropped *A few years ago there lived in this house a lonely old man* *Vor einigen Jahren wohnte in diesem Hause ein einsamer, alter Mann* *Are there many people here? Sind viele Menschen hier?*

*a* In po  
loving logic.  
(Goethe's *F*  
(Hans Hoffmann)

er number and case with a fol  
ine, der Jungling edeln Gefühles  
war er, dieser Novemberwind

*b* Somewhat different from the above is the common case where the logical subject is placed for emphasis at the head of the sentence in the form of an exclamation and then is immediately or after an interval of several words again referred to by a personal pronoun or demon which agrees with it *Die Freiheit sie ist kein leerer Wahn Der arme Mensch! Nun ist er ganz verlassen Das Pergament, ist das der heil'ge Brönnen? (Faust I 566)*

*B Anticipative Es* Similar to the *grammatical subject* in A is the *anticipative subject es*, which points forward to a following infinitive or substantive clause which explains the *es* more fully *Es macht mir großes Vergnügen, Sie hier zu sehen* *Es ist nicht gut, daß der Mensch allein sei* This *es* differs from the grammatical subject *es* in having more independent force in that it is often needed to make the grammatical relations clear, for such sentences with an infinitive or substantive clause as subject are more involved than sentences

with a simple subject. Hence it is usually retained even when some other word stands at the head of the sentence: **Heute macht es mir großes Vergnügen, Sie hier zu sehen.** It drops out, however, when the real subject stands at the head of the sentence: **Sie hier zu sehen macht mir großes Vergnügen.** For the origin of the anticipative subject see A. *Note* and 219.

*Note.* The anticipative subject *es* is sometimes omitted in accordance with older usage where it had not yet become necessary to introduce thus formally the logical subject: *Mich freut [es], daß ich dich so besonnen finde* (Grillparzer's *Medea*, 4). The anticipative *es* is regularly omitted when an unemphatic predicate word, such as a predicate adjective, noun, or modal verbal (180. A), introduces the sentence, for the presence of the unemphatic predicate here and the rising intonation after the verb pointing forward indicate that the subject has been withheld for emphasis and must follow. An illustrative example is given in II. B. a. aa. *Note*. Similarly the anticipative *es* is not needed if an intransitive verb preceded by an unstressed modifying word introduces the sentence and there is a rising intonation—here indicated by a raised period—after the verb pointing forward to the following emphatic subject clause: *Hieraus folgt', daß usw. Zum Dichten gehört', daß dem Menschen Bilder vor Augen stehen, daß er den Drang fühle, sie darzustellen* (Hermann Grimm's *Fragmente*, I, p. 378).

The *es* is regularly dropped when the principal proposition is inserted in the subordinate clause: *Dies, wurde gesagt, sei falsch. Warum, ist nicht leicht zu sagen* It is not easy to say why.

3. *Situation Es.* *Es* is much used as subject to point to something definite which is more or less clearly defined by the situation. Examples are given in 219. 1 and 3 (last par.), where this *es* is distinguished from impersonal *es*. Attention is here called to the peculiar word-order employed here when the predicate is a personal pronoun. In this case the predicate usually comes first in the sentence, and so influences the verb that the verb agrees with it instead of agreeing with the subject: *ich bin es* it is I, *du bist es* it is you, *er ist es* it is he, *wir sind es* it is we. In question order: *bist du es?*, *ist er es?* Only rarely as in English: *Herr, ich höre Pferde im Galopp! Zwei! Es sind sie gewiß* (Goethe's *Götz*, 1, 2). Quite commonly so in Swiss dialect and colloquial language: *Nein, es ist ihn* (252. 2. C. a) *nicht* (J. Gotthelf's *Geld und Geist*, 366). The predicate, however, stands at the end when the proposition is introduced by an adverb or a demonstrative pronoun: *Wenn jemand hier gelogen hat, dann bist es du. Hier ist das Bild, dies bin ich und das sind Sie.*

The form *ich* (emphatic predicate) *bin es* *it is I* should be distinguished from the *ich* (subject) *bin* (emphatic to emphasize the fact) *es* (129. 2. C. (4)) *I am*, which is given in answer to such a question as *bist du treu?* *are you faithful?* While English distinguishes these cases sharply by a difference in form, German cannot so do, except often, as in these examples, by the accent, emphasizing in case of the expression of identity the predicate and in the latter case the verb.

4. *Impersonal Es.* This construction is treated at considerable length in 219.

## II. Omission or Expression of the Subject.

In general every sentence must have a subject expressed, but usage admits of certain irregularities, which are here treated briefly:

A. The *logical subject* is omitted:

a. As a rule in imperative sentences in the familiar form (177. I. A. a): **Fliehe! Flieht!**

b. In the first person in a few set expressions: *Danke* I thank you, *bitte* I beg of you, please, *geschweige* (233. C). *Bedauere sehr, kann nicht dienen* I regret very much that I cannot serve you. Besides these and a number of other set expressions the subject is frequently omitted in business and crisp epistolary style in general, and also often in poetry and familiar language: *Ihr Schreiben vom 16. d. M. (dieses Monats) habe erhalten. Habe nun, ach! Philosophie, | Juristerei und Medizin, | und leider auch Theologie! | durchaus studiert, mit heißem Bemühn* (Goethe).

c. Often in the 2nd person in poetry and familiar language, and less frequently in the 3rd person: *Füllest* (speaking of the moon) *wieder Busch und Tal | still mit Nebelglanz, | lösest* (dost free from oppressive care) *endlich auch einmal | meine Seele ganz* (Goethe). *Warum hast denn bis jetzt kein Feuer angemacht?* (Auerbach). [*Sie you, 2nd sing.*] *Sehen ja frisch und blühend aus wie die Gesundheit selbst! Es* is especially dropped in familiar conversation: *Mag sein* *It may be.* *Kann nicht erlaubt werden* *It can't be allowed.* *Wird schon kommen* *It will surely come.*

d. As in English, a pronominal subject, predicate, or object is often omitted in clauses introduced by *wie as, how, such as, als as, than, so, weit as far as*. The subject is omitted especially in case of situation *es* (219. 3, last par.) or a pronoun which can easily be supplied from the context: *Er sprach, wie folgt. Er benahm sich nicht, wie sich schickte. Es läßt sich leicht denken*, but in the subordinate clause after *wie*: *wie sich denken läßt*, or in a question after *wie*: *Wie läßt sich da bessern? Bringen Sie mir so viele Bücher, als auf dem Tische liegen. Er hat schon mehr getrunken, als ihm bekommen dürfte. Denen ist geholfen und mehr, so scheint's, als ihnen gut ist* (Otto Erler's *Struensee*, p. 66). *Hm, hm, ich habe, bei Gott, wüstere Tanten in meinem Dasein gesehen, als da eben auf dem Balkon stand* (Raabe's *Eulenspiegel*, chap. viii). *Bisher haben sich den Witbois* (dat. pl., tribe of Africans), *soweit bekannt ist, die Hottentotten angeschlossen* (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Nov. 27, 1904). Omission of predicate: *Ich möchte dich nicht anders, als du bist*. Omission of object: *Das ist mehr, als ein Mensch ertragen kann. Ich traute Ihnen eine solche Niederträchtigkeit nicht zu, wie Sie begangen haben*. These expressions are the survivals of a much older period when speech had not yet become fixed in conventional forms, with expressed subject, object, &c. Parts of the sentence were not expressed when the situation made the reference clear without the use of words. Situation *es*, however, was early in the historic period placed at the beginning of the sentence in order to keep the verb from standing in the first place and thus creating the impression of a question which requires *yes* or *no* for an answer. Where, however, some conjunction or adverb like *wie, &c.*, stands in the first place older usage without a formal subject or object here is in set expressions still quite common, as the conjunction or adverb clearly indicates that the sentence is not such a question. The *wie* or *als* in these old expressions is now often felt as a relative pronoun used as subject or object, regularly so in case of English *as* after *such*.

In German, however, in accordance with the demands of modern formal grammar subordinate clauses often have an expressed subject, predicate, or object where English does not admit of it: *Sie trat an den Tisch und, ihre Brieftasche öffnend, legte sie eine Banknote unter den brennenden* (illuminated Christmas) *Baum, größer als sie noch je in dieser armen Hütte gesehen worden. Die Gräfin bekümmerte sich mehr um ihre Kinder, als es in Wien der Fall war. Wir trinken eine Flasche besseren Weines, als man ihn uns im Kurhause vorsetzen würde*. When the reference is to a preceding predicate adjective, or predicate noun, or the thought contained in the preceding proposition, the pronominal predicate or object here is *es* or *dies*: *Du bist auch bescheidener als ich es bin. Ihre Überraschung war groß, aber nicht so freudig, wie er dies erwartet hatte*. After the word *such* in English adjectival clauses introduced by *as* we regularly suppress a pronominal subject or object since *as* is felt as subject or object, while in German the pronoun is regularly inserted: *Aus dem Krug floß kein Dünnebier, sondern ein Wein, wie der weitgereiste Schuster noch keinen getrunken hatte* Out of the jug came no small beer, but a wine such as even the shoemaker, who had traveled so much, had never drunk. For fuller information here see 153. 3. D. (1).

e. If several verbs have the same subject, it may usually be expressed only once, but the subject *must* be expressed in each proposition where some modifier of the verb (such as an adverbial element or an object) or a predicate noun or adjective stands before the verb: *Er kam zu mir, ging aber sogleich weg, but aber sogleich ging er weg*. The word-order need not necessarily be the same in the different propositions: *Nach wie vor besuchte er wöchentlich mehrmals das kanzleirätliche Haus und hielt den Damen Vorträge über pompejanische Ausgrabungen im besonderen und über Altertum im allgemeinen* (Baumbach's *Der Schwiegersonn*, v). In this sentence an adverbial element is in fact underlined. This point is usually

adverbial modifier of the first proposition, so that inversion does not follow. Sometimes, however, we

find the inverted order and the subject repeated, as the presence of the preceding adverbial element, object, or predicate noun or adjective is felt: *Schön war sie (die Stadt Kiel) niemals, ist sie auch nicht geworden und wird sie nie werden* (Jensen); or also *Schön war sie niemals, ist es auch nicht geworden und wird es nie werden*. Sometimes the subject is expressed but once and follows the last verb: *Als Leser denke und wünsche ich mir vor allem Studenten, die usw.* (Brugmann's *Kurze vergleichende Grammatik*, p. iv).

B. *Omission or Expression of the Grammatical* (see I. 2. A) *and the Anticipative* (I. 2. B) *Subject*. The general rules for the omission of these subjects have already been given in the articles I. 2. A and B. Moreover, the retention or omission of the grammatical and anticipative subjects is a question of emphasis or style which deserves careful attention.

a. The *es* is retained in the following cases:

aa. To make emphatic a predicate noun, pronoun, adjective, or modal verbal (180. A). In this case the predicate is placed at the head of the sentence in accordance with the general law for sentence accent, and is then followed in the first place by the main verb, in the second place by the anticipative subject *es* spoken with falling intonation (53. 2)—here indicated by a period—and in the third place by the real subject, which assumes the form of a relative clause or a clause introduced by *daß*: *Déutsche (predicate) waren es. (anticipative subject), die das Pulver, die Buchdruckerei erfunden haben (subject clause). Ich bin es., der es getan hat. Sie waren es., der anfang. Dú bist's., dem Ruhm und Ehre gebührt. Ríchtig ist es., daß er morgen kommt. Zu lóben ist es., daß er dies getan hat.* Notice in these sentences that in case of a predicate noun or pronoun the verb does not agree with the grammatical subject *es* or with the real subject, but with the predicate, being attracted into its person and number. This emphatic form also has the following word-order in case of predicate nouns: *Es ist dein Brúder., den du damit kránkst. Es ist bloßer Néid., was aus ihm spricht.* This form with normal word-order cannot be used if the predicate is a personal pronoun. See I. 3 above.

*Note.* Where the predicate word is brought forward to the beginning of the sentence, not for emphasis but in order that the subject clause may take the emphatic end position the anticipative *es* drops out and is replaced by the rising intonation after the verb—here indicated by a raised period—which points forward to the subject clause which is to follow: *Ríchtig ist', daß Ibsen seine gewohnten Tagesausfahrten zufolge des anhaltend winterlich rauhen Wetters bis auf weiteres hat einstellen müssen* (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Nov. 28, 1904, where the passage in question is given to correct a false report that represented Ibsen as dangerously sick). See also 269. 1. b (2nd par.).

bb. It is also used when it is desired for emphasis or some other reason to bring the verb forward from its usual position. As the verb cannot stand first in the sentence without giving it the impression of a question or of a conditional clause, it is necessary in simple tenses of a principal declarative proposition to introduce the sentence by *es*, if it is desired to bring the verb forward for emphasis: *Es írrt der Mensch, solange er strebt* Man errs as long as his aspirations last. The *es* is not used here in case of the pronominal subjects *er, sie, es, sie*, as they themselves can introduce the sentence as well as *es*: *Er múß es tun.* As all the personal pronouns are light unstressed forms the verb in all such cases is felt as practically standing at the head of the sentence altho technically it is in the second place.

This emphatic word-order is sometimes replaced by another construction. In this case the predicate verb may take the form of an infinitive depending upon *tun*: *Lóben tat sie nicht viel, sie hielt's vom Überfluß* She rarely *praised* anybody, as she thought it superfluous. This construction is also used when the subject is a noun, especially in colloquial and popular language.

There is no need of the construction with *es* in compound tenses where the emphasis is to be placed upon the participle or infinitive, as the participle and infinitive which contain the important part of the predicate can be placed at the head of the sentence: *Genómmen ist die Freiheit, nicht gegeben. Laß nur stehen! Éingießen wird sich jeder selbst.* Likewise with modal auxiliaries: *Aber éssen kannst du doch zu uns kommen* (Maria Janitschek's *Einer Mutter Sieg*, XVIII).

In ballads and epics the past or present tense is often brought forward in accordance with the importance that attaches to the verb in narrative. The sentence at the beginning of the poem is usually introduced by *es* followed immediately by the verb: *Es zogen drei Bursche wohl über den Rhein*. Further on in the narrative lightly stressed *da* takes the place of *es* at the head of the sentence, as in II. 19, 29, and 41 of Uhland's "Schwabische Kunde." In colloquial and popular speech as in older literary usage the verb itself in all these cases stands in the first place. See *b* below.

*cc.* The construction with *es* must be used if it is desired to emphasize especially the subject by placing it after the verb. In this case *es* becomes the grammatical (I. 2. A) subject: *Es wanken | schon ganze Regimenter, Garnisonen* (Schiller's *Die Piccolomini*, 3, 1). As this construction is used to emphasize either the verb or the subject, the accent and context sometimes alone make clear which in each particular case is to be made prominent. It is the subject that is to be emphasized when it is found removed from the verb standing near the end of the proposition, which is usually an emphatic position: *Es irren in Fälen von so mißlicher Natur selbst weisere Männer. Es haben in Fälen von so mißlicher Natur selbst weisere Männer geirrt. Es weiß ja niemand, wann er zuletzt zur Beichte gegangen ist*. Often also a personal pronoun: *Es irte auch er*.

In the same manner a subject clause can be removed to the end of the sentence for the sake of emphasis: *Es ist eine der hauptsächlichsten Eigentümlichkeiten, die ihn (i.e. Caesar) von Alexander, Hannibal und Napoleon unterscheidet, daß in ihm nicht der Offizier, sondern der Demagog der Ausgangspunkt der politischen Tätigkeit war* (Mommson). For important points under this head see *aa*. Note above and also I. 2. B. Note.

In colloquial speech the *es* is often suppressed. See *b*.

*b.* In popular language and in poetry the *es*, following older usage still common in early N.H.G., is often omitted, so that the verb introduces the sentence: *Sah ein Knab ein Röslein stehn* (Goethe's *Heidenroslein*).

Originally there was more freedom in the word-order than now, so that even a verb could introduce a declarative sentence, if it was to be emphasized, lay nearer in thought, or if the statement as a whole was to be put in a more lively manner, or if the verb came to the front by the removal of the subject to the end of the sentence for the sake of emphasis, as described in *a. cc* above. Later in order to prevent the possibility of interpreting such a sentence as a question which must be answered by yes or no *es* was often placed at the head of a sentence and immediately after it the verb, so that the declarative character of the sentence was thus made perfectly clear and at the same time, as indicated in *a. bb, cc*, prominence given to the verb or the subject. Thus by a simple expedient the old historic word-order can still be used. The common people and poets do not comply with the formal rules of grammar, but often cling to older historic forms, and thus use here the old freedom of putting a verb at the head of the sentence, especially to make a statement in a stronger, more lively manner: *Natürlich müssen wir hin. Gleich—bald. Bin ich neugierig, Muttli* (Adele Gerhard's *Die Geschichte der Antonie van Heese*, IV). Other examples in 287. B. (7). Sometimes in ballads and epics the verb as the essential element in lively narrative is placed at the head of the sentence as in older usage: *Wandte der König sein Antlitz ab, und wieder zum Fenster, | und versuchte Hilfe beim höchsten Herrn zu erlangen* (Frenssen's *Bismarck*, p. 198). This construction is common in colloquial German, tho it is in English found only in a choice literary style: *Kommt da plötzlich ein Kerl herein, hat einen Revolver in der Hand, schießt den N. nieder; glaubt doch alles, es handle sich um persönliche Feindschaft, aber usw.* (Heinrich Winkler in *Anzeiger für deutsches Allertum*, Jan. 1901, p. 297). In English we can approach the spirit of the old Germanic construction by beginning the sentence with *there* (or in older English *it*) followed immediately by the verb: *There entered suddenly, &c.* In German colloquial speech as in older literary German the subject may for the sake of emphasis be

withheld until the end of the sentence, so that the verb often stands in the first place: *Ich mache die Tür auf—steht da vor der Tür ein baumlanger Mensch* (Rudolf Blümel in Paul and Braune's *Beiträge*, vol. XXXV, p. 525). In English we can again approach this old Germanic construction by beginning the proposition with *there* (or in older English *it*) followed immediately by the verb: *There stood there*, &c. Tho we can thus still approach this old Germanic construction we cannot now, except in a rather choice literary style, put the verb in the first place. In German the older freedom is also sometimes still found in the literary language within the body of the sentence after the conjunction *und*: *Ganz einfach wie ein Stückholz ist sie gewesen, und half da kein Zureden und kein Bitten* (Hans Hoffmann's *Von Haff und Hafen*, p. 114). Often in colloquial language and dialect: *Neue Lasten! Und drucken* (S.G. for *drücken*) *uns die alten schon zentnerschwar* (for *zentnerschwer*)! (Schönherr's *Sonnwendtag*, p. 91).

c. The grammatical subject *es* must not be confounded with the *es* described in 141. 9. a, which is used in expressions of identity. In the former construction the noun following the verb is the real subject, while in the latter construction it is the predicate. *Es war ein König* *There was* (once upon a time) *a king*, or if it is the latter construction *It was a king*. The difference between the two constructions becomes apparent in the inverted order, as the grammatical subject *es* there according to rule (see I. 2. A above) drops out, while the *es* in the expression of identity remains: *Einmal war ein König in großer Not* *There was once a king in great need*, but *Ein König war es* *It was a king*.

C. The impersonal subject *es* is sometimes omitted. See 219 and 1, 4. B. a. Note, and 5. B. a thereunder.

### The Predicate.

#### The Forms and Case of the Predicate.

252. 1. The predicate can be:

a. A finite verb of complete predication: *Reichtum vergeht. Die Vögel singen. Die Würmer kriechen. Marie schreibt schön. Marie schreibt schöne Briefe.* Verbs of complete predication are often not complete of themselves and need some other word or words, as in the last two examples, to make the meaning complete, but the term "verb of complete predication" is not without inner justification. Such verbs stand in contrast to copulas (*b* and 2. B. a below), which in a mere formal way perform the function of predication and do not in an actual sense predicate. Verbs of complete predication, on the other hand, predicate, say something of the subject, they present a general line of thought, which is basal, even if it has to be supplemented often by details.

Note 1. The verb often becomes quite an unimportant element in a sentence, and by reason of the overpowering importance of some other part of the predicate loses a part or all of its original force and significance, or may be entirely or in part omitted. With nouns or adverbs which express a goal, destination, direction, the idea of the destination becomes so prominent that the idea of the *manner* of reaching it, which is contained in the verb, remains in the background and receives little attention. Thus we say: *Ich gehe morgen nach Berlin* I am going to Berlin to-morrow, altho in fact we intend to go on the cars and not on foot, as would be naturally suggested by the real meaning of the verb *gehen*. We thus use *gehen* with any manner of locomotion, as we do not stop to think of its real meaning, but are thinking rather of the destination. Some form of the verb is often suppressed: (1) In compound tenses we may retain only the auxiliary and omit entirely the verb of motion, where there is a goal or destination mentioned: *Er ist nach Haus [gegangen]. Ich wollte nach Berlin [gehen]. Sie sind fort [gegangen].* The auxiliary here performs the verbal function, and the adverb or prep. phrase contains the verbal meaning. Also in other cases the auxiliary is alone used when the omission can easily be supplied from the context: *Du wirst Papa unterrichten, nicht wahr? Natürlich werde ich [ihn unterrichten].* (2) The verb often drops out even when there is no auxiliary to perform the verbal function, as the really important part of the predicate is contained in some modifier of the verb, and the verb itself can easily be supplied: *Das Fenster auf und die Frühlingsluft (he)rein! Ratsch! riß er dem Hansjörg die Pfeife aus dem Mund, und dann im gestreckten Galopp auf und davon (Auerbach). Achtung! Vorsicht! Schönen Dank (sage ich)! I thank you! Guten Tag! Wohin (gehen Sie) des Weges? Where are you going to? (To the ticket agent at the railway station) Zwei dritter Berlin! Two third class tickets for Berlin! Mir auch einen Apfel! Alle Mann an Bord! but with quite a different meaning spoken in a narrative tone in reporting a fact: *Alle Mann [sind] an Bord. Hinaus mit ihm! Hierher! Zurück! Herein!* (3) The auxiliary often drops out where it can easily be supplied: *(Hast du) Ausgeschlafen?* Have you had your sleep out? Likewise in the passive: *Arbeiter aufs Land [werden] dringend verlangt!* (notice posted in an employment bureau).*

Note 2. A marked feature in both German and English is the frequency of the usage which prefers to clothe the chief idea of the predicate in the form of a noun rather than in that of a verb: *Es wird in Erwägung gezogen* *It is under consideration*, instead of *Es wird erwogen* *It is being considered*. *Es gelangt bald zum Druck* *It will soon be in print*. Similarly: *etwas zur Entscheidung bringen* to bring something to the push, *etwas zur Ausführung bringen* to put something into execution, &c. English has developed much farther in this direction than German: *Shine, Sir? Wollen Sie sich nicht die Stiefel putzen lassen, mein Herr?* I got a shave *Ich ließ mich rasieren*. I got a good shaking up *Ich wurde schön durchgeschüttelt*. Let me have a look at it *Laß mich mal sehen!* Give it a good rub *Reib's mal tüchtig!* After dinner we had a quiet smoke *Nach dem Essen rauchten wir eine gemütliche Zigarre*. Let me have a taste *Laß mich mal kosten!* All these cases indicate a reluctance in colloquial speech to predicate by

means of a *Wortfeld* on this method, a felt as too formal, too exact for practice. In a *Wortfeld* all forms are the same.

with the subject.

b. A verb of incomplete predication in connection with a predicate complement, the verb assuming in a mere formal way the *function* of predication, the complement serving as the real predicate: **Die Walfische sind Säugetiere.** A verb of incomplete predication is called a copula. In other tenses than the present the copula acquires more predicating force as it, like a verb of complete predication, indicates also the time relations. The copulas *sein* and *werden* often enter into such close relations to a predicate participle or infinitive that the copula and predicate complement fuse into a new whole and become a verb of complete predication: **Er ist gekommen. Er ist gefangen worden. Er wird gehen.**

Altho the copula is usually weakly stressed and may often even be omitted it is strongly accented to express the idea of actuality: **Gut ist er doch! Ein Schurke ist er doch!**

*Note Origin of the Copula* Next to the introduction of the verb of complete predication into language the

c. *Predicate Appositive.* The predicate may be a verb of complete predication in connection with a predicate complement, usually called a predicate appositive: **Er kam krank an. Er bat mich weinend or in Tränen. Er kam schweren Herzens (223. III. a) zurück.** The predicate complement often not only adds a remark about the subject, but it often also has the force of an adverbial clause thus sustaining relations to both the subject and the principal verb: **Jung (=wenn man jung ist) ist man leichtsinnig. Damit stand er auf, den um den Tisch Sitzenden den Rücken zuwendend (= indem er den um den Tisch Sitzenden den Rücken zuwendete.)** Compare 104. 2. A. b, C; 268. 4; 273. 1. c.

2. The predicate complement may be:

A. A noun:

a. In the nominative after verbs of incomplete predication, i.e. the intransitives *sein* to be, *werden* to become, *bleiben* to remain, *heißen* to be called, *nennt*, *dünken* to seem, *scheinen* to seem, *erscheinen* to appear, and the passive forms of the transitives (see 262. III. 2. A. a) which take a predicate accusative in the active: **Sokrates war der Sohn eines Bildhauers. Ich wurde von ihm ein Feigling gescholten.**

Lieber Gott, laß mich kein Liederdichter werden (Heer's *Joggeli*, p. 107). Laß mich ein solcher Tor sein (Boßhart's *Die Barettklochter*, p. 68). Laß den wüsten Kerl, den Grobitzsch, meinetwegen ihr Komplize sein — deshalb bleibt sie doch immer die Schuldige (Hartleben's *Rosenmontag*, 3, 2). Mich laß ein wilder Jäger durch den Nebel fahren (Traeger). Lassen Sie mich in Ihrem Tempel weilen als ein frommer Beter, als ein ergebener Verehrer (Ring). Laß mich als der letzte, ärmste Eurer Kinder mit bunten Kieselsteinen spielen auf Euren Straßen (Paul Keller's *Das letzte Märchen*, p. 44). Lehre du ihn ein Mensch sein (Meinhardt). If, however, the predicate complement has no modifiers, it is usually in the nom.: Laß mich Herr sein. When the object and the unmodified predicate are the same word, the latter usually stands in the acc., but the nom. also occurs in accordance with the general rule: Laß den Narren Narren sein. Laß dir den Menschen Mensch sein (Grillparzer's *Ein treuer Diener*, 5).

On the other hand, the predicate complement of a prepositional infinitive is uniformly in the nominative, as it is felt as the predicate of an abridged clause: Er beauftragte mich, der Bote zu sein. Mich verdroß, der letzte zu sein.

b. The predicate noun is in certain cases introduced by *als* or the prepositions *für* (w. acc.) and *zu* (w. dat.):

(1) The predicate nom. after *erscheinen to appear*, *gehen to pass (for)*, and the passive forms of *ansehen to look at*, *begrüßen to greet*, *betrachten to consider*, *behandeln to treat*, and all others (for list see 262. III. 2. A. b) which in the active take a predicate acc. introduced by *als*, also predicate appositives after intransitives of complete predication and after passives, are introduced by *als*, which here denotes *identity, oneness with*: Dies erschien uns als der einzige Ausweg. Er war viel zu schön für einen Mann und hätte gut als Frau gehen können (Bernhard Kellermann's *Yester und Li*, chap. XVI, p. 249). Er wird als ein Taugenichts betrachtet. Er wird als tapferer Held gepriesen. Kommst du zu uns als unser Feind oder unser Retter? Als Tyrann wurde er von allen gehaßt.

In case of predicate appositives the *als* is frequently omitted in poetry: Ein Feind kommst du zurück dem Orden (Schiller). This is a survival of early N.H.G., which did not yet require here the *als*, which first appeared here in the present period and has gradually come into wide use, growing at the expense of the older simple nominative and the *für* construction. Compare 262. III. 2 (2nd par.). In certain set expressions the older simple nominative construction is still preserved in prose, and has even become productive, so that new expressions are formed after the analogy of the old ones: Bote (see also 257. 2. A) laufen to go on an errand, Gevatter stehen to stand godfather, bei einem Kinde Pate stehen to become sponsor for a child at baptism, Braut stehen to stand as a bride before the altar, be married, Modell sitzen or stehen to serve as an artist's model: Nein, es ist ein Kunstwerk, zu dem Sie einfach Modell gesessen haben! (Fulda's *Die Wilde Jagd*, 3, 10). In case of *Wache stehen to stand guard* this construction has replaced an older prepositional one: ih sihe den videlære an der schiltwache stan (*Nibelungenlied*, 1778, 4). Similarly *Wache sitzen*: Jetzo sitze ich hier Wache (Raabe's *Meister Autor*, chap. xxiii). Some grammarians feel some of these articleless nouns as cognate accusatives (see 257. 2. A), and in fact a clear acc. form is sometimes found: „Sie waren verweist?“ „Ja, bei einer Nichte in Oberschlesien Paten gestanden“ (Paul Keller's *Waldwinter*, IX). On the other hand, the nom. sing. is sometimes used with reference to more than one, which shows that the noun has lost its identity and has entered into relations with the verb to form a compound: Pate stehen sollten Gottfried von Geyer und Major von Schirmacher (Ompteda's *Sylvester von Geyer*, II).

(2) After the passive forms of a few verbs the predicate is introduced by *für* (with acc.) which does not positively affirm complete and absolute identity as does *als*, but only equality, and hence denotes that something is considered or represented as able or worthy to pass for the thing expressed by the predicate: Er wird für einen reichen Mann gehalten He is regarded as a rich man. Sometimes after the active form *gelten* and certain passive forms *für* and *als* are both used with the same verb, either with the same or with a different shade of meaning: Er gilt für einen or als ein Dichter He passes for a poet. Er wird als ein Narr or für einen Narren angesehen He is looked upon as a fool. Instead of the acc. here after *für* we often find the gen. where the substantive is in fact a substitute for a predicate adjective (see 253. IV): Er gilt ärztlich nicht für ersten Ranges (Fontane's *Effi*, chap. xxiii). Tho *für* is pretty well established after a few verbs, especially *halten* and *erklären*, *als* is in general the favorite. The passive and the intransitive active constructions with *für* and *als* are not so common as the transitive active one, and hence the use of *für* and *als* is more



fully illustrated in the active construction described in 262. III. 2. A. c and Note 1.

262. III. 2 (2nd par.).

(3) The predicate after *werden* to become, *heranblühen* to blossom into, develop into, (*heran*)*gedeihen* to grow up to become, ripen into, and with similar intransitive force the reflexive verbs *sich entwickeln*, *sich auswachsen* to develop into, is introduced by *zu* with the dat. if it is desired to show an actual or desired transformation or development into the state indicated by the predicate: *Diese schönen Hoffnungen wurden zu Wasser* These fine hopes ended in smoke. *Er wurde zum Bettler* He became a beggar. *Der Knabe wird zum Mann.* *Das Wasser ist durch den Frost zu Eis geworden.* *Mein Leben wird mir zur Last* My life is becoming a burden to me. *Die Ausnahme darf nicht zur Regel werden* The exception must not become a rule. *Dein Vater ist zum Schelm an mir geworden* (Schiller's *Wallensteins Tod*, 3, 18) Your father has become a scoundrel thru his treatment of me. *Sie war zu einer kräftigen Schönheit herangeblüht.* *Du bist zum Jüngling gediehen.* Indem nun werden in allen diesen Sätzen zu einem bloßen Verbindungswort geworden ist, hat es sich zu einer Kopula entwickelt. Notice here the common use of the generalizing (69. I. C) definite article in contracted form, *zum* and *zur*, where English usually requires the indefinite article. In earliest N.H.G. the indefinite article was the rule as in English and as can be seen by the above examples is still sometimes used, but it can usually be replaced by the definite article as the definite article is now more common in a generalizing sense. In case of a mass or a material the article is here dropped in German and English as illustrated in examples given above. Compare 262. III. 2. A. d.

If it is the finished state or condition reached or to be reached rather than the process of development that is before the mind the *zu* drops out: *Sie wurde Schauspielerin.* *Er wird Kaufmann* He is going to be a merchant. *Ein Kronprinz wird König, wenn sein Vater stirbt.* *Dieser Mohammedaner wird Christ; wird er aber auch zum Christen?*

The use of *zu* here was already well established in oldest German. Compare 262. III. 2 (2nd par.).

c. *Predicate Genitive.* After the verb *sein* to be, more rarely after *werden* to become, *scheinen* to seem, a predicate genitive is used to express several ideas also found in the attributive gen., namely, *quality*, *origin*, and in choice language *possession*, or the first two of these ideas, and also that of *material*, and sometimes the *partitive* idea may be expressed by a prep. phrase (see 253. IV): *Darüber kann man verschiedener Ansicht sein.* *Der Gedankenaustausch mit München ist jetzt geradezu eine Freude, so weh es in solchen Augenblicken auch tut, daß wir mit ihnen nur eines Sinnes, nicht auch eines Staates sein können* (*Neue Freie Presse*, Oct. 8, 1919). *Wir sind gleichen Alters* We are of the same age. *Seien Sie guter Dinge* Be of good cheer. *Er ist andern Sinnes geworden* He has changed his mind. Also *du bist wirklich des Glaubens, Michael hätte keinen sehnlicheren Wunsch gehabt, als seinen Sitz im Reichstag loszuwerden?* (Sudermann's *Es lebe das Leben*, p. 40). *So konnte Mommsen glauben, daß ich mit Unrecht gegen ihn ankämpfe, während ich natürlich der Überzeugung war und noch heute bin, daß ich zum Widerspruch verpflichtet war* (Otto Seeck's *Zur Charakteristik Mommsens*, Deutsche Rundschau, Jan. 1904). *Zuweilen, wenn er schlechter Laune war, behandelte er ihn allerdings wie einen Lakaien* (Beyerlein's *Jena oder Sedan?*, viii). *Das Verhältnis war nicht derart, daß es Johanna große Verlegenheit verursacht hätte. Ich bin willens, es zu tun I am disposed, intend to do it. Das ist mir einerlei* (126. I. a) That is all the same to me. *Das ist so Rechts* That is according to law. *Sie waren deutschen Ursprungs. So gebet dem Keiser | was des Keisers ist | vnd Gotte|*

was Gottes ist (Matth. xxii. 21). Ich tu', was ich muß, der Ausgang ist Gottes (Hebbel's *Agnes Bernauer*, 4, 4). Das ist meines Amtes (Suttner's *Im Berg-hause*, p. 54) That is my duty, my work. Dringt in die Häuser, was ihr darin findet, | Frauen und Kinder, Schätze, Hab' und Gut, | ist der Soldaten (Wilden-bruch's *König Laurin*, 5, 14). Es ist nicht dieses Ortes (it is not the province of the present treatise), festzustellen usw. (Jakob Wackernagel's *Die griechische Sprache*, p. 294). Und wessen sind die schönen Blumen, die Euch gegenüber die Fenster schmücken? (Herr's *Der König der Bernina*, V). Wenn er uns damals überfallen hätte, so wären wir alle des Todes gewesen If he had fallen upon us at that time we should all have been doomed. Er ist von Adel He is of noble birth. Die Sache ist von großer Wichtigkeit. Seien Sie ohne Furcht. Er ist von schlechter Herkunft. Der Tisch ist von Holz. Er ist von denen (one of these men), die ihr Gelübde halten (Freitag).

We often find this genitive in the predicate appositive relation: Er kam schweren Herzens zurück. Compare 223. III. a.

An objective predicate genitive of quality is used after *machen to make*, *zeigen to show*, *sich dünken to regard one's self*, &c.: Jedenfalls rechne nicht darauf, mich anderen Sinnes zu machen (Fontane's *Frau Jenny*, xii). After some verbs the objective predicate genitive is introduced by *als* or *für*. For examples see 262. III. 2. B. a. The objective predicate genitive here as the objective predicate accusative in 262. III. 2. is joined to its subject, the object of the principal verb, without the aid of a copula as the statement is felt to be of the old appositional type of sentence described in 1. b. Note above, where the predicate is placed alongside the subject like an appositive without the aid of a finite verb.

The gen. is quite common in the categories mentioned above in such expressions as those given in the illustrative examples and other similar ones, but in general it cannot be freely used. In poetry, however, it is often employed where in plain prose it would be replaced by *von* with the dat.: Elisabeth ist meines Stammes, meines Geschlechts und Rangs (Schiller's *Maria Stuart*, 1. 2). The possessive gen. is, aside from certain set expressions, found only in rather choice language, and is replaced in colloquial speech by *gehören* with dat.: Das Haus gehört meinem Freunde.

B. The predicate complement may be an adjective or participle:

a. In the nominative after verbs of incomplete predication, i.e. intransitives which have lost their concrete meaning and are now felt as copulas, such as *sein*, *werden*, *scheinen* (185. A. I. 1. b. (3)), *erscheinen* (185. A. I. 1. b. (3)), *dünken* (185. A. I. 1. b. (3)), *vorkommen*, *bleiben*, *heißen*, and *gehen*, *kommen*, *laufen*, *stehen* in certain set expressions, also the passive forms of the transitives (262. III. 2. B) which in the active take a noun or a non-reflexive pronoun as direct object and an adjective or participle as objective predicate, now in all these cases usually without grammatical forms except in the superlative (see 112. 1): Sie ist schön. Sie scheint betrübt. Das ist rührend. Karl ist der jüngste. Sie wurde krank. Das kommt mir lächerlich vor. Man versuchte das ertrunkene Kind zu beleben, aber es blieb tot. Drei tausend blieben (i.e. fell) tot. Das heißt ehrlich. Er geht müßig (is idle, does nothing). Die Vorstellung geht los (begins). Das Wasser geht tot (ceases to flow). Das Sägeblatt geht tot (ceases to cut). Der Schlüssel geht verloren. Der Angeklagte ist frei- or losgekommen. Das Faß läuft leer (becomes empty, runs dry). Das Faß läuft voll. Die Wohnung steht leer. Ein Kranker ist gesund erklärt worden, ist totgeglaubt worden, ist totgesagt worden. Er ist nicht totzukriegen Nothing can knock him out, lit. with passive force, he can't be knocked out. Er wurde totgeschlagen. Here also belongs the perfect participle in the compound tenses of intransitives that are conjugated with *sein*: Er ist gekommen. Compare 1. b above.

A noun is often used in the predicate with the force of an adjective, indicating a quality or characteristic of the person or thing which it represents: Seine (Fulda's) letzten Stücke heißen „Jugendfreunde“ und „Herostrat“; jenes ist

trotz guter Erfindung durchweg Blumenthal-Kadelburg (Bartels's *Die deutsche Dichtung der Gegenwart*, p. 256). Du bist doch die geborene alte Jungfer (Fontane's *Effi*, chap. 1) You are a regular old maid.

*b.* In the nom. as predicate appositive. See 1. *c* above and 104. 2. A. *b*, C, D.

*c.* Instead of the simple nom. construction the predicate is in certain instances, as in case of nouns, introduced by *als* and *für*: Er gilt als der beste von allen. Er wurde für unwürdig erklärt He was pronounced unworthy. Er blieb für tot liegen He was left for dead. Er gilt für tot. The predicate appositive is often introduced by *als*: Mein Freund hat als enterbt keine Mittel mehr.

C. The predicate complement may be a pronoun in the nom.: Sein Glück ist meines. Er bleibt derselbe. Das Pferd ist ein Säugetier; der Walfisch ist es (129. 2. C. (4)) auch.

*a.* In Swiss dialect the personal pronouns are used in the acc. when used as predicate: Seid Ihr ihn etwa selbst? . . . . . Seht, da ist es ihn ja selber (Spiteler's *Conrad*, p. 52). . . . . ne, us.

D. An infinitive:

*a.* Without *zu*, used as a predicate or to complete the meaning of the predicate after the verbs enumerated in 185. B. I. 1. *b*: Er bleibt stehen.

*b.* With *zu*, used as predicate:

(1) With passive and modal force in case of transitives, as described in 180. A.

(2) Also the infinitive of intransitives and reflexives is used in the predicate with this same modal meaning but with active force. See 185. A. I. 1. *b* (2).

(3) After certain verbs the prepositional infinitive is used in the predicate without modal force. See 185. A. I. 1. *b* (3) and (4).

E. An adverb or prepositional phrase: Die Schule ist aus. Die Tür ist zu. Gott ist überall. Das Fest ist heute. Wann ist das Schauspiel? Die Mühe war umsonst. Wie ist das Bier? Er ist hier. Er ist zu Hause. Es ist alles in Ordnung. In many cases the verb *sein* here has concrete force, as in Das Fest ist heute = findet heute statt, but this force is so faint that the form is felt as a mere copula and like the copula may often be suppressed: Alles in Ordnung. Niemand hier?

Also the predicate appositive often appears in the form of a prepositional phrase: Die Feinde zogen sich in guter Ordnung zurück.

F. A clause: *Du bist nicht mehr, der du warst. Nicht jeder scheint, was er ist.*

*Agreement between Subject and Predicate.*

253. The predicate agrees with the subject in number, and where it is possible in person, gender, and case.

I. Number.

1. If the subject is singular, the verb is also sing.: *Das kleinste Haar wirft seinen Schatten.*

a. Often in speaking *to* and sometimes also *of* persons of relatively higher social or official standing, the verb is in the pl., tho the subject is in the sing.: *General Manteuffel schreibt mir eben, daß Seine Majestät der König die Gnade gehabt haben, Dir diese Auszeichnung zu verleihen* (Moltke an den Neffen Henry, March 22, 1864). *Seine Majestät der Deutsche Kaiser, König von Preußen, haben das nachstehende Handschreiben vom 26. Juni dieses Jahres allergnädigst an mich zu richten geruht* (König Ludwig von Bayern, July 5, 1915). *(zu Edith) Gnädiges Fräulein hatten mir doch versprochen, mir das letzte Bild zu zeigen, das Sie gemalt haben* (Fulda's *Das verlorene Paradies*, 1, 5). *Wollen Herr Kommerzienrat wirklich diese Nacht noch zurückfahren?* (Hartleben's *Rosenmontag*, 2. 3, where a first lieutenant addresses respectfully a visiting 'Kommerzienrat'). *An Seine Exzellenz den preußischen Ministerpräsidenten Hirsch: Herr Ministerpräsident haben die Berliner Studenten, die Hindenburg huldigten, als unreife Burschen bezeichnet usw.* (telegram of Hamburg students to the Prussian minister in Nov. 1919). *Die gnädige Frau sind ausgefahren* (language of a servant) *My mistress has gone out driving.* It is difficult to define usage here accurately. Sturdy independent natures resist this servile style, while others, as on the one hand servants, and on the other hand persons that move in circles dominated by official or social formalities, employ it to show their respect and deference to superiors, or use it in general as a mere mark of esteem or politeness. It is sometimes used in mock-respectful tone: *Herr Doktor wurden da katechisiert* (Goethe's *Faust*, 1. 3523).

b. If the *dies, das, jenes, es, or welches* used in expressions of identity is subject, the verb agrees with the predicate. See 128. A. a; 129. 2. C. (1) and 251. I. 3; 141. 9. a; 148. a.

c. The grammatical subject *es* has no influence over the number, the verb agreeing with the logical subject: *Es zogen drei Bursche(n) wohl über den Rhein.*

d. If a subject in the sing. is associated, by means of the preps. *mit with, samt together with, nebst along with, auf upon, nach after*, with other words which logically tho not formally constitute a part of the subject, the verb is in the sing.: *Das Schiff samt der Ladung und Mannschaft ging zu Grunde. Moses nebst seinem Bruder Aaron stieg auf den Berg Sinai. Schlag auf Schlag folgte. Ein Tag nach dem andern verstrich.* The pl. is also sometimes found after the first three of these prepositions in accordance with older usage as explained in 229. 2, under *nebst*, (b).

e. German usage often differs markedly from the English where the predicate consists of the copula *sein to be* and a predicate noun. In German where the subject for the sake of emphasis stands at or near the end of the sentence the copula agrees with the subject in number: *Das einzige Düstere auf dem ganzen Gewässer waren die schwarzen Schwäne auf dem See. Der Hauptfluch sind Steuern.* In these examples the noun in the nominative that stands after the copula seems to be the subject, while the nominative before the copula seems to be the predicate, but in many similar sentences it is often difficult to distinguish subject and predicate, sometimes even so difficult that thoroly trained scholars differ in their decisions. If one of the nominatives is a plural it becomes necessary to decide this difficult question. In German the

tendency here is to avoid a decision on this perplexing point by regulating the number of the copula by a mere formal principle, namely as the nominative after the copula is often the subject it has become the rule to place the copula in accord with the following plural nominative whether it be a subject or a predicate: *Der Hauptmangel sind Bücher* (subject) The chief want is books. *Alles, was du anbringst, sind nur leere Entschuldigungen* (predicate) All the things that you bring forward are mere empty excuses. As can be seen by the English translations the number of the English copula is also regulated by a mere formal rule, namely the nominative before the copula is construed as subject whether it be in fact the subject or the predicate, and the copula is accordingly made to agree with it. In German we often find the copula in the sing. where several nouns after it indicate a distinct collective idea or a single noun in the plural is felt as containing the idea of a fixed amount, extent, or mass: *Seine speise aber war Hewschrecken und wild* (now wilder). *Honig* (Matth. III. 4) His meat was locusts and wild honey. *Es ist* (viewed collectively) or *sind* (viewed individually) *sechs Jahre, daß ich hier wohne. Eine Krone ist* (or *sind*) *zehn Mark*.

If the nominative after the copula is in the singular, the copula more commonly agrees with the nominative before it: *Gerötete Augen sind ein Zeichen innerer Erregung*.

f. If the subject is sing. in form but has several adjective modifiers which do not qualify the one thing but each a different thing, the verb is in the pl.: *Die nördliche und südliche Hälfte scheinen unter gleichen Breitengraden ungefähr dieselbe Erdkrümmung darzubieten* The northern and southern hemispheres appear to have about the same curvature on the same parallels.

g. A collective noun or pronoun, or noun of multitude in the sing. now usually requires the verb in the sing: *Das Heer ist versammelt. Das kleine Volk lief voraus. Der Rat* (council) *ist in seinen Ansichten geteilt. Vieh grast auf den Dünen. Beides ist richtig* *Both* (i.e. *both points, both views*) *are correct*, but *Beide haben recht* *Both* (i.e. *both persons*) *are right*. Am Sonnabend war es kaum sieben Uhr, als bereits das Ehepaar Bennecke erschien (Wildenbruch's *Schwester-Seele*, chap. XV). The earlier part of the period was not so completely under the domination of grammatical rule as the present. Luther frequently uses the plural here, or places the first verb in the sing. and all following ones in the plural: *Aber das Volck | so* (153. 5) *jren Gott kennen | werden sich ermannen* (Dan. xi. 32). *Vnd alles Kriegsuolck das bey jm war zoch hinauff | vnd tratten [h]erzu | vnd kamen gegen die Stad* (Josh. viii. 11). The plural of a verb still occurs here in the classical period, but much more rarely: *Wie eine rasende Menge mit Stäben, Beilen, Hämmern, Leitern, Stricken versehen, von wenig Bewaffneten begleitet, erst Kapellen, Kirchen und Klöster anfallen, die Andächtigen verjagen* (Goethe's *Egmont*, 1, 2). In our time the plural here is quite rare in the literary language, and perhaps only found in a relative clause referring back to a collective noun, where it is also rare: *Endlich teilte sich das Volk in eine rauhere Partei, welche . . . gerne nunmehr nachgeholt hätten, was, wie sie meinten, bei der Eroberung des Landes versäumt worden und die Italier für ihren heimlichen Haß mit offener Gewalt zu strafen begehrten* (Felix Dahn's *Ein Kampf um Rom*). The older freedom of usage here is preserved in English: *The Council is or are of the opinion that*, &c.

If, however, a noun in the gen. pl., or a dat. pl. after *von*, or an appositive in the pl. follows the collective noun, the verb may be in the pl.: *Dort hatten sich eine Masse chinesischer Fruchthändler angesammelt. Eine Menge Äpfel lagen unter dem Baume*. The plural is also found after a singular noun that follows the plural *deren*: *In einem Aufsätze bespricht Gustav A. Erdmann diese Frage zwar eingehend, aber doch nur von einem einzigen Gesichtspunkte aus, während deren eine ganze Reihe sind* (v. Duvernoy in *Deutsche Monatschrift*, April, 1906, p. 105). Also the singular can be used here, and in general the rule can be laid down that the use of the sing. and pl. depends upon whether the subject presents itself to the mind in the form of a closed mass or group,

or as individuals: **Ein Schwarm Bienen flog auf, but Eine Menge Hasen wurden geschossen** (one at a time).

If a plural predicate noun follows collective was the principal verb is in the plural. **Früh übt sich, was ein Meister werden will, but Was ehrliche Mörder sind, werden dich unter sich nicht dulden** (Lessing's *Emilia Galotti*, 3, 8).

*Note 1.* In the case of **ein Paar, ein Dutzend** there is a difference of meaning involved, the pl. verb denoting an indefinite number, the sing. an exact number—*two, twelve*: **Ein paar (a few) Häuser sind abgebrannt, but Draußen wartet ein Paar auf die Trauung. Es kamen uns ein Dutzend (a number) Husaren entgegen, but Das Dutzend Zigarren kostet 1 Mark.**

*Note 2.* The indefinite numerals **viel, wenig, mehr, and genug** were in early N.H.G. used as sing. neuter substantives, often with a dependent partitive gen., and accordingly when used as subject could have a sing. verb even tho the reference was to a number of persons or things, while later usage requires here quite uniformly a plural verb: **Wenn der gerechten viel ist | frewet sich das volck** (Proverbs xxix, 2), but **Aber diesem Rufe folgten heute nur wenig** [see 139.3. i, *Note*] (Fontane's *Quint*, chap. 6). Luther also employed the plural here: **Sintemal sich's viel vnterwunden haben** (Luke i. 1). **Denn es sind viel falscher Propheten ausgegangen in die Welt** (1 John iv. 1).

**Mehr als ein + a sing. subject may be used with a sing. or pl. verb: Mehr als ein Fall ist bekannt, or Es sind mehr als ein Fall bekannt.** The sing. is more common.

The plural is employed after the subject was when modified by a plural partitive genitive and used in connection with the adverb **mehr besides, else**: **zwei Schultheißen, vier Venner** (formerly an official in Swiss cities) **und was der Würden mehr waren** (Boßhart's *Die Barellilochter*, p. 32).

*h.* **Nichts als** before a pl. noun is always found with a pl. verb as it simply has the force of **nur**: **eine Fabrik, in welcher nichts als Nähnadeln gemacht werden.**

2. If the subject is pl., or if there are several subjects, the verb is pl.: **Die Kinder bedürfen der Aufsicht. Gut und Ehre vermögen viel über die Menschen. Der Pastor wie der Verwalter eilten zu ihren Berufsgeschäften.**

*a.* If there are several sing. subjects, the verb *may* agree with the nearest one, provided it does not thus stand after them all, in which case it is usually pl.: **Mein Bruder kommt heute und meine Schwester, but Mein Bruder und meine Schwester kommen heute. Nu aber bleibt Glaube | Hoffnung | Liebe | diese drey** (1 Cor. xiii. 13). There is now a strong tendency here to use the plural in accordance with strict formal principles: **Da lagen der Taufschein, der Paß und der Totenschein ihrer Mutter** (Schubin's *Refugium peccatorum*, III). The verb must, however, be in the sing., even when it follows the different subjects, if for any reason it is expressly desired to associate the activity implied in the verb with each subject separately, as, for instance, to denote consecutiveness, to indicate a contrast, or to present the subjects as individuals: **Da hebet sich's schwanenweiß, | und ein Arm und ein glänzender Nacken wird bloß** (Schiller's *Der Taucher*) There out of the water something white as a swan raises itself and an arm is seen and then a glittering neck. **Der Thron, zu dessen Rechten der Raja, ihm gegenüber meine Wenigkeit Platz nahm** The throne at the right of which the rajah seated himself and opposite to him my humble self. „**Woher aber dann die beiden Kinder?**“ „**Ich weiß nur, daß es ein Knabe und ein Mädchen ist von etwa acht und zehn Jahren**“ (Ertl's *Der Handschuh*).

*b.* If the subjects are in part sing., in part pl., the verb if pl. should be so placed that it will not follow a sing. subject, or if the sing. verb be preferred it should precede a sing. subject: **Das alte Theben (Thebes) und seine Trümmer sind tausendmal beschrieben worden. Er sagte ihnen zum Trost, daß er es ihnen überließe, unter sich auszumachen, welcher dableiben und welche (pl.) wandern sollten** (Gottfried Keller's *Die Leute von Seldwyla*, I, p. 239). **Wer weiß, ob nicht morgen schon dein innigstes Sehnen dahin geht, es möge Pech, Schwefel und Quadersteine auf die Teilnehmer, die Mitwirkenden an deiner großen Feier herabregnen** (Raabe's *Der Dräumling*, XIII).

*c.* In the case that several co-ordinate *singular* subjects are felt as forming a distinct collective idea, a close union or oneness of idea, the sing. verb may be used: **Haus und Hof ist verkauft. Lob und Dank sei dem Herrn. Freude und Jubel schallt uns entgegen. Arm und Reich ist (or sind) im Tode gleich, but always Die Armen und die Reichen sind im Tode gleich. Es kamen Tage, an denen die Arbeit, die Sorge zu viel und zu groß war** (R. Voss's *Psyche*, chap. 7). Two subjects can express a oneness of idea if they are opposites or complements of each other, and thus show one idea in all its range of meanings from the two extremes: **Weil ich weiß, was ein guter Wandel nicht bloß vor Gott, sondern auch vor den Menschen bedeutet und daß Glück und Unglück daran**

hängt (Fontane's *Quitt*, chap. 7). Of course the verb is in the pl. if such words are considered separately: Denn hier sind Recht und Unrecht nah verwandt (Goethe's *Tasso*, 2, 4). Gut und böse streiten wunderbarlich in dir (Frenssen's *Das Heimatsfest*, 3, 1).

Opposed to the usage described above is a formal principle which requires strict grammatical agreement: Unauslöschlicher Groll und Gram erfüllten jeden Winkel ihrer Seele (Isolde Kurz's *Das Vermächtnis der Tante Susanne*).

The sing. is also used in case of a general or indefinite reference: Keiner und keine bleibe daheim (Rosegger). Diesen hier mußte wohl jeder und jede schön finden (Spielhagen's *Freigeboren*, p. 148).

d. If a single pl. subject or several sing. or pl. subjects are felt as forming the idea of a firm mass or fixed amount, the verb is in the sing.: Es wurde nur fünf Prozent (96. 4. 1) der Masse gerettet. 10 Pfennig (96. 4. 1) ist mehr als 5 Pfennig. Ein Kilo und 327 Gramm ist (not sind) genug. Zweimal zwei ist vier. Zwei Mark und noch 2 Mark sind or ist 4 Mark. Zwei Taler und 4 Groschen sind or ist genug. Drei Viertel des Buches ist der Insel Java gewidmet, but Drei Viertel der Schiffbrüchigen wurden gerettet. Here the plural of the verb is used wherever instead of the conception of oneness the idea of two or more distinct units of the same order occur to the mind, but not if one unit of one order and a number of a lower order (as in the third example) are used and the reference is to a firm mass. There is, however, a distinct tendency here to use the plural on mere formal grounds: Sechs Siebentel des Buches werden von einem Wörterverzeichnis eingenommen (Jellinek's *Geschichte der neuhochdeutschen Grammatik*, I, p. 167). Contrary to English usage the German says: Es waren zehn Grad Kälte It was ten degrees below the freezing-point.

Of course, the verb is in the singular if the plural subject does not indicate a number of objects but is a mere grammatical form: Stühle ist der Plural von Stuhl.

e. In case several subjects are followed by a neut. pronoun which refers to the previously mentioned subjects collectively or distributively, the verb is in the sing.: Die Öffnungen der Mauer, die soliden Stellen derselben, die Pfeiler, jedes hatte seinen besonderen Charakter. Seine fortgesetzte Aufmerksamkeit, ohne daß er zudringlich gewesen wäre; sein treuer Beistand bei verschiedenen unangenehmen Zufällen; sein gegen ihre Eltern zwar ausgesprochenes, doch ruhiges und nur hoffnungsvolles Werben, da sie freilich noch sehr jung war: das alles nahm sie für ihn ein.

f. In connection with the conjunctions oder or, entweder — oder either — or, weder — noch neither — nor, sowohl — als both — and, as well — as, nicht allein (or bloß or nur) — sondern auch not only — but also, nicht sowohl — als vielmehr not so much — as, desgleichen likewise, wie auch as also, and, teils — teils partly — partly, &c., the different subjects are usually considered singly and hence the verb agrees with one of them — the next one to it — and is understood with the others: Werden Ihr Bruder und Ihre Schwester kommen? Nein, beide können sie nicht kommen, aber jedenfalls wird mein Bruder oder meine Schwester kommen. Sowohl meine Schwestern wie auch mein Bruder wird kommen, or more smoothly Sowohl meine Schwestern werden kommen, wie auch mein Bruder. Nicht allein mein Bruder, sondern auch meine Schwester wird kommen. Nicht mein Bruder kommt, sondern meine Schwester. Nicht meine Brüder, sondern meine Schwester kommt. Nicht meine Schwester, sondern meine Brüder kommen. Nicht sowohl die alten Anschauungen der Römer in Stadt und Land als vielmehr das Wohlergehen der außeritalischen Provinzen war für die Politik der römischen Kaiser maßgebend. Zur Reise fehlte mir teils Zeit, teils Lust, teils Geld.

After all these conjunctions except such as oder, entweder — oder, nicht — sondern, which positively exclude the statement in the one proposition or the other, the verb can also be in the pl., as that which is predicated of one subject applies to them all: Sowohl meine Schwester als auch mein Bruder werden kommen. Weder meine Schwester noch mein Bruder werden kommen.

Weder der Kaiser noch der Kanzler kann (neither of them alone) or können (both of them together) das verhindern. Even after *oder*, the pl. of the verb may be used, if the strict exclusive force of the conjunction disappears and it takes on the meaning of *und*: **Wolf oder Bär kommen selten davon, wenn ein Lappe ihnen aufs Blatt hält.**

g. If the subject of the sentence is the name of a book, play, newspaper, or boat, consisting of a pl. noun or several nouns, the verb is sometimes in the sing., more commonly in the pl., the former, however, regularly when the subject is a couple of proper names linked by *und* and not preceded by a pl. article, or when the predicate is a noun in the nom. sing., even tho the subject is preceded by a pl. article: **Heute wurden Schillers Räuber aufgeführt.** „Die Hamburger Nachrichten“ erscheinen täglich dreimal, but the names of English newspapers are sometimes treated as singulars, as in English, as illustrated in 96. 1. **Die „Zwei Gebrüder“** (name of boat) **hatten die Hohewegsbalje bereits erreicht** (Hermann Rückner's *Küstenfahrer*, I). But: **In der Klasse wird Hermann und Dorothea gelesen.** **Die Räuber ist der Titel von Schillers erstem Drama.**

h. If the subject is accompanied by explanatory words in the appositional construction, the verb may agree strictly with the grammatical subject or often agrees with the appositive, when this more vividly represents the idea contained in the subject than the subject itself: **Viel trägt dazu bei, daß alles, was zum Hause gehört, also Eheleute und Ehehalten (servants), nun für einige Monate zusammenbleiben kann** (v. Hörmann). **Meine Kinderjahre, die schöne, unvergeßliche Zeit, verfloß mir als Berliner Schusterjungen** — Rodenberg.

i. A plural subject or several subjects in the nominative absolute construction found in subject clauses do not influence the number of the verb, which is invariably in the sing., as the reference is to a single idea. See 265. B. b. (2), 2nd paragraph.

j. A few originally pl. nouns are now often felt as singular, and hence the verb is often, perhaps more commonly, in the sing. when such words are used as subjects. See 96. 1.

k. Notice the difference of conception between German and English in the following sentence: **Zwei Tage Aufenthalt genügten, ihn erkennen zu lassen, daß usw.** A two days' stay was sufficient, &c.

3. The predicate noun agrees with the subject in number: **Kleobis und Biton waren Brüder.**

a. The predicate noun does not agree with the subject in number if it is a name of a material, or a collective or abstract noun: **Ihr seid das Salz der Erde.** **Die Franzosen sind ein romanisches Volk.** **Gute Kinder sind die Freude ihrer Eltern.**

In a number of cases the predicate noun may be in the sing. or pl., according as it is desired to give expression to the abstract idea of quality or the concrete one of different individuals: **Beide Brüder sind Soldat** or **Soldaten.** Concrete nouns often assume abstract meaning in the predicate by uniting with the verb to form a single idea. For examples see 94. 1. e.

b. Also the interrogative pronouns *wer* and *was* do not agree with the subject when they are used as predicate, but remain uniformly in the sing.: **Wer waren diese Leute?** **Was sind diese Männer?**

c. When the subject is the polite form of the personal pronoun, which is really 3rd pers. pl. in form, tho it is used as 2nd pers. sing., the predicate stands in the sing. if the reference is to a singular subject: **Sie, mein Herr, waren mein Retter.**

d. The predicate does not agree in number with the subjects *dies*, *das*, *jenes*, *es*, *welches* used in expressions of identity. See 128. A. a; 129. 2. C. (1); 141. 9. a; 148. a.

## II. Person.

The verb agrees with its subject in person. If there are several subjects of different persons the following rules are usually followed:



1. If the subjects are connected by *und*, or by conjunctions of kindred force as *sowohl — als* (or *wie*) *both — and, as well — as, wie auch, or sowie as also*, the first person has the preference over the second and third, and the second person the preference over the third, and often a pronoun comprehending the different subjects is added: *Ich und du haben gleiche Schicksale, or Ich und du, wir haben gleiche Schicksale. Du und dein Bruder seid meine Freunde, or Du und dein Bruder, ihr seid meine Freunde. Ich sowohl wie du sind das gewohnt. Sowohl ich als mein Freund, wir sind dafür verantwortlich. Ich fürchte, er wie ich sind zu lange fortgeblieben.* Occasionally the third person is preferred: *Ich weiß, daß du und mein Vater in Krieg verwickelt sind* (Börne).

a. If sing. subjects are connected by *sowohl — als* (or *wie*), *wie auch, sowie*, it is also common for the verb to agree with the first subject in the sing., even tho it stands after both, especially if the emphasis is upon the first subject: *Ich sowohl wie du bin* (or *sind* or *wir sind*) *es gewohnt. Du sowohl wie ich bist* (or *sind* or *wir sind*) *es gewohnt*, but usually *Du und ich* (*wir*) *sind es gewohnt*.

b. Sometimes in case of subjects connected by *und* the verb is in the sing., agreeing with the nearest subject: *In dieser Sache irrst du und ich. Ich und alle Welt erkennt das an.*

2. If different subjects of different persons are opposed, or in contrast to each other, or are considered separately, the verb agrees in person and number with the nearest subject: *Du bist es gewohnt, nicht ich, or Du, nicht ich bin es gewohnt. Weder du bist es gewohnt noch ich, or Weder du noch ich bin es gewohnt, or Weder du noch ich sind es gewohnt. Du oder ich müßte* (ought) *es gewohnt sein. Ich oder du müßtest es gewohnt sein. Nicht nur ich sondern auch du bist es gewohnt. Teils unser Freund, teils ich, teils du bist daran schuld. Teils unser Freund, teils du, teils ich bin daran schuld.* Sometimes the verb agrees with the first subject if the statement only holds good for it: *Ein alt Gesetz, nicht ich, gebletet dir* (Goethe's *Iphigenie*, 5, 3). It also agrees with the first subject if the following subjects are regarded as only explanatory: *Keiner von uns, weder du noch ich, ist es gewohnt* (D. Sanders).

3. If the subject is a noun or a pronoun and the predicate a personal pronoun, the verb agrees with the predicate in person and number: *Der Mann, von dem Sie sprechen, bin ich. Ich bin es* It is I. For further examples see 128. A. a; 129. 2. C. (1); 141. 9. a and 251. I. 3; 148. a. See also 151. 3. B. c, toward the close of the article.

4. The person and number of the verb in relative clauses present several idiomatic peculiarities that are considered at length in 151. 3. B. a, b, c.

### III. Gender.

1. The predicate noun does not in general agree with the subject in gender, as it has its own gender: *Sein Tun ist der Ausdruck seiner Liebe.*

2. The predicate noun can assume a grammatical form in accordance with the natural sex of the person represented by the subject in only one case—when the subject represents a person or something that is personified. Then the predicate noun may take a masc. form if the subject is represented as a male and a fem. form if the subject is represented as a female, provided, however, such forms are elsewhere in common use for persons (see 245. I. 6. 2): *Gott ist mein Zeuge. Hunger ist der beste Koch. Das Unglück ist der beste Lehrmeister. Das Mädchen wird Erzieherin. Das ist unsere Freundin. Sie ist eine gemeine Diebin. Die Geschichte ist eine Lehrerin der Menschheit* (Herbart). *Die Natur war die erste Erzieherin des Menschen. Die Nationalbank ist Inhaberin des Wechsels.* In the fourth sentence the natural sex, not the grammatical gender of the subject, has influenced the gender of the predicate, while in the second sentence and the last three the grammatical gender of the subjects has suggested the form of the predicate, as things have no sex. In

the third sentence the subject is a neuter noun which cannot suggest sex at all, and thus the mind is free here to select a gender according to fancy.

a. The predicate noun does not assume a fem. form to agree with a fem. subject when it is the abstract idea pure and simple, devoid of all reference to sex and its attributes, that is before the mind: (Maria Stuart speaking to Queen Elizabeth) *Regierte Recht, so läget ihr vor mir | im Staube jetzt, denn ich bin Euer König* (Schiller). *O die, die könnt' General sein* (Auerbach's *Dorfgeschichten*, 7, p. 175). *Die Frau ist hier Herr und Meister im Hause. Meine Mutter konnte ihres Verdrusses nicht Herr und Meister werden. Die Bibel ist unser bester Führer auf unserm Lebenswege. Die Eile ist ein schlechter Berater.* But the force of the gender of the subject often asserts itself even here, especially when the predicate has inflected modifiers before it: *Sie wußte ihre Überraschung zu verbergen und war die unumschränkte Herrin ihrer Gebärden* (Raabe's *Im alten Eisen*, xiii). Some words, however, as *Gast, Kerl, Mensch*, have regularly the masc. form for reference to females as well as males, as the idea of sex is not felt: *Alles in allem, sie ist ein guter Kerl* (Spielhagen's *Frei geboren*, p. 378). *Agnes, mein' Tochter, hör' mal zu . . . Du bist ein vernünftiger Mensch* (Sudermann's *Fritzchen*, 2). *Professor, Arzt, and Doktor* may retain in the predicate relation the masculine form with reference to females, but the feminine form is also used: *Sie ist Doktor der Philosophie. Sie ist der beste weibliche Arzt or die beste Ärztin in der Stadt.*

If an adjective or pronoun is used in the predicate substantively referring to the abstract idea contained in some preceding adjective or noun, the neuter gender is used: *Mein Bruder ist reich, was ich nicht bin. Es ist wahr, Bräutigam und Deichhauptmann sind fast incompatible; aber wenn ich letzteres nicht wäre, wüßte ich doch gar nicht, wer es sein sollte* (Bismarck to his betrothed, Feb. 23, 1847). *Er* (i.e. Cäsar) *war ein großer Redner, Schriftsteller und Feldherr, aber jedes davon ist er nur geworden, weil er ein vollendeter Staatsmann war* (Mommsen's *Römische Geschichte*, V, chap. xi).

#### IV. Case.

The predicate word agrees with the subject in case, and thus both stand in the nominative: *Erst wenn ich auf die Berge komme, da werd' ich so recht ich selbst* (Wilbrandt's *Die gute Lorelei*, vi). For an exceptional usage in Switzerland see 252. 2. C. a. The adjective here in general loses its inflection except in the superlative. In an earlier period the predicate adjective agreed with the subject in gender and case in all the degrees of comparison. Fossil remnants of this former usage still exist. See 111. 8. Sometimes (see 252. 2. A. c) a prep. phrase or a gen. stands in the relation of a predicate adjective, just as they often stand in the relation of an attributive adjective: *Der Ring ist von Gold* (instead of *golden*). *Er ist unsrer Gesinnung* (instead of *gesinnt wie wir*). *Er gilt ärztlich nicht für ersten Ranges* (Fontane's *Effi*, chap. xxiii).

#### SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS OF A SENTENCE.

254. The subordinate elements of a sentence are called modifiers. They are divided into the following general classes:

1. *Attributive adjective modifiers*, which modify a noun or pronoun.
2. Modifiers of the verb, adjective, and adverb, which fall into two classes—*objective* and *adverbial modifiers*.
3. *Independent elements*, which are not related grammatically to other parts of the sentence.

##### *Attributive Adjective Modifiers.*

255. Attributive adjective modifiers are treated as follows:

##### I. Attributive Adjective and Participle.

Attributive adjectives and participles modify nouns and pronouns and agree with them in *gender, number, and case*, except when used without an article or other limiting adjective in the appositive relation, in which case they remain uninflected: *Der fleißige Knabe lernt. Der blühende Rosenstrauch duftet. Der beleidigte Freund verzeiht. Ein gutes Buch ist eine nützliche Gesellschaft.* Appositive adjectives: *Durch ein Gebirge, wüst und leer, wie die Erde beim Beginn der Schöpfung, but Friedrich der Große.* As explained more fully in 104. 2. B the appositive form is not so common in German as in English. In Ger-

man the adjective or participle often stands before the noun where in English it *must* follow the noun: diese mißlungene, weil überstürzte Arbeit.

a. *Repetition of Adjective and Article.* When an adjective modifies two or more nouns having different genders or representing different persons or things, the strict grammatical rule requires the repetition of the adjective before each noun: mit solchem Eifer und solcher Beständigkeit,

demonstrative force becomes prominent, as for instance where it points to a following restrictive relative clause: Möchte das schöne Buch, das uns Grimm geschenkt, überall mit der Wärme und dem Ernst aufgenommen werden, mit denen es geschrieben ist (Wilhelm Bolche in *Deutsche Rundschau*, December 1895, p. 472). The simple indefinite article is rarely omitted: Er kaufte eine Taube, eine Gans und einen Hasen. If the different nouns are of the same gender and

limiting adjective of the same form, it is used only once: Weisheit und Liebe Gottes; die Dramen d

Griechen und die Römer haben Kriege miteinander geführt (ib.) and der Fuchs und der Hase

zimmer.

If the article modifies two nouns both representing the same person or thing, or parts of a whole, it should only be used once, while, on the other hand, if the nouns represent different persons or things which it is desired to contrast or to mark especially as distinct and separate, the article should be repeated before each noun. Die Schuld trifft allein den Pfarrer und den Prediger. Der Herr muß der Deutsche Berlin und München einsatzweise gegenüberstellen (ib.) leben öfters miteinander in Uneinigkeit, der erste und zweite Vers des Gedichts. For

instance, the noun need only be expressed once which is, however, in a different number in each case as the modifying adjectives clearly indicate the

assume adjective form if it has adjective meaning and function. Corresponding to many of the peculiar English adjectives that have adjective force but not adjective form there are in German adjectives with adjective form. In many other cases these peculiar English adjectives must be rendered by attributive elements that stand after the governing noun in the

first member and hence have distinguishing or classifying stress (50. A. 6), altho they often have pronounced descriptive force as the corresponding English expressions. In these German group-words survives a bit of the older life of both English and German when group-words with the stress upon the first member often had descriptive force. See 247. 2. b. To-day in both English and German, group-words with the stress upon the first member usually have distinguishing or classifying force, with the difference, however, that in English this is always true: wélw wáter Brúnneiwásser, schóolboy fêrvor Schúljugenêifer, a thrée-day trip eine Dréi-Tage-Tôur. Thus in English we to-day in contrast to oldest English and to oldest and modern German make a sharp difference between descriptive and classifying groups. In descriptive groups, as those in the preceding paragraph, we stress uniformly the second member, giving the first member less stress as we now regard it an adjective. In classifying groups we still as in oldest English stress the first member as we still regard it the first component of a compound or group-word.

c. *Logical Relations of the Adjective to its Governing Substantive.* The attributive adjective has the force of a predicate, i.e. it is something predicated of the governing noun: *der dumme Junge, der verwundete Soldat.* After certain words, *angeblich, anscheinend, scheinbar, wahrscheinlich, vermutlich, &c.*, the governing noun itself is felt as predicate, as something predicated of a pronoun: *Der angebliche Chirurg ist eigentlich ein Barbier = Der, der als ein Chirurg angegeben wird, ist eigentlich ein Barbier.* Originally the adjective was an appositive, a word placed alongside another word to explain it. Thus when it was used as an appositive to the subject it was a predicate appositive. Hence the attributive adjective even to-day often has the force of a predicate appositive and like other predicate appositives, as illustrated in 252. 1. c, is equal to an adverbial clause, thus sustaining relations to both the subject and the principal verb: *Der gráusame Mánn achtete nicht auf das Flehen des Unglücklichen = Der Mann achtete nicht auf das Flehen des Unglücklichen, weil er grausam war. Diese álte Fráu putzt sich noch gern = Diese Frau putzt sich noch gern, obgleich sie alt ist.*

## II. Attributive Genitive.

### 1. A noun or pronoun in the genitive may modify a noun.

In the oldest period the genitive usually preceded the governing noun. Later in accordance with the general trend to place heavily stressed modifiers after the governing word the genitive gradually became established after the governing noun, just as the strongly stressed modifiers of the verb became established after the verb. Thus the old group *Féuers. Mâcht* became the modern group *die Mâcht des Féuers.* Of course the genitive remained before the governing noun if it was not stressed: *Wilhelms Hût.* This is quite common in case of proper names but not so common in case of names of things, but it occasionally occurs as also the genitive of things is sometimes less important than the governing noun and consequently has less stress: *Nach Osten ergaben sich frühlichte Dachfenster für das Gesinde, und des Dâches andere Hâlfte war Bodenraum* (R. H. Bartsch's *Die Haindlkinder*, p. 32). Many stressed genitives, however, even names of things, remained before the governing noun just as many stressed modifiers of the verb remained at the beginning of a sentence before the verb. These stressed genitives did not follow the other stressed genitives to their new position after the governing noun as they were felt as having a little different force. In time this differentiation became clearly defined. The stressed genitive before the governing noun *distinguishes one object from another or classifies it*; the stressed genitive after the noun *describes one object*: *Es ist Wilhelms Hût, nicht méiner,* distinguishing one object from another, but with descriptive force: *Schlag auf Schlag wie die Bôtschaften Híobs waren die Antworten aus Sturzens (name) Munde gekommen* (Ertl's *Freiheit*, p. 552). *Féuersmâcht* classifies the power distinguishing it from other powers, but *die Mâcht des Féuers* merely describes. The old uninflected genitive is still widely used, especially in classifying: *Wásserkrâft, Dâmpfkrâft, etc.* Compare 247. 2. a and b and 50. A. 6. f.

If there are two genitive modifiers of a noun, one genitive should stand on each side of the noun, the genitive of origin preceding: *Schwabs Leben Schillers* Schwab's 'Life of Schiller,' *Rankes Geschichte der römischen Pápste.* The dependent gen. should not be cut off from the noun upon which it depends: *Die Anhänglichkeit sämtlicher Angestellten an mich* (not *die Anhänglichkeit an mich sämtlicher Angestellten*) the attachment of all the employees to me. A gen. dependent upon a gen. usually follows it, except that a dependent gen. of a noun denoting a person can precede a governing genitive: *die Geschichte*

der Erbauung der Stadt, trotz des Verbotes des Doktors, während der Krankheit meines Freundes, or während meines Freundes Krankheit So lang's daran nicht mangelt und an frischem Mut, lach' ich der Fürsten Herrschsucht und Ranke (Goethe's *Götz* 1, 2) Trotz Veltens naseweisen, unverschämten Einredens, trotz der Frau Amalie abwehrenden Kopfschütteln und Lachelns (Raabe's *Die Akten des Vogelsangs*, p 41), während Hainhofers (name) Aufenthalt in Stettin (A Haas in *Archiv für Kulturgeschichte*, 1905, p 46)

The governing noun is usually omitted in such expressions as bei Müllers See 93 1 a

The attributive genitive expresses different classes of ideas briefly described in the following articles These categories are not all peculiar to the attributive use, but several of them are found in the genitive which is used in connection with verbs, adjectives, and participles, and probably originated in the use of the genitive with verbs This seems quite clear in the categories described in D and H a (2nd par) below, and in 260 The common genitive of origin and possession described in A and B and the genitive of quality and characteristic described in F (1) are not only used as attributive forms but are also employed as the predicate complement of the verb sein In a few cases the attributive genitive is evidently derived from the use of the genitive with verbs In these instances the peculiar genitive which is employed in connection with certain verbs is also used with nouns derived from these verbs, as explained in I below On the other hand, it seems quite probable that some of these categories have not sprung directly from the genitive used with verbs, but have developed out of other attributive categories, as indicated in the different categories discussed below

A *Genitive of Origin*, representing a person or thing as associated with another person or thing in the relation of source, cause, authorship Der Sohn des Fürsten, die Kinder dieser Frau, die Nachkommen Abrahams, die Taten des Herkules, die Verwüstungen zweier Kriegsjahre, Goethes Faust, Schillers Werke. This same idea is found in the genitive used in the predicate with the verbs in 252 2 A c

a This one use of this case form has given to it the name of *genitive* (from Latin *genitivus* pertaining to generation or birth) which has become a fixed name not only for this use but also for all the following relations expressed by the same case form

b If two names connected by *und* represent persons that are joined together in authorship or business the second name alone assumes the gen ending Die Deutsche Geschichte Gutschke und Schultzes or Gutsche-Schultzes, or Gutsche und Schultzes Deutsche Geschichte or Gutsche-Schultzes Deutsche Geschichte, or die Gutsche-Schultzesche Deutsche Geschichte

c In case of proper names this genitive is often replaced by an attributive adjective in -isch See 245 II 10 1

B *Possessive Genitive*, denoting possession, inherence, a belonging to, association with, or relation to, ideas that may be developed out of the general idea of "sphere," as explained in 260: Das Haus meines Bruders the house in the sphere of my brother, i e owned by my brother, die Weisheit des Sokrates, der Mut des Helden, die Blätter des Baumes, die Straßen der Stadt, die Kühle des Abends, der Schnee der Alpen, die Kameraden des Soldaten, das Haupt des Stammes, der Herr des Hundes the master of the dog, i e the master in the sphere of the dog, with reference to the dog, not the master owned by the dog, der Bürgermeister der Stadt, der Vater des Kindes. This is a very productive category from which have probably sprung A, C, F, G The same idea is found in the genitive used in the predicate with the group of verbs in 252 2 A c

The possessive genitive so common in both German and English in nouns denoting time has in English spread from here to adverbs of time, where, however, in German we must use an adjective in -ig: Die Post dieser Woche this week's mail, to day's mail die heutige Post See 245 II 9 2 B

In this category normal or descriptive group stress (50 A 6) with the accent upon the second member usually prevails, but to distinguish objects we often find distinguishing stress (50 A 6) Wilhelms Pferd ist das beste William's horse is the best, or sometimes William's is the best horse

a. In English we here sometimes use the dative after the prep. *to*, where in German the gen. should be employed: *Sie ist eine Schwester meiner ersten Frau* She is a sister to my first wife. Sometimes it is possible in German to use either gen. or dat. with a slight shade of difference: *ein Vater der Armen*, or more impressively *den Armen ein Vater* a father to the poor. Sometimes in both German and English there is a marked difference of meaning between the dat. and gen.: *dem Verfolgten ein Freund* a friend to the persecuted man, but *ein Freund des Verfolgten* a friend of the persecuted man. When the modifying word is a pronoun the gen. must in all these cases be replaced by the prepositional construction with *von* or *zu*. See 229. 2, zu, II. 1. B. b.

b. The gen. must be replaced by the dat. with *von* in case of names of places ending in a sibilant. See 86. 2. e. There is elsewhere sometimes a difference between the genitive and the construction with *von*: *der Kaiser von Deutschland* (a mere title), but in warm poetic language *Deutschlands alter Kaiser* (i.e., *Wilhelm I.*, indicating pride in ownership).

c. In case of proper names the genitive is often replaced in certain categories by other constructions: (1) by an appositive, as explained in 94. 3. A. c; (2) by an attributive adjective in -sch, as illustrated in 245. II. 10. 1. Elsewhere it is often replaced by an adjective in -lich, as illustrated in 245. II. 11. 2. A. b.

d. If a dependent genitive which precedes its governing noun is itself modified by other attributive elements containing nouns, each element maintains its own syntactical force and its own proper inflection, while in English the different elements are considered as forming a compound, and hence the *s* is added at the end of the compound, even tho the last component to which the *s* is added is in fact in the objective case after the prep. *of*: *Dieser eine war Till Eulenspiegel, des Herzogs von Braunschweig Hofnarr* (Lienhard's *Till Eulenspiegel*, Der Fremde) This one was the Duke of Brunswick's court-fool.

e. Instead of a simple genitive we often find in colloquial language a genitive or a dative in connection with a possessive. See 138. 2. c.

f. If two names connected by *und* represent persons that are joined together in possession the second name alone assumes the genitive ending: *Karl und Wilhelms Zimmer*, *Vater und Mutters Zimmer*, as the two common nouns are felt as names.

g. The word for house or place of business is often omitted after the name of a person: *Geh zu Schmidts* or *zum Schmidt* Go to Schmidt's (house or place of business according to the connection). *Ich kaufte es bei Schmidts* or *beim Schmidt*. We must use the second of these two constructions, i.e. the dative preceded by a preposition and article when the reference is to a person engaged in an occupation or trade and there is no mention of the name: *Geh zum Bäcker* Go to the baker's. As can be seen by the English translation of the last German example the elliptical genitive construction is more common in English than in German. In English also the words *church*, *hospital*, *park*, *castle*, *theater* can be suppressed after a name: *St. Paul's* [Cathedral], *St. Bartholomew's* [Hospital], &c. Except in case of English names of churches, &c., German requires here the expression of the common noun after the name: *die St. 'Michaëlskirche*, *das St. Hedwigs-Krankenhaus*, &c. On the other hand, German often omits *Tag* after names of church festivals, after the analogy of the Latin usage of dropping *dies* here, while in English *Day* is usually expressed: *Heute ist Allerheiligen* (gen. pl.), *Allerseelen* (gen. pl.) This is All Saints' Day (Nov. 1), All Souls' Day (Nov. 2). 's ist heut' *Simons und Judä* (Latin gen. of Judas) (Schiller's *Tell*, I. 146) This is St. Simon's and St. Jude's Day (Oct. 28). These forms, however, are not now felt as genitives but are used for any case: *Michaëlis* (Latin gen. felt as nom.) fällt auf den *Donnerstag*. *Ich komme zu Michaelis*. Compare 88. 2.

C. *Subjective Genitive*, which represents a living being as associated with an action in the relation of author: *die Rüge des Lehrers* the reproof of the teacher, *die Liebe einer Mutter*, *der Gesang der Vögel*. A personal pronoun rarely stands in the subjective genitive: *Meine Mutter hatte meine Abwesenheit beim Tee durch ein frühzeitiges Ausgehen meiner zu beschönigen gesucht* (Goethe's *D. u. W.*, Erster Teil, Fünftes Buch).

D. *Objective Genitive*, which denotes the object toward which the activity is directed: *die Erziehung der Kinder* the education of the children, *die Erbauung des Hauses*. This genitive is a development out of the adverbial genitive of specification (260. 4th par.): *Johannes vollzog die Taufe Christi* (adverbial genitive of specification, i.e. *with reference to Christ*.)

As possessive adjectives are derived from the genitive of the personal pronouns they still often have various meanings of the genitive, hence also sometimes the force of an objective genitive: *mein* (= a gen. of origin) *Sohn*, *mein* (= a possessive gen.) *Buch*, *meine* (= a subject gen.) *Liebe zu Gott*, *meine* (= an objective gen.) *Verhaftung*.

a. This objective gen. is limited in general to those substantives that contain a verbal stem which has a pronounced transitive force: *die Erfüllung* (from *erfüllen* to *fulfil*) *der Pflicht*. Earlier in the period verbal nouns in general, even tho they did not have pronounced transitive force, could take an objective gen., while to-day in many cases a prepositional object is either required or is much more common, even in case of nouns formed from transitive verbs, except in

poetry, where older usage still lingers. Aber ich kenne euch | das jr nicht Gottes liebe [now in prose Liebe zu Gott] in euch habt (John v 42). Und überall . . . fand ich den gleichen Haß der [in plain prose gegen die] Tyranner (Schiller's *Tell*, 2, 2). Ich stritt aus Haß der Stadte und nicht um euren Dank (Uhland's *Die Doffinger Schlacht*). We now usually say Die Furcht vor Gott, aus Haß gegen die Stadte, der Angriff auf die Stadt, &c. Older usage, however, is still the rule in group words (247. 2 b) and compounds Menschenliebe, Menschenhaß, Gottesfurcht, &c.

A verbal noun formed from where such verbs are also used gen can of course be used *der Gebrauch amtlicher Stellung*.

language of our time zur Abmilderung der  
die Beiwohnung des Manövers, diesen  
Frohnung ihres Lasters zu gewähren (I

en in the  
euerung des Unfugs,  
elern) Unterkunft zur  
June 27, 1905), &c

(Lessing's *Die glückliche Erbin*, 1, 2)

Verbal nouns made from verbs requiring a prep. object usually retain the same prep. construction. Er spottet über den Armen and der Spott über den Armen. See also IV 1 below.

1 or of some  
 he objective  
 die Liebe zu  
 nguished by  
 which must  
 also Dieses

a subjective, the other an objective gen., the latter is often replaced by a prep. phrase, or enters into a group word with the governing noun. Die Verachtung der Christen gegen den Tod, or very frequently die Todesverachtung der Christen the contempt of the Christians for death, use of the preposition von *seiten* or *durch* instead of *seiten* des Königs or *durch* den König the king's en General, das Lob des Schülers von *seiten* des Lehrers.

c. A personal pronoun rarely stands in the objective gen. Die unglückliche Nachricht der Arreterung Deiner (Johann G. Reuter in a letter to his son Fritz, Nov. 4, 1833) The objective genitive as the second member Hence the izing a light ere and as it sentence personal ing the ex- f there is

of the  
pronoun  
stantive

Klima, Aufgabe vieler heimischer Gewohnheiten, Abgewöhnung des Alkohols (Kolonialdirektor Dernburg in *Hamburger Nachrichten*, Jan. 22, 1907).

E. *Genitive of Material or Composition* denoting that of which something consists: ein Schmuck des feinsten Goldes, der Strom seiner Gedanken, ein Dach schattender Buchen a roof of shady beeches, der Zweige laubiges Gitter the leafy trellis-work of the branches. Ungern vermiss' ich ihn doch, den alten kattunenen Schlafrock | echt ostindischen Stoffs (Goethe's *H. u. D.*, I, 33-4). Eine Kette aufsteigender Rebhühner, eine Reihe blühender Kinder. Die Sonne versinkt hinter einer Wehr weißer Berge im Westen (Ernst Zahn's *Wie dem Kaplan Longinus die Welt aufging*). This category is closely related to H.

a. The gen. here is not common in plain prose, and is now largely confined to figurative or poetic language. In prose the gen. is usually replaced by von. See in 229. 2, the prep. von, f.

F. *Descriptive Genitive*. This genitive is closely related to the possessive genitive. There are two groups:

(1) *Genitive of Quality or Characteristic*: Waren erster Güte goods of the best quality, Dinge dieser Art things of this sort, einer seines Schlags one of his stamp, stripe, eine Dröschke zweiter Klasse, ein Pferd arabischer Rasse, ein Gasthof ersten Ranges, ein Mann vornehmen Standes, der Gott der Liebe, der Geist der Lüge, ein Mann der Tat. Es handelt sich leider um Dinge des bittersten Ernstes. Gerüchte sind in Umlauf gesetzt worden des Inhalts, daß, &c. Reports have been set in circulation to the effect that, &c. This same idea is found in the genitive used in the predicate with the verbs in 252. 2. A. c.

If this group has classifying force we usually find it in group-word (247. 2) form: Kindersprache a child's language, Kinderschuh a child's shoe, Herrenstiefel a gentleman's shoe, Damenstiefel a lady's shoe, Frauenhand a woman's hand, Wespennest a wasp's nest. Er starb den Heldentod He died a hero's death.

a. The gen. is here often replaced by the dat. with von: Waren von verschiedener Güte, ein Weib von schöner Gestalt, eine Mehrheit von sechs gegen eins a six to one majority, eine Untersuchung von Haus zu Haus a house to house investigation, &c.

b. The simple genitive of a personal pronoun assumes the force of a genitive of quality when placed before a numeral: unsereiner one of our kind, class, seiner vier four of his kind, four like him.

(2) Quite similar is the *Genitive of Measure*: Die Arbeit eines ganzen Jahres, auf die Dauer eines Tages (but von zwei, drei Tagen). This genitive is usually replaced by von with the dat. or an adjective in -ig: ein Krieg von dreißig Jahren or ein dreißigjähriger Krieg, eine Verzögerung von drei Stunden or eine dreistündige Verzögerung. English preserves the genitive better here as it has become fixed in modern group-words and compounds (247. 2. c): a thirty years' war, a three hours' delay. In both English and German these groups have descriptive stress (50. A. 6), i.e. accent upon the second member. A classifying genitive with classifying stress (50. A. 6) is used in units of measurement, but this form is a possessive or an objective genitive: eine Schiffslänge a boat's length, more commonly in old group-word form (247. 2. a) in German: eine Köpflänge a head's length, ein Steinwurf a stone's throw, &c.

G. *Appositive Genitive*, explaining the preceding governing word: der Fehler des Argwohns the fault of always entertaining mistrust, das Laster der Trunksucht the vice of intemperance, die Zeit der Kreuzzüge, die Strafe der Verbannung, die Gabe des Gesanges, der Beiname des Großen, der Titel eines Geheimrats, &c. The possessive genitive was the starting point of this genitive construction, as can still be seen in such examples as der Segen einer guten Erziehung, &c., where the genitive can be construed either as a possessive or an appositive genitive.

When the appositive is not thus added to a noun to define its meaning more accurately but to indicate a class to which a thing or a person belongs who has just been characterized as an individual by the governing noun, von with the dative is used instead of the genitive construction: Der Schurke von (einem)



Wirt the rascal of a landlord. Other examples in 94. 2 and 229. 2 under von (i). This construction is not known in M.H.G. and oldest English. It has probably come into both languages from the French. Originally it came from the Latin appositive genitive, which is an outgrowth of the possessive genitive, as in *scelus viri* rascal of a man, i.e. the rascal is a man, belongs to the class represented by man, *monstrum mulieris* monster of a woman, i.e. the monster is a woman, belongs to womankind. All feeling for the origin of this construction has been lost, for the common class noun after von can now be replaced by a proper name: *Wo ist das Vieh von (einem) Fingal?* (Krüger's *Vermischte Beiträge zur Syntax*, p. 118) = *Wo ist das Vieh, der Fingal?* Where is that beast of a Fingal? = Where is that beast Fingal? Thus the word after von is now felt as an ordinary appositive to the preceding noun. In German, things cannot be personified here as in English. It was a perfect beast of a night *Es war eine reine Hundenacht*.

1. B. in case of the category described in III  
by qu. I in case or standing in the nom. cut off  
kaiser des Schönen. Er erhielt den Titel eines  
and in III 1 B below. Other examples of appositives in 94 1 d  
Berlin the city of Berlin.  
breitstein, the rocky fortre  
der Monat Mai, or simply  
Kap Horn, &c. In case

together in the form of an old or younger  
the appositive, preceding the governing  
required the modifying word to precede  
Michigansee Lake Michigan die Bering-  
straße Bering Strait, das Riesengebirge, das Rheintal the Rhine valley der St. Gôthardtunnel  
the Saint Gôthard tunnel, die Niagarafälle Niagara Falls, &c. The name sometimes assumes  
adjective form der Biskajische Meerbusen the Bay of Biscay

The appositive genitive and the appositive in the strict appositional construction often pre-  
tative group-stress (50 A 6) requires the more heavily stressed member of a group of two words  
to stand last. The words for rivers, lakes &c., as der Rheinstrom, &c., resisted this develop-  
ment as they had become compounds and the form had thus become fixed. Under the influence  
of analogy other words have assumed this old form Hudsonbâi, &c. In many English words,  
as Hudson Bâi (older type Hudson Bay, corresponding to German Hudsonbâi), &c., the old  
word-order so common in Old English has been retained but the accent has been conformed to

(Egyptians) bekannt.

H. *Partitive Genitive*, denoting the whole, of which only a part is taken: die Hälfte meines Vermögens, der erste Vers des Liedes, eine Flasche des besten Weins, einer meiner Kameraden. Unter der Pelzmütze zeigt sich ein kleiner Teil eines gutmütigen, gebräunten Gesichts. The same idea is found in the genitive used with the verbs in 260. See also c below.

Notice the following difference of idiom between German and English: einer der Freunde meines Vaters a friend of my father's, with a double expression of the gen., once with of, once with -s, einer meiner Freunde a friend of mine. The double English gen. is not always partitive: that wife of yours Ihre Frau.

The genitive of gradation is only a variety of the partitive genitive: der König der Könige the king of kings, das Buch der Bücher, die Frau der Frauen.

a. *Appositional Construction instead of the Partitive Genitive* In case of common

tion which the word indicating the part is a noun denoting an indefinite amount, or more com-

monly an indefinite limiting adjective used substantively. The word denoting the whole may precede the word denoting the part, and often introduces the proposition: *Es ist Wein die Menge da. Solche Fehler können die Menge im Plinius sein* (Lessing). *Harmonisches Getön war wenig dabei* (Raabe's *Horn von Wanza*, xvi). *Das* (i.e. *Ach, du bist ja ein dummer Junge*) *sagt er auch immer, und Antwort ist's doch keine* (Maria Janitschek's *Einer Mutter Sieg*, xviii). *Gäste waren wenige da* (Ertl's *Walpurga*). *Gefahr ist nicht die Spur* (Paul Keller's *Waldwinter*, xiv). *Sorgen braucht er sich keine zu machen* (Ertl's *Auswanderer*). Ähnliche Geschichten gibt es unzählige (H. Seidel's *Hundegeschichten*). The word-order in a number of these sentences indicates clearly that the word denoting the whole is not now felt as belonging to the substantive in an attributive relation, but that it is felt as the subject or object of the verb. As the subject it regulates the number of the verb, as in the sentence from Lessing. As an emphatic object it may introduce the proposition causing inversion, as in the last two sentences. The freedom of position in case of the word denoting the whole in all these instances indicates that it was originally not an attributive genitive modifying the noun denoting the part or quantity but was an adverbial genitive of specification (260): *Des bearbeiteten Stoffs liegt eine große Menge bereit* (Goethe), lit. *With regard to the material already worked upon a good deal lies ready*. *Brots hat er die Fülle* (Luther), lit. *With regard to bread he has a plenty*. Early the gen. here was felt as a partitive gen. subject (see *c* below), as in the former example, or as a partitive gen. object (see *c* below), as in the latter example, and the word denoting the part or quantity was construed as a predicate appositive, adding an explanatory remark about the preceding subject or object. This appositional construction is still in wide use, but in its present modern form the partitive genitive subject is usually replaced by a nominative subject and the partitive genitive object by an accusative object, as in the examples given at the beginning of the paragraph. The old partitive gen. subject or object, however, is still often found when the reference is to a *number* of individuals, as in *Aber der wirklichen und scheinbaren Ausnahmen sind nicht wenige* (Krüger's *Schwierigkeiten des Englischen*, II, p. 683), but where the reference is to a *mass* it is now replaced by the modern partitive construction of *von* with the dative or by the modern appositional construction: *Von seinem Vermögen verlor er die Hälfte*. *Geld* (acc. object) *hat er genug* or *keins* (pred. appositive). The old gen. construction, however, has become fixed in a few expressions: *Er tut des Guten zu viel*. *Des Neuen wird hier wenig geboten* (W. Franz in *Germanisch-Romanische Monatsschrift*, 1910, p. 653). On the other hand, the original gen. of specification was often felt as an attributive gen. and this double conception of the gen. as a partitive subject or object or as an attributive element explains the twofold development found here. When felt as an attributive element the gen. here as elsewhere often followed the governing noun: *die Fülle Brots* instead of *Brots die Fülle*. Altho the attributive gen. was well established in O.H.G. and M.H.G. it has been largely replaced in the last centuries by the attributive appositional construction: *ein Glas Milch* (gen., but on account of the lack of an ending now felt as an attributive appositive); *ein Glas Wasser* (an attributive appositive after the analogy of *Milch* in the preceding example). Similarly in the old gen. appositional construction the lack of distinctive endings facilitated the change from a gen. subject or object to a nom. subject and an acc. object: *Worte* (originally a gen. pl. subject, now felt as a nom. subject) *sind genug* (pred. appos.) *gewechselt*. *Schmerz* (acc. object instead of the older gen. object *des Schmerzes*) *empfund ich keinen* (pred. appos.). But here the idea that the nom. is the proper form for the subject and the acc. for the object is a strong factor in the development.

A *pronoun* dependent upon these groups of words, however, less commonly takes the appositional construction. It is either placed in the dat. after *von* (see *b* below), or it may still follow the old usage and stand in the gen., especially when it precedes the governing word: *Es waren ihrer mehr als hundert* There were more than a hundred of them. *Ihrer sind mehr als unser* There are more of them than there are of us. *Wie viel sind unserer?* (Schiller's *Räuber*, 2, 3). But also the appositional construction occurs here: *Je mehr wir sind, desto besser* the more of us there are, the better. *Es wäre zu wünschen, daß es mehr Gieshübler* (name) *gäbe: es gibt aber mehr andere* (Fontane's *Effi*, XXIX). *Wir sind ja nur noch so wenige beisammen!* (Raabe's *Die Akten des Vogelsangs*, p. 119). *Wir sind zehn. Wie viele sind wir denn?* (Storm's *Der Herr Etatsrat*, p. 216). *Jeder meiner Freunde, jeder von uns* (the gen. not now used in case of personal pronouns), or with the appositional construction: *Wenn wir jeder uns geben, wie wir sind, und tun, was unser Gewissen uns vorschreibt, wird's ja wohl das Rechte sein* (Telmann's *Wahrheit*, XXIV). The genitive and appositional constructions are sometimes combined: *Sie waren ihrer elf Geschwister, zwischen vierundzwanzig und zwei Jahren* (*Kölnische Zeitung*). So wären wir unser zehn (Fontane's *Vor dem Sturm*, II, chap. 15). The possessive is often in colloquial language used in connection with the appositional construction: *Vor allen Dingen waren sie ihre zwanzig* (Sudermann's *Der Sturmgesele Sokrates*, 1. 9).

In general after measures the gen. of nouns is much more common in the pl. than in the sing.: *eine Menge kleinerer Fahrzeuge*. The gen. sing. of a noun modified by an adjective is still in choice language not altogether infrequent here, in recent usage seems even to be on the increase again, but the gen. of an unmodified noun is now rather uncommon in prose: *Er aß fast nichts und trank zwei Gläser schweren Weins* (Maria Janitschek's *Liebeswunder*, viii), but now usually *ein Glas Wein, ein Schluck Bier*, occasionally, however, the genitive: *drei Stückchen Zuckers* (Julius von Ludassy in *Velhagen und Klasings Monatshefte*, Oct. 1906, p. 255), *drei Stunden Weges* (still common). *Bei den weiten Strecken Ackerlandes, über die der einzelne Mensch [in Norddeutschland] verfügt, hat er nicht nötig, den Boden zu parzellieren* (O. Weise's *Die deutschen Volksstämme*, p. 4).

In a choice style the gen. still occurs after limiting adjectives, expressing the idea of number, e.g. *two hundred* (two hundred men), *three times* (three times as much), *four years* (four years ago), etc. It also occurs after indefinite pronouns in a positional construction, although the latter is now rare, e.g. *somebody's* (somebody's house), *anybody's* (anybody's business), etc. See 145. f.

Kirschen. For an exception see §1. 3 A, 1st par. The partitive gen. is also still much used after comparatives, superlatives, and ordinals: die bessern meiner Schüler, die besten meiner Schüler; der erste, der zweite, der letzte der Klasse.

<sup>4</sup>Note: Observe that in case of the relative pronoun resembling the Latin *qui* and differing from the English *the* the participial construction is replaced by the appositional *when* all are embraced in the statement *qui omnes = die* (for *welche*) *alle = all of whom*. For further examples see 133 *1 d*. Notes 1 and 2 (1) and *f* (last example in 1st par.)

b The gen. is here often replaced by the prep. construction of *von* w. dat., which emphasizes more sharply the partitive idea. See list of *a* above, and also the prep. *von*, *j* in 229. 2

c. *Genitive or Von + Dative as Subject, Predicate, or Object* A partitive gen or much more frequently a dat after the prep *von* is sometimes used independently of a noun or pronoun as the apparent subject, predicate, or object of the verb, to indicate that the thing or things in question should be considered as a part of a whole, or as individuals of a species. The genitive construction was not infrequent in older periods. The dative construction after *von* in part replaces the older genitive construction, in part is of French origin. Under French influence it was quite common in the 17th and 18th centuries.

of the partitive genitive. Gestern, denkt, gingen von seinen Leuten vorbei (Goethe's *Ligmont*, 1, 3) just think, yesterday some of his men went by. Es war von Luthers Geist und Mannheit auf ihn übergegangen (Vlexis). Dann steht da wohl auch von (something about) den Ulrichs (family) drin (i.e. in dem Buch)? (Halle's *Der Strom* p. 13). Notice that the verb is in the singular or plural according as the reference is to an indefinite quantity or an indefinite number. In Otfried's "Brast in thar thes wines" (II 8 11) the genitive was often felt as an adverbial genitive of specification (260) and is now usually replaced by an adverbial phrase. Es gebrach or fehlte ihnen an Wein, but with these impersonal verbs it was also often construed as a partitive genitive (see common here). A c) the idea of being by a nominative that the genitive was once used here.

As predicate: *Thu bist judischer man, | intz ich bin thesses thietes* (Otfrid, II XIV 17), now *Du bist Jude und ich bin aus or von diesem Volke hier. Das sind einmal wieder von euern Streichen* (Kotzebue)

As object. The gen. is not infrequent here in poetic language. Weil ich deines Weins verschmähte (Kleist's *Kätchen*, 1, 1) Also in prose in case of pronominal objects. Aber es gab ihrer, und gar nicht wenige (Raabe's *Horn von Wanza*, chap. 9) But there were such people and, Der Typen und Originale gab es überall (Bern- Jahre noch einmal, schicke ihr auch von meinen Der Pfarrer soll von unserm Wein probieren

The partitive gen. occurs frequently thruout the period as subject or as object in connection

on statement in a few expressions jetzt, da ich der Li-  
1 Cor xiii 1) habe, ohne die wir ein tönendes Erz-  
seltsam, wie ganz ich jetzt ein anderer Mensch  
in certain set expres-  
or the object of the  
I here is also here no time for reflection, but also  
war kein Haltens mehr There was no stopping them,  
but also with the correct nom form, Es war eben kein Halten mehr (P. Heyse, 8 315) Also  
in questions with negative force Wie wäre da Haltens gewesen! (Immermann, 12, 53). Also

the partitive gen. *Federlesens*, which was originally dependent upon *viel*, and is still frequently so used, as in *ohne viel Federlesens* (Ertl's *Walpurga*) *without much ceremony, making short work of it*, is no longer vividly felt as a genitive, and can be used without *viel* as an accusative: *Kein Hufschmied brächte je sein Eisen rund, | macht' er mit solchen Bübchen Federlesens* (Hauptmann's *Die versunkene Glocke*, 4). Except in the cases mentioned above and the few exceptions given in 145. g. Note 2 this gen. is now rare, aside from the words *Dings* and *Zeugs* (see 83), which were originally in the gen. depending upon some word as *viel*, *nicht*, *was*, but are no longer felt as genitives.

Oftentimes *an w. dat.* is used as a partitive object: *Ein langer Vokal oder eine starke Konsonantenhäufung in der Nähe einer betonten Silbe erfordert zu ihrer Aussprache eine größere Kraft als eine ganz kurze Silbe; und sie entzieht daher dem Akzent der betonten Silbe an Kraft* (Minor's *Metrik*, p. 59, 1st ed.). *Allmählich verloren die Sterne an ihrem Glanz* (Jensen's *Heimkunft*, I).

I. *Attributive Genitive Corresponding to the Genitive with Reflexive Verbs.* Nouns formed from reflexive verbs which take a genitive object, as *sich einer Sache bemächtigen*, may also take a genitive object, but may drop, according to 249. II. 2. G, the reflexive pronoun: *durch Bemächtigung eines Stromes* (Lohenstein's *Arminius*, 1, 3), corresponding to *Er bemächtigte sich eines Stromes*; *freiwillige Begebung aller Freuden und Bequemlichkeiten dieses Lebens* (John. Mart. Miller's *Siegwart*, 1, 30), corresponding to *Er begab sich aller Freuden dieses Lebens*; *diese fast gänzliche Entäußerung der Leidenschaft* (Goethe), corresponding to *Er entäußerte sich der Leidenschaft*; *diese Enthaltung aller geistigen Getränke*, corresponding to *Er enthielt sich aller geistigen Getränke*, in compounds often with the old uninflected gen.: *Der Reichstag nahm mit 230 gegen 132 Stimmen bei 9 Stimmenthaltungen (= 9 enthielten sich der Abstimmung) den Antrag an* (*Berliner Tageblatt*, Oct. 27, 1921). *Diese Entschädigungen . . . sind dürftige Entledigungen der Verbindlichkeit der Gesellschaft gegen sie* (Fichte, 6, 33). *Durch sein Hirn zuckte die Erinnerung der Zeit* (Spielhagen's *Faustulus*, p. 1), and likewise in compounds: *Das gleichfalls 1881 geschriebene Kapitel seiner (i.e. Auerbachs) Kindheitserinnerungen* (Anton Bettelheim in *Beilage zur Allg. Zeit.*, Sept. 20, 1905, p. 549). *Es kommt bei seiner Arbeit sehr auf eine Befleißigung größerer Kürze an* (Georg Edward), and likewise in compounds, as *Rechtsbeflissener*. There is a tendency to use a prep. construction with the verbs of this group instead of a gen., and this tendency is still more pronounced with the derivative nouns: *diese Enthaltung von allen geistigen Getränken*; *die Erinnerung an die Zeit*; *die Entwöhnung von der Gesellschaft, vom Wein, &c.*

Instead of dropping the reflexive as in the examples given in the preceding paragraph the reflexive is often retained, especially in case of infinitive substantives: *Ich will nicht einmal dagegen einwenden, daß diese unsere Schwäche ein freiwilliges Sichbegeben der Stärke sein dürfte* (Boy-Ed's *Die säende Hand*, p. 178).

Nouns formed from verbs which take an acc. of the person and a gen. of the thing now require the gen. of the person and a prep. construction with the thing: *die Entsetzung des Beamten von Amt und Stelle, die Entkleidung des Gedankens von allem Zierat*. The gen. here is in accordance with the general rule that the gen. object with nouns corresponds to the acc. object with verbs. The employment of the prep. construction with the thing is in accordance with the tendency among derivatives from the reflexive group described above. The gen. of the thing is found here earlier in the period: *excommunicatio, das heißt Entsetzung derselben Gemeinschaft* (Luther). Also still in a few expressions: *unter der Beschuldigung des Diebstahls, die Beraubung der Ehrenrechte*; also in a few compounds, as *Amtsentlassung, Amtsentsetzung, Eidesentbindung, &c.* The old gen. may survive in *diese Versicherung seiner Teilnahme*, but it may also be construed as the attributive gen. corresponding to the acc. object after the verb, for we can say *Er versicherte mir seine Teilnahme*, or *Er versicherte mich seiner Teilnahme*. The force of the verbal noun is sometimes passive and the genitive corresponds then to the genitive after a passive verb: *seine gegenwärtige gänzliche Geschäftsentlastung* (Raabe's *Kloster Lugau*, p. 4).

2 Instead of the genitive in all the above relations *von* with a dative is now often used, as discussed in 229 2, under the prep *von*, *f*, *g*, *j*, *k*, except in certain cases mentioned in H c and I

### III Apposition

1 A noun which explains or characterizes another noun is placed alongside of it, and from its position is accordingly called an *appositive* (placed alongside of) *mein Bruder, der Kaufmann, die Lerche, die muntere Sangerin; meine Vettern Rambergs (Hartleben) my cousins the Rambergs die Massai, ein kriegerisches Volk* (not able here to agree in gender or number with the noun it explains) *Ostafrikas, diese Bucher, mein Stolz und meine Freude* (agreeing neither in gender nor number); *diese Frau, ein Muster von Sanftmut, Friedrich der Zweite* The relations of the gen to its governing noun are, as unfolded above, varied, but the relation of an appositive to its noun is very simple, as it was originally equivalent to a loose explanatory clause or sentence, of which it is the predicate and is still very often so used, as in *Kairo, [welches] die jetzige Hauptstadt Agyptens [ist], ist zugleich auch die vornehmste arabische Stadt unsrer Zeit*. In a formal sense an appositive is an attributive element as it is attached to its governing noun in much the same way as an attributive adjective. Hence grammarians now demand that the appositive agree strictly according to the Latin rule with its governing noun, but in accordance with its real nature as a predicate noun we sometimes find, as noted in the following articles, the *nominalive*, irrespective of the case of the governing noun. In 252 1 *b* Note we have seen that the predicate noun and adjective after *sein* have actually developed from the attributive appositive construction. On the other hand, in many cases, as in B below, governing word and appositive have in course of time come into such close relations with each other that they now together form one group with one principal stress.

The idea of apposition is also expressed by the appositive genitive, so that here apposition and the genitive compete with each other, as illustrated in II 1 G a above. Another common appositional category is that of a sentence explaining a preceding word now divided into two distinct groups called *substantive clause* and *adjective clause*, described in 271 I and II. As these two clauses are not now vividly felt as appositives they are not discussed here. Adjectives and participles standing in the predicate but referring to the subject—predicate appositives—are now felt as also having relations to the principal verb and hence as performing the function of an adverb or rather an adverbial clause, as described in 252 1 c and 268 4. There is still another common appositional category, the prepositional infinitive, which competes with the appositional genitive, as in *die Kunst des Schreibens* or *die Kunst zu schreiben*, and also with the substantive clause as described in 271. I c.

Attributive appositives form two groups

A The appositive follows the governing word in a loose grammatical relation with the force of an explanatory relative clause, as explained in 1 above, and is in the same case and if possible also gender and number. *Dido, die Grunderin Karthagos, soll um das Jahr 814 v Chr gelebt haben. Die Athener verurteilten den Sokrates, einen der berühmtesten Weisen Griechenlands. Friedrich den Großen hat teils sein Genie, teils die Eifersuchteleien seiner Gegner gerettet. O, ich Unglücklicher!* In some of these examples as in the last one the governing word and the appositive seem to come close together, but there is even here a slight pause between them.

If the appositive is not modified by an article or adjective it is often uninflected, but perhaps more commonly inflected. *Das Werk des berühmten und hochgestellten Verfassers, Mitglied (or more commonly Mitghedes, or eines Mitghedes) der meisten gelehrten Gesellschaften, unter F Piquets, Professors an der Universität Lille, sachkundiger Leitung (Zeitschrift für Deutschkunde, 1920 p 448)* If the appositive is in the wk declension it inclines here more

readily to inflection: Die Expedition des Gouverneurs von Deutsch-Ostafrika Obersten v. Schele. If, however, the noun is an adjective substantive, or is modified by an adjective, it *must* be declined: von Baron von W., Gesandtem des Deutschen Reichs, or deutschem Gesandten.

For details concerning the inflection of adjectives and adjective-substantives used in the appositional relation see 111. 4. b, 5. a, b.

a. A noun which is in apposition with a whole sentence stands in the nom.: Er will aufbrechen, ein Entschluß, der ihm sehr schwer geworden ist.

b. When the appositive stands in direct address it is in the nom.: Dir möchte ich diese Lieder weihen, geliebtes deutsches Vaterland!

c. Under the influence of lively or excited feeling an appositive in the nom. may often precede the pronoun which it explains or characterizes, altho the pronoun may be in some other case: Der armselige Ehekrüppel (feeble old man), den soll ein frisches Mädchen heiraten!

d. Remarks and explanations that are made in passing or parenthetically, and do not have as vital a connection with the word explained as a regular appositive, are usually placed in the nom.: Das Grab war gut unterhalten, mit Reseda und Monatsrosen, die Lieblingsblumen der Verstorbenen. There is a tendency in recent literature here as elsewhere toward strict grammatical concordance: Mit Recht wurde der Kunsthalle die dreifache Darstellung der Frau Marie Zacharias von Kalckreuths Meisterhand einverleibt, einer Frau, die dabei durchaus hamburgisch in ihrem Wesen, doch in dieser Hinsicht eine Ausnahme darstellte (Heinrich Spiero in *Velhagen und Klasings Monatshefte*, 1911, p. 44).

e. An appositive which refers collectively or distributively to two or more nouns, or to a noun in the plural, usually stands in the nom.: Ich war mit weißen, weitfaltigen Beinkleidern und langem Kaftan, beides aus dem leichtesten Zeuge, bekleidet (Junker). Sie sahen zwei junge Herren mit hohen Hüten daherkommen, jeder mit einer hübschen, jungen Dame am Arme (G. Keller). Da war auch der Thronerbe mit drei seiner Vettern, sämtlich allerliebste Bürschlein von 7-9 Jahren.

f. Explanatory appositives are often introduced by conjunctions as illustrated in 233. C. Especially frequent is the use of *wie* and *als* with appositives, and it requires care to distinguish here the true appositive relation from other constructions which are associated with *wie* and *als*: Bei manchen Tieren, wie dem Biber, der Spinne, zeigt sich ein hervorragender Kunstsinn, but in einem Augenblicke wie der gegenwärtige [ist]. In the first example *wie* connects an appositive with the noun it explains, and hence both words are in the same case. In the second example *wie* is a subordinate conjunction and introduces a clause, and hence the following word is in the nom., as it is the subject of the clause. There is, however, in recent literature a strong tendency here toward the appositional construction: in einer Zeit wie der unsrigen, instead of *wie die unsrige* [ist].

Care must be exercised to distinguish between the case where *als* joins to a noun another noun which explains it, and the case where *als* introduces a noun as the predicate complement of a verb which lies concealed in the form of some preceding noun: Ich verrate es nur dir als meinem besten Freunde, but Der Rektor sprach über das Wirken Sybels als akademischer Lehrer (= Sybel wirkte als akademischer Lehrer). In the first sentence *als* connects two words in the same case, of which the second is a true appositive to the first. In the second sentence the noun following *als* is a predicate appositive after the verb, which lies concealed in the form of the noun *Wirken*. The verb that is concealed in the preceding noun is not always literally contained in the stem of the noun, but it is always naturally suggested by the idea that it is implied in the stem: Man hatte ihm die Stelle als Legationsrat (= er sollte Legationsrat werden) angeboten.

This distinction is not by any means always followed. At this point considerable confusion prevails, some mechanically conforming the noun after *als* in case to the preceding noun, some distinguishing between the constructions as above described.

g. If the appositive is a title of a work or the name of something, it usually remains in the nom., whatever be the case of the noun it explains: Wir lesen einen Auftritt aus „Nathan der Weise“ We are reading a scene out of (Lessing's) "Nathan the Wise." An Bord des „Kaiser Wilhelm der Große“ (Heyking's *Briefe, die ihm nicht erreichten*, p. 174). Grammatical feeling however, often prompts the writer or speaker to give the title a case form in accordance with the structure of the sentence: Bei keinem früheren Werke ist mir diese visionäre Entstehungsweise so deutlich bewußt geworden wie bei „Wieland dem Schmied“ (Fritz Lienhard's *Wieland der Schmied*, p. vii).

h. A noun in apposition with a preceding possessive adjective is usually in the gen. in accordance with the natural conception that the idea of possession lies in the gen.: Du wirst doch wenigstens meine, deines Freundes Hilfe annehmen! In prose, as in the preceding sentence, the appositive stands between the possessive and the noun that it modifies, but in poetry the appositive may follow the noun, as in the following sentence from Schiller's *Piccolomini*, where Thekla speaks of herself and her father, the great Wallenstein: Ich hatte keine Wünsche, kannte mich! als seine Tochter nur, des Mächtigen.

The appositive usually follows the noun when introduced by *als*: Sie (i.e. die Griechen) sind unsere geistigen Ureltern. Ihre Würde als solcher ist anerkannt (Hermann Grimm in *Deutsche Rundschau*, Mai 1896, p. 244). Älter als the appositive is more commonly in the nom. construed as predicate as in f above: Sein Beruf als Richter (= der Beruf, den er als Richter hat) verpflichtete ihn zur strengsten Unparteilichkeit. Meine Pflichten als König

von Preußen und als deutscher Fürst gestatten mir nicht, den Entwurf als die Gri-  
neuen Bundesverfassung anzunehmen (Wilhelm I in Frankfurt)

1 An exact date which follows a more general one usually stands in the acc. with the general rule for exact time (see 223 II 1) altho the noun it explains may be in another case. Die Wahl fand Samstag or am Samstag den 28 April. Both expressions are ad-  
r respective relations to  
time The appositional

2 Learned men often allow the appositive to stand in the nom. in titles of the  
hence cannot justly  
addressing letters  
dozent (instead of  
correct ordentlich)

3 To complete the confusion that is so prevalent with respect to the proper  
appositive noun the dat. is used by various authors especially in Austria un-  
regard to the case of the preceding noun. Wegen Hagens, diesem jungen Laster! (E-  
bachs *Bertram Vogelweid* p. 203) See also 94.3 A a (2nd par)

B The appositive may be a proper name and enter into such close  
with the preceding governing word that it forms with it a group wit-  
upon the last member, i.e. the appositive. der Kaiser Wilhelm, das C-  
tum Baden, die Universität Berlin, &c. For full rules for inflection  
For an explanation of the stress and the position of the appositive see  
a above

In many cases the appositive is not a proper name but a noun with  
force, namely a word or expression representing a thing as an individual  
a member of a class. der Schnitter Tod, König Erfolg, der Dämon  
Gespenst Reaktion, das Wort vor, die Vorsilbe ge-, der Begriff  
The close relations here between the appositive and its governing word  
always be indicated by the stress, as the appositive is often not a  
but a thought as a whole which may expand into an entire clause.  
Unter dem Namen „Allgemeine Forstgesellschaft“ ist eine neue  
gegründet worden. Auf ihrem Grabsteine stehen nur drei Worte:  
Herrn“ Eins weiß ich: es geschieht nie wieder. For inflection see  
also a below

a If the appositive is the title of a work, the name of something or a technical  
usually remains in the nominative whatever be the case of the noun it explains.  
einen Teil des Gedichtes „die Glocke“ Und gerade hier wurde immer die Fall-  
langsam wegen der Nähe des Bahnhofs „Zoologischer Garten“ An Bord des  
nicht erreichten p. 174) Wir planten  
ne liegenden Vermögen ein Gut zu  
(der Hexameter) den Namen „herc

2 The employment of the appositional construction instead of  
earlier periods is explained in II 1 H a above, and 94.3 A (also c t)

#### IV A Prepositional Phrase as Modifier of a Noun

A noun or pronoun may be modified by a prepositional phrase, with  
follows it. The following groups occur

1 Nouns denoting an action or a quality can by virtue of their  
adjective nature be modified by a prep. phrase, which is usually  
construction with the phrase that modifies the verb or adjective  
origin. Die Trauer um den Vater, die Freude über den Sieg, for v-  
trauert um den Vater and Man freut sich über den Sieg, Beliel  
Volke, Zufriedenheit mit seiner Lage, for we say Er ist beim V-  
and Er ist mit seiner Lage zufrieden. The idea of agent, however,  
expressed here by durch, while with passive verbs it is regularly ex-  
von. Die Ermordung Rizzios durch Darnley. The prepositional  
nouns not only corresponds to the English of the

Abstract verbal nouns, as in the preceding examples, often take such modifiers as they have almost pure verbal force, but verbal nouns which represent persons are not in German thus freely modified: **ein Streiter für Wahrheit und Recht** and many similar expressions, but in many others the construction is unusual, as in **die Verschwörer gegen meinen Frieden**, where it is usual to employ a pure verbal form, as in **diejenigen, die sich gegen meinen Frieden verschworen haben**. Only in such substantives as have a verbal form, as in case of participles, is this construction freely used: **ein an Schlaflosigkeit Leidender** a sufferer from insomnia, **ein zum Mormonismus Übergetretener** a convert to Mormonism, &c.

On the other hand, this construction is often used in German where there is no closely corresponding expression in English, namely with group-words (247. 2). There are two different cases. In the first one the phrase modifies the second component: **Luftangriffe auf Monastir** (*Frankfurter Zeit.*, Jan. 25, 1916). In the other case the phrase modifies the first component: **das schwedische Ausfuhrverbot von Zellstoff** (*ib.*, Jan. 25, 1916), **die feindlichen Angriffsversuche auf Torbole** (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Dec. 31, 1915). The context here alone determines whether the phrase modifies the first component or the second. Both constructions have been found very convenient and are widely used, altho frequently opposed by grammarians.

2. It is common to modify many other nouns by a prepositional phrase: **der Schreiber beim Rechtsanwalt** the copyist at the lawyer's. Sometimes in descriptive language the prepositional phrase precedes the governing noun: **Auf dem Sims zunächst bei mir eine kleine Katze hat auch die Augen zuge-drückt** (Mörike's *Maler Nolten*, 150).

*a. Attributive Prepositional Infinitive Clause of Purpose.* To 2 above belongs the common prepositional construction with **zu** which expresses the ideas of a goal, end, purpose: **der Weg zur Kirche, zur Armut, ein Ofen zum Brotbacken, ein Zimmer zum Musizieren, ein Raum zum Holzspalten**. In the last example **Holz**, the object of the activity expressed in the verbal stem, is written as one word with the substantive infinitive. In more involved expressions it is necessary to replace the substantive infinitive by the prepositional infinitive: **eine Gelegenheit, viel Gutes zu tun**. When the governing noun is a verbal noun we often, perhaps more commonly, find **um zu** instead of simple **zu** after the analogy of usage with verbs in purpose clauses, just as in 238. 2. *d. Note* we often find **als ob** in attributive clauses after a verbal noun after the analogy of usage with verbs in clauses of manner: **Dieser war mir ohnehin höchst günstig, weil ich mir seinen „Messias“ so zu eigen gemacht hatte, daß ich ihm bei meinen öftern Besuchen, um Siegelabdrücke für meine Wappensammlung zu holen, große Stellen davon vortragen konnte** (Goethe's *D. u. W.*, Teil I, Buch IV). After the analogy of the use of **um zu** here to express purpose it has become quite common to employ **um zu** instead of older simple **zu** also after nouns denoting concrete things wherever the prepositional infinitive clause indicates the purpose for which the thing in question is designed: **Der Mensch braucht nur wenige Erdschollen, um drauf zu genießen, weniger, um drunter zu ruhen** (Goethe's *Werther*, am 9. Mai). **Es darf nicht sein, solange diese Heuchler | noch Öfen haben, um sich Brot zu backen, | und Brunnen, um zu trinken** (Hebbel's *Nibelungen*, II, IV, 2). **Gefütterte Steppdecke über das Bett, um darauf oder darunter zu liegen** (Lexer's *Mittelhochdeutsches Taschenwörterbuch*, explaining the M.H.G. word *kulter*). **Die Literatur also ist der mächtige Hebel, um jene Materialien empor zu schaffen, die usw.** (Friedrich Kluge's *Unser Deutsch*). **Eines von den Mitteln, um dahin zu gelangen, ist aber dieses usw.** (O. Weißenfels in *Zeitschrift für das Gymnasialwesen*, Feb.-March, 1906, p. 101). Grammarians are wont to censure this usage in both of the cases described above and recommend the employment of simple **zu**, but as literary writers and scholars alike feel the graphic force of this new attributive clause form with a distinctive conjunction which gives clear expression to the idea of purpose it has come into wide use just as the corresponding new adverbial clause of purpose described in 281. *b. Note* (2nd par.). Compare 185. A. I. 2. *a.* (3). The establishment of **um** with the prepositional infinitive to indicate purpose naturally led to its employment to express the closely related idea of result, at first in adverbial clauses, as illustrated in 276. D. *b* and 277. 2. *b* and then in the attributive relation: **Das war der Mann, um Freda zu verstehen; und Freda war das Weib, um diesen da zu würdigen** (Wildenbruch's *Schwester-Seele*, chap. XI).

## V. An Infinitive as Modifier of a Noun.

A noun or pronoun may be modified by an infin. with **zu**: **Das Bestreben sich auszubilden ist lobenswert. Ich habe heute rechte Lust zu studieren** I feel like studying to-day. For fuller treatment of present usage see 185. A. I. 2. *a.* (2), (3), *b*; 271. I. *c*, also IV. 2. *a* above.



## VI An Adverb as Modifier of a Noun

An adverb may modify a noun in the same way as a phrase (see IV 2 above) may do. *Der Mensch da, das Buch da, der Felsen dort.*

The adverb often in descriptive language precedes the governing noun. *Links das niedliche Gehoft gehört einem Schwaben* (Viebig's *Das schlafende Heer*, 30) *Druben die Villen jenseits der Straße machten den Eindruck, als schlummerten sie* (Ompeda's *Maria du Casa*, 286)

## VII A Clause as Modifier of a Noun

A clause may modify a noun. *die Hoffnung, daß wir ihm helfen werden, verleiht ihm Mut*. *Die Tat, welche der Verzeihung bedarf, ist nicht gut*

a. *Logical Relations of the Attributive Clause to its Governing Noun*. An attributive clause tho formally connected only with its governing noun often has verb. *das Kind, das ja noch zu jung ist* (with the force of *an* *einen Vormund erhalten*). *Ein Bettler, der etwa kommt* (with *wird abgewiesen*)

## A Noun and its Modifier replaced by a Group word or Compound

256 All the above kinds of adj. modifiers except the last two, can some times be replaced by terser forms of expression by converting them into the modifying component of a group word (247 2) or compound. (1) *ein leichter Sinn* = *Leichtsinn*, (2) *ein Tropfen Wassers* = *ein Wassertropfen*, (3) *dieser Mann, ein Ritter* = *dieser Rittersmann*, (4) *ein Aufenthalt für den Sommer* = *ein Sommeraufenthalt*, (5) *die Begierde zu herrschen* = *die Herrschbegierde*.

## Objective Modifiers

## Accusative Object

257. The original concrete meaning of the accusative is unknown. Its Latin name *accusativus* i.e. the accusing case, throws no light on its history, altho it in part aptly characterizes it by calling attention to one of its chief meanings, namely that of indicating a person or thing toward which an activity is directed. In Old Saxon the accusative was sometimes used with intransitive verbs of motion to indicate the concrete goal. *He scolde gifaren his fader odil* (Heland 4495-7) *He was to go to his father's house*. In an abstract sense it is still in modern German employed with a simple infinitive, originally the accusative of a verbal noun, to indicate the goal, i.e. the end, purpose of the action. *Er geht baden*. This old meaning explains the commoner one of indicating an object toward which an activity is directed, which within the historic period has quite overshadowed the older idea of a literal goal after verbs of motion. *einen Vogel im Fluge schießen, einen Wagen waschen, ein Haus (the goal, i.e. the result of the activity) bauen*. Certain prepositions, such as *auf, an, vor, hinter, &c.*, have become associated with the accusative when they indicate movement toward a definite goal. The older idea of goal also explains the common use of the accusative to indicate an object as the goal, the passive recipient of an action in contrast to the nominative which indicates the author of the act. *Der Knabe schlägt den Hund*. The original idea of goal also explains the common use of the accusative to indicate the limit, extent of the action in space and time. *Er ging einen langen Weg*. *Er lebte viele Jahre*. Out of the idea of the accusative as an object has come the more abstract conception that the accusative is the proper case form of a noun employed to complete the meaning of the verb, a potent modern force which is deeply affecting the language, as illustrated in 2 A below and in 260. The present abstract force of the accusative clearly shows that the older concrete meaning which we have here tried to trace theoretically has become very dim or has been lost altogether.

The use of the accusative as object appears in the following groups:

1. All transitive verbs require an accusative object to complete their meaning. This acc. represents a thing either as affected by an action, or as the result of it: *Der Knabe schlägt den Hund* (thing affected). *Er hat einen Brief* (result of the action) *geschrieben*. The accusative often represents somebody or something as in a new place or a new condition as the result of the action: *einen in eine Falle locken*, *sich (dat.) die Schwindsucht an den Hals ärgern*, *Butter aufs Brot streichen*, *einen tot schlagen*, *sich arm schenken* to make one's self poor by giving.

In changing such a sentence from the active to the passive, the acc., except the acc. of a reflexive pronoun, becomes nom. and the nom. is put into the dat. after the prep. *von*: *Der Hund wird von dem Knaben geschlagen* The dog is being beaten by the boy. The nom. subject of a passive verb denotes the same thing as the acc. object of a trans. verb, but from a different point of view. The acc. denotes the person or thing toward which another person or thing is directing an activity, and thus emphasizes the idea of an active agent at work. The nom. subject of a passive verb represents an object as receiving an activity and thus emphasizes the idea of a passive recipient.

a. *Omission of Object*. Many transitives which usually require an object are used without one when the activity they express is represented only in a general way without reference to an effect upon a particular object, a construction found also in English, but not so wide-spread as in German: *Der Mensch denkt, Gott lenkt* Man proposes, God disposes. *Er gibt gerne* He likes to give. *Ich habe ihn* (i.e. den Ausdruck „es erübrigt sich“) *kürzlich immer häufiger gelesen, und stehe jetzt nicht an—Gewöhnung versöhnt [einen] ja—die Wendung als Bereicherung unserer Sprache anzuerkennen* (J. Ernst Wülfing in *Zeit. für den deutschen Unterricht*, 1899, p. 139). *Die Kenntnis dessen, um was man [einen] neidet* (Felix Stahl in *Preussische Jahrbücher*, 1915, p. 298). Sometimes also with reference to a definite object, which is so clearly indicated by the context that it is not formally expressed: *Entschuldigen Sie [mich]!* Excuse me!, I beg your pardon. *Schlagen Sie [Ihre Hand in meine] ein!* Give me your hand on that! Compare 258. 1 (third from the last par.).

b. A number of verbs (163. 2. a.) are trans. or intrans. according to the idea to be conveyed—trans. when the subject is represented as acting on an object, intrans. when the subject is represented as moving toward a certain goal or as passing over, of its own initiative, into the state caused by the action of the verb: *Das Pferd zieht (trans.) den Wagen*, but we also say intransitively *Er ist nach Berlin gezogen* He has moved to Berlin. *Ich habe das Ei gebrochen*, but we also say of the egg when it seems to break of itself without our intending or wishing it *Das Ei ist gebrochen* The egg broke. Thus also *Die Saite ist gerissen* The violin string broke. Here the German by means of the intrans. auxiliary *sein* shows more distinctly than the English that these verbs are considered intrans.

c. In transposing a sentence into the passive voice only the object of the principal verb of the active construction should in the passive be put into the nom., never properly the object of a dependent infinitive. However, in actual usage the object of an infinitive depending upon *anfangen*, *beginnen*, *suchen*, *versuchen*, *vergönnen*, *wünschen*, often appears in the nom. in the passive: *Man sucht einen Hühnerhund zu kaufen* becomes *Ein Hühnerhund wird zu kaufen gesucht*. A more correct passive form would be: *Es wird gesucht, einen Hühnerhund zu kaufen*.

d. The object is often expressed in German when it is omitted in English. See 251. II. A. d.

e. In English the accusative is used in some groups of ideas where prepositional constructions are more commonly employed in German. It is usual to explain such differences by saying that the idiomatic structure of the two languages is different. While matters of idiom are often very subtle, some of these things can be explained. For instance, the German has in a number of cases preserved the old idea of instrument better than English. Originally there was a special case form for this idea. Later the dative assumed besides its own functions also those of the instrumental. Still later prepositional constructions replaced the simple dat. Thus to-day we say in English: *The dog is wagging his tail, He shook his head, He is winking his eyes, He threw stones at him*, while the German says: *Der Hund wedelt mit dem Schwanze, Er schüttelte mit dem Kopfe, Er winkt mit den Augen, Er warf ihn (or nach ihm) mit Steinen*. Compare also *mit den Augen blinzeln* to wink one's eyes, *mit der Peitsche knallen* to crack one's whip, *mit den Zähnen knirschen* to gnash one's teeth, *mit dem Kopfe nicken* to nod one's head, *mit den Flügeln schlagen* to flap its wings, *mit den Lippen schmatzen* to smack one's lips, *mit dem Fuße stampfen* to stamp one's feet, *mit den Händen winken* to wave one's hands, *mit den Schultern zucken* to shrug one's shoulders. While the accusative is also in German sometimes used here, the native German in speaking English often provokes a smile from English-speaking people by a too liberal use of the prepositional construction here.

f. The object may assume the form of the infinitive with or without *zu* (see 185. A. I. 2. c, 3, B. I. 2. a, b, c, d) or the form of a clause (272. C).

2. *Intransitives Used Transitively with Objects*. The following classes of intransitives often take an object in the acc.:

A *A cognate accusative*, that is, an object of a meaning cognate or similar to that of the verb, may repeat and also explain more fully the idea expressed by the verb. Er schlief den Schlaf des Gerechten. Er starb den Tod fürs Vaterland. Er lebt ein elendes Leben. Die Sache geht ihren ruhigen Gang. Sie singt ein Lied.

This construction has become very productive, so that now an acc. can be quite freely added to an intransitive to complete its meaning. This productive construction stands in close relations to the common tendency to form old group words (247 2), so often found elsewhere, i.e. to form a compound out of a group of words with a certain oneness of meaning, not however by expressing the grammatical relations between them as in a modern group of words but by merely putting the words side by side without a preposition or the case ending required to express the grammatical relations as in the old group words that have come down to us from the prehistoric period. Thus in case of many of these so called cognate accusatives the form is in fact not an accusative at all but a prepositional construction in which the preposition is suppressed as in group-words (249 II 1 C). Thus instead of saying mit der Eisenbahn fahren we can say Eisenbahn fahren. Thus in fact this is an adverbial construction. In a number of cases where the preposition is not now used we find the preposition in earlier usage. The dropping of the preposition usually leaves a case form of the noun that is identical with the accusative and often leads to the complete confounding of the prepositional construction with that of the cognate accusative, so that the accusative is used even where the prepositional idea is prominent. Schon damals bin ich für mein Leben gern Elektrische gefahren (*Frankfurter Zeit*, Aug. 31 1913). In the example quoted below from Hauptmann's "Der arme Heinrich" it can be seen that the accusative also sometimes replaces an older articleless nominative. The verb spielen formerly governed the genitive as is illustrated in 260 2 A. Even an imperative sentence may thus complete the meaning of the verb. Die vier Schützen standen habacht (L. von Handel Mazzetti's *Stephana Scherzner*, II chap. II) = standen in strammer militärischer Positur. The meaning of the verb is similarly completed by the two nouns Knall und Fall, which tersely represent the thought of the sentence Der Knall des Gewehrs und der Fall des Erschossenen war eins: Er entließ ihn Knall und Fall. He dismissed him very suddenly, or He gave him the grand bounce. Thus this productive construction is growing at the expense of several constructions. It seems quite clear that all these formations are now felt as group words in which the accusative or an uninflected form which can be construed as an accusative is felt as the proper form for the first component just as in substantive, adjective, and participial compounds and group words the genitive is now often felt as the proper form of the first component, even tho the genitive does not fit the grammatical relations at all, as illustrated in 249 II 1 B b ff (last par). Examples. Er läuft Schlittschuh, Spießruten. *He is skating is running the gauntlet.* Er fährt Eisenbahn, Pferdebahn, Omnibus, Kahn, Rad, Nichtraucher, Karussell. Ich verstehe jetzt, warum wir dritte (also gen., see 223 III a) Klasse fahren mußten (Spielhagen's *Frei geboren*, p. 43). Ich fahre nur Arbeiterzug (Hauptmann's *Einsame Menschen*, 2). Er reitet Galopp, Schritt, Trab, Karriere (post haste), Post (post haste), Patrouille, gestreckten Galopp (at full speed). Ein ausgezeichnete Reiter, der zum Leid meiner Mutter Rennen ritt (Oempteda's *Frieden*, I). Wobei japanische Husaren eine brillante Attacke ritten (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Oct. 17, 1904). Eines Nachts, vor besetztem Dorfe, zogerte er, Erkundung zu gehen (Fritz von Unruh's *Opfergang*, p. 12). Er raucht Pfeife. Sie spielten Karten, Schach, Domino, Blindekuh, Haschen, Verstecken, Räuber usw. Er schläft Mittagsstunde. Dann redeten wir Bismarck, Kulturkampf, soziale Frage und was sonst dazu gehört, um einen Abschiedsabend unter guten Freunden hinzubringen, ohne zu sehr zu merken, wie die Zeit läuft (Rabe's *Pfitzers Muhle*, xx). Wenn ich nur den Verdacht los würde, daß Sie hier Pose stehen (Sudermann's *Heimat*, 2, 9). Ich soll nun für drei Batzen Boten gehen

(go on an errand) (Hauptmann's *Der arme Heinrich*, 3), or *Ich will euch [als] Bote laufen* (Freytag). *Sie sollen mir Rede* [earlier in the period *zur Rede*] *stehen* (id., *Soll*, 1. 118). Über das, was die Jungmannschaft von St. Moritz in Gemeindeangelegenheiten getan, stehen wir gerne Rechenschaft (Heer's *Der König der Bernina*, xv). *Gefahr laufen* to run the risk, but earlier in the period with or without in: *Der Witz läuft schon bei seinem Ursprunge in Gefahr zu witzeln* (Goethe). Man müßte also diese Gefahr laufen (Schiller). *Lauf Sturm wider die Ringmauer* (id., *Räuber*, 5, 1). *Auf Posten stehen*, now also *Von elf bis eins stand Vogt zum letzten Male an diesem Wachttag Posten* (Beyerlein's *Jena oder Sedan?*, iv). *Er steht Wache* (either nom. or acc.) or *auf Wache*. *Wir Bauern lassen doch unsere Jungens nicht Pastor studieren* (K. v. d. Eider's *Meerumschlungen*, I), also *auf* (see *auf*, 2. C. c under 231. II) *den Pastor studieren*. Usually *am Pranger stehen*, but now also without the preposition: *Die Gottesbraut mußte gleich einer Metze Pranger stehen* (E. von Handel-Mazzetti's *Stephana Schwertner*, II, chap. IX). In case of an unmodified weak noun the acc. ending is not always expressed as in the sentence from Hauptmann, but in accordance with usage elsewhere the noun may remain uninflected: *Und wenn der Graf bei ihnen hier Herr spielen wolle — sie wollten es ihm schon verleiden* (Spielhagen's *Sturmflut*, vi, 15), but *Er will den großen Herrn spielen*. *Sie spielen Soldat* or with pl. form *Soldaten*. It would, perhaps, be more in accord with actual feeling here to regard *Soldat* in the last example or *Herr* in the sentence from Spielhagen as a simple stem, the modifying component of a compound or group-word, of which *spielen* is the basal element. Of course, a plural form can also be used here, as in case of *Soldaten* in the last example, for the plural is often used in group-words, as in *Völkerbund league of nations*.

a. Here also belongs the acc. after verbs of motion which denotes the ground over which the motion passes: *Er geht ruhig seinen Weg* He goes quietly on his way. *Der Wein läuft die Kehle hinunter*. *Er kommt die Treppe herauf*. See also 260. 2. A. a.

b. Instead of a cognate acc. of a noun, the acc. neut. of a pronoun, such as *eins*, *es*, *etwas*, is much used: *Er hat wieder eins gelogen* He has lied again. *Sing eins, daß die Zeit vergeht!* *Laß uns eins plaudern* Let us have a little chat. *Ich wollte, du lachtest eins mit* I wish you would join us in laughing. *Der junge Bursche schob den Hut aus der Stirn, piffte sich eins, und schritt weiter* (Beyerlein's *Jena oder Sedan?*, I). *Wir wollen uns eins gemütlich rauchen!* *Die Eifersucht über Spanien gewann es* (won the victory) *über diese politische Sympathie*. *Er hat mir oft etwas vorgesungen*.

c. The cognate acc. construction cannot usually be transferred to the passive, but like other intrans. constructions can form the impersonal passive (219. 5. B), where the cognate acc. remains acc. as in the active, as it has entered into such close relations with the verb that it has formed with it a compound and thus does not change its form: *Es wurde Karten* (acc. pl.) *gespielt* There was playing at cards going on. In some cases the cognate acc. approaches the usual force of the acc., and hence becomes nom. in the passive: *Er singt ein Lied* becomes in the passive *Ein Lied wird von ihm gesungen*. *Damit würde also derselbe Weg beschritten werden, der im Jahre 1897 gegangen wurde* (*Hamb. Nachr.*, Nov. 1, 1904).

B. Intransitives sometimes take on the trans. idea of *causing*, *producing*, *showing* that which results from or accompanies their action, or represent somebody or something as in a new place or a new condition as the result of the action: *Tränen weinen*, *Zorn blicken*, *Liebe lächeln*, *Wut schnauben* to breathe rage, that is, to show rage in breathing. *Er hat mich wach geschrien*. *Er hat mich halbtot geschwatzt*. *Er geht sich* (dat.) *Blasen unter die Füße* He walks until blisters form on the soles of his feet. *Er hat sich* (dat.) *ein Loch in den Kopf gefallen*. *Er hofft, sich in den Himmel zu beten*. *Er hat sich mit Liebesreden fest an ihr Herz gelogen*. *Er redete sich um den Kopf*. *Er räsionierte sein Herz um jede gute Empfindung*. *Sie können dich doch nicht um dein Ansehen lachen*. *Er lachte sich krank, halb krank, tot, zu Tode, bucklig, froh*.

C. *Accusative after Compounds*. When simple verbs enter into compounds many intransitives become transitive, while transitives remain transitive, either with the same force of the verbal element as found in the simple verb or with a different kind of an object. The following groups are common:

a. The accusative after many compound verbs is in fact the object of the preposition compounded with the verb: *einen anreden* to address (lit. to speak to) someone. This construction

is treated more at length in 215 II 3 A a b c 246 II 1 a b d e 223 I 9 B 1 e 2 258 I B a 262 I b (2nd par) In many of these compounds the preposition has lost its old concrete force so that as in case of ver- (246 II 5 B b) the original construction is no longer distinctly felt die Wahrheit verfechten to defend the truth lit to go fighting *before* the truth to defend it

b In a large number of compounds the acc. is the object of the verbal element of the compound einem einen Stein nachwerfen, dem Käufer Waren vorlegen, &c

c In case of many compounds the accusative is not the object of either of the two components but the object of verbs the accusative of body or something as ersteigen to reach the summit den Gipfel ersteigen to reach the summit seine Wohnung erfragen to ask results in finding out his residence die Leute zusammentrommeln, sich durchkämpfen to fight one's way thru einen hereinwinken, einem etwas abbetteln, sein Geld verspielen, sich (dat.) die Augen ausgucken, sich (acc.) in die Höhe arbeiten, sich (acc.) herausreden to talk one's self out of a difficulty The object is here often metonymic i.e. indicating not the real object but something which stands in close association with it Er wischt den Staub (real object) vom Tische ab and Er wischt den Tisch (metonymic object) ab The prefixes ab, auf, &c indicating a change of place are potent forces in the language The simple verb schmeicheln governs the dative but abschmeicheln to coax by flattery takes an accusative object Er hat seinem Vater Geld abgeschmeichelt In early N.H.G. abdanken to discharge troops lit to send off with thanks took a influence of its prefix ab- required an accusative

258 I A e But we usually say einem heraus- helfen, as the influence of the simple verb now in the prefix

In case of many other compounds the accusative represents the person or thing affected sich überarbeiten, den Wagen überladen, &c

The prefix ab- is often used to indicate a goal end eine Gelegenheit abwarten, eine Strafe absitzen, sich abarbeiten

The prefixes er- and ver- sometimes merely convert intransitives into transitives See 246 II 3 b (2nd par) 5 E

3 *Accusative after Adjectives* Some adjectives and adjective participles take an accusative object to complete their meaning See 260 3

## Dative Object

258 The connection of the dative with a verb or adjective is of every degree of closeness from constituting their necessary complement to forming an almost or entirely independent element which expresses an emotional interest in the statement of fact as a whole Das Kind ahnelt der Mutter The child resembles the mother Ich lobe mir mein Dorfchen hier I for my part have always a word of praise for our village In the first sentence the dat. is necessary to complete the thought contained in the verb, while in the second it is a lively rhetorical means to show the interest of the speaker in the statement, but it qualifies the thought as a whole rather than the verb alone

1 Some intransitives take a dat. object to complete their meaning Der Spott galt mir The ridicule was aimed at me The dative seems originally to have denoted in a literal sense *direction toward* which can still be often felt as here after certain verbs also often after the preposition zu to toward Thus originally both the accusative and the dative indicated a goal or an object toward which an activity is directed Even in oldest German, however, we find the two forms in general use as we know them to day, so that the accusative thing is affected in a literal, exterior sense while the dative person or thing is affected in an inner sense or that a person is involved in an act or statement as his material or higher interests are connected with the act or statement Er kitzelt mich, but Er dankt, flucht, schmeichelt, hilft, antwortet mir Er schlug mich and Das Feuer hat das Dach beschädigt, but Die Arznei schadet dem Kranken and Ein wenig Geiz schadet dem Weibe nichts, so ubel sie die Verschwendung kleidet (Goethe) Ich habe mich an der Hand beschädigt, but Das Gerechte schadet ihrem Rufe Die Nachricht ist meinem Vater (person interested in a statement) wichtig This distinction tho often observed is in many verbs entirely disregarded as in the course of the development of the language this

principle of clear discrimination has been steadily opposed by the simpler principle of placing, without regard to meaning, the object in the accusative, the case form most commonly employed for the object, so that with a number of verbs the dative has been replaced by an accusative. On the other hand, the idea of a person affected inwardly or interested or involved in an act has in many words proved so strong that an original accusative has been replaced by a dative. This difference in meaning between dative and accusative appears again in the passive, for in changing such active constructions into the passive the acc. becomes nom., but the dat. remains a *dative*, instead of becoming nom., and the sentence is thus without a subject, or in order to conform to the now prevailing grammatical pattern is introduced by *es*, which serves as a formal subject (219. 5. B. a): *Ich wurde geschlagen*, but *Mir wurde*, or *Es wurde mir von ihm nicht gedankt* I was not thanked by him. Likewise in case of the predicate modal verbal (180. A): not *Der ist nicht zu helfen*, but *Dem ist nicht zu helfen*. However, not all intransitives which take a dat. object can form this passive. This construction is limited to such verbs as represent an *activity* as proceeding from a *person*. Thus *Er gefällt mir* *He pleases me* cannot be transferred to the passive, as the verb *gefällt* indicates a *quality* of the person denoted by the subject and not an *activity* which proceeds from him. The main characteristic of this impersonal passive is that it emphasizes an *activity*, and hence the commonest form of the construction has no subject at all, or at least no definite subject, nor any reference to an agent, placing the sole stress upon the activity: *Mir wurde hart begegnet*, or *Es wurde mir hart begegnet* They treated me harshly. It is often desirable, however, to represent some person or thing as acted upon, even with these verbs which govern the dat., and hence under French and English influence and in still greater measure under the pressure of natural feeling this impersonal passive is often, even in good authors, tho severely condemned by grammarians, replaced by the personal passive: *Sei (du understood) dafür herzlich gedankt*, instead of *Dir sei dafür herzlich gedankt*. *Wenn vollends die hochtonige Stammsilbe von einer tieftönigen Nebensilbe gefolgt ist* (Bernhard Maydorn in *Wissenschaftliche Beihefte des Allgemeinen Deutschen Sprachvereins*, Fünfte Reihe, Heft 34, p. 128). This contested construction is especially common in the form of an appositional participle, where the noun or pronoun which is limited by the participle is the real subject of the verbal idea in the participle: *Er ging hinab, gefolgt von Peters* (Spielhagen's *Herrin*, p. 194). The passive is often used in the expression *Ich fühle mich geschmeichelt*. It is also common to say: *Er ist in dem Porträt geschmeichelt* and *Das Bild ist geschmeichelt*.

The dative is often omitted when the activity is represented only in a general way without reference to a definite object: *Scheiden tut [einem] weh*. *Höflichkeit schadet [einem] nie*. Sometimes also with reference to a definite object, which is so clearly indicated by the context that it is not formally expressed: *Verzeihen Sie [mir]!* Pardon me! I beg your pardon! Compare 257. 1. a.

There is another dative of quite a different origin and force which is used with both transitives and intransitives. It gives expression to the ideas of place, position, separation, point of departure, source, association. For examples see B below. As explained in 226 the dative here represents the old locative, ablative, and instrumental (association and instrument) cases, which aside from a few traces of the instrumental had disappeared before the O.H.G. period. The dative after the prepositions *zu* (when it denotes rest in a place), *an*, *auf*, *bei*, *hinter*, &c., corresponds to the old locative, after *von* and *aus* to the old ablative, after *mit* to the old instrumental.

The dative object is found after the following groups of intransitives, some of which pass for transitives in English:

A. *Dative after Simple or Derivative Verbs*. Those which signify:

a. *Inclination or aversion, a pleasing or displeasing, a serving or resisting*: *behagen* to please, suit, afford comfort to, *mißbehagen* (opposite of *behagen*), *belieben* (used in a number of set

expressions, see also 259 8) and *gelieben* (earlier in the period; see 2 Peter II 15) to please, *danken* (*abdanken* to *discharge troops*, &c in early NHG also with *dat*, but later with *acc*, see 257 2 C c) to thank, *dienen* to serve, *dominieren* (*dat*, with more force *über* with *acc*, to domineer over, command (i.e. overlook, as from a superior (early NHG and biblical, see Rom XIV 6) to eat unto, o curse, *fronen* to toil or slave for, *fronen* to be a slave to

(passion, &c), be addicted to, truckle to, indulge (passions, &c), *gefallen* to please *missfallen* to displease, *gnader* against, *hofieren* to j or more commonly *z konvenieren* to suit *König Laurin*, 4, 2—as in *Das Glück* lat given up to or devoted to, live taste well to, *pochen* (rare) to flatter (both occasionally with *acc* earlier in the period) to flatter *schmollen* to be sulky toward, *schworen* to swear (the oath of allegiance) to, *trotzen* to defy, *tun* to do unto treat, *widern* (sometimes with the *acc*) to be repugnant to, *willfahren* to gratify, indulge grant, *zurnen* to be angry at (somebody), &c *Nehmen Sie, was Ihnen beliebt* Take your choice Was beliebt Ihnen? What's your pleasure? What can I do for you? Wie es Ihnen beliebt as you like. Nur die Vorste wachsen, *ihr dominieren* . . . den Hafen dominierenden H gnaden (P Heyse, 3, 149) Herrin, und *gnad'* uns allen (someone) *munden* to ) to, *schmeicheln* and

denbruch's *König Laurin*, 2, 3) *ihr widert!* (H von Hofmannst Sie sah seine bittenden Augen i *Sykester von Geyer*, XV)

or  
int  
or  
ab

beschäftigt um den Baum.

b Benefit or injury, fullness or lack *Benefit* to, *entstehen* or *erwachsen* to little used) to fail, be lacking benefit, profit, *fruchten* to avail of value to, be intended for, to, serve (see ex), *glücken*, *gelingen*, *gelingen* (Adv. 4 A. b) to succeed, *mißglücken*, *mißraten*, *mißlingen*, *helfen* (259 17) to help *kummern* (rarely with *dat*, see 262. II A c and B d) to concern, matter to, *mangeln* (see also 260. 2 A) to be lacking to, *nutzen* or *nutzen* (earlier in the period also with *acc*, in the meaning to make use of, both are trans with *acc*, either in the simple form or —

against the interests of someone In this case w) of a noun or pronoun the second Er be-

*bescheren* to give a present (Lessing's *Minna*, 4, 8, now asking to, *frommen* to avail, then to succeed, *gelten* to be hen or *passieren* to happen to, to succeed, *mißglücken*, *mißraten*, *mißlingen*, *helfen* (259 17) to help *kummern* (rarely with *dat*, see 262. II A c and B d) to concern, matter to, *mangeln* (see also 260. 2 A) to be lacking to, *nutzen* or *nutzen* (earlier in the period also with *acc*, in the meaning to make use of, both are trans with *acc*, either in the simple form or —  
e, *sekundieren* (also trans with *acc*) to einen stimmen) to vote for, *streuen* to

make a bed for (cattle), *stunden* to grant time to someone for payment, *taugen* (also *für* with *acc*) to be good for, be useful to, be adapted to, *vergeben* (see 259. 34), *versagen* to fail, *verzeihen* (259 34), *wachen* (in the Southwest sometimes einem Kranken wachen, usually bei einem Kranken wachen) to watch by the bedside of, *zinsen* to pay tribute to Die Speise beum bescherte ich meinen Leuten. den beiden Magden, erburschen (Spielhagen's *Selbstgerecht*, p 158) Was Alle Mühe fruchtet Ihnen nichts. Es gebreicht dem as gilt mir also ab 14. 11. 11. Der Spott

galt mir the ridicule was intended for me. Es geschieht dir recht It serves you right. Was kann's dem Monde kümmern, | wenn ihn der Hund anbellt (Körner's *Zriny*, 3, 4). Es nutzt dem Lügner nichts. Was würde es Ihnen nutzen? Es nützt seiner Verdauung (H. von Hofmannsthal's *Elektra*, p. 14). Der kann mir nicht schaden. Was ist Ihnen? What ails you? Er streut dem Vieh. Zwei Schülern habe ich stunden müssen (Hauptmann's *Michael Kramer*). Es taugt dir (or für dich) nicht. Die Füße versagten mir. The verb may be understood, or may be unnecessary: Drum rett' erst ihn, zum zweiten dieses Kind, | die dritte Fahrt der Schwester und der Mutter (Grillparzer's *Ein treuer Diener*, 4).

c. *Fitness, a belonging to, believing, trusting, obeying, listening*: anstehen to look well on, become, be fitting, please, suit, bleiben to remain to, eignen to belong to, be characteristic of, folgen to follow, obey, gebühren to be due to, belong to, be becoming to, gehören (sometimes with a possessive instead of a dat.: Das gehört mein, a blending of Das gehört mir and Das ist mein) to belong to, gehorchen, or now less commonly gehorsamen, in colloquial language also pa'rieren, to obey, glauben (see 259. 15), haften (poetic for anhaften) to adhere to, stick to, horchen (259. 18), hören (now no longer common with the dat. in the first three meanings, now usually here auf einen, auf etwas hören) to mind, pay attention to, answer to (a name), listen to (in this meaning still with dat. in elevated diction, but replaced in plain prose by zuhören with dat.), lassen to become, look pretty on, lauschen (perhaps more commonly auf with acc.) to listen to, liegen to be adapted to, pa'rieren (see gehorchen), passen to fit, suit, be agreeable to, sein (poet.) to be accorded to (see ex.), sitzen to fit, stehen to become, look well on, trauen to trust, mißtrauen to distrust, vertrauen to confide in, werden (in choice language) to come into one's possession, fall to one's lot, ziemen or geziemen (or es ziemt or geziemt sich für) to befit, be fitting for: Das Haus eignet mir. Nur der Körper eignet jenen Mächten, die das dunkle Schicksal flechten. Den Löwen eignet es, einsam zu lagern. Und doch bin ich der einzige, dem er (der Pudel) hört (Lessing's *Minna*, 1, 8). Ich höre staunend Euren Worten (Gutzkow's *Uriel Acosta*, 1, 1). Selbst der Zorn läßt ihr schön. Gehen wir schließlich zu dem unseres Wissens ersten Versuch der auf belletristischem Gebiet beliebten Frau Ilse Frapan-Akunian über, so will mich bedünken, daß auch dieser talentvollen Dame das dramatische Genre nicht liegt (Stöckhardt in *Die schöne Literatur, Beilage zum Literarischen Zentralblatt*, Nr. 24, 3. Jahrg.). Der Rache sei ihr Recht, dem Recht sei Rache! (Grillparzer's *Ein treuer Diener*, 4). Dieser Rock sitzt Ihnen wie angegossen This coat fits you to perfection. Ehre ward euch und Sieg (Schiller). Ein grandioserer Anblick ist mir nie geworden (Liliencron's *Kriegsnovellen*, Anno 1870). Dergleichen ziemt mir nicht.

The verb may be understood: Der Wahrheit die Ehre! May honor be accorded to truth. Dem gemeinsamen Vaterlande alle Wünsche, alle Gedanken, alle Kräfte! (Admiral von Knorr, Aug. 5, 1914).

Earlier in the period sein was used with a dative of possession: Wem ist das Haus da drüben? (Goethe's *Stella*, 1). Occasionally still: Der Graben war uns! (Generalleutnant z. D. Schott in *Kriegs-Chronik des Daheim*, Band III, p. 32). This construction probably rests upon Latin and French usage and has never taken deep root in German.

d. *Approach, restraining, yielding, similarity, dissimilarity*: ähneln or less commonly ähnen to bear some resemblance to, ahnden (earlier in the period), now entirely replaced by ahnen (now with non-personal subject when the dat. is employed, earlier in the period sometimes also when the acc. was used; also with a personal subject and an acc. object) to have a presentiment of, begegnen (earlier in the period, not infrequently with the acc., and still occasionally so) to meet, treat, sich beugen (with simple dat. or vor with dat.) to bow to, submit to, erliegen to succumb to, erscheinen to appear to, folgen to follow, sich einem or more commonly zu einem gesellen to join (go to) someone, gleichen to resemble, be like, kommen to come to (in a figurative sense), attack, treat, speak to, (sich) nahen or more commonly sich nähern to approach, to come very close to, i.e. to be almost equal to (in this sense always sich nähern: Seine Aufregung nähert sich der Raserei), earlier in the period both verbs also with zu with the dat. instead of the simple dat.), pa'rieren to parry one's thrust, meet one's arguments, schwanken to have a presentiment of, steuern to check, träumen (see also 219. 4. A. b) to appear to in a dream, dream of, verfallen to meet with (a sad fate, &c.), become a prey to, wehren to hinder, restrain, check, weichen to yield to: Der Sohn ähnelt oft dem Vater. Und ähn' ich so dem Tiere mehr — | wohlan! so häut' ich mich vielleicht einmal, | und es entpuppt, wie's ja zuweilen schon | geschehen ist, sich aus dem Tier der Heilige (Hauptmann's *Der arme Heinrich*, 2, 6). Es ahnt (formerly also ahndet) mir (formerly also mich) nichts Gutes. Ich ahnte nichts davon. Ich bin ihm auf der Straße begegnet. Da begegneten wir Wunderlich, den Assessor, auf der Treppe (Bismarck to his wife, Sept. 26, 1850). Er begegnete auf der Straße die Lehrer vom Gymnasium (Ompteda's *Sylvester von Geyer*, xxii). Nicht deine Jahre zählte das Volk, nur deine Taten . . . Greise beugten sich willig deiner Jugend (Sudermann's *Teja*, 3). Beuge dich vor dem Alter! Sich diesen zu gesellen, fiel Opitz aber nicht ein (Fontane's *Quitt*, chap. iii). Er gleicht seinem Vater, wie ein Ei dem anderen. Diese Einsicht kommt Ihnen spät. Kommen Ihnen da keine Gedanken, Ohm Reinhold? (Halbe's *Der Strom*, p. 11). Wir kommen ihm eben, wie man so einem kommen muß. Langsam, vorsichtig, Schritt um Schritt! (ib., p. 55) We shall attack it (the river, in attempting to regulate its course), &c. Laß dir nicht so kommen! Don't put up with such treatment! Komm mir nicht so! Don't speak to me in that way! Wagte sie einmal, ihren Mann nach Heinz zu fragen, so blieb er entweder ganz die Antwort schuldig oder hieß sie ihm mit dem Jungen ein für alle Mal nicht mehr zu kommen (Storm's *Hans und Heinz Kirch*). Ich habe das Gefühl, daß alles halbwegs Gescheite, das ich im Hirn hatte, verausgabt ist, um Ihnen zu parieren (Suttner's *Im Berghause*, p. 33), but



Ich parierte den Schlag mit einem Stock. Mir schwant nichts Gutes. Mir schwant nichts von Gefahr. Mir schwant, daß usw. Heute kommt er gewiß; es schwant mir so. Er steuert der Unordnung. Als sie endlich schlief, träumten ihr häßliche Dinge (H Bohlau's *Adam und Eva*, chap 1) Er verfiel einem traurigen Schicksal. Ich verfiel den Ideen, die du kennst (Otto Ernst's *Jugend von heute*, 4, 7) Man muß dem Bosen wehren mit harter Strafe.

After transitive verbs of removal the dative is much used to indicate the person from whom  
 . . . . . mir meine Brieftasche weg He took my pocket-book away  
 . . . . . Uhr. Der Wolf raubt dem Hirten Schafe. This dat is  
 . . . . . n, but in German it does not in fact express separation,  
 . . . . . w) denoting the person that is benefited or injured by the

action

e A declaration, response, announcement, signaling, advice, thus in general in accordance with the original meaning of the dative indicating the direction of an activity toward a goal, now usually a person antworten (see a, Note) to answer, aufbieten (earlier in the period einer Armee, allen seinen Kräften, allem aufbieten, now with the acc, alle seine Kräfte, alles aufbieten, as the idea of a change of place here as in 257. 2 C c has suggested the use of the acc) lit to send word to (an army, one's physical or intellectual forces, &c) to rise, now felt as meaning to call out, summon, often for to do one's utmost beten (which is only in elevated style, usually

gen to reply to, erwidern to  
 . . . . . (einem für etwas burgen) to  
 . . . . . gen to reply to, erwidern to  
 . . . . . to pray to, implore küssen

reply to

to c

moi

by

(a c

plac

gen

phieren,

schreier

auf dies

Kellner

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

notice to

dem [= von dem]  
 Compare 3 A b

below

g In early N H G other verbs not included in the above lists governed the dat, such as bescheiden (Matth xxviii 16), lieben (Ecclus vii 28, the dat still surviving after the derivatives belieben and gelieben; see a above) in early N H G to be dear to, betten (see 259 9), schonen

or . . . . . xxi 3),  
 . . . . . vividly  
 . . . . . Poetry

the fol-

following prefixes ad, an, auf, aus, bei, be'vor, ein

inne, nach, nahe, ob, unter, vor, vo'rauf, vo'raus, vor

and in a few cases über and um. Exs Sein Betr

attention Der Name fällt mir nicht gleich wieder

warm for him, is putting into him the dative is not governed by ein but belongs to the whole

sentence and hence is a dative of interest (see 3 B below) Der Jäger stellt dem Wilde nach

The hunter is on the watch for the game Es kam mir sonderbar vor. Er eilte mir voran He

hurried on ahead of me Mir ist großes Unrecht widerfahren Mir ist viel Gutes von ihnen

widerfahren. Wider'sprich mir nicht. Er setzte mir mit Bitten stark zu. Er kam mir zuvor.

For exceptions see 262 I b, 2nd par.

In M H G mit belonged to this list, and survives in the transitive mitteilen (einem etwas

mitteilen) to communicate to, lit to share with and with

Compare 223 I 9 B 1 a Neuere Nachrichten lassen es als ziemlich

sicher erscheinen, daß Hendrik Witboi der aufständischen Bewegung nicht fernsteht (Hamb.

*Nachr.*, Oct. 15, 1904). Die Sprache steht den reichsten nahe, wenn nicht gleich oder über (*Archiv für das Studium der neueren Sprachen*, 63, 197). Im Neuhochdeutschen kann sich dieser mechanische Trieb dem logischen Bedürfnis überordnen (Andreas Heusler in *Anzeiger für deutsches Altertum*, 1902, p. 328). Er sagt ihm ab (early N.H.G.) He sends him a challenge, breaks with him, lit. announces that he has separated himself from him. Er schwört seinem Gott ab, or Er schwört dem Kaiser ab He renounces his god, or the emperor, lit. swears that he has separated himself from his god, or from the emperor, but the acc. often occurs here indicating a different point of view: seinen Gott, seinen Glauben, seine Farben abschwören to swear that one has given up (lit. put away) his god, his former faith, his colors. Ich habe allem Glück entsagt I have renounced (lit. separated myself from) all happiness. Er weicht mir, dem Wagen aus. Du bist meinem Einflusse entwachsen. Er ist der Gefahr entflohen. Das Wort ist meinem Munde nur im Zorn entfahren. Er entstammt einem alten patrizischen Geschlecht.

a. Transitives having these prefixes take a direct object of the person or thing in the acc. and an object of the person or thing in the dat., denoting the individual to whose advantage or disadvantage the action accrues, or indicating a goal, place, association (see 262. I. b, 3rd par.), separation, source: Er sagte, schrieb, telegraphierte, telephonierte ihm den Besuch ab He canceled his promised visit by spoken word, by letter, by wire, by phone, or often the acc. is suppressed: Er sagte, schrieb usw. ihm ab. Er trocknete ihm den Schweiß ab. In poetic language Er trocknete der Stirne den Schweiß, das Blut ab, but in plain prose von usually replaces the dative of the thing: Er trocknete den Schweiß von der Stirne ab, also the dat. of the person after abwenden: Er wandte sich von mir ab. Er drängte ihm seine Ansichten auf, or with the omission of the dat., where it refers to the subject: Er setzte [sich] den Hut auf, but where the prepositional object is a thing the prepositional construction is usually employed or the object is suppressed: Man setzt das Essen auf den Tisch, or Man setzt das Essen auf. Er legt meinen Worten einen andern Sinn unter He puts another meaning into my words. Sie singt uns heute abend das Lied vor She is going to sing the song to us this evening. Er sagt mir Böses nach He speaks ill of me. Er bot mir seinen Beistand an. Er widersetzte sich der Obrigkeit. Du hast den Jüngling dem Verderben zugeführt. Er legt dem Pferde den Zaum an. Er setzte dem Pferde einen Sattel auf. Er setzte dem Buche eine Vorrede vor. Er legte dem Huhne Eier zum Brüten unter. Binde dir das Tuch um! Du hast mich allem Leiden entrückt. Er hat das Beste in seinen Werken (von) den Alten entlehnt. In the passive the accusative becomes nominative, the dative remains: Eier wurden dem Huhne zum Brüten untergelegt.

At the first glance it might seem that the dative in many of these compounds depends upon the preposition contained in the compound. A closer inspection, however, will show conclusively that the dative is used with an, auf, unter, vor even with verbs of motion, where according to usage elsewhere the acc. should be used. Contrary to older usage (see 262. I. b, 2nd par.) the dative is now used with these prefixes without regard to the idea of rest or motion. Different factors have brought about this uniformity. In many of the compounds the idea of reference (3. A below) or personal interest is stronger than the usual force of the preposition, and thus leads to the use of the dative. The words often have a figurative or altered meaning, so that the usual force of the preposition is not vividly felt. The use of the dative with the transitives here is made easy by the fact that the construction is thus conformed to one of the commonest types in the language, namely, the use of the dative in connection with an accusative. For additional treatment of this common type see 262. I. b.

The employment of the dative with wider here while it elsewhere only governs the accusative is explained by older usage, according to which it took either dative or accusative. To-day we find the dative after wider'fahren to happen to, befall, wider'stehen to be repugnant to, wider'streben to strive or struggle against, be opposed to, wider'sprechen or wider'reden to contradict, wider'streiten to clash with, militate against, sich wider'setzen to resist: Es widerstrebt meinem Gefühl. Das widerstreitet unseren Freiheitsbriefen. Er widersetzte sich dem Schutzmann. The accusative is used with wider'raten to speak 'against, advise someone against, wider'legen to refute: Das sind Erscheinungen, welche die Verordnung eines Heilmittels wider'raten. Ich hatte es (object of wider) ihm widerraten. A little earlier in the period also wider'sprechen was often used with an accusative. This older usage survives in unwider'sprechlich incontrovertible, which presupposes a transitive wider'sprechen: wiewohl Notizen dieser Art gehen unwidersprochen in die Welt (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Jan. 1, 1907). Of course, such words as wider'rufen to retract, repeal, lit. to call back, wider'hallen (trans.; see 215. II. 3. A. e), &c. take the acc. as the noun is the object of the verb, the prefix being an adverb.

b. Also a foreign prefix can take a dat. object if it has the force of a German prefix: Wir meiden den Bezirk, welcher dem schwedischen Kriegsvolk kontribuiert (= beisteuert) (Freytag's *Rittmeister*, chap. iv). Wie können Sie mir dergleichen imputieren, was mir doch nicht einmal im Traume einfallen würde! (Spielhagen's *Sturmflut*, I. 9). Mit dem Adjektiv hat das Partizipium gemein, daß es einem Substantivum des Satzes attribuiert ist (Brugmann's *Kurze Vergleichende Grammatik*, p. 606). Wo ein Relativsatz einem einfachen Attribut koordiniert ist (*Anzeiger für deutsches Altertum und deutsche Literatur*, xxix, 3. Januar 1904, p. 173). Ja sehen Sie, wenn man den Frauen opponiert (entgegentritt), so nennen sie das immer Grobheit (Otto Ernst's *Jugend von heute*, 1, 10). Thus also adhären to adhere to, aggregieren to attach (an officer) to, akklamieren to acclaim, applaud, applaudieren (sometimes also with acc.) to applaud, ein Wort einem anderen apponieren to place one word in apposition with another, assentieren to agree with, assistieren to help, be present at, attachieren to attach to the suite of (as in Er ist der [or bei der] Gesandtschaft attachiert), einem seine Ankunft avisieren, or einen von seiner Ankunft avisieren to notify someone of, &c., imponieren to impress forcibly, awe,

präsidiieren (sometimes with acc.) to preside over, einem etwas proponieren to propose something to someone, einer Sache eine andere substituieren or eine Sache statt der anderen substituieren to substitute one thing for another, suggerieren to suggest to, sukzedieren to follow, succeed.

C. *Dative after Loosely Compounded Verbs.* The dative object also stands after a number of loosely compounded verbs.

gereichen to redound to (one's) glory, standhalten to hold one's own against, worthalten to keep one's promise with, zugute kommen to be to one's benefit, heimkommen to come home to (in a fig. sense), zu Hilfe kommen to come to one's aid, zustatten kommen to come in handy to, be of use to, zu stehen kommen (see 269, 29) to cost, come to, einem (or now often also incorrectly einen) zur Ader [Blut understood] lassen to bleed (draw blood from) someone, heimleuchten to make short work with (someone), give (someone) a piece of one's mind, turn (someone) off, einem or einen (the dat. to be construed as the indirect object of the verb and angst as a noun) to frighten (someone).

den Hof machen to court, pay one's addresses to a lady, einem dreinreden to put in words and thus interrupt someone, das Wort reden to defend, einem für etwas gutsagen to stand respon-

(den Umständen usw.) Rechnung tragen to take into account, make allowance for, genügen  
" ex. ), not sein or not tun

ihm zugute He gets the

projektierten oder wirklich vollzogenen, von dem Tode aus, nach 25 Jahren ein Gericht erging (Hecy's *Im Paradiese*, I, chap. vii). Die Arznei wird Ihnen guttun. Sie tun mir leid I feel quite sorry for you. Mut ist uns not und ein gefaßter Geist (Schiller). Lenke deine Seele jetzt auf andere meinetwegen irdische Dinge, es tut dir not (Hauptmann's *Der arme Heinrich*, 4). Das ist, was uns not tut.

We often find this favorite dative construction where in English we have a prepositional object. In German both of these constructions are used with a slight shade of meaning. The preposition points to a person toward whom the activity is directed, while the simple dative  
ru personal interests  
nacht hatte (Goethe's  
(Suttner's *Im Reine*

*Vermächtnis der Tante Susanne*. Ich führte ihm zu Gemüte, daß usw. I impressed upon his mind that, &c. Er ~~hatte~~ <sup>setzte</sup> es ihm zu Gemüte, daß usw. I put it down to him, &c. Er ~~hatte~~ <sup>setzte</sup> es ihm nicht angenommen w. I made allowance for him. Niemand weiß es. No one knows it. Ich tat keine Feige was zuleide.

4. A number of impersonal verbs take a dat. object. These verbs are enumerated in 219.

2. *Dative after Adjectives, Participles, Adverbs, Nouns.* Also adjectives, participles, adverbs, nouns (a person) (a faithful person).

pressed by a preposition: Er ist mir, den Lügen feind He is an enemy to me, lies.

A. The following are the principal adjectives, participles, and adverbs which are used with the dative:

*Nachr.*, Oct. 15, 1904). Die Sprache steht den reichsten nahe, wenn nicht gleich oder über (*Archiv für das Studium der neueren Sprachen*, 63, 197). Im Neuhochdeutschen kann sich dieser mechanische Trieb dem logischen Bedürfnis überordnen (Andreas Heusler in *Anzeiger für deutsches Altertum*, 1902, p. 328). Er sagt ihm ab (early N.H.G.) He sends him a challenge, breaks with him, lit. announces that he has separated himself from him. Er schwört seinem Gott ab, or Er schwört dem Kaiser ab He renounces his god, or the emperor, lit. swears that he has separated himself from his god, or from the emperor, but the acc. often occurs here indicating a different point of view: seinen Gott, seinen Glauben, seine Farben abschwören to swear that one has given up (lit. put away) his god, his former faith, his colors. Ich habe allem Glück entsagt I have renounced (lit. separated myself from) all happiness. Er weicht mir, dem Wagen aus. Du bist meinem Einflusse entwachsen. Er ist der Gefahr entflohen. Das Wort ist meinem Munde nur im Zorn entfahren. Er entstammt einem alten patrizischen Geschlecht.

a. Transitives having these prefixes take a direct object of the person or thing in the acc. and an object of the person or thing in the dat., denoting the individual to whose advantage or disadvantage the action accrues, or indicating a goal, place, association (see 262. I. b, 3rd par.), separation, source: Er sagte, schrieb, telegraphierte, telephonierte ihm den Besuch ab He canceled his promised visit by spoken word, by letter, by wire, by phone, or often the acc. is suppressed: Er sagte, schrieb usw. ihm ab. Er trocknete ihm den Schweiß ab. In poetic language Er trocknete der Stirne den Schweiß, das Blut ab, but in plain prose von usually replaces the dative of the thing: Er trocknete den Schweiß von der Stirne ab, also the dat. of the person after abwenden: Er wandte sich von mir ab. Er drängte ihm seine Ansichten auf, or with the omission of the dat., where it refers to the subject: Er setzte [sich] den Hut auf, but where the prepositional object is a thing the prepositional construction is usually employed or the object is suppressed: Man setzt das Essen auf den Tisch, or Man setzt das Essen auf. Er legt meinen Worten einen andern Sinn unter He puts another meaning into my words. Sie singt uns heute abend das Lied vor She is going to sing the song to us this evening. Er sagt mir Böses nach He speaks ill of me. Er bot mir seinen Beistand an. Er widersetzte sich der Obrigkeit. Du hast den Jüngling dem Verderben zugeführt. Er legt dem Pferde den Zaum an. Er setzte dem Pferde einen Sattel auf. Er setzte dem Buche eine Vorrede vor. Er legte dem Huhne Eier zum Brüten unter. Binde dir das Tuch um! Du hast mich allem Leiden entrückt. Er hat das Beste in seinen Werken (von) den Alten entlehnt. In the passive the accusative becomes nominative, the dative remains: Eier wurden dem Huhne zum Brüten untergelegt.

At the first glance it might seem that the dative in many of these compounds depends upon the preposition contained in the compound. A closer inspection, however, will show conclusively that the dative is used with an, auf, unter, vor even with verbs of motion, where according to usage elsewhere the acc. should be used. Contrary to older usage (see 262. I. b, 2nd par.) the dative is now used with these prefixes without regard to the idea of rest or motion. Different factors have brought about this uniformity. In many of the compounds the idea of reference (3. A below) or personal interest is stronger than the usual force of the preposition, and thus leads to the use of the dative. The words often have a figurative or altered meaning, so that the usual force of the preposition is not vividly felt. The use of the dative with the transitives here is made easy by the fact that the construction is thus conformed to one of the commonest types in the language, namely, the use of the dative in connection with an accusative. For additional treatment of this common type see 262. I. b.

The employment of the dative with wider here while it elsewhere only governs the accusative is explained by older usage, according to which it took either dative or accusative. To-day we find the dative after widerfahren to happen to, befall, widerstehen to be repugnant to, widerstreben to strive or struggle against, be opposed to, widersprechen or widerreden to contradict, widerstreiten to clash with, militate against, sich widersetzen to resist: Es widerstrebt meinem Gefühl. Das widerstreitet unseren Freiheitsbriefen. Er widersetzte sich dem Schutzmänn. The accusative is used with widerraten to speak against, advise someone against, widerlegen to refute: Das sind Erscheinungen, welche die Verordnung eines Heilmittels widerraten. Ich hatte es (object of wider) ihm widerraten. A little earlier in the period also widersprechen was often used with an accusative. This older usage survives in unwidersprechlich incontrovertible, which presupposes a transitive widersprechen: wiewohl Notizen dieser Art gehen unwidersprochen in die Welt (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Jan. 1, 1907). Of course, such words as widerrufen to retract, repeal, lit. to call back, widerhallen (trans.; see 215. II. 3. A. e), &c. take the acc. as the noun is the object of the verb, the prefix being an adverb.

b. Also a foreign prefix can take a dat. object if it has the force of a German prefix: Wir meiden den Bezirk, welcher dem schwedischen Kriegsvolk kontribuiert (= beisteuert) (Freytag's *Rittmeister*, chap. iv). Wie können Sie mir dergleichen imputieren, was mir doch nicht einmal im Traume einfallen würde! (Spielhagen's *Sturmflut*, I. 9). Mit dem Adjektiv hat das Partizipium gemein, daß es einem Substantivum des Satzes attribuiert ist (Brugmann's *Kurze Vergleichende Grammatik*, p. 606). Wo ein Relativsatz einem einfachen Attribut koordiniert ist (*Anzeiger für deutsches Altertum und deutsche Literatur*, xxix, 3. Januar 1904, p. 173). Ja sehen Sie, wenn man den Frauen opponiert (entgegentritt), so nennen sie das immer Grobheit (Otto Ernst's *Jugend von heute*, 1, 10). Thus also adhären to adhere to, aggregieren to attach (an officer) to, akklamieren to acclaim, applaud, applaudieren (sometimes also with acc.) to applaud, ein Wort einem anderen apponieren to place one word in apposition with another, assentieren to agree with, assistieren to help, be present at, attachieren to attach to the suite of (as in Er ist der [or bei der] Gesandtschaft attachiert), einem seine Ankunft avisieren, or einen von seiner Ankunft avisieren to notify someone of, &c., imponieren to impress forcibly, awe,

C. *Dative after Loosely Compounded Verbs* The dative object also stands after a number of verbs loosely compounded with an adjective, noun, adverb, or prep phrase *sich Bahn brechen* to break a path for one's self, *anheimfallen* to fall to (one's lot), *devolve upon*, *eschwatzen* to, fall a prey to, *es fällt mir leicht* it is, comes easy to me, *es geht mir gut* I am (doing) well, *mit Rat und Hilfe zur Hand gehen* to assist by word or deed, *zu Leibe gehen* to attack, *zum Ruhme gereichen* to redound to

keep (in a be of to, einem (or now often also incorrectly raw blood from) someone, *heimleuchten*

to make short work with (someone), give (someone) a piece of one's mind, turn (someone) off, *einem* or *einen* (the dat. to be construed as the indirect object of the verb and *angst* as a noun used as direct object, the acc. to be construed as the direct object of the verb and *angst* as an objective predicate adjective)

construed as an adverb with d *einem* *gruselig* machen to make

excited, *einem* *warm* machen to make it hot for someone, *einem* mit alten *Erinnerungen* *warm* machen to warm someone up or thaw him out by arousing old memories in him, *einer* *Dame* den Hof machen to court, pay one's addresses to a lady, *einem* *dreinreden* to put in words and thus interrupt someone, *das* *Wort* *reden* to defend, *einem* für etwas *gutsagen* to stand responsible to someone for something, *lobsungen* to sing praises to, *hohnsprechen* (sep.) to scoff at, *einem* zur *Vernunft* sprechen to urge one to come to reason, be reasonable, *Rede* *stehen* to answer one, account to someone for something, zu *Diensten* *stehen* to be at one's service, *einer* *Sache* (den Umständen usw.) *Rechnung* *tragen* to take into account, make allowance for, *genugtu*

with pity (see ex.), not sein or not tun *wehtun* to hurt, grieve, *sauer* werden

en to fall to (one's) lot, *einem* *Dank* für etwas *wissen* to be thankful to someone for something, *wohlwollen* to be kindly disposed toward, *heimzahlen* to pay (someone) back (fig.), and many others of like formation Exs

*Das gereicht ihm zum Ruhme* That redounds to his glory *Das kommt ihm zugute* He gets the benefit of it *Die Erfahrung kommt ihm zustatten* Experience

soll ihm *teuer* zu stehen kommen He shall pay dearly for it *Absicht* gehabt, mir e *schon* *mal* *K* sprach der Mutter zu *ten* in *was* besten Freunde, hat

lich vollzogenen Heirat geworden ist, von der vor etwa sechs I *Im Paradiese*, I, chap vii) *Die* *Arznei* wird Ihnen *guttun*, *Sie* tun mir *leid* I feel quite sorry for you *Mut* ist uns *not* und ein *gefaßter* *Geist* (Schiller), *Lenke* deine *Seele* *jetzt* auf andere

meinetwegen *irdische* Dinge, es tut dir *not* (Hauptmann's *Der arme Heinrich*, 4) *Das* ist, was uns *not* tut.

We often find this favorite dative construction where in English we have a prepositional object In German both of these constructions preposition points to a

Such compounds occur often in connection with a dat. of the person or thing, and an acc. of the person or thing, or a clause *Eines Tages stieg auch er langsam und gewichtig die drei Treppen zu*

*Susannes Wohnung hinauf, um sich der Tante in Erinnerung zu bringen* (Isolde Kurz's *Das Vermächtnis der Tante Susanne*) *Ich* führte ihm zu Gemüte, daß usw. I impressed upon his

mind that, &c. *Er* gab seine Familie dem Elende preis. *Ich* hielt es seiner Unwissenheit zu-  
gute I put it down to his ignorance. *Aber* man wußte, daß der alte Herr Zeit in Polchow

nicht angenommen p 208) made all please him Nie l hagen's Herrin, One can never

nichts weis Teil: D A number of impersonal verbs take a dat. object These verbs are enumerated in 219.

4. A b 2. *Dative after Adjectives, Participles, Adverbs* Nouns. At tives, par-  
ticiples and a person)

t ing faith-  
pressed by a preposition: *Er* ist mir, den Lügen *feind* He is an enemy to me,

to lies

A. The following are the principal adjectives, participles, and adverbs which are used with the dative:

a. Those signifying inclination, attitude (harshness, kindness, favorableness, &c.), gratification, comfort, service, benefit, a sufficiency, a belonging to, being peculiar to, fidelity, obedience, fitness, nearness, association, similarity, conformity, superiority, and their opposites, all of which conform in general meaning to the verbs in 1. A above: *Er ist mir gram* He has conceived a dislike toward me. *Er ist mir böse* (angry at). *Sie ist mir, meinem Plane nicht hold.* *Ihr Besuch ist mir stets angenehm.* *Weil — — weil's nicht wahr ist; und weil mir nichts zuwiderer ist als die Unwahrheit* (Wildbrandt's *Die gute Lorelei*, vii). *Sein Vergehen ist ihm leid* He is sorry for his fault. *Laß dir das nicht leid sein!* Don't be uneasy about that! *Das Unternehmen wurde ihm leid* He began to repent of his enterprise. *Diese Speise ist dem Kranken nicht zuträglich or bekömmlich.* *Die Maikäfer sind den Bäumen schädlich.* *Die mir gehörigen Bücher* the books which belong to me. *Naschen ist den Kindern eigen.* *Das Mädchen ist ihm treu.* *Er ist seinen Idealen abtrünnig geworden.* *Er wohnt uns am nächsten.* *Meinem Hause benachbart liegt das Haus eines jüdischen Mannes* (Heyse's *Maria von Magdala*, 1, 5). *Der Knabe ist dem Vater sehr ähnlich.* *Die Kamele lagern Felsblöcken gleich im Sande.* *Die Richtung des Stromes, der Stromstrich, läuft hier dem Ufer nicht parallel.* *Er ist mir darin über* *He is superior to me in that*, but when the subject is a thing über has developed a meaning somewhat different in its application: *Das Leben, das sie jetzt führte, war ihr ohnehin über geworden* (Telmann's *Wahrheit*, IX) *She had besides become sick of the life*, &c.

Note. The dative after adjectives, participles, and verbs is often replaced by a prep. construction. Except in figurative language, or in case of personification where things are represented as having interests, as in the tenth sentence, the prep. construction is the rule for nouns representing things, and is also common for persons, as the various prepositions can express so many appropriate shades of meaning: *Er ist mir geneigt* *He is favorably inclined toward me*, but *Der Mensch ist zum Bösen geneigt* *Man is inclined to evil.* *Die Schuhe passen mir* *The shoes fit me*, but *Der Deckel paßt auf den Topf* *The lid fits on the kettle.* *Die beiden Leute passen recht zu einander* *The two form a good match.* *Das Haus gehört (belongs) mir.* *Er gehört in das Haus* *The house is the place for him.* *Er gehört unter meine besten Freunde* *He is one of my best friends.* *Er gehört zu unsrer Freundschaft* *He belongs to our circle of friends.* *Dieser Schuh gehört auf den linken Fuß.* *Die Anmerkung gehört nicht hierher, sondern an eine andere Stelle.*

b. The dat. also stands after adjectives in many set expressions in connection with a verb, especially an impersonal verb: *Mir ist wirr im Kopf* *My head is confused.* *Mir ist gar nicht lächerlich zu Mute* *I am by no means in a laughing mood.* *Mir wird von alledem so dumm, als ging' mir ein Mühlrad im Kopf herum.* *Mir ist übel* *I feel sick at my stomach.*

B. *Dative after Nouns.* The dative is sometimes found with nouns which have meanings and form corresponding to verbs in 1 and adjectives in A above: *Vergebens war es, daß der Bürgermeister Gehorsam dem Gesetze forderte* (Immermann's *Münchhausen*, 6, 11). *Diese Kunstwerke sind bloß seit 1816 nach ihrer Einverleibung dem britischen Museum in die allgemeine Kenntnis übergegangen* (Springer's *Kunsthistorische Briefe*, p. 197). *Ich schwöre Treue der Verfassung, Gehorsam den Gesetzen usw.* (official oath prescribed Aug. 14, 1919). Altho this dative has been attempted by different authors, it has not become established, and is usually replaced by a prep. construction: *Daß sich für die Jugend Gehorsam unter das Gesetz zieme* (Gutzkow). *Der Gehorsam der Untertanen gegen die Obrigkeit.* In many cases, however, the dative is seemingly connected with a noun, where in reality it belongs to the sentence as a whole, i.e. it is in fact a sentence dative as described in 3, A, B, C below: *Er war mir ein Vater.* *Er ist . . . ein Muster Bürgern und Bauern* (Goethe's *H. und D.*, III, 53). *Das war euch eine Freude* *That was a joy, I can tell you.*

3. *The Sentence Dative.* The dative in the preceding articles is more or less connected with a single verb, verbal expression, or an adjective whose meaning it completes, but the dative of the person (or far less commonly of the thing) interested in the statement is often used to qualify the whole sentence, and thus is not limited to a definite group of verbs or adjectives. This dative shows the following shades of use:

A. *The Dative of Reference.* The dative often denotes the person to whom the statement seems true, or with reference to whom it holds good: *Wir heißen ihm nur Kinder* *We are to him only children.* *Sie ist mir schön* *To me she is pretty.* *Das ist mir ein Rätsel* *That is a riddle to me.* *Das bleibt mir ein großer Trost.* *Das Kleid ist mir zu lang* *The dress is too long for me.* *Der Rock ist ihm nicht weit genug.* *Das ist mir nicht ganz klar.* *Es klang dem peinlich gespannten Ohr wie fernher rauschendes Wasser.* *Bin ich derselbe denn nicht mehr, dem hier sonst alle Türen sprangen?* *Am I not any more the same man, to whom once all doors stood open?* *Mir* (upon me, as far as I am concerned) *hinterließ seine Rede einen tiefen Eindruck.* *Das ist mir nicht erinnerlich* *I do not remember that.* *Er machte es mir leicht* *He made it easy for me.* *Er machte es mir möglich zu reisen.* *Dem Zornigen wallt das Blut,*

schwellen die Muskeln, dem Argerlichen läuft die Galle über. „Willst du sein Werben eine Drohung nennen?“ „Es ist die schrecklichste von allen mir“ (Goethe's *Iphigenie*, 1, 2) Mir war zuweilen, als sei ich von unserm lieben Gott geschieden (Freytag's *Rittmeister*, ix) Ich mochte dir was sein können (Hauptmann's *Einsame Menschen*, 2) So (because he was supposed to be unacquainted with the German language) konnte er sich kleine Frechheiten erlauben, die einem anderen nicht durchgegangen waren (Beyerlein's *Jena oder Sedan?*, iv) This dative is often found in the old verbless attributive type of sentence described in 252 1 b Note Freies Wort jeder Partei (on the title page of *Der Tag*) The columns of this newspaper are open to every party The noun Wort is here the logical subject and the attributive adjective freies is the logical predicate The dative is also often used here where the attributive adjective is the logical objective predicate Freie Bahn dem Tüchtigen! Let us keep the road (to employment, promotion in public service, &c) open to able men Freie is here the logical objective predicate to Bahn, which is the object of some verb understood Compare 262. III 2 B Similarly the dative is found in verbless subordinate clauses of the old appositional type So sprich von Szylla, leiblich dir Geschwisterkind (Goethe's *Faust*, I 8813)

A preposition can often replace the dative here, usually, however, with a shade of meaning Die Nachricht war meinem Vater wichtig The news was important to my father, i.e. he felt it as such, but Die Nachricht war für meinen Vater wichtig The news was of importance for my father, i.e. in and of itself, whether he was conscious of it or not Er ist den Armen ein Vater He is a father to the poor (and they feel the results of this relation), but Der nicht jung war mit unsern Junglingen, | dem unsre Worte nicht zum Herzen tonen, | kann er ein Vater sein zu seinen Söhnen? (Schiller's *Jungfrau*, Prolog, 3) because the poet calls attention to the attitude rather than its resultant effects upon the persons

a Dative of Agent After the predicate modal verbal (180 A) and after verbal adjectives in -bar, -lich, and -sam, this dat. has the force of a dative of agent the person in the dat. with reference to whom the statement performing the action holds good is also getragen — (es ist) keinem Sterblichen z the expression Das macht mir zu schaffen expression In connection with the modal verbal von and often necessary to make the thought clear with -bar, -lich, and -sam, the dat. is usual

... dieser Versuch macht ...

Anspruch  
en, eine  
(Franz's)

personal view of the speaker Also when latter with passive force the agent can be in the dat dem Volke sehen (Gellert) Other examples a dative is also found with a passive perfect part von keinem Zeugen behorcht

b Poetic Dative of Cause In poetic language the dative is very common to denote a person or dir Sieh, ich beähte nicht dir (in prose vor bel (in prose von dem) Stoß des Widders cla f verbs given in I A f might also be use the dative is usually replaced by a prep construction

B The Dative of Interest The dat. often denotes the person to whose advantage or disadvantage the action results Sein Herz schlug der ganzen Menschheit His heart beat for all humanity Dir (for you) blüht gewiß das schönste Glück der Erde Irre ich | so jrrer ich mir (Job xix 4) Das Pferd lief ihm fort The horse ran away from him lit ran away to his discomfiture

This dative, tho not infrequent with intransitives, is much more common with transitives, where it is often used even when from an English standpoint there seems to be no need of it: **Schreiben Sie mir diese Aufgabe ab** Copy this exercise for me. **Komm' auch, sieh' dir's an** Come too and look at it for yourself. **Er kauft seinem Sohne ein Pferd.** Kämmerer: **Sie stirbt.** Ute: **Ich könnt' ihr** (for her sake) **wünschen, es wäre so!** (Hebbel's *Nibelungen*, II, vi, 5). **Keinem anderen wollte sie den Karren ziehen, aber ihm** (Carl Busse's *Die schöne Andrea*). **So nahm ich mir** (not translated into English) **zu Hause nur Zeit, mich anzuziehen** (dress) **und zu frühstücken, und fuhr sofort wieder nach Siebenschloß** (name of a castle).

This dative is much used in prose, but very much more so in poetry: **Wohl wittert jedes Wesen seinen Feind; | drum hegt auch dir** (in prose gegen dich) **der Kaiser wildern Haß | und unversöhnlicheren, als mir** (= gegen mich) **selbst** (Uhland).

a. This dat. is used with unusual frequency instead of a possessive or a genitive: **Der Kopf brummt mir** My head is just roaring. **Mir juckt der ganze Leib.** **Sie putzt sich die Zähne** She is brushing her teeth. **Mir** (or **Dem Wilhelm**) **scheint die Sonne ins Gesicht** The sun shines in my (or William's) face. Here, as in English, the possessive or gen. might also be used: **Die Sonne scheint in mein Gesicht** (or in **Wilhelms Gesicht**). These two constructions are not, however, exactly equivalent in force: **Dem Pferde sitzt eine Wespe auf dem Rücken**, but **Dies Bild zeigt ein schönes Pferd, auf dessen Rücken ein kleiner Knabe sitzt.** Compare with: "She looked me tenderly in the eyes" as contrasted with "The doctor looked in my eyes" (to examine them). The dat. makes more prominent the person to whose advantage or disadvantage the action accrues. Thus the possessive, not the dative, is used in **Da zerriß der Hohepriester seinen Rock** (Mark xiv. 63), as the high priest had no desire of injuring himself in tearing his coat, but the dative is in place where it is desired to show that an injury or loss ensues: **Der Junge zerriß sich beim Fallen den Rock.** Sometimes both dat. and possessive are used: **Es gibt böse Geister, | die in des Menschen unverwahrter Brust | sich augenblicklich ihren Wohnsitz nehmen** (Schiller). This double construction is in our own time a characteristic of popular speech: **Wenn ich an den Arend** (name) **jetzt denke und an Sie, Herr Kunemund, und an die Gertrud und die Hunde und das übrige Vieh und das ganze gute alte Leben, so könnte ich mir mein Hemde in meinen Tränen waschen** (Raabe's *Meister Autor*, chap. 17). See also 138. 3.

In all these examples the dative can still be construed as a sentence modifier, a dative of interest, but there has long been a tendency here, as in the last example, to bring the dative into relation to some noun in the sentence with which it is associated in thought. This tendency often, as in 138. 2. c, goes so far that the dative ceases to be a sentence modifier and becomes a modifier of the noun.

C. *Ethical Dative.* The dat. is not only, as in the preceding article, used to denote the person who has a *material* interest in the action, but is also often employed to denote the person who has or is expected to have an *emotional* interest in the statement, especially a dat. of a personal pronoun in the 1st or 2nd person which is frequently in conversation inserted here and there, in some particular proposition, to indicate that that particular point seems important to the speaker or should be noted by the person addressed: **Sieh mir nicht so finster aus** Pray, don't look so sullen. **Das war euch eine Freude** That was a joy, I can tell you. **Seid mir recht artig, ihr Kinder** Come, children, I do want you to be real good. **Daß mir keiner aufs Eis geht!** I don't want one of you to go upon the ice. **Rede mir doch nur!** Come, don't be bashful, speak right out, for I am anxious to hear it. **Sprich dem Vater** (not an indirect object here, but an ethical dat.) **lieber nicht erst von diesem Vorhaben** Don't say anything to father about this plan now, for you can expect from him no interest in it, but rather opposition. **Krümmt mir kein Haar auf dem Haupt eures Herrn!** (Ebner-Eschenbach's *Jakob Szela*, p. 117) I warn you, don't you harm a hair on the head of your master. **Immer wußte sie etwas Neues, und so giftig kam Ihnen bei ihr alles heraus** She always had something new to relate, and I tell you, she had a mean way of telling it. This dat. cannot easily be rendered into modern English, tho the same construction is common in Shakespeare: **Whip me such honest knaves** (*Othello*, I, 1. 47).

4. In the eighteenth century and even later a dat. is found with *fühlen, kennen, wissen, and wollen, begehren, fordern*, where a prep. phrase is now used: **Ich fühle mir** (now in *mir*) **Hoffnung, Mut und Kraft** (Goethe). **Ich hatte eine größere Heiterkeit des Geistes gewonnen, als ich mir** (an *mir*) **lange nicht gekannt** (Goethe). **Und hätt' ich dir** (bei *dir*) **ein so versöhnlich Herz gewußt** (Schiller). **Weiß ich, was Saladin mir** (von *mir*) **will?** (Lessing). **Was sie ihm**



wolle (Freitag's Bild, 1, 200). Was mir (von mir) die Göttliche begehrt, das weiß ich (H. v. Kleist). Ein andrer Kaiser fordert Euch (von Euch) dasselbe (Grillparzer's *Ottokar*, 3).

5. It is a marked peculiarity of the uneducated in the North that they use an accusative often where a dative is in place, and on the other hand a dative where an accusative should be employed: *Laß mir in Ruh! Ich hab' nichts mit dich zu schaffen!* (May in Halbe's *Das tausend-jährige Reich*, p. 128). This is due to the fact that in Low German the personal pronouns do not have a different form for dat. and acc.: *mī* = H.G. *mir* and *mich*; *dī* = H.G. *dir* and *dich*.

Either Dative or Accusative according to Meaning or from Unsettled Usage.

259. Some verbs take the dat. or acc. according to the meaning involved, while others, on account of fluctuation of usage, admit of both cases without a difference of meaning. The difference of construction with the same verb usually results from analogy, the verb breaking away from its original construction to follow that of another verb of the same meaning.

1. **ANGEHEN**, *to concern*, usually with *acc.*, but occasionally also with *dat.* in accordance with the *natu* interests (see 258. 1): Was hier sieht's doch aus, als  
*Szenen* 2

2. ANKO<sup>1</sup> . . . . . at mir auf ein  
paar Taler nicht an I do not mind giving a few talers more. (b) *To get at*, with dat.: Man kann  
dem Verbrecher nicht ankommen. (c) *To come* (hard, easy, &c.) *for*, with acc. early in the  
period . . . . . erance of  
either . . . . . (Genesis  
xxxv. . . . . mir hart

(Goncho) Das ist ein sehr interessantes Thema, das ich gerne mit Ihnen besprechen möchte. Ich habe einige Gedanken dazu, die ich Ihnen mitteilen möchte. Ich habe einige Gedanken dazu, die ich Ihnen mitteilen möchte.

an (ib.). (E) *lo appear* (to the senses, imaginati-  
 perten so heimlich auf den Untersetzern, daß es il-  
 geschmack der paradiesischen Freuden (Lauff's *Frau Aleit*, p. 76).

3. **ANLIEGEN** to *entreat*, usually with *dat.*, tho occasionally the *acc.* after the analogy of *angehen* to *entreat* is found: Ich lag der Mutter an, und diese suchte den Vater zu bereden. Hier lag Antonio den König sehr an, ihm beizuspringen (Lessing, 6, 163).

4. **ANWANDELN** to befall, come over, usually with acc., occasionally also intransitively with dat.: Furcht wandelt mich nicht an. Was ist dir angewandelt? (Tieck). Und sollte es einem mal so anwandeln, daß man von einem anderen denkt usw. (Boy-Ed's *Das A B C des Lebens*, p. 140).

5 **AUSBIETEN** to give notice to leave the house, city, &c., with dat. or acc., now replaced by ausweisen with acc.: Ich biete dem Junker aus (Schiller) I'll give the young gent notice to keep off the premises. In Wien hat man alle Fremden ausgeboten (Goethe) In Vienna all strangers have been given notice to leave.

6. **BEDEUTEN** to instruct, inform, give a sign to somebody that or to (with dependent clause or infin.), to give somebody to understand, to order, except in the first two meanings usually with dat. of the person and the acc. of the thing, or instead of the acc. a clause or infinitive: **Man bedeutet ihm zu schweigen** (Otto Ernst's *Flachsmann als Erzieher*, 3, 8). The acc. of the person is the rule for the first two meanings and is also not infrequently used in the other meanings: **Therese bedeutete dem Pfarrer ans Fenster** (Schönherr's *Sonnwendtag*, p. 71). Earlier in the 19th century **bedeuten** was used with the acc. of the person and the acc. of the thing: (er) **bedeutete ihm seinen Pflichten** (Goethe's *Briefe*, v. 10, 10). **Die Frau bedeutete ihm, dass er was Geld bei sich habe** (Schönherr's *Sonnwendtag*, p. 71). Earlier in the 19th century **bedeuten** was used with the acc. of the person and the acc. of the thing: (er) **bedeutete ihm seinen Pflichten** (Goethe's *Briefe*, v. 10, 10). **Die Frau bedeutete ihm, dass er was Geld bei sich habe** (Schönherr's *Sonnwendtag*, p. 71). Earlier in the 19th century **bedeuten** was used with the acc. of the person and the acc. of the thing: (er) **bedeutete ihm seinen Pflichten** (Goethe's *Briefe*, v. 10, 10).

Er will sich nicht bedeuten lassen  
the dative here: Laß dir bedeuten,

(B) Befehlen to command.

to give a command to, with dat. of person: *Er befahl mir hinzugehen.* (c) *Befehlen to order to appear at, summons, invite* (used in circles where the invitation is equal to a command as in case of an invitation or request from a prince, king), with acc. of the person: *Der Fürst befahl ihn zur Tafel* The prince invited him to dinner. In the meanings *to desire, order to bring or pass* (a thing) with acc.: *Befiehlt du deine Pfeife, Papa?* (Sudermann's *Heimat*, 1, 6). *Befehlen Sie noch etwas Suppe?* May I help you to some more soup? (d) *Befehligen* usually used in the sense of *to have command of* (in a military sense), with acc. of the thing: *Er befiehlt das Heer, den linken Flügel des Heeres.* (e) *Gebieten* with a simple acc. of the thing. *to enjoin, impose, require*: *Er gebietet Stillschweigen.* Die Freundschaft gebietet es. With the simple dative of the person or personified thing, *to govern, rule, curb, bridle*: *So vielen gebietest du!* (Schiller's *Wallensteins Tod*, 2, 3). *Er gebietet seinen Leidenschaften.* With dat. of person and acc. of thing: *Er gebietet ihnen Stillschweigen.*

8. **BELIEBEN**: (A) *to choose, please, like*, with dat. when the subject is a thing, when it is a person, with acc.: *Es beliebte ihm nicht zu antworten* He did not choose to answer. *Nehmen Sie, was Ihnen beliebt* (pleases). *Belieben Sie* (would you like to have) *roten Wein?* (B) *To inspire love in somebody for something*, with dat. of person and acc. of thing, a Swiss idiom: *[Er] wandte sich an die Regierung, indem er ihr die Erhaltung einzelner schöner Bäume als einen allgemeinen Grundsatz belieben wollte* (Keller's *Seldw.*, 2, 262).

9. **BETTEN**: (A) *to make the bed(s)*, always intrans.: *Das Mädchen hat noch nicht gebettet.* Also a dat. of interest can be associated with the verb, *to prepare a couch for, to bed* (horses, &c.): *Wem* (for whom) *die Liebe bettet, ruhet gut* (Chamisso). *Er bettet dem Vieh.* (B) In the sense *to lay one's self or someone down to repose* *betten* was used earlier in the period intransitively with a dat. of interest, while present usage employs it transitively with a direct object after the analogy of *sich hinlegen*, or *einen ins Bett legen*: *Bettet ich mir in die Helle | Sihe | so bistu auch da* (Psalm cxxxix. 8). *Noch versuch' ich's, sie zu retten, | wo nicht, auf ihrem Sarge mir zu betten* (Schiller's *Maria*, 3, 8). *Ich bettete mich auf weiches Moos.* Die Mutter bettete das Kind in die Kammer. The dative still survives in poetic style.

10. **BEZAHLEN** *to pay*, with the dat. of the person and acc. of the thing when there are two objects, but with the acc. of the person if the thing stands after a prep. or is omitted altogether: *Ich habe dem Schneider die Rechnung bezahlt.* *Ich habe den Rock or für den Rock bezahlt.* *Ich habe die Rechnung bezahlt.* *Ich habe den Schneider für den Rock bezahlt.* *Ich habe den Schneider bezahlt.* Sometimes, however, the dat. in the latter case, especially in a figurative sense: *Das Mädchen selbst . . . mit deren Hoffnung | er gern mir zu bezahlen schiene* (Lessing's *Nathan*, 4, 4). *Ich will ihnen* (more commonly *sie*) *mit ihrer Münze bezahlen* (Freitag's *Der Rittmeister von Alt-Rosen*, chap. VII).

11. **DÜNKEN** (and the rare form *dünkeln*) and the less common form **BEDÜNKEN** (and the rare form *bedünkeln*) *to seem* took in early N.H.G. the acc. almost regularly, but now, after the analogy of *vorkommen* and *scheinen to seem*, take also the dat.: *Es dünkt mich or mir, daß usw.* Compare 185. A. I. 1. b. (3).

12. **GELTEN**: (A) *to be aimed at, be intended for*, with dat.: *Der Anschlag galt nicht seinem Leben, sondern seinem Geld.* *Wem gilt diese Bemerkung?* (B) *To concern, be valued at, be worth*, with adverbial acc., sometimes also with dat. of interest in addition to the acc.: *Es gilt sein Leben* It concerns his life, or His life is at stake. *Das Buch gilt einen Taler.* *Das Gemälde gilt mir zehnmal mehr* (acc.) *als es mir kostet.*

13. **GELÜSTEN** *to covet, long for, lust after*, with acc. of the person and gen. of the thing, or more commonly the thing is in the dat. after the prep. *nach*: *Las dich nicht gelüsten deines Nehesten Weibs* (Exodus xx. 17). *Es gelüstet das Kind nach dem Obst.* Also the dat. of the person is here sometimes used, after the analogy of the dat. with other verbs of kindred meaning as *belieben, gefallen*: *Es gelüstete ihnen nach einer Zyane* (blue-bottle) (von Hörmann). See also 262. II. B. d, 2nd par.

14. **GETRAUEN, TRAUEN**: (A) The simple verb *trauen* in the meaning *to trust in, rely upon*, takes the dat. or a prep. phrase: *Ich traue ihm or auf* (261. A) *ihn.* *Ich traue ihm nicht über die Gasse* I would not trust him across the street. (B) *Trauen* or now more commonly *getrauen to dare, venture*, with acc., rarely with dat., if there is no dependent infinitive: *Ich (ge)traute mich nicht dorthin* I did not venture to go there. *Ich (ge)traue mich nicht zu ihm* (to go to this house). (C) *Trauen* or now more commonly *getrauen to trust one's self, or have confidence in one's self, or be bold enough to undertake something, to dare*, with acc. or dat., if there is a dependent infinitive: *Ich (ge)traue mich or mir, es zu tun.* If there are two inflected objects, one of the person and one of the thing, the person is in the dat. and the thing in the acc.: *Ich getraue mir den Sprung nicht* I haven't the courage to make the leap. Earlier in the period, the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing was common here, and still occurs in poetic language: *Ich getraue mich dessen* I have the courage to attempt it. In such sentences as *Er (ge)traut sich's* we have the M.H.G. construction, altho it is not now felt. The *es*, which is in reality a gen. (see 140. c), is now taken for an acc., and the *sich* is correctly construed as a dat., and thus arose the now common construction of the dative of the person and the acc. of the thing. This change of construction was quite easy, as the dative and accusative type is now a favorite construction. (D) *Trauen to unite in wedlock*, always with the acc.: *Der Prediger wird meine Schwester trauen.*

15. **GLAUBEN**: (A) *to believe* in the sense of having confidence in the veracity of somebody, or the reliability of something, with the dat.: *Ich glaube ihm.* *Ich glaubte meinen Augen kaum, als ich ihn sah.* (B) *To believe to be true*, with the acc.: *Diese Geschichte glaube ich nicht.* The dat. of the person represented as the authority for the statement can also accompany the

acc of the thing  
rarely the genit  
hatte mich des  
thing exists, or

among impersonal verbs see 219 1

among impersonal verbs see 219 1  
17 HELFEN\* (A) to help, now usually with the dat. Rarely with the acc. Lieber Pappe  
[Papa], ich helfe dich (Goethe's *Des Künstlers Erdenwallen*, 1) (probably used here in imitation  
of the language of a child) In the colloquial language of the North we sometimes find an acc  
of the thing a construction well known in English and Low German Jan „Och, Kaptein,—  
ick kunn dat doch nich helpen!“ — und die kleine Frau Doktorin Mächelte den Gestrenge  
n. (Barnes and Co. ed. 1891) „Wah! Ich schenke es nicht.“ (Barnes and Co. ed. 1891)  
ly ändern), Herr  
near end) This

n die wachsende  
- guten Geister, p

4251

18 **HORCHEN** to *hearken, listen*, usually w dat or more commonly a prep phrase, some times w acc in elevated discourse Er horcht dem Gesange der Vögel Du siehst, ich horche

20 KOSEN *to caress, make love to*, w acc, rarely w dat Ist's möglich, daß ich, Liebchen, dich kose? (Goethe's Div, 8, 7) Dir mit Wohlgeruch zu kosen (ib, 7, 2) Now more commonly with einem kosen

21 KOSTEN (1) *to cost*, always w acc when used transitively (2) *To cost*, w dat. or now perhaps less commonly acc Diese Arbeit hat mir or mich viel Mühe gekostet The acc here leads kommen *to cost* to take sometimes the acc instead of the correct dat Das käme Sie sehr kostspielig (Über Land und Meer) See also 29 below

22 LIEBKÖSEN to caress, formerly with the dat., and in choice language still with that case Ich liebteste dir (Heyse's *Meleager*, I) Now quite commonly with the acc. after the analogy of küssen and Herzen Die Mutter liebkost ihr Kind

23 LOHNEN to reward, w dat of the person and acc of the thing when there are two ob-  
jects Er lohnt mir meine Mühe or für meine Mühe He pays me for my trouble W as above  
is only used in the 3rd pers sing pres and 3rd pers sing past  
older use

„Ich bene zu, daß ein Schritt geschehe, der der Mühe

Bei neuer Fund lohnt die Suche nach

seligen Taten kann nur Gc

allen vorhergegangenen (I-

is a person it may be a the

cation, the

Du hast ihn

hierzulande

replaced he

not strictly  
Schlafend

Schleife loh  
1001) Ist

1904) 1st  
in Province

24 NAC

(A) The person is in the dat and the thing in the acc if there are two objects. Er macht

Mann bei weinbau lohnt  
s paying off, now often  
rbeiter This distinction is  
Lorbeerkrantz mit wallender  
mburger Nachrichten, Oct 29,  
Mann lohnt? (Hans Delbrück

mir das Kunststück nach He is copying this trick from me. „Ich verachte dich serr,“ äffte ich ihr nach und betonte das „serr“ noch schärfer als sie (Carl Busse's *Digga*). (B) If there is only one object and that the name of a thing or a person whose name is used instead of his works, it is now usually in the acc.: Er ahmt den Gang und die Gebärden seines Bruders nach. Wie ich als Knabe den Terenz nachzuahmen wagte (Goethe). (c) If there is only one object and that a noun representing a person or a thing which is endowed with personal attributes, it is in the dat. when the verb has the meaning of striving in a laudable way to imitate somebody, but the acc. when the verb is used in the sense of mechanical copying: Ahme deinem Vater in der Tugend nach. Der Schauspieler ahmt (imitates in the role that he is playing all the external characteristics of) einen Franzosen nach.

25. RATEN: (A) to advise, w. dat. of the person, or if there are two objects w. the dat. of the person and acc. of the thing: Sie rieten mir dazu You advised me to do it. Er riet mir Gutes He gave me good advice. (B) To guess, w. acc. of the thing: Man rät ein Rätsel.

26. RUFEN to call, SCHREIEN to cry out to, PFEIFEN to whistle for, LOCKEN, KÖRNERN, KÖDERN to decoy, KLINGELN, LÄUTEN, SCHELLEN to ring, WINKEN to make a sign to, FLEHEN to implore, take a dat. to denote the person toward whom the action is directed, and with the exception of schreien, schellen, läuten, and klingeln, may with a slight shade of meaning take the acc. to represent the person as the direct object of the action: Sie wird bei Susen sein; ruft ihr doch! She is probably with Susan; call out to her! Wer ruft mir? (Otto Ernst's *Die Gerechtigkeit*, 2, 1), but Rufe sie! Call her! Altho the simple dative was not infrequent earlier in the period as a survival of the original dative meaning of *direction toward* (258. 1) and survives in part still, present usage inclines toward other constructions in case of some of these words. Rufen, locken, körnern, and ködern usually take the acc., schreien and flehen require zu + dat., while winken may still take a simple dat. and klingeln, läuten, and schellen either a simple dat. or a prepositional construction: Als sie Berta Witt sah, winkte sie ihr (Frenssen's *Die drei Getreuen*, II, 5), or more commonly winkte sie ihr zu. Der Herr klingelt dem Bedienten or nach dem Bedienten. Klingeln, läuten, and schellen may also take an accusative in connection with a prep. phrase: Bald war ich auch am Doktorhause und klingelte den alten Doktor Snittger aus den Federn (Storm's *John Riew*). Rufen, schreien, and winken can still be used with a dat. of the person in connection with a direct object of the thing, an infinitive, or clause: Bald rief mir meine Mutter (or more commonly Bald rief mir meine Mutter zu): „Komm,“ or zu kommen, or daß ich kommen sollte. Man winkte ihm Aufmunterung (zu). Rufen is used with the simple dat. in a few expressions and pfeifen quite commonly so, and pfeifen, rufen, and winken can also take the acc. of the person in connection with a prep. phrase: Er rief seinem braunen Hühnerhund (zu), der in einem Winkel gelegen hatte (T. Storm). Dem Männchen rufen or more commonly zurufen to call the male. Er pfeift seinem Hunde or sometimes pfeift seinem Hunde zu. Er piff den Hund zu sich hin. In Switzerland rufen with dat. is used in the sense of *to call for*: Die Beschaffenheit der Schullokalitäten ruft dringend einer Reparatur (Blümner's *Zum schweizerischen Schriftdeutsch*, p. 47). Dies ruft einer neuen Definition des Urteils (Bernhard Fehr in *Archiv für das Studium der neueren Sprachen*, 1919, p. 102).

27. SAGEN to say, tell, w. a dat. of the person and an acc. of the thing, when there are two objects: Er sagte mir die Wahrheit. However, the simple dat. is replaced by zu w. dat. when the exact words of direct discourse are reported: Die Kinder sagen meist zu ihren Eltern Papa und Mama. Er sagte zu mir: „Ich komme morgen wieder,“ but indirectly: Er sagte mir, er komme morgen wieder. Dialectic and French influences often affect the construction here and cause the dropping of the zu in direct discourse: „Ich habe,“ sagte sie ihm (for zu ihm) mit bewegter Stimme, „deine Gegenwart gewünscht.“

28. SPRECHEN, REDEN: (A) to speak, usually require some prep. as mit, zu, an before the case of the person: Ich sprach einige Worte zu ihm. Ich sprach mit ihm. Ich rede mit ihm. We sometimes find an acc. of the thing and the dat. of the person: Solch ein vernünftiges Wort hast du mir selten gesprochen (Goethe's *H. und D.*, II, 106). When a prep. phrase modifies the verb in connection with a personal object, we not infrequently find the simple dat. of the person instead of a prepositional construction: Niemand spricht gern einem andern von seiner Liebe (Zschokke). O mein Bruder! sprich mir nicht von der Ehe! (Ebers). The simple dat. here is usually a gallicism which is not especially to be recommended, but it is sometimes a good German *dative of interest* or an *ethical dative*, as in the last sentence. (B) Sprechen (not reden) to talk (consult) with, w. acc. of the person when there is no object of the thing: Ich möchte Sie auf einige Augenblicke allein sprechen.

29. STEHEN: (A) To become, look well, w. dat.: Das blaue Kleid steht ihr ausgezeichnet. (B) To take one's stand against, w. dat.: Ich stehe selbst in meinen Jahren noch dem Feinde. Also in the milder sense to face: dem Sturm, seinem Schicksal stehen. (C) To be equal to, to be a match for, w. acc.: Er steht seinen Mann He is a match for any fellow. Der Mann steht (comes up to) seinen Ruhm (Lessing). (D) zu stehen kommen to cost, usually with the dat.: Etwas kommt einem teuer zu stehen. After the analogy of kosten to cost the acc. is also used: Das kommt dich billiger zu stehen (Spitteler's *Conrad*, p. 158). Sometimes simple kommen is still used here. See 21 above.

30. STEuern: (A) to steer, trans. w. acc.: Der Schiffer steuert sein Schiff. (B) To check, prevent, w. dat.: Der Lehrer steuert dem Zuspätkommen der Schüler.

31. TRAuen, see GETRAuen, above.

32. ÜBERKOMMEN: (A) to come over, seize, usually with acc. but occasionally with dat.: Eine tiefe [geistige] Lähmung überkam ihm (Lewald). Sie wandten der oben Nachschauenden den Rücken, und sonderbar, wie mit einer Augentäuschung überkam es dem Blick Sibylle

Lundhorsts (Jensen's *Jenseits des Wassers*, ix). (n) Regularly w. the dat. in intrans. use with the meaning *to be transmitted to, be delivered to*: Der Name ist mir überkommen und so kann es mir persönlich nur obliegen, ihm, nach dem bescheidenen Maße meiner Fähigkeiten, Ehre zu machen. Ein Brief ist mir überkommen.

33. acc., rarely w. dat.: Der Tadel überzog das Lob.  
31. (v) vergeben *to forgive*, w. simple dat. of the person, or if there are two objects w. dat. of the person and acc. of the thing: Vad vergib uns unsere Schuld (now Schulden) | wie wir unsern Schuldigern vergeben (Matth. vi 12). Ich vergebe dir die Beleidigung. (n) Vergeben *to poison*, correctly with the dat., but after the analogy of vergiften also with the acc., now rather uncommon in this meaning. (c) Verzeihen *to pardon, condone*, with the same construction as vergeben in (A): Verzeih mir. Verzeih mein Unrecht. Verzeih mir mein Unrecht.

35. VERSICHERN: (A) *to assure*, w. dat. of the person and acc. of the thing, or the acc. of the person and gen. of the thing: Ich versichere Ihnen das, was ich Ihnen versichere. Ich versichere Sie dessen.

act. of the thing. S. . . .  
the dat. or now less  
daß ich dies tun werde. (n) *To insure* (one's house, &c.), always w. acc.: Ich werde mein Haus gegen Feuersgefahr versichern lassen.

36. VORBEI, VORÜBER *past*, in composition with verbs of motion take a prepositional phrase as a complement, or a little earlier in the period the accusative (the original construction) or the dative: Er ging an mir vorbei, ohne mir guten Tag zu sagen. Bei einem einzeln stehenden Hause ziehen wir vorbei (Lihencron's *Artemisvellen*). Du gehst dein Schloß vorüber (Uhland). Kaum ein Wagen ging mir vorbei (Wildenbruch's *Die heilige Frau*, p. 122).

nu . . . . .  
the . . . . .  
vei . . . . .  
of . . . . .  
de . . . . .  
thi . . . . .  
er . . . . .

suchen, but Am Schauenster stach mir ein schöner Brillant ins Auge and Deine Klagen schneiden mir ins Herz. Er hat mich auf den Kopf geschlagen, but Der herabfallende Ziegel schlug mir gerade auf den Kopf.

### Genitive Object.

260. The original function of the genitive is not known. In oldest German it is used with verbs, nouns, and a few adjectives. Its free use with verbs and a few verbal adjectives in the oldest period seems to suggest the possibility that it was originally employed with verbs in an adverbial relation or as an object and later with its acquired meanings was attached to nouns in attributive function and still later to a large number of adjectives. Altho we can trace step by step a theoretical development of the attributive genitive from the use of the genitive with verbs it seems more probable in a number of cases, as indicated in 255. II. 1, that certain categories of the attributive genitive developed out of other attributive categories.

The original meaning of the genitive is also unknown, but a study of the older periods where the genitive was much more used than now seems to indicate that the central idea of this case is *in a sphere*: Das ist meines Amtes *That is in the sphere of my duty*. Wer des wassers trinket | Den wird wider dürsten (John iv. 13) *Whoever drinks of this water, &c., literally within the sphere, extent of this water, something belonging to this water, i.e. not all of it but only a part of it*. Nu aber mus ich dursts sterben (Judges xv. 18) *But now I must die of thirst, literally in the sphere of thirst, hence on account of thirst*. To this idea of sphere can be traced theoretically either directly or indirectly the genitives found in the predicate, as described in 252. 2. A. c, the possessive, partitive, and other attributive genitives described in 255. II, and the adverbial genitives described in 223. I. 10. a, b, II. 2, 3, 4, III. a, IV. 2. A, B. a, C. The many shades of meaning which were developed in older German resulted in much confusion, as it was often not clear which shade was intended. After the verb alone in its relation as object the genitive expressed nine ideas, sphere, a part, goal,

specification, cause, means, deprivation, removal, separation, all of which survive, altho the genitive under the impulse for clearer expression has in large measure been replaced by other constructions.

There is now no strongly marked shade of meaning in the gen. object in contradistinction to the acc. object, and hence those verbs which have a force similar to that of transitives have in common prose become transitive, and now take an acc., while those that have pronounced intransitive nature take a prep. object. In the latter construction by the choice of an appropriate preposition the various meanings can be rendered with accuracy. In choice language, however, a number of verbs still prefer the gen. object to the acc. or prep. object, and in certain cases the old and new constructions are both used with the same verb with a fine and beautiful shade of meaning. The acc. here represents the object as thoroly affected by the action, while the gen. sometimes represents the activity as not affecting the whole object but only a part of it, i.e. as merely operating somewhere within the sphere of it: *Die Spitzbuben haben mir alles genommen*, but *Vnd der Priester sol des bluts nemen vom Schuldopffer* (Leviticus xiv. 14) *And the priest shall take some of the blood of the trespass offering*. The partitive gen. is treated more fully in 1 below. Similar to this partitive gen. is the gen. of the goal or sphere, which represents the activity as operating within the sphere of an object, i.e. as missing, desiring, coveting, forgetting within the sphere of or with regard to the object, in modern speech missing, desiring, coveting the object, as we to-day put the word that completes the meaning of the verb in the accusative: *Mit diesem zweiten Pfeil durchschoss ich — Euch, wenn ich mein liebes Kind getroffen hätte, | und Eurer — wahrlich, hätt' ich nicht gefehlt* (Schiller's *Tell*, 3, 3). *Wer ein Weib ansieht jr (140. b) zu begeren* (Matth. v. 28). The gen. of goal is now usually replaced by the acc. in plain prose. Sometimes a prep. construction is now used instead of the gen. of the goal. See next paragraph. Sometimes the acc. expresses a material or superficial relation, while in choice language the gen. may denote a deep, inner relation, or be used in figurative or changed meaning: *Die Kugel verfehlte ihr Ziel*, but *Die Rede verfehlte der Wirkung*. *Das ist einen Taler wert*, but *Dein Vater ist eines Thrones wert* (worthy of). Other shades may arise. The gen. may be used with *vergessen* when the activity proceeds from an act of the will, while the acc. is employed when the act of forgetfulness is an unconscious and thoro one: *Und taten übel vor dem Herrn und vergaßen des Herrn, ihres Gottes, und dienten Baalim und den Hainen* (Judges iii, 7, rev. ed.). *Und vor dem Einschlafen . . . faltete er die Hände und betete zu ihr, der Verklärten: daß sie in ihrer himmlischen Seligkeit ihres einzigen Sohnes auf Erden nicht vergessen und nicht zugeben möge, er tue etwas, das ihrer unwürdig sei* (Spielhagen's *Herrin*, p. 178). *But Ich habe das Wort vergessen*. When the forgetting is represented as only temporary, and consequently the act as only imperfect, the old partitive gen. is still quite frequent: *Lehnert aber, der all die Zeit über mit besonderem Fleiße gearbeitet hatte, hatte seines in die Hobelspäne gestellten Kaffees ganz vergessen* (Fontane's *Quitt*, chap. ix). [In spite of the word *ganz* here the forgetting was only temporary, for his mind soon returned to the thought of his coffee.] *Und wenn er eine Minute lang seiner Trauer vergaß, so war ihm das bei Gott nicht zu verdenken* (Ganghofer's *Der Dorfapostel*, I). With verbs denoting a lacking the genitive indicates the sphere where the lacking occurs, so that it is here a genitive of specification: *Es bedarf der Verbesserung* It needs improvement, lit. There is need, a lack in the sphere of, in the matter of improvement.

Instead of the genitive we now often find a prepositional object. The old genitive of sphere is still used, as in *Walte deines Amtes* *Attend to your duties*, but the prepositional construction is more common here: *Ein Gott waltet über dich*. The genitive of sphere is still found in a few set expressions after *leben*: *Der Gerechte wird seines Glaubens leben* (Rom. I. 17). *Wer das glaubt, der lebt des kindlichen Glaubens, daß die tief im Boden der eigenen Interessen wurzelnden Bedingungen und Notwendigkeiten des Völkerlebens durch höfi-*

sches Wollen einfach zur Seite geschoben und ausgelöscht werden können (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, June 6, 1906) Ich lebe der (or in der) Hoffnung, daß usw. *I live in hopes that* &c From the idea of sphere arise other shades of meaning Specification Es mangelt mir des nötigen Kleingeldes, or with a preposition an dem nötigen Kleingeld. Cause Nu aber mus ich dursts sterben (Judges xv 18, compare the gen and acc with sterben in 223. III a and 257. 2 A) Er ist des Todes verblühen *He died*, lit *turned pale in death* But usually with a preposition Er starb an der Schwindsucht. Sphere or goal Er wartet nur eines Winkes, um loszubrechen (Hausser's *Deutsche Geschichte*, 3, 187) *He is waiting in the sphere of a sign*, i.e. *waiting for a sign*, &c, but more commonly Er wartet auf einen Wink, um loszubrechen. The preposition here often calls attention to the outward direction of the activity, while the genitive may emphasize an inner causal relation between the activity and the object Über wen lacht man? Über Wilhelm. Aber du HERR wirst jrer lachen | Vnd aller Heiden spotten (Psalm lix 9) Er lacht der Gefahren (Felix Hollaender's *Der Weg des Thomas Truck*, II, p 412)

In case of several compound verbs the gen is in fact an attributive objective gen, as it modifies the noun element in the compound Nimm der günstigen Gelegenheit wahr! (M H G war *observation notice*), or now more commonly in plain prose Nimm die günstige Gelegenheit wahr!, as the two elements of the compound enter into such close relations that the noun loses its identity, and the compound is felt as an old compound verb and takes an acc object

Sometimes in case of adjectives and some verbs the acc has arisen from a misapprehension The old gen es (see 140 c), which is still often used here, is mistaken for an acc This leads to the use of the acc in case of other pronouns and even in case of nouns For examples of this acc see walten (2) in 2 A and also the last example in 3 b below

The gen object is now found in the following groups, which are fairly complete for the present period, but were still fuller in early N H G

1 *Partitive Genitive Object* This object is used in elevated diction with a few verbs of pronounced transitive nature, much as *of* is used in English with the corresponding group of words The most common of these German verbs are bringen to bring, essen to eat, geben to give, gießen to pour, pour out, haben to have, naschen to nibble at, sip of, nehmen to take, senden to send, schenken to pour out, spenden to bestow, be lavish with, trinken to drink Exs Wer dis wassers trincket | Den wird wider dursten. Wer aber des Wassers trincken wird | das ich jm gebe | den wird ewiglich nicht dursten (John iv 13-14) Sorgsam brachte die Mutter des klaren herrlichen Weines (Goethe's *H u D*, 1, 166) Es schenkte der Bohme des perlenden Weins (Schiller's *Graf v Habsburg*) Kaum mag ich des Weines naschen (Scheffel's *Trompeter*, Werner's *Lieder aus Welschland*, xi) See also 255. II 1 H c Compare She gave him of that fair enticing fruit (Milton)

Such verbs, except in a few expressions, now usually take in plain prose the acc without the article, or, to make prominent the partitive idea, von with the dative becomes object, or the real object is placed in apposition with etwas Er nahm Brot, or von dem Brot, or etwas Brot The partitive gen objects, dessen, deren, are, however, still quite common See 255 II 1 H c

The partitive idea appears also in the gen object of a number of the verbs enumerated in 2 A below

2 A *Genitive Object after Intransitives* The gen object is used with the following intransitives or verbs originally intransitive, especially in elevated diction, but other constructions, as indicated after each verb, are also found, especially in certain meanings of the same word, and are often more common in ordinary prose

abgehen to *desist from*, give up with the gen only in early N H G now with von with the dat Will er der Sach dann nit abgan (15th century) Er geht vom Gesagten nicht ab abkommen to get away from *escape*, now with von with the dat Er wird nicht von der Strafe, vom Stricke (rope i.e. hanging) abkommen

- abstehen *to desist from, give up*, with the gen. in early N.H.G., now rarely so, usually with von with the dat.: Der Morgenstern hat ihn mit Trost durchleuchtet, daß er noch seines ganzen verdorbenen Lebens wird abstehen können (Wilhelm Fischer's *Sonnenopfer*, III). Er steht von seiner Forderung ab.
- abwarten *to attend to, take good care of*, earlier in the period with the gen. or the dat., now with the acc.
- achten (1) *to heed, pay attention to, care for*, still with the gen. in choice language, usually, however, with auf with the acc., sometimes with the simple acc.: Drinnen aber in seinem Geschäfts- und Arbeitszimmer saß der Gestrenge selbst . . . nicht achtend des heiteren Glanzes, der durch die Fenster zu ihm hereinströmte (Storm's *Waldwinkel*). Achte nicht des Vortheils, der Ehre. Auch ihrer Gesundheit hatte man geachtet und ihr ein Ausruhen gewährt, wenn sie müde geworden (Johanna Wolff's *Das Hanneken*, p. 236). Ich achte nicht auf dich und deinen Zorn. Großmutter steht ihm bei; | die, weißt du, achtet nicht dein Zorneschrei (Hauptmann's *Versunkene Glocke*, 3). (2) *to take notice of*, in this meaning now usually in the form beachten with the acc. (3) *to respect*, with the acc.: Ich achte ihn, aber ich kann ihn nicht lieben.
- achthaben *to heed, pay attention to*, or in negative form gar keine Acht haben, quite commonly with the gen. in a few expressions as es (see 140. c) achthaben, also elsewhere, but more commonly with auf with the acc., sometimes with the simple acc.: So, in mich hineinbrütend, hatte ich Jettchens Gegenwart und ihres Spiels gar keine Acht mehr gehabt (Spielhagen's *Was will das werden?*, VII).
- aufhören *to stop, cease*, now with mit with the dat.: Aufgehört mit dem Spielen!
- aufkommen *to arise from, get up from, recover from (sickness)*, now with von with the dat.: Er wird vom Lager, von seinen Wunden nicht wieder aufkommen.
- bedürfen (or earlier in the period dürfen) *to need, require*, usually with the gen., sometimes with the acc., especially in case of the interrog. acc. was, as illustrated in 147. 1. A: Er bedarf des Trostes, des Arztes, der Schonung. Es bedarf nur eines Wortes von dir.
- begehren (1) *to desire, long for, covet*, with the gen. or more commonly the acc., or with nach with the dat.: Begehre nicht des Reichtums (or den Reichtum, or nach dem Reichtum). Man sieht sie an, ohne ihrer zu begehren (Herman Hesse's *Diesseits*, p. 284). (2) In the meaning *to demand* with the acc.: Ich begehre die Arbeit fehlerfrei.
- benötigen *to have need of*, more commonly with the acc., sometimes with the gen., both constructions of recent date, employed instead of the older and still common benötigt sein (see 3 below): Er war es, der dem Alpenbund die Geldmittel lieferte, deren dieser zur Insurgierung Tirols benötigte (E. Wertheim in *Deutsche Rundschau*, July 1904, p. 92).
- brauchen *to need, be in need of*, with the gen., especially in figurative language, more commonly with the acc.: Das or impersonally es braucht keines Beweises mehr. Er braucht mich.
- danken *to thank for*, always with the dat. of the person, sometimes with the gen. or the acc. of the thing, or more commonly with für with the acc. except that the gen. is still common in a few expressions such as Gott sei es (old gen.; see 140. c) gedankt: [Ich] danke der gütigen Nachfrage (Raabe's *Frühling*, VIII), or more commonly Ich danke für die gütige Nachfrage. Ihr dank' es (old gen. now felt as an acc.; see 140. c) . . . ihr danke Reich und Leben (Fulda's *Talisman*, 4, 7).
- darben *to be without*, also with the acc. or an with the dat., now only in choice language, freely used, however, where there is no object in the meaning *to suffer need*; where there is an object now usually replaced by entbehren: die jedes Schmuckes darbenden armseligen Hütten (Dahn's *Erinnerungen*, IV, p. 60).
- denken *to remember*, now especially *to think of*, now more commonly with an with the acc., in poetic language also with the simple acc.: Denke meiner (or more commonly an mich). Was kamst du her, nichts denkend als dich selbst? (Grillparzer's *D. M. u. d. L. W.*, 3).
- entbehren *to be without, dispense with, miss*, still often with the gen. in poetic style and in a few set expressions also in plain prose, now usually with the acc.: Mein Haus entbehrt des Vaters. Diese Gerüchte entbehren jeder Unterlage. Ich kann ihn leicht entbehren.
- entgehen *to escape*, now with the dat.
- entgelten *to pay (atone) for*, only in early N.H.G., now with the acc.: Vnser Veter haben gesündigt . . . vnd wir müssen jrer missethat entgelten (Lamentations, v. 7). Laß mich seinen Fehler nicht entgelten.
- entraten *to get along without, dispense with*, sometimes also with the acc., little used except in the infinitive: Ich kann deines Beistandes nicht entraten.
- entsagen *to renounce, give up*, now usually according to 258. 1. B.: Er hat sie auf dem Gewissen, daß er des Mets nicht entsagte, da es Zeit war (Frenssen's *Die drei Getreuen*, II. 9.)
- entwöhnen *to become disaccustomed to*, earlier in the period with the gen. or acc., now except in the perfect participle (see entwöhnt in 3 below) usually replaced by sich entwöhnen (262. II. A. b).
- erharren *to await with patience*, now with the acc.
- ermangeln see mangeln below.
- ermüden *to become weary from*, usually with von with the dat.: Zwei Ruderer ermüdeten der Fahrt (Grillparzer's *D. M. u. d. L. W.*, 3).
- erröten *to blush at*, now usually with über with the acc.: Immer erröte ich dessen (Börne, 2, 485). See also 261. A.
- erschrecken *to take fright at*, now with über with the acc. [formerly also the dat.], or vor with the dat.: Ich war über den Mord, vor dem Räuber erschrocken.



with ob with  
the acc  
cc, the latter  
negative, or  
with the gen  
egersohn, X)  
geschah ihrer  
tat ich keine

## Erwahnung.

erwarten, see warten below

fehlen or more commonly *verfehlen* to miss (a mark, road, &c), *fail of*, with the gen in choice language, more commonly the acc Der Schnee, der lag, gab gerade Licht genug, um des Weges nicht zu fehlen (Fontane's *Vor dem Sturm*, IV, 19) Ich hatte den richtigen Weg verfehlt. See also 260, 3rd par

fluchen to swear at, earlier in the period sometimes with the gen of the cause, now über etwas, über einen fluchen.

frohlocken to exult at, more commonly with über with the acc

furchten (1) to fear, now always with the acc (2) to fear for, with the gen in the biblical expression unsers Lebens fürchten (Josh ix 24) now usually für unser Leben fürchten.

gebrauchen to use, mißbrauchen to misuse, both now with the acc

gedenken (1) to mention, earlier in the period also with von with the dat in this meaning Er gedachte meiner mit keinem Worte. (2) to remember, earlier in the period also with an with the acc

with von with the dat Daß sie ihres Fiebers völlig

genesen (Niebuhr), more commonly von dem Fieber genesen. (2) to be delivered of (a child in child birth), with the gen Sie genas eines gesunden Knaben.

genießen (in early N H G also *meßen*) to enjoy, in choice language not infrequently with the gen, in colloquial language more commonly with the acc Abend für Abend genoß ich so eines eigensten Schauspiels (J J David in *Die neue Rundschau*, July 1906 p 876) Die einzelnen Tiere genossen bei den Kadetten eine recht angenehme Unterhaltung. (2) to partake of, eat, formerly with the gen Ich habe unterwegs nichts genossen

nacy of, now no longer in use here [Sie] wollten sich durch keinen Text für überhaken the acc Ich gestehe dir mein Unrecht.

gewahren or gewahr werden to perceive, the former now usually with the acc, the latter either with the gen or acc Sie stirbt vor Ekel, wenn sie mein (usually mich) gewahrt (Hauptmann's *Der arme Heinrich*, 2, 6) Ich wurde meines Irrtums (or meinen Irrtum) bald gewahr.

gewarten, see warten below

gewärtigen to expect, sometimes with the gen, more commonly with the acc of the reflexive and the genitive of the noun, or with the dative of the reflexive and the accusative of the noun Melanie gewärtigte keines Rigorismus (Fontane's *L'Adultera*, XIX), or more commonly M. gewärtigte sich keines Rigorismus, or gewärtigte sich (dat) keinen Rigorismus

gewöhnen or gewöhnen to become accustomed to, earlier in the period with the gen or the acc, gewohnt in (heit) hellerrnenl (Hebbel) art unter der sich an alles

glauben, see 259 15 B

harren to wait patiently for, await be in store for, with the gen or auf with the acc, sometimes with the acc Krupnik hatte eine Fahrkarte nach Kiaj gelbst, wo seiner Nachrichten, Oct 29, 1904) Gewaltige Aufgaben harren 7, 1919) Ich harre schon lange auf dich, auf eine Antwort an jenem Tage, als sei die ganze Welt erstarrt in Angst, Unheimlichem (Heyking's *Briefe, die ihn nicht erreichen*,

herrschen to rule over, usually with über with the acc, sometimes with the simple dat or acc, with the simple gen only in early N H G

hoffen to hope for expect trust usually with auf with the acc, with the simple gen now only in case of es, which, however, is felt as an acc and has led to the use of the acc elsewhere.

- Ich hoffe auf die Hilfe Gottes. Mein Gott, ich hoffe auff dich (Psalms, xxv. 2). The acc. is used in poetic style of something which one hopes to receive or realize: Ich hoffe ein ewig Leben (Gellert, 2, 191). It is also found in a few common expressions: Er darf es (old gen., now felt as an acc.) kaum hoffen. Das will ich nicht hoffen *I hope not*. Ich hoffe das Beste von seinem Einflusse. Von Ihrem edlen Herzen hoffe ich Verschwiegenheit (Benedix's *Vetter*, 1, 4). Hence the passive: die bald zu hoffende Ankunft.
- höhn<sup>en</sup> to *scoff at*, also with the acc., or with über with the acc., only rarely with the dat.: Er höhnte meiner, or more commonly mich or über mich.
- hohnlachen to *laugh at in scorn*, also with über with the acc.: Denn jetzt hohnlach' ich deiner (Wildenbruch's *Die Quitzows*, 3, 14). Er hohnlachte über die Warnung.
- hören to *hear* formerly sometimes with the gen., usually with the acc., *listen to* (i.e. *lend ear to, heed*), sometimes with the dat. as illustrated in 258. 1. A. c, usually with auf with the acc.
- hüten to *guard, tend* (sheep, &c.), usually with the acc., only in early N.H.G. with the gen.: Ich wil lieber der Thür hüten in meines Gottes hause | denn lange wonen in der Gottlosen Hütten (Psalms lxxxiv. 11).
- kosten to *taste (of)*, formerly with the gen., now with the acc., or sometimes with von with the dat.
- lächeln to *smile at*, more commonly with über with the acc.
- lachen (1) to *laugh at*, with über with the acc.: Er lachte über meine Bemerkung. (2) to *laugh scornfully at, make light of*, with the gen.: Er höhnte mir mein Amulett, | hielt nichts von Mitteln, lachte aller Sprüche! (Hauptmann's *Der arme Heinrich*, 3, 1). See also 260, 4th par. The derivative verlachen to *deride* is transitive and takes the acc.
- lauern to *lie in wait for*, more commonly with auf with the acc.: Dort im Sommer, wenn der große | Meerlachs seine Rheinfahrt macht, | lauerte mit scharfem Spieße | sein der allemannische Fischer (Scheffel's *Trompeter*, Drittes Stück).
- lauschen to *listen to*, gen. rare, usually dat. or auf with the acc. (see 258. 1. A. c): Der Sturmwind fuhr ums Haus, ich lauschte sein, und wie ich lauschte, wurde sein Brausen zum Wiegenlied (*Glauben und Wissen*, No. 1, p. 1).
- leben, see 260, 4th par.
- leugnen to *deny*, usually with the acc., with the gen. in early N.H.G.
- lohnen, see 259. 23.
- mangeln or ermangeln to *be without, lack*, the latter usually with the gen., the former with the gen. and in early N.H.G. also the acc., now more commonly impersonal with an with the dat., or with the thing lacking as subject: Du ermangelst gänzlich des Fleißes. Es mangelt ihm der nötigen Energie or more commonly an der nötigen Energie, or Ihm mangelt die nötige Energie.
- mißbrauchen, earlier in the period with the gen., now with the acc.
- missen to *miss* (goal, way; now obsolete in this meaning), *miss (notice or feel the absence of)*; see 1 Kings xx. 39), *be without*, with the gen. in early N.H.G., now with the acc.
- niederkommen, early N.H.G. eines Kindes niederkommen to *be delivered of a child*, now mit einem Kinde niederkommen, early N.H.G. eines Fiebers niederkommen, now an einem Fieber erkranken.
- pflegen (1) to *attend to, take care of*, with the gen. or more commonly the acc.: Du pflegtest deiner Wunden (Kleist's *Penthesilea*, 9). Nun pflegten sie seines schier erstarrten Leibes drinnen in der Stube nach Brauch, um das Leben in ihm wieder flüssig zu machen (Wilhelm Fischer's *Sonnenopfer*, III). Er pflegt seine Gesundheit, seine Hände. (2) to *discharge the duties of*, usually with the gen.: Auf dem Friedhof pflegt der Totengräber hastig seines Amtes (Ernst Zahn's *Wie dem Kaplan Longinus die Welt aufging*). (3) to *carry on* (a conversation, &c.), with the gen. or more commonly the acc.: Während er mit dem Schiffer dieser kleinen Heimlichkeit pflog (H. Hoffmann's *Wider den Kurfürsten*, chap. 33). (4) to *give one's self up to, indulge in*, with the gen.: Er pflegt der Wollust. (5) to *take* (counsel, one's rest, &c.), with the gen. or acc.: Er hat Rücksprache or Rat or Rates mit seinem Rechtsanwalt gepflogen. Er pflegt der Ruhe, seiner Bequemlichkeit.
- scherzen (1) to *make fun of, make sport of*, formerly with the acc., now with the gen. in Switzerland, elsewhere replaced by spotten with the gen. or verspotten with the acc.: Geben Sie acht, daß die irdischen Weiber nicht Ihrer „scherzen“! (Carl Spitteler's *Imago*, p. 49). (2) to *jest at, joke about*, with über with the acc.
- schonen or verschonen to *spare, have regard for, use tenderly*, now usually with the acc., the former sometimes with the gen., both formerly also with the dat. (258. 1. A. g): So triff mich, aber schone meines Volks! (Grillparzer's *König Ottokar*, 5). Schont seines Schmerzens! Schiller's *Tell*, 1, 4). Des Champagners hatte man nicht geschont (Spielhagen's *Herrin*, p. 233).
- schweigen (1) to *be silent about*, formerly with the gen., now usually with von with the dat., or über with the acc.: Ich schweige der freuden (Psalm xxxix. 3). (2) *schweigen* or more commonly *geschweigen* to *pass over in silence, to say nothing about*, usually with the gen., especially frequent in the infinitive with zu: Ein breitschultriger und kurzhalsiger Mann von Mitte Dreißig, dessen Stutzhut und hechtgrauer Rock mit grünen Rabatten (des Hirschfängers ganz zu schweigen) über seinen Beruf keinen Zweifel lassen konnte (Fontäne's *Quitt*, chap. 1). Der anderen Dinge zu geschweigen.
- sorgen to *worry, be anxious about*, now with um, sometimes für, with the acc.
- sparen or ersparen to *spare*, now usually with the acc.
- spielen to *play*, now usually with the acc. or according to 257. 2. A the simple stem of the noun,



the acc., in the third meaning now with *auf* with the acc. when the idea of duration is prominent and replaced by *erwarten* with the acc. when the attention is directed more to the end, result: *Er wartete des Erfolges seiner Fangvorrichtung* (H. Seidel's *Der Luftballon*). *Ich habe ein unbestimmtes Gefühl, als warte meiner irgendwo draußen ein stürmisches Meer* (Heyking's *Briefe, die ihn nicht erreichten*, p. 185). *Traurige Nachrichten warteten auf ihn*. *Es warteten mir noch heiße Tage* (Gotthelf, 5, 203). *Ich erwarte einen Freund*. *Ich erwarte nichts Gutes von ihm*. *Ich warte auf ihn*. *Erwarten Sie mich auf dem Bahnsteig*. *Ich kann die erste Rose kaum erwarten*. Earlier in the period *gewarten* (now little used) and *erwarten* were also used with the gen. in these meanings. (2) *to tend*, with the gen.: *Da saß ein Mann und wartete der Fähre* (Schiller's *Tell*, 2, 2). (3) *to care for*, *look after*, with the gen., or more commonly the acc., formerly also the dat.: *Warte des Leibes, der Pflicht, deines Amtes!* *Da begannen die Menschen des Ackers zu warten, damit er ihnen im Herbst ihre Nahrung und Notdurft gab* (Engking's *Die Darnekower*, p. 162). *Sie (die Kinderwärterin) wartet die Kinder*. *Man wartet die Pferde*. *zürnen to be angry at* (something), in choice language sometimes still with the gen. of the thing, in Switzerland sometimes a transitive with the acc. as in M.H.G., now usually with *über* with the acc.: *Zürnt nicht der dreisten Frage, wie konntet Ihr dies einsame Leben unter dem wilden Volk vertragen?* (Freitag's *Rittmeister*, III). *Wie kann ein Mensch menschlicher Fehle zürnen?* (*Zeitschrift für den deutschen Unterricht*, 1919, p. 170). *Sie hätten mein Ausbleiben fast gezürnt* (Gotthelf, 6, 63). *Ich zürne dir es nicht* (K. F. Meyer's *Novellen*, 2, 146). *Er zürnt über jede Kleinigkeit, but Er zürnt mir, mit mir, or auf mich*.

a. The genitive object is also found after the following verbs, where, however, it may also be classed as an adverbial gen.: *fahren* to drive, *gehen* to go, *kommen* to come, *schleichen* to sneak, *schreiten* to step, go, proceed, *schwanken* or *torkeln* to stagger, *stolpern* to stumble, *wandern* to wander, *ziehen* to go. Exs.: *Ein wirklich Dach für alle Wanderer, die des Weges fahren* (Schiller's *Tell*, 1, 2). *Die Knaben gingen verhältnismäßig still ihrer Wege* (Oempteda's *Sylvester von Geyer*, VII). *Laß jeden seines Pfades gehen*. *Sachte schlich ich meiner Wege*. *Ganze Züge von Kamelen schwankten schwerbeladen des Weges* (Dominik's *Kamerun*, p. 4). The accusative is also used after these verbs, usually without difference of meaning, but sometimes with a shade of difference. The gen. represents the action as beginning, or as directed toward only a part of the object, while the acc. represents the action as a thoro one, or as extending entirely over the object: *Geh deinen Weg* *Go on your way, keeping to it till you reach the end of it*, but *Geh deines Weges* *Start out on your way*. The gen. was once widely used here, but is now a decaying construction confined largely to masc. words in a few set expressions. It is rare with fem. nouns, found mostly in poetry. The simple acc., tho more common than the gen., has its limitations. The usual mode of expression here is the acc. in connection with an adverb or preposition. *Er ging die Straße hinunter*. *Er kam die Treppe herauf*. *Er ging die Straße, den Fluß entlang*.

B. *Passive Form of Statement*. In changing sentences containing a genitive object into the passive construction the genitive does not become nominative, but remains genitive for the same reason that the dative object remains dative in changing from the active to the passive (258. 1). The subject of the passive sentence must then become the impersonal *es*, expressed or understood: *Man gedenkt meiner* *They are thinking of me* becoming in the passive *Meiner wird gedacht*, or *Es wird meiner gedacht*. Those verbs that also admit of the accusative object in the active may likewise be treated as regular transitives, in which case the accusative of the active becomes nominative in the passive: *Er erwähnte diesen Umstand* or *diesen Umstands* *He mentioned this circumstance* becoming in the passive: *Dieser Umstand wurde erwähnt*, or *Dieses Umstands wurde erwähnt*. In case of those verbs which prefer the prep. object in prose, the impersonal passive must be formed: *Er spottete über mich* *He scoffed at me* becoming in the passive: *Es wurde über mich gespottet*, or *Es wurde meiner gespottet*.

3. *Genitive after adjectives, adverbs, participles, and nouns in Connection with a Verb*. The genitive here denotes sphere (260), goal, specification, cause, deprivation, removal, separation, or it often has the force of an objective genitive. In earlier periods the genitive was much more common here in some of these categories than it is to-day. Former usage often survives in group-words (247. 2) and compounds: *sonnenverbrannt*, *schicksalsschwer*, *handelsklug*, *geistesabwesend*, *geisteskrank*, *segenreich*, &c. In old group-words (247. 2. a) the genitive is not marked by a formal ending, as this type originated in the period before the introduction of inflection: *zielbewußt*, &c.

The genitive now stands after the following words in elevated language and in large part also in common prose, but other constructions too are found with the same forms, as is indicated after each word:—

achtlos heedless of, not paying attention to, in choice prose with the gen., more commonly with  
auf with the acc.      achtlos die Nacht      118 Fittich's abruptes selbes d'heimloßes

auf with the acc  
ahnungslos having no presentiment of Unterdes ließ Ebba sich, ahnungslos solchen Übelwollens,  
die Verdienste der Fliederbüschen (name) erzählen (Boy Ld s Die sündige Hand p 77)  
ansichtig werden to get sight of, originally with the acc, now also with the gen and perhaps more  
commonly so

commonly so  
bar void of, free from rarely with von or an with the dat Ich bin alles Trostes, alles Rates bar  
Bar jeden (weak gen., see 106 Note 1) Chauvinismus, frei von Überheblichkeit wollen wir  
. . . immer wieder zeigen, was die Größe und Kraft deutschen Geistes vermag (R Pechel  
in *Deutsche Rundschau*, March 1920, p. 463)

bedürftig in need of  
 beflissen given, devoted to, engaged in the study of ein der Rechte Beflissener.  
 begierig or gleng *desirous of, eager for*, with the gen in choice language more commonly with  
 nach with the dat or auf with the acc Und zuletzt des Lichts begierig, bist du, Schmetter-  
 ling, verbrannt Er ist nach Geld begierig Er ist auf den Ausgang begierig  
 behelfen in einem behelfen sein to be of assistance to someone by means of, with the gen or mit  
 with the dat. both constructions in use in early N H G, now obsolete

benötigt sein *to be in want, in need of*, sometimes with the acc  
 berechtigt sein *to be entitled to* *isberechtigt entitled to*

b commonly so in com  
-ent. Ac. outside of

berichtet (in early NHG also contracted to *bericht*) *versed in*, still in use in the classical period  
Die Steuerleute . . . sind des Fahrens | nicht wohl berichtet (Schiller's *Tell*, 4, 1) See also  
262 III 1 k

bewußt *conscious of*, sometimes with the acc  
bloß *not furnished with, wanting free from*, usually with the gen., sometimes with von with the  
dat. *exposed to*, with the dat.

eingedenk or gedenk (poet.) *mindful of*, sometimes with the acc. Ich bin meines Versprechens stets eingedenk. Diese strapazöseste Tour seines Lebens kam auch auf Konto der Franzosen, die wollte er ihnen eingedenk bleiben. (C. Vielhaus: Die Nacht am Rhein, p. 113)

eingeständig, see geständig  
 einig or eins *agreed upon*, with the gen in the expressions des Preises, des Handels, des Kaufes  
 einig or eins, elsewhere *über etwas (acc.)* einig

empfindlich, *sensitive* (acc) empfänglich, *sensitive* (acc)  
entraten (prc) *entrated* (acc) bin ich baß (better) entraten;  
die Dinge *things* (acc) *obscure* (acc)

entwöhnt or  
acc, the la-  
erfahren ex-

erfüllt, see gefüllt  
Denn ich hatte nicht nur einen der Lebens-erfüllten Geis mit dem

weisen Willen der Natur übereinstimmend sich von der Erde weg einer unbekannten Ewig-  
 Erwähnung tun to make mention of something, although this should

frei free from with the gen. earlier in the period, now usually with von with the dat The old

frech (adj) - cheeky  
glad (adj) - happy

rejoicing over the misfortunes of others, where *schaden* is an old weak gen., *sturmfröhe* *Möwen*

gefüllt and erfüllt *filled* with the former with the gen in poetic style, usually with mit with the dat, the latter with the gen in a few cases - commonly with von or mit with the dat. Zwei

er seines Entschlusses fast

ips more commonly von with the dat Ich  
nde, 1 p 20)

1 wurde meines Irrtums or meinen Irrtum

gewaltig sein or werden *to have control of* (one's senses, &c.), *get the mastery of*, in early N H G  
with the gen later über with the acc now little used here  
gewärtig *expecting on the look out for* - *awaiting*

Ich war mir seines Angriffs

- gewärtig. Den sind die Lochstafelkinder gewärtig, ehe sie abziehen (Ernst Zahn's *Menschen*, I).
- gewiß *certain of*, sometimes with the acc., earlier in the period with von with the dat.
- gewohnt or gewöhnt *accustomed to*, both more commonly with the acc., or in case of gewöhnt still more commonly with an with the acc., gewohnt sometimes with an with the acc.: Da sind viele, sonst des sanften Gehrocks gewohnte Gestalten kaum wiederzuerkennen in dem Gewande des Krieges (*Tägliche Rundschau*, Oct. 22, 1914). Wir sind des Furchtbaren so gewöhnt, daß es wenig Schrecken für uns mehr gibt (Paul Block in *Berliner Tageblatt*, June 3, 1919).
- habhaft werden *to get hold or possession of*, sometimes with the acc.: Sie wurden des Verbrechers nicht habhaft.
- Herr sein or werden *to have or get the mastery of*, also with über with the acc.: Er wurde nicht Herr seiner Leidenschaft.
- imstande sein *to be able to*: Wenn es also entschlossen ist, den Krieg zu führen, bis es zu einem ihm günstigen Frieden gekommen ist, dann ist Japan dessen auch imstande (*Neue Zürcher Zeitung*, March 13, 1905).
- inne or less commonly innen werden *to become conscious of, perceive*, also with the acc.: Sie werden ihres Wahnes inne werden (Schiller's *Jungfrau*, 5, 4). Wenn sie würden innen | hier mein seltsames Beginnen (Grillparzer's *Ahnfrau*, 2).
- klar *clear with regard to*, more commonly with über with the acc.: Jedermann ist sich der Beweggründe klar, welche zu diesen Flottenvergleichen Anlaß boten (*Neue Zürcher Zeitung*, March 2, 1905).
- kündig (now rare) or more commonly kundig *well acquainted with* (a road, &c.), *versed in*.
- laß (poet.) *tired of*.
- ledig *free from*, with the gen. or von with the dat.: Ich bin aller Schuld bar und ledig.
- leer *void of, free from*, now usually with von or an with the dat., common in old group-words (247. 2. a): (poetic) aller Falschheit leer. Dies Gasthaus ist nie leer von Gästen. Sein Kopf ist leer an nützlichen Kenntnissen. Fischleere Teiche, eine baumleere Grasflur, inhaltleere Worte.
- los *rid of, free from*, with the gen. in poetic language, now usually with the acc.; earlier in the period with von with the dat. also after sein and werden, now with von with the dat. only after other verbs than sein and werden: Ich bin ihn los, but Er ist vom Militär losgekommen. Er machte sich von mir los. The older gen. is preserved in compounds: anspruchlos, &c.
- mächtig *master of, in control of*: Er ist des Englischen mächtig. Er war seiner Sinne nicht mächtig.
- Meister sein or werden *to be master of, get the mastery over, have, get the control of, get the better of*, also with von with the dat. or über with the acc.: Der Zunge bin ich Meister, nicht des Auges (Kotzebue).
- müde *tired of*, also with the acc.
- müßig used earlier in the period with gehen, less frequently sein, stehen, bleiben, in the meanings *to keep aloof from, avoid, abstain from, free one's self from*.
- nötig or von nöten haben *to need*, with the gen. or now more commonly the acc., nötig sein (S.W.G.) *to need, require*, also with the acc., not sein *to be in need of*, with the gen. or now more commonly the nom., not haben *to have need of*, with the gen. or now usually the acc.: Nun habt ihr keines Vormunds nötig (Lessing's *Sinnged.*, I, 124), now usually keinen Vormund. Ihr habt jetzt meiner (usually mich) weiter nicht von nöten (Schiller's *Tell*, 1, 2). Es war der Anstrengung nötig, um bei diesem Gedanken, der an der Seite Goethes meine Seele durchschauerte, eine gewisse Art Beklommenheit verbergen zu können (Prof. J. Röckl in 1808 as quoted in *Beilage zur Allgemeinen Zeitung*, Aug. 27, 1905, p. 391). Vieles Redens ist jetzt nicht not. Eins (gen., but felt as a nom.) ist not. Mut ist uns not und ein gefaßter Geist (Schiller's *Wallenstein*). Sie hat's (the es a gen., but felt as an acc.) nicht not (R. Wagner's *Flieg. Holl.*).
- quitt *free from, rid of, clear of*, sometimes with the acc., earlier in the period also von with the dat.: Ich bin meines Versprechens quitt. Ich bin aller Sorgen quitt.
- satt *satiated with, tired of*, with the gen. in choice language, colloquially more commonly the acc.: Ich bin des ewigen Gezänkes (or das ewige Gezänk) satt.
- schuldig *guilty of* with the gen., *unschuldig innocent of* with the gen. in poetic language, usually with an with the dat., schuldig sein *to owe, owe for* with the acc., an etwas (dat.) schuldig (usually schuld) sein *to be the cause of something*, in biblical language an einem or etwas schuldig sein in the general meaning *to sin against*, altho variously rendered into English, as in 1. Sam. xxii. 22, 1. Cor. xi. 27, des Todes schuldig sein *to deserve death, forfeit one's life*: Er ist des Verbrechens schuldig. Er ist an diesem Verbrechen unschuldig. Ich bin ihm eine Antwort schuldig. Ich bleibe Ihnen 20 Mark schuldig. Ich bin or bleibe die Ware schuldig *I owe for the goods, took the goods on credit*. Wer mit seinem Bruder zürnet, der ist des Gerichts schuldig (Matth. v. 22, revised ed.).
- selig *happy in*, usually with in with the dat. or durch with the acc.
- sicher *sure of*, only rarely with von with the dat.
- teilhaft or teilhaftig *sharing in*: Alle seid ihr teilhaft seiner Schuld (Schiller's *Tell*, 3, 3).
- überdrüssig *weary of*, with the gen. or acc., formerly also with über with the acc.
- überhoben *relieved from*, usually with the gen., sometimes with the dat.: eine . . . seiner weltlichen Eingriffe überhobene, selbständige Stellung (Ranke's *Päpste*, 1, 162).



ing of some plan to bring about your rescue. *Ich habe lange über das Rätsel gedacht.* I have long pondered over the riddle. Many verbs, adjectives, and participles have an object or objects in a simple case form in some expressions, but have prepositional objects in other expressions, other words have only prep. objects: *Eins bitte ich dich*, but *Ich bitte um Entschuldigung*. Jeder war auf das Äußerste gefaßt.

In the passive the prepositional object remains and the subject becomes *es* expressed or understood: (active) *Man bittet um Antwort*; (passive) *Es wird um Antwort gebeten*, or *Um Antwort wird gebeten*. See also 219. 5. A and B. a.

For purposes of illustration a number of the most common verbs, adjectives and participles which need a prepositional object are listed below along with the preposition or prepositions which each word requires. No attempt is made to distinguish here the prepositional phrase in the object relation from the prepositional phrase in the adverbial relation, as there is never a difference in form and no fundamental difference in function. In general we call the phrase an object when its relation to the verb, adjective, or participle is very close, so close that it is necessary to complete its meaning. The relation of the adverbial phrase to the verb, adjective, or participle is less close. It is, however, often impossible to discriminate between the two classes sharply.

By glancing at the preceding and following articles it will be seen that verbs which once took an object in a simple case form now often take a prepositional object. The prep. construction has become a marked favorite, and hence the study of the prepositions, their meaning and grammatical use, is a vital one. This subject is treated at considerable length in 225-232.

#### A. Verbs with Prepositional Object:—

*abhängen von* to depend upon, be dependent upon: *Das hängt vom Glück ab*. *Ich hänge nicht von meinen Verwandten ab*.

*abnehmen an* (with dat.) to decrease in: *Er hat an Reichtum, Körperkräften abgenommen*.

*abonnieren auf* (with acc.) to subscribe for: *Ich habe* (or less commonly *ich habe mich*) *auf die Zeitung abonniert* (an act). *Ich bin auf die Zeitung abonniert* (a state). Now often trans. with acc.: *Eine Tageszeitung können sie aus finanziellen Gründen nicht abonnieren* (*Frankfurter Zeit.*, April 2, 1914).

*abreisen nach* to depart, set out for.

*abstechen gegen* (also *von* or *zu*) to contrast with.

*abzielen auf* (with acc.) to aim at, have in view.

*achten auf* or *achtgeben auf* (with acc.) to pay attention to: *Achte auf meine Worte*, or *Gib auf meine Worte acht*. See also 260. 2. A.

*afterreden von einem, über* or *gegen einen*, or more commonly *einem Übles nachreden* to slander someone.

*angrenzen to border on*: *Seine Felder grenzen an die unsrigen*, but without prep. obj. *Deutschland und die angrenzenden Länder*.

*anhalten bei* to stop at: *unterwegs bei einem Wirtshause* —; *um ein Mädchen* — to propose to a girl.

*anklopfen to knock on*: *Man klopft an die Tür*, but without prep. obj. *Es ist zweimal angeklopft worden*.

*anknüpfen an* (with acc.) to begin a discourse, treatise by referring to something already said or known, to start from: *Er knüpfte an die letzten Worte der Erzählung an*.

*anspielen auf* (with acc.) to allude to.

*auffahren bei* to start at (a sudden sound).

*aufhören*: — *mit* to stop, cease: *Hör' endlich mit deinem ewigen Jammern auf!* Also with the infinitive: *Hör' auf, zu jammern*.

*aufmerken to listen to, give ear to*: *Merke auf meine Worte, auf meinen Wunsch*, but without prep. obj.: *Mit fremden Menschen nimmt man sich zusammen, da merkt man auf*.

*auftauchen aus* emerge from.

*aussehen nach* to have the appearance of, be a prospect of: *Es sieht nicht nach schönem Wetter aus*.

*bauen auf* (with dat. in 1st meaning, acc. in 2nd) to build upon, rely upon: *Er baut auf dem Sande*. *Ich baue auf ihn*.

*beben vor* (with dat.) to tremble, quiver, shiver with: *Mein Herz bebt vor Furcht*. *Die runden Schultern Josephines bebten von verhaltenem Lachen*.

*beginnen mit* + verbal noun, often used where in English a direct object is employed: *Zunächst habe ich mich durch den Wunsch des Herrn Verlegers bestimmen lassen, mit dem Druck zu beginnen* (*Bülbring's Altenglisches Elementarbuch*, Vorwort) to begin the printing.

*beharren bei* (also *auf* or *in* with dat.) to persist in, persevere in: *Er beharrt bei (auf, in) seinem Irrtum, seiner Meinung*.

*bellen auf* (with acc.) to bark at: *Der Karo bellt wohl auch mal auf seinen Herrn, wenn er schlecht gelaunt ist* (*Halbe's Haus Rosenhagen*, p. 65). Here used facetiously after the model of *auf einen schimpfen*. We usually say: *Der Hund bellt einen an*.

*bestehen aus* to consist of: *Messing besteht aus Zinn und Kupfer*, but *Charakterstärke besteht nicht im (in) Eigensinn*; to insist upon: *Er besteht auf seinem (also sein) Recht*.



bitten um to ask, beg for (a thing). See also 262. III. 1. a.  
 blicken auf (with acc.) to look at, on: Er blickt auf die Karte, auf den See, auf den Fleck im Rock, but to indicate a more minute investigation anblicken is employed: Er blickte die Karte an He examined the map, looking at its general make-up. Er blickte den Fleck im Rock an. We also say: Er blickte mich freundlich, zornig an.  
 brennen vor to burn with: Er brennt vor großer Ungeduld; brennen auf (with acc.) to burn with a desire to: Er brennt auf den Kampf He burns with a desire to begin the battle. Er brennt darauf, ins Leben einzugreifen.  
 deklamieren über (with acc.) to declaim upon.  
 duften nach to smell of (roses, &c.), give forth the fragrance of.  
 eingehen auf (with acc.) to enter into, comply with: ohne auf die einzelnen Umstände einzugehen, (auf) eine Wette eingehen, auf Bedingungen eingehen.  
 einwilligen in (with acc.) to consent to, agree to.  
 enden, endigen to end: Das Wort endigt (sich; 218. 3. B. a) auf einen Vokal. Der Weg endigt in einem (or einen) Wald. Die Pacht endigt mit dem 1. Mal.  
 entfliehen (1) to flee: Die Hasen entfliehen vor den Hunden. Er ist vor mir, vor der Krankheit entflohen. (2) to escape, get away: Er entfloh (aus) dem Gefängnis, but only Er entfloh mir.  
 entspringen aus to escape from: Er ist aus dem Zuchthaus entsprungen, but Er ist seinem Aufseher entsprungen.  
 entstehen aus to arise from.  
 erhehlen aus to become clear from: Daraus erhehlt, daß usw.  
 erkennen auf (with acc.) to pass sentence of: Das Gericht erkannte auf ein Jahr Zuchthaus.  
 erkranken an (with dat.) to get an attack of (fever, &c.).  
 erröten über (with acc.) to blush at, for: Ich erröte über die Unwahrheit, über dich; vor (with dat.) to blush with: Ich erröte vor großer Scham. See also 260. 2. A.  
 erschallen von to resound, ring with.  
 erwachen aus to awake from.  
 erwachsen aus to accrue from: Es wird dir aus diesem Schritt manches Leid erwachsen.  
 fahnden auf (with acc.) to be on the lookout for, to search for, try to seize: Man fahndet bereits auf den Dieb.  
 fallen an (with acc.) to fall to: Die Erbschaft fällt an den Sohn.  
 feilschen um to try to screw down the price, haggle over: Er feilschte um eine Mark. Sie feilschten um den Preis.  
 festhalten an (with dat.) to stick, cling to.  
 feuern auf (with acc.) to fire at.  
 fischen nach to fish for.  
 flehen um to entreat, beg for: bei einem um Hilfe flehen.  
 fliehen vor (with dat.) to flee from.  
 folgen auf (with acc.) to follow: Auf Regen folgt Sonnenschein; — aus to ensue, follow from.

forschen nach to search for, inquire after, investigate.  
 fragen nach to ask, inquire for, after; nach dem Wege, Preise fragen to ask after the way, ask the price, nach jemandem fragen to ask for, after someone.  
 fressen, nagen an (with dat.) to prey on: Der Kummer nagt an seinem Herzen.  
 funkeln vor to sparkle with: Seine Augen funkeln vor Zorn.  
 fußen auf (with acc., usually dat. in 3rd meaning) to rely upon, base one's hopes upon, stand upon: Ich fuße auf den Vertrag, mein Recht. Man sieht es den Leuten ja an, daß sie nicht auf sicherem Boden der Helmat fußen.  
 gehören to belong to: Das gehört mir, but Das gehört an den Nagel, in den Schrank, unter den Tisch, vor das Gericht. Die Insel gehört zu (see 229. 2 under zu II. 1. B. b) England. Er gehört diesem Vereine an.  
 gewinnen an (with dat.) to be gaining in: Er gewinnt an Macht.  
 glühen vor (with dat.) to glow with: Er glüht vor Begeisterung; — nach to be burning for: Er glüht nach grausamer Rache.  
 graben nach to dig for.  
 greifen to grasp: Er griff mir an den Puls He felt my pulse. Das greift an den Beutel That runs into money. Er griff dem Pferde in die Zügel He seized the horse by the bridle. Ein Ertrinkender greift nach einem Strohhalme. Das Feuer greift um sich The fire is spreading. Er griff mir unter die Arme He came to my assistance. Er griff zu strengen Maßregeln He adopted severe measures. Ich mußte zu diesem Mittel greifen I had to resort to this expedient.  
 grenzen, see angrenzen.  
 grübeln über (with the acc. or sometimes dat.: see 231. II under über, 1. a. Note) to ponder on, over.  
 gucken nach to peep at.  
 halten an (with dat.) to hold to: An diesem Glauben halte ich fest; an sich — to restrain one's anger, feelings; — auf (with acc., formerly also dat.) to attach value, importance to, insist upon, take care of: Sie hält peinlich auf äußern Anstand. Er hält auf seine Ehre, seine Gesundheit.  
 handeln: an einem gut, schlecht — to do well, ill by someone; — mit to deal, trade in:  
 hang on:  
 erz hängt  
 it, strain  
 upon.  
 rst upon:  
 ein. Ein  
 unglück ist über uns hereingebrochen.  
 herfallen über (with acc.) to rush, fall upon (someone), attack (the dishes): Sie fielen über mich mit Knütteln her. Sie fielen über das Essen her.  
 hervorbrechen aus to break forth from.  
 hervorgehen aus to result from.  
 hervorschleßen aus to dart from.  
 heulen hinter jemandem her to hoot after someone.

hinarbeiten auf (with the acc.) to work towards: Er arbeitet auf seine Beförderung hin.  
 hinausgehen über (with the acc.) to improve on: Er ging über das, was zu seiner Zeit geleistet war, weit hinaus.  
 hindeuten auf (with acc.) to hint at, point to.  
 hinweisen auf (with acc.) to refer to.  
 hören: Ich höre auf (mit) dem einen Ohr schlecht. Er hört stets auf mich, meinen Rat. Höre nicht auf ihn! Don't mind him. Sie hört auf die Klingel She answers the bell. Er hört bei einem Professor He attends a professor's lectures. Ich habe von ihrer Schönheit gehört.  
 hungern nach to hunger for.  
 hüpfen vor (with dat.) to jump for, with (joy, &c.).  
 kaufen to buy: Ich kaufte es von (of, from) ihm. Ich kaufe bei ihm (of him, at his store, deal with him). Ich habe meinem Sohne (or für meinen Sohn) einen Anzug gekauft. Kaufe das Nachbargrundstück an dich!  
 klagen über (with acc.) to complain of; — um to mourn for; — gegen to go to law against; — gegen jemanden auf (with acc.) to bring a suit against someone for: Er klagt auf Schadenersatz.  
 kleben an (with dat.) to stick to.  
 klettern auf einen Baum to climb (up) a tree.  
 knixen vor (with dat.) to curtsy to.  
 knurren über (with acc.) to snarl at.  
 kochen vor (with dat.) to boil with (rage, &c.).  
 kommen wegen to call for (something).  
 kriechen vor (with dat.) to cringe to.  
 laufen (schwimmen, singen, werfen, &c.) um (sometimes in) die Wette to run a race (vie in swimming, &c.).  
 leben to live: Er lebt von seiner Hände Arbeit by the work of his own hands. Er lebt vom Spiel by gambling. Sie lebt von milden Gaben on charity.  
 lehnen to lean: Er lehnt an der Wand, (in answer to the question wohin) Er lehnt, or more commonly lehnt sich an die Wand.  
 leiden to suffer: Man leidet an einer Krankheit. Wir leiden unter der Hitze. Ich habe viel von ihm, von der Hitze zu leiden.  
 losgehen auf (with acc.) to fly at someone.  
 loshacken auf (with acc.) to peck at.  
 merken auf (with acc.) to pay attention to, mark, mind.  
 mitwirken bei to co-operate in.  
 nachdenken über (with acc.) to meditate upon.  
 nachlassen to relax one's efforts, cease: Laß nicht nach mit Beten und Bitten. Laß nach in deinem jähen Zorn.  
 nachsinnen über (with acc.) to muse upon.  
 nachsuchen um to apply for, make application for.  
 prahlen mit to brag of.  
 präsidieren bei to preside at: Er präsierte (bei) dem Feste. See 258. 1. B. b.  
 raten auf (with acc.) to guess: Auf dich, auf diesen Ausgang haben wir nicht geraten. Ich riet auf den Verfasser, bis ich ihn erriet; — zu to counsel: Ich rate zur Vorsicht.  
 rauchen von to reek with: Diese Hand hat von Menschenblut geraucht.  
 reichen bis an (with acc.) to reach to: das Wasser reicht bis an die Brust.

reimen to rhyme: Dieses Wort reimt auf (with) jenes. Dieser Vers reimt nicht zu dem folgenden.  
 reisen nach to leave for, set out for.  
 riechen nach to smell of.  
 rühren to touch: Rühre nicht an die Schüssel, or Rühre die Schüssel nicht an! Er rührte mir das Herz. Berühre mich nicht mit deiner unsauberen Hand! Wir wollen diesen Punkt nicht berühren (touch on). The steamer touches at this city Der Dampfer läuft diese Stadt an.  
 schäumen vor (with dat.) to foam with.  
 schelten über etwas, auf jemanden to scold about something, rail against someone.  
 scherzen über (with acc.) to jest at, over.  
 schicken nach or um to send for.  
 schielen auf (with acc.), nach to cast stolen (furtive) glances at.  
 schießen auf (with acc.), nach to shoot at; — hinter jemandem her to dart after someone.  
 schimpfen auf (with acc.) to rail at.  
 schmähen auf (with acc.) to inveigh against.  
 schreiben: einem or an einen — to write to someone; — an etwas (dat.) to be writing something: Ich schreibe an einem Werk; — um to write for (something to be sent); — über (with acc.) to write about.  
 schreien nach to cry for.  
 schwärmen von to swarm with: Es schwärmt von Menschen auf der Straße.  
 schwören to swear: Ich kann auf (to) seine Unschuld, auf (by) seine Worte schwören. Man schwört auf (on) die Bibel, bei (by) Gott und den Heiligen. But Man wettet gegen ihn los, or Man flucht ihm, auf (or über) ihn They are swearing at him. To swear, profess allegiance to: Er schwört zur Fahne, zum Katholizismus, zu Moskau (i.e. communism) usw.  
 segeln nach to sail for.  
 sprechen: Er ist schlecht auf Sie zu sprechen He is angry at you. Ich sprach deinen or mit deinem Lehrer I had a talk with your teacher. Sprechen wir von etwas anderem Let us speak about something else. Er spricht schlecht über dich. Er spricht über Kunst. Er redete mich auf der Straße an He spoke to me on the street.  
 starren: Es starrt von Spitzen It bristles with sharp points. Du starrst von (or vor) Schmutz You are wallowing in dirt, are covered with dirt. Du starrst vor großer Kälte You are benumbed with cold.  
 sterben: Er stirbt Hungers or vor (of, from, or with) Hunger, vor Freude, aus (from) Erschöpfung, an (of or with) einer Krankheit, durch (by) jemandes Hand.  
 sticheln auf einen to make little stinging remarks about someone.  
 strahlen: Etwas strahlt von Gold Something is radiant with gold. Er strahlt vor großer Freude His face is beaming with intense joy.  
 streben nach to strive for.  
 stutzen to be startled, be taken back: bei or über (with acc.) etwas, über einen stutzen. Ich stutzte vor großer Verwunderung.  
 subscribieren auf (with acc.) to subscribe for: Ich habe auf das Werk, die Lieferung subscribiert.  
 suchen nach to seek for.

taugen zu to be fit for  
 teilhaben an (with dat.) to share in, take part in  
 teilnehmen an (with dat.) to take part in, participate in  
 trachten nach to strive for, aspire to  
 trauen auf (with acc.) to trust in or to rely upon Ich traue auf ihn. Ich traue darauf, daß er es tut Compare 269 14 A  
 trauern um to mourn for  
 träumen von to dream of  
 treten in (ein Zimmer) to enter (a room)  
 tropfen von (in the Bible mit) to drip with, overflow with  
 trinken auf (with acc.) to drink to (someone's health &c.) Wir trinken auf sein Wohl, — aus to drink from  
 überströmen vor (cause) or von (means) to overflow with Sein Herz strömt über vor Freude, but Dieses Schriftstück strömt über von Redensarten der Ehrfurcht und des Gehorsams  
 umkommen vor (with dat.) to perish with Sie kommen vor Hunger um, — durch to

auf andere urteilen to judge of others by one's self  
 verweilen bei to dwell upon Er verweilt zu lange bei Nebendingen.  
 verzichten auf (with acc.) to give up, renounce, waive Ich verzichte auf die Welt, auf einen Anspruch, auf dieses Vergnügen.  
 versprechen bei to call on, visit  
 weinen über etwas or einen to weep over, cry about — um to mourn over, — nach to cry for (bread) — vor (with dat.) to weep with (joy, &c.)

## B Adjectives and Participles with

achtsam auf (with acc.) careful, regardful of  
 angeekelt von disgusted with  
 angesteckt von infected with  
 angewiesen auf (with acc.) dependent, relying upon Er ist auf die Mildtätigkeit anderer angewiesen Er ist auf sich selbst, auf sein Einkommen angewiesen He has no other resources than himself, his income  
 ängstlich wegen anxious about  
 anstoßend an (with acc.) adjoining, contiguous to  
 anstößig für (or with the simple dat., see 253 3 A) giving offense to, offensive to  
 anwendbar auf (with acc.) applicable to  
 ärgerlich über (with acc.) vexed at  
 argwöhnisch wegen suspicious with regard to, — gegen einen mistrustful of someone  
 arm an (with dat.) poor in  
 aufgeblasen von puffed up with  
 aufgebracht über (with acc.) angry at (something), — gegen angry at (a person)  
 aufgelegt zu inclined disposed to Ich bin nicht zum Schreiben aufgelegt  
 aufgeregt durch excited by  
 aufmerksam auf (with acc.) watchful of it  
 tentive to (some duty task) — gegen it  
 tentive to (some person) full of attentions to

weisen auf (with acc.) to point at, to Er wies mit dem Finger auf mich. Die Uhr weist auf 10  
 werden aus to become of Was wird aus ihm werden?; fett — von to grow fat on, ohnmächtig — vor (with dat.) to faint with  
 wetten auf (with acc.) to bet Ich wette auf (on) sein Pferd. Ich wette auf Kopf I say heads. Ich wette mit ihm um (auf) eine Mark I bet him a mark  
 widerhallen von to echo, resound with  
 wissen um eine Sache, or von einer Sache to know of, about a matter  
 zanken or sich zanken über (with acc.) to quarrel about  
 zeigen auf (with acc.), nach to point to  
 ziehen auf (with acc.) to draw (a draft) on someone Sie können auf mich ziehen.  
 zielen auf (with acc.) to aim at  
 zittern to tremble Er zittert am ganzen Leib. Er zittert aus or vor Furcht, vor Frost, für jemandes Leben. Das Espenlaub zittert bei jedem Hauch  
 zürnen über (with acc.), auf (with acc.), mit, or with the simple dat. Man zürnt über etwas, but Man zürnt einem, auf (or über) einen, mit einem Compare 260 2. A.  
 zurückkommen auf (with acc.) to return, revert to Darauf kommt er immer zurück He is always harping on that string  
 zurückschrecken vor (with dat.) to shrink from  
 zutreten auf einen to step up to one, walk up to one  
 zweifeln an (with dat.) to have one's doubts about, despair of Ich zweifle nicht daran. Man zweifelt an seinem Aufkommen.

## Prepositional Object: —

ausgedörrt durch parched by  
 ausgezeichnet durch eminent for.  
 bange vor (with dat.) fearful, afraid of Mir ist bange vor dem Mann; — für or um uneasy about, solicitous with regard to Mir ist bange für or um sein Leben.  
 bankrott an (with dat.) bankrupt in an Saft und Kraft und Geld und Gewissen und gutem Namen bankrott (Schiller)  
 barmherzig gegen merciful to  
 bedacht auf (with acc.) thoughtful of, intent on Du bist nur auf dich, auf deinen Vorteil bedacht  
 bedrängt von pressed with, beset with von Not, Hunger, Sorgen bedrängt.  
 befestigt an (with dat.) tied, attached to  
 befried see 258.  
 befried — Ar-  
 beit befriedigt, but mit ihm zufrieden satisfied with him  
 begierig nach eager for Er ist nach großem Reichtum, hoher Ehre begierig; — auf (with acc.) eager or anxious to see, hear, get, learn what someone will say Ich bin begierig auf deinen neuen Freund, auf deine Nachricht; immer auf einen Fang begierig (Keller's *Seldw.* 2, 171) Nun bin ich auf die Theaterdirektionen und die Kritiker begierig (Hebbel's *Tagebücher*, 21 Dec 1851) am anxious to learn what they

- will say, how they will pass judgment. Instead of *nach* or *auf* we also find the gen., especially in poetic language.
- bekannt mit acquainted with, versed in; — unter (with dat.) known by (the name); — wegen known on account of, famed for.
- bekümmert über (with acc.), wegen, or um concerned about, solicitous with regard to, worried over.
- beleidigt durch affronted at, offended by.
- beliebt bei popular with.
- belustigt durch amused at.
- bemerkenswert wegen remarkable for.
- berauscht von intoxicated with.
- berechnet auf (with acc.) calculated for, aimed at, intended for: auf den Effekt berechnet.
- bereit zu ready for, to: Ich bin bereit zur Abfahrt. Er ist zu allem bereit. Ich bin bereit, es zu tun. See also 260. 3.
- berühmt wegen famous for.
- beschäftigt mit engaged in, occupied with.
- beschämt über (with acc.) ashamed of.
- besorgt für or um careful of, attentive to; — für or more commonly um or wegen anxious about.
- bestanden covered: mit or von Bäumen, Gesträuch bestanden.
- bestimmt für intended for: Die Rüstungen sind für die Fortführung des Krieges bestimmt; — zu intended to become; zum Kaufmann bestimmt; — nach bound for.
- bestürzt über (with the acc.) dismayed at.
- betäubt von stunned by.
- beteiligt an or bei interested, concerned in, a party in or to.
- betört von infatuated with.
- betroffen von struck with: von ihrer Schönheit betroffen.
- beunruhigt über (with the acc.) or wegen uneasy about, worried over: Ich bin über die (or wegen der) Zukunft beunruhigt.
- bezaubert von enchanted with, charmed by: von ihrer Liebenswürdigkeit bezaubert, but Sie hat mich mit ihrer (or durch ihre) Liebenswürdigkeit bezaubert.
- blaß or bleich vor (with dat.) pale with.
- blind auf (with dat.) blind in (one eye); — gegen or für blind to: Er ist blind gegen or für seine eigenen Fehler, or sometimes with the simple dative: Er ist seinen eigenen Fehlern blind; — vor (with dat.) blind with (rage, &c.).
- blutig gegen with.
- böse auf (with acc.) angry at (somebody), über (with acc.) or wegen angry about (something). Ich bin bitterböse mit dir I won't speak a word to you, won't have anything to do with you. Der Zwerg war böse zu ihr! (Fritz Lienhard's *Wieland der Schmied*, p. 36) The dwarf treated her badly, roughly!
- dankbar gegen thankful to.
- dicht an (with dat.) or bei close to.
- dick von thick with.
- dienlich serviceable: Das ist mir (or für mich) nicht dienlich. Ein kleines, zur Wohnung nicht übel dienliches Haus.
- ehrgeizig nach ambitious for.
- eifersüchtig auf (with acc.) jealous of.
- eigen in (with dat.) particular in: Er ist eigen im Essen, in seinen Sachen He is particular in matters of diet, wants things just so; eigen auf (with acc.) particular with regard to: Die Kirschen sind nicht eigen auf Boden, gedeihen in leichtem und schwerem Erdreich Cherry trees are not particular with regard to soil, &c.
- eingebildet auf (with acc.) conceited about.
- eingenommen für partial to, prejudiced in one's favor; — von captivated with.
- eitel auf (with acc.) vain of: Sie ist eitel auf ihre Schönheit.
- empänglich für willing to receive, open to: Er ist für Trost, Schmeicheleien, Eindrücke, das Schöne empfänglich.
- empfindlich für or gegen gegen sensitive to: empfindlich für or gegen chemisch wirksame Strahlen. Ich bin empfindlich gegen die Kälte; — über (with acc.) irritated at.
- entbrannt von inflamed with: von Zorn entbrannt.
- entrüstet über (with acc.) indignant at.
- entschlossen zu bent upon: Ich bin entschlossen zu gehen.
- entzückt delighted: Ich bin über die (or von der) Sängerin entzückt, but Sie hat mich mit ihrem (or durch ihren) Gesang entzückt.
- erfahren in (with dat.) expert at.
- ergriffen von struck with: von Schrecken ergriffen.
- erhaben über (with acc., sometimes dat.) or also in poetic language ob (with dat.) superior to, above: ein großer Mann, der über seine Leiden erhaben ist; über allen Zweifel erhaben; über jedem kleinlichen Sichverletztzufühlen erhaben (Stilgebauer's *Göts Kraft*, I, 3, p. 75).
- erheitert durch cheered by.
- ermüdet von fatigued by.
- erpicht auf (with acc.) intent upon, eager for, after: auf Ehre, Ruhm, Reichtum, Beute, aufs Heiraten erpicht.
- erschöpft durch worn out by, with.
- ersichtlich aus apparent from.
- erstaunt über (with acc.) astonished at.
- erstickt von suffocated with.
- falsch gegen false to.
- feucht von moist with.
- frech gegen insolent to.
- freigebig gegen liberal to.
- freundlich gegen friendly to.
- fruchtbar an (with dat.) productive of.
- furchtlos vor fearless of.
- geblendet von dazzled by.
- geboren von (see Matth. xi. 11; John i. 13) born of.
- geduldig gegen patient with.
- geeicht auf (with acc.) adjusted to (of weights and measurements which are adjusted to a standard), fig.: Es gibt im Englischen einige Laute, auf die unsere Werkzeuge schlechterdings nicht geeicht zu sein scheinen (Max Meyerfeld's *Von Sprach' und Art der Deutschen und Engländer*, p. 27).
- geeignet zu suitable for, qualified for, cut out for.
- gefaßt auf (with acc.) prepared (mentally) for (some trial, misfortune, &c.).
- gefühllos gegen insensible to.
- geizig mit (sometimes auf with acc.) sparing of, stingy with; — nach eager for, greedy after.
- gekront von Erfolg — crowned with success.
- genau mit particular about: Sie nimmt es mit

allem, mit ihrem Rufe genau Er nimmt es  
 mit den Mitteln nicht genau  
 gerecht gegen just to  
 gereizt durch provoked by, — über (with  
 acc.) irritated at  
 gerührt von struck by with moved touched  
 by vom Blitz gerührt struck by lightning  
 vom Schlag gerührt struck with apoplexy  
 kalt und ungerührt | vom Jauchzen unsers  
 Danks (Lessing's *Nathan*) von der Erzäh-  
 lung, von dem Elend gerührt  
 gesättigt von satiated with See 260 3  
 geschickt in (with dat.) skilful in or at a good  
 hand at  
 gesund an (with dat.) healthy in Er ist ge-  
 sund am Leib und an der Seele Das ist  
 mir (or für mich) nicht gesund  
 gewöhnlich bei usual with  
 gierig nach greedy after  
 gleich an (with dat.) equal in Er ist seinem  
 Bruder an Größe gleich  
 gleichgültig gegen indifferent to  
 gnädig gegen gracious to Er ist mir or gegen  
 mich nicht gnädig  
 grau vor grey with  
 greifbar  
 grenzend an (with acc.) adjacent to  
 großmütig gegen generous to  
 gut gegen, zu, mit good to The expression  
 mit einem gut sein also means to be on friend-  
 ly terms with someone  
 gütig gegen kind to  
 habgierig nach grasping after greedy after  
 hart mit hard severe on Weil ich ein wenig  
 hart mit Knemhild (name) war (Hebbels  
*Nibelungen* II 5 2) but also hart gegen  
 Er ist hart gegen mich  
 hervorragend durch eminent for  
 höflich gegen, zu, mit polite civil to  
 interessant für (or the simple dat., see 268  
 3 A) interesting to  
 interessiert interested Er ist bei diesem Ge-  
 schäft — He is interested in this business  
 owns a part of it kein in phonetischen  
 Dingen Interessierter (Victor's *Elemente  
 der Phonetik* Vorwort 6th ed.) but Er in-  
 teressiert sich für allerlei, für die Phonetik,  
 für den Fortgang der Arbeiten, für ihn He  
 is interested in or takes an interest in every-  
 thing &c Also Die Geschichte interes-  
 siert mich I am interested in the story or  
 The story interests me Oldenburg ist  
 durch seine Eisenbahnen stark daran in-  
 teressiert, einen möglichst großen Teil des  
 Unterweserverkehrs zu gewinnen (*Hamburg-  
 er Nachrichten* Dec 10 1901) Oldenburg  
 is greatly interested in getting &c An-  
 dem, was er uns gibt, ist neben dem Irani-  
 sten auch der Indologe auf das ernstlichste  
 interessiert (*Deutsche Rundschau* April  
 1900 p 156)  
 klein — an Geist of inconsiderable parts  
 weak intellectually — von Gestalt small  
 of stature  
 lahm an or auf (with dat.) lame in Er ist an  
 (or auf) beiden Beinen, an (or auf) dem  
 einen Fuße lahm  
 langmütig gegen forbearing toward  
 leutselig gegen affable to

liebevoll gegen affectionate to  
 lüstern nach lusting after  
 mild gegen mild gentle to toward  
 mißgestimmt auf or über (with acc.) out of  
 humor with (someone or something)  
 mißtrauisch gegen mistrustful of (someone)  
 mitleidig gegen compassionate to  
 mörderisch für fatal death to  
 müde von weary with von der Arbeit müde,  
 with gen tired of der Arbeit müde  
 nachsichtig gegen indulgent to  
 nachteilig für injurious detrimental to  
 naß von wet with  
 neidisch auf (with acc.) envious of  
 neugierig auf (with acc.) curious about eager  
 to know Ich bin neugierig darauf Ich bin  
 neugierig auf ihn I am eager to learn what

rasend vor (with dat.) frantic with  
 reich an (with dat.) rich in  
 reif — stage of de-  
 velopment is ready) reif  
 reif für das reif für das  
 "u (represent-  
 ing a goal as a final stage of the previous  
 development) Ein Geschwür ist reif zum  
 Aufbrechen Die Sache ist noch nicht reif  
 zur Ausführung  
 rot vor (with dat.) red with (anger &c) but  
 rot von Blut, Gold, &c. red with blood gold  
 &c.  
 ruhig bei calm at (the misfortune of others  
 &c.)  
 schimpflich für a disgrace to Das ist für  
 mich, für die ganze Verwandtschaft schimpf-  
 lich  
 schmerzlich für (or the simple dat., see 268  
 3 A) painful to  
 schüchtern gegen or gegenüber shy timid to  
 in the presence of Er ist schüchtern gegen  
 mich, or mir gegenüber  
 schuldlos an (with dat.) guiltless of  
 schwach Er ist schwach am Leibe, auf den  
 Beinen, auf der Brust, im Kopfe, von Be-  
 griffen or von Geist. Er ist schwach gegen  
 die Kinder  
 schwarz von black with Blannen kurzem war  
 das Ufer schwarz von Menschen  
 sparsam mit saving of  
 steif vor (with dat.) stiff with  
 stolz auf (with acc.) proud of  
 streng gegen severe on strict to  
 taub auf (with dat.) deaf in (one ear) — gegen  
 (also für, zu, and sometimes also with the  
 simple dat.) deaf to Er war taub gegen  
 (or für) unsere Bitte, taub zu unserer Bitte,  
 or Er war unserer Bitte taub  
 tauglich zu apt for good for  
 toll vor (with dat.) mad with  
 tot für dead to Er ist tot für die Welt, — vor  
 (with dat.) dead with Ich war fast tot vor  
 großem Schreck  
 traurig über (with acc.) wegen sorry for, sad  
 on account of  
 treulos gegen disloyal to  
 überlegen an (with dat.) superior in Er ist  
 uns allen an praktischer Umsicht über-  
 legen  
 über rascht durch surprised at by

übertragbar auf (with acc.) transferable to:  
Wir wollen zum Schluß der Frage nicht  
ausweichen, wieweit diese Anschauungen  
übertragbar sind auf uns und unsre  
Tage (*Deutsche Monatsschrift*, July 1906,  
p. 459).

überwältigt von overwhelmed with.

umgeben von surrounded by: von einem  
Fluß, von Eis umgeben, von Schwierigkei-  
ten umgeben beset with difficulties, but mit  
is used to denote the passive idea that some-  
thing is the result of an act: Die Stadt ist  
mit einer Mauer umgeben.

umwölkt von clouded with.

unbekümmert um careless of, about, indiffer-  
ent to, unconcerned about; — wegen, über  
(with acc.), vor (with dat.; of a future evil  
or danger) unworried by. See also 260. 3.

unmerkbar für (or the simple dat.; see 258.  
3. A. a) imperceptible to.

undurchdringlich für (or the simple dat.; see  
258. 3. A. a) impenetrable to.

unempfänglich für insensible, dead to: un-  
empfänglich für Eindrücke, unempfänglich  
für jedes Schamgefühl.

unempfindlich für, gegen insensible, indifferent  
to: unempfindlich gegen den Tadel.

unfreundlich gegen unfriendly to.

ungeduldig über (with acc.) displeased at.

ungehalten über (with acc.) displeased at.

ungewiß über (with acc.) doubtful of, concern-  
ing, uncertain with regard to.

unsichtbar für (or the simple dat.; see 258.  
3. A. a) invisible to.

verderblich für ruinous to.

vergleichbar mit (or sometimes the simple dat.)  
comparable to.

verletzt von or durch offended at, aggrieved  
or hurt by: Er fühlte sich von dieser Äuße-  
rung verletzt.

verliebt in (with acc.) in love with.

verlobt mit engaged to.

verschieden von different from.

verwandt mit (or sometimes the simple dat.)  
related to: Ich bin ihm or more commonly  
mit ihm verwandt. In the meaning of *the  
same nature, congenial to* the simple dat. is  
the usual construction: Ich fühle mich ihm  
innerlich verwandt. Sie ist ihm geistes-  
verwandt.

vorteilhaft für advantageous to.

wachsam auf (with acc.) watchful of.

wesentlich für essential, material to.

wohlthätig für beneficial to: Das Grün ist für  
die Augen wohlthätig.

zornig auf (with acc.) or gegen angry at (a  
person); — über (with acc.) angry at (a  
thing).

zusammengesetzt aus composed of, com-  
pounded from, made up of.

### Double Object.

262. An acc., dat., gen., or prepositional object may not only each be used singly after a verb, but two objects may be employed, one in the acc. to denote the direct object of the verb and one in the simple dat., gen., acc., or in some case after a prep., to denote a second object, which stands in various relations to the verb or some other word or the sentence as a whole, as described below. Sometimes both objects are prepositional objects.

#### I. Dative of the Person and Accusative of the Thing.

This construction is found after a great many verbs, especially those with the general meaning of giving, devoting, dedicating, consecrating, adapting, pardoning (*einem etwas verzeihen*), concealing (*einem etwas verbergen*), tak-  
ing, bringing, sending, saying, commanding, owing, selling, preventing, refusing  
(*einem etwas verweigern*), doing (*einem viel Gutes tun*), making or causing  
(*einem einen Rock, viel Freude, Sorgen machen, einem ein Haus bauen*),  
explaining, wishing, promising, swearing (*einem Treue schwören*), robbing, &c.  
The accusative denotes the direct object or thing affected or produced, and  
the dative the indirect object, the person or thing to whose advantage or dis-  
advantage the action accrues, or the person to whom the statement seems true  
or with reference to whom it holds good, or the person who has or is expected  
to have an emotional or sympathetic interest in the statement, where, however,  
often in case of an indirect object, as in the first six of the following examples,  
beneath these the predominant meanings of the dative somewhat of the old  
original concrete idea of *direction toward* (258. 1) is still felt: Ich schenke, gebe,  
schicke Ihnen dieses Buch. Er gibt sich diesem Gedanken hin. Er widmet  
sich der Kunst. Ich habe mich dem Studium geweiht. Ich füge mich deinem  
(or in deinen) Willen. Er bequemt sich den Umständen or nach den Um-  
ständen. Er entzieht mir seine Unterstützung He withdraws his support from  
me. Ich verschaffe mir einen Paß. Der Bube hat mir den Rock entwendet.  
Ich verdanke dir mein Glück. Man trägt ihm die Speisen auf. Er macht ihm  
ein Paar Schuhe. Er hat mir viel Verdruß verursacht. Sie verwehrten dem

Feinde den Übergang They prevented the enemy from crossing. Er hat mir viel Zeit geraubt. Er hat dem Mädchen einen Kuß geraubt. Der Schreck hat ihm das Bewußtsein, die Vernunft, die Sprache geraubt. As in a number of these examples, the verb is often compounded with certain prefixes. See 268. I. B. a.

The idea of personal interest is prominent in many of these datives, but the ideas of a goal, place, position, association (see b, 3rd par.), separation, source are also common, especially after verbs compounded with a preposition: Er führte sie bewohnten Gegenden zu. Er führte die Frage einer neuen Entscheidung entgegen. Ich unterwerfe mich blindlings Ihrem Ausspruch. Ich unterziehe mich dem schwierigen Geschäft, der Operation. Warum entziehst du dich unserem Verkehr? Er hat das Gleichnis dem von (or aus) dem Homer entlehnt. Ich entnehme (aus) Ihrem Briefe, daß usw. I learn from your letter, that, &c. For fluctuation in usage here see b below.

In the passive the accusative becomes nominative and the dative remains dative: (active) Mir hat er einen neuen Hut gegeben; (passive) Mir ist ein neuer Hut gegeben worden. The same usage obtains in English, as in "A new hat has been given to me," but in colloquial language the dative may become nominative and the accusative remain accusative. "I have been given a new hat." Here the accusative with its modifying adjective enters into such close relations with the verb that it forms with it a kind of compound verb. This takes place regularly in the passive whenever the indirect object becomes subject. The subject is then represented as acted upon in the manner described by the compound verb, which is made up of the simple verb and the accusative. Compare III. 1. f. Note.

Meine Geschäfte erlaube ich nicht, mich lange aufzuhalten. Ich unterstehe mich dem schwierigen Geschäft, der Operation.

Ich unterstehe mich dem schwierigen Geschäft, der Operation.

Ich unterstehe mich dem schwierigen Geschäft, der Operation. In a construction has resulted from a confusion of forms. This we - Unterstehe dich's (instead of dich's = dich es), Müßel (they dative and accusative in such cases originated perhaps, in such expressions as Er untersteht sich's, where sich is in fact an accusative and es an old genitive (140 c), but sich is construed as a dative and es as an accusative in conformity with the fact that dative and accusative construction. Sometimes the thought influences the construction. As the idea of separation is associated with both the dative and the genitive, the construction is often between the dative and genitive. Du mußt dich zwecklos Schönen (... uns) zerschlagen. As von also expresses the same idea it is likewise following sentence.

Ich unterstehe mich dem schwierigen Geschäft, der Operation. In a construction has resulted from a confusion of forms. This we - Unterstehe dich's (instead of dich's = dich es), Müßel (they dative and accusative in such cases originated perhaps, in such expressions as Er untersteht sich's, where sich is in fact an accusative and es an old genitive (140 c), but sich is construed as a dative and es as an accusative in conformity with the fact that dative and accusative construction. Sometimes the thought influences the construction. As the idea of separation is associated with both the dative and the genitive, the construction is often between the dative and genitive. Du mußt dich zwecklos Schönen (... uns) zerschlagen. As von also expresses the same idea it is likewise following sentence.

This construction of dative and accusative has gained its most complete victory in connection with verbs compounded with a preposition. The dative is here almost exclusively used in connection with an accusative object, altho the force of the preposition requires the accusative. Man legt dem Söhne das Joch auf. For other examples see 265 I. B. a. In M H G. we find, Ir muoter bot ir diene in gütlichen an (Nibelungenlied IX) = Ihre Mutter bot ihm ihre Dienste freundlich an. In the M H G. version direct is the object of the verb and in the object of the verb.

Ich unterstehe mich dem schwierigen Geschäft, der Operation. In a construction has resulted from a confusion of forms. This we - Unterstehe dich's (instead of dich's = dich es), Müßel (they dative and accusative in such cases originated perhaps, in such expressions as Er untersteht sich's, where sich is in fact an accusative and es an old genitive (140 c), but sich is construed as a dative and es as an accusative in conformity with the fact that dative and accusative construction. Sometimes the thought influences the construction. As the idea of separation is associated with both the dative and the genitive, the construction is often between the dative and genitive. Du mußt dich zwecklos Schönen (... uns) zerschlagen. As von also expresses the same idea it is likewise following sentence.

Ich unterstehe mich dem schwierigen Geschäft, der Operation. In a construction has resulted from a confusion of forms. This we - Unterstehe dich's (instead of dich's = dich es), Müßel (they dative and accusative in such cases originated perhaps, in such expressions as Er untersteht sich's, where sich is in fact an accusative and es an old genitive (140 c), but sich is construed as a dative and es as an accusative in conformity with the fact that dative and accusative construction. Sometimes the thought influences the construction. As the idea of separation is associated with both the dative and the genitive, the construction is often between the dative and genitive. Du mußt dich zwecklos Schönen (... uns) zerschlagen. As von also expresses the same idea it is likewise following sentence.

Ich unterstehe mich dem schwierigen Geschäft, der Operation. In a construction has resulted from a confusion of forms. This we - Unterstehe dich's (instead of dich's = dich es), Müßel (they dative and accusative in such cases originated perhaps, in such expressions as Er untersteht sich's, where sich is in fact an accusative and es an old genitive (140 c), but sich is construed as a dative and es as an accusative in conformity with the fact that dative and accusative construction. Sometimes the thought influences the construction. As the idea of separation is associated with both the dative and the genitive, the construction is often between the dative and genitive. Du mußt dich zwecklos Schönen (... uns) zerschlagen. As von also expresses the same idea it is likewise following sentence.

übertragbar auf (with acc.) transferable to:  
Wir wollen zum Schluß der Frage nicht  
ausweichen, wie weit diese Anschauungen  
übertragbar sind auf uns und unsre  
Tage (*Deutsche Monatsschrift*, July 1906,  
p. 459).

überwältigt von overwhelmed with.

umgeben von surrounded by: von einem  
Fluß, von Eis umgeben, von Schwierigkei-  
ten umgeben beset with difficulties, but mit  
is used to denote the passive idea that some-  
thing is the result of an act: Die Stadt ist  
mit einer Mauer umgeben.

umwölkt von clouded with.

unbekümmert um careless of, about, indiffer-  
ent to, unconcerned about; — wegen, über  
(with acc.), vor (with dat.; of a future evil  
or danger) unworried by. See also 260. 3.

unmerkbar für (or the simple dat.; see 258.  
3. A. a) imperceptible to.

undurchdringlich für (or the simple dat.; see  
258. 3. A. a) impenetrable to.

unempfänglich für insensible, dead to: un-  
empfänglich für Eindrücke, unempfänglich  
für jedes Schamgefühl.

unempfindlich für, gegen insensible, indifferent  
to: unempfindlich gegen den Tadel.

unfreundlich gegen unfriendly to.

ungeduldig über (with acc.) displeased at.

ungehalten über (with acc.) displeased at.

ungewiß über (with acc.) doubtful of, concern-  
ing, uncertain with regard to.

unsichtbar für (or the simple dat.; see 258.  
3. A. a) invisible to.

verderblich für ruinous to.

vergleichbar mit (or sometimes the simple dat.)  
comparable to.

verletzt von or durch offended at, aggrieved  
or hurt by: Er fühlte sich von dieser Äuße-  
rung verletzt.

verliebt in (with acc.) in love with.

verlobt mit engaged to.

verschieden von different from.

verwandt mit (or sometimes the simple dat.)  
related to: Ich bin ihm or more commonly  
mit ihm verwandt. In the meaning of *the*  
*same nature, congenial to* the simple dat. is  
the usual construction: Ich fühle mich ihm  
innerlich verwandt. Sie ist ihm geistes-  
verwandt.

vorteilhaft für advantageous to.

wachsam auf (with acc.) watchful of.

wesentlich für essential, material to.

wohlthätig für beneficial to: Das Grün ist für  
die Augen wohlthätig.

zornig auf (with acc.) or gegen angry at (a  
person); — über (with acc.) angry at (a  
thing).

zusammengesetzt aus composed of, com-  
pounded from, made up of.

### Double Object.

262. An acc., dat., gen., or prepositional object may not only each be used singly after a verb, but two objects may be employed, one in the acc. to denote the direct object of the verb and one in the simple dat., gen., acc., or in some case after a prep., to denote a second object, which stands in various relations to the verb or some other word or the sentence as a whole, as described below. Sometimes both objects are prepositional objects.

#### I. Dative of the Person and Accusative of the Thing.

This construction is found after a great many verbs, especially those with the general meaning of giving, devoting, dedicating, consecrating, adapting, pardoning (einem etwas verzeihen), concealing (einem etwas verbergen), tak-  
ing, bringing, sending, saying, commanding, owing, selling, preventing, refusing (einem etwas verweigern), doing (einem viel Gutes tun), making or causing (einem einen Rock, viel Freude, Sorgen machen, einem ein Haus bauen), explaining, wishing, promising, swearing (einem Treue schwören), robbing, &c. The accusative denotes the direct object or thing affected or produced, and the dative the indirect object, the person or thing to whose advantage or dis-  
advantage the action accrues, or the person to whom the statement seems true or with reference to whom it holds good, or the person who has or is expected to have an emotional or sympathetic interest in the statement, where, however, often in case of an indirect object, as in the first six of the following examples, beneath these the predominant meanings of the dative somewhat of the old original concrete idea of *direction toward* (258. 1) is still felt: Ich schenke, gebe, schicke Ihnen dieses Buch. Er gibt sich diesem Gedanken hin. Er widmet sich der Kunst. Ich habe mich dem Studium geweiht. Ich füge mich deinem (or in deinen) Willen. Er bequemt sich den Umständen or nach den Um-  
ständen. Er entzieht mir seine Unterstützung He withdraws his support from me. Ich verschaffe mir einen Paß. Der Bube hat mir den Rock entwendet. Ich verdanke dir mein Glück. Man trägt ihm die Speisen auf. Er macht ihm ein Paar Schuhe. Er hat mir viel Verdruß verursacht. Sie verwehrten dem



Feinde den Übergang They prevented the enemy from crossing. Er hat mir viel Zeit geraubt. Er hat dem Mädchen einen Kuß geraubt. Der Schreck hat ihm das Bewußtsein, die Vernunft, die Sprache geraubt. As in a number of these examples, the verb is often compounded with certain prefixes. See 258. 1. B. a.

258. 1. B. *a*.  
The idea of personal interest is prominent in many of these datives, but the ideas of a goal, place, position, association (see *b*, 3rd par.), separation, source are also common, especially after verbs compounded with a preposition: *Er führte uns bewohnten Gegenden zu. Er führte die Frage einer neuen Entscheidung entgegen. Ich unterwerfe mich blindlings Ihrem Ausspruch. Ich unterziehe mich dem schwierigen Geschäft, der Operation. Warum entziehst du dich unserem Verkehr? Er hat das Gleichnis dem or von (or aus) dem Homer entlehnt. Ich entnehme (aus) Ihrem Briefe, daß usw. I learn from your letter, that, &c. For fluctuation in usage here see *b* below.*

In the passive the accusative becomes nominative and the dative remains dative. (active) *Mir hat er einen neuen Hut gegeben*; (passive) *Mir ist ein neuer Hut gegeben worden*. The same usage obtains in English, as in "A new hat has been given to me," but in colloquial language the dative may become nominative and the accusative remain accusative. "I have been given a new hat." Here the accusative with its modifying adjective enters into such close relations with the verb that it forms with it a kind of compound verb. This takes place regularly in the passive whenever the indirect object becomes subject. The subject is then represented as acted upon in the manner described by the compound verb, which is made up of the simple verb and the accusative. Compare III. 1. f. *Note*.

a The acc. is often replaced by an infinitive with zu or by a clause. Meine Geschäfte erlauben mir einen langen Aufenthalt, or Meine Geschäfte erlauben mir nicht, mich lange aufzuhalten, or Meine Geschäfte erlauben (mir) nicht, daß ich mich lange aufhalte.

halten, or Meine Gesichte erlauben (mir) nicht, daß ich mich lange aufhalte.  
 B A *Productive Type* This double object construction is productive, and is growing at the  
 exper gewähren, which in early N H G belonged  
 to II site — Psalm xx 6), now usually belongs  
 here In a number of cases this chance of con-

here  
struction has resulted from a confusion of forms. Thus we sometimes find such expressions as  
Untersteh dir's (instead of dich's = dich es), Mädell! (Beyerlein's *Dämon Oil dlo*, 2, 2) The  
dative and accusative in such cases originated, perhaps, in such expressions as Er untersteht  
sich's, where sich is in fact an accusative, but which has been changed to a dative, as in  
as a dative and es as an  
struction. Sometimes the  
associated with both the  
and  
zwei  
the  
follo  
wöh  
as both c  
daß sich  
gerie nich  
The dat  
which wa

This construction of dative and accusative has gained its most complete victory in connection with verbs compounded with a preposition. The dative is here almost exclusively used in connection with an accusative object, altho the force of the preposition requires the accusative. *Man legt dem Sierre das Joch auf*. For other examples see 258. 1 B a. In M H G we find: *Ir muoter bot ir dieneit in gütlichen an* (Nibelungenlied, IX) = *Ihre Mutter bot ihm ihre Dienste freundlich an*. In the M H G version *dieneit* is the object of the verb *bot* and *in* the object of the preposition *an*. For the reasons given in 258 1 B a, wherever there is to day more than one object the dative is almost invariably used as the object of the preposition, so that the construction is now conformed to the common dative and accusative type. We have a marked exception in case of *annehmen* wherever the object of *an* is a reflexive pronoun. *Er nimmt sich des Kindes an*. Here the accusative of the reflexive is retained and the M H G. accusative object of the verb becomes a genitive, as the construction has been conformed to a type still well known namely the accusative of a reflexive pronoun in connection with a genitive. Outside of the common dative and accusative type the dative has not secured so complete a victory. Thus with intransitives where there is no accusative as object of the verb the force of the preposition still asserts itself. *Bin ich ihn angefahren: Was er da beim Herd zu tun hält?* (Rossegger's *Martin der Mann*, p 76) *Sie wußte selbst nicht, was sie überkommen war* (Storm's

*Zur Wald- und Wasserfreude*, p. 188). *Er redete mich an.* The idea of an interested person, however, has in a measure weakened the influence of the preposition, and hence the dative is sometimes used here: *Wie meiner guten Mutter dieser traurige Zustand anflog, weiß ich nicht* (Gutzkow's *R.*, 2, 117), but also *Plötzlich flog ihn eine Freude an* (J. Paul's *Til.*, 4, 44). A number of fluctuations here are given in 259. 1, 2, 3, 4, 32. The force of the preposition was more vividly felt in early N.H.G., and hence the accusative could then be employed where to-day the dative is used: *welche nicht freiet | die sorget was den HErrn angehört | das sie heilig sey | beide am Leibe vnd auch am Geist. Die aber freiet | die sorget was die Welt angehört* (1 Cor. vii. 34). Where the accusative has become established, as in case of *anfahen* and *überkommen* given above, the transitive idea has developed, which leads to the use of *haben* in the compound tenses. Thus instead of the form *bin* in the sentence from Rosegger we can also say *habe*. See also 191. I. Note.

The common type of dative and accusative is not so common, sometimes even poetic, in one particular category, namely to give expression to the idea of association, where usually *mit* with the dative is used. Sometimes *mit* indicates a mere accidental association, while the dative suggests a close intimate association: *Man kann die verschiedensten Dinge miteinander, einen klugen Mann mit einem törrichten, vergleichen, eben um ihre Verschiedenheit recht zu erkennen* (Sanders's *Wörterbuch*), but *Wer diese meine Rede höret vnd thut sie | den vergleiche ich einem klugen Mann | der sein Haus auff einen Felsen bawet* (Matth. vii, 24) and *In diesem Buch steckt soviel Beobachtung, ein so gründliches Erfassen alles Menschlichen paart sich technischem Können, daß man ihm viele Freunde wünscht* (E. A. Greeven in *Die schöne Literatur*, Oct. 7, 1905).

## II. Accusative of the Person and Genitive of the Thing.

A. In this construction the accusative denotes the person or thing directly affected, and the genitive expresses the idea of cause, means, removal, separation, deprivation, a goal, specification, or indicates a person or thing related in various other ways to the activity implied in the verb: *Sie erfreut sich des Geschenks* She is rejoicing over (on account of) her present. *Sie schämt sich ihres Vaters.* *Deines Schwerts wirst du dich nähren* (Gen. xxvii, 40, revised ed.). *Man verwies ihn des Landes* They banished him from the land. *Der Fürst hat ihn des Amts entsetzt* The prince has put him out of office. *Er befließt sich der Kürze* He aims at brevity. *Ich werde mich des Erfolges* (gen. of specification; or *wegen des Erfolges*, or *über den Erfolg*) *vergewissern.* The genitive object can also be replaced by a clause or an infinitive phrase: *Es reut mich der Tat*, or *daß ich es getan habe*, or *es getan zu haben.*

In a few cases both objects represent things. See *haben* and *wissen* in *a.*

This construction is found after the following groups of verbs:

*a. The Accusative and Genitive after Transitives other than Reflexives.* The following decreasing list of verbs, which still usually take an accusative but now frequently also admit of or prefer a prepositional phrase instead of the genitive, or instead of the accusative and genitive now take another construction, as indicated after each verb:

*abgewöhnen* to break someone of (a habit, &c.), formerly with the gen. or *von* with the dat., now with the dat. of the person and the acc. of the thing, as in *einem das Trinken abgewöhnen.*

*anklagen* to accuse, with the gen., also *wegen* and *um* — *willen* with the gen. or *um* with the acc., sometimes with *über* with the acc. and in the Bible *über* with the dat. as in Acts xxvi. 6. The genitive simply calls attention to the specific charge brought against the offender, while the prepositional constructions indicate the grounds for the action: *Sie klagten ihn der Veruntreuung an* They accused him of embezzlement. *Sie klagten ihn wegen einer Veruntreuung an* They indicted him for embezzlement. *Ich werde angeklaget vmb der hoffnung und auferstehung willen der todten* (Acts xxiii. 6).

*anmuten* to expect of, with the gen. in early N.H.G., later *einem etwas anmuten*, now *einem etwas zumuten*, but *dieses Mädchen mutet mich an* This girl pleases me.

*anschuldigen* to accuse of, formerly also sometimes with the dat. of the person and the acc. of the thing. Also with the same prepositional constructions as with *anklagen*.

*beargwöhnen* (beargwohnen), formerly also *verargwöhnen* to suspect of.

*bedeuten*, see 259. 6.

*befreien* to free from, now usually with *von* or *aus* with the dat.

*beklagen* to accuse of, now replaced by *anklagen*.

*belehren* to instruct concerning, now usually with *über* with the acc., earlier in the period also with *von* with the dat.: *Ich will dich eines Besseren belehren* I'll teach you better than that.

*Ich belehrte die Zuhörer über diese sonderbare Erscheinung.*

*benehmen* (246. II. 1. c) to free one entirely from, with the gen., to take something entirely away

from someone, with dat and acc Ein Liedchen, welches zwar doch nur von weltlicher Liebe und Torheit handelte, mich aber doch zugleich aller Furcht und Unruhe benahm (R. Huch's Teufelei, p. 46) Der Schreck benahm mir die Sprache.

berauben (or earlier in the period simple rauben) to rob, deprive of, take away from einen seiner Ehre, aller seiner Freuden berauben

berechtigen to entitle one to, warrant one in, gen now replaced by zu with the dat Seine schnellen Fortschritte berechtigten uns zu den schönsten Hoffnungen.

bereden, see III 1 h below

berichten, see III 1 k below

bescheiden to apprise one of, instruct concerning, usually with über with the acc Ich beschied ihn eines Besseren I set him right on the point Ich beschied ihn über den Punkt.

th the gen, now with um with the acc

formerly also with mit with the dat

bitten to ask for, with the gen in early N H G, now with um with the acc See also III 1 a below

entbinden to release from, with the gen or von with the dat, to be delivered of (a boy, girl), with von with the dat Entbinde mich meines Versprechens or von meinem Versprechen Sie

ally with von with the dat

entheben to relieve from, dismiss or remove from, also with von with the dat sometimes with the simple dat Der Mensch des Südens ist so vieler Mühseligkeiten enthoben Enthebe ihn doch seines Amtes or von seinem Amte. Das Kind an seiner Seite entthob ihn plötzlich

urens Litzmann's Ein Sommerabend in Deutsche Monatsschrift,

with von with the dat

burden, more commonly with von with the dat von allem

Wissensqualm entladen (Faust, I) entlassen to discharge from, release from also aus or von with the dat Er hat den Knecht des

Dienstes or aus dem Dienste entlassen. Man entließ ihn aus or von der Haft

entlasten to disburden someone of, free from, also with von with the dat einen der Geschäfte, der Sorgen, eines Verdachts entlasten

entledigen to free from, also with von with the dat Entledige ihn seiner Pflichten.

entleeren to empty of ein Faß seines Inhalts entleeren

entschließen to free from (chains, &c), now obsolete

entsetzen to dispossess of, depose from, occasionally with von with the dat

enttöbigen to relieve from, now little used and when employed usually found in the perfect participle with some form of sein, as in einer Person, eines Dinges enttöbigt sein to do without, dispense with

entwehren to rob of, with the gen or more commonly einem etwas entwehren, both constructions early N H G now obsolete

entwöhnen to disaccustom to, wean away from, also with von with the dat, sometimes with the simple dat (see I b above) Der General entwöhnt seine Truppen des Alkohols Der Säugling ist jetzt von der Brust entwöhnt.

usually with mit with the dat

for cause to forget, now obsolete Leid vergessen machen, or einen

erinnern to remind of, now usually with an with the acc einen an sein Versprechen erinnern Das Bild erinnert lebhaft an Böcklin (reminds us of Böcklin's art)

erlassen to release from, now einem etwas erlassen Ich habe Sie Ihrer Verbindlichkeit erlassen (Lessing's Minna 5, 5)

erledigen to free from, also with von with the dat, now in this meaning usually replaced by entledigen

erleichtern to relieve from einen der Last or usually von der Last erleichtern

ermahnen to exhort to usually with zu with the dat, remind of with the gen or an with the acc erretten to save or rescue from, with the gen in early N H G, now with von or aus with the dat

with the gen in early N H G, now with nach with the dat or I 1 b below

schuld in the expression schuld gegeben, daß König 1773) The or

as an acc and he Mama dann auch gemahnen to remind

an with the acc see also c and B d below

gewähren to grant with the gen in early N H G, as in Psalm xx 6 and as late as Grillparzer, now with the dat of the person and the acc of the thing Schließ deinen Helm, dann sei des Kampfs gewährt (Grillparzer's König Ottokar 5) Er gewährte mir die Bitte

haben in the expressions es (old gen as explained in 140 c now usually construed as an acc

for it Ihm allein habe ich es

schoben werde (Lessing an I

It is now usually construed

by an acc Am Ende gibt

)

of, now more commonly with

- and hence in case of other words the gen. is replaced by an acc.) *nicht Wort haben* *not to admit it*; *es nicht Hehl haben* *to make no secret of it*, now also *kein Hehl daraus machen*; *es Ursache haben* *to have good reasons to do or think so*, now more commonly *alle Ursache dazu haben* as in *Ich habe alle Ursache dazu*; *es* (old gen.) or *das* (acc.) *schuld haben* *to be to blame for it*, now more commonly *daran schuld sein* (or *haben*).
- lösen* or *erlösen* *to free from*, now with *von* or *aus* with the dat.
- lossprechen* *to acquit of, release from*, now usually with *von* with the dat.
- mahnen* *to remind of*, usually with *an* with the acc., *to dun for* with *um* with the acc. or *wegen* with the gen., *to urge to* with *zu* with the dat.
- schelten* *to scold someone for*, now with *wegen* with the gen.
- sichern* (Schiller's *Tell*, 3, 3) *to assure of*.
- strafen* still with the gen. in the set expression *jemanden Lügen strafen* *to give one the lie*, where *Lügen* tho gen. pl. is now usually felt as an acc. pl.
- trösten* *to console over*, now with *über* with the acc. (formerly also dat., as in John xi. 19) or *wegen* with the gen.
- überführen* *to convict of*.
- überheben* *to relieve from, spare one* (the trouble, &c.) *of*, sometimes with the dat.: *Überheben Sie mich des Gegenbesuchs*. An diesem Maßstabe gemessen, bleibt die Verfasserin unserer Aufzeichnungen solchem Vorwurfe überhoben (Paul Hoffmann in *Euphorion*, 1903, Band X, p. 106).
- überweisen* *to convict of* with the gen., *convince of* with the gen. or *von* with the dat., in the second meaning now replaced by *überzeugen*.
- überzeugen* *to convince of*, usually with *von* with the dat.
- unterrichten* and *unterweisen*, see III. 1. f below.
- verdächtigen* *to suspect of*.
- verdenken* *to blame for, find fault with someone for*, earlier in the period: *Wer will sie des verdenken?* (Luther), or *Wer will sie darum verdenken?*, now *Wer will es ihnen verdenken* or *verargen?*
- vergewissern* *to assure of* (the truth of a statement, of the existence of some state of things, &c.), also with *über* with the acc., *von* with the dat., or *wegen* with the gen.
- verjagen* *to drive out of*, now with *von* or *aus* with the dat.
- verklagen* *to accuse of*, now replaced by *anklagen*.
- versichern* *to assure of* (one's friendship, &c.). See also B. a below and 259. 35.
- verwarnen* *to caution against*, now with *vor* with the dat.
- verweisen* *to banish from*, also with *aus* with the dat.: *Er verwies den Verräter des Landes*.
- warnen* *to warn*, now with *vor* with the dat.: *Ich habe dich vor dem Schwindler gewarnt*.
- weisen* *to show*, now usually with the dat. of the person and the acc. of the thing: *Der wies ihn des Weges aufwärts durch wirres Strauchwerk* (Wilhelm Fischer's *Sonnenopfer*, II), or more commonly *Der wies ihm den Weg*. The former construction in part survives in such expressions as *Er läßt sich weisen* *He can be guided*.
- wissen* in the expression *es einem Dank wissen* *to be grateful to someone for something*. The *es* is here according to 140. c an old gen., but it is now felt as an acc. and hence in case of other words the gen. is sometimes replaced by the acc.: *Ich weiß dir deine Freigebigkeit großen Dank* (Alex. König, 1001 *Nacht*, II, p. 15). *Das wußte er ihr Dank* (A. Behrens-Litzmann's *Ein Sommerabend in Deutsche Monatsschrift*, Aug. 1904, p. 648). Usually the gen. is replaced by *für* with the acc.: *Ich weiß dir für die Gabe Dank*.
- würdigen* *to deem worthy of*.
- zeihen* *to accuse of*.

b. *The Accusative of the Reflexive Pronoun and a Genitive*. The following list of verbs which usually take the accusative of the reflexive pronoun but sometimes admit of or prefer a prepositional phrase instead of the genitive, or instead of the accusative and genitive take another construction, as indicated after each verb:—

- sich abgewöhnen* *to disaccustom one's self to, leave off, give up*, formerly with the acc. of the reflexive and the gen. of the noun or *von* with the dat., now with the dat. of the reflexive and the acc. of the noun, as in *Ich gewöhne mir das Trinken ab*.
- sich abtun* *to free one's self from, renounce, give up*, now little used: *Wie wenn der falsche Mann . . . sich seines Glaubens abgetan?* (Bürger's *Lenore*).
- sich anmaßen* *to arrogate to one's self*, now more commonly with the dat. of the reflexive pronoun and the acc. of the thing: *Wenn sie (i.e. die Rolle) von einem Komödianten gespielt wird, der sich dieses Titels in der Tat anmaßen könnte* (Lessing, 4, 182). *Du hast dir dieses Recht nur angemäßt*.
- sich annehmen* *to interest one's self in or for*: *Nimm dich doch meiner, meiner Sache an*. In S.G. we often find *um* with the acc. here instead of the gen.: *Er nimmt sich um gar keinen Menschen an* (Auerbach's *Dorfgeschichten*, 8, p. 36). See also 262. I. b. (2nd par.).
- sich ärgern* (1) *to be vexed at, by, with*, sometimes still with the gen., usually with *über* with the acc. or earlier in the period *über* with the dat.: *Ich ärgerte mich der fatalen Rücksichtslosigkeit* (J. J. David in *Die Neue Rundschau*, July, 1906, p. 875). *Dann war ich fortgegangen, hatte ihn nach der Mutter Tod allein gelassen, mich oft seiner geärgert* (Hermann Hesse's *Peter Camenzind*, p. 168). (2) *to be worried by*, with *an* with the dat.: *An dem ungezogenen*

Schuler ärgere ich mich zu Tode The naughty pupil worries almost the life out of me This construction with an *as* also used in biblical language with the meaning to be offended because of, as in Matth xxvi 31  
 sich bedanken to thank for, now with für with the acc or wegen with the gen Ich bedanke mich bei ihm wegen des schönen Geschenks (or für das schöne Geschenk)  
 sich bedenken to bethink one's self of Er hat sich eines Besseren bedacht He changed his mind  
 sich bedienen to make use of  
 sich befahren to fear, now obsolete  
 sich befeilen (or in early N H G fleilen, see 2 Macc xv 12) or sich befeiligen (or in early N H G fleiligen, see Rom xii 17) to apply one's self to aim at Befleißige dich der Wahrheit. Er befließt sich (as studying) der Rechtswissenschaft Er befließt sich der Kürze Der Sparsamkeit beflissen (given to)  
 sich befreien to free one's self from now with von with the dat  
 sich befürchten to fear, the reflexive verb now replaced by the transitive befürchten with an acc object  
 sich begeben to renounce, wante strip or deprive one's self of refrain from Ich begeben mich meines Rechtes Ich begeben mich (refrain from) jedes Urteils  
 sich behelfen to get along with now with mit with the dat Ich behelfe mich mit einem geringen Gehalte  
 sich beklagen to complain of, now with über with the acc  
 sich bemächtigen to take possession of  
 sich bemeistern to seize on overcome take possession of  
 sich bescheiden to be modest usually replaced by sich rühmen

sich bescheiden to be modest with the gen content one's self with mit with h bescheide (acquiesce) mich dessen Bescheide dich mit wenigem Ich bescheide mich mit dem, was Sie sagen  
 sich besinnen to reflect über with the acc  
 sich besinnen to reflect essen (or anderen) besinnen to think better or dis with the gen or more commonly with auf with the acc  
 mich fortwährend auf den Namen  
 sich besorgen to fear, apprehend be apprehensive of also with vor with the dat both constructions now little used Besorgen is now a transitive with an acc object Ich besorgte nichts Böses  
 sich bessern to improve or grow better by means of now with durch Nu hatte ich bereit den Katechismus gelernt, des (now wodurch) sich viel Leute gebessert hatten (I uther)  
 sich bestreben to strive after Ich bestrebe mich einer ebenso reinen und edlen Liebe als er (Lessing's Minna 5 9)  
 sich entäußern (or earlier in the period simply äußern) to rid one's self of cast off give up, sell, transfer renounce  
 sich entblößen to be so bold with the gen sometimes with the acc now little used in this meaning and these constructions Was? Dürft ihr solches Unfuges euch vor meinem Aug' entblößen? (Schlegel's Span 2, 168) Was könnte der Mann sich entblößen? (Wieland) Compare 246 II 2 a and b  
 sich entblößen to strip one's self of now with von with the dat  
 sich entbrechen to refrain from now little used except in negative form with a dependent infinitive Ich konnte mich nicht entbrechen, ihm die Wahrheit zu sagen  
 sich entgürten to ungird Des Schwerts entgürte dich (Hebbel's Genotera 1 2)  
 sich enthalten to abstain from sometimes with von with the dat  
 sich entkleiden to divest one's self of

at

he gen, sometimes von with the  
 (2) to perform (a duty task)  
 Auftrags, meines Versprechens

sich entleeren to empty itself Der Selbstentlader entleert sich seines Inhalts  
 sich entmemmen to free one's self from the cowardice of (one's dejected thoughts feelings) Entmemme dich deiner verzagten Gefühle! (Heine)  
 sich entringen to disengage one's self from free one's self from usually with the dat Sie haben an mir ein Beispiel, wie man sich selbst solcher Fesseln entringen kann (Franz's Der Gott der Götter 1 2)  
 sich entschließen to decide upon gen now usually replaced by zu with the dat except in case of gen es (140 c) or acc das or was instead of es Ich habe mich zur Reise, zu nichts, zur Tat entschlossen, or with an infin instead of a noun Ich habe mich entschlossen zu gehen  
 sich entschlagen to dismiss (care thoughts &c) Entschlage dich dieser Sorgen, dieser Gedanken  
 sich entschlagen to dismiss Sometimes according to I b with dat instead of gen Das lastet nur, ich muß mich ihm entschlagen (Goethe's Elegie I 112)  
 sich entschließen to decide upon gen now usually replaced by zu with the dat except in case of gen es (140 c) or acc das or was instead of es Ich habe mich zur Reise, zu nichts, zur Tat entschlossen, or with an infin instead of a noun Ich habe mich entschlossen zu gehen

- Ich war es entschlossen (Fontane's *Irrungen*, 261), or das instead of es: Das bin ich fest entschlossen (Iffland's *Hausfrieden*, 55), or more commonly dazu instead of es or das.
- sich entschuldigen to *excuse one's self on account of*, now usually with wegen with the gen.
- sich entschütten to *get rid of, throw off*, much used earlier in the period.
- sich entsetzen to *be terrified at*, usually with vor with the dat. or über with the acc.
- sich entsinnen to *recollect, call to mind*, with the gen. or auf with the acc., rarely a transitive with an acc. object: Ich entsinne mich nicht mehr dieses Mannes, or auf diesen Mann. Entsinnst du den Jeronimo? (H. v. Hofmannsthal's *Das gerettete Venedig*, p. 33).
- sich entwöhnen to *disaccustom one's self to*, also with von with the dat., sometimes with the simple dat.: Du mußt dich des Rauchens (or von dem Rauchen) entwöhnen. Unter den Schachtelsätzen, deren wir uns seit Nietzsche mehr und mehr entwöhnt haben (A. Heusler in *Anzeiger für deutsches Altertum*, 1902, p. 324). See also I. b above.
- sich entziehen to *withdraw from*, usually with the dat., sometimes with von with the dat.: Verschlössen in dem Innern der Gemächer, | entzieht er sich des Reiches (Grillparzer's *Esther*, 1). Warum entziehen Sie sich unserem Verkehr immer mehr?
- sich erbarmen to *take pity on*, more commonly with über with the acc. See also B. d below.
- sich erdreisten to *be bold enough, have the cheek*, sometimes also with the acc.: der sich jener Tat erdreistet (Goethe); was sich kein anderer erdreistet hatte (J. Paul). Now usually with the infin.: Erdreiste dich nicht, mir das zu sagen.
- sich erfrechen to *have the impudence to*: Erfrechst du dich so gottverdammter Lügen mir ins Gesicht? (P. Heyse, 20, 84).
- sich erfreuen (1) to *take pleasure in* (doing something), *enjoy*, with the gen. or more commonly with an with the dat.: Ich erfreue mich an einem schönen Spaziergang, an einer gut besetzten Tafel, an einem guten Glas Wein. (2) to *have, possess*, usually with the gen.: Ich erfreue mich einer guten Gesundheit.
- sich ergötzen (earlier in the period ergetzen) to *make up, compensate for, cause to forget*, now obsolete: Da wil ich mich meiner mühe vnd meines hertzenleides ergetzen (Jer. viii. 18), now Da will ich mich für meine Mühe und mein Herzeleid entschädigen.
- sich erheben (Goethe's *Rein. F.*, 5) to *boast of, be haughty on account of*, now replaced by sich überheben.
- sich erholen (1) to *seek or apply for* (advice, &c.), with the acc. of the reflexive pronoun and the gen. of the thing, or with the dat. of the reflexive pronoun and the gen. or acc. of the thing, as in Ich erhole mich bei ihm Rats or Ich erhole mir bei ihm Rats or Rat. (2) to *retrieve*, with the gen. or more commonly von with the dat., as in Ich will mich meines Schadens or usually von meinem Schaden erholen and Er erholt sich von seinem Schaden an einem anderen. (3) to *recover from*, with the gen. or more commonly von with the dat., as in Erhole dich erst von dem Schreck, von der Arbeit, von den Strapazen, von der Krankheit.
- sich erinnern to *remember*, with the gen., often also with an with the acc., sometimes with auf with the acc. after the analogy of sich auf etwas besinnen, especially in the meaning to *recall*, sometimes with the acc. or dat. of the reflexive pronoun and the acc. instead of the gen., often, especially in the extreme North, as in English used as a transitive with a direct object in the acc., perhaps after the analogy of vergessen with the acc.: Ich erinnere mich nicht mehr des Vorfalles, or an den Vorfall. Vergebens suchte er sich auf das Aussehen der anderen Frau zu erinnern (G. Freytag). Das erinnere ich mich wieder (Goethe). Das kann ich mir jetzt nicht deutlich erinnern (Otto Frommel's *Grundlsee*). Aber das müßte man doch erinnern (Timm Kröger's *Das Wunderbare*, I). Sieh mal, Jürgen, du erinnerst unser Zusammentreffen im Garten (Frenssen's *Jörn Uhl*, chap. 24). The simple acc. is the rule in the meaning to *censure*: Ich fand manches zu erinnern.
- sich erkönnen to *make bold*, sometimes with the acc.: Nur Graf Lester durfte sich | an diesem Hofe solcher Tat erkönnen (Schiller's *Maria*, 4, 6). Sie darf sich was erkönnen (Geibel, 1, 48).
- sich erkundigen to *inquire after*, now usually nach with the dat.: Ich erkundigte mich bei ihm nach Ihnen, nach der Ursache usw.
- sich erledigen, with the meanings and constructions of entledigen, but much less common: wie man des Drucks sich möcht' erledigen (Schiller's *Tell*, 1, 2). Erledigen is quite common, however, as a transitive with an acc. object in the related meanings to finish, settle, pay: Er hat seine Korrespondenz, den Streit, die Schuld erledigt.
- sich erleichtern to *relieve one's self from*: sich der Last or usually von der Last erleichtern.
- sich ernähren, see nähren below.
- sich ersättigen to *become satiated with*, more commonly with an or mit with the dat.: Endlich als er sich des ersten Schmerzes ersättigt, erhob er sich usw. (L. Forster's *Die Flinte von San Marco*, XIII, *Deutsche Rundschau*, April 1896).
- sich ersehen to *perceive, look out for, avail one's self of*, more commonly with the dat. of the reflexive pronoun and the acc. of the thing, or used as a transitive with an object in the acc.: Ich habe mich meines Vorteils, des Augenblicks, der Gelegenheit ersehen, or Ich habe mir den Vorteil, den Augenblick, die Gelegenheit ersehen, or Ich habe meinen Vorteil, den Augenblick, die Gelegenheit ersehen.
- sich erwegen or erwägen (2 Cor. I. 8) to *give up, renounce, despair of*, now obsolete.
- sich erwehren (or earlier in the period entwehren) to *ward off, refrain from, resist*: Er konnte sich der Hunde, der Diebe nicht erwehren. Ich kann mich des Schlafes, des Lachens, der Tränen nicht erwehren. Rarely with the dat. of the reflexive: Geht die Sonne des Morgens auf . . . , erwehr' ich mir niemals auszurufen usw. (Goethe's *Werther*, den 8. Februar).

sich freuen *to rejoice in over take a pleasure in* (a thing the idea of thought of) with the gen and also with prepositions Freue dich deiner Gesundheit, deines Glückes, or an deiner Gesundheit, an deinem Glück, or über deine Gesundheit, über dein Glück Man freut sich über das Geschehene, an dem Gegenwärtigen, auf das Künftige Ich freue mich auf des Freundes Ankunft Formerly über governed the dat Sie aber freuen sich vber meinem schaden (Psalms xxxv 15)

sich fürchten *to fear* early in the period ich fürchte mir eines Dinges, later ich fürchte mich eines Dinges, now with the gen only in the expression sich der Sünde fürchten *to be afraid* of the thing Du mußt dich eines Verlustes gewärtigen Was könnte ich mir für eine Antwort gewärtigen? (Lessing) A clause instead of the acc of the thing Du mußt dir gewärtigen werden zu wollen Ich fürchte mich vor diesem

sich misbrauchen *to misuse* now replaced by the transitives gebrauchen

sich getrösten (1) *to expect comfort* with the gen Ich kann mich der Hilfe sicher getrösten (2) *to comfort one's self with* with the gen or an or mit with the dat In behaglicher, wunschloser Ruhe sehen wir Handewitter die schnatternden Völker der Wanderschwalbe über die Baumgruppen unserer Hölle streben, indem wir uns derweilen unserer gefüllten Torfställe und Holzschuppen für den kommenden Winter getrösten (Kröger's *Der Schulmeister von Handewitt* p 24) (3) *to console one's self over* with the gen or more commonly with über with the acc Die Ehe blieb kinderlos, dessen sich jedoch beide in christlicher Ergebung getrösteten (Fontane's *Vor dem Sturm* I 6)

sich gewärtigen *to expect* with the gen or with the dat of the reflexive pronoun and the acc of the thing Du mußt dich eines Verlustes gewärtigen Was könnte ich mir für eine Antwort gewärtigen? (Lessing) A clause instead of the acc of the thing Du mußt dir gewärtigen

(Schefel's *Lumpeter* Lieder Jung Werners 11)

sich kümmern or bekümmern *to concern one's self* with usually with um with the acc Er kümmere dich nicht um Dinge, also bekümmern, IV below instead of this construction a nom die) Mühe nicht Es

lohnt sich nicht, das zu tun (2) *to be rewarded by* sometimes with gen more commonly with für with the acc Des bloßen Hinstarrens lohnte sich doch die Mühe des Weges aus deinem weichen Bett nicht (Raabe's *Unruhige Gäste* chap 6)

sich maßigen *to be temperate in* now with in with the dat

sich misbrauchen, now a trans with an acc object Compare 260 2 A

sich nähren or ernähren *to feed live upon make one's livelihood by* earlier in the period with the gen but now with mit or von with the dat or durch with the acc Deines Schwertes wirst du dich nähren (Gen xxvii 40 revised ed) Ich (the wolf) nähre mich bloß mit (here more commonly von) toten Schafen (Lessing's *Fabeln* 3 20) Die Massageten, ein von Fischen und Milch sich nährendes iranisches Volk (Hommel's *Grundriß der Geographie* p 213)

Daher scheint

'Kunde der Kultur

n will (Konrad

mit, durch seiner

wegen with the gen sometimes with mit or von with Du rühmst dich noch (wegen) des Streiches?

ometimes von with the

with the acc Schäume

'schäumte mich vor (in

sich scheuen *to be shy of shrink from* now only rarely with the gen usually with vor with the dat sich keiner Arbeit scheuen (Gartenlaube 19 367 b) Er scheut sich vor der Krankheit, vor der Verantwortung Often with the infinitive Ich scheue mich nicht, die Wahrheit zu sagen

sich schmeicheln *to flatter one's self with* a little earlier in the period with the dat or acc of the reflexive pronoun and the gen of the thing or with the dat of the reflexive pronoun and the acc of the thing now usually with the dat of the reflexive pronoun and mit with the dat Ich schmeichle mir or mich dessen, or Das schmeichle ich mir I venture to hope so Ich schmeichle mir mit der Hoffnung daß usw I flatter myself with or cherish the hope that &c sich trösten (1) *to console one's self over* more commonly with über with the acc (formerly also the dat) or wegen with the gen Er konnte sich über seinen Verlust nicht trösten (2) *to find comfort in* usually with an or mit with the dat or durch with the acc (3) *to rely on rejoice in* with the gen Denn darauß wir uns verlassen das ist uns jzt eitel schande und des

- wir vns trösteten | des müssen wir vns jtz schemen (Jer. III. 25). Sondern er tröstet sich dieses guten lebens (Psalm xlix. 19).
- sich über/heben (1) *to elevate one's self above others on account of, be unduly proud of*, with the gen. or wegen with the gen.: Überhebe dich nicht deiner Kleider, or wegen deiner Kleider. (2) *to spare one's self (the trouble, &c.) of*, usually with the gen., sometimes with the dat.: Dieser Mühe kann man sich überheben.
- sich über/reden, see III. 1. i below.
- sich über/zeugen *to convince one's self of*, usually with von with the dat.
- sich unter/fangen *to dare to undertake*, usually with the gen., sometimes with the acc.: So ist es mit allem, dessen sich der Mensch unterfängt (Goethe). Du verzeihst . . . , was sich die Frechheit unterfangen (Schiller).
- sich unter/stehen *to be so bold as to, to dare to do*, usually with the gen., sometimes with the acc. sometimes also with the dat. of the pronoun and the acc. of the thing: Wer untersteht sich dessen? Vergib, daß ich des Worts mich unterstanden (Lenau). Was vnterstehet sich der Arme | das er vnter den lebendigen wil sein? (Eccl. vi. 8). Sometimes Ich untersteh' mir das nicht. See also I. b above and III. 1. l below.
- sich unter/winden *to dare to undertake, assume the charge, care of, adopt*: Wie kann ich solcher Tat mich unterwinden! (Schiller's *Jungfrau*, 1, 10). See also I. b above.
- sich unter/ziehen *to undertake, undergo* (an operation, &c.) with the gen. or more commonly the dat.: Ich unterzog mich der großen Mühe, dem schwierigen Geschäft, einer Operation.
- sich verantworten *to justify one's self concerning, with reference to*, with the gen. (as in Acts xxv. 16) or more commonly with wegen with the gen.: Du sollst dich wegen deines Verfahrens verantworten.
- sich vergewissern *to assure one's self of* (the truth of a statement, &c.), also with wegen with the gen., über with the acc., or von with the dat.: Ich werde mich des Erfolges, über den Erfolg, or von dem Erfolg vergewissern.
- sich verleugnen *to deny, disown, renounce*, now replaced by the transitive verleugnen with an acc. object.
- sich verlohnen, see sich lohnen above.
- sich vermessen *to dare*: Wessen vermessen (or unterstehen, unterfangen, erkühnen) sie sich? Sie vermaßen sich hoher Dinge (Ranke's *Päpste*, 1, 108). Often with an acc. of an indefinite pronoun instead of a gen.: Wenn die Bestien, die Franzosen sich nur etwas gegen mich vermessen sollten (Goethe).
- sich vermögen (Swiss) = wofür können (see 213. 2. F. Note 1): „Ist sie da?“ „Nein, Herr Heideck! Aber was vermag ich mich dessen?“ (Boßhart's *Die Baretttochter*, p. 100) = Was kann ich dafür?
- sich vermuten *to suppose, expect*, earlier in the period sich eines Dings vermuten, now ein Ding (acc.) vermuten: Ich habe deinen Besuch nicht vermutet. Das konnte ich (mir) nicht vermuten.
- sich versagen *to refuse to enter into relations with, withdraw from*, more commonly a dat. instead of a gen.: Wenn die dänische Regierung in der Tat gesonnen sein sollte, sich amtlicher (usually amtlichen) Verhandlungen auf die Dauer zu versagen (*Preußen im Bundestag*, 1851 bis 1859, 1, 30).
- sich versehen *to expect something (confidently) of one*, sich (acc.) eines Dinges zu (or von) einem versehen or sich (dat.) ein Ding von (or zu) einem versehen: Einer solchen Aufnahme hatte sich der arme Vetter zu der reichen Sippschaft seines Weibes nicht versehen. Ich hatte mich eines Besseren zu Ihnen versehen. Mit banger Sorge würde sich das deutsche Volk die Frage vorlegen, wer denn der Nachfolger werden und wessen man sich von ihm zu versehen haben würde (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Nov. 13, 1908). Das hätte ich mir von (or zu) Ihnen nicht versehen.
- sich versichern *to make sure of, gain over, seize*: Versichern Sie sich des Ministers *Make sure of, gain over the minister*. Man wird sich der Häupter versichern (Goethe's *Egmont*) *will seize &c.*
- sich verstehen *to understand*, formerly with the gen. as in Acts xxv. 20, now usually with auf with the acc.: Ich verstehe mich auf solche Sachen nicht.
- sich vertrösten *to put reliance on, trust in or to*, with gen. as in 2 Chron. xxxii. 10, but now rare in this meaning, *to cheer one's self by looking forward and counting on*, with auf with the acc.: Die Besten hatten sich auf diese letzte Instanz vertröstet.
- sich verwegen (sometimes verwägen) *to dare, venture upon, renounce, give up, do without*, now little used except in the adjective perfect participle (see 199. 2nd Division, 2): Solcher Gewalttat hätte der Tyrann wider die freie Edle sich verwogen? (Schiller's *Tell*, 4, 2)
- sich verweigern *to refuse*: earlier in the period sich eines Dinges or einem Dinge verweigern, now according to I above.
- sich verwundern *to be surprised or astonished at*, with the gen., as in Luke ii. 47, or more commonly über with the acc.: Ich habe mich über dich, über die Rede verwundert.
- sich verzeihen *to renounce, give up*, now obsolete in this meaning and construction.
- sich wehren *to defend*, usually with gegen: Ich wehre mich meiner Haut, meines Lebens. Ich wehrte mich gegen ihn, gegen seinen Spott, but with different meaning Ich wehrte (prevented) dem Bettler den Eintritt.
- sich weigern *to refuse*, sometimes with the dat.: Er weigerte sich dessen. Der Alte bat um das Gewehr, dem aber weigerte sich der junge Mann (Immermann's *Münchhausen*, 1, 151). Now little used except with an infin. instead of the gen., or without any object at all: Er weigerte sich, es zu tun. Ich weigere mich nicht. Compare verweigern, I above.



sich wundern *to be surprised at* sometimes with the gen as in Luke iv 22 usually with über with the acc. The gen according to III 2 B (2n l par) is common in the expression Sie wunderte sich des Todes (or zu Tode, or sehr) *She was greatly astonished*

c *Accusative and Genitive, or Dative and Genitive after Impersonal Verbs*  
The impersonal subject es may be expressed or understood, as explained in 219 This construction was once a favorite, so that it occasionally took the place of other constructions but it did not permanently hold its ground and in recent literature has been largely replaced by other constructions as is indicated after each verb Here belong the following impersonal verbs —

dauern *to pity* in early N H G and in archaic and poetic language still with the acc and gen now usually according to B d below Mich dauerte der heimatlosen Kleinen (Grillparzer's *Sappho* 3 5) now usually in plain prose Mich dauerte die heimatlose Kleine

denken or gedenken *to remember* earlier in the period with the acc (or dat) and gen Mich denken or gedenken du dich wohl (Lessing's *Nathan* 2 2) Es gedenkt mir aus meinen (Richtl's *Wanderbuch*) See also B d below

erben  
ihn des funkelnden Gaukelspiels (Paul Keller's *Der Sohn der Hagar* p 261) Wenn ihm benahe des ganzen Lebens ekelt (Lessing) The more common prose construction is given in B d below

erbarmen *to pity* here with the acc (or formerly also dat) and gen or more commonly according to A b above Und doch erbarmt mich deiner (Schiller's *Teil* 5 2)

freuen *to rejoice* here with the acc and gen or more commonly according to b above Mich freut des verwegenen Entschlusses (J H Voß)

gebrechen *to be lacking wanting* with the dat and gen only rarely even in early N H G as Zenan den Schriftgelehrten (but soon felt as a nom)

gelusten or lusten *to covet lust after* earlier in the period with the acc (or dat) and gen Las dich nicht gelusten deines Nehesten Weibs (Exod xx 17) Present usage is given in B d below

in the period with the acc.  
eines bawfälligen Hauses

s Present usage is given

in B d below  
jammern *to grieve pity* earlier in the period with the acc (or sometimes dat) and gen Vnd da er das Volk sahe jammert ja desselbigen (Matth ix 36) Present usage is given in B d below

kummern *to concern* now little used here earlier in the period Es kümmert mich dessen nicht Present usage is given in B d below

reuen or  
Denn  
straffe  
verdrieß  
acc (or sometimes dat) and gen  
sser Güte | vnd rewet ja bald der

mich gleich verdrießen tut (H Sachs) Verdrieß ihm (usually ihn) der Schlacht und des Lebens (J Müller 24 177) Present usage is given in B d below

verlangen *to long for* only rarely with the acc and gen The usual construction is given in B d below

wundern *to wonder at be surprised at* formerly with the acc and gen now usually according to b above or B d below Des wundert ihn gar mächtiglich (Wieland)

B The different constructions in A are not so common now as in early N H G and are in instances now confined to elevated discourse In common prose they are often replaced by the following constructions but sometimes the old and the new constructions exist side by side with or without a different shade of meaning

a In a number of cases the acc of the person and the gen of the thing can be replaced by the dat of the person and the acc of the thing Dessen versichere ich Sie I assure you of that or now more commonly Das versichere ich Ihnen, or with a clause Ich versichere Sie or now more commonly Ihnen, daß ich es gesehen habe See also I b above and 259 35

b The old gen es (see 140 c) still occurs in a number of idiomatic expressions and not being any longer understood has been construed as a nom or acc neuter This false conception has led to the use of the nom and acc of other words where the gen should stand and has thus given rise to several common but in fact erroneous expressions Es (gen, but felt as a nom) or das

(instead of *dessen*) *nimmt mich Wunder* (nom.) That surprises me, or literally according to the original genitive construction: Wonderment seizes me on account of it. *Das* (instead of *dessen*) *versichere ich Sie*.

c. In a number of cases, as can be seen in the many remarks after the verbs in A above, the gen. is usually in prose replaced by a prep. construction. Also the prep. construction can be used with verbs which usually take the gen., if it is desired to express some different shade of meaning. Thus *sich erfreuen* w. gen. denotes possession, while w. an it denotes a lively interest or pleasure in something: *Ich erfreue mich einer guten Gesundheit* I enjoy (have) good health. *Ich habe mich recht an ihm erfreut* I was delighted with him.

d. The gen. in the construction in A. c is not now common in prose. Instead of the gen. we now with some verbs find the nom., which becomes subject, as explained in 255. II. 1. H. c: *Vnd ekelt mich jr nicht also | das mit jnen aus sein solt'* (Lev. xxvi. 44), but *Weil ihn das nackte Schauspiel ekelte* (K. F. Meyer's *Gustav Adolfs Page*). *Es erbarmt mich seiner*, or more commonly *Er erbarmt mich*, or still more frequently according to A. b: *Ich erbarme mich seiner* or *über ihn* I pity him. *Mich freut dessen*, or more commonly *Das freut mich*, or according to A. b: *Ich freue mich dessen* or *darüber*. *Da meiner Leuchte das Öl gebrach* (K. F. Meyer's *Nov.*, I, 253), or more commonly *Da es meiner Leuchte an Öl* (dat.) *gebrach*. The sentence from Luther's *Tischreden* given in A. c would now read: *Die Welt gemahnt mich* (also *mir*) *wie ein baufälliges Haus*, or more commonly *Die Welt gemahnt mich an ein baufälliges Haus*, or sometimes w. acc. of the person and gen. of the thing: *Daß, wenn dein Herz | der Stunde dich gemahnt, du sagen kannst, | ich weiß von ihr nichts* (Wildenbruch's *König Laurin*, p. 76). *Mich* (occasionally *mir*) *gereut die Tat, der getane Schritt*. *Es genügt mir an deinem Wohlwollen*, or *Dein Wohlwollen genügt mir*. *Mich jammert nur der Vater* (Schiller's *Tell*, I, 4). *Das kümmert mich nicht, nicht im geringsten, wenig, nichts, gar nichts, kein Haar*, or often according to A. b above. *Sein Benehmen verdrießt mich*. *Das wundert mich*, or *Ich wundere mich darüber*.

The impersonal construction, however, is still quite common after *gelüsten* and *lügen* (both sometimes w. dat. of the person instead of the acc.), *verlangen* (w. acc., sometimes dat.), and *ekeln*, but with a prepositional object instead of a gen.: *Es gelüftet die Frau nach dem Obst*. *Mag's der Mönch alleine tun, wenn ihm danach gelüftet* (von der Gabelentz's *Der Mönch*, last chap.). Also w. personal construction: *Ich gelüste nach dem Obst*. *Mich verlangt nach dir*. *Wenn du wüßtest, wie mir gerade danach verlangt!* (Fontane's *Effi*, chap. 10). *Tag und Nacht verlangt ihn, sie zu sehen* (E. von Handel-Mazzetti's *Stephana Schwertner*, II, chap. VI). *Verlangen* sometimes takes a gen. object. See 260. 2. A. *Mir* (or also *mich*) *ekelt vor etwas* (dat.), *etwas ekelt mich*, or now also *ich ekele mich vor etwas* (dat.) or *an etwas* (dat.): *Mir ekelt vor der Speise*, or *Ich ekele mich vor der Speise*, or *Diese Speise ekelt mich*. *Er blickte sich wie ein Verirrter im großen Raume um mit all den Spuren des gestrigen Gelages und ekelte sich daran* (Schulze-Smidt's *Denk' ich an Deutschland in der Nacht*, I). An infinitive or a clause may replace the prep. object: *Es lüstete sie, einen Schmetterling zu fangen* (P. Heyse). *Es verlangt einem allmählich, daß Sie die Stille wieder unterbrechen* (T. Storm an G. Keller, 13. September 1883).

After *denken* and *gedenken* both the acc. and gen. construction and that with the nom. and acc. have, perhaps, disappeared, tho both are found earlier in the period. The dat. of the personal pronoun is now usually found instead of the acc., but also this construction is now rare: *Mir denkt's kaum, daß ich sie einmal sah* (Mörike). *Gedenkt dir's noch, wie uns nach Friedrichs Krönung | die Römer hart am Tiber überfallen?* (M. Greif's *Heinrich der Löwe*, 3, 2).

C. Of the constructions in A only a can be transferred to the passive. Then the acc. of the person becomes nom. and the gen. of the thing remains: *Er beraubte mich aller meiner Hoffnungen* becoming in the passive *Ich wurde*

aller meiner Hoffnungen beraubt. The nom may become an acc object. Nur ein paar Mal meinte ich das scharfe S vor einem anderen Konsonanten zu vernehmen, dessen ich selbst freilich mich längst entwohnt glaubte (T Storm)

### III Double Accusative

A double accusative is found in the following constructions

1 *Accusative of the Person and Accusative of the Thing* This construction, as described in I b, was once more common than now. It is at present limited to the following verbs: bitten to ask (a favor), beschworen to implore, fragen or befragen to ask (a question), abhören, überhören, or verhören to hear recite hören (especially in the set expression einen, also einem die Beichte hören) to hear, heißen to bid, bid to do, anweisen to instruct, order (to do), kosten to cost, lehren and in early N H G unterrichten to teach, führen and leiten to lead, lenken to guide, bereden to persuade, überreden to persuade, zeihen to accuse, berichten to inform, sich unterstehen (with acc of the reflexive and the acc of the thing) to be so bold, verstehen to understand, most of which admit of other constructions, hence are treated below separately.

a bitten has two accusatives only when the thing is a neut pronoun or a numeral, otherwise the thing is in the acc after the prep um: Bitte mich alles in der Welt, nur das nicht. Eins bitte ich dich One thing I ask of you. Er bittet mich um eine Gefälligkeit. In poetry the simple acc of the thing is sometimes used instead of um with acc, when the acc of the person is not expressed. Ich bitte nicht Gnade (Klopstock). Sometimes also in terse vigorous prose. Reiten Sie zur Fabrik und bringen mir — ich bitte flotte Gangart — Bericht (Lilientron's *Kriegsnotellen*, Anno 1870, Der Richtungspunkt). According to II A a above, bitten was in early N H G used with an accusative of the person and the genitive of the thing. The old genitive construction survives in case of alles and eins, as found in the first two examples given above, but these forms are now felt as accusatives.

Beschworen has the same limited use of the double acc as bitten: Was ich dich jüngst so heiß beschworen, o mache den Propheten stumm! (Lenau)

b fragen and befragen have in a few set expressions, especially such as contain a neut demon or indef pronoun, two accusatives, the acc of the person and the acc (in early N H G also the gen, as in earlier periods) of the thing, but more commonly, aside from these set expressions, the thing is in the dat after the prep nach, after, concerning, or in the acc after the prep um for. Fragte er dich das? Er fragte mich wenig. Er fragte mich etwas. Ich habe Sie verschiedenes zu fragen (Wildenbruch's *Der unsterbliche Felix*, 2, 19). Lasse mich heimlich den Tapfersten sehen, den Otto von Bismarck, daß ich ihn alles befrage, was meine Seele belastet (Trensen's *Bismarck*, p 109). Ich fragte ihn nach seinem Namen I asked him his name. Ich fragte ihn nach der Ursache. Ich fragte ihn um Rat. In early N H G the prep von was also used here. Und wenn die Leute am selben Ort fragten von seinem Weibe | so sprach er (Genesis xxvi 7). The simple acc and the construction with nach are, however, sometimes used with a different shade of meaning. The acc of the thing asks for a formal statement or explanation of some problem or task, not for information, but to ascertain whether the one questioned is informed, while the dat after nach asks for information about something. Der Lehrer fragt den Schüler die Vokabeln, die Regeln, die Jahreszahlen. The teacher is asking the pupil to give the vocabulary, rules, dates. Ich fragte ihn nach dem Weg I asked him the way. The passive of this construction is formed as in c.

c The words abhören, überhören, verhören to hear recite, prüfen to examine, hören to shrieve, have a double construction — the acc of the thing and either the dat or the acc of the person. Der Lehrer hat dem Schüler (or sometimes also den Schüler) die Aufgabe, die Vokabeln abgehört (or überhört, or verhört). The teacher has heard the pupil recite the exercise, vocabulary. Der Herr überhört die Kinder ein auswendig gelerntes artiges Gedicht (Goethe's *Wan-*

*derj.*, 3, 10). Der Lehrer hat dem (or den) Schüler die Geschichte geprüft examined the pupil in history, or hat ihn in der Geschichte geprüft. Der Priester hört einen (sometimes also einem) (die) Beichte. Hören is also sometimes used with a double accusative in its primary meaning: Höre mich noch ein paar Worte (Goethe). The acc. Worte is an adverbial acc. of extent (223. iv. 2. A).

Überhören, verhören, and fragen may form a passive in the following ways, which are without material difference of meaning. The acc. of the person becomes nom. and the acc. of the thing may either remain acc., or may form a prep. phrase with nach in case of fragen, and with über in case of all three words: Diesen Abschnitt sind wir gar nicht gefragt, verhört worden, or Nach diesem Abschnitt sind wir gar nicht gefragt worden, or Über diesen Abschnitt sind wir gar nicht gefragt, überhört, verhört worden. Instead of these different constructions the acc. of the thing of the active may become nom. in the passive, and the dat. of the person remain dat.: Dieser Abschnitt ist uns gar nicht abgefragt, abgehört, überhört worden.

d. Heißen cannot freely take an acc. of the person and also of the thing, but is limited to an acc. of the person and a neut. acc. of a pronoun, or to an acc. of the person and an infinitive: daß du mir Gehorsam schuldig bist in allem, was ich dich heiße (Schiller's *Räuber*, 4, 2). Jeden Mord, den du mich begehen heißt (id., 3, 2). Liebe Laura! Du kannst mich das heißen? Ich heiß' ihn eilen. The acc. of the person is now, perhaps, more commonly replaced by the dat., where the object of the thing is not an infinitive: Was ein evangelischer Geistlicher einem andren heißen konnte, konnt' er auch selber tun (Telmann's *Wahrheit*, VIII), but usually Ich habe dich das tun heißen. In the latter case the dat. of the person is also sometimes found: Wann hieß ich dir die Schrift an Burleigh geben? (Schiller's *M. Stuart*, 5, 14). The dative is more frequently used if the infinitive with zu is employed: Nun erzählte der Mönch, wie er das Mädchen in den Armen des betrunkenen Soldaten angetroffen und daß er ihr geheißsen habe, das lärmige tolle Fest zu verlassen (G. von Gabelentz's *Der Mönch*). In the passive the person is usually in the dat. and the thing in the nom.: Das ist dir geheißsen worden. Es ist dir geheißsen worden, das zu tun.

Anweisen to instruct, order (to do), much like heißen, in meaning, may likewise take an accusative of the person and a neuter accusative of a pronoun: So wurde es Georg auf einmal ganz klar, daß er ebenfalls ganz aus eigenem Antrieb Pfarrer werden wolle, und daß es ihn niemand anweisen dürfe (Anna Schieber's *Alle guten Geister*, p. 123). More common than the acc. of a neuter pronoun is an infinitive with zu: Ich habe ihn angewiesen, dir das Geld zu zahlen.

e. kosten (see 259. 21. B)

f. lehren (and sometimes incorrectly lernen = lehren) admits of the acc. of the thing and either acc. or dat. of the person, the latter (dat.) appearing about 1600 and later gradually spreading until it has come into wide use, but at present is generally opposed by grammarians: Sie lehrte ihn in choice language but in colloquial speech often ihm kleine Lieder. Der kleine Sylvester, dem die Mutter selbst Lesen und Schreiben lehrte (Ompteda's *Sylvester von Geyer*, vi). Altho the dative is often used here in connection with the accusative it is replaced by the accusative if it is the only object: „Was kann ich dir lehren? Lehre du mich!“ sagte Bruder Nathaniel (Hauptmann's *Der Narr in Christo*, p. 43). Where there are two objects the simple infinitive or the infinitive with zu may replace the acc. of the thing. See 185. B. I. 2. c and Note thereunder. Also a clause may replace the acc. of the thing: Er lehrte ihm, daß jeder Gegenstand seinen genau vorgeschriebenen Platz hatte (Ompteda's *Sylvester von Geyer*, xxvi). Compare in English: "He taught me" (acc.). "He taught me (acc. or dat.) that," but a clear modern dative in "He taught it to me" and "It was taught to me."

In the passive this construction assumes different forms: (1) The acc. of the person of the active construction becomes here nom., and the acc. of the thing

remains acc.: Ich werde das nicht gelehrt. (2) The acc. of the thing becomes nom. and the acc. of the person remains acc.: Das wird mich nicht gelehrt. (3) The acc. of the thing becomes nom. and the dat. of the person remains dat.: Das wird mir nicht gelehrt. The last construction is now much more common than the others. A clause or an infinitive with zu may replace the nom.: Mir ist gelehrt worden, daß dies meine Pflicht sei. Mir ist gelehrt worden, den Eltern zu gehorchen.

In early N.H.G. unterrichten and unterweisen to teach, instruct, might take either a double acc. or an acc. (in passive a nom.) of the person and a gen. of the thing: das er sie die Wort des Gesetzes vnterrichtet (Neh. viii. 13). Auff das du gewissen grund erfarest der Lere | welcher (in revised ed. in welcher) du vnterrichtet bist (Luke i. 4). Er wird in vnterweisen den besten weg (Psalm xxv. 12). Older usage is still occasionally found: Gott habe den apostolischen Vater des rechten Weges unterwiesen (Rundschr., 2, 5, 220). The acc. or gen. of the thing is now usually replaced by a prepositional construction: Er unterrichtet uns im Französischen. Ich wurde davon unterrichtet I was informed with regard to it, It came to my knowledge. Er hat seinen Enkel im Lesen unterwiesen.

Note. Such an sentence as *das er sie die Wort des Gesetzes vnterrichtet* is out of place in c accusative was here involved

g. Führen, leiten, and lenken take an acc. of the person and an acc. of the way: Er führt mich diesen Weg. Janthe, komm und leite mich den Pfad (Grillparzer's *Des Meeres und der Liebe Wellen*, 4). Wollt ihr nun mein als einer Frau gedenken, | lenksam dem Zaum, so daß kein Stachel not, | will freudig ich die Ruhmesbahn euch lenken (id., *Libussa*, 1). As in 260. 2. A. a we also find here the genitive instead of the accusative: Zwei von ihnen hielten den Mittleren an den Ohrläppchen gefangen und führten ihn so des Weges (Wilhelm Fischer's *Die Freude am Licht*, p. 34).

In the passive the acc. of the person becomes nom. and the acc. of the way remains: Ja, ja, wir werden eben unerforschliche Wege geführt (Raabe's *Schüdderump*, chap. xxxvi).

h. Bereden to make believe something false often has a pronominal acc. of the person and the acc. of a thing instead of the older and more correct acc. of the person and gen. of the thing: Mich wollt ihr das bereden? (Schiller's *Don Carlos*, 3, 4). We sometimes find the dat. of the person here and the acc. of the thing: Es (das Herz) läßt sich alles bereden, was Ihrer Einbildungskraft ihm zu bereden einfällt (Lessing's *Samps.*, 2, 3). Bereden to persuade takes the acc. of the person and the prep. zu: Er beredete ihn dazu. Earlier in the period the gen. of the thing was used instead of both the acc. and the prep. construction: Ich kann mich dessen schwerlich bereden (Lessing). In the meaning to talk over, discuss bereden takes a simple accusative: Ich habe den Plan mit ihm beredet.

i. Überreden to persuade usually has the acc. of the person and the prep. zu: Er hat mich zu der Sache überredet. Earlier in the period we find the acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing: Ich kann mich dessen nicht überreden (Adelung). In *Werther*, Am 15. Aug., Ausgabe letzter . . . , 1800, in the earlier editions E<sup>1-2</sup> ihm instead of ihn). As in the earlier editions of *Werther* the dative was once also elsewhere common.

The object in all the above constructions may in case of the thing be replaced by an infinitive (Acts xviii. 13) or a clause (Acts xxvi. 28).

j. Zeihen to accuse has sometimes an acc. of a neut. pronoun instead of the correct gen.: Was ich ihn zeihe, werd' ich selbst (Schiller's *Don Carlos*, 4, 6).

*k.* In early N.H.G. *berichten* to *inform* took an acc. of the person and the gen. of the thing, which construction still survives in *jemanden eines Besseren berichten* to disabuse a person of an opinion. Early in the period the gen. is replaced by a prep. phrase or an acc.: *einen von* (or *über*) *etwas berichten*, or *einen etwas* (double acc.) *berichten*. The acc. of the person is now replaced by a dat.: *einem etwas* (or *über etwas*) *berichten*. The former acc. construction here still survives in such expressions as *Wenn ich recht berichtet bin*, or *Du bist falsch berichtet*. See 260. 3.

*l.* The reflexive *sich unterstehen* belongs properly to II. *b* above, but as the gen. object *es* (140. *c*) which is so often used with it is construed as an acc., the real acc. is sometimes used: *Was untersteht sich der Arme | das er unter den Lebendigen wil sein?* (Eccl. vi. 8). *Wie ich mich das unterstehen kann?* (Hopfen's *Die fünfzig Semmeln des Studiosus Taillefer*, p. 66) You wonder how I am so bold as to do that! This word is usually employed with the object *es* and an infinitive clause which stands in apposition with the *es*, or with the infinitive clause alone which takes the place of the *es*: *Aber die blasse, abge-spannte Jadviga . . . fuhr auf wie ein wildes Tier, wenn er sich's unterstand, sie mit seinen Zärtlichkeiten belästigen zu wollen* (Schubin's *Refugium peccatorum*, vi). As the *sich* in such sentences is not a distinct acc. form, it is sometimes construed as a dat., and elsewhere a real dat. is employed: *Untersteh dir's, Mädel!* (Beyerlein's *Dämon Othello*, 2, 2). It is quite common to suppress the object of the thing in a few expressions: *Untersteh dich nicht!* In early N.H.G. *unterstehen* was also a transitive verb, taking as object an acc. or an infinitive clause: *Vmb des willen haben mich die Jüden im Tempel gegriffen | Vnd unterstunden mich zu tödten* (Acts xxvi. 21).

*m.* We sometimes find two accusatives with *verstehen* to *understand*: *Ich kann ihn nicht alles verstehen*. The dative of the person occurs here sometimes instead of the acc.

2. *Accusative of the Direct Object and an Objective Predicate.* This construction differs from the double acc. in 1 above, in that the two accusatives together form logically a sentence in which the first acc. performs the office of the subject and the second acc. the office of predicate: *Sie nannten ihn einen Verräter* (= *Er ist ein Verräter*). *Ich sehe ihn laufen*. The simple infinitive here as in the last example is the accusative of an old type of verbal noun which still as in the prehistoric period has no article before it. The two accusatives in each of these examples as elsewhere are the direct objects of the verb. As the construction is very old there has sprung up in course of time a close association between the two accusatives, so that the second one is now felt as the predicate to the first one, the subject. The predicate is here joined to the subject without the aid of a copula, as the statement is felt to be of the old appositional type of sentence described in 252. 1. *b.* Note, where the predicate is placed alongside the subject like an appositive without the use of a finite verb.

The objective predicate is now, except in the group in A. *a* below, usually introduced by *als*, *für*, or *zu*, with differentiated meanings. Earlier in the period the predicate noun is often a simple accusative where we to-day find *zu*, *für*, or *als* before the predicate. This indicates that the *literary* language of that time was under strong Latin influence, for even in oldest German *zu* and *für* were often used here. The literary language of our own day has a lively feeling for the strong concrete force of these old forms, which have always been in wide use among the people. The *zu* represents the new state as the result of a development or as the purpose of the action, while *für* represents the new state as entirely or seemingly identical with the conception held by the person in question. These old conceptions are still well established in the language, but the new form *als* (see A. *b* below), which has sprung up in the present period, is growing at the expense of *für*, which it is gradually displacing, and also at the expense of the simple forms. Compare 252. 2. A. *b.* (1), (2). Note, (3).

The following groups occur:—

A. A noun or pronoun is used as an objective predicate:

a. After *erachten* (also according to *b* and *c*; see *c* Note 1) to deem, *ernennen* (now rare here, usually according to *d* below) to appoint, *glauben* to believe, *wähnen* to fancy, imagine, *grüßen* to greet with the title of, *heißen* to call, name, *nennen* to call, *rufen* to call, *spotten* to call in derision, *taufen* (also *auf einen Namen taufen*) to christen, *titulieren* to call, style, *schelten* (also according to *b*) to call unjustly, call (one a harsh name), *schimpfen* (stronger than *schelten*) to call (one a bad name), *fluchen* to call (one a terrible name), *machen* (now rare here, usually according to *d* below), *sagen* (poetic here, but common in *B* below) to claim to be, *träumen* (also according to *b* below) to dream, the objective predicate is a simple acc.: *Beliebige Fremdlinge*, „Schriftsteller“, „Dichter!“ *erachten* es keinen Raub, ohne jeden Grund mir halbe Stunden zu stehlen (Dahn's *Erinnerungen*, IV, p. 218). Vielleicht wäre ich der, den du mich glaubst (Lessing). Der Vater wähet Hippodamien | die Mörderin (Goethe's *Iphigenie*, 1, 3). Wir nennen Gott unseren Vater. Warum schiltst du mich einen Feigling? Ihr sollt mich Hundsfott fluchen, | findet ihr das Mausloch leer (Sudermann's *Die drei Reiherfedern*, 1, 3). Sie schalt ihn einen Narren. Er hat ihn einen Grobian geschimpft. Zittere du für dein Leben, weil du mich Herzog (may be construed as acc. or nom.; see Note) spottest (Schiller's *Fiesko*, 5, 14). Käthchen von Heilbronn, die dein Kind du sagst, | ist meines höchsten Kaisers dort (Kleist's *Käthchen*, 5, 1). Dann kommen mir wohl Momente, wo ich mich ihren Bruder träume (Spielhagen's *Selbstgerecht*, II, p. 35).

Both of these accusatives become nom. in the passive: Warum wurde ich von dir ein Feigling gescholten? Er wurde Karl (or auf den Namen Karl) getauft.

Sie hieß Agnes, doch rief man ihr Agi (Hermann  
(*Fliegende Blätter*, Oct. 17, 1911).

b. After the verbs *anerkennen* to recognize, *anführen* to cite (as an example), *ansehen* to regard, *ansprechen* to claim, *anweisen* to assign, *sich aufspielen* to pose, *auslegen* to construe, *begrüßen* to greet, *behandeln* to treat, *beschreiben* to describe, *besingen* to celebrate, *betrachten* to consider, *bezeichnen* to designate, *darstellen* to represent, *dekla'rieren* to declare (to be), *sich* (dat.) *denken* to picture to one's self, imagine, *denun'zieren* to denounce, *einführen* to introduce, *empfehlen* to recommend, *erfinden* to find (someone) out (to be so and so), *erwähnen* to mention, *sich erweisen* or *sich herausstellen* to turn out to be, *geben* to give, *kennen* to know, *kennzeichnen* to characterize, *kleiden* to dress up as, *make look like*, *preisen* or *rühmen* to praise, *schätzen* to prize, *schildern* to depict, *sehen* to see, *verdingen* or *vermieten* to hire out as, *zeigen* to show to be, &c., the objective predicate is introduced by *als*, which here denotes *identity* or *oneness with*: Er spielt sich als Schönredner auf. Ich betrachte ihn als einen Narren. Ich denunziere Sie hiermit dieser Gesellschaft als notorischen Atheisten! (Lienhard's *Münchhausen*, 1).

For fluctuation of usage in case of reflexive verbs see 218. 2. *b* and Note thereunder. For the inflection of an unmodified objective predicate after *als* see 94. 1. *c*.

In the passive both of these accusatives become nom. See 252. 2. A. *b*. (1).

Note. In early N.H.G. there was often no *als* here, and this older usage survives in poetry: und hast sie Lügner erfunden (Rev. II 2) Als ich . . . | mich einen Fremdling sah in diesem Kreise (Schiller's *Piccolomini*, 3, 4).

c. After a few verbs the objective predicate is introduced by *für* (with acc.), which here does not positively affirm complete and absolute identity as does

als, but only equality, and hence denotes that something is considered or represented as able or worthy to pass *for* the thing expressed by the predicate: *Man erklärte ihn für einen Betrüger* They pronounced him a fraud. *Er gibt sich für einen Gelehrten aus* He makes himself out to be a scholar. *Ich halte ihn für einen Schmeichler* I consider him a flatterer. *Ich achte es für eine große Ehre* I esteem it a great honor. *Ich erkenne ihn für einen Freund* I own him as my friend. For the passive construction see 252. 2. A. b. (2).

*Note 1.* Several verbs, as *erachten*, *ansehen*, *(aus)deuten*, *auslegen*, *erkennen*, *ausschreien*, *ausrufen* (to proclaim as), are followed by either *als* or *für* according to the shade of meaning required: *Sie erkannten (recognized) die von dem Finanzminister abgelegte Rechnung als (as, here expressing identity) falsch, aber aus Mangel an Mut erkannten (pronounced) sie dieselbe für (simply letting it pass as) richtig*. Often there is a sharp distinction between *als* and *für*; *als*, however, is decidedly the favorite, and is even used when *für* would be more appropriate.

*Note 2.* In early N.H.G. there was often no *für* with those verbs, and this older usage survives in poetry: *Sölch unsinnige verfluchte Gojim halten sie uns* (Luther, *Erlanger Ausgabe*, 32, 226). *Du hältst es Recht* (Goethe's *Tasso*, 2, 4).

d. As after *werden* (252. 2. A. b. (3)), so also after the verbs *machen* to make, *aufwerfen* to constitute (*one's self*) to be, *einsetzen* to appoint, designate, wählen to elect, *ernennen* to appoint, *befördern* to promote to be, *erklären* to pronounce to be, *ausrufen* to proclaim, *sich fallen* to make *one's self* by falling, *schlagen* to beat, strike, *verkochen* to convert into by boiling, *verarbeiten* to make or convert into, *zerstoßen* to pound, *laden* to invite to be, and with similar meaning *haben* to have as, *nehmen* to take as, make, &c., the prep. *zu* (with the dat.) introduces the objective predicate to denote a transformation into a new condition: *Der Zwang der Zeiten machte mich zu ihrem Gegner*. *Er macht sie zu seiner Frau*. *Der Hund hat sich zum Beschützer des Kätzchens aufgeworfen*. *Der König ernannte ihn zum Offizier*. Und [sie] erklärten den forschen Kundschafter zu ihrem Gefangenen (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Sept. 22, 1907). *Er hat sich zum Krüppel gefallen*. *Einen zum Krüppel schlagen*, *einen zu Brei schlagen* to beat someone into a jelly, *Fleisch zu Kraftbrühe verkochen* to make a strong broth out of meat by boiling, *Hanf zu Seilen verarbeiten*, *etwas zu Pulver zerstoßen*, *einen zu Gaste laden*, *einen zum Freunde haben*, *etwas zum Muster nehmen*. *Er nimmt sie zur Frau*. In the passive the acc. becomes nom., but the objective predicate remains as in the active: *Er wurde vom König zum Offizier ernannt*.

Notice here as in 252. 2. A. b. (3) the common use of the generalizing definite article in contracted form, *zum* and *zur*, where English usually requires the indefinite article. In case of a mass or a material the article is here dropped in German, while in English the indefinite article is used, as illustrated in examples given above. Notice also that the article is lacking in a few old set expressions, as *einen zu Gaste laden*.

*Note.* In early N.H.G. the *zu*-construction was often displaced by the Latin construction of the simple accusative: *Darnach wollen wir all deutsche Bischoff Cardinel machenn* (Luther).

B. The objective predicate can be an adjective or a participle, now usually uninflected, unless preceded by an article or some other modifying word: *Er weinte sich die Augen rot*. *Er schlug ihn tot*. *Man sagt ihn tot*. *Ich glaubte ihn geheilt*. Here belongs the perf. participle in compound tenses: *Er hat einen Brief geschrieben*. Compare 104. 2. A. c.

Instead of an adjective or participle we often find here a gen., an adverb, or a prep. phrase: *Jedenfalls rechne nicht darauf, mich anderen Sinnes zu machen* (Fontane's *Frau Jenny*, XII). *Er fiel sich tot or zu Tode*. *Ich komme, sobald ich ihn hier weiß*. *Ich ließ ihn in guten Händen*.

The predicate adjective, participle, genitive, adverb, or prepositional phrase predicates a quality or state of the object, but the copula *sein* which often formally announces the predication is here as in 2 above not expressed, as explained in 2 above and in 252. 1. b. *Note*. In this old attributive or appositional type of sentence, as explained in 252. 1. b. *Note*, the predicate adjective is not only found as an appositive with uninflected form but it is in exclamatory style often in attributive form: *Freie Bahn dem Tüchtigen!* *Let us keep the road* (to employment, promotion in public service, &c.) *open to able men*. *Freie* is here the logical objective predicate to *Bahn*, which is the object of some verb understood.



In all the preceding examples the accusative object of the principal verb is the subject of the clause and the adjective, participle, adverb, or prepositional phrase is the predicate. In the *impersonal* passive construction (219. 5. A), however, the participle is as usual the predicate but there can be no accusative object in the sentence as there is no subject in an impersonal construction. The dative, genitive, or prepositional object of the active is simply retained in the passive: Ich fühle mir (often mich) durch Ihren Besuch geschmeichelt. Ich glaubte ihr geholfen. So findet man doch eines Alten erwähnt (Lessing's *Samtliche Schriften*, Lachmann-Muncker, 3rd ed., 8, 301, 21). Ich will an Julianen nicht mehr gedacht wissen (ib., 1, 316, 3). Compare 219. 5. A (last par.).

a. Instead of the simple uninflected form this objective predicate is in certain instances, as in case of nouns (see A. b and c), introduced by the particles *als* or *für*: Wir betrachten die Sache als abgemacht. Er hält mich für reich. The objective predicate here can also be a genitive or a prepositional phrase: Ibsen hat die vier Werke, die er so selbst als einen Geistes empfand, in Christiania geschrieben (Otto Brahm in *Die neue Rundschau*, 1906, p. 1433). Sie versäumte nichts, um sich als klug und trefflichen Gemütes zu zeigen (Enking's *Die Darnekower*, p. 306). Der offiziöse B. . . . für seines Dienstes, der Welt mitzuteilen, daß usw. Dec. 23, 1904). Das Schlimmste aber ist, daß die die ganze lottrige Wirtschaft für in Ordnung halten p. v).

C.  
of, bear  
to feel

to mind, *kommen* to feel, *kommen* to read, *gewahren* to perceive, *glauben* to believe, *haben* to have, *hören* to hear, *lassen* to let, order, cause, *machen* to make, *schauen* to see, *sehen* to see, *spüren* to feel, *tragen* to carry, *treffen* to meet, *vernehmen* to hear, *wähnen* to imagine, *wiegen* to rock, *wissen* to know, *zeigen* to show. Exs.: Ich höre ihn kommen I hear him coming. Ich lasse ihn kommen (with active force) I shall have him come. Ich lasse mir von ihm einen neuen Rock machen (with passive force) I am having a new coat made by him. For other examples see 185. B. I. 2. d. In some cases the infinitive here has developed from a present participle, which is still more or less frequently used. See 185. B. I. 2. d. (1).

The modal verbal is also used as objective predicate after certain verbs. See 180. A. c.

a. If the infin. should have as an object a pronoun of the same form as the object of the principal verb, one of the forms is usually suppressed in older German, but modern usage employs both forms or avoids the construction: Laß uns eignen Wertes [uns] freuen (Grillparzer's *Ahnfrau*, 1), or in prose: Freuen wir uns eigenen Wertes!

b. After some of these verbs a prep. phrase is often found as a predicate instead of an infinitive: Ich sah ihn weinen, or in Tränen.

c. In the eighteenth century the dative of the person instead of the acc. is frequently found after *lassen* and *machen*, especially the former, and sometimes after *sehen*: Ein Geschenk, das mir jeden neuern Verlust ertragen machte (Goethe . . .).

ihn m

to him.

Laß dir (or dich) nichts davon gegen  
ich fürchtete mich so sehr als die andern, ließ mich es aber

Mißstimm-  
e's Cécile,

nicht merken (Goethe). Doch ließ ich mir nichts merken. (id.). Ich fürchte, ich habe mir merken lassen, wie widerwärtig mir das alles war (Spielhagen's *Frei geboren*, p. 35). The es in such expressions as in the first sentence from Goethe is in reality not an accusative, but an old genitive (140. c) of specification, which was not infrequent in early N.H.G.: Ich ließ mich dessen nicht merken, daß ich's verstünde (*Buch der Liebe*, 194<sup>d</sup>, Frankfurt, 1587), literally *I did not allow myself to be observed with regard to that*. The genitive form es is now construed as an accusative, and hence the original construction is no longer understood and the thought has become obscure, which naturally leads to the use of the dative of reference here: Ich ließ mir es nicht merken, literally *I did not allow it to be observed on me*. The acc. of the thing here is omitted after a comparative: Diese Erkenntnis war denn auch meinem Onkel viel eher gekommen, als er sich merken ließ (R. Huch's *Ludolf Ursleu*, chap. xxi).

In some expressions the acc. or dat. of the person may be used, but with quite different meaning: Er ließ mich vorlesen *He had me to read to him*, but Er ließ mir vorlesen *He had someone to read to me*.

Provincially the nom. often occurs here instead of the acc. of the person: Jahne: Na, Indrik! Trembe fragt schon nach dir. Indrik: Laß er fragen (Keyserling's *Ein Frühlingsopfer*, 2). This peculiar idiom is the result of the blending of two constructions: Er mag fragen and Laß ihn fragen.

#### IV. Accusative of the Person or Thing and a Prepositional Phrase.

This is a very common type: which is growing at the expense of the other types, as can be seen by a careful study of the preceding articles: Er legte den Hut auf den Tisch. In the passive the accusative becomes nominative and the prepositional phrase remains: Der Hut wurde auf den Tisch gelegt.

A number of the most common verbs which take an accusative and a prepositional object are listed below along with the preposition or prepositions which each word requires. The selection has been made with regard to idiomatic difficulties that beset English-speaking students of German.

abhärmen: sich — über (with acc.) to grieve at, about.

abhärten: sich or einen — gegen to inure one's self or someone to.

ablegen: Rechnung — von or über (with acc.) to give (or render) an account of.

abnehmen, see ziehen.

abrichten: einen Hund, Pferd — zu and sometimes auf (with acc.) to train a dog, horse for some particular performance: Er richtet das Pferd zum Reiten, den Hund zur Jagd, aufs Apportieren ab.

absehen: es — auf (with acc.) to aim at, have designs upon: Er hat es auf meinen Geldbeutel abgesehen. Das Unglück hat es auf mich abgesehen.

adressieren: einen Brief — an (with acc.) to address a letter to.

andrängen: einen — an (with acc.) to press, push one against.

anheften to fasten on (with tacks, nails, &c.): man heftet ein Bild an die Wand, but without prep. obj. er hat das Bild schon angeheftet.

anklagen: einen — bei to bring action against someone before; einen — wegen to charge one with: einen wegen schweren Diebstahls anklagen. See also II. A. a.

anklammern to cling to: Das Kind klammert sich immer an die Mutter, but without prep. obj. Da hat es sich wieder angeklammert.

anstellen: eine Untersuchung — über (with acc.) to examine, inquire into.

anwenden to apply, direct to a definite end: Wende alle deine Kraft zur Ausbildung deines Geistes an; fig. apply: Die Theorie auf die Praxis —.

ärgern: sich — über (with acc.) to be vexed at. aufwenden to spend money, time, effort upon: Geld für seinen Garten, seine Kräfte für eine große Aufgabe —.

aufziehen: einen mit etwas or jemandem — to tease someone about something or someone.

ausdehnen: etwas — auf (with acc.) to extend to, apply to: Wir dürfen die Regel auf jenen Fall nicht ausdehnen.

ausgeben: etwas — für to expend something for.

ausgießen: etwas — über (with acc.) to pour something out upon.

ausschelten: einen — wegen to upbraid someone for.

aussprechen: sich — zu einem (or gegen einen) über (with acc.) to have a good talk with someone about; ein Urteil — über einen to pronounce a sentence upon someone.

austauschen: etwas — für (or gegen or mit) to exchange something for.

austeilen: etwas — an (with acc.) to distribute something among, portion out to.

balgen: sich — um to grapple, fight for.

befähigen: einen — zu to fit, qualify one for.

befestigen: einen, etwas — an (with acc.) to fasten someone, something to.

befragen: einen — über (with acc.) to question someone upon; sich wegen or in einer Sache bei einem — to inquire of someone about.

begegnen to coincide: sich (acc.) mit einem in einem Wunsche, in einer Ansicht —. Ihre Wünsche, Ansichten begegnen sich (dat.).

beglückwünschen: einen — zu to compliment someone upon.

begrüßen: sich mit einem — to exchange greetings with.

beklagen: sich bei einem über etwas (acc.) — to complain to someone of.

bekleiden: einen or sich — mit to put on: Ich habe mich nur mit einem dünnen Rock bekleidet.

bekümmern sich — über (with acc.) or wegen  
 to be concerned worried about something or  
 someone sich — or kümmern um to con-  
 cern one's self about with Er bekümmert  
 or kümmert sich um alles Bekümmern or  
 kümmern Sie sich um sich! Mind your own  
 business! Er bekümmert or kümmert sich  
 gar nicht um mich He never comes to see me  
 any more doesn't seem to know that I am  
 alive Er ist über mich, über den Verlust  
 bekümmert He is worried &c Compare  
 kümmern, II A b c B d above  
 belästigen einen — wegen, mit to trouble  
 someone about bother him with  
 belaufen sich — auf (with acc.) to amount  
 to Die Kosten belaufen sich auf einen  
 Taler  
 belustigen, sich — mit to amuse one's self  
 with sich — über einen to amuse one's self  
 at the expense of someone to make fun of  
 someone  
 bemühen sich um jemandes Gunst — to  
 court a person's favor sich um eine Stelle  
 — to try to obtain secure a position sich  
 für einen — to interest one's self for some-  
 be  
 to order the engine to be reversed  
 beraten sich — mit einem über (with acc.)  
 to take counsel with someone about  
 berufen sich — auf (with acc.) to appeal to  
 beschirmen einen — vor (with dat.) to shield  
 one from  
 beschränken sich — auf (with acc.) to con-  
 fine limit one's self to  
 beschützen einen — vor (with dat.) to pro-  
 tect one from  
 beschwatzen einen — um to talk one out of  
 besprechen sich mit einem über etwas (acc.)  
 — to confer with someone about  
 betören einen — um to fool one out of  
 betrüben sich — über (with acc.) to grieve  
 at over  
 betrogen einen — um to cheat one out of  
 See also II A a above  
 beugen sich — vor (with dat.) to bend bow  
 to  
 bewahren einen — vor (with dat.) to preserve  
 one from  
 bewerben sich — um to apply for (a situa-  
 tion &c) compete for (a prize) woo can  
 vass for (votes)  
 bewundern einen — wegen to admire one for  
 beziehen etwas or sich — auf (with acc.) to  
 refer to Ich bezog diese Anspielung auf  
 einen Vorfall der neuesten Zeit Ich bezog  
 mich auf dich Diese Bemerkung bezieht  
 sich wohl auf ihn  
 bilden etwas — aus to fashion something out  
 of etwas — nach to model something after  
 binden etwas — an (with acc.) to bind some-  
 thing to  
 bitten einen — um to ask beg someone for

brauchen etwas — zu to need something for  
 bringen etwas — über (with acc.) to bring  
 something upon Du hast nur Unglück über  
 mich gebracht, einen — um to cause some-  
 one to lose Er hat mich um meinen guten  
 Namen gebracht  
 bucken sich — vor (with dat.) to bow down  
 to  
 drehen sich — um to turn hinge upon Alles  
 dreht sich um diesen Punkt  
 duzen sich — mit to be on such familiar terms  
 with as to use the address du  
 eindringen sich — bei, in (with acc.) to  
 intrude upon thrust one's self upon Du  
 hast dich bei uns, in unseren Kreis einge-  
 drängt  
 einführen einen — bei, in (with acc.) to  
 introduce to (someone's family) into Er  
 hat mich bei ihr, bei Hofe eingeführt Er  
 will dich in unsere Gesellschaft einführen  
 einigen sich — über (with acc.) to agree  
 upon  
 einlassen sich auf eine Schlacht — to engage  
 in battle Ich lasse mich darauf nicht ein  
 I shall have nothing to do with it  
 einmengen sich — in (with acc.) to meddle  
 with  
 einrichten nach to suit to regulate by conform  
 to Er richtet seine Ausgaben nach seinem  
 Einkommen ein Er richtet sein Leben  
 nach dem von ihm erwählten Muster ein.  
 einschiffen sich — nach to embark for  
 einschwören sich — auf (with acc.) to swear  
 by have implicit faith in Auch ist sie  
 (Helene Ballo) ein gütig + talk + + +  
 eu  
 en, — vol (with acc.) to sicken  
 at be disgusted with  
 entlassen einen — aus to discharge one from  
 (office &c) See also II A a  
 entnehmen etwas — aus to gather learn  
 something from Wir entnehmen (aus)  
 Ihrem Briefe, daß usw  
 entscheiden sich — für to decide fix upon  
 Wir entscheiden uns für einen anderen  
 Plan, sich — für einen to decide in favor of  
 someone  
 entschließen sich — + + + + +  
 entschuldigen sich — bei to make excuse  
 apologize to sich — wegen to excuse one's  
 self for  
 ergreifen Reality — + + +  
 erheben  
 to lay cl  
 upon  
 erkennen einen — an (with dat.) to recog-  
 nize  
 erraten etwas — aus to guess divine some-  
 thing from  
 ertappen einen auf (also bei, in, sometimes  
 über, ob) der Tat — to catch a person in the  
 very act

- erwähnen: einen mit Namen — to mention someone by name.
- erwecken: einen aus dem Schläfe — to arouse one from sleep.
- erzürnen: sich — mit einem to fall out with someone.
- fesseln: einen — an (with acc.) to fetter to; also to confine to: Die Gicht fesselt ihn ans Bett.
- finden: Vergnügen — an (with dat.) to find pleasure in; sich — in (with acc.) to reconcile one's self to: Finde dich in deinen Beruf, in das Unglück.
- folgern: etwas — aus to infer something from.
- fordern (emphasizing the idea of a right to demand) or verlangen (emphasizing the idea of a desire to demand) to demand: Ich fordere Gerechtigkeit von Ihnen. Ich habe von ihm (formerly and sometimes still also an ihn) noch 100 Mark zu fordern. Fordere ihn doch vor die Pistole, vors Gericht! Ich verlange nichts Unbilliges von dir. Jene Mischung der geistigen Kräfte, die wir von dem (formerly and sometimes still also an den) humoristischen Schriftsteller verlangen.
- fragen: einen — nach einer Sache, or über or um eine Sache, or wegen einer Sache to ask someone about a matter, or sometimes von einem etwas fragen; einen um Erlaubnis — to ask someone for permission; einen um Rat fragen to ask someone's advice. Compare bitten to ask, which has a different meaning.
- fügen: sich — in (with acc.) to fit one's self into, reconcile one's self to, yield, submit to: Er fügt sich in die Umstände.
- fürchten: sich — vor (with dat.) to be afraid of.
- gewöhnen: sich — an (with acc.) to accustom one's self to, get used to.
- grämen: sich — über (with acc.) to grieve over, worry about, over.
- gravieren: einen Namen — auf or in (with acc.) to engrave a name upon.
- gründen: sich or etwas — auf (usually with acc., sometimes with dat.) to found one's self or something upon: Das gründet sich auf einen Irrtum.
- haben: Anteil — an (with dat.) to have a share in; Mangel — an (with dat.) to be in want of; die Oberhand — über (with acc.) to hold sway over; Überfluß — an (with dat.) to have plenty of; einen in Verdacht — to suspect one.
- halten: etwas an das Feuer — to hold something close to the fire; etwas auf (dem) Lager — to keep something in stock; viel or große Stücke auf einen —, or viel von einem or einer Sache — to think highly, much of someone or something; etwas gegen das Licht — to hold something up to the light; wenig, nichts von einem, von einer Sache — to think little, nothing of, despise someone or something; sich an (now with acc., formerly dat.) die Wahrheit, die Tatsachen, seinen Glauben — to keep, hold to, &c.; einen bei dem Versprechen —.
- hängen: etwas — an (with acc.) to hang something on.
- hassen: einen — wegen to hate one for.
- herauswickeln: sich — aus to extricate one's self from.
- herausziehen: etwas — aus to extract something from, take something out of: einen Splitter aus dem Finger herausziehen; sich — aus to get out of, extricate one's self from: Ich habe mich aus der Schlinge herausgezogen.
- hindern: einen — an (with dat.) to hinder, keep from: Du hinderst mich am Arbeiten.
- hinweisen: einen hinweisen auf (with acc.) to direct or refer a person to: Ich habe ihn auf den rechten Weg, auf seine Fehler hingewiesen.
- hören: etwas — von or über (with acc.) to hear something of, about.
- hüten: sich — vor (with dat.) to beware of, be on one's guard against.
- interessieren: einen an einem Geschäft — to induce one to take an interest, share in a business; einen für etwas (z. B. die Botanik) — to interest one in something (as botany); sich für etwas — to take an interest in something (as botany, &c.).
- ketten: etwas — an (with acc.) to chain something to.
- kümmern, see bekümmern above.
- küssen: sich — mit to exchange kisses with.
- leimen: etwas — an (with acc.) to glue to.
- loben: einen — wegen to praise one for.
- machen: sich — an (with acc.): Er macht sich an die Arbeit He sets to work; sich — auf (with acc.): Er macht sich auf den Weg He sets out on his way; Anspruch — auf (with acc.) to lay claim to; sich beliebt — bei to ingratiate one's self with; Einwendungen — gegen to make, raise objections to; einen unfähig — zu to unfit one for; sich verdient — um to deserve well of: Er hat sich um das Vaterland verdient gemacht.
- mengen or mischen: sich — in (with acc.) to meddle with.
- mischen: sich — unter (with acc.) to mingle with.
- nageln: etwas — an (with acc.) to nail to.
- necken: einen mit jemandem — to tease one about someone; sich mit jemandem — to exchange good-natured raileries with someone.
- nehmen: Anstoß — an (with dat.) to take offense at; Interesse — an (with dat.) to take an interest in someone or something; Anteil — an (with dat.) to take an interest in, sympathize with; einen beim Worte nehmen.
- neiden, see beneiden.
- neigen: sich — auf (with acc.) to be inclined in favor of: Ich neigte mich auf seine Seite; (sich) — zu to lean to: Ich neige mich zu seiner Meinung. Er neigt zur Erkältung he catches cold easily; sich — vor (with dat.) to bow to.
- nennen to call: Das Kind beim rechten Namen — to call the thing by the right name; einen mit Namen or bei seinem Namen —
- packen: etwas in eine Kiste packen.
- prügeln: sich mit einem — to have a fight with.
- rächen: sich — an (with dat.) to avenge one's self on.
- reiben: sich — an (with dat., sometimes, especially earlier in the period, with acc.) to rub against: Die Schweine reiben sich an den Bäumen or an die Bäume.

nichten: etwas — an (with acc.) to address (a letter, &c) to, eine Frage — an einen to put a question to someone, etwas — auf (with acc.) to direct point something at, sich — nach to conform to regulate one's conduct by Er richtet sich nach dem Gesetz Das Verbum richtet sich (agrees) nach (with) dem Subjekt Ich richte mich ganz nach dir, nach meinem Gaste.  
 rümpfen Die Nase — über (with acc.) to turn up the nose at  
 runzeln: die Stirne — über (with acc.) to frown at.  
 schätzen: etwas — auf (with acc.) to estimate something at Ich schätze das Alter des Kindes auf einen Monat  
 schelten: einen — wegen to scold someone for  
 schicken: einen in einem Auftrag — to send someone on an errand, einen in den April — to april fool someone, sich in etwas — to adapt one's self to Er schickt sich in alle Verhältnisse  
 schenken: etwas — einem — to give  
 E  
 E  
 sch  
 c  
 wir die Bemerkung, daß usw. To this we would add that, &c  
 schmiegen: sich — vor (with dat.) to cringe to  
 schreiben: einen Brief — an (with acc.) to write to (a person), einen Brief — nach to write to (a place), sich mit einem — to correspond with  
 schützen: einen — vor (with dat.) to protect someone from  
 sehnen: sich — nach to long for  
 stecken: etwas in Brand — to set something on fire  
 stehen: sich mit einem gut — to be on good terms with someone Er steht sich gut dabei He is not a loser by it, he has profited by the transaction  
 stoßen: einen — an (with acc.) to push someone against  
 stützen: sich — auf (with acc.) to lean upon, rely upon, be based upon  
 suchen: Hast du was an mich zu suchen? (Hebbels *H und M*, 4, 3), now usually Hast du etwas von mir zu erbitten?  
 tadeln: einen — wegen to censure someone for  
 taxieren: etwas — auf (with acc.) to estimate something at Ich taxiere den Wert auf einen Taler  
 tragen: to entertain (thoughts &c) Er trägt sich mit Selbstmordgedanken Er trägt sich mit der Absicht, sein Geschäft aufzugeben  
 trennen: sich von einem — to part with or from somebody, sich von etwas — to part with something Ich kann mich nur schwer davon trennen  
 tun: Eingriffe — in (with acc.) to encroach upon  
 überschütten: einen — mit to pour shower something upon Beide Gegner überschütten sich mit Schrapnells  
 unterhalten: sich — über (with acc.) to converse about  
 verbergen: einen — vor (with dat.) to conceal someone from  
 verbreiten: sich — über (with acc.) to ex-

patiate upon Ich will mich des weiteren über diesen Fall nicht verbreiten.  
 vergehen: sich an einem — to do someone wrong, sich tätlich an einem — to offer violence to someone, inflict bodily injury upon someone  
 verhaften: einen — wegen to arrest someone for, einen auf frischer Tat — to arrest someone in the very act (of stealing &c.)  
 verhängen: eine Strafe — über (with acc.) to inflict a punishment upon  
 verheiraten, vermählen to give in marriage, marry Ich habe mich, meinen Sohn mit unserer Nachbarin, or an unsere Nachbarin, or in rather choice language with the simple dat unserer Nachbarin verheiratet, vermählt.  
 verkaufen: to sell Verkaufe dich niemals dem (or an den) Teufel für (or um) alles Geld Er verkaufte es mit Verlust  
 verklagen: jemanden wegen Verleumdung — to prosecute someone for libel, jemanden auf Schadenersatz — to sue someone for damages  
 verkleiden: sich in einen Bettler, or sich als Bettler or als ein(en) Bettler — to disguise one's self as a beggar  
 verkuppeln: to persuade to an ill sorted marriage Er verkuppelte das Mädchen an den Wüstling, or less commonly er verkuppelte das Mädchen dem Wüstling.  
 verladen: Waren — nach to ship goods to  
 verlangen, see fordern  
 verlassen: sich — auf (with acc.) to rely upon  
 verlässigen: sich — über (with acc.) to make  
 . . . . . ist nicht  
 . . . . . echt hat,  
 . . . . . -istungen  
 (W. A  
 156)  
 verheben: sich — in (with acc.) to fall in love with  
 verlieren: to lose viel an jemandem — to lose much in a person to lose a good friend in  
 ihm viel an jemandem — to lose much in dealing or playing with someone, viel bei jemandem — to lose much in someone's estimation  
 verloben, versprechen: sich — mit to become engaged to  
 vermählen, - - - - -  
 vermögen: - - - - -  
 self to I  
 geduldig zuzuhören und auszuharren  
 verraten: to betray Du hast mich an den Gegner verraten. Ich darf dir das Geheimnis nicht verraten  
 verschieben: etwas auf einen anderen Tag — to put something off until another day  
 verstecken: einen — vor (with dat.) to hide one from  
 verstehen: to understand sich — auf (with acc.) to understand be a judge of Er versteht sich auf Pferde, etwas aus dem Zusammenhang — to understand something by, from the connection  
 vertagen: sich — auf (with acc.) to adjourn until die Sitzung — auf (with acc.)  
 vertauschen: etwas — gegen (für, mit, um) to exchange something for  
 verteilen: etwas — an or unter (with acc.) to distribute something among Geld an or unter die Armen verteilen, etwas — auf

(with acc.) to divide something up among: Leistungen und Lasten auf die Bürgerschaft verteilen.

verweisen: einen — auf (with acc.) to refer one to: Ich verweise den Leser auf das, was ich früher gesagt habe.

verwenden to spend on (a thing): Er hat viel Geld, viel Zeit auf die Erziehung der Kinder verwandt.

vorbereiten: sich — auf (with acc.) to prepare for (a speech, examination, an approaching ordeal); sich — zu to get ready for, make preparations for: Ich habe mich zur Reise vorbereitet.

warnen: einen — vor (with dat.) to warn someone against.

wegwerfen: sich — an (with acc.) to throw one's self away on.

weisen: einen — an (with acc.) to refer a person to: Er hat mich an Sie, an die richtige Quelle gewiesen; einen — auf (with acc.) to point out to: Er wies mich auf den rechten Weg; einen — aus to expel one from (school, &c.); etwas von der Hand or von sich — to decline something.

wenden: sich — an (with acc.) to apply to, turn to: Er wandte sich an mich; etwas — an or auf (with acc.) to spend something on.

wissen to know: etwas auf (against) or gegen einen —; etwas aus (from) guter Quelle —; etwas aus (by) Erfahrung —; etwas von einem or etwas über, um einen or etwas — to know something of, about, concerning someone or something.

ziehen or abnehmen: den Hut vor einem — to take off one's hat to someone.

## V. Dative of the Person and a Prepositional Phrase.

This group is much smaller than the preceding one. A few illustrations follow: Es fehlt mir an Geld. Es gebricht mir am Gelde or an Geld. Es genügt mir an deiner Liebe, an deinem Wohlwollen. Las dir an meiner Gnade genügen (2 Cor. xii. 9). Er gratulierte mir zur Beförderung. Er half mir bei der Arbeit. Er half mir über den ersten Schmerz. Ich habe ihm beim Tode des Vaters kondoliert. Wozu raten Sie mir? Ich traue ihm nicht um die Ecke. Er hat mir zu einer guten Stellung verholfen. Ich rate dir zur Amanda (Auerbach's *Dorfgeschichten*, 8, p. 62) I advise you to choose A. A number of peculiar or idiomatic combinations which in a formal sense belong here have been treated in 258. 1. C from another point of view.

In a number of words the prepositional phrase here represents an older simple gen.: einem der Gabe danken, now einem für die Gabe danken; einem eines Dinges bürgen, now einem für ein Ding bürgen; &c. A gen. is now only found in sich (originally acc., but now also dat.) bei einem Rats erholen (II. A. *b* above). Thus this gen. has almost disappeared, while the gen. in connection with an acc., as described in II. A. *b*, is fairly well preserved.

## VI. Double Prepositional Object.

A verb quite frequently has a double prepositional object: Sie klagt gegen ihn auf Ehescheidung She is suing him for divorce. Er trug bei seinem Vorgesetzten auf Beförderung an He applied to his superior for promotion.

### *Synesis.*

263. Different parts of speech, especially pronouns, often assume a different gender or number from that required by the strict rules of grammatical concordance, following in these points the meaning of the word in the particular use in question rather than the usual grammatical gender or number of the antecedent or the word to which reference is made. This assignment of gender and number according to meaning is called Synesis (i.e. understanding, sense).

1. *Synesis of Gender.* Words may assume their gender according to meaning in the following cases:

1. A neuter diminutive, or any other neut. or masc. word representing a female, such as Weib, Weibchen, Weiblein, Fräulein, Frauenzimmer, Mädchen, Mädcl, Mägdlein, Töchterlein, Töchterchen, Kind, Geschöpf, and Mensch, require usually the article and any other attributive adj. standing before them and also the relative pronoun referring to them to be neut. or masc., but the personal pronouns, possessive adjectives, and all other adjectives, on the other hand, which refer to them are much more commonly fem. according to the sex of the person represented: Das Fräulein ist nicht zu Hause; sie ist spazieren



Seite (Hauptmann's *Der arme Heinrich*, 2, p. 57). Draußen rief er eine Ordonnanz und schärfte ihr ein, Leutnant von Edelfleth zu benachrichtigen, daß er gegangen sei (Ompteda's *Sylvester von Geyer*, lviii). Nun ward es eine untersetzte, breitrückige Mannsperson, deren Kleidung sich nicht deutlich unterscheiden ließ (Jensen's *Schatzsucher*, p. 164). Das Mitglied des Kongresses, das, &c.; die Schildwache, die vor der Tür steht. Except in the case of the relative, synesis sometimes occurs: **Exzellenz zauberten uns hier einen seiner schönen Gärten** (Gutzkow).

4. The article, or a limiting or descriptive adjective, before the diminutive form of a proper name which represents a person has often natural gender in certain dialects, while other dialects are not unfriendly to the neut. gender: **die Liesel** (Anzengruber's *Kreuzelschreiber*, 3, 3), **die Sepherl** (ib., 2, 11), **der Tonl** (ib., 1, 3), **arme Liesel** (Anzengruber's *Gänseliesel*), **das Bärbele** (Auerbach's *Tonele*, chap. 1), **das arme Hannele** (Hauptmann's *Hanneles Himmelfahrt*, p. 75). Likewise common nouns when used as names: **die Mutterchen muß ihren Tee haben** (Schulze-Smidt's *Denk' ich an Deutschland in der Nacht*, II). **Der Herrchen darf nicht schelten** (ib.). The masc. form of the article is often used in the Swabian dialects before the diminutive of a name or a common class noun referring to a male. See 245. I. 8. 1. f. Note 3. The neuter form of the article or a limiting or descriptive adjective is preferred in the literary language: **Das kleine Hänschen, du gutes Hänschen, mein kleines Dortchen**. In the literary language as well as in dialect all pronouns and possessives referring to diminutive names are quite commonly selected according to the natural gender except relatives, which usually in choice language follow the gender of the antecedent: „Mutter, so viel Geld hast du bekommen!“ rief Lieschen, als sie auf dem Fensterbrett eine Reihe Silbermünzen liegen sah. **Lieschen und ihre Mutter**. Sometimes the pronoun or the possessive is selected according to the grammatical gender: **Schweigend verbeugte sich Elsein, wofür ihm ein hochmütiges Nicken wurde. Was aus dem Korderl (Kordula + lein) seiner (her) Mutter und dem Herrn Ingenieur geworden, hatte ich nicht erfahren können** (P. Heyse's *Ein Idealist*). If there is an inflected adjective before the diminutive, synesis of the relative is not now common in the literary language, altho it occasionally occurs in case of reference to females: **das kleine Hänschen, das unter dem Baume sitzt. Das hübsche Lisettchen von Amberg, der** (instead of the more common **dem**) **das Kostüm des vorigen Jahrhunderts allerliebste zu Gesichte steht** (National-Zeitung, 28, 47). Synesis of the relative is, however, quite common even in case of masculines, if there is no inflected adjective before the diminutive: **Röschen, die der Mutter Freude war; Hänschen, der ein sehr guter Knabe ist**. But also here we sometimes find grammatical concordance: **Vrenchen, welches nur das eine zu fühlen fähig war** (Keller's *Romeo und Julie*).

5. If the word **Frau** stands before the title of the husband, the article agrees with **Frau** instead of with the title: **Die geehrte Frau Professor**.

6. Aside from the above cases, a noun, pronoun, or adjective-substantive representing a person usually has natural gender, but where the sex is a matter of doubt or little concern, as in case of children or the young of animals, the substantive is often neut., as this gender gives grammatical expression to the idea of vagueness: **Der Freund** (male) friend, **die Freundin** lady friend, **der Kranke** or **die Kranke**, but **das Kleine** the young child, **sein Kleinstes** his smallest child, **das Junge eines Schafes**.

a. After the indefinite pronouns **jemand**, **niemand**, **wer**, the following adjective-substantive is in the neut. or masc., to indicate that it may represent either a male or female. See 145, Notes under b, c, and e.

b. The masc., less frequently the neut., is used in general references, referring to either males or females, or both, and also in cases where it is desired to emphasize the abstract idea in the word without reference to sex: **Teuer ist mir der Freund, doch auch den Feind kann ich nützen; zeigt mir der Freund, was ich kann, lehrt mich der Feind, was ich soll** (Schiller). **Der Gerechte wird seines Glaubens leben** (Romans i. 17). **Die Hütte scheint mir etwas zu eng. Für uns beide doch geräumig genug, versetzte Charlotte. Nun freilich, sagte Eduard, für einen Dritten**



ist auch wohl noch Platz Warum nicht? versetzte Charlotte, und auch für ein Viertes (Goethe's idea, das danach fragt, ich bin ja doch ample of the use of the masc for an to denote an abstract idea but its use id par General references applying to f pronouns and f nominal adjectives

Here the masc form is now usually found but the neut forms es, das, dies, jedes, alles, keins, ein(e)s, was, &c are also found especially in the cases recorded in II 1 below Es ist keiner vor dem Tode glücklich zu preisen, denn jeder Vater und Mutter sind jedes ein Mensch für bruch s *Neid*) Knaben, Männer und Frau

(Auerbach) Gesehen habe ich von 1s) Früh übt sich, was ein Meister was sec 157 b There is sometimes

a shade of difference between the neut and masc of some of these words the former having ch and all of the brothers and sisters) hmücken | Der gab dir Pallas' Aug', (Rillparzer's *Sappho* 1 3) Instead are used to emphasize especially the idea be daheim (Rosegger) Diesen hier mußte geboren p 115) In dem Schlafrock mußst l keinel (Wildenbruch s

indefinite idea the neuter g ist an eine Bedingung cannot refer to the fem

b and referring to a pre-

wohl der (colloquially, das) ist ein braver Mann Sind denkt wie ein Seifensieder

7 The relative is neuter if the reference is to a fem noun denoting an indefinite quantity Fraulein Hermann wußte eine Menge (= viel) über Goethe zu sagen, das nicht ganz dem entsprach, was Professor von Rangenhofen vorgetragen hatte (Oempteda's *Cacilie von Sarryn*, chap 18)

8 Sometimes the predicate noun does not assume a grammatical form in accordance with the natural sex of the person represented by the subject See 253 III 2 a

9 In the expression seinerzeit in his (or her, their, my, our) time the possessive may remain constant without reference to the gender of the antecedent See 138 2 a

II *Synopsis of Number* The number of a word may be regulated by the sense instead of by the rules of grammatical concordance in the following categories

1 The cases where the number of the verb is regulated by the sense are described in 253 I 1 d g and 2 c, d

2 In the earlier part of the period a personal pronoun (er, sie, es, derselbe, solch-) is not infrequently in the pl if it refers to a sing noun containing a collective idea Den Teufel spurt das Volkchen nie, | und wenn er sie beim Kragen hatte! (Goethe's *Faust* Auerbach's Keller) This usage continues in our own time, but the trend toward strict grammatical concordance has become very strong so that the sing here is now more common in the literary language Synesis is however, still quite common when the pronoun refers to a noun in the sing representing not an individual but a whole class Ich hatte mir . . . eingebildet , auf dem Bock saße der Tod in einem schwarzen, flatternden Mantel, auf seinem klappernden Schadel einen blanken, niedrigen Hut, wie ich solche an unseren Droschkenkutschern zu sehen gewohnt war (R Huch's *Ludolf Ursleu* chap 26)

Synesis of the possessive was common earlier in the period Da riß alles Volk seine goldenen Ohringe von ihren Ohren (Luther) Ein echter deutscher Mann mag keinen Franzen leiden, | doch ihre Weine trinkt er gern (Goethe's *Faust* Auerbach's Keller) This usage still continues Wenn wir Deutsche nach Frankreich gehen, so lernen wir vorher die Sprache ihres Landes (Richl)

The trend to-day is decidedly toward strict grammatical concordance or toward the avoidance of a conflict by changing the construction: **Die Treue des Volkes zu seinem König.**

Synesis of the relative occurs earlier in the period: **Denn der HERR hat dis Geschlecht | vber die er zornig ist | verworffen vnd verstossen** (Jer. vii. 29). **Des Hauses Espinay —, die nicht in den Krieg zögen, um reich zu werden** (Schiller). To-day the synesis of the relative is in the strict sense almost unknown. For an instance see 253. I. 1. g. It is usually only used when the relative stands in a loose relation to its antecedent, introducing a free and independent statement with reference to either a preceding collective idea contained in a sing. noun together with its modifying adjective, or with reference to a noun in the sing. representing not an individual but a whole class: **Manches aufstrebende Talent, deren einige nunmehr zu Ruf und Ruhm gelangt sind. Jeder Witz, an denen er es nicht fehlen ließ, wurde stürmisch belacht. Ist's nicht ein Mönch, deren du tausende sahst?**

3. Sometimes we find a plural pronoun referring to a noun which is sing. in form, but which in the passage in question by its synecdochical or metonymic use represents a plural idea: **Das edle Weib ist halb ein Mann, ja ganz, erst ihre Fehler machen sie zu Weibern** (Grillparzer's *Die Jüdin von Toledo*). **Rußland sucht sein Gebiet in Asien zu erweitern; sie sind abermals vorgerückt.** While this usage continues in our own day the trend is toward strict grammatical concordance or toward avoidance of a conflict by changing the construction.

On the other hand, a singular noun is often used distributively with reference to several individuals: **Die Herren zündeten sich eine Zigarre an** (Ompteda's *Eysen*, II, 29). Other examples in 96. 12. It is necessary, however, to observe caution here as this usage is limited. Thus we say: **Die Kinder nehmen die Bücher** (not **das Buch**) **vor** and *may* say: **Die Herren zündeten sich Zigarren an.**

4. The neuter sing. of a pronoun or adjective-substantive is often used without reference to the sex or the number of the persons or things referred to:

a. **Alles** is used to give the general idea of universality, including males and females, young and old: **Alles freut sich der Frühlingszeit** Everybody rejoices in spring. **Alles (everybody) war entzückt. Alles rät ihm, ein milderes Klima zu suchen. Heute ist Familientag, und dazu muß alles da sein, was unseren Namen trägt** (Ompteda's *Eysen*).

b. **Jedes** is used to indicate that the statement applies to all the members of a certain group, both males and females: **Vater und Mutter sind jedes ein Mensch für sich und die Menschen sind verschieden** (Wildenbruch's *Neid*, Werke, VI, p. 161). **Der Pfarrer hat doch prächtig gepredigt. Da hat sich jedes was herausnehmen können, sei es ledig oder verheiratet** (Auerbach's *Edeleweiß*, XVI). The masc. sing. is also often used here.

c. Also **das**, **dies**, and **es** are used collectively, embracing a number of things previously mentioned or pointed out by gesture: **Gold und Schätze, Macht und Hoheit, das begehre ich nicht. Schönheit, Ehre, Reichtum, dies alles ist vergänglich. Es** is used here quite often in subordinate clauses introduced by **als** (or **als wenn** or **als ob**): **Sie sprach mit ihren Steinen oft, als wären es belebte Wesen** (Wilhelm Fischer's *Die Freude am Licht*, II, p. 19).

d. **Das** is often used referring to individuals, not as such, but as members of *one class*: **Schon so große Töchter hast du? Wie das heranwächst!** Are your daughters so large already? Well, how girls do grow! See also 129. 2. C. (3).

e. The neut. sing. **beides** is used in a collective sense, including both of two things: **Ich habe beides, Brief und Paket richtig erhalten. Sommer und Winter trug sie ein schmieriges, schwarzseidenes Fransentüchlein um den Kopf und einen verschossenen, türkischen Schal um die Schultern, beides sorgfältig nach hinten ins Dreieck gelegt** (Isolde Kurz's *Das Vermächtnis der Tante Susanne*).

f. The neut. indefinite **eins** (or the masc. form **einer**) often stands after the gen. pl. of a personal pronoun to indicate that the different persons of the class

referred to in the personal pronoun, whether they be males or females, are included in the statement, and that not a mere reference to one is intended: Wenn unsereins (or very commonly unsereiner) am Spinnen war, | . . . stand sie bei ihrem Buhlen süß (Goethe's *Faust*, Am Brunnen) When we (here: hard-working girls like you and me) used to be, &c. Sometimes the fem. form *Wahrscheinlich zu alt, zu erhaben*; mal über eine Sache mit unsereiner . . . zu reden (Kaabe's *Germanus Reisen*, chap. 17).

g. An adjective-substantive is often used in the neut. sing. to indicate in a general way the idea of a collection or indefinite number of things: Man hört viel Gutes und viel Dummes We hear many good and foolish things. Er hat mir viel Liebes und Gutes erwiesen. See also 109. a. (2). For the use of *das*, *was*, and *es* in a collective sense see 153. 1. (1); 157 and *b* thereunder; 141. 9. a. For the number of the predicate appositive after *was* see 157. c.

h. *Das*, *dies*, *es*, *jenes*, are often used as subjects referring to one or several, to a masc., fem., or neut., whenever they represent the thing or things pointed out by a gesture or the context as identical with the thing or things indicated by the predicate: *Das ist mein Buch. Das sind meine Bücher. Die unbekannte Wohltäterin, von der ihr sprachet, das ist diese Frau. Es sind meine Brüder* They are my brothers. Here the gesture or preceding words always make the reference so clear that close grammatical concordance does not seem necessary.

i. The neut. pronominal forms *es*, *das*, *was*, often stand as a predicate, referring to a masc., fem., or neut., a sing. or pl.: *Sie hält sich für eine große Künstlerin, ohne es zu sein* She thinks she is a great artist, although she is not. *Wir hofften willkommene Gäste zu sein, und wir waren es wirklich* We hoped to be welcome guests and we were indeed so. *Er ist ein Gelehrter; das ist sein Bruder nicht. Was ist seine Schwester? Eine Schauspielerin.* Here these pronouns do not refer to the sex of the persons denoted by their antecedents, but rather to the general abstract idea contained within these antecedents, hence the lack of literal grammatical concordance with the words to which they refer and the selection of the neuter form.

5. In the expression *seinerzeit* in *his* (or *her, their, my, our*) time the possessive may remain constant without reference to the number of the antecedent. See 138. 2. a.

### Adverbial Modifiers.

264. Adverbial modifiers assume the form of simple uninflected adverbs, nouns in an oblique case, a prepositional phrase, or a clause: *Große Seelen dulden still. Frohen Mutes trat er herein. Sie weinte vor Freude. Während wir schliefen, brach der Sturm los.* This subject is treated at considerable length under the head of Adverbs, beginning at 223. The adverbial clause is treated in 273-282.

The adverb, as indicated by its literal meaning *joined to a verb*, is an appositive to a verb, i.e. is placed before or after a verb to explain its meaning in the case at hand more clearly, much as an adjective as an appositive is placed before or after a noun to explain it: *Das Mädchen zürnt sehr.* This same form is similarly used as an appositive to an adjective or another adverb and here is also called an adverb altho of course it is here not true to its name: *Das Mädchen ist sehr schön. Das Mädchen singt sehr schön.* An adverbial element, tho usually different in meaning from a genitive, dative, accusative, or prepositional object, always performs the same function, i.e. serves as an appositive to a verb or adjective, and often, as explained in 261 (3rd par.), is closely related in meaning to the object, often even so closely that it is confounded with it, as illustrated in 185.

### Independent Elements.

265. Independent elements are words, phrases, or clauses, which are not related grammatically to other parts of the sentence, or which stand all alone

without filling any grammatical office. In some cases these elements are in fact grammatically independent, while in others they are only seemingly so, as they in reality belong to some word understood. A historical study of these constructions shows clearly that most of them were originally dependent. The following are the most important classes of such elements:

A. *Direct Address*. The name of a person who is called is often spoken alone without other words. Like interjections (241) such names are independent sentences of a primitive type, which, tho a single word, can in connection with the situation and an appropriate accent convey a thought, as in *Fritz!* spoken in loud tone and prolonged vowel to call him into the house, or *Fritz!* spoken quickly with a short vowel and angry tone when we scold him. See 250. *a*. They are also often inserted in a modern sentence without grammatical relations to the other words: *Kinder, ich habe euch allen etwas mitgebracht*. Such words now stand in the nom., in an earlier period, however, they stood in a distinct case, called the *vocative*.

B. *Absolute Construction*. Words are often used *absolutely*, that is, without a grammatical connection with any other word in the sentence. This construction may assume different forms:

*a*. An uninflected participle may be used absolutely, with the force of a subordinate adverbial clause which has a subject of a general meaning: *Diesen Mangel abgerechnet, ist die Wohnung gut* If one doesn't take note of this defect, the house is a good one. *Abgesehen [habend] von diesem Lärm, an den man sich bald gewöhnte, konnte man in Versailles glauben, im tiefen Frieden zu leben* (Moltke). The second example gives an insight into the origin of the construction. Originally, as still in this example, the perfect active participle was an appositive to some noun or pronoun, usually the subject as here. The *habend* of the perfect active participle was regularly suppressed in M.H.G., as explained in 183. 2. C. *c*: *Iuch möcht' des waldes han bevilt, | von erbuwenem lande her geritn [habende]* (Parzival, 250. 20) The forest must have seemed very large to you having ridden hither from a cultivated country. Here *geritn* is in apposition with *iuch* and has with its modifiers the force of a conditional clause, just as the participle with its modifiers in this construction still often has. As an active perfect participle is not now employed to denote an act this old perfect participle construction is no longer understood, so that the perfect participle is now often used absolutely, i.e. without relations to any noun in the sentence, the reference becoming general or indefinite, as in the first example. The object, if it be a reflexive pronoun, is still regularly suppressed here, as in 183. 2. C. *c*: *Beim Sonnenuntergang glaubt man immer, von der Stelle, wo man steht, bis nach Westen hin reicht das Abendrot, da ist noch Licht, [sich] rückwärts gekehrt erscheint alles dunkel* (Auerbach's *Dorfgeschichten*, 2, p. 77).

In recent literature this old perfect active participle is often felt as belonging to the impersonal passive (219. 5) construction, in which the form, tho passive, is active in force: *Gelinde gesprochen [= wenn gelinde gesprochen werden soll], ist das eine Übertreibung* Speaking in mild terms that is an exaggeration. Similarly *im Vertrauen gesagt* speaking confidentially, *offen gestanden* to tell the truth, &c.

Sometimes also the present participle is used absolutely: *Die Sache selbst betreffend, so ist zunächst zu bemerken* Concerning the point itself, it is necessary to remark. *Die alte Sprache anlangend . . . so denke ich ganz wie Sie usw.* (T. Storm an G. Keller). *In einer anderen Abteilung werden Schiffs-kanonen aller Kaliber und Arten zu sehen sein, mit denen des 15. Jahrhunderts beginnend*.

*b*. *Absolute Accusative and Nominative*.

(1) *Absolute Accusative*. An absolute acc., analogous to the ablative absolute in Latin, often forms, in connection with an uninflected adjective, a participle, an adverb, or prepositional phrase, a construction that is equivalent to a subordinate adverbial clause of which the acc. is the logical subject, and the adj., part., adverb, or phrase, the predicate. Attendant circumstance: *Wilhelm*

hatte, den Kopf in die Hand gestützt (= indem der Kopf in die Hand gestützt war), nachdenklich zugehört. Der Mann näherte sich ihm langsam, die Arme herunterhängend, die Augen starr. Und so kehrte ich denn in die Heimat zurück, nichts mein als einen leeren Beutel. So stand er da, die Füße auswärts, den Kopf empor, die Arme übereinander. Friedrich ging, die Hände auf dem Rücken, im Zimmer auf und ab. Time: Dies getan, entfernte er sich After this was done he withdrew. Goethe ist der König seines Volks; ihn gestürzt und wie leicht dann mit dem Volke fertig werden (Borne). Dies geschehen, nahm der Student Konrad an der Hand und führte ihn usw. (Hans Hopfen's *Verdorben zu Paris*, II, 155). Cause: Diese (i.e. die Tür) zu, ging das Feuer auf dem Herd aus (Hans Hopfen's *Verdorben zu Paris*, I, 265). Condition: In der Hand den Lilienstengel, wäre er ein Heil'genbild. Concession: Den Tod schon im Herzen, kämpfte er tapfer weiter. The accusative is sometimes omitted: Da sagt' ich: kleine Hexlein, grüß' euch Gott! | Was braut und backt und kocht ihr hier im Dunklen? | Doch kaum gesagt — huil stob der Schwarm davon (Hauptmann's *Der arme Heinrich*, I, p. 19). This construction is most commonly used to give some attendant circumstance of an action. Sometimes it can be construed as having temporal, causal, conditional, or concessive force.

The accusative here and the accompanying adjective, participle, adverb, or prepositional phrase have the force of an adverbial clause. The relation of this clause to the verb of the principal proposition is not indicated by a conjunction, but by the accusative form of its subject. That the relation of this construction to the principal verb is that of an adverb to its governing word is plainly indicated by the fact that an adverbial genitive or prepositional phrase is often used instead of the absolute construction: Wankenden Schrittes, mit Tränen in den Augen, erscheint der alte Mann auf der Schwelle (Raabe). So mit dem Felleisen auf dem Rücken und ein paar Groschen in der Tasche glaubte man Herr der Welt zu sein (Baumbach's *Der Schwiegersohn*, VIII). In these prepositional clauses the predicate sometimes assumes the form of an *attributive* participle or adjective instead of a *predicate* participle or adjective: Nach getaner Arbeit ist gut ruhen. Er geht mit bloßem Kopfe. The attributive form is quite common in a few expressions: nach geschlossenem Frieden, nach beendetem Kriege, nach aufgehobener Tafel, bei einbrechender Nacht, bei drohendem Regen, &c. It is the common construction where the logical predicate is an adjective: Er ist bei schönem Wetter abgereist. The attributive form is also the rule in the adverbial genitive: unvernichteter Sache without having attained one's end, without accomplishing anything, stehenden Fußes immediately, tränenden Auges or mit tränenden Augen, &c.

Note. B. b. (1) . . .

(2) *Absolute Nominative.* The absolute nominative is not infrequent. It does not seem to be as closely related to the principal proposition as the accusative absolute. It limits the main verb by adding the time or some circumstance of the action, but it has the force of an additional contracted proposition of which the verb is *sein* understood rather than that of a subordinate clause. It is most common in descriptive style and usually adds some additional detail to render more complete the picture: **Endlich so kommt der Graf hergefahren, der Wagen schwer gepackt, voraus ein Reiter** (Schiller). **Ich geh ins Dorf hinaus, allein und nicht einmal mein Hund bei mir** (Auerbach). **Mein Freund! Am Tische sitzen wir zusammen, nichts zwischen uns als reiner, goldner Wein** (Freytag). **Ich kann mehr wie die Kerle alle, mein eigener Vater mit inbegriffen** (Hauptmann's *Michael Kramer*, 3). **Zu seinen Häupten der wolkenlose Himmel, zu seinen Füßen dieses Leben, dachte er der Tausend und Abertausend, die der Strudel der Weltstadt unbarmherzig in seine Tiefen reißen würde!** (Stilgebauer's *Götz Krafft*, II, 14, p. 446).

The absolute nominative is also used in subject clauses in connection with an appositive participle or adjective which serves as the logical predicate: **Diese sechs Punkte erfüllt war nichts Geringeres als der Sieg des Konstitutionalismus über die königliche Prärogative** (*Brachvogel*) *The carrying out of these six points meant nothing less than, &c.* **Einige Schurken weniger im Lande würde der Welt nichts schaden.**

c. Besides the quite common cases in *a* and *b* above other participles are sometimes used absolutely, referring to persons or things not mentioned at all in the principal proposition: **In die Stadt zurückgekehrt, beendigte ein Ball das Fest** Having returned to the city, they closed up the festival with a ball. Here the subject of the sentence is **Ball**, which would regularly be the subject of the participle, but the context implies that it was the people, not the ball, that returned to the city. This construction is generally condemned by grammarians. In spite of their frequent protests it is sometimes used by good authors: **Lustig davonfahrend, wurden die Eindrücke des Abends noch einmal ausgetauscht** (Riehl's *N. Nov.*, 154).

d. *Absolute Infinitive.* The infinitive with or without *zu* is often used absolutely; see 185. A. I. 5, II. 2. c. Also the infinitive with *um zu* is used absolutely: **Wie viele interessante Entdeckungen haben in der neuesten Zeit allein Sweet und Jespersen gemacht, um nur zwei Namen zu nennen** (W. Franz in *Englische Studien*, 32. Band, p. 232). Compare 281. *b* (2nd par.).

C. Interjections are often inserted in a proposition without having any grammatical connection with it, and exclamations often stand alone, filling no grammatical office. Such utterances assume the following forms:

a. They are uninflected words, or have the form of a sentence or a phrase. See 241.

b. Exclamations may be nouns, the person or thing which causes the feeling being (1) very often in the nom.: **O ich Ungeheuer von einem Toren** O what a monstrous fool I am! **O mein verlornes Glück!** (2) In the gen. of cause: **Ach, der vielen, vielen Evatöchter, die, erwachend, innewerden, daß ihr Paradies nichts war als ein kurzer schöner Traum!** (Spielhagen's *Freigeboren*, p. 11). **O, des Glücks! O, der Wonne!** (id., *Was will das werden?*, IX, chap. xiii). **O, der sonnigen Tage, mit keiner Wolke, weder am Himmel noch in ihrem Gemüt** (Rodenberg's *Klostermanns Grundstück*, II). **O der Schlemmerei am frühen Morgen!** (H. Hoffmann's *Rittmeister*, II, p. 40). This construction was very common earlier in the period and even still frequent in the classics, and, as can be seen from the sentences quoted above, not yet entirely extinct. It is usually replaced to-day by the nom., as in (1), or the prepositional constructions in (5) below. The genitive is much more common than the nominative in exclamations as a word to strengthen the force of *leider* *alas*: **Freilich starb er leiderdessen** (Storm in *Westm.*, 259, 10 b). More frequently with *Gottes*: **Viel ist nicht geworden, leider Gott's** (Hauptmann's *Michael Kramer*, 2) (3) Sometimes in the dat.: **O mir!** (Schiller) **Woe is me! Pfui allem Tod!**

Er, ich will leben, ich (Grillparzer's *Ein treuer Diener*, 4) Pfui dir, or more commonly Pfui über dich Shame on you! We sometimes find the acc after pfui Pfui dich! (Lienhard's *Eulenspiegels Heimkehr*, 1) Sometimes with the genitive of cause described in (2) above Pfui, des Kupplers! (Grillparzer's *Ottokar*, 1) The dative of Seele is quite common in the expression meiner Seele, or meiner Seel' (Guldr's *Die Zuilingsschriester*, 3, 11) upon my soul! Sometimes uninflected Mein Seel', sie hat so unrecht nicht, Ihr Herren (Kleist's *Der zerbrochene Krug*, 7) These forms are short for bei meiner Seele! The preposition is also found bei meiner armen Seele (Lessing's *Minna*, 3, 7) The dative, too, is common after weh(e) to denote the person affected wehe mir! weh is me!, wehe mir Armen!, or wehe über mich Armen!, or o weh! ich Armer! The dative is also often used to denote the person threatened Wehe ihm, wenn er zu kommen wagt! In early N H G the genitive was used to denote the cause of the feeling O weh des tages! Denn der Tag des HERRN ist nahe | und kommt wie ein verderben vom Allmächtigen (Joel 1, 15) The dative is also common after Heil, wohl, and Fluch. Heil dem Königl Long live the King! God save the King! Wohl ihm, daß er das noch erlebt hat! How fortunate for him that he has lived to see that! Fluch dir, Fluch den falschen Freunden | und ihrer schandlichen Geschäftigkeit! (Wilamowitz Moellendorff's *Griechische Tragödien*, 1, p 156) (4) Only rarely in the acc O much Vergeßlichen (Lessing) Plague on my forgetfulness lit on me forgetful one (5) Very often in the dat after the prep mit or the acc after über Mit dir feigem Kerl! (Goethe's *Götz*, 5, 5) O, you cowardly fellow! Mit diesem Menschen! Plague on this fellow! Johannes Aber du wirst doch noch 'n Rest Pietät für 'ne Feier aufbringen, die noch vor Braun Du mit deiner Pietät (Hauptmann's *Ein-same Menschen*, 1) O über sie! O! O, sie sind nicht gekommen.

### CLASSES OF SENTENCES

266 Sentences are divided according to their structure into three classes—simple compound, and complex A simple sentence contains but one independent proposition A compound sentence contains two or more independent propositions A complex sentence contains one independent proposition and one or more subordinate clauses As the simple sentence has already been discussed, there remain only the compound and complex sentences to be treated

#### *The Compound Sentence*

267 The compound sentence consists of different independent propositions or members These members may be two or more simple sentences, or one member may be a simple sentence and the others complex sentences, or there may be any combination of simple and complex sentences The members of a compound sentence need not necessarily be complete When two or more members have in common an element which has the same construction in each member this element need only be expressed once Die Eintracht baut, die Zwietracht zerstört das Haus In such a sentence as Er hat uns nie gefallen, also auch nie enttäuscht the uns has the same form in both members hence is by some suppressed as here in the second member but it is a dative in the first member and an accusative in the second hence with a different construction in the two members which leads others to insert it also in the second member Er hat uns nie gefallen, uns also auch nie enttäuscht This is a choicer form of expression

The members of a compound sentence are usually connected in the following ways

1 The members are connected by co ordinating conjunctions This manner of joining sentences is treated at considerable length under the head of Conjunctions articles 233 236 It should be noticed in these articles that different conjunctions have different influence over the word order in the members

*a.* The most important case of contraction when two or more members have in common an element which has the same construction in each member is when several subjects have one verb in common. The question of the number and person of the verb in such cases is treated in articles 253. I. 2 and II.

*Note.* Sometimes still, not however in choice language as earlier in the period, a pronoun, such as *das*, *dieses*, *was*, or a noun without an article, is expressed but once, even if it has a different construction in the two members, provided, however, that the pronoun or noun have the same form for the different cases: *Nur das (eine) hielt er mit seinem ganzen Herzen fest, und konnte ihm nie ausgedrückt werden. Was heißt und zu welchem Ende studiert man Universalgeschichte?* (title of one of Schiller's productions). See also 271. II. 3. *a*; 272. C. *a*.

*b.* Sometimes two sentences have the form of two independent propositions connected by a co-ordinating conjunction, while in fact one of them is logically dependent: *Seien Sie so gut und kommen Sie* (with the logical force of a subordinate clause of result). An explanation is given in 4 (3rd par.) below.

2. The connection between the members may be made by means of demonstrative pronouns, or adverbs, which point to a preceding sentence, and thus bind the thought of the several propositions together: *Ans Vaterland, ans teure, schließ dich an; das halte fest mit deinem ganzen Herzen; hier sind die starken Wurzeln deiner Kraft.*

3. One member may have an adverb or conjunction which refers to a corresponding element in the other, and the several members may thus be bound firmly together: *Erst denke, dann rede! Bald (now) weint er, bald (now) lacht er.*

4. *Parataxis.* Sometimes there is no formal link binding the members together, the logical connection, however, forms a sufficient tie: *Kinder sind wie die Blumen, sie können nicht zu uns herauf, wir müssen uns zu ihnen niederbeugen, wenn wir sie erkennen wollen* (Wildenbruch's *Der Letzte*).

Upon close investigation it will become clear that such apparently independent propositions are not always absolutely independent. One of the propositions often stands in some grammatical relation to the other, such as that of subject, object, &c., or in an adverbial relation, such as that of result, cause, purpose, concession, condition: *Es ist besser, du gehst* (subject clause). *Den Brackenburger* (name) *solltest du in Ehren halten* (object clause), *sag' ich dir* (Goethe's *Egmont*, 3). *Sie kam ihm wie eine Fee vor* (result), *sie war so schön. Es ist dieses Jahr Mißwachs gewesen; alles ist teuer* (result). *Du mußt gleich gehen; es ist spät* (cause). *Man hatte ihm Geld angeboten; er sollte still sein* (purpose). *Der Berg sei auch noch so hoch, or Sei der Berg auch noch so hoch* (concession), *ich ersteige ihn. Er soll nur kommen* (condition), *ich werde ihm schon heimleuchten.* For other forms of condition here see 237. 1. *A. b* (also *Note 2* thereunder), 279. *b.* (2).

Such sentences represent an older order of things, which was once more general than now. In the earliest stage of the parent tongue from which the various Indo-European languages have come there were no subordinating conjunctions as now, i.e. no formal expression had as yet been found for the idea of the subordination of one proposition to another. This placing of a subordinate proposition by the side of a principal proposition without a formal sign of subordination is called *parataxis*. The development of a distinctive formal sign of subordination in the form of conjunctions and relative pronouns—*hypotaxis* as it is called—is characteristic of a later stage of language growth and belongs to the individual life of the different languages after the migration of the different peoples from their original home. It has required many centuries to develop the present hypotactic forms, but actual subordination, altho without a formal expression, was present at a very early stage of language growth as can still be seen in the old verbless type of sentence preserved in old saws: *Ende gut, alles gut = Wenn das Ende gut ist, so ist alles gut.* An early stage of formal hypotaxis, asyndetic hypotaxis, i.e. hypotaxis clearly marked in thought and form but not yet indicated by a separate word such as a conjunction or a relative, is illustrated in 154. *Note.* Here of the two originally independent sentences one of them, lying alongside of the other in close relation, often even embedded literally in it, is so markedly dependent logically and also formally dependent by reason of its peculiarly abridged and closely linked form that it is no longer felt as an independent sentence but as a relative clause. This





purpose) hast du nicht das Geld, daß du es so verschwendest. Wer einmal lügt, dem glaubt man nicht, und wenn er auch die Wahrheit spricht. Denn wo das Strenge mit dem Zarten, | wo Starkes sich und Mildes paarten, | da gibt es einen guten Klang (Schiller's *Glocke*). Was ich nun tun soll, darüber bin ich im Unklaren. Wenn du lange wartest, dann versäumst du den Zug. Especially frequent is the use of so to point back to a preceding subordinate conditional or concessive clause, altho now not absolutely required: Wenn du dich nicht fügen willst, so wirst du im Leben nie durchkommen. Wenn es auch finster ist, so finde ich doch meinen Weg. It is also found elsewhere and is still common in certain set expressions: Wie man's treibt, so geht es. Was das betrifft, so meine ich, man hätte anders verfahren sollen.

These inflected words and uninflected particles are all of more or less formal nature. Sometimes as in case of darüber, dazu, dessen, dem, &c. they serve to make the grammatical relations clearer, but in many cases da, so, &c. have lost every vestige of concrete meaning and are mere formal particles. Originally they were helpful in binding the two propositions more closely together, but to-day the proposition preceding da, so, &c., is often so distinctly felt as a subordinate adverbial clause by reason of its peculiar form and word-order that it is not now felt as necessary to indicate the subordination further by means of da, so, &c., pointing back to it.

3. *Position of the Subordinate Clause.* As each subordinate clause which is not merely a modifier of some word *within* one of the component elements has a definite function in the sentence as if it were a simple word, its position in the sentence is regulated by the same principles that determine the position of a simple word with the same function and logical force. For instance, just as an emphatic subject stands near the close of the sentence an emphatic subject clause assumes the end position, as illustrated in 251. II. B. a. cc. A subordinate clause may often not only precede or follow the principal proposition but may also be embodied in it: Während ich schlief, hat man mir meine Uhr gestohlen, or Man hat mir meine Uhr gestohlen, während ich schlief, or Man hat mir, während ich schlief, meine Uhr gestohlen. In contrast to older usage, which allowed a much greater freedom of position, it is now in general a fixed rule that a subordinate clause which depends upon another subordinate clause must either follow it or be embodied in it: Daß Karl sehr fleißig gewesen ist, während er in Rom war, or Daß Karl, während er in Rom war, sehr fleißig gewesen ist, habe ich schon von anderer Seite gehört.

4. *Abridged Clauses.* These various clauses are the result of a long development and represent the active efforts of the German mind in its countless practical struggles for fuller expression to adapt from emergency to emergency the available historical materials of the language to the more accurate processes of thought that became necessary in its growing intellectual life. Alongside of these involved structures are simpler forms of expression which in their first beginnings belong to the earliest stages of language growth. There is still preserved in old saws a very primitive type of complex sentence which is verbless and conjunctionless and yet as complete in its expression as a modern complex sentence with its highly developed hypotactic form: Ende gut, alles gut! = Wenn das Ende gut ist, so ist alles gut. Neuer Arzt, neuer Kirchhof! = Wo ein neuer Arzt ist, da ist ein neuer Kirchhof. Where the thought is not intricate the older type is still in use. In general, however, these old constructions have not in large numbers come down to us in their original form but have very often undergone considerable change, frequently under the influence of the younger clause structures, and hence in their present form are comparatively modern creations, which have long been developing into convenient terser types of expression alongside of the more intricate clause formations. These simpler types of expression are treated in the following articles alongside of the fuller and more precise clause formations. They are given under the caption of *abridgment* under the various kinds of clauses treated below and are often elsewhere spoken of as abridged or contracted forms. Altho these abridged clauses are in their original form older than the fuller clause structures and hence in a historical sense cannot be said to be abridged from them the terms "abridged" or "contracted" are not inappropriate, for the compacter structures have long been under the influence of the fuller more involved structures and in contrast to their fuller form are now felt as abridgments or contractions. English has gone much farther than German in preserving these old forms and developing

them into types of expression capable of wide use. Particularly terse and forceful is the predicate appositive construction, where the participle and its modifiers form an abridged clause in which the participle is the logical predicate and the subject of the principal proposition the logical subject, the clause as a whole indicating some adverbial relation, as time, cause, manner, &c., which can only be determined from the connection, as this relation is not formally expressed in the clause itself: Time: Going down town (= when I was going down town) I met an old friend. Having finished my work (= after I had finished my work) I went to bed. Cause: Being sick (= as I was sick) I stayed at home. This is the old attributive or appositional thing type of sentence structure described in 250. a (2nd par.) and 252. 1. b. Note. The thought is not expressed accurately by means of intricate grammatical form but is merely suggested by placing the participle alongside of the subject of the principal proposition. As German has in large measure abandoned this old construction for the more accurate fuller clause the English-speaking student should be on his guard here. Additional details on German usage here are given in 182. 1. E. Note. The old attributive type of clause structure is also very common in English where the person implied in a subjective genitive or a possessive adjective (originally a gen. of a pers. pronoun, here still with the force of a subject. gen.) is the logical subject and the governing gerund the logical predicate: *I am opposed to your or John's going to his house* Ich bin dagegen, daß du zu ihm gehst, or daß Hans zu ihm geht. English and German usage at this point is treated in detail in the following articles, also in 182. 1. B. a. Quite similar to the old attributive type of clause structure just described is the development of modifiers of the verb, especially the prepositional infinitive constructions, into terse forceful types of expression with the value of a subordinate clause, as illustrated in 269. 3, 272. C. g, 281. b. Note (2nd par.). The outline of German usage here is given in 185. A. II. 2. As English allows a much more liberal use of the infinitive than German the English-speaking student must again be on his guard. On the other hand, the abridged clause in the form of a prepositional phrase is very common in both German and English: *Er ist bei schönem Wetter angekommen* He arrived in beautiful weather. *Er sagte es mit Tränen in den Augen* He said it with tears in his eyes. The first noun in each prepositional phrase is the subject of the abridged clause. The attributive adjective or participle before the noun or the prepositional phrase after the noun, as in *den Augen* in his eyes in the second example, is the logical predicate of the clause, the preposition introducing the abridged clause is the sign of subordination to the principal verb. In German differing from English the sign of subordination to the principal verb is sometimes indicated by the genitive form of the noun instead of a preposition placed before the noun: *Schwankenden Schrittes erschien der alte Mann auf der Schwelle* With tottering steps the old man appeared on the threshold.

### Subject Clause.

269. 1. The subject clause performs the function of the subject of the sentence: *Wer leicht glaubt* (= Der Leichtgläubige), wird leicht betrogen.

The subject clause is usually introduced by the conjunctions *daß* that, *since*, *seit* or *seitdem* since, *als* when, *ob* whether, *wenn* if, *when*, *weil* because, by the relatives *wer* (156), *was* (153. 1. (2)), *der* (130. 2. b, 161. 3. C, and 166), *die*, *das*, *wie*, *worüber*, *worauf*, &c., and in indirect questions by some interrogative pronoun or adverb: *Daß der Mond auf die Witterung Einfluß übt*, ist eine verbreitete Ansicht. *Es sind schon viele Jahre*, daß ich hier wohne. *Es ist viele Jahre her*, daß (or *seit* or *seitdem*) ich ihn gesehen habe. *Es sind vergangene Zeiten*, als für dynastische Zwecke kleine Heere von Berufssoldaten ins Feld zogen (Moltke). *Ob sie kommen werden*, steht dahin (remains to be seen). *Es ist erfreulich*, wenn man wohlerzogene Kinder sieht (= Der Anblick wohl-erzogener Kinder ist erfreulich). *Die Lichtenstein tut vornehm und ernst*; das macht aber, weil der gestrenge Herr Vater da ist (Riehl). *Wer Schlösser*

in die Luft erbaut, wird billig als ein Tor verlacht. Kein Lärm, keine Erschütterung war es, was (153. 1. (2)) mich geweckt hatte, sondern ein Qualm unerträglich verpesteter Luft (Suttner's *Die Waffen nieder!*, iv). Die (130. 2. b) so redeten, wußten sehr wohl, daß sie bis zu einem gewissen Grade die öffentliche Meinung ihres Volkes und Heeres hinter sich hatten. Eine Lust ist's, wie er alles weckt und stärkt und neu belebt um sich herum. Worüber der eine sich ärgert, das freut den anderen. Worin er sich auszeichne, ist schwer zu sagen. Es ist nicht bekannt, woher diese Krankheit zu uns gekommen. The predicate word often introduces the sentence, as explained in *b* (2nd par.): Mein einziger Trost ist, daß es den anderen nicht besser geht. Seine Antwort [war], er fürchte sich nicht. Tatsache ist, daß er schon da ist.

a. There often stands in the principal proposition when it is preceded by the subject clause a demonstrative, which points to the preceding subordinate clause, and in a word sums up its contents, thus binding the two propositions more firmly together: Worüber der eine sich ärgert, das freut den anderen. Wen der Neid zu stürzen denkt, der wird erst von ihm erhoben. This demon. is usually necessary if its correlative in the subordinate clause is an adverb or a pronoun in a different case, as in the two sentences just given.

b. *Anticipative Subject* es. Often the sentence is introduced by the anticipative subject es, das, or eines, which points to a following subject clause, which is the real subject of the sentence: Es ist zweifelhaft, ob er noch lebt. Es kann nicht fehlen, daß er daran gedacht. He must have thought of it. Und das ist das Schrecklichste, daß einem die Welt so zu ist (Fontane's *Effi*, XXXII). Mag auch Entwicklung und Ausgang des Krieges in Ostasien noch gänzlich unabsehbar sein — eines ist heute schon sicher: Der erste Kanonenschuß in Ostasien hat in der ganzen Welt . . . das stärkste Echo erweckt (*Neue Zürcher Zeitung*, Feb. 22, 1904). Of course es follows the verb in questions: Ist es denn so nötig, daß er sich entfernt? For the omission of es see 251. I. 2. B. Note.

The es, pronounced with falling intonation—here indicated by a period—, is much used when the predicate is placed at the beginning of the sentence for emphasis: Möglich or Eine Möglichkeit ist es., daß er morgen kommt. On the other hand, when the predicate is placed at the beginning of the sentence, not for emphasis but in order that the subject clause may take the emphatic end position the anticipative es drops out, as the position of the unstressed predicate in the first place and the rising intonation—here indicated by a raised period—after the verb pointing forward indicate that the emphatic subject will follow: Möglich or Eine Möglichkeit ist., daß er morgen kommt. Eine andere Frage ist., ob auf die Erklärung, die Lloyd George in seiner Rede abgegeben hat, bereits fest gebaut werden kann (*Berliner Tageblatt*, May 14, 1921). If the predicate is a noun or an uninflected neuter demonstrative referring back to a preceding noun, an *inflected* demonstrative pronounced with rising intonation is often used as an anticipative subject pointing forward to the following emphatic subject clause: Eine Möglichkeit ist die., daß er morgen kommt. Mein Haupteinwand gegen ihn ist der., daß er so selbstisch ist. Es gibt doch nur einen Termin für das Erscheinen eines Buches und das ist der., wenn es fertig ist. See also 251. I. 2. B. Note and II. B. a. aa. Note.

When the subject clause thus stands at the end and there is a predicate adjective, noun, adverb, or prepositional phrase in the first place, we often find in the principal proposition the old verbless appositional type of sentence described in 252. 1. b. Note: Möglich [ist], daß das ganze Gerüste meiner Schlüsse ein bestandloses Traumbild gewesen (Schiller). Gewinn genug [ist es], wenn wir nur soviel erreichen! Vergebens [war es], daß ich durch Hin- und Hergehen mich zu erwärmen suchte (Spielhagen). Zum größten Glück, daß ich ihm aus den Augen kam. After nicht in the first place daß is often replaced by als ob, as explained in 2. b (2nd par.) below, or now also often by weil thus indicating that the subject clause is developing into a causal clause: Heute gibt es wenige gute Dichter, nicht daß (or als ob, or weil) sich heutzutage etwa so viel weniger Gutes fände als früher, nein, nur das Mittelmäßige, Überflüssige und Elende hat sich in einer Weise vermehrt, daß es jammervoll ist. The daß that follows kaum in the first place has become so closely associated with it that both words are now felt as a temporal conjunction so that the subject clause has developed into a clause of time: Schon dreht sich der Boden vor Wonne mit mir, | kaum daß ich die Schwelle betrat (Mörike).

c. *Omission of daß*. The connective daß is often omitted in subject clauses and the normal or the inverted word-order employed, especially when es is used in the main proposition as an anticipative subject: Es ist besser, du gehst, or daß du gehst. Schulze, heißt es, hat einen Ruf nach Berlin. Denn ist es zu leugnen? Der Übermut der fremden Lehrer hat sich täglich erhöht (Goethe's *Egmont*, 1). Sometimes when the anticipative es is omitted in accordance with older usage: Du bist, scheint mir, verstimmt. Im Gegenteil, ist mir viel lieber, Sie bleiben (Wildenbruch's *Der unsterbliche Felix*, 3, 6). Especially, however, when a predicate word introduces the sentence in order that the subject may be withheld until the end for the purpose of making it more emphatic: Wahr ist, der Vater hätt' früher g'scheit sein und nicht erlauben sollen, daß die Resel und der Toni von Kind auf beständig mitsammen herumrennen (Ebner-Eschenbach's *Die Resel*, p. 160). Das Natürlichste ist, du fragst ihn selbst. Sie sind beide sehr geschickte Leute; das macht, sie kommen von Sachsen (E. von Handel-Mazzetti's *Jesse und Maria*, p. 25). For further particulars concerning the omission of es see 251. I. 2. B. Note and II. B. a. aa. Note.

The daß should not, however, be omitted if it is needed to make the thought clear, i.e. to indicate the oneness of the words in the subject clause and maintain the integrity of the group to other elements in the sentence. Es ist

... elementaren Kenntnisse das Altertum  
e (Mommmsen's *Römische Geschichte*, III, chap. 14). The omission of *daß* in this sentence would bring a prep. phrase next to the noun *Vorurteil*, which at the first glance might lead us to seek for a connection between these two elements instead of connecting the phrase with the words that follow, where it properly belongs. The *daß* here points out the oneness of the following group of words.

There is often also another reason for the use of *daß*. The transposed word-order according to 284 I 3 a must be used after verbs expressing mere feeling. Es tut mir sehr leid, daß du dich gekrankelt fühlst (not *du fühlst dich gekrankelt*).

2 Mood The mood of the subject clause is  
a Indicative when it is desired to represent the statement as a fact. Es ist mehr als wahrscheinlich, daß der Torf aus abgestorbenen Pflanzenteilen entsteht.

b The mood is the potential (168. II. G. a (1), 169. 2 G a (1)), the volitive (168 I. 2 E a (1)),

could do it. I  
hence the will  
ist unser innig  
nie geboren!  
Wer den Brief  
the examples referred to above

vor, als ob ich verloren wäre. Modest or cautious statement. Es kommt mir vor, als ob du unrecht hättest. Compare 272 A a, C d, D. b, 276. A

c. Also the imperative mood, or the simple infinitive or force of the imperative. „Kehre um!“ schallte es ihm Gambettas wie der meinige, war: „Nie davon sprechen, Nachrichten, Nov. 18, 1904) Unsere Haltung kann nur herankommen lassen, keine Liebenswürdigkeiten, keine Frisch mitten durchgegriffen, das ist besser (Schiller's *Die* ... er meint es, den Geldbeutel offen, Karst und Spaten genommen und graben und abermals graben und zum letztenmal graben! (Lauff's *Frau Alen*, p. 348).

3 Abridged Form. Clauses introduced by *daß* can be abridged.

or Das Vaterland zu schützen, ist  
sagen, or daß Sie es sagten. Es

... in such sentences as *It would be better for me to go at once* and *For me the best plan would be to go at once*, which corresponds closely to the German. Es wäre besser für mich, sogleich zu gehen and Für mich wäre das Beste, sogleich zu gehen. The *for me* and *für mich* represent an older dative of reference (258 3 A, 2nd par.) and hence originally modified the sentence as a whole and had grammatically nothing to do with the infinitive. As, however, there is in such sentences a close logical relation between the pronoun or noun after *for* and the infinitive, the pronoun or the noun usually serving as the logical subject of the infinitive, a subordinate clause or

the infinitive,  
a subordinate  
by *um zu*, as  
noun became entirely  
take as subject any  
o the original dative  
doesn't please me *Ihr*  
ose in English in the  
regularly used where  
principal proposition  
identical, as illustrated in 271. I c, 271. II 6, 272 C, g  
and ... Note, 2nd par. In German there are no traces of a development  
in this direction. In English the infinitive construction is often here in the subject relation

and often elsewhere replaced by the gerund: *Having done one's duty is a consolation in misfortune* Seine Schuldigkeit getan zu haben ist ein Trost im Unglück. Compare 182. 1. B. a. (1).

The regular subject clause with a conjunction followed by a nominative subject and a finite verb is often replaced by the old appositional type of clause described in 268. 4, which consists here of a subject in the absolute nominative followed by a predicate in the form of an appositive adjective or participle: Einige Schurken weniger im Lande würde der Welt nichts schaden. See 265. B. b. (2), last par.

4. *Word-order.* As can be seen by the illustrative sentences, the word-order is usually the normal or the inverted, or, in case there is a connective, the transposed. The question order is also found: Ist es möglich: liebt sie mich? (K. F. Meyer).

5. For the case where several subject clauses have the same relative in common, see 272. C. c.

### Predicate Clause.

270. 1. The predicate clause performs the function of a predicate noun or adjective: Widerwärtigkeiten sind für die Seele, was der Sturm für die Luft ist (= Läuterungsmittel).

The predicate clause is introduced by the relative *wer, was, der, die, das* (never *welcher*), the relative adverbs *wozu, &c.*, and the conjunctions *wie, daß*: Wir sind selten, was wir sein sollten. Ich bin nicht, der ich zu sein scheine. Seid, wozu die herrliche Natur Euch machte. Er ist, wie er ist. Alles [ist], wie Sie gewünscht haben. Das heißt, wir müssen morgen fort, or daß wir morgen fortmüssen. Das Essen war so, daß man es nicht genießen konnte.

2. *Mood.* The mood is usually as in the preceding sentences the indicative, but sometimes the subjunctive, especially the potential subjunctive (168. II. F. b; 169. 2. F. b), is found: Wer der Dichtkunst Stimme nicht vernimmt, ist ein Barbar, er sei, wer er sei.

3. *Abridgment.* Predicate clauses cannot usually be abridged except, as in the first sentence in 1, by substituting some noun for the clause. On the other hand, in certain set expressions the infinitive is common: Es ist mit ihm nicht auszukommen *There (formerly it) is no getting along with him.* Compare 185. A. I. 1. b. (2). (3). The perfect infinitive (185. B. II. b) is also common in set expressions, usually however without *zu*: Das heißt recht den Nagel auf den Kopf getroffen [haben] *That is hitting the nail on the head.* Also the present infinitive without *zu* may be used here after *sein* and *heißen*: Sich allein leben heißt gar nicht leben *To live for one's self is the same as not to live at all.* See 185. B. I. 1. b. Notice that in the English translation of such sentences we must sometimes use the gerund instead of the infinitive. Compare 182. 1. B. a. (2).

### Adjective Clause.

271. Adjective clauses fall into two classes—attributive substantive clauses and attributive adjective clauses:

I. Attributive substantive clauses are for the most part either appositive or prepositional clauses: Die Gewißheit, daß wir ewig leben werden, tröstet uns. Die Hoffnung, daß wir uns wiedersehen (= auf Wiedersehen), erleichtert die Trennung. Seine Angst (darüber), er könnte nie etwas erreichen, hat ihn furchtbar gequält. Seine innere Auflehnung dagegen, daß er doch schließlich weichen müsse, hat ihn sehr verbittert. In examples like the last one the clause is evidently a prepositional clause. The two preceding examples may be similarly construed, but other interpretations are possible, for the clause in both examples may represent an older genitive, once common, or it may now be felt as an appositional clause. In the first example the clause is evidently an appositional clause. This interpretation often becomes very natural: In allem Wandel menschlicher Zustände bleibt doch ein Naturgesetz unverändert: daß der Tag für den Lernbegierigsten und Fleißigsten doch eben nur 24 Stunden hat. Verzeihe mir die runde Frage: was willst du hier? There is an old form of the appositional clause which has become so changed that the original construction is no longer felt. In this old form, as in 268. 4, appositional clauses have often developed into adverbial clauses, here especially into clauses of result. Originally such a clause stood in apposition with a post-positive article of the governing noun. Thus Er hat das Alter, daß er für sich selbst reden kann was originally: Er hat Alter, das: er kann für sich selbst reden. In course of time *das* (now *daß*) became a stereotyped form, so that it can now

be used even if the governing noun is masc. or fem., and also when an indefinite article, demonstrative, or adverb is used: Sie haben ja hier einen Qualm, daß man ersticken möchte. Such clauses may now be classed as adverbial clauses of quality or degree. For further examples see 276. D; 277. 2.

Attributive substantive clauses are usually introduced by daß (see 238. 2. d), weil (sometimes used with the force of daß), als, or als ob, or als wenn (see a below), or the interrogative pronouns or particles, such as was, wer, ob, wo, wie, wann, weshalb, weswegen, warum, &c.: Die Behauptung, daß die Erde sich drehe, setzte Galilei manchen Verfolgungen aus. Aus dem ganz einfachen Grunde, weil (instead of daß) der kluge König schon seine Maßregeln genommen (Heine). Wem ein offener Sinn für die Schönheiten der Natur verliehen ist, dessen (268. 2. a) Leben wird reich an Freuden sein. Immer wieder dazwischen waren ihre Gedanken abgeirrt, denn sie hatte Angst, was da kommen möchte. Die Ungewißheit, ob sein Sohn glücklich aus dem Kriege heimkehren werde, ließ ihm keine Ruhe. Können Sie mir Nachricht geben, wo er sich aufhält? Erst im Unglück gelangt man zu der Einsicht, wie schwer ein Freund in der Not wiegt. Die Hoffnung, daß wir ihm helfen werden, verleiht ihm Mut. Ich habe noch nicht die Ursache erfahren, warum (or weshalb, or weswegen, or derentwegen) dies geschehen ist. Sein Verzicht darauf, daß er zuerst rede, hat allgemein befriedigt.

a *Mood* The mood is usually subjunctive in the beginning of indirect subordinate clauses. The subjunctive of indirect beginning Die Behauptung last sentence of the examples given above, also the subjunctive of indirect question (see sentences above beginning with Immer and Die Ungewißheit). See also 168 II G b, 169 2 G b, 168 I 2 B (1). Also the subjunctive of modest or cautious statement is common here. See 169 2 G b. Instead of daß the conjunction als (with question order) or als ob or als wenn (with transposed order) is often used with a past or a present tense form of the subjunctive to give expression to the idea of non-reality or mere subjectivity. Examples are given in 168. II

238. 2 d *Note* Also the imperative mood or a simple may be used. Dieser P. P. hat nur einen Gedanken: (Wildenbruch's *Der unsterbliche Felix*, 1, 5)

and the subordinate clause has the order of a principal proposition. Im Altertum war die Ansicht des Thales, die Erde sei eine große, auf dem Wasser schwimmende Scheibe, eine weit verbreitete.

c *Abridgment* Clauses introduced by daß may, when no ambiguity would arise, be replaced by the infin construction. Jetzt ist der Zeitpunkt da, von diesen Papieren öffentlichen Gebrauch zu machen (= daß man von diesen Papieren öffentlichen Gebrauch mache). A predicate noun, remark, or Lob, ein schöner Man of the clause is other t

the  
to go  
your plan for  
here see 269. 3 In English the  
as subject a person implied in a  
possessive adjective or a genitive if the subject of the clause is different from the person implied  
in the subject of the principal proposition, but has no subject expressed if it is the same as the  
person implied in the subject of the principal proposition.  
doesn't please me Ihr Plan, daß my or John's going  
yourself doesn't please me Ihr F Your plan of going  
remarks on the gerund -72. C g for further

II. *Attributive Adjective Clause.* The attributive adjective clause was originally an appositive to the governing noun as the substantive clause in I, but it is no longer felt as such. Originally a der, welcher, or so stood in the principal proposition after the governing noun pointing as a demonstrative to the following appositional clause. These words are now felt as pronouns standing in the subordinate clause pointing backward to the governing noun, i.e. are now felt as relative pronouns. See 154. Note, 130. 3, 153. 5. Note. This clause is now usually introduced by the relatives der, welcher, was (153. 1. (1), (3)), desgleichen, or dergleichen (161. 2), or by a relative adverb, such as so (153. 5), wie (153. 3 B and C. f), als (153. 3. C a), wo, worin, worunter, &c., which are sometimes separated when compound (see 153. 2, toward end): Die Statte,

die ein guter Mann betrat, ist eingeweiht. Man war sehr unschlüssig über die Art, wie der Krieg geführt werden sollte. For the use of different relatives see articles 150–154, where this subject, so difficult for foreigners, is treated at considerable length and many illustrative sentences are given. The conjunction *daß* is also used relatively. See 153. 3. C. e.

1. As in English, the relative pronoun must agree with its antecedent in gender and number, while its case is determined by the office it performs in the clause.

a. *Synesis of gender.* If the antecedent is a common neut., fem., or masc. noun representing a male or female the relative is usually neut., fem., or masc. according to grammatical gender, but if the antecedent is the diminutive of a proper name the relative has, as a rule, natural gender. For fuller explanation see 263. I. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6.

*Synesis of number.* For usage here see 263. II. 2, last paragraph.

b. The relatives *das* and *welches* were earlier in the period employed like *das* (129. 2. C. (1)) as the subject of the clause, remaining unchanged for all genders and numbers. See 151. 1. g.

c. The relative is in the pl., altho its antecedent is in the sing., if it refers to the antecedent, not as to an individual, but as to a class or genus: *Das gebräuchlichste Gewand ist ein blauer Samtrock, von denen 20 auf einen von Tuch kommen* The most common garment is a blue velvet coat, of which there are 20 to one of cloth.

d. In English the relative often agrees incorrectly with some word closely connected with the antecedent instead of agreeing with the antecedent itself, as this word lies nearer the thought and feeling of the speaker or writer than the grammatical antecedent: *That is one of the most valuable books that has appeared in any language.* This incorrect construction is much less common in German: *So viel steht fest, daß unsere heimischen Kartoffelklöße eines der wunderbarsten Gerichte vorstellen, das die Welt kennt* (H. Seidel's *Thüringische Kartoffelklöße*).

e. A peculiar kind of attraction called *trajection* often takes place in relative clauses. This consists in conforming the relative pronoun or adverb to the construction required in the following dependent clause instead of to that required in its own clause: *Er besitzt das Buch, aus welchem du meinst, daß er viel lernen kann* instead of *Er besitzt das Buch, von welchem du meinst, daß er daraus viel lernen kann.* This construction is very common with Luther and Lessing, and is still sometimes used especially in clauses introduced by *wo* or *wie* to avoid a clumsy circumlocution: *Er ging in eine Restauration, wo er wußte, daß er seinen Freund treffen werde* instead of: *Er ging in eine Restauration, von der er wußte, daß er seinen Freund dort treffen werde.* *Denn ein Geist hat nicht fleisch vnd bein | wie jr (ihr) sehet das (daß) | ich habe* (Luke xxiv. 39) instead of *Ein Geist hat nicht Fleisch und Bein, von denen ihr seht, daß ich sie habe.*

2. If the relative has the same case in a number of successive clauses dependent upon the same word, it may be expressed in the first clause and understood in the others, or for rhetorical effect it may be retained in all: *Ich sandte ihm einen Mann, welcher in die Sache eingeweiht war, die Gegend genau kannte und sich bei einer früheren Gelegenheit zuverlässig gezeigt hatte.* If the relative be in the gen. it is usually repeated with each clause: *Aber einem romantischen Volke war eine Religion angemessen, deren prächtiger Pomp die Sinne gefangen nimmt, deren geheimnisvolle Rätsel der Phantasie einen unendlichen Raum eröffnen, deren vornehmste Lehren sich durch malerische Formen in die Seele einschmeicheln.* See also 272. C. c. For the rhetorical repetition of the relative see 152. 2.

3. If the relative in adjective clauses has a different case in a number of successive clauses dependent upon the same word, it is now usually repeated each time with its proper case form, tho many exceptions can be found in a careless style and in earlier periods where the influence of the grammarian was not so strong as to-day: *Das Schloß war schon mit mehreren Unglücklichen belegt, denen man nicht helfen, die man nicht erquicken konnte.* Either *der* or *welcher* can here be used, but they do not usually alternate with each other. See 152. 2. Also *was* is employed here, but with a different shade of meaning, as explained in 153. 1. The differentiation is not always carried out. See 153. 1. (1) (last par.) and *a* and *b* thereunder.

a. Violations of this rule are not infrequent even in the best authors when the relative has the same form for different cases: *Dieses Anerbieten, das ich für kein leeres Kompliment halten durfte und für mich höchst reizend war* (Goethe). To-day when the grammatical conscience is so aroused such violations are becoming less frequent in choice language, but the relative *was* is still sometimes used but once even by good writers: *Ich muß zu dem übergehen, was hiermit zusammenhängt und ich dir vorzulegen habe* (G. Keller). The repetition of *was* is now felt as choicer German. Other seeming short cuts sometimes occur: *Es mag kommen zu was* (for



dem was) es will Sie war unbekummert um was (for das was) nicht ihre nächste Sorge war  
 Such sentences are curious survivals of older usage where was and wer were not relative pro-  
 nouns but indefinites belonging to the principal proposition, as explained in 154 *Note*

b Very frequently we find in the best authors and in the language of the common people  
 a personal possessive, or demonstrative pronoun or demonstrative adverb, or derselbe in the  
 second of two relative clauses instead of the grammatically correct relative pronoun or adverb

Kraft des Geistes bewältigen (instead of die wir nur durch die höchste Kraft  
 des Geistes bewältigen) Schiller Sprüche, die der Wandersmann verweilend liest und  
 ihren Sinn bewundert (instead of deren Sinn er bewundert) Tieck Etwas Inn-  
 von seinem Freunde  
 mann schauerte und  
 reckens erin-  
 Becher, an dem er  
 lich liefert (Keller s  
 sent not as favorable

one clause, but do not discover in the following clause, which  
 expressed or understood Darauf wagte Anton den Hals des

Schwarzen zu streicheln, was der Pony wohlwollend aufnahm und seinerseits dem Fremdling  
 die Rocktaschen beroch (Freytag) In such sentences which cannot be translated literally the  
 second clause has the word order of a subordinate clause and a subject in common with the first

present not so frequent in the literary language is an ungrammatical but convenient way of  
 adding to a preceding clause an additional proposition containing the same subject, without  
 formally constructing a new sentence or a grammatical subordinate clause

4 *Mood* The mood is usually the indicative but also the subjunctive is found especially  
 the subjunctive of indirect discourse the optative subjunctive (for examples see 168 I 2 D a  
 and b), the potential subjunctive in all its uses especially however that one known as the *sub*  
*jective of modest or cautious statement* which softens the broad sweeping negative statement  
 of the principal proposition Die Regierung der Vereinigten Staaten beschwerte sich über die  
 Landung sovieler Armen, welche manche e (subj of indirect  
 discourse) Sie grubelte über die Worte ental subj), und  
 über ihre Antworten Noch nie ist eine e nicht früher oder  
 später nachteilige Folgen gehabt hätte ( other illustrative  
 examples of the potential subjunctive see F a In elevated

se (see 100 I 2 B (3)) is sometimes found Ihr wünscht  
 res Hauptes heil'ge Locken ehre (Schiller) The unreal

See 169 I C (3)

lative clauses see 151 3 B a b c

can only be abridged when the relative is the subject

of the clause Its contracted form is usually that of an appositive noun adj. or part Die  
 Römer, [welche] ein tapferes und mächtiges Volk [waren], haben einst die Herrschaft über  
 den halben Erdkreis besessen Ein Morgen, [der] rot und golden [war], hat uns den Mai  
 gebracht Gott lohnt Gutes, [das] hier getan [wird], auch hier noch Eine Sache, [die] zu  
 oft gesagt [wird], tut den Ohren weh

In English however, the clause can often be abridged to an infinitive

of the clause is the indefinite one or the antecedent  
 employs the clause form He is not a man to trifle with

kann He is the man to go Er ist der Mann, der gehe  
 usage here see 185 A I 2 a (3) also 180 B d

Where the subject of the infinitive is other than the indefinite man or the antecedent of the  
 relative the preposition for must be used with the infinitive This is the man for you to send  
 Das ist der Mann, den Sie schicken sollten (or müßten) Compare 269 3

7 *Descriptive Relative Clauses* Compare 269 3

being introduced by

or a relative adverb

the antecedent but

means of making a

a convenient  
 statement Sie versprochen, ihm in allen Noten beizustehen, was sie auch getreulich aus-  
 führten Mit dem notwendigen Geldumtausch kam der Wechselhandel auf, der den Nieder-  
 ländern eine neue fruchtbare Quelle des Reichtums eröffnete Wir nahmen den Weg über  
 den Berg, wodurch wir eine Stunde ersparten For fuller discussion of this common construc-  
 tion see 153 I (3) and 153 2 A (1) For the common use of a descriptive relative clause in-  
 troduced by als when see 275 a

8 *Word order* The attributive adjective clause usually has the transposed word order,  
 but explanatory clauses which are not introduced by a connective have normal word order

Der Unglückliche — es war Chatillon — klammerte sich einen Augenblick mit Händen und Füßen an das Gesims (K. F. Meyer). Friedrich — er war damals etwa zehn Jahre alt, aber schon sehr groß und stark — machte mit uns sehr weite und anstrengende Touren. Such explanatory clauses with normal word-order are distinguished as subordinate clauses by their more rapid enunciation.

### Object Clause.

272. Object clauses are divided into *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *prepositional* clauses:

A. *Genitive clause*. The genitive clause is usually introduced by *daß* (see 240. a), and the interrogatives *was*, *ob*, *wie*, &c., and can be used to replace any gen., whether it be the object of a verb or an adjective: *Ich erinnere mich nicht, daß ich dies gesagt habe* (= dieser Worte). *Der Träge ist nicht wert, daß man ihn unterstütze*. *Ich erinnere mich nicht mehr genau, ob er sich dieses scharfen Ausdrucks bediente*. Often representing the old genitive of cause: *Ich freue mich riesig, daß du gekommen bist*. *Es wundert mich, daß er das Wort übel genommen hat, or Daß er das Wort übel genommen hat, wundert mich*. Compare 238. 3. E. c. After a *deshalb*, *deswegen*, or *um deswillen* in the principal proposition the conjunction *weil* has become more common here than *daß*: *Was endlich das von Professor Laband angeführte Beispiel, betreffend die Ausweisung der Engländer aus Hamburg, betrifft, so ist es um deswillen beweisunkräftig, weil der Hamburger Senat so wenig wie eine andere Bundesregierung solche Torheiten begehen wird* (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, June 7, 1906).

From a modern point of view many such examples may be classed as prepositional clauses, as the genitive is now often replaced by a prepositional phrase: *Ich freue mich dessen* or *darüber*.

If the subordinate clause precedes there is usually a demonstrative in the principal proposition referring back to the subordinate clause: *Was du für recht hältst, dessen brauchst du dich nicht zu schämen*.

a. *Mood*. The mood is usually indic., but, as in the following sentences, the subjunctive of indirect discourse or indirect question, and the potential subjunctive, may be used: *Karl V. von Spanien konnte sich rühmen, die Sonne gehe* (subj. of indirect discourse) *in seinem weiten Reiche nicht unter*. *Er erinnerte sich, er habe es früher gesagt*. *Er war ungewiß, wo er mehr Ansehen hätte* (unreal potential form of the subj. of indirect question), *ob in dem Feld, ob in dem Kabinette*. *Er war nicht gewiß, ob er es tun könnte* (same kind of subj. as in the preceding sentence). *Ich erinnere mich nicht, daß ich ihm einen Besuch gemacht hätte* (unreal potential; very common after a negative proposition).

To give the idea of mere subjectivity or more commonly the idea of unreality *daß* is sometimes replaced by the conjunction *als ob* with transposed word-order or simple *als* with question order, as so often found in clauses of manner (168. II. B, 169. 2. B, 276. A): *welchen seine Gegner anklagten, als habe er Geld von den Juden empfangen* (Heine). *Welcher Eure Schwester fälschlich angeklagt, als hätte sie ihr Ehebett befleckt* (Schikaneder). This usage was more common here and in C. d a little earlier in the period than at present, but it is still common in adjective clauses (168. II. G. b and 169. 2. G. b) and is not infrequent in subject (269. 2. b) and prepositional phrase (272. D. b) clauses, and in clauses of manner (276. A).

b. *Tense*. The idiomatic use of tenses in indirect discourse demands especial care, and hence this subject has been described at length in article 171. 2.

c. *Omission of daß*. When the thought or feeling of someone is reported indirectly *daß* is often dropped, and the subordinate clause has the order of a principal proposition, as in the first two sentences in a above. The *daß* cannot be omitted after a negative, as in the first and second sentences in A, nor after a verb of feeling, as in the example in A which contains the verb *freuen*. For an explanation of this usage see 284. I. 3. a. The use of *daß* is also regulated by the principle described in C. f below.

d. *Abridgment*. Those clauses which are introduced by *daß* may be replaced by the infinitive construction, provided the subject of the clause is identical with the subject or object of the principal proposition: *Ich bin nicht wert, daß ich dir die Schuhriemen auflöse; or Ich bin nicht wert, dir die Schuhriemen aufzulösen*. *Ich erinnere mich nicht, daß ich ihm einen Besuch gemacht habe or hätte* (see a, above, last sentence); or *Ich erinnere mich nicht, ihm einen Besuch gemacht zu haben*.

B. *Dative Clause*. This dative clause performs the function of a noun or adjective-substantive which is the dat. object of a verb or adjective: *Wer keinen Rat annimmt* (= dem Eigensinnigen), *dem kann nicht geholfen werden*. They are usually introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb, or by *daß* and

wenn: Wer sich nicht nach der Decke streckt, dem bleiben die Füße unbedeckt. Daß es dazu werde (i.e. daß das Ergebnis der Wissenschaft Gemeinut werde), dem dient meine Arbeit (Wilamowitz-Moellendorff's *Griechische Tragödien*, II. p. 4). Es resultiert also ein Spannungszustand, hervorgerufen durch gegeneinander arbeitende Muskeln, vergleichbar dem, wenn ich die Bewegung einer Hand durch das Entgegenhalten der zweiten hemme (E. Herzog in *Die Neueren Sprachen*, April 1905).

a Th  
or other  
mir unre  
the dat,

b *Mood* The mood is usually indic, but sometimes the subjunctive, especially the concessive (168. I. 2 A) subjunctive, is used *Nimmermehr enthülle das Geheimnis, wenn es auch sei.*

c *Non omission of daß.* If the clause is not introduced by a relative pronoun, a conjunction, as daß and wenn in the last two sentences in B *must* be used. The conjunction here cannot be omitted as so often elsewhere, as it is needed to preserve the oneness of the words in the clause. Compare with C. f below and 284 I 3 a

d *Abridgment* Such clauses may often be clumsily abridged by substituting an adjective or participial substantive with its modifiers for the clause form. Thus the second sentence in B, above, becomes *Dem sich nicht nach der Decke Streckenden bleiben die Füße unbedeckt.*

C. *Accusative Clause.* The accusative clause performs the function of a noun in the acc., object of some verb or adjective: *Ich weiß nicht, wo er sich befindet* (= den Ort seines gegenwärtigen Aufenthalts). After verbs which govern two accusatives, one of the person and one of the thing, either the object of the person or the object of the thing may be replaced by a clause: *Lehre, die dir folgen wollen* (= deine Jünger), *deine Wege. Lehre mich, was du von ihm gelernt hast* (= die von ihm empfangene Wissenschaft). Accusative clauses are usually introduced by daß or sometimes weil instead of the more common daß when the idea of cause is present, sometimes by wie (= daß) after verbs of *perceiving* and *relating*, sometimes by wenn *if, when*, often by relative pronouns and adverbs, and in indirect questions by the interrogative particles *ob, wann, wo, wie, warum, weshalb, &c.*, or the interrogative pronouns *wer, was* and the interrogative adjectives *welch, was für ein, ein wie* (134. 3): *Wir versicherten ihm, daß wir bereit seien, ihm zu helfen. Und führen zur Ursache an, weil* (instead of the more common daß) *eine große Begebenheit darin erschöpft ist* (Schiller's *Briefe*, I, 435). *Ich sah, wie* (= daß) *er auf und abging. Das nenne ich erfreulich, wenn man wohlherzogene Kinder sieht. Was Hände bauten, können Hände stürzen. Ich will doch sehen, wie* (here interrog. particle used to introduce an indirect question) *es ablaufen wird. Er fragte, weshalb ich nicht gekommen sei* (direct: *Weshalb sind Sie nicht gekommen*). *Ich weiß nicht, mit wem er am meisten umgeht.*

a Often the neut *es, eines, or a*

serves

isitive

Max

Max

Max

Max

Max

Max

Max

Max

Max

Max

Max

Max

Max

Max

Max

Max

Max

Max

Max

Max

Max

unstrative may stand in the principal proposition pointing back to the subordinate clause precedes, a demonstrative *das* here may the demonstrative *must* be used wir.

b *Attraction* Here and elsewhere in substantive clauses a relative is sometimes attracted into the case of the preceding demonstrative, which is then however, always understood and never formally expressed. *Sie eilt durch den Hof zum Toresgang, dem Wanderer zu bieten Schutz und Rast, und [den,] wen's (for wer es) auch sei, zu warmen und zu laben* (Redwitz's *Amaranth*)

Sometimes, especially in early N H G, and still in the language of the common people, the opposite construction is found, namely, a noun or pronoun is attracted into the case of a following relative. *Ein König | der die Armen treulich (treulich) richtet | des thron wird ewiglich bestehen* (Proverbs xxix. 14)

c. If several consecutive subject, accusative or adjective clauses have the relative *was* in common it need only be used once, when the relative is in the same case in the different clauses. If the relative is in different cases in the different clauses it should be repeated. If, however, the relative should happen to have the same form for two different cases, it is sometimes used but once, a usage once common but now infrequent in choice prose: *Was geschieht und ich nicht hindern kann* (Lessing). *Und was wir sind und haben, hat in ihm* (i.e. dem Christentum) *seine Wurzel und Kraft* (Spielhagen's *Was will das werden?*, I, chap. IX). The repetition of *was* in the second clause is now preferred in choice language.

d. *Mood*. The mood is usually indicative, but the subjunctive of *indirect discourse* and *indirect question* is frequently found. To give the idea of mere subjectivity or more commonly the idea of unreality *daß* is sometimes replaced by the conjunction *als ob* with transposed word-order or simple *als* with question order, as so often found in clauses of manner (168. II. B and 169. 2. B): *gleichsam um zu zeigen, als hätte die bessere Regung schon von Anbeginn bestanden* (Gutzkow). This usage was more common here and in A. *a* a little earlier in the period than at present, but it is still common in adjective clauses (168. II. G. *b*, 169. 2. G. *b*) and is not infrequent in subject (269. 2. *b*) and prepositional phrase (272. D. *b*) clauses, and in clauses of manner (276. A).

Also the imperative mood is used, or here as elsewhere instead of the imperative proper the perfect participle or the present infinitive: *Ich sah ihn an, und mein Blick mochte ihm erwidern: Erzähle! Nicht immer alten Fummel* (dress of poor material or an old dress) *tragen, hat dein Sohn gesagt* (Georg Hirschfeld's *Nebeneinander*, p. 15).

e. *Tense*. The idiomatic use of tenses in indirect discourse demands especial care, and hence this subject has been discussed at length in 171. 2.

f. *Omission of daß and ob*. When the thought or feeling of someone is reported indirectly *daß* is often dropped, and the subordinate clause has the order of the principal proposition: *Fichte behauptet, der Mensch könne, was er wolle, und wenn er sage, er könne nicht, so wolle er nicht. Ich fürchte, Ihr Sohn wird nicht versetzt* (to a mother anxious about her son's promotion). *Er ist, glaube ich, davon überzeugt. Den Brackenburg solltest du in Ehren halten, sag' ich dir* (Goethe's *Egmont*, 3). As in 269. 1. *c* the *daß* should not be omitted if it is necessary to make the thought clear, i.e. to indicate the oneness of the words in the object clause and maintain its integrity as a distinct grammatical element in contradistinction to the other elements in the sentence: *Die Erfahrung bewies, daß die römische Symmachie trotz ihrer scheinbar loseren Fügung gegen Pyrrhos zusammenhielt wie eine Mauer aus Felsenstücken* (Mommsen's *Römische Geschichte*, III, chap. 1). If the *daß* were omitted in this sentence it would bring *die römische Symmachie* next to the verb, which might at the first glance lead us to seek for a grammatical relation between these two elements instead of connecting the noun with the words that follow.

There are often also other reasons for the use of *daß*. The transposed order is used after negatives: *Ich glaube nicht, daß du recht hast. Daß* is regularly employed after a demonstrative, as after *die* in the third sentence from the last in *a* above. For an explanation of this usage see 284. I. 3. *a*.

The connective is always omitted in direct quotations: *Das Volk rief: Es lebe der Kaiser.— Viel [ist] erreicht! durfte er sich gestehen* (Ebner-Eschenbach's *Der Kreisphysikus*, p. 19).

In indirect questions *ob* is sometimes in lively language omitted and the word-order of a direct question employed: *Manchmal waren es welche, mit denen ich nie ein Wort gewechselt, ich konnte nicht wissen, waren sie klug oder dumm unter dem reizenden Lärchen, schlummerte in den Tiefen ihrer Seelen etwas, oder waren sie seelenlos wie jene Fabelwesen der Sage* (Ompteda's *Herzeloide*, p. 2). Of course the full question form is employed if it is desired to relate directly: *Es wollte ihr kaum gelingen, „Mann, Mann! was gibt es, Andreas?“ hinunterzurufen* (G. Ebers's *Die Frau Bürgermeisterin*, p. 242).

g. *Abridgment*. An acc. clause can be abridged only when its subject is identical with the subject or sometimes the object (expressed or understood) of the principal proposition. The clause may then be abridged to an infin. with *zu* or a single noun: *Ich hoffe, ihn noch heute zu sehen. Ich bitte, daß Sie gehen, or Ich bitte Sie, zu gehen. Ich rate Ihnen, daß Sie vorsichtig seien; or Ich rate Ihnen Vorsicht; or Ich rate Ihnen, vorsichtig zu sein. Das macht es ihm und mir unmöglich, es zu tun*. Originally the infinitive was only a modifier of the verb, but in course of time a close relation developed between it and the subject or object of the principal verb, so that the infinitive and the subject or object of the principal proposition came to be felt as an abridged clause, in which the subject or object of the principal proposition was the logical subject and the infinitive the logical predicate. This construction has become thoroly established where the subject of the infinitive is the subject of the principal proposition, often also when the subject of the infinitive is an accusative or dative object of the principal verb. In German the infinitive has not spread beyond these limits, while in English it is used with an accusative subject after verbs of wishing, desiring, believing, imagining, knowing, expecting, reporting, representing, where the accusative in a strict sense cannot be construed as the object of the principal verb: *I desire, expect, &c., him to go*. As illustrated in 185. B. I. 5, German also formerly employed the infinitive here, but as it was not deeply rooted it was entirely replaced by a full clause: *Ich wünsche, erwarte, daß er gehe*. Aside from the list of verbs just given English expression now has the simple rule here that the *to*-form of the infinitive is used when its subject is the subject or object of the principal verb and that elsewhere, according to 269. 3, *for* is placed before the *to*-form: *I planned to go myself* *Ich plante, selbst zu gehen*, but *I planned for him to go* *Ich plante, daß er gehe*. With certain groups of verbs, however, we regularly find the simple infinitive instead of the prepositional form. See 185. B. I. 2. *a, b, c, d, e*. In English

we often find the gerund instead of the prepositional infinitive. The gerund has as subject the person implied in a possessive adjective or a genitive: I remember *his* or *John's* saying it. On

a full clause: Ich erinnere mich, daß der Junge es gesagt hat. If the subject of the gerund is the subject of the principal proposition, it is suppressed: I planned going myself Ich plante selbst zu gehen. The gerundial construction belongs to the old attributive or appositional type of clause described in 268. 4.

*h.* The principal verb or the principal proposition is often suppressed so that the subordinate clause becomes the bearer of the thought Sie aber mit immer wachsender Angst: „Denken Sie an Ihre Frau! an Ihre Tochter!“ (P. Heyse's *Geheiltes Herz*, p. 29). Laura — daß das Kind nur recht, recht was Gutes bekommt (Wildenbruch's *Der unsterbliche Felix*, 3, 7) Laura, see to it that, or I desire that, &c. See also 169. 1. A.

*D. Prepositional Clause.* This clause performs the function of a prepositional object: Die Eltern freuen sich darüber, daß ihre Kinder Fortschritte machen (= über die Fortschritte ihrer Kinder). This clause is introduced by daß (see 240. *a*), als ob (see *b* below), ob, and the relative and interrogative pronouns, or the relative or interrogative adverbs womit, &c.: Es bleibt da'bei, daß wir reisen. Es fehlt viel da'ran, daß ich zufrieden sein könnte. Es ist da'für gesorgt, daß die Bäume nicht in den Himmel wachsen. Er hat es da'hin gebracht, daß er nicht mehr für seinen Unterhalt arbeiten muß. Ob du der klügste seist, da'ran ist wenig gelegen. Das erinnert mich da'ran, wa'rum ich dich jetzt habe rufen lassen. Es fehlte ihm da'zu, daß er ein Staatsmann hätte sein können, der scharfe, klare Blick in die Zukunft. This clause is sometimes, especially earlier in the period and still in colloquial language, also introduced by other conjunctions instead of the regular daß, namely by wenn to indicate a condition, indem means, damit purpose, and weil cause: Das Vertrauen eines Kranken kann nur da'durch erschlichen werden, wenn (usually daß) man seine eigene Sprache gebraucht (Schiller). Du hast doch nichts da'gegen, wenn (usually daß) ich heute abend zum Gottesdienst gehe? Daß man nur da'durch Kenner wird, indem (usually daß) man den einseitigen Enthusiasmus verliert (Tieck). Marianel benützte diese Gelegenheit schon deshalb, damit (usually daß, but of course damit is used if deshalb is suppressed) sie jedes hingeworfene Wörtlein aufhaschen möge (Holtei). Das kommt da'her, weil sie ihn liebt. Das kommt da'von, Herr Förster, weil (usually daß) ich früher Totengräber gewesen bin (Baumbach's *Das Habichtsfräulein*, III). After da'rum, da'her, deshalb, deswegen, um deswillen (129. 2. *a*), however, it has become the rule to use weil to indicate cause, so that darum daß, daher daß, deshalb daß, deswegen daß, um deswillen daß are characteristic of older German. This is development in the direction of more accurate expression. Such clauses with weil are now causal clauses (278).

The conjunction daß cannot usually be dropped after the demonstrative adverbs da'bei, da'her, &c. For an explanation of this usage see 284. 1. 3. *a*.

*a.* In the principal proposition: da'für, da'bei, da'her, da't. demon. prepositional adverb, da'rüber, (very common before abridged clauses), he demonstrative prepositional adverb, however, often drops out: Ich konnte nicht in Zweifel [darüber] sein, wem ich es zu danken hätte (K. F. Meyer). If the subordinate clause precedes, either a demon. adverb or pronoun can stand in the principal clause: Was dieser Zeuge beim ersten Verhör ganz Unglaubliches angegeben hatte, auf dem (or 'darauf) bestand er jetzt.

*b.* Mood. The mood is usually indic., but various forms of the optative and the potential subjunctive are also used: Alle rieten ihm dazu, daß er das Amt trotz der damit verbundenen Schwierigkeiten annehme. Er denkt darüber nach, wie er fortkomme. Other examples with explanation in 168. II. G. *a*. (2). Instead of daß the conjunction als ob or simple als is often used with a present or past tense form of the subjunctive to give expression to the idea of mere subjectivity or unreality: Das möge nicht dahin mißverstanden werden. Hypothese von Haackel (name) in den (A. Koelch in *Frankfurter Zeitung*). als ob protest

c. *Abridgment.* If the clause is introduced by *daß*, it is more often abridged to an infin. with *zu* when the subject of the principal proposition and that of the subordinate clause are identical, and sometimes when the subjects are not identical, provided no ambiguity may arise: *Ich kann nicht umhin, dir meine Freude darüber auszudrücken. Er hat die größte Lust dazu, uns auf unserer Reise zu begleiten.* Where the preposition (*zu*, *auf*, &c. in the *dazu*, *darauf*, &c.) means direction, inclination, as in this sentence, the infinitive with *zu* is still the rule. But where the *zu* in the *dazu* means purpose or result the new form *um zu* is now more common before the infinitive than the older simple *zu*, as the *um* brings out more clearly the idea of purpose or result, indeed brings out this idea so clearly that in many expressions the *dazu* in the principal proposition is omitted: *Es gehörte die ganze Unabhängigkeit und Energie . . . der Herzogin da'zu, um nicht an dem Unternehmen zu scheitern* (Rodenberg). *Um das fertig zu machen, da'zu gehört noch Arbeit.* *Es fehlt mir nur an mir, um recht beglückt zu sein* (Goethe). *Pompejus fehlte keine Bedingung, um nach der Krone zu greifen, als die erste von allen: der eigene königliche Mut* (Mommsen's *Römische Geschichte*, V, chap. 3). *Es fehlte ihm, um Staatsmann zu sein, der scharfe, klare Blick in die Zukunft* (Durckheim). *Das Ministerium besaß nicht die nötige Kühnheit, um den König von seinem Eigensinn abzuwenden* (id.). *Der folgende Tag wurde benützt, um die Stadt kennen zu lernen* (id.). If *dazu* stands in the principal proposition as in the example from Rodenberg the *um* is not needed before the infinitive, but even here the trend of usage is toward the employment of *um*: *Die Bücher sind da'zu da, um gelesen zu werden.* Compare 281. b. *Note.* Altho *um zu* with the infinitive is quite freely used to express purpose or result the infinitive with simple *zu* can only take the place of a prepositional clause denoting direction when the subject of the clause is identical with the subject of the principal proposition: *Ich warte darauf, ihn beim Verlassen des Hauses abzufangen.* In English, however, after verbs that take a prepositional object, such as *to count upon*, &c., instead of a clause with a nominative subject we may use the prepositional infinitive with an accusative subject, where German requires the clause form with a nominative subject: I am counting upon him to do it *Ich rechne darauf, daß er es tue.* In many common expressions containing the preposition *for* following a verb, as *to hope for*, *to wait for* the *for* is not a preposition at all but a conjunction introducing an infinitive *for*-clause, as explained in 269. 3: *He is still hoping to be able to do it soon* *Er hofft noch darauf, es bald tun zu können*, but *I am still hoping for him to go soon* *Ich hoffe noch darauf, daß er bald gehe.* The *for* is used in English here as so often elsewhere when the subject of the infinitive is not identical with the subject of the principal proposition. After real prepositions English often employs a gerund instead of an infinitive. In this construction the logical subject of the gerund is the person implied in a possessive adjective or a genitive: *I am counting on his* or *John's doing it* *Ich rechne darauf, daß er* or *Hans es tue.* For further remarks on the gerund see C. g.

### Adverbial Clause.

273. 1. An adverbial clause performs the function of an adverbial element: *Biege den Baum, solange er noch jung ist* (= *früh*, or *in seiner Jugend*), or in older form: *Biege den Baum so lange, als er noch jung ist.* Such a clause is the result of a long development. Originally *so lange* was in the principal proposition the *so* pointing forward to the following appositional clause which explains *so lange*. The appositive clause is introduced here as appositives often elsewhere by *als* (originally *all so*). Gradually *so lange* became more closely related to the following clause and finally became a part of it and *als* as a superfluous element disappeared. In many sentences the appositive clause is introduced by *daß*: *Er schwankte so, daß ich ihn nicht mehr halten konnte.* Other words than *so* often point forward to the following appositional clause, such as *der* (271. I), *ein* (271. I), *solch*, &c.: *Ich setzte ein solches Mißtrauen in ihn, daß ich ihn beobachten ließ.* Thus different forms with different shades of meaning have gradually developed.

a. The adverbial clause is introduced by a subordinate conjunction (full list of them in 238. 3). In the principal proposition a demon. adverb often points to the adverbial clause: *Wo viel Licht [ist], da ist viel Schatten.*

b. The mood and tense of the adverbial clause are subject to the general rules for mood and tense.

c. Adverbial clauses may often be abridged, especially when the subject of the principal proposition and that of the subordinate clause are identical. The abridged form is either that of an infin. phrase, or an appositive noun, adj. or participle: *Der Knabe besucht die Schule, damit er sich nützliche Kenntnisse erwerbe*; or *um sich nützliche Kenntnisse zu erwerben.* *Obgleich er Sieger war*; or *Obgleich Sieger, mußte er doch das Schlachtfeld räumen.* *Weil er krank und elend war*; or *Krank und elend,*

sehnte er sich nach dem Tode. Wenn sie zu weit getrieben wird; or Zu weit getrieben, verfehlt die Strenge ihres weisen Zwecks Während ich das bei mir dachte; or Dies bei mir denkend, schlief ich ein

heran

2 Adverbial clauses are subdivided into classes corresponding to those of adverbial elements—clauses of *place, time, manner, degree, cause, condition and exception, concession, purpose or end, means*

### Clause of Place

274 A clause of place indicates the place where the action of the principal verb occurs (for conjunctions see 238. 3 A) Nicht überall, wo Wasser ist, sind Frosche, aber wo man Frosche hört, ist Wasser. Woher der befruchtende Regen strömt, (daher) stürzt auch der verheerende Blitzstrahl Wohin das Christentum drang, da erloschen vor ihm alle Leichenbrände. Dorthin wendet euch, von wannen alle Hilfe kommt (Umland) Wol dem | der nicht wandelt im Rat der Gotlosen | Noch tritt auf den Weg der Sunder | Noch sitzt da die Spotter sitzen (Ps 1 1)

a The demonstratives *da, dort, daher, dorthen, dahin, dorthin* often stand in the principal proposition as can be seen from the above examples

b The mood in these clauses is usually the indicative but a past tense form of the subjunctive is not infrequent See 169 2 I

c *Abridgment* These clauses cannot usually be abridged except sometimes by substituting a simple adverb *Wohin ich blicke, (or Überall) redest du mit Wohltat mir und Güte zu (Seume)* On the other hand however short pithy form is still very common in the old verbless appositional type of sentence described in 252 1 b *Note* Viel Feind', viel Ehr'! = Wo viele Feinde sind, da ist viel Ehre Viele Köpfe, viele Sinne!

### Clause of Time

275 A temporal clause limits the time of the action of the principal verb, which is thus represented as taking place simultaneously with, or before, or after that of the temporal clause (for conjunctions see 238 3 B) Ich erschrak, als ich ihn sah Es schließt (historical present) sich hinter ihm und als er sich umwendet, um von dem Schließer Auskunft zu erhalten, weist ihn dieser mit hohnischen Worten hinweg (E. Martin's *Wolframs von Eschenbach Parzival* II, p xxiii) Kaum erblickte er mich, als (see a) er auf mich zueilte Ich lag schon in tiefem Schläfe, als (see a) ich plötzlich durch ein Geräusch geweckt wurde Ich war soeben (or gerade) im Begriff zu dir zu gehen, als (see a) du mir zuvorkamst Noch war ich nicht daheim, als (see a) das Gewitter ausbrach (Paul's *Deutsche Grammatik*, IV, p 325) Was wir gemeinhin Ehre nennen, das ist wohl nichts weiter als der Schatten, den wir werfen, wenn die Sonne der öffentlichen Achtung uns bescheint (Sudermann's *Die Ehre*, 2, 11) Wenn sich der Winter naht, verlassen uns die Zugvögel Wenn Sie fertig sind, möchte ich gern mit Ihnen sprechen Ach, da ich irrte, hatt' ich viel Gespielen, da ich dich (die Wahrheit) kenne, bin ich fast allein (Goethe) Das Eisen muß geschmiedet werden, weil (now während or indem) es glüht (Schiller's *Die Piccolomini*, 3 2) Seit (or seitdem) er auf das Land gezogen ist, habe ich ihn nicht wieder gesehen, but in Es ist viele Jahre her, seit (seitdem, or daß) ich ihn gesehen habe the conjunction introduces a subject clause, not a clause of time Solange die Nationen ein gesondertes Dasein führen, wird es Streitigkeiten geben, welche nur mit den Waffen geschlichtet werden können (Moltke) Im Unterhause erklärte Grey, daß England so lange nicht in amtlichen Verkehr mit Serbien trete, solange die Offiziere, welche an der

Ermordung des Königspaares teilgenommen, nicht aus ihren offiziellen Stellungen entfernt worden wären (*Neue Zürcher Zeit.*, April 14, 1906). Die Führer wissen ganz gut, daß sie so lange vergebens kämpfen, als sie mit ihrer Opposition allein stehen (*Hamburger Nachrichten*, Oct. 29, 1904). Man kann meist so lange nicht genügend über eine Tat urteilen, als man die Beweggründe dazu nicht kennt. Ich bin wie der Lehrling beim Konditor gewesen, den man Zuckerzeug naschen läßt, bis daß er sich den Magen daran verdirbt (Wildenbruch's *Der unsterbliche Felix*, 3, 5). Sie gelobten einander, sich nicht zu unterwerfen, bis nicht (see 223. XI. B. a. (3)) der unterste Stein zu oberst gekommen wäre (Ranke's *D. Gesch. im Z. d. R.*, IV, 538). Der Krug geht zum Brunnen, bis er bricht. Bis du nach Rom zurückkommst, ist die längst Großmutter (Sudermann's *Johannes*, 1, 1). Ich habe so lange keine Ruhe, bis ich mich von der Seite gereinigt habe. In Rußland dauert das Soldatische des heimkehrenden Reservisten in der Haltung kaum so lange, als bis die alte mitgebrachte Soldatenmütze aufgetragen ist (*Hamb. Nachr.*, Oct. 29, 1904). Ihr Anhang . . . . . wird nicht ehe (now usually eher) zu bändigen sein, bis wir sie vor den Augen der Welt zu nichte gemacht . . . . haben (Goethe's *Götz*, 3, 1), a blending of . . . wird nicht eher zu bändigen sein, als bis wir usw. and . . . wird nicht zu bändigen sein, bis wir usw. Ich hab' dein Wort, du wirst nicht eher handeln, | bevor du mich, mich selber überzeugt (Schiller's *Die Piccolomini*, 5, 1), a blending of Du wirst nicht eher handeln, als bis du mich usw. and Du wirst nicht handeln, bevor du mich usw. Nicht eher, als bis (after nicht eher more common than simple bis or bevor) er sie von Weindünsten taumeln sah, gab er ihnen die Schrift zur Unterzeichnung (Schiller). Man muß nicht eher fliegen wollen, als bis einem die Flügel gewachsen sind. 's wird keiner böse, der nicht, bevor er's ward, erst gut gewesen (Grillparzer). Man pflegt in einem wichtigen Werke zu blättern, ehe man es ernstlich zu lesen anfängt (Lessing). Sie ist so bescheiden und so dankbar, sie hat gesagt, sie könnte keinen Bissen zu sich nehmen, ehe sie nicht (223. XI. B. a. (3)) dem Hausherrn, der sie so gütig aufgenommen, gedankt hätte (Wildenbruch's *Der unsterbliche Felix*, 3, 6). Dort (in Griechenland) nur standen Musen und Grazien auf, wenn (now während; see 238. 3. B. a) das neblichte (now neblige) Lappland, kaum Menschen, niemals ein Genie gebiert (Schiller). Sie (die Zitherspielerin) war eine schlanke Blondine, da (now während) jene (die Harfenspielerin) dunkelbraunes Haar schmückte (Goethe).

a. *Principal Proposition instead of a Subordinate Clause.* As the subordinate clause introduced by *als* is in fact a descriptive relative clause (271. II. 7) and hence has the force of an independent proposition, it is often replaced by a principal proposition introduced by *so* or *und*: Kaum war der König am jenseitigen Ufer des Rheins gelandet, so überfiel ihn ein Haufen spanischer Reiter (Schiller). Kaum ist der edle Prinz von Samarkand begraben, und schon ein neues Todesopfer naht (id.). Similarly instead of *nicht lange* — *bis* we often find co-ordination in accord with older usage described in 267. 4: So dauerte es nicht lange und er befand sich mit allen in Betracht kommenden Faktoren des Wiener Kunstlebens auf dem gespanntesten Fuße (Eduard Engels in *Velhagen und Klasings Monatshefte*, April 1905, p. 154).

b. *Mood.* The indicative and subjunctive are employed according to the rules generally observed for their use. See 169. 1. C. (3) and 2. I. After the conj. *bis* notice that the verb depending upon a verb in a past tense form is in the subjunctive, to indicate the continuance of an action up to a certain point in the future with doubtful result: Sie wollten ausharren, bis der Entsatz käme They desired to wait till relief might come. The subjunctive is usually in a past tense form, but occasionally the subjunctive of a present tense form is found in accordance with older usage. See 168. 1. 2. B. (3)). If the governing verb is in a present tense form the dependent verb is in the indicative, altho the subjunctive was common here in early N.H.G.: Sie wollen warten, bis der Entsatz kommt. Ich will das Schwert hinter (hinter) sie schicken | bis das (daß) aus mit jnen (ihnen) sey (sei) — Jeremiah ix. 16. The use of the indic. after a present tense form here shows that the tendency at present is to look at the action as actually completed, while in earlier periods it was regarded as only contemplated or desired.

c. *Abridgment.* These clauses can usually be abridged only when their subject is identical with that of the principal proposition. The clause then may become a participle, adjective, or substantive appositive: Und indem ich dies bei mir dachte, or Und dies bei mir denkend, schlief ich ein. Wenn er kaum einer Gefahr entronnen ist, or Kaum einer Gefahr entronnen, stürzt er sich in die andere. Daß er in den Sitzungen, wenn behufs der Abstimmung aus dem leichten Schlummer geweckt, zu sagen pflegte (Bismarck). Still und eingezogen lebt er für sich, redet nur gefragt



(J Minor's *Fragmente vom ewigen Juden*, p 2) Als er arm war, or Arm, hatt' er sich noch satt gegessen; seitdem er reich geworden, or Reich, hungert er bei halbem Essen. Un-

(Schiller) In the abri  
as they are not usually

as in the full clause for  
bevor entfaltet (A Gru

force except in case of reflexives, which have active force but suppress regularly the reflexive object [sich] Zur Wirtin gewendet sagte sie usw. (Auerbach's *Dorfgeschichten*, 8, p 39) It has active force also in case of intransitives, but it can o

conjugated with sein, as in the second example In all  
utive or appositional type of clause structure described

or substantive appositive is the logical predicate of the clause and the subject of the principal proposition the logical subject English has gone much farther than German in developing this old type of clause In English it is very common in the form of a prepositional phrase, in which the subject of the principal proposition is the logical subject, a verbal noun, especially the gerund, the logical predicate and the preposition a particle to indicate the ideas of time and subordination to the principal proposition After having played an hour he began to work Nachdem er eine Stunde gespielt hatte, fing er an zu arbeiten

propo-  
Wenn  
Hilfe

am nächsten

Sometimes the absolute accusative construction has the force of a temporal clause See 265

B b (1)

Sometimes in live' the place of a clause of time Eine  
Stunde, dann ist al so war sie eine Leiche. Acht Tage

später und Brüssel popular speech Keine halbe Pfeife

Toback, so habens (= haben Sie) den See (Storm, 2, 36) Before you smoke half a pipeful of tobacco you'll reach the lake

A verbless temporal clause is often contained in the old verbless appositional type of sentences described in 252 1 b Note Gesagt, getan = Sobald es gesagt war, wurde es getan.

### Clause of Manner.

276. A clause of manner describes the manner of the action of the principal verb. This clause may define the action in each of the four following ways.

A Comparison and Manner Proper The action of the principal verb is compared with that in the subordinate clause The clause is introduced

238 3 C a In 239 these conjunctions are treated at

are given which show the use of the moods For moods

In such sentences as Er sieht aus, als [er aussehen würde] wäre er krank, or als wenn or als ob er krank wäre the final clause is in fact a conditional clause that modifies the verb in the clause of comparison In such conditional clauses ob, cognate with English if and earlier in the

ction  
that

once so, daß neben der Steigerung der Ausdrucksfähigkeit und des geistigen Gehalts einer Sprache eine gewisse Abschleifung der Formschwierigkeit einhergeht (W Fischer's *Die deutsche Sprache von heute*, p 56) The daß ma

So kann man vom Tiere aussagen es

2, 111) To convey the idea of mere st

ob with transposed word order or simpl

manner (168. II B and 169 2 B) Sc

Aussprache tadelnswert wäre (W Fisch

so of the principal proposition points forwa

handelt immer so, wie es sein Vorteil erhe

Er schilderte das Ereignis, wie folgt He desc

He described the event all so (i.e. the description) follows

In English the as has been trans-

ferred from the principal to the subordinate proposition The German development is exactly

the same, but the older als (from older all so) has been replaced by wie In both German and

English the subordinate clause may precede Wie man's treibt, so geht's As you make your bed,

so mu<sup>st</sup>

sitions

comm<sup>u</sup> to both propositions in case of appositive participles

als ob den Widerstand der Gegner scheuend (Grillparzer) Der kommt mir grade gepiffen

(in apposition with mur) (Lauff's *Frau Alet*, p 251) = als ob ich ihm grade gepiffen hätte.

when the verb is common to both propo  
[liebt] Often also when the verb is not

als ob den Widerstand der Gegner scheuend (Grillparzer) Der kommt mir grade gepiffen

(in apposition with mur) (Lauff's *Frau Alet*, p 251) = als ob ich ihm grade gepiffen hätte.

Er kam wie hereingeschneit = wie wenn er hereingeschneit wäre. Er kam wie gerufen. Der Rock sitzt wie angegossen. In clauses of manner proper the present participle is quite common when its subject is the subject of the principal proposition: Sie kam singend, weinend, lachend in das Haus. In case of all these participial constructions we have to do with the old attributive or appositional type of clause described in 268. 4. In this old type, as explained in 252. 1. b. Note, the whole sentence may be verbless. Wie gewonnen, so zerronnen Easy come, easy go.

The English contraction *as if to for as if he would* is rendered by *wie um zu*: Der Esel fing an, seine Ohren zu schwenken und seine wehmütige Stimme erschallen zu lassen, wie um den Kameraden an der Kette zu trösten (Boßhart's *Die Barettlilochter*, p. 15).

B. *Attendant Circumstance.* The action of the principal verb is accompanied by some attendant circumstance which is contained in the subordinate clause. The clause is introduced by the conjunctions in 238. 3. C. b: Indem er sich mit dem Rücken an den Baum lehnte, verteidigte er sich tapfer gegen die an Zahl überlegenen Feinde. Das Tier zog sich zurück, indem es mich fortwährend unverwandt anblickte. Er ging an mir vorüber, ohne daß er mich grüßte. Außerdem daß (or abgesehen davon daß) sie eine reiche Erbin ist, ist sie auch schön und liebenswürdig.

Instead of a principal proposition and a subordinate clause we often find two principal propositions connected by *und*: Er ging an mir vorüber und grüßte mich nicht. For explanation and force of this construction see 267. 4 (3rd par.).

a. *Abridgment.* The clause may be abridged by substituting a participle or a prepositional infinitive for the clause form, provided the subject of the clause and that of the principal proposition are identical: Er grüßte, indem er sich tief verbeugte, or sich tief verbeugend. Er ging an mir vorüber, ohne mich zu grüßen. A prepositional phrase may often take the place of the clause: Ein größerer Haufe marschierte in der Richtung der Klosterwiese, um, mit Vermeidung eines Gefechtes (= indem er ein Gefecht vermied), die dort sich versammelnden andern Ritter zur Seite zu locken (Riehl's *Der Dachs auf Lichtmeß*). Unter heftigem Weinen (or heftig weinend) drückte er mir die Hand. Er sang bei geöffnetem Fenster He sang with the window open, *not* by the open window. Er ging ohne Erlaubnis aus.

Instead of a full clause we often find the absolute accusative construction. See 265. B. b. (1).

C. *Alternative Agreement.* The action of the principal proposition is in alternative agreement with that of the subordinate clause (for conjunctions see 238. 3. C. c): Danach einer tut, danach es ihm geht (proverb; for word-order see 288. B. d). Das Herz überströmt von Handlungen, von bösen und guten, nachdem (now je nachdem) der Urquell trüb ist oder hell. (Klopstock, 9, 18). Nach Ihnen ist viel Nachfrage und ich antworte, je nachdem die Menschen sind (Goethe). Wir werden gelobt oder getadelt, je nachdem wir fleißig oder träge sind. Je nachdem du ausmißt, wird dir wieder eingemessen.

D. *Result.* The action of the principal verb is followed by a result which is contained in the subordinate clause (for conjunctions see 238. 3. C. d; for the origin of the *daß* clause see 271. I). Exs.: Handle auch im Verborgenen so, daß es jedermann sehen könnte. Er sprach mit solchen Gebärden, daß alles (everybody) lachte. Die Feinde haben derartige Maßregeln getroffen, daß jeder Rückzug unmöglich wird. Das Verhältnis war nicht dèrart or dèr Art, daß es Johanna große Verlegenheit verursacht hätte. Er hat einen (see 271. I) Charakter, daß man sich von ihm nichts Gutes versehen kann. Es war eine derartige Beleidigung, daß eine Versöhnung unmöglich ist. Er ist nicht der Mann danach, daß er sich das Errungene wehrlos aus den Händen winden ließe. Er hat es danach gemacht, daß wir ihn hassen müssen. Wie viele Eltern gehen dem Vergnügen nach, anstatt daß (*instead of*, i.e. *so that they do not*) sie für die Erziehung ihrer Kinder sorgen! Anstatt daß es ihm eingefallen wäre zu arbeiten, verträdelte er den ganzen Tag. Ich schlich ihm nach, ohne daß er sich umsaß. Er erfocht einen glänzenden Sieg, ohne daß er viel Menschenleben geopfert hätte. Ich habe selten geschlafen, daß ich nicht geträumt hätte. Ich denke an den Verlust nicht mehr, geschweige daß ich denselben gegen deinen Bruder erwähnen sollte. Die Bauern saßen da, ohne einander anzusehen, geschweige daß sie zusammen geredet hätten. Weit entfernt, daß man den Feldherrn unterstützt hätte, ward sogar der Sold der Truppen verschwendet. Rauh liegt in der Runde das Bergland, kaum daß auf den Klippen die Föhre dürftige Nahrung findet. Jetzt ging alles wieder seinen alten Weg, kaum daß einer mehr des Abwesenden gedachte or gedacht hätte (cautious statement).

We often find a simple *daß* or *so daß* in the subordinate clause without any corresponding *so*, *derartig*, &c., in the principal proposition, so that the result is represented as a result pure and simple without the modal idea of manner: Der Kanzleirat ließ die Feder fallen, daß auf dem vor ihm liegenden Bogen ein großer Klecks entstand (Baumbach's *Der Schwiegersohn*, VII). Wo waren meine Sinne, daß ich diesen Ton nicht sogleich verstand? Fräulein Frieda, Sie sehen aus — daß sich ein alter Knasterbart, wie ich, in Sie verlieben könnte. Er schwankte, so daß ich ihn nicht mehr halten konnte. Er schwankte so, daß ich usw. gives the modal idea. The simple *daß*-clause is older than the form with *so daß*.

The clause of result sometimes assumes the form of a relative clause: Ein solcher Kampf steht uns bevor, wobei es sich verlohnt (= daß es sich dabei verlohnt), im vollen Kriegesschmucke zu erscheinen (Uhland). Often in descriptive (271. II. 7) relative clauses: Hans ist endlich angekommen, weshalb (or weswegen, or infolge dessen, all three = *so daß*) wir alle sehr glücklich sind, or in the form of a principal proposition: deshalb (or deswegen, or infolge dessen) sind wir alle sehr glücklich.

In poetry and choice prose the clause of result that follows a negative proposition is often positive altho the meaning requires a negative word but in this case it should be noted that *daß* is omitted and the clause has the form of a principal proposition. Denn niemals kehrt' er heim, er bracht' euch etwas (Schiller's *Tell*, I 3). In der Stadt entsteht kein gemeinnütziges Werk, sie steht als die reiche Frau mit der offenen Hand dazu, sie zeichnet dafür den ersten großen Beitrag (Heer's *Felix Netzer*, p. 259). For historical explanation see 168 II 1 a.

*Note* In plain prose this construction is replaced by *ohne daß*.

The idea of result is often found in clear attributive form especially in the form of a relative clause. Es gibt keinen, der nicht seine Fehler hätte.

a *Mood* The mood of the clause is indicative if it is desired to represent the statement as a result that has been actually attained, but the subjunctive to indicate that the statement is merely conceived. See 168 II D, H, 169. 2 D, H c.

b *Abridgment* Clauses introduced by *anstatt daß* and *ohne daß* may be abridged to the infinitive construction if the subject of the clause is identical with that of the principal proposition. Sie schweigen, anstatt daß sie sich beklagen, or anstatt sich zu beklagen. Er leistete das Beste, ohne daß er geringere Forderungen hätte. *He did as much as is possible and Note 2 thereunder.*

here, the old attributive or appositive type of clause structure described in 268 4. It has

a wider field of usefulness here than the German infinitive for it is also employed when its subject is not identical with that of the principal verb. Its logical subject is then the person implied in a possessive adjective or a genitive. *I left the room without his or John's seeing me.* For further remarks upon the gerund see 272 C g. Clauses introduced by simple *daß* (with a preceding *so* ein, kein, solch, derartig in the principal proposition) are in recent literature very often abridged to an infinitive with *um zu* instead of simple *zu*, as *um brings out the idea of end result more clearly.* Aristoteles sagt, daß eine Stadt so gelaut sein müsse, um die Menschen zugleich sicher und glücklich zu machen. Es wäre ein Anblick, um Engel weinen zu machen.

chap. kein xxxvii und Mitg vorh also glau runglut wemms aus den mnduen wmden zu lassen (I think's *Warum schweig sie nicht!*) See also 281 b *Note*.

### Clause of Degree.

277. Clauses of degree define the degree or intensity of that which is predicated in the principal proposition. The degree can be expressed in the following ways. —

1 *Comparison* It is expressed in the form of a comparison.  
A Signifying a degree equal to the principal proposition. 1 A a) Er ist ebenso gelehrt als [er] bescheiden [ist]. Sein Wort bedeutet so viel wie ein Eid [bedeutet]. When the verb of the clause is the same as that of the principal proposition it is usually, as in the preceding sentence understood. See also 239 3. Concerning the subjunctive mood here see 169 2 H a.

b Expressing a degree less than the principal proposition.  
das Alter wächst, je mehr [Geld] ihr habt.  
je (still more common)  
je mehr du dich ärgere.  
Feinde. Wir können um so mehr Sorgfalt auf die Erlernung der Wissenschaften verwenden, um so (instead of the more common) kommt man dann lassen (H. Paul wird aus dem Bl der Lohn sein. Seine Hoffnung stieg in eben dem Maße (or Verhältnisse), wie seine Gesundheit wiederkam. In old saws the sentence is still often verbless as explained in 262 1 b *Note*.  
Darnach die Arbeit [ist], darnach [ist] der Lohn.

c Expressing the extent or restriction of the principal proposition.  
Seine Tat ist insofern zu ent-  
ist nur insofern ein Gelehrter.  
strengte sich so sehr an, als  
gelten macht. Er legte ihr  
sie nutzt. So weit ich übe

Dieser Schriftsteller hat ein, so'weit sich das nach dem Absatz beurteilen läßt, brauchbares Buch verfaßt. Er ordnete die am Boden liegenden Blätter, so'gut es in der Schnelligkeit gehen wollte. Sie drückte, so'fest sie konnte, ihr Ohr an eine Ritze. Er bemüht sich, so'sehr er kann. Ich tue, so'viel ich kann. Zunächst einigte man sich wenigstens so'weit, daß an der vierjährigen Dauer der Grundschule unbedingt festgehalten werden solle (168. II. G. a. (2)). The clause can also be in the form of a substantive relative clause introduced by *das*, now written *so far as* it has been taken for a conjunction: So weit ging weder mein Auftrag, daß (= soweit so far as) ich wüßte, noch mein Eifer. We often use was here to express the extent or restriction: Da lief er, was er konnte. Sie suchte, was an ihr lag, die Tücke des Schicksals wieder gutzumachen. Was mich (den Vorfall, &c.) anbelangt or betrifft, so irrst du dich. Instead of a clause containing the verbs (an)betreffen or anbelangen we often find a prepositional phrase, and sometimes the absolute present participle: Was sein Alter anbetrifft, or in Betreff or betreffs seines Alters, or sein Alter betreffend. Concerning the subjunctive mood here see 169. 2. H. b.

*Note.* In clauses introduced by an *als* or *wie* that follows so'viel the subject may often be the partitive genitive of a pronoun or the subject of the clause may be suppressed in accordance with older usage (see 251. II. A. d): Bringen Sie so'viele Bücher, als (or wie) deren auf dem Tische liegen, or *als* auf dem Tische liegen. See also 255. II. 1. H. c (2nd par.). We also find here the old verbless type of sentence described in 252. 1. b. *Note:* Soviel Köpfe, soviel Sinne.

B. Following a comparative (for conjunctions see 238. 3. D. 1. b): Es ist schicklicher, daß ein zärtlicher Charakter Augenblicke des Stolzes hat, als daß ein stolzer von der Zärtlichkeit sich fortreißen läßt (Lessing). . . . von all der Pracht und Schönheit der Welt nicht mehr sehen, als [als] ob man blind wäre (Spielhagen, 13, 139), or more accurately nicht mehr sehen, denn (239. 6, 2nd par.) als ob usw. Sie dachte nicht anders, als er sage es bloß zum Spaß. Was kann ich aber von Savignys Vorlesungen anders sagen, als daß sie mich aufs gewaltigste ergriffen und auf mein ganzes Leben und Studieren entschiedenen Einfluß erlangten (Jakob Grimm). Denke ich natürlich nicht anders, als Ihnen ist etwas passiert (Wildenbruch's *Der unsterbliche Felix*, 4, 1). Er benimmt sich nicht anders, als [als] ob er das einzige Wesen in der Welt wäre, or more accurately nicht anders, denn (239. 6, 2nd par.) als ob er . . . wäre, or more smoothly, dropping nicht anders: Er benimmt sich, als ob er . . . wäre. Wir können von jenen keinen andern Grund angeben, warum sie uns gefallen, als weil (usually als daß) sie einen ganz angenehmen Eindruck auf unsere Organe machen (Wieland). Kein Naturereignis wird von der Jugend freudiger begrüßt als der Schnee [begrüßt wird]. When the clause has the same verb as the principal proposition the verb of the clause, as in the preceding example, can be understood. Especially the subject or the object of the clause is often omitted. See 251. II. A. d. When the subject of the principal proposition and that of the subordinate clause are identical, the subordinate clause can be abridged to an infinitive clause: Ich konnte nicht anders, als ihm zuzustimmen. See also 239. 1. a and 279. e.

a. *Negative after a Comparative.* In early N.H.G. *kein* (see 139. 3. e. *Note* 2) = *irgend ein any* was used: Denn das wort Gottes ist lebendig vnd krefftig | vnd scherffer | denn kein zweischneidig Schwert (Hebrews iv. 12). This usage remained after a comparative up to the close of the eighteenth century and later, but it must have soon become identified with the negative *kein*, as it became the custom quite early in the period under French influence to use a pleonastic negative after a comparative. In the classic period this usage is still common, not only in case of *kein*, but of the other negatives also: Es ging besser, als wir nicht dachten (Goethe). At present rare: Im Reisewagen hab' ich an meines Königlichen Herren Seite seine Art und sein Wesen in Stunden sicherer erkennen können, wie ich es hier in Jahren nicht vermöchte (Otto Erler's *Struensee*, p. 22). See 223. XI. B. a. (2).

b. *Use of daß.* The *daß* cannot be omitted when the thought as a whole is important: Das Kind kriecht viel mehr, als daß es aufrecht geht *The child is rather creeping than walking upright*, but Das Kind kriecht viel mehr, als es aufrecht geht *The child creeps more frequently than it walks upright*, where the attention is called more to the verbs than to the thought as a whole.

2. *Result.* Expressing a result (for conjunctions see 238. 3. D. 2; for the origin of the *daß*-clause see 271. 1): Die Luft ist so still, daß das Rauschen des fernen Baches herüberdringt. Dein Vater ist noch nicht so ruhig, daß er die tägliche Anwesenheit eines Freundes ertragen könnte. Er war so weich gestimmt, daß er fast geweint hätte (169. 2. H. c). Ich blieb so lange, daß ich den Zug versäumte. Er ärgerte sich so sehr, daß er krank wurde. Er hat die (see 271. 1) Gewandtheit im Reden, daß niemand es mit ihm aufnehmen kann. Er hat eine (see 271. 1) Stimme, daß man ihn überall im Saal deutlich hören kann. Ich setzte ein solches Mißtrauen in ihn, daß ich ihn beobachten ließ. Es war nicht so dunkel, daß er nicht alles sehen konnte. Er hat den Jungen derartig (or derart) gehauen, daß er nicht gehen kann. In jedem jungen Jahre steht hier (i.e. in Nice) eine Persönlichkeit im mittelsten Mittelpunkt, die nach allen Regeln der Kunst derart verrissen und verschandmäult wird, bis kein Faden mehr an ihrem ganzen Leibe bleibt (F. F. von Conring in *Hamburger Nachrichten*, Jan. 28, 1905). In den nächsten zwei Büchern, dem VII. und VIII., verlieren wir Parzival fast völlig aus den Augen, kaum daß er gelegentlich im Hintergrund auftaucht (E. Martin's *Wolframs von Eschenbach Parzival*, II, p. xxiv). Selbstverständlich kann es mit dieser Zahl nicht allzu genau genommen werden, da die Erdbebenforschung sich nicht genügend auf alle Länder verbreitet hat, als daß jedes Erdbeben zur Beobachtung käme (*Hamburgischer Correspondent*, May 5, 1905). Er ist zu stolz, als daß (less commonly um daß) er diese Beleidigung verzeihen könnte. Die Nachrichten lauteten zu schön, als daß (now rarely um daß) wir sie hätten glauben können. Meine Sünde ist größer, als daß sie mir könnte vergeben werden. Notice that the force of the subordinate clause introduced by *als daß* is negative. If the clause is to have affirmative force the negative *nicht* must be used: Er denkt zu edel, als daß er nicht die Wahrheit sagte. A nega-

tive clause following a negative proposition has affirmative force. Sometimes the subordinate

but in this  
principal  
So schau  
und ruf

ins Menschenland hinein (Hauptmann's *Die versunkene Glocke*, 1). The history of this construction is the same as that described in 276 D (next to the last par.)

Instead of a clause of result we sometimes find an independent proposition. Er ist so lieb, man kann ihm nicht böse sein. So still wurde es dann, man hätte im Saale das Weben einer Spinne hören können. In lively expression of feeling we often have instead of a subordinate clause a principal proposition with question order. Ich bin so müde, kann ich doch nicht mit euch spazieren!

In a calm reasoning mood we can connect

illative conjunction daher: Ich bin sehr müde, daher gehe ich nicht aus.

In a calm reasoning mood we can connect these two propositions with the conjunction daher.

gehen. For meaning and force of these principal constructions see 201. 4 (last par.)

a Mood The mood of the clause is indie. if it is desired to represent the statement as a result that has been actually attained but the potential subjunctive to indicate that the statement is possible, or to make a statement modestly or cautiously. See 169 2 D, H e, 168 H D

b Abridgment To express a simple result where the subject of the subordinate clause is the same as the subject of the principal clause.

schickte, um ihm jeden weiteren Stand hat. Der Rat v

In English for with the prepositional infinitive can be quite freely used where the subjects are not identical where in German the clause form must often be employed. She was not near enough for him to discern the expression of her face. Sie war nicht nahe genug, daß er ihren Gesichtsausdruck sehen konnte. Also, the writer to ignore them. Das moderne I dürften. Schriftsteller sie übersehen. sie hätte ft. zu viele, als daß das Boot

See also 281 b Note

Note 2 thereunder

### Clause of Cause.

278. The subordinate clause contains the cause or reason, the principal proposition the result or conclusion (for conjunctions see 238. 3 C). Der Wal-fisch kann nur kleine Tiere verschlingen, weil sein Schlund sehr eng ist. Philipp II. zitterte knechtisch vor Gott, weil Gott das einzige war, wovor er zu zittern hatte. Mancher unterläßt nur deshalb eine böse Handlung, weil er die Folgen fürchtet. Das Merkwürdigste ist die Fortsetzung der „Kritischen Nachrichten“, nicht weil (or nicht als ob, or nicht als wenn) sie besondere Merkwürdigkeiten enthielten, sondern weil sie so lustig zu lesen sind. Der Herr wusch sich allemal die Hände, bevor er ans Quartettgeigen ging, nicht weil (or nicht als ob, or nicht als wenn) sie schmutzig gewesen waren, sondern wie zu einer symbolischen Reinigung. Der Müßiggänger verachtet seinen Beruf, weil er unschwacher macht. Ich (temporal and causal) ich dein Angesicht gesehe (temporal and causal) auch Piccolomini sich nicht wieder sehen laßt, fällt die Decke von Wallensteins Augen (Schiller's *G d d K*, II. 4). Nachdem (= weil) das Protokoll der Generalversammlung mit Rücksicht auf den Umstand, daß dasselbe von den Verifikatoren beglaubigt werden muß, erst später veröffentlicht werden muß, teilen wir kurz die gefaßten Beschlüsse mit (Austrian newspaper). Da alle Zeugen in ihren Aussagen übereinstimmen, so wird die Sache wohl sich so verhalten. Du solltest so schwere Gedanken nicht in dir aufkommen

lassen, da du doch mit mehr Genugtuung als viele andere auf dein vergangenes Leben und auf die Gegenwart blicken kannst (R. Huch's *Vita somnium breve*, I, p. 56). Können umbrische Schädel erhalten sein, da doch die Umbrer ihre Leichen verbrannten? (*Beilage zur Allgemeinen Zeit.*, 1904, p. 250). Ehrwürdiger, ich bitte dich, mir zu verzeihen und mich nicht zu senden, anerwogen ich, wie du weißt, der einfältigste und unwissendste bin von allen (Ertl's *Die Stadt der Heiligen*). In Anbetracht, daß er noch so jung ist, entschuldigten wir ihn. Ich ärgere mich, daß (see 238. 3. E. c) du das getan hast. Er hätte es nicht sagen sollen, zumal er wußte, daß es mir nachteilig sein kann. Nun er reich ist, hat er Freunde. Dieses Übel ist desto (or um so, sometimes um desto) lästiger, als (also da or weil) es nur durch eine schmerzliche Operation geheilt werden kann. Da'von bist du krank geworden, daß du nach dem schnellen Laufe kaltes Wasser getrunken. Man erkennt einen seichten Menschen leicht da'ran, daß er viel Unnützes schwätzt. As the genitive or a prepositional phrase may denote a cause, the genitive and prepositional phrase clauses treated in 272. A and D often belong also here: (genitive clause) Ich freue mich, daß es Ihnen wohl geht. For examples of such a prepositional phrase clause see sentence above beginning with Da'von, and also the last two sentences in 272. D. The subordinate clause above introduced by da'ran daß may also be regarded as a clause of means (282).

When an inference from some known fact is placed before the statement of fact the latter appears in the light of a clause of cause: Er muß blind gewesen sein, daß (or weil) er es nicht gesehen hat. Often in abridged form: Er muß blind sein, das nicht zu sehen.

The idea of cause sometimes finds expression in an attributive element, either in the form of an attributive adjective or a relative clause: Der gräusame Mann achtete nicht auf das Flehen des Unglücklichen (= der Mann achtete nicht auf das Flehen des Unglücklichen, weil er grausam war). Das Kind, das ja noch zu jung ist, hat einen Vormund erhalten (= das Kind hat einen Vormund erhalten, da es ja noch zu jung ist). See 255. I. c, VII. a.

A subject clause following nicht now often has the force of a causal clause, as illustrated in 269. 1. b, 3rd par.

A principal proposition instead of a subordinate clause: ich gehe nicht mit, ich habe Zahnschmerzen (= weil ich Zahnschmerzen habe). Zurück! Du rettetest den Freund nicht mehr (= da du den Freund nicht mehr retten kannst), so rette das eigene Leben. In unsrer Provinz singen wir, was wir wollen. Das macht, daß Graf Egmont unser Statthalter ist (= weil Graf Egmont unser Statthalter ist) (Goethe's *Egmont*). Compare 267. 4.

a. *Mood*. We usually find here the indic. For the subjunctive here see 169. 2. J.

b. *Abridgment*. A causal clause introduced by weil or da can sometimes be abridged to a participle, adjective, noun, or prepositional phrase, when the subject of the principal proposition and that of the subordinate clause are identical: Er ist, weil durch Tapferkeit hervorragend, or weil tapfer (= weil er durch Tapferkeit hervorragt, or weil er tapfer ist), des Sieges gewiß. Die Feinde baten, durch die Niederlage gebeugt (= weil sie durch die Niederlage gebeugt waren), um Frieden. Ein geborener Herrscher regierte er (Cäsar) die Gemüter der Menschen, wie der Wind die Wolken zwingt (Mommson's *Römische Geschichte*, V, chap. ii). Im Besitz von Talienwan und Dalny können die Japaner ihre Verstärkungen und den Belagerungstrain landen, der für den Angriff auf Port Arthur nötig wird (*Neue Zürcher Zeitung*, June 9, 1904) Since the Japanese are in possession of, &c. Da aus Französelei entstanden, ist „Es hat“ statt „Es gibt“ unbedingt zu verwerfen (Eduard Engel's *Gutes Deutsch*, p. 220). In all these sentences the abridgments are examples of the old attributive or appositional type of clause structure described in 268. 4. The subject of the principal proposition is the logical subject of the clause, the participle, adjective, noun, or prepositional phrase is the logical predicate. The ideas of cause and subordination to the principal proposition do not find here a formal expression in the clause itself but are merely suggested by the context and the placing of the clause alongside of the principal proposition. English has gone much farther than German in the development of this old type of clause. In English the logical subject here is often the person implied in a possessive adjective or a genitive, the logical predicate the governing noun, usually a gerund: *Owing to* (or *on account of* or *because of*) *his* or *John's bringing me word so late I couldn't go* Da er or Hans mir so spät Bescheid brachte, konnte ich nicht mehr gehen. For further remarks on the gerund see 272. C. g. Sometimes the accusative absolute construction has the force of a clause of cause. See 265. B. b. (1).

## Clause of Condition or Exception.

279. This clause states the condition upon which the action of the principal proposition hinges, or adds an exception, i.e. a fact or proviso that qualifies in some particular respect the preceding statement (for conjunctions see 238. 3. F.). A marked feature in the development since early N.H.G. is the gradual replacement of the conjunctions *ob* *if*, indicating uncertainty, so *if*, originally a demonstrative pointing to the following clause, for the most part also *wo* *if* originally a relative, *where*, *in case that* by the conjunction *wenn* *if*, originally temporal, *when*, while in English *if*, cognate with *ob*, is still the most common form here. *Ob* is, however, still common in conditional clauses which follow *als*, as illustrated in 276. A. (2nd par.). In connection with other particles it is also still widely used in concessive clauses which have developed out of older conditional clauses: *obgleich*, *obschon*, &c. In object clauses simple *ob* still has the old idea of uncertainty: *Ich weiß nicht, ob er kommen wird*. Examples of conditional sentences: *Vnd ob jemand sündiget | So haben wir einen Fursprecher bey dem Vater (1 John ii. 1). Das alles wil ich dir geben | So du niederfellest | vnd mich anbetest (Matth. iv. 9). Wo diese werden schweigen | so werden die Steine schreien (Luke xix. 40). Wir mußten uns resignieren | wo nicht für immer, doch für eine gute Zeit. In diesem Jahre, wo nicht noch vorher. Will er es tun, so ist es gut, wo nicht, so mag er es bleiben lassen. Mein Onkel sucht ein Haus, das vor der Stadt, wo möglich, inmitten eines großen Gartens liege. Wenn das Fleisch eingesalzen und geräuchert ist, geht es nicht in Fäulnis über. Wenn alle Menschen gut wären, so bedürfte es keiner Strafgesetze. Eine, wenn ich nicht irre, französische Familie hat die neue Wohnung gemietet. Ich komme morgen, wenn es überhaupt möglich ist. Vnd wiltu also mit mir thun | so erwürge mich lieber | habe ich anders gnade für deinen Augen funden | das ich nicht mein vnglück so sehen müsse (Numbers xi. 15). Ja dieser Widerwille, wenn ich anders mein Gefühl sorgfältig untersucht habe, ist gänzlich von der Natur des Ekels (Lessing). Wenn anders es möglich ist, so schreibe mir. Er verspricht zu kommen, vorausgesetzt daß das Wetter es erlaubt. Ich werde es ihm geben, vorausgesetzt, daß er tue, was er versprochen hat. Wofern er fleißig sein wollte, würde er Bedeutendes leisten. Alles ist verloren, wenn nicht ein schnelles Mittel zur Hand ist. Im Falle daß, or falls er morgen noch Fieber hat, muß er im Bette liegen bleiben. Ordnen Sie an — falls jemand komme — daß er nicht vorgelassen werde (Suttner's *Im Berghause*, p. 47). Schreiben Sie sofort, falls (or im Falle daß, or auf den Fall daß) dies geschehe (or geschähe). Und als der alte Herr sich auf sein Sofa gestreckt hatte und sie ihn gut zugedeckt und ihm die Birne der elektrischen Klingel auf das Tischchen an seiner Seite hingelegt, falls (for use in case that) er etwas brauche, schlich sie verstohlen davon (Ompheda's *Cécilie von Sarryn*, chap. II). Er soll es hören, doch daß er nicht davon spricht. Ich billige alles, außer daß er nicht selbst kommen will. Ich kann nicht hinein- kommen, außer wenn Sie das Tor öffnen. Das hübsche Berghaus hat sicher ein Gastzimmer, und darin will ich mich — außer Sie jagen mich gewaltsam hinaus — volle drei Tage festsetzen (Suttner's *Im Berghause*, p. 26). Ich tue es nicht, außer er bitte mich darum (Fritsch's *German Grammar*, p. 486). Ganz bestimmt werde ich kommen, außer ich wäre tot (Felix Schwarzenberg). Ich bin ganz zufrieden mit ihm, nur daß er etwas langsam arbeitet, or. according to 236, nur arbeitet er etwas langsam, or er arbeitet nur etwas langsam. Das Reiten wäre hübsch, nur daß man leicht Hals und Bein bricht. Wir könnten es schon tun, nur daß er dann verloren wäre. Es ginge schon, nur daß er nicht will. Ich seh' es gern, das steht dir frei, nur daß es gefällig sei (Goethe's *Faust*, Studierzimmer). Niemand hat gesprochen, als er (or außer ihm). Keiner als er hätte das tun können. Kein anderer als er hat es getan. Wer anders als er hätte es tun können? Er nahm nichts anderes, als was ihm gehörte. Er liebte nichts als ihn. Tue alles andere eher als das!, or Tue alles andere, nur nicht das! Aus welchem andern Grunde sandte ich einen Eilboten, als*

damit ihr möglichst rasch die Nachricht erhieltet? Ich konnte meine Empfindung mit nichts ausdrücken, als dadurch daß ich das Kind von der Erde nahm und es lebhaft küßte. Wodurch denn sind wir groß geworden, als daß (more commonly als dadurch daß) wir gingen mit dem Sturm des Volks? (Immermann). Sie sieht keine Rettung, als sie muß das Kind entfernen (Goethe), or more commonly with daß: Es ist nichts anderes möglich, als daß du nachgibst. Es fehlt nichts, als daß du nicht da bist, or als daß du da wärst (subjunctive of modest wish; see 169. I. A, 3rd par.). Du rettetest nicht den Sohn, als wenn du weichst (Grillparzer's *Argonauten*, 4). Du hast's ja selber zu tragen! Kein anderer wie du! (Halbe's *Das tausendjährige Reich*, p. 45). Wem wohl, denn ihr (i.e. der Frau), verdankt er des Liedes Keim? (Otto Brahm in *Die neue deutsche Rundschau*, Dec. 1906, p. 1420). Ich tue es nicht, ohne daß ich seine Erlaubnis habe. Er sprach nie, ohne daß er gefragt worden wäre. Es sei denn daß ich aus Gründen der heiligen Schrift oder mit klaren und hellen Gründen überwiesen werde, sonst kann und will ich nicht widerrufen (Luther). Ich werde es nicht tun, es sei denn, daß er mich darum bitte (or bittet), or es sei denn, er bitte (or bittet) mich darum. Ich lasse dich nicht, du segnest mich denn (Gen. xxxii. 26, revised ed.). Ich werde es nicht tun, er bitte mich denn darum. Das werde ich nie glauben, er müßte es mir denn selbst sagen. Ich gehe sicher morgen, ich müßte denn sehr krank werden. Die jungen Mädchen und Frauen gehen bis nach der Geburt des ersten Kindes vollkommen nackt, höchstens daß sie bisweilen eine dünne Schnur um die Hüften tragen (Hutter's *Wanderungen und Forschungen*, p. 421).

a. The adverb so is in these sentences very often found in the principal proposition, as in the first example above.

b. The conditional clause is usually introduced by a conditional or qualifying conjunction, but it may assume other forms: (1) Instead of the transposed word-order the question order is often used if the conjunction wenn is omitted. See 237. I. A. b, and also Note 2 thereunder. (2) The clause may for especial emphasis be replaced by an imperative, in which case so is usually found in the principal proposition: Sprich ja oder nein, so bin ich zufrieden. The volitive subjunctive can also be used like the imperative. See 168. I. 2. C. a, b. Dürfen and sollen with dependent infinitive are often used with similar force: Man darf nur vom Wolfe reden, so kommt er. Er soll nur kommen, ich werde ihm schon heimleuchten. (3) Instead of a conditional clause and a conclusion we often find two independent propositions connected by a co-ordinating conjunction, und, oder, sonst, or dann: Sei im Besitze und du wohnst im Recht Possession is nine points of the law. Wir wollen Frieden machen, und alles ist gut Let us make peace and all will be well. Du tust das, oder du bekommst Prügel, or sonst bekommst du Prügel = Wenn du das nicht tust, bekommst du Prügel. Es muß anhaltend regnen, dann tritt oft Hochwasser ein = Wenn es anhaltend regnet, tritt oft Hochwasser ein. (4) The absolute construction is often used here instead of a subordinate clause. For examples see 265. B. a. and b. (1). (5) The conditional idea is sometimes found in the form of a relative clause: (1) In the form of a clause with the conditional relative wer as subject, as illustrated in 159; (2) In the form of a subject clause: Wer jung heiratet, or Jung geheiratet lebt lang; (3) In the form of an attributive adjective clause: Ein Bettler, der etwa kommt, wird abgewiesen! Ein Junge, der das täte, würde ausgelacht. See 255. VII. a.

c. *Mood.* When the supposition is real the verb of the conditional clause is in the indic.: Wenn ich stumm blieb, geschah es nur, weil ich über ein Rätsel nachgrübelte If I remained silent (and I actually did so) it was because I was pondering over an enigma. If the case is only a supposed one, but one that can easily happen, the indic. is now used, or to indicate a little more uncertainty the past subjunctive of sollen with the infin. of the verb: Ich gehe fort, wenn er kommt I shall go away if he comes, or Ich gehe fort, wenn er kommen sollte I shall go away if he should come. See 168. II. E. The present subjunctive could be used instead of the indicative in earlier periods, but it now only survives in the volitive constructions in b. (2) and in the potential construction with denn (168. II. E. a) or es sei denn daß (168. II. E. a and c) and außer (168. II. E. d).

The past tense forms of the subjunctive may be used here to denote unreality. This unreal potential subjunctive is very common in wenn-clauses if the condition is a mere conception of the mind, or is represented as in conflict with fact: The use of the moods and tenses in such unreal conditional sentences is explained at length in 169. 2. A. (1). a and E. The past tense forms of the subjunctive are often used after ohne daß to make a statement modestly or cautiously. The present tense of the subjunctive is sometimes found in clauses of exception to represent the statement as only conceived, but the indicative is in many cases more common, as the statement is felt as true, or the past subjunctive may be used instead of the indicative for the sake of modesty: So bleibt nichts übrig, als daß man seine Kräfte zusammennehme, zusammennimmt, or zusammennähme. For the mood after nur daß see 168. I. 2. C. b.



... ist das Buch zu empfehlen. Often the conjunction wenn alone or wenn or falls in connection with a predicate adjective or the negative nicht represents the subordinate clause. Gab's eine Schuld? Wenn (if so), dann Die neueste, we tonte ... man mit Gewalt befre

... ist das Buch zu empfehlen. Often the conjunction wenn alone or wenn or falls in connection with a predicate adjective or the negative nicht represents the subordinate clause. Gab's eine Schuld? Wenn (if so), dann Die neueste, we tonte ... man mit Gewalt befre

... ist das Buch zu empfehlen. Often the conjunction wenn alone or wenn or falls in connection with a predicate adjective or the negative nicht represents the subordinate clause. Gab's eine Schuld? Wenn (if so), dann Die neueste, we tonte ... man mit Gewalt befre

Dorf?" „Eine halbe Stunde zu fahren, die vierter zu gehen Der Komödiendichter schien, nach seinem schlichten Anzug Plutos zu sein. In English the infinitive construction with *for* are not identical, where in German the clause form is usually *emf*

lachen on the wheel, &c. Sometimes an attributive adjective modifying the subject takes the place of the conditional clause Ein wahrer Freund hätte anders gehandelt (= Ein Freund hätte anders gehandelt, wenn er wahr gewesen wäre). *example of the old at* *ct is the person implied* *'s coming* Schreibe mir,

quently omitted Wenn du es nur principal proposition is fre see 169 1. A 169. 2 1

ich nun einmal nichts (zu tun weiß) wie (ich) zu lieben weiß (Sudermann's Die drei Reiterfedern 3 10) Sometimes the infinitive dependent upon the independent verb konnte). Und da just been mentioned in the principal die Tatsache anzuerkennen. The us clause has developed out of a comparative clause

Concessive Clause.

280. The concessive clause contains a conceded statement, which, tho it is naturally in contrast or opposition to that of the principal proposition, is nevertheless unable to destroy the validity of the latter (for conjunctions see 238. 3. G). As can be seen by the common use of the conjunctions wenn and ob (once widely employed in conditional clauses) and often also by the question word-order in connection with the past subjunctive, as illustrated in 237. 1. A b Note 2, the concessive clause has in large measure developed out of the con-

ditional clause. But the frequent use of relative pronouns and adverbs, demonstrative forms such as *so*, *trotzdem*, &c., indicate that important materials have been derived from other sources. Examples: *Vnd ob ich Alber (now albern) bin mit reden | So bin ich doch nicht albern in dem (now der) erkenntnis* (2. Cor. xi. 6). *Irrtum ist Irrtum, ob ihn der größte Mann, ob ihn der kleinste beging. Ob die Sonne scheint oder (or oder ob) der Regen in Strömen herabgießt, er macht seinen Spaziergang. Ob es nahe sei oder weit, gehe ich. Und wird dir Guts geschehen, ob du auch wohl ein Sünder bist* (Luther). *Wiewohl du solches in deinem Herzen verbirgest, so weiß ich doch, daß du des gedenkest* (id.). *Ob man gleich über den erfochtenen Sieg das Tedeum anstimmte, so gestand doch Wallenstein selbst seine Niederlage. Obgleich die Alpen höher sind als die Pyrenäen, so lassen sie sich doch leichter überschreiten. Dieser, obgleich er noch wenig gemalt hat, weltberühmte Künstler hat große Einnahmen. Obschon (or wenschon) er reich ist (conceded fact), or Ob (or wenn) er schon reich ist, ist er doch unglücklich. Obgleich (or wenngleich) Karl es mir gesagt hat (fact), glaube ich es nicht, but Wenngleich (or wenschon, or auch wenn, or und wenn, or selbst wenn, but not obgleich or obschon) Karl es sagte (mere assumption), so glaubte ich es doch nicht. Ich komme, auch wenn es schneit (assumption), but obgleich (obwohl, &c.) es schneit (fact). So (or wie) wichtige Gründe der Minister auch vorbringen mochte, der König achtete nicht auf seine Worte. So sehr ich auch bat, er blieb bei seiner abschlägigen Antwort. Es muß doch heraus, wie (or so) gern ich es auch noch länger verschwiege. Für jede Seelenwunde, wie (or so) tief sie brennt, hat Zeit, die große Trösterin, den wahren Balsam. Wie (or so) Verbrecher (pred. noun with the force of an adj.) dieser Mensch auch ist, so zeigt er doch Spuren besserer Gesinnung. Welch tapfer Haupt auch dieser Helm bedeckt (hat), er kann kein würdigeres zieren* (Schiller). *Trotzdem er schon seit längerer Zeit sehr unwohl war, erfüllte er doch noch immer die Pflichten seines Amtes mit der größten Pünktlichkeit. Die Menschen Ho'mers, unbeschadet dessen, daß sie bereits auf den Schultern ungezählter Generationen stehen, erscheinen uns doch wie die Kinder, die Prometheus eben geformt hat* (Wilamowitz-Moellendorff's *Griechische Tragödien*, II, p. 14). *Hier könnt' ich meine Seele von mir hauchen, so mild und leise wie das Wiegenkind . . . , da (now da doch) fern von dir ich rasend toben würde* (A. W. Schlegel). *Du duldest die Strafe eines Schlemmers, da doch niemand ehrlicher gefastet hat als du* (Riehl). *Oft lobt man einen Gegenstand, während man von dessen Unwert überzeugt ist. Er geht stets zu Fuße, während er doch die schönsten Pferde im Stalle stehen hat. Wenn (now da doch or obschon) ich in Wien nie ins Theater ging, ging ich beinahe täglich in Paris* (Grillparzer).

- a. The adversative particle *doch* is frequently used for emphasis in the principal proposition.
- b. The clause is usually introduced by a concessive conjunction, but it may assume other forms: (1) The clause may be replaced by a proposition with normal or question order with the verb in the indicative or subjunctive. See 237. 1. A. *d* and 168. I. 2. A. (2) The imperative may take the place of the clause: *Sei noch so dumm, es gibt doch jemand, der dich für weise hält.* (3) A proposition with question order and a verb in the indic. or subjunc. may be used instead of the subordinate clause, as explained in 237. 1. A. *b*. Note 2. (4) Instead of a concessive clause and a principal proposition we sometimes find two principal propositions connected by a co-ordinating conjunction, *und doch, aber, dennoch, trotz'dem*, often with *zwar* in the first proposition when *aber, dennoch, or trotzdem* follows: *Du könntest dich jeden Tag vollstopfen und [könntest] doch mager bleiben = Auch wenn du dich jeden Tag vollstopfst, könntest du doch mager bleiben. Wir sind zwar arm, or Zwar sind wir arm, aber wir sind doch nicht unglücklich, or dennoch or trotzdem sind wir nicht unglücklich.* For explanation and force of this construction see 267. 4 (3rd par.). (5) The concessive idea sometimes finds expression in an attributive element, either in the form of an attributive adjective or a relative clause: *Diese alte Frau putzt sich noch gern!* (= *Diese Frau putzt sich noch gern, obgleich sie alt ist*). *Der Unglückliche, der doch so bedürftig ist, konnte keine Unterstützung erhalten* (= *Der Unglückliche konnte keine Unterstützung erhalten, obgleich er so bedürftig ist*). See 255. I. *c*. (6) The absolute accusative and nominative constructions sometimes take place of the concessive clause. See 265. B. *a. b.* (1), (2). Compare *c* below.
- c. *Mood.* The indic. is usually used if the clause is introduced by a conjunction. Sometimes, however, the subjunctive is employed. See 168. I. 2. A. *a*, 2nd paragraph. If the clause is introduced by an interrogative pronoun or interrogative adverb the subjunctive is also still

qui  
of  
Be  
get  
as

subjunctive is used, see 169. 1. B.  
in *b* above. See also 168. 1. 2. A.

*d. Abridgment.* If the subjunctive are identical the clause in or an adverb, but more common vom Schicksal gebeugt ist, kommt wohl nicht und wenn ja, so kann er doch nur sehr spät kommen. Sometimes the conjunction is suppressed: Pünktlich sonst in seinem Dienste, war er jetzt von der Regel abgewichen (Immermann).

Sometimes in colloquial language when the subjects are not identical abridgment occurs. Den 2. März bestieg ich den Vesuv, obgleich bei trübem und umwölktem Gipfel (Goethe). Ob

wahr,  
oder  
Herr  
Schla  
Wide.

... ohl für dich sein, daß du deinen Zweck er-  
... g, xiii).

... in spite of, despite: In spite of his or John's being  
... er or Hans so fleißig gewesen ist, hat ihn  
der Lehrer nicht gelobt. For further remarks on the gerund see 272. C. g.

### Clause of Purpose.

281. The *clause of purpose* or *final clause*, as it is often called, states the purpose or direct end of the action of the principal proposition (for conjunctions see 238. 3. H): Er soll schnell machen, daß er nicht zu spät kommt. Darum bin ich euch entgegengelaufen, daß ich euch warnen könnte. Daß die Hand gesichert bleibe, faßt man Kohlen an mit Zangen. Da warf Konradin seinen Handschuh vom Blutgerüste herab, damit er dem König Peter von Aragonien gebracht werde.

The clause of purpose is often used in elliptical sentences corresponding to the common elliptical infinitive construction in *b* (2nd par.): Daß ich es nicht vergesse, [will ich dir sagen,] gestern war dein Bruder bei mir. Daß ich es kurz sage, ich will nicht.

The idea of purpose often finds expression in other grammatical forms, such as object, subject, attributive substantive, relative clauses, and temporal clauses after *bis* and *ehe*. See 168. 1. 2. B. (1), (3), 169. 1. C. (1), (3).

*a. Mood.* The subjunctive was always used here in oldest German as it alone could represent the statement as a clause of purpose, i.e. as something only planned or desired. After distinctive conjunctions had come into use here, such as *auf daß* and the now more common *damit*

action described in the principal proposition, while they elsewhere denote a result as the effect of the activity or state indicated in the governing proposition. While the use of *to* and *um zu* here is contrary to the general principle observed in clauses of result, it should be regarded as a valuable modification and extension of this principle which should be encouraged rather than discouraged, as it is one of the tersest and most expressive constructions known to either language.

The first examples of a double prepositional infinitive to express purpose are found in the classical literature of the M.H.G. period: *Die herzogin lost uf den stric, durch die schrift uz ze lesenne an dem seile* (Wolfram's *Titurel*, 154. 4.) The duchess untied the chord in order to read to the end the writing on it, lit. untied the chord on account of the writing, in order to read on the chord to the end. The two prepositional phrases *durch die schrift* and *ze lesenne* both modify the verb *lost uf*. Instead of *durch* the preposition *um* soon became more common. Still later the noun after the preposition *um* came to be felt as the object of the following infinitive and the *um* was construed as a connective introducing a contracted clause of purpose, as first seen in Low German: *Dat is gescheen umme tho beholdende de vriheid dusser stat* (*Berichte und Aktenstücke über die Ereignisse in Lübeck von 1405-1408*, 404. 19) *Dies ist geschehen, um die Freiheit dieser Stadt zu behaupten*. In this old document of the fifteenth century it can be clearly seen that *um* is no longer a preposition governing a following noun, for it stands before the prepositional infinitive. This development may possibly have taken place earlier, but it is impossible to prove it as the *um* usually stood before the substantive as in the original construction, where moreover it normally still stands. The occasional position of the *um* immediately before the prepositional infinitive indicates that the change has taken place. The construction was at first little used and did not become common before the middle of the seventeenth century. This long period of development is explained by the simple fact that *um* did not originally belong to the infinitive clause as a whole but to only one word in it, namely the substantive which followed it. It often requires many centuries for an entirely new syntactical structure to become established. Here the prepositional infinitive and the words associated with it slowly acquired the force of a subordinate clause of purpose with the distinctive conjunction *um*, which distinguished it from other kinds of subordinate clauses. It also differs from other subordinate clauses in that instead of a finite verb it has as verbal predicate a prepositional infinitive with a subject which has to be supplied from the context of the principal proposition. Thus too slow to become established this construction has at length by virtue of its distinct form and pithy terseness become a decided favorite. In dialect other prepositions are used as conjunctions instead of *um*, as for instance for in Alsatian corresponding to older English *for*, as in *Are ye come out as against a thief with swords and staves for to take me?* (Matth. xxvi. 55): *siine Exame gemacht fore Doktor zu wäre* (= werden) (Karl Bernhard's *Straßburger Wibble*, 33). In English *for* is still quite common here where the subject of the infinitive is not identical with the subject of the principal proposition: *The lad pulled at his mother for her to take notice of him* *Der Junge zupfte an der Mutter, damit sie auf ihn aufmerksam werde*. Compare 269. 3. When the subject of the infinitive is the same as that of the principal proposition English uses *in order* here as a conjunction: *I arose early in order to get the work done before noon*. Quite similar to the infinitive clause of purpose with a distinctive conjunction, *um* in German and *for* and *in order* in English, is the German infinitive clause of manner with the conjunctions *ohne* and *anstatt*: *Er verschwand, ohne ein Wort zu sagen*. *Man erzählte ihm, anstatt ihn erzählen zu lassen*. The infinitive with *ohne* first appeared in the fourteenth century, and was used much in the same way as *um* as described above. The infinitive with *anstatt* is modern and has arisen under the influence of the infinitive with *um* and *ohne*. The English infinitive *for*-clause has a similar development. See 269. 3.

### Clause of Means.

282. The clause of means indicates the means by which the effect mentioned in the principal proposition is produced: *Da'durch daß du ihm trottest, wirst du gar nichts von ihm erreichen. Ich erkannte ihn da'ran, daß er hinkte. Ihm gelang die Flucht aus dem Gefängnis, in'dem er die Wächter bestach*. For the conjunctions used see 238. 3. I. In a formal sense many of these clauses are prepositional clauses, so that they may be classed under 272. D.

a. *Abridgment*. The clause of means is sometimes contracted to an appositional participial clause: *Mich am Stricke festhaltend, rettete ich mich ans Ufer* *Holding on to the rope firmly I came safe to the shore*. This is the attributive or appositional type of clause structure described in 268. 4. English has gone much farther than German in developing this old type of clause. In English it is often found in prepositional phrases in which the person implied in a possessive adjective or a genitive is the logical subject, the governing gerund the logical predicate, and the preposition the sign of subordination to the principal verb: *By his* or *John's holding the ladder firmly I succeeded in climbing on to the roof* *Dadurch daß er* or *Hans die Leiter festhielt, gelang es mir, auf das Dach zu steigen*. German is often similar to English when the subject of the principal verb serves as the subject of the gerund: *By holding on to the rope firmly I came safe to the shore* *Durch Festhalten am Stricke rettete ich mich ans Ufer*. For further remarks on the gerund see 272. C. g.

### WORD-ORDER.

283. The German word-order presents peculiar difficulties to the English-speaking student. One of the first things to learn is that word-order in a German sentence is intimately connected with accent. In German words are removed from their usual position and placed at the beginning of the sentence when they become emphatic, while in English we may accent words heavily without changing their position. The next important position in a German sentence is at the end. The least emphatic words are usually found near the middle of the sentence, and further on the words receive more stress as they approach the end. Also considerations of euphony influence word-order. Short, light objective or adverbial elements precede longer, heavier ones. Opposed to this freedom of placing words according to their logical or emotional importance, or the requirements of euphony, &c., are certain mere formal grammatical prin-

ciples which have developed certain fixed types. Hence the whole subject must be studied in detail

284. 1. In German there are three word-orders: the verb in the second place, the verb in the first place, the verb in the last place.

1. *Verb in the Second Place.* This word-order may assume two different forms. The subject may stand in the first place with the verb in the second place. *Der Vater liebt den Sohn.* This form is called *normal order*. If any other word for emphasis, or to establish a nearer relation with what goes on before, or because it lies nearer in thought, stand in the first place, the verb still maintains the second place, followed usually by the subject in the third place. *Auf Sonnenschein folgt Regen.* This order is called *inverted*.

a This division into normal and inverted order is now quite general, but not altogether scientific. In earlier periods there is no difference whatever between these two orders. The subject or any word in the predicate could for emphasis or to establish a nearer relation with what went on before, stand in the first place, followed later by the verb, which is then established in the second place as a result of a long place immediately after the subject or the stressed object or adverb introducing the sentence. By reason of its importance the subject stood so often in the first place that this position has become functional, i.e. it now normally stands in the first place even tho it is unimportant and unstressed. The older order of things, however, is often still in force. The subject still takes its place at the head of the sentence when it becomes emphatic, especially the interrogatives, *wer, welcher, &c.*, or a noun which has important modifiers. *Alle wirkliche Kunst beruht auf der individuellen Freiheit und dem fröhlichen Leben.*

trast still accented and then it stands at the head of the sentence as an emphatic word and to establish a connection with what goes on before. *Er*

This personal pronoun is in a con-

is an

Er

These original ideas were not felt at all, as this expression suited to the from which it only departs under the stress of emotion or for logical reasons, or in conformity to fixed rules. Thus where there are several subordinate clauses connected by *und, oder, &c.*, tendency after the conjunction to return to the *gegenüber, (und du verlangtest, was sich nicht)* 3) Wenn Sie einen [Jungen] erwischen und haun ihm 'n paar 'runter, dann werden sie's wohl lassen (Hse Leskien's *Schuld*, p 3) Wer einen solchen Schritt unternimmt und den, Gott sei Dank! immer noch fest gefügten Bau der Kirche zertrümmern will und hat sich nicht besser alles vorher überlegt, der kann sich nur

but are now often little felt

It has become the form of activity and easy movement,

tendency after the conjunction to return to the

gegenüber, (und du verlangtest, was sich nicht)

3) Wenn Sie einen [Jungen] erwischen und

haun ihm 'n paar 'runter, dann werden sie's wohl lassen (Hse Leskien's *Schuld*, p 3) Wer

einen solchen Schritt unternimmt und den, Gott sei Dank! immer noch fest gefügten Bau der

Kirche zertrümmern will und hat sich nicht besser alles vorher überlegt, der kann sich nur

for especial emphasis

epics in accordance

descriptive style

language. The ex-

placed at the beginning of the sentence as a grammatical subject followed immediately by the verb so that the verb is still the first word of real importance. For full treatment of this point see 251. II B a bb b

The first place is not the only emphatic position for the subject. It may be made prominent by being reserved for the important position at the end of the sentence. For fuller treatment of this point see 251. II B a cc

2 *Verb in the First Place.* This is the usual order of a question that requires an affirmative or negative answer, and may be called *question order*: *Ist der Knabe fleißig?*

a In earlier periods the verb just as still an object or an adverb stood in the first place whenever it was necessary to establish a nearer relation with what went on before, or of

questions --

because of

war das B

nach Karl... Compare 250 A 3 c and 168 I 1 B a. In older periods this position and stress of the verb were also common in certain types of the declarative sentence where the verb is important to the thought. In literary German this order in declarative sentences is now

This older order of things was very common and often in those

Kame er doch! Reiche

Wenn Sie dieses Jahr wieder

...

restricted to definite groups of cases, which are given in 287. B. In popular and colloquial language, however, the earlier freedom of placing a verb at the beginning of even a declarative sentence is still quite common. See 251. II. B. *b*, also 286. A. *c*.

3. *Verb in the Last Place.* This is the order of a subordinate clause, and is usually called *transposed order*: *Die Sterne erscheinen uns deswegen so klein, weil sie so weit von uns entfernt sind.*

*a. Historical Development of the Word-order.* In the oldest as well as modern German and English the verb could stand in the *second* place between subject and object, but in older English and in oldest and modern German it can also stand in the *second* place after an adverb or object. In the oldest period it also often in both languages stood in the *first* place in emphatic statement and narrative, and survivals of this usage still often occur in German in emphatic statements and ballads, as indicated in 287. B (7) and (8), but in the *normal* declarative sentence the verb stood at the end, almost regularly so in oldest English and quite commonly so in oldest German, indicating a still greater regularity in pre-Germanic. This was in conformity with a general principle of the older normal word-order that modifiers of a word should precede it. This old word-order with the verb at the end preceded by its modifiers corresponds to the order found in old group-words (247. 2. *a*), where the governing word stands at the end preceded by its modifiers. This old word-order was based upon a mere grammatical principle. As the modifiers were not originally inflected they could only be felt as modifiers by having a fixed position. Thus they always preceded the governing verb. This old order was later in the inflectional period often disturbed by reserving for the end the important modifier or modifiers of the verb, in order to create the feeling of suspense and thus increase the emphasis. As the verb was thus not the center of attention and was often weakly stressed it gradually settled into the weakly stressed position after the subject or the strongly accented object or adverb which often introduces the sentence. Besides this rhythmical principle there was also a psychological force active in establishing the verb in this position. The verb contains the basal idea of the predication, so that there was often, especially in long sentences, a tendency to bring it near the subject in order that subject and predicate together might at the outset make clear the general line of thought and thus relieve the tension somewhat and make it possible to concentrate the attention upon the important details which were to be presented later. In course of time this position of the verb became fixed, so that the originally *emphatic* order became the new *normal* or *inverted* order as they exist to-day. In English the tendency to place the subject before and in the vicinity of the verb is very much stronger and more universal than in German, for it almost invariably takes place in all declarative sentences in both the principal proposition and the subordinate clause, but in English it has never been an absolute requirement that the verb should follow the subject *immediately* as in German, as in *Hans tut es oft*, in English *John often does it*. In English the tendency to place the subject before the verb and thus indicate the grammatical relations by means of the word-order manifested itself in early times and century after century became stronger and stronger, so that the distinctive case forms of nouns and adjectives gradually as useless inflections disappeared in whole or in part. In German the case forms have been largely preserved as they are still often needed to make clear the grammatical relations. Here also the older normal word-order with the verb at the end of the sentence still survives in poetry. See 288. B. *c*. It has also been preserved in prose and poetry in the subordinate clause. The main reason for the preservation of the old order here seems to be that the subordinate clause had the same word-order and stress as a compound or old group-word (247. 2) — stressed verbal element preceded by a still stronger stressed modifier — and gradually developed into a somewhat similar speech unit with the same fixed word-order and stress. The free stressing of important words in the principal proposition by placing them in important positions has gradually associated with the normal or inverted order the idea of *positive assertion* with the emphasis upon certain words, while the set word-order and stress of the subordinate clause arouses the idea of a compact unit, a thought, an impression, or a feeling as a *whole* without special reference to particular words: *Noch heute geht er* and *Ich bestēhe darauf, noch heute geht er*, but *Ich bestehe darauf, daß er noch heute geht* *I insist upon it that*, &c., where *darauf* points to the thought of the following clause as a whole. After negatives and verbs expressing mere feeling the normal or inverted word-order with their idea of positive assertion and definite emphasis upon certain words often cannot be used at all: *Ich glaube, heute geht noch ein Zug*, but *Ich glaube kaum, daß heut noch ein Zug geht* and *Ich bin keineswegs überzeugt, daß du recht hast*. *Ich freue mich riesig, daß du gekommen bist* (not *du bist gekommen*). *Es tut mir sehr leid, daß du dich gekränkt fühlst* (not *du fühlst dich gekränkt*). In *Ich weiß, du bist ein braver Junge* there is in the subordinate clause with normal word-order the warmth of positive assertion, while in *Ich weiß, daß du ein braver Junge bist* we feel in the subordinate word-order the tone slightly cooler, i.e. we feel the utterance as a calm objective statement of a fact, a thought as a whole. In the transposed order the verb is never weakly stressed as often in normal and inverted order, but always distinctly stressed as the verbal element in old group-words, as *Köpfverlētzung*, altho often with a little less force than other words yet with an unmistakable accent as the subordinate clause, like an old group-word, is felt as a thought as a whole, a fact, an essential element of which is the idea contained in the verbal element: *Minister Gërber tritt* (weakly stressed) *am 1. Oktober in den Rûhestand*, but *Ich wundere mich, daß Minister Gerber in den Rûhestand tritt* (distinctly stressed). *Wo wohnt* (weakly stressed) *der neue Bürgermeister?* but *Nein, wo der neue Bürgermeister wohnt!* (distinctly stressed), as the attention is not directed to any word in particular but to the thought as a whole, namely surprise that the mayor would

reside in such a house. As in the last example German often employs the transposed order in independent propositions to represent the utterance not as an assertion with certain important details but as a mere thought or impression as a whole. I likewise in giving a definite command to be carried out at once we say *Schleße mir die Haustür* with distinct emphasis upon the imperative to indicate immediate action but to impress the thought as a whole upon someone's mind we say *Daß du mir heute abend die Haustür schließt!* In directing a question to someone we say *Wie heißt denn dein Bruder?* If however the question is not understood we do not usually repeat the exact words but reproduce the thought as a whole in transposed order *Wie dein Bruder heißt?*

II These different word-orders are discussed somewhat in detail in the following articles, but a number of still smaller details can only be learned from practical acquaintance with the language. The word-order, as it is, has only after a long period of development assumed its present form. Earlier usage is still reflected occasionally in poetry and elevated language in general, as is mentioned below and in 237, in the treatment of transposed word-order.

### Normal Order

#### I General Statement

285 1 *Order of Words* This order is, first the subject with all its modifiers then the simple verb or in compound tenses the auxiliary, followed by the modifiers of the verb. Goethe, der am 28 August 1749 auf die Welt kam, hat im geistigen Leben Deutschlands gewirkt, wie eine gewaltige Naturscheinung im physischen gewirkt hätte.

#### 2 Normal order is found

a In independent declarative sentences *Ich trage immer die Schuhe vorn eckig* I always wear square-toed shoes. A declarative sentence often has the force of a command *Ich habe Hunger = Gib mir zu essen*.

b In questions in which the interrogative word or phrase is itself the subject of the sentence *Wer kommt denn alles?* Who all are coming? *Wessen Hut liegt auf dem Tische?* This form of questions is often used to express a wish *Wer von euch hilft mir?*

c Often in other interrogative sentences, which are distinguished from declarative sentences only by the rising inflection or in print by the punctuation. *Und Sie haben das im Ernste geglaubt?* And you really believed that? Such sentences usually express doubt or surprise. In connection with *nicht wahr* *is he not, has he not, is she not, has she not, must you not, &c.*, which may introduce the sentence or close it, this order is much used in questions which confidently expect an affirmative answer *Es ist heute schönes Wetter, nicht wahr?* It is fine weather to-day, isn't it? *Nicht wahr, sie kann schön singen?* She can sing beautifully, can't she?

d In wishes the normal order may be used. See 168 I 1 B a.

e In commands which are expressed by the indicative. See 177. I B b c.

f The normal order is also sometimes used in subordinate clauses. See 237. 1 A a, d, f, and Note 1 under b.

#### II Detailed Statement

A *Word order of the Subject* The general rule for the position of the modifiers of the subject is that adjectives and an adverb (see B a Note (1), (2), (3), appositive or genitive either precedes or follows the subject. *Ein Glaube, welchem die Werke fehlen, ist ein toter Glaube.* Der Durst nach Ruhm verleitet manche auf falsche Wege. Das Schloß des Kaisers bei Potsdam ist sehr schön.

a The position of an appositive is described in 255 II 1 G a, III 1 A B and that of a genitive is treated in 255 II 1. The appositive noun, which represents an older partitive genitive, may precede the governing noun or pronoun,

and often stands at the head of the sentence, whether it modifies the subject or an object. See 255. II. 1. H. a.

b. The adjective and participle sometimes stand after the subject. See 104. 2. B. a and b; 111. 9; 137. 1. a.

c. All modifiers of an attributive adjective or participle must stand before it: *Der gegen seinen Beschützer für die empfangenen Wohltaten in hohem Grade dankbare Knabe übernahm freudig den gefährlichen Auftrag. Das auf dem Tische liegende Buch.* When, however, such adjectives and participles follow the governing noun the adjective or participle may either stand *after* their modifiers, or *before* them if the modifiers are to be made prominent: *dieser Mann, auf seinen Rang so stolz*, or *so stolz auf seinen Rang*.

d. An adverb or prepositional phrase that modifies the subject usually follows it, but sometimes it precedes. See 255. IV. 2 and VI.

e. An appositional noun, adjective, or participle, which precedes the subject, not as an attributive modifier, but as the equivalent of an adverbial clause, must like adverbs cause inversion: *Ein geborener Herrscher (= weil er ein geborener Herrscher war), regierte er die Gemüter der Menschen, wie der Wind die Wellen zwingt.*

B. *Word-order of the Predicate.* The personal part of the verb follows the logical subject. The general rule for the word-order of the modifiers of the verb is that the important words gravitate towards the end of the sentence and the less important, as personal or reflexive (see 218. 1. a) pronouns, stand near the verb. The following points should be carefully mastered:

a. The verb, or in compound tenses the auxiliary, must follow the logical subject *immediately*, and hence no adverbial expressions or clauses must be allowed to stand between subject and verb as in English: *Ich besuche ihn oft* I often visit him. *Die Griechen wälzten, damit ihre eigene Schwäche verdeckt bliebe, alle Schuld des Verlustes auf ihn* The Greeks, in order that their own weakness might remain concealed, threw all blame for the loss upon him.

*Note.* To this important rule there must be added, however, a few exceptions: (1) Often a few adverbial expressions, as *nur only*, *wenigstens at the least*, *jedenfalls at any rate*, *für meine Person*, or *für meinen Teil*, or *meinetheils for my part*, and the concessive terms *freilich to be sure*, *in der Tat indeed*, *wie ich zugeben muß as I must confess* &c., modify not the verb, but only the subject, and hence may follow it, and thus stand between subject and verb: *Ich wenigstens habe nichts gesehen* I for my part have seen nothing. (2) A few adverbs as *besonders especially*, *vorzüglich particularly*, *vor allem above all*, &c., especially emphasize the subject, and may follow it: *Dein Bruder besonders hat sich in der letzten Zeit gegen mich sehr freundlich bewiesen.* (3) Partitive and adversative conjunctions or adverbs, as *einerseits on the one hand*, *ander(er)seits on the other hand*, *aber, indessen, jedoch however*, *dagegen, hingegen on the other hand*, &c., which represent the subject as sharing in an action or as being in contrast to another subject, may follow the subject: *Seine Kränklichkeit einerseits, seine Trägheit anderseits waren ihm ein großes Hindernis. Alle waren über den frechen Mordanfall auf den Fürsten außer sich, dieser im Gegenteil (or hingegen) verlor keinen Augenblick die Fassung.* (4) Sometimes adverbs or adverbial phrases, the true adverbial elements in form, are felt as the equivalent of adj. modifiers, and follow the subject: *Das Haus da (= das da steht) gehört mir* The house there belongs to me. *Die Treibjagd am 3. Januar (= die am 3. Januar stattfand) brachte über hundert Menschen auf die Beine.* (5) A clause sometimes stands before the verb when it refers to the thought contained in the predicate as a whole rather than to the verb itself: *Der Tunnel (literary society in Berlin in the years 1827-77), was nicht gleichgültig war und deshalb hier mit erwähnt werden mag, besaß auch ein nicht unbeträchtliches Vermögen (Fontane).* (6) A phrase, clause, or sentence is often inserted parenthetically between subject and verb: *Die Stiftungsfeste, wie gesagt (as already mentioned), waren gut. Dein Bruder, wenn du es durchaus wissen willst, hat das Geld genommen; er, um frei von der Leber zu sprechen, ist der Dieb. Der Knabe — Wilhelm hieß er — antwortete: Ich weiß es nicht.*

b. In sentences containing a compound tense and also those containing a separable prefix or a predicate adjective, the grammatically important word of the predicate, i.e. *participle, infinitive, separable prefix, predicate adjective or noun*, usually stands at the end of the sentence, as this word-order has become functional. For fuller treatment of this important word-order see 215. II. 1. A. This word-order is observed even where the participle is used instead of a past tense. See 183. 1. G. Besides the points discussed in 215. II. 1. A, the following additional details should be noted:

aa. Auxiliary infinitives stand after perf. participles, altho less heavily stressed: *Sie dürften sich geirrt haben* You have probably made a mistake. *Wir müssen wohl beide zugleich darauf gekommen sein* We must have both hit upon that idea at the same time. A dependent infinitive, however, precedes a participle: *Ich habe ihn kommen gesehen.*

bb. The predicate noun, adjective, or participle is followed by a perf. participle or infinitive altho the latter are less heavily stressed: *Er ist ein tüchtiger Mann geworden. Sie ist schön gewesen. Sie wird ihnen nahe bleiben. Er wird ein tüchtiger Mann geworden sein* He has probably become a good, solid man. Here belongs the predicate participle in the passive voice, which must always be followed by the participle or infinitive of *werden*: *Der Schüler ist gelobt*



wörden. Er wird gelóbt werden For further details concerning the word order and stress here see 215 II 1 A (3rd par), 178. 2 B c and e

hl  
Nc

infinitive precedes Die nächste Folge  
schen politischen Hegemonie in diesem  
s *Deutsche Geschichte*, 7. 2, p. 649).

in thought to the governing infinitive or participle that it is felt as forming a group with it, it precedes the governing word Ich werde zu arbeiten haben. Sie haben sich nicht davon zu befreien gewúßt. Er hat es nicht zu tûn vermócht

Unemphatic dative objects, especially unstressed personal pronouns and the reflexive sich, may introduce the clause in German while in English the first place in the clause Er ließ dem Armen durch einer bread to be given to the poor fellow Laß dir das (or also dt

dd A single adverb, a genitive, or dative modifying a precede it but a phrase or longer expression may also follow gebürtig He is a native of that place Er ist der deutschen Sprache mächtig He can speak and understand German Ver Frankreich gebürtig, or I erfreut, but Ich bin sehr lows when some word in möglichst ungünstig gewi teien zu vermitteln.

ee A participle which has the form of an infinitive may stand at the end of a sentence or before the dependent infinitive and its modifiers, see 178 2 B c

ff Sometimes in both normal and question order other words can follow an infinitive or participle contrary to the general rule that infinitive and participle must stand at the end This exceptional order was common in older German, and it is not infrequent in the vigorous prose of our own time whenever it seems best for sake of emphasis to place some important modifier of the verb at the end of Hast du die Schmerzen

he infinitive or participle Ich behaupte, auf  
verflachen im Leben (Hauptmann's *Michael*)

Kramer, 1, p. 2b)

On the other hand, this irregular feature is a regular characteristic feature of the German spoken by Jews who have not eradicated all traces of Hebrew or other foreign influence from their language Die Papiere sind gewesen in unsrer Stadt, einer hat sie gekriegt von einem (Veitel Itzig in I reytag's *Soll*

the Jewish chaplain  
s's *Alina von Barm*

gg  
predicat  
function

regularity with which we find these words in their position at the close of the sentence However, if any especial emphasis be placed upon the individual words in these functions, they are placed at the head of the sentence Schön ist das Wetter heute nicht Gegeben habe ich ihm das Buch nicht, sondern nur geliehen Schreiben hätte er doch wenigstens gekonnt The separable prefix only rarely thus introduces the sentence, and that usually in poetry, preferring as a rule to stand at the end of the sentence Zurück bleibt der Knappen Troß (Schiller) See 215 II 1 A e for the manner of writing the prefix here

hh If an infinitive or participle belongs to several propositions

of infinitive however, is often found in the first proposition and understood with the others Hätt' ich hingehen sollen und ihn anzeigen? (Halbe's *Der Strom*, p. 69)

c Order of Objects. The general rule is, here as elsewhere in the predicate, that the known and hence less important and unaccented word comes first, and the newly introduced word, to which the attention is to be especially called, and which consequently bears the accent, follows A longer, heavier word often

for the sake of euphony follows a shorter word. The following applications of these points are to be especially noted, but it must be borne in mind that these positions, tho the common ones, are not absolute, and hence will change at once when the relative importance and accent of the objects change.

*aa.* If there are two acc. objects, one of the person and one of the thing, the object of the thing will follow if it is a noun, but will precede if it is a pronoun, as it already will have been referred to, and hence is the less important word: *Der Lehrer lehrte den Schüler* (or *ihn*, if the person has been mentioned) *den richtigen Ausdruck*. But: *Ich weiß den richtigen Ausdruck nicht. Lehre ihn mich*. Of course the pronominal object of the thing may follow when it becomes the more important or a longer, heavier word: *Der Schüler lernt den richtigen Ausdruck. Der Lehrer lehrt ihn denselben* (instead of *ihn ihn*).

There can also be two objects of another kind, the first one the object of the principal verb, the following one the object of the dependent infinitive: *Die Sage läßt Zeus den Kronos entthronen*. The word-order here has gradually become fixed, as without a set order the thought would often be obscured. In accordance with the older freedom of position here, however, we still often find the object of the infinitive before the object of the principal verb, especially in case of pronominal objects: *Man durfte es ihn natürlich nicht merken lassen* (Beyerlein's *Jena oder Sedan?*, I).

*Note.* The contracted form of *es* often by way of exception follows a pronominal acc. of the person when no especial emphasis of the person is involved: *Ich weiß das Richtige nicht. Lehre es mich* or *Lehre mich's*. The contractions *ihn's* and *uns's*, however, are not used, and hence here the regular forms *es ihn* and *es uns* must be employed.

*bb.* When there are two objects, a dat. and an acc., the dat. precedes if the acc. is a noun or any pronoun other than a personal or reflexive pronoun: *Ich schrieb meinem Freund* (or *ihm*) *einen Brief* (or *dies*). *Seine Mittel erlaubten ihm dies*.

*Note.* Of course the dat. follows when it becomes more prominent than the acc., especially when it is modified by a clause: *Franz reichte seinem Bruder den Brief*, but *Franz reichte den Brief seinem Bruder*. *Ich empfehle diesen Knaben meinem Freunde, der sich gewiß seiner annehmen wird*.

*cc.* Of two objects, a dat. and an acc., the acc. precedes if it is a *personal* or *reflexive* pronoun: *Heute früh brachte die Post einen Brief aus China für Ta* (name). *Ich gab ihn ihm* (Heyking's *Briefe, die ihn nicht erreichten*). *Ich sagte es ihm. Er nahm ihn sich zum Muster. Ein Scherz, wie er ihn sich oft erlaubt. Er entzog sich mir*.

*Note.* The following exceptions are common: (1) The contracted form of *es* often follows the dat., especially the datives *mir*, *dir*, *sich*: *Gib es mir*, or *Gib mir's*. (2) The ethical dative (258. 3. C), which is usually weakly accented, can stand before the acc. of a pronoun: *Schilt ihn mir*, or *mir ihn nicht, den lieben Jungen!* (3) Of course the dat. follows the acc. if it is the more important and emphatic of the two: *Ich bedarf eines Rates von Ihnen. Wollen Sie mir ihn geben?* Here both the dat. and the acc. object have already been brought to the attention of the person addressed, but the thing represented by the acc. is the point towards which the attention is more particularly directed. Notice in the following sentences the shifting of position according to fine shades of meaning: *Ach bleib nur, Lottel! Ich bringe dir ihn* (i.e. *den Kaffee*) *schon* (Beyerlein's *Dämon Othello*, 1, 5). *Die* (i.e. *die Blumen*) *will ich mir aber alle aufheben, und wenn sie verwelkt sind, presse ich sie mir* (ib., 1, 5). *Ach was, dumm! — Kind! Das wäre schlimm! Bin ich doch selbst dein Lehrer gewesen und hab' dich mir herangezogen, so wie ich dich haben wollte* (ib., 1, 7).

*dd.* If there are an accusative and a prepositional or genitive object, the acc. precedes: *Er schrieb einen Brief an seinen Freund. Der König zieht den Herzog des Verrates*.

*ee.* The preceding rules for the position of objects must of course be set aside if one of the objects is an interrogative or relative pronoun, for these must always stand at the beginning of the sentence: *Was schreiben Sie Ihrem Freund?*

*d. Order of Adverbs.* Here as elsewhere in the predicate the rule holds that the unimportant words stand nearest the personal part of the verb, and the important ones gravitate towards the end of the sentence. Adverbs usually observe the following order: *Time, Place, Manner, Cause, Purpose*: *Er kehrt heute von Paris mit seinem Freunde wegen Familienverhältnisse und zur Regelung seiner Geschäfte zurück*. An adverb of degree stands at or near the end of the sentence, usually following objects and other adverbs: *Er fördert diese Woche die Arbeit sehr. Ich weiche heute hier unter diesen Verhältnissen von meinem Vorhaben keinen Schritt zurück*. The following details should be carefully noted:

*aa.* For the sake of euphony a short word often precedes a heavier one or a phrase, altho according to the usual rule it would follow it: *Ich reiste gern nach Paris*.

*bb.* Of several adverbs the more general precede the more specific: *Wir reisen morgen früh um sechs Uhr 50 Minuten ab. Der Polizist fand den Betrunkenen auf der Fahrstraße im Drecke liegen*. Of course the word of more general meaning follows if it is to be made emphatic: *Ich beauftragte ihn, meinem Kutscher zu sagen, er möge sich um acht Uhr morgens zur Weiterfahrt bereit halten*.

*cc.* As the idea of place is important with verbs of rest, arrival, and departure there is a strong tendency to make here the position of an adverb of time before an adverb of place functional even where the idea of time is more important: *Er war vierzehn Tage hier. Er ist vor vierzehn Tagen hier angekommen. Ich ging aufs Feld und blieb den lieben langen Tag da*. Even here time follows place if its importance is quite marked: *Diese steinerne Bank mit den Greifenköpfen war hier vorhin nicht gestanden* (Thomas Mann's *Königliche Hoheit*, p. 84). With

other verbs this order is the rule if the element of time is more important than that of place: Ich ging aufs Feld und grub da den lieben langen Tag.

dd. *Position of Negatives.* Originally nicht was an adverbial accusative of degree (see 146. g. Note 2) and like an adverb of degree it still often stands at or near the end of the sentence following objects and other elements: Du hast den Saft der Äpfel nicht. Was ist das Saft der Arbeit nicht haben? to seek the place before a nicht werden, er ist es so über deinen Unsinn lach at the end and the newer means als Einzahl, aber d

stand before it: Er ist sehr alt.

e. *Order when there are both Adverbs and Objects.* Of the modifiers of the verb, adverbial elements are of less importance as a rule than noun objects and hence precede them, but pronominal objects precede adverbial elements: Der Fürst verlieh aus Dankbarkeit dem Feldherrn diese Würde. Sie sprechen vollkommen gut Deutsch. Er überträgt mit schneller Besonnenheit seinem Adjutanten die Verfolgung der Feinde. Er sagte es mir gestern mit großer Freude. An adverbial modifier usually precedes a prepositional object: Er spricht oft von ihm, von seinem Sohne.

aa. Adverbs of place usually follow an accusative or dative object, but precede a prepositional object: Wir konnten das Buch nirgends im Hause finden, but Die warten hier in der Nähe auf euren Wink.

bb. Of course emphasis can reverse the usual order of objects and adverbs. Especially in short sentences adverbs of time and manner often stand after objects. Ich sah diesen Herrn sehr gern. Even a personal pronoun by an accented word: Er befand sich

C. *Order of Adjective Modifiers.* The adjective modifiers of any noun whether in the subject or predicate have exactly the same word-order as the modifiers of the subject (see A): Kein Dichter oder Denker hat nach Luthers Zeiten einen in soviel Richtungen gleichzeitig wirkenden, vier aufeinanderfolgende Generationen vordurchdringenden Einfluß gehabt als Goethe (Hermann Grimm's *Goethe*, Einleitung).

a. For the cases where the adjective follows its governing noun see 104. 2. B. a and b; 111. 9; 137. 1. a.

b. The pronominals dies-, jen-, all- precede possessives, as in English. Formerly also beid- had precedence here. See 139. 1. d. Note 2. (6).

### *Inverted Order.*

286. In this word-order the predicate, an object, an adverbial word, phrase, or clause, or the expletive es, occupies the first place, the verb stands in the second place, and the subject then follows immediately or at an interval of several words. If the subject is a personal pronoun or the indefinite man it must follow the verb immediately: Dann beruhigte er sich. Oft muß man sich selber helfen. This rule has become perfectly rigid for personal pronouns, so that they must follow the verb immediately when used as subject even tho they are heavily stressed: Heute mußst du ihn besuchen. Aside from personal pronouns heavier and more prominent pronominal subjects follow weaker pronominal objects: Dann kann mir das alles nichts nützen. Dann neigten sich beide vor dem Könige. Manchmal erkannten mich einige. Substantival subjects usually follow pronominal objects because they are heavier and more important: Hinter uns schloß sich ein undurchdringlicher Wall der empörten Menge. In German it would be impossible to place the light object sich after the heavy and important subject ein undurchdringlicher Wall. When, on the other hand, the predicate is heavy and important the reflexive as a part of the predicate sometimes follows the subject: Als Gottlieb Bänsch sich zum Einsteigen in Bewegung setzte, hing Männchen sich mit beiden Händen an seine

Hand (Wildenbruch's *Der Letzte*, p. 57). The position of the reflexive here after the subject is becoming more common in recent literature, but the old position before the subject is still the more common one. When both subject and object are nouns the usual order is subject — object: *Endlich besiegte der Ritter den Türken*. Altho this rule is quite firm in modern usage it is not yet perfectly rigid, for the subject may still follow the substantival object when it becomes prominent, as in the following example from Mommsen's *Römische Geschichte*, III, p. 240: *Damals wohnten die Kelten in offenen Flecken, jetzt umgaben ihre Ortschaften wohlgefügte Mauern*. This order differs from the normal order in that some word from the predicate, or the expletive *es*, takes the first place and the subject takes the position after the verb, or in compound tenses after the auxiliary. In other respects the position of the words is in general retained as in normal order.

Compare older English: Now has he land and beefs (Shakespeare's *Henry IV*, Second Part, 3, 2). This older usage sometimes still survives after accented words that are closely connected with the verb in thought, as a predicate noun or adjective, a negative or restrictive word or phrase, strongly stressed *so* or *such*, and sometimes accented adverbs of time or place: *Most grateful were they for my offer. Nowhere does he say anything on this point. He quickened his pace and so did I. Only once did he deviate from this principle*. In general, however, there has not been for many centuries a live feeling for this old construction as it was destroyed long ago by the newer principle of always putting the subject before the verb, as explained in 284. I. 3. *a*.

The leading points as to the use of this order and the particulars concerning the word-order are as follows:

A. *Use of Inverted Order*. This order is used:

*a*. Just as in English, as the usual form for a question introduced by an interrogative word which is not the subject of the verb: *Was gibt es Neues? Warum kommt er? Wie geht's?* The same form is also often used in exclamations: *Wie schön ist das Wetter! Was hat er schon durchgemacht!* This exclamatory form is an old type of sentence out of which questions with the same word-order have probably developed, differentiating themselves from exclamations as in English by a different tone. In these exclamations we sometimes find the transposed word-order instead of the inverted, as they have been influenced by the exclamatory type described in 288. B. *b*: *Wie schön das Wetter ist! Was er schon durchgemacht hat!* Instead of the inverted or the transposed word-order here we still have the old verbless type of sentence (250. *a*): *Wie schön!*

The interrogative word stands in the first place in accordance with the old Germanic principle that the emphatic word stands first in the sentence. The interrogative word is even brought forward from the subordinate clause to the beginning of the principal proposition just as in English: *Wo wollen Sie, daß ich anfangen soll?* (Lessing), now more commonly *Wo soll ich anfangen?*, as Germans are beginning to avoid the old construction, which is still common in English.

*b*. The inverted order is used whenever for some rhetorical reason a word or an expression is brought forward from the predicate and placed at the head of the sentence, and hence its use is a matter of style. Words are thus in general brought forward for the following reasons. (1) A word or words containing a reference to a preceding sentence or connected with it in thought are naturally brought forward, so that that which is stated in the one sentence and is now known may become the sure foundation for the next, upon which the thought can be further built up and enlarged: *Er war zwar ein großer Redner, Schriftsteller und Feldherr, aber jedes davon ist er nur geworden, weil er ein vollendeter Staatsmann war. Hier jedes davon*, referring as it does to the foregoing word *Redner, Schriftsteller, Feldherr*, serves nicely as a foundation upon which to build a new thought. In older German such words were often brought forward from the subordinate clause to the beginning of the principal proposition: *Auf alle diese Fragen wird Ihnen Ihr Herz sagen, daß Sie mir die Antwort*

schuldig sind (H. v. Kleist's *Werke*, 5, 310, 5), now more commonly *Daß Sie mir auf alle diese Fragen Antwort schuldig sind, wird Ihnen Ihr Herz sagen.* (2) Words take the first place which lie nearest in thought, especially such as give us a general idea of the situation, so that the mind may be prepared for that which follows: *Tief unten zu unseren Füßen lag wie im banger Traume die Stadt Freiburg mit ihren zerstreuten, matt schimmernden Lichtern.* In older German such words were often brought forward from the subordinate clause to the beginning of the principal proposition: *Auch auf dem Theater glaube ich, daß sie Glück machen werde* (Goethe's *Briefe*, 20, 195, 5), now *Auch auf dem Theater, glaube ich, wird sie Glück machen.* (3) Any word or words may for especial emphasis be brought forward from the predicate and be placed at the beginning of the proposition: *Er hat sehr vieles unternommen, gelungen ist ihm nichts. Eingewirkt auf ihn kann es* (das lebensvolle Landschaftsbild) *freilich in diesen frühesten Jahren noch nicht haben* (Otto Harnack's *Schiller*, p. 6). *Bis der Löwe kommen wird, und — können wird er* (Ludwig's *Makabäer*, 1). *Man mag Cornelius heute verehren oder gleichgültig an ihm vorübergehen: leben tut* (251. II. B. a. bb, 2nd paragraph) *er und überleben wird er viele noch* (Hermann Grimm in *Deutsche Rundschau*, May 1896, p. 255). For other examples of this emphatic position for the perfect participle and the infinitive see 251. II. B. a. bb, 3rd par. On the other hand, the infinitive sometimes stands at the beginning of the proposition not for emphasis but in order that the auxiliary may come into the unusual and hence emphatic position at or near the end of the sentence: *Wer sollte helfen? Ihr Vater? Ach, Unsinn! Aber geholfen werden müßte! Müßte!* (Hans Hoffmann's *Iwan der Schreckliche*, chap. VII). A verb in a simple tense cannot, like a participle or an infinitive, be put in the first place for emphasis. See B. b below. The dative and accusative can be brought forward from the predicate: *Nicht mir gab er das Buch, er gab es meinem Bruder. Den Vater liebt der Sohn und Die Franzosen schlug Wellington, but not Sogar Konstantinopel* (acc.) *hat Hamburg* (nom.) *überflügelt*, as the case forms are not clear and consequently Konstantinopel would be construed as nominative in accordance with the normal form of statement. The inverted order, however, can be freely used even where the case forms are not clear, provided the thought would not thereby be endangered: *Die ältere Ansicht vertret mit großer Bestimmtheit* (name), *auch Braune* (name) (Wil Still other elements are brought forward. *Schön ist sie nicht, gut ist sie. Gar kein Kerl! Ein Lump ist er.* This order is usually required in German when the subject is *es* and the predicate a personal pronoun. See 251. I. 3. Also in questions some word can for emphasis be placed at the head of the sentence, followed by inverted order: *Und das dulden Sie?* The question is not here detected by the order, but by the rising inflection of the voice. The tendency to place an accented word at the beginning of the sentence is much stronger in popular speech than in the literary language. Thus often in dialect an object or an adverbial element that belongs to the subordinate clause is placed at the beginning of the sentence: *Einen freien Platz ist nicht ausgemacht, daß du bekommst* (Renward Brandstetter's *Das schweizerische Lehngut im Romontschen*, p. 81). *Aus Breslau war ich froh, daß ich naus war* (L. Hanke's *Die Wortstellung im Schlesiichen*, p. 23). Of these different uses (1) and (3) distinguish themselves by a stronger accent. The former, however, is often without stress, since the word used is a mere formal introduction to the principal proposition, as illustrated in 268. 2. a. (4) Instead of a word or phrase, as in the preceding cases, a full or contracted clause may for the same reasons precede the verb, or the main sentence may be found within the body of the subordinate clause. In both of these cases inversion in the principal proposition is the rule: *Was möglich war, hat er geleistet. Um den Arzt zu holen, fuhr er schnell nach der Stadt. „Lauf nur,“ sagte ich, „lauf!“* c. This order is also used to emphasize the subject or a verb in a simple tense, in which cases the sentence is usually introduced by *es*, followed immediately

diately by the verb and still later by the subject. See 251. II. B. a. bb, cc. In this construction, however, the word-order is only formally inverted. It is in reality that of a question, as the verb in fact stands in the first place. The *es* which precedes the verb has no accent and no logical force and hence does not count, serving here merely as a *formal* introduction to the sentence. This introductory *es*, however, is quite serviceable, as it *formally* distinguishes this emphatic form of the declarative sentence from the interrogative form. In popular language this *es* is often dropped. See 251. II. B. b.

On the other hand, when an object, an adverbial element, or a predicate word introduces the proposition and the subject stands last for emphasis, the *es* is not employed as the introductory word clearly marks the declarative form of statement: **Das nämlich tun und müssen tun die schwächeren Menschen, die nicht an sich halten können** (Ricarda Huch's *Ausbreitung und Verfall der Romantik*, p. 150). **Gegen Abend begegnete mir noch etwas Wunderliches.** For other interesting examples see 251. I. 2. B. Note and II. B. a. aa. Note. This form of statement is often used when both the introductory element and the subject near the end or in the final position are to be made prominent: **Für Lieblosigkeit kann sie das Geld nicht entschädigen** (Hauptmann's *Einsame Menschen*, p. 67). **Selbst die Hände gedrückt hatten ihm einige Menschen, die er kaum kannte** (R. H. Bartsch's *Die Haindlkinder*, p. 302).

#### B. Particulars of the Inverted Word-order:

a. If an object, or an adverbial word, phrase, or clause introduces the sentence, the subject usually follows the verb immediately, or is separated from it by unimportant words, but also, as in the following sentences, the subject may stand near the end of the sentence, especially when it contains the new and hence important element in the sentence, and is therefore to be emphasized: **Bei den Griechen und Römern trat sehr früh an die Stelle des Gaus als die Grundlage der politischen Einheit der Mauerring.** Emphasis often requires the subject to be placed last when it consists of a list of things or a series of clauses: **Entmündigt kann werden: 1. wer in Folge von Geisteskrankheit oder Geistesschwäche seine Angelegenheiten nicht zu besorgen vermag; 2. wer durch Verschwendung sich oder seine Familie der Gefahr des Notstandes aussetzt; 3. wer in Folge von Trunksucht usw.** (*Bürgerliches Gesetzbuch*, § 5). See also A. c (2nd par.) above.

On the other hand, an unaccented pronominal subject must follow the verb immediately: **Heute hat sie es dem Vater überreicht.**

b. If it is desired to emphasize the *subject* or a *verb in a simple tense* we most commonly employ the inverted order, introducing the sentence with *es*. This important construction is explained in 251. II. B. a. bb. cc. From another standpoint this word-order may be regarded as the *normal* order, as the grammatical subject *es* stands in the first place. From still another point of view it is the *question* order, as explained in A. c above, and also in 284. I. 1. a, 2nd par., toward end.

c. The emphatic object or adverbial element is usually placed in the important position at the beginning of the sentence. When, however, an unemphatic sentence adverb introduces the sentence the emphatic object or adverb follows as closely as possible and thus stands in the first place after the verb, for the verb *must* stand in the second place: **Vielleicht stellt auch mir sich noch einiges anders** (Konrad Zwierzina in *Zeitschrift für das deutsche Altertum*, 45, p. 393).

d. It is a peculiarity of German that after a subordinate clause, especially one of cause (reason, condition, concession), the following principal proposition is often introduced by *so*, which sums up in one word the substance of the preceding clause and by its adverbial form calls attention to the fact that inversion must follow: **Wenn der Mensch keinen Genuß mehr in der Arbeit findet und bloß arbeitet, um so schnell wie möglich zum Genuß zu gelangen, so ist es nur ein Zufall, wenn er kein Verbrecher wird.** This use of *so* is, as in the preceding example, more common after long subordinate clauses, but must also be used sometimes in shorter sentences where the principal proposition and the subordinate clause have the same word-order, as it is here necessary to distinguish the principal proposition from the subordinate clause: **Kann ich, so komme ich.** Here the relation of the propositions would not be clear without the use of *so*, as both propositions have the same order. In poetry, however, the *so* is often even here dispensed with: **Ehrt den König seine Würde, | ehret uns der Hände Fleiß** (Schiller).

e. If any adverb or adverbial element, or a predicate noun or adjective, belongs to two coordinate sentences connected by *und* or *oder*, it usually causes inversion only in the first proposition, the second standing in normal order: **Dann ziehen sich Bruder und Schwester zurück, und Sonje eilt die Treppe hinauf.** **Schön ist sie nicht, und sie wird es nie werden.** In case the subjects of the different propositions refer to the same person, the subject is quite commonly suppressed in the second proposition. For examples see 251. II. A. e. Sometimes, however, the force of the word introducing the first proposition is felt, and inversion in the next proposition results: **Schön war sie (die Stadt Kiel) niemals, ist sie auch nicht geworden und wird sie nie werden** (Jensen). **Trotz dieser gewagtesten aller Lagen wurde die Stellung genommen, wurde gesiegt, wurde der Feind eingeschlossen** (Generaloberst Graf Schlieffen at the unveiling of the Moltke statue in Berlin, Oct. 25, 1905).

In case an object is common to several propositions it is usually expressed in the first, and re-  
 Das weiß ich und  
 ly, in the

a normal,  
 discussed in

ARTICLES 433-434.

STADT. (3) The adverbs *nun* in the one meaning *well*, *gewiß* *certainly*, and a number of concessive adverbs, adverbial conjunctions (for which see 235. A. 1, and 236), adverbial clauses, and also independent sentences with the force of adverbs, do not always cause inversion, as they are felt as independent remarks bearing upon the sentence rather than as modifiers of the predicate; allthings it must be admitted, *freilich* to be sure, *immerhin* at any rate, at all events, *zwar* it is true, *in der Tat* indeed, *wie* ich zugeben muß as I must confess, *ich gestehe es* I acknowledge it, &c. Exs.: *Nun, ich werde zum Vater kommen* (Benedix's *Deutscher Treueid*, I, 4). *Gewiß, man muß auch schweigen könne* *ich habe es nicht selbst gesehen, aber ich glaube es.* In word-order in the principal proposition was not usually influence the present period, where a preceding clause is felt as modifying the principal verb as any other adverbial element and hence influences the word-order in the following proposition. As a survival of older usage the normal order is still usually found after a concessive clause or a pair of concessive clauses, except after a single concessive clause. Exs.: *Ich gestehe es, ich habe es nicht selbst gesehen, aber ich glaube es.* In fact: *Sei es nun rech* *tun. Wie* *betrübt ich* *kunst wird* *es zeigen.* *Vorwürfe.*

After concessive clauses which have developed out of conditional clauses, however, we sometimes find normal order as after a concessive clause, sometimes inverted order as after a conditional clause: *Wenn du auch noch so sehr klagtest, er würde or würde er sich doch nicht führen lassen* (Paul's *Deutsche Syntax*, II, p. 316). After a clause of purpose the order is often normal as the utterance is in fact an object clause after a verb of saying understood: *Laß ich es kurz sage, or Um es kurz zu sagen, (sage ich dir), ich will nicht.* All the above mentioned adverbs and adverbial expressions, with the exception of the short concessive sentences and the concessive and purpose clauses, may also cause inversion, as they are also often felt as modifiers of the predicate: *Allerdings habe ich es nicht selbst gesehen, aber ich glaube es.* After the adverbs which are followed by normal order, the voice pauses somewhat, while after those which are followed by

hässigte; hätte er's ge-  
 Kämest du (originally

principal proposition.

### Question Order.

287. A. In this order the personal part of the verb stands in the first place, the subject usually stands in the second place, always if it is a personal pronoun, and the other parts are arranged in general as in normal order: *Muß ich mich rechts oder links wenden?* The pronoun must be repeated with each verb: *Gehst du oder kommst du?* Are you going or coming? The position of the personal pronoun used as *subject* after the verb has become functional and is not at all regulated by *emphasis*. The personal pronoun *must* stand immediately after the verb even if it is strongly accented and should come to stand before

unaccented personal pronoun, altho usually the accented personal pronoun follows the unaccented one: **Muß ich ihm helfen?** If the subject is a noun or a pronoun other than a personal pronoun it can for emphasis be placed toward the end of the sentence: **Kennt den Mann der Väter oder die Mütter?** **Gibt's der Vater dem Knaben?**, but **Gibt's dem Knaben der Väter oder die Mütter?** **Kann mich das ein Mädchen fragen?** Can a *girl* ask me such a question as that? **Wundert dich das?** As in these sentences, the subject is quite commonly separated from the verb by unaccented pronouns, providing it is itself not an unaccented personal pronoun. However, if the pronominal *objects* are to be made emphatic, they should follow the subject: **Gehen die Streitigkeiten anderer dich an?** Notice that in German **nicht** cannot follow immediately the personal part of the verb as often *not* in English: **Kommt er heute nicht?** Isn't he coming to-day? In general its position is much the same as in normal order. See 285. II. B. *d. dd.* If an infinitive is to be made emphatic it cannot, of course, in normal or question order stand in the first place. If it depends upon a participle it can be emphasized by being placed after the participle: **Habt ihr von eurem Tale her je einen Felsen gesehen sich neigen?** (Sudermann's *Johannes*, 2, 1).

*Note.* In many cases in colloquial speech the word-order is only seemingly the question order as an object or adverb must be supplied in thought immediately before the verb: suppressed object: „Und ich wette, Sie haben wieder einen Eierkuchen gebacken.“ [Das] „Hab' ich auch“ [getan] (Fontane). Suppressed adverb: Kurt (unter erneuten Küssen): Nun? Eva: Ich rufe! Kurt: Umso besser! [Dann] Wissen's alle (delle Grazie's *Sphinx*).

B. This order is found: (1) In all independent interrogative sentences which are not introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb: **Wollen Sie wohl dies für mich tun?** Here there is a marked rising of the voice toward the end of the sentence as in English, but in the following uses the voice falls toward the end of the sentence, except, however, in the cases mentioned in (2) and (4). In the conditional and concessive clauses there mentioned the voice rises slightly toward the end of the clause. See 237. 1. A. *b. Note 2.* The question form is often used to express a wish: **Hilft mir einer von euch?** Often also with the force of a declarative sentence to state something confidently: **Hab' ich nicht recht gehabt?** **Bin ich etwa dein Sklave?** For the use of the question form in various shades of imperative meaning see 177. I. B. *b. c.* On the other hand, in ordinary questions we often instead of the question order employ the transposed word-order, in which case the sentence is introduced by **ob**: **Ob er wohl wiederkommen wird?** When for some reason or another a question is repeated the transposed word-order is the rule. See 284. I. 3. *a* (toward end). (2) In conditional clauses not introduced by a conjunction. For examples see 237. 1. A. *b.* (3) In clauses introduced by *als as if*. See 237. 1. A. *c.* (4) In concessive clauses not introduced by a conjunction: **Ist es gleich Nacht, so leuchtet unser Recht.** See 280. *b.* (1) and (3). (5) In independent sentences containing the volitive subjunctive and the sanguine and the unreal subjunctive of wish. See 168. I. 1. A, B. *a*, and 169. 1. A. (6) In imperative sentences: **Lassen Sie diese Schlüssel herumgehen.** (7) The question order is often used to make a statement in a stronger, more lively manner, especially when accompanied by the adverb **doch**, **aber** or **ja** (for historical explanation see 251. II. B. *b*): **Hab' ich den Markt und die Straßen doch nie so einsam gesehen!** **Ist doch die Stadt wie gekehrt!** (Goethe's *H. und D.*, I. 1-2). **Ist das schön!** How beautiful that is! **Weiß ich doch, woran ich bin!** I know what I am about! **Ist das ein Wetter!** **Wird der Augen machen!** **Wird's der Ulrich gut kriegen!** **Setzen Sie sich hier ins Warme.** **Müssen Sie frieren in dem kalten Deutschland!** (Sudermann's *Die Ehre*, 2, 8). **Diese hatte abermals eine neue Toilette an.** **Weiß der liebe Himmel, wo die alle herkommen!** (Ompteda's *Herzeloide*, p. 58). **Hab' ich ihn gestern verhauen!** (K. Brugmann's *Der Ursprung des Scheinsubjekts* es, p. 45) I tell you I gave him a good thrashing yesterday! **Bist du aber schmutzig!** (id.). How dirty you are! **War der Mensch zornig!** I tell you the fellow was mad! **Wußten wir es ja alle!** Why, we all knew that! **Hat das aber Mühe gekostet!** I tell you that cost a good



derl of trouble Compare older English *Tab Is't so suacy?* Sir And Ay  
*is t I warrant him do but read* (Shakespeare's *Twelfth Night*, 3, 4) For other  
 German examples see 251 II B b Such sentences often contain the idea of  
 cause, adding an explanation or the self evident reason for the preceding state-  
 ment *Er kannes nicht bestreiten, hatten es doch alle gesehen* In a more formal  
 style free from lively feeling the causal idea is here usually expressed by a prin-  
 cipal clause with normal word order introduced by the conjunction *denn*  
 Similarly instead of a principal proposition introduced by the illative conjunc-  
 tion *da'rum* or *da'her* for *that reason, therefore* we often find in lively language  
 the question order *Ich bin so mude, kann ich doch nicht mit euch spazieren gehen!*  
 (8) In poetry and colloquial speech the question order is frequently found in  
 lively narrative style *Sah ein Knab' ein Roslein steh'n, | Roslein auf der Hei-*  
*den, | war so jung und morgenschon, | lief er schnell, es nah zu seh'n, | sah's*  
*mit vielen Freuden* (Goethe) See also 251 II B b (9) After the conjunction  
 und to emphasize the verb or the subject See 251 II B b The question order  
 after und is sometimes apparently used where in fact the order is the *inverted*  
 as an adverb or an object which has been previously employed is understood  
 See 286 B e

### Transposed Order

288 A In this order the clause is introduced by a subordinating conjunction  
 or a relative or interrogative pronoun or adverb, and ends with the personal  
 part of the verb, the remaining elements having about the same arrangement as  
 in normal and inverted order *Seine Freunde furchteten, daß es ihm zu schwer*  
*werden würde* As in the preceding sentence, the subject usually stands at the  
 head of the clause, always if it is a relative or interrogative pronoun, commonly  
 so also in case of *man* or a personal pronoun As the subordinate clause is  
 usually presented dispassionately as a compact unit it does not in a marked degree  
 show in the word order the influence of logical consideration or strong emotion  
 but it nevertheless often contains touches of logic and feeling as shown by the  
 tendency for important words to follow unimportant ones and for emphatic  
 words to stand near the beginning or the end of the clause Where the subject  
 is a noun or pronoun other than those just mentioned it is quite commonly  
 preceded by an unaccented pronominal or reflexive object *Er sah mich ver-*  
*wundert an, vielleicht, weil ihm der fremde Alzént aufgefallen war* *Ich liebte*  
*ihn auch, wie ihn alle lieben* The unaccented pronoun has been firm here in  
 the initial position since the oldest historic period On the other hand, when  
 the verb is more prominent than the subject there is a tendency to remove the  
 reflexive to a position after the subject and nearer the verb to which it belongs  
*Daß das Pflanzchen sich auswächst, während wir leben, das dürfen wir nicht*  
*hoffen* (Hauptmann's *Einsame Menschen*, p 88) Of course, the reflexive stands  
 near the end of the clause immediately before the verb when it is itself emphatic  
*Sie wußte instinktiv, daß solch ein Herr Sohn und Osterreicher oft lieber sich*  
*sélbst gehört als einem Berufe* (R H Bartsch's *Die Handkunder*, p 23)  
 The subject may also be preceded by adverbial elements *Wie heutzutage in*  
*unserer und durch unsere Weltliteratur die Gegensätze der zivilisierten Na-*  
*tionen aufgehoben sind, so hat die griechische Dichtkunst das durftige und*  
*egoistische Stammgefühl zum hellenischen Volksbewußtsein und dieses zum*  
*Humanismus umgewandelt* (Mommsen's *Römische Geschichte*, I, chap xv)  
 Sometimes a subject noun for especial emphasis stands after an object noun  
*In Deutschland, wo den Frieden die Armée beschützt, wird der Plan der Ab-*  
*rüstung schwerlich allzuviel Anklang finden* (Georg Edward in 1906) Altho  
 adverbial elements or an object may thus introduce the subordinate clause as  
 they lie nearer in thought or give a general idea of the situation preparing the  
 mind for what follows, or in order that the subject may for a time be suspended  
 and thus become conspicuous they only occasionally take this position that  
 they themselves may be rendered emphatic as in the following sentence *Der*  
*Wert seiner Publikation beruht allein auf den drei Schriftstücken, von denen*

das mittlere wir nur durch ihn kennen (Reinhold Steig in *Euphorion*, vol. XII, p. 247). The predicate noun, adjective, infinitive, or perfect participle, however, cannot, as in the inverted order, for special emphasis be placed at the beginning of the clause, nor can they take the emphatic position at the end. The infinitive and participle stand next to the end before the personal part of the verb, the predicate adjective or noun stand before the personal part of the verb in case of a simple tense, and before the different parts of the verb in case of a compound tense. In case of an infinitive, however, dependent upon a modal auxiliary which has been attracted into the form of an infinitive, the real infinitive can for emphasis, as in the principal proposition, stand near the beginning of the clause: Nicht weil sie ihn schützen hätten können, o nein! (R. H. Bartsch's *Die Haindlkinder*, p. 209). Man sagt, daß Österreich „zerfiel.“ Nein: es war gar nichts mehr da, das erst noch „zerfallen“ hätte können (Hermann Bahr in *Preussische Jahrbücher*, 1921, p. 1). On the other hand, the modifiers of the verb have toward the end of the clause the same freedom of position as in the principal proposition: Er wartete, bis er zu Hause den Sohn traf, or bis er den Sohn zu Hause traf, according to the accent.

a. Note especially that a clause or infinitive phrase which is dependent upon another dependent clause is more likely to follow the pronominal subject of the governing dependent clause than to precede it as in English: Er behauptete, daß er, anstatt die Versammlung aufzulösen, einen Antrag machen wolle. He stated that instead of dissolving the assembly he would make a proposal. Wenn er, nachdem man seine Aussage bezweifelte, wieder fragen sollte usw. If, upon their doubting his statement, he asked again, &c.

B. This order is used:

a. In subordinate clauses. There are, however, exceptions, which are stated in 237. I. A, B, C, D; 269. 4; 271. II. 8.

b. In lively questions and exclamations which are introduced by a subordinate conjunction: [Ich wundere mich] Daß er immer noch nicht kommt! [ich wünschte] Daß er doch bald käme! Wenn er nur bald käme! [wäre es gut, or würde ich mich freuen]. Wenn ich es nur gewußt hätte! [wäre ich gekommen]. „Kennen Sie diesen Menschen?“ [Sie fragen mich] „Ob ich ihn kenne!“ (spoken in tone of surprise). [ich möchte es gern wissen] Ob's jedem Mädchen so ist, das eine Braut werden soll, wie mir? After the analogy of such examples sentences introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb sometimes have the transposed word-order instead of the inverted: Was der Junge doch fährt! (Goethe's *H. und D.*). Wo er wohl jetzt ist? Compare 286. A. a.

c. In poetry frequently also in principal propositions, for sake of rime or meter, as a survival of the older *normal* order (see 284. I. 3. a): Der alte Schmied den Bart sich streicht: | „Das Schwert ist nicht zu schwer noch leicht“ (Uhland's *Das Schwert*). Also in old saws: Willenskraft Wege schafft.

d. In early N.H.G., when *je* and *danach* introduce both the principal proposition and the subordinate clause, the principal proposition sometimes has transposed order for the sake of a parallelism between the two propositions, and this older usage survives in poetry and proverbs: Je mehr er aber verbot, je mehr sie es ausbreiteten (Mark vii. 36). Danach einer tut, danach es ihm geht (prov.). Je — *je* is now largely replaced by *je* (with transposed order) — *desto* or *um so* (with inverted order): Je mehr der Vorrat schmolz, desto (or *um so*) schrecklicher wuchs der Hunger. Transposed order in both propositions for the sake of the parallelism is now quite rare: Desto zahlreicher so eine Grablegung gehandhabt wird, je umfänglicher die Offertorien fließen (Hauptmann's *Die Weber*, 3, p. 50).

C. For the position of an auxiliary which is common to two or more subordinate clauses see 237. 1. E.

## INDEX OF GERMAN WORDS, SUFFIXES, SOUNDS, &C.

The figures in this index refer to pages those employed in the body of the Grammar, however, refer to articles. The abbreviations here used are: *prol* for *prolepsis*, *decl* for *declension*, *comp* for *comparison*, *syn* for *synthesis*, *gov* for *government*, *case* for *case*, &c. Other contractions are given in alphabetical order in the two indexes below.

**A**, pron., 21  
**Ä**, pron., 21  
-**a**, suffix, 415 (*Note*) 416 (18)  
**a**, pron., 21  
**ä**, pron., 20, as mutation of **aa**, 14 (2 1 b)  
**aa**, pron., 21, mutation of, 14 (2 A. b)  
**Aal**, decl., 74  
**Aar**, decl., 74  
**Aas**, decl., 85  
**ab**, pron., 15, 22 sep prefix, 326 343 (G a), meaning compared with that of **aus** and **ent-**, perfectiv. syn 49  
fix 431,  
**abdanken**,  
**Abend**, dec.  
**aber**, con.  
with **alle**.  
— **nein**.  
prefix, 431  
**abgehen**, syn., 509  
**abgerechnet**, prep., 359, absolute participle, 552 (a)  
**abgesehen davon**, co-ord. conj., 359, — **daß**, sub. conj., 335 (C b), 397 (F), absolute part., 552 (a)  
**abgestorben**, syn., 521  
**abgewöhnen**, syn., 526, 528  
**abhängen**, syn., 518  
**abhängig**, syn., 521  
**abhärmen**, syn., 542  
**abhärten**, syn., 542  
**abhören**, syn., 535  
**abkommen**, syn., 509  
**Ablatz**, decl., 75  
**ablegen**, syn., 542  
**ablohnen**, **ablöhnen**, 505 (23)  
**abnehmen**, syn., 518, 512  
**abonieren**, syn., 518  
**abreisen**, syn., 518  
**abrichten**, syn., 542  
**absagen**, syn., 498 (a)  
**Abscheu**, gender, 120  
**abschläglich**, prep., 359  
**abschreiben**, syn., 498 (a)  
**abschwören**, syn., 498 (B)  
**absehen**, syn., 512  
**abseit**, **abseiten**, **abseitig**, **ab-seits**, prep., 359  
**abstechen**, syn., 518  
**abstehen**, syn., 510  
**Abt**, decl., 52  
**abtrünnig**, syn., 500 (a)  
**abtun**, syn., 525  
**abwarten**, syn., 510  
**abwärts**, prep., 359  
**abzielen**, syn., 518  
**abzüglich**, prep., 359  
**ach**, pron., 22 29  
-(**ach**), suffix, 416  
**achten**, syn., 510 518 510  
**achtgeben**, syn., 518  
**sich haben**, syn., 510  
**achtlos**, syn., 515 521  
**achtsam**, syn., 521  
**Acker**, decl., 54 91  
... ..  
... ..  
... .. (b)  
... ..  
... ..  
Aeronaut, pron., 7.  
after-, prefix, 472  
**afterreden**, syn., 518.  
-age, 410  
**aggriegen**, syn., 408 (b)  
**Agnes**, pron., 54  
**Ägypten**, pron., 19.  
**ah**, pron., 21  
**Ahn**, decl., 57.  
**ahn(d)en**, syn., 490 (d)  
**ähneln**, syn., 490, (d)  
**ähnen**, syn., 490 (d)  
**ähnlich**, syn., 500 (a)  
**ahnungslos**, syn., 515  
**ahoi**, pron., 21  
**Ahorn**, pron., 26, decl., 76  
**ai**, pron., 23  
**ai**, pron. in French words 7, 24  
**Akaze**, pron., 18.  
**akklamieren**, syn., 498 (b)  
**Akt**, decl., 74, 91  
**alaunen**, 257  
**Alfanz**, decl., 76  
**Allbi**, pron., 10  
-allen, 416  
**Alk**, decl., 74  
**Alkohol**, pron., 26, decl., 76  
**all**, decl., 173  
**alldieweil**, conj., 396 (I)  
**allein**, conj., 387, compared with **aber** and **sondern**, 388  
**allenthalben**, 315 (c)  
**allerdings**, 133 (a)  
**allerhand**, 169 209  
**allerlei**, 169  
**allotria**, pron., 19  
**Als**, decl., 74  
**als**, explanatory conj., 359  
sub. conj., 392 (c), 394 (II), 795 (c) 796 (D 1 A a, c, II 1), 397-8, with predicate nom. or acc., 464 (b (1)), 467 (c) 538, 539 (b), difference of meaning here between **als** and **wie**, 394 (4), difference between **als** and **für**, 539 (c) 540 (*Note* 1)  
**als** omitted after **so**, 795 (1 c), with following relative pronoun or adverb, 393 (3) used as a relative, 202 (II (c)), 203 (D (1)) 204 (S), = immerfort, eben, gerade, 174 (*Note* 7) = also, so 747 (III). — **daß**, sub. conj., 396 (D 1 II, 2), — wenn, 795-6 (C. a. D 1 II), 227 (b), 228 (b), — ob, 394 (1 d), 395 (C a), 227 (b), 236 (b)  
**also**, explanatory conj., 359  
co-ordinat. conj. with a double construction, 391: = so, 317 (III) — doch, 400  
**alt**, comp., 142  
**Altar**, decl., 84 (4) gender, 124  
**Alwin**, pron., 14  
**am**, pron. in French words 8, 24  
**Amarant**, decl., 88 (c)  
**Amboß**, decl., 76  
**Amsterdam**, pron., 22.  
**Amst.**, decl., 85  
**an**, pron., 15 22, sep. prefix, 320 342 (I a b), meaning compared with that of **heran**, 342 (1 a), syn., 407 (II) prep., 370  
**an**, pron. in French words, 8 24  
**Analyse**, pron., 18  
**Ananas**, decl., 76  
**Anbetrachtl.** in — **daß**, 396 (I)  
**anbetrifft**, in **Anbetriff**, 359  
**ander**, 169 (c)  
**anders**, 189 (b *Note* 1), 192 (D)  
**andrängen**, syn., 542  
-aner, 407 (*Note* 1)

das mittlere wir nur durch ihn kennen (Reinhold Steig in *Euphorion*, vol. XII, p. 247). The predicate noun, adjective, infinitive, or perfect participle, however, cannot, as in the inverted order, for special emphasis be placed at the beginning of the clause, nor can they take the emphatic position at the end. The infinitive and participle stand next to the end before the personal part of the verb, the predicate adjective or noun stand before the personal part of the verb in case of a simple tense, and before the different parts of the verb in case of a compound tense. In case of an infinitive, however, dependent upon a modal auxiliary which has been attracted into the form of an infinitive, the real infinitive can for emphasis, as in the principal proposition, stand near the beginning of the clause: Nicht weil sie ihn schützen hätten können, o nein! (R. H. Bartsch's *Die Haindlkinder*, p. 209). Man sagt, daß Österreich „zerfiel.“ Nein: es war gar nichts mehr da, das erst noch „zerfallen“ hätte können (Hermann Bahr in *Preussische Jahrbücher*, 1921, p. 1). On the other hand, the modifiers of the verb have toward the end of the clause the same freedom of position as in the principal proposition: Er wartete, bis er zu Hause den Sohn traf, or bis er den Sohn zu Hause traf, according to the accent.

a. Note especially that a clause or infinitive phrase which is dependent upon another dependent clause is more likely to follow the pronominal subject of the governing dependent clause than to precede it as in English: Er behauptete, daß er, anstatt die Versammlung aufzulösen, einen Antrag machen wolle. He stated that instead of dissolving the assembly he would make a proposal. Wenn er, nachdem man seine Aussage bezweifelte, wieder fragen sollte usw. If, upon their doubting his statement, he asked again, &c.

B. This order is used:

a. In subordinate clauses. There are, however, exceptions, which are stated in 237. I. A, B, C, D; 269. 4; 271. II. 8.

b. In lively questions and exclamations which are introduced by a subordinate conjunction: [Ich wundere mich] Daß er immer noch nicht kommt! [ich wünschte] Daß er doch bald käme! Wenn er nur bald käme! [wäre es gut, or würde ich mich freuen]. Wenn ich es nur gewußt hätte! [wäre ich gekommen]. „Kennen Sie diesen Menschen?“ [Sie fragen mich] „Ob ich ihn kenne!“ (spoken in tone of surprise). [ich möchte es gern wissen] Ob's jedem Mädchen so ist, das eine Braut werden soll, wie mir? After the analogy of such examples sentences introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb sometimes have the transposed word-order instead of the inverted: Was der Junge doch fährt! (Goethe's *H. und D.*). Wo er wohl jetzt ist? Compare 286. A. a.

c. In poetry frequently also in principal propositions, for sake of rime or meter, as a survival of the older *normal* order (see 284. I. 3. a): Der alte Schmied den Bart sich streicht: | „Das Schwert ist nicht zu schwer noch leicht“ (Uhland's *Das Schwert*). Also in old saws: Willenskraft Wege schafft.

d. In early N.H.G., when *je* and *danach* introduce both the principal proposition and the subordinate clause, the principal proposition sometimes has transposed order for the sake of a parallelism between the two propositions, and this older usage survives in poetry and proverbs: Je mehr er aber verbot, je mehr sie es ausbreiteten (Mark vii. 36). Danach einer tut, danach es ihm geht (prov.). Je — *je* is now largely replaced by *je* (with transposed order) — *desto* or *um so* (with inverted order): Je mehr der Vorrat schmolz, desto (or *um so*) schrecklicher wuchs der Hunger. Transposed order in both propositions for the sake of the parallelism is now quite rare: Desto zahlreicher so eine Grablegung gehandhabt wird, je umfänglicher die Offertorien fließen (Hauptmann's *Die Weber*, 3, p. 50).

C. For the position of an auxiliary which is common to two or more subordinate clauses see 237. 1. E.

# INDEX OF GERMAN WORDS, SUFFIXES, SOUNDS, &C.

The figures in this index refer to pages, those employed in the body of the Grammar, however, refer to articles. The abbreviations here used are pron for pronunciation, orthog for orthography, decl for declension, compar for comparison, grad for gradation, i.e. the principal parts of a strong or irregular verb, syn for syntax, i.e. influence upon the syntactical structure of the sentence, government of case, &c. Other contractions are given in alphabetical order in the two indexes below

ä, pron, 22  
a, pron, 21  
-a, suffix, 415 (Note), 416 (18 a)  
ä, pron, 21  
ä, pron, 20, as mutation of aa, 14 (2 A b)  
aa, pron, 21, mutation of, 14 (2 A b)  
Aal, decl, 74  
Aar, decl, 74  
Aas, decl, 85  
ab, pron, 15, 22, sep prefix, 326, 343 (G a), meaning compared with that of aus and ent-, 343 (G b, c), with perfective force, 343 (G d), syn, 497, substantival prefix, 431, prep 365  
abdanken, syn, 495 (a).  
Abend, decl, 76  
aber, conj, 387 compared with allein and sondern, 388, — nein, 400, substantival prefix 431  
abgehen, syn, 509  
abgerechnet, prep, 359, absolute participle, 552 (a)  
abgesehen davon, co ord conj, 389, — daß, sub conj, 395 (C b), 397 (F), absolute part, 552 (a)  
abgestorben, syn, 521.  
abgewöhnen, syn 526, 528  
abhängen, syn, 518  
abhängig, syn, 521  
abharmen, syn, 542  
abharten, syn 542  
abhören, syn, 535  
abkommen, syn, 509  
Ablatz, decl, 75  
ablegen, syn 542  
ablohnen, ablönnen, 505 (23)  
abnehmen, syn, 518, 542  
abnueren, syn 518  
abreisen, syn, 518  
abrichten, syn, 542  
absagen, syn, 498 (a)  
Abscheu, gender, 126  
abschlägig, prep, 359  
abschreiben, syn, 498 (a)  
abschworen, syn, 498 (B)  
absehen, syn, 542  
abseit, abseiten, abseitig, abseits, prep 359  
abstechen, syn, 518  
abstehen, syn, 510

Abt, decl, 82  
abtrünnig, syn, 500 (a)  
abtun, syn, 528  
abwarten, syn, 510  
abwärts, prep, 359.  
abzielen, syn, 518  
abzuglich, prep, 359  
ach, pron, 22, 29  
-a(ch), suffix, 416  
achten, syn, 510 518, 540  
achtgeben, syn, 518  
achthaben, syn, 510  
achtlos, syn, 515, 521.  
achtsam, syn 521  
Acht, decl, 84, 94  
Addition, pron, 19  
Adelheid, decl 106  
Aderlaß, decl, 75  
adhärenen, syn, 498 (b).  
adieu, pron, 20  
Adler, pron, 21  
Admiral, decl, 70, 84  
adressieren, syn, 542  
ae, pron, 22  
Aeronaut, pron, 7.  
after-, prefix, 432  
afterreden, syn, 518  
-age, 416  
aggregieren, syn, 498 (b).  
Agnes, pron, 34  
Agypten, pron, 19.  
ah, pron, 21.  
Ahn, decl, 87.  
ahn(d)en, syn, 496 (d).  
ahneln, syn, 496, (d)  
ähnen, syn, 496 (d)  
ähnlich, syn, 500 (a)  
ahnungslos, syn, 515  
ahoi, pron, 24  
Ahorn, pron, 26, decl, 76  
ai, pron 23  
ain, pron in French words, 7, 24  
Akazie, pron, 18  
akklamieren, syn, 498 (b)  
Akt, decl, 74, 94  
alaunen, 257  
Alfanz, decl, 76  
Alibi, pron, 16  
-alien, 416  
Alk, decl, 74  
Alkohol, pron, 26, decl, 76  
all, decl, 173  
alldieweil, conj, 396 (E)  
allein, conj 387, compared with aber and sondern, 388  
allenthalben, 345 (c)

allerdings, 453 (a)  
allerhand, 169, 209  
allerlei, 169  
allotria, pron, 19  
Alp, decl, 74  
als, explanatory conj, 389, sub conj, 392 (c), 394 (B), 395 (c), 396 (D 1. A a, c, B C), 397-8, with predicate nom or acc, 404 (b (1)), 467 (c), 538, 539 (b), difference of meaning here between als and wie, 398 (4), difference between als and für, 539 (c), 540 (Note 1), als omitted after so, 398 (1 c), with following relative pronoun or adverb, 206 (3), used as a relative 202 (B C a), 203 (D (1)), 204 (8), = immerfort, eben, gerade, 174 (Note 7), = also, so 347 (III), — daß, sub conj, 396 (D 1 B, 2), — wenn, 395-6 (C a, D 1 B), 227 (b), 236 (b), — ob, 394 (1 d), 395 (C a), 227 (b), 236 (b)  
also, explanatory conj, 389, co ordinat conj with a double construction, 391, = so, 347 (III), — doch, 400  
alt, comp, 142  
Altar, decl, 84 (4). gender, 121  
Alwin, pron, 18  
am, pron in French words 8, 24  
Amarant, decl, 88 (c).  
Amboß, decl, 76  
Amsterdam, pron, 22.  
Amt, decl, 85  
an, pron, 15, 22, sep prefix, 326, 342 (E a, b), meaning compared with that of heran, 342 (E a), syn 497 (B), prep, 379  
an, pron in French words, 8, 24  
Analyse, pron, 18  
Ananas, decl, 76  
Anbetracht, in — daß, 396 (E)  
anbetriffs, in Anbetriff, 359  
ander, 169 (c)  
anders, 180 (b Note 1), 192 (D)  
andrängen, syn, 542  
-aner, 407 (Note 1)

- anerkennen, sep. and insep., 327 (c); syn., 539 (b).  
 anerwogen, conj., 396 (E).  
 anfahren, h. or s., 288.  
 anfangen, s., 292-3 (E. a).  
 anfangs, prep., 359.  
 anfliegen, syn., 526 (b).  
 anführen, syn., 539 (b).  
 angeekelt, syn., 521.  
 angehen, h. or s., 288; syn., 503.  
 Angel, gender, 124.  
 Angeln, decl., 88.  
 angenehm, syn., 500 (a).  
 angesichts, prep., 359.  
 angesteckt, syn., 521.  
 angewiesen, syn., 521.  
 Anglia, pron., 19.  
 angrenzen, syn., 518.  
 Angst, decl., 83.  
 angst, syn., 336 (b), 499 (C).  
 ängstlich, syn., 521.  
 anhalten, syn., 518.  
 anheften, syn., 542.  
 anheimfallen, syn., 499 (C).  
 anklagen, syn., 526, 542.  
 anklammern, syn., 542.  
 anklopfen, syn., 518.  
 anknüpfen, syn., 518.  
 ankommen, s., 288; syn., 503.  
 Anlaß, decl., 76.  
 anläßlich, prep., 359.  
 anlaufen, h. or s., 288.  
 anliegen, syn., 503.  
 anmaßen, syn., 528.  
 Anmut, gender, 125.  
 anmuten, syn., 526.  
 Annalen, decl., 88.  
 annehmen, syn., 528.  
 anschuldigen, 526.  
 ansichtig, syn., 515.  
 anspielen, syn., 518.  
 anstatt, prep., 359; conj., 355 (2. a. b), 387; — daß, 395 (C. d).  
 anstehen, syn., 496 (c).  
 anstellen, syn., 542.  
 anstoßend, syn., 521.  
 anstößig, syn., 521.  
 ant-, 432.  
 -ant, 416.  
 anti-, 434 (11).  
 Antichrist, decl., 94.  
 Antlitz, decl., 78.  
 Antrag, decl., 83.  
 antreffen, with infin. with zu, 272.  
 Antwort, gender, 126 (c).  
 antworten, syn., 495 (Note), 497 (e).  
 antwortlich, prep., 359.  
 anvertrauen, sep. and insep., 327. (c).  
 Anwalt, decl., 83.  
 anwandeln, h. or s., 288; syn., 503.  
 anweisen, syn., 536 (d).  
 anwendbar, syn., 521.  
 anwenden, syn., 542.  
 Aperçu, pron., 19.  
 Apfel, decl., 84.  
 apponieren, syn., 498 (b).  
 April, pron., 14, 19.  
 Ar, decl., 77.  
 arg, compar., 142; = sehr, 347.  
 ärgerlich, syn., 521.  
 ärgern, syn., 528, 542.  
 Ärgernis, gender, 94.  
 argwöhnisch, syn., 521.  
 Arm, decl., 74.  
 arm, compar., 142; syn., 521.  
 Armbrust, decl., 83.  
 Arpeggio, pron., 33.  
 Arsenik, gender, 124.  
 arten, h. or s., 290.  
 -artig, 417.  
 Artillerie, pron., 18.  
 Arzt, pron., 21; decl., 82.  
 As, pron., 22; decl., 77.  
 Äschylus, pron., 21.  
 Aspekt, decl., 92.  
 assentieren, 498 (b).  
 assistieren, 498 (b).  
 Ast, decl., 82.  
 Asyl, pron., 19.  
 asketisch, orthog., 30.  
 -at, pron. 16; foreign suffix, 416.  
 Atheist, pron., 8.  
 Athene, pron., 16.  
 Atlas, decl., 76, 92.  
 ätsch, interj., 400.  
 attachieren, syn., 498 (b).  
 attribuieren, syn., 498 (b).  
 au, pron., 23.  
 äu, pron., 23-24.  
 auch, meaning, 389; — wenn, conj., 397 (G); wenn —, conj., 397 (G).  
 auf, sep. prefix, 326, 342 (E. c); syn., 497 (B); prep., 380; — daß, conj., 397 (H).  
 aufbieten, syn., 497 (e).  
 auffahren, syn., 518.  
 aufgeblasen, syn., 521.  
 aufgebracht, syn., 521.  
 aufgelegt, syn., 521.  
 aufgeregt, syn., 521.  
 aufhören, syn., 510, 518.  
 aufkommen, syn., 510.  
 aufmerken, syn., 518.  
 aufmerksam, syn., 521.  
 Aufruhr, decl., 76.  
 aufschrecken, 345 (11).  
 auftauchen, syn., 518.  
 auf und ab, prep., 374.  
 aufwärts, prep., 359.  
 aufwenden, syn., 542.  
 aufwerfen, syn., 540 (d).  
 aufziehen, syn., 542.  
 Auge, decl., 90.  
 Augenmerk, decl., 78.  
 Augur, decl., 92.  
 aus, sep. prefix, 326; meaning, compared with that of ab and ent-, 343 (G. c); with perfective force, 343 (G. d); syn., 497 (B); prep., 386.  
 ausbieten, syn., 503.  
 ausdehnen, syn., 542.  
 Ausflucht, decl., 83.  
 ausgangs, prep., 359.  
 ausgeben, syn., 542.  
 ausgedörrt, syn., 521.  
 ausgenommen, conj., 387.  
 ausgezeichnet, syn., 521.  
 ausgießen, syn., 542.  
 ausgleiten, grad., 303.  
 ausrufen, syn., 540 (d).  
 ausschelten, syn., 542.  
 ausschließlich, prep., 359.  
 aussehen, syn., 518.  
 aussprechen, syn., 542.  
 außer, prep., 382; conj., 355 (2. a, b), 387; — daß, conj., 397 (F); — wenn, 397 (F).  
 außerdem, conj., 389; — daß, conj., 395 (C. b).  
 außerhalb, prep., 359.  
 austauschen, syn., 542.  
 austeilen, syn., 542.  
 ausgewachsen, syn., 465 ((3)).  
 ausweislich, prep., 360.  
 Autochthon, decl., 79.  
 Autograph, decl., 92.  
 Automat, decl., 88.  
 avisieren, syn., 498 (b).  
 Axt, decl., 83.  
 ay, pron., 23.  
 b, pron., 26, 27.  
 Baal, pron., 21.  
 Bach, decl., 82.  
 bachen, grad., 312.  
 backen, grad., 312.  
 Bad, decl., 85.  
 Bakkalaureus, pron., 24.  
 bald — bald, conj., 390.  
 Balduin, pron., 18.  
 Balg, decl., 82, 94.  
 balgen, syn., 542.  
 Balkon, pron., 24.  
 Ball, decl., 82, 94.  
 Ballon, pron., 24.  
 Balsam, pron., 22; decl., 76.  
 Bamberg, pron., 22.  
 Bambus, decl., 91.  
 Ban, decl., 74.  
 Band, decl., 82, 94.  
 Bandit, decl., 78 (a).  
 bange, compar., 142; syn., 336 (b), 499 (C), 521.  
 bängen, syn., 336 (b).  
 Bank, decl., 83.  
 bankerott, syn., 521.  
 Bankert, decl., 76.  
 Bankier, pron., 20.  
 bannen, grad., 314.  
 bar, syn., 515.  
 -bar, pron., 16; meaning, 417; syn., 501 (a).  
 Bär, decl., 87.  
 Barbar, decl., 79.  
 Barchent, decl., 76.  
 barmherzig, syn., 521.  
 Barsch, pron., 21; decl., 74.  
 barsch, pron., 22.  
 Bart, pron., 21; decl., 82.  
 Bärte, pl., pron., 21.  
 Bas, decl., 74.  
 Basis, decl., 87.  
 Baß, decl., 82.  
 Bassin, pron., 24; decl., 93.  
 Bast, decl., 74.  
 Bastard, decl., 76.  
 Bataillon, pron., 24, 35; decl., 93.  
 Bau, decl., 74.

Bauch, decl, 82  
 bauen, grad, 314, syn, 518  
 Bauer, decl, 87, gender, 95, 124  
 Baum, decl, 82  
 bauz, interj, 400  
 Bayer, decl, 87  
 Bazar (now Basar), pron 32  
 be-, pron, 16 (c), inseparable prefix  
 327, meaning 434-5  
 beachten, syn, 510  
 beargwöhnen, syn, 526  
 beben, syn 501 518  
 bedacht, syn, 521  
 bedanken, syn, 529  
 bedenken, syn, 529  
 bedeuten, syn 503  
 bedienen, syn 529  
 bedingen, grad, 308  
 bedrängt, 521  
 bedunkeln, syn, 504  
 bedunken, syn, 504  
 bedürfen, syn, 510  
 bedürftig, syn, 515  
 Beelzebub, pron, 23  
 Beet, decl 77, 95  
 befähigen, syn 542  
 Befehl, decl 75  
 befehlen, grad 310, syn 503  
 begegnen, h or s, 292, syn, 496 (d), 542  
 Begehr, decl, 75  
 begehren, syn 510  
 begierig, syn 515 521  
 beginnen, grad, 309 syn 518  
 beglückwünschen, syn 542  
 begreifen, reflex, 331 (A)  
 begrüßen, syn, 539 (b), 542  
 behagen, syn 494 (a)  
 beharren, h or s, 289 syn, 518  
 behelfen, syn, 529  
 beholfen, syn, 515  
 Behörde, pron 20  
 Behuf, decl 75  
 behufs, prep 360  
 bei, sep prefix 326 syn, 497 (B) prep 366  
 beiderseits, prep, 360  
 beides, conj 387  
 Beil, decl 77  
 Bein, decl 77  
 beisammen, 343 (H)  
 Beispiel, zum —, 389 (C)  
 beißen, grad, 303  
 Beitrag, decl 83  
 beizen, factitive of beißen, 303  
 bekannt, syn 522  
 bekehrt, 336 (b)  
 beklagen, syn, 526, 529, 542

bekleben, grad 301  
 bekleden, syn 542  
 bekloffen, 305  
 bekommen, use in passive construction, 297, with infinitive with zu, 272, h or s, 292, syn, 495 (b)  
 bekömmlich, syn, 500 (a)  
 bekümmern, syn, 531, 543  
 bekummert, syn, 522  
 Belag, decl, 83  
 Belang, decl, 75  
 belästigen, syn 513  
 belaufen, syn, 513  
 belehren, syn 526  
 beleidigt, syn, 522  
 belieben, syn, 336 (b), 494, 497 (g), 504  
 beliebt, syn 522  
 beilen, grad 314 syn 518  
 belustigen, syn 513  
 belustigt, syn 522  
 bemächtigen, syn 529  
 bemeistern, syn 529  
 bemerken, with simple infinitive, 277, syn 541  
 bemerkenswert, syn, 522  
 bemühen, syn, 543  
 benachbart, syn 500 (a)  
 benebst, prep, 367  
 benehmen, syn 526  
 beneiden, syn, 543  
 benennen, syn, 543  
 benötigen, syn 510  
 benötigt, syn, 515  
 beobachten, pron, 27 (b) 43  
 beordern, syn, 543  
 beraten, syn, 543  
 berauben, syn 527  
 beraubt, syn 515  
 berauscht, syn, 522  
 berechnet, syn, 522  
 berechtigten, syn, 527  
 berechtigt, syn, 515  
 bereden, syn, 537  
 Bereich, gender, 124  
 bereit, syn 515, 522  
 bergen, grad, 310  
 Bericht, decl, 75  
 berichten, syn, 538  
 berichtet, syn, 515  
 bersten, grad 309, conjugated with sein, 290  
 berufen, syn, 543  
 beruhen, h or s, 289  
 beruhmen, syn 529  
 beruhmt, syn 522  
 besage, prep 360  
 beschäftigt, syn 522  
 beschämt, syn, 522  
 Bescheid, decl, 75  
 bescheiden, syn, 497 (g) 527, 529  
 scheiden, adjectival part, grad, 314  
 bescheren, grad, 307, 495 (b)  
 beschürmen, syn, 543  
 beschränken, syn, 543  
 beschuldigen, syn, 527  
 beschützen, syn, 543  
 beschwatzen, syn, 543  
 Beschwerde, pron, 20

beschweren, syn, 529  
 beschwingen, grad, 308  
 beschwören, syn 535 (a).  
 besingen, syn, 539 (b)  
 besinnen, syn, 529  
 besonders, conj 390  
 besorgen, syn, 529  
 besorgt, syn, 522  
 besprechen, syn, 543  
 bessern, syn, 529  
 Bestand, decl, 83  
 bestanden, syn 522  
 Besteck, syn, 78  
 bestehen, h and s, 289, syn, 518  
 bestimmt, syn, 522  
 bestreben, syn, 529  
 bestürzt, syn, 522  
 Besuch, decl, 75  
 betäubt, syn 522  
 beteiligt, syn, 522  
 beten, syn 497 (c)  
 betören, syn 543  
 betört, syn 522  
 betrachten, syn, 539 (b).  
 Betrag, decl 83  
 betreffs, in Betreff, 359  
 betroffen, syn 522  
 betruben, syn, 543  
 betrügen, syn, 527  
 Bett, decl, 77, 90 95  
 betten, syn, 197 (g), 504  
 beugen, syn, 196 (d), 543  
 beunruhigt, syn, 522  
 bevor, sep prefix, 326 syn, 497 (B) conj, 394 (B)  
 bewahren, syn, 543  
 bewegen, grad, 307  
 Beweis, decl 75  
 bewerben, decl, 543  
 bewundern, syn, 543  
 bewußt, syn, 515  
 bezahlen, syn, 501  
 bezaubert, syn, 522  
 bezeichnen, syn, 543.  
 bezeichnen, syn, 527.  
 beziehen, syn, 543  
 beziehentlich, 387 (A)  
 beziehungsweise, 387 (A).  
 bezüglich, prep, 360  
 Biber, pron, 18  
 Bibliographie, pron, 42  
 biegen, grad, 306  
 Bier, decl, 77  
 Biest, decl, 85  
 bieten, grad, 306  
 Bild, decl, 85  
 bilden, syn, 513  
 Billet, pron 21, 35  
 bin, pron 15  
 binden, grad, 308 syn 543  
 binnen, prep, 360 367  
 bis, pron 15 prep, 315 (c) 317  
 conj 394 (B)  
 — daß, 394 (B)  
 Bischof, pron 22 (c), 1, 11  
 Bischöfe, pl pron 1, 11  
 Biskuit, pron, 13 (c)  
 bist, pron 13 (c)  
 bisweilen, 110 (c)  
 bitten, 1, 11  
 527, 513

- Blaff, decl., 74.  
 blank, compar., 142.  
 blasen, grad., 313; with infin., 276.  
 blaß, compar., 142; syn., 522.  
 Blatt, decl., 85.  
 Blei, decl., 77.  
 bleiben, grad., 304; s., 289; with modal verbal, 260; with simple infin., 275; syn., 496 (c).  
 bleichen, grad., 303; h. or s., 290.  
 Bleiß, decl., 87.  
 blicken, syn., 519.  
 blind, syn., 522.  
 blinken, syn., 497 (e).  
 blinzeln, syn., 490 (e), 497 (e).  
 Block, decl., 82.  
 bloß, adj., syn., 515.  
 bloß, adv., 348; conj., 391.  
 Blücher, pron., 19.  
 blutig, syn., 522.  
 Bock, decl., 82.  
 Böcklin, pron., 18, 46.  
 Boden, decl., 84.  
 Bogen, decl., 84.  
 Boi, pron., 24.  
 Boitzenburg, pron., 24.  
 Bold, decl., 74.  
 -bold, 415.  
 Boot, decl., 77, 84.  
 Bötien, pron., 20.  
 Bord, decl., 77.  
 Börde, pron., 20.  
 Born, decl., 74.  
 Börse, pron., 20.  
 Borst, decl., 74.  
 Böschung, pron., 20.  
 böse, syn., 500 (a), 522.  
 Bösewicht, decl., 86.  
 Boudoir, pron., 21, 22.  
 Bouillon, pron., 35.  
 Bouquet, pron., 36.  
 Bouteille, pron., 33.  
 Bowle, pron., 22.  
 Brache, pron., 21.  
 Brand, decl., 82.  
 braten, grad., 313.  
 Bratsche, pron., 21.  
 Bräu, decl., 77.  
 Brauch, decl., 82.  
 brauchen, syn., 510, 543.  
 brauen, grad., 314.  
 Braut, decl., 83.  
 Bräutigam, decl., 76.  
 brechen, pron., 17; grad., 310; past indic., brach, pron., 21; past subj. bräche, pron., 21; s., 290; Bahn —, syn., 499 (C).  
 Bredow, pron., 22.  
 Breisgau, gender, 124.  
 brennen, grad., 315; syn., 519.  
 Breslau, pron., 20.  
 Brett, decl., 85.  
 Brezel, pron., 20.  
 bringen, grad., 316; use in passive construction, 297; syn., 509, 543.  
 brinnen, grad., 314.  
 Brombeere, pron., 22.  
 Bronze, pron., 30.  
 Brot, decl., 77, 84.  
 Bruch, pron., 23; decl., 82; gender, 124.  
 Bruder, decl., 84.  
 Brunst, decl., 83.  
 Brust, decl., 83.  
 Brutus, decl., 91.  
 Buch, pron., 23; decl., 85; pl., Bücher, pron., 19.  
 Buche, pron., 23.  
 Buchs, decl., 74.  
 Buchstabe, decl., 81, 87.  
 Buckel, gender and meaning, 95.  
 bücken, syn., 543.  
 Budget, pron., 20.  
 Bug, decl., 82.  
 bugsieren, pron., 23.  
 Bulgar, decl., 88.  
 Bums, decl., 74.  
 Bund, decl., 77, 82; gender, 95.  
 Bündel, gender, 124.  
 Bur, decl., 90.  
 Bureau, pron., 19.  
 bürgen, syn., 497 (e), 546.  
 Bursch, decl., 87.  
 Busch, decl., 82.  
 Büschel, gender, 124.  
 Bussard, decl., 76.  
 Butt, decl., 90.  
 c, pron., 8.  
 ç, pron., 8.  
 Campagna, pron., 34 (c).  
 Canaille, pron., 35.  
 Cäsar, pron., 35; decl., 92.  
 Cello, pron., 31.  
 ch, pron., 8, 29 (3. a, b).  
 Chamäleon, decl., 92.  
 Champagner, pron., 35.  
 champagnern, 257 (3).  
 Chance, pron., 24.  
 Charakter, pron., 29; decl., 79 (c).  
 chartern, pron., 29.  
 Chef, pron., 21.  
 Chemie, pron., 29.  
 -chen, substantival suffix, 409; verbal suffix, 428.  
 Cholera, pron., 16, 29.  
 Chor, pron., 29; decl., 83; gender, 95.  
 Choral, decl., 84.  
 Chrie, pron., 29.  
 Christ, pron., 29; decl., 87, 95.  
 Cicero, decl., 106 (b).  
 Cicerone, pron., 31.  
 -cken, verbal suffix, 428.  
 Clan, decl., 74.  
 Claque, pron., 22.  
 Clique, pron., 19.  
 Cœur, pron., 20.  
 Cortez, pron., 30.  
 Czeche, pron. and orthog., 31.  
 d, pron., 8, 26, 27.  
 da, adverb, 342; = rel. pronoun, 202; conj. with a double construction, 399; sub. conj. of place, 394 (3. A); sub. conj. of time, 394 (B), 395 (c); with adversative force, 394 (B. a); of cause, 396 (E); of condition, 397 (F); of concession, 397 (G); da + prep. (damit, &c.) = rel. pronoun, 201; da denn used relatively, 394 (2. c. Note 2).  
 Dach, decl., 85.  
 Dachs, decl., 74.  
 dafern, conj., 397 (F).  
 daher, conj., 390; sep. prefix, 340 (a).  
 dahingegen, conj., 390.  
 Damhirsch, pron., 22.  
 damit, conj., 397 (H), 400 (a).  
 Damm, decl., 82.  
 dämmern, syn., 336 (b).  
 Dämon, decl., 92.  
 Dampf, decl., 82.  
 danach, sub. conj., 395-6 (C. c, D. 1. A. b).  
 Dank, decl., 74; zu — machen, syn., 499 (C); prep., 360, 367.  
 dankbar, syn., 522.  
 danken, syn., 495 (a), 510, 546 (V).  
 dann, conj., 390 (A. c. C).  
 dar, sep. prefix, 326; meaning, 341 (D).  
 daran daß, conj., 396 (E), 397 (I), 578 (1st par.).  
 darben, syn., 510.  
 Darm, decl., 82.  
 darstellen, syn., 539 (b).  
 darum, conj., 390; — daß, 396 (E), 397 (H).  
 das, def. art., pron., 15, 22; decl., 58.  
 daselbst, 342 (7. A).  
 daß: pron., 15; origin, 400 (a); sub. conj. in substantive clauses, 394 (1. d); in adjective clauses, 394 (2. d); in clauses of manner, 395 (C. d); of degree, 396 (D. 2); of cause, 396 (E); of purpose, 397 (H); of means, 397 (I), use or omission of, 560 (1. c), 568 (f); — nicht, 395 (C. d).  
 Datum, gender, 124.  
 dauern, syn., 533.  
 Daus, decl., 85.  
 davon, sep. prefix., 326.  
 dd, pron., 8, 26-27.  
 Deck, decl., 77.  
 Defizit, decl., 78, 92.  
 deinesgleichen, 208.  
 deinethalb(en), 180.  
 deinetwillen, 180.  
 Deismus, pron., 8.  
 deklamieren, syn., 519.  
 deklarieren, syn., 539 (b).  
 dem, pron., 15.  
 Demant, decl., 88.  
 demnach, conj., 390.  
 Demut, gender, 125.  
 den, pron., 15.  
 Dendrit, decl., 88.  
 denken, grad., 316; syn., 510, 539 (b); sich denken, with simple infin., 277; es denkt mir or mich, 533, 534 (d).



Denkmal, decl, 77, 95  
denn, adv, 351, 353, 354, co-  
ordinate conj, 387, 388,  
sub conj, 396 (D 1 B),  
399 (6), denn daß, 396 (D  
1 B), es sei denn daß, 397  
(F)  
dennoch, conj, 390 (B)  
denunzieren, syn, 539 (b)  
depeſchieren, syn, 497 (e)  
der, art, pron 15 (b), decl,  
58, demon pronoun, 154-8,  
rel pronoun, pron, 15,  
decl, 194, use, 195, replaced  
by welch-, 195, replaced by  
other words, 198-204  
derart, dergestalt, 347, 349,  
derart bis, conj 396 (D 2)  
dere = deren, 156  
dergleichen, 208-9  
derhalben, 390  
derjenige, decl, 158, use as a  
determinative, 158  
derlei, 209  
dermaßen, 348  
dero = deren, 156.  
derohalben, 390  
derowegen, 390  
derselbe, decl, 162, meaning  
and use, 162-3  
derwegen, 390 (C)  
derweil, sub conj, 394 (B)  
Derwisch, decl, 76  
des = das, 156  
desertieren, s, 292  
desgleichen, 208-9, conj, 389  
deshalb, 155 390  
deshalben, 155  
dessenungeachtet, conj, 390  
Dessert, pron, 21.  
deswegen, 155  
deswillen um —, 155  
Detail, pron, 35  
deutsch, etymol, 421 (2 a)  
Dezemvir, decl, 92  
Diakon, decl, 79  
Diamant, decl, 88  
dicht, syn, 522  
duck, syn, 522  
Diebstahl, decl, 83  
dienen, syn, 495 (a).  
dienlich, syn, 522  
Dienst zu —en stehen, syn,  
499 (C)  
dies-, decl, 153, meaning 153  
diesermaßen, 348  
diesseits, prep, 360  
dieweil, sub conj, 394 (B),  
396 (E)  
Ding, decl, 77, 95.  
dingen, grad, 303  
Diphthong, decl, 88  
dir = ihr, 180 (Note).  
Distichon, decl, 91  
doch, 350 351, 353, 354, 389,  
conj, with a double con-  
struction, 391, — daß, 397  
(F)  
Docht, decl, 74  
Dock, decl, 77  
Dogma, pron, 29  
Doktorand, decl, 88

Dolch, decl, 74  
Dolmetsch, decl, 87  
Dom, decl, 74  
dominieren, syn, 495 (a)  
Domino, decl, 92  
Don, pron, 22  
Don Quichotte, pron, 31  
Dorf, decl, 85  
Dorn, decl, 95  
Dorsch, decl, 74  
dort, dorten, 341.  
dorther, 341.  
dorthin, 341.  
dos = des = das, 156 (C)  
Draht, decl, 82  
drahten, syn, 497 (e)  
Drail, decl, 74  
Drama, decl, 91  
Drang, decl, 82  
Drangsall, gender, 124  
drehen, syn, 543  
dreimreden, syn, 499 (C)  
dreschen, grad, 305, 310  
Dresden, pron, 20  
dringen, grad, 308, h. or s,  
291 (b)  
Drittel, gender, 126  
drohen, syn, 495 (a, Note)  
Drost, decl, 74, 87  
Druck, decl, 95  
Drusch, decl, 82  
dt, pron, 11, 28  
Duell, pron, 11  
Duft, decl, 82  
duften, syn, 519  
Duisburg, pron, 19  
dumm, com, 142  
dunkeln, syn, 504  
dunken, grad, 316, syn, 269,  
504  
Duns, decl, 74  
Dunst, decl, 82  
durch, prefix, sep or insep,  
327, prep, 374  
durchfahren, s or h, 288  
durchgehen, s. or h, 288  
Durchlaß, decl, 76  
durchlaucht, 316 (a)  
durchlaufen, h. or s, 288  
durchwandern, h or s, 288  
dürfen, conjugation, 317, uses  
of 318-19 with simple infin,  
276, syn, 510  
duster, pron, 15, 19  
Dutzend, decl, 78  
duzen, pron, 15, syn, 543  
ē, pron, 8, 21  
e, pron, 8 20  
e, unaccented, pron, 23  
e, in French words 8 20  
-e, adverbial suffix, 340 (Note)  
-e, substantival suffix, 403-4  
ebenfalls, conj, 389  
ebenso, 387, ebenso wie, 387  
Eck, decl, 77  
Edwin, pron, 18  
ee, pron, 20  
Effekt, decl, 95  
eh, pron, 20  
ehe, conj, 394 (B)  
eherechen, 329 (Note 1)  
Ehehalt, decl, 87

ehrgeizig, syn, 522  
ei, pron, 23  
Ei, decl, 85  
-ei, 404, 405  
Eidam, pron, 22 decl, 76  
-eien, verbal suffix 428  
Eifersucht, decl, 83  
eifersüchtig, syn, 522  
eigen, syn, 500 (a), 522  
eignen, syn, 496 (c)  
Eiland, decl, 78  
eilen, syn, 331 (B a), 336 (b)  
ein, decl, 59, for use see Ar-  
ticle, as an indefinite, 170,  
einer = man, 189, numeral,  
148, — paar, 171; — wenig,  
173  
ein, sep prefix, 326, meaning  
and use in compounds, 344  
(4), syn, 497 (B), replaced  
by in in dialect, 344 (4 a)  
einfallen, syn, 497 (B)  
einführen, syn, 539 (b), 543  
eingangs, prep, 360  
eingebildet, syn, 522  
eingedenk, syn, 515  
eingehe, h. and s., 288, syn,  
519  
ingenommen, syn, 522  
eingeständig, syn, 515  
einher, 340 (a)  
eintug, decl and meaning, 174,  
syn, 515  
einigen, syn, 543  
einigermassen, 349  
einkehren, 378 (1).  
Einlaß, decl, 76  
einlassen, syn, 543  
einmal, 350 (b)  
einnengen, syn, 543  
einrichten, syn, 543  
eins, syn, 515  
einschiffen, syn, 543  
einschließlich, prep, 359  
einschwören, syn, 543  
einsetzen, syn, 540 (d)  
eintauschen, syn 543  
Einwand, decl, 83  
einwilligen, syn, 519  
eitel, syn, 522  
ekein, syn, 337 (a), 533, 534  
-el, substantival suffix, 405,  
410 (f)  
Elen, pron, 21  
Elend, pron, 21, decl, 78 (d)  
85 (b)  
Elf, decl, 87  
Elisabeth, pron 21  
-eln, verbal suffix, 427  
em, pron in French words, 24  
emp-, pron, 16 (c), meaning,  
435 insep prefix, 327  
empfanglich, syn, 515, 522  
empfehlen, grad, 310, syn,  
539 (b)  
empfinden, with simple infin,  
277, syn, 541 (B a), 541  
(C), 543

- empfindlich, syn., 522.  
 empor, pron., 15; sep. prefix, 326.  
 en, pron. in French words, 24.  
 -en, substantival suffix, 405;  
 -en, -n, -ern, adjectival suffix, 417; -en, verbal suffix, 426-7; -en in weak feminines 89.  
 Ende, decl., 90.  
 end(ig)en, syn., 331 (B. a), 519.  
 enk, enker = euch, euer, 181 (g).  
 enker = euer, 164 (136. a).  
 Enquete, pron., 21.  
 -ens, gen. ending, 100; in compounds, 448 (bb); in ordinal adverbs, 151 (b); in superlative of adverbs, 143 (3. a).  
 -enser, 407 (Note 1).  
 ent, pron., 16 (c); inseparable prefix, 327; meaning, 435; meaning compared with that of ab and aus, 343 (c); syn-tax, 497 (B).  
 entäußern, syn., 529.  
 entbehren, grad., 314; syn., 510.  
 entbinden, syn., 527.  
 entblöden, meaning, 436 (a, b); syn., 529.  
 entblößen, syn., 527, 529.  
 entbrannt, syn., 522.  
 entbrechen, syn., 529.  
 enterben, syn., 527.  
 entfliehen, syn., 519.  
 entgegen, sep. prefix, 326; syn., 497 (B); prep., 367.  
 entgegnen, syn., 497 (e).  
 entgehen, syn., 510.  
 entgelten, syn., 510.  
 entgürten, syn., 529.  
 enthalten, syn., 529.  
 entheben, syn., 527.  
 entkleiden, syn., 527, 529.  
 entladen, syn., 527, 529.  
 entlang, prep., 362, 375.  
 entlangst, prep., 362.  
 entlassen, syn., 527, 529, 543.  
 entlasten, syn., 527, 529.  
 entledigen, syn., 527, 529.  
 entleeren, syn., 527, 529.  
 entlohnern, 436 (2. b), 505.  
 entmennen, syn., 529.  
 entnehmen, syn., 543.  
 entraten, syn., 510, 515.  
 Entree, pron., 24.  
 entringen, syn., 529.  
 entrüstet, syn., 522.  
 entsagen, syn., 498 (B), 510, 529.  
 entscheiden, syn., 543.  
 einschlagen, syn., 529.  
 entschließen, syn., 527, 529, 543.  
 entschlossen, syn., 522.  
 entschuldigen, syn., 530, 543.  
 entschütten, syn., 530.  
 entsetzen, syn., 527, 530.  
 entsinnen, syn., 530.  
 entspringen, syn., 519.  
 entstehen, syn., 495 (b), 519.  
 entübrigen, syn., 527.  
 entweder — oder, 391.  
 entwehren, syn., 527.  
 entwickeln, syn., 465 ((3)).  
 entwohnen, syn., 510.  
 entwöhnen, syn., 527, 530.  
 entwohnt, syn., 515.  
 entziehen, syn., 530.  
 entzückt, syn., 522.  
 entzwei, sep. prefix, 326.  
 -enzen, verbal suffix, 428.  
 Epos, decl., 92.  
 epper, 190 (f. Note 2).  
 eppes, 190.  
 er, pron., 15 (b).  
 er-, pron., 16 (c), inseparable prefix, 327; meaning, 436.  
 -er, substantival suffix, 406-7; adjectival suffix, 421 (b, Note 2), 134 (7. a).  
 erbarmen, syn., 530, 533, 534.  
 Erbe, gender, 95.  
 erblassen, syn., 497 (f).  
 erbleichen, grad., 303.  
 erblicken, with simple infin., 277, 541 (C).  
 erbschleichen, 329.  
 Erbteil, gender, 126.  
 Erde, pron., 20.  
 erdreisten, syn., 530.  
 erfahren, part., syn., 515, 522.  
 erfinden, syn., 539 (b).  
 Erfolg, decl., 75.  
 erfrechen, syn., 530.  
 erfreuen, syn., 527, 530.  
 erfüllt, syn., 515.  
 ergötzen, syn., 527, 530.  
 ergreifen, syn., 543.  
 ergriffen, syn., 522.  
 erhaben, syn., 522.  
 erhalten, with infin. with zu, 272; use in passive construction, 297 (2).  
 erheben, syn., 530, 543.  
 erheitert, syn., 522.  
 erhellen, syn., 519.  
 erholen, syn., 530, 546.  
 erinnern, syn., 527, 530.  
 Erinnerung: sich in — bringen, syn., 499 (C).  
 erkennen, syn., 519, 543.  
 Erkenntnis, gender, 95.  
 erklären, syn., 540 (c).  
 erkranken, syn., 519.  
 erkühnen, syn., 530.  
 erkundigen, syn., 530, 543.  
 -erl, 410 (f).  
 Erlaß, decl., 75.  
 erlassen, syn., 527.  
 erlaucht, 316 (a).  
 erledigen, syn., 527, 530.  
 -erlei, 151, 418.  
 erleichtern, syn., 527, 530.  
 erliegen, syn., 496 (d).  
 erlöschen, grad., 306.  
 ermahnen, syn., 527.  
 ermangeln, syn., 510.  
 ermüden, syn., 510.  
 ermüdet, syn., 522.  
 -ern, verbal suffix, 427; adj. suffix, 417.  
 ernähren, syn., 530.  
 ernennen, syn., 540 (d).  
 erpicht, syn., 522.  
 erraten, syn., 543.  
 erröten, syn., 510, 519.  
 ersättigen, syn., 530.  
 ersättigt, syn., 515.  
 erschallen, grad., 305; syn., 519.  
 erscheinen, syn., 269 ((3)), 496 (d).  
 erschöpft, syn., 522.  
 erschrecken, grad., 310; syn., 510.  
 ersehen, syn., 530.  
 ersichtlich, syn., 522.  
 ersparen, syn., 512.  
 Ersparnis, gender, 124.  
 erst, pron., 20; meaning, 348; conj., 390.  
 erstaunen, syn., 511.  
 erstaunt, syn., 522.  
 erstehen, syn., 495 (b).  
 erstens, conj., 390 (c).  
 erstickt, syn., 522.  
 erstlich, conj., 390 (c).  
 ertappen, syn., 543.  
 ertönen, syn., 497 (f).  
 Ertrag, decl., 83.  
 erübrigen, 332 (B. a).  
 erwachen, syn., 519.  
 erwachsen, syn., 495 (b), 519.  
 erwägen, syn., 530.  
 erwähnen, syn., 511, 544.  
 Erwähnung tun, syn., 511, 515.  
 erwarten, syn., 511.  
 erwecken, syn., 544.  
 erwegen, syn., 530.  
 erwehren, syn., 530.  
 erwidern, syn., 497 (e).  
 Erz, decl., 77.  
 erz-, 432.  
 erzürnen, syn., 544.  
 es, with impersonal verbs, 332-8; as grammatical subject, 457 (2. A); as anticipative subject, 457 (B); situation es, 333, 334, 458.  
 es = ihr, 181 (g).  
 es sei denn daß, conj., 397 (F).  
 essen, grad., 312; syn., 495 (a), 509.  
 Esten, Estland, pron., 20.  
 estnisch, pron., 20.  
 et-, prefix, 432.  
 -et, suffix, 419 (8. c); case ending, 130 (Note 4).  
 etter, 190.  
 ettes, 190.  
 etwa, 351, 353; — nicht, 353; nicht —, 353.  
 etwas, indef. adj., 172; indef. pronoun, 190; so etwas von = solch, 160 (1. a).  
 etwelch, 174 (aa).  
 Etymologie, pron., 16, 42.  
 eu, pron., 23.  
 -eum, suffix, 416 (d).  
 Euter, gender, 124.  
 ex-, prefix, 434 (11).  
 exklusive, prep., 360.  
 ey, pron., 23.

f, pron, 29  
 Fach, decl, 85  
 -fach, 151, 418  
 Faden, decl, 84, 95  
 fahren, grad, 314  
 fähig, syn, 515  
 fahnden, syn, 519  
 fahren, grad, 312, s. or h.  
 291 (a); with simple infin.  
 275, syn, 514 (a)  
 Faksimile, pron, 16  
 Fall, decl, 82  
 fallen, grad, 313, s, 292, syn.  
 519, 540 (B)  
 falls, sub conj, 397 (F)  
 falsch, syn, 522  
 -fälig, 151, 418  
 Faiz, decl, 74  
 Fang, decl, 82  
 fangen, grad, 314  
 Fant, decl, 74  
 Farn, decl, 74  
 Farr, decl, 87  
 Fasan, decl, 92  
 Faß, decl, 85  
 Faun, decl, 74, 87  
 Faust, decl, 83, 114 (4)  
 Fauteuil, pron, 21, 35  
 fechten, grad, 303  
 fehlen, syn, 336 (b), 495 (b),  
 511  
 feilschen, syn, 519  
 Feld, decl, 85  
 Fell, decl, 77  
 Fenn, decl, 77  
 fern, sep prefix syn, 497 (B)  
 ferner, conj, 390  
 Fest, decl, 77  
 festhalten, syn, 519  
 Fettsch, decl, 76  
 Fett, decl, 77  
 feucht, syn, 522  
 feuern, syn, 519  
 Feuilleton, pron, 21, 35  
 Fex, decl, 87  
 Fiaker, pron, 13, 22  
 finden, grad, 303, with modal  
 verbal, 260, with simple in-  
 fin or pres part, 277, syn,  
 544  
 Fink, decl, 87  
 Firlfanz, decl, 76  
 Firma, decl, 87  
 fischen, syn, 519  
 Fjäll, Fjeld, decl, 77.  
 Fjord, decl, 74  
 Flach, decl, 77  
 Flachs, decl, 74  
 Flaps, decl, 74  
 flattieren, syn, 495 (a)  
 Flaus, decl, 74  
 Flausch, decl, 74  
 flechten, grad, 305  
 Fleck, Flecken, 95  
 flehen, syn, 497 (c), 519  
 fleihen, grad, 304  
 Flet, decl, 77  
 fliegen, grad, 306  
 fliehen, grad, 300, syn, 519  
 fließen, grad, 305  
 Floh, decl, 82  
 Flor, decl, 74, 82

Floß, decl, 83  
 Flöz, decl, 77  
 Fluch, pron, 23, decl, 82, pl.  
 Flüche, pron, 19  
 fluchen, syn, with dat, 195  
 (a), with acc., 539 (a), with  
 prep, 511; with gen, 511  
 -flucht, decl, 83  
 Flug, decl, 82  
 flugs, pron, 13, 23  
 Flur, decl, 74, gender, 95  
 Fluß, decl, 82  
 Fokus, decl, 91  
 folgen, s. and h, 292, syn.  
 196 (c, d), 519  
 folgern, syn, 511  
 folglich, conj, 390  
 -förde, pron, 20  
 fordern, syn, 511  
 forschen, syn, 519  
 Forst, decl, 90  
 Fort, pron, 22  
 fort, meaning, 312 (F)  
 fortfahren, h. & s, 291.  
 Fossil, decl, 92  
 Frack, decl, 82  
 fragen, grad, 312, syn, 519,  
 527, 535, 536, 541  
 Frank, decl, 83  
 Fratz, decl, 87.  
 frech, syn, 522  
 frei, syn, 515  
 freigebig, syn, 522.  
 freisprechen, syn, 527  
 fressen, grad, 312, syn, 519  
 Frett, decl, 77  
 freuen, syn, 531, 533, 534  
 freundlich, syn, 522.  
 Frevel, pron, 30  
 Friede, decl, 81  
 frieren, grad, 306, syn, 335  
 (a).  
 froh, syn, 515  
 frohlocken, syn, 511.  
 fromm, compar, 142  
 frommen, syn, 195 (b).  
 fronzen, syn, 495 (a)  
 frönen, syn, 495 (a)  
 Frosch, decl, 82  
 Frost, decl, 82  
 frösteln, syn, 336 (a).  
 Frucht, decl, 83  
 fruchtbar, syn, 522  
 fruchten, syn, 495 (b).  
 Fuchs, decl, 82  
 Fuchsie, pron, 18  
 fühlen, with simple infin, 277.  
 with dependent infin, which  
 has passive force, 291  
 führen, with simple infin, 277.  
 use in passive construction  
 297, syn, 537 (g)  
 Fund, decl, 74  
 Funke, decl, 81  
 funkeln, syn, 519  
 für, prep, 375  
 fürchten, syn, 336 (b), 511,  
 531, 541  
 furchtlos, syn, 522  
 Fürsprech, decl, 87.  
 Fürst, decl, 87  
 Fuß, decl, 74, 82, 95

füßen, syn, 519  
 g, pron, 0, 26, 27.  
 Gang, decl, 82  
 Gans, decl, 83, gender, 95  
 gären, grad, 307.  
 Garn, decl, 77.  
 Garten, pron, 22, decl, 84  
 Gas, decl, 77.  
 Gast, decl, 82.  
 Gastmahl, decl, 77.  
 Gau, decl, 74  
 Gauch, decl, 82  
 Gaul, decl, 82  
 ge-, pron, 16 (c) verbal pre-  
 fix, accent 47 (b), insep  
 prefix, 327, meaning, 137.  
 substantival prefix, 432, gen  
 der, 124 (d)  
 Gebäude, pron, 21  
 gebären, 331 (B a)  
 gebären, grad, 310  
 geben, grad, 312 with modal  
 verbal, 260, 272, es gibt,  
 335, syn, 524 (f), 527.  
 Gebhard, pron, 20  
 gebieten, syn, 503  
 geblendet, syn, 522.  
 geboren, syn, 522.  
 Gebot, decl, 78  
 Gebrauch, decl, 83  
 gebrauchen, syn, 511, 531.  
 gebrechen, syn, 495 (b), 533,  
 534  
 gebühren, syn, 496 (c).  
 Geburt, pron, 23  
 gebürtig, pron, 23  
 Geck, decl, 87.  
 Gedanke, decl, 81.  
 gedehen, grad, 304; s, 290.  
 syn, 195 (b)  
 gedenk, see eingedenk.  
 gedenken, syn, 511, 533, 534  
 geduldig, syn, 522.  
 geelicht, syn, 522.  
 geeignet, syn, 522.  
 Gefalle, decl, 81  
 gefallen, syn, 495 (a)  
 gefaßt, syn, 522  
 gefühllos, syn, 522  
 gefüllt, syn, 515  
 gegen, prep, 376  
 gegenüber, prep, 367, sep  
 prefix, syn, 497 (B)  
 gegenwärts, prep, 360  
 Gehalt, decl, 80, 95  
 gehen, grad, 311, with modal  
 verbal, 260, with simple  
 infin, 275, syn, 336 (b)  
 466 (a), 511 (a), gehen als  
 to pass for, 464 (b (1))  
 Gehöft, pron, 20  
 gehorchen, syn, 496 (c)  
 gehören, use in passive con-  
 struction, 297, syn, 196 (c)  
 519  
 gehörig, syn, 500 (a)  
 gehorsamen, syn, 496 (c)  
 Geist, decl, 86  
 geizig, syn, 515, 522  
 gekrönt, syn, 522  
 Geld, decl, 85  
 gelegentlich, prep, 360

- gelieben, syn., 336 (b), 495 (a).  
 gelingen, grad., 308; s., 200;  
 syn., 336 (b), 495 (b).  
 gellen, grad., 314.  
 gelt, 430.  
 gelten, grad., 309; syn., 272  
 (Note 2), 495 (b), 504.  
 gelüsten, syn., 504, 533, 534.  
 gemach, pron., 21.  
 Gemach, pron., 21; decl., 86.  
 gemächlich, pron., 21.  
 Gemahl, decl., 76.  
 gemahnen, syn., 527, 533, 534.  
 Gemälde, pron., 21.  
 gemäß, pron., 21; prep., 360,  
 368.  
 Gemüt, decl., 86.  
 gen, prep., 376.  
 genau, syn., 522.  
 General, decl., 84.  
 genesen, grad., 312; s., 290;  
 syn., 511.  
 genießen, grad., 305; syn., 511.  
 Gentleman, pron., 33.  
 genug, 174; genung, 41.  
 genügen, syn., 495 (b), 533,  
 534.  
 genug, syn., 499 (C).  
 Genuß, decl., 83.  
 geraten, s., 290; syn., 495 (b).  
 gerecht, syn., 523.  
 erreichen: zum Ruhme —,  
 syn., 499 (C).  
 gereizt, syn., 523.  
 gereuen, syn., 533, 534.  
 gereuig, syn., 515.  
 Gerhard, pron., 20.  
 gerinnen, s., 290.  
 Gernegroß, decl., 76, 93.  
 Gertrud, pron., 20; Gertrude,  
 46.  
 Geruch, decl., 83.  
 gerührt, syn., 523.  
 gesamt, 174.  
 Gesang, decl., 83.  
 gesättigt, syn., 515, 523.  
 geschehen, grad., 312; s., 290;  
 syn., 495 (b).  
 geschickt, syn., 523.  
 Geschlecht, decl., 86.  
 Geschmack, decl., 83.  
 Geschrei, Geschreie, 95.  
 geschweige, conj., 389 (C);  
 — denn daß, 395 (C. d).  
 geschweigen, syn., 511.  
 Geschwulst, decl., 83.  
 Gesell, decl., 87.  
 gesellen, syn., 496 (d).  
 Gesicht, decl., 86, 95.  
 Gespan, decl., 76.  
 Gespenst, decl., 86.  
 Gespons, decl., 76.  
 Gespräch, pron., 21.  
 geständig, syn., 515.  
 Gestank, decl., 83.  
 gestehen, syn., 511.  
 gesund, compar., 142; syn.,  
 523.  
 gesunden, syn., 511.  
 getrauen, syn., 504.  
 getrösten, syn., 531.  
 Gevatter, decl., 90.  
 gewahr werden, syn., 511, 515.  
 gewahren, syn., 511.  
 gewähren, syn., 527.  
 Gewahrsam, decl., 76.  
 gewaltig, syn., 515.  
 Gewand, decl., 86, 95.  
 gewarten, syn., 511, 514.  
 gewärtig, syn., 515.  
 gewärtigen, syn., 511, 531.  
 Gewinn, decl., 76.  
 gewinnen, grad., 309; syn.,  
 519.  
 gewiß, syn., 516.  
 gewohnen, gewöhnen, syn.,  
 511, 544.  
 gewöhnlich, syn., 523.  
 gewohnt, gewöhnt, syn., 516.  
 geziemen, syn., 496 (c).  
 gg, pron., 28–29.  
 gh, pron., 29.  
 Gicht, decl., 85.  
 gierig, see begierig.  
 gießen, grad., 305; syn., 509.  
 Gift, decl., 77, 95.  
 Gigerl, decl., 79.  
 Glas, decl., 85.  
 glatt, compar., 142.  
 Glatz, pron., 21.  
 Glaube, decl., 81.  
 glauben, with simple infin.,  
 277; syn., 279 (5), 496 (c),  
 504, 539 (a).  
 gleich, syn., 497 (B), 500 (a),  
 523.  
 gleichen, grad., 303; syn., 496  
 (d).  
 gleichfalls, 389, 455 (a).  
 gleichwie, conj., 395 (a).  
 gleichwohl, conj., 390 (B).  
 Gleis, decl., 77.  
 gleißen, grad., 314.  
 gleiten, grad., 303; s., 292.  
 Glied, decl., 85.  
 glimmen, grad., 305.  
 Globus, decl., 91.  
 Glück, decl., 77.  
 glücken, s., 290; h., 290; syn.,  
 495 (b).  
 glühen, syn., 519.  
 gn, pron., 9, 29, 34.  
 gnaden, syn., 495 (a).  
 gnädig, syn., 523.  
 Gnom, decl., 87.  
 Gold, decl., 77.  
 Golf, decl., 74.  
 Gör, decl., 90.  
 Gott, decl., 86.  
 Grab, decl., 85.  
 Graben, decl., 84.  
 graben, grad., 312; syn., 519.  
 Grad, decl., 74.  
 Graf, decl., 87.  
 gram, syn., 500 (a).  
 grämen, syn., 544.  
 Gramm, decl., 77.  
 Grammatik, pron., 13, 22.  
 Gran, decl., 77.  
 Grand, decl., 74.  
 Gras, decl., 85.  
 Grat, decl., 74; gender, 124.  
 grätschen, pron., 21.  
 gratulieren, syn., 495 (a), 546.  
 grau, syn., 523.  
 graueln, syn., 336.  
 grauen, syn., 336.  
 grausam, syn., 523.  
 Greif, decl., 87.  
 greifbar, syn., 523.  
 greifen, grad., 303; syn., 519.  
 greinen, grad., 314.  
 grenzen, syn., 519.  
 grenzend, syn., 523.  
 grob, compar., 142.  
 Grobian, decl., 76.  
 Grog, pron., 22, 28.  
 grollen, syn., 495 (a).  
 Gros, decl., 77.  
 groß, compar., 142.  
 Großmogul, decl., 92.  
 großmütig, syn., 523.  
 grübeln, syn., 519.  
 Gruft, decl., 83.  
 Grund, decl., 82.  
 gründen, syn., 544.  
 Grunz, decl., 74.  
 gruselig machen, syn., 499 (C).  
 gruseln, syn., 336.  
 Gruß, decl., 82.  
 grüßen, syn., 539 (a).  
 gu, pron., 29.  
 Guck, decl., 74.  
 gucken, syn., 519.  
 Guckindiewelt, decl., 76.  
 Gudrun, pron., 23.  
 Gurt, decl., 74.  
 Guß, decl., 82.  
 gut, syn., 523.  
 Gut, decl., 85; zu gute halten,  
 syn., 499 (C).  
 gütig, syn., 523.  
 gutsagen, syn., 499 (C).  
 Guttapercha, pron., 31.  
 guttun, syn., 499 (C).  
 h, pron., 26.  
 Haar, decl., 77.  
 haben: conjugation of simple  
 tenses, 254, 315; use as  
 auxil. of tense, 287–93; hat  
 sich was, 332 (E); with  
 modal verbal, 260, 272;  
 with simple infin., 277; syn.,  
 509 (1); 527, 544, omission  
 of, 283 (b).  
 habgierig, syn., 523.  
 habhaft, syn., 516.  
 Hack, decl., 74.  
 Hader, decl., 90.  
 Hafen, decl., 84.  
 Haff, decl., 77.  
 Haft, decl., 74; gender, 95.  
 -haft, 418.  
 haften, syn., 496 (c).  
 Hag, decl., 74.  
 Hagestolz, decl., 76.  
 Hahn, decl., 82.  
 halb, decl., 173, 137 (S).  
 halb, halben, halber, preps.,  
 360.  
 halbwegs, halbweg(e), 361.  
 Hall, decl., 74.  
 Halm, decl., 74.  
 Hals, decl., 82.  
 Halt, decl., 74.  
 halten, syn., 519, 544.

Hamburg, pron 22  
 Hammel, decl, 84  
 Hammer, decl 84  
 han = haben, 315  
 Hand, decl, 83  
 Handel, decl, 84  
 handeln, syn, 519  
 handhaben, grad, 315  
 Hang, decl, 82  
 hangen, hängen, grad, 314,  
 h or s, 289, syn, 519, 544  
 -hans, decl, 83  
 Hanswurst, accent, 49 (7),  
 decl, 76  
 harmen, syn, 531  
 Harnisch, decl, 76  
 harren, syn, 511  
 Harst, decl, 74  
 hart, pron, 22, compar, 142,  
 syn, 523  
 Harz, pron, 21, decl, 77.  
 haschen, syn, 519  
 hassen, syn, 544  
 hatscheln, pron, 21  
 Hau, decl 74  
 Hauch, decl, 74  
 hauen, grad, 313  
 Haufe, decl, 81  
 Haupt, decl, 85  
 Haus, decl 85  
 Haut, decl 83  
 heben, grad, 307, 312  
 Hedwig, pron, 20, 26  
 Heer, decl, 77  
 Heft, decl, 77  
 Heide, 95  
 Heil, decl, 77  
 Heiland, decl, 76  
 heim, 326, 345  
 heimkommen, syn, 499 (C)  
 heimleuchten, syn, 499 (C)  
 heimzahlen, syn, 499 (C)  
 heiß machen, syn, 499 (C)  
 heißen, grad, 313 with sim  
 ple infn as pred comple  
 ment, 275, with simple  
 infn or infn with zu as  
 object, 276-7, with depen  
 dent infn which has passive  
 force, 281, syn, 536 (d),  
 539 (a), das heißt, 389 (C)  
 -heit, 403  
 Held, decl, 87  
 helfen, grad, 310, with simple  
 infn or infn with zu,  
 276-7 syn, 495 (b), 505  
 Hemd, decl, 90  
 her, sep prefix 326, meaning,  
 340 herunter, &c, 340  
 herabbläueln, syn, 519  
 heran, herauf, 340, 342  
 herausheffen, syn, 493 (c)  
 herausziehen, syn, 544  
 Herd, pron, 20  
 Herde, pron, 20  
 Herder, pron, 20  
 hereinbrechen, syn, 519  
 hereindrängen, syn, 332 (D)  
 herfallen, syn, 519  
 Herkules, decl, 91.  
 Hermann, pron, 21  
 Herold, decl, 76

Heros, decl, 92  
 Herr, decl, 87, — sein, syn,  
 516  
 herrschen, syn, 511  
 herseits, prep, 361  
 hervorbrehen, syn, 519  
 hervorgehen, syn, 519  
 hervorragend, syn, 523  
 hervorschießen, syn, 519  
 herwärts, prep, 361.  
 Herz, decl, 91  
 Herzog, decl, 83  
 heulen, syn, 519  
 hier, hueran, &c, 340  
 Hieroglyphen, pron, 18  
 hin, 341, compared with los  
 and zu, 341, sep prefix, 326  
 hinarbeiten, syn, 520  
 hinausgehen, syn, 520  
 hindern, syn, 544  
 hindeuten, syn, 520  
 hindurch, prep, 376  
 hinemzittern, 345 (11)  
 hinken, grad, 314  
 hinseits, prep, 361  
 hinsichtlich, hinsichts, 361  
 hunter, prefix sep or insep,  
 327, prep, 383  
 hinterhalb, prep, 359  
 hinterrucks, prep, 361  
 hinterwärts, prep, 361  
 hinwärts, prep, 361  
 hinweisen, syn, 520 544  
 Hippogryph, decl, 88  
 Hirm, decl, 77  
 Hirsch, decl 88 (3 b)  
 Hirse, decl 87  
 Hirt, decl, 87  
 hoch, pron, 22, compar, 142  
 Hoch, decl, 93  
 höchst, pron, 20  
 Hochzeit, pron, 22  
 hocken, h. or s, 289  
 Hof, decl, 82 den — machen,  
 syn, 499 (C)  
 hoffen, syn, 511  
 hofen

hohnsprechen, syn, 499 (C)  
 hold, syn 500 (a).  
 Holm, decl, 74  
 Holz, decl, 85  
 Hops, decl, 74  
 horchen, syn, 496 (c), 505  
 hren, with simple infn, 277,  
 with dependent infn which  
 has passive force, 281 syn,  
 496 (c), 512, 520, 535 (c),  
 544  
 Horn, decl, 85, 95  
 Horst, decl 74  
 Hospital, decl 86  
 Hotel, pron, 13, 21  
 Hoyerswerda, pron, 24  
 Hub, decl, 82  
 huben und druben, prep, 360  
 Hubert, pron, 21  
 Huhn, decl, 85

hui, pron, 24  
 huldigen, syn, 495 (a).  
 Hulk, decl, 74  
 Hund, decl, 74  
 Hundert, decl, 78  
 Hundstott, decl, 86  
 hungern, syn 336, 520  
 Hupf, decl, 74  
 hüpfen, syn, 520  
 Husar, decl, 79  
 Huß, pron, 23  
 husteln, pron, 19  
 husten, pron, 23 42  
 Hut, decl, 82, gender, 95  
 huten, syn, 512, 544  
 Hydra, pron, 13  
 Hygiene, pron, 18  
 hyper-, 431 (11)  
 Hypochondrie, pron, 29  
 i, pron, 19  
 i, pron, 18  
 i, unstressed, 18-19  
 -i, 410 (f), 415 (Note).  
 -iade, 416  
 -ianer, 407 (c)  
 Ich, decl, 93 (2)  
 -ich, suffix, 415 (17. a Note)  
 -icht, suffix, 415, 419  
 ie, pron, 18  
 -ie, suffix, 404, 405  
 ieh, pron, 18  
 -ien, suffix, 405  
 ier, pron, 18, substantival  
 suffix, 407  
 -ieren, verbal suffix, 428  
 -ig, suffix, 419, pron, 19  
 iher = ihr, 164 (136. a)  
 24  
 unpomeren, syn, 498 (b)  
 Import, Importe, decl, 95  
 importieren, syn 498 (b)  
 umstände, syn, 516  
 in, pron, 15, adv, 344 used  
 instead of ein- in dialect,  
 344 (4 a), prep, 383  
 unbegriffen for eingebegriffen,  
 344 (4 a), 554 ((2))  
 -in, suffix, 407  
 indem, sub conj, 394-5 (B  
 c) 395 (C b), 396 (E), 397  
 (I)  
 indes or indessen, adv, conj  
 'with a double construction,  
 391, sub conj 394, 399  
 Individuum, decl, 91  
 -iner, 407 (Note 1).  
 in Folge, prep 362  
 -ing, 407, 410 (f), -ingen, 408  
 (a)  
 Ingenieur, pron, 20  
 inhaltlich, inhalts, 362  
 inklusive, prep, 362  
 inmaßen, conj, 396 (E)  
 inmatten, prep, 362  
 inne or innen, 344 (b), syn,  
 497 (B), 516.

- innerhalb, prep., 359.  
 innert, prep., 362, 384.  
 Insekt, decl., 92.  
 -insky, suffix, 416 (g).  
 (in)sofern, sub. conj., 396 (1. A. c).  
 (in)soweit, sub. conj., 396 (1. A. c).  
 Instinkt, pron., 30.  
 interessant, syn., 523.  
 Interesse, decl., 92.  
 interessieren, syn., 544.  
 interessiert, syn., 523.  
 inwärts, prep., 362.  
 inwiefern, sub. conj., 396 (D. 1. A. c).  
 inwieweit, sub. conj., 396 (D. 1. A. c).  
 inzwischen (daß), 394 (B. a).  
 -isch or -sch, suffix, 420.  
 -isieren, verbal suffix, 428.  
 -ismus, 416.  
 -ist, suffix, 417 (i).  
 -ität, suffix, 417 (j).  
 j, pron., 31.  
 ja, meaning and stress, 350;  
   ja doch, 351; ja wohl, 351;  
   co-ord. conj., 387, 389.  
 jagen, grad., 312.  
 Jahr, decl., 77.  
 jammern, syn., 533, 534.  
 -jan, pron., 16; decl., 76; suf-  
   fix, 415 (16. b).  
 Jansen, 408 (a).  
 jauchzen, syn., 495 (a).  
 je, sub. conj., 396 (D. 1. A. b);  
   word-order, 598 (d); je  
   nachdem, 396 (D. 1. A. b).  
 jed-, decl. and use, 170.  
 jedermann, decl., 189.  
 jedoch, conj., 391.  
 Jehovah, pron., 26.  
 jemand, decl., 189; syn., 189.  
 jen-, decl. and use, 153.  
 jenseits, prep., 360, 332.  
 Joch, decl., 77.  
 Jockei, pron., 20, 33.  
 Jubiläum, pron., 24.  
 juchzen, pron., 23.  
 jucken, syn., 336 (a), 502 (a).  
 Judas, decl., 91.  
 Jude, 95.  
 jung, compar., 142.  
 Jury, pron., 18, 33.  
 Jus, pron., 23.  
 Juwel, decl., 92; gender, 124.  
 Jux, decl., 74.  
 k, pron., 26, 27, 28.  
 Kadiz, pron. 30.  
 Kaffer, decl. 87.  
 Kaftan, decl., 92.  
 Kahn, decl., 82.  
 Kai, decl., 93.  
 Kain, pron., 23.  
 Kaiserswerth, pron., 20.  
 Kakerlak, decl., 90.  
 Kaktus, decl., 91.  
 Kalb, decl., 85.  
 Kalk, decl., 74.  
 kalt, compar., 142; syn., 336  
   (b).  
 Kamm, decl., 82.  
 Kamp, decl., 82.  
 Kampf, decl., 82.  
 Kanal, decl., 84.  
 Kap, pron., 22; decl., 77.  
 Kapernaum, pron., 23.  
 Kapitel, pron., 13, 19.  
 Kapitell, decl., 86.  
 Kaplan, decl., 84.  
 Kar, decl., 77.  
 Kardinal, decl., 84.  
 karg, compar., 142.  
 Karst, decl., 74.  
 Kasus, decl., 94.  
 Katheder, gender, 124.  
 kauern, h. or s., 289.  
 Kauf, decl., 82.  
 kaufen, grad., 314; syn., 520.  
 kaum (daß), 394 (B), 395 (B.  
   d); — so lange — als bis,  
   394 (B); — daß, 396 (D. 2).  
 Kauz, decl., 82.  
 Keksweib, pron., 14, 20.  
 keifen, grad., 303.  
 keimen, h. or s., 290.  
 kein, decl. and use, 175.  
 -keit, 403.  
 kennen, grad., 315; syn., 539  
   (b).  
 kentern, s., 292.  
 ketten, syn., 544.  
 Khan, decl., 74.  
 Kiebitz, decl., 76.  
 kiezen, grad., 306.  
 Kind, decl., 85.  
 Kinn, decl., 77.  
 Kino, decl., 92.  
 kitzeln, impers., 336 (a).  
 klagen, syn., 497 (e), 520.  
 Klang, decl., 82.  
 Klapp, Klaps, decl., 74, 82.  
 klar, syn., 516.  
 Klatsch, pron., 22; decl., 74.  
 kleben, h. or s., 289; syn., 520.  
 Kleid, decl., 85.  
 kleiden, syn., 331 (B), 505,  
   539 (b).  
 klein, syn., 523.  
 Kleinod, decl., 90.  
 klettern, syn., 520.  
 Klima, decl., 91.  
 Klimax, decl., 76.  
 klimmen, grad., 305.  
 klingeln, syn., 497 (e), 503.  
 klingen, grad., 308.  
 Klonz, decl., 74.  
 Kloon, decl., 74.  
 Klop, decl., 74.  
 Klops, decl., 74.  
 Kloß, decl., 82.  
 Kloster, pron., 22; decl., 84.  
 Klotz, decl., 82.  
 Kluft, decl., 83.  
 klug, compar., 142.  
 Knack(s), decl., 74.  
 Knall, decl., 74.  
 knallen, syn., 490 (e).  
 knapp, compar., 142.  
 Knast, decl., 74.  
 Knauf, decl., 82.  
 Knaus, decl., 82.  
 kneifen, grad., 303.  
 Knie, decl., 77.  
 knieen, h. or s., 289.  
 knirschen, syn., 490 (e).  
 knixen, syn., 520.  
 Knopf, decl., 82.  
 Knorz, decl., 74.  
 Knuff, decl., 82.  
 Knups, decl., 74.  
 knurren, syn., 520.  
 Knust, decl., 82.  
 Kobalt, decl., 76.  
 Kobold, decl., 76.  
 Koch, decl., 82.  
 kochen, syn., 520.  
 ködern, syn., 506.  
 Kodex, decl., 76.  
 Kog, decl., 82.  
 Kognak, pron., 28.  
 Kohl, decl., 74, 116.  
 Koks, pron., 22.  
 Kolk, decl., 74.  
 Komet, decl., 88.  
 kommen, grad., 311; s., 292;  
   with infin. with zu, 272;  
   with simple infin., 275;  
   with perf. part., 266 (c);  
   syn., 466 (a), 496 (d), 505  
   (21), 514 (a), 520; zugute  
   —, syn., 499 (C), zu Hilfe  
   —, 499 (C); zustatten —,  
   499 (C); zu stehen —, 499  
   (C), 506.  
 können, conjugation, 317; uses,  
   319–20; with simple infin.,  
   276.  
 Konsonant, decl., 88 (4. c).  
 Konsul, decl., 92.  
 kontribuiieren, syn., 498 (b).  
 konvenieren, syn., 495 (a).  
 Konzil, decl., 91.  
 koordinieren, syn., 498 (b).  
 Kopf, decl., 82.  
 Korb, decl., 82.  
 Kork, decl., 74.  
 Korn, decl., 85, 95.  
 körnen, syn., 506.  
 Korporal, decl., 84 (4).  
 Korsar, decl., 79.  
 Kosak, decl., 88.  
 kosen, syn., 505.  
 kosten, syn., 505, 512.  
 Kostüm, decl., 92.  
 Kotzebue, pron., 23.  
 Krach, decl., 74.  
 Kraft, decl., 83.  
 kraft, prep., 362.  
 Kragen, decl., 84.  
 Kral, decl., 74.  
 Krampf, decl., 82.  
 Kran, decl., 74.  
 krank, compar., 142.  
 Kranz, decl., 82.  
 Kratz, decl., 74.  
 Kraut, decl., 85, 116.  
 Krebs, pron., 14, 20.  
 kreischen, grad., 314.  
 krepieren, s., 290.  
 Kreuz, decl., 77.  
 kriechen, grad., 305; s., 292;  
   syn., 520.  
 kriegen, pron., 13, 19; grad.,  
   314, 316; use in passive con-  
   struction, 297.

- Krokodil, decl 74  
 Krokus, decl 91  
 Kropf, decl 82  
 Krug, decl 82  
 krumm, compar 142  
 Kuchen, pron 23  
 Küche, pron 19  
 Kuckuck, decl, 76  
 Kuh, decl 83  
 Kulm, decl 74  
 Kult, decl 74  
 kümmer, syn, 195 (b) 531  
 533 531 541  
 Kumpan, decl 87  
 Kumpf, Kump, decl, 74  
 Kumt, decl 77  
 kundig, syn 516  
 kündigen, syn 497 (c)  
 -kunft, decl, 83, suffix 410  
 (18 b)  
 Kunst, decl 83  
 küren, grad 307  
 Kurs, decl 74  
 kurz, compar 112  
 Kuß, decl 82  
 küssen, syn 541  
 Kustos, decl 92  
 Kux, decl 74  
 l, pron 31  
 -la, 410 (f)  
 lächeln, syn, 495 (a) 512  
 lachen, syn 495 (a) 512 197  
 (f)  
 Lachs, decl 74  
 Lack, decl 74  
 Laden, decl 84 96  
 laden, grad 312  
 Lady, decl 92  
 Laeken, pron 22  
 Lager, decl 81  
 lahm, syn 523  
 Lahn, decl 74  
 Lamm, decl 85  
 Land, decl 77 96 116  
 landen, s, 287 (3)  
 lang, compar 142  
 langmütig, syn 523  
 längs, längst, prep 362  
 längsseits, prep 362  
 laß, syn 516  
 lassen, grad 313 with infin  
 with zu, 272 (6) with simple  
 infin 276 with dependent  
 infin which has passive  
 force 281 nom or acc in  
 connection with a dependent  
 infin 463 (2 A a Note)  
 merken, fühlen, or wissen  
 lassen, 541 (c) in the sense  
 to become syn 496 (c) with  
 an acc of the direct object  
 and a pred infin 511 (C)  
 zur Ader —, syn 499 (C)  
 Latz, decl 74  
 Laub, decl 77  
 lauern, syn 512  
 Lauf, decl 82  
 laufen, grad 313 s, 202  
 with simple infin 275  
 syn 520  
 Laus, decl 83  
 lauschen, syn 496 (c) 512  
 Laut, decl 71 laut, prep 362  
 läuten, syn 197 (c) 506  
 Lautschwund, decl 83  
 -le, 110 (f)  
 leben, syn, 495 (a) 512 520  
 Lebewohl, decl 78 (t)  
 Leck, decl 77 gender, 121  
 ledig, syn, 516  
 leer, syn 516  
 legen, with simple infin, 275  
 leihen, syn 520  
 lehren, grad 316 (a), with  
 simple infin or infin with  
 zu, 276 syn 536 (f)  
 Leib, decl 86  
 Leichnam, decl 76  
 leid, syn 199 (C) 500 (a)  
 leiden, grad 303 syn 120  
 leihen, grad 304  
 leimen, syn 511  
 -lein, 409 11  
 leiten, syn 537 (g)  
 lenken, syn 537 (g)  
 Lenz, decl 88  
 Leopard, decl 88  
 -ler, suffix 106 (Note)  
 lernen, with simple infin or  
 infin with zu, 276  
 lesen, grad 312  
 Leithe, pron 16  
 letzt, superl 116 (a)  
 letzter-, compar 116 (a) 117  
 (c)  
 Leu, decl 87  
 leuchten, syn 195 (a)  
 leugnen, syn 512  
 leutselig, syn 523  
 Levkoie, Levkoje, pron 21  
 30  
 -li, 410 (f)  
 -lich, adj suffix 122 syn  
 501 (a) adv suffix 129 sub  
 stantival suffix 115 (17 a  
 Note)  
 Licht, decl 85 96  
 Lid, pron 18 decl 85  
 lieben, syn 197 (g)  
 hebevoll, syn 523  
 -li, 410 (f)  
 liegen = lügen, 307  
 Lilie, pron 18  
 -ling, suffix 107  
 -lings, adv suffix 429 (c)  
 lingual, pron 33  
 Linguist, pron 23  
 links, pred adj, 135 prep  
 362  
 Lob, decl 77  
 loben, syn 514  
 lobpreisen, grad 304 conju  
 gation 329  
 lobsingen, 329 199 (C)  
 Loch, decl 85  
 locken, syn 506  
 Log, pron 22 28 decl 77  
 Lohn, decl 82  
 lohnen, syn 509 512 531  
 Lolch, decl 71  
 Lorbeer, pron 22 decl, 90  
 Lorch, Lork, decl, 71  
 Los, decl 77.  
 los, adj syn 516  
 los, sep prefix 326 311 (A)  
 losgehen, syn 520  
 loshacken, syn 520  
 lossprechen, syn, 528  
 Lot, decl 77  
 Lützen, pron 20  
 Luchs, decl 71  
 Ludwig, pron 23  
 Luft, decl 81  
 lügen, grad 307 syn, 197 (c)  
 Luise, pron 11  
 Lustpold, pron 11  
 Lump, decl 71 87 96  
 Lurch, decl 71  
 Lurks, decl 71  
 Lust, decl 81  
 lüsten, syn 533 (c) 531  
 lüster, syn 523  
 Luther, pron 11 22  
 lutherisch, pron 22 16 (d)  
 lynchen, pron 19  
 m, pron 33  
 Maar, decl 77  
 Maat, decl 71  
 machen, with infin with zu,  
 272 277 with simple infin  
 277 syn 175 (a Note) 499  
 (C) 513 (a) 510 (d) 510  
 (B) 511  
 Macht, decl 83 macht, prep,  
 362  
 mächtig, syn 516  
 Magd, pron 21 decl 83  
 Magen, decl 81 (a)  
 mager, compar 112  
 Magnet, decl 85  
 Magyar, pron, 36 decl, 88  
 Mahl, decl 77  
 mahlen, grad 312  
 mahnen, syn 528  
 Mahr, decl 74  
 Mal, decl 85 96  
 Maid, decl 76  
 Major, decl 91 (a Note)  
 Mal, decl 77  
 Malz, decl 77  
 Mama, decl 92  
 man, pron 22 decl 189  
 Mangel, decl 84  
 mangeln, syn 195 (t) 512  
 mangels, prep 362  
 Mann, decl 86 96  
 Mantel, decl 81  
 mar, 190 (d Note 2)  
 Marchese, pron 29  
 Marie, pron 18  
 Markt, decl 82  
 Marquis, pron 36  
 Mars, decl 90  
 Marsch, decl 82  
 Marschall, decl 83  
 marschieren, h or s, 291 (a)  
 März, decl 88  
 Maskulinum, decl 91  
 Maß, decl 77  
 maßen, conj 396 (f)  
 mäügen, syn 531  
 Mast, decl 90

Mathilde, pron., 26.  
 Matthäus, pron., 24.  
 Matz, decl., 74, 82.  
 Maul, decl., 85.  
 Maus, decl., 83.  
 Mechanik, pron., 29.  
 Mecklenburg, pron., 20.  
 Meer, decl., 77.  
 Medaille, pron., 35.  
 Mehl, decl., 77.  
 mehr, 175; *mehrer-*, 145, 171;  
   *mehr* = *noch*, 346.  
 meiden, grad., 304.  
 meinesgleichen, 208.  
 meinethalben, 180.  
 meinetwegen, 180.  
 meinetwillen, 180.  
 Meister, syn., 516.  
 Melancholie, pron., 29.  
 melken, grad., 305.  
 Menelaus, pron., 23.  
 mengen, syn., 544.  
 Mensch, decl., 85, 87, 96.  
 mer = *man*, 190 (*d. Note 2*).  
 merken, with simple infin.,  
   277; grad., 315 (*Note*); syn.,  
   520.  
 Merkmal, decl., 77.  
 messen, grad., 312.  
 Messieurs, pron., 20.  
 Mignon, pron., 33.  
 mild, syn., 523.  
 Mineral, decl., 92.  
 mir, pron., 18; = *wir*, 180 (*e. Note*).  
 mischen, syn., 544.  
 Mischmasch, decl., 76.  
 Misdroy, pron., 24.  
 Miß, decl., 92.  
 miß, insep. verbal suffix, 327;  
   meaning, 441; substantival  
   and adjectival suffix, 432.  
 mißbehagen, syn., 494 (*a*).  
 mißbrauchen, syn., 512, 531.  
 missen, syn., 512.  
 mißfallen, syn., 495 (*a*).  
 mißgestimmt, syn., 523.  
 mißglücken, s., 290; syn., 495  
   (*b*).  
 mißlingen, s., 290; syn., 495  
   (*b*).  
 mißraten, s., 290; syn., 495 (*b*).  
 mißtrauen, syn., 496 (*c*).  
 mißtrauisch, syn., 523.  
 mit, pron., 15; sep. prefix, 326;  
   syn., 497 (*B*); prep., 368.  
 mithin, conj., 390.  
 mitleidig, syn., 523.  
 Mitra, pron., 15.  
 mitsammen, 343 (*H*).  
 mitsamt, prep., 368.  
 mitspielen, syn., 497 (*B*).  
 mittels, mittelst, preps., 362;  
   synonymous with *von*, *durch*,  
   *mit*, 362.  
 Mittwoch, decl., 76; gender,  
   126.  
 mitwirken, syn., 520.  
 Möbel, decl., 90.  
 mögen, conjugation, 317; uses,  
   320; with simple infin., 276.  
 Mohn, decl., 74.

Mohr, decl., 74, 87.  
 Molch, decl., 74.  
 Moment, gender, 96.  
 Mond, pron., 22; decl., 74, 96.  
 Monolith, decl., 88.  
 Moor, decl., 77.  
 Moos, decl., 77, 96.  
 Mops, decl., 82.  
 Morast, decl., 84.  
 Mord, decl., 74; pl., 116.  
 mörderisch, syn., 523.  
 Mosaik, pron., 23.  
 Most, decl., 75.  
 Muck(s), decl., 75.  
 müde, syn., 516, 523.  
 Muff, decl., 75; meaning, 95;  
   gender, 125.  
 Mund, decl., 75.  
 munden, syn., 495 (*a*).  
 Murks, decl., 75.  
 Mus, decl., 77.  
 Muselmann, decl., 87.  
 Museum, decl., 91.  
 Musikus, decl., 94.  
 Muskel, decl., 90.  
 müssen, conjugation, 317; uses,  
   320; with simple infin., 276.  
 müßig, syn., 516.  
 Mutter, decl., 85, 96.  
 Muttermal, decl., 77.  
 Mutterteil, gender, 126.  
 Mutz, decl., 75.  
 Myrte, pron., 19.  
 Mystik, pron., 20.  
 n, pron., 33.  
 Nabel, decl., 84.  
 nach, pron., 15, 21; sep. prefix,  
   326, 369 (*f*); syn., 497 (*B*);  
   prep., 369.  
 nachäffen, syn., 505.  
 nachahmen, syn., 505.  
 Nachbar, decl., 90.  
 nachdem, conj., 394 (*B*); 396  
   (*D. 1. A. b, E*).  
 nachdenken, syn., 520.  
 Nachfahr, decl., 87.  
 Nachlaß, decl., 76.  
 nachlassen, syn., 520.  
 nachmachen, syn., 505.  
 nachsichtig, syn., 523.  
 nachsinnen, syn., 520.  
 nächst, pron., 21; prep., 369.  
 nachsuchen, syn., 520.  
 Nacht, decl., 83.  
 nachteilig, syn., 523.  
 Nachweis, decl., 76.  
 Nagel, decl., 84.  
 Nagelmal, decl., 77.  
 nageln, syn., 544.  
 nagen, syn., 519.  
 nahe, compar., 142; syn., 500  
   (*a*); sep. prefix, 497 (*B*).  
 nahen, sich nähern, syn., 331  
   (*B. a*), 496 (*d*).  
 -nahme, suffix, 416 (*18. c*).  
 nähren, syn., 531.  
 Naht, decl., 83.  
 Name, decl., 81.  
 namens, prep., 363.  
 namentlich, conj., 389, 390.  
 nämlich, pron., 21; adj., 163  
   conj., 387, 388, 389.

Nanny, decl., 106 (*b*).  
 Napf, decl., 82.  
 Narr, decl., 87.  
 naschen, syn., 509 (*1*).  
 naß, compar., 142; syn., 523.  
 -nd, suffix, 415.  
 neben, prep., 384.  
 nebst, pron., 20; prep., 370.  
 necken, syn., 544.  
 nehmen, grad., 310; use in  
   passive construction, 297;  
   syn., 509 (*1*), 544.  
 neiden, syn., 543.  
 neidisch, syn., 523.  
 neigen, syn., 544.  
 nennen, grad., 315; with simple  
   infin., 276; syn., 539 (*a*),  
   544.  
 -ner, suffix, 406 (*Note*).  
 Nerv, decl., 90.  
 Nest, decl., 85.  
 Netz, decl., 77.  
 neugierig, syn., 523.  
 ng, pron., 33.  
 nich = *nicht*, 351.  
 nicht, origin, 190 (*g. Note 2*);  
   meaning, 351, 352 (*b*), 353  
   (*D. b*), 354 (*h*); position, 591  
   (*dd*); — *doch*, 351 (*B*):  
   *doch* —, 351 (*B*); — *etwa*,  
   353 (*D. c*); *doch* — *etwa*, 354  
   (*h*); *warum* — *gar*, 351 (*B*);  
   double and pleonastic *nicht*,  
   351 (*a*).  
 nichts, decl. and syn., 190.  
 nichtsdestoweniger, conj., 390  
   (*B*).  
 Nichtsnutz, decl., 93.  
 nicken, syn., 490 (*e*).  
 nid, prep., 370.  
 nieder, sep. prefix, 326, 341  
   (*B. a*).  
 niederkommen, syn., 512.  
 niederwärts, prep., 363.  
 niemand, decl. and syn., 189.  
 nießen, syn., 511.  
 Niet, decl., 77.  
 nimmer, 346 (*2*).  
 Nimmersatt, decl., 93.  
 -nis, suffix, 411; gender, 124.  
 nit = *nicht*, 351.  
 nix, 190 (*g*).  
 noch, 345; *noch* — *noch*, 389.  
 Nock, decl., 77.  
 Nord, decl., 75.  
 nördlich, prep., 363.  
 nordwärts, prep., 363.  
 Not, decl., 83; *not tun*, syn.,  
   499 (*C*); *not sein*, syn., 499  
   (*C*), 516; *not haben*, syn.,  
   516.  
 nötig, von nöten, syn., 516.  
 nun, adv. conj., 390; meaning,  
   345; sub. conj., 396 (*E*).  
 Nunzius, decl., 91.  
 nur, meaning, 347, 348, 353  
   (*C*), 354 (*f*), conj. with a  
   double construction, 391;  
   *nur mehr* = *nur noch*, 346;  
   — *daß*, conj., 391 (*a*), 397  
   (*F*).  
 Nuß, decl., 83.



- nutzen, nützen, syn, 495  
 ð, pron, 22  
 ð, pron, 22  
 ð, pron, 21  
 ð, pron, 20  
 ða, pron, 21, 22  
 ob, pron, 15 sep prefix 326,  
 syn, 497 (B), prep, 370,  
 sub conj in substantive  
 clauses, 394 (1 d), in adj  
 clauses 391 (2 d), = wenn,  
 396 (f), = obgleich, 397  
 (G), und ob = obgleich, 397  
 (G) ob — ob, (ib), ob —  
 auch, (ib), ob = als ob, 395  
 (C a)  
 ober, prep, 384  
 oberhalb, prep, 359, 363  
 Oberst, decl, 87  
 oberwärts, prep, 363  
 obgleich, conj, 397 (G)  
 obliegen, sep and insep, 327  
 (Note)  
 obschon, conj, 397 (G)  
 Obst, pron, 22  
 obwohl, conj, 397 (G)  
 Ochs, decl, 87.  
 oder, 387  
 oe, pron, 10  
 oey, pron, 20  
 Oeynhausen, pron, 20  
 oh, pron, 10  
 oh, pron, 20  
 Oheim, pron, 26, decl, 76  
 Ohm, decl, 75  
 ohne, prep, 376, conj, 355  
 (2) 397, — daß, 395 (C b, d),  
 397 (f)  
 ohnerachtet, prep, 364  
 ohngeachtet, prep, 364  
 Ohr, decl, 91  
 Ohr, decl, 77.  
 oi, pron, 10  
 Oktant, decl, 88  
 Oktroi, pron, 22  
 oktroieren, pron, 22  
 Oi, decl, 77  
 Olm, decl, 75  
 om, pron in French words, 24  
 Omnibus, decl, 91  
 on, pron in French words, 24  
 oo, pron, 10  
 öppis, 190  
 opponieren, syn, 498 (b)  
 Orchester, pron, 29  
 Ort, decl, 75 96  
 os = ihr, 181 (g)  
 -ös, 426  
 Ost, decl, 75, 96  
 Osten, pron, 22  
 osten, prep, 363  
 Ostern, pron, 15 22, number  
 and gender, 113 (1), 117 (a)  
 Österreich, pron, 20  
 östlich, prep, 363  
 ostwärts, prep, 363  
 ou, pron, 10, 23  
 ow, pron, 10, 22  
 oy, pron, 10  
 p, pron, 10, 26  
 Paar, decl, 77, ein paar, 171  
 Pakt, decl, 75  
 Palais, pron, 21.  
 Partizipium, decl, 91  
 Pasch, decl, 75, 82  
 Paß, decl, 82  
 passen, syn, 496 (c)  
 passieren, h or s, 26S, s, 290,  
 syn, 495 (b)  
 Pastor, decl, 79, pl Pastors,  
 106 (1)  
 Patient, pron, 35  
 Patrouille, pron, 35  
 Pausback, decl, 70  
 Pech, decl, 77  
 Pedell, decl, 88  
 Pennal, decl, 80  
 per, prep, 377  
 Petschaft, decl, 78  
 pf, pron, 35  
 Pfad, decl, 75  
 Pfaff, decl, 87  
 Pfahl, decl, 82  
 Pfand, decl, 85  
 Pfau, decl, 87  
 pfeifen, grad, 303, syn, 197  
 (c), 506  
 -pfen, verbal suffix, 428  
 Pfénning, 40 (c)  
 Plus, pron, 23  
 Poch, decl, 75  
 pochen, syn, 495 (a)  
 Pol, decl, 75  
 Pommer, decl, 87  
 Popanz, decl, 76 (c)  
 Port, decl, 75  
 Posten, pron, 22  
 Postillon, pron, 35  
 pph, pron, 30  
 Pracht, decl, 83  
 Präfekt, decl, 88  
 prahlen, syn, 520  
 Prahm, decl, 75  
 Prall, decl, 75  
 Präsent, decl, 86  
 präsidieren, syn, 499 (b), 520  
 predigen, syn, 497 (c).  
 preisen, grad, 301, syn, 539  
 (b)  
 preisgeben, syn, 499 (C)  
 pressieren, syn, 336 (b)  
 Prezel, pron, 20  
 Primas, decl, 92  
 Prinz, decl, 87  
 Prinzip, decl, 91 (d)  
 Produkt, decl, 96  
 Profuß, decl, 79  
 promenieren, s, 202  
 proponieren, 499 (b)  
 Propst, pron, 15 22, decl, 82  
 Protz, decl, 87  
 prüfen, syn, 535 (c)  
 prügeln, syn, 511  
 Psalm, decl, 90 (a)  
 pseudo-, prefix, 131 (11)  
 pst, interj, 401  
 Puff, decl, 82  
 Puls, decl, 75  
 Pult, decl, 77.  
 Punkt, decl, 75  
 punkto, prep, 363  
 Punsch, decl, 75  
 pusten, pron, 23  
 Putsch, decl, 75  
 Putz, decl, 75  
 qu, pron, 35  
 Qualm, decl, 75  
 Quart, decl, 77.  
 Quarz, pron, 14, 21, decl, 75  
 quasi-, prefix, 434 (11)  
 Quast, decl, 75  
 Quedlinburg, pron, 20.  
 quellen, grad, 305, s, 290  
 Queue, pron, 20  
 Quitt, syn, 516  
 Quotient, decl, 88  
 r, pron, 32, 31  
 räcken, grad, 306, syn, 541  
 Rad, decl, 85  
 radebrechen, 329  
 Rand, decl, 86  
 Ranft, decl, 82  
 Rang, decl, 82  
 rappeln, syn, 336 (b)  
 rasen, s or h, 291 (a)  
 rasend, syn, 523  
 Rat, decl, 82 116  
 raten, grad, 313 syn, 506  
 520 546 (V)  
 ratschlagen, 329  
 Rätsel, pron, 21

Ratz, decl., 75.  
 rauben, syn., 525.  
 rauchen, syn., 520.  
 Raum, decl., 82.  
 Rausch, decl., 82.  
 Reagens, decl., 92.  
 Recht, decl., 77; recht machen, syn., 499 (C).  
 rechts, uninfl. adj., 135; prep., 363.  
 Reck, decl., 77.  
 Rede stehen, syn., 499 (C).  
 reden, syn., 506, 499 (C).  
 Reep, decl., 77.  
 Reff, decl., 77.  
 Regiment, decl., 86.  
 Reh, decl., 77.  
 reiben, grad., 304; syn., 544.  
 Reich, decl., 77.  
 reich, syn., 523.  
 reichen, syn., 520.  
 reif, syn., 523.  
 reimen, syn., 520.  
 reinigen, syn., 531.  
 Reis, decl., 85.  
 reisen, s., 292; syn., 520.  
 reißen, grad., 303; s., 290.  
 reiten, grad., 303; s. or h., 288 (Note), 291; with infin., 275.  
 Relief, pron., 13, 19.  
 remedieren, syn., 495 (b).  
 Renaissance, pron., 21.  
 Rendezvous, pron., 23.  
 rennen, grad., 310, 315.  
 Rentier, pron., 18.  
 Reptil, decl., 92 (e).  
 respektive, 387.  
 Ressort, pron., 22.  
 Ressource, pron., 23.  
 Rest, decl., 96.  
 Restaurant, decl., 92.  
 reuen, syn., 533, 534.  
 Reveille, pron., 35.  
 Revue, pron., 19.  
 Rhinoceros, decl., 92.  
 -rich, suffix, 415.  
 richten, syn., 545.  
 riechen, grad., 305; syn., 520.  
 Ried, decl., 77.  
 Riff, decl., 77.  
 Rind, decl., 85.  
 ringen, grad., 308.  
 rings, prep., 363.  
 ringsum, prep., 363.  
 rinnen, grad., 309; s., 292.  
 rittlings, prep., 363.  
 Rival, decl., 79.  
 Robert, pron., 21.  
 Rock, decl., 82.  
 Rohr, decl., 77, 84.  
 Roß, decl., 78.  
 Rost, decl., 75.  
 rosten, s., 290.  
 rot, compar., 142; syn., 523.  
 ruchbar, pron., 23.  
 Ruck, decl., 75.  
 Rückgrat, decl., 78.  
 rücksichtlich, prep., 363.  
 rückwärts, prep., 363.  
 Ruf, decl., 75.  
 rufen, grad., 313; syn., 506, 539 (a).

ruhig, syn., 523.  
 rühmen, syn., 531, 539 (b).  
 rühren, syn., 520.  
 Rum, pron., 23.  
 Rumpf, decl., 82.  
 rümpfen, syn., 497 (f), 545.  
 Rutsch, decl., 75.  
 s, pron., 29, 31.  
 -s, gen. ending, 72-3; as plural sign, 93, 105; in compounds, 448 (B), 449 (ff); as adv. suffix, 429 (1. a), 430 (a), 453 (A. a).  
 Saal, decl., 82.  
 Sack, decl., 82.  
 Saft, decl., 82.  
 sagen, syn., 506, 539 (a), 540 (B).  
 -sal, pron., 16; meaning, 412.  
 Salm, decl., 75, 88.  
 Salomo, pron., 16.  
 Salpinx, decl., 76.  
 Salz, decl., 78.  
 salzen, grad., 313.  
 -sam, pron., 16; meaning, 425; syn., 501 (a).  
 Same, decl., 81.  
 Samt, decl., 75.  
 samt, prep., 370.  
 sämtlich, decl., 174.  
 Sand, decl., 96.  
 Sang, decl., 82.  
 Sarazen(e), decl., 88.  
 Sarg, decl., 82.  
 Satellit, decl., 88.  
 satt, syn., 516.  
 Sattel, decl., 84.  
 sättigen, 531.  
 Satyr, pron., 20; decl., 92.  
 Satz, decl., 82.  
 Sau, decl., 83, 96.  
 sauber, compar., 142.  
 Sauce, pron., 22.  
 sauer werden, syn., 499 (C).  
 Saufaus, decl., 93.  
 saufen, grad., 306.  
 saugen, grad., 307.  
 Saum, decl., 82.  
 Savoyen, pron., 24.  
 sch, pron., 29.  
 -sch, see isch.  
 Schacht, decl., 75, 82.  
 Schaden, decl., 84.  
 schaden, syn., 495 (b).  
 schädlich, syn., 500 (a).  
 Schaf, decl., 78.  
 schaffen, grad., 313.  
 Schaft, decl., 82.  
 -schaft, 412.  
 Schalk, decl., 75.  
 Schall, decl., 75.  
 schallen, grad., 305.  
 schämen, 531.  
 scharf, compar., 142.  
 Schatz, decl., 82.  
 schätzen, syn., 545.  
 Schaum, decl., 82.  
 schäumen, syn., 520.  
 -sche, suffix, 407 (Note 2).  
 Scheck, decl., 87.  
 scheiden, grad., 304; s., 292.  
 scheinen, grad., 304, with

modal verbal, 260; with infin. with zu with active force, 269 ((3)).  
 Scheit, decl., 96.  
 scheitern, s., 290.  
 schellen, grad., 305; syn., 497 (e), 506.  
 Schelm, decl., 87.  
 schelten, grad., 309; syn., 520, 528, 539 (a), 545.  
 -schen, verbal suffix, 428.  
 Schenk, decl., 87.  
 schenken, with infin. with zu, 272; syn., 509 (1).  
 scheren, grad., 307.  
 scherzen, syn., 512, 520.  
 Scherzo, pron., 30.  
 scheuen, syn., 531.  
 schicken, with infin. with zu, 272; with simple infin., 275; syn., 520, 545.  
 schieben, grad., 306.  
 schielen, syn., 520.  
 schier, meaning, 348.  
 schießen, grad., 305; syn., 520.  
 Schiff, decl., 78.  
 Schild, decl., 85, 96.  
 schildern, syn., 539 (b).  
 Schilf, decl., 78.  
 schimpfen, grad., 309 (1. a); syn., 520, 539 (a).  
 schimpflich, syn., 523.  
 schinden, grad., 308.  
 Schlaf, decl., 82.  
 schlafen, grad., 313.  
 Schlag, decl., 82.  
 schlagen, grad., 313; h. or s., 290; with infin. with zu, 272; reflex., 332 (b); syn., 490 (e), 545.  
 Schlagetot, decl., 93.  
 Schlaks, decl., 75.  
 Schlamp, decl., 75.  
 Schlaps, decl., 75.  
 Schlauch, decl., 82.  
 schleichen, grad., 303; s., 292; with simple infin., 275; syn., 514.  
 schleifen, grad., 303.  
 schleiß (intrans.), grad., 303; s., 290.  
 Schleswig, pron., 20.  
 schliefen, grad., 305.  
 schließen, grad., 305; syn., 545.  
 schlingen, grad., 308.  
 Schloß, decl., 85.  
 Schlot, decl., 75.  
 Schlucht, decl., 83.  
 Schluck, decl., 75.  
 Schluff, decl., 83.  
 Schlund, decl., 82.  
 Schlupf, decl., 82.  
 Schlurf, decl., 82.  
 Schluß, decl., 82.  
 Schmach, pron., 21.  
 schmähén, syn., 520.  
 schmal, compar., 142.  
 schmatzen, syn., 490 (e).  
 Schmaus, decl., 82.  
 schmecken, syn., 495 (a).  
 schmeicheln, syn., 495 (a), 495 (Note), 531.

schmeißen, grad, 303  
 schmelzen, grad, 305, s, 290  
 Schmerz, decl, 90  
 schmerzlich, syn, 523  
 schmiegen, syn, 545  
 schmollen, syn, 495 (a)  
 Schmuck, decl, 75  
 schmunzeln, syn, 497 (f)  
 Schnabel, decl, 84  
 Schnaps, decl, 82  
 schnauben, grad, 307  
 schneiden, grad, 303  
 schneien, grad, 314  
 Schnur, decl, 83  
 Schock, decl, 78  
 Schof, decl, 75  
 schon, meanings 346 351 (i, j)  
 schonen, syn, 497 (g), 512  
 Schopf, decl, 82  
 Schöps, decl, 87.  
 Schorf, decl, 75  
 Schöß, decl, 75  
 Schoß, decl, 82  
 Schott, decl, 78  
 Schrank, decl, 82  
 Schrapnell, decl, 93  
 schrauben, grad, 307  
 schrecken, grad, 310  
 schreiben, grad, 304, syn, 497 (e), 520, 545, reflex, 332 (b)  
 schreiben, grad, 304, syn, 497 (e), 506, 520  
 schreien, grad, 303, s, 292 syn, 514 (a)  
 schrunden, grad, 308  
 Schrot, decl, 78  
 schroten, grad, 313  
 Schrund, decl, 82  
 Schub, decl, 82  
 Schubbejack, decl, 93  
 schuchtern, syn, 523  
 Schuft, decl, 75  
 Schutt, decl, 75  
 schutten, decl, 88  
 Schupf, decl, 75  
 Schupp, decl, 75  
 Schurf, decl, 82  
 Schurz, decl, 75, 96  
 Schuß, decl, 82  
 schütteln, syn, 336 (a), 490 (e)  
 schützen, syn, 545  
 schwach, compar, 142, syn, 523  
 Schwager, decl, 84  
 Schwalch, decl, 75  
 Schwamm, decl, 82  
 Schwan, decl, 82  
 schwänen, syn, 496 (d)  
 Schwang, decl, 82  
 Schwank, decl, 82  
 schwanken, syn, 514 (a)  
 Schwanz, decl, 82  
 schwären, grad, 307, s or h, 290  
 Schwarm, decl, 82  
 schwärmen, syn, 520

schwarz, pron, 22, compar, 142, syn, 523  
 schweben, h. or s, 289  
 Schwedt, pron, 20  
 schweigen, grad, 301, syn, 497 (g), 512  
 Schwen, decl, 78  
 schwellen, grad, 305 s, 290  
 Schwert, pron, 14, 20, decl, 85  
 Schwetz, pron, 20  
 schwimmen, grad, 309, s or h, 291 (a)  
 schwindeln, syn, 336 (b)  
 schwinden, grad, 308, s, 292  
 schwingen, grad, 308  
 Schwof, decl, 75  
 schwören, grad, 308, 313, syn, 495 (a), 520  
 Schwulst, decl, 83, 96  
 Schwung, decl, 82  
 Schwur, decl, 82  
 Schwyz, pron, 18  
 Scipio, decl, 106 (b)  
 See, decl, 90, gender, 96  
 segeln, s, 292, with infin, 275, syn, 520  
 segnen, syn, 497 (g)  
 sehen, grad, 312, with modl verbal, 260, with simple infin, 277, with dependent infin which has passive force, 281, syn, 539 (b)  
 sehnen, syn, 545  
 Seil, decl, 78  
 sein, grad, 312, use as auxiliary of tense, 287-293, aux of voice, 296 (B), 297-8 (4), s, 289, with the modl verbal, 259, with the simple infin, 275 (b), 270 (4), with the prep infin, 270 (4), syn, 495 (b), 496 (c), omission of, 283 (b), 493 (b) Note, 558 (4)  
 seinesgleichen, 208  
 seinethalben, 180  
 seinetwegen, 180  
 seinetwillen, 180  
 seit, prep, 370, conj, 394 (B), 396 (E)  
 seitab, prep, 363  
 seitdem, conj, 394 (B)  
 seitens, prep, 363  
 seitlich, prep, 363  
 seitwärts, prep, 363  
 sekundieren, syn, 495 (b)  
 -sel, suffix, 412  
 selbänder, 152 (c. (2))  
 selber, 188  
 selbst, 188, adv, 188 conj, 389, — wenn, 397 (G)  
 selbstweit, 152 (c. (2))  
 selig, syn, 516  
 -selig, suffix 426 412 (2)  
 -sen, verbal suffix, 428  
 senden, grad, 315, syn, 509 (1)  
 sengen, fact, 309 (c)  
 Seraph, decl, 94  
 setzen, with simple infin, 275  
 sich = uns, 186 (1 b)

sicher, syn, 516  
 sichern, syn, 528  
 Sieb, decl, 78  
 siedeln, grad, 305.  
 Siel, decl, 78  
 Signal, pron, 16, 29.  
 singen, grad, 308  
 sinken, grad, 308, s, 292, syn, 497 (f)  
 Sinn, decl, 90  
 sinnen, grad, 309  
 sint, conj, 396 (E)  
 sintemal, conj, 396 (E)  
 sir = sich, 186 (Note)  
 sitzen, grad, 312 h or s, 289, syn, 496 (c), with prep infin, 270 ((4)), with pres part, 270 ((4))  
 Skalp, decl, 75  
 Ski, decl, 86  
 so, sub conj, 396-7 (F, G)  
 co-ord conj, 390, rel pro noun 203 (5), after condit or concess clause, 558 (2 a), so doch = obgleich, 397 (G).  
 sobald, sub conj, 394 (B), 398 (1 c)  
 Sod, decl, 75  
 sofern, sub conj, 396 (1 A. c)  
 Sog, decl, 75  
 sogar, word order after, 391  
 Sohn, decl, 82  
 solange, sub conj, 394 (B), 398 (1 c)  
 solch, decl, 159, use as a determinative, 160, use instead of a personal pronoun, the numeral ein, the indef welch, the determinative der, 160, 181-2  
 solchergestalt, 349  
 solchermassen, 349  
 sollen, conjugation, 317, uses, 321, with simple infin, 276  
 somit, conj, 390  
 sonach, 390  
 sonder, prep, 377.  
 sondern, 387, compared with aber and allein, 388  
 söner = ihr, 164 (136 a)  
 sonstwer, 190 (e)  
 sorgen, syn, 497 (g), 512  
 soweit, sub conj, 390 (1 A c).  
 sowie, conj, 387, 394 (B), 395 (C a)  
 sowohl — als (wie), 387, 388  
 sp, pron, 11, 30, 31.  
 Spalt, decl, 75 96  
 spalten, grad, 313  
 Span, decl, 82  
 Spann, decl, 75  
 Spant, decl, 91  
 sparen, syn, 512  
 sparsam, syn, 523  
 Spaß, decl, 82  
 Spat, decl, 75  
 Spatz, decl, 88  
 speien, grad, 304  
 speisen, grad, 315

- spenden, syn., 509 (1).  
 Sphinx, decl., 76.  
 Spiel, decl., 78.  
 spielen, syn., 492 (A), 512.  
 Spill, decl., 78.  
 Spind, decl., 78.  
 spinnen, grad., 309.  
 Spital, decl., 86.  
 Spitz, decl., 88.  
 spleißen, grad., 303; s., 290.  
 Sporn, decl., 90.  
 spotten, syn., 513, 539 (a).  
 sprechen, grad., 310; past indic. sprach, pron., 21; past subj. spräche, pron., 21; syn., 506, 520.  
 sprengen, 292 (D); 309 (c).  
 sprießen, grad., 305; s., 290.  
 Spriet, decl., 78.  
 springen, grad., 308; with simple infin., 275; s., 290; leck, or ein(en) Leck —, 290.  
 Springinsfeld, decl., 76.  
 Sproß, decl., 75.  
 sprossen, h. or s., 290.  
 Spruch, decl., 82.  
 Sprung, decl., 82.  
 Spuk, decl., 75.  
 Spund, decl., 82.  
 spüren, with simple infin., 277.  
 ss, ß, 17 (D. a) 30 (2).  
 st, pron., 30, 31.  
 Staat, decl., 90.  
 Stab, decl., 82.  
 Stachel, decl., 90.  
 Stadt, decl., 83; pl. Städte, pron., 21.  
 Stag, decl., 78.  
 Stahl, decl., 75.  
 Stahl(en), 82.  
 sta(h)n, grad., 313.  
 Staks, decl., 75.  
 Stall, decl., 82.  
 Stamm, decl., 82.  
 Stand, decl., 82.  
 standhalten, syn., 499 (C).  
 Star, decl., 75.  
 stark, compar., 142.  
 starren, syn., 520.  
 Start, decl., 75.  
 starten, s. or h., 287 (3).  
 Statut, decl., 92.  
 statt, prep., 359; conj., 355 (2. a, b), 387; — daß, 395 (C. d).  
 staunen, syn., 513.  
 stechen, grad., 310; past indic. stach, pron., 21.  
 stecken, grad., 310; h. or s., 289; syn., 545.  
 stehen, grad., 313; h. or s., 289; with modal verbal, 260; with simple infin., 275; with prep. infin., 270 ((4)); with pres. part., 270 ((4)); syn., 466 (a), 496 (c), 506, 545; zu Diensten —, 499 (C); Rede —, 499 (C).  
 stehlen, grad., 311.  
 steif, syn., 523.  
 steigen, grad., 304; s., 292.  
 Steinmetz, decl., 88.  
 Stelldichein, decl., 93.  
 Stephan, pron., 21.  
 sterben, grad., 310; s., 290; syn., 509 (1st par.), 520.  
 stets, pron., 20.  
 steuern, syn., 496 (d), 506.  
 sticheln, syn., 520.  
 stieben, grad., 306.  
 Stiefel, decl., 90.  
 Stift, decl., 85.  
 stimmen, syn., 495 (b).  
 stinken, grad., 308.  
 Stock, decl., 75, 82, 96.  
 Stoff, decl., 75.  
 stolz, syn., 523.  
 Stopf, decl., 75.  
 Storch, decl., 82.  
 Stoß, decl., 82.  
 stoßen, grad., 313; syn., 545.  
 strafen, syn., 528.  
 Strahl, decl., 90.  
 strahlen, syn., 520.  
 Strand, decl., 75.  
 stranden, s., 292.  
 Strang, decl., 82.  
 Strauch, decl., 82, 86.  
 straucheln, s., 292.  
 Strauß, decl., 75.  
 streben, syn., 520.  
 streichen, grad., 303.  
 streiten, grad., 303.  
 streng, syn., 523.  
 streuen, syn., 495 (b).  
 Strolch, decl., 75.  
 Strom, decl., 82.  
 Strumpf, decl., 82.  
 Strunk, decl., 82.  
 Stück, decl., 78.  
 Student, decl., 88.  
 studieren, syn., 381 (c), 492 (A).  
 Stuhl, decl., 82.  
 Stumpf, decl., 82.  
 stunden, syn., 495 (b).  
 Stupf, decl., 75.  
 Stups, decl., 75.  
 Sturm, decl., 82.  
 sturm, compar., 142 (4).  
 Sturz, decl., 82.  
 stürzen, s., 292.  
 stützen, syn., 520.  
 stützen, syn., 545.  
 subscribieren, syn., 520.  
 substituieren, syn., 499 (b).  
 suchen, pron., 23; syn., 520, 545.  
 Sucht, decl., 83.  
 Sud, decl., 75.  
 südlich, prep., 363.  
 südwärts, prep., 363.  
 suggerieren, syn., 499 (b).  
 sukzedieren, syn., 499 (b).  
 Sumpf, decl., 82.  
 Sund, decl., 75.  
 super-, prefix, 434 (11).  
 Surtout, pron., 20.  
 Sympathie, pron., 20.  
 Synkope, pron., 34.  
 t, pron., 26, 27.  
 Tabak, decl., 76.  
 tadeln, syn., 545.  
 Taft, decl., 75.  
 Tag, decl., 75.  
 Takt, decl., 75.  
 Tal, decl., 85.  
 Talg, decl., 75.  
 Talisman, decl., 76.  
 Talk, decl., 75.  
 Tang, decl., 75.  
 Tank, decl., 75.  
 Tanz, decl., 82.  
 Taps, decl., 75.  
 Taß, decl., 75.  
 tasten, syn., 332 (D).  
 Tatar, decl., 88.  
 täte er = wenn er nicht wäre, 225 (Note).  
 Tau, decl., 78.  
 taub, syn., 523.  
 taufen, syn., 539 (a).  
 taugen, syn., 495 (b), 521.  
 Taugenichts, decl., 93.  
 tauglich, syn., 523.  
 Tausend, decl., 78.  
 taxieren, syn., 545.  
 Team, decl., 92.  
 Teil, decl., 78; gender and meaning, 96, 126; zuteil werden, syn., 499 (C).  
 teilhaben, syn., 521.  
 teilhaft, teilhaftig, syn., 516.  
 teilnehmen, syn., 521.  
 teils — teils, conj., 390.  
 -tel, suffix, 413.  
 Telegraph, decl., 88.  
 telegraphieren, syn., 497 (e).  
 telefonieren, syn., 497 (e).  
 Tenor, decl., 79, 84.  
 Terrain, pron., 21.  
 Tesching, decl., 78.  
 Teufel = nicht, 353 (B. d).  
 th, pron., 28.  
 Theseus, pron., 23.  
 Thron, decl., 75.  
 ti, pron., 35 (3. (10)).  
 Tief, decl., 78.  
 Tier, decl., 78.  
 tir = ihr, 180 (e. Note).  
 Titan, decl., 79.  
 titulieren, syn., 539 (a).  
 Toast, pron., 22; decl., 75.  
 Tochter, decl., 84.  
 Tod, decl., 75, 116.  
 Toilette, pron., 22.  
 toll, syn., 523.  
 Tolpatsch, decl., 76.  
 Ton, decl., 82.  
 Topf, decl., 82.  
 Topp, decl., 90.  
 Tor, decl., 78, 88.  
 torkeln, syn., 514 (a).  
 tot, syn., 523.  
 Tour, pron., 23.  
 trachten, syn., 521.  
 tragen, grad., 313; with simple infin., 277; syn., 545; Rechnung —, syn., 499 (C).  
 Trakt, decl., 75.  
 Tran, decl., 75.  
 Trank, decl., 82.  
 Transit, decl., 76.  
 Trapezoid, pron., 10.  
 Traß, decl., 75.  
 Trauch, decl., 75.

- trauen, syn , 496 (c), 504, 521  
 trauern, syn , 521  
 Traum, decl , 82  
 traumen, syn , 336 (b), 496 (d), 521, 539 (a)  
 traurig, syn , 523  
 treffen, grad , 311, with infin with zu, 272, with simple infin , 277 (d)  
 treiben, grad , 304  
 trennen, syn , 545  
 treten, grad , 312, h or s , 292, syn , 521  
 treu, syn , 500 (a)  
 treulos, syn , 523  
 Tribun, decl , 92  
 triefen, grad , 305, syn , 521  
 triegen = trugen, 307  
 trinken, grad , 308, syn , 509 (1), 521  
 Triumvir, decl , 92  
 trocknen, h. or s., 290 (c)  
 Trog, decl , 82  
 Troisdorf, pron , 22  
 Troll, decl , 75  
 Tropf, decl , 82, 96  
 Trosch, decl , 75  
 Troß, decl , 75  
 trosten, syn , 528, 531  
 trotz, prep , 363  
 trotzdem, conj , 390, 397 (G), 399  
 trotzen, syn , 495 (a)  
 Truchseß, decl , 88  
 trugen, grad , 307  
 Trumm, decl , 85  
 Trumpf, decl , 82  
 Trupp, decl , 75, 97  
 Tuch, pron , 23, decl , 78, 97  
 Tuff, decl , 75  
 Tuilerie, pron , 19  
 -tum, pron , 16, decl , 85, meaning, 413  
 tun, grad , 316, with simple infin , 278, with infin with zu, 279, syn , 495 (a), 499 (C), 513, 545  
 Tunsichtgut, decl , 93  
 Tupf, decl , 75  
 Turban, decl , 92  
 Turm, decl , 82  
 Tusch, decl , 75  
 tz, pron , 35  
 ü, pron , 22  
 u, pron , 23  
 ü, pron , 19  
 ü, pron , 19  
 u = ü, 19, 20  
 übel, syn , 336 (b), 500 (b)  
 uber, prep , 384 prefix. sep and insep 327 syn 497 (B), — sein, 500 (a)  
 uberdes, conj 389  
 überdrussig, syn 516  
 überführen, syn 528  
 überhaupt, meaning 348  
 überheben, syn 528 532  
 überhan, prep , 364  
 überhoben, syn 516  
 überhoren, syn 535 (c) 536  
 überkommen, h or s , 288, syn 506  
 überlassen, with infin with zu, 272  
 überlegen, syn , 523  
 überrrascht, syn , 523  
 überreden, syn , 537  
 überschütten, syn , 545  
 überströmen, syn , 521  
 übertragbar, syn , 524  
 überwältigt, syn , 524  
 überweisen, syn , 528  
 überzeugen, syn , 528, 532  
 ubrig, decl , 175  
 ubrigens, conj , 390  
 Üchtritz, pron , 19  
 u dgl = und dergleichen.  
 Uhu, pron , 26, decl , 76  
 u, pron , 11, 24 (4)  
 Ulan, decl , 79  
 Ulk, decl , 75  
 Ulrich, pron , 23  
 um, pron , 15 23, prep , 377, prefix, sep or insep , 327, syn , sometimes with dat , 497 (B)  
 um, pron in French words 24  
 um — willen, 364, um deswil-  
 len, weil, 155 (a)  
 umgeben, syn , 524  
 umhin, 319 (2 b), 569 (a) 570 (c)  
 umkommen, syn , 521  
 umwölkt, syn , 524  
 un-, prefix 433  
 un, pron , in French words 24  
 unachtend, syn , 517  
 unangesehen, prep , 364  
 Unart, decl , 76 (b)  
 — weuu, 537 (c)  
 undurchdringlich, syn , 524  
 unempänglich, syn , 524  
 unempfindlich, syn , 524  
 unentwegt, 308 (c)  
 unerachtet, prep , 364 conj , 397 (G)  
 unfern, prep , 364  
 unfreundlich, syn , 524  
 -ung, 414, -ungen, 408 (a)  
 Ungar, decl , 88  
 ungeachtet, prep , 364, conj , 397 (G)  
 ungeduldig, syn , 524  
 ungehalten, syn 524  
 ungerechnet, prep , 364  
 ungewiß, syn , 524  
 ungläubig, syn , 517  
 Unhold, decl 76  
 unschuldig, syn , 516  
 unserens, unsererer, 209  
 unseresgleichen, 208  
 unsichtbar, syn , 524  
 unter, prefix sep or insep 327, syn , 497 (B), prep 385  
 unterdes or unterdessen, co-  
 ordinating or subordinating  
 conj , 390, 394 399  
 unterfangen, syn , 532  
 unterhalb, prep , 359  
 unterhalten, syn , 545  
 unterliegen, h or s , 289  
 unterrichten, syn , 537  
 Unterschluß, decl , 76  
 unterstehen, syn , 532, 538  
 Untertan, decl , 88  
 unterwärts, prep , 364  
 unterwege(n), 344  
 unterwegs, 344  
 unterweisen, syn , 537 (f)  
 unterwinden, syn , 525 (b), 532  
 unterziehen, syn , 532  
 unweit, prep , 364  
 unwissend, syn , 517  
 uo, pron , 11  
 Ur, decl , 75  
 ur-, prefix, 433  
 -ur, suffix 417 (k)  
 Urlaub, decl , 76  
 Urteil, decl , 78  
 urteilen, syn , 521  
 usw. = und so weiter.  
 -ut, pron , 16  
 v, pron 11, 30, 32  
 Vater, decl , 84  
 ver-, pron , 16 (c), insep pre-  
 fix 327 meaning 438-41  
 verantworten, syn 532  
 verargwohnen, syn , 526  
 verbergen, syn , 545  
 verbleichen, grad , 303, syn , 513  
 Verbot, decl , 78  
 verbreiten, syn , 545  
 Verb(um), decl , 917  
 verdächtig, syn , 512  
 verdächtigen, syn , 523  
 verdenken, syn , 528  
 verderben, grad , 310  
 verderblich, syn , 524  
 verdienen, syn , 513  
 Verdienst, gender, 97  
 verdingen, syn , 539 (b)  
 verdrießen, grad , 305, syn , 533 534  
 Verein, decl , 76  
 verfahren, h or s , 291  
 verfallen, syn , 496 (d)  
 verfehlen, syn , 511  
 verfluchen, syn , 495 (a)  
 vergeben, syn , 495 (b), 507  
 vergehen, syn 545  
 vergessen, grad , 312, with  
 infin with zu, or sometimes  
 with a simple infin , 276,  
 syn , 513  
 vergessen, adj part , syn , 517  
 vergewissern, syn , 528, 532  
 Vergewissnait, decl , 78, 93  
 Vergleich, decl 76  
 vergleichbar, syn , 524  
 vergleichen, syn , 525 (b)  
 Verhack, decl , 76  
 verhaften, 545  
 verhängen, syn , 545  
 verharren, h or s , 289  
 Verhau, decl , 76  
 verheiraten, syn 545  
 verheifen, syn , 493 (c), 546  
 (V)  
 verhindern, syn , 497 (g)

- verhören, syn., 535 (c), 536.  
 verjagen, syn., 528.  
 verkaufen, syn., 545.  
 verklagen, syn., 528, 545.  
 verkleiden, syn., 545.  
 verkuppeln, syn., 545.  
 verladen, syn., 545.  
 verlangen, syn., 513, 533, 534, 545.  
 verlassen, syn., 545.  
 verlässigen, syn., 545.  
 verleiden, grad., 303.  
 verletzt, syn., 524.  
 verleugnen, syn., 513, 532.  
 verlieben, syn., 545.  
 verliebt, syn., 524.  
 verlieren, grad., 306; syn., 545.  
 Verlies, decl., 78.  
 verloben, syn., 545.  
 verlobt, syn., 524.  
 verlohnen, syn., 531.  
 Verlust, decl., 76.  
 verlustig, syn., 517.  
 verlustigt, syn., 517.  
 vermählen, syn., 545.  
 vermessen, syn., 532.  
 vermieten, syn., 539 (b).  
 vermissen, syn., 513.  
 vermittelt, vermittelst, prep., 364; synonymous with von, durch, mit, 362.  
 vermöge, prep., 364; synonymous with kraft and vermittels, 362.  
 vermögen, syn., 532, 545.  
 vermuten, syn., 532.  
 vermutend, syn., 517.  
 vernehmen, with simple infin., 277.  
 verraten, 545.  
 verrucht, pron., 23.  
 versagen, syn., 495 (b), 532.  
 verschieben, syn., 545.  
 verschieden, syn., 524.  
 verschonen, syn., 497 (g), 512.  
 versehen, syn., 532.  
 verseigen, grad., 314.  
 versichern, syn., 507, 528, 532.  
 versichert, syn., 517.  
 verständig, syn., 517.  
 Versteck, decl., 78.  
 verstecken, syn., 545.  
 verstehen, syn., 532, 538, 545.  
 Versuch, decl., 76.  
 vertagen, syn., 545.  
 vertauschen, syn., 545.  
 verteilen, syn., 545.  
 Vertrag, decl., 83.  
 vertrauen, syn., 496 (c).  
 verträsten, syn., 532.  
 verwägen, grad., 307; syn., 532.  
 verwandt, syn., 524.  
 verwarnen, syn., 528.  
 verwegen, grad., 307; syn., 532.  
 verweigern, syn., 524, 532.  
 verweilen, syn., 521.  
 Verweis, decl., 76.  
 verweisen, syn., 528, 546.  
 verwenden, syn., 546.  
 verwogen, 307 (2).  
 verworren, grad., 310.  
 verwundern, syn., 532.  
 verzagen, syn., 513.  
 verzeihen, syn., 495, 507, 532.  
 Verzicht, decl., 76.  
 verzichten, syn., 521.  
 Vesper, gender, 97.  
 Veteran, decl., 79.  
 Vetter, decl., 90.  
 Vieh, decl., 85.  
 viel, decl., 175.  
 Vielflach, decl., 78.  
 Vielfraß, decl., 76.  
 Viertel, pron., 19.  
 vierzehn, pron., 19.  
 Villa, decl., 92.  
 Violoncell, pron., 31.  
 vize-, prefix, 434 (11).  
 Vlies, decl., 78.  
 Vogel, decl., 84.  
 Vogelscheu, gender, 126.  
 Vogt, pron., 22; decl., 82.  
 Volk, decl., 85.  
 voll, prefix, sep. or insep., 327; adj., voll or voller, 137 (8); syn., 517.  
 Vollblut, decl., 78.  
 vollends, word-order after, 391.  
 von, pron., 15; prep., 370; von . . . seiten, prep., 364; von . . . wegen, prep., 364.  
 vor, pron., 15; sep. prefix, 326; syn., 497 (B); prep., 386.  
 vorauf, syn., 497 (B).  
 voraus, syn., 497 (B).  
 vorbehaltlich, prep., 365.  
 vorbei, syn., 497 (B), 507.  
 vorbereiten, syn., 546.  
 -vörde, pron., 20.  
 Vorfahr, decl., 88.  
 vorgängig, prep., 372.  
 vorher, syn., 497 (B).  
 vorkommen, syn., 561 (b).  
 Vormund, decl., 86.  
 versprechen, syn., 521.  
 Vorteil, pron., 22.  
 vorteilhaft, syn., 524.  
 vorüber or vorbei in connection with verb of motion, s., 288; syn., 507.  
 Vorwand, decl., 83.  
 vorwärts, prep., 365.  
 w, pron., 31.  
 wachen, syn., 384 (über, 1 (a). Note), 513, 495 (b).  
 wachsam, syn., 524.  
 wachsen, grad., 313; s., 290.  
 Wagen, decl., 84.  
 wägen, grad., 306.  
 wählen, syn., 540 (d).  
 wännen, with simple infin. or pres. part., 277; syn., 539 (a).  
 wahren, syn., 513.  
 während, prep., 365; sub. conj., 394 (B. a), 397 (G).  
 wahrnehmen, syn., 513.  
 Wal, decl., 75.  
 Wald, decl., 86.  
 Walfisch, pron., 22.  
 Walküre, pron., 22.  
 Wall, decl., 82.  
 Wallach, decl., 76.  
 Walm, decl., 75.  
 Walnuß, pron., 22.  
 Walroß, pron., 22.  
 walten, syn., 513.  
 Wams, decl., 85.  
 Wand, decl., 83.  
 wandeln, s., 292; with simple infin., 275.  
 wandern, s., 292.  
 wann, conj., adv., 399 (9), 394 (B. b).  
 Wanst, decl., 82.  
 Want, decl., 91.  
 Warl, decl., 75.  
 warm, comp., 142; syn., 336, 499 (C).  
 warnen, syn., 528, 546.  
 Warp, decl., 75.  
 Wart, decl., 75.  
 warten, pron., 22; syn., 513.  
 -wärts, adv. suffix, 429.  
 warum = worum, 342.  
 was, interrog. pronoun, pron., 15, 22, decl., 191; rel., use, 205; = als, 399.  
 waschen, grad., 313.  
 Wasser, decl., 84.  
 Watt, decl., 91.  
 Wau, decl., 75.  
 Wauwau, decl., 76.  
 weben, grad., 307.  
 wedeln, syn., 490 (e).  
 weder, sub. conj., 396 (B), 399 (7); weder — noch (or oder, or weder), correl. conj., 389.  
 weg, pron., 13, 15; sep. prefix, 326; meaning compared with that of fort, 342.  
 -weg, 429 (e).  
 wegen, prep., 360, 365.  
 wegwerfen, syn., 546.  
 weh(e), syn., 555.  
 Wehl, decl., 78.  
 Wehr, decl., 78, 97.  
 wehren, syn., 496 (d), 532.  
 wehtun, syn., 499 (C).  
 Weib, decl., 85.  
 weichen, grad., 303; s., 292; syn., 496 (d).  
 weigern, syn., 532.  
 Weih, decl., 88.  
 Weihnachten, number and gender, 113.  
 weil, sub. conj. of time, 304 (B); of cause, 396 (E), 569.  
 weinen, syn., 521.  
 -weise, 429 (e).  
 weisen, grad., 304; syn., 521, 528, 546.  
 weismachen, syn., 499 (C).  
 weiter, sep. prefix, 326.  
 welch: indefinite numeral, 176; interrog. & rel. adj., 163-4; inter. pronoun, decl., 193; used in expressions of identity, 193 (a); rel. pronoun, decl., 197; use, 198; replaced by der, 195-8; replaced by other words, 198-204; indef. and general determinative, 159 (3).  
 Welf, decl., 85, 88.  
 welken, s., 290.

wenden, grad, 315 syn, 516  
wenig, decl, 176, ein —, 173  
wenn, sub conj of time, 391  
(B) 393 (b, c) of manner  
in the combination als wenn,  
395 (C a), in conditional  
clauses 396 (F), 581, in  
concessive clauses 397 (G),  
as an adv = wann, 391 (B  
b), — anders, 397 (I) —  
gleich, 397 (G) — schon,  
397 (G), — auch, 397 (G),  
auch —, 397 (G), as a rel,  
202 (C b)  
wer, pron, 15 indef pronoun,  
190 (e) inter pronoun, 191—  
3, rel pronoun, 205  
werben, grad, 310  
werden, pron, 11 20 conju-  
gation, 254 (c), 295, grad  
310, s, 290, with simple  
infin, 275, syn, 496 (c), 465  
(33), 521  
werden, grad, 310, syn, 190 (c)  
Werft, decl, 78  
Werk, decl, 78  
Wert, pron, 20  
wert, syn, 517  
wesentlich, syn 524  
westlich, prep, 365  
westwärts, prep, 365  
wetteifern, 329  
wetten, syn, 521  
wettlaufen, 329  
wettrennen, 329  
wider, pron, 18 insep prefix,  
327, sep or insep prefix,  
327, meaning 441, syn, 497  
(B) prep, 378  
widerfahren, widerstehen, &c.,  
syn, 498 (a)  
widerhallen, syn, 521  
widern, syn, 336, 495 (a)  
widergenfalls, conj, 399  
wie, co-ordinat conj, 387, 388  
explanatory conj, 389 sub  
conj, 394 (1 d 2 d, 3 B),  
395 (c) 395—6 (C a D 1  
B, E), 397—9 sub conj used  
instead of als, 397—9 (1 a  
Note 1 b Note d, 2 c, 3  
4 a), used with appositives  
486 (f) used as a relative,  
202—3 (B, C f, D (1), E),  
wie wenn, 395 (C a)  
Wiedehopf, decl, 76  
wieder, sep or insep prefix,  
327  
wiegen, grad, 306 with simple  
infin 277  
wiewohl, conj 397 (G)  
Wiking, decl 86  
Wille(n), decl 81  
wollen, prep, 365  
willfahren, syn 495 (a)  
Willy, pron 18  
winden, grad 308  
winken, syn 497 (e) 506, 490  
(e)  
wissen, conjugation, 317 with  
infin with zu, 272 with  
simple infin or pres part,

• 277—8, with simple infin in  
indirect questions, 279 (1),  
syn, 280 (Note), 521, 511  
(C), 528, 516  
wissend, syn, 517  
wo, adv, 312 rel pronoun,  
202 204 wo + prep (wo-  
mit, &c) = rel pronoun  
201, wo separated from the  
prep, 201 wo + prep = in-  
terrog pronoun, 192, wo +  
sub conj, 391 (B), 395  
(B c), 396 (f)  
wofern, conj, 397 (I)  
wohl, compar, 115 (c), modif  
adv 351, 353 syn, 336  
wohlthätig, syn, 521  
wohlwollen, syn, 499 (C).  
Wolf, decl 82  
wollen, conjugation, 317, uses,  
322—3, with simple infin,  
276  
Wort, decl, 97, das — reden,  
syn, 499 (C)  
Wörth, pron, 20  
worthalten, syn, 199 (C)  
Wrack, decl 78  
wringen, grad 308  
Wucher, pron 23  
Wuchs, pron, 23 decl, 52  
wuchs, pron 23  
Wulst, decl 82 87  
Wund(en)mal, decl, 77  
wundern, syn, 533, 531  
Wunsch, decl 82  
wünschen, grad 309  
würdig, syn, 517  
würdigen, syn, 528  
Wurf, decl, 82  
Wurm, decl 86 gender and  
meaning, 97  
wurmen, syn 336 (a)  
Wurst, decl, 83  
wurzel, s or h, 290  
wusch, pron 14  
Wust, pron, 23  
wüst, pron, 19  
x, pron, 35  
Xaver, pron, 30, 35  
y, pron, 11  
Ypsilon, pron 20  
Ysop, pron, 16  
Yssel, pron, 23  
z, pron, 30, 35  
-zack, decl, 76  
Zahn, decl 82  
zanken, syn 521  
Zapp, decl 75  
Zar, decl 88  
zart, pron, 21, compar, 112  
zärtlich, pron, 21  
Zaum, decl, 82  
Zaun, decl, 82  
Zeh, decl 88  
zeigen, with simple infin, 277,  
syn 539 (b), 521  
zeihen, grad, 301, syn, 528,  
537  
zeit, prep, 365  
Zelt, decl 78  
-zen, verbal suffix 428  
Zenturio, decl, 92

zer-, pron, 16 (c), insep, suf-  
fix, 327, meaning, 111  
Zeug, decl, 78, 97  
Zeugs, 97  
Zeus, pron, 23  
ziehen, grad, 307, s, 292,  
syn 511 (a), 521, 516  
Ziel, decl, 78  
zielen, syn, 521  
ziemen, syn, 196 (c)  
Zierat, decl, 90  
-zig, 126  
Zink, decl, 78, gender, 122  
Zinn, decl, 78  
Zins, decl, 90  
Zinsen, syn, 495  
Zither, pron, 13 19  
zittern, syn 497 (f), 521  
Zoll, decl, 75, 82  
Zopf, decl, 82  
zornig, syn, 521  
zu, sep prefix 326, 341 (A),  
syn 497 (B), prep, 372,  
zu seiten, 365  
Zucht, decl 83  
Zuck, decl, 75  
zucken, syn, 490 (e).  
zudem, conj, 389  
Zufucht, decl, 83  
zufolge, prep, 365, 374  
zufrieden, syn, 517.  
Zug, decl, 82  
zugunsten, prep, 365  
Zuidersee, pron, 21.  
zuide tun, syn, 199 (C).  
Zulp, decl, 75  
zum, pron, 15 23  
zumal, conj, 396 (C).  
zunächst, prep, 374  
Zunft, decl, 83  
zur, pron 15 23  
zürnen, syn, 195 (a), 514, 521  
zurück, sep prefix, 326  
zurückkommen, syn, 521  
zurückschrecken, syn, 521  
zusammen, sep prefix, 326,  
synonymous with beisam-  
men, 313  
zusammengesetzt, syn, 521  
zusamt, prep, 374  
zusätzlich, prep 365  
zuschlägig, prep, 365  
zu seiten, prep, 365  
zutüchtig, syn, 500 (a)  
zutreten, syn, 521  
zuungunsten, prep, 365  
zuvor, sep prefix, 326, syn,  
497 (B)  
zuwegen, prep, 365  
zuwider, prep, 374, adj, 500  
(a)  
zuzüglich, prep, 365  
zwar, 391, 582 (b (4))  
zwecks, prep 360 365  
zween, 117, der zweite, 150  
zweifeln, syn, 336, 521  
zweitens, conj 390  
Zwieback, decl 76, 83  
zwingen, grad, 308  
zwischen, prep, 386  
zwo, 147, der zwote, 150  
Zylinder, pron, 18

## INDEX OF SUBJECTS

Ablative, now replaced by the dative, 494.

Ablaut, see Gradation.

Abridgment of clauses: see Clauses.

Accent: marks indicating accent, 44; word accent, 44-5; normal, 44; emphatic, 44; rhythmical, 45; foreign, 45; prehistoric, 44 (*Note*); sentence accent, 45, 52; grammatical or group stress, 52; normal or descriptive group-stress with its variant forms, verbal adjective stress and end-stress, 54; logical, distinguishing, or classifying group-stress, 54; emphatic group-stress, 54; logical and emphatic stress employed in both word-stress and group-stress, 55; accent in simple stem words, 46; accent in derivative words, 46-8; accent of compounds, 48-51 and 442-6; geographical compounds, 49 (*g*), 445, 453 (*C*); secondary accent, 51-52; physiological principle in secondary accent, 51; unaccented syllables, 52; sentence accent influenced by rhythm, 55.

Accusative, original meaning, 489.

now used:

I. in the adverbial relation to denote:

place, 345 (*d*).

time, 345-7.

degree, 348-9.

II. as an object:

with transitives:

representing the thing as:

affected by the action, 490 (1).

the result of the action, 490 (1).

transitive or intransitive, 490 (*b*).

prep. phrase instead of acc., 490 (*e*).

with intransitives:

cognate acc., 491 (2. *A*).

acc. of result, 492 (*B*).

acc. after compounds, 492 (*C*).

in impersonal constructions, 335 (*A. a*).

either dat. or acc. according to meaning or from unsettled usage, 503-7.

with adjectives, adverbs, participles, 514-17.

double object:

dative of person, and acc. of thing 524-6.

acc. of person and gen. of thing, 526-35.

double acc.:

acc. of person and acc. of thing, 535-8.

acc. of the direct object and an objective predicate, 538-42.

acc. of the person or thing and a prepositional phrase, 542-6.

III. in the predicate:

in dialect, 467 (*C. a*).

by attraction, 463 (*a. Note*).

IV. after prepositions:

acc. only, 374-8.

acc. and dat., 378-86.

V. independent acc.:

acc. absolute, 552.

acc. in exclamations, 555 (4).

Address, pronouns of, 177-8; possessives in address, 167; nom. in address, 552.

Adjectives, inflection of, 126-138; strong, 129; weak, 130; origin of weak inflection, 138

(*Note*); mixed, 130; uninflected, 127-9, 134-6; inflection of adjectives with the suffixes -el, -en, -er, 131-2; peculiarities and irregularities in inflection, 132-8; ascending comparison, 138-142; irregularities, 145, 141-2; the relative comparative, 139; the absolute comparative, 139; the relative superlative, 139; the adverbial superlative, 139; the absolute superlative, 140; adjectives mutating in the superlative, 142; periphrastic comparison, 144; descending comparison, 145; inflection of adjective-substantives, 130, 136; word-order of adjective modifiers, 591; repetition of adjective, 475.

Adverbial modifiers, 551.

Adverbs: definition, 338; formation, 429-30; function and form of adjectives and adverbs compared, 338-40; nature of adverbs and prepositions compared, 355 (1. *a, c*); classification and meaning of adverbs, 340-54; comparison, 142, 354; periphrastic comparison, 144; irregularities in comparison, 145; descending comparison, 145; adverbs used as relative pronouns, 201-4.

Adversative conjunctions, 388 (*b*), 390 (*B*), 394 (*B. a*), 397 (*G*).

Agreement of verb with subject, 468-72; of predicate noun with subject in gender and case, 473-4; of adjectives and participles, 474-5; of relatives, 564; of appositives, 485-7.

Alphabet, 5.

Apostrophe, 57.

Apposition: agreement of appositives, 485-7; position, 485 (*A*), 487 (*B*); appositional construction with proper names, 481 (*G. a*); a noun in apposition with a sentence, 486 (*a*); a sentence in apposition with a word, 487 (*B*); apposition instead of the gen. of earlier periods, 487 (2); apposition with adverbial force, 558 (4), 570 (*c*).

Appositional type of sentence, 455 (*a*), 463 (*b. Note*), 558 (4).

Article: def., 58; indef., decl., 59; use of articles, 60-70; use of the articles with collective nouns, 63; with names of materials, 63; with abstract nouns, 64; with names of persons, 64-6; omission of, 67-70; repetition of, 475; contractions of, 58-9.

Aspect, the different aspects of action and the forms and modes of expressing them, 210.

Asyndetic, 204 (*Note*).

Attraction: in case, 463 (2. *A. a. Note*), 567 (*C. b*); trajectory, 564 (*e*).

Attributive clause, see Clause; attributive type of sentence, 463 (*b. Note*), 558 (4).

Auxiliaries of mood, inflection, 317; use, 318-23; omission of dependent verb, 323; auxiliaries of tense, 254 (*a, b, c*); use of, 287-293; omission of, 283 (*b*).

Back vowels, 17.

Capital letters, 5; use of, 56-7.

Cardinals, 147-50.

Case, see Nominative, &c.



Cause, see Clauses

Clauses

Classification with remarks on mood abridgment, word-order, &c., 557-8  
subject clause, 559-62  
predicate clause 562

adjective clauses

attributive substantive clause 562-3  
attributive adjective clause, 563-6

objective clauses

gen clause, 566  
dat clause, 566-7  
acc clause, 567-9  
prepositional clause, 569-70

adverbial clauses

place, 571  
time, 571-3  
manner, 573-5  
degree, 575-7  
cause, 577-8  
condition, 579-81  
concession 581-3  
purpose, 583-4  
means, 584

contracted clauses, 273 (2)

position of clauses in the sentence 558

Comparison, see under Adjectives Adverbs and Participles

Compounds and Group-words definition of a compound, 411, definition of a group-word, 412, parts of a compound or group-word 416, different kinds of compounds and group-words 442-6 form of compounds and group-words, 446-51 recent of compounds and group-words, 442-6 48-51, compound verbs conjugation of, 315 323-9, separable compounds, 323-6, inseparable, 323, 327, separable or inseparable 324, 327-9, nouns made from compound verbs 329, verbs indirectly compounded, 329, compound nouns inflection of, 72 (c), gender, 125-6

Concessive, see Clauses

Concord, see Agreement

Conditional sentences mood, 220 (C), 223 (E), 233 (E), 580 (c), different forms of the conditional clause, 580 (b), abridgment 581 (d)

Congruence, see Agreement

Conjugation forms of, 217, simple forms of the regular weak conjugation, 219 simple forms of the regular strong conjugation, 252 paradigm of compound tenses 293-5 gradation classes of strong verbs 300-15, conjugation of strong verbs in compounds, 315, irregular conjugation 315-18, conjugation of the passive 295-9, use of the connecting vowel in conjugation, 255-6

Conjunctions definition and classification 387 pure co-ordinating 387, adverbial co-ordinating 389 co-ordinating conjunctions with a double construction, 390, subordinating 391 order of words 391 position 393 (2) classification of subordinating conjunctions 393-7, conjunctions *als*, *wie*, *denn*, *weder*, 397-9 conjunctions used as co-ordinating or subordinating 399, origin of conjunctions 387, 400

Connecting vowel in verbs, use or omission 255-6

Consonants classification 12, pronunciation, 25-36, brief history of, 30-41

Copula, omission of, 163 (*Note*), 558 (1), origin of, 163 (*Note*)

Correlative pronouns, 207-8

Dative, original meaning, 493 (1), acquired meanings, 191

uses

I in the adverbial relation to denote

place, 315 (c, d)  
time, 345 (II 1), 346 (2 b).  
reference, 217 (c)

II as object

with certain verbs 494-7  
After a preposition or adverb contained in a compound, 197 (B) 199 (C)  
dative of possession, 496 (c)

III sentence dative

dative of reference 500  
dative of agent, 501.  
dative of cause, 501  
dative of interest, 501.  
ethical dative, 502

IV dative with *föhlen*, *kennen*, *wissen*, *wollen*, &c., 502 (4)

V dative after *lassen*, 511, (c)

VI dative for accusative, 503 (5)

VII either dative or accusative, 503-7

VIII with adjectives, participles, nouns, 499-500

IX with prepositions

dative only, 365-71  
dative and accusative, 378-80

X double object, dat of person and acc of thing 524

XI dative in exclamations 551 ((3))

Declensions see Nouns, Adjectives, &c., also Strong, Weak Mixed

Definite article, see Article

Demonstratives, list, 153, inflection and use 153-63

Dentals, 12

Derivation by means of suffix substantival suffixes, 403-17, adjectival suffixes, 117-26, verbal suffixes 426-9, derivative or compound adverbs, 129-30, derivation of prepositions 430-1, derivation by means of prefix formation of nouns, adjectives and pronouns by prefix, 431-4, verbal prefixes, 131-41

Desiderative aspect of verbs, 211

Determinatives 158 (2), 159 (3), 160 (2), 161 (3), 201 (*Note*)

Differentiation of substantive forms, 94, of verbal forms 302 (1)

Diminutive suffix in noun, 409-11, in verbs 427 (2 b)

Double consonants, meaning of, 13 (b *Note*)

Dual, 181 (g)

Durative aspect of verbs, 210 218 (*Note*)

Effective aspect of verbs, 210, 288, 436, 440

End stress 324-5

Factive verb, 301 (d)

Falling intonation, 56 (63 2)

Front vowels 17

Future perfect, formation 235, use, 215 origin 215 (b a *Note*)

Future tense formation of future indic and

Ge

meaning 121 according to form 123 fluctuation, 124, gender of foreign nouns

- 125; gender of compounds, 125-6; synesis of, 546-9.
- Genitive, original meaning, 507; origin of name, 477 (A. a).
- I. used attributively:
- gen. of origin, 477.
  - possessive gen., 477.
  - subjective gen., 478.
  - objective gen., 478-80.
  - gen. of material or composition, 480.
  - descriptive gen.:
    - gen. of quality or characteristic, 480.
    - gen. of measure, 480.
  - appositive gen., 480.
  - partitive gen., 481.
    - used also as subject or object, 483; gen. of gradation, 481.
  - gen. having the construction of the gen. found with verbs, 484.
  - position of the gen., 476.
- II. in the predicate, 465 (c).
- III. in the adverbial relation to denote:
- place or position, 344 (10. a).
  - time, 345-7.
  - manner, 347, 350 (XI).
  - degree, 348.
  - condition, 350 (VI).
  - concession, 350 (VII).
- IV. as an object:
- of a verb, 507-14.
  - of an adjective, adverb, participle or noun, 514-17.
  - a genitive in connection with an accusative, 526-35.
- V. after prepositions, 357-65.
- VI. gen., in exclamations, 554 (C. b).
- Gerund: English gerund with the corresponding German constructions, 262.
- Glottals, 12.
- Glottal stop, 34.
- Gradation, explanation of, 25, 300; gradation classes of verbs, 300-15; genitive of gradation, 481.
- Grimm, 39; Grimm's law of the shifting of the consonants, 36-9.
- Group-accent, see Accent.
- Group-words, see Compounds.
- High German, its place in the Indo-European family, 1; the different periods of, 1-4; H.G. shifting of the consonants, 36-41.
- Hypotaxis, see Parataxis, p. 556 (4).
- Imperative, formation, 249, 253 (c, d); wanting forms replaced by the subjunctive, 249; substitutes for the imperative, 250-2.
- Impersonal verbs: groups of, 332-8; *es gibt*, 335; impersonal verbs with the acc., 335; with the dat., 336-7; with the acc. and gen., 533 (c); impersonal verbs without a subject, 332; origin of the impersonal *es*, 332.
- Indefinite article, decl., 59; contractions of, 59; use of, 60, 61; omission of, 67-68.
- Indefinite: pronouns, inflection and use, 189-90; numerals, 169-77.
- Independent elements, 551-5.
- Indicative, 215-16.
- Indirect discourse, 237-47; indirect form: mood, 237-9; tense, 239-47; mood and tense in indirect questions, 243; imperative sentences in indirect form, 244-5; independent form of indirect discourse, 245-7.
- Infinitive, earlier inflection and explanation of the form with *zu*, 268; position in sentence, 324-5, 588 (b. *aa*, *bb*, *cc*), 258 (c).
- infinitive with zu*:
1. a. as subject, 269.
  - b. in the predicate, 269-270.
  2. in the following dependent relations:
    - as a complement of a noun, pronoun or adjective performing the function of:
      - the gen. of a substantive dependent upon an adjective, 270 ((1)).
      - an appositive gen. or a noun in apposition with a pronoun, substantive or substantive clause, 270 ((2)).
      - a relative clause, 270 ((3)).
    - a dative, object of the prep. *zu*, 271 (b).
    - an acc., object of the verb, 271 (c).
  3. as explanatory of a preceding anticipative subject or object, 271 (3).
  4. in contracted substantive and adverbial clauses, 272 (4).
  5. used absolutely, 272 (5), 274 (c).
  6. after (an)*treffen*, *bekommen*, *erhalten*, *fehlen*, *finden*, *geben*, *reichen*, *schenken*, *schicken*, *schlagen*, *sehen*, *überlassen*, where the infin. with *zu* has the force of a modal verbal, 272 (6).
  7. in the rare construction of the acc. with the infin., 279 (5).
- II. 1. position and repetition of *zu*, 273.
2. subject of the infin., 273 (2).
- infinitive without zu*:
1. a. as subject, 275 (a).
  - b. as predicate, 275 (b).
  - c. in apposition with the pronouns *ein(e)s*, *das eine*, *das*, a substantive, or a substantive clause, 275 (c).
  - d. as an imperative, 276.
  2. with auxiliaries or auxiliary-like verbs:
    - dürfen*, *können*, *mögen*, *müssen*, *sollen*, *wollen*, *brauchen*, 276 (a).
    - lassen*, 276 (b).
    - blasen*, *heischen*, *heißen*, *helfen*, *lehren*, *lernen*, *nennen*, *vergessen*, 276 (c).
    - with verbs of perceiving, finding, meeting and knowing, also with *führen*, *haben*, *machen*, *tragen*, *wiegen*, *zeigen*, 277 (d).
    - tun*, 278 (e).
  3. used to repeat an idea, 279 (3).
  4. in questions direct or indirect, 279 (4).
- II. form and use of the infin. with past force, 280; perf. infin. = pres. infin., 280; perf. infin. used as an imperative, 251 (d. *Note*). two infinitives connected by *als*, 280.
- infin. with passive force, 280-1.
- infinitive-substantive, 281.
- Inflection, see Declension, Conjugation, Intonation, &c.
- Ingressive aspect of verbs, 210, 288, 436, 440.
- Inseparable compounds, 323, 327; inseparable prefixes, 327.
- Instrumental, now replaced by the dative, 494.
- Intensive aspect of verbs, 211.
- Interjections, nature of, 400; list, 400-1.

Intonation 55-6  
 Intransitive verb definition 209 verbs trans  
 or intrans 209  
 Irregular verbs see Gradation  
 Iterative aspect of verbs 211  
 Liquids 12 34  
 Locative now replaced by the dative 431  
 Low German 1 2 4  
 M G 1e Middle German the German of the  
 Midland important by reason of its in-  
 fluence upon the literary language 2 3 21  
 72 301 315  
 M H G 1e Middle High German M H G  
 literature and language 1 language com-  
 pared with N H G 1 2 3 302-311  
 Mixed declension of nouns 89-94 origin of  
 90 (*Note*) mixed declension of adjectives  
 130  
 Mixed vowel e (unaccented) 13 23  
 Mood 215  
 Mutation of back vowels 21 302 *a* muta-  
 tion 25 302 mutation of e, 25 302  
 Nasals 12 33  
 Negation 351 double 351 pleonastic 352  
 after a comparative 576 (*a*)  
 N G 1e North German the German of the  
 North  
 N H G 1e New High German 1  
 Nominative original meaning 121 (97, next  
 to last par) origin of name 112 (10)  
 use  
 I as a subject 456  
 II as an appositive 485-6  
 III as a predicate  
 after verbs of incomplete predication  
 463-4 (2 A a b)  
 with reference to a preceding acc object  
 463 (2 A a (*Note*))  
 instead of a predicate acc 539 (*a Note*)  
 IV as a vocative 552 (A)  
 V in exclamations 554 (*b* (1))  
 VI used absolutely 554 ((2)) 581 (*d*)  
 Nouns inflection common nouns 70 97  
 proper nouns 97-102 plural of names of  
 persons and places 105-7 peculiarities in  
 the inflection of nouns 107-12  
 Number in nouns 112 20 sing to express a  
 collective idea 113 meaning usually pre-  
 sing  
 with  
 ow r  
 ative  
 117  
 p u u u u u u u u p i i English sing in  
 German 118 synesis of number 549-51  
 number in verbs 468-72  
 Numerals 147-52 cardinals 147-50 ordi-  
 nals 150-1 compound numerals 151  
 indefinite numerals 169-77  
 Object see Accusative Dative Genitive In-  
 finitive and Clauses for Object Clause  
 Genitive Clause &c, metonymic object  
 493 (*c*)  
 O E 1e Old English  
 O H G 1e Old High German O H G lan-  
 guage and literature 1  
 Old Saxon 1  
 Ordinals 150-1  
 Orthography 4  
 Palatals 12  
 Parataxis 556

Participle  
 pres part used as an adj 261 used in the  
 predicate 262 (*b*) pres part in adj use  
 often replaced in German by other con-  
 structions 262 (*c*) its use as a noun  
 adverb preposition 262-3 used as an  
 appositive with the force of an adverbial  
 clause 263 (*C Note*) often absolutely  
 552 with active or passive force 263  
 subject of a pres part, 263 (*b*) plurality  
 of participles 261 (3) use of the pres  
 part to express present past and future  
 time 264 comparison 144 (4) 143 (4)  
 perfect part without ge- 257-9 with  
 the form of an infin 257-9 used as an  
 adj 261 (A) used substantively 264  
 (B) used as an adverb prep or impera-  
 tive 264 used as an appositive with the  
 force of a subord clause 264 (F) used  
 absolutely 265 (F) 552 (*a b*) gram-  
 matical force 265 (2) with active force  
 265 (B) 266-7 (C) temporal relations  
 expressed by 267 two different forms of  
 the perf part employed with passive  
 force the statal and the actional form  
 268 (*d e*) comparison 141 (4) 143 (1)  
 position of perf part in the sentence  
 324-6 588 (*b aa bb cc*) 258 (*c*)  
 Particles 333-401  
 Passive formation 295 synopsis 298 con-  
 jugated with werden, 295 conjugated with  
 sein, 296 (B) 297 (4) peculiar passive con-  
 struction with bekommen, erhalten, kriegen,  
 297 (2) passive construction with führen,  
 bringen, nehmen, 297 (2) passive construc-  
 tion with gehören, 297 (3) actional and  
 statal passive 297 (4) substitutes for the  
 passive 299 impersonal passive 300 (II)  
 active in form but passive in meaning  
 298-1 (1 2)  
 Past present verbs 316 18  
 Past tense formation 248 9 252 254 use 212  
 Past perfect tense formation 283 dialect  
 form 293 (*a*) 241 (*e*) use 214  
 Perfect participle see Participle  
 Perfective type of verb 210 287-8  
 Personal pronouns 177-86 use 177-81  
 replaced by other forms 181-6  
 Pitch 55  
 Point action aspect of verb 210 287 436 (*b*)  
 Possessive adjectives 164 9 list 164 decl  
 165 non inflection in the predicate 165-6  
 used as substantives 166 use of possessives  
 167 9 use of capitals with 167 replaced  
 by demonstratives 168  
 Predicate the form and case of, 462-8  
 predicate noun  
 in the nom 463 (2 A a)  
 in the nom introduced by als, 464 (*b* (1))  
 in the acc after für, 464 (*b* (2)) in the  
 acc attracted by an acc 463 (2 A a  
*Note*)  
 in the dat after zu, 465 ((3))  
 in the gen 465 (*c*)  
 as objective predicate  
 in the simple acc 539 (*a*)  
 the acc introduced by als, 539 (*b*) by  
 für, 539 (*c*)  
 in the dat after zu, 540 (*d*)  
 predicate adjective  
 in the nom relation 466  
 in the acc relation 540 (B)

- predicate pronouns, 467 (C).  
 predicate infinitive, 467 (D); as objective predicate, 541 (C).  
 predicate adverb, 467 (E).  
 predicate clause, 468 (F), 562.  
 agreement of predicate verb with subject, 468-72.  
 omission of predicate, 462 (*a. Note* 1), of the copula, the formal predicate, 463 (*b. Note*).  
 predicate in attributive form, 463 (*b. Note*).  
 Prefixes, separable, 326; inseparable, 327; separable or inseparable, 327; prefixes to form nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, 431-4; verbal prefixes, 434-41.  
 Pre-Germanic, 1.  
 Prepositional phrase as adverbial modifier, 551; as modifier of a noun, 487.  
 Prepositions: nature, 355; approach the nature of adverbs, 355; fluctuation of conception, 355 (*c*); approach the nature of conjunctions, 355; government of prepositions, 356; list, 357; origin, meaning, and use of preps. with gen., 357-65; meaning and use of preps. with dat., 365-74; preps. with acc., 374-8; preps. with either dat. or acc., 378-86; formation of prepositions, 430-1.  
 Present tense, formation, 249, 252, 254; use, 211-12.  
 Present perfect tense, formation, 282; use, 212-13.  
 Primitives, 402.  
 Progression, German ways of expressing the progressive idea, the idea of duration, 248 (*Note*), 210.  
 Pronominals, 147, 153.  
 Pronouns, 177-209; see Personal, Relative, &c.  
 Pronunciation, best, 7; sounds and their classification, 7-12.  
 Proper names, inflection, 97-102; plural, 105-7; formation, 408 (*a*).  
 Prospective action, 322 (*6. d*).  
 Purpose, clause of, 583.  
 Quantity: general rules for vowels, 13; rules for quantity in detail, 14-17; quantity of consonants, 25.  
 Reciprocal pronouns, 188.  
 Reflexive pronouns, 186-8; reflexive verbs: conjugation, 329; case of the predicate complement of reflexive verbs, 330; uses of the reflexive verb, 329-32.  
 Relative:  
   adjectives, 163.  
   pronouns, 193-206; list, 193; replaced by adverbs, 201-4; not omitted, 204; origin of the relative pronoun, 204 (*Note*); indefinite relatives *wer* and *was*, 204-6; conditional relative, 206; correlatives, 207-8.  
   adverbs, 201-4; parts separated, 201.  
   clause, 563-6; synthesis of gender, 564 (*a*); synthesis of number, 564 (*b*); mood, 565; abridgment, 565; descriptive clause, 565 (*7*).  
 Result, clause of, 574 (D), 576 (2); subjunctive of, 222-3, 232-3.  
 Rising intonation, 56.  
 Rounding, 13.  
 Sentence, definition of, 455; the parts and the kinds of the simple sentence, 455; classes of sentences, 555; the compound sentence, 555-7; the complex sentence, 557.  
 Separable compounds, 323-6; separable prefixes, 326; separable or inseparable compounds and prefixes, 324, 327-9.  
 S.E., i.e. Southern English, the pronunciation in the southern part of England; S.E. also dialect of the Southeast of the German-speaking territory.  
 S.G., i.e. Southern German, the German of the South.  
 Spirants, 12.  
 Stereotyped pronominal forms, 208-9.  
 Stops, 12, 26.  
 Strong declension: of nouns, 72-86; general rules, 72-4; unmutated e-plural type, 74-9; unmutated e-less plural type, 79-81; mutated e-plural type, 81-4; mutated e-less plural type, 84; er-plural type, 85-6; strong declension of adjectives, 129; strong verb: conjugation of the simple forms, 252-3.  
 Subject: the case and form of the logical subject, 456-7; omission and expression of the logical subject, 455 (*a*), 458; grammatical subject, 457; anticipative subject, 457; situation *es* as subject, 458 (3), 334 (3, last par.); impersonal *es* as subject, 458, 332; omission and expression of the grammatical and the anticipative subject, 460-2; omission of impersonal *es*, 332, 333, 336 (B. *a*), 338 (*a*); origin of grammatical and impersonal *es*, 457 (*Note*), 332-3; metonymic subject, 456 (B. *a*).  
 Subjunctive: formation, 249, 252, 255 (*d*), 315-17, 282-6, 293-5; formation of the past subjunctive in the dialects of Bavaria, Austria, and Switzerland, 256 (*f*); basal meaning of the subjunctive, 216.  
*subjunctive of present tense forms:*  
 I. optative subjunctive, 217-21:  
   1. in principal propositions:  
     A. volitive, 217.  
     B. sanguine subjunctive of wish, 217.  
     C. subjunctive of logical reasoning, 218.  
   2. in subordinate clauses:  
     A. concessive, 218.  
     B. sanguine subjunctive of purpose, 218-20.  
     C. optative in conditions, 220.  
     D. in relative clauses, 220.  
     E. in substantive clauses, 220-21.  
     F. in adverbial clauses, 221.  
 II. potential subjunctive, 221-7.  
   A. in indirect discourse, 221, 237-47.  
   B. in clauses of manner, 222.  
   C. in attributive relative clauses of result, 222.  
   D. in adverbial clauses of result, 223.  
   E. in probable conditions, 223-5.  
   F. in relative and interrogative clauses, 225.  
   G. in substantive *daß*-clauses, 226-7.  
*subjunctive of past tense forms:*  
 1. unreal optative:  
   A. unreal subj. of wish, 228; subj. of modest wish, 228.  
   B. unreal concessive subjunctive, 229.  
   C. unreal subjunctive of purpose, 229.  
 2. unreal potential:  
   A. (1). in direct statements and questions, 230; subj. of modest or cautious statement, 230.  
       (2). in indirect discourse, 231, 237-47.

B. in clauses of manner, 232.  
 C. in attributive relative clauses of result, 232.  
 D. in adverbial clauses of result, 233.  
 E. in unreal conditions, 233-4.  
 F. in relative and interrogative clauses, 234.  
 G. in substantive *daß*-clauses, 235.  
 H. in clauses of degree, 236.  
 I. in clauses of time and place, 236.  
 J. in clauses of cause, 237.  
 Suffixes of nouns, 403-17; of adjectives, 417-26; of verbs, 426-9; of adverbs, 429-30.  
 Superlative, see Adjective.  
 S.W., i.e. dialect of the Southwest of the German-speaking territory.  
 Syllables: open and closed, 13 (4. a, b); syllabic division, 41; syllabic division in the Southwest, 42 (1); syllables in connected discourse, 43; separation of syllables at the end of a line, 43.  
 Synthesis of gender, 546-9; of number, 549-51.  
 Syntax, 455-593.  
 Terminate aspect of verbs, 211, 218 (*Note*), 287 (3).  
 Tenses: formation of simple tenses, 219, 252, irregularities, 251 (a, b, c), 315-18; formation of compound tenses, 282-7, 295-9; use of *haben* and *sein* in compound tenses, 287-293; use of the tenses of the indic., 211-15; of the subjunctive, 216-17; of the present tense forms of the subj., 217-27; of the past tense forms of the subj., 227-37, of tenses in indirect discourse, 239-47.  
 Titles, decl., 102-5.  
 Trajection, 564 (e).  
 Transitive verb, definition, 209; verbs trans. or intrans., 209.

Umlaut, see Mutation.  
 Unrounding, 25 (A. last par.).  
 Uvular r, 32 (6).  
 Velars, 12.  
 Verb, see  
     Gradation  
     Verbals, 258  
     attributive modal verbal, 200 (B).  
 Verner's Law, 39 (2. a).  
 Volitive subjunctive, 217 (A), 218 (B), 220 (C. a, b, D. a).  
 Vowels: classification, 17; chart, 18; quantity, 13-17; pronunciation, 17-24; mutation, 24-5; gradation, 25.  
 Weak declension of nouns, 58-9; weak declension of adjectives, 130; weak conjugation of verbs, 219, 251 (a), 315-18.  
 Word-formation, general principles, 402; see also Derivation and Compounds.  
 Word-order, general principles, 584; historical explanations, 589 (a).  
     varieties of word-order, 585-6.  
         normal order, 587-91.  
         word-order of the subject, 587.  
         position of the gen., 470, 587.  
         word-order of the predicate:  
             position of the verb, 588.  
             position of the predicate, participle, infin., sep. prefix, adjective, or noun, 588-9.  
             order of objects, 589-90.  
             order of adverbs, 590; position of negatives, 591.  
         word-order of adjective modifiers, 591.  
         position of subordinate clauses, 588.  
         inverted word-order, 591-5; use of, 592-4; particulars of this word-order, 591-5.  
         question order, 595-7; use of, 596-7.  
         transposed order, 597-8; use of, 598.